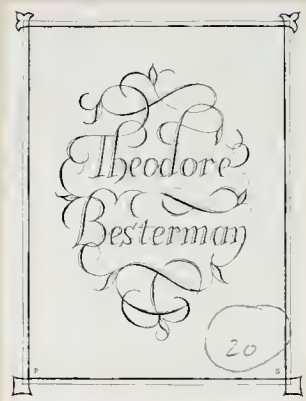

Theodore
Besterman
20

A Copy of this Book was sold (at the Sale of the Stow Library) Jany. 1849, for 10 guineas - represented as rare.

Charles R.

CHarles *the Second, by the Grace of God, King of* England, Scotland, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith, &c. To all Our loving Subjects, of what degree, condition, or quality soever, within Our Kingdoms and Dominions, Greeting:* Whereas *it hath been manifested unto Us, that Our trusty and well-beloved* Elias Ashmole *Esq*; Windesor Herald *at* Arms, *hath for fifteen years past applyed himself to the search and study of things, relating to the Honor of Our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *and hath at his great charge, and expence of time, now compleated a Book, Entituled,* The Institution, Laws, and Ceremonies of the said most Noble Order; *collected and digested into one Body, and adorned with variety of Sculpture; whose pains therein, as it is greatly to Our satisfaction, so can We no less, for his past industry and future incouragement, in his further progress of these Studies, but express Our good liking and approbation thereof*: Know *ye therefore, That it is Our Royal Pleasure, and We do by these presents, upon the humble request of the said* Elias Ashmole, *not only give him leave and license to Print the said* Book, *but strictly charge, prohibit, and forbid all our Subjects, to reprint within this Our* Kingdom, *the said* Book *in any Volume, or any part thereof, or any* Abridgment *of the* Laws *or* Ceremonies *therein contained, or to copy or counterfeit any the* Sculptures *or* Ingravements *belonging thereunto, or to import, buy, vend, utter, or distribute any Copies or Exemplaries of the same, reprinted beyond the Seas, within the term of fifteen years, next ensuing the publishing thereof, without the consent and approbation of the said* Elias Ashmole, *his Heirs, Executors, or Assigns, as they and every of them so offending, will answer the contrary at their utmost perils: Whereof, as well the* Wardens *and* Company *of* Stationers *of our City of* London, *the* Farmers, Commissioners, *and* Officers *of Our* Customs, *as all other Our* Officers *and* Ministers *whom it may concern, are to take particular notice, that due obedience be given to this Our Royal Command, herein declared.* Given *under Our Signet and Sign Manual, at Our Court at* Whitehall, *the* 31. *day of* March, *in the* 22. *Year of Our Reign,* 1670.

By his Majesty's Command

Arlington.

The most High, most Excellent, and most Mighty Monarch Charles the Second, by the Grace of God King of Greate Britaine France and Ireland Defender of the Faith and Soveraigne of the most Noble Order of the Garter.

W Sherwin sculpsit

THE

INSTITUTION, Laws & Ceremonies

Of the most NOBLE

ORDER

OF THE

GARTER.

Collected and digested into one Body

BY

ELIAS ASHMOLE of the *Middle-Temple* Esq;

WINDESOR Herald at Arms.

A Work furnished with variety of matter, relating to *HONOR* and *NOBLESSE*.

LONDON,

Printed by *J. Macock*, for *Nathanael Brooke* at the *Angel* in *Cornhill*, near the *Royal Exchange*, MDCLXXII.

AUGUSTISSIMO POTENTISSIMOQUE

MONARCHÆ

CAROLO II

D. G.

MAGNÆ BRITANNIÆ

FRANCIÆ ET HIBERNIÆ

REGI

FIDEI DEFENSORI

ET

SUPREMO

NOBILISSIMI MILITARIS ORDINIS

GARTERII

HOS ORDINIS COMMENTARIOS

HUMILLIME

D. D.

ELIAS ASHMOLE

FECIALIS WINDESOR.

PREFACE.

IT is not to be attributed only to Custom, but sometimes it's necessary, in order to the Readers *greater convenience, that Books are commonly recommended to their perusal, by somewhat prefatory, as* Epistles, *&c. the use of them being chiefly, to render an account of what they contain, and by a short Antipast, to represent to them, what they are likely to find in the Entertainment of the whole Work. This consideration hath obliged me to a compliance with others, and to acquaint my* Reader, *what occasioned my engaging upon this Subject, and what I have done therein.*

As I ever had a great veneration for the most Noble Order *of the* Garter, *so must it needs be imagined, that I was accordingly much concerned, in the late unhappy times, to see the honor of it trampled on, and it self sunk into a very low esteem among us. That reflection put me upon thoughts, not only of doing something, that might inform the world of the Nobleness of its Institution, and the Glory which in process of time it acquired, both at home and abroad; but also of drawing up, in the nature of a* Formulary, *both the* Legal *and* Ceremonial *part thereof, for the better conduct of such as might be therein afterwards concerned, in case the Eclipse, it then waded under in our Horizon, should prove of so long continuance, as that many occurrences, worthy of knowledge, might come to be in a manner forgotten.*

Upon the first communication of my design, to the late Reverend Doctor Christopher Wren, *Register of the said* Order, *it received not only his full approbation, but also his ready assistance in the use of the* Annals *thereof, then in his custody: From those, and other authentick* Manuscripts *and* Autographs, *particularly relating to the* Order, *and a painful and chargeable search of our publick* Records, *I had collected the greatest part of my Materials, before the happy Restauration of his now* Majesty *the present* Soveraign *of this most Noble* Order; *who, being afterwards acquainted with what I had done, was most graciously pleased to countenance it, and encourage me in the prosecution thereof.*

The Work in general contains an Historical account of the Laws *and* Ceremonies *of the said most Noble* Order; *but more particularly, its* Institution, *the manner and order observed in* Elections, Investitures, *and* Installations *of* Knights, *the Holding of* Chapters, *Celebration of* Festivals, *the Formality of* Proceedings, *the Magnificence of* Embassies *sent with the Habit, to Stranger* Kings *and* Princes; *in sum, all other things relative to the* Order. *In the illustration whereof, I have inserted (where they properly occur'd) the most eminent and considerable Cases, which have required and received discussion in* Chapters, *the determinations thereupon becoming Rules and Laws; Whence it may be observed, that the Foundation and Superstructures of the* Order, *were laid and raised upon the exactest Rules of Honor. And to supply the failer and defects of the* Annals, *I have been forced to make use of* Memorials *and* Relations, *yet such as were taken notice of, and committed to writing, either by some of the* Officers *of the* Order, *or those of* Arms, *during the times of their attendance on the Service of the* Order, *and consequently of sufficient authority for me to relye on.*

To usher in those, I have given a Prospect of Knighthood *in* General, *of the several* Orders *of* Knighthood, *as also of the* Antiquity *of the* Castle *and* Colledge *of* Windesor; *and closed all, with the* Honors, *Martial* Employments, *and famous* Actions, *the* Matches *and* Issues *of the* Founder, *and first* Knights-Companions, *as also a perfect* Catalogue *of their* Successors *to this very present. All which are adorned with variety of* Sculptures, *properly relating to the several parts of the Work: But the following* Synopsis *of its whole Contexture, and the Heads of the Chapters, will excuse a further enlargement here.*

I shall with submission add, That this noble Subject, having not been (at some

times) heedfully looked into, some irregularities have happened, on which I have made the less adnimadversion, in regard it was my desire, by proceeding upon what is purely derived from the Root, to shew wherein the right Rule, either Legal *or* Ceremonial, *hath been observed (that it may still be pursued, till thought fit to be altered) and as little as may be, where broken: to the end also, that a careful distinction may be made between matter of* Law, *and matter of* Fact; *lest otherwise, an Error may hereafter come to be vouched for a* Precedent.

And whereas some passages may seem of little importance, it is to be considered, That the ensuing Discourse, is limited to an account only of certain peculiar Laws *and* Ceremonies *of* Honor, *wherein sundry minute things (occasionally falling in) are not only pardoned, but also allowable, yea very necessary to be mentioned; in regard they promote their satisfaction, who are more particularly concerned therein. And this will be yet the rather excusable, if another thing, which hath occasioned no small inconvenience, be reflected on: to wit, The omission or negligence of many* Writers *in setting down Occurrences, meerly upon the score of their being then fresh in most mens memories; by which means, Posterity hath not only been deprived of many passages, whereof it would gladly have been informed, but the elaborate disquisitions of both* Criticks *and* Antiquaries *have proved fruitless, and of little advantage, and the things themselves lye yet buried in obscurity.*

Lastly, to explicate some few Abbreviations *in the* Margent, *it is to be observed, that where I cite the* Annals *of the* Order, *they are thus noted.* Lib. N. *to be read Liber Niger,* Lib. C. *Liber Cærulens,* R. *Rubeus, and* Carol. *Carolinus. So also the* Collections *or* Manuscripts *of some that have been, or now are* Officers *of* Arms *(whose frequent quotations would otherwise have too much swell'd the Margent) being thus abbreviated.* E. W. G. *signifie Edwardus Walker Garter,* R. C. Cl. *Robertus Cook Clarenceux,* W. le N. Cl. *Willielmus le Neve Clarenceux,* W. D. N. *Willielmus Dugdale Norroy,* A. V. W. *Augustinus Vincent Windesor, and* G. O. Y. *Georgius Owen York. The rest may be easily understood.*

E. A.

THE

THE

CONTENTS

Of the *CHAPTERS.*

CHAP. I.

Of Knighthood *in general.*

Sect.
I. *Of* Vertue *and* Honor. Page 1.
II. *The* Antiquity *of* Knighthood. 5.
III. *Of the* Foundation *of the* Equestrian Order *among the* Romans. 6.
IV. *Of the Modern* Degrees *of* Knighthood. 12.
V. *The* Etymology *of* Eques, Miles, Chevalier, Ritter, *and* Sir. 17.
VI. *The* Ensigns *of the* Equestrian Order *among the* Romans. 21.
VII. *The* Ensigns *and* Ornaments *of* Knighthood *among other* Nations. 27.
VIII. Qualifications *for* Knighthood. 31.
IX. *The various* Ceremonies *used at the conferring of* Knighthood. 36.
X. *Of the* Dignity, Honor, *and* Renown *of* Knighthood. 43.

CHAP. II.

Of the Religious Orders *of* Knighthood *in Christendom.*

Sect.
I. *Of ancient* Societies, *analogous to the* Orders *of* Knightood. Page 47.
II. *The* Christian Institution *of* Knightly Orders. 48.
III. *The* Division *of* Knightly Orders *into* Religious *and* Military. 49.
IV. *Of* Ecclesiastical Foundations *dependant upon* Military Orders. 50.
V. *A brief account of the* Religious Orders *of* Knighthood. 51.

CHAP. III.

An Account of the Orders *absolutely* Military.

Sect.
I. *The* Order *of* Knights *of the* Round Table. *&c.* Page 94.
II. *Of* Knights *in the* West-Indies. 124.
III. *The* Feminine Cavaliers *of the* Torch *in* Tortosa. 125.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Castle, Chappel, *and* Colledge *of* Windesor.

Sect.
I. *Of the* Castle *of* Windesor. Page 127.
II. *Of the* Chappel *of* St. George. 135.
III. *The* Foundation *of the* Colledge *within the* Chappel. 152.
IV. *Of the* Dean, Canons, Petty-Canons, Clerks *and* Choristers. 153.
V. *Of the* Alms-Knights. 158.
VI. *Of other* Officers *of the* Colledge. 166.
VII. *Of the* Endowment *of the* Colledge. 167.
VIII. *Of the* Priviledges *of the* Chappel *and* Colledge. 174.

CHAP. V.

The *Institution* of the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter.*

Sect.
I. *The several* Opinions *touching the Occasion of its* Institution. Page 178.
II. *The true* Cause *asserted.* 181.
III. *The* Time *when the* Order *was Instituted.* 185.
IV. *Of the* Patrons *of the* Order. 187.
V. *The* Honor *and* Reputation *thereof.* 189.

CHAP. VI.

The Statutes *and* Annals *of the* Order.

Sect.
I. *Of the* Statutes *of* Institution. Page 190.
II. *Of those other* Bodies *of* Statutes *since established.* 191.
III. *Several* Endeavours *for* Reforming *the* Statutes, *since the Reign of King* Henry *the Eighth.* 194.
IV. *Of the Annals of the* Order. 198.

CHAP. VII.

The Habit *and* Ensigns *of the* Order.

Sect.
I. *Of the* Garter. Page 202.
II. *Of the* Mantle. 208.

III. *Of*

III. *Of the* Surcoat. 211.
IV. *Of the* Hood *and* Cap. 214.
V. *The* Robes *anciently assigned to the* Queen *and great* Ladies. 217.
VI. *Of* Collars *in general.* 218.
VII. *The* Collar *of the* Order. 220.
VIII. Collars *of* SS. 224.
IX. *The lesser* George. 226.
X. *When the* Habit, *or part of it, ought to be worn.* 231.

CHAP. VIII.

The Officers *appointed for the Service of the* Order.

Sect.
I. *The* Prelate's Institution, *his* Oath, Robe, *and* Priviledges. Page. 234.
II. *The* Institution *of the* Chancellor's Office, *his* Oath, Robe, Badge, *and* Pension. 237.
III. *The* Register's Institution, Oath, Mantle, Badge, Priviledges, *and* Pension. 248.
IV. Garter's Institution, Oath, Mantle, Ensign, Badge, Priviledges, *and* Pension. 252.
V. Institution *of the* Black Rod's Office, *his* Oath, Habit, Ensign, Badge, Priviledges, *and* Pension. 256.
VI. *The Payment of the* Officers Pensions *upon the new Establishment.* 258.
VII. *The Execution of these* Offices *by* Deputies. 260.

CHAP. IX.

The Election *of a* Knight *into the* Order.

Sect.
I. *Of* Summons *to the* Election. Page 262.
II. *The* Place *of* Assembly. 264.
III. *The* Number *of* Knights *that constitute a* Chapter. 265.
IV. Dispensation *for want of a full* Number. 266.
V. *Of* Opening *the* Chapter. 268.
VI. *That* Knights *only present in* Chapter *ought to nominate.* 269.
VII. *Of the* Number, Qualifications, *and* Degrees *of the Persons to be nominated.* 271.
VIII. *Of the* Scruteny, *and by whom it ought to be taken.* 276.
IX. *The* Time *when.* 278.
X. *The* Manner *and* Order *of it.* 279.
XI. *The* Presentation *of it to the* Soveraign. 283.
XII. *His* Considerations *thereupon referring to the* Qualification *of each Person to be* Elected. 284.
XIII. *Of other* Inducements *for* Election. 290.
XIV. *That the* Soveraign *only doth* Elect. 291.
XV. *The* Scruteny *ought to be entred among the* Annals. 292.
XVI. *The* Scruteny *ought not to be viewed until it be entred.* 293.
XVII. *Of* Scrutenies *taken, yet no* Election *made.* 294.
XVIII. *The* Penalties *inflicted on* Knights-Companions, *who appear not at an* Election. 295.

CHAP. X.

The *Investiture* of a *Knight-Subject* with the *Garter* and *George.*

Sect.
I. *The* Notice *given to a* Knight Subject *of his* Election. 296.
II. *His* Reception *into the* Chapter-house. 298.
III. *The* Ceremonies *of* Investiture *with the* Garter *and* George. 299.
IV. *Of sending the* Garter *and* George *to an* Elect Knight-Subject. 302.
V. *The* Manner *of a* Knights Investiture. 308.
VI. Allowances *and* Rewards *given to* Garter *for his Service in this* Employment. 311.

CHAP. XI.

Of *Preparations* for the *Personal Installation* of a *Knight.*

Sect.
I. *That* Installation *gives the* Title *of* Founder. Page 312.
II. *Of the* Time *and* Place *appointed for* Installation. 313.
III. *Of* Commissions *for* Installation. 314.
IV. Letters *of* Summons. 315.
V. Warrants *for the* Livery *of the* Order. 316.
VI. *The* Removal *of* Atchievements *and* Plates. *ibid.*
VII. Preparations *made by the* Knight Elect. 334.

CHAP. XII.

The *Personal Installation* of a *Knight-Subject.*

I. *Of the* Cavalcade *to* Windesor. Page 338.
II. *The* Offering *in the* Chappel, *on the* Eve *of the* Installation. 342.
III. *The* Supper *on the* Eve. 344.
IV. *The* Order *in* Proceeding *to the* Chapter-house. *ibid.*
V. *The* Ceremonies *performed in the* Chapter-house. 350.
VI. *The* Proceeding *into the* Choire. 352.
VII. *The* Ceremonies *of* Installation. 354.
VIII. *The* Order *observed when two or more* Knights *are* Installed *in one day.* 360.
IX. *The* Offering *of* Gold *and* Silver. 364.
X. *Of the* Grand Dinner *at the* Installation. *ib.*
XI. *Of setting up the* Knights Atchievements. 367.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

The *Installation* of a *Knight Subject* by *Proxie.*

Sect.
I. *The* Original *Cause of making* Proxies. 372.
II. Letters *of* Procuration. Page 373.
III. Qualifications *of a* Proxie. 375.
IV. Preparations *for* Installation. ibid.
V. Proceeding *to the* Chapter-house. 377.
VI. Transactions *in it.* ibid.
VII. Proceeding *to the* Choire. 378.
VIII. Ceremonies *performed there.* *ibid.*
IX. *The* Grand *Dinner.* 380.

CHAP. XIV.

The *Signification* of *Election* to *Strangers.*

Sect.
I. *Within what time, and in what manner* Certificate *is made of their* Election. 381.
II. *Of* Notice *given of an* Election, *before sending the* Habit. 384.
III. Notice *of* Election *sent with the* Habit. *ibid.*
IV. Certificate *of* Acceptation. 386.
V. *Of an* Election *not accepted of.* 387.

CHAP. XV.

The *Investiture* of *Strangers* with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order.*

Sect.
I. *The* Time *for sending the* Habit *and* Ensigns *unlimited.* Page 389.
II. Preparations *made for the* Legation. 390.
III. *The* Ceremonies *of* Investiture. 399.
IV. Certificates *of having received the* Habit *and* Ensigns *of the* Order. 432.

CHAP. XVI.

The *Installation* of a *Stranger* by *Proxie.*

Sect.
I. *Touching the* Choice *and* Nomination *of a* Proxie. Page 434.
II. *The* Proctor's Qualifications. 437.
III. *His* Letters *of* Procuration. 439.
IV. *Of the* Proctor's Reception. *ibid.*
V. *The* Preparations *for* Installation. 440.
VI. *The* Proctor's Cavalcade *to* Windesor. 441.
VII. Supper *after his Arrival there.* 442.
VIII. *Of the* Proceeding *to the* Chapter-house. 443.
IX. *The* Ceremonies *performed therein.* 444.
X. *Of the* Proceeding *to the* Choire. 447.
XI. *The* Ceremonies *of* Installation. 448.
XII. *The* Proctor's *Offering.* 452.
XIII. *The* Dinner. 454.

CHAP. XVII.

The *Duties* and *Fees* Payable by the *Knights-Companions* at their *Installations.*

Sect.
I. *Touching the* Fees *due to the* Colledge *of* Windesor. Page 455.
II. Fees *due to the* Register, Garter, Black-Rod *and* Officers *of* Arms. 458.
III. Fees *belonging to other of the* Soveraign's Servants. 462.
IV. Fees *payable for* Strangers. 463.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the *Grand Feast* of the *Order.*

Sect.
I. *The* Grand Feast *appointed to be annually celebrated on* St. George's *day.* Page 467.
II. *The* Anniversary *of St.* George *fixed by the* Church *unto the* 23. *of* April. 468.
III. *St.* George's *day made* Festum duplex. 469.
IV. *The* Place *for celebrating the* Grand Feast, *assigned to* Windesor-Castle. 471.
V. *St.* George's *day kept apart from the* Grand Feast, *and how then observed.* Ibid.
VI. *The* Grand Feast *neglected by King* Edward *the Sixth.* 473.
VII. *Removed from* Windesor *by Queen* Elizabeth. 474.
VIII. *Of* Prorogation *of the* Grand Feast. 475.
IX. *Of* Commissions *for* Prorogation. 480.
X. *That the* Grand Feast *ought to be celebrated once every year.* 482.

CHAP. XIX.

Of *Preparations* for the *Grand Feast of the* Order.

Sect.
I. *Of* Letters *giving notice of the* Time *and* Place. Page 484.
II. *Of* Dispensations *for not attending at the* Grand Feast. 485.
III. *Of* Commissions *of* Lieutenancy *and* Assistance. 487.
IV. Warrants *for the Removal of* Atchievements. Ibid.
V. Scutcheons *of* Arms *and* Stiles. Ibid.
VI. *Of adorning the* Chappel. 490.
VII. *The furnishing of* St. George's Hall. 500.
VIII. Officers *and* Servants *appointed to attend at the* Grand Feast. 502.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

The Order of the *Ceremonies* on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*.

Sect.
I. *Of the beginning of the* Grand Feast. Pag. 504.
II. *Of setting the* Proceeding *in order*. 509.
III. *Of* Proceeding *to the* Chapter-house. 516.
IV. *Of the* Opening *of the* Chapter. 519.
V. Transactions *in the* Chapter *held before the first* Vespers. 520.
VI. *The* Ceremonies *relating to the first* Vespers. 538.
VII. *The* Supper *on the* Eve. 544.

CHAP. XXI.

The Order of the *Ceremonies* on the *Feast Day*.

Sect.
I. *The* Proceeding *to the* Chappel *in the* Morning. Page 547.
II. *The* Proceeding *to the second* Service. 550.
III. *Of the* Grand Procession. 551.
IV. *The Order of the second* Service. 570.
V. *The Offering of* Gold *and* Silver. 580.
VI. *The* Return *to the* Presence. 587.
VII. *Of the* Dinner *on the* Feast *Day*. 588.
VIII. *The* Ceremonies *belonging to the second* Vespers. 597.
IX. *Of the* Supper *on the* Evening *of the* Feast Day. 598.

CHAP. XXII.

The *Ceremonies* observed on the *last Day* of the *Feast*.

Sect.
I. *Of* Proceeding *to the* Chapter-house *in the* Morning. Page 599.
II. *Of the* Elect Knights Proceeding *into the* Choire. 600.
III. *Of the* Ceremonies *performed at* Divine Service. 601.
IV. *The* Diets *at some of the* Grand Feasts. 602.

CHAP. XXIII.

The *Observation* of the *Grand Feast* by *Absent Knights*.

Sect.
I. Absent Knights *enjoyned to observe the* Grand Feast. Page 613.
II. *More particular* Directions *for their* Observation *of it*. 614.
III. *How to be observed in case of* Sickness. 616.
IV. *In what manner the* Feast *hath been observed by* Absent Knights. *ibid.*
V. Dispensation *for* Absence *granted during life*. 619.

CHAP. XXIV.

The *Degradation* of a *Knight-Companion*.

Sect.
I. *Of the* Degradation *of a* Knight-Batchellor. Page 620.
II. *The manner of* Degrading *a* Knight-Companion *of the* Garter 621.
III. *Of* Restauration *into the* Order *after* Degradation. 622.

CHAP. XXV.

Honors paid to *Deceased Knights-Companions*.

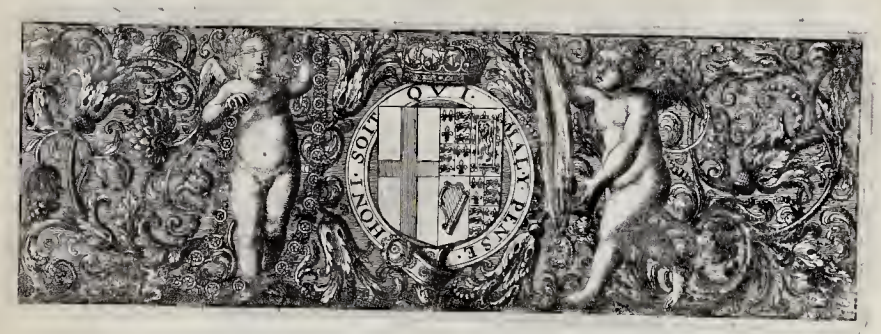
Sect.
I. *Of the* Celebration *heretofore of* Masses, *for* defunct Knights-Companions. *Page* 623.
II. *Of fixing on the* Stalls, Plates *of their* Arms, *and* Stiles. 627.
III. *The* Offering *of* Atchievements. 629.
IV. *Of* depositing *the deceased* Knights Mantles *in the* Chapter-house. 636.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the *Founder*, the first *Knights-Companions* and their *Successors*.

Sect.
I. *Of what* Number *they consisted*. Page 642.
II. *A short view of the* Founder's Wars. 643.
III. *Some account of the first* 25 Knights-Companions. 070.
IV. *A* Catalogue *of their* Successors. 708.

OF



CHAP. I.

OF

Knighthood in general.

SECT. I.

Of Vertue *and* Honor.

IT hath been the Practice of all well-govern'd Kingdoms and States, to encourage *Merit* by *Reward*. *Merit* consists in the performance of some vertuous Action, directed to the Publick good. As *Vertue* is either *Military* or *Civil*; so *Reward* is differently distributed, either by *Honor* or *Profit*: to the end, each sort of *Vertue* may have its proper and suitable *Reward*.

Vertue is encouraged by Reward.

And though in a moral and strict sence, *Vertue* is to be accounted its own *Reward*; yet in regard there are very many, who not so much from a vertuous Principle, as to obtain Wealth or Honor, are drawn oftimes to act meritoriously; therefore it was provided, by the wisest *Founders* of Empires, and Common-wealths, to take special care, no less for the encouragement of well-doing (by setting up *Reward* as a Prize, for brave endeavours to aim at, prosecute and carry; and consequently to exalt men according to their merit) then for the punishment of vitious and ignoble actions: insomuch that *Socrates* justly concluded that City to be best governed, wherein, [a] *the good are cherisht, and the bad chastis'd.*

(a) *Bruf. in Platonem, l. 5. c. 8.*

Nor doth it a little concern the interest of a *Nation*, that noble incitements to *Vertue* be proposed to valiant minds, wherewith being inflamed, they may always shine forth, in some action, worthy themselves: since *Rewards* are powerful (even to wonder) to excite and stir up the force and vigour of gallant Spirits, to very high degrees of performance; and from the example of our *Ancestors*, every one is apt to perswade himself, that there is nothing which may not be attempted, and effected by endeavour and manly courage.

As touching civil Vertues or Faculties (to wit, *Justice*, *Gravity*, *knowledge in the Laws*, and the like) they being Qualifications in order to *Magistracy*, and *Offices of Trust* and *Credit*, and rewardable by the advantages, estimation, and authority accruing thereby; come not directly within the limits of our present discourse.

Honor the reward of military Vertue.

b *Epist.* 120.

c *Ethic. l.* 1.

d *De situ Orbis.*

Vertue (in the opinion of [b] *Phaleris*,) *is alone excellent, and all other things but meerly Fortune. Its reward and end* (saith [c] *Aristotle*) *is something excellently good, divine and blessed*, according to that of [d] *Dionysius Afer*, Vertue *immortal honor ever gains.* But the proper Reward of military *Vertue* (which comprehends both Fortitude and Conduct, and of which we only treat) is *Honor:*

c *Arist. Ethica. l.* 4.

[c] Honor *is the greatest of exterior goods*, and being the object of a nobler ambition, than Wealth or Profit, is therefore the aim of that Vertue, to wit *Valour*, which springs from a more generous Spirit. For all men of Courage (nay even the Pusillanimous themselves) are in some sort, touchr with a sense and desire of Glory and Fame.

So that (as is already intimated) of all vertuous Acts, *military Prowess*, and *valiant Atchievements*, have rendred men capable of the highest *Honors* and *Advancements*: they being principally invited, by the allurements of such Rewards, to make the greater discoveries of their *Vertue* and *Fortitude*, in the performance of noble Exploits.

But that *Fame* might not lose it self, in a general and unbounded Notion, therefore at length it was thought fit, to reduce *Honor* into Form and Order, by investing the Person meriting with some particular term, title, or appellation of *Excellence*; and this is the very source and original of all *Nobility*, and of all those *Dignities* and honourable *Titles*, which being transmitted from the first Atchievers to their Successors, through several Ages, remain at this day in their posterity, as lasting Monuments of the glory of their Ancestors. Among which, *Knighthood*, as it hath been esteemed the *Reward* most suitable to worthy and great *Vertue*, so hath it been accounted the chief and primary *Honor* among many Nations.

Vertue and Honor deified by the Romans, who built them Temples.

g *Liv. l.* 27. *c.* 27. *edit. Francof. ad Mæn.* 1628.

The *Romans* had so great an esteem of *Honor* and *Vertue*, that they deified them, and dedicated *Temples* to their Worship; the chief and principal was that which [g] *Marcellus* vowed to erect, when he was at *Clastidium*, in the *Gaulick* War: (and afterwards built, with the [h] spoils he got in the Wars of *Sicilie*) but the Dedication thereof was hindered by the Priests, who affirmed that one Temple could not be rightly dedicated unto two Deities; and thereupon there was another Chapel built for *Vertue*, and joyned to the fore-end thereof: and albeit *Marcellus* hastned the erection, yet he lived not to dedicate the same, nevertheless that was afterwards done by his[i] *Son.*

Vide etiam Plutarch. in vita ipsius Marcelli.

h *Idem Plutarch. in vita præf. Marcel.* i *Guido Panciroll. de* 14 *Reg. Urbis Romæ.* k *Topograph. Romæ, ex Maliano. c.* 73. *&* 133. *Vide porro Joh. Rosin. Antiq. Rom. cap.* 18.

l *Vides Virtutis Templum, vides Honoris, à Marco Marcello renovatum, quod multis ante annis erat bello Ligastico à Quinto Maximo dedicatum.* De Nat. Deor. l. 2. p. 192. edit. Basil. 1534.

m *Pinus & Attius Priscus, qui Honoris & Virtutis ædes Imperatori Vespasiano Augusto restituenti pinxerunt.* Plin. l. 35. c. 10. sub fine.

This Temple stood neer to the Gate [k] *Capena*, upon the *Appian* way, and was rather according to [l] *Cicero*, but renewed or re-edified by *Marcellus* (as his was by the Emperour [m] *Vespasian*) for that many years before, it had been dedicated by *Q. Maximus.*

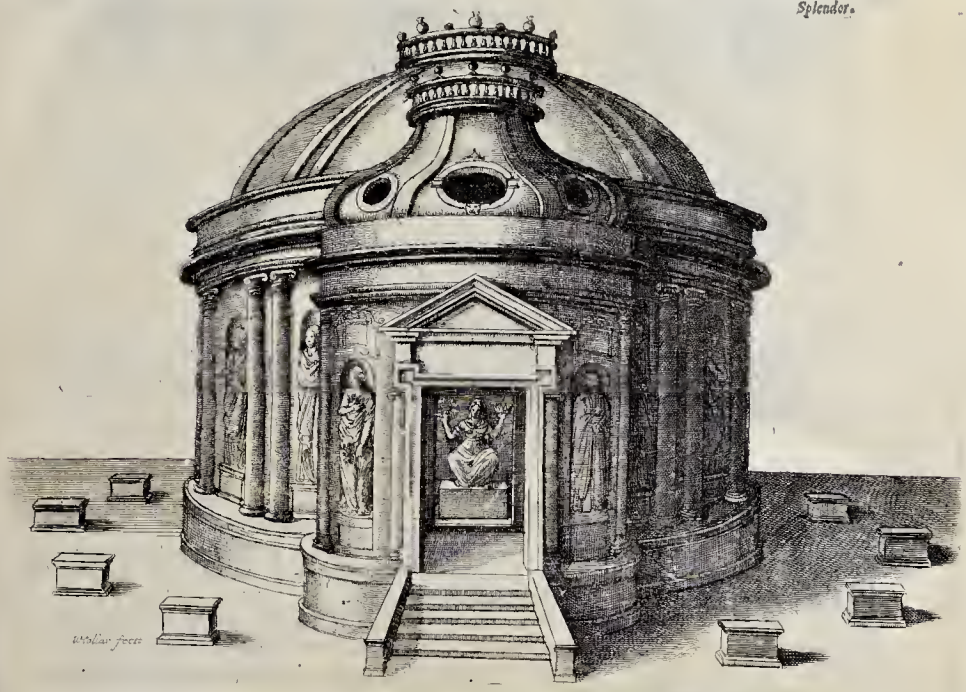
In this structure, the Temple of *Vertue* was contiguous to that of *Honor*, and so situate, that there was no other passage thereunto, but through the Temple of *Vertue*: thereby mystically shewing and admonishing, That *Honor* was not to be attained by any other ways then by *Vertue*; That *Vertue* was as the Guardian of

of *Honor*; and those that undertook any notable Action, [n] unless they carried themselves valiantly, and squared their actions by the Rule of *Vertue*, could make no entrance into future *Honor*.

[n] *Neminem honoris Templum ingredi posse, nisi prius virtutis esset ingressus.* August. de civit. Dei.

And because the Structure of this Temple, and the order of the Buildings may be beheld, we shall here exhibit a Prospect thereof, as it is set forth by [o] *Jacobus Laurus*.

[o] *Antiq. Urbis Splendor.*



There was another Temple built to *Honor*, without the Gate [p] *Collina* (which according to [q] some was called also *Salaria*) and the reason of its Dedication there, was (as *Cicero* tells us) the finding of a Plate of Metall in that place, bearing this Inscription,

[p] *Cic. l. 2. de Legib. p. 288.*

[q] *Top. Rom. Marlian cap. 130. & Alex. Donat. de Urbe Roma, lib. 3. p. 67.*

DOMINA HONORIS.

About an hundred years after the death of *Marcellus*, *C. Marius* consecrated a little Chappel to *Honor* and *Vertue*, as appears by this following Inscription,

[r] C. MARIVS C. F. COS. VII.
PR. TR. PL. Q. AVGVR, &c.
DE MANVBIEIS CIMBRICEIS ET TEVTONICEIS AEDEM HONORI ET VIRTVTI VICTOR FECIT VESTE TRIVMPHALI CALCEIS PVNICIEIS.....

[r] *Videsis Inscript. 3 apud Jan. Grut. p. 436.*

The Symmetry and Proportion of the Columes, and what they supported, were perfected by *C. Mucius*, as [s] *Vitruvius* informs us, and that according to the exact Rules of Architecture; Moreover it was adorned within and without with Images, most artificial for Sculpture, and beautiful for Painting; [t] but the place where this Chappel was erected, is not now certainly known.

[s] *Lib. 7.*

[t] *Alex. Donat. de Urbe Roma, l. 3. p. 256.*

How *Honor* and *Vertue* were represented by the *Romans*, and after what manner their *Images* (set up in their *Temples*) were designed and fashioned, may be seen in some of their *Coyns*, the Ectyps of a few we have placed here, from that large and choice Collection, now in the Cabinet of His *Majesty*, the present *Soveraign* of the most noble Order of the *Garter*: the first represents the heads of *Honor* and *Vertue*:

Their Images variously represented.

tue : where *Honor* is set forth with a youthful face, crowned with Laurel, having long and curled hair : *Vertue*, wearing an Helmet, but without any attire, or other ornament.

The Face of *Honor* so shadoweth that of *Vertue*, that but a little of it appears ; and this is observed to have been, not without good reason so designed, inasmuch as [u] *Honor is the more illustrious of the two, and where we behold any person outwardly adorned with Honor, we are to judge him inwardly indued with Vertue : forasmuch as Honor is his due, and justly bestowed upon him.*

Such another representation of the heads of these *Deities*, may be found in [w] *Hubertus Goltzius* ; and not unlike, but it was upon this account, that *Postumus*, [II] one of the Tyrants in *Gallienus* his Reign, placed her head behind his own.

In the Reverse of the first of these, we see the figures of *Italy* and *Rome* drawn at full length ; that which represents *Italy*, seems to deliver a *Cornucopiæ* (the Emblem of her Wealth) into the hands of *Rome*, in acknowledgment of the Peace she thence enjoyed ; and *Rome*, setting her right foot on the Globe of the World, which she had, or hoped to overcome.

In a Coyn, relating to the Emperour *Galba*, [III] *Honor* is exhibited with an *Hasta pura* (which was a [x] Spear-staff not armed with Iron) in one hand, and in the other a *Cornucopiæ* ; and is in the same manner set forth by the Emperour [y] *Aurelius Antoninus*.

But because the *Romans* placed their chiefest glory in *military Vertue* ; *Vertue* is designed in the Reverse like an *Amazon*, wearing an [z] Helmet, and her Vest [a] girded about her ; having an *Hasta pura* in her left hand, a *Parazone*, or short Sword in her right, and booted according to the military manner ; in which posture and habit, she is likewise represented in some Coyns of [b] *Hadrianus*, *Antoninus Pius*, and *Severus*.

In a Coyn referring to [c] *Titus*, *Honor* is set forth after the manner in that of *Galba* ; yet not with a youthful, but a bearded face. How at other times represented, appears among the Coyns of *Antoninus Pius* [IV] being there vested, both in a *Toga* and *Tunica*, and holding a Laurel-branch : but in those of [d] *Aurelius Antoninus*, exhibited sometimes with an *Hasta pura*, at other times with a *Laurel*.

Galba, we see, joyned *Honor* and *Vertue* together in one Reverse ; to shew that by [e] *Vertue* he gained his Honors and Imperial Command ; the like did [f] *Vitellius*.

u *Ant. August. Antiq. Roman. Dialog.* 11. p. 36. *Edit. Antuerp. anno* 1653.
w *Tom.* 1. p. 221. *num.* 3.
x *Teste Servio ad* 6 *Æneid.*
y *Tab.* 45. *Nummi Ducis Croyiaci & Arschot, num.* 14. *edit. Antuerp. anno* 1654.
z *Virtus fortitudinem roborq, designet.*
a *Solet virtutis simulacrum depingi succinctum* Lucat. ad 10 Thebaid.
b *Croyiac. Numis. Tab.* 37. *num.* 22.
c *Idem Tab* 28. *num.* 5.
d *Croyiaca Numis. Tab.* 45. *num.* 13. *&* 14.
e *Comment super Tab. Num. Duc. Croyiaci.* p. 28.
f *Æneas Vic. in Ære Vitell.* 11.

lius. So [g] *Galerius Maximianus* seems to expreſs the attaining of his greatneſs, by a compact and agreement (as it were) with *Vertue*, which he ſignified by joyning his hands with hers.

g *Crojiaca Numiſ. Tab. 64. num. 20.*

Some other difference hath been now and then put in the repreſentation of *Vertue*, as may be obſerved in the Ectyps above; for in one of *Galba's* Coyns [V] ſhe is found ſtanding, holding a Parazone, and a little Victory. The ſame is done in a Coyn of [h] *Severus*, where ſhe is only differenced by a ſitting poſture.

h *Videſis Hiſtor. Auguſt. illuſtr. per Fr. Angelon. p. 243.*

But *Commodus* [VI] thought fit to arm her compleatly, bearing a little Victory in her right hand, and holding a Spear and Shield in her left; the like did *Severus*, *Caracalla*, and *Valerianus*. Yet ſometimes the Shield was omitted [VII] and the little Victory changed for a Laurel-branch: for ſo ſhe appears in the Coyns of *Gordianus tertius* [IX] *Philippus Arabs*, *Trajanus Decius*, *Tetricus*, and *Claudius Gothicus*.

In the laſt place, *Vertue* is now and then ſeen armed, as before, holding only a Spear and a Shield; as in the Coyns of *Alexander Severus*, [VIII] and many others. And all of them by theſe Symbolical deviees, pointing at the *military Vertue*, not only of that moſt accompliſht and famous *Roman Nation*, but of the *Emperours* themſelves.

SECT. II.

Of the Antiquity of Knighthood.

Knighthood among the *Greeks*.

IN traeing out the beginning and original of *Knighthood*, though we are not ſo vain, as to offer at the deriving this degree or order from before the Creation, and ſay, that Saint *Michael* the Archangel is *primier Chevalier*, being ſo ſtyled in the Preamble to the Statutes of the Order of *Monſieur Saint Michael*; or *Primier Chevalier de l'ordre de Paradis*, as he is called in the [i] Inſtrument of Election of our King *Henry* the Eighth, into the ſaid Order of *Saint Michael*, by the *French* King *Francis* the firſt: Yet may we very well affirm, *Knighthood* to be neer as ancient as *Valour* and *Heroick Vertue*; albeit the Ceremonies and Circumſtances thereof, have been much varied and transformed in ſeveral Ages, and among the ſeveral Nations, where this Dignity hath at any time flouriſhed. And therefore with much probability, and ſome juſtice, may we derive the Original of *military Honor*, whence moſt of our *Europeans* account it their greateſt honor to derive their Original, namely, from *Troy*.

i *Penes Cameraar. Scaccarii.*

For of how great renown its *Knights* were of old, namely, *Hector*, *Troilus*, *Æneas*, *Antenor*, with many others, for their Knightly deeds; and how great glory they acquired by their *military Vertue*, may be ſufficiently learnt from thoſe things, which are recorded in the Hiſtories of them.

So among the *Greeks*, *Agamemnon*, *Menelaus*, *Peleus*, *Hercules*, *Diomedes*, *Telamon*, *Ulyſſes*, *Patroclus*, and ſeveral others, were ſuch, as left behind them, an everlaſting Memorial of their Knightly actions; to inflame the young Nobility that was growing up, by the examples of *Achilles*, and themſelves, to the imitation and purſuit of their vertues and valiant enterpriſes.

But leſt this may be thought too much to be granted, we ſhall endeavour to ſtrengthen our conjecture, with ſome obſervations out of *Homer*, by whom we often find the word ἱππότης, uſed in the ſame ſenſe, as *Eques* was afterwards among the *Latins*, as will appear in theſe following Verſes of his,

k Τοῖσι δὲ καὶ μετέειπε γερήνιος ἱππότα Νέςωρ.

k *Iliad. β. Catal. 336.*

'Mong whom thus Neſtor *ſpake, that honor'd* Knight.

And

And in many other places of the *Iliads* (almost all, where he speaks of *Nestor*) he mentions him by the same Title; which is as much as if he had said, *Chevalier Nestor*, as in the 108. *Verse* of the Catalogue of the second Book of the *Iliads*, and *Iliad* n *ver.* 170. 181. θ 112. 151. ε 52. 163. κ 128. 157. *&c.*

And that this Title of *Knight* seems to be of more ancient date among the *Grecians*, then the *Trojan* War, may be collected from the same *Homer*, who bestows it on other brave *Heroes*, that lived some time before these Wars began: For in the 135. *Verse* of the aforesaid Catalogue, *Phyleus*, among the rest of the *Greek* Commanders (whom he there reckons up) is thus mentioned,

Φυλείδης ὃν τίκτε Διὶ φίλος ἱππότα Φυλεύς.

Phylides *Son of* Phyleus, *Heav'n-lov'd* Knight.

Likewise to the famous *Tydeus*, King of *Ætolia*, Father of *Diomedes*, he attributes the same Title.

Ἐν γὰρ τοι σήθεσι μένος πατρώιον ἧκα
Ἄτρομον, ὅιον ἔχεσκε σακέσπαλος ἱππότα Τυδεύς.
Thy Father Tydeus, *that stout* Knight, *his fire*
Into thy manly heart I will inspire.

In after-times the *Grecians* had among them this Degree and Title, considerable both for reputation and dignity.

l *In Gen. Dier. l. 2. c. 29.* m *Ibid.* n *Herod. in Terpsichore.*

l *The Knightly Honor* (saith *Alexander ab Alexandro*) *always excelled among the* Achaians, *as being the chiefest charge. Those of* m Crete *also had it in great esteem, as the most principal among them, for its antiquity and dignity.* n *Herodotus* tells us, *that among the* Chalcedonians (as after among the *Romans*) *Wealth was so much regarded, that those who were rich, bore the title of* Ἱπποβάται, *i. e.* Equites. And as a testimony, that the ambition of the Equestrian Name was very ancient, o *Hermannus Hugo* saith, *the* Lacedemonians *constituted a second Order of* Knights, *and that the same* Lacedemonians *had an* p *Order of* Knights, *who had no Horses.* Not much unlike some of the *Equestrian Order*, in succeeding times, among the *Romans*, who were only honor'd with gold Rings, but not with a publick Horse, until they actually entred into military Service.

o *De Milit. Equestri, lib. 5. c. 1. in principio.* p *Ex Strabone, lib. 10.*

SECT. III.

Of the Foundation of the Equestrian Order *among the* Romans.

Institution of the Celeres, whence sprung the Equestrian Order. q *Lib. 1. edit. Franc. ad Mænum. 1628.*

BUt to raise the Structure of *Knighthood* upon a more substantial Foundation, we shall with greater certainty descend to the *Romans*; among whom we find, there was from the very infancy of their military glory, an instituted *Body* and *Society* of *Knights*, consisting of a select number; and this is recorded by q *Livy*, who (speaking of the time immediately after the *Romans* and *Sabins* were united under one Common-wealth) saith, *that then there were inrolled* Centuriæ tres Equitum, *three Centuries of Knights.*

This inrollment was ordained by *Romulus*, and did follow soon after his division of the City into three *Tribes*; and the Institution consisted of three hundred in number; for each *Tribe* was divided into r ten parts, which were called *Curiæ*, and every *Decuria* set forth ten *Knights*; so that in every *Tribe* there were ten *Decuriæ*, or one hundred *Knights*. Moreover, each of these *Centuries* were particularly distinguished by several Titles; one being called s *Rammenses*, another *Tatienses*, and the third *Luceres*.

r *Claud. Salmas. de re militi Rom. c. 20. p. 230. Videsis Rosin. Antiq. Rom. l. 10. c. 5.* s *Livy loco citato.*

A little after, *Livy* (speaking of *Romulus*) tells us, t *that he appointed these three hundred to attend him as a Life-guard, both in Peace and War, and called them* Celeres;

t *Idem, lib. 1. c. 15.*

leres; and so called (as some write) [u] *à celeritate*, from their active and dextrous dispatch in martial affairs. But *Claudius Salmasius* derives *Celeres* from the Greek word κέλης, which (saith he) among the *Æolians* signifies a *Horse*; and from a *Horse*, did the ancient *Romans* derive the Title of *Eques*; of which more anon. Hereupon, not only those of *Romulus* his institution are by *Livy* called *Equites* (as is before noted) but when he speaks of the addition which *Tarquinius Priscus* made to those three Centuries, he again calls them [w] *Centuriæ Equitum*; and to the twelve Centuries, listed afterwards by *Servius Tullus*, doth he afford the [x] same Title, making frequent use of it, in divers other places, as their common appellation.

u *Plutarch. in vita Romuli. Videsis Dion. Halicarnass. l.2. p 86. Edit. Francof. anno 1586.*

w *Livy l.1. c.36.*

x *Ibid. c.44.*

And because the *Celeres* or *Equites* were at first appointed [y] to attend *Romulus* through the City (in the quality aforesaid) armed with Javelins and Spears, are therefore (in the esteem of [z] some) placed within the degree of service, and consequently thought inferiour to the *Equestrian Order*; we shall here (to remove this mistake) note, That in their Election, not only Courage and personal Valour was required, but Nobleness of Extraction no less regarded; they being also such as were descended from the best Families in *Rome*: and this is fully testified by *Dionysius Halicarnasseus*. [a] *Romulus* (saith he) *chose three hundred stout and personable men out of the chiefest Families*, or (in the words of [b] *Livy*) *ex primoribus Civitatis*.

y *Halicarnass. eod. lib. & loco cit.*

z *Tho. Godwin, Romanæ Historiæ Anthologia, p. 28.*

a *Lib. 2 p. 86.*

b *Lib. 1. c. 43.*

Within a short time after the Institution of the *Celeres*, *Servius Tullus* ordained, that those who did succeed in that Body, should be elected *ex Censu*; to wit, from a considerable and certain valuation of their Estates, entred in the *Censors* Book, called the *Equestrian Cense*.

This is confirmed by *Dionysius* (*ex Pisone in primo Annalium*) [c] *Servius* (saith he) *chose the number of* Knights *out of the Citizens who had the greatest Cense, and were of the most noble Families*.

c *Lib. 4. p. 222.*

Wherefore it cannot be denied, that *Eques* was at this time (which was even in the infancy of the City) a Title, not only of Dignity, but also that the *Equites* were then chosen from among those *Romans*, eminent both for Nobleness of Extraction and Estate; Neither were more considerable Qualifications required of any, who were admitted into the *Equestrian Order*, in the following times.

The *Roman State* was at first constituted (as at this day is the *Venetian*) of [d] two degrees only, namely, *Patritians* and *Plebeians*: For neither the three Centuries, instituted by *Romulus*, nor their increased number, appointed by *Tarquinius Priscus*, nor those chosen by *Servius Tullus* from the *Cense*, and added to the former, were moulded into a peculiar degree, while *Rome* was governed by *Kings*; but soon after the *Equestrian Order* began to be formed, and constituted one of the three Orders in the *Common-wealth*: the *Celeres* then in being, were the very persons of whom was composed and made up the Body of that Society, which then, & thenceforward, was called *Ordo Equester* or *Equestris*, (for both words are found to be indifferently used among the *Ancients*) from whence it appears, that the Original and Foundation of the *Equestrian Order*, is plainly deducible from (if not the same with) the *Celeres*, since all the alteration lay, not in dissolving and taking away, but in making them known by a new Title. Nay so little, or no difference, is put by *Salmasius* between those of *Romulus* his *Institution*, and the *Equestrian Order*, that speaking of the *Celeres*, he saith, [e] *The whole* Equestrian Order *did then consist in them*: and *Rosinus* having shewn, that the *Ordo Equestris* was ranked in the second of the three degrees, positively affirms, [f] *That in this division those three hundred are to be understood, who had been elected by* Romulus, *and whom he called* Celeres.

d *Rosin. Antiq. Rom. l.1. c.17.*

e *De Re Mil. Rom. c. 20. p. 236.*

f *Antiq. Rom. l. 1. c. 17.*

And now, to the end the *Reader* may take a short prospect into the Glory of this *Equestrian Order*, (indeed the flower of the *Roman* Chivalry) together with some other Dignities annexed unto that *Degree*, we shall first observe,

That the *Roman Citizens*, being thus distributed into three degrees, are ranked by [a] *Livy* in this Order, *Senatus*, *Equester Ordo*, & *Plebs*: *Alexander ab Alexandro* (from [b] *Appianus*) placeth also the *Equites* in the [c] middle, between the *Senators* and

The Equestrian Order was the middle Degree.

a *Lib. 26. c. 36.* b *Lib. 2. Bell. Civil.* c *Gen. Dier. l. 2. c. 29.*

Plebeians:

Plebeians: and this is further confirmed by that most noted *Elogie*, [d] *Consensu Senatûs, & Equestris Ordinis, Populiq; Romani*, which among the *Roman* literal Notes by [e] *Valerius Probus*, is set down after this manner, CON. SEN. E. ORD. P.Q.R. Agreeable hereunto is that of *Cicero*, [f] *The* Knights *are next in dignity to the Senatorian Order*: The same is affirmed by [g] *Pliny*, and divers [h] others.

And forasmuch as this degree was placed between the *Patritians* or *Senators*, and the *Plebeians* or *Common-people*, therein it is resembled by the *Knightly* degree at this day with us, which is ranked between the *Nobility* and *Commonalty*.

But though the *Equestrian Order* (ranked as before) was somewhat inferiour to that of the Senate, [i] *yet had it the esteem of great authority and power, forasmuch as it was invested with most ample Honors, and almost equal to the Senatorian degree*. And [k] from this *Order* to the height of *Nobility* (which resided in the *Senators*) was the way prepared: Hence, being the usual removal, to the *Ordo Senatorius*, ([l] *Junius Brutus* being the first who supplied the *Senate* from the *Equestrian Order*) and upon this ground, the Emperour *Alexander Severus* (as [m] *Lampridius* reports) did call this Degree, *The Seminary or Nursery of Senators*, so did * *Perseus* King of *Macedon* long before; and for the very same reason, may we further parallel it with that of *Knighthood* among us in *England*, which is the next in dignity to the *Baronage*, and generally persons of their rank and quality are made choice of to ascend unto that Honor.

It was a Constitution as ancient as the Reign of *Tiberius* the Emperour, that no man should be admitted into the *Equestrian Order*, nor have given unto him the right of a *Gold Ring*, [n] *unless he was free-born, or a Gentleman, and his Father and Grandfather had been so*: and indeed for a long time none were elected *Knights*, but the best sort of Gentlemen, and Persons of noble, nay sometimes Kingly Extraction, as was the illustrious [o] *Mecænas*, concerning whom * *Vell. Paterculus* gives this Character; *That he aspired no higher than the* Equestrian Order, *not out of an incapacity of attaining greater matters, but that he desired them not.*

Yet at length, through the corruption of times, *Plebeians* and *Freed-men* were too frequently received into this Degree; the *Equestrian Cense* alone, to wit, their attaining to such a degree of Wealth, as reached the valuation of a *Knight*, was that which gained them this Honor, which *Salmasius* thus affirms (in his Exposition of a piece of *Polybius*) [p] *Whomsoever the Censor did elect into the* Equestrian Order, *he considered nothing in him but the Equestrian Cense*; which for the general, will likewise find but too near a parallel among the *Knights* of this Age.

To add to the lustre of the *Equestrian Order*, let us next consider, that the civil affairs of the *Roman Common-wealth* were sometimes put under their management, and the chiefest of the *Knights* made *Judges*: which *Cicero* thus confirms: [q] *Before the* Knights, Judges *at* Rome, *the Causes were pleaded and debated*. And what esteem was generally set upon their uprightness and justice, *Turnebus* sets forth, who explicating some Pieces of *Cicero* (wherein several of their excellent Judgments are reported) saith, [r] *There was then a great opinion of the Vertue of the Roman* Knights, *from the integrity of their Judgments*. Nor was there any other cause (as *Budæus* notes) wherefore they were called *Judges*, [s] *Then that the Decuriæ of the Judges were chosen from amongst those of the* Equestrian Order.

And though (by assuming this additional dignity) they bore the Title of *Judges*, and not of *Knights*; (for in those times, [t] *The Title of* Knights *continued appropriate to the Troops of those who served with Publick Horses*) yet nevertheless, without all doubt (saith *Alexander ab Alexandro*) [u] *The Judges continued still of the* Equestrian Order, *and were reckoned among the* Knights: for that they used the *Gold Ring* as *Knights*, and had the same *Ensigns* of *Honor*, and executed the said *Offices*: Though it was otherwise, where a *Knight* was elected into the *Senate*, [w] for then (having assumed the Name of the more noble Order) the Title of his former degree was extinguished, albeit he still retained the *Ensigns* thereof.

* *Gracchus* (Brother to *Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus*) being Tribune of the *Commons*, and studying how to curry favour with the People, concluded it would

d *Rosinus, l. 1. c. 17.*
e *De Interpret. Rom. Literis.*
f *Pro Cluent.*
g *Lib. 33. c. 1. in fine.*
h *Tiraquel. de Nobilit. c. 37. num. 163. Salmuth. notis Guid. Pancirol. l. 1. p. 271.*
i *Alex ab Alex. Gen. Dier. l. 2. c. 29.*
k *Salmas. de Re mil. Rom. c. 20 p. 227.*
l *Livy l. 2. c. 1.*
m *In vita ipsius Severi, c. 20*
* *Equites enim illa Principes Juventutis, Equites seminarium Senatum, inde lectos in Patrum numerum Consules, inde Imperatores creant, Liv. l. 42. c. 61.*
n *Alex. ab Alexandro loc. cit. Plin. lib. 33. c. 2. in princ.*
o *Mecænas atavis regibus ortus Eques, Mart. lib. 12. Epgr. 4. Mecænas Eques Hetrusco de sanguine Regum, Propert. lib. 3. Eleg. 8.*
* *Lib. 2. c. 88.*
p *De Re Mil. Rom c. 21. p. 240.*
The Knights were Judges at Rome, and Presidents abroad.
q *Secundo de Oratore.*
r *Turneb. in Comment. in Orationem Cicer. pro Caio Rabirio, p. 11.*
s *Ad L. ult. F. de Senatoribus.*
t *Plin. lib. 33. c. 1. sub finem.*
u *Gen. Dier. l. 2. c. 29.*
w *Ambr. Calepin. verbo Eques.*
x *Flor. Epitom.*

would best be brought about, by abating or clipping the authority of the *Senate*: He thereupon preferred (amongst others) a *Law*, that [y] *six hundred should be chosen out of the* Equestrian Order, *into the Senate* (which then consisted but of three hundred) [z] *out of design to make the Votes of the* Knights *double to those of the Senators*; by which means, he [a] took away from the *Senate* their authority of sitting in judgment, and appropriated it to the *Equestrian Order*. But [b] *Florus* notes withal, that this proved a means to corrupt the *Knights*; between whom and the *Senate*, there was at that time a good correspondence.

For it seems, those who were hereupon chosen into the *Senate*, did so misbehave themselves in the execution of their powers, at least, so kept under the *Senators* authority, that they gave very great distast unto them; insomuch, as not long after by the [c] assistance of *M. Lucius Drusus*, then Tribune of the *People*, their former prerogative was again translated, from the *Equestrian Order*, to themselves; for he made *Legem Judiciariam*, whereby not only an [d] equal number of Judges should be elected, out of both *Orders*; but that [e] all Judgments should pass, indifferently and equally, by the *Senate* and *Equestrian Order*. Hereupon the power of the *Knights* grew less and less, until it shrunk to nothing; so that at length, the *Judges* places which they before had executed, became conferrable upon the *Publicans*.

But half a Century of years pass'd not, e're [f] *M. Cicero* when *Consul* (which was *Anno ab Urbe Condita* 690) *re-established the* Equestrian Order, *and reconciled the Senate to it*. And [h] from hence [i] the *Knights* were (a second time) *established the third degree in* Rome, *and all Acts passed in the name of the Senate, the People of* Rome, *and the* Equestrian Order; the same *Pliny* giving the reason why the *Knights* were then so placed after the *People*, in all publick instruments, [k] *because they were last of all incorporated into the body of the Common-wealth.*

As to the Dignities and Honors the *Ordo Equestris* enjoyed abroad, we find, that many *Provinces* were governed [m] *by some of the* Equestrian Order *alone, instead of Presidents*; for in *Cappadocia*, *Egypt*, and other *Countries*, those of the *Equestrian Order* did for a long time rule; among whom *Egypt* had this peculiar, and proper to it self, that none of the *Senators* were admitted to be her Presidents, [n] *but only those of the* Equestrian Order. Whose Decrees *Augustus* commanded to be had in like esteem, [o] *as if the Magistrates of* Rome, *or Kings, or Consuls, or Prætors, had pronounced them.*

As a note of Eminence, to their Names and Honors, they had the Titles of *Splendidi* and *Illustres*, bestowed upon them; both which are equivalent to that of *Nobiles*. For [p] *Oppius* calls them *Splendidi, & Illustres*. *Tacitus* describing the affairs of *Claudius*, stiles them also *Illustres*. *Pliny* gives them the Title of [q] *Splendidi*, and so doth [r] *Cicero*. There is an inscription neer *Præneste* which puts it in the superlative, for so *Scaliger* reads it, in his Index to *Janus Gruterus Inscriptions*.

[s] A. MUNIO. A. F.
MIN. EVARISTO.
SPL. EQ. R. PAT. COL.
OMNIBUS. HONOR.
NITIDE. FUNCTO. &c.

And in the Oration of *Caius Claudius* the *Consul*, touching a Sedition raised by *Cæso Quintius*, they are called [t] *most sacred Knights*.

But besides other priviledges belonging to the *Equestrian Order*, whereby it was advanced above the *Plebeian*, there is yet this one to be here remembred, to wit, that of their *Seats* in the *Theatre*.

Of this priviledge, the chiefest Author is thought to be *Julius Cæsar*, or *Augustus*; that Law being called *Julia*. But it is more probably affirmed by others, that long before them, [u] *L. Roscius, being Tribune of the People, brought in a law, that the fourteen next seats* (i. e. next to those of the *Senators*) *should be assigned to the* Roman Knights; which is further confirmed by [w] *Cicero* who calls it *Roscian Law*. And yet far more ancient is it (even in the reign of *Tarquinius Priscus*) that [x] *Livy* assigns them *Seats* with the *Senators*, in the *Circus Maximus*, and

[y] *Flor. Epit. Hist. Rom. l. 60.* [z] *vide etiam Plin. l. 33. c. 2. circa finem.* [a] *Godwin. Anthologia p. 236. ex Curio in Orat. pro Scauro.* [b] *In Cap. præd.*

[c] *Flor. Epitomi. l. 70.*

[d] *Godwin. Anthol. p. 237. ex Cicero. de Orat. 71.* [e] *Flor. Epit. lib. 71.*

[f] *Plin. l. 33. c. 2.* [g] *Fastor. Rom. l. 1 sub finem.* [h] [i] [k] *Idem Plin.*

[m] *Alex. ab Alex Gen. Dierl. 2. c. 29.*

[n] *Ibid.* [o] *Ib.*

They were called *Splendid* and *Illustrious*.
[p] *De Bellis Civil*
[q] *Lib. Epistola. 5. Epist. 1. & l. Epist. 6. Epist. 25.*
[r] *L. 2. De Finibus.*
[s] *Vid. Inscript. Antiq. Urbis Rom. per Jan. Gruter. p. 440. num. 1.*

[t] Ευαγεσάτων ἱππέων. *Dion. Halicarnas. l. 10 p. 638*
And had seats in the *Theatre*.

[u] *Flor. Epit. l. 99.*
[w] *Philipp. 2.*
[x] *L. 1. c. 35.*

for the very same use and end; namely, to sit and view the Plays and Shews there exhibited.

They had a Colledge.

As an Honor to their Society, the *Roman Knights* had a *Colledge* belonging to them, called *Collegium Equitum*; as it appears by an Altar of Stone at *Coloigne* in *Germany*, which one of their *Order*, who bore the title of *Moderator* of that *Colledge* (as *Scaliger* reads it) had dedicated to *Hercules*, and thus inscribed.

[y] *Jan. Gruter. Inscr. Rom. p. 44. num. 1.*

[y] HERCULI
IANVARINIVS
MODERAT. COL.
EQVITVM. D. D.

And Temples dedicated to the *Equestrian Fortune*

We find that in several places there were *Temples* dedicated to the Goddess *Fortunæ*, under the Title of this Order, *viz. Equestri Fortunæ.*

[z] *Alex. ab Alex. Gen. Dier. l. 1. c. 13.*

That anciently at *Rome*, was erected [z] *neer the Marble Theatre*: but it seems to have been decayed, or at least not visited, in *Tiberius* his days: for *Tacitus* taking notice of a Present, which the *Roman Knights* had vowed to the *Equestrian Fortune*, for the health of the Empress, saith, [a] *Although there were many Temples dedicated to that Goddess in* Rome, *nevertheless there was none which bore that Name; but there was one found at* Antium *so called, where she was worshipped under that Title.*

[a] *Annal. l. 3. sub finem.*

[b] *Lib. 42. c. 3. Anno V. c. 578.*

[b] *Livy* also makes mention of another *Temple*, consecrated to the *Equestrian Fortune* by *Fulvius Flaccus*, *Proconsul* in *Spain*: because through the extraordinary Valor of some of the *Equestrian Order*, under his command, he had obtain'd a memorable Victory over the *Celtiberians.*

Their *Title* preserved by Inscriptions and Coins.

In the last place let us observe, that as it was the great ambition of the *Romans* to make use of all means they could invent, to eternize the glory of their Renown: so in particular did the *Equites* among them, account the Honor of their *Order* worthy remembrance in their publick Marbles; as is most apparent from sundry *Inscriptions* thereupon, to the end that the Honor of their Dignity might not only spread, but happily be transmitted and revived to future Ages, when themselves should be forgotten, or all other Writings perish.

One of which Marbles (though defective in the name of the *Person* to whom it related, yet compleat enough in the memorial of his *Dignities*) remaineth in a private House at *Picenum*, or in modern language *Sinigaglia*, *in la Marca dell' Ancona*, bearing this Inscription.

[c] *Videsis Num. 9. apud Gruter. Inscrip. p. 493.*

[c] P. F.---------A. PRIMOPILO.
SPECTATAE. VIRTVTIS.
EQVESTRIS. ORDINIS. V.
PATRIBVS ET PLEBI GRATO.
OB GRATAM ADOLESCENTIS INDOLEM.
BENE MERITAM SAXVM DEDIT.

By this Inscription it further appears, that this Noble *Person* was not only of the *Equestrian Order*, but also an Officer of principal credit, namely the *Primopilus*, or [d] first *Centurion* or *Captain* of the ten Ensigns among the *Triarii* (who were the chiefest of the four divisions that composed a *Legion*) and indeed, the very last reserve, and refuge of the whole Army; and consequently, that this *Person* was the chief *Captain* of the whole *Legion.*

[d] *Vide Rosin. Antiq. Rom. l. 10. c. 7.*

To this *Officers* charge was committed the principal Ensign called the *Eagle*: and that we may understand the greatness of his trust, he was of the *Generals* Council, and, as may be collected from a passage out of [e] *Livy*, equal, if not of higher Dignity, than the *Tribune*, though otherwise the *Centurion* or *Captain* was subordinate to him.

[e] *P. Salonius alternis prope annis & Tribunus militum, & primus Centurionat, quem nunc Primopili appellant. l. 7. c. 41.*

Another *Inscription*, we conceive, may not improperly be inserted here, which is to be seen at *Rome*, in the *Flaminian way*, and is as followeth.

M. VA-

[f] M. VALERIO. M. F. PAL.
AMERIMNIANO.
VIXIT ANNIS XVII. MENSIB.
VIII. DIEBVS DVOBVS. HOR. X.
M. VALERIVS. M. F.
AMERIMNVS.
PATER INFELICISSIMVS.
FILIO SANCTISSIMO ET PIENTISSIMO FECIT.
NATVS EQVES ROMANVS IN VICO IVGARIO.

[f] *Inscript. Grut. p. 478.*

What is herein observable to our purpose, is only out of the words *Natus Eques Romanus*, which tells us, that this young *M. Valerius*, for whom the Inscription was made, was born a *Roman Knight*.

And to give light to this phrase, give us leave to borrow the assistance of [g] *Calepine* (being next at hand) who notes, that the *Romans* did call those, who were advanced to the *Equestrian Dignity*, or were descended from some of the *Equestrian Order*, *Knights*. And lest this be not cleer enough spoken by him, or that the words need further explication, he (in the same place) tells us, that the *Latine Writers*, in relation to the *Knightly Dignity*, used three kinds of speech, *viz.* (1.) *Eques* [for a *Knight*.] (2.) *Equestris Ordo* [for one of the *Equestrian Order*.] (3.) *Equestri loco natus* [for one born or descended from an *Equestrian Family*.] which, whether they do signifie the same, or whether they differ, and how far, we (saith he) must consider.

[g] *Verbo Eques.*

For the first, whosoever is called a *Knight*, the same is, and is called one of the *Equestrian Order*; and contrariwise, whosoever is, and is said to be of the *Equestrian Order*, is, and is said to be a *Knight*. But if a *Knight* is born from a Father, being a *Knight*, and who never was a *Senator*, such a one is said to be of *Equestrian extraction*: but if the same *Knight* be born of a Father that is a *Senator*, he is a *Knight* indeed, but not extracted from an *Equestrian Family*.

Idem habet *Manutius* inter Comment. *Salustii*, his verbis. *Differunt Eques, Equestris Ordinis, & Equestri loco natus. Eques & Equestris Ordinis, idem sunt, quod si Eques patre natus est qui nunquam Senator fuit, Equestri loco natus est; sin natus est Senatore, Equestri loco non recte natus dicitur.*

And hence it is evident, that *M. Valerius* the Father (who caused this *Epitaph* to be inscribed) was then no *Senator*, but a *Knight*, and of the *Equestrian Order*, though not noted with that Title in the Inscription; and consequently, that his Son *Valerius* might therefore justly be said to be *Natus Eques Romanus*. For when once a man was admitted into the *Equestrian Dignity*, the appellation of *Eques* belonged, and was accustomably given to all his male issue, who kept that Title, until they were advanced into the *Senate*, or degraded for some misdemeanour.

And as in *Marbles*, so in *Coyns*, are there memorials left us, of this ancient *Order*.

[h] *Octavius Strada* exhibits one of *Drusus*, the Son of the Emperor *Tiberius*, by *Agrippina*; on the one side is the Effigies of this *Drusus*, thus circumscrib'd, NERONI CLAVDIO DRVSO GERM. COS. DESIGNAT. And on the reverse is this Inscription (which takes up all the middle of the Coyn) EQVESTER ORDO PRINCIPI JVVENTVTIS. From whence we learn, that the body of the *Equestrian Order* did at this time offer their service to *Drusus*; he having then obtained the appellation of *Princeps Juventutis*.

[h] *De Vitis Imperat. pag. 25.*

(i) *Adolphus Occo* sets forth two Coyns, the one of Gold, the other of Silver, both which are in all particulars the same with this already discourse of, and inserts them among those belonging to the Emperor *Nero*; and so doth *Hubertus Goltzius* in his [k] *Thesaurus*.

[i] *Imper. Rom. Numism. p. 118.*

[k] *Sub nomine Neronis.*

We doubt that *Strada* hath misplaced that Coyn above-mentioned, in regard we meet with no Inscriptions upon Coyns, or other publick Monuments, either in *Occo*, *Goltzius*, *Angelonus*, or elsewhere, that gives to *Drusus* the Son of *Tiberius*, any other Name or Title, than *Drusus Cæsar Tiberii Augusti Filius*; but to *Nero* (before he was made *Emperor*) the names of *Nero Claudius Drusus Germanicus*, are frequently attributed.

'Tis true, the very same names of *Nero Claudius Germanicus* are all stamped upon the Coyns of *Drusus*, Brother of *Tiberius* the Emperor; but there the Head is crowned with[l] Laurel, which *Drusus* the Son of *Tiberius* wanted, and the Face made older in all places, than that set forth by *Oct. Strada*, (which indeed is a perfect juvenile Effigies) nor hath this *Drusus* the Brother of *Tiberius*, the Title of *Princeps juventutis*, any where given to him, but that of *Imperator* only, added at the end of his Names.

[l] *Vid. Numism. Imp. Rom. Caroli Ducis Croyiaci & Arschot. Tab. 17. Num. 17. vide etiam Numis. ejusdem ducis Croyiaci per Hemelar. edit. Antwerp. 1627. Tab. 4. Num. 8.*

[m] Besides these, we are beholding to *Occo*, for the description, and to[n] *Fr. Angelonus*, for the Ectyp of another Coyn, appertaining to *Commodus*, the Son of *Marcus Aurelius Antoninus*, on whose Reverse is to be seen the aforementioned Inscription, *viz.* EQVESTER ORDO PRINCIPI IVVENTVT. it being stamped when *Commodus* had the like address made to him from the *Equestrian Order*, he having then also attained that attribute of *Princeps juventutis*.

[m] *Imp. Rom. Numis. p. 311.*
[n] *La Historia Aug. p. 217.*

And thus have we let in a glimps of the *Equestrian Order*, established among the *Romans*, with its Dignity and Honors, which for many Ages flourished in great glory and reputation; it being the continual care of that famous Nation, to preserve, partly, the Fame of valiant men to posterity, by the memory of their noble Acts; and partly, to stir up the spirits of the younger sort, to the imitation of their *Virtue*; upon whom the glory of their Ancestors might have such an influence, as to make them eagerly contend for the attainment of a like degree of *Honor*, by proportionate degrees of *Virtue* and *Noble deeds*. All which we have thought requisite to bring in by way of Introduction, to those *Knightly Honors*, that afterwards succeeded in the world.

What we have further to say in this Chapter, shall be to touch upon those degrees of *Knighthood*, which have been personal, and obtained by Creation only, (after such time as the *French Empire* took beginning) and are, or may be comprehended, under the modern Title of *Equites Aurati*, or *Milites simpliees*, (being indeed all of one nature, albeit they received several denominations, from those various Ensigns of Honor, and Ceremonies of Creation, wherewith the *Dignity* hath been in several Ages since particularly bestowed) and as this *Equestrian Dignity* is distinguished from the several *Orders* of *Chevalry* instituted in Christendom, whether they be of greater or less note, who have receeived their Titles as *Knights*, used together with that of their peculiar *Orders*, which differenceth them from those we call *Milites simplices*. In the circumstances of whose Creation, we confess that nothing in the *Ordo Equestris* among the ancient *Romans* hath place, though that might well be the ground and original of the Dignity, and one common end in both; namely, the pursuit of military exploits and service in the Wars.

SECT. IV.

Of the modern Degrees of Knighthood.

Knights girt with the military Belt.

AND first, concerning those whom some call *Monozoni*, that is, *Knights* begirt with the *Military Girdle*; a custom devolved to the *Germans*, and *Gauls*, from ancient time, and from them to later Ages.

Our learned Countryman Sir *Henry Spelman* notes, [o] *That the later Emperors conferr'd the Dignity of Knighthood with the military Girdle, instead of all other Arms; because that part, more eminent amongst them, girdeth, supporteth, and adorneth the rest.* Whence our learned *Selden* calls this girding, [p] *the most essential part of the Ceremony.* Nor do we find, that among the various Ceremonies belonging to *Knighthood*, there have been any (to the later ages) that hath continued so constant and frequent in practice, as the endowing with *Girdle* and *Sword*: Ornaments indeed most proper to the *Knightly Dignity*, and marks of *Honor* and *Virtue*, with

[o] *Glossar. Archaiolog. verbo Miles.*
[p] *Titles of Honor. p. 451.*

with which the Statues and Portraitures of *Knights* have been adorned after death; as may be seen on divers of their Monuments and Grave-Stones.

For as at this day, *Knights* are in some places stiled *Equites Aurati*, from the *golden Spurs*, heretofore put on at their Creation; so were they more anciently *Cingulo militari donati*; or (according to the old word used by *Bracton*) [f] *Ringæ Gladiis*; in regard that when any one was *Knighted*, he was not (as in this Age) only smitten with the *Sword*, but invested with *Sword* and *Belt*. Nor is this Ceremony wholly lost, since it is retained among those, appointed to be used at the creating our *Knights of the Bath*; who are to be girt with a *Sword* and *Belt*, when they receive the aforesaid Honor, as the old *Formulary* thus hath it. [t] **Then shall the King, of his great favour, take the Sword, and gird the Esquire therewith.**

[f] *Ringæ enim dicuntur, ex eo quod Renes gyrant & circumdant, & inde dicitur accingere Gladio tuo.* Bracton de Legibus & Consuetud. regni Angliæ. lib. 1. cap. 8. num. 2.

[t] *Dugdale's Antiq. of Warw. p.* 539.

In the second place (taking leave to rank those following degrees of *Knighthood* here mentioned, according to their antiquity, not the precedence they have since gained) the *Baccalaurei* or *Knights Batchelors*, are to be considered; who are also indifferently stiled *Chevaliers*, *Milites*, *Equites Aurati*, and *Knights*. Knights Batchelors.

This degree is truly accounted with us, [u] *the first of all military dignity, and the basis and foundation of all Honors in our Nation*; and is certainly derived from, if not the same, with that immediately preceding. For as the Ceremony of a gentle touch on the shoulder, with the flat side of the *Sword*, hath been since used, instead of endowing with the *Sword* and *Belt* (especially in times of War, or in haste) as an initiation into the *Military Order*; so on the contrary, it is not unusual, now adays, for the *Prince*, at least *Gladio*, if not *Cingulo donare*; for he oftentimes bestows the Sword upon the person whom he Knighteth.

[u] *Primus* [Eques Baccalaureus] *apud Britannos dignitatis omnis Militaris gradus est, Honorum omnium in Republica basis. L.R. p.* 143.

The *Equites* had the Epithete of [w] *Aurati* given them, from the priviledge of wearing Gold upon their *Swords* and *Spurs*; and the 265 *Knights*, created upon *Hadrians Bridge* at *Rome*, by *Frederick* the Third, Emperor of *Germany*, the 18. of *March*, *Anno Dom.* 1451. as he proceeded to the Cathedral Church of *St. John de Lateran* to be crowned, are by [x] *Ciaconius* called *Equites Aurati*; and were indeed no other than *Knights Batchelors*; such were also they [y] *Italian* and *German Knights*, created in the same place, by *Sigismond* the Emperour, on *Whitsunday* 1432. as he went to the *Lateran* from the *Vatican*, where he had received his Crown from Pope *Eugenius* the Fourth.

[w] *Ab ornamentis aureis.* Miræus, Origines Ord. Equestrium, p. 1. juxta impressionem 1638.

[x] *Vitæ & Gesta summ. Pontif. l.* 2. *p.* 925.

[y] *Platina de vitis Pontif. p.* 262.

And here we have an occasion offer'd, to insert the distinction which *Andrew Tiraquel* puts between those *Knights*, who are, and who are not noble before they receive that dignity; allowing the later the Title of *Equites Aurati*, and to the former that of *Milites*. [z] *For* (saith he) *it is to be observed, that those whom we in the French Tongue call* Chevaliers, *were made noble assoon as they attain'd that dignity, even though they were not such before, yet they were not called* Milites, *contrary to the position of all Interpreters of the Law: but such as speak properly, have called them* Equites Auratos. Which appellation [b] *Franciscus Philelphus* did first of all find out, and *Bebellius* in his Commentary *De abusione linguæ*, brings many things against the *Interpreters*, who call those (that are not noble before their Creation) *Milites*.

[z] *De Nobil. c.* 8. *sect.* 13.

[b] *Lib. Epist.* 24. *Epist.* 1. *ad Alb: Parisium.*

Somewhat to like purpose would our learned *Spelman* deduce from the addition of [c] *Aurati*, conceiving it introduced *ad distinguendum* Equitem *ritu honorario institutum, ab inhonorato istiusmodi*; and by him made applicable to the *Neapolitan Gentlemen*, (usually called *Cavalieri*) who are all stiled *Equites*, though they never have attained the Knightly dignity.

[c] *Gloss. Archaiolog. verbo Eques.*

Thirdly, concerning the *Knights Banerets*, a Title bestowed on such who had so well deserved in the Wars, that they were afterwards permitted to use the *Vexillum quadratum*, or a square Banner; whence they were truly called *Equites Vexillarii*, or *Chevaliers à Baniere*, from the *Dutch* word [d] **Banerherr**, Lord, or Master of the Banner. Knights Banerets.

[d] *Ibid. verbo Baneret.*

Our learned [e] *Camden* derives the original of this Knightly dignity among us, not higher than the reign of King *Edward* the Third, and believes him to be the first

[e] *In Brit. p.* 124: *Edit. Lond.* 1608.

first Institutor thereof, and this honorable Title to be then first devised, in recompence of martial prowess; a recital of which dignity received, is mentioned in a [f] Patent, whereby that King grants to *John Coupland*, for the maintenance thereof, five hundred pounds *per annum* out of his Exchequer, to be received by him and his Heirs; and this was for his good service performed, in taking [g] *David* the Second, King of *Scots*, Prisoner, at the Battel of *Nevils Cross*, neer *Durham*. But some few years before the Creation of Sir *John Coupland*, there is mention also in the Patent Rolls of * Sir *Reignald Cobham*, and || Sir *William de la Poole*, both Banerets: And doubtless the Title and Dignity was much more ancient with us (as well as in [h] *France*) for in our perusal of the Accounts of the great *Wardrobe*, we find such like *Robes* allowed to several persons made Knights, as were appointed usually for the Creation of *Banerets*; and this before the reign of King *Edward* the Third, which implies, that there was then a *Degree of Knighthood*, so called, amongst us. For instance, [i] *Gerardo de la Bret, ad apparatum suum pro Militia, tanquam pro* Baneretto, *à Rege suscipienda, &c. viz. ad unam Tunicam, &c.* after which is set down the particular Robes, and other Ornaments, appointed for his Creation; and then it follows, *Consimilem apparatum habuerant subscripti, viz.*

[f] *Pat. 20. E. 3. par. 2. membrana 22.*
[g] *Speeds Chron. p. 592.*
* *10. E. 3. pars 2. m. 7.*
|| *13. E. 3 m. 13.*
[h] *Vide Seld. Tit. of Honor, p. 543.*
[i] *Ex Rotul. Compoti Tho. Uscflet de an. 20. E. 2.*

Hug. de Courtney.	*Pet. Breton.*	*Viz. Singuli eorum tanquam pro Baneretto.*
Rad. de Wylington.	*Rog. le Straunge.*	
Rad. Daubeney.	*Ernone de Potes.*	
Joh. de Willouby.	*Joh. de Neville.*	
Edw. Stradling.	*Gerard de Trassyns.*	
Rad. Baro de Stafford.	*Willect de Ciply.*	
Joh. de Meules.	*Mulect de Elekey.*	
Will. de Percy.	*Distram de Keney.*	
Gerard de Insula.		

In like manner in the preceding year have we met with an account of *Robes*, given to [k] *James Botiller* of *Ireland*, *ad apparatum suum, pro se novo Milite faciendo, tanquam* Baneretto; as also to *William Mountacute*, *Ebulo le Strange*, and others. So also *An.* 18. *E.* 2. to *Hugo de Poynts*, and *Hugo de Plesey*; and [m] *Ann.* 16. *E.* 2. to *Raymund Durant*. And our learned *Spelman* (*in Pellæ exitus An.* 8. *E.* 2.) doth find [n] *John de Crumbwell*, written with the addition and Title of *Baneret*.

[k] [l] [m] *Ex Comp. præd. Tho. de Uscflet.*
[n] *Gloss. Archai. verbo Baneret. vide etiam 4. part. Instit. p. 6.*

But that this Dignity was yet more ancient in *England*, is sufficiently apparent from a Writ of King *Edward* the First, under the Privy Seal, directed to the *Clerk* of the *Wardrobe*, to furnish *Thomas Bardolf* with Robes, *such as were usually allowed to a* Baneret; he being to receive the honor of *Knighthood*, at that eminent solemnity, when *Edward of Caernarvon*, the Kings eldest Son, was made *Knight*; which Writ runs thus.

[o] *Edwardus Dei gratiâ Rex* Angliæ *Dominus* Hiberniæ *&* *Dux* Aquitaniæ, *Dilecto nobis* Radulpho de Stoke, *Clerico magnæ Garderobæ nostræ salutem, Mandamus vobis, quod dilecto nobis* Thomæ Bardolf *tanquam* Baneretto, *decentem apparatum, pro se novo Milite faciendo ad festum Pentecostes proximè futurum, in Comitiva* Edwardi *filii nostri karissimi habere, de dono nostro faciatis. Et nos vobis inde in compoto vestro debitam allocationem habere faciemus. Datum sub privato Sigillo nostro apud* Wolveseye *tertio die Maii, Anno Regni nostri Tricesimo quarto.*

[o] *Ex Brevi R. Ed. 1. penes Rem. Regis in Scacc.*

This Degree of Honor is [p] esteemed the last among the greatest, *viz. Nobilium majorum*, or the first with those of the second rank, and [q] is placed in the middle between the *Barons* and the other *Knights*; in which respect, the *Baneret* may be called [r] *Vexillarius minor*, as if he were the lesser Banner-Bearer, to the end he might be so differenced from the greater, namely, the *Baron*, to whom properly the right of bearing a square Banner doth appertain.

[p] *Mills Catal. of Honor p. 80.*
[q] [r] [s] *Gloss. Archaiol. verbo Baneret.*

But there are some remarkable difference between these *Knights*, and *Knights Batchelors*; to wit, as to the occasion and circumstances of their Creation; the *Baneret* being not created, unless at a time when the Kings Standard is erected and displayed; besides, [s] he bears his own Banner in the field, while the *Knight Batchelor*

Batchelor follows that which is anothers, which evidently shews the Dignity to be of a higher nature; nevertheless, Sir *Henry Spelman* notes, this not to be dishonourable, since the Emperor [t]*Maximilian* was pleased to serve in the Wars, under the *Banner* of our King *Henry* the Eighth, in the [u] quality of his Soldier, in the Camp before *Terwin* in *France*, wearing the Cross of St. *George*, and receiving the pay of one hundred Crowns a day.

[t] *Lord Herbert's Hist. of Hen. 8. MS. fo. 47.*

[u] *In le Theatre d' Honeur l. 1. c. 6.*

This further differenee is observed between them, by *Andrew Favin*, to wit, [w] that the *Knight Baneret* was he who had so many Gentlemen, his servants, at command, as that he could raise a Banner, and make up a Company of Soldiers to be maintained at his Table, and their wages paid out of his own Purse: But the *Knight Batchelor* he, who had not servants sufficient to lead to the War, at his own charge, but marched under the Banner of some other. [x] These two degrees of Honor (saith he) were also distinguished by their Wages, in regard that a *Knight Baneret* had twenty Sols *per diem* to dispend, the *Knight Batchelor* ten, and the *Esquire* but five; proportionable hereunto is that which Mr. *Selden* notes out of the *Ward-robe* accounts, *an.* 4. *E.* 2. [y] That the *Banerets* wages by the day was four shillings, the *Knights* two shillings, and the *Esquires* one shilling.

[w] Vexillarius, *qui Vassallos suos habebat elato Vexillo; & Baccalaureus, qui sub alieno vexillo procedebat.* Jo. Tilius Commentar. de reb. Gall. l. 2. p. 180.

[x] *Idem Favin. loco cit.*

[y] *Titles of Honor, p. 791.*

Next unto the *Knights Banerets*, we shall speak of *Knights of the Bath*; which is a degree that hath the *Investiture* and *Title* of a *Knight*, with an additional denomination, derived from part of the Ceremony of his Creation. Knights of the Bath.

It is the most received opinion, that our King *Henry* the Fourth, first instituted these *Knights*; and true it is, according to [a] Sir *John Froisard*, He at his Coronation (to adde to the lustre and magnificence of it) created [b] six and forty of them; making an especial choice of such as he favoured, either out of an inward affection, or consideration of their service or deserts.

[a] *Chronic. l. 2. p. 245.*

[b]

And as he designed them to attend him in the Ceremonies of his Coronation, then at hand, so did he retain them neerer unto his person; thereby seeming to honor them with a more familiar consociation, than he vouchsafed to the *Knights Batchelors*.

But if the Ceremonies and circumstances of their Creation be well considered, it will appear that this *King* did not institute, but rather restore, the ancient manner of making *Knights*; and consequently, that the *Knights of the Bath* are in truth no other than *Knights Batchelors*, that is to say, such as are created with those Ceremonies wherewith *Knights Batchelors* were formerly created by *Ecclesiasticks*; but some of them having been for a long time laid aside with us, were then brought again into use, and made peculiar to the Degree of *Knights of the Bath*, and since continued to them, upon some solemn and great occasion.

At the first view, this Degree looks like a peculiar and distinct *Order* of *Knighthood*, and may perhaps (by some) be thought more fit to be spoken of in the third Chapter rather than here: But it cannot properly and justly be so accounted, if we consider, that they have not either Statutes or Laws assigned them, nor are they in case of vacancy supplied; (which are the essentials of distinct *Orders*) nor do they wear their Robes beyond the time of that occasion upon which they were created; as chiefly the Coronation of Kings and Queens of *England*, or otherwise the Creation of a *Prince* of *Wales*, Duke of *York*, and the like, whereto also is to be considered, that their Number hath been uncertain, and always at the pleasure of the *King*.

Andrew Favin will have these *Knights* to be otherwise called [c] *Knights of the Crown*, because (saith he) to distinguish them from *Esquires*, they wear upon their left shoulders an Escutcheon of Black Silk, with three Crowns of Gold embroidered thereon. But this is a great mistake, for it is not found that such, or indeed any other Badge, was at any time (after that manner) used by them, save only a Silk Lace; but the Jewel worn, to be known by, is made of Gold, containing three Crowns, with this Motto, *Tria juncta in una*, and hanging down under the left arm at a Carnation Ribbon worn cross the body.

[c] *En le Theatré d' Honeur l. 5. c. 2.*

This leads us to the consideration of another Degree among us here in *England*, namely, *Baronets*, who seem to be allied to *Knighthood*, by having granted Baronets.

to

to them the addition of *Sir* to be set before their Names; but this Title gives not the Dignity of *Knighthood*, nor can any of them be properly stiled *Knights*, until they be actually knighted.

It is a Degree but of a late erection, to wit, in the ninth year of King *James*, and the grant thereof made only by Letters Patents under the Great Seal of *England*, a Copy of one of which is transcribed into the [d] *Titles of Honor*. This Honor is made hereditary to them, and the Heirs males of their bodies lawfully begotten, for ever; and by a subsequent Decree of the said *King*, precedence is granted to them before all *Banerets*, [e] except such as should be made by the *King*, his *Heirs*, and *Successors*, under his or their Standard displaid in an Army royal, in open War, and the King personally present; and next unto and immediately after the younger Sons of *Viscounts* and *Barons*.

[d] *Pag* 821.

[e] *Rot. Pat. an.* 10. *Jac. pars* 10. *m*, 8.

The ground for erecting this Degree (as appears by the Instructions given to the *Commissioners* appointed to treat about this affair) was partly Martial; for though themselves were not enjoined personal service in the Wars, yet the motive of this Honor was a certain contribution from each *Baronet*, [f] to maintain thirty Foot Soldiers, for three years in *Ireland* (after the rate of eight pence a day) for the defence of that Kingdom; and chiefly to secure the Plantation in the Province of *Ulster*.

[f] *Seld Tit. of Hon. p.* 827.

Their Qualifications were, that at least they should be descended from a Grandfather, on the Fathers side, that bore Arms, and had a Revenue of one thousand pounds *per annum*, of Lands of inheritance in possession, or Lands of old Rents, as good as one thousand pounds a year of improved Lands; or at least two parts of three, to the said value in possession, and the other third part in reversion expectant, upon one life only held in Jointure.

The year after the first Patent past, King *James* was pleased to adde some new Priviledges and Ornaments to this Degree, namely, [g] to Knight those *Baronets* already made, that were no Knights, as also such as should be afterwards created, and the Heirs males of their bodies, when they attained the age of one and twenty years; that the *Baronets* and their *Descendants* might bear either in Canton, or in an Inescutcheon the Arms of *Ulster*, and further, to have place in the Armies of the *King*, and his *Heirs* and *Successors*, in the gross, neer about the Royal Standard, for defence of the same.

[g] *Rot. Pat.* 10. *Jac. pars* 10. *m.* 8.

Since the Institution of *Baronets* in *England*, there have been made divers in *Ireland*, after the like form. And the *Knights* of [i] *Nova Scotia* in the *West-Indies*, were ordained, in imitation of *Baronets* in *England*, by the said King *James*, *anno Dom.* 1622. and upon a like design; to wit, the planting of that Country by *Scotch Colonies*, and the Degree made likewise hereditary.

[h] *Titles of Honor p.* 842.

[i] *Heylins Cosmogr. printed* 1652. *l.* 1. *p.* 306.

These later have the priviledge to wear an *Orange-tawny Ribbon*, as a Badge of Honor, to distinguish them from other *Knights*: and it appears by a [k] Letter from *Henry* Earl of *Holland*, dated the 29. of *June* 1627. and directed to the *Officers of Arms*, that there was some intention to move his then Majesty to declare his pleasure, that all *Baronets* and *Knights Batchelors* might wear in Ribbons of several colours, some *Badge* or *Jewel*, to distinguish the one from the other, and both from persons of inferiour quality, in such sort as did the *Knights of the Bath*; to which end, he desired their opinion, touching the fitness and conveniency thereof.

[k] *Ex MS. in Offic. Armor* [*L.* 2.] *fol.* 23.

Which *Officers*, from precedents of the differences and marks set upon Robes belonging to several Degrees of *Nobility* and *Honor*, and from the Ensigns and Ornaments of *Knighthood*, used for distinctions sake, both at home and abroad, being esteemed as peculiar marks of *Soveraignty* in the Giver, and eminent tokens of *Honor* in the Receiver; grounded their opinion, that such *Ornaments* for distinction of those two Degrees, namely of *Baronets* and *Knights Batchelors*, were no way unfit or inconvenient, either to his said Majesty, or to his Subjects: But it seems, there was nothing further done in this matter.

We shall conclude this *Section* with a general observation, which relates to the conferring of Knightly Honor; That *Kings* and *Princes* have in no Age limited themselves, or confin'd their bestowing of this Dignity to *Martialists* alone,

alone, who profess Arms, and give themselves to the exercise of Military Virtue, as it was in its original Institution, *viz.* a *Military Employment*; inasmuch as men of the *long Robe*, and such as have dedicated themselves to the managery of Civil Affairs, through their great worth and desert in that kind, have so well merited of their *Prince* and *Country*, as to be thought worthy to share with those of the *short Robe*, in having this Honor conferr'd on them.

SECT. V.

The Etymologie of Eques, Miles, Chevalier, Ritter, *and* Sir.

WE have observed before, that the *Grecian* Captains had a Title of Honor in their Language, equivalent to the signification of *Eques* in the *Latin*, to which a *Horse* gave the denomination; we shall here further add (it being testified by [l] *Pliny*) that the Title of *Eques*, given and appropriate to the *Ordo Equestris* among the ancient *Romans*, as a name of Title and Dignity, was at first likewise derived from *Equus* a *Horse*; and indeed it is a proper and significant term since among them, they were esteemed *Equites*, [m] *who having a publick Horse, did receive the stipend of a Horseman to serve in the Wars:* because one part of the Ceremony, whereby this Honor became conferred, was the giving of a *Horse*, bestowed on them at the Publick Charge; of which more anon. *In the ancient times* (saith [n] *Turnebus*) *they who received pay, upon the account of a publick Horse, were called* Equites. And the Legionary Soldiers, which [o] *Pliny* saith were sometimes called *Fluxumines*, [p] *Salmasius* calls *Fluxutes*, and derives the word *à flectendis Equis in Gyrum.*

1. Eques.

l *Lib.33.c.1. sub finem.*

m *Demster in Rosin. p. 94.*

n *Turneb. animadv. in Rullum: Petri Rami Comment. p. 76.*

o *L.33.c.2.*

p *De re mil. Rom. p.231.*

It is also to be noted, that the word used to denote the Degree of *Knighthood*, in the several Dialects of other *Nations*, hath the same derivation, to wit, from a *Horse*; for in the *French*, a *Knight* is called *Chevalier*; in the *German*, Ridder; in the *Italian*, *Cavagliero*; nay even in the ancient *British*, *Morchog*; concerning some of which, hear also one of *Geoffry Chaucer*'s Scholars.

[f] Eques, *ab* Equo, is said of very right,
And Chevalier, is said of Chevalrie,
In which a Rider called is a Knight,
Arogoners done also specifie,
Caballiero through all that partie,
Is name of worship, and so took his ginning,
Of Spurs of Gold, and chiefly Riding.

f *Jo. Lydgate MS of the Horse, Sheep, and Goat.*

And albeit the Latin word *Miles*, and the English word *Knight*, had not their derivation from a *Horse*, as have those before enumerated; nevertheless they are now restrained to a Title of *Honor* (though heretofore they had other significations) and ordinarily used to express a dubbed *Knight*.

According to the opinion of our learned *Spelman*, *Miles* (in a general sense) is he [t] *who is legally inrolled for the War*: which Inrollment he also saith was twofold, *Honoraria*, & *Vulgaris*. This pertaining to the Foot, or common Soldiers; that to persons more renowned and famous. To the admittance of a Foot Soldier, the bare entrance of his Name upon the Military Tables sufficed; but at the creating of the other, some solemnity was used, for he was adorned with Arms; not of his own choice, but given and granted, upon the account of *Honor*, from the Prince, and that after a certain kind of ceremonious Pomp. Thus he.

2. Miles.

t *Gloss. Archaiol. verbo* Miles.

But though the word *Miles* anciently among the *Romans*, and hitherto in a strict sense, is allowed by all to signifie a *Foot Soldier*, whence *Miles*, *à Militia*;

yet how this word became usurped, continued in use, and in tract of time naturalized, to signifie the same which *Eques* did, we could no where receive so clear satisfaction, as from the learned Pen of *Claudius Salmasius*, who in his Treatise *De Re Militari Romanorum* gives this following account.

u *Pag.* 2. "[u] It is manifest (saith he) that there was one kind of Military Discipline "among the *Romans*, when their publick Affairs were first setled by *Kings*; ano- "ther, when in the flower of their Government *Liberty* was established; ano- "ther, when the *Cæsars* and *Augustus's* were Masters of the Empire; and lastly, "another, under the Successors of *Constantine*, when upon the translation of part "of the Empire to *Constantinople*, the Militia was changed from Foot to Horse. For "the new *Romans* of that time being continually engaged against *Nations* power- "ful and abounding in Horse, and reposing no further confidence in the *Legionary* "*Militia*, the rigour of the ancient Discipline being wholly lost, began to exer- "cise and train up only the *Horse Militia*, deserting that of the *Foot*, whereof "there was hardly any advantage to be made against the innumerable Forces of "the *Alani*, *Gothes*, *Vandals*, *Persians*, *Saracens*, and *Sarmatians*, which consisted "in Horse.

"In those times the *Greeks*, who writ ought concerning that part of Military "Discipline, which relates to *Tacticks*, taking all things from the Ancients, ex- "press'd the Affairs of their own Age (by reason of the alteration of the Militia) "in words proper to the ancient Militia. What the former had said of the *Foot* "*Soldiery*, these later applyed the same things in their writings to the *Cavalry*. "And what is more to be admired, the names whereby the ancient *Greeks* and "*Latins* called the *Foot*, these transferr'd to the *Horse* of their time. Hence "στρατιώτης, which before was said of the *Foot Soldier*, was by these later *Greeks* "and *Constantinopolitans*, properly attributed to the *Horseman*. So also among "the *Romans* of the same Age, the word *Miles* was no longer said of him that "serv'd afoot in the Wars, but began to be properly spoken of the *Horse-* "*man*.

"Whence it came into vogue (as the same *Author* concludes) that among the "Titles of *Nobility*, he who had that of *Miles* bestowed on him (whether in pub- "lick Monuments and Archives of Courts, or in the private Instruments and "Tombs of illustrious Families) was understood to be a *Horseman*, or *Eques*, that "is of the *Equestrian Dignity*, or descended from it.

w } *Tit. of Ho-*
x } *nor p.* 436.

Our learned [w] *Selden* also notes the word *Miles* to be equivocal, and that in the old Feodal Laws of the *Empire* it signifies a *Gentleman*, as the word *Gentleman* is signified in *Nobilis*: and with us the word hath been frequently and indifferently used, to denote both a *Gentleman* and a *Knight*: as for instance, *Milites* signifieth [x] *Gentlemen*, or great *Freeholders* of a *County*, and not dubbed *Knights*, *viz.* such *who hold by Knights-service from a Lord of a Mannor*, they being also called [z] *Milites* or *Knights* in our Laws, that concern either choice of Coroners, or who are chosen from the several Counties of this *Kingdom*, to serve in the High Court of *Parliament*; although they be not advanced into the Degree of *Knighthood*.

z *Vide Tit. Hon. ead. pag.*

That *Miles* with us hath denoted the dignity of *Knighthood* (which is indeed the chiefest of Military professions) even in the *Saxons* times, [a] Mr. *Selden* not only believes, but fortifies his opinion from the authority of several *Charters* of that Age, wherein this Title is given to sundry persons, as may be [b] there seen to satisfaction; observing withal, that the [c] ancientest use of it, in the *German Empire*, as a Title of *Honor*, that he finds it had, was about the Year of our *Lord* 1064. but *Aubertus Miræus* (in [d] *Cod. donat. pier.*) exhibits an ancient *diploma*, in which the Title *Miles* is mentioned, *in chartâ Gerardi Cameracensium Episcopi*, *de anno* 1046. since which it is become more frequently used, in all publick Instruments written in Latin, and most generally appropriate in our Law, to persons who have received the Order of *Knighthood*, and to signifie the same with *Eques* and *Chevalier*, though indeed it may seem less properly to signifie a *Knight*, than that of *Eques*; in regard *Knighthood* is by [e] some called the dignity of *Horse-manship*, and the tenure of Lands by *Knights Fees* here in *England*, is in truth a

a *Ibid. p.* 770.
b *Idem, pag.* 771.
c *Et pag.* 934.
d *Apud Jurisprud. Heroic. p.* 69.
e *Ferns Glory of Generosity, p.* 108.

Horse-

Horse-service, and the Tenants such as served the *King* on Horsebaek in Wars, and *Gentlemen* at least, if not persons of noble extraction: besides, to note the dignity of this Tenure, it is anciently called[f] *Regale Servicium*, beeause due to and for the *King* and the *Realm*.

[f] *Cokes preface ad lib.3. fo. 3. a.*

3. Chevalier.

As the *Greeks* and *Romans* derived a Title of Honor from *Horses* of serviee, and conferr'd the same upon their men of Arms, so did the *French*; among whom, the word *Chevalier* hath the like signifieation and relation: For at first, it properly signified a *Horseman*, or one that rides a *Horse*; but at length it came to be used among them, more peculiarly to express one, upon whom the Honor of *Knighthood* had been bestowed.

And this cleerly appears from *Claude Fauchet*, a *French* Writer of good aceount; who speaking of the original of *Knighthood*, and the Etymologie of the word *Chevalier*, saith, [g] *it is evident that the* Chevaliers *derive their name from* Cheval [a Horse] *which (to say truth) is the properest Animal that can be found for War; and which by reason of the swiftness thereof, is by the*[h] Poet *ascribed to* Neptune, *at the contention he had with* Pallas *for the invention of profitable things*.

[g] *Origines de Chevaliers Armoir. & Heraux. f. 1.*

[h] *Vide Com. Servii ad Virgilii primum Georgicon.*

The skilful management of a *Horse*, hath been heretofore aecounted one of the prineipal marks and properties of a *Knight*; and so greatly delighted were the active and warlike youths, among the old *Gauls* (to wit, the ancient Inhabitants of *France*) with gallant Horses, that no Present could be more aceeptable to them.

It is evident, that with the nobler sort among us, the Title of *Eques* or *Chevalier* hath been esteemed more honorable than *Miles* (though *Miles* had before much prevailed in *England*, even to a general Title and Appellation) which may be proved out of those Records, instanced in the fourth part of the[k] *Institutes*, by which it appears that the *Barons* in *Parliament*, who had been *Knighted*, liked to be called *Chevaliers*, rather than *Milites*. And in Writs of Summons they were more usually stiled *Chevaliers*, than by the Titles of their *Baronies*; or if these were used, nevertheless, that of *Chevalier* followed at the end of the style. *Anno* 7. *E.* 4. all the *Barons* in *Parliament* have the addition of *Chevaliers*, and therefore they subscribed thus——*Equites aurati omnes*. And about[l] King *Henry* the Eighths Reign, the Custom began, to stile all the temporal *Barons* in their Writs of Summons, *Chevaliers*; whether they were Knighted or not, which is hitherto continued in practice; all which are considerable proofs of the estimation they had of the Title of *Chevalier*, above that of *Miles*.

[k] *Pag.5.*

[l] *Seldens Tit. of Honor. p.746*

4. Ridder.

Among the modern *Germans*, the Title of *Knight* is understood by the word [m] **Ridder**, which in *English* is the same with *Rider* or *Horseman*, and equivalent both to the aneient Title *Eques*, and the modern *Chevalier*; and the Order of *Knighthood* or *Equestrian Dignity*, is in high *Dutch* called[n] **Ritterschafft**, in low *Dutch*, [o] **Riderschap**.

[m] *Corn. Kilian: Dict. Teutonico-Lat. lit.* R *Versteg. Antiq. p. 314.*

[n] *Frisius Dict. Latino-Germ. lit.* R.

[o] *Jurisprudentia Heroica. p. 389. a.*

As the German **Ridder** or **Ritter**, is observed by our learned [p] *Selden*, to be the same with *Miles* (*viz.* a *Gentleman*) so the **Ghe-slagen Ridder**, is interpreted by [q] *Eques Auratus*, viz. *Miles factus*, or the *dubbed Knight*, he being created by the Ceremony of a gentle stroke, or light touch with a naked Sword, upon the shoulder (**Ghe-slaeghen**, signifying but as *percussus*) for albeit [r] *Lewis du May* tells us, that in *Germany* the *Gentlemen* to this day, writing in Latin, stile themselves *Equites*; yet no man among them is aeeounted a [s] **Ritter** or **Ridder**, in the same sence as *Eques Auratus*, or *Cingulo Militiæ donatus*, denotes it, unless he be actually *Knighted*.

[p] *Tit. Hon. p. 436.*

[q] *Kilianus in lit.* R.

[r] *The Estate of the Empire, Dialog. 8. in princ.*

[s] *Tit. of Honor, loco cit.*

And besides, the said [t] *Lewis du May* notes down these manifest differenees, between *them* and the *dubbed Knight*: as first, that the *Knight* hath been always more priviledged than the *Gentleman*. 2. That the ehance of Birth makes the *Gentleman*, without his contributing any thing to it; but Worth and Valour raises the *Knight* to that degree of Honor. 3. *Princes* and *Lords* do not seek for the Title of a *Gentleman*, as they do very earnestly for that of a *Knight*: And 4. The *Gentleman* is born so, the *Knight* comes to be so; that is, a *Gentleman* begets a *Gentleman*, but a *Knight* begets not a *Knight*.

[t] *Eod. Dialog.*

5. Knight.

The *Saxon* word Cniht (from whence our *Knight*) is by our learned Country-

men, [x] *Spelman*, [y] *Selden*, and [z] *Somner*, rendred a *Boy*, a *Servant*, or an *Attendant*, and also a *Soldier*. We shall not meddle with the word, as it barely signifies *Puer*, *Puerilis*, *Juvenis*, or *Puber*, as making nought to our purpose; but as it hath signified *Servus* or *Famulus*, a *Servant* or *Attendant* (being not otherwise used at this day among the *Dutch*) and also, as it imports the dignity of *Knighthood* (to which purpose we now commonly use it) it will deserve observation; and this chiefly in the words of Mr. *Somner*, that painful Inquisitor into the so much neglected, and almost forgotten *Saxon* Tongue. [a] *Witness* (saith he) *that use of it remaining in our* Knights *of the* Shire; *which although no* Knights *by dignity or place, as indeed but few of them are, or need to be, yet are so called, but why? under favour, in regard of that service which is required and performed of them in Parliament, for their several Countries, whose servants for the time they are.*

[x] *Gloss. Archai. verbo* Knight.
[y] *Titles of Honor. p.* 769.
[z] *Dict. Saxon. verbo* Cniht.
[a] *Saxon. dict. loco cit.*

But that we may know it was used with us, as an honorary Title and Appellation, shortly after the Conquest, there is an [b] old Manuscript yet extant in *Bibliotheca Bodliana*, in which the Annals are continued down to King *Stephens* Reign, wherein the Annalist having told us, that King *William* the Conqueror accustomably wore his Crown at the Feasts of *Easter*, *Whitsontide*, and *Christmas*, he further noteth [c] þen þe pon mid him alle þa þrie men ofer alle Englalande, Aþelbirchopar,] Leodbir, Abbodap,] Eorlar, Þegnar,] Cnihtar. Then were with him all the wealthy (or potent) men throughout *England*, *viz. Arch-Bishops*, *Bishops*, *Abbots*, *Earls*, *Barons*, and *Knights*.

[b] *Inter Cod. MS. a Guil. Archiep. Cant. Bibl. Oxon. donatos* [*E.* 80. *fo.* 64. b.]

[d] *Verstegan* is of opinion, that this word began to be made use of among our Ancestors, as a Title of Honor, from such as were admitted for their merit to be *Knights* to the *King*; *viz.* his own *Servants* and *Reteyners*, and such as were appointed to ride with or attend on him; to whom our industrious *Minshew* agrees, *the* [e] Equites (saith he) *which heretofore followed and accompanied the Emperor, are in the German Tongue called* **Knechtes**, that is, *Servitors* or *Ministers*. But our learned *Camden* is of opinion, that the word **Knecht**, [f] was in far more ancient times used and accepted as an honorary Title, and among the old *Germans*, signified a person armed with *Spear* and *Launce* (the Ensigns of their *Knighthood*) as in after times such were among other *Nations*, adorned with a *Girdle* and *Belt*, who are since called *Equites Aurati*, and sometimes simply *Milites*.

[d] *Antiq. p* 314. *Impr. London.* 1629.
[e] *Verbo* Knight.
[f] *Brit. p.* 125.

6. Sir.

In the last place, we think it not amiss to say something here, touching the usual and accustomed English word, with us added to the names of *Knights*, viz. *Sir*: We note then, that since Titles and honorary Appellations have been in use, (for anciently no other Appellations were used, but only the persons names) the word *Sire* in old *French* was taken to signifie *Seignieur* or *Lord*; and though in *Latin* the word *Dominus* hath been indifferently attributed to all Degrees of *Nobility*, yet in the Registries of the most noble Order of the *Garter*, it is us'd with a distinction. For wherever the Names of any of the *Knights Companions* are recorded, if he be a *Baron* of the Kingdom, it is exprest by *Dominus*, and his *Surname* only added thereunto; as for instance, the Lord *Cameux* is termed [g] *Dominus de Cameux*, and so others; whereas a *Knight Baneret* or *Batchelor* hath his Christian Name adjoined, as Sir *John Chandos* (who was one of the first Founders of this most noble *Order*) is stiled [h] *Dominus Johannes Chandos*, Sir *Walter Fauely*, another of those Founders, is written, *Dominus Gualterus Fauely*, and so of others.

[g] *Lib. N p.* 58.
[h] *Idem p.* 30.

Now this addition *Sir*, is properly attributed to the Names of all *Knights Banerets*, *Knights of the Bath*, and *Batchelor Knights*; the words sometimes pronounced at the time when they are dubbed being with this compellation to their Christian Names, *Arise Sir John*, or *Sir Thomas*, or whatsoever else is his Christian Name, and therefore is accounted parcel of their stile, as among the French *Messire* is used in the same nature. But to *Knights Baronets* the addition of *Sir* is [i] granted by a peculiar clause in their Patents of Creation, to be prefixt to their Christian Names, albeit they be not *dubbed Knights*.

[i] *Pat. 9. Jac. pars* 45.

How it came to be first given we cannot find, but Custom from former times hath continued it to ours, upon the Degrees before mentioned, and divers of our old *English Writers* have bestowed it upon the major Nobility, after they had been

been received into the Order of *Knighthood*. Nevertheless, though it be wholly uncertain when it first began to be used with us, yet our learned *Selden* hath observed it in an[k] *Hebrew* Star, of King *Edward* the First's time. And in the life of Saint *Thomas Becket*, written also about that Age, we meet with the Title prefixt to the Names of the four *Knights* (there called *Luther Knights*) who slew the said Saint *Thomas*.

k *Additions and Amendments to the Titles of Honor. p.939.*

> [l] His knyghts tho hi i husde this, hi stode some stille,
> Hi bethoghte stillelich, to pay the kyng at wille,
> Four that mest strewen wer, bithoghte of one gile,
> Sir Renaud le fiz Ours, and Sir Hewe de Mortile,
> And Sir William Traci, and Sir Richard le Bzut.

l *MS. penes Sylam Taylor gen. fo. 253.*

SECT. VI.

The Ensigns *of the* Equestrian Order *among the* Romans.

THE *Equestrian Order* among the ancient *Romans* was conferr'd by particular Ceremonies, to wit, the donation of a *Horse*, or giving of a *Ring*; and these were accounted the two chief and principal *Ensigns* and *Ornaments* of that *Order*, as appears out of [m] *Pliny* and other *Writers*; and both bestowed upon the publick account.

1. *A* Publick Horse.

m *Lib.33. c.1. sub finem. Rosin. de Antiq. Rom.l.1.c.17.*

The giving of the publick or military *Horse* was a far more ancient Ceremony, than that of bestowing the *Ring*: there being a time when only those who received the publick *Horse*, were of the *Equestrian Order*, and none other; and this was long before the *Gold Ring* was used, as a mark of this Honor.

For it appears out of *Livy*, that upon *Servius* his Institution of the *Cense*, and his inrolling the *Knights* by it, he forthwith took care to pay them out of the publick Treasure, [n] *Ten thousand pieces of Brass Money to buy them* Horses: and certain Widows were assigned to pay *two thousand pieces of like money annually, towards the keeping of them.* [p] *Therefore* (saith the learned *Salmasius*) *no other were then enrolled in the* Equestrian Order, *but such as had the Equestrian Cense, and to whom a publick* Horse *was assigned.* And this is further evident from this passage in *Pliny*; [q] *That the Name* (to wit *Equites*) *which was heretofore* (saith he) *derived from the military* Horses, *now the Judges upon the account of money* (viz. the *Censors*) *bestow.*

n *Livy, l.1. c.43.*
p *De re mil. Rom. p. 239. circa medium.*
q *Quod antea militares Equi nomen dederant, hoc nunc Pecuniæ Judices tribuunt. l. 33. c. 1.*

But here instead of the word *Judices*, the learned Critick *Justus Lipsius* is rather willing to read [r] *Indices* (and we find the Letters *n* and *u* are frequently mistaken by Transcribers, the one for the other) which indeed seems as well suitable to the meaning, which the whole sentence aims at; for the former part thereof declares, that the *Rings* were the *Notes* or *Ensigns* of the middle (*viz. Equestrian*) *Degree*; and then according to *Lipsius* his correction of the word, the latter part runs thus; that the Name which formerly the military *Horses* gave, the *Notes* and *Indices* of wealth did afterwards (to wit in *Pliny*'s time) bestow.

r *De militia Romana. p. 32. Dialog. 5.*

And as the donation of a *Horse* was the ancienter badge of *Knighthood*, so were those to whom it was given, [s] saith *Justus Lipsius*, *most anciently, properly, and alone in times past called* Equites. The same *Lipsius* (reflecting on the twofold *Ensigns* of *Knighthood* among the *Romans*) makes a dichotomy of the *Equestrian Order*, into [t] *those who had a* publick Horse, *and others who had none*; but only the honor of wearing of a *Gold Ring*.

s *Lips. loco citato.*
t

In succeeding times, when the Custom was received of electing *Knights*, as well by bestowing of a *Gold Ring*, as formerly had been used by the single Ceremony of giving a *publick Horse* (yet still to those who had the *Equestrian Cense*) then was the number of these *Knights* very much increased; whereupon no *publick Horses* were afterwards assigned, but unto such as were ready to enter into the

the military service, and to fight in the Legions; and then also to such persons only, who were chosen [u] *out of the Body, Number, and Order of the* Knights, to wit, [w] *such as to whom there had not yet any* publick Horse *been assigned, but were only known to be of that Order, by wearing of a* Gold Ring. Those therefore to whom the *publick Horse* was then assigned, were thenceforth called *Legionary Knights*, from being [x] annexed and joined to the Legions by such donation; and likewise to distinguish them from the rest of the *Equestrian Order*, who had only received the honor of a *Gold Ring*; though they had not as yet taken upon them any martial employment.

[u] *Salmas. de re mil. Rom. p.* 239.
[w] *Ib. p.* 240.
[x] *Et p.* 231.

Hence we may observe, that all those who were of the *Equestrian Order*, were not employed in military service, or rather very few, in respect of the whole Body; but only such of them to whom a *publick Horse* was assigned, and had the peculiar Title given them of *Legionary Knights*, as aforesaid; being chosen from the entire body of the *Ordo Equestris*, to the end they might forthwith serve in the Legions.

Nor was every *Citizen*, whose wealth could entitle him to the *Equestrian Cense*, received into the *Equestrian Order*, for doubtless many concealed the just value of their Estates from the *Censor*, and so escaped the admission and inrollment; but whosoever were found possess'd of such a proportion of Riches and Substance, as would reach the *Equestrian Cense*, were constrain'd (if debauchery and vitiousness hindred not) to enroll themselves within that *Order*, and thereby become capable of receiving a *publick Horse*; as is evident from [y] *Livy*, in that which he relateth concerning *P. Æbutius*, the Son of a *Roman Knight*, where in favour to him, and recompence of his service, by whose (together with [z] *Hispalo Fessenia's*) means, the abominable Ceremonies, used in the nocturnal Feasts of *Bacchus*, were first discovered, the *Senate* decreed, [a] that the *Consul* should mind the *Tribunes* of the Commons, to prefer a Bill to the people for his exemption from all *military service*, and notwithstanding to allow him his Pension, as if the time of service which the Law required, had been accomplished; and moreover [b] *to prohibit the Censor from assigning to him a* publick Horse, *or compelling him to serve in the Wars, against his will.* By which it is manifest, that the *Censor* might force any man (in that time) who had the *Equestrian Cense*, to accept of a *Horse*, and constrain him to serve out (in the Legions) the time appointed by the Law; otherwise what needed so great endeavour to obtain such a prohibition? Howbeit *Salmasius* adds, [c] *that in the more ancient method of Election, constraint was not used.*

[y] *Lib.* 39.
[z] *cap.* 19.
[a]
[b]
[c] *De re mil. Rom. p.* 238.

This *Horse* (which first gave name to the *Knights*, as hath been before noted out of *Pliny*) was in relation to his service called [d] *Equus Militaris*, and from the annual allowance to keep him, *Equus publicus*. And after such time as the Office of *Censor* was instituted (which was in the [e] 310. year after the foundation of the *City*) this *Horse* [f] *was bestowed by the* Censor (which also is apparent from the case of *P. Æbutius*, cited by *Livy*, and mentioned a little before) and not as yet by the *Emperors*, who (it is true) in succeeding times gave the same, (which ought nevertheless to be distinguished from the *Horse* that the said *Emperors* gave among the *Præmia militaria*, and by and by touched upon) And it was so assigned by the *Censors*, as they were Judges of manners (as is well observed by [g] *Lipsius*,) for it was part of the *Censors* duty, [h] *to observe the lives and manners of every man, even of those who were of the* Senatorian *and* Equestrian Order; *and to brand* (if they saw cause) *any* Citizen *whatsoever with infamy.* And therefore were neither all persons, or those unadvisedly, inrolled for a *publick Horse*, but such only as could endure the test and examination of their reputation and good behaviour, and whose fair conversation and carriage, had given proof of their good and commendable life.

[d] *Godw. Anthol. Rom. Hist. p.* 29
[e] *Fastorum Rom. l.* 1. *vide Liv. l.* 4. *c.* 7. *& Rosin. Antiq. Rom. l.* 7. *c.* 10.
[f] *Idem Rosin. l.* 1. *c.* 10.
[g] *De mil. Rom. p.* 33. *dial.* 5.
[h] *Rosin. l.* 7. *c.* 10. *vide etiam Dion. Halicar. l.* 4.

Wherefore, as the aforesaid *Salmasius* observes, *Polybius* useth in this kind of Election, the word δοκιμάζειν, which comes from δοκέω, signifying to be in good repute and esteem, and δοκιμάζω, which signifies to prove, to examine, to enquire, &c. [i] *because they chose from the* Equestrian Order, *and from all the number of* Knights, *those of known virtue and of approved life, who might take Horsemans pay, and serve with* publick Horses, *and be inrolled in the Legions.* And

[i] *De re mil. Rom. p.* 238.

And as this power in judging of mens manners and behaviour in general, was placed in the *Censors*, so also did they of censuring, in particular, the *Knights* debaucheries and misearriages, if they were chargeable with any such, after their Election into the *Ordo Equestris*; for if they observed any thing in their lives, [k] *contrary to honesty and good report, they took away from them both* Horse *and* Ring, than which a greater disgrace and dishonor could not befall them.

For what cause withdrawn.

k *Rosin. l. 7. c. 10.*

The *Knights* were not only to be circumspect, as to their own demeanour, but also obliged to be careful of their *Horses*; for if upon the *Censors* review of the *publick Horses*, any were found poor and lean, or that the *Knight* kept him not well dreſt, and in good order, he who owned him [l] *was noted for negligence and carelesness*; [m] *and if the* Censors *saw any blemish or impediment in them, they forthwith took them away.*

l *A. Gell. Noctes Atticæ. l. 4. c. 12*
m *Lipsi. de re mil. Rom p. 33. Dial. 5.*

But such might be their Crime, that withdrawing the *Horse* was not thought an agreeable punishment, for we read in *Livy*, that the *Censors* did not only take away the *publick Horses* from the *Knights* who came off safe, after the defeat at *Cannæ*, but [n] *they removed them all from their own Tribes, and wholly dis-franchised them.* The like did the *Emperors*, when, in succeeding times, they took upon them to bestow the *publick Horses*, in such manner as the *Censors* had formerly used; among whom we find, that *Augustus* (after he had obtained his ten Coadjutors) exercised at one time, several of the powers belonging to the *Censors*, for [o] *he compelled every* Knight *to give an account of his life, and of those whose manners he approved not, he punished severe, and noted others with reproach and infamy, and many with admonition, but after various kinds.* So also *Caius Caligula*, who not only reviewed with some severity, the Musters of the *Equestrian Order*, but [p] *openly took from them their* Horses, *in whom was found any foul reproach or infamy.* And those who were less guilty, and culpable but of smaller faults, lost also their *dignity*, together with their *Horses*, albeit they avoided that publick note of disgrace, which the former underwent, from whom (as it is shewn) he openly, and in the face of all took away their *Horses*; for concerning these, the said *Suetonius* adds, [q] *He only passed over their Names in reading the Roll.* Now *Rosinus*, in laying down the manner and order used in ejecting such *Knights*, saith it was thus: A [r] recital being made by the *Censor* of all the *Knights*, that were inrolled in the *Ordo Equestris*, those whose names he omitted, [s] *were thereby understood to be deprived of that dignity.*

n *Lib. 4. c. 18.*
o *Sueton. in vita Aug. c. 39.*
p *Idem in vita Caii Cal. c. 16.*
q *Ibid.*
r s *Lib. 7. cap. 10.*

In the last place, where any of this *Order* had consumed their Patrimony, and had not an Estate left answerable to the *Equestrian Cense*, they were reduced to the same condition with those, who (for some great mis-behaviour) were deprived of the *publick Horse*, and *Gold Ring*, [t] *and cast into the lowest rank and Order*, being thenceforth reckon'd among the *Plebeians.*

t *Rosin. l. 1. c. 17.*

When the Legionary *Knights* had accomplished the full time of service in the Wars, appointed by the Law, and that the *publick Horse* had not for any crime or mis-demeanour of the Owner (all that while) been taken away from him, then was he delivered back to the *Censor*; the manner whereof is thus taken notice of by [u] *Plutarch. It was the custom* (saith he) *with the Knights of* Rome, *when they had served in the Wars the time appointed by the Law, to bring their* Horses *into the* Forum, *before the* Duumvirs (who were called *Censors*) *and giving an account under whom, and what Generals, or Captains, they had served, thereupon to be dismissed from further service in the Wars:* an example whereof, the same *Plutarch* relates to have been given by *Pompey* himself, which was briefly thus.

In what manner returned back.

u w *In vita Pompeii.*

[w] When the two Censors *Gellius* and *Lentulus* had placed themselves in the *Forum*, to view the *Knights* that were to appear before them, *Pompey* came from the farther end thereof, leading his *Horse* in his hand by the Bridle (all the Ensigns of a *Consul* being carried before him) and passed by the Bars where the *Censors* sat, who seeing him so obedient in the observation of the Law, gave him great respect, after which the senior *Censor* thus examined him. *Pompey the Great*, I desire you to tell me, whether you have served so long in the Wars as the Law doth enjoin? To which he answered, that he had, and under no other Captain than himself; whereupon the *Censors* rose up from their Seats, and accompanied him home to his House.

Justus

x *De mil. Rom. p. 35. Dial. 5.*

Justus Lipsius[x] exhibits the Reverse of a *Coyn*, which he refers to the Emperor *Claudius*, as made upon his reviewing of the *Legionary Knights*, whereon is drawn the *Censor* sitting in the *Forum*, and a *Knight* leading his *Horse* up to him, and underneath is this word CENSOR inscribed; which since I have not met with in any other *Author*, who writes concerning the *Roman Coyns*, I thought necessary to mention in this place; together with another *Roman Coyn* given us by *Hubertus Goltzius*.[y] This latter might possibly be stamped by *M. Tullius Decula*; who was *Consul* with *Cneus Cornelius Dolabella*, in the [z] 672. year after the foundation of the *City*.

y *Rom & Græc. Monumenta p. 165.*

z *Fastorum Rom. l. 1. sub finem.*

And although on the Reverse the *Censor* is not to be seen sitting in the *Forum*, as in the former, yet there is a Figure representing a *Knight* leading his Horse, and in the very same posture as before, which doubtless was design'd by *Tullius Decula*, to represent the manner of bringing a *publick Horse* to a review before the *Censors*; and to strengthen this conjecture, there is insculped on the other side, the Effigies of *Servius Tullus*, the Sixth King of *Rome*. For in regard the *Tullian Family* is said to be descended from *Servius Tullus*, in remembrance thereof, his head was stamped thereupon. Yet certainly this was not all, but that as well the Reverse was designed, to perpetuate the memory of the same King's instituting the *Cense*, and ordaining a *publick Horse* to be given to the *Roman Knights*, whereon to serve in the Wars. Albeit I am not ignorant that the learned Commentator upon the Duke of *Croy's* Coyns (among which is set forth the very same piece) likes rather to have it represent a *Consular Horse*, led by a Groom; but he gives neither remarque nor observation of the use, custom, or occasion for a Consular Horse to be so led.

We shall close our discourse concerning the *publick Horse*, as it was the *principal Ensign* of the *Equestrian Degree*, with this observation; That amongst the *Roman Inscriptions*, collected by the great industry of [a] *Janus Gruterus*, there are several written thus, *Equo publico honoratus*, *Equo publico donatus*, *ornatus*, *exornatus*, which at first sight may seem to infer, that this *publick Horse* was bestowed as an *Ensign* of *Knighthood*, and the person thereby admitted into the *Equestrian Dignity*.

a *Inscript. Antiq. orbis Rom.*

But these expressions ought more rightly to be referr'd to the *præmia militaria*, with which the *Emperors* used to recompense some particular service done, by the honor of such a gift; and therefore we conceive it necessary here to insert that cautionary note, which *Salmasius* gives in this very case. [b] *Wheresoever we read of any that have been honor'd or adorn'd with a* Publick Horse, *it must be understood not of him who served with a* publick Horse, *and really took Horsemans pay, but of him on whom this honor had been bestowed by the Emperor.*

b *De re mil. Rom. p. 240.*

From this learned *Author* we shall add a further observation; that *Equus publicus* (which doth often occur in old Monuments and Inscriptions) is by a wondrous, but nevertheless an accustomed speech among the *Romans*, taken for the person himself, [c] *qui Equo publico meret*, that is, for one of the *Equestrian Order*, or that served with a *publick Horse*; but *qui Equo publico donatus*, for one, to whom a *publick Horse* had been given by the *Emperor*, as an honorary reward.

c *Ibid.*

2. A Gold Ring.

Another *Ensign* of the *Equestrian Order* was a *Ring*: a *Ring* in Latin is called *Annulus*, *à Circuitu*, from the roundness of its figure, whereby the Finger, as with a Crown is incircled; It is also taken diminutively from *Annus* the year, from its circulating within it self: but the *Græcians* have derived its name from the *Finger*, *viz.* that part of the body whereon it is worn, and called it δακτύλιον.

That it hath been very anciently used, is undeniable, seeing the Author of the Book of [d] *Genesis* hath noted *Pharaoh* to have taken off his *Ring* (then esteemed one of his *Kingly Ensigns*) and put it upon *Josephs* hand.

d *C. 41. v. 42.*

We shall not need here to exhibit the (even almost innumerable) forms and fashions of *Rings*, or other their various uses, as little relating to our present purpose: But forasmuch as the *Gold Ring* hath been used and taken as an *Ensign* of the *Equestrian Order*, and consequently reputed as a Symbol of *Honor*, among the *Romans*; as such, it falls within what we design, and therefore we shall here note a few things in relation thereunto.

When

When the custom of wearing *Rings* began first to be taken up at *Rome*, *Pliny* affirms, that the ancient *Romans* wore only the *Iron Ring*, [e] *it being accounted by them the Ensign of* Military Virtue. Nor were then *Rings* worn by any other, but by those [f] *who had received them upon a publick account*. This use of *Iron Rings* continued a great while amongst them, as is manifest from the same *Author*, who also saith, [g] *that it was a long time e're the* Roman Senators *did wear any of Gold*. And therefore all the while the *Senate* wore only *Iron Rings*, it cannot be supposed, that any of the *Equestrian Order* should wear those of *Gold*; and consequently in those elder Ages, the *Gold Ring* was not received, or reputed as an *Ensign* of their *Knightly Degree*.

e, f, g *Lib 33.c.1. in princ.*

Howbeit in process of time, we find *Gold Rings* were also drawn into use among the *Romans*; yet when they were so, we observe it was not lawful for men of any Degree to wear them, but only those to whom their use was restrained; as appears from *Dion* the Historian, who alledgeth, [h] *That none of the ancient Romans, except the* Senators *and* Knights, *were permitted to wear* Gold Rings. And now was it that the *Gold Ring* became enobled among them, when assumed by these two Orders, which included all the *Roman Nobility*.

h *Vide Cæl. Rhod. Lect. Antiq. l. 6. c. 12. prope finem, ex Dione.*

These *Rings* (saith *Isidore*) were given at the publick charge, [i] *but not without manifest distinction*; [k] *for to the* Senators *Rings were given, set with precious stones*, to others (to wit the *Knights*) those made of massie Gold: which were so called (saith *Licetus*) [l] *because they were not made hollow to receive Gems into them*.

i, k *In Originibus. l. 19. c. 32.*
l *De Annul. Antiq. c. 137.*

But more particularly, the *Gold Ring* was another *Ensign* of the *Equestrian Order*; [n] *Annuli planè medium ordinem Plebi & Patribus inserere*. Here *Pliny* notes it for the Symbol of the middle Degree, inserted between the *Senators* and *Plebeians*, which was that of the [o] *Equites*, as hath been before shewed.

n *Plin. l. 33. c. 1. in finem.*
o *Appian l. 2. de Bellis Civilibus.*

The Learned *Salmasius* interpreting a place in *Pliny*, immediately following that before cited, to wit, [p] *Quod antea militares Equi nomen dederunt, hoc nunc pecuniæ Judices tribuunt*, saith, that his meaning can be only this, [q] That all persons who had an *Equestrian Censè*, that is, an Estate of Equestrian value, did comport themselves as *Knights*, and (when afterwards they) were elected into that *Order* (it was) from and by virtue of the *Censè* alone, [r] *whose Ensign was a* Gold Ring. Hereupon the *Ordo Equestris* became conferr'd by the publick Donation and acceptation of a *Gold Ring*, as formerly was wont to be done by the giving of a *Horse*.

p *L. 33. c. 1. sub finem.*
q *Salm. de re milit. Rom. p. 239.*
r *Idem, in fine; & in proxima pag. qui designabuntur Annuli aurei gestamine.*

And we also observe, that *Tacitus* doth use the phrase promiscuously, *Equestri dignitate donare*, and *Annulo honorare*, to give the Dignity of *Knighthood*, and to bestow honor with the gift of a *Gold Ring*: as where he tells us, [s] that when the Army intreated *Vitellius* to make *Asiaticus*, his Freedman, a *Knight*, he represt their unbeseeming flattery; but soon after (such was the ficklenes of his mind) at a private Banquet (which [t] *Suetonius* saith was in Supper-time, on the first day of his Empire) he gave him what before he had deny'd, *and honor'd him with* Gold Rings.

s *Hist. l. 2. c. 20.*
t *In vita Vitel. c. 12.*

Thus we see that at length Slaves were created *Knights*, and the *Jus Annulorum*, to wit, the right of wearing a *Gold Ring*, was given to Freedmen, no less than to Freeborn men.

But if it be inquired, why *Tacitus* here useth the word *Annulis* in the plural, *Turnebus* will give the reason, *viz.* [u] *That some of the Ancients who were more sumptuous and gallant, had two kinds of Rings*; to wit, *one for Summer, and another for Winter*; and I (saith he) should judge those for *Winter* to have been of greater weight, the other for *Summer* more light; and he groundeth his opinion upon the first and seventh Satyrs of *Juvenal*, who in the one calls such Rings *Æstivos*, or Summer Rings, and in the other *Semestres*, or six Months Rings.

u *Adverf. l. 20. c. 2.*

Statius shewing that mean extraction hindred no man from attaining to Honor, and that Freedmen and Servants (known by wearing of an *Iron Ring*) had assumed at their manumission the *Gold Ring* and *Equestrian Dignity* (whereby they became equal to others of high birth) and left off the use of the *Iron Ring*, hath these elegant Verses.

w *Lib. 3. Sylvar. de Lachr. Hetrusci.*

——w *Tenuesq; nihil minuere parentes,*
Atque idem in Cuneos populusq; cum dixit Equestres,
Mutavitq; genus, lævæq; ignobile ferrum
Exuit, & celso natorum æquavit honore.

* *Domitius.*

Whereupon, one of his learned * Commentators gives an instance in *Claudius Etruscus*, (whom *Vespasian* had advanced from the condition of a Freedman, to the *Equestrian Order*) and notes, *that the said Emperor caused him to put off the* Iron Ring, *which Servants and Freedmen used to wear, and to put on a* Gold Ring, *the note or mark of* Knightly Dignity.

x *Hist. Aug. Scriptores. p. 483.*

Salmasius upon the words of *Aurelius Victor*, cited by *Julius Capitolinus* in the life of *Macrinus*, viz. *donatum Annulis aureis*, saith thus, x *Freedmen* (and such a one was *Macrinus*) *upon whom* Gold Rings *were bestowed, were thereby made* Knights: besides he there cites the above-mentioned Verses of *Statius*, and thence infers, that *Claudius Etruscus*, the person of whom the *Poet* spake, was a Freedman, whose condition the *Emperor* had so changed, that of a Freedman he became a *Knight*, *and for* y Iron Rings, *such as Freedmen did wear, he gave those of* Gold, *which were the proper* Ensigns *of* Knights. At length he positively concludes; z *That whereas* Knights *were high-born, nevertheless he, who having laid aside his* Iron Rings, *and put on those of* Gold *bestowed on him by the Emperor, was equal to them in honor.* Agreeable hereunto is that of *Fremishemius*, a *the* Gold Ring *was the proper* Ornament *of* Knights, *to the end they that were honored therewith from the Emperor, should be understood to be taken and received into the* Equestrian Order.

y } z } *Ibid.*

a *Notis in L. Flor. l. 1. c. 5.*

For the donation of the *Gold Ring* did bestow upon slaves such Priviledges and Immunities, as if they had been free-born; who being now freed from service, b *ingenuitatis jura consequebantur*, did thereby not only obtain the rights of Freeborn men, but encrease of Honors; c *living in such sort, that they were to bear Magistracy and Honors, and to sustain all Offices of freeborn Citizens, like other Freemen.* And more particularly, d *were also esteemed to have attained unto the* Equestrian Order, *or enjoyed the Priviledges equal thereunto.* And all this meerly from the donation and permission of the use of the *Gold Ring*, upon receiving of which they e left off wearing the *Iron Ring*, that being then (though not anciently) f a badge of servitude and slavery; and g rejecting their old name also, they assumed that of *Knight*.

b *Salmuth. in Pancirol. Tit. 58. p. 313.*
c *Alex. ab Alex. in Genial. Dier. l. 2. c. 19. in fine.*
d } *Salmuth.*
e } *Loco cit.*
f *Isidor. in Orig. l. 19. c. 32.*
g *Alex ab Alex loco cit.*

It distinguished the Knights from the Senators and Plebeians.

But as this noble Symbol, the *Gold Ring*, was an *Ensign* of the *Equestrian Order*, so was it also one of the notes or signs of distinction, to difference them from the two other Degrees, namely, *Senatorian* and *Plebeian*.

And first, though anciently while the *Senators* wore plain Gold Rings, we confess the *Knights* Rings being plain also, carried not a sufficient distinction; nevertheless after such time as the *Senators* began to adorn their Rings with Gems and precious Stones, (as is before noted) was the difference evident enough.

Secondly, they were also worn to distinguish the *Equestrian Order* from the *Plebeian*; and that the *Knights* used them to that end, is evident from h many *Authors*, in regard the *Plebeians* had permission to wear no other than Rings of Iron. The difference among the *Rings* of these three *Orders* is thus observed by *Licetus*, i *Gold Rings set with precious stones were given to the* Senators *only, plain Rings without stones to the* Knights, *and Iron Rings to the* Plebeians, which the said *Author* here calls *Ferrei Militares*, because the aforesaid Degrees at first used the Iron Ring, k *to shew themselves good Soldiers and expert in Arms.* But after such time as the *Gold Ring* was appropriate to the *Equestrian Order*, the people continued the custom of wearing the *Iron Ring* only; for albeit they enjoy'd the priviledge of free birth, yet because they wanted Nobility they might not wear *Gold Rings*, but rest contented with those of *Iron*.

h *Plin l. 33. c. 1. sub fine, Rosin. de Antiq. Rom. c. 17. Salmuth. in Pancirol. Tit. 58. Salmas de re mil. Rom p. 240. Cl. Fauchet. Origines de Chevall. Armoiries & Heraux. p. 2.*
i *De Annulis Antiq p 136.*
k *Ibid.*

But at length grew into common use.

We are informed by *Appian*, that one of the Ornaments of a *Tribune*, was likewise a *Gold Ring*; *the Tribunes* (saith he) *wore* Gold Rings, *among the Soldiers, when other inferiors wore those of Iron*; and lest it should be doubted that the word

word ἐλαττόνων might refer to those of the *Equestrian Order*; *Justus Lipsius* clears this place, saying, [l] *that the words of* Appian *were meant only of the* Infantry, *in regard the* Knights *were of equal rank and dignity with the* Tribunes.

l *De mil. Rom. l.2. p.87.*

At length, in the middle times of the Empire, it appears that the Foot Soldiers were also allowed the honor of wearing *Gold Rings*, no less than *Knights*; for [m] *Herodian* affirms, that *Severus* (among other Priviledges granted by him to his Soldiers) was the first, of all the *Roman Emperors*, who permitted them the use of *Gold Rings*. And afterwards, in times of greater liberty, the use of them grew far more frequent and promiscuous; insomuch (as [n] *Alexander ab Alexandro* noteth) *that not only the Roman Soldiers without distinction, but at length the Freedmen, as also Women, and the meanest Slaves, were allowed to wear* Gold Rings, *which formerly was not lawful.*

m *L.3.c.25.*

n *In Genial. Dier. l.2 c.19.*

Among the Interpreters of *Lucius Florus*, we find that *Zevecotius* upon these words [o] *Modii duo Annulorum Carthaginem missi, dignitasq; Equestris taxata mensurâ*, whereby *Florus* observes, that from these two measures of *Rings*, the *Carthaginians* did judge how many *Roman Knights* were slain at the Battel of *Cannæ*; we say the said *Zevecotius* hath this observation; for the dishonor received at this overthrow, unto the time of *Severus* the Emperor, the use of *Gold Rings* was not granted in warlike Expeditions, but only to the *Tribunes*; and to others those of *Iron*, which exclusion of the *Roman Knights*, he conceives included in the word *cæteris*; but what ground he hath for this opinion we know not, since we find no such remark in any ancient *Author*.

o *Lib.2.c.6.*

For had the *Equestrian Order*, after the said Battel, been prohibited the use of *Gold Rings* abroad, until the time of *Severus*, doubtless *Herodian* had then mentioned them to have received, not a donation, but restauration of this priviledge from *Severus*; besides, those he speaks of were στρατιῶται only the *Foot Soldiers*, not *Knights*; moreover it was the donation of a thing ἃ μὴ πρότερον εἶχον, *which they never before enjoyed.* And therefore most certain it is, he could not intend the *Knights* here; since they from ancient time had enjoy'd, and (for ought we can find to the contrary) did to this time, and beyond, continue the wearing of *Gold Rings* abroad, no less than at home.

To conclude, that which seems very much to perswade, that the use of *Gold Rings* was grown promiscuous, long e're these times, to wit, before the Battel of *Cannæ*, is this following passage of *Pliny*; [p] *That there was a promiscuous use of* Gold Rings *in the second* Punick *War*; and his reason is this, [q] *If they had not been at that time worn by others, as well as* Knights, Hannibal *could not have sent those three Measures of* Rings *to* Carthage.

p *Lib. 33.*
q *cap. 1.*

But *L. Florus*, an ancienter Author than *Pliny*, is clear (in the place above cited) that it was only they of the *Equestrian Order*, who (by those Measures of *Rings*) were known to be slain neer *Cannæ*, and not any other; and that there were but two Measures of them, not three, as *Pliny* reporteth; so that *Pliny* grounding his opinion for the confused or indifferent use of *Gold Rings*, upon the number of those Measures they are said to fill, which number by an *Author* more ancient is affirmed to be less; we conceive, this deduction of his hath not weight enough to be relyed on.

SECT. VII.

The Ensigns *and* Ornaments *of* Knighthood *among other* Nations.

FRom the *Romans* we shall pass to other Nations, and first to the *Germans*; among whom, as *Tacitus* affirms, the *Shield* and *Launce* were accounted the grand *Badges* of *Military Honor*, or *Knighthood*, and accordingly given their young *Gentlemen* that were to be admitted to so honorable a Dignity: [r] *for it was not the custom* (saith he) *for any one among them to take Arms, before the State*

1. Shield and Launce.

r *Tacit. de mor. rib. Germ. c.13.*

had approved him able to manage them; but then in their publick Assemblies, some Prince, or the Father, or else a Kinsman of the young man, adorn'd him with a Shield *and* Launce (and whom they termed in their Language [f] **Knecht**) to which *Tacitus* also adds, [t] *That this Investiture was the Gown among them; and the first honor bestowed upon their youth.*

f *Camb. Brit. p.* 125.
t *Loco cit.*

This also saith [u] *Cambden*, was the first and most simple manner of creating a *Knight*. This the *Lombards*, this the *Franks*, and this our *Country-men*, all descending out of *Germany*, in old time used: and was to us (in the opinion of the learned [w] Sir *Henry Spelman*) the Foundation of the *Knightly Order*.

u *Loco super. relat.*
w *Glossar. verbo* Miles.

Much like that of the ancient *Germans*, was the custom of making *Knights* among the old *Irish*: for either the [x] *King*, or *Father* of the young man created him a *Knight*; and if his *Father* were dead, then the next of *Kin* did it; and the manner of creation was thus: [y] A *Shield* was hung upon a Pole or Stake, fixt in the ground, and a small *Launce* or *Spear* (such as the *Youth* design'd to this honor could weild) was given to him, and therewith he ran a Tilt at the *Shield*, and the more he broke of these *Launces*, the greater reputation he gain'd.

x } *Froissard. Hist. l.* 3. *c* 63.
y }

[z] *Andrew Favin* notes, that the *Shield* and *Launce* were the proper Arms appertaining heretofore to a *French Knight*, and therefore in their *Capitularies*, called *Arma Patria*; these, *Esquires* carried always after their Masters, wheresoever they went, and what occasion soever they were engaged in.

z *In le Theatre d' Hon. l.* 1. *c.* 2.

And it is an Observation of *Cl. Salmasius*, in relation to the Nobility and Gentry of *France*, [a] that at this day all the Ensigns and Marks of *Honor*, appertaining to persons of highest extraction, are *Equestrian*, and take denomination from the *Equestrian Militia*: and that the *Shields* and *Scutes* (as they are vulgarly called) in which the Arms of the Nobility are exprest, are [b] *Equestrian Targets*, not *Shields* or *Bucklers* of Foot Soldiers.

a *De re milit. Rom. p.* 227. *in princ.*
b *Ibid.*

The form of the *Equestrian Targets* among the *Romans*, were inclining to an Oval, as may be seen by those cut upon *Trajans Column* at *Rome*; after which Figure, divers of our Nobility and Gentry have of late times also fashioned the Escotcheons, whereon their Arms are born: but the figure of our more ancient Escotcheons, came neerer that description which [c] *Livy* gives us of the *Samnites Shields, whose upper parts were broader, and the head of an even height, for defence of the breast and shoulders, but growing narrower and narrower, towards the bottom, finished in a point.*

c *Lib* 9. *circa finem.*

2. Belt.

Another *Ensign* and *Ornament* of *Knightly Honor* is the *Cingulum militare*, or *Military Belt*, called also *Balteus*, or *Baltheus*, which *Varro* saith is a [d] *Tuscan* word, and signifies a *Military Girdle*. That which the *Roman Soldiers* wore, was made of [e] *Leather*, and adorn'd with Studs or Bosses (from whom it devolv'd to the *Germans* and *Franks*) and is in like manner described by [f] *Favin*, to be made of a large Thong of white Leather, having the ends pure Gold, covered and fastened with Studs of the same metall, to which the Sword was made fast on the left side.

d *L.* 18. *Rer. hum.*
e *Varro l.* 4. *de Lingua Lat.*
f *Theat. d' Hon. l.* 1. *c.* 6.

With him doth another *French* Writer concur, saying, that the [g] *Incincture* was made of a large Thong of Leather, and was termed *Balteus*, and by the *French* a *Baudrier*, which *Favin* affirms to be so called of the old *French* also.

g *Claude Fauchet, en les Origines des Chevaliers, &c. fo.* 2.

[h] *Rudolphus* Abbot of St. *Trudon* in *Germany*, speaking concerning the finding of the Body of St. *Gereon* Knight and Martyr, at *Colen*, in the Monastery of St. *Pantaleon*, saith that his *Military Girdle* was found to that time whole and entire, and that it was of black Leather, almost an Ell long: But his *Sword* was consumed, and only the pomel (of the form of an Egg) almost eaten up with rust, was likewise found at his left side nigh to his *Belt*.

h *Apud Jo. Jac. Chifletium in Anast. Childerici Regis. p.* 197.

This Ensign of Honor came in time to be richly adorned both with Gold and precious Stones, as *Favin* also notes [i] in another place of his *Theatre of Honor*, out of St. *Gregory Victor* Arch-Bishop of *Tours*: as also that it was not the common wearing Girdle, inasmuch as the *French* in general used golden Girdles; but that the *Knights* wore such as were garnished with great Buckles, Studs, and Rings of pure Gold, being of great price and value; to shew their dignity and power in *Military Commands*: and with such a *Belt* [k] set with Pearls and precious Stones, was young *Athelstan* (afterwards one of our *Saxon* Kings) girded, when he received *Knighthood* from his Grandfather *Alfred*.

i *L.* 3. *c.* 1.
k *Malmsb. de gest. Reg. l.* 2. *c.* 6.

It

It is to be further noted, that by this *Badge* of *Knighthood*, were our *Knights* anciently known, no less than by their gilt Swords, Spurs, and golden Collars of SS. howbeit it hath not for a long time been used with us, at the creation of a *Knight*, save only of the *Bath*; but instead thereof, the dubbing with a naked Sword sufficeth.

3. Sword.

To this *Belt* was also added a *Sword*, and such a one, as in the esteem of some, was different from the ordinary use, and therefore is by *Favin* termed [l] *the Sword of a Knight*. In time of Christianity this *Sword* came to be *hallowed* with great Ceremony, either by some great Prelate, or other Ecclesiastical Person: the form of the *Benediction* is to be found in the [m] *Titles of Honor*, and in *Favins* [n] *Theatre of Honor*.

l *Théat. d'Honneur. l. 1. c. 6.*
m *Pag. 781.*
n *Loco cit.*

This among the *Ensigns* of *Knightly Honor hath* obtained the principal place and regard; for it is chiefly the *Sword* with which *Knights* are now created; and hath become so far ennobled, that the *Red Cross* assumed by the [o] *Knights of St. James* in *Spain* for their Badge of Honor, is drawn in the fashion of a *Sword*. And the Collar of the *Order* of the *Sword and Belt* in *Sweden* is composed of *Swords* bloody at the point, and encompassed about with Leathern *Belts*; the manner and order whereof may be seen in the Plate prefixt to the third Chapter ensuing.

o *Francisc. de Rades y Andrada en Chronic. Sanctiago. c. 1. p. 1. b. & c. 4. p. 6. b. videsis Historia de los Ordines Militares per Fr. Caro de Torres. l. 1. p. 9. b.*

Another eminent Badge of *Knighthood* (which succeeded in the place of the *Gold Ring*) is the *Golden Spurs*, wherewith at the time of their Creation *Knights* were wont to be adorn'd; and [r] these (a little after the Conquest) were added to the other Ensigns, for more and greater Ornament, and are usually carried by a Nobleman at the Coronation of our *Kings*, to signifie their *Knighthood*.

4. Spurs.
r *Fr. Menen. Delic. Equest. Edit. Colon. Agrip. p. 13.*

Those *Spurs* appointed to be made against Christmas, *Anno Domini* 1252. and sent to *York*, to be used there, at the Knighthood of *Alexander* the Third, King of *Scots*, were of Silver, [s] gilt over, and the Straps curiously wrought of Silk, instead of Leather.

s *Claus. an. 36. H. 3. m. 30.*

They were usually put on after the person had been conducted and presented to the *King* or *Prince*, who gave the Honor, beginning with the right Heel; and given to signifie, [u] that the new made *Knight* should not only declare his valour by his *Sword*, but also by the management of his *Horse*; which he should encourage and excite with his *Spurs* to the carrying on of his valiant designs.

u *Théat. d'Honneur. l. 1. c. 6.*

Of so great an esteem hath the *Knightly Spurs* been, that from thence, [w] *Knights Batchellors* are generally called in Latin *Equites Aurati*, among the *Germans* **Ritterdess Gulden Sporns**, and with us heretofore [x] *Knights of the Spur*. Nay one of the *Military Orders* was instituted under this Title: and the [y] Collar of the *Order* of the *Elephant* in *Denmark*, is (according to [z] *Franciscus Mennenius*) composed of *Elephants* and *Spurs*. It was conceived so proper and suitable a *Badge* of *Knighthood*, that it has been thought fit to be given for Coat Armour, to some Families here in *England*, who bear the Sur-name of *Knight*: as namely to [a] *Knight* of *Shrewsbury* [I.] [b] *Knight* of *Charwelton* in the County of *Northampton* [II.] and [c] *Knight* of St. *Dennis* in *Hampshire* [III].

w *Seld. Tit. of Honor. p. 437.*
x *Rot. Parl. 3. E. 4.*
y, z *Delic. Equest. p. 150.*
a *Registrum Armor. partium borealium Angliæ, tempore Regis Hen. 8. penes Thom. nuper Com. Arundell & Sur.*
b *Inter Collect. Concess.*
c *Ibid.*

I II III

We

We further have it certified by the *Kings* and *Heralds* of Arms, *Anno* 10. *Jac. Regis*, among other rights belonging to the Degree of a *Knight Baneret*, that he [d] *upon the account of his Knighthood*, might wear *gilt Spurs*, as well as a *gilt Sword*: and that they have been accounted an Essential *Badge* of *Knighthood*, may be collected from the Ceremony of the degradation of a *Knight*, where his *gilt Spurs* are [e] first cut off with a Hatchet.

d *MS. in Offic. Armor.*

e *See the degradation of Sir Andr. Harclay in Seldens Titles of Honor, p.* 788.

5. Collar.

In the last place, although the use of wearing *Collars* of Gold hath been most ancient, and one of the usual causes for which they were bestowed, was to honor *Military Virtue*; and though among the *Romans*, the *Collar* gave a Sur-name to one of their chiefest *Families*, and consequently became of much esteem among them: yet do we no where find it reckoned among the *Ensigns* of their *Equestrian Order*: But among some other *Nations* it was accounted a Badge and Mark of *Knighthood*.

[f] *John Scheffer*, from a passage out of [g] *Pancirollus*, which tells us that *Golden Collars* were reckon'd among the *Ornaments*, worn by the *Roman Presidents* of *Provinces*, would likewise have it an *Ensign* of [h] *Knightly Dignity* among the *Germans*, affirming withall, [i] *that the more ancient Statues and Images of their* Knights, *were adorned with Collars*.

f *De Antiquorum Torquibus p.* 37.

g 1. *varior. c.* 10.

h { *Scheffer de*
i { *Antiq. Torq. p.* 38.

He also notes, as a thing observable, [k] *that this custom of bestowing* Collars *upon Martialists, was very much practised by the* Germans, *especially as to their* Knights; *and that in ancient times, such as were in repute for their gallantry and valour, were adorned therewith.*

k *Ibid. p.* 42.

It may be safely presumed, that *Collars* were Badges of *Knighthood* among the ancient *Gauls*, since they were bestowed upon valiant men, and such as had rendred themselves conspicuous by acts of Prowess and Chivalry, as a worthy recompence of their Virtue: And from *Pliny* it appears, that the ancient *Gauls* were wont to wear them in Fight, for as the said *Scheffer* notes upon [m] his words, no other thing can be understood by the word *Auro* than *Torques*.

m *Gallos cum auro pugnare solitos, Torquatus indicio est. Plin l.* 33. *c.* 1.

The like may be said of the ancient [n] *Britans*, *Danes*, and *Goths*, among whom it was customary to wear them, as denoting such as were remarkable for their valour.

n *Scheff. Syntag. p* 56, 57, *&* 58.

But in later times, it was the peculiar Fashion of *Knights* among us, to wear *Golden Collars*, composed of *SS*, or other various works; so that those Monuments are known to belong to *Knights*, on whose Portraictures such *Ornaments* are now found.

To conclude, we must acknowledge that this *noble Ensign* hath been likewise honored with a particular and high estimation among the *Founders* of *Military Orders*, since it is manifest from [o] *Francis Capre*, that the *Order* of *Savoy* was at first called, *The Order of the Collar*, and not by the Title of the [p] *Annunciade*, until the year 1518. as will more amply appear by and by.

o { *Catalogue*
p { *des Chevaliers de l'Ordre du Collier de Savoy dist. de l'annonciade.*

So that if we sum up the principal *Ensigns* of *Knighthood*, ancient, and modern, we shall find them to have been, or are, a *Horse*, *Gold Ring*, *Shield*, and Launce, a *Belt* and *Sword*, *gilt Spurs*, and a *Gold Chain* or *Collar*.

But from these have later Ages, more especially, selected the *Belt*, or *golden Girdle*, *Sword*, *Collar*, *Spurs*, and *Rings*; all which we find innumerated, and particularly called the *Ornaments* and *Ensigns* appertaining to *Knighthood*, in some Imperial Diplomas, and wherewith the Emperor is therein said to have adorned and invested his new created *Knight*, according to Custom; as for instance, that of *Rodolph* the Second, granted to Sir *Robert Sherley*, and dated at *Prague*, the second of *June* 1610. of which a fuller account may be taken in [q] *Purchas his Pilgrimage*, where the Imperial Instrument (containing also the creating of him an *Earl Palatine* of the *Empire*, and bestowing sundry Priviledges and Prerogatives therewith, worthy of knowing) is translated *verbatim*.

q *Part.* 2. *l.* 10. *p.* 806.

The Author of the *Jurisprudentia Heroica* has afforded an Example in this kind, in another Diploma of the same *Emperors*, made to [r] Sir *Charles Billehe*, dated at *Vienna* the eleventh of *February*, *anno* 1594. And there is a priviledge usually granted in these Diplomas, that the *Knights* shall in all Exercises, Actions, and

r *Pag.* 403.

and Enterprises, use and wear *Chains*, *Swords*, *Spurs*, *Robes*, *Trappings*, and whatsoever Furniture else belonging to *Horses*, either all Gold or gilt.

The *Trappings* here mentioned put us in mind of a passage in [f] *Pliny*, whence it may be conjectured, that *Horse-Trappings* were sometime heretofore accounted part of the *Ensigns* of a *Roman Knight*; for, having told us that one *Flavius* a man of mean birth, had ingratiated himself with the *Commons*, by publishing the Mystery of the whole course of days, pleadable and not pleadable, which his Master *Appius Claudius Cæcus* had discovered to him; he adds, that a Bill passed by general consent, to create him *Ædilis Curulis*, together with *Q. Anicius*, without any regard had to those other, who, being nobly born, had likewise stood for that *Dignity*: And that at the same time he was also made *Tribunus Plebis*, at which the whole *Senate* took such offence, that they laid aside their *Rings*, and some thought (but were mistaken) that the *Knights* did the like, nay believed further, that they left off their *Horse-Trappings*, as if from them the name of *Knight* had been bestowed; and consequently the *Phaleræ*, no less than the *Annuli*, or *Equi*, were accounted *Badges* of the *Equestrian Order*, after they were drawn into fashion and use. [f] *Lib. 33. c. 1. circa medium.*

However we may suppose, that the publick *Horse*, if at first, was not afterwards given naked; but with such accoutrements and furniture, as were both for use and ornament in War: the fashion whereof may be observed among those Sculptures upon *Trajans Column* at *Rome*, a Draught whereof was first made by *Julio Romano*, then set forth by *Franciscus Villamena*; and last of all, after a long and retchless neglect (these Plates being thrown by, and welnigh spoil'd with rust and carelesness) were happily brought to light and repaired, by the care and expence of my noble Friend, accomplished with great variety of useful and ingenious knowledge, *John Evelyn* Esquire, during his residence at *Rome*.

SECT. VIII.

Qualifications for Knighthood.

AS touching the *Qualifications* which formerly made persons capable of this Honor of *Knighthood*, the principal and most remarkable were these three, *Merit*, *Birth*, and *Estate*.

In the right distribution of this Honor and Dignity, *Merit* has been by all allowed to challenge a principal share; and the deserving judged fittest to be preferr'd, before those who wanted that Qualification. 1. Merit.

Among the *Romans*, no Soldier was denyed or envyed his part in the Prizes of Honor or Recompence, to wit, that sort of *Crown*, or such other of the *Military Rewards* which their valour had deserved; and not only their Emperors, but all other Princes found the advantage of conferring benefits on the meritorious, in being thereby best served: For those who have shewed themselves inclined to noble and valiant Actions, having once tasted the sweet of Reward, are generally so encouraged, as no danger hath seem'd too great to attempt, no enterprise so difficult but might be made feasible. But of this subject there is so much spoke, and to be met with almost every where, that we need not add more.

As to the second Qualification, namely, *Birth*; there was so great care taken, that (saith [w] *Andrew Favin*) to prevent the admittance of any, not of eminent and generous Extraction, into this Dignity; of the *Ordinances* made concerning the Order of *Knighthood*, the first Article is, *That the parties who enter thereinto, ought first to make it appear they be* Gentlemen *of three paternal descents; and that the Arms they bear have been born by their Fathers, Grandfathers, and great-Grandfathers.* 2. Birth. [w] *In le Theatre d'Hon. l. 1. c. 1.*

It was also the Law of the Empire, *That no man should be capable of this Dignity, but*

but he that was descended from one, who was Miles (*which Mr.* Selden *interprets not by* Knight, *but* Gentleman, *or* Nobilis) as appears by the *Constitution* of *Frederick* the Second, elected Emperor *anno* 1212. and mentioned in the [x] *Titles of Honor*; and perhaps there was an Eye had to this *Law*, in the Sentences upon the following Cases.

x *Pag.* 436.

Nor hath it been (by some) accounted sufficient, that the person Knighted should be a *Gentleman* by the Fathers side, unless he were so also by the Mothers, at least she was to be a Free-woman, and not a Servant: [y] for if she were a Servant or Bond-woman, though the Father were a Gentleman, the Children were still ranked within the Degree of Servitude, and [z] counted incapable of the Knightly Dignity.

y *Jo. Tilius Comment. de Rebus Gallicis l.2.p.181. vide Mennen. Delic. Equest. p.23.*
z *In Servum autem non cadit Equestris Dignitas. Ib.*

Heretofore the conferring of *Knighthood* was not restrained to the Soveraign power, as now it is; but that the greater Subjects did sometime make *Knights*: But where the honor hath been given by such, to those who were Vassals to another, the bestowing thereof was accounted illegal, and they that took upon them to give it, were liable to censure; because by this action they took anothers Villain or Bondman from him, which was a manifest wrong, and ought not to be done. As in the case of the two Sons of [a] *Philip de Bourbon*, one whereof was Knighted by the Earl of *Flanders*, the other by the Earl of *Nevers*: Whereupon by an Order dated on *All-Saints* day, *Anno Domini* 1279. and another at *Whitsuntide* following, both the said Earls were fined, and the two Brethren condemned to pay one thousand pounds apiece; though by the *King's* grace and favour they kept their *Knighthoods*.

a *Jo. Tilius Comment. p.* 182.

And to shew that this *Law* was elsewhere observed more strictly, and the breach thereof liable to more severe sentences, those among the [b] *Aragonians* that descended from *Knights* in a direct line by the Fathers side (which were called *Infançones*, and accounted *Gentlemen*, whether legitimate or illegitimate) were capable of being *Knights*, and no other: [c] So that if one, not an *Infançon*, were promoted to *Knighthood*, by a *Rico Hombre* (which seems to be a higher Degree of *Nobility*) both the *Rico Hombre* was to lose the Honor he had, and the person whom he pretended to promote, remained still a Villain or Plebeian.

b *Mennen.*
c *Delic. Equestr. p.25.*

But it was otherwise where a *Nobleman* Knighted his own Vassal, as in the case reported by [d] *Philip de Beau-manoir* in his *Customary* of the Year 1283. where the Son of a *Gentleman* and a Woman-Servant, was *Knighted* by him, whose Servant the Woman was: and his condition being afterwards discovered, the *Nobleman* would have challenged him for his Slave, but in regard his *Knightly Dignity* had vindicated him from servitude and vassallage (though his *Lord* was deceived in conferring the Honor) he was adjudged to remain free and a *Knight*; which he could not have done, if any other but his *Lord* had Knighted him: for which this reason is there given, [e] *because no other person had sufficient power to infranchise him.*

d *Jo. Tilius*
e *Comment. de Reb. Gallicis. l.2.p.181.*

3. Estate.

The third and last of those *Qualifications*, which we have thought fit to take notice of here, is that of *Estate* or *Wealth*, which serves to support the Dignity of *Knighthood*: for we find that in all Times and Countries, when men were grown *wealthy*, they thereby (as by *Merit* or *Birth*) became capable of *Honors*.

Thus *Wealth* was so much regarded among the *Chalcedonians*, as [f] *Herodotus* tells us, *that those who were rich, bore the name of* Knights. It was [g] *Estate* that intitled a man to *this Honor among the Romans*: for the *Censor* (as hath been before observed out of [h] *Livy*) might compel any Citizen, who had an Estate equal to the *Equestrian Censo*, to enter into the *Equestrian Order*, and this old *Roman Censo* consisted of [i] 400000 *Sesterces*, which according to our learned *Seldens* computation amounts to [k] 3025 *l.* of our Money.

f *Lib.* 5.
g *Arnobius, adversus Gentes. lib.* 4.
h *L.9.c.19.*
i *Plin.l.33.c.1. vide porro Bernegger in Sueton. in Cæsar. c.33.*
k *Titles of Honor. p.438.*

And as anciently in old *Rome*, so not long after the Conquest here in *England* (as [l] *Cambden* observes) were *Knights* dignified for their wealth, and state of living. For they who had a *Knights Fee*, to wit (saith he) six hundred and fourscore Acres of Land, might claim as their right the Ornaments and Badges of *Knighthood*.

l *Brit. p.*126.

But by the way it appears from [m] Mr. *Selden*, that not any certain number, or extent

m *Tit. of Honor. p.* 691.

extent of Acres made a *Knights Fee*: and by several Writs directed to the *Sheriffs* of all *Counties* in *England*, to make Proclamation for receiving the Honor of *Knighthood*, in the Reigns of *Hen.* 3. & *Ed.* 1. as also by the Act *de Militibus*, *anno* 1. *Ed.* 2. it appears that the *Census Militis*, or valuation of the Estate of a *Knight*, was measured by *Twenty Pounds* Land by the year (and sometimes more) and this was counted the most reasonable way of Estimation, because one Acre might be more or less in value than another.

And the Parallel yet held as to the matter of enforcement and compulsion, to take this Honor; for by an ancient Prerogative, several of our *Kings*, have at their pleasures compell'd such persons who held a whole *Knights Fee*, or so much Land, whose annual value, as aforesaid, answered thereto, to take this Dignity upon them; and to that purpose sent forth their Mandates in *Writs*, directed to the *Sheriffs* of each *County*, to make Proclamation, [n] *That all those, within their several Bailiwicks, who were of full age, and had one whole* Knights Fee, *and were not Knighted, should appear before the King* (on a certain day, in the Writ set down) *ready fitted and prepared to receive the Honor of* Knighthood.

Sometimes these *Writs* included, both such as were possest of Lands worth [o] *Twenty pounds per annum*, and such as held a whole *Knights Fee*, valued at that annual sum: but the yearly value set by the *King* was not always certain, for sometimes we find it to be [p] fifteen pounds, then [q] twenty pounds, at other times [r] thirty pounds, then [s] forty pounds, and sometimes [t] fifty pounds.

Anno 40. *Hen.* 3. [u] The *Sheriffs* in *England* were amerced, because they had not distrained all those who had such Estates in Land, as the Law limited to take the Order of *Knighthood*, or otherwise to pay their Fines; and we observe the Command in the *Kings* Writ to be now and then accompanied with much severity, in case the *Sheriff* should be negligent in the discharge of his duty, or connive with any for luere of a Bribe; as appears in that directed to the *Sheriff* of *Northamptonshire*, the words whereof are.

[w] Rex *Vicecom.* Northt. *salutem. Præcipimus tibi quod sicut teipsum & omnia tua diligis, omnes illos in Balliva tua, qui habeant viginti libratas terræ distringas, quod se Milites faciendos, citra Nativitatem Sancti Johannis Baptistæ proximè futur. Sciturus pro certo, quod si pro munere, vel aliqua occasione, aliquam relaxationem eis feceris, vel aliquem respectum dederis, Nos ita graviter ad te capiemus, quod omnibus diebus vitæ tuæ te senties esse gravatum. T. R. apud* Wyndesor *decimo quarto die Aprilis.*

Where, upon appearance, after such Proclamation, a reasonable or lawful excuse hath been alledged, as [x] *old age*, [*] *irrecoverable weakness*, [y] *loss of Limbs, being* [z] *in holy Orders*, or the like, whereby the Body was wholly disabled to perform personal service; there, the allegations have been admitted by the *King*, the persons acquitted, and by *Letters Patents* exempted from taking this *Military Order* during life.

But there were many other causes and reasons which usually obtained a suspension for some certain time, (besides those set down in the Act of Parliament *Anno* 1. *E.* 2.) as where a man was at present greatly [a] indebted, or bound to attend some necessary employment, as a [b] *Serjeant* at Law in the *Common Pleas Court*, for which nevertheless, the party suing for such favour, paid a Fine, and therefore in some *Writs* we have seen a clause added, to give intimation, that (where any reasonable cause could be made appear, at the time of Knighthood, to impede the receiving of the *Order*) the person might be admitted to make [c] Fine for the respite thereof.

Yet was not this *Fine* constant or certain, but estimated and set according to the nature of the excuse, or length of time given: for instance, *Robert de Menevil* of *Northumberland*, having obtained respite for two years, was set at [d] five Marks, and *Peter Fouden* at [e] forty eight Shillings and eight Pence, for three years respite; but *John de Drokensford* paid [f] ten Pounds for a suspension of his Knighthood, only for

n *Claus. de anno* 9. *H.* 3. *membr* 24. *dorso*, & *Claus.* 1. *E.* 2. *membr.* 25. *dorso.*

o *Qui habeant* 20 *l. libratas terræ, vel Feodum unius militis integrum valens* 20 *l. per annum.* Claus. 37. H. 3. m. 25. dorso. p *Stows Abr. p.* 250. *an.* 40. *H.* 3. *Camb. Brit. p.* 126. q *Claus.* 28. *H.* 3 *m.* 12. *dorso.* r *Claus.* 5. *E.* 3. *pars* 1. *m.* 12. s *Rot. Parl.* 20. *E.* 1. *Claus.* 17. *E.* 2. *m.* 8. & 19 *E.* 2. *m.* 16. *dorso. Claus.* 7. *E.* 3 *pars* 1. *m.* 22. *dorso. Brevia Regii an.* 2. *R.* 2. *pars* 1. & *par.* 2. *Pat.* 15 *E.* 3. *pars* 1. *m.* 15. *dorso.* & *Claus.* 12. *H.* 4. *m.* 10. *dorso.* t *Claus.* 9. *E.* 2. *m.* 13 *dorso. de decreto Parl.* u *Speeds Chron. p.* 533.

w *Claus.* 28. *H.* 3. *m.* 12. *dorso.*

x *Pat. an.* 20. *E.* 3. *pars* 2. *m.* 29. * *Pat.* 15. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m* 16. y *Pat.* 7. *E.* 3. *pars* 2. *m.* 30. z *Claus.* 25. *H.* 3 *pars* 1. *m.* 7. *dorso.*

a *Claus. an.* 36. *H.* 3 *m* 23. b *Communia de Term. Mich.* 9. *H.* 6. *Rot.* 14. *dorso.* c *Quod sint ad Nos, &c. paratti, ad capiendum Arma militaria, vel ad finem nobiscum faciendum pro respectu habendo de milicia sua.* d *Orig.* 51. *H* 3. *m.* 6. e *Ib. m.* 5. f *Orig.* 7. *E.* 3.

for the same time. And in these cases the *Kings* Writ usually issued to the *Sheriff*, with command to [g] permit the person to have that respite, and to forbear taking any distress, till the time compounded for should be expired, and if, nevertheless, the person happened to be impleaded for not having received *Knighthood*, the Kings Letters Patents (granting him the time of respite being produced) have been [h] allowed.

If any person had been distrained by the *Sheriff*, and a retorn thereof made to the *King*, and did not appear at the time and place, in the Writ nominated, to receive the Honor of *Knighthood*; in such case we sometimes find that a *Writ* hath issued, giving command to the *Sheriff*, forthwith to [i] seize all his Lands and Tenements into the *Kings* hands, and answer the profits thereof into the Exchequer.

The Fines and Amerciaments set upon such contempt, seem to have been arbitrary, and the *Court* swayed, according as the nature of the default appeared: *William* the Son of *Gilbert de Alton*, paid [k] twenty shillings for not appearing and receiving *Knighthood*, according to the command of the Kings Proclamation; *Thomas Launcefoot* paid [l] four Nobles, *John de Lodbroke* [m] forty shillings, the [n] like Fine was set upon *Simon de Bradeney* and *Thomas Trivet*, both of *Somersetshire*, and *John de Neirvote* in the County of *Bucks*; and lastly, *William Lassels* paid [o] four pounds, for that he had not received *Knighthood* before *Michaelmas*, *Anno* 30. *E.* 3. and for obtaining respite for three years from thence.

But albeit in the promiscuous course of bestowing of *Knighthood*, where the men of *Wealth* and *Estate* (whether otherwise worthy or not) became dignified, yet was not the gate of Honor then shut against those, who wanting Riches sought her out, by the paths of *Virtue* and *Merit*: For where men of low Fortunes deserved well of their *Country*, and that for their good services the *King* had judged them worthy of *Honor*; He was accordingly pleas'd to bestow such annual Pension, or Lands upon them, as He esteemed sufficient to maintain that degree of Dignity (whatsoever it was) so confer'd. And this is agreeable to the judgment of the *Author* of the *Division du Monde*, who saith, *That the Honor of* Knighthood *is not to be given to any person who hath not a considerable Estate; unless sufficient means to support the Honor of that Order be also given with it.*

Hence it is, that the *Kings* of *England* have allowed Pensions (and frequent mention of them is made in the Rolls) sometimes during pleasure, and then again during the lives of those on whom they have thought fit to confer the Honor, for their better support: as for instance, King *Edward* the Third granted by Letters Patents [p] forty Pounds *per annum*, out of his Exchequer, to *John atte Lee*, Queen *Isabel*'s Steward; *in auxilium status sui manutenendi*, first during pleasure, and afterwards for his life.

But the case is more remarkable of Sir *Nele Loring* (who afterwards attained the Honor to be one of the first *Founders* of the most noble *Order* of the *Garter*) for whose valiant performances, in the Naval Fight against the *French* at *Sluce*, the King conferr'd the Dignity of *Knighthood* upon him, and immediately after granted to him and his Heirs Males [q] twenty Pounds *per annum*, that he might better maintain that Honor, until he could settle on him and them, so much in value of Lands, or yearly Rents in Fee.

And here the following Grant made by King *Richard* the Second to Sir *John Walsh*, of forty Marks *per annum* for life, to support that Dignity of *Knighthood* he had given him, may very well be inserted.

[r] * *Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. salutem. Sciatis quod cum nos pro eo quod dilectus & fidelis noster* Johannes Walsh, *nuper in præsentia nostra pro defensione sua multum strenue fecit, prout satis est notorium, ipsum* Ordinem Militarem *suscipere fecerimus, & Ordinem illum ei de manibus nostris dederimus, & eum penes nos ipsos retinuerimus: Et quia ipse sufficienter non habet unde Onus cum honore valeat supportare, Dedimus & Concessimus ei Quadraginta Marcas per annum, ad terminum vitæ suæ, percipiend. per manus Vicecomitis nostri* Lincolniensis *qui pro tempore fuerit, de exitibus balivæ suæ, ad terminos Paschæ & Sancti Michaelis, per æquales portiones. In cujus, &c. Teste R. apud* Westminst. *quinto die* Decembris.

The

g *Claus.* 35. *H.* 3 *m* 2. *dorso*, & *Claus.* 36. *H.* 3. *m* 23.

h *Placita coronæ in Com. Derb. coram J. de Vallibus, &c. anno* 9 *E.* 1.

i *Orig. de anno* 51. *H* 3. *m.* 4.

k *Communia Fines, &c. Term. Mich.* 9. *E.* 3. 20. 2. *Ebor.*

l *Com. de Term. Hill.* 14. *H.* 4. *Somerset.*

m *Communia de Term. Mich.* 56. *H.* 3. *incipiente* 57. *Warr.*

n *Commun. de Term. Mich* 33. *E.* 3 23 3 *dorso.*

o *Communia de Term. Pasch.* 31. *E.* 3. *fines*, & *Rot* 2. *Ebor.*

p *Pat.* 33. *E.* 3. *pars prima. m.* 22.

q *Communia de Term. Trin.* 15. *E.* 3.

r * *Pat.* 8. *R* 2. *pars prima m.* 8.

The *Kings* of *England*, upon the same account, did usually bestow like annual rewards on such whose merit raised them to the Degree of *Baneret*; and in the Letters Patents, whereby such Pensions are granted, we observe it usually exprest, *ad manutenendum statum Baneretti*, or words to the like effect.

Hereupon King *Edward* the Third gave to Sir *Reginald Cobham* [r] four hundred Marks *per annum*, during his life, to be paid him out of the Exchequer; afterwards the [f] Mannor of *Tippenham*, in *Buckinghamshire*, for life; and a * Mill under *Oxford Castle*, with a Meadow there, called *Kings Meade*.

r *Pat.* 10. *E.* 3. *part.* 2. *m.* 7.
f *Pat.* 11. *E* 3. *pars* 1.
* *Pat.* 14. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 23.

We find moreover, that *Thomas de Rokeley*, who in the service of this *King* had received the Degree of *Baneret*, had [t] two hundred Marks *per annum* granted unto him, *pro sustentatione sua*, during life. To Sir *John Lysle* (one other of the *Founders* of the said most noble *Order*) [u] *ut ipse statum Baneretti* (which the *King* had before conferr'd on him) *melius manutenere possit*, he gave two hundred pounds a year during life; and upon *Roger de Swynerton* Baneret, He bestowed for life *pro statu suo manutenendo*, all the [y] *Mannors, Lands, &c.* which, lying in the Counties of *Stafford* and *Chester*, came to the Kings hands, by the forfeiture of *Hugh le Despenser*, as likewise the Mannor of *Barew* in the *County Palatine* of *Chester*, to him and his Heirs.

t *Claus.* 20. *E.* 3. *pars* 2.
u *Pat.* 29. *E.* 3. *pars prima m.* 29.
y *Pat.* 8. *E.* 3. *pars prima. m.* 1

And it is worthy of note, that some times such like Grants have been made by the consent of Lords and Commons assembled in Parliament; for so were the [z] two hundred Marks *per annum* given to *Geoffry le Scroop Baneret*, in the Reign of King *Henry* the Sixth.

z *Claus.* 30. *H.* 6. *m* 21.

Thus far we have spoken of the *Qualifications*, which capacitate him, who receives the Degree of *Knighthood*; it will not now be amiss to touch upon one particular relating to the *Person*, who confers this Honor, before we leave this *Section*.

It hath been thought by divers, that no man can make a *Knight* unless himself be first Knighted, and because that some have not given this Honor before they received it, they thence would imply, that no man ought: for so [a] Prince *Edward* of *Carnarvan*, having been first *Knighted* by his Father, King *Edward* the First, forthwith Knighted a great number more in *Westminster Abbey*. So *Anno* 20. *E.* 3. the *King* being landed at *Hoggs* in *Normandy*, Knighted [b] *Edward* his eldest Son, and immediately the said *Prince* made *Mortimer*, *Monteacute*, *Ros*, and others, *Knights*. And [c] King *Edward* the Sixth, being Knighted by the *Earl* of *Hertford*, in the *Tower* of *London*, assoon as the Ceremony was over, Knighted *Henry Hobblethorn* Lord Mayor of *London*, with the same Sword, wherewith himself received this Military Honor.

Who can make Knights.
a *Math. Westmonst. anno* 1306.
b *Stows Chron. fo.* 377.
c *Ibid. fo.* 1000.

But it is apparent enough, that they who never were, and others who never could be *Knights*, have conferr'd this Dignity; and we are to understand that necessity and custom hath in this ease the force of a Law; for anciently *Bishops* and *Priests* made *Knights*, so also do the *Popes*, and some *Common-wealths*, nay *Women*, in whom the supream Power is vested, may, and have done the like, witness our Queens, *Mary* and *Elizabeth*, and we find it to be the ancient Law in *Spain*, [d] *That the King or his Son and Heir, though they be no* Knights, *may nevertheless make* Knights, *by reason that they possess the Kingdom, and are therefore the Head and Chief of Chivalry, and consequently all the power thereof, is closed up and contained in the Kings command.*

d *L.* 11. *tit.* 21. *partida* 2.

To conclude, in all the instances and examples, where the creation of a *Knight* hath been performed, either with *Ceremony*, or by *Diploma* (of which we shall speak in the next *Section*) it may be observed, that the Dignity was always given by, and received from the hands of another Person, except only the Kings of *Spain*, who [e] time out of mind have made themselves *Knights*, and this by virtue of an old [f] *Law* written in the *Aragonian* Tongue, as *Ambrosius Morales* reports, which saith thus: [g] *The whole night preceding the Ceremony* (viz. of Knighting) *the King shall watch in the Church, in the morning he shall hear Mass, and offer both Purple, and some of his Money, and after he shall receive the Sacrament: And when they are going to raise him, he shall ascend upon his Shield, the Noblemen holding and supporting him: Then shall all cry with a loud voice three times*, Real, Real, Real. *This done.*

e *Jo Jac. Chifflet. in suis luminibus novis prærogativis, ad vindicias Hispaniæ, Lumine* 13. *p.* 395.
f *Lex Suprarbiensis.*
g *In Chron. Hispan. l.* 13. *c.* 2.

done, he shall command to scatter more of his Money, to the quantity of one hundred Shillings among the People; and to shew that no man upon earth hath any power over him, he shall gird himself with the Sword, made after the form of a Cross, and that day can no other man be Knighted.

One Example of this ancient Rite is remembred by the said[h] *Chiffletius*, at the Coronation of King *Ferdinando* the Third, who took from the high Altar the *regal Sword*, and with his own hand girt himself therewith; to the end being so girded, he might shew himself openly to the People, and declare, that he received the power of Governing and making War from none but *God* alone, and that he owed not his Kingdoms to the gift of any mortal man.

h *In suis Lumin. p.* 397.

And it seems this manner of *Knighting* was a thing of such remarque, that it was sometime taken notice of and entred for a memorable note of time; as for instance in the *Teste* of a[i] *Charter*, which this *Don Ferdinando* made to the *Monastery* of *De solos alvos*, in the third year of his Reign, and is reported by the said *Chiffletius*, out of *Colmenars* History of *Segovia*, *c.* 20. as also by another *Charter*, wherein the[k] Knighting Prince *Edward* eldest Son to our King *Henry* the Third, by *Alphonso* King of *Castile*, at *Bruges anno Domini* 1255. is remembred after the same manner.

i *Anno* 1220 *facta Charta apud Segoviam quinto Kal. Febr. Era* 1258. *anno regni mei tertio, quo ego memoratus Rex Ferdinandus, in Monasterio Sanctæ Mariæ Regalis de Burgos, manu propriâ me accinxi cingulo militari.* k *Seldens Tit. of Honor. p.* 577.

SECT. IX.

The various Ceremonies *used at the conferring of* Knighthood.

BEsides the donation of the before-mentioned honorary *Ensigns*, there were several *Ceremonies* and *Formalities*, begun to be used in the middle Ages, at the investiture of *Knights*; some of which we shall here set down by way of Instance.

1. Girding with the Sword and Belt.

The most ancient of these, is the investing of the *Knight* with a *Belt* and *Sword*; and this was performed, either by putting the *Belt* loose over the shoulder, or girding it close about the waste: the *Bend* in *Armory* represents the one, and the *Fess* the other. Of this kind of Honor we have spoken[l] before.

l *Sect.* 4.

The first Christian *Kings* and *Princes* (saith[m] *Favin*) at the giving of the *Cingulum militare*, kissed the new *Knight* on the left cheek, and used these words, *In the honor of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, I make you a Knight.* And this was called *Osculum pacis*, the kiss of Favour or Brotherhood.

m *Theatre d' Honneur l.*1. *c.* 6.

Some think this to be the same with the *Accollade*, or Ceremony of imbracing, which was performed by *Charles* the Great,[n] who (before his expedition against the *Hungarians*) Knighted his Son *Lewis* the *debonair*, at the City of *Ratisbone*; for upon the girding him with the Military Belt and Sword, he gave him the *Accollade*, that is, he imbraced him, (though it be rendred for kissing by the[o] Translator of *Favin*) and this was the first time we observe the Ceremony of the *Accollade* to have been used.

n *Aymonius de gestis Francor. l.*5 *c.*17.

o *L.* 1. *c.* 6. *p.* 51.

It was in the time of the same *Emperor* that the way of *Knighting* by the *Colaphum*, or giving a blow on the Ear was used, in sign of sustaining future hardships and indurances; which is thought to have been derived from the manner of manumission of a Slave among the *Romans*, where[p] first the *Prætor* gently struck him on the head with the *Vindicta*, a Rod so called, after which the *Lictor* did the like, and moreover struck him on the Face and Back with his hand, in token of full liberty and freedom.

p *Rosin. Antiq. l* 1. *c.*20.

This Custom was retained long after both in[q] *Germany* and *France* (much like the[r] *Pescosada*, or blow on the neck, given in *Spain* at the Creation of the *Cavalleros de Espuela d' orada*, or *Knights* of the *Golden Spur*) as appears from a clause, in

q *Theat. d'Honneur, l.*1. *c.*6.
r *Seld. Tit. of Honor. p.* 577.

in the Instrument of the *Frizons* Infranchisment to this effect. [s] That the *Toteflate* or *Governor* of the *Country* should gird the *Sword* about him, who was to be Knighted, and then give him a Box on the Ear with his hand, with which Ceremony he was made a *Knight*, he also gave him special charge and command, that thenceforth he should go armed after the manner of *Knights* of the sacred *Empire*, or of the Kingdom of *France*.

[s] *Menenius de Deliciis Equestribus. p.7.*

It is also said this *Emperor* ordain'd, [t] that no *King* should succeed to the *Empire*, if he were not *Knighted*, as aforesaid, before his Coronation. And there is an eminent example of this formality in [u] *William* Earl of *Holland*, who when he came to be chosen King of the *Romans*, *Anno Domini* 1247. preparation was first made to create him *Knight*, [w] according to the custom of other Christian *Emperors* (before they were admitted to take upon them the Imperial Diadem) to which purpose he was presented by *John* King of *Bohemia* before *Petrus Capucius* Cardinal of St. *George*, the *Popes* Legate, whom the *King* besought on the behalf of this elected *Esquire* (for so Earl *William* was yet called) that he might have the *Oath* of his profession administred unto him, and be inscribed into the Military *Colledge*: which he having taken, the *King* of *Bohemia* gave him the *blow* on the *Ear*, and then pronounced the words of *signification*, [x] after which he was girt with the *Sword*.

[t] *Jos. Micheli, Marquez en le Tesoro militar. fo 16.b.*
[u] [w] *Delic. Equesti p.8.*
[x] *Tesoro Militar. fo. 17.*

The Ceremony at large is to be found in *Seldens Titles of Honor*. pag. 442. 443. and 444. as also in *Jurisprudentia Heroica*. p. 400. 401.

In the time of the *Saxons* here in *England*, *Knights* received their Institution at the hands of great *Prelats* or *Abbots*; it being the opinion of our Ancestors, that nothing so happily succeeded, as that which was performed by religious persons; in the accomplishing of which solemnity they were very punctual, by adding divers religious Ceremonies, as *Watching*, *Fasting*, *Bathing*, *Consecrating of the Sword*, and the like: and how solemnly these things were observed, will appear in that famous *Constitution*, mentioned by [y] *Ingulphus* (speaking of *Howard* Lord of *Brune*, in *Lincolnshire*, who coming into *England* from *Flanders* (where he had lived in exile) with a considerable assistance, and force of his Friends and Followers to recover his Fathers possessions; received the Honor of *Knighthood* from *Brand*, Abbot of *Saint Edmunds-bury*) which being thence transcribed by our learned [a] *Selden*, [b] *Cambden*, and [c] Mr. *Dugdale*, upon a like occasion, we here omit it.

2. Watching and Bathing.

[y] *Ingulph. Hist. inter Rerum Anglic. Scriptores. London. excuf. anno 1596 fo. 512.b.*
[a] *Titles of Hon. p.780.*
[b] *Brit. 125.*
[c] *Antiq. of Warw. p.531.*

Shortly after the Conquest, the Custom of receiving *Knighthood* from religious persons began to be restrained here in *England*, insomuch that at a Synod held at *Westminster* in the year of our *Lord* 1102. *viz. anno tertio Hen. primi* it was among other things ordained, [d] *Ne Abbates faciunt Milites*; by which word *Abbates*, we suppose is understood all sorts of spiritual persons.

[d] *Concil. Brit: Tom. 2. p. 22.*

However, the religious Ceremonies for the most part continued, especially the *Vigils* and *Bathings*; an eminent example whereof, we have not long after in the time of King *Edward* the First, who to adorn the splendor of his Court, and augment the glory of his intended Expedition into *Scotland*, did at *Whitsontide* in the four and thirtieth year of his Reign, begirt *Edward* of *Carnarvan* his eldest Son, with the *Military Belt*, and this young *Prince*, immediately, at the high Altar in *Westminster Abbey*, conferr'd the same Honor upon neer three hundred *Gentlemen*, the Sons of *Earls*, *Barons*, and *Knights*. The *Habit*, *Equipage*, *Attendants*, and *Ceremonies* of which grand solemnity, being already transcribed at large, out of *Matthew* of *Westminster*, both by [e] Mr. *Selden* and Mr. [f] *Cambden*, we shall thereunto refer our *Reader*.

[e] *Tit. of Honor. p.776.*
[f] *Brit. p. 127.*

But in regard their *Author* tells us, that the number of these *Knights* were about [g] three hundred, and the old Annals of *Ireland*, cited by [h] Mr. *Selden*, add one hundred more, which was further wide of the mark; we will here out of a respect to truth, and the memory of those Noble persons, with such as are descended from them, take occasion to give a perfect *Catalogue* of their *Names*, which amount to no more than 267.

[g] *Pag. 458. ed. Lond. anno 1570.*
[h] *Loco cit.*

Only first, we shall take notice, because that part of the Ceremony, namely, *Bathing*, is not remembred by *Matthew* of *Westminster*, that it is not only imply'd

in

in the solemnity of the *Vigils* then held, but we find in the Accounts of the great Wardrobe, for the aforesaid year, among the Robes and other Ornaments appointed to be prepared for the young *Prince*, that there were six Ells of Cloth delivered out for the covering of his Bath.

The religious Ceremonies of *Bathing*, *Watching*, and *offering up the Sword* at the high Altar, are retained amongst us at this day, but restrained only to that peculiar Degree of *Knighthood*, which from hence hath the denomination of *Knights of the Bath*.

The Names of all the Knights *made at Whitsontide*, anno 34. E. 1.

1 *Ex Rot. Compot. Jo. de Drokensford Custodis mag. Garderobæ Regis, penes Rememorat. R. in Scacario remanentibus.*

1 *Dominus Edwardus Princeps Walliæ.*
Johannes de Warenna.
Edmundus de Arundel.
Thomas de Greilly.
Johannes de la Ware.
Thomas de Ferers.
Bartholomeus de Enfeud.
Johannes de Moubray.
Alanus Plokenet.
Aungerus filius Henrici.
Gilbertus de Clare filius Domini Thomæ de Clare.
Edmundus de Cornubia.
Johannes de Frivill.
Willielmus de Preigne.
Amaricus de Fossad.
Fulcius filius Warini.
Walterus de Hugeford.
Stephanus de Burghash.
Jacobus de Nortwoode.
Humpfridus de Waldene.
Rogerus de Chaundos.
Johannes de Deen.
Willielmus de la Zouche.
Ricardus Lovel.
Rogerus de Mortuomari.
Walterus Hakelut.
Rogerus de Bansou.
Galfridus de Seye.
Richardus Portescie.
Egidius de Brehens.
Walterus de Mollesworth.
Retherius de Ispania.
Petrus de Gavaston.
Thomas de Verdon.
Humfridus de Bassingbourn.
Nicholaus Kryell.
Robertus filius Roberti filii Pagani.
Johannes de Harecourt.
Johannes filius Domini Johannis de Sulleye.
Willielmus Tracy.
Hugo filius Domini Hugonis le Despenser.
Willielmus de Huntingfeud.
Thomas Bardolp.
Nicholaus Malemeyns.
Robertus de Scales.
Willielmus Trussel.
Johannes de Hants.
Willielmus de Monteacute.
Thomas de Multon.
Walterus de Montgomeri.
Rogerus filius Domini Rogeri de Mortuomari.
Eustachius de Whyteneye.
Johannes Mautravers.
Thomas de Veer filius Comitis Oxoniensis.
Thomas de Lodelawe.
Willielmus de Bermyngham.
Griffinus filius Griffini de la Pole.
Willielmus de Lodelawe.
Philippus de Courtenay.
Orianus de Sancto Petro.
Warinus de Bassingburn.
Johannes le Blount Major London.
Johannes Denre.
Johannes de Insula.
Thomas de Lucy.
Radulphus de Botetourte.
Hugo de Mailly.
Radulphus de Kamoys.
Petrus filius Domini Petri de Malolacu.
Edmundus de Willington.
Robertus de Kendale.
Henricus de Den.
Johannes de Nevill.
Rogerus de Ingelfeld.
Hugo Braboef.
Johannes de Weston.
Johannes filius Warini.
Thomas de Ponynges.
Johannes de Foxley.
Johannes de Walkingham.
Willielmus de Harden.
Radulphus de Weden.
Johannes de Meryeth.
Radulphus de Rollesion.
Johannes de Manduit.
Thomas de Boiville.
Willielmus Corbet.
Willielmus Brabason.
Georgius de Thornetone.
Johannes de la Tenne.
Johannes de Bykebyry.
Willielmus de Cosyngton.
Radulphus Bagot.
Willielmus de Bassinges.
Andreas de Sakeville.
Nicholaus Persbots.
Morganus ap Mereduk.
Umfridus de Boune.
Walterus de Skydemore.
Johannes Chaundos.
Walterus de Derlyngham.
Walterus de Stirkelonde.
Johannes de Clyndon.
Ingelramus Belet.
Laurentius de Hollebeche.
Johannes de Stauntone.
Johannes de Wachesham.
Johannes de la Mare.
Hugo Howel.
Willielmus de Menymrate socius Amenrey de Fossad.
Willielmus Pyrot socius Stephani de Burways.
Johannes Sauvage.
Philippus de Vyreley.
Robertus Lovel.
Adam Walran.
Johannes de Penloug.
Rogerus Pychard.
Henricus le Moigne.
Robertus de Lacy.
Johannes de Boillaunde.

Johannes

Johannes de Guyse.
Willielmus Motoun.
Rogerus Waleys.
Philippus le Lou.
Johannes de Hinton.
Johannes de Twyford.
Richardus de Breheus.
Stephanus de Cobbeham.
Johannes de Haulo.
Thomas de Sanwico.
Johannes de Mounteney.
Robertus le Conestable.
Johannes Marteyn.
Johannes de Bello Campo.
Robertus de Ros.
Radulphus Basset.
Petrus de Grisle.
Thomas Malorie.
Richardus de Sculton.
Willielmus de Haundesacre.
Johannes de Thouthorp.
Walterus de Romesey.
Johannes de Ruda.
Petrus de Bosoun.
Nicholaus de Geneville.
Johannes de Knoville.
Johannes de Lacy.
Willielmus Bernak.
Richardus Daniel.
Robertus de Wygkham.
Robertus Achard.
Willielmus de Herppeden.
Jacobus de Lambourne.
Johannes Mauncel.
Robertus de Wyvill.
Philippus le Rous.
Johannes Comyn.
Johannes de Somery.
Johannes de Lungevill.
Johannes de Harpefeld.
Egidius de Astele.
Johannes de Boivill.
Henricus filius Conani.
Rogerus de Burton.
Johannes de Multon.
Godefridus de Meaux.
Johannes de Plescis.
Edmundus de Plescis.
Willielmus de Hollande.
Henricus de Rypsford.
Thomas de Zedesen.
Johannes de Lyngeyne.
Rogerus de Bavent.
Galfridus de Colevill.
Johannes filius Johannis Mautravers.
Johannes Conquest.
Willielmus de Stopham.
Radulphus de Dryby.
Thomas de Grey.
Robertus de la Mare.
Thomas Corbet.
Johannes de Heryk.
Robertus de Hoo.
Johannes de Lacy.
Willielmus de Manneby.
Johannes de Mortone.
Gerardus de Aillesford.
Gilbertus de Aton.
Ricardus de Berley.
Johannes de Neubourgh.
Johannes de la Poille.
Robertus filius Guidonis.
Hugo Hose.
Willielmus de Goldington.
Walterus filius Domini J. de Insulâ.
Thomas de Brompton.
Willielmus de Wrotesle.
Richardus Huwys.
Robertus de Hildyard.
Johannes de Kyrkeby.
Thomas de Leukenore.
Petrus de Evercy.
Warinus de Scartil.
Gerardus de Offlet.
Petrus de Burgate.
Robertus de Fandon.
Willielmus de Saustone.
Johannes Mauleverer.
Willielmus de Lucy.
Rogerus de Chedle.
Hugo de Dulton.
Johannes de Haveryngton.
Rogerus de Somerville.
Adam de Walton.
Nicholaus de Sheldon.
Willielmus de Weilonde.
Walterus de Faucumberg.
Nicholaus de Rye.
Rogerus de Grymeston.
Henricus de Erdyngton.
Willielmus Dautrie.
Johannes de Launey.
Johannes de Ryson.
Henricus Beausun.
Rogerus filius Domini Thomæ Corbet.
Hugo de Pykeworth.
Baldewinus de Colne.
Robertus de Skale.
Henricus de Biry.
Richardus de Bermyngham.
Walterus le Poure.
Thomas de Bechum.
Walterus filius Humfridi.
Edmundus Pecche.
Johannes de Treiagu.
Richardus Foliot.
Richardus de Echebaston.
Robertus de Godemanston.
Adam de Everingham.
Johannes de Wassingbourn.
Adam de Wanerville.
Willielmus de Somercotes.
Thomas filius Domini T. de Chaworth.
Radulphus de Kele.
Petrus de Lekeburne.
Hugo filius Henrici.
Johannes de Salsbiri.
Richardus de Ryvers.
Johannes filius Johannis de Wegetone.
Johannes le Rous.
Georgius du Chastel.
Willielmus de la Motefacto.
Willielmus de Bayons.
Willielmus Marmyon.
Willielmus Rosel.
Johannes de Langeton.
Willielmus Littebon.
Johannes de Pabenham.
Thomas Mordac.
Jacobus de Norton.
Johannes de Belhous.
Brankaleo de Boloigne.
Johannes Pykard.
Walterus de Kyngeshevede.
Robertus de Watervill.
Rogerus de Kerdeston.
Johannes de Daventre.

These Religious Ceremonies were not alone observed here in *England*, by the *Saxons* and *Normans*; but also by the[k] *French*, *Spaniards*, and other *Nations* abroad.

Concerning the first of these *Jean du Tillet*, a *French* Writer in his *Memoirs* saith, [l] *That the old* French, *being observers of Forms and Ceremonies, in most of their actions, brought in many Customs to be observed at the making of* Knights, *enjoining them before the Solemnities, to Watch, Bath, and do other things, to teach*

k *Favin. Theat. d' Honn. l. 6. c. 14.*
l *Lib. 2. f. 277. a vide Jo. Tilius Comment. de reb. Gall. l. 2. p. 189.*

teach them, that upon their taking of this Order, it did behove them to be pure of heart and mind, and of virtuous inclinations, valiantly to suffer for virtues sake, all manner of pains and necessities, to be circumspect in word and deed, and above all to observe Faith and Truth.

And much to the same effect, but more particularly to the Ceremonies used, [m] *Favin* tells us, *That the proof of Nobility being made* (after the manner which a little before he sets down) *the* Esquire *prepared himself to receive the Order of* Knighthood, *watching the night before in the Church or Chappel, with devout Prayers and Meditation: When morning came, he entred into his Bath, to wash and make clean his whole Body, whereby he was given to know and understand, that in all his following life time, he ought to be neat and clean, as well of Body as Soul, honest in his Manners, and behaviour of life, wholly disposed to imbrace Virtue, and to use in all his actions, Modesty, Providence, and Wisdom.*

m *In le Theatre d' Hon. l. 1. c. 6.*

And that the like religious Ceremonies were heretofore (about the time of *Alphonsus* the Tenth) observed in *Spain* at the Creation of *Knights*, whether they were *Cavelleros de Espuela d' Orada*, or *Armados* (which are no other than our *Equites Aurati*, or *Knights Batchellors*) may be seen in the [n] *Titles of Honor*, our learned *Selden* having collected and transcribed thither the manner of such Creation, from the Spanish *Partidas*; and is briefly thus.

n *Pag. 576.*

The *Person* that was to be Knighted was *Bathed* on the Evening, and presently laid in Bed, then clothed in rich Robes, and led to the Church, to perform his Vigils; that being over, and Mass heard, his *Spurs* were put on, and his *Sword* girt unto him, then drawn out, and put into his right hand; whereupon the *Oath* was forthwith administred to him, which taken, he that bestowed the Dignity, gave him *una Pescoçade*, a blow or stroke on the neck, saying, *God assist you in the performance of that which you have promised.*

3. Taking an Oath.

To the aforesaid Ceremonies of creating a *Knight*, an *Oath* was for the most part adjoined, which drew its original from the *Military Oath*, imposed anciently upon the *Roman Soldiers*, several particulars of which are collected by * Sir *William Segar*, sometime *Garter*, principal King of Arms.

* *Honor Military and Civil. l. 1. c. 5.*

This *Oath* or vow of Profession [o] *Favin* observes to have been at all times, and in all places, continually uniform and alike; and to the same purpose cites a passage out of Saint *Hierom*, relating to *Nepotianus*, who had the *Military Belt* bestowed upon him, to the end, *That he should relieve and protect Widows, Fatherless, the oppressed and miserable*, and these particulars, together with *the defence of the Church of God*, made up afterwards the substance of the general *Vow*, which for a *Knight* to observe and keep, and to perform all that belongs to the *Order* of *Knighthood*, *was* (as [p] Mr. *Selden* observes) *esteemed as meritorious, as to do all that a Monk, Frier, or Canon regular should.*

o *Theat. d' Honneur. l. 1. c. 6.*

p *Titles of Honor. p. 851.*

In the aforesaid Example of *William* Earl of *Holland*, it is particularly mentioned, that at the request of the King of *Bohemia*, he might have the *Vow* of his profession administred; whereupon the Cardinal *Petrus Capucius*, gave him admonition, what a *Knight* ought to be, in an *Acrostick*, according to the Etymology of his name *Miles*, thus,

q *Mennen. Delic. Equest. p. 9.*

q M *agnanimus in adversitate,*
I *ngenuus in consanguinitate,*
L *argissimus in honestate,*
E *gregius in curialitate, &*
S *trenuus in virili probitate.*

Among the religious Ceremonies of making a *Knight* (called sometimes *consecrare Militem*) set down by Mr. *Selden*, *Favin*, and *Petrus Blessensis*, there is particular mention made of consecrating the *Sword*, offering it at the Altar, and receiving it again from thence; which manner of reception from the Altar, was an implicite kind of taking an *Oath*, as may be deduced from the said *Petrus Blessensis*, who saith, [r] *That Candidates in his time received their Swords from the Altar, that they might profess themselves the Sons of the Church, and that they received the Sword, to the*

r *Epist. 94.*

the honor of the Priesthood, defence of the poor, punishment of Malefactors, and deliverance of their Country.

Lastly, at the institution of those *Christian Orders* of *Knighthood*, erected for the defence of the *Holy-Land* (which we shall in the next *Chapter* discourse of) the *Knights* entred into a solemn *Vow* and *Oath*, chiefly to propagate, and fight in defence of the *Christian Faith*, and to repel the violence and cruelties of *Pagans* and *Saracens*.

In fine, among the various Ceremonies performed at the admission of *Knights*, in all the several *Orders* and *Societies* of *Knighthood*, whether Religious or Secular, which have been erected; there are none esteemed greater, or ought more solemnly to be observed, than the taking of an *Oath*.

It was in the times of Peace and great leisure, that the before-mentioned solemn and tedious Ceremonies, used at the making of *Knights*, were observed; whether by great *Princes* in their own Courts, or by *Ecclesiasticks* in the Church: but much otherwise in times of War, or on a day of Battel, where the hurry and throng of Affairs, gave not time for so long and troublesome Ceremonies: And therefore, aswell [s] before the joining of Battel, as after Victory obtain'd (the [t] one to encourage and stir up the Valor and Virtue of gallant men to overcome, or if they dyed in fight, to give their bodies the Honor of Knightly Enterment: the other to reward the eminent prowess, and valiant performances of those that happened to survive) it was usual for the *Prince* or *General*, in the Field and sight of the whole Army, to give those whom he thought fit to advance to the Honor of *Knighthood* (they humbly kneeling before him) a [u] stroke with a naked *Sword*, flat-wise upon their shoulders, or else to touch their heads or shoulders lightly as aforesaid, without any other Ceremony, except pronouncing the [w] *words* of *Creation*, which latter kind of Ceremony is used in *Europe* at this day, it supplying all the rest: and this we commonly call **Dubbing**, the old *English* word used for creating of a *Knight*.

4. Dubbing with a Sword.

[s] *Instances in both are to be found in Jurisprudentia Heroica. p. 391. 392. 393 & 394*

[t] *Jo. Tilius Commentar. de Rebus Gall. l. 2. p. 181.*

[u] *Flecti genu ante Principem Candidatus, ab eoque leniter nudo Ense in humero percutitur; addit. verbis solenni more conceptis.* Aub. Miraus, Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 1.

As touching those Ceremonies, used at the making of a *Knight* in *Scotland*, which are chiefly dubbing with a *Sword*, and putting on *Spurs*, together with the particulars which the Knights *Oath* contains, see our learned *Seldens* [x] *Titles of Honor*, they being for substance, much the same, with what the *Knights* of former Ages either swore or professt.

Vide Sander. in Eland. illustrat. Tom. 1. p. 12.

[w] *Sis Eques in nomine Dei, & postea addit, Surge Eques,* or as in French *Sus vel sois Chevalier au nom de Dieu.*

[x] *P. 850. 851.*

The Benediction of a new *Knight*, at the time of his Creation by the *Pope*, or those, whose power in this particular is derivative from him, as it is set down in the *Pontificale Romanum*, may be found there; or in the said [y] *Titles of Honor*, whither it is transcribed.

[y] *P. 445.*

But there is another manner of creating of *Knights* abroad, namely, by *Royal Codicils*, or *Letters Patents* (these the *Spaniards* call *Privilegios de Cavelleria*) and thereupon such *Knights* are intituled, [z] *Equites Codicillares*; and this without any actual Ceremony or Solemnity; for the *Codicils* were chiefly design'd, to supply the ordinary way of *Dubbing*, to those who dwelt in remote Countries, yet under the Dominion of the Prince that bestowed the Honor.

5. Bestowing of Royal Codicils.

[z] *Quos à suo diplomate (quod suæ dignitatis fidem facit) Codicillares appellare poter.* *Vinc. Lupanus de Magistrat. Francorum. l. 1.*

In these Instruments, the *Emperor* or *King* is said thereby, to make and create them *Knights*, willing and intending that thence-forward they should be held and reputed for such; and moreover grants, that they shall, in all their acts and affairs, enjoy all the *Rights*, *Liberties*, and *Franchises*, accustomably due to all other *Knights*, throughout all his Dominions, aswell also in the same form and manner, as if the person had been actually *Knighted* by his own hand.

Of this manner of *Creation*, two Presidents are exhibited by the *Author* of the [a] *Jurisprudentia Heroica*, the one granted by *Philip* the Fourth King of *Spain*, to Sir *Philip Ryckewaert*, Councellor of his Council of *Brabant*, dated at *Madrid* the twenty seventh of *October* 1663. and the other by the present King, namely, *Charles* the First, and *Mary Anne* Queen Regent, to [b] *Leon Jean de Pape*, Councellor also, and Advocate of the Exchequer, of his said Council of *Brabant*, dated likewise at *Madrid* the sixteenth day of *December Anno Domini* 1665.

[a] *Pag. 395.*

[b] *Pag. 394.*

These *Royal Codicils* have sometimes (though very rarely) extended so far, as to make this Knightly Degree *hereditary*, which being unknown among us, in

the Dignity of *Knighthood* (though that of *Baronet* comes something neer it) a few Examples may be worth mentioning.

We have met with two of these *Diplomas* in the time of *Charles* the Fifth, Emperor of *Germany*, whereby this Dignity or the Degree of *Knight* of the *Roman Empire* (as therein it is called) is granted by him (20. *Nov.* 1553.) to [c] Sir *Stephen Prats* of *Barcelon*, and made to reach to his posterity, which then, or afterwards, should be born. As also another of the same *Emperors*, made to [d] *Lucas de Broyart*, the twenty fourth day of *September* 1540. that extends much farther, to wit, not only to himself and Children, born or to be born, their Successors and Heirs, and the Successors and Heirs of their Children, born in lawful Matrimony, and carrying the Surname of *Broyart*; but also to all those who should marry any of the Daughters of the said *Luke*, or the Daughters of his Sons, their Successors or Heirs.

c *Jurispr. Heroica*, p. 64.

d *Pag.* 410.

There are besides Examples of *Grants* in this nature, which take in the *Collateral Lines*, as in that ancient *Diploma*, which Sir *Edward Bysshe* Knight, *Clarenceux* King of Arms, hath transferr'd to his [e] *Notes upon Upton*, where it appears, that *Raymond* Viscount of *Turine*, *anno* 1219. granted to *Rodolph de Bessa*, that he and his Nephews (Sons to his Brother *Ademar*) and their Successors should be *Knights*, and enjoy all the *Priviledges* and *Honors* of *Knights*: This is the ancientest that I have met with of this sort; to which there is another in that place adjoined, whereby *Maximilian* the Emperor granted the Dignity of *Knighthood* to [f] *Thomas Salernitana*, President of the Council of *Naples*, and to his seven Brothers therein named, and their Sons born or to be born, and their Male descendants *in infinitum*.

e *Pag.* 24.

f *Pag.* 25.

But there is one Example of greater rarity, in relation to the creating of *Knights*, than any yet remembred, *viz.* by the bare signification of a *Kingly Letter*, without using either any of the afore-mentioned *Ceremonies*, or granting *Letters Patents* under Seal to that purpose. Of which kind the *Author* of the *Jurisprudentia Heroica*, gives an instance worthy taking notice of: where [g] *Philip* the Fourth King of *Spain*, the fifteenth of *January* 1633. conferr'd upon all the *Captains* that had behaved themselves valiantly in the defence of *Mastricht* (then lately besieged by the *Hollanders*) and remained faithful to the *Spanish* interest, to wit, [h] *to those of them that were Gentlemen, the title of* Knights; *and to others that of* Gentlemen.

g, h *Pag.* 28.

Having thus briefly shewed the various forms of Creation of *Knights Batchelors*, if any be further desirous to know, what were the ancient *Rites* and *Ceremonies*, used at the making of *Knights Banerets* among us, the Example of Sir *John Chandos*, in the Reign of King *Edward* the Third, will give sufficient information, which being at large recorded by [i] Sir *John Froisard*, and from him by [k] *Camden*, and [l] *Selden*, it will be needless to transcribe them hither. With what Ceremony also the Duke of *Burgundy* made the *Seigneur de Sans* Baneret in *Flanders*, is reported by [m] *Andrew Favin*.

i *Chron. l* 1. *c.* 137.
k *Brit. p.* 124.
l *Tit. of Honor. p.* 790. *&* 791.
m *En le Theatre d' Honneur. l.* 7. *c.* 12.

But in later times it appears, that he that was advanced to this Honor in the *Field*, [n] went between two senior *Knights*, with Trumpets before them, the *Heralds* carrying a long Banner called a Penon, with his Arms painted thereon; and so was brought unto the *King* or his *Lieutenant*, who bidding him good success, commanded the end or tip of the Banner to be cut off, that of an oblong it might become a square, like the Banner of a *Baron*: this done, he returned back to his Tent, conducted as before.

n *Vide sis Camb. Brit. loc. cit. Seld. Tit. of Honor p* 790. *Gloss. Spelm. in verbo Baneret. vide etiam Coke* 4. *part of Institutes p.* 6. *& lib. E. in Offic. Armor. fo.* 89.

In the last place, there are many and various Ceremonies performed at the Creation of a *Knight of the Bath*, as appears by the *Formulary* thereof in old French, inserted by Sir *Edward Bysshe*, among his [o] *Notes* upon *Upton*, and in English by *William Dugdale* Esquire, *Norroy* King of Arms, into his [p] *Antiquities of Warwick-shire*; to which we refer our *Reader* for a full view, as we do in all other like Cases, where things at large may be readily had, purposely to avoid the swelling of this discourse, beyond what is necessary. We shall therefore close with this observation, that the *Knights of the Bath*, made by the present *Sovereign* of the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, to attend him at his *Coronation*, were created with the principal of all those

o *Pag.* 21.
p *Pag.* 531.

those Ceremonies noted in this Section, and appointed to *Knights Batchellors*, both in former and later times, which to compleat their Honor, were jointly united and placed upon them: for they *Watched* and *Bathed*, they took an *Oath*, they were *girded* with a *Sword* and *Belt*, and lastly *Dubbed* by the *King*, with the *Sword* of *State*.

SECT. X.

Of the Dignity, Honor, *and* Renown *of* Knighthood.

BEfore we conclude this *Chapter*, it will be neceſſary to ſubjoin ſomething concerning the *Dignity*, *Honor*, and *Renown* appropriate to the *Knightly Order*; whereunto, though enough might be ſaid to fill a Volume, yet to avoid tediouſneſs, we ſhall touch only upon the principal and moſt material.

Of all *Virtues* thoſe that have gain'd the higheſt honor and repute, are the *Military*, hereupon ſaith [q] *G. Acacius Evenkelius*, a Noble modern Writer; *It is not without great reaſon, that in all renowned and famous Common-wealths, which ever were, great honors and profits have been propoſed to military perſons, and in conſequence we hear of ſeveral Prerogatives, Priviledges, and proper Rights granted to them, above other men; yea it will appear, not only living, but alſo after death, having died for the Common-wealth, they are ſtill honored, in a high degree, and ever to be honored.* And to the great honor of *Baldwinus Pulchrobarbus*, Earl of *Flanders*, it is remembred, [r] that he conferr'd many Prerogatives upon the *Knightly Dignity*.

[q] *De Privilegi mil. p. 6.*

[r] *Sander. in Flandr. illuſt. Tom. 1. p. 12.*

But of all the Titles of Honor, *Knighthood* (being a Degree above common *Honor*) muſt be acknowledged the firſt and moſt principal, derived from the field and military ſervices; whoſe very *Name* and *Title* (as [s] *Menenius* affirms) ſeemed to include ſomewhat of magnificence, beyond what he was able to expreſs, and ſomething more excellent than *Nobility* it ſelf; and which, as it were, mounting the Royal Throne, becomes the aſſertor of civil Nobility, and ſits as Judge at the Tribunal thereof.

[s] *Delic. Equeſt. p. 1.*

Our learned [t] *Cambden* notes from ſome of our Law Books, that *Knight* is a Name of Dignity, but *Baron* is not ſo: and he there adds the reaſon, [u] *For if heretofore a* Baron *had not received the Order of* Knighthood, *he was written ſimply, and plainly, by his Chriſtian Name, and the Name of his Family, without any addition, but that of* Dominus; *which term is as much attributed to a* Knight: But the Title of *Knight* ſeems to be an adjunct of *Honor*, ſince *Kings*, *Dukes*, *Marqueſſes*, *Earls*, and *Barons* have coveted the Dignity, together with the Name. And to this the aforeſaid *Menenius* (for the greater Honor) obſerves, that in ancient *Charters*, the [w] Titles and Names of *Knights* may be ſeen to be ſet before *Barons*.

[t] *Brit. pag.* [u] *126.*

[w] *Delic. Equeſt. p. 17.*

[x] *The Degree of* Knighthood *is of ſo great ſplendor and fame, that it beſtows Gentility, not only upon a man meanly born, but alſo upon his deſcendants, and very much encreaſeth the honor of thoſe who are well deſcended.* 'Tis a Maxim laid down by a learned Civilian, [y] *That* Knighthood *enobles, inaſmuch, that whoſoever is a* Knight, *it neceſſarily follows, that he is alſo a Gentleman.* For where a King gives the Dignity to an ignoble perſon, whoſe merit he would thereby recompence; [z] *He is underſtood to have conferr'd whatſoever is requiſite, for the compleating of that which he beſtows.* And therefore in ſome inſtances [a] before, where though this Honor had been conferr'd on *Vaſſals*, no way capable thereof, and for which both the Givers and Receivers were put to Fine, the *Knights* were eſteemed ſo enobled by the action, as to be adjudged fit to keep, and retain the Dignity, and to remain free from Vaſſalage and Servitude. Hereto alſo agrees the Common Law of *England*, which ſaith, [b] *If a Villain be made a* Knight, *he is thereby immediately infranchiſed, and conſequently accounted a Gentleman*: And this is the ſame with the

[x] *Sander. in Fland. illuſtrat. loco cit.*

[y] *Andr. Tiraquel. de Nobilitate. c. 8. f. 43.*

[z] *Florentin. de Therriat. de la Nobleſſe civile p. 188.*

[a] *Sect. 8.*

[b] *Glanvil. l. 5. c. 5. Bract. l. 4. f. 198. b.*

Roman Law, where the donation of a *Gold Ring* (the Symbol of *Knighthood*) to a slave, enobled him with all the Priviledges, belonging to one Free-born, as hath been [c] before observed.

c *Sect. 6.*

It is manifest of what reputation and esteem the *Equestrian Dignity* among the *Romans*, was with *Mæcenas*, who though his descent was [d] great and high, and though the [e] Custody of the *City*, was for a long time committed to him by *Augustus*, whose [f] *Chancellor* he also was, and that he lived his chief *Favorite*; yet would he not rise beyond that Dignity, but [g] dyed a Companion of that noble *Order*: and is by *Horace* called [h] *the honor and glory of the Roman Knights.*

d *Mæcenas atavis edite Regibus.* Hor. Carm. l. 1. Ode 1.

e *Tunc Urbis Custodiis Præpositus. C. Mæcenas, Equestri, ac splendido genere natus vir.* Vellejus Patere. l. 2. c. 88. ἵππεῖ αὐτῷ ὄντι, τὸ ἀξιν ἐπὶ πολὺν χρόνον ἐπέτρεψε. Dion. l. 55.

Augustus bellis civilibus Cilnium Mæcenatem, Equestris Ordinis cunctis apud Romanos, & Italiam Præposuit. Tacit. l. 6. in princ.

f *Salmuth. Notis ad Panciroll. de Novis repertis. p. 315.*

g τῶν ἱππέων τέλει κατεβίω.

h *Mæcenas Equitum decus.* l. 3 Ode 16. *Mæcenas Cæsarianus Eques.* Martial. lib. 10. Epigr. 73.

In later Ages it hath been accounted so full, and so compleat an *Honor*, that men were not so often advanced from *Knighthood*, as from a meaner degree, to higher Titles and Dignities; and that those of the chiefest quality and rank, even *Kings* and *Princes*, have been so far from taking it to be a diminution to their Honor, that such of them, as were invested with this Order, took it as an accession thereunto, their other Titles shewing more their Dominion and Power, this their Valor and Courage, as may be properly instanced in [i] *Ceysa* King of *Hungary*, who waging War with the *Austrians*, was by the *Bishops* (when he came into the field) *Armis accinctus*, girded with Arms, that is *Knighted*; and in like manner, *Leopold* Marquess of *Austria*, *Ottcher* Duke of *Stiria*, and *Frederick* Duke of *Austria* and *Stiria*, so also *Godfrey* Duke of *Brabant* (with *Henry* his Son) solemnly received the *Order* of *Knighthood*, before his Expedition to *Hierusalem*. So [m] *Peter* King of *Aragon*, was girt with the *Military Girdle*, from *Pope Innocent* the Third *anno Domini* 1204. the Emperor [n] *Henry* the Third, was made *Knight* by the Bishop of *Breme*, and our [o] *William Rufus* by *Lanfranke* Arch-Bishop of *Canterbury*.

i *Otho. Frisingensis. l. 1. c. 32.*

m *Hier. Blancus in Hist. rerum Hispanic.*

n *Lamb. Schafnaburg. in Chronico.* o *Malmsb. de gest. Regum. l. 4. p. 67. b. Edit. Lond. 1596.* p *Renat. Chopin. de domanio Franc. l. 3 tit. 26 Sect. 13.* q *Marib. de la Maison de France l. 1 p. 6[illegible]0.* q *Petrus Terrailius Baiardi Dominus. Justi Jurandum Heroica. p. 386 vide Mezeray Hist. de France. p. 390 & Jo. Tilius Commentarius, de reb. Gall. l. 2. p. 181.*

But to proceed yet a little farther in Examples of this nature. *Kings* themselves have been *Knighted*, not only by inferiour *Princes*, but sometimes by their own *Subjects*, as *Lewis* the Eleventh of *France*, at his Coronation, by [p] *Philip le bon*, Duke of *Burgundy*. *Francis* the First, immediately after the memorable Fight at *Marignan*, neer *Millan*, by [q] *Peter Bajarde*: Of our own Nation, King *Edward* the Third, by * *Henry* Earl of *Lancaster*, King *Henry* the Sixth, by his Uncle [r] *John* Duke of *Bedford*; King *Henry* the Seventh, by the Earl of [t] *Arundel*, and lastly, King *Edward* the Sixth by [u] *Edward Seymour*, Earl of *Hertford*, afterwards created Duke of *Somerset*.

* *Sir Rich. Bakers Chronic. p. 127. Edit. 1664.*

r *Lib. N p. 9.*

t *Bakers Chronic. p. 321.*

u *Stows Annals p. 1000.*

And though it is commonly said, [w] *That all the Sons of the French King are Knights, assoon as they receive their Baptism*; nevertheless * Sir *Henry Spelman* (from *Goropus*) seems to contradict this opinion, by informing us; that they were not judged worthy of the *Kingdom*, unless they had been first solemnly admitted into the *Knightly Order*. And we elsewhere find, that the [x] Royal Heirs of *Aragon* were suspended from the Crown of that *Kingdom*, until they had received the Honor of *Knighthood*.

w *Append. Monstraleti apud Chapp. de domanio Franc. l. 4. tit. 26. Art. 12. p. 574.*

* *Glossar verbo Miles.*

x *Hier. Blancus.*

To this purpose, the usage and fashion of the time shortly after the Norman Conquest is considerable, when our young *Princes* were sent over to neighbouring *Kings*, that from them they might receive this Honor; Thus was our [y] *Henry* the Second, sent to *David* King of *Scots*, and Knighted by him in *Carlisle*, and [z] *Edward* the First, at the Age of fifteen years, to *Alphonsus* the Eleventh King of *Castile*, for the same Dignity.

y *Rog. Hoved. Annales. p. 280. b. Edit. Lond. 1596. vide J. Lesleus de Reb. gest. Scot. l. 6. p. 223. Edit Rom. 1578. 4°.*

z *Math. Paris Hist Anglicana. p. 890. Edit. Lond. 1640. Walsingh. in Ipodigma Neustriæ. anno 1254.* a *Anno 6. Hen. 7. vide Rog. Hoved. p. 281.*

In like manner did Foreign *Princes* repair hither to receive the Honor from our *Kings*; as [a] *Malcolne* King of *Scotland*, and [b] *Alexander* Son of *William* King of *Scotland*, Knighted by our King *John*, *anno Domini* 1212. So was [c] *Alexander* the Third, by our King *Henry* the Third, on Christmas day at *York anno* 1252. and [d] *Magnus* King of the *Isle*

b *Math. Paris. p. 231.*

c *Ib. p. 829.*

d *Stows Abrev. p. 290.*

Isle of Man, by the same *King*. All which sufficiently demonstrate the great Renown of *Knighthood*, and the honor and esteem which was ever had for that *Order*.

The estimation of *Knighthood* may be yet further manifest from divers expressions, in that part of an Edict (transcribed by [e] Mr. *Selden*, out of *Goldastus*) which *Conrade* King of the *Romans* sent to those of *Palermo*, to give them notice he had received the *Order* of *Knighthood*; which he did after this manner, [f] *That although he ought not to want the Ensigns and Tokens of* Military Honor, *considering the nobleness of his Birth, and greatness of his Dignity* (he at that time swaying two Scepters) *yet because he had not as then received the* Military Girdle (*established by venerable Antiquity*) *he did chuse to adorn himself therewith in that Month of* August (wherein the said Edict passed) *to the end, that from thence the flower of his victorious years might put on the Ensigns of greater valor, and the excellency of this new Militia renew the lustre of original Nobility.* What peculiar respects *Knights* have had paid them in our own Nation, Mr. *Selden* hath collected from our legal proceedings, and set down in his *Titles of Honor*, *pag.* 783, 784, 785, and 786.

e, f *Tit. of Honor p.* 785.

In the close of this *Chapter*, we think fit to insert a few memorials of that additional favour (in augmentation of the *Knightly Honor*) which some of our *Kings* have pleas'd to afford those *Strangers*, on whom they have conferr'd the Dignity of *Knighthood*; and to make it more known and publick, given *Declarations* thereof under the Great Seal of *England* (where the person so honored made sute for the same) whereby they have declared and attested, that willingly, and of their own accord, they have given and conferr'd on them the Degree, Honor, and Title of a *Knight*, as due to their Virtues and Merits; to the end, that those persons should be esteemed and ranked in the place and number of *Knights*, as well among their own Subjects, as in their own Countries, and also by all persons elsewhere; no less than themselves should esteem any other honorable and worthy men, adorned with the like Honor from other *Kings* and *Princes*.

Declarations of Knighthood

The first that we have met with in this kind, was given by King *Henry* the Eighth, to Sir *Gregory de Cauls*, born of a Noble Family in *Rome*, on whom in consideration of his Virtues and Merits, the *King* had bestowed the Honor of Knighthood; as may be collected from a [g] *Warrant* directed to the Cardinal Arch-Bishop of *York*, his Chancellor, to make out Letters Patents under the Great Seal, *as well of the said Order of Knighthood*, as of the Grant of an annual Pension, of two hundred Crowns of Gold *per Annum*, during his life; for the better and more honorable maintenance of that Dignity.

g *Billa signata an.* 11. *H.* 8.

His late Majesty of ever blessed memory, King *Charles* the First, having Knighted Sir *James Cats*, Doctor of Law, Syndick of *Dort*, and Ambassador extraordinary to his said Majesty from the *States General* of the *United Provinces*; was also pleas'd (26° *Jan.* 1627.) to give him a [h] Declaration thereof, under the Great Seal of *England*, to notifie his being such, not only with us here, but in his own *Country*, and elsewhere.

And sometimes there hath past in these Letters Testimonial, a kind of *Ennoblement* to their *Posterity* (where that hath been before wanting to the *Family*) which the *King* in regard of the *Knights* great Virtue and Merits, hath thereby rais'd into that Degree, Title, and Dignity of *Gentleman*; as may be seen by those [i] Letters Patents, granted to Sir *Lewis Van Alteren*, eldest Son to *Simon Van Alteren*, Lord of *Jaersvelt*, and Councellor in the Court of Admiralty of *Amsterdam*, dated the twenty ninth of *January anno*, 4. *Car.* 1.

h, i, k, l, m *Ex Rot. penes W. Hutchinson gen. Anno* 1641.

The like [k] Letters Patents of Declaration of *Knighthood* and *Ennoblement* of *Posterity*, were shortly after (*viz.* 26. *Feb.* following) given to Sir *Peter Pau*, Son of Sir *Adrian Pau*, Lord of *Hemsted*, and then extraordinary Ambassador from the aforesaid *States General*.

But in some others, this declarative Clause, of having bestowed the Dignity of *Knighthood*, hath been much more contracted, then in the Precedent before remembred, and the testimony of donation only, and that briefly express'd: as in those Letters Patents made forth to Sir [l] *Aloysius Contareni*, Leiger Ambassador for the State

State of *Venice*, to King *Charles* the First, 20. *July* 1629. as also to Sir [m] *Peter Paul Rubens*, Secretary to the King of *Spain*, and one of the Privy Council in *Flanders*, 15. *December* 1630. to both of whom he thereby also gave augmentation of Arms.

With these before mentioned, may be here also inserted a few Examples, testifying the *Creation* of a *Knight* from abroad; such like Royal Declarations being oftentimes granted by the Emperors of *Germany*, and other Foreign *Princes*, to the *Knights* they have Created, both for the same reason, and upon the like ground, as is before noted.

Such was that Imperial Diploma of *Rodulph* the Second, Emperor of *Germany*, given at his Court at *Prague*, the second of *June* 1610. whereby he declared to have [n] created and ordained Sir *Robert Sherley* (our Countryman) a true and lawful *Knight*, to have received him into the *State*, *Degree*, and *Honor* of *Knighthood*, to have girt him with the *Sword* of Valor, and adorn'd and invested him with the *Robes*, *Ensigns*, and all other *Arms* and *Ornaments*, appertaining to the Order of Knighthood, according to the Imperial Custom: Decreeing moreover, by his said Imperial Authority, that for the future he should be esteemed, reputed, named, and honored for a *true* and *lawful Knight*, without lett or contradiction, and might use, possess, and enjoy all whatsoever *Honors*, *Prerogatives*, *Ensigns*, *Priviledges*, *Freedoms*, *Favors*, and *Liberties*, which the rest of his *Knights*, the *Knights* of the *Roman Empire*, as also the *Knights* of S. *John* of *Hierusalem* used, possessed, and enjoyed, in what manner soever; either of right or custom, none whatsoever forbidding the contrary.

n *See the Diploma at large in Purchas Pilgrimage part. 2. l. 10. p. 1806.*

There is transcribed into the [o] *Jurisprudentia Heroica*, a like Diploma at large, and almost in the same words, granted to Sir *Charles Belleke* by the same *Emperor*; in which it is also testified, that [p] he had by the stroke of his *Sword*, and Imperial word, made, created, nominated, and constituted him a *Knight*, and invested him with the Ensigns of the *Equestrian Order*, and other Ornaments appertaining thereto; and by virtue and force thereof, did decree unto him the Honors, Ensigns, and Priviledges, which other *Knights* did use, possess, and enjoy, without any impediment or contradiction.

o *Pag.* 403.

p *Pag.* 405.

Lastly, the Diploma of *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, made to Sir *Henry St. George* Knight, late *Richmond* Herald at Arms, when he was employed to carry the Ensigns of the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter* to that King (and transcribed by [q] Mr. *Selden*) is worthy of mention here: Wherein his Creation into the Dignity of *Knighthood*, is testified to have been solemnly performed in the view of the whole Army, and thereby is given and conferr'd upon him all *Honors*, *Priviledges*, *Immunities*, *Liberties*, *Rights*, *Preheminences*, and *Ensigns* whatsoever, which at any time, according to the Custom of any Place, had been granted to this *Order* of *Knighthood*; so that he might publickly use, possess and enjoy the same, in the presence of all men, and among all *Emperors*, *Kings*, *&c.* without any prohibition, either in word or deed. And moreover, this *King*, as a greater testimony of his favour, did thereby grant unto the said Sir *Henry*, an augmentation of the Royal Arms of *Sweden*, to be born and used by him and his descendants.

q *See the Titles of Honor. p. 459*

Certificates of Knighthood.

Something like the *Royal Declarations* before remembred, are those *Attestations* and *Certificates* of *Knighthood*, made, as occasion requires, instead of *Codicils*, by some of the *Kings*, and *Heralds* of Arms in *Flanders*, for manifestation and truth, no less than perpetual memory of the Creation, and the Honor thereby accruing to them, and their descendants, who have actually received the Dignity of *Knighthood*, to the end they might be acknowledged and reputed for *Knights*, and enjoy and use the Honors, Priviledges, and Prerogatives, due to that Degree, with other *Knights*.

Two such Declarations are set down in the [r] *Jurisprudentia Heroica*, the one made on the behalf of Sir *Hierom Sandelin* (Knighted at the solemn entrance and inauguration of *Philip* then Prince of *Spain* into *Antwerp*) the twelfth day of *September* in the year 1549. and subsigned by *Jean de Arroyo*, *Claude Marion*, and *Gerard de Marbais*, Heralds of Arms to the said *Prince*; the other by Sir *Anthony Beaulincourt* Knight, *Toison d'or*, Principal King of Arms, *Henry de la Tour*,

r *Pag.* 397. & 398.

Tour, Brabant, *Estienne de Morez*, Haynau, *Claude Marion*, Bourgoigne, *Jean de Demedrano*, and *Piere de Vernois*, also Kings of Arms to *Philip* the Second, King of *Castile* and *England*, for Sir *Roland Longin*, who was *Knighted* by the said King at *Antwerp*, the twenty third day of *January*, *Anno Domini* 1555. where a Chapter was then held, for the Election of *Knights* into the *Order* of the *Golden Fleece*.

CHAP. II.

OF THE Religious Orders OF KNIGHTHOOD *in* CHRISTENDOM.

SECT. I.

Of ancient Societies *analogous to the* Orders *of* Knighthood.

ALthough the *Orders* remembered in this and the next Chapter, may seem to have had their original from the *Equestrian Order* among the *Romans*; nevertheless, we may observe from Stories yet more ancient, some things bearing proportion or resemblance to these modern Societies of *Knighthood*. And this, though we do not take any great notice of certain old Rabinical Comments, concerning the *Anakim*, or Sons of *Anak*, who (according to [a] *Bouldouchius*) were a Society of valiant men, imagined to have been so called, not from *Anak*, as being the name of any person, but as they were *Torquati*, *Knights*, endowed with a *Chain* or *Collar*, *Anak* signifying as much as *Torquis*; and the *Order* thereof to have been instituted at the building of the City of *Hebron*, which City was before called [b] *Kiriath Arba*, *i. e.* the City of *Arba*; who is said to have been the [c] *Father* of *Anak*, namely the Father or first Institutor of *Anak*, or the *Order* of the *Collar*.

a *De Ecclesia ante Legem. l. 2. c. 8. p. 207. Edit. Paris. 1630. 4°.*

b *Josh. c. 14. v. 15.*

c *c. 15. v. 13.*

What will such, as are apt to give way to ingenious Fictions and Conceits, fancy of the *Argonauts*, who went in quest of the *Golden Fleece* (a Catalogue of whom you have in *Apollonius Rhodius*, *Orpheus*, and *Valerius Flaccus*) but that they were a Company of *Grecian Knights* (the principal whereof were *Castor* and *Pollux*, *Telamon*, *Orpheus*, *Hercules*, and *Hylas*) who entring into a most honorable Fraternity, or Association, made an Expedition to *Colchi*, under *Jason* their supream?

pream? What of the *Argolic Youths*, that hunted the *Caledonian Boar*; but a Society of *Knights* combin'd under *Meleager* their head or chief? Much like to which, of later times, were those Martial Followers of *Charles* the Great (first Emperor of the *Western Franks*) in his Expedition against the *Saracens* that invaded *Aquitain*, who (especially the chief of them, *Orlando*) are so renowned by that excellent Poem of *Lodovico Ariasto*; as also those that accompanied *Godfrey* of *Bulloign*, to the Conquest of *Jerusalem*, celebrated by that Heroic Poet *Torquato Tasso*, in his *Jerusalem Liberata*: both which Stories are true in the main, however flourisht over and interlac'd with Fancy and Fiction.

SECT. II.

The Christian Institution of Knightly Orders.

BUT waving further instances of this nature, we shall touch upon the occasion of founding *Societies* and *Orders* of *Knighthood*, in the times of Christianity. The grounds of their Erection were several and different (though all terminated in one common end) among which the principal were these that follow.

First, a perfect and sincere love to *Honor*, and a regard had to the prudent management and continual advancement of *Military Affairs*; and therein chiefly to excite and promote *Virtue*, and to confer on it a suitable Reward.

Such was the Design of King *Arthur* of *Britain*; who [e] being wonderfully delighted with the valiant emulation and military experience of gallant and worthy men (in whose policy, strength, and industry he might confidently and safely rely, if need required, in all urgent and hazardous enterprizes) enjoined such as had especially signalized themselves by their Martial Actions, a freedom and familiarity, not only with one another, but even with himself: And further, to honor and reward their valour and desert; he formed himself and them into a Body and Fellowship, which he stiled *Knights of the Round Table*.

e *Prefatio ad Lib. Nigrum.*

Upon which account also the *Military Orders* of the *Oak* in *Navarr*, the *Gennet* in *France*, the *Crown Royal* among the *Frizons*, the *Dove* in *Castile*, and the *Bear* in *Switzerland*, took their beginning: and hitherto may be referr'd the foundation of the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, as shall appear anon.

Secondly, it is not altogether from our purpose, that the generality of Romances, and several modern and heroic Poems (some of which are before remembred) make such frequent mention of *Knights Errant*, riding up and down to encounter *Pagans*; for another famous cause of erecting *Knightly Orders*, sprung from this occasion, namely, the Incursions and Robberies of the *Saracens* and *Barbarians*: to repel the violence and cruelty whereof, to vindicate the oppressed, redeem the injured and enslaved, to give entertainment and relief to Pilgrims and Strangers, were part of the Duties to which the *Knights Hospitallers*, *Templers*, and those of *Saint James* in *Gallicia*, stood engaged by their first foundation.

A third reason was to fight in defence of the *Christian Faith*, against *Pagans* and *Infidels*, to propagate the Christian Territories, and to promote the service of the Catholick Church; which was the chief cause why the *Orders* last mentioned were instituted, as also those other of the *Holy Sepulchre*, *Calatrava*, *Alcantara*, *St. Saviour* of *Mount Royal*, our *Lady* of *Montesa*, of *Christ* in *Portugal*, and the *Sword-Bearers* in *Livonia*.

And indeed, these were the main inducements that engaged them, and many other *Orders* of *Knighthood* (instituted in the Christian world) to do famous things in the cause of Religion: So that their holy zeal may be said to have very far contributed to the propagation and advancement of the Christian Profession; since generally the *Knights* of these *Orders* have employ'd themselves in the service of God, and spent their blood in the defence of his Faith, against *Saracens*, *Turks*, and *Unbelievers*.

Lastly,

Lastly, when *Soveraign Princes* found themselves imbroiled in Wars or dangerous Factions, a fourth reason of erecting such *Orders*, was, that they might by such a Tye (as the Combination of many valiant *Knights* into a Fraternity) restore Peace, quiet all Jealousies, unite Affections, and secure unto themselves the allianee of lasting friendship and powerful assistanee, both for their own, and their Countries safety and defenee. Hereupon do the *Orders* of the *Dragon* in *Hungary*, of the *Ermin*, as also the *Knot* in *Naples*, and of St. *Michael* in *France*, seem to have been erected.

And to what end were the *Badges* of such several *Orders* devised, but to be distributed as Pledges of remembrance, that thereby the sincerity of their love who had united themselves into a *Brotherhood* (if at any time it should grow cold) might be quiekned and renewed, and their Friendship increased and established? So that though humane oeeurences might oceasion a distance between them, as to their persons, yet were these *Ornaments* as so many Remembrances of the Faith and Oath whereby they were contracted into one Body; and consequently of the harmony of minds and affections that ought to be among them.

SECT. III.

The division of Knightly Orders *into* Religious *and* Military.

HAving thus briefly toucht upon some general grounds and causes, for instituting *Orders* of *Knighthood* in *Christendom*; before we proceed to a particular account of the *Orders* themselves, it will be further necessary to acquaint our Reader, that the *Knights* of these *Orders* have been more especially divided into two kinds, namely, *Religious* or *Ecclesiastical*, and *Military* or *Secular*; which division we shall likewise follow in this place, beginning with the *Religious*, for the same reasons, that in all Degrees of Honor, which are esteemed of an equal rank, the *Ecclesiastick* hath been allowed to preeede the *Temporal*.

But we find, that there hath risen much dispute among the *Canonists*, touching several of those which we are to marshal under the title of *Religious* (or as generally they are called [f] *Cruciferi*) to wit, whether they be truly and properly *Religious* or not. The Arguments on both sides are numerous, and therefore we shall refer such as are desirous of a particular satisfaction in the case, to a late Treatise, written by [g] *Andreas Mendo*, a *Jesuit*, who hath judiciously contracted the Arguments, and cited the several *Authors* both of the Affirmative and Negative part; thinking it enough here, to give this following short account thereof.

f *à Crucis insigni.*

g *De Ordin. Militar. Disquis. 2. Quest. 2. sect. 2. & 3. Edit. Lugduni. 1668.*

Those *Knights* who have taken upon them the three solemn and substantial Vows of Religion, namely *Poverty*, *Chastity*, and *Obedience*, (that is, (1.) [h] Not to hold or possess any thing properly or peculiarly their own, nor to dispose thereof, but with the licence or allowance of the Master, or Chief of the Order. (2.) To keep themselves single, chaste, and undefiled with Women. And (3.) to submit to the commands of their Master, and to the Rules and Statutes of their Order) they are (we say) without contradiction [i] truly and properly accounted *Religious*, and have been numbred among Religious and Ecclesiastical persons, and consequently in spiritual concerns, exempt from all spiritual, or other Jurisdictions (except the *Masters* or *Prelates* of their own *Order*) as are the *Knights* of St. *John of Jerusalem*.

h *Obedientia præstanda Magistro, nihil proprii tenendum, atq; Castitas quantum fieri potest tenenda.* Pantal. de Ord. Joannit. reb. gest. l. 1. p. 19.

Vide etiam la Regla y Establecimientos de la Cavalleria de Santiago de Espada fo. 65. a.

i *Mich. Anton. Frances de Eccles. Cathedralib. l. 5. n. 248.*

But such of these as have permission to contract marriage, and are either married or may marry, and do profess Conjugal Chastity, *viz.* [k] to enjoy only their own Wives; are not by some, simply and absolutely, called or esteemed *Re-*

k *La Castidid conjugal ha de ser, que con sola su muger, & conuengan.* La Regla de Santiago. f. 65. a.

ligious, but [l] *secundum quid*, and improperly; of which sort are those of the *Orders* of *St. James*, *Calatrava*, *Alcantara*, and *Montesa*, in *Spain*, and many others. Nevertheless, [m] others conceive these aswel truly *Religious*, seeing they vow Conjugal (though not strict and absolute) Chastity; and this is the opinion of most.

l *S. Thomas. 2. 2. Q. 184. Art. 4. respons. ad tertium.*
Vide M. A. Frances de Eccles. Cathedra. lib. loco citato.
m *Flav. Cherubinus Compend. Bullar. Tom. 3. p. 50. Constit. 41. Schol. 2. & Tom. 1. p. 7. Const. 5. Schol. 2.*

And in truth, the Vow of severe Chastity is not in this case wholly discharged, but only dispensed with; and that of Conjugal imposed instead thereof. For the *Popes* never changed or abolished the religious state of *Knights*, but only dispensed with them as to Marriage; whilst in other things they made no alteration, but left them whole and entire.

And therefore, since we observe those *Knights*, who vow absolute Chastity, and those who profess Conjugal, have alike received their approbation from the Papal See, and that some *Knights* have not been accounted [n] *Religious*, before such time, and until their rule of living hath been confirm'd to them from thence (as is noted by those of St. *Lazarus*) after which Confirmation, all that enter into any *Order*, are subject to the particular Rule, so approved of, unless for good cause, they be [o] dispensed with: For these reasons we shall place both under the Title of *Religious* or *Ecclesiastical Knights*, in the following Discourse.

n *Ibid. Tom. 1. p. 21. Const. 1. Schol. 2.*

o *Si in votis aliquis est laxatus, id ex Pontificis dispensatione dimanat, qui potuit Religionis veræ naturam conservare adhuc post præstitam dispensationem.* Andr. Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq. 2. Quest. 2. sect. 2. n. 44.

SECT. IV.

Of Ecclesiastical Foundations *dependant upon* Military Orders.

BUT the Institutions of those *Orders*, purely *Military*, were after a while thought too weak to continue long, if not sustained by Religion and Piety, and too defective, without adjoining Ecclesiastical persons thereunto. Therefore the *Founders*, considering, that in all Councils and Affairs, there should be a concurrence of Divine assistance and Military industry, began to dedicate them principally to the Honor and Worship of *God*, or to our *Saviour*, or to the *blessed Virgin*, or some other of the *Saints*; thereby to gain no less the protection and favour of the Divine goodness, on the behalf of the *Founders*, and *Knights Companions* of such *Orders* in general, than its especial assistance in their Councils, Affairs, or particular Enterprises: And this they supposed more easily obtainable by the interposition of men eminent for their sincerity, piety, humility, and devotion, set apart and appointed to say Prayers, sing Psalms, and perform other Ecclesiastical Duties (the efficacy of Religion, consisting in the Offices of the *Priests*) for the glory, fidelity, peace, and safety of their Kingdoms and Subjects, and the good success of their Military Undertakings.

Hereupon some of them, at their first Institutions, joined *sacred Orders* to their *Militia*, and made provision for Ecclesiastical persons, whose assigned Duty was to undertake the spiritual warfare, and spend their time in Divine Offices and Devotions at home, in their several Foundations, for the prosperity of those undertakings, wherein the *Knights Companions* themselves were engaged abroad, either as to the defence of Christian Religion, their Prince, or Country.

Hence was it, that our [r] King *Edward* the Third, at the first Institution of the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, appointed, within the Chappel of Saint *George* at *Wyndesor*, [t] thirteen secular Canons, and thirteen Vicars, there to attend the celebration of Divine Offices. In like manner did [u] *Amadis* the Sixth, Earl of *Savoy*, who, when he had instituted the *Order* of the *Collar* (since called of the *Annunciade*) founded also the *Chartreuse* of *Pierre Chastle* in *Bugey*, wherein were entertain'd [a] fifteen Priests, and they obliged to celebrate, every day, fifteen Masses.

r *Ord. Stat. Garteri Art. 4.*
t *Catalog.*
u *des Chevaliers de l'Ordre du Coller de Savoy, dit. de l'Annunciade.*
a *Turin. 1654.*

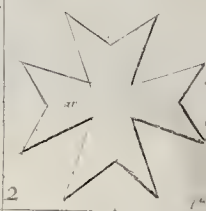
Upon

THE
Severall ENSIGNES of the
RELIGIOVS ORDERS of
KNIGHTHOOD
mentioned in the second
Chapter;

The Holy Sepulchre

1 pa 51

S. Iohn in Ierusalem



2

S. Iohn of Acon

pa 60

S. Thomas

8 pa 60

S. Blase in Palestine.

9 pa 61

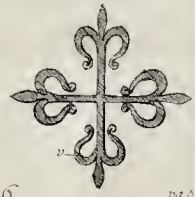
Martyrs in Palestine

10

S. Saviour in Aragon.

pa 68

d Avis in Portugal,



16 pa 69

Wing of S. Michaell

17 pa 70

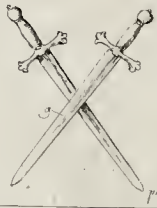
S. Gereon

18

S. George d Alfama

23 pa 76

Sword bearers in Livonia

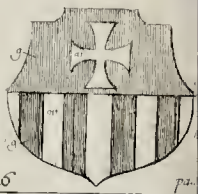


24 pa 76

S. Dominick.

25 pa 77

S. Mary de Merced



26

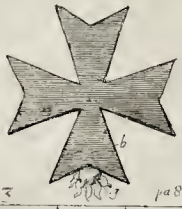
Iesits Christ in Portugal.

pa 82

Passion of Iesus Christ.

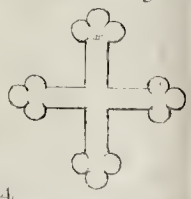
32 85

Brician knights in Sweden



33 pa 87

S. Maurice in Savoy.



34

S. Paul at Rome

40

The Pais of Rome.

40 pa 89

S. Stephen at Florence

41 pa 90

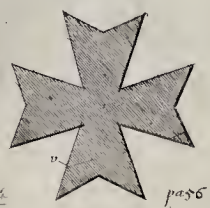
S. Maurice & S. Lazarus

42

Knights Templars.

1 pa. 85

S. Lazarus.



4 pa. 86

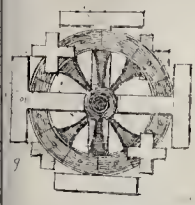
Teutonick Knights.

5 pa. 88

Mount-Joy in Palestine

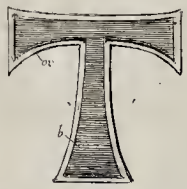
6 pa. 89

S. Catharine of Mount Sinai.



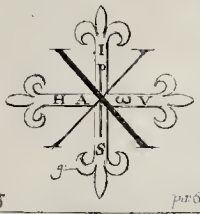
pa. 91

S. Anthony in Æthiopia



pa. 82

Constantinian Angelick knigh.



13 pa. 65

S. James in Galicia.

14 pa. 5

Iulian & Alcantara.

pa. 71

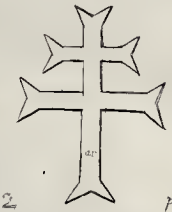
De Trugillo in Spaine.

20 pa. 73

Calatrava in Spaine.

21 pa. 73

Holy Ghost in Saxia.

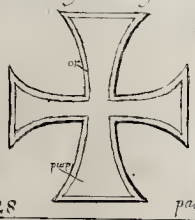


22 pa. 75

Rosary in Toledo

7 pa. 80

S. Mary in Italy.

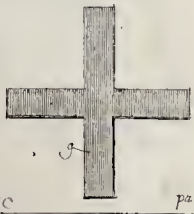


28 pa. 80

S. James in Portugal.

20 pa. 80

Montesa in Valentia



30 pa. 81

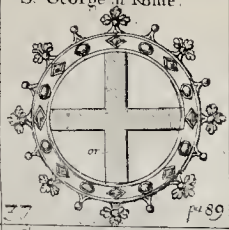
Holy Ghost at Rome.

pa. 80

S. George in Carinthia.

36 pa. 88

S. George at Rome.



37 pa. 89

S. Peter at Rome.

38 pa. 8

Knights of Loretto.

3 pa. 91

S. Mary of Mount Carmel.

44 pa. 91

S. Mary at Rome.

45 pa. 92

Christian Militia in Moravia

46 pa. 93

Upon the same account were erected certain [w] foundations of Divine Service, in the Ducal Chappel of *Dion*, in the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, by *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*, Founder of the *Order* of the *Golden Fleece*; and likewise in the Church of *le Mont. S. Michel* in *Normandy*, did [x] *Lewis* the Eleventh of *France*, ordain to be celebrated the Divine Service, and other Ecclesiastical Ceremonies, relating to the foundation of the *Order* of *Saint Michael*, by him instituted.

w *Statut. Toison d' or. Art.* 20.

x *Stat. de l'Ordre Monsieur S. Michel Archang. Art.* 19.

SECT. V.

A brief account of the Religious Orders *of* Knighthood.

NOw come we to deliver a short account of the *Religious* or *Sacred Orders* of *Knighthood*, to which shall succeed those that are purely and compleatly *Military*; in both which we shall principally take notice (1.) Of the *Time* of their *Institution*, (2.) By *whom* founded, and (3.) The *Habit*, and *Ensigns*, bestowed upon each of them; proceeding according to the antiquity of each *Order*'s Foundation, as we can best discover it, and allowing their Precedency here, for that cause rather than any other.

But forasmuch as the *Institutions* of some of these *Orders* of *Knighthood*, are endeavoured to be made more ancient than there is good ground to believe; we have therefore thought it needless (having for the most part confin'd our Discourse to the three particulars now mentioned) to engage our Pen too far, where 'tis almost impossible to set the Chronological part right, and may very possibly give an occasion of Offence.

We have taken in all the *Orders* that we could meet with, though some were obscure, and but short-liv'd, and others, for other reasons, may be thought inconsiderable; judging them worthy of a place here, with the most famous and known, seeing once they had such in the Register of Honor.

Lastly, where the occasion is inserted, whence (as is affirmed) some of them took their Original, and this lookt upon as fabulous and romantick: We must inform our *Reader*, that we take not upon us to justifie all that is spoken to this point; but suppose we have dealt fairly and candidly with him, in placing our Authorities in the Margent, and there left them to be considered of, where we hope they will be of strength, at least sufficient to support the Text, and justifie our integrity.

The Order of the Knights of the Holy Sepulchre *in Jerusalem.*

(1.)

This *Order* of *Knighthood*, though not so ancient as some would make it (who refer the Original to [a] *St. James* Bishop of *Jerusalem*, to [b] *Constantine* the Great, and to [c] *Charles* the Great) nor so late as [d] others would have it, who say this Order was founded in the year of our *Lord* 1110. yet is it accounted the most ancient of all those Orders which took beginning in the *Holy Land*; and as a judicious Divine of our Nation reports, was instituted in the year [e] 1099. at such time as the Temple of *Jerusalem* was regained from the *Saracens*: which account perhaps he grounded upon the date given to the ancient *Statutes* of this *Order*, established at *Jerusalem* on [f] *New-years-day* in the year aforesaid, and published by *Mennenius*.

a *Barthol. de Saligniaco in Itinerario suo terræ sanctæ.*

b *Jos. Micheli Marquez in Tesoro Militar. de Cavalliera. fol.* 14. *b. & fol.* 15. *a.*

c *Mennen. Delic. Equest. p.* 197.

d *Andr. Mendo, de Ord. Milit. Dis.* 1. *Quest.* 2. *Sect.* 3. *n.* 22.

e *Heylins Cosmogr. l.* 3 *p.* 109.

f *Deliciæ Equestrium. p.* 213.

As to the person by whom this Order was founded, he refers it to [g] *Philip* King of *France*, but [h] *Andrew Favin* will have it to be *Baldwin* the First, King of *Jerusalem*: For there having been (while the *Saracens* possest that City) certain

g *Cosmogr. loc. cit.*

h *En le Theat. d' Honneur. l.* 9. *c.* 4.

Canons regular of the Order of St. *Augustine*, to whom they permitted the Custody of the *Holy Sepulchre* of our *Lord*, and whose Convent adjoined thereunto; These [i] Canons (saith he) did King *Baldwin* make men of Arms, and *Knights* of the *Holy Sepulchre*, and ordained that they should nevertheless retain their [k] *White Habit*, and on the breast thereof bear his own Arms, which were, [l] *Argent, a Cross Potent Or, between four Crossetts of the same*, commonly called the *Jerusalem Cross*. Their Great Master was the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, who had power granted from the *Founder*, to confer the Order, and to receive the three Vows, of *Poverty*, *Chastity*, and *Obedience*.

The chief Duty whereunto these *Knights* were obliged by their profession, was to guard [m] the *Holy Sepulchre*, the custody whereof was peculiarly committed to them, * to fight against the *Saracens* and *Infidels* with all their power; to relieve and protect *Pilgrims*; to redeem *Christian Captives*; to hear Mass every day; to recite the hours of the Cross, and to bear the five ‖ red Crosses, in memory of the five wounds of our *Saviour*. They had their Rule confirm'd to them by [n] Pope *Innocent* the Third.

When the *Christians* were driven out of the *Holy Land*, these *Knights* retired into *Europe*, and seated themselves at [o] *Perugia* in *Italy*, after which, by consent and permission of the Soldan, the [p] custody of the *Holy Sepulchre* was committed to the *Franciscan Fryars*. The *Knights* then in being, retained yet their white Habit, but changed their ancient Arms to a [q] double red Cross.

By the [r] Bull of Pope *Innocent* the Eighth, dated the 28. of *March* 1484. they, and all their Goods were annexed and incorporated, to the *Knights Hospitalars* of St. *John of Jerusalem*, then remaining in the Isle of *Rhodes*, (since more commonly known by the Title of *Knights of Malta*) as being under the same Vow and Rule.

But it was not long e're his Successor [s] Pope *Alexander* the Sixth, *anno* 1496. transferr'd to the Papal See, all power of conferring this *Order* of *Knighthood*, publishing himself and his Successors to be the *Great Masters* thereof. He further [t] empowered the Guardian of the *Holy Sepulchre* (his Vicar-general) to bestow the same upon Pilgrims and Travellers to the *Holy Land*; the Formulary for receiving of which, is set down at large by [u] *Mennenius*, and [w] *Favin*.

Afterwards, *Philip* the Second, King of *Spain*, used his endeavours to restore this Order in some of his Dominions, to which end, several of these *Knights* assembled in the Church of St. *Catharine* at *Hochstraten* in *Brabant* (*in Cameracensi Diocesi*) and by their Diploma, dated the 26. of *March* 1558. (exhibited by [x] *Mennenius*) elected the said King, *Grand Master* of the Order; but this design took no effect.

Of latter times, there was another attempt to the like purpose, made by [y] *Charles Gonzago* of *Cleve*, Duke of *Nevers*, in the year 1615. and this also, upon the application of the Great Master of *Malta*, to *Lewis* the Thirteenth of *France*, came to nothing.

i Theat. k d'Hon. loco cit.
l Carol Segoing in Tresor. Heraldique pag. 115 Seb. Per. Sanctus in Tess. Gentilit. pag. 260. vide St. Marthe's
m Jos. Micheli Tesoro Militar. de Cavallieria. fol. 15 a
* Mennen in ‖ Delic. Equest. p. 42.
n Jud Gothofrid. in Archonto Cosm. l. 3. p. 1. Andr. Mendo, loc. supra cit.
o Pantaleon
p de Ord. Joannit. reb. gest. p. 95.
q Sanfovin. Origine de Cavalier. f. 22. a. Aubert. Miræus, Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 46. juxta impres. 1638
r Favin.
s Theat. d'
t Hon. l. 9. c. 4. Mennen Delic. Equest. J. f. Mich. Tesoro Milit. locis cit. Sylvest. Mauro-lico in Mare Oceano, de tutte le Religioni del Mundo. p. 232.
u Delic. Equest. p. 43.
w Theat. d' Honneur. loc. citato.
x Delic. Equest. p. 214.
y Favin. Theat. d'Hon. l. 9 c. 4.

The Order of Hospitalars *of St. John Baptist in Jerusalem.*

(2.)

Before the *Latin Christians* had taken the City of *Jerusalem* from the *Saracens*, certain [a] *Christian Merchants* of the Kingdom of *Naples*, who traded into *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*, with Commodities most acceptable, because most rare and strange, to the Inhabitants of those Countries, obtained leave from the Caliph of *Ægypt*, who then had the Dominion thereof, to [b] erect a small and convenient House, for the entertainment of themselves and their Country-men, which they built before the Patriarchal Church of the *Holy Sepulchre* in *Jerusalem*; together with as small an Oratory, dedicated to the Blessed Virgin *Mary*.

To them repaired certain [c] Canons of the Order of St. *Augustine*, conducted by an Abbot from *Naples*, who in a short time built another Oratory, in honor of St. *Mary Magdalen*: that of the Virgin *Mary* being appointed for the entertainment

a Monast. Anglican. Tom. 2 p. 497. ex
b Hist. Antiochena. l. 18. c. 3. & 4. Pantaleon, de Joannitarum rebus gestis l. 1. p. 3. Sylv. Mauro-lico in Mare Oceano Religionum. p. 121.
c Alf. Ciacon de vita & gestis Paschal. 2. l. 1. p. 357. Romæ 1601.

ment of Men, and that other of St. *Mary Magdalen*, for the reception of Women. And not long after, to wit, in the year of our Lord [d] 1048. they restored the Church of the *Holy Sepulchre*.

But the confluence of Pilgrims and Travellers, growing very great, and these places already built, too narrow for their reception, they [e] erected a large Hospital in that very place [f] where our *Saviour* celebrated the last Supper with his Disciples, for the better entertainment of Strangers, that travelled thither upon the account of Devotion; (who for want of a place to lodge in, did usually, in the night time, fall into the hands of the *Saracens*, that [g] rob'd and murder'd them) as also to relieve and cure the diseased among them. So that at length, in regard of their great Charity, and friendly Hospitality, as also for that these religious persons took St. *John Baptist* for their Patron (to the honor of whose Name, a Chappel or Oratory was built there also) they obtained the Title of [h] *Brethren Hospitalars, of St. John Baptist of Jerusalem*. But some are of opinion, that this Hospital was dedicated to the memory of [i] St. *John of Cyprus*, who in the Reign of *Thocas* the *Emperor*, was Bishop of *Alexandria*, and so charitable and liberal in bestowing Alms, that he obtained the name of *Johannes Eleemosynarius*.

Calvisius in his Chronology sets down the Institution of this Order, to be in the year 1092. Others refer it to the year [k] 1099. when one *Gerard*, a Native of the Province of [l] *Tholouse*, and a man of holy life and piety, came to *Jerusalem*, in the time of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, and out of zeal upon sight of the places trodden by the feet of our *Saviour*, and sprinkled with his blood, built this *Hospital* (which became the first and chief Seat of this ancient *Order*) and devoutly ministred to the necessities of the poor. After a while he [m] adjoined to himself some honest and religious men, and received the regular Habit of Black, wearing on the outside thereof a White Cross.

King [n] *Baldwin* the First, conferr'd on them large Priviledges and Franchises, permitting them to manage Arms, as did the Canons Regulars, Guardians of the *Holy Sepulchre*, and *anno* [o] 1104. instituted them to be *Knights*. So that they, who before were pious and liberal towards Pilgrims and diseased persons, became at length the examples of true and Christian generosity: Their * duty now engaging them personally to fight against the *Saracens* and *Infidels*, in defence of the Christian Faith.

These *Knights* then acknowledged obedience to the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, who [p] first approved their Order, but afterwards [q] when their Revenues increased, it begat a neglect of their former religious and humble carriage; and forthwith they laboured with the Pope to be absolved from their obedience to the Patriarch, which [r] they obtain'd, though he, and several other Bishops of *Palestine*, travelled to *Rome* to oppose them, and manifest the injuries they sustained from the *Knights*.

This *Order* had its [s] second approbation and rule of living confirmed from Pope *Gelasius* the Second, but [t] *Andr. Mendo* saith, from *Calixtus* the Second, *anno* 1120. and was by *Adrian* the Fourth [u] received under the protection of the Papal See; being likewise endowed with ample Priviledges, and exemption from payment of Tythes, by succeeding Popes, chiefly by [w] *Pius* the Fourth.

The *Knights* of this *Order* then took the [x] black Habit of Hermits of St. *Augustine*, and lived under his rule by the grant of *Honorius* the Second, *anno* [y] 1125. vowing [z] Obedience, Poverty, and Chastity; and on the [a] Breast of this Habit wore, at first, a plain Cross of white Cloth, since changed to one with [b] eight points: but in the [c] time of War they used a Red Cassock, bearing the White Cross upon it.

After the death of *Gerard*, the Founder of this Hospital,

e *Cassan. Catalog. gloriæ mundi, pars 9. Consid.* 4.

f *Cœnavit Dominus cum Apostolis, & nunc ibi domus illa, à quæ incepit Ordo, qui dicitur Hospitalariorum.* Abulensis in Comment. Epist. D. Hieronymi ad Paulam. c. 7.

g *Pantal. de Ord. Joannit. &c. l. 1. p. 4.*

h *Andr. Favin. Theat. d' Honneur. l. 9. c. 5.*

i *Pantaleon loco citato. A. Miræus Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 3.*

k *Sansovin. Orig. de Cavalieri. fo. 13. a. Gio. Pietro de Crescenzi Presid. Romanæ parte 3. l. 1. p. 496.*

l *A. Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Quest. 3. n. 108.*

m *Vitriac. apud Miræum.*

n *Favin. et Le Theat. d' Honneur. l. 9. c. 5.*

o *Cassan. Catalog. glor. mundi, pars 9. Consid. 4. f. 172 & pars 5. Consid. 64.*

p *Pantaleon de Ord. Joannit. l. 1. p. 19.*

q *Monast. Anglic. Tom. 2. p. 499.*

r *Hospitalarii prævenientes, per dona maxima totam Curiam (Romanam) corruperunt, sic quod Patriarcha, ipso infecto negotio, ad patriam suam rediit. Ib.*

s *Mennen. Deliciæ Equest. p. 69.*

t *De Ordin. milit. loco nuper cit.*

u *Flav. Cherubin. Compend. Bullar. Tom. 1. p. 6. Const. 2.*

w *Tom. 2. p. 3. Const. 9.*

x *Pantal. de Ord. Joannit. l. 1. p. 18.*

y *A. Mendo de Ord. Milit. loc. cit.*

z *Pantaleon. l. 1. p. 18. Aub. Miræus. p. 7. Ciacon de vita Paschal. 2. l. 1. p. 357. Cassan. Catalog. glor. mundi, pars 9. Consid. 4.*

a *Item omnes Fratres, Crucem in honorem Dei, & ejusdem Sanctæ Crucis, in Cappis & Mantellis secum different ante pectus.* Regula Ord. Joan Jerusal. Art. 29. *Vide Monast. Anglican.* Tom. 2. p. 497.

b *Cruz. blanca de ocha puntas, abito negro.* El. Conde de Lanserote en Nobleza del Andalusia. l. 1. c. 32.

c *Pantaleon de Ord. Joannit. loc. cit.*

having

having increased in Men and Revenues, elected out of their own Body another Governor or Head, namely, *Raimund de Podio*, or [d] *Poggio* a *Florentine*, who digested and enlarged their Laws and Institutions, and divided the Body of the Order into * three Classes, *viz. Knights, Servants*, and *Ecclesiasticks* (which hath since received, from the succeeding Great Masters, many additions.) This Body of Laws was confirmed by Pope [e] *Boniface* the Ninth, 7. *Idus Apr.* in the sixth year of his Popedom, the Composers style in it runs thus, [f] *Ego Ramundus Dei gratia, servus pauperum Jesu Christi, & Custos Hospitalis Jerusolymitani.* But afterwards he had the Title of [g] *Great Master* of the *Order* given him, which continued to his Successors, [h] the Adjective [*Great*] being added to denote his power and authority; the Government and Administration of the whole Militia, being lodged in him for the time being.

This great Master is a free Lord, he hath at this day the Title of [i] *Prince of Malta* and *Gozzi*, and had that of *Illustrious* first given him by *Ferdinand* the Second, Emperor of *Germany:* Among sundry great priviledges wherewith he is invested, he hath power to Seal in Lead, as doth the *Pope* and Duke of *Venice*. He acknowledges the *Pope* for his Head, and the King of *Spain* for his Patron.

Under this *Great Master*, there are many of the *Knights* in several Kingdoms and Provinces, called *Priors*, some of whom have also the addition of *Great*; With us in *England* he was stiled *Prior Hospitalis Sancti Johannis Jerusalem in Anglia*, and by that [k] Title was he summoned to the Parliament as a *Baron* of this Kingdom: At length he became ranked the first *Baron*, and had place and precedency accordingly above all the *Barons* of Parliament. There is a *Memorandum* of making his Oath of *Fealty* to the King, which I find thus recorded.

|| *Memorandum quod Frater* Johannes de Radyngton *Prior Hospitalis Sancti Johannis Jerusalem in Anglia vicesimo tertio die Septembris anno præsenti apud Mansum Fratrum Prædicatorum* London. *fecit fidelitatem suam Domino Regi debitam coram Consilio dicti Domini Regis ibidem tunc existente, sub hac forma*; Jeo sera foial & foie & loialtie portera a nostre Seigneur le Roi Richard & a ses heirs Rois D'engleterre de vie de membre & de terrien honour a vivre & morir contre toutz gentz & diligiament seray entendant as busoignes nostre Seigneur le Roy solonc mon sen & poair & le conseil nostre Seigneur le Roy celera & a lui & a ses maundementz en quantque a moy attient sera obeisant si Dieu moi eide & ses Seintz. *Protestando quod hoc non cederet in præjudicium Hospitalis prædicti temporibus futuris.*

This Order grew in time to such greatness in Possessions and Lands, that in the Reign of King *Henry* the Third, they had in Christendom, no fewer than * nineteen thousand Mannors.

When *Saladine* had taken *Jerusalem* (after it had been possest eighty nine years by the *Christians*) these *Knights* retreated to the City of || *Acres*, called *Ptolomais*; and that being also taken, they seised upon the [l] Island of *Rhodes*, and gained the chief City there, [m] 18. *Calend. Sept.* in the year of our *Lord* 1308. which Pope [n] *Clement* the Fifth confirmed to them, and thereupon they began to be called [o] *Knights of Rhodes*.

At *Rhodes* they remained 214. years, even until *anno* [p] 1522. when *Solyman* the Great took the Island by force, and made his publick entry thereinto on [q] *Christmas-day*, after which they betook themselves to the [r] Island of *Malta*, which with *Tripoli* and *Gozzo* were granted to them in [s] Fee, by the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth, the [t] 23. of *March anno* 1530. under the tender of one Falcon to the Viceroy of *Sicily*, upon the 25. day of *April* yearly, and on condition to acknowledge the King of *Spain* and *Sicily* for their Protectors. This Donation was confirmed by * Pope *Clement* the Seventh, on the 9. of *May* in the same year. In which Ile they yet continue the Bulwark and Fortress of *Europe*, chiefly to shelter *Sicily*, and guard the Coasts of *Italy:* and from this settlement of theirs in this place, they have been ever since called *Knights of Malta*.

The

d *Sanfovin. Orig. de Cavaleria. f. 13. a.*
* *Phil. Briet. Annal. Mundi, pars 3. Tom. 2. p. 22.*
e *Monast. Anglican. Tom. 2. p. 493.*
f *Ibid.*
g *Mennen. Decia Equest. p. 69.*
h *Cassan. Catalog. glor. Mundi, pars 9. Consid. 4.*
i *Gottfridus. Archont Cosmic. l. 3 p. 70. Pantaleon de Ord. Joannit. l. 12. p. 381.*
k *Claus. 49. H. 3 m. 11. Dorso in Schedulia.*
|| *Claus. 6. R. 2. pars 1. m. 29. Dorso.*
* *Math. Paris. Hist. Anglic. p. 615. sub anno 1244. Edit. London, 1640.*
|| *Favin. l. 9. c. 5*
l *Pant. de Ord. Joannit. l. 4. p. 97.*
m *Lib. 7. p. 200. Sanfovin. f. 13. & 14. Miræus, p. 7.*
o *Cassan. Catalog. glor. Mundi. pars 9. Consid. 4.*
p *Turkish Hist. p. 600.*
q *Ibid.*
r *Pantaleon, loc cit.*
s *(Flav. Cherubin Comment. Bal-*
* *Jav. Tom. 2. p. 4. Const. 9. schol. 1. vide etiam Pantal. de Ord. Joannit. l. 7. p. 212. 213.*
t *Pend.*

The Order of Knights Templars.

(3.)

About the years [a] 1117. [b] 1118. [c] 1119. or [d] 1120. this *Order* took beginning (*Baldwin* the Second then reigning in *Jerusalem*, and [e] *Gelasius* the Second possessing the Roman Chair) when [f] nine *Gentlemen*, urged by zealous devotion, passed the Seas to the *Holy Land*, the chief of which (though the rest are forgotten) were [g] *Hugo de Paganes*, and *Godfrey de Saint Omer*, two *Knights* of Noble Extraction. The King, because these *Knights* at first had no habitation, assigned to them part of his [h] own Palace, neer the South-gate, adjoining to the Temple of *Solomon* in *Jerusalem*; and gave them leave to build a small House of residence, within the inclosure thereof; and hereupon they became called [i] *Brothers of the Militia of the Temple*, or more ordinarily, in one word, *Knights Templars*.

And as they began to increase in number (which they did not till after [k] nine years, from their Institution) so their first undertaking and profession (to which they were enjoined by the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*) was chiefly to [l] guard the most dangerous High-ways about *Jerusalem*; whereupon they became safe conductors to Pilgrims and Travellers (who came to visit the holy places in that City) both in coming thither, and returning thence, against the violence and robberies of the *Saracens*; which charitable service made them acceptable to all, and for which they obtained of the [m] Patriarch and Bishops, remission of their sins.

But they were yet so poor, that for the first nine years, they liv'd upon the [n] Alms of others, and wore such Clothes, as good men, for Charities sake bestowed on them: They also rode two on one Horse; in memory of which primitive poverty, there was engraved on the Seal of their *Order*, the Figure of two of their *Knights* riding upon one Horse; which is exactly represented in [p] *Math. Paris*.

At the [q] Council held at *Troyes* in *Champaigne*, *anno* 1127. they had certain Rules assigned to them, drawn up by * St. *Bernard*, Abbot of *Clairvaux* (a [r] *French* Gentleman, Lord of *Fontaines*, a Village and Castle distant about half a mile from *Dion*) by the appointment of Pope *Honorius* the Second, and *Stephen* Patriarch of *Jerusalem*; in the [s] presence of which Patriarch, they made their Vows of Obedience, Poverty, and Chastity, and to live under the rule of [t] Canons Regular of St. *Augustine*. They were also enjoined to wear a *White Habit*, to which (but not till the time of *Eugenius* the Third) they assumed the [u] *Red Cross*, and of the * same form that the *Knights Hospitallers of St. John of Jerusalem* wore, (though || *Favin* saith it was a *Patriarchal Cross*) and sewed it on the left shoulder of their Mantles, to distinguish them from the *Knights* of other Orders in the *Holy Land*. And thus as by their *White Habit* their innocency was notified, so by the *Red Cross*, their resolution to spend their blood in defence of the Christian Faith.

These *Knights*, with those other of the *Holy Sepulchre*, *Hospitallers*, and *Teutonicks*, were the principal Columns which supported the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, for a long time; and therefore their valiant encounters with the Infidels, and forwardness to sacrifice their lives, for the honor of *God*, and defence of the *Holy Land*, ought to be had in everlasting remembrance. But [w] when Riches increast, and their Revenues were augmented, they grew proud, and withdrew themselves from the obedience of the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, to join with the Pope.

So that at last, upon [x] *Friday* after the Feast-day of St. *Denys*, in the year of our Lord 1307. all the *Knights* of this *Order* in *France*, were (in one and the same hour) seized on and imprisoned, by the command of *Philip le Bel*, King of *France*,

a *Cassan. Catalog. gloria mundi. pars* 9. *Consid.* 5.
b *Ex Chron. Rogeri de Wendover. Math. Paris. Hist. Angl. p.* 67. *Histor. Anglic. Script. Edit. Lond.* 1653. *Col.* 1008.
Aub. Miræus Orig. Ord. Eq. p. 11.
c *Andr. Favin. Theat. d'Hon. l.* 9. *c.* 7.
d *Monast. Anglic. Tom.* 2. *p.* 517. *Ex Histor. Antiochena. l.* 12. *c.* 7.
e *Platina in vita Gelas.* 2. *p.* 166. *Alf. Ciacon. in vita præd. Gelasii, l.* 1. *p.* 385.
f *Cassan. in Catal. glor. mun. loc. cit. Panteleon de Ord. Joannit. l.* 1. *p.* 23. *S. Maurolico in Mare Oceano Religionum. p.* 216.
g *Sansovin. Origine de Cavalierie. fo.* 17. *b. Menn. Delic. Equest p.* 75. *Francis. de Radez de Andrada (by mistake) calls him Don Hugo de Campanes.* Chron. de Calatrava. f. 3. b.
h *Pantal. de Ord. Joannit. loc. citato.*
i *Fratres militiæ Templi.* Cassan. loc. cit.
k *Mennen. ut supra. Miræus. p.* 13.
l *Fl. Cherub. Comp. Bull. Tom.* 1. *p.* 37. *Const.* 1. *Schol.* 2. *S. Maurolico. loc. cit.*
m *Gottofred. Archont. Cosm. l.* 3. *p.* 4. *Stows abbrev. p.* 281.
n *Monast. Ang. Tom* 2. *p.* 518.
p *Ad Calcem Adversarium. vide Antiq. War. p.* 704.
q *Math. Paris. Hist. Angl. p.* 69. *Phil. Brietii Anal. mundi. pars* 3. *Tom.* 2. *p.* 30.
* *Andr. Favin. en le Theat. d'Honn l.* 9. *c.* 8. *Monn. p.* 230.
r *Ib. l.* 6. *c.* 14. *& l.* 9. *c.* 7.
t *Ex Chronic. Rog. de Wendover.*
u *Mennen. Delic. Equest. p.* 76. *F. Cherub. Compend. Bull. Tom.* 1. *p.* 37. *Consid.* 1. *Schol.* 2. *Math. Paris loco supra citato.*
* *Dugdales Antiq. of Warwickshire. p.* 705. *& 707.*
|| *Lib.* 9. *c.* 7.
w *Ad tantam rerum opulentiam devenerunt, ut filia ditata, matrem suffocare, & supergredi videretur.* Hist. Anglic. Script. antiq Col. 1008.
x *Fav. Theat. d'Hon. l.* 9. *c.* 7.

France, with the consent of Pope *Clement* the Fifth, being [y] charged with most infamous and damnable Crimes; the Articles confessed are set down by [z] *Andr. Favin.* But in *England* their apprehension was on [a] *Wednesday* next after the Feast of *Epiphany*, in the first year of the Reign of our King *Edward* the Second. Shortly after, a * solemn examination of their Crimes (upon the Articles exhibited against them) was by the special Commission of the said Pope, committed to *William de Grenesfeild* Arch-Bishop of *York*, and *Ralph Baldock* Bishop of *London*, in the presence of the accused *Templars*, who sufficiently answered all the objections. Howbeit they were afterwards convicted in a Council held at *London*, and all their Lands and Goods seized into the Kings hands. Upon this, the aforesaid Arch-Bishop very greatly commiserating the sad state and condition of the *Templars*, within his Diocess, thus left destitute of maintenance, most charitably disposed of them in several *Monasteries* under his Jurisdiction, where they were provided for during their lives.

[b] Two years after, many of these *Knights* were burnt in *France*, nay some of the Bones of *John de la Tur* (who had been long buried) were taken up, and in like manner burnt.

Upon [c] *Munday* Sennight after *Easter*, *anno* 1312. in the second Session of the Council, called at [d] *Vienna* in *Daulphine* the year before, this Order was by Papal Authority condemned, and perpetually dissolved; and in *March* of the following year, the last Great Master, *Jaques de la Maule*, a *Bourgundian*, [e] burnt at *Paris*.

Their [f] Lands, Possessions, and Goods, by a Decree of the said *Pope*, dated at [g] *Vienna 6. Non. Maii*, in the seventh year of his Papacy, were annexed to the *Knights Hospitallers of St. John of Jerusalem* (except those within the Kingdoms of [h] *Castile*, *Arragon*, *Portugal*, and *Majorca*, which were reserved to the disposition of the *Roman* See) [i] because they had constantly hazarded their lives in the defence of the Christian Faith, and continually suffered great dangers, and undergone vast expences in transmarine parts, as also for [k] five years before, with exceeding great charge, and signal valor, had maintain'd the Isle of *Rhodes* against the *Turkish* power. Thus fell this *Noble Order*, no less famous for Martial Atchievements in the *East*, than [l] their wealthy Possessions in the *West*. For, according to Doctor *Heylins* account, they enjoyed no less than [m] 16000 Lordships in *Europe*; and a *Spanish* Author tells us, their Revenue was [n] two Millions annually, and had in possession 40000 Commanderies. Which gave occasion to many sober men to judge, that their Wealth was their greatest crime. And there are several Authors remembred by [o] *Alfonsus Ciaconius*, who are of opinion, they were falsly accused, and by suborned Witnesses, meerly upon the ambition and covetous design of *Philip* King of *France*, who gaped after their Lands, but nevertheless the morsel fell beside his mouth.

The *Statutes* of this *Order* are recorded by [p] *Favin.*

y *Alf. Ciacon lib.1.p.674.de vita Clem.5. Fl Cherub. Comp. Bull.Tom.1. p.37.Const.3. Schol.3.Pantaleon. de Ord. Joannit.l.3.p.94.*

z *loco cit. p. 404.*

a *Hist. Anglic. Script. antiq. fol. 2494. & 2521.*

4. *Idus Januarii. Ibid Col. 1730. litera dominicali G. Luna currente per 17 die Mercurii proxime post festum Epiphan.* Ib. Col. 2494.

* *Ibid. Quamvis in multis essent accusati, nihil tamen inventum est, quod de jure videretur statum illorum anullare.* Ibid.

b { *An. Favin.*
c { *loco cit. 3.Apr. vide Histor. Anglic Script. præf.Col.1730*

d *Fl. Cherub. Comp. Bull. Tom.1. p. 37. Const. 3. Tho. Walsingham. p. 72. n. 40. vide etiam Chron. Jo. Brompton inter Script. præf. Col. 1008. & Hen. Knighton. Col. 2382.*

e *Favin. loc. cit.*

f *Pantal. de Ord. Joannit. l.3. p. 95. Cassan in Catalog. glor. mundi.pars 9. Consid.5. Platina in vita Clem 5.*

g *Clauf. 7. E. 2. Dorf.m.11.*

h *Fl. Cherub. Comp. Bull. Tom. 2. p. 37. Const. 3.*

i *Ibid.*

k *Alf.Ciacon.in vita Clem 5.Tom.2.p.674.*

l *Possessiones, tam citra, quàm ultra mare, adeo immensas habere dicuntur, ut jam non sit in orbe Christiano provincia, quæ eis bonorum suorum portionem non contulerit, & Regiis hodie divitiis præstantiores existunt.* Math. Paris. Hist. Anglic. p. 67.

m *Cosmogr. l.3.p. 110.*

n *Andr. Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Quest.2. sect.6.n.27.*

o *In loc. citato. vide etiam Sylvest. Maurolico in Oceano Religionum. p. 218.*

p *En le Theat. d' Hon.l.9.c.8.*

Knights of the Order of St. Lazarus.

(4.)

We are here to note, that this *Order* was at the first Institution only a Fraternity of Religious *Monks*, not Ecclesiastick *Knights*, whose Weapons in the Christian warfare were Prayers and Tears, not the Military Sword. And albeit the time is uncertain, when they first began to be an Order of *Knighthood*, yet it cannot be presumed to be before the *Knights* of the *Holy Sepulchre*, took upon them

them that Military profession, since to them is generally attributed the beginning of that Custom, for Ecclesiasticks to make use of Arms in defence and propagation of the Christian Religion; nor was there indeed occasion administred for it, until the Christian Princes set on foot the *Holy War* in *Palestine*.

This *Order* then is accounted the most ancient of all others in *Christendom*, (which occasioned Pope *Pius* the Fifth, in two Bulls given in the year 1572. to stile it[q] *Antiquissimum Charitatis & Militiæ Christi Ordinem*) but that (as hath been said) must be understood as an *Order* of *Monks*, and before they were made *Ecclesiastick Knights*: The Original of such their foundation, being by [r] St. *Gregory Nazianzen*, attributed to St. *Basil*, about the years [s] 360. or 370. or between both, *viz. anno* [t] 366. about the time of *Julian* surnamed the *Apostate*.

q *Favin. Theat. d' Honn. l. 9. c. 9.*
r *Serm. 25. in laudem S. Basilii. Flav. Cherubin. Comp. Bull. Tom. 2. p. 42. Const. 28. Schol. 1. vide etiam Histor. Genealog. de la Maison de Savoy, par Sam. Guichenon. l. 1. p. 114. Edit. Lyon. 1660.*
s *Jos. Mich. en Tesoro Milit. de Caval. f. 48. b*
t *S. Maurolico in Oceano Religionum. p. 207*

The first Institution of this *Order* was upon a most charitable account; namely, to take care of persons infected with incurable Leprosie (a Disease frequent in the Eastern Countries) by which Malady they became separated, even from the conversation and society of men.

And albeit, through the Incursion of *Barbarians* and *Saracens*, and the injury of time, this Order lay, as it were, extinguished, for a great while; yet was it revived when the *Latin Princes* joined together in a holy League, to expel the *Saracens* out of the *Holy Land*; and a famous [u] *Hospital* was then erected in *Jerusalem*, under the Title of St. *Lazarus*, for the reception and entertainment of *Lepers*. For in that time the *Monks* of this *Order* added Martial Discipline to their knowledge in Physick, and became very skilful both at their Weapons, and in feats of Arms; insomuch as their services against the Infidels, begat a great esteem and value with [w] *Baldwin* the Second, King of *Jerusalem*, and some of his Successors, and other Princes enumerated by [x] *Aubertus Miræus*; in which Age this *Order* flourished with great lustre, under the Government of a Great Master.

u *Mennen.*
w *Deliciæ Equest. p. 50.*
x *In Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 48.*

In the year of our Lord [y] 1120. Pope [z] *Innocent* the Third, and after him *Honorius* the Third, granted very great priviledges to this Order, and received it under the protection of the Papal See. The *Knights* wore a * *Green Cross* ancently plain, afterwards of eight points, and Pope *Gregory* the Ninth prescribed the form of creating their Great Master.

y *Tesoro Militar. de Caval. loc. cit.*
z *Fl. Cherub. Comp. Bull. Tom. 2. p. 28. Const. 95. videsis Sam. Guichenon, in Hist. Geneal. de la Maison de Savoy. p. 113. & 114.*
* *Mennen. Delic. Equest. p. 52.*

About the year [a] 1150 they made their Vows of Obedience, Poverty, and Chastity, before *William* Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, and submitted themselves to the Rule of St. *Benedict*; receiving his black habit: But [b] seven years after, Pope *Alexander* the Fourth, commanded them to observe the Rule of St. *Aug.* and approved the donation of the Emperor *Frederick*, who had given great Revenues in *Calabria*, *Apulia*, and *Sicily*, to this Order. [c] *Nicholas* the Third exempted them from payment of Tythes, and several of the succeeding Popes indulged them with divers priviledges.

a *Favin. Theat. d' Honneur. l. 9. c. 9.*
b *Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 2. Sect. 15.*
c *Compend. Bull. loc. citato.*

These *Knights* were so admired and favoured by [d] St. *Lewis* of *France*, that he brought twelve of them with him out of *Palestine*, and placed them at [e] *Boigny*, in the Diocess of *Orleans*, where he established a *Colledge*, *anno Domini* 1154. which (as *Favin* affirms) was acknowledged for the [f] chief Seat of this Order in *Europe*.

d *Fav. Theat. d' Hon. l. 9. c. 9. vide Mennen. p. 51. & Miræus p. 48*
e *Compend. Bullar. Tom. 2. p. 29. Const. 95. Schol. 1.*
f *Favin. loc. cit. Menne. p. 52.*

In process of time the dignity of this *Order* sunk, being [g] suppressed by Pope *Innocent* the Eighth, who [h] united it to the *Order* of *Hospitalars* at *Rhodes*, by virtue of his Bull, dated *anno* 1490. and all the goods which they possessed in *France*, were carried away thither; so that shortly after the memory of this Order, as well in *Italy* as *France* was wholly obscured.

g *Compend. Bull. Tom 2. p. 28. Constitut. 95.*
h *Samuel Guichenon in Hist. Genealog. de la Maison. de Savoy. l. 1. p. 114. ex Thuane.*

Nevertheless Pope [i] *Pius* the Fourth, did again restore and re-establish the same, by his Bull dated at *Rome anno* 1565. confirming all former Priviledges, and granting many new; he also ordained Rules and Statutes, both for the Election of their Great Master, and reformation and better Government of the *Order*. Moreover he made [k] *Don Janot de Chastillon*, a Gentleman of *Millan* (his Kinsman) Great Master thereof.

i *Compend. Bull. Tom 2. p. 28. Constitut. 95.*
k *Samuel Guichenon in Hist. Genealog. de la Maison. de Savoy. l. 1. p. 114. ex Thuane.*

The Priviledges of this *Order* were afterwards enlarged by [l] *Pius* the Fifth, in the year 1567. who permitted them to take one Wife only, to wit, a Virgin, not a Widow.

Lastly, Pope [m] *Gregory* the Thirteenth, *anno* 1572. bestowed the Great Mastership of this Order, upon *Emanuel Philibert*, Duke of *Savoy* and his Successors, Dukes of his Line; and prescribed to them the *Cistertian* Rule. Furthermore, he ordained, [n] that all *Commanderies* of this *Order*, under all *Christian Princes*, should be left freely to the said Duke and his Successors; and accordingly he had the Investiture and Collation of the Commanderies in *Spain*, and *Italy*: But *Henry* the Fourth of *France* hindered the effecting thereof in his Kingdom, conceiving the right of Great Mastership appertained to him, in regard the chief Seat of this *Order* in *Europe*, was (according to *Favin*) within his Kingdom.

l *Compend. Bull. Tom. 2. p. 42. Constitut. 28.*

m *Histor. de Mons. de Thou. Tom. 2. l. 38. p. 876.*

n *Favin. l. 8. c. 6. vide l. 3. c. 10.*

Knights of the Teutonick Order, *or of* Prusia.

(5.)

In the time of the Holy War, a [a] wealthy Gentleman of *Germany*, who dwelt at *Jerusalem*, commiserating the condition of his Countrymen coming thither upon Devotion, and not understanding the Language, or knowing where to inhabit; made his House a receptacle for these Pilgrims, where they received lodging and entertainment. Afterwards, gaining Authority and Licence from the *Patriarch*, he erected a Chappel neer unto this *Hospital*, and [b] dedicated it to the honor of the blessed Virgin *Mary*, whence they had also the Title of [c] *Marian Knights*.

To him [d] associated other *German* Gentlemen, who contributing to maintain this charitable work thus begun, and in short time, encreasing in Number, Piety, Wealth, and Esteem (though yet they had no rule of living assigned) gave themselves to the [e] professions, both of the *Knights Hospitalars*, and *Templars*; imitating the later in their military Employments, and emulating the former in their acts of Piety and Charity: albeit the year, wherein they first assumed Arms, and entred into a Society, we do not find remembred.

But afterwards, to wit, in the year of our *Lord* * 1190 (or [f] 1191.) they elected their first Master, namely *Henry Walpott*, and on the 22. of *February* in the following year, (upon the request of *Frederick* the Emperor) received confirmation of their Order, from the Bull of Pope [g] *Celestine* the Third, being the first year of his Papacy, under the Title of [h] *Knights Teutonicks*, or *Dutch Knights of the Hospital of St. Mary the Virgin*; vowing Poverty, Obedience, and Chastity, : He also prescribed to them the Rule of St. *Augustine*.

Their *Statutes* were composed by the Model of the *Knights Hospitalars*, and of the *Knights Templars*; among which one Article was, that none but [i] *Germans* should be admitted into this *Order*. But to difference them from those Orders, their Habit was ordained to be a [k] *White Mantle*, on the breast whereof a plain *black Cross* (but some [l] others make it a black Cross, voided with a Cross Potence) for their Ensign.

In the year when this Order received Confirmation from the Papal See, there [m] joined to them some rich Citizens of *Breme* and *Lubeck*; by whose united Contributions another [n] Hospital was erected in the City of *Acon*.

But after that City was [o] taken by *Saladine*, one *Hermannus* then Master, and the remaining *Knights* removed into *Germany*: on whom the Emperor *Frederick* the Second, *anno* 1229. and Pope *Honorius* the Third, bestowed the Province of *Prussia* (or as some say [q] *Conrade* Duke of *Massovia anno* 1226.) where having conquer'd that Nation, and reduced it from Paganism to Christianity, they built the City

a *Cassan. in Catalog. glor. mundi pars 9. Consid. 6. Pantaleon de Ord. Joannit. l. 1. p. 13. Sansovin. Origine de Cavalieri. f 20. b.*

b *Segars Honor Milit. & Civil. l. 2. p. 105.*

c *Equites Mariani* Menneu. *p. 78.*

d *And. Favin. Theat. d' Honneur. l. 7. c. 12.*

e *Catalog. glor. mundi. Ord. Joannit. locis cit. Aub. Miræus Orig. Ord. Equest p. 10.*

* *Favin. loc. cit.*

f *Pontanus in rerum Danicarum Historia. pag. 284.*

g *Aub. Miræus Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 8.*

h *Nomen Pontifex Militum beatæ Mariæ Virginis domus Theautonicorum dedit, Barbamq; alere jussit.* Pantaleon. de Ord. Joannit. *l. 2. p. 58.*

i *Cassaneus, loc. citato.*

k *Pantal. l. 1. p. 23. & l. 2. p. 58.*

l *Segar. loc. cit. Crux nigra, cum limbo argenteo in veste candida, & Magistro Ordinis, Crux nigra, cum alia Cruce aurea eam intersecante.* Mendo de Ord. Mil. Disq. 1. Quæst. 2. Sect. 9. n. 32.

m } *Theat. d'*
n } *Honneur. l. 7 c. 12.*
o } *Pantal. de*
p } *Ord. Joannit. l. 3. p. 74. Cassan. loc. cit.*
q *Chronic. Chronicorum. p. 9. Miræus ex lib. Dominis Prussiæ*

City of *Mary-burgh*; and there[r] *anno* 1340. fixed the chief Seat and Residence of their Great Master.

[r] *Heyl Cosmogr. l. . . p.* 180.

This Country they enjoyed, till the year[s] 1525. that *Albertus Brandenburg*, the last Great Master, made solemn renunciation of the *Order*, and became Feudatory to *Sigismund* the First, King of *Poland*, who raised *Prussia* into a Dukedom, and created this *Albert* first Duke thereof. The Conditions upon his Surrender, and the Ceremony of his Investiture into this new Dukedom, are set down in the [t] *Theatre of Honor*.

[s] [t] *Fav. Theat. d' Honn. l. 7. c. 12. vi.*

Some of the *Knights* distrelishing this Action, did afterward elect another[u] Great Master, namely *Albert Wolfang*, and leaving *Prussia*, seated themselves in *Germany*, where they now reside, though of no great account; only the[w] younger Sons of the *German Princes*, being for the most part received into this *Order*, give the greatest reputation thereunto.

[u] [w] *de Menn. Delic. Equest. 81. 82. & 83.*

There were some other *Military Orders* of lesser note instituted in the *Holy Land*, under the first *Latin* Kings of *Jerusalem*, in imitation or rather emulation of those more famous *Orders* before remembred, of which there now remains only an obscure memorial: and seeing their Histories are all defective, as to the year of Institution, we think best to muster them up here in the following order.

The Order of the Knights of Mount-Joy.

(6.)

THese *Knights* were so called from a[a] Castle in the *Holy Land*, where this Order was Instituted, built on the point of a Mountain, [b] not far from *Jerusalem*, whence the Pilgrims first viewed the *Holy City*, and where these *Knights* lay in *Garrison*.

[a] *Andr. Favin. Theat. d' Honneur. l. 9. c. 11.*
[b] *Fr. de Rades y Andrada en Chron. de Calatrava f. 38 a.*

They were employed in Military Services, for defence of that *Castle* and the *Holy Land*, against the *Saracens* and *Pagans*; and received for their Habit, [c] *Red short Mantles*, and a *White Star*, with five rayes issuing out of it, fixt upon their breasts. [d] Others say, the Habit of this Order was *White*, and the Badge thereof an Octogonal Cross *Red* (but this might haply be after they left the *Holy Land*, and settled in *Spain*.) They vowed[e] Poverty, Chastity, and Obedience, and observed the Rule of St. [f] *Basil*.

[c] *Favin, loc. cit.*
[d] *Jos. Micheli en Tesoro milit. de Cavalleria. f. 36. b.*
[e] *And. Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 2. Sect. 8.*
[f] *Tesoro Milit. de Cavall. loc. cit.*

Pope[g] *Alexander* the Third, by his Bull approved this *Order*, and changed their Rule to that of St. *Augustine*, in the year of our *Lord* 1180. In this Bull (remaining in the Archives of the Order of *Calatrava*) is mention made of several[h] Towns and Castles, which these *Knights* held in the *Holy Land*, as also what they possest in *Spain*.

[g] *Mennen. de Delic. Equest. p. 86.*
[h] *Vide Fr. Rades y Andrada loc. citato*

After the loss of the *Holy Land*, these *Knights* retired into *Spain*, and fought against the *Moors*, and according to the several names of the places, where they resided, were they denominated, though the general Title was of[i] *Mount-Joy*. In *Catalonia* and *Valentia*, they were called [k] *Equites de Mongoia* (which is the same with *Mount-Joy*) but in *Castile*[l] *Knights of Monfrac*, from a Castle so called in that Kingdom, it being their chief place of residence; and after [m] when this Order was fallen into great decay, it was given unto [n] *Don Gonçalionez*, Master of the Order of *Calatrava*, by King *Ferdinand* the Saint, in the year of our *Lord* 1221. by[o] whose consent they were afterwards incorporated into the Order of *Calatrava*. Moreover in the Instrument, by which *Alphonso* the Ninth, King of *Castile*, gave the Lands to this Order, which the *Knights* took from the *Moors*, the Donation saith thus, [p] *To you Don* Rodrigo Gonçalez *Master of* Monfrac, *of the Order of Mount-Joy*. They were also called (saith[q] *Favin*) *Equites de Truxillo*, or *de Trugillo*, from a City of that name, where they sometime resided; but this will appear by and by, to be a distinct *Order*, united afterward to the *Knights* of *Alcantara*.

[i] *Equites de Monte Gaudio.*
[k] [l] *Mennen. loc. cit.*
[m] [n] *Fr. de Rades. loc. cit.*
[o] *And. Mendo. loc. præcitato.*
[p] *Maestre de Monfrac de la Orden de Monte Gaudio.* Fr. de Rades loc. cit.
[q] *En le Theat. d' Honneur. loc. cit.*

Knights of St. John *of Acon, or Acres.*

(7.)

Under the Patronage of this Saint was this *Order* erected, but the Original, as to time, uncertain. The *Knights* thereof [r] exercised all Duties of Charity towards those who went on Pilgrimage, to visit the *Holy Land*; and assumed the exercise of Arms, in imitation of the *Knights Hospitalars*, whence they became ranked among the Religious or Sacred Orders: They followed the Rule of St. *Augustine*, and according to [s] *Favin* had a *black Habit* assigned them, upon which they wore a *White Cross Pattee*.

After the City of *Acon* was taken, they removed into *Spain*, and flourished in that Kingdom, in the Reign of [t] *Alfonsus the Astrologer*, King of *Castile*, about which time, Pope [u] *Alexander* the Fourth approved the *Order*, under the conjoined Title of St. *Thomas* and St. *John of Acon*. This King gave unto them by his Will, all the Furniture of his House, and very much Money, but afterward they by little and little decayed, until at length they were [w] united with the *Knights Hospitalers*.

The Enlign of their Order (saith [x] *Jos. Micheli Marquez*) was a *Red Cross* ([y] like to that of the Order of *Montesa*) in the middle whereof stood the Figures of St. *John*, and St. *Thomas*, which differs from what *Favin* hath before assigned; but perhaps the colour of the Cross was changed to Red, after their coming into *Spain*.

r *Jos. Micheli en Tesoro milit. de Cavalleria. f. 61. a. Gothofrid. Archont. Cosmica. l. 2 p. 5.*

s *In le Theatre d' Honneur. l. 9. c. 11.*

t *Tesoro mil. de Cavall. f. 61. ex Hieron. Romano.*

u *Mennen. Delicia Equest. p. 84. A. Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq. 1. Q. 2. Sect. 23.*

w *A. Mendo, loc. cit.*

x *La Insignia era una Cruz colorada lisa, y en medio san Juan, y santo Tomas. Tesoro militar. de Cavall. loc. cit.*

y *And. Mendo, loco nuper cit.*

Knights of St. Thomas.

(8.)

There was another *Order* which (as may be collected from * *Mennenius*, and [a] *Jos. Micheli*) was distinct from the former, bearing the Title of St. *Thomas*; but [b] *A. Mendo* supposeth, they were rather some of those which joined themselves to the *Knights Hospitalars*; and the rather, because they wore the same Habit with the *Knights* of *St. John* of *Acon*; they also made the same Professions, followed the same Rule, observed the same Constitutions, and were approved and confirmed by Pope *Alexander* the Fourth and Fifth, and *John* the 22. Their Badge was a ‖ *saltire gules*, yet *Micheli* makes it the same with that of St. *John* of *Acon*, wanting the Figures in the middle. But [c] *Andr. Favin* reports (though we meet with nothing in our *English* Histories to back him) that this *Order* was Instituted by our King *Richard* the First, after the surprisal of *Acon*, and that these *Knights* were of the *English* Nation; who wore a *White Habit*, and a *Red Cross*, charged in the middle with a *White Escallop*: and lastly, that they had for their Patron, St. *Thomas Becket*.

This gives us occasion to remember here, that we have some more Honor of this kind done our Nation by Strangers (if it can be called an Honor, to report those things of us, which want ground and authority from our own Histories and Chronicles to support them) *viz.* [d] That *Henry* of *England* (which by the note of time afterwards mentioned, must be understood of our King *Henry* the Second) visiting the Holy places in *Jerusalem* (but we find not that he was ever there) being moved with a pious zeal, by the example of the *Knights of the Sepulchre*, Instituted the Order of *Jesus Christ of the holy Sepulchre* in *England*, in the year of our *Lord* 1174. giving to the *Knights* thereof the same Rules, as had those of the *Holy Sepulchre* in *Jerusalem*; which Order (saith the same Author) was confirm'd by Pope *Alexander* the Third, under the Rule of St. *Basil*. Howbeit after the Christians were driven out of the *Holy Land*, the *Knights* of this *Order* were joined to the *Knights Hospitalars*.

But we give the less credit to this formal account, because we find no mention made

* *Delic. Equest. p. 84*

a *Tesoro Milit. de Cavall. fol. 61. b.*

b *De Ord. milit. Disq. 1. Q. 2. sect. 24.*

‖ *Mennen. Delic. Equest. p. 263.*

c *Theat. d' Honneur, l. 9. c. 11.*

d *Jos. Micheli en Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f. 35. b.*

made thereof in any of our *English* Writers or Records: Perhaps the Relator mistook them for the *Canons regular* (but not *Knights*) of the *Holy Sepulchre*, who about that time lived amongst us, and of whom the [c] *Antiquities* of *Warwick-shire* give some account.

c Pag. 362.

Knights of St. Blase.

(9.)

These were called also *Knights* [f] *de Sancta Maria*, and founded under the [g] Rule of St. *Basil*. They were [h] Officers and Servants to the Kings of *Armenia*, and had assigned them for their Habit *Skie-colour*, with a *Cross gold*, worn before their breasts. Others say a [i] *Red Cross*, and in the middle thereof the Picture of St. *Blase* their Patron.

This Order was at the [k] height, when the *Armenian* Kings, of the House of *Luzignam*, kept their Court in the City of *Acon*.

f Mennen. Deliciæ Equest. p. 84
g Jos. Mich. Tesoro milit. de Cavalleria. fo. 77. b.
h Fav. Theat. d'Hon. l. 9. c. 11
i Tesoro milit. de Caval. loc. cit.
k Fav. loc. cit.

[l] *Knights of the* Martyrs *in Palestine.*

(10.)

By the pious affection of some [m] Noblemen, there was erected in the Holy Land an *Hospital* dedicated to the holy Martyrs St. *Cosmas*, and St. *Damianus*; where all acts of charity were exercised towards sick strangers. Their profession also obliged them to other works of mercy towards the poor, to redeem Captives taken by the *Saracens*, and to bury the dead.

These *Knights* followed the [n] Rule of St. *Basil*, which was confirmed to them by Pope *John* the 22. They wore for the Badge of their Order, a [o] *Red Cross*; and in the middle thereof, within a Circle, the Figures of the Saints *Cosmas* and *Damianus* were described.

[p] *Mennenius* informs us, that *Hieron. Romanus* had seen some of these *Knights* wearing for their chief Ensign a *Red Cross*; and professing the Rule of St. *Augustine*; which perhaps was so changed when they retired into *Europe*.

l Cavalleros de los Martires en Palestina y Jerusalem. Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f. 53. a. Ordo Pœnitentiæ SS. Martyrum. Mennen. p. 84.
m } Ibid. vide
n } etiam
And. Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 2. Sect. 17.
o Mendo ut supra.
p Delic. Equest. p. 84. 85.

Knights of St. Katharine *at Mount Sinai.*

(11.)

This *Order* received its Institution, saith [q] *Jos. Micheli*, in the Year of our *Lord* 1063. under the Title and Patronage of St. *Katharine*, whose body is reported to be deposited in [r] Mount *Sinai*, and the high Altar in the Church of the Monastery, there (dedicated to her name) erected neer to the place where she was interred.

The end for which these *Knights* were at first Instituted, and the sum of their profession, was to [s] guard and keep safe the Sepulchre of St. *Katharine*, to secure the ways for Travellers, to defend and protect the *Græcian* Pilgrims, who came thither for devotions sake, and to relieve and entertain them with convenient Hospitality.

Their Habit was [t] *White*, and they lived under the Rule of St. *Basil* the Great; making their Vows of conjugal chastity and obedience to the Abbot of this Monastery, who was their Superiour or Master.

But [u] when those Countries fell into the hands of the *Turks*, the *Knights* of this *Order* were ill entreated and driven away, and the *Order* it self almost abolished. Nevertheless, some shadow thereof does still continue; for such as travel to visit the *Holy Sepulchre* at *Jerusalem*, do now and then likewise pass to this Monastery at Mount *Sinai*; where (in imitation of the *Padre Guardian* of *Jerusalem*) the [w] principal of the Monks of this Convent, makes them *Knights* of the *Order* of St. *Katharine*; the Ceremony being performed upon her Sepulchre or Tomb; and the same Questions and Formulary are here used, as are accustomed at the *Holy Sepulchre* in *Jerusalem*. These

q In Tesoro milit. de Cavalleria. f. 18. b.
r Favin. Theat. d'Hon. l. 9. c. 10
s A. Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 2. Sect. 5.
t A Miræus in Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 56.
u Mendo, loc. cit.
w } Favin,
x } loc. supra
y } citato.

These *Knights* do now wear [x] upon the left side of their *White Habit*, the *Cross* of *Jerusalem*, and Instrument of St. *Katharines* Martyrdom, which I have caused to be engraven, after the form of that Badge bestowed upon [y] *Andr. Favin*, by *Messere Claude Daubray*, a *Knight* both of the *Holy Sepulchre*, and of St. *Katharine*: but according to others, the [z] middle of the *Wheel* is pierced with a *Sword*.

[x] *Et in mediam rubei coloris Rotam Gladio transfixo pro insignibus præferre.* Mennen. p. 49.

[z] *Ac in pectore dimidium Rotæ rubræ, quam Ensis interfecabat.* Mendo loco præcitato.

The Order of Knights of St. Anthony *in Æthiopia.*

(12.)

[a] Shortly after the death of St. *Anthony* the Hermite, (which fell out about the years of our Lord 357. or 358.) many of his Disciples remaining in *Thebais* (a Country bordering upon *Æthiopia*) followed the Example, Rule, and manner of life which he had left them: and both they and their Successors lived for some time in great austerity and solitariness in the Desart, and therefore called *Anchorites*, until they were at length reduced to a more convenient and rational life, by submitting to the monastical Rule of St. *Basil*, and cohabiting in Monasteries, but still under the Title and Habit of St. *Anthony*.

It is said, that about the year of our *Lord* [b] 370. *John* Emperor of *Æthiopia* (commonly called *Prester John*) erected these Monks into a *Religious Order* of *Knighthood*, under the Title and [c] Protection of St. *Anthony*, Patron of his Empire; and bestowed upon them great Revenues and many Priviledges. And being thus instituted *Knights*, they received the aforesaid [d] Rule of St. *Basil*, and submitted to his Constitutions. The Habit of the Order is [e] *Black*, and the *Cross*, *Blue*; much like the form of the Latine Letter T, but not like either the *Samaritan* or *Hebrew* Letter *Tau*, (which [f] some say is like a *Cross*) for the fashion and shape of either hath no likeness or similitude to a Cross at all, as hath been observed by the Learned [g] *Joseph Scaliger*.

The chief Seat of this Order is in the Isle of [h] *Meroe*, where the *Abbots* both spiritual and temporal have their residence; but in other parts of *Æthiopia* they have a very great number of Convents and Monasteries, and not less than two Millions of annual Revenue.

The [i] eldest Sons of Noblemen and Gentlemen cannot be admitted into this *Order*, but the second Sons may; and if a man have three Sons, he is bound to assign one of them to be of the Order; from which Law none are exempt but Physicians.

The effect of the Vow and Profession which these *Knights* make, is to observe [k] conjugal chastity, to dye in defence of the Christian Faith, to guard the Confines of the Empire, to yield obedience to their natural Laws, and their Superiors, and to go to War, whensoever and wheresoever they are commanded. Moreover they take an Oath before the spiritual Abbot, [l] not to fight in Wars between *Christians*, nor to receive any holy Orders, or to marry without express License first obtained.

There are in this Order, two sorts of *Knights*; the [m] one employed in the Wars, the other being old, are exempted from Military services, and retire themselves under the Title and Profession of *Monks*, to the Abbies where first they took their Habit. Of these there can be no more but five and twenty in one Abbey (albeit while they remain *Military Knights* they have no certain number) out of whom the most ancient in the Habit is chosen Abbot, by the voices of his Fellows, and called the *Spiritual Abbot*.

The [n] *Novices* are taken in about sixteen or seventeen years of age, and imployed nine years in the Wars; to wit, three years in the Garrisons about the *Red Sea*, against the *Arabian Pirats*; other three years in the Isle of *Meroe*, against the incursions of the *Turks*; and the last three years upon the Borders of *Borno*, a neighbour Kingdom of the *Moors*.

These [o] nine years being compleated, they obtain Letters from their last Captain, testifying the fulfilling those years in the Wars, with honor and worthiness; wherewith

[a] *MS. penes Joh. Knight Ar. Principal. Chirurg. Reg. Car. Secund. vide etiam Jos. Micheli in Tes. milit. de Caval. f. 9. b. & Mendo Disq. 1. Quæst. 2. Sect. 2. n. 20.*

[b] *Mennen. Delic. Equest. p. 177.*

[c] *Jos. Micheli Tes. Milit. de Caval. fol. 10. a.*

[d] *St. Origen. St. Hierom.*

[e] *Animadv. in Chron. Euseb. p. 109.*

[f] *Ex MS. penes eund.*

[g] *Jo. Knight, & Tesoro milit. de Cavall.*

[h] *Tesoro milit. de Cavall. fol. 11. a.*

[i] *Ibid. fol. 10. a.*

[k] [l] [m] [n] [o]

wherewith the great *Abbot* being made acquainted, he directs his Letters to the Abbot, where they are to receive their Habit, to give them admittance accordingly. But in case the Certificate of life and services be not sufficient (which seldom happens) their admission is prolonged to a further time.

When they come to be admitted into their Abbey, they are introduced in their military Habit, of which being disrobed, and the religious Habit put on, to wit, a [p] *Black Gown* reaching down to the ground, lined with *Blue* (described to be a Garment made with many Plaits in the neck, and large sleeves, such as the *Basilians* wear) having a *Blue Cross* fixed to the Breast, and over that a *Black Cowle*, they then are led to the Church, and before the Altar make their Profession.

[q] *Philip* the Seventh of that Name, Son to the Founder, very much encreased their Lands and Priviledges; and gave command that the Badge of the *Blue Cross* should be bordered with Gold, which is observed at this day.

Such as are inquisitive after a further Account of this Order in *Æthiopia*, may receive it from the afore-cited Author *Jos. Micheli Marquez*, who is very large and particular upon this Subject.

In [r] *Italy*, *France*, and *Spain*, there are a sort of Monks that from [s] some have the Title of *Knights* of St. *Anthony*; these were commanded to observe the Rule of [t] St. *Augustine* by Pope *Boniface* the Eighth, and appointed to wear a plain *Blue Cross* like that in *Æthiopia*; the Principals of these (according to [u] *Favin*) wear a double St. *Anthonies Cross* of Blue Satin, the one above the other, but the rest of them, only a single Cross.

Their chief Seat is at [w] *Vienna* in *Daulphine*, of which place the General of the Order bearetb the Title of *Abbot*, the Monastery there having been erected into an [x] Abbey, by the said Pope *Boniface*, *anno* 1297. in honor of St. *Anthony*, whose [y] body is reported to have been translated thither from *Constantinople*: and all other places, built in honor of his name, were made subject to this Abbot by Pope [z] *Clement* the Seventh, *anno* 1523. [b] *Aub. Miræus* takes notice of this Order, calling it the *Order of Hospitalars of St. Anthony*, and to have taken beginning in *France*, in the year 1121. from one *Gaston*, a Nobleman of *Vienna*. But [c] *Baronius* saith it was in the year 1095. that this *Gaston* with his Son *Gerin*, taking eight other persons to them, instituted this *Order*; who before they took upon them the Habit of Religion, assumed to themselves, the Letter *Thau*, for the *Badge* or *Ensign* of their *Order*. Yet [d] *Alfonsus Ciaconius*, makes this Order more ancient, affirming that *Gaston* and *Guind* (whom *Baronius* calls *Gerin*) instituted it before the year of our *Lord* 1092.

p *Ibid. fo.* 11. *a*.

q *Fol.* 10. *b*.

r *Fol.* 14. *b*.

s *Et quamvis gladio minimè accingantur, Equitum tamen numero censentur.* Mennen. p. 176.

t *Fl. Cherub. in Compend. Bullar. Tom.* 1 p. 35 *Const.* 5.

u *In le Theat. d' Honn. l.* 8. *c.* 1.

w *Comp. Bullar. loco cit.*

x *Baron. Annal. Eccl. Tom.* 11. *Col. mihi* 642. *sub anno* 1084.

y *Compend. Bull. Tom.* 1. p. 107. *Const.* 2.

z *In Orig. Ord. Equest.* p. 45.

b *Annal. Eccles. Tom.* 11. *col.* 694. *sub anno* 1095.

c *In vita Urbin.* 2. *l.* 1. *p.* 355

The Order of the Constantinian Angelick Knights *of St. George, in Greece, but now in Italy.*

(13.)

We shall be somewhat large in the account of this *Order*, because we have met with little of it besides what is delivered by *Joseph Micheli Marquez* a *Spanish* Writer, in his *Tesoro Militar de Cavalleria* (from whom *And. Mendo* hath collected all he saith of it) as also for that it appears he was *Vice-Chancellor* thereof, which makes us presume, he might be enabled to give a fuller and more particular account of it to the world than others; and to say truth, the History of it, set down by him, is large enough.

Nor do we call in question the authority of his attestations, from the time of *Angelus Flavius Comnenus*, and the Confirmation given this Order by Pope *Leo* the First, under the Rule of St. *Basil*, which perhaps should be understood, as they were *Monks*, rather than *Knights*.

But our Author not content with an original of that Age, which if granted to him, will make this Institution elder than either the *Knights* of the *Sepulchre*, *Hospitalars*, or *Templars*, and consequently high enough, to be one of the first military Orders in *Christendom*; must needs derive a formal Institution, Rules, and Laws from *Constantine* the *Great*, and vouch for it an *Inscription* (not mentioned by

by any other) in the *Capitol* at *Rome*. From which account of his, though it appears little better than a fabulous story, grounded, at best, upon some uncertain Tradition, and in several things smelling of novelty, we shall nevertheless extract what is most material to our purpose.

This ancient, and (as our Author calls it) the [e] first Military Order in *Christendom*, took beginning from the Emperor *Constantine* the *Great*, and from him was entituled, the *Military Order of* Constantine *the Emperor*.

It was called also [f] *Angelical*, because the Cross with this Inscription, *In hoc signo vinces*, was shewed from Heaven to that Emperor by an Angel; and thence, they of the Family descended from him (among whom were the Great *Masters* of the *Order*) took the name *de Angelis*.

As to the description of this Cross and the form thereof, [g] *Eusebius* may be consulted, who in the Life of *Constantine*, not only affirms, that this Emperor himself vouched the truth of this Miracle to him with an Oath, but * describes the Figure thereof, which the Emperor gave [i] directions to be made of Gold and precious Stones, according to the Pattern he had seen in the Skie, and thenceforward caused the || Figure of this Cross to be carried before his Army, instead of the golden Standard, formerly used, and to be engraven upon the Armour of the Legionary Soldiers.

He also reports, that upon [k] *Constantines* triumphal entrance into *Rome*, after his Victory over *Maxentius*, he erected many *Crosses* with *Inscriptions*, to indear the Sign thereof, into all mens affections; and amongst the rest, commanded his own Statue to be placed in the chiefest part of the City, holding a Banner of the Cross with the following Inscription, engraven below it.

HOC SALVTARI SIGNO, VERO FORTITVDINIS INDICIO, CIVITATEM VESTRAM TYRANNIDIS IVGO LIBERAVI. ET S.P.Q.R. IN LIBERTATEM VINDICANS, PRISTINÆ AMPLITVDINI, ET SPLENDORI RESTITVI.

This Order had also the Epithet [l] *Golden* adjoin'd, because, that instead of the Collar of Gold, which the ancient Emperors his Predecessors used to give in reward of Virtue, and military Service, this Emperor gave a Collar of Gold, composed of these three Characters A X Ω, at which was fastned a Cross, like that which appeared to him, and thereunto the Image of St. *George*; to confirm which (saith our Author) there is to be seen (but we much doubt) in the Capitol at *Rome*, a Marble, whereon are armed Knights engraven, and an Inscription speaking thus,

> Constantine *the Great, Emperor, after he was cleansed of his Leprosie, by the means of sacred Baptism; thus created* Golden Knights, *with the Cross for defence of the Christian name.*

He further informs us, that [m] *Constantine* elected fifty illustrious Grandees of his Empire, to be *Knights* of this *Order*, to whom he gave the Standard of the *Labarum* and likewise a Collar of Gold, to which the Figure of the *Labarum*, and a Cross were dependant, together with several Constitutions and Laws; and that he instituted this Order, with the [n] consent and approbation of Pope *Sylvester*.

As also, that it was confirmed by Pope [o] *Leo* the First, whose Bull for assigning to the Knights thereof, the Rule of St. *Basil*, dated the 20. of *July anno Domini* 456. (Prince *Alexius Angelus* being then Great Master) he transcribes at large.

That it received further confirmation and approbation, from the Popes [p] *Julius* the Third, *Calixtus* the Third, *Pius* the Second, *Sixtus* the Fourth, *Innocent* the Eighth, *Paul* the Third, *Sixtus* the Fifth, *Clement* the Eighth, *Pius* the Fifth, *Gregory* the Fifteenth, and *Urban* the Eighth. And whilst it flourished in *Greece*, was confirmed and augmented with large Priviledges by divers succeeding *Grecian* Emperors, namely *Leo* the First, *Isaac Angelus anno Dom.* 1191. whose [q] Diploma this Author also gives us, dated the 13. of *Sept.* in the year aforesaid, and of his Empire

e *In Tesoro Militi. de Caval. fol. 1. b. Vide etiam Crescenzi del suo Presidio Romano. part. 3. l. 1.*
f *Fol. 2. b.*
g *Lib. 1. c. 22.*
* *Cap. 25.*
i *Cap. 24.*
|| *Lib. 4. c. 21.*
k *Lib. 1 c. 33.*
l *Jos. Micheli Marquez en Tesoro mil. de Caval. fol. 3.*
m *Fol. 79. b.*
n *Fol. 2. b.*
o *Fol. 4.*
p *Fol. 3. a.*
q *Fol. 80. a.*

Empire the Seventh, by *Michael Paleologus anno* 1294. by [r] *Isaac Angelus anno* 1295. and lastly, by *Ferdinand* the Second, Emperor of *Germany*, at *Ratisbone*, *anno* 1630. who recommended to his *Catholique Majesty*, the restauration of this *Order*, because those who had been Great Masters thereof, were allied to him, and of the Family of *Angelus Flavius Comnenus*; which recommendation was sent to that King, by the then Great Master *Don John Andrea Angelo Flavio Comneno*. r Fol. 3. b.

The *Great Masters* of this *Order*, have their chief Seat and Convent now at [s] *Brianno*, a Town nigh to *Venice*, the Dignity yet continuing in the Line of *Angelo Flavio Comneno*; howbeit among the Priviledges granted by the Emperor *Isaac Angelus*, one is, [t] That if the Family of *Angelus Flavius Comnenus* should be extinguished, the Collared Knights may elect from among themselves a *Great Master*. t Fol. 80. b.

Among the many Prerogatives granted to this Order, by the Imperial Priviledges and Papal Bulls, we shall mention a few, by which may be understood, something of the grandeur thereof; to wit, that the *Great Masters* are [u] *Commensales Pontificum*, and have the priviledge of sitting at the Table with the Pope, by whom they are defended and supported, as Benefactors to the *Church*, and Founders of the *Lateran* Cathedral in *Rome*. They are persons of great note and authority, in that they are subject to no Prince, and therefore have the power of coining Money. They give titles of Counts, Princes, and such others, and of Reverend to their own Fraternity. They have also the faculty of restoring to Honors, of legitimating Bastards, of giving Degrees with the Title of Doctors, creating Poet Laureats, and making publick Notaries. u Fol. 3. b.

This Order is under the protection of the [w] *Blessed Virgin*, and patronage of St. *George*, the titulary Saint and Guardian of military men in general, and of these *Knights* in particular, who profess obedience, and conjugal Chastity. w Fol. 6. a.

The Formulary prescribed for entrance into the Order, the manner of receiving the Habit, taking the Oath, the benediction of the Mantle, Cross, and Sword, the admittance of the *Knights*, *Priests*, and *Novices*, are at large laid down by this [x] Author. x à fol. 3. usq; ad 10.

The Habit of this Angelick Order is [a] *White*, on the left side whereof is sewed a [b] Red or Crimson Velvet *Cross Flory*, in the middle is the *Labarum* imbroidered after the form of the Letter X, with the Letters A upon the one arm of the Cross, and Ω on the other: the sides are wrought with Gold and Silk, but the Labarum all with Gold. a, b Fol. 3. b. & Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 2. sect. 1. n. 17.

Amongst these *Knights* there are three Degrees, the [c] first are called *Collared*, or *Grand Crosses*; these wear a Collar, formed of Labarums, whereat depends the Figure of the Cross, and St. *George*: The second are the *Knights*, and these wear the Cross as is above described: The third are *Servants*, and they bear the Cross, only wanting the upper arm of it, and the Labarum. c Tesor. milit. de Cavall. fol. 3. b.

The *Priests* wear the like Cross with the *Knights*.

The [d] *Grand Priorates* and *Promotions*, or *Commanderies*, belonging to this *Order*, shew how great it hath been, and how far its jurisdiction extended; since to them were joined very great Revenues and Rents which the *Knights* of this Order held, and they were these (saith mine Author) though I suppose divers of them are miswritten. The grand [e] Priorates of *Mistra*, and of *Bosnia*, of *Cappadocia*, *Calcide*, *Napoles*, *Antiochia*, *Constantinople*, *Jerusalem*, *Natolia*, *Julia Cæsaria*, and the Priories of *Barlada*, *Scione*, *Anfiboli*, *Damascus*, *Mileto*, *Pergamo*, *Sinope*, *Ephesus*, *Argo*, *Odesco*, *Fgena*, *Nicepoli*, *Corinthus*, *Nicomedia*, *Apollonia*, *Erapoli*, *Engada*, together with several *Baliato's* or *Balivicks*. d Ibid. f. 80. e Fol. 82.

The [f] Bulls and Priviledges are to be seen in the Constitutions of the Order, published by the eloquent and learned Knight *Majolini Bisachioni*, grand Prior of *Bosnia*, Earl of *Galicia*, great *Chancellor* and *Administrator* of the *Order*; as also in *Malvezzi*, and other Authors, *Knights* of this *Order*.

To conclude, this Author gives a [g] Catalogue of the Names of 34 *Great Masters* (whom he affirms were all true descendants of the Family of *Angelus Flavius Comnenus*) beginning with *Constantine* the Great, but between him and *Alexius Angelus Flavius* (whom he reckons to be the third *Great Master*, and who was he that drew all the *Knights* into a Fraternity) is doubtless a very great Chasme: As to g Fol. 80.

 others,

others, either the chain of succession is broken in several places, or the *Order* hath suffered some discontinuance.

Knights of the Order of St. James *in Galicia.*

(14.)

There were several *Orders* of *Knighthood*, to which the *Spanish* piety gave a being, protection, and support, and amongst them that of St. *James* the Apostle, (commonly called *Sanctiago*) was the first and principal.

There are some[a] *Spanish* Writers (reckoned up by *Franciscus Mennenius*) that say this *Order* took beginning in the time of *Don Ramiro* King of *Leon*, who began his Reign in the year of our *Lord*[b] 821. and at the Battel of *Clavijo*, or *Clavigio*, *anno*[c] 826. (or as some say *anno*[d] 837.) against the *Moors*, did by the assistance of St. *James* the Apostle (said to have then appeared upon a[e] white Horse, bearing a Banner with a Red Cross upon it) gain a mighty Victory over an innumerable multitude of them; whereupon in all Battels thenceforth his [f] patronage was implor'd.

That this was the occasion of the Orders Foundation, is not believed or approved of by all, as may be collected from *Johannes Mariana*, *Franc. Alphon. Venerius*, and others of that Country, some of them placing the Institution thereof about the year 1160, and some others upon a clear mistake, confounding the time of Institution, with that Confirmation, by Pope *Alexander* the Third, *anno* 1175. in which the first rule of living is prescribed to the *Knights* of this *Order*.

But though there be no certainty, that this Order was instituted, in memory of the appearance of St. *James*, after the manner before related, and in the Reign of *Don Ramiro*; yet, that there was a *Fraternity* or *Military Order* in *Spain* under that Title, at least[h] 145 years before Pope *Alexander* gave his Confirmation, (though how much elder is hitherto not known) is a thing out of all dispute. For it evidently appears, from the original Priviledge granted to the [i] *Nuns* of the Monastery of St. *Esprit* in *Salamanca*, dated the 15. of *Nov. anno Dom.* 1030. under the royal hand of Don *Fernando* the First, who began his Reign *anno Dom.* 1017. and is therein stiled King of *Castile*, *Leon*, *Galicia*, *Portugal*, and Lord of *Biscay* (for in his time were the Kingdoms of *Castile* and *Leon* first united) that there was then in being a *Fraternity* and *Order* of *Knights* or *Comendadores*, as also a Superior, bearing the Title of[k] *Master* and *Governor* thereof, and that these Knights had then also Castles, Lands, Rents, and Possessions to support them; for of all these is there express mention made in that Grant.

Moreover in an ancient[l] Original of a very old Letter, written long before they received any Rule or Form of Religion, and pen'd in corrupt and barbarous Latine, which contains certain Rules and Orders to be observed by them, as also mulcts and forfeitures, for neglects and offences therein set down; they are called[m] *Brothers of the Fraternity of St. James*.

And albeit the *Knights* of this Order did at[n] first dispose themselves to virtuous courses, and valiantly encountred the *Moors*, Enemies to the Cross of *Christ*, that being the chief end of their Foundation; yet in tract of time, they fell from the honor of their first Institution, and grew so strangely debauch'd, and gave so great occasion of scandal, that the *Order* was thereby so much perverted, as it could scarce be accounted an Order.

But afterwards the *Knights* (being by the divine goodness reclaimed) grew desirous to be reduced to a better life, and to submit themselves to regularity and order, and upon[o] Cardinal *Jacintha's* arrival in *Spain*, and their application to him, he (as much as in him lay) first confirmed their *Order*, in the year of our *Lord*[p] 1170, under the Rule of St. *Augustine*, and upon his return to *Rome*, [q] *Fernando de Fuente Encalada*, and others, *Knights* and *Canons* of this *Order*, attended him

a *Lucas Tuden. ex. Jo. Vasæus. Diegus Valera. Ant. Morales. vide Flav. Cherub. in Schol. ad Constitut.* 30. *Gregor.* 13. *Schol.* 2.

b *Francisc. de Rades y Andrada en Chronic. Sanctiago. fo.* 4. *b. & fo.* 5.

c *Heyl. Cosmog. l.* 1. *p.* 220.

d *S. Mauro lico in Oceano Religion. p.* 209.

e *Sobre une Cavallo blanco, y con una Cruz colorada por senna.* Rades in Chronic. hujus Ordin. fol. 5. a.

f *Sanctiago Sanctiago. Ibid.*

h *La Regla y establecimientos de la Cavalleria de Sanctiago del Espada.*

i *Ibid. fol.* 3. *b. vide Fr. de Rades en Chron. Sanctiago, fol.* 3. *b.*

k El Maestre y Governador de la Orden. *Ibid.*

l *Quæ adhuc asservatur in archivo de Ucles.*

m *Confrades de la Confradia de Sancte Jacobo.* Rades en Chron. Sanctiago. f. 5. a. *videsis Fr. Garo de Torres en Histor. de las Ord. milit. fo.* 1. *b.*

n *Franc. de Rades y Andrada, en Chron. de Sanctiago. fo.* 4. *b.*

o *La Regla y establecimientos de la Cavalleria de Sanctiago. fo.* 5. *b.*

p *Alfon. Ciacon. in vita A. ex.* 3. *l.* 1. *p.* 460.

q *La Regla, &c. loc. cit.*

him thither, whom he presented to Pope *Alexander* the Third, and from him obtained approbation and confirmation. He also received this *Order* under the protection of the Papal See, [r] prescribed to these *Knights*, the Rule and manner of living, the form of holding Chapters, of electing their *Master*, of the *Trezes*, and thirteen *Comendadores* of Houses, and of the *Visitors*; In brief, this *Bull* gives them very large Priviledges, is fitted with exceeding good Precepts and Laws, both for Government and Conservation of the Order, and bears date the 13. of *July anno Dom.* 1175. which hapned in the beginning of the Reigns of *Don Alonso* the Ninth, King of *Castile*, of *Don Fernando* the Second, King of *Leon*, and *Don Alonso* the Second, King of *Aragon*. And hereupon (saith [f] *Francisc. de Rades y Andrada*) do some of the Chronicles of *Spain*, call this an Institution (which was indeed but a Restauration) because the *Knights* of that time were the first that entred into the Vow of Obedience, poverty of Spirit, and Conjugal Chastity; wherein consisted the substance of this Religious Order.

It being observed out of the Confirmation, that Pope [t] *Alexander* the Third, had (among other things) granted to these Knights, the Monastery of Saint [u] *Loyo*, situate in *Galicia* near *Sanctiago*, and that the *Prior* and *Canons* thereof, (being [w] *Canons Regulars* of St. *Augustine*) were thereby incorporated to the *Knights* of this *Order*; it is thence concluded, that this *Order* was rather founded in the Kingdom of *Galicia* than *Leon*.

And though it appears by King *Don Fernando*'s Priviledges to the Monastery of St. *Esprit*, that there was in ancient time, a *Master* of this *Order*, yet is no notice taken either of him, or any of his Successors, till after Pope *Alexanders* Confirmation, and then *Don Pedro Fernandez de Fuente Encalada* (*Encalada* being a place in the Diocess of [x] *Astorga*) is reckoned the [y] first, in the Catalogue of *Masters*.

At the beginning, the *Knights* of this *Order* were imployed [z] to assist the Canons Regular of Saint *Loyo*, who had built Hospitals (the first of which was that of St. *Mark* in the Suburbs of *Leon*) for the relief of Pilgrims who daily resorted from all parts to visit the shrine of St. *James* of *Compostella*; and to guard the high ways, frequented by the concourse of them, against the insolencies of the *Moors*, and Robbers of *Spain*.

The *Ensign* of this Order, is a [a] *Cross*, (which the *Knights* wore upon their [b] Breasts) finishing like the blade of a Sword, the Hilt crofleted, and fashioned after the ancient manner; whereupon it was called [c] *La Orden de Sanctiago de la Espada*, as also [d] *Ordo militaris Sancti Jacobi Ensigeri, à qualitate insignium*. And the reason why this *Ensign* is always painted *Red*, rather than any other colour; is thus given by [e] *Don Rodrigo Ximenes*, Arch-Bishop of *Toledo*.

Rubet ensis sanguine Arabum.

But these *Knights* assumed not only the Sword in form of a Cross, but also the Symbol of St. *James*, which though it cannot be directly determined (saith [f] *Rades y Andrada*) what it is, yet it seems to be the *Escallop shell*: For that the [g] *Escallop* is generally among the *Spaniards* taken for the Badge of St. *James*, and worn by Pilgrims, in their Voyages to his Sepulchre at *Compostella* (the * place where his body was found about the year of *Christ* 800.) the day of whose Translation is the [h] 30. of *December*. And in all the ancient Seals of the Order, as well of the Masters, as of the Convent, there is to be seen an [i] *Escallop shell*, placed under the handle of the Sword, at the closing thereof to the Hilt.

But it seems the honor of the *Escallop* is such, that the use thereof is not permitted to all; for by a Bull of Pope *Alexander* the Fourth, among other things, it is ordained, that [k] none of this Order shall wear the *Escallop shell* for Ensign, but such *Knights*, *Priests*, and *Nuns* as are nobly descended.

In the year of our *Lord* 1560. King *Philip* the Second [l] declared, that the *Knights* of this *Order* might wear an *Escallop shell* (hanging in a Chain of Gold, not a Ribbon or Cordon) made of Gold or Silver, as big as a piece of Eight, but not of Chrystal, or any Stone of what kind soever; and wearing this, they were permitted the use of a Coat, without the

r *La Regla de Sanctiago. f. 9.*
s *En Chron. Sanctiago, loco præd.*
t *La Regla y Establec. de Sanctiago. fo. 1. b. & f. 5. b.*
u Lodium.
w *Fr. de Rades en Chronic. Sanctiago fol. 6. b. vide Cassan. in Catalog. gloriæ mundi part 9. Consid. 7. Marian. de reb. Hispan. l. 11. c. 13.*
x *Idem de Rades fo. 6. a. & 11. b. Item Fr. Caro de Torres in Histor. de las Ordin. militares. f. 10. b.*
y *La Regla de Sanctiago. fol. 16. b.*
z *Aub. Miræus de Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 23. Favin. in le Theat. d'Honneur. l. 6. c. 5.*
a } *Chronic. de*
b } *Sanctiago p. 1 b. & p. 6. b. Su Senal es la Espada Roxa, que el vulgo Llama Lagarto.* Lancerote en Nobleza del Andaluzia. l. 1. c. 32.
c *Historia de las Ordines Militares. per Fr. Caro de Torres. l. 1. p. 9. b.*
d *Compend. Bull. Tom. 1. p. 7. Const. 5. Schol. 1. vide sis Ciacon. de vit. Pontif. l. 1. p. 469.*
e *En su Chronica. l. 17.*
f *En Chronic. de Sanctiago. fo. 6. b.*
g *Venerea, quæ in Hispania pro Tessera D. Jacobi semper est habita.* Mennen. Delic. Equest. p. 97.
Las Veneros son insignias del Apostol. Lancerote. loc. cit.
* *Jo. Mariana de reb. Hispan. l. 7. c. 10. pag. 328.*
h *La Regla de Sanctiago. fo. 72. b.*
i } *Fr. de Rades en Chron. de Sanctiago.*
k } *fol. 7. a.*
l *La Regla de Sanctiago. fo. 74. b.*

the Badge of the Order, nevertheless their upper Robe or Mantle, was not to be worn without it.

m *Ibid. f 72. b. vide etiam Fr. de Rades, in Chronic hujus Ordinis. f. 6. b.*

The *Habit* of these *Knights* is a m *White Mantle* of Cloth or Serge, close before, on the breast whereof is set a *Cross* of Cloth or Sattin, in the form before described. The Figure of which *Habit*, adorning a *Knight* of this *Order*, is to be seen in n *Jurisprudentia Heroica*. This *Cross* made of o Silk or Cloth, they are obliged to wear upon their Garments, Coats, or Cloaks, though they use Crosses of Gold likewise.

n *Pag.* 521.

o *Regla de Sanctiago loc. cit. & f.* 74 *a.*

When the *Moors* were driven out of *Spain*, the principal end for which this *Order* with those of *Calatrava* and *Alcantara*, were instituted, ceased; and thereupon it came to be considered, how the *Administration* of these Orders might be placed in the Crown of *Castile*.

f *Fr. de Rades y Andrada en su Chronic. Santhiago. fo.* 69. *a.*

Upon the f death therefore of *Don Rodrigo Manrique* (elected Master at *Ucles* in *Castile*, Competitor to *Don Alonso de Cardenas*, elected Master at *Leon*) Queen *Isabella* came to the Covent of *Ucles* (whither *Don Alonso* had drawn a considerable power, to force his Election there also) and commanded to assemble all the *Knights* of this *Order*, that then were thereabouts) upon whose appearance she told them, t That in regard the *Knights* of this *Order*, had many Fortresses upon the Frontires, for which reason her Predecessors had in former times taken the *Administration* of this *Order* upon themselves, and given it to their Sons; upon great deliberation therefore was it thought fit, that the King *Don Fernando* her Husband should now be *Administrator*; and intimating, that a desire was sent to the Pope for a Grant thereof, she commanded them to surcease in their Election, to which all the *Trezes* submitted.

t *Fol* 69. *b.*

u *Fol.* 70. *a.*

u Afterwards, the King had the *Mastership* of this *Order*, under the Title of *Administrator* granted him by the Pope, nevertheless finding that *Don Alonso de Cardenas* had been very faithful to him, and greatly deserving, he waved the Papal Grant, and gave leave for a new Election; whereupon *Don Alonso* was elected a second time, in the year 1477.

w *Fol.* 73. *a.*

But w *anno Dom.* 1499. the *Mastership* of this *Order* becoming again vacant, by the death of this *Don Alonso*, King *Ferdinando* and *Isabella* obtained another Bull from Pope *Alexander* the Sixth, to hold the Administration thereof during their lives: After their death, *Charles* the Fifth succeeding, obtained a x Grant from Pope *Adrian* the Sixth, whereby the perpetuity of the *Mastership* (together with those others of *Calatrava* and *Alcantara*) became annexed to the Crowns of *Castile* and *Leon*, and thereunto in most ample manner were transferred all Rights, *&c.* which the *Masters* of those *Orders* did formerly enjoy or exercise. Since which time the Kings of *Spain* have enjoyed the *Administration* of this *Order*, and carried that title and stile in the Inscription upon the Great Seal thereof, which holds the y Royal Arms of *Spain*, upon a Cross that filleth all the Shield, with a Sword at each of the four Corners.

x *Quæ Bulla incipit*, Dum intra nostræ mentis arcana, *&c. Et est prima inter Constitutiones Adriani* 6. *expeditaq; fuit anno* 1522. *& affertur in Jurisprudentia Heroica. p* 514.

y *Fr. de Rades en Chronic. de Sanctiago. fo.* 10. *b.*

Philip the Third, King of *Spain*, called a Chapter of this Order in *Madrid*, the 16. of *April*, *anno* 1600. which ended the 30. of *November* following. In which it was ordained, that the Book Intituled *La Regla y Establecimientos de la Cavalleria de Santiago del Espada, &c.* should be printed. This Book contains the Institutions, whereby the *Knights* of the *Order* are to be governed, together with all the Statutes, Laws, Rules, and Ceremonies, appertaining thereunto, and now in use; and at this Chapter, many of the former Laws were abolished, others amended, and some new added.

The Order of Knights of St. Saviour *in Aragon.*

(15.)

a *Monnen. Dehic. Equest. p.* 85

About the year of our Lord a 1118. was this *Order* erected by *Don Alphonso* (called Emperor of *Spain*, King of *Navarr*, *Aragon*, *Leon*, *Castile*, and *Toledo*) who chose out of those *Spanish* and *French* Nobility, that assisted him in his Wars against the *Moors*, a certain number whereof he formed this Society; and to the

the end he might be the better enabled to drive the *Moors* out of *Saragosa*, and the whole Territory of *Aragon*, he engaged them by this Honor, to pursue the War against them to the utmost of their power.

[b] *Favin* seems to place the Institution of this Order to the year 1120. but [c] that was the year of King *Alphonso*'s great Expedition against the *Moors*, whom he vanquished and destroyed, and for which Victory he had the Title of *Conquerer* given to him: besides, these *Knights* were Instituted upon design to engage with this King in that War; of whose assistance he had not so great need, as to give Institution to them, if he had before overcome the *Moors*.

b *Theat. d' Honneur. l. 6. c. 14.*
c *Jos. Mich. Marquez en su Tesoro Militar. de Cavall. f. 24. b.*

Some may possibly take this Order to be rather *Military* than *Religious*: but if it be considered, that these *Knights* [d] succeeded the *Templars* in *Montreall*, being by King *Alphonso* established in that place, and had a Rule of living somewhat conformable to the *Knights Templars* (save only the priviledge to marry) which Rule [e] *Jo. Mariana* (a *Spanish* Author of very great credit) saith expresly was the *Cistertian*, and for that [f] *Jos. Mich. Marquez* (another *Spanish* Writer) informs us, that they profest conjugal Chastity and Obedience, and were obliged to support the holy Church and Christian Faith against the *Moors*, we need not scruple to place them in the ranks of *Religious Knights*.

d *Favin. loco super cit.*
e *De Rebus Hispan. l. 15. c. 16.*
f *Tesoro Milit. de Cavall. loc. cit.*

Their Habit was a [h] *White Mantle*, on the breast whereof they wore a *Red Cross Anceree*, but [i] *A. Mendo* saith, it was the Figure of our *Saviour*.

h *Favin. ut supra.*
i *De Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 4. n. 96.*

At length the like Fate attended this *Order*, as did the *Knights* of St. *James*, *Alcantara*, and *Calatrava*; for the *Moors* being driven out of *Spain*, and the chief end for which they were instituted ceasing, their rich Commanderies were at length united to the Crown.

The Order of Knights d' Avis *in Portugal.*

(16.)

[a] *Don Alphonso Henriquez* first King of *Portugal*, took from the *Moors* (in the year of our *Lord* [b] 1147.) the City of *Evora*, and to strengthen this Garrison, he sent thither several gallant Commanders, who assumed the Title of [c] *Knights of St. Mary of Evora*, as well from putting themselves under the protection of our *blessed Lady*, as from the place where they were first seated. Their first Great *Master* was *Don Fernando de Monteiro*.

a b *Fran. de Rades y Andrada en su Chronic. de Calatrava. f. 32. b. El Conde de Lancerote en Nobleza del Andaluzia l. 1. c. 32. vide etiam Rodrig. Lusitan. Tom. 1. Quæst. Regul. Quæst. 6. Art. 6. in principio.*
c *Cavalleros de Evora. Rades ut supra.*

Not long after, they came to be called [d] *Knights d' Avis*, from a Castle of that name, situate on the Frontires of *Portugal*, which being conquered from the *Moors*, by the said King *Don Alphonso*, he gave it to [e] *Fernando de Yannes*, Master of *Evora*, in the year 1161. (but [f] *Fr. de Rades* saith it was 1181.) to which Castle, he and his Brethren forthwith transplanted themselves from *Evora*.

d *Ibidem etiam à fol. 32. b.*

This *Order* was confirmed by Pope [g] *Innocent* the Third, *anno* 1204. in the Reign of *Sancho* the First, Son to King *Don Alphonso*, under the [h] Rule of St. *Benedict*, and therefore in some Papal *Bulls*, the *Order* is called of [i] St. *Benedict d' Avis*, but [k] others say, this *Order* had confirmation *anno Dom.* 1162. by a power which the Bishop of *Hostia*, Legat in *Spain*, for Pope *Alexander* the Third, gave to *Jo. Zerita* Abbot of St. *Jo. Tarroca*. The *Knights* professes [l] Conjugal Chastity and Obedience.

e *Favin. Theat. d' Honn. l. 6. c. 18.*
f *Loc. cit.*
g *Flav. Cherub. in Compend. Bullar.*
h *Tom. 2. p. 90. Constitut. 32. Innoc. 3.*
Schol. 2.
i *Ibid. Tom. 3. p. 45. Const. 24.*
k *Ant. Brandon Lusitan. Monarch. pars 3. l. 11. c. 1.*
l *Jos. M. Marquez en Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f. 25.*

In the year of *Christ* 1213. [m] *Don Rodrigo Garcez de Assa*, then seventh *Master* of *Calatrava*, gave to the Great Master and Brethren *Knights d' Avis*, their two Fortresses in *Evora*, and some other lands possessed by them in the Kingdom of *Portugal*, upon which Donation they submitted themselves to the Rule, Statutes, Visitation, and Correction of the Order of *Calatrava*, and their Successors; but in the time of [n] *Don John* of *Portugal* (natural Son of *Pedro* the Eighth, King of *Portugal*) seventh Great Master *d' Avis* (after he had gained the Victory of *Aljubarrato*, against *Don John* the First of *Castile*) he commanded this *Order*, to cast off their acknowledgments to that of *Calatrava*, which they

m *Fr. de Rades in Chronic. de Calatrava. f. 32. b. & Jos. Micheli. f. 25. b.*
n o *vide Favin. in Theat. d' Hon. l. 6. c. 18.*

they thereupon did; and afterwards [o] refused to receive *Don Gonsalo Nunez de Guzman* Master of *Calatrava*, who went to visit them. Hereupon the *Order* of *Calatrava* complained to the Council of *Basil*, who decreed that this *Order d' Avis* should continue subject to that of *Calatrava*, aud receive their Visits and Reformation, to which purpose a Bull issued, which yet remains preserved in the Archives of *Calatrava*, but the *Portuguese* never submitted to it, albeit those of *Calatrava*, to preserve their preheminence, have still nominated Visitors. Nay afterwards, [p] when that Crown fell into the hands of *Philip* the Second King of *Spain*, this Order *d' Avis* did nevertheless remain governed according to the Statutes of *Portugal*, nor did the Council of the other three Orders of *Castile*, take upon them to proceed in any Cause where this Order was concern'd.

[o] *Fr. Cares de Tores en la Histor. de las Ordines milit. f. 83. b.*

The Badge of this Order is a *Green Cross Flory*, [q] such as the *Knights* of *Alcantara* wear, and said to be given them by [r] *Don Pedro*, but before they used the [s] like Cross with those of the Order of *Calatrava*, two *Birds* being added at the foot thereof, in allusion to the later name given to this Order; as appears from the ancient Seal.

[q] *Lancerote en Nobleza del Andaluzia. l. 1. c. 32.*
[r] *Tesoro Milit. de Cavall. fo. 25. b.*
[s] *Rades en Chron. de Calatrava loco supra cit.*

The Royal Council of *Portugal* make examination of the Extraction of such as are to be admitted into this *Order*, that is of the Fathers and Grand-fathers Gentility, both of the Fathers and Mothers side. The manner of giving the *Habit*, and making *profession*, is agreeable to that of the *Knights* of *Calatrava*.

The Order of Knights of the Wing of St. Michael *in Portugal.*

(17.)

[m] *Don Alphonso Henriquez* King of *Portugal*, (in whose Reign the Order *d' Avis* was instituted) being very much oppreſt by *Albara* the *Moor*, King of *Sevil*, raised an Army to free his Country; and being ready to give Battel, he commanded all his Soldiers in a devout manner to address themselves to their particular Saints, for the obtaining of good success: himself imploring St. *Michael* the *Archangel*, to whom he was greatly devoted.

[m] [n] [o] *Jos. Mich. Marquez en Tesoro Militar. f. 35. a vide Ant. Brandon en la 3. part de la Monarch. Lusitan. l. 11. c. 22.*

When the Battels were joined, [n] St. *Michael* the *Archangel*, appeared on the Kings right side, and fought against the *Moors*; whence followed a very great and notable Victory over them.

Assoon therefore as the King was returned home, he [o] Instituted this *Order* of *Knighthood*, in the year of our *Lord* 1171. (but [p] *Mendo* placeth the Institution earlier, to wit, in the year 1165. and [q] *Miræus* the year after) which he called the [r] *Order of St. Michaels Wing*: These *Knights* had for the Badge of their Order a [s] *Red Sword* croſt with Flowers de lis, and this Motto, *Quis ut Deus?* but more agreeable to the Name of the Order is that Badge assigned by *Mendo*, to wit, [t] a *Purple Wing*, irradiated with beams of Gold.

[p] *De Ordin. Milit. Disq. 1. Quest. 4. n. 97.*
[q] *Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 38.*
[r] [s] *Del Ala de San Miguel. Tes. Milit. de Cavalleria.*
[t] *Insigne erat Ala (qua S. Michael ornatus depingitur) purpurea, intermicantibus radiis aureis.* Mend. loc. cit.

They were of the [u] *Cistertian Order*, and followed the Rule of St. *Benedict*. The manner of their [w] Investiture was the same as is used in the Order *d' Avis*. Their Obligation was chiefly to [x] defend the Christian Religion, to secure the Borders of the Country against the inrodes of the *Moors*, and to relieve the Widows and the Fatherless.

[u] *Mendo ut supra.*
[w] [x] *Tes. Milit. de Cavall. p. 35. a.*

This *Order* is now grown out of use, but the Mastership thereof hath since remained with the Kings of *Portugal*.

Knights of St. Gereon.

(18.)

This *Order* was instituted by [y] *Frederick Barbarossa* the Emperor (others say by *Frederick* the Second) and consisted only of Gentlemen of the *German* Nation, who followed the Rule of St. *Augustine*, and wore a *White Habit*, whereon was sewed a [z] *Black Patriarchal Cross* set on a little green Hill.

[y] *Favin. Theat. d' Hon. l. 9. c. 11*
[z] *Menn. Delic. Equest. p. 263.*

The

The Order of St. Julian de Pereyro, *or of* Alcantara.

(19.)

This *Order* of *Knighthood* hath assumed two appellations, upon what occasion we shall here shew.

The first and ancient Title was of [a] St. *Julian de Pereyro*, because at a Town so called in the Kingdom of *Leon*, in the [b] Diocess of *Cividad Rodrigo*, upon a small branch of the River *Coa*, a Monastery was built for these Knights by the favour of *Don Fernando* the Second, King of *Leon* and *Galicia*, who in his Diploma of Priviledges granted thereunto, dated in *December* the Æra of *Cæsar* 1214. (which agrees with the year of our Lord 1176.) stiled himself Protector of this Fraternity and Society of Knights.

An approbation thereof was obtained from Pope [c] *Alexander* the Third, the following year being the 18. of his Popedom, at the supplication of *Don Gomez Fernandez*, therein called *Prior*; but Pope *Lucius* the Third (confirming this Order *anno Dom.* 1183.) stiled him *Master* of *Pereyro*.

This Bull of Pope *Alexander* the Third makes not any mention of the *Habit*, these *Knights* of St. *Julian* should wear, nor is it known what it was, more than that they used a [d] secular Habit, modest and grave, and the Ecclesiasticks a clerical Habit: Only to make a difference of these Knights from other Seculars, and the Clergy from other Ecclesiasticks, they wore a * shred of Cloth, and a Scapulary.

Nor doth the said Bull take notice of the *Rule* they were obliged to observe, but by several other Bulls it appears, that from the beginning of this Orders Foundation, it was of the [e] *Cistertian Order*, and the *Knights* thereof observed the Rule of St. *Benedict*, moderated and limited as it was convenient for the exercise of Arms against the *Moors*, for which end it was instituted.

The ancient *Badge* of this *Order* was a [f] *Pear-tree vert*, assumed in allusion to the Name of the Order.

The occasion of altering the first appellation, was upon changing their place of habitation: For when [g] *Don Alphonso* the Ninth, King of *Leon*, had taken from the *Moors*, *Alcantara*, a Town in *Castile*, *anno Dom.* 1213. he afterwards gave it to *Don Martin Fernandez de Quintana*, the twelfth Great Master of the Order of *Calatrava*, which Town * *anno* 1218. (with the consent of the said King) was given to *Don Nunno Fernandez*, the third Master of St. *Julian de Pereyro*, and his Fellows, as well Knights as Ecclesiasticks; and to the end there might follow an union of these Societies, (in like manner as was between *Calatrava* and the Order *d' Avis* in *Portugal*, some few years before) they consented to become subject to the Order of *Calatrava*, under the agreement and conditions following.

"[h] First, that the Master and Convent of *Pereyro* should receive with all obedi-
"ence the Visitation which the Master of *Calatrava* should make according to
"the *Cistertian Order*.

"That they should not be obliged to receive a *Monk* for their Prior, against
"their consent and will, but rather when they were to chuse one, it should be of
"their own House, or of that of *Calatrava*, or of any other Houses, Daughters
"to *Calatrava*, provided he were not a Monk.

"That the Master and Convent of *Calatrava* should give to the Master of *Pe-*
"*reyro* the Town of *Alcantara*, and all its Possessions, with all their Charters and
"Priviledges, and all the moveable Goods which they held in the Kingdom of
"*Leon*, as well by royal gift, as any other way.

"That when it should happen, that the Master of *Calatrava* should dye, or be
"removed, the Master of *Pereyro* should be called to the Election of the future
"Master.

"Lastly, that the Master of *Calatrava* should not have power to give away any
"thing belonging to *Pereyro*, without consent of the Master and Convent
thereof;

a *Fr. de Rades y Andrada in su Chronic. de Alcantara, fo. 1. a. Mennen. Delic. Equest. p. 102. Favin. in le Theat. d' Honn l. 6. c. 5.*

b *Fr. Caro de Torres en Histor. de las Ord. milit. f. 51. b.*

c *Rades en Chronic. de Alcantara fo. 2. a.*

d *Ibid. f 2. b. & f. 6. b.*

* Chias de pano. *Ibid.*

e *A. Miraeus, Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 31. Fr. Caro de Torres, loc. cit. & inf. 52. b.*

f *Un Peral verde*, Lancerote l. 1. c. 23.

g *Fr. de Rades en Chronic. de Alcantara, fol. 5. a.*

* *Idem de Rades en Chronic. de Calatrava, f. 33. b.*

h *Ibid. f 33. E. & f. 34. a.*

"thereof; and in case he did, then the King of *Leon* should have power to va-
"cate such Donation.

These Conditions and Capitulations were made, *en Cividad de Rodrigo*, the 16. of *July anno Dom.* 1218. and confirmed by King *Don Alphonso*, and the Masters of both Orders.

Hereupon the Convent of St. *Julian*, transferred their Seat from *Pereyro* to *Alcantara*, and *Don Diego Sanchio* the fourth Master of *Pereyro*, assumed the Title of *Master* of *Pereyro* and *Alcantara*,[i] which Title his Successors held until the Church of St. *Julian de Pereyro* was made an Encomienda; and thenceforward, the Masters used only the Title of *Alcantara*, and the Fraternity in like manner relinquishing their ancient Name, were afterwards called[k] Knights of *Alcantara*, from this their new place of abode. And whereas the Masters of *Pereyro* did formerly bear for the Ensign of the Order a Pear-tree only, they after this Union[l] added two *Traverses* to the Pear-tree.

But albeit this Order of *Alcantara*, was by this agreement, put under the subjection of that of *Calatrava*, and accordingly visited and corrected by them; yet nevertheless, they have since pretended to be[m] freed therefrom, for that the Masters of *Calatrava* broke the agreement made between them, by not admitting the Master of *Pereyro* to the Election of their Master, as was contained in their Articles.

Whereupon this Order of *Alcantara* obtained a Bull from Pope[n] *Julius* the Second, by which they pretend to be freed from that ancient subjection: Though this Bull was given without knowledge of any cause, or making any necessary mention of the subjection. And therefore[o] notwithstanding this Bull, the Order of *Calatrava* doth still in all general Chapters, nominate Visitors of their own Order to visit that of *Alcantara*, as well as that of *Montesia*, according to their ancient Capitulations; but they of *Alcantara* make always their protestation against it, and so this matter rests still undecided.

After this pretension of being exempted from obedience to the Order of *Calatrava*,[p] *Benedict* the Thirteenth (one of the Anti-Popes) changed their Badge into a *Cross Flory vert*, in the year of our *Lord* 1411. and this they wore upon the left shoulder of their Scapulary, for the Badge of their Order.

The Examination of the Candidates, and in what manner they receive the Habit; is related at full by[q] *Joseph Micheli Marquez*.

The Catholick Kings *Don Fernando* and *Donna Isabella*, having about three years before obtained the Administration of the Order of *Calatrava* for their lives, had an eye also upon this of *Alcantara*; and therefore[r] endeavoured, that at the first time the *Mastership* thereof should fall vacant, to gain it likewise, with the like Title of *Administrator*; to avoid several inconveniences that had happened to the Crown of *Castile*, when the Master of *Alcantara* did confederate with the King of *Portugal*.

Hereupon[s] in the year of our *Lord* 1492. they made their address to Pope *Innocent* the Eighth, that he would reserve to himself the provision of the supreme Dignity of this *Order*, whensoever it became vacant, either by the death or renunciation of the then Master, *Don John de Cuniga*; or after any other manner.

Upon this address the Pope did[t] accordingly reserve the disposing thereof as was desired, and then gave it in Administration to the said Kings; that they two should govern this Order under that Title, until such time as his Holiness should provide a Master.

A little after Pope *Innocent* dyed, and *Alexander* the Sixth succeeded, who at the like supplication of these Kings,[u] confirmed and of new granted, what his Predecessor had granted them before. Upon which (*anno* 1494.) they treated with *Don John de Cuniga*, for the renunciation of his Mastership, yet with condition to reserve to himself all the Rents of the Masters Table, that he held in that part of *Serena*, to which he consented. Whereupon he resigned and surrendred his Dignity of Master of this Order into the hands of the Pope, which the Bishop of *Valencia* received by Commission back from him, and gave the Possession thereof in administration to the said Catholick Kings. After this

i *Rades Chronic. Alcantara. f. 8. a.*

k *Flav. Cherubin. in Compend. Bull. Tom. 2. p. 105. Constit. 44 Schol. 1. vide Sansovin. Orig. de Caval. f. 22.*

l *Fr. de Rades en Chronic. de Alcantara. f. 6. b.*

m *Ibid. in*
n *Chronic.*
o *f. 7. a.*

p *Jo. Mariana de reb. Hisp. l. 12. c. 3. p. 569. Portano la Croce verde.* Sansovin. fol. 21. b.

q *Tesoro milit. de Cavall. fol. 22. a*

r *Fr. Rades*
s *en Chron.*
t *de Alcantara fo. 54. b. vide Fr. de Torres in Hist. de las Ord. milit. f. 83.*

u *Ib. Fo. 55. a.*

[w] this manner it was that these Kings succeeded in the Administration of the Mastership of *Alcantara*, in the year of our *Lord* 1494. which they held during their lives.

[w] *Fol. 55. b.*

But it was not long e're Pope *Adrian* the Sixth, annexed this Mastership, together with those other of St. *James* and *Calatrava*, to the Royal Crown of *Castile*, for ever, as hath been before observed.

Knights of Trugillo *or* Truxillo *in Spain.*

(20.)

[n] *Joseph Micheli Marquez* professeth, that it had been his great endeavour, to satisfie himself about the Foundation of this *Order*; notwithstanding which, neither by information from the Natives of the City of *Trugillo* (a Town situate in *Estremadura* in *Spain*) nor otherwise from History, could he understand when, or by whom it was erected.

[n] *En Tesoro militar. de Cavall. f. 71. a.*

Evident it is, these *Knights* were in being in the year of our *Lord* 1227. though it be unknown how long before they had their beginning: But because it is found in some slight memorials of the Order of *Alcantara*, That [o] *Don Arias Perez Gallego*, elected Master of that Order, in the year before mentioned, took *Trugillo* from the *Moors*, and there placed a Fraternity or Brotherhood of *Knights* and *Priests*, who lived after the manner of a Convent; therefore it is presumed, that they were no other than of the Order of *Alcantara*.

[o] *Fr. Rades y Andrada en Chron. de Alcantara. f. 9. a.*

Now it is certain, that there was a Convent and Order of the Fraternity of *Trugillo*; but it is not so certain, that these were of *Alcantara*. It rather seems to be the opinion of [q] *Fr. Rades y Andrada* that these had been some other, and a distinct *Order* of *Knighthood* by it self; which he collects from a Donation of Lands, that King *Don Alonso* the Ninth gave them some years after (*viz.* in the *Æra* of *Cæsar* 1233.) of the Towns of *Trugillo*, *Sancta Cruz*, *Zuferola*, *Canaba*, and *Albala*: in which it appears, that several years before the time of *Don Arias* there were [r] *Brothers* or *Knights* of *Trugillo*.

[q] *Ibid. Vide Hieron. Romanum in Republica sua.*

[r] Freyles Trugillensis.

It is not unlikely therefore, that this *Order* might be incorporated into that of St. *Julian de Pereyro*, and by this means the Order of *Alcantara* pretend these Towns to be theirs, which in the Reign of King *Don Alonso* the Ninth, of *Castile*, and King *Don Fernando* of *Leon*, were taken by force of Arms from the *Moors*, and given to the Fraternity of *Knights* who kept their Convent in *Trugillo*.

[t] *Hieronymus Romanus* saith, that these *Knights* were of noble descent, and that no man was admitted into this *Order*, unless he first made proof of his Gentility. But there is not any Writer that gives an account what was the *Ensign* or *Badge* of their *Order*. It is guessed by [u] *Marquez*, that their Institution obliged them to be neer the person of the King, and upon every martial Expedition, that he undertook, to attend him armed and well provided; maintaining always two Horses and Servants to be in readiness such for services.

[t] *Apud Marquez.*

[u] *Loc. cit.*

The Order of Knights of Calatrava *in Castile.*

(21.)

This ancient *Order* of *Knighthood*, was instituted in *Castile*, and took [a] beginning under the Reign of *Don Sanchio* the Third, and [b] appellation from the Castle *Calatrava*, being a Frontire both of *Castile* and *Toledo*; which Castle the [c] *Moors* took upon their Victory over *Don Rodrigo* King of *Spain*, *anno Dom.* 714.

[a] } *En Conde*
[b] } *de Lancerote in Nobleza del Andaluzia. l. 1. c. 32.*
[c] *Fr. de Rades y Andrada en Chronic. de Calatrava. fol. 2. a.*

The word is compounded of *Cala*, signifying in *Arabick* [d] a *Castle*, and of the *Spanish* word *Travas*, which signifies *Manacles*, *Gives*, or *Irons*, to fasten about the feet and wrists of Captives; for with such as these the *Moors* lockt up and fettered the Christians, whom they held Prisoners in that Castle.

[d] *Lancerote en Nobleza del Andaluzia loc. cit. Favin, in le Theat. d' Honneur. l. 6. c. 10.*

After its recovery from the *Moors* (who had held it above 400 years) it was given by [e] *Don Alphonso*, surnamed the Emperor of *Spain*, to the *Knights Templars* (of whose virtue that Age had a great opinion) to be made a Bulwark against the Inrodes of the *Moors*, being the very [f] Key into the Kingdom of *Toledo*; but they no way able to hold it, withdrew their Garrison; and what with the *Knights Templars* deserting it, and the approach of the *Moors*, all others were disheartned from accepting the place, although the foresaid King [g] *Sanchio* (Son of *Don Alphonso* the Emperor) had caused it to be proclaimed at his Court, that whosoever would take upon them the defence thereof, to them he would freely give it, and to their Heirs for ever.

At length one *Don Raymond* (native [h] of *Barcelona*) formerly a Knight of great renown, then Abbot of the Monastery of St. *Mary de Fitero* (of the *Cistertian Order*) in the Kingdom of *Navarr* (by the advice of *Diego Velasquez*, of the same Order, being then at Court) accepted of the Kings proffer, and took upon him the fortifying and maintaining this Castle; and hereupon the [i] King made his Charter of Donation, dated at *Almason* in *January*, in the Æra of *Cæsar* 1196. (to wit of *Christ* 1158.) whereby he gave to *God*, to the blessed *Virgin Mary*, to the Congregation of *Cistertians*, and to *Don Raymond*, and all his *Brethren*, as well present as future, the Village called *Calatrava*, with all its Bounds and Territories, (particularly described in the Grant) to possess and enjoy by right of inheritance for ever.

This *Don Raymond* (after he had received possession according to the tenor of the Charter) together with his Associates, and other [k] assistance from *Castile* and *Toledo*, fell to fortifying of the Castle; and hence arose the *Order* of *Knights* of *Calatrava*, [l] instituted by King *Don Sanchio* in the year of our *Lord* 1158. in the Town of *Calatrava*, and therefore called at first [m] *Militia de Calatrava*: the foresaid *Don Raymond* and *Don Velasquez*, being the first movers of this excellent work; of whom the former is in another place called also a [n] joint Founder with King *Sanchio*.

After this [o] *Don Raymond* considering the richness and fertility of the Soil, returned to his Monastery, and from its neighbouring Countries drew 20000 men, with their Families and Goods, to plant in and about *Calatrava*; which so greatly strengthened the Country, that the *Moors* durst never after attempt besieging of the Castle.

This *Order* was approved by Pope [p] *Alexander* the Third, the 25. of *September*, *anno Dom.* 1164. under the Discipline of the *Cistertian Order*. It was confirmed afterwards by Pope [r] *Innocent* the Third, in the year 1199. and at length grew on, till it gained exceeding great reputation in *Spain*.

At the first Institution, the *Knights* wore their Robes and Scapulars, of a [s] *White* Colour ([t] *Sansovin*, and [u] *Genebrand* saith *Black*) as did the *Cistertian Monks*; and on the breast thereof a plain *Red* Cross, but Pope *Benedict* the Thirteenth, *anno* 1396. dispensed with that Monastick Habit, and assigned them a [w] Cross Flory: So anciently they were prohibited Marriage, yet *Paul* the Third permitted them [x] one Wife, but not a second.

[a] After the death of the last Master *Don Lopez de Padilla*, *anno* 1487. *Don Diego Garcia de Castillo* (being the Commendador Major) caused a general Chapter to be summoned in the Convent of *Calatrava*, for the Election of another Master; in which there fell out great contest among the Electors, and the chief that stood, was the said *Commendador Major*, and *Don Alonso Pacheco*, Commendador *de Villa Franca*.

Upon notice of this, the Catholick Kings, *Don Ferdinando* and *Donna Isabella*, sent to the Convent a Knight of their Court, with a Bull from Pope *Innocent* the Eighth, wherein he declared that he had reserved to himself the providing of a Master; and therewith [b] required them not to proceed in the Election, until his further Commands were made known: in obedience to which the Election ceased.

Afterwards ([c] *anno Dom.* 1489.) the [d] Pope gave the Mastership of this Order in Administration to King *Don Ferdinando* during life; but he did not give it with

e *Rades y Andrada, fo. 3. b. Mennen. Delic. Equest. p. 99.*
f *Ibid. in Chronic fo. 5. a.*
g *Ibid. f. 4. b.*
h *Ibid. f. 8. b. Jo. Mariana de reb. Hispanie. l. 11. c. 6.*
i *De Rades en Chron. f. 5. Jo. Mariana loc. cit.*
k *Idem de Rades, f. 6. b. Jo. Mariana, ut supra.*
l Instituyola el dicho Rey Don Sancho. *Rades f. 6. b. vide Lancerote, l. 1. c. 32.*
m *De Rades. loc. cit.*
n *Ibid. f. 8. b.*
o *Fol. 6. b. vide Mennen. p. 100. & Favin. l. 6. c. 10.*
p *Idem de Rades, fo. 13. b.*
r *Favin. Theat. d' Honneur. l. 6. c. 10.*
s *Aub. Miræus, Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 30. Favin. Theat. d' Hon. l. 6. c. 10.*
t *Vanno vestiti de Nero, & portano la Croce rosa nel petto. f. 21. a.*
u *Chron. p. 614.*
w *Aub. Miræus Orig. loc. cit.*
x *Mennen. Delic Equest. p. 101.*
a *Fr. de Rades en Chron. de Calatr. f. 82. b.*
b *Ibid. f. 83. a.*
c *Mennen. & Favin. locis supra citatis.*
d *Rades, fol. 83. b.*

with the Title of *Master*, [e] because the King had never received the *Habit* of this Order, neither was he capable of it, being a married man; but [f] chiefly because the King then endeavoured to obtain the other two Masterships of St. *James* and *Alcantara*, and he could not hold them all three with the Title of *Master*.

[g] King *Don Ferdinando* and *Isabella* his Wife governed this *Order* with the Title of *Administrators* very worthily, and reformed the state thereof; visiting it by the Abbot of *Claravalle* of the *Cistertian Order*, then called *Don Pedro*, who came on that imployment with a Commission from Pope *Innocent* (at the desire of the said Kings) and of the general Chapter, in the year of our *Lord* 1491.

Upon the death of King *Don Ferdinando* (*anno* 1516.) the [h] Chapter of this Order met at *Guadalupe*, with intention to elect a new Master, of which Cardinal *Adrian* having notice (who then governed the Kingdoms) first sent, then went to the Electors, to desire they would not proceed, because the Pope had given the Administration of the Order to Prince *Charles* (afterwards Emperor by the name of *Charles* the Fifth) but they seemed unwilling to depart, before they had made an Election, and thereupon [i] elected that Prince, *Master*, or *Administrator* of their *Order*, which was afterwards confirmed by Pope *Leo* the Tenth.

But it seemed much for the interest of the Crowns of *Castile* and *Leon* to have the Mastership or Administration of this Order, and those other of St. *James*, and *Alcantara* for life, made perpetual, and annexed to them for ever; hereupon, great suit was made to the Pope by the Emperor for obtaining thereof: and among the inducements some of them were these.

[k] That great alteration often hapned in those Kingdoms upon the Election of these *Masters*, to the damage of persons of all sorts relating to those Orders.

That in regard the *Masters* were so powerful in those Kingdoms, they several times, gave aid and assistance to particular Factions that arose; so that Civil War often followed.

That the Peace and Quiet since the Administration was in the hands of the *King*, much exceeded that which was in the times of the *Masters*. These and other things being considered of, Pope [l] *Adrian* the Sixth granted the Emperors desire, and annexed the *Mastership* of these three Orders perpetually to the Crowns of *Castile* and *Leon*.

The form of admittance into this *Order*, and manner of their profession, is set down at large by [m] *Marquez*.

e f g *Ibid.*

h *Ibid. f.* 84. *b.*

i k l *Ib. fo.* 85.

m *Tesoro Milit. de Cavall fo.* 28. *&c.*

The Order of the Holy Ghost *in Saxia, at Rome.*

(22.)

They are called by [a] *Marquez*, the *Brothers of the Hospital of the Holy Ghost*; who though not invested with Sword and Spurs, as other *Knights* be, are nevertheless reckoned among the *Military Orders*, because bound to bring Certificate of their Gentility, before they can be accepted or admitted.

Their chief Seat is the sumptuous Hospital of the *Holy Ghost*, founded neer the Church of St. *Mary* in *Saxia* by the River *Tyber* in *Rome* (a place so called from the [b] *Saxons*, a People of *Germany*, who anciently inhabited there) by Pope [c] *Innocent* the Third, in the year of our *Lord* 1198. or [d] 1201. But it appears by [e] another of this Popes Bulls, dated *anno* 1204. for uniting of the Hospital of the *Holy Ghost* at *Montpelier* in *France*, unto this at *Rome*, that the ancient Foundation was at *Montpelier*, though in process of time this other became the principal.

They of this Fraternity profess [f] Chastity, Poverty, and Obedience, as also the service of the Poor; living under the Rule of St. *Augustine*, and have a *Præceptor* or *Master*.

The *Ensign* of this Order, is a [g] *White Patriarchal Cross*, with twelve points, sewed to their Breast, and on the left side of their Black Mantle.

The manner of giving the *Habit*, and making their *Profession*, is recorded by [h] *Jos. Mich. Marquez*.

In this *Hospital* care is taken for the [i] nursing and bringing up exposed Children, the

a *En Tesoro Milit. de Cavall. f.* 61. *b.*
b *F. Lud. Gothofrid. Archont. Cosmica. l.* 3. *p.* 51.
c *Platina in ejusd. Papæ vita.*
d *S. Maurolico in Oceano Religionum. p.* 233.
e *A. Miræus Orig. Ord Equest. p.* 43.
f *Tesoro Milit. de Cavall. loc. supra cit.*
g La Insignia es une Cruz blanca Patriarcal, y los braços Otogonodos. *Ibid.*
h *Ibid. fol.* 62.
i *S. Maurolico. p.* 234.

the curing of all manner of Infirmities, entertainment of Strangers for three days with meat and lodging, relieving the Poor, and other works of the like kind.

k *Ibid.* The [k] *Revenue* belonging thereto, is about 24000 Duckets every day; it having great Commanderies in *Italy*, *Sicily*, *Spain*, *France*, *Burgundy*, *Germany*, and elsewhere.

The Order of St. George *d' Alfama.*

(23.)

* *In Mare Oceano di tutte le Religioni del Mundo. p.229.* We are informed from [*] *Sylvester Maurolico*, that there was an Order of *Knights* called the Order of *St. George d' Alfama*, instituted in the year of our Lord 1201. in a Town of that name situate in the Diocess of *Tortosa*, which afterwards in the year 1363. received approbation from the Papal See, but we find no other mention thereof, save that it was united to the *Order* of our *Lady* of *Montesa*, *anno Dom.* 1399.

The Order of Knights of Christ *in Livonia, or of the* [l] Sword-Bearers.

l Portglave and Sword. *Heyl. Cosmogr. l. 2. p. 168.*

(24.)

m *Munster. Chron. Univers. l. 3 p. 423. de Germania.* In the year of our Lord [m] 1186. one *Meinardus* a holy and devout man, began to preach the Gospel in *Livonia*, and erected the Bishoprick of *Riga*. But this good man and his Successors met with great difficulties and opposition, in the propagation of Christianity, until the year 1200. about which time many of that Country embraced the Christian Faith; and one [n] *Albert*, being then Bishop of *Livonia*, instituted this *Order*, in imitation of the Knights *Teutonicks*, with design to extirpate Idolatry, and propagate the Christian Religion in those Territories, as the other had undertaken to do in *Prussia*.

n *Ibid. l. 3. p. 785. & 786. de Germ. Mennen. Deliciæ Equest. p. 89. Favin. Theat. d' Honn. l. 7. c. 14. p. 272.*

He prescribed to the *Knights* the *Cistertian* Rule and Habit, namely, a long *White Mantle* and *Black Hood*, on the breast was sewed the Figure of a [o] *Red Sword*, or rather [p] two *Red Swords*, crossing one another in form of a *Saltire*, whence they had the Title [q] *Ensiferi*, *vel* [r] *Gladiferi Fratres*, or Brethren Sword-Bearers.

o *Funcius in Chronolog. sua.*

p *Aut verius binos Gladios formæ Crucis decussatim positæ rubescentes.* Mennen. p. 89. *videsis Mendo Disq. 1. Quest. 2 sect. 14.*

q *Munster. l. 3. p. 423. & 785. de German.*

r *Ibid. l. 3. p. 778.*

This *Order* had their [s] *Statutes* something like those of the *Knights Templars*, and the *Knights* thereof took on them the [t] Vow both of Obedience and Chastity.

s *Tesoro Milit. de Cavall. f. 52. b.*

t *Favin. & Mennen. in locis præd.*

Pope [u] *Innocent* the Third gave approbation and confirmation to this *Order*, which became fully Instituted in the year of our Lord 1203.

u *J. Lud. Gothofrid. Archant. Cosm. l. 3. p. 5.*

And [w] because they could not of themselves accomplish the end for which they were instituted, they in the year [x] 1237. or 1239. united to the *Teutonick Order*, and submitted to their Rule and Habit, by whose help and assistance, they afterwards overcame the Idolatrous *Livonians*, and brought them to submit to the Christian Faith: thenceforward the [y] *Great Master* of *Livonia* acknowledged him of *Prussia* for his Superior; and so continued until [z] *Walter de Pletemberg* their Great Master, contemporary with *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, Great Master of *Prussia*, separated this *Order* from its obedience to the *Teutonick*.

w *Munst. Chron. l. 3 p. 423. & 778.*

x *Funcius Chron. ut supra.*

y *Heyl. Cosmogr. l. 2. p. 168.*

z *Mennen. de Delic. Equest. p. 91.*

Finally, in the year 1561. *Gothard de Ketler*, the last Great Master of this *Order*, following the example of *Albert* Great Master of *Prussia*, became a Subject to the Crown of *Poland*; for on the [*] 5. of *March* in the year aforesaid, he (in the Castle of *Riga*) surrendred to the use of King *Sigismund* the Second (surnamed *Augustus*) all the Lands belonging to this *Order*, together with his Cross, the Seal of the Order, the Charters and Grants of several Popes and Emperors, which concern'd the same; the Keys of the City and Castle of *Riga*, the Office of *Great Master*, the rights of Coynage, and all the Powers and Priviledges appertaining to it; receiving back again from *Radzevill* the Kings Commissioner, the Dukedom of *Curland* to him and his Heirs for ever.

* *Heyl Cosmogr. l. 2. p. 169.*

In this manner this *Order* became extinguisht, after it had flourished 357 years.

The

The Knights of Jesus Christ, *in Italy and France, or* Brothers of the Militia of St. Dominick.

(25.)

St. *Dominick* (descended of the [a] Family of the *Guzmans* in *Spain*) was [b] Founder of this *Order*, which he instituted in the year * 1206. principally to fight against the *Albigenses* then called Hereticks, and the *Knights* thereof were stiled *Fratres de Militia B. Dominici*.

He prescribed to them a [c] *White Habit*, and for the Badge of their Order a *Cross Flory quarterly Sable* and *Argent*, to be worn upon their Breasts.

Pope [e] *Innocent* the Third approved of this Order * *anno Dom.* 1215. under the Rule of the said St. *Dominick*, and gave priviledge, that the *Knights* from among themselves should elect a *Master*. They professed Obedience and conjugal Chastity.

The work being done for which these *Knights* were instituted, they laid aside their Arms, and devoted themselves wholly to the [f] spiritual warfare.

Afterwards there were Widows and Virgins joined to this Order, and thereupon they became called *Fratres seu Sorores de Pœnitentia B. Dominici*; whose Rule was approved by Pope [g] *Innocent* the Sixth, about the year of our Lord 1360.

a *Nich. Jansse-nius in vita ipsius S. Dominici Edit. Antuerp.* 1622. *p.* 1.
b *Favin. Theat. d' Honneur. l.* 6. *c.* 8.
* *Briet. Annal. Mundi pars* 3. *Tom.* 2. *p.* 92.
c *Habitus erat albus, & insigne Crux partim nigra, partim alba liliata; qua nunc Ministri Tribunalium Sanctæ Fidei utuntur.* Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 2. Sect. 13.
e *Jos. Mich. Marquez in Tes. Milit. f.* 47. *b.*
* *Briet. Annal. Mundi pars* 3. *Tom.* 2. *p.* 101.
f *A. Miræus, p.* 46.
g *Mennen. p.* 106.

The Order of Knights of St. Mary de Merced *in Aragon.*

(26.)

[a] *James* the First of *Aragon* surnamed the Invincible (who conquered from the *Moors* the Kingdom of *Murcia*, *Valentia*, and the *Baliares*) was sometime Prisoner to *Simon* Earl of *Montfort* in *France*, where he suffered much hardship and many troubles; and being throughly moved with the insufferable miseries the *Christians* indured, under the slavery of the *Moors*; made a Vow to the *blessed Virgin*, that when he should be delivered from his Captivity, he would endeavour the redemption of such *Christians* as the *Moors* had made Captives. Thus far his Vow: but it extended not to the [b] erecting of an *Order*, which should oblige the Companions thereof, to engage in that affair, as some would have it.

This King being freed from his Imprisonment, laid up great sums of money to be imployed in performance of his Vow; and afterwards by the advice and counsel of *Raymond de Penafort* his Confessor (a Dominican Friar) and of *Pedro Nolasco*, a noble Cavalier, ([c] descended from the ancient Family of *Nolasco* in *France*, resident at a Town called *les Saintas Pucelles*, in the Diocess of St *Paul*, under the Arch-Bishop of *Arles*) he [d] founded an *Order* of *Knights*, in the City of *Barcelona*, called *La Nueva Merced*, so named (saith our Author) by the blessed Virgin, who in a Vision [e] appeared to this *King*, and to *Raymond* and *Nolasco* one night, in one and the same hour, directing the whole Institution, and giving it that Name, because of the mercy and liberty which the Christian Captives should receive by this means.

But it appears by the Bulls of Popes [f] *Gregory* the Ninth, and [g] *Alexander* the Fourth, as also by a Charter made by *Don Pedro* King of *Aragon*, dated the eleventh of *January*, *anno* 1358. to have been likewise called *Ordo beatæ Eulaliæ* from [h] St. *Eulalia* the Virgin and Martyr, buried at *Barcelona*, in the Church there dedicated to her name.

There are various opinions concerning the year wherein this *Order* was founded; but it is with certainty determined to have been *anno Dom.* [i] 1218. on the Feast-day of St. *Laurence* the Martyr in *August* (on which day annually the commemoration of the Foundation of this *Order* is commanded to be celebrated by

a *Alonso Remon. Historia General de la Orden de la Merced, l.* 1. *c.* 4. *f.* 10. *vide etiam Marquez en Tesoro milit. de Cavall f.* 58. *a. & Mennen Delic. Equest. p.* 107.
b *Alon. Remon. in Histor. prad. l.* 1. *f.* 11. *a.*
c *Ibidem l.* 2. *c.* 1. *f.* 37.
d *Ibid. l.* 1. *c.* 6. *p.* 17.
e *Fl. Cherub in. Compend. Bullar Tom.* 1. *p.* 1. *Constitut.* 9. *Schol.* 2.
f *Alon. Remon. l.* 1. *c.* 8. *f.* 22. *b.*
g *Lib.* 2. *c.* 18. *f.* 84. *b.*
h *Ibid. l.* 9. *c.* 5. *f.* 426.
i *Lib.* 1. *c.* 8. *p. vide Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f.* 58. *a.*

by the[k] Bull of Pope *Clement* the Eighth) in the fifth year of the Reign of this King *James*; as is manifest from several authentick testimonies, collected and alledged by *Alphonsus Remon*, in his [l] History of this Order.

The end of its Institution, and the Profession and Obligation of the *Knights*, was in effect the same with that vowed by King *James* in his Captivity, to wit, to gather Alms, and to go in person to redeem Christian Slaves, who either by Piracy, the chance of War, or other sad accident, had fallen into the hands of the *Moors*. This work prospered so well, that [m] *Pedro Nolasco* (being first sent into the Kingdom of *Valentia*, to make redemption of Captives) redeemed four hundred within the space of six years after the Foundation of the Order.

This *Pedro Nolasco* was by the Founder constituted the first *General* or *Head* of the *Order*; but as concerning the person that gave the *Habit* to him, there are these three opinions.

First, That it was by the hands of King *James* the Founder. Secondly, That *Berengario Pallovasino*, Bishop of *Barcelona* gave it. Thirdly, That he received it from *Raymond de Penafort*; all which our [n] *Author* sets down, but there determines nothing; only seems inclinable to the first opinion, as most rational, because the King was *Founder*, and was so called by the *blessed Virgin* in the Vision, and for that the *Order* it self was at first composed meerly of [o] *Laymen*, and wholly military, and so declared by the Popes [p] *Boniface* the Eighth, and *Clement* the Fifth: Besides their Laws are in favour of those that are of this opinion, and exclude out of this Act, judicially Kingly, all Ecclesiastical ones, and by the same reason the Bishop: for saith the Canon of their Law, [q] *A Priest ought not to make Knights*. But afterwards [r] in another place, he absolutely concludes, that the King himself gave the Habit to *Nolasco*, from the evidence he exhibits out of a Letter which King *Don Pedro* the Fourth sent to Pope *Innocent* the Sixth.

Such a like *Habit* as was given to *Nolasco*, was also prescribed to the first Knights, *viz.* a *Coat* and *Scapular* of a [t] common sort of coarse *White Cloth*. Their Coat was garnished with Cordons and Ribbons, wherewith they fastned it about their necks, and from the upper end thereof issued a Cap that covered half their head. The *Monks* wore their [t] Coats and Scapulars reaching down to their feet (but those of the *Knights* were much [u] shorter) and the form of their Coat (or rather Mantle) and Cap, was the same as they now wear.

When the Government of the *Order* became both spiritual and temporal, as well the [w] *Knights* as *Monks*, were commanded by order of Chapter to keep the manner and form of their Habit apart, according to the intention of the first appointment.

In the time, and upon request of *Gulielmo de Bas*, the second *General* of this *Order*, [x] King *James* the Founder, by his Diploma, dated at *Saragosa* the 15. of *July anno* 1251. granted unto him, and all the Fraternity of the Order, That they should wear upon their Scapulars an [y] Escotcheon of [z] *Aragon*, *viz. Or*, *four Pales Gules*, and above that, the [b] *White Cross* of the Church of *Barcelona*, in a *Red Field*; which two Coats being joined together, *per Fess*, in one shield, were so born for some time, but afterwards came to be encompassed with a Border. The [c] *Knights* wore their Escotcheon of Arms, fixt on their Scapulars, but the *Monks* on their Mantles, and both before upon their Breasts.

The Founder by his [d] Diploma dated at *Valentia* the 14. of *March*, *anno Dom.* 1254. granted particular Priviledges to the *Order*, which he [e] confirmed by another royal Instrument, dated at *Lirida* the third of *March*, *anno* 1275.

Besides these Royal Grants, this *Order* received approbation from the Papal See, namely, from Pope [f] *Gregory* the Ninth, in the eighth year of his Papacy (on the day of St. *Anthony* the Abbot) who prescribed to the Master and Fraternity the Rule of St. *Augustine*. It was afterwards confirmed by [g] *Alexander* the Fourth, as appears by a Bull of his, wherein he granted them several Indulgences, and dated at *Naples* the 10. of *April* in the first year of his Papacy. These *Knights* professed [h] conjugal Chastity, and Obedience to their Superiors.

In

k *Compend. Bullar. Tom.* 3. *p.* 21. *Const.* 68.
l *Alon. Remon. l.* 1. *c.* 8.
m *Lib.* 2. *c.* 8. *f.* 54. *b.*
n *Lib.* 1. *c* 10. *fo.* 29. *b.*
o *Lib.* 5 *c.* 6. *f.* 238. *b.*
p *Lib.* 7. *c.* 8. *f.* 328. *b.*
q Otro si el Clerigo un home de religion, non tuvieron que podrian fazer Cavalleros. *l.* 11. *tit.* 21. *partida* 2.
r *Alon. Remon. l.* 5. *c.* 6. *f.* 237. *b.* & *f.* 238.
r (*Ib. f.* 236.
t } *Sansov.*
u } *f.* 21. *b.*
w (
x (*See the Diploma in Alon. Remon. l.* 1. *c* 12. *fol.* 177. *b.*
y } *Scutum cum Cruce albæ in Campo rubeo, in parte superiori, cum insigniis Regni Aragonitæ in inferiori.* F. Cherub. in Compend. Bullar. Tom. 1. *p.* 34. Const. 6. Schol. 2.
z (
b *Remon. Histor. General hujus Ord. l.* 1. *c* 9. *f.* 29.
c *Lib.* 5 *c.* 6 *f.* 236.
d } *Lib.* 4. *c.* 12. *f.* 179.
e }
f *Lib.* 1. *c.* 8. *f.* 22. *b. vide Ciacon. in vita hujus Pontif. l.* 1. *p.* 558.
g *Alon. Remon. l.* 2. *c.* 18. *fol.* 84. *b.*
h *Marquez en Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f.* 58. *a.*

In time this *Order* also, which was at first solely under the Government of *Knights*, came to be as well Spiritual as Temporal, and at length fell into the power of the *Monks* and *Priests*.

For, the *Knights* and *Priests* falling at variance about the election of a *General* of their Order, (upon the death of [k] *Arnoldo Rosiniol*, their seventh General, who died *anno* 1317.) the *Knights* having chosen *Berengario Hostales*, and the *Priests* *Raimundo Alberto*, they appealed to the Pope (*John* the 22. then holding the Chair) who it seems the 17. of *November*, in the year aforesaid, declared, [l] That (the *Order* seeming inclinable to be governed after the manner of *Monks*) he thought it convenient for them to have a *Master General*, which should be a *Priest*, and that for the future no Lay-man should be elected General; and so determined the controversie on the behalf of the *Priests*.

k *Alon. Remor. l. 6. c. 20. f. 312.*

l *Lib. 7. c. 7. f. 328. b.*

This Judgment gave the *Knights* so great discontent, that [m] one of them, being Kinsman to the Governor of the new erected Order of *Montesa*, offered to bring over to that Society, all the *Knights* of *Merced*, being then threescore in number, which being accepted of, he did so, and from henceforth they became incorporated with the *Knights* of *Montesa*: So that ever since, the whole Fraternity have been only *Priests*, and no Lay or Military person among them, and therefore [n] *Andr. Mendo* reckons this Order among those that are extinct. The *Master General* is also a *Priest*, and hath his residence at *Barcelona*, by the Decrees of Popes *Clement* the Fifth, and *John* the 22.

m *Lib. 6. c. 20. f. 313.*

n *De Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 4 n 99.*

[p] *Raymond de Penafort*, the Founder's Confessor (called also *Raymond* of *Barcelona*, because it was the place of his Birth) who had a powerful hand in the Institution of this *Order*, and [q] devised the Statutes, lived neer to the age of an hundred years; he was [r] canonized for a *Saint*, and the [t] 7. of *January* appointed for his Anniversary, by the [t] Bull of Pope *Clement* the Eighth.

p *Remon en Hist. de la Merced. l. 1. c. 5. f. 15. b. & c. 8. f. 25.*

q *Fr. Cherub.*

r *Comp. Bullar. Tom. 3. p. 24. & 25. Constit. 77.*

t *Expedita fuit 3. Kal. Maii, anno 1601.*

On the 12. of *July*, *anno* 1664. the approbation of the Colledge passed, for making the 29. of *January*, the Anniversary of *Petro Nolasco* Confessor, the other great assister, and first *General* of the *Order*. The *Office* appointed for that day, may be seen in the *Missale Romanum*, printed lately at *Paris*, in the large Volume.

This way of Canonizing holy men by the Popes, is said to have been first used by [u] *Leo* the Third, *anno Dom.* 803. who then solemnly Canonized *Suibert* Bishop of *Werden*.

u *Compend. Bull. Tom. 3. p. 25. Const. 77. Schol. 1. Bellarmine de Sanct. Beatit. l. 1. c. 8.*

To conclude, the charitable and pious work, for which this *Order* was erected, hath been carried on from the time of its Institution, and managed by the Fraternity thereof, with all religious care and faithfulness; very great sums of Money being yearly collected and put into their hands, for that use and purpose, in manner following. They send their Agents yearly abroad, chiefly to *Algiers* and *Fess*, to return them an account of the age, quality, and number of those who are in Captivity; and upon consideration had thereof, order them to contract for their redemption: the general course being to ransom the religious persons first, next the Laiety; and among them the young, and such as appear most likely to do service before others.

Few dye in *Spain*, who bequeath not some Legacy to this *Order*, which greatly encreaseth its Revenue: and here, though she was no Benefactress to this *Order*, nor left her Legacy to be disposed of by that Fraternity, most deservedly may be recorded, of our Nation, the illustrious Lady *Alice* Dutchess *Dudley*, created into that Dignity by his late Majesty, of ever blessed memory, King *Charles* the First, by [w] Letters Patents under the Great Seal of *England*, bearing date at *Oxford* the 23. of *May*, in the twentieth year of his Reign; who dyed the 22. day of *January* in the year of our Lord 1668. being the 90. year of her age, and bequeathed by her last Will and Testament, one hundred pounds *per annum* for ever, to be imployed for redemption of Captives of the *English* Nation.

w *See a Copy of the Patent entred in the Earl Marshal's Book in the Office of Arms. fol. 80.*

Knights

Knights of the Rosary *in Toledo.*

(27.)

[a] *Roderick* Arch-Bishop of *Toledo* in *Spain*, seeing the Country sore oppressed by the *Moors*, called the *Nobless* of the City together, and propounded the great necessity of their appearance and assistance in its defence, and extirpation of the *Moors*; whereto they being unanimously inclined, he gave beginning to this *Order* of the *Rosary*, into which entred many of the *Nobless*.

This *Order* had Statutes, which chiefly obliged them to the defence of the *Catholick Religion*, to fight against the *Moors*, and to say continually a *Rosary* of our blessed Lady: Our *Author* finds not that it had been approved by any of the Popes, but conceives the Arch-Bishop, being *Metropolitan* of *Spain*, was of sufficient power to give it approbation; besides, he framed the Statutes for the *Knights*, and prescribed to them the Rule of living, to wit, that of St. *Dominick*.

The [b] Ensign of this *Order* was the Figure of our *Lady* of the *Rosary*, upon a *Cross Flory*, *quarterly Argent* and *Sable*.

[a] *Jos. Mich. Marquez Tes. Milit. de Cavall. f. 58. b.*

[b] *Tessera fuit effigies B. Mariæ del Rosario, & infra ipsam Crux alba, & nigra; instar ejus, quam gestant Ministri Tribunalium Sanctæ Fidei.* Mendo Disq. 1. Quæst. 4. Sect. 100.

Knights of St. Mary the Glorious *in Italy.*

(28.)

The Author of this Institution, was [d] *Bartolemeo de Vincenza*, of the Order of *Friers Preachers* or *Dominicans*, afterwards made Bishop of that City, a man that did much both in word and example: and the end he chiefly design'd, was to procure peace to the Cities of *Italy*, then much disquicted by Civil Wars, among the Princes thereof.

This *Order* received Institution *anno Dom.* [e] 1233. a year famous and renowned in that Age, for very great piety, and therefore called [f] *generalis devotionis Annus*. It was approved and confirmed by [g] Pope *Urban* the Fourth, *anno* 1262. and the [h] Rule of St. *Dominick* prescribed to the *Knights*, who are obliged [i] to take into their care and protection Widows and Orphans, and use their endeavour to beget concord among such as are at variance.

The Habit is a [k] *White Tunick* or *Cassock*, and a *Mantle* of *Russet Colour*; but there is some difference among those that mention the Badge, [l] *Sansovin* and [m] *Maurolico* say, they wore before their breasts a *purple Cross patee*, bordered with Gold; [n] *Gothofridus* saith, it is a *purple Cross patee*, with two Stars in chief; but [o] *Marquez* gives it an *Octogonal Cross*, like that of *Malta*, and four Stars, to wit, one at every side thereof.

The [p] manner of giving the Habit, and making Profession, is with the Ceremony used by the *Knights* of *Malta*. The *Knights* profess [q] Obedience to their Great Master, and conjugal Chastity, but are [r] forbid to wear Spurs or Bridles of Gold. They are commonly called *Cavaleri de Madona*, and reside at *Bolonia*, *Modena*, and other Cities of *Italy*: and because they have no Monasteries, but dwell in their own Houses, together with their Wives and Children, at ease and in plenty, they were called [s] *Fratres Gaudentes*, or [t] *Hilares*.

[d] *Carol. Sigonius de regno Italiæ. l. 17. p. 45. Sylv. Mauro-Ico in Oceano Religionum. p. 232.*

[e] *Jos. M. Marquez en Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f. 37. b.*

[f] *Brietii Annales Mundi, pars 3. Tom. 2. p. 118*

[g] *Sigon. in regno Italiæ. l. 19. p. 97.*

[h] *Ravin. Theat. d' Honn. l. 8. c. 1.*

[i] *Sigonius & Marquez, locis cit.*

[k] *Gothofrid. in Archont. Cosm. l. 3. p. 7.*

[l] *Orig. de Cavaleri. f. 22.*

[m] *In Mare Oceano Relig. p. 232.*

[n] *Loco cit.*

[o] *Loco supra cit.*

[p] *Marquez in Tesoro Milit. de Cavall. fol. 28. b.*

[q] *Ibid. f. 37. b.*

[r] *S. Maurolico, loco cit.*

[s] *Menenn Deric. Equest. p. 111.*

[t] *Archont. Cosm. l. 3. p. 7.*

The Order of Knights of St. James *in Portugal.*

(29.)

We have not met with any who make mention of this Order as distinct from that of St. *James* in *Galicia*, save only *J. Mich. Marquez*, but such as rather take it to have been sometime a member thereof; and that the Knights of St. *James* in *Galicia*, who had anciently Commanderies in *Portugal*, were only exempted from obedience

obedience and subjection to their Great Master, and not received upon the account of a new Institution, for so much doth *Andrew Favin* affirm; but *Jos. Micheli*, from *Portugal* Writers, reports the contrary, and gives this further account of the *Order*, to wit, [a] That the troubles the *Moors* gave daily to *Portugal*, and the great zeal of their Kings, seeing their Subjects so exceedingly oppreſt by them, was such, that they endeavoured by all means to cut off those mischiefs, and to secure and quiet the Confines of their Kingdom.

[a, b, c] *En su Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f. 48. a.*

Among whom King *Don Denys* the Sixth, moved with a like tender regard towards his People, did in the year of our Lord [b] 1310. institute this Order of St. *James*, under whose protection he became victorious in divers Battels against the *Moors*, and at length quieted his Kingdom, by the assistance of these Knights. And it was not long after the Institution, e're this *Order* flourished, through the favour of those Priviledges bestowed on it by the Founder.

It received approbation first, from Pope [c] *Nicholas* the Fourth, after from Pope *Celestine* the Fifth, and again from other of his Successors.

The *Knights* profess conjugal Chastity, Hospitality and Obedience, and none are admitted before they make proof of their Gentility by blood.

The *Ensign* of this Order is a [d] *Red Sword*, formed like that of St. *James* in *Galicia*, the Habit *White*: only the difference between them lies in a little Twist of Gold, which these of *Portugal* draw about their Sword.

[d, e, f] *Ibid.*

At the Town of [e] *Alcasar de Sul*, was the principal Convent of this Order first seated, afterward removed to *Palmela*, where it yet continues: and whiles *Portugal* remained under the Crown of *Spain*, and the Administration of this Order under that King, it was no less illustrious, than whilst their own Kings governed.

The *Statutes* [f] are much the same with those of St. *James* in *Galicia*, so also is the manner of giving the Habit, Benediction, and Profession.

The Order of our Lady, *and of St.* George *of* Montesa *in Valentia.*

(30.)

This Order did [g] succeed into the Lands and Possessions of the *Knights Templars* in *Valentia*, as the Knights *Hospitalars* did into those of the *Templars* in *France*, *Italy*, and other places. For [h] after the *Templars* were dissolved, *James* the Second, King of *Aragon* and *Valentia*, refused to grant their Revenues (lying in his Kingdom) to the Order of St. *John* of *Jerusalem*, as other Princes had done; nevertheless within few years sent an Embassy to Pope *John* the 22. to give him his reasons why he did not.

[g] *Menen. Delic. Equest. p. 112.*
[h] *Tes. milit. de Caval. f. 72. a.*

These the Pope considering of, as also that the *Moors* were very neer to *Aragon*, gave way that these Revenues of the exauterated *Templars* should be applied to the Convent of *Montesa*, where had been placed both *Knights* and *Friars* of the Order of *Calatrava*.

[k] *Jo. Mariana de reb. Hisp. l. 15. c. 16. vide Fr. de Rades y Andrada en Chron. de Calatrava f. 49. b.*
[l] *Idem de Rades.*

Hereupon this King, in the year of our Lord [k] 1317. Instituted this *Order*, in the City of *Valentia* ([l] nevertheless subject to that of *Calatrava*, as a member thereof) and made choice of the Town of *Montesa*, to give the Knights both name and habitation: whom he obliged to defend his Kingdoms, against the incursions of the *Moors*.

[m] *Ibidem.*
[n] *Menenn. p. 113.*

Their [m] Colledge (dedicated to the honor of St. *George*) was built in the following year by the Pope at *Montesa*, at the instance of King *James*, [n] *Gulielmus de Eril*, a valiant Soldier being constituted the first Master in the Convent of St. *Mary* and St. *George*.

[o] *Favin. en le Theat. d' Honneur. l. 6. c. 15.*
[p] *Sansov. Orig. de Cavalieri. f. 21. b.*
[q] *Sansovin ut supra; & Gothofrid. Archont. Cosm. l. 3. p. 7.*

The [o] Statutes of the Order (almost the same with those of *Calatrava*) were confirmed by the said Pope *John*, who gave to these Knights the [p] *Cistertian Rule*. They vowed conjugal Chastity, and the manner of their Investiture is as in the Order of *Calatrava*.

[r] Una Crux Llana Roxa, *Lancerote l. 1. c. 32.*
[s] *Favin. l. 6. c. 16.*

Their Habit is [q] *White*, and the Badge of the Order a [r] *plain Red Cross*, that is, the Cross of St. *George*, [s] Patron of the Kingdoms of *Navarr* and *Aragon*.

Aragon. This Crofs was worn upon the breaſt, by a priviledge granted to the *Knights* from Pope *Benedict* the Thirteenth.

To this Order of *Monteſa* was incorporated that of [t] St. *George d' Alfama, anno Dom.* 1399. which union received confirmation from the Council of *Conſtance.*

A Catalogue of the *Maſters* are recorded by [u] *Jo. Micheli*; which great Office continues to this time in the King of *Spain*; ſo doth the Revenue of thirteen Commanderies belonging thereunto, amounting to 23000 Duckets *per annum.*

t *Silv. Maurolico in Mare Oceano Relig. p.* 229.
u *En Teſoro milit. de Caval. loc. cit.*

The Order of Knights of Chriſt *in Portugal.*

(31.)

As the *Knights* of *Monteſa* ſprung from the ruine of the *Knights Templars* in *Valentia*, ſo did this Order of *Chriſt* (or of the [a] *Warfare* of *Chriſt*) ſucceed them in the Kingdom of *Portugal.* For the *Knights Templars* having been very ſerviceable to the Kings of *Portugal*, in their Wars againſt the *Moors*, the Kings gave unto them divers Lands and Revenues, which when their *Order* came to be diſſolved, and their Eſtates confiſcate, King [b] *Don Denys*, furnamed *Perioca*, ſent to Pope *John* the 22. (then at *Avignion*) to deſire that the *Knights Templars* Lands might not be diſpoſed of, out of his Kingdom; which though he did not readily grant, yet he gave way for the King, to render him the reaſons of his requeſt.

a *Alex. Roſs his continuation of Sir* W. Raw-leighs *Hiſt. ſub finem.*
b *Joſ. Micheli en Teſoro milit. de Cavalli. f.* 63. *b.* *Pantaleon de Ord. Joannit. reb. geſt. l.* 1. *p.* 95. *Mennen. p.* 114.

Hereupon King *Denys* ſent his Embaſſadors to the Pope, in the year 1316. not only to back his deſire, but withal to declare to his Holineſs the great vexations and evils, the neighbouring *Moors* in *Algarves* did to his Kingdom. And foraſmuch as the Town of *Caſtro Marin* was a Frontier of the Enemy, and the ſite thereof very commodious for the building of a Fort to reſiſt them, he farther moved the Pope for Licence, that an *Order* of *Knights* might be Inſtituted in that Town, and withal offered to him the Rents and Juriſdiction thereof, and all Dominion over it.

This requeſt being thought juſt, and the remedy ſo neceſſary, the Pope did afterwards (namely in the year of our Lord 1319.) give Foundation to this new *Order*, dedicating it to the honor of God, and the exaltation of the Catholick Faith, under the Title of the *Military Order of our Lord Jeſus Chriſt*, becauſe of the miraculous apparition, which this King had ſeen of Chriſt crucified, when he went out to fight againſt the *Moors.*

He further commanded, that the *Knights* of this *Order* ſhould obſerve the ſame Rule, with thoſe of the Order of *Calatrava*, which was *Ciſtertian*, and enjoy the ſame Priviledges and Indulgences, formerly granted to their Great Maſter and Knights. In which reſpect he nominated *Don Gil. Martinez*, for their firſt Maſter, becauſe he was a Knight profeſt, and Maſter of the Order of St. *Benedict d' Avis*; and appointed for their Viſitor, the Abbot of *Alcobaza*, of the *Ciſtertian* Order.

Ægidius Maſtinius.

This [c] Abbot or his Lieutenant in ſucceſſion was impowred to receive of the *Maſter* of this *Order*, in the name of the Pope and Church of *Rome*, the Oath of fidelity; it being directed to be taken in the preſence of the Kings of *Portugal*, before he ſhould enter upon the adminiſtration of his Maſterſhip, and the King was obliged to receive this Oath within ten days, after the Maſter ſhould tender it to him, and in caſe the King did not in that time receive it from the Maſter, then he might take on him the adminiſtration of his Office without it: and further that each *Knight* before his admittance ſhould take the ſame Oath of Fidelity, before the Maſter of this Order.

c *Ibid. f.* 64. *a.*

All the [d] Goods and Poſſeſſions formerly belonging to the *Knights Templars*, within the Kingdom of *Portugal*, were hereupon granted unto this *Order*, and the Knights thereof particularly obliged to make War againſt the [e] *Moors* in *Bætica*, next neighbour to *Portugal.* They had appointed to them for their chief Seat, [f] *Caſtro Marin*, where their firſt Convent was erected, but afterwards it was removed into the City of *Tomar.*

d *Platina in vita Joh.* 23. *p.* 220.
e *Gothfrid. Archont. Coſmica l.* 3. *p.* 7. *Heyl. Coſmogr. l.* 1. *p* 244.
f *Jo Mariana. l.* 15. *c.* 16. *Teſoro milit. de Cav. f.* 63. *b.* In Sylvenſi Diœceſi.

They

They went clothed in [g] *Black*, wearing upon their breasts a *Cross Patee* of *Red Silk*, and upon that another of *White*.

This Order (as that *d' Avis*) became at length annexed to the Crown of *Portugal*; whose Kings have ever since taken upon them the title of perpetual Administrators of both.

g *Favin. l. 6. c. 8. vide Jurisprud. Heroic. p. 563. & A. Mendo. Disq. 1. Quæst. 11. n. 196.*

The Order of Knights of the Passion of Jesus Christ.

(32.)

Some years after the Institution of the precedent *Order*, and towards the latter end of the thirteenth Century, there was erected a religious *Order* of *Knighthood*, by *Charles* King of *France*, and our King *Richard* the Second, which bore the Title of *the Order of the Passion of Jesus Christ*. And though we do not find any further progress thereof, after it had received its Foundation, yet considering the grounds whereon it was instituted, and the nobleness and largeness of the design (exceeding all other *Religious Orders* of *Knighthood*, except those of the *Knights* of St. *John* of *Jerusalem*, and *Knights Templars*) as also because one of our *English* Kings was a Co-founder thereof; we conceived it worthy our pains to make an extract, particularly relating to the causes why it was erected, the frame of its Constitution, its principal Structures, and the *Habit* and *Ensigns* thereof, out of an old *French Manuscript*, written by *Philip de Maisiere* Chancellor of *Cyprus*, wherein it is thus prefaced.

[a] Forasmuch as by reason of the three deadly sins, which began to reign among the *Christians*, namely, *Pride*, *Covetousness*, and *Luxury*, God permitted the *Saracens*, Enemies of the Faith, to overcome *Jerusalem* and the *Holy Land*, to the shame and disgrace of *Christendom*; therefore to renew the memory of the *Passion* of *Christ*, thereby to extirpate those deadly sins, and to make way for the re-conquest of *Jerusalem*, and the *Holy places*, the overthrow and confusion of the Enemies of the Faith, this *Order* was erected.

a *Ex vet. MS. in Bibliotheca Arundeliana, f. 1. 2. 3.*

There are [b] twenty causes reckoned up by this Author, for the necessity of Instituting this *Order* of the *Passion*.

b *Ibidem. fol. 3. a.*

1. To stir up the Soldiery to amendment of life, by the example of so new and solemn a devotion.

2. To renew the memory of the *Passion* of *Christ* among *Christians*, by the example of this holy Order.

3. For the speedy sending of relief and succour to the *Christians* of the *East*, that stood in great need of it.

4. For the regaining of the *Holy Land*, out of the hands of the Enemies of the Faith.

5. For the propagation of the holy Catholick Faith, among the people of the *East*.

6. For resisting of those that were disturbers of the Catholick Faith; as Heretieks, Tyrants, and Schismaticks.

7. That the rents and divisions of the Church through *Italy*, might by the passage of this holy Order be healed and reunited, under one universal Shepherd of Souls.

8. [c] That when the Kings of *France* and *England* should arrive in the Continent, this Order might go before them, as a valiant precursor, to make way for, and attend them in all things.

c *Fol. 4.*

9. To serve as a Life-Guard, for the defence of the two Kings persons, and a forlorn hope, to give example and encouragement to the whole Army.

10. That those Voluntiers that served in the Army, being without head, and not under Rule (if they should venture extravagantly and rashly into the Battel without Guide) might be regulated by the *Cavaliers* of this holy Order.

11. That if the Victory should at any time incline to the adverse party, these *Cavaliers*, by reason of their expertness in the feats of Arms, might serve for a reserve to recover the declining Fortune of the day, and to rescue the dead and wounded out of the hands of the Enemy.

12. That if at any time either of the two Kings ſhould be left deſtitute of a Guard to their perſons, they might be attended by ſome of the moſt valiant of this *Order*.

13. That if any Towns or Fortreſſes taken by either of the two Kings, ſhould be found dangerous and difficult to be kept; that ſuch ſhould be committed to the *Cavaliers* of this Order, who were to be ready to undergo all kind of dangers and difficulties.

14. That by the vigilance and induſtry of theſe *Cavaliers* (if they ſhould be ſet as Spies upon the Enemies actions) the two Kings might be informed of the ſecrets of the Enemies Camp.

d *Fol.* 5. 15. [d] That if a Treaty ſhould happen to be between the two Kings and the Enemy, the Prince of the *Chevalry* in perſon, or ſome of his choſen *Cavaliers* in his ſtead, ſhould labour indefatigably in this affair, eſpecially either of the Kings ſo commanding.

16. That if either of the Kings ſhould be at any Siege, within the Enemies Territories, certain of the *Chevalry* ought humbly to viſit the Hoſt, to be watchful over it, and to guard it by night from the attempts and Spies of the Enemy, or of falſe brethren.

17. That if any falſe rumors or tales ſhould be ſpred in the Army of the Catholick Kings, with deſign to raiſe diſſentions or debates; the *Prince* of the *Chevalry* in perſon, or any of his grand Officers for him (according to the dignity of the perſons at odds) ſhould labour to the utmoſt of their power to take up the Controverſie, and bring the perſons to a reconciliation.

18. That if any of the *Chriſtians* of the *Weſt*, ſhould have any obligation to take upon them a paſſage into the *Holy Land*, a certain number of the *Chevalry* might be ready to accompany them to the performance of their Vows or Obligations.

19. That if any of the younger Sons or Brothers of Noblemen, having little or no portions of their own, ſhould be willing to ſerve in the *Chevalry*; they might ſo long as they behaved themſelves well, be nobly and handſomely provided for.

20. That if either of the Kings ſhould be hindred from paſſing into the *Holy Land*, about the performance of any Vow or Obligation from their Forefathers, the *Chevalry* might be ready at a ſpeedy warning to perform whatſoever was committed to their charge, in behalf of the Kings.

e *Fol.* 16. *b.* [e] And although this Order was principally dedicated to the honor of our bleſſed *Saviour*, yet ſaith our *Author*, the bleſſed Virgin *Mary* was lookt upon as a principal Mediatreſs and Advocate of this holy *Chevalry*; repreſenting the paſſion of her Son, and alſo guarding and defending the *Cavaliers*, againſt the Enemies of the Faith, as a Mother doth a Child.

g *Fol.* 19. *b.* [g] As to the Government of this *Order*, it is to be noted, that in the principal Convent of the holy *Chevalry*, all things of publick concernment were to be debated by five authentick Councils in the preſence of the *Prince*.

The firſt was to be called the *Quotidian Council*, conſiſting of four and twenty Councellors. The ſecond was the *Particular*, or *Singular Council*, conſiſting of about forty perſons, to wit, four and twenty grand Councellors, eight Executors of Juſtice, four Commiſſaries of Treſpaſſes, and three or four Doctors of Divinity and Law. The third the *Grand Council*, conſiſting of fourſcore perſons, *viz.* forty ſuch as were mentioned in the ſecond Council, and other authentick Officers, and a certain number of *Brothers*, valiant and ſage perſons, amounting in all to the aboveſaid number. The fourth Council was to be called the *General Chapter*, and held every year; conſiſting of all the above-named Officers, with the Preſidents and Deputies of Provinces. The fifth Council was the *Univerſal Chapter*, to be held from four to ſix years; conſiſting of a thouſand *Knights* of the *Chevalry*, by which Univerſal Chapter, any of the Chevalry, or grand Officers were to be reformed, or, if occaſion required, puniſhed according to the Statutes of the Chevalry.

The principal Officer of the Chevalry, was the *Grand Juſticiary*, to whom belonged the Judgment of all the criminal Affairs, and the diſpoſal of all chief Offices and Places.

The

The next chief Officer was called the *Grand Bailiff*; that is to say, only in the principal Convent, to administer Justice both Civil and Criminal in that Convent to all sorts of persons.

[h] In the principal City, as also in every City and Castle belonging to the *Chevalry*, one of the Order was to be chosen to administer all sorts of Justice in that place; who was to go under the name of *Potestate*. h Fol. 20. a.

Also in the General Chapter, there was to be chosen every year one of the Order, who should be called the *Senator* of the *General Chapter*, and four and twenty discreet persons of the Chevalry with him, who should hold a general Chapter, or principal Convent, upon any Expedition of War.

In the Universal Chapter, there was to be chosen one of the Order, who should be called *Dictator* of the *Universal Chapter*; and with him twelve Fathers Conscript, with twelve Coadjutors, who should hold an universal Chapter, from four years to six.

Also in the principal Convent, there were to be chosen ten of the Chevalry, couragious and of holy life, who should be called the *Ten* [i] *Executors* of *Justice*, which should be decreed by the Grand Justiciary upon the persons of the chief Officers being delinquent; they were also to be called the Conservators of the holy Rule of the Chevalry, and also to be assistant to the grand Advocate, and the grand Protectors and Promoters of Divine Charity. i Fol. 20. b.

Also in the principal Convent there were to be chosen four of the Chevalry, devout and good men, who should be called the *Charitable Commissaries* of the ----------whose Office it was to provide for the Widows and Orphans, committed to their care.

And whereas this Order was made up of eight several Languages, there was to be always appointed in the principal Convent, eight Notaries using the Habit of the *Brothers*, and also for every language a several Notary, and so the like in the Convents of other Regions and Cities.

Also, to the end the *Knights* of this *Order* might live according to the Rules of the Order, in the perfection of their Estates and Degree, they were to bind themselves by Oath to three things, *viz.* Obedience to their Sovereigns, poverty of Spirit, and conjugal Chastity.

[k] Also the *Chevalry* were to have for their sustentation, the possession of Cities, Castles, Fortresses, Gold, Silver, and all kind of moveables, as God should bestow upon them; nevertheless all to be in common among them, that they might the better intend the exercise of their Arms and other Duties. k Fol. 21. b.

Also to the end that any of the *Chevalry*, having possessions in the *West*, might not return thither, to the personal enjoyment of them, thereby leaving the duties that belonged to their Order in the *East*; such possessions were appointed to be managed by certain Merchants and honest Citizens, deputed to that purpose.

Also the *holy Chevalry*, were to observe Justice, both Civil and Criminal, rendring to every one according to his deserts, whether reward or punishment.

[l] Also the *Prince* of the *Chevalry* was to summon the principal Convent, at the Castle of the principal City; where he should assemble the President of the City and of the Convent, and three or four other Presidents, each having under them four and twenty *Knights*, and four and twenty *Brothers* of the *Chevalry*, with fifty Serjeants, so as to make up in the whole, with Officers and others, to the number of about 500 or 600 *Combatants* to be ready upon all occasions. l Fol. 22. a.

Moreover there was to belong to the principal Convent, a *Church* of so marvelous a structure, that the like hath not been seen or known: it was designed to be 50 Cubits in breadth, without any Pillars, 100 Cubits long, and in height 25.

Also in the Castle and principal Convent, there was to be an *Hospital*, in which the Widows of the holy Chevalry, should attend upon the sick and infirm, [m] still imploying themselves in the holy work of Charity, which also was to be the business of the *Prince*, the *Grand Officers* and all the *Knights*. m Fol. 22. b.

Also there should belong to the Convent a *Baptistery* or *Font*, round, large, and curiously made for the baptizing of the Sons and Daughters of the *Knights*.

Also there was appointed to belong to the principal Convent, a large and stately

ſtately *Palace*, with a great Hall, and large Conſiſtories, to contain the Prince and Council with their Retinue, and for a habitation for the Prince, with his Princeſs and Family.

Alſo in the Convent there was to be a *Cloiſter*, for the Canons and Clerks, large and delightful, and a great Hall with Galleries; which habitation ſhould be neer the Church, and incloſed with high Walls.

Alſo there was to belong to the ſaid Caſtle a very fair *Palace*, to entertain the *Princes* of the *Weſt*, when at any time they came that way, either to War, or upon Pilgrimage.

Alſo in the ſaid Caſtle there were to be diſtinct lodgings and habitations for the grand Officers of the *Chevalry*, as well Natives as Foreigners, for the *Knights Companions*, and *Serjeants* of the *Chevalry*, and for their Wives.

Alſo there were to be in the ſaid Caſtle, Wine-Cellars, Granges, Granaries, Stables for Horſes and Cattel, Eaſements, Mills, Ciſterns, Baths, and all other neceſſaries for the *Chevalry*.

n *Fol.* 23. *a.* [n] Alſo in the principal Convent there were to be three chief Halls; firſt the great Hall of the *Prince*, where he and all the *Knights* and *Brothers* of the *Chevalry* were to dine on Feſtival days: The ſecond, where the *Canons* ſhould daily ſit at meat with the Foreign Prelates and Clerks, and alſo all the *Knights* and *Brothers* of the *Chevalry* that were unmarried: The third, for the grand Commandor of the Horſe to eat in, and with him all the leſſer Officers of the principal Convent, all the Valets of the Horſe, and the Servitors belonging to the ſaid Commandor.

The Habit of the *holy Chevalry* of the *Paſſion* of *Jeſus Chriſt*, was to be eſtabliſht according to the intention of the holy Rule; that is to ſay, repreſenting in its Veſtments the Paſſion of *Jeſus*.

The *Knights* were appointed to wear a handſom cloth Coat, of a civil colour, reaching down half way the leg, which ſhould be called the *principal Coat* of the *Chevalry*; this was to be girt with a large *Girdle* of Silk or Leather, two fingers broad, the Buckle round, of black Horn, as alſo the Tongue and the garniſhing of the holes were to be of Tin. They ſhould alſo wear *Red Chaperons* or *Caps*, repreſenting the blood of *Jeſus Chriſt*, and over the principal

o *Fol.* 23. *b.* Coat [o] a *Mantle* of *white Cloth* or *Serge*, which *Mantle* from the ſhoulders downward, was to be open on both ſides along the arms; and in that part between the two openings before the breaſt, there was to be a *Croſs* of Cloth or Serge, two fingers broad; this *Croſs* was to proceed in traverſe as far as the openings of the *Mantle*, only the *Croſs* upon the *Prince* his Mantle was to be edg'd round about with a *Gold Fringe*, half an Inch broad, or thereabout: Some ſmall difference alſo there was to be between the Habits of the *Knights*, the *Brothers* and the *Serjeants*; that of the *Knights* was to be a little more ſolemn, and more cleerly repreſenting the Paſſion of the holy Jeſus, than either that of the *Brothers* or *Serjeants*; but the Habit of them all was to be *White*, only in the Croſs, and in the ſhape there was to be ſome difference.

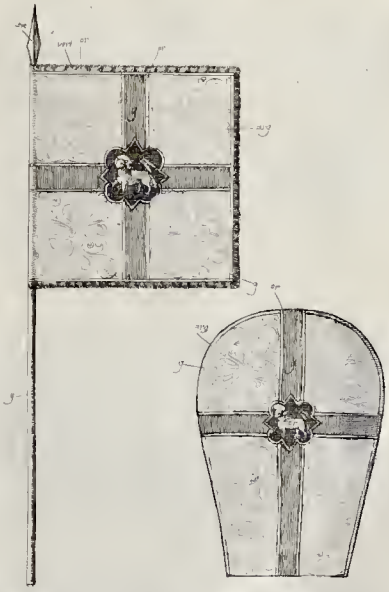
p *Ibid.* [p] The *Arms* of the *holy Chevalry* were theſe, the field of the Banner (following the deſcription in the Conſtitution) was to be *White*, in the midſt of it a *Red Croſs* four fingers broad, or thereabouts, extending along the field: in the middle of the *Croſs* there was to be a compaſs with four rounds and four little angles between the rounds, this compaſs was to be filled with a black colour, repreſenting the agony and paſſion of our Lord, which compaſs in the middle of the Croſs was to be four inches about, and within it an *Agnus Dei*, well ſhapt, and of a reſplendent golden colour, repreſenting the glory of *Jeſus* after his reſurrection: the Croſs and Compaſs was to be edged about with a bordure of Gold, one finger broad, or a little leſs, and about the ſides there was to be a little red bordure of the breadth of half a finger.

There was alſo to belong to this *holy Chevalry*, another ſingular and ſolemn *Banner*, yet not to be born, but at great Battels, and in times of extraordinary danger and difficulty. The *Croſs* and *Agnus Dei*, was to be born by the *Prince* armed, the armed *Chevaliers* and the *Brothers*, upon their great White Gippos or looſe Coats, both before and behind; excepting that in lieu of the Gold

Habits and Ensignes belonging to the Order of the Passion of Iesus Christ.

Squires of Honour. The Prince of the Knights. A Knight of the Order.

Woman of the Order. A Knight Compleately Armed



The Great Banner A Shield of the Armes.

Gold bordure about the Crofs, the *Brothers* were to have a bordure of black Silk.

[i] Every *Knight* was to have his *Efquire* armed at all points, and a little Valet to carry his Launce and Helmet, befide another bigger Valet habited in a loofe Coat, to carry his Mail, and a third on foot, to lead his Sumpter. For any warlike Expedition, he was to have his five Horfes and four Servants, and in all times of peace, two or three Horfes, according as the means of the Chevalry fhould be able to allow.

Alfo each *Brother* of the Chevalry was to have toward warlike Expeditions three Horfes or four, according as his merits and abilities were, and three Servants, whereof one or two were to be fighting men; and in times of peace, one or two according to the Chevalry's ability of allowance.

The number of *Knights* of the *Holy Chevalry*, was a thoufand; or a thoufand, one hundred, or thereabouts.

i *Fol.24.a.*

The Order of the * Brician Knights *in Sweden.*

(33.)

[a] *Jof. Micheli Marquez* from *Marcus Ant.Vianus*, in his Defcription of *Sweden*, informs us, that a holy and famous *Queen* of that Kingdom, (whom [b] *Andr. Mendo* faith, was St. || *Bridget*) being very zealous for the honor of our Saviour *Jefus Chrift*, Inftituted this *Order* in the year of our Lord 1396. which we rather think is miftaken for 1366. becaufe he faith it was approved by Pope *Urban* the Fifth, who then poffeft the Roman Chair, and gave to the *Knights* the Rule of St. *Auguftine*, befide St. *Bridget* dyed the * 23. of *July* 1373.

The fum of their Profeffion was to defend Chriftian Religion againft Hereticks, to fecure the Confines of that Kingdom, to bury the dead, to fuccour the Widows and Fatherlefs, and to keep up Hofpitality; to which end the Queen endowed this *Order* with large Poffeffions; fo that during her Reign, it exceedingly flourifhed.

The chief *Enfign* of this Order, was [c] a *Blue Octogonal Crofs*, and under it a Tongue of Fire, this being accounted the Symbol of Love and Charity; in regard they were to be zealous in defence of the holy Faith, and in maintaining the Statutes of the Order.

The manner obferved at the Inveftiture of the *Knights*, as alfo the Benedictions and Profeffions, were the fame with thofe of *Malta*.

But one thing is obfervable in this *Order* above others, that after admiffion thereinto all were advanced according to their feniority: fo that there was a poffibility for the *junior Knight* to arrive at the dignity of *Mafter* of the *Order*.

* Cavalleros Bricianos en Suecia. *Jo.Micheli Marquez en Teforo milit. de Cavall. p.57.b.*
a *Ibid.*
b *De Ord. Milit. Difq. 1. Quæft. 2. Sect. 20.*
|| Should not the *Knights* then be rather called of St. *Bridget.*
* *Jo.Bapt.Riccioli Chronolog. reformat. Tom.4. Index 2. p. 208.*
c Cruz Octogona, abaxo una lingua de fuego colorada. *Tef.milit. loco cit.* *Teffara Crux Cærulea ad instar Militentis, fub qua lingua ignea jacet.* Mend.loc.cit.

The Order of Knights of St. Maurice *in Savoy.*

(34.)

The [e] Order of *Knights Hermits* of St. *Maurice*, had their beginning upon the retreat of *Amadis* the Eighth, Duke of *Savoy*, into the defart of *Ripaille*, neer the Lake of *Geneva*, and was beftowed by him, in the year of our Lord [f] 1434. on thofe ten Knights of his Court, who had retired with him thither; as well to preferve the memory of St. *Maurice*, honored as titular Patron of *Savoy*, for many Ages paft, as of his *Launce* (fome fay [g] *Sword*) and *Ring*, the effential Symbols of *Knighthood*, paffing from hand to hand, from the Kings of *Burgoigne* to the Princes of *Savoy*; by whom they have been preferved, with great honor and veneration: and are as a pledge of Dominion, delivered to them with great folemnity, at their Inauguration.

Nine years after the Inftitution of this *Order*, the Founder was prevailed with, to accept of the Popedom, after the depofition of Pope *Eugenius* the Fourth: and the Council of *Bafil* fitting, he was elected Pope, the [h] 5. of *November*,

e *Sam. Guichenon in le Hiftor. Genealog. de la royal Mafon. de Savoy.l.1. p.113. Crefcenzi Prefid. Rom.par. 3.l. 1.*
g *Mennen. Delic.Equeft.p.54.*
h *Alfon. Ciacon.t.2 p.910.*

vember, anno 1439. by the name of *Felix* the Fifth: Nine years after he freely resigned the Chair, the Instrument of Renunciation, bearing date at *Lausanna*, the [i] sixth day of *April, anno* 1449. to whom succeeded *Nicholas* the Fourth, and immediately he [k] retired again to his solitude in *Ripaille*, where he dyed the [l] seventh of *January anno* 1451. and lies buried in the [m] Cathedral Church of *Lausanna*.

This Order of St. *Maurice* was made subject to the Rule of St. *Augustine*: and the *Knights* had assigned them for their Habit, a [n] *Grey* or *Ash-colour Gown* and *Chaperon*, a *Vest* of the same, girded with a golden Girdle, the *Chaperon* and *Sleeves* faced with Red Chamlet, and on the breast of the Mantle [o] a *White Cross Pommette* of Taffaty or Cloth; but the Cross which the Master or Chief of the Order wore, was made of Gold, or rich Embrodery.

This [p] *Order* continued not long after the death of the Founder. But Duke *Emanuel Philibert* to renew the devotion, which his Predecessors always bore to St. *Maurice*, restored the same, and obtained a Bull from Pope *Gregory* the Thirteenth, dated the 17. of *October* 1572. for erecting and instituting thereof, under the *Cistertian Rule*, and the perpetual protection of the Duke of *Savoy*, its *Grand Master*; which Bull is set forth by [q] *Albertus Miræus*, who thence collects that this *Order* was then first Instituted, and not by Count *Amadis* the Eighth, as is before noted.

i *Grichenon en mesme Hist. Genealog. de la Maison de Savoy. l.6. p.322.*
k { *Ibid. p.* l { 333.
m *Ciacon. l.2. p. 916.*
n { *Favin.* o { *Theat. d' Honneur. l.8. c. 6.*
p *Guichenon. Hist. Genealog. l.1. p. 114.*
q *In Origin Ordinum Equestrium p. 51. 52 53. vide porro Guichenon. l.6. p.524. & Cherub. in Compend. Bull. Tom. 2. p.80. Constitut. 6.*

Knights of the Holy Ghost *at Rome.*

(35.)

This *Order* was Instituted by Pope [r] *Paul* the Second, *anno Dom.* 1468. under the Title of *Brethren of the Hospital of the Holy Ghost*: The *Knights* wore upon their Habits a [s] *White Cross Forme.*

r { *Favin.* s { *Theat. d' Honneur. l.8. c. 1.*

The Order of Knights of St. George *in Austria and Carinthia.*

(36.)

[a] *Wolfangus Lazius* informs us, that *Frederick* the Third, Emperor of *Germany* ([b] others that *Rudolphus* of *Hapsburgh*, first raiser of the House of *Austria*) instituted this *Order* of *Knights* of St. *George*, in the year of our Lord 1470. chiefly to [c] guard the Frontiers of *Germany, Hungary, Austria, Stiria, Carinthia*, and to suppress the insolency of the *Turks*, by whose Incursions the Marches of these Countries were (about that time) miserably wasted: since which, these *Knights* have so gallantly behaved themselves, that they have often born away great Trophies and Ensigns of Victory from their Enemies.

The [d] *Great Master* of this *Order* was advanced to the Title and Honor of a *Prince*, and for a Seat and Residence to him and his Successors, the Castle of [e] *Mildstad* in the Dukedom of *Carinthia* was appointed, where also was founded a Cathedral Church of Canons, under the Rule of St. *Augustine*.

The *Knights* bear for the *Ensign* of their Order the Arms of St. *George, viz.* [f] a *plain Red Cross*. Their [g] *Habit* is *White*, they profess [h] conjugal Chastity, and Obedience to their Master, and have the [i] Emperors for their Protectors.

But there is mention made by [k] *Fr. Mennenius* (from *Bernardus Luceburgius*, in his Book *De Ordinibus Militaribus*) as also by [l] *Alb. Miræus*, of an *Order* of *Knights* of St. *George* (which [m] *Jos. Micheli* calls *Cavalleros de San Jorge en Alemania*) erected by *Maximilian* the Emperor, upon the like design with the former, he being greatly devoted to that Patron of all military Professors.

This Order was confirmed by [n] Pope *Alexander* the Sixth, under the same Rule and Profession as the other, having the Emperors also their Protectors, though it be not much extended. The *Knights* elect their Master from among themselves, and the Ensigns of the Order is a [o] *Red Cross*, with a Crown of Gold on the top of it.

a *Lib. 3. de rebus Viennens.*
b *Gotofrid. Archont. Cosmica. l. 3. p. 13*
c { *Favin.* d { *Theat. d'* e { *Honneur.* f { *l. 7. c. 3.*
g { *A. Mendo* h { *de Ord. Mi-* i { *lit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 2. Sect. 27.*
k *In Delic. Equest. p. 173.*
l *Origin. Ord. Equest. p 47.*
m *Toforo Milit. de Cavall. f. 59. b.*
n *Ibid. f. 60. a.*
o *Mern. Delic. Equest. p. 173. A. Miræus, loco cit.*

We

We obſerve elſewhere, that this Order runs under the Title of [p] *Crowned Knights*, and is ſaid to have been inſtituted among the [q] *Auſtrians*, by the ſaid Emperor *Maximilian*, *anno* 1494. in which reſpect the [r] *Knights*, after they have ſerved their Prince for a year, do enjoy a peculiar right (which is tranſmitted to their Heirs) of adorning their Shields and Helms with a Crown.

p { *Juriſprudent. Heroica.p.*373
r

Joſ. Micheli writeth, that this Emperor *Maximilian* joining in Battel with theſe *Knights* againſt the *Turks*, obtained a notable Victory; and that the [f] *Turks* confeſt, that a man on Horſeback (ſuppoſed to be St. *George*, Patron of this *Order*) put them into ſo great fear, that they longed for the hour to flye and leave the Field.

f Y confeſſauan los Turcos, que un Cavallero ſolo a Cavallo, *Idem Micheli p.* 60.

The Order of Knights of St. George *at Rome.*

(37.)

[a] *Alexander* the Sixth, *anno Dom.* 1498. Inſtituted the *Knights* of St. *George*, who wore a [b] *Croſs of Gold*, entowred with a circle of the ſame made in the form of a Crown.

a { *Mennen.*
b { *apud Luceburgium, in lib. de Armorum militar. Myſteriis. Vide Favin. in lit.* [illegible]

But * *Micheli* ſaith, that the *Order* of St. *George*, which had the foreſaid *Croſs* for Enſign aſſigned to it, was inſtituted by Pope *Paul* the Third, at whoſe death it became extinct, and that the *Knights* of this *Order* dwelt at *Ravenna*, and were obliged to ſecure the Confines of the *Adriatic* Sea from *Pyrats*. But that the *Order*, which Pope *Alexander* the Sixth erected, had for Enſign the Figure of St. *George* hanging at a Collar.

* *En Teſoro militar. de Caval. f.* 62.

Knights of St. Peter *at Rome.*

(38.)

[c] Pope *Leo* the Tenth, *anno* 1520. Inſtituted this *Order* to fight againſt the *Turks*, and to guard and defend the Sea-Coaſts. The number of theſe *Knights* at firſt was [d] 400.

They wore the Image of St. *Peter* within an Oval of Gold, hanging at a Gold Chain: This *Order* was [e] confirmed by *Paul* the Third.

c *Favin, loco naper cit.*
d *Alph. Ciacon. in vit. Pont. l.* 2.*p.*1070.
e *A. Mendo de Ord. Mil. Diſq.* 1. *Queſt.* 2. *Sect.*26.*n.*53.

Knights of St. Paul *at Rome.*

(39.)

They were Inſtituted by Pope [f] *Paul* the Third, *anno* 1540. and while he ſat in the Papal Chair (which was about ten years after) he made [g] 200 of theſe *Knights*.

The *Enſign* of this *Order* is the Image of St. *Paul*, hanging at a Chain of Gold.

f *A. Mirsus Orig. Ord. Equeſt. p.* 84.
g *Palliot en la ſcience des Armoiries. p.*504.

The Order of Knights called Pios *at Rome.*

(40.)

In the year of our Lord [h] 1560. Pope *Pius* the Fourth, erected this Order, and gave to the *Knights* thereof the Title of *Pios*. He created of them at firſt 375. but they encreaſed to the number of 535. [i] *Ciaconius* ſtiles them *Imperiales*, but they were more uſually called *Commenſales*.

h *Menn. de Delic. Equeſt. p.* 775.
i *Ciacon. de vit. Pontif. l.*2. *p.*1179.

[k] *Joſ. Micheli Marquez* calls them *Knights* of the *Golden Spur* in *Italy*, and not getting any certain knowledge of the original of this *Order*, under that Title, he is content to believe a Relation of ſome of the *Roman* Courtiers, who told him that it took beginning in the time of *Conſtantine* the Great, and that the *Knights* had their Title from the nature of their Office, which was to take off the Emperors Spurs; they were alſo employed neer his Perſon, in the quality of a Life-Guard.

k *Teſoro mil. de Caval. p.* 74. *b.*

This Pope endowed them very considerably, and gave them [l] precedence before the *Knights* of the *Empire*, and of *Malta*, because they were his Courtiers, and had the care and charge of carrying the Popes Chair on their shoulders, at such times as he went abroad in publick.

[m] *Miræus* saith, the *Ensign* of this *Order* is the Figure of St. *Ambrose*, hanging at a Chain of Gold about their necks; but [n] *Marquez* will have it a *Cross* of Cloth of Gold, of eight points, like that of *Malta*, and a little Spur linkt to the foot of it.

l *Favin, libr* 3 c. 1.

m *De Orig. Equest. p.* 84.

n *Tesoro mil. de Caval. loco cit.*

The Order of Knights of St. Stephen *at Florence.*

(41.)

This Order was founded in the year of our Lord 1561. by [a] *Cosmo de Medicis*, second Duke of *Florence* (created afterwards first Great Duke of *Tuscany*) in [b] honor of St. *Stephen*, Pope and Martyr (of that name the Ninth) Patron and Protector of the City of *Florence*, to [c] revive and continue the memory of that fortunate Battel at *Marciano*, at which, overthrowing the assertors of Liberty, he laid the foundation of his grandeur. This Battel was fought on the sixth of *August*, being the Feast-day of the said St. *Stephen*.

Pope *Pius* the Fourth [d] approved and confirmed this *Order*, under the Rule of [e] St. *Benedict* (his Bull to that effect, being dated at *Rome* the first of *February* next following the Institution) which was afterwards ensarged with many Priviledges, by another Bull of the said [f] Pope *Pius*, as also by the Bulls of [g] *Sixtus* the Fifth, and [h] *Paul* the Fifth.

The Institution of these *Knights* much resembles those of the Knights of *Malta*, and was erected in * imitation of that Order; they having the same Priviledges granted unto them. They vow [i] Chastity, but conjugal (for they have liberty to marry) Charity in relieving their neighbour and afflicted, and Obedience to the Commands of their Grand Master: which Dignity was vested in the Founder, and descends to his Successors, Great Dukes of *Tuscany*.

a *Scipio Ammirato in Istorie Florent. pars* 2. *p.* 531. *Sansovin Orig. de Cavalier. f.* 92. *b. Favin. Theat. d' Honn. l.* 8. *c.* 7.

b *Mennen. Delic. Equest. p.* 184. *Histoire de Monf. de Thou. Tom.* 2. *l.* 26. *p.* 203.

c *Mennen. Delic. Equest. p.* 184. *Histoire de Monf. de Thou. Tom.* 2. *l.* 26. *p.* 203.

d *Statut dell' Ord. de Cavalier. S. Steffan p.* 6. *edit. in Firenza* 1620.

e *Ibid. p.* 8.

f *Pag.* 14.

g *Pag.* 29. 44. & 52.

h *Pag.* 62.

* *Histoire de Monsieur de Thou. loco cit.*

i *Scip. Ammirato, loco nuper relato.*

The principal Seat of this *Order* was setled at *Pisa*, where the Founder [k] built a Church and a Convent, designing it for a Nursery, to breed up persons skilful in Maritime Affairs; that City having a commodious Haven for the Gallies, wherein the *Knights* of this *Order* are to serve, either in cheeking the Inrodes of the Turkish Pirats, or seting forth a Navy on any other Expedition, if occasion require it. But since, it hath been transferr'd to [l] *Cosmopoli*, in the Isle of *Ilva*; a place where the Founder, it seems, designed and intended it to have been first setled; for which *A. Miræus* cites *Onuphrius Panvinius*.

k *Mennen. Delic. Equest. p.* 185.

l *Heylins Cosmogr. l.* 1. *p.* 113

m *In Orig. Equest. p.* 43.

The *Habit* of this Order, is a long *Mantle* of *White Chamlet*, beautified with Red Trimming, and on the left part of the breast a [n] *Cross* (like that of *Malta*) of *Red* or *Crimson Satin*, bordered with Gold. This [o] Cross is daily worn by the *Knights* on their Cloaks, as also on their military Garments, and about their necks in a Ribbon on Festival days.

Moreover this *Order* (like that of *Malta*) consists of *Knights*, *Priests*, and *Servants*; the [p] *Priests* wear the *Cross* of *Red Taffaty* without a border; and the *Servants* the *Cross* of St. *Anthony* only.

The *Statutes* and *Constitutions* were reformed by *Ferdinand* Great Duke of *Tuscany*, Son to the *Founder*, and approved in a Chapter of the Order, *anno* 1590. and since printed at *Florence*, *anno* 1628.

n Crux rubra cum Limbo aureo. *And. Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq.* 1. *Quest.* 2. *Sect.* 19 *n.* 44.

o *Favin. in* p *le Theat. d' Honneur. l.* 8. *c.* 7.

The Order of Knights of St. Maurice, *and* St. Lazarus *in Savoy.*

(42.)

Pope *Gregory* the Thirteenth, having at the sollicitation of *Emanuel Philibert* Duke of *Savoy*, restored and instituted anew the *Order* of St. *Lazarus*, as also the

the Order of St. *Maurice*, *anno* 1572. and constituted this Duke *Grand Master* of both; shortly after, by his Bull dated the [r] 13. of *November* in the same year, he united the Order of St. *Lazarus* to that of St. *Maurice*, for their greater honor: and thereby ordained, that this new Institution should be thenceforth called the *Order* of St. *Maurice* and St. *Lazarus*. He also constituted the said Duke and his Successors Dukes of *Savoy*, *Grand Masters* thereof; and obliged them to furnish out two Gallies, for the service of the Papal See, to be imployed against Pyrats.

[r] *Guichenon in Hist. Geneal. de la Maison de Savoy, l.6. p. 526. & Compend. Bull. Tom. 2. p. 81. Const. 7.*

Upon this Union (permission being given by the last mentioned Bull, to assume a new *Habit*) the *Knights* of this *Order* had assigned them a [t] *Gown* of *Crimson Tabby*, with wide sleeves, a long train, and edg'd about with *White Taffaty*, as also a Cordon, having a Tassel of *White* and *Green*, fixed to the Collar thereof.

[t] [u] *Ex relatione Com. de Monroux hujus Ordinis Cancellar.*

The *Badge* of this *Order* is agreeable to the form engraved in the Plate set before this Chapter, to wit, the [u] *Green Cross* of St. *Lazarus*, charged in the heart with the *White Cross* of St. *Maurice*, which the *Knights* wear either in a Gold Chain or Silk Ribbon, the Colour being at their own choice. This *double Cross* was granted to be the *Ensign* of this new *Order*, by another [w] Bull of the said Pope *Gregory*, given at *Rome* the 15. of *January* 1573.

[w] *Idem Guichenon. l. 6. p. 529.*

In which year, to wit, in the Month of [x] *April*, Duke *Emanuel*, in pursuance of this Union and new Foundation, assembled all the *Knights*, in the City of *Nice*; where meeting, he was by them received and acknowledged for their *Grand Master*, and took the Oath, recorded by [y] *Sam. Guichenon.*

[x] *Favin. l. 8. c. 6*

[y] *Lib. 6. p. 529.*

Afterwards this Duke did erect [z] two fair Houses or Convents, for the *Knights* of this new *Order* to inhabit in, the one at *Nice*, and the other at *Turin*; and with the Popes approbation, bestowed all the Lands and Revenues formerly belonging to the Order of St. *Lazarus* (lying within his Territories) upon them.

[z] *Guichenon. l. 1. p. 114.*

So that at this day, both the *Orders* of St. *Lazarus* and St. *Maurice*, being united, rest under the Patronage of one *Grand Master*, and chief of the *Order*, namely the Duke of *Savoy*; whose title used in all Affairs, relating to this new instituted *Order*, is as followeth.

* *Totius Religionis & Militiæ Sanctorum* Mauritii & Lazari, *Betleem*, *Nazareth*, *Hierosolymitan. Ordinis Sancti Augustini*, *Conventuum*, *Hospitalium*, *Domorum*, *Præceptoriarum atq; piorum locorum omnium*, *citra & ultra Mare*, *cis & trans Alpes*, *per universum Orbem*, *Humilis & Generalis Magnus Magister.*

* *Ibid.*

Knights of Loretto.

(43.)

[t] *Sixtus Quintus* instituted this *Order*, *anno Dom.* [u] 1587. but [w] *Jos. Micheli* placeth it in the year before; for which he erected the Church of our Lady at *Loretto* into a Cathedral and a Bishops See: and gave the *Knights* for Ensign the *Image* of our *Lady* of *Loretto*, hung in a golden Chain.

[t] *Ciacon. de vit. Pontif. l. 2. p. 1243.*
[u] *Theat. de Hon. l. 8. c. 1.*
[w] *Tes. milit. de Caval. f. 62. a.*

The [x] splendor of this *Order* continued but a while, yet is it not quite extinguished.

[x] *Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 2. sect. 26. n. 56.*

The Order of Knights of the blessed Virgin Mary *of Mount Carmel.*

(44.)

Though the Grand Mastership of St. *Lazarus*, and the Commanderies thereunto belonging, lying within the Dominions of all Christian Princes, were conferr'd upon *Emanuel Philebert* Duke of *Savoy*, by Pope *Gregory* the Thirteenth (as hath been * before remembred) yet the Duke did not gain the investiture of the Commanderies lying in *France*, being opposed by King *Henry* the Third; whereupon [a] some *Knights* of that *Order*, refusing to join with their Fellows, under the obedience of the Duke, maintained themselves in that Kingdom, until the Reign of King *Henry* the Fourth; who being desirous to have a [b] new *Order* of

* *Pag. 58.*
[a] *Favin Theat. d'Honn. l. 9. c. 9. Mennen. Delic. Equest. p. 55.*
[b] *Fl. Cherub. in Compend. Bull. Tom. 3. p. 50. Const. 41.*

of *Knighthood* instituted, under the Rule and denomination of the *blessed Virgin Mary of Mount Carmel*, applied himself to Pope *Paul* the Fifth for that purpose.

c *Ibid.* Hereupon the Pope (the [c] 7. of *February* 1608.) confirmed the same, and prescribed several things necessary to the Institution, according to the mind of the King, ordaining also Pensions to the *Great Master* and *Knights* of this *Order*, out of certain Ecclesiastical Benefices, in several places, within the Kingdom of *France*.

d *Favin. l.3. c.10. vide item Briet. Anral mundi, pars 4. Tom.2. p.263 & p. 403.* After this the [d] Commanderies and Hospitals of St. *Lazarus*, lying in *France*, were disposed of likewise for the support of the *Knights* of this new *Order*; and the *Knights* of St. *Lazarus* that remained in that Kingdom, were joined to these of the new Institution; thus they became acknowledged to be one Body, under two Titles, which we find inscribed round the Seal of their Order, *viz. Sigillum Ordinis & Militiæ beatæ Mariæ Virginis de Monte Carmeli, & Sancti Lazari in Hierusalem.*

e, f *Idem Favin. Ibid.*

So that at this time, we find the Order of St. *Lazarus* to be divided between two other Societies; namely the *Order* of St. *Maurice* in *Savoy*, and of St. *Mary* of *Mount Carmel* in *France*.

This *Order* consists of [f] one hundred choice Gentlemen of *France*, and all appointed to attend on the Kings person, upon every warlike Expedition. They vow [g] Obedience and Chastity, and profess to fight against the Enemies of the *Roman* Church. The Feast of their *Patroness* is annually celebrated on the [h] 16. of *July*. Their first Master was *Philibert Nerestang*, sometimes one of the [i] *Knights* of St. *Lazarus*, a valiant Gentleman, and famous in all military Discipline; for which cause he was thought worthy to be prefer'd to this Dignity, and accordingly nominated by *Henry* the Fourth, in *April* 1608. The 30. of *October* following he took the Oath as *Great Master*, and of Fidelity to the *French* King.

g *Compend. Bull loc. prad.* h *Idem Favin.* i *Mendo. Disp. 1 Quæst. 2. Sect. 21. n. 46.*

The Badge of this Order is a *Cross* of eight points, of [k] *Tawney Velvet* or *Satin* (but some say of a [l] *Violet colour*) with a white Bordure, sewed on the left side of their Cloaks, and the Image of the *Virgin Mary* of *Mount Carmel*, placed in the middle within a Rundle encompassed with beams or rays of Gold, all wrought in curious Imbrodery: besides this, the *Knights* wear about their necks, in a Tawny Silk Ribbon, the like [m] *Cross* of Gold, but the Image of the said *Virgin* is enameled on both sides.

k *Favin. ut supra.* l *Menen p.56. Miræus p.34.* Insigne est Crux violacea simul cum effigie Virginis Mariæ de Monte Carmelo intra illam inclusa. *Mendo loco prad.* m *Favin. loco cit.*

The *Statutes* of this Order are exhibited by [n] *A. Favin*, and the [o] solemn Rites used at the investiture of these *Knights*, are much after the manner of those of *Malta*.

n *Favin. loco cit.* o *Miræus, p.55.*

Knights of the Order of the most glorious Virgin Mary *of Rome.*

(45.)

a, b *Andr. Favin. ente Theat. d' Honn. l.8. c.2.* It was but of late years, *viz.* [a] 1618. that three Brethren of *Spella* in *Italy*, namely *Pedro*, *John Baptista*, and *Bernardo*, surnamed *Petrignanoes*, invented this *Order* of *Knighthood*, to which was given the Rule of St. *Francis d' Assise*, and whereof the *Pope* and his Successors are *Great Masters*.

[b] *Paul* the Fifth approved this *Order*, and gave these *Knights* the Palace of St. *John de Laterane*, for their Convent, the City and Port of *Civita Vechia*, to make their Arsenal of Gallies; as also an *Island* adjacent to that Port, together with the Government of his Gallies.

c, d *Ibid.* The cause of its Institution, was for the [c] exaltation of the *Roman* Church, and to repress the insolence of the *Turks*, roving on the *Mediterranean Sea*.

In this Institution there are [d] three kinds of *Knights*, who are differenced by their Habits: The first are *Knights Gentlemen Laicks*, who wear a *Mantle* of *White double Taffaty*, having great sleeves and a long train, the Cordons of *White Silk*, with Knots and Tassels of *White* and *Blue Silk*; the second are *Knights Gentlemen Priests*, and beneficed, who wear the like Mantle, but something shorter; and both these wear about their necks in a *Blue Ribbon*, a *Cross* of Gold, enameled *Blue*: The third are *Knights Chaplains*, or Servants of Arms, and their Mantle is of *White Serge*,

serge, with strait long sleeves, reaching down to the ground, and Cordons of *Blue Silk*.

All these Degrees wear on the [e] left side of their Mantles, the *Cross* of the *Order*, as is here described; to wit, of *Blue Satin* embrodered with Silver, and bordered with Gold; in the middle is a round Circle, wherein is this Motto, *In hoc Signo vincam*, and within that is composed a Cipher of the Letters *M* and *S*, (the initial Letters of *Sancta Maria*) crowned with a Chaplet of Flowers, and Stars of Gold set over the Chaplet; from the round Circle issue twelve rays, or beams of Silver, representing the twelve Apostles: the finishings of the Cross are fashioned like Flowers de Lis, and at the end of each Flower is a Star, set to signifie the four Evangelists. [e] [f] *Ibid.*

The *Statutes* and *Rules* of this *Order* are recorded by *Andrew Favin* in his [f] *Theater of Honor*.

The Order of the Annunciade *and* St. Michael the Arch-Angel, *or of the* Christian Militia *in Moravia.*

(46.)

In the year of our Lord [h] 1618. *Charles Gonzaga* Duke of *Mantua* and *Nevers*, together with *Adolph* Count of *Altham*, his Brother, and *John Baptist Petrignan Sforzia*, did contrive the Institution of this *Order*; and to extend and amplifie the same, divided the World amongst them. For Duke *Charles* took the North and West parts, his Brother the Eastern part, and to the other was given the South; where, in their own persons they were bound to found Convents, and invest Knights: And in prosecution of this design, we find, that Duke *Charles* began his Institution of this Order under the [i] Rule of St. *Francis*, in the Monastery of the *Capuchins* in *Olmuntz*, the Metropolis of *Moravia*, on [k] Saturday the 17. of *November*, in the foresaid year; and dedicated the same to the honor of the *blessed Virgin*, and St. *Michael*: But what the other two did in the Eastern or Southern parts of the world, we have not heard.

Joh. Ludov. Gothofridus gives this Title to the *Order*, to wit, [l] *Ordo Equitum Militiæ Christianæ*. *Philip Brietius* calls it [m] *Conceptionis Ordo*. *Andr. Mendo*, [n] *Militia Virginis Annuntiatæ*, and the *Knights* thereof are called by *Jos. Micheli Marquez*, [o] *Cavalleros de la Annunciada, y san Miguel Archangel en Mantua*.

This *Order* was afterwards (*viz.* the * 8. of *March* 1619.) received at *Vienna*, by many Princes of divers Countries, whose names, together with the Statutes of the Order, are set down by the said *Gothofridus*, in the [p] work above cited. It was approved by Pope [q] *Paul* the Fifth, and the [r] 6. of *February* 1624. it received confirmation from Pope *Urban* the Eighth.

From the preamble of the *Statutes* of this *Order*, it appears, that it had for its Basis, the [s] two chief Precepts of the Divine Law, to wit, to love God with our whole hearts, and with all our souls, and our Neighbour as our selves; and the end of its Institution, was to establish Peace and Concord between Christian Princes and their Subjects, to release Captives, and to deliver the oppressed out of the hands of the Infidels.

The [t] *Habit* assigned to the *Knights* was *White*; upon which they wore a long White Mantle, and over that a shorter of Blue Silk, their Buskins were of Blue, and their Caps of Black Silk.

They bore [u] two *Crosses* for the *Ensign* of this *Order*, the one of Gold of eight points enamel'd Blue, on the one side thereof was the Figure of the *blessed Virgin*, bearing our *Saviour* in her arms, and on the other the Portraicture of St. *Michael*, treading the Dragon under his Feet: This they wore about their necks in a Blue Ribbon.

The other [w] *Cross* was made of Blue Silk and Gold, in the middle whereof was the Image of the *blessed Virgin*, surrounded with rays of the Sun, holding *Christ* in her left arm, and a Scepter in her right hand, crowned with 12 Stars, a Crescent placed

h *Jos. Micheli Marquez en la Tesoro milit de Cavallieria. f. 71. a. Miræus Orig. Ord. Equest. p. 85.*

i *Miræus. loco cit.*

k *A. Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq. 1. 2. Sect. 30. n. 63.*

l *Archon. Cosm. l. 3. p. 16.*

m *Annal. mundi pars 4. Tom. 2. p. 440.*

n *Loco nuper cit.*

o *Tesoro mil. de Cavall. f. 71. a.*

* *Mellif. Hist. par. 4. p. 1189.*

p *Lib. 3. p. 15. 16. 17.*

q *Tes. mil. loc. cit.*

r *Briet. Annal. mundi loc. cit.*

s *Art. 1.*

t *Art. 15.*

u *Art. 12.*

w *Ibid.*

placed under her feet; all which were encompassed with the Cord of St. *Francis*, and the four angles of the *Cross*, cast forth four golden flames. This Cross was embrodered on the left side of their white Mantles.

x *Art.* 13. Touching the [x] great *Collar* of this Order, it was composed of fifteen Cords of St. *Francis*, joined together with as many Stars; at the lower part whereof hung, at three Chainets, the golden Cross above described.

y *Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f.* 71. *b.* But it seems, that in the height and glory of this *Order*, there grew some [y] difference between the *Founders*, insomuch that in a short time it became ruined thereby; as if that notable *Comet*, which appeared within four days after it was instituted, shewed its sudden splendor and decay: which occasioned *Brietius* to say of it, [z] *That the* Mahumetans, *for whose destruction it was instituted, heard only the name and report of it.*

z *Loco supradicto.*

CHAP. III.

A BRIEF ACCOUNT OF THE Orders absolutely Military.

SECT. I.

The Order of Knights of the Round Table.

(1.)

HAving thus given some account of the *Religious Orders* of *Knighthood*, that is, of such whose *Knights* live under an Ecclesiastick Rule, and according to some Religious Profession or solemn Vows; we shall next proceed to those that are accounted *purely* and *completely Military*, among which that of the *Knights* of the *Round Table* may (for its Antiquity) challenge the first place.

And though we are not ignorant that the story of this *Orders* Institution (as also its *Founders* famous Exploits beyond Sea) is lookt upon as the issue of uncertain Tradition;

The
Severall ENSIGNES of the
ORDERS absolutely
MILITARY,
mentioned in the third
Chapter;

Knights of the Round Table
1 pag. 94

Oake of Navarr
2 p. 9

Our Lady of the Star.
7 p 100

The Lilly of Navar.
8 p 101

The Sword in Cyprus.
9 p 102

The Beare in Switzerlan
10 p. 1

Iesus at Rome,
15 p 104

The White Eagle in Poland
16 p 104

De la Banda in Castile.
17 p 104

De la Calza in Venice,
18 p 1

Annunciade in Savoy.
23 p 108

Thistle of Burbon.
24 p. 110.

Dove in Castile
25 p 111.

Argonautes of S' Nichola
26 p 112

Equites Tusini
31 p 114

Ordo disciplinarum
32 p 114.

Ordo de la Scaria,
33 p 114

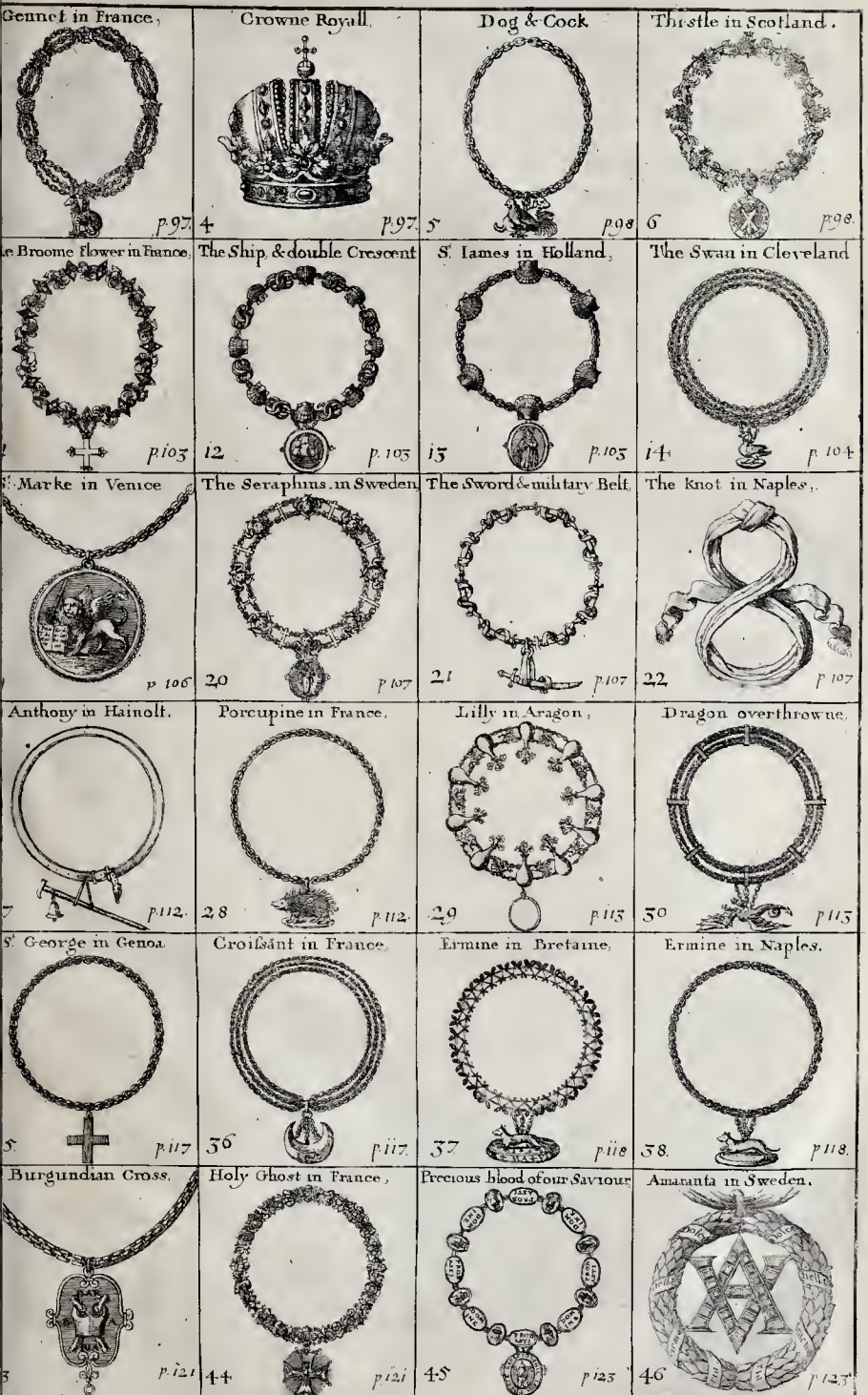
Golden Fleece
34. p 115

S' Michaell in Naples.
39 p 118

S' Michaell in France.
40 p 119

S' Hubert in Gulick.
41 p 120

Elephant in Denmarke,
42. p 12


Gennet in France,
p.97.
Crowne Royall.
4
p.97.
Dog & Cock.
5
p.98
Thistle in Scotland.
6
p.98.
Broome flower in France,
p.103
The Ship & double Crescent
12
p.103
S. Iames in Holland,
13
p.103
The Swan in Cleveland
14
p.104
S. Marke in Venice
p.106
The Seraphins in Sweden.
20
p.107
The Sword & military Belt.
21
p.107
The Knot in Naples,
22
p.107
Anthony in Hainolt.
p.112.
Porcupine in France,
28
p.112.
Lilly in Aragon,
29
p.113
Dragon overthrowne,
30
p.113
S. George in Genoa.
p.117
Croissant in France,
36
p.117.
Ermine in Bretaine,
37
p.118
Ermine in Naples.
38.
p.118.
Burgundian Cross.
p.121
Holy Ghost in France,
44
p.121
Precious blood of our Saviour
45
p.123
Amaranta in Sweden.
46
p.123

Tradition; yet considering, that not only the[a] *British Histories*, but some of our [b] *English* defend it, and many as well [c] *Poets*, as [d] *Historians* make mention thereof, we judge it may deserve room among the *Military Orders*.

The *Founder* of this most ancient Order, was [e] *Arthur* King of *Britain*, Crowned in the year of our Lord 516. at the age of [f] 15 years, concerning whom, though some with unbounded fancies have strained too far, in setting down his famous actions, insomuch, as that what really is true of him can hardly be known; yet all allow him to have been a stout and successful Martialist, of incredible courage and gallantry, the most famous and renowned of all the *British* Kings, and as [g] *William* of *Malmsbury* judges, *right worthy to have been celebrated by true Story, not false Tales; seeing it was he that long upheld his declining Country, and even inspired martial courage into his Country-men*, having overcome the *Saxons* in [h] twelve several pitch'd Battels.

a *Geof. Monmouth.*
b *Leland. Assertio Arturi, and White of Basingstoke.*
c *Harding. Robert of Glouc. John Lidgate.*
d *Lilly. Cambden. Heylin.*
e Arthurus, militaris disciplinæ & Orbicularis Mensæ fundator. *Geo. Lilius in Chron. Angl. Regum. p.44. vide Prisum Histor. Brit. Defensio, edit. Lond. 1573. p. 139. Segar, Honor Milit. & Civil. l. 2. c.5.*
f *Math. Westminst. p.185. Edit. Lond. 1570.*
g *De gestis reg. Anglor. l.1. p.4.*
h *Hen. Huntingd. l.2. f. 180. Edit. Lond. 1596. J. Anglicus, pars 2. l.17. f.89. MS. Polycronicon. l. 5. c. 6.*
i *Cap. 76.*

I have by me an old Chronicle in *Manuscript*, Entituled *Brute*, or *the Chronicles of England*, beginning at *Brute*, and ending the sixth year of King *Henry* the Fifth, wherein it is noted, That after King [i] *Arthur* had conquered divers Countries, he lived in so great renown, that many worthy *Knights* came from all parts to his Court, as to a Seminary of military Discipline, to give evidence of their valour, in the exercise of Arms.

This gave him occasion to select out of these, and his own Subjects, a certain number (some say [k] 24.) of the most valiant *Knights*, whom (himself being chief) he united into a Fellowship or Order; and to avoid controversie about priority of place, when they met together at meat, he caused a Round Table to be made, whereat none could be thought to sit higher or lower than another; and thence they were called, *Knights of the Round Table*.

k *Jos. Micheli Marquez en Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f.52. b. Jean Boisseau in le Promptuaire Armorial.*

At the upper end of the great Hall in *Winchester Castle*, I remember to have seen a large Round Table hang against the wall, called King *Arthurs Round Table*, and affirmed by the Inhabitants (who had taken up the report upon vulgar Tradition) to have been as ancient as that Kings time; but it carried no very great show of antiquity to a judicious eye; however it seemed to have been set up, either in the room of one more ancient, or else by some who were perswaded, there was once such an *Order* of *Knights*, which had been denominated thence. This old Monument was broken to pieces (being before half ruined through age) by the Parliaments Soldiers, in the beginning of the late unhappy War, because looked upon as a relique of Superstition (as were those little gilded Coffers with Inscriptions, that did preserve the bones of some of the * *Saxon* Kings and Bishops, deposited by Bishop *Fox* in the top of the Walls on both sides the upper part of the Quire of the Cathedral Church of that City) though guilty of nothing but the crime of reverend Antiquity.

* *Cambd. Brit. in Hants. p.192.*

Into this noble Society of *Knights*, were admitted not only [l] *Britains*, but also *Strangers* of other Nations, who out of a desire of glory, came over hither, to make proof of their sufficiency in the exercise of Arms with the *British Knights*; and the general qualifications for Election were, that they should be persons of Nobility and Dignity, renowned for Virtue and Valour, and admirably well skill'd in the knowledge and use of Arms.

l *Enderbies Cambria Triumphans. part 2. p. 199.*

The place where the *Founder* first Instituted this *Order*, saith Sir *John Froisard*, was at * *Windsor*, and those other of note where he and his *Knights* usually assembled, were [m] *Carleon* in *Monmouthshire*, *Winchester* and *Camelot* in *Somersetshire*; and the time of the year for their meeting was *Whitsontide*.

* *Chron. l.1. c. 100.*
m *Leland. Assertio Arturi. f. 10. Seldens notes upon Polialb. Song. 4.*

The *Articles* of their profession are set down by [n] Sir *William Segar*, which are in number twelve; and if any be desirous to read the Names of the first twenty four *Knights*, he shall not only have them from *Monsieur Boisseau* in his [o] *Promptuaire Armorial*, but of 129 more of this *Order*, elected in seven following Chapters; nay more then that, the formal blazon of all their Arms: but these particulars may be justly ranked with what is fabulous in King *Arthurs* story.

n *Honor Milit. & Civil. l.2. c. 5.*
o *In l'Institution de L'ordre de la Jartiere.*

We read not of any *Badge* peculiarly assigned to these *Knights*, though * *Jos. Micheli*,

* *En Tes. milit. de Cavall. f. 52. b.*

Mucheli, in allusion to their Title, takes upon him to give the Figure of a *Round Table*, furnished with Cloth, Bread, Salt, Knives, Bottle and Bowl, but we have not authority enough to follow him: However it gives us occasion here to acquaint our Reader, that King *Arthur* himself is reported to bear a *Shild* called || *Pridwen*, whereon was painted the Image of the *blessed Virgin*; his *Sword* and *Launce* also, were not without their names, for the one it seems was called *Caliburn*, the other *Irone* or *Rone*.

It is not remembred by any, that this *Order* survived its *Founder*, but rather that it extinguished at his death; for it is related that [p] most of those *Knights*, whom he had drawn from several Countries, and advanced to a Companionship with himself, bore him company in death, and perished in that fatal Battel of *Kamblan*, or *Cambula* (now [q] *Camelsford*) in *Cornwal*; where though he killed *Mordred* his Enemy upon the place, yet, being sorely wounded, he survived him but a short time, and dyed in the year of our Lord [r] 542.

It may add some reputation to King *Arthurs* Round Table, if we here note, that the like *Round Table*, grew into great estimation and request, shortly after the *Norman Conquest*, and continued long with us; being ordinarily set up at the grand martial Exercises, called [s] *Hastiludes*, *Tilts*, or *Turneaments*, permitted by King *Stephen*, and much encouraged by King [t] *Richard* the First (for the delight of men inclined to military actions, and increase of their skill in the management of Arms) and for the same end and purpose, as King *Arthur* made use of it; no less than in memorial and remembrance, that he had erected an *Order* of *Knighthood*, denominated therefrom: those times being throughly perswaded of the truth of that story.

Besides, it is recorded, that [u] *Roger Mortimer* Earl of *March*, held the celebration of the *Round Table* (consisting of an hundred *Knights*, and as many *Ladies*) with Tilting and Turneaments, at *Kenelworth Castle* in *Warwick-shire*, *anno* 7.*E*.1. and that King *Edward* the Third having designed to [w] restore the Honor of the *Round Table*, held a Juste at *Windsor*, in the [x] 18. year of his Reign (but there is an old *Manuscript Chronicle* that hath these words, *King* Edward *in his* * *nineteenth year first began his Round Table, and ordain'd the day annually to be kept there at Whitsuntide*) and this meeting in truth occasioned the *Foundation* of the most noble *Order* of the *Garter*, as shall be noted by and by.

But it was thought fit sometimes, and upon divers accounts, to forbid these kind of Assemblies, upon very great penalties; as in particular [y] *anno* 16.*H*.3. at *Shrewsbury*, when the King went to meet *Llewalyn* Prince of *Wales* (called in the Record Prince of *Aberfraw* and *Snowden*) and afterwards at *Walden*, in the [z] 36. year of the said Kings Reign, and at many other times.

The Order of the Oak *in Navarre.*

(2.)

The [a] Kingdom of *Navarre* being oppreſt by the *Moors*, the Inhabitants were forced to seek deliverance by Arms, to which end, though they had raised a great Army, yet were they destitute of an experienced Commander; at length, Don *Garcia Ximenes*, of the blood of the *Gothes*, who had formerly retired from the world, to a solitary and religious life, was perswaded to relinquish the same, and take upon him the Command of the Army.

As he was marching out of the City to encounter the *Moors* (in the year of our Lord [b] 722.) there appeared to him from the top of an *Oak*, the sign of the *Holy Cross*, adored by an infinite number of Angels. Proceeding on, he gave battel to the *Moors*, and having gained a remarkable Victory, the people elected him their King; and upon this occasion he became the first King of that Country.

Some few days after, in thankfulness to God for this great Victory, he [c] instituted

[p] *Chronic. of Engl. cap.* 88. *MS.*

[q] *Cambd. Brit. in Cornwall.*

[r] *Malmesb. antiq. Glaston. videsis Math. Westminst. p.* 192. *& Speeds Chron. l.*7 *c.*12. *f.*334.

Anno 542 Inclytus Arthurus obiit & sepultus in Insulâ Avaloniâ, in Domino requiescit. *Malmesb. antiq. Glaston.*

[s] Hastiludium quod vulgariter Torneamentum dicitur, sed potius Ludus militaris, qui Mensa rotunda dicitur. *Math. Paris. p.* 845.

[t] *Ex lib. Rubro in Scaccar. fol.*122. *b. & ex Registro Priorat. de Dunstaple, f.*8. *a. vide Lamb. Peramb. p.* 448.

[u] *Tho. Walsingh. sub an.*1280.

[w] Ut Arturi memoriam refricaret. *Vincen. Lupani de Magistratib. Francor. l.*1.

[x] *Tho Walsing. sub an.*1344.

* *Cap.* 226.

[y] *Rot. Pat. de eodem an. m.*3.

[z] *Claus de eod. anno m* 5 *Dors.*

[a] *Jos. Micheli Marquez in Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f.* 16. *a. & Hier. Blancus, in Regum Aragon. Serie.*

tuted this *Order*, investing therewith even all the Nobles of his Kingdom; whom he obliged to defend the Christian Faith, and acknowledge Obedience to his Successors Kings of *Navarre*.

He ordained the *Habit* of the *Order* to be *White*, and the *Ensign* thereof a [d] *plain Red Cross*, set on the top of a *green Oak* (which gave the Title) after the same manner as it appeared to him: but time hath darkned this *Order*, not only in its heroick actions, but laudable Foundation, since we find no further memorial of it.

d Tessera fuit hæc ipsa Arbor, & supra eam Crux rubra, instar Crucis de Montesa. *Mendo Disq. 1. Quest. 4. n. 94.*

The Order of the Gennet *in France.*

(3.)

To [e] preserve the memory of that famous Battel fought neer *Tours*, *anno Christi* 726. (or as *Mennenius* margins it, about the year 738.) where 385000 *Saracens* and *Moors*, together with their General *Abdiramo*, fell by the conquering Sword of *Charles Martel*; and to reward those who had behaved themselves valiantly in that action; the said *Charles* instituted an *Order* of *Knighthood*, under the Title of the *Gennet*. The great [f] number of rich *Gennet Furs* (anciently esteemed among them the most excellent, though since the *Ermine* hath gained a better value) as also of the Creatures themselves alive, taken among the Spoils of that Victory; giving him occasion to bestow that name upon his new erected *Order*.

e *Favin.*
f *Theat. d' Honn. l. 3. c. 1.*

But [g] others, not improperly, impute the reason of this appellation to a kind of neat shap'd *Horses*; of which not unlikely, a great part of the Founders Cavalry might consist.

g *Mennen. Delic. Equest. p. 56.*

The *Knights*, saith *Favin*, were [h] sixteen, whose *Collars* were made of three Chains of Gold, interwoven or linked with Red Roses, at the end of which Collar hung a *Gennet* of Gold, Black and Red; sitting on a flowry bank, all enamell'd with variety of Colour and Art.

h *Loco cit.*

And in further honor of this Institution, the *Founder* not only [i] renewed the use of Gold Rings (so peculiar of old, to the *Equestrian Order* among the *Romans*) but caused them, and all other Ornaments of this Order, to be engraven and wrought with the Effigies of a *Gennet*.

i *Sic Mennen. p. 63.*

This is accounted by [k] *Favin*, the first Order of Knighthood among the *French*; which is to be understood of a distinct Order, acknowledged by a particular and peculiar Title; and continued in glory, until the institution of the *Order* of the *Star*, ([l] some say but till the Reign of St. *Lewis*) after which time it was laid aside.

k *Loco supra cit.*
l *Gotofrid. Archont. Cosmica. l. 3. p. 3. Heyl. Cosmogr. l. 1. p. 204.*

But though *Eavin* be thus particular, as to the Institution of this *Order*, and the occasion thereof, the exact number of Knights, and especially in assigning a Collar, with the Ensign hanging at it, suitable to the mode of later times; yet some other of his [m] Countrymen, wanting the assurance and authority of ancient Writers to back them, are not confident enough to perswade the world, that there was ever any such.

m *Scevol. & Louis de sainte Marthe en le Histor. Genealog. de la Maison de France, Tom. 1. c. 13. p. 58.*

The Order of the Crown Royal *among the Frizons.*

(4.)

The erection of this *Order* is referred to *Charles* the Great, Son of King *Pepin*, in the year of *Christ* [n] 802. (which more fully appears in his pragmatical Sanction, then dated at the *Lateran Palace* in *Rome*) and instituted out of a design to [o] honor and reward those among the *Frizons*, who had behaved themselves valiantly in his Armies, against the *Sesnes* or ancient *Saxons*; or as [p] others say, against the *Lombards*, in subduing that Kingdom, and to stir up and encourage others to emulate their virtue.

n *Mart. Hamcon. de rebus Frisiæ.*
o *Favin en Theat. d' Honneur, l. 3. c. 1. And. Mendo de Ordin. Militar. Disq. 1. Quest. 2. Sect. 4.*
p *Tesoro milit. de Cavallery. f. 16. b.*

 This

q *Favin loc. cit.*

This *Order* was so called, [q] from the *Ensign* appointed to the same, namely an *Imperial Crown*, embroidered with Gold, which the *Knights* used to wear upon the breasts of their Habit: and to perpetuate this Militia, he ordained, that the Governor of that Country (whom they then called *Potestat*) should confer the same upon such as had followed the Armies of *France*, as well in *Italy* as *Germany*, for five years together at their own expence; by which means the Emperor was served at a less charge.

The *Knights* were invested with the Military Belt, and a box on the Ear; of which we have spoken in the [r] first Chapter.

r *Sect.* IX.

The Order of the Dog *and* Cock *in France.*

(5.)

The Institution of this *Order* of the *Dog* and *Cock*, is generally attributed to the Family of [s] *Montmorency* in *France*, and it is more particularly affirmed by *Robertus Cænalis*, to have been erected by the first Christian of that Family, called *Protochristianus & Archibaro*, which causeth us to bring in this *Order* here, neer to the Age he lived in; but to say truth, as to the Institution it self, or to the time thereof, there is not any more certain, or more satisfactory account, than that anciently this Family carried a [t] *Dog* (the Embleme of fidelity and sincerity) upon their Helmet for a Crest; and that [u] *Peter Montmorency* was a *Knight* of the *Order* of the *Cock*, which Bird was called by the Ancients the Bird of *Mars*.

s *Mennen. Delic Equest. p. 57 Seld. Titles of Honor. p. 554.*

t *Idem Menn. p. 58.*

u *Ibid. p. 59.*

But some make two distinct Orders of this, and after that of the *Dog*, they say, another Order, *viz.* of the [w] *Cock*, was also Institnted, whose Collar had the Comb of a Cock pendent thereat, the Motto being *Vigiles*; howbeit afterwards, both these Orders came to be united, and hereupon the Ensign was then, the Effigies both of a *Dog* and *Cock* joined together.

w *Ita Jos. Micheli en Tesoro milit. de Caval. f. 89. b & A. Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq. 1. Q. 2. Sect. 31. n. 88.*

[x] *Moræus* relates, that *Burchard Montmorency*, appeared at the Court of *Philip* the First, King of *France*, attended with many *Knights*, and all of them (like himself) adorned with *Collars* of Gold, composed of *Stag-heads*, whereat hung the Figure of a *Dog*: whence we may presume, that it had some relation to the more ancient Order, of which this was the Badge or Ensign.

x *Apud Mennen p 58.*

The Order of the Thistle *in Scotland.*

(6.)

John Lesley Bishop of *Ross*, reports that a bright [a] *Cross* appeared from Heaven, in fashion of that whereon St. *Andrew* suffered Martyrdom, to *Hungus* King of the *Picts* (but [b] *Favin* saith to the *Scots*, whom *Achaius* King of *Scotland* sent to his assistance) the night preceding the Battel with *Athelstan* King of *England*, (or rather of [c] *Denmark*, to whom King *Alured* had given the Kingdom of *Northumberland*) over whom *Hungus* prevailing, [d] bore the Figure of that Cross at all times after in his Ensigns and Banners: and from this time and occasion hath the like bearing thereof been religiously observed by all succeeding Kings of *Scotland*.

Hence also it is believed (saith [e] *Mennenius*) that the Equestrian Order of St. *Andrew*, vulgarly called of the *Thistle*, took beginning. To this agrees the relation which I received from Sir *Charles Areskin*, now *Lyon, King* of *Arms* in *Scotland*, through the favour of the Right Honorable the Earl of *Lauderdail*, who adds, that after this Victory obtained, which was as he saith, *anno* 819. (but according to [f] *George Buchanan, Achaius* dyed 9 years before) "King "*Hungius* and *Achaius* (Confederates against *Athelstan*) went "in

a Crux in quam divus *Andreas* sublatus mortem oppetivit, in Cœlo vivis quasi coloribus effecta, quam primum omnibus apparuit. *De rebus Gestis Scotor. l. 5 p. 177. Edit. Romæ, anno* 1578. 4°.

b *Theat. d' Honneur, l. 5. c. 3.*

c *G. Buchanan. Rerum Scot. l. 5. c. 56.*

d Atq; ut tantæ victoriæ memoria nulla unquam vetustate deleatur, effigiem Crucis (cui D. *Andreas* affixus est) in armis & insignibus efformatam, cum Hostibus congresturus, semper postea gestabat, id quod Scoti omnes in memoriam victoriæ à Pictis divi *Andreæ* auxilio reportatæ, etiamnum religiosissime observant. *Lesleus in loco supra cit.*

e *In Delic. Equest. p. 146. Heyl. Cosmogr. l. 1. p. 306.*

f *Ubi supra.*

"in solemn Procession bare-footed, to the Kirk of St. *Andrew*, to thank God and "his Apostle for their Victory, promising that they and their Posterity in time "coming, would ever use in their Ensigns the Cross of St. *Andrew*, whensoever "they undertook any warlike Expedition; which custom not only remained "among the *Picts*, but is still among the *Scots* to this day: And both these Kings, "after their solemn Procession, presently instituted an *Order*, naming it the *Or-*"*der* of St. *Andrew*.

But [g] *Andr. Favin* reporteth the occasion to be otherwise, to wit, that *Achaius* King of *Scotland*, having made that famous League offensive and defensive, with *Charlemain* King of *France*, towards all and against all other Princes (to preserve the memory of which alliance to posterity, the *Scotch Lyon* [h] assumed before by King *Fergus*, became then enclosed with a [i] *Tresure* of *Flowers de Lis*) he found himself thereby so strong and mighty, that he took for device the [k] *Thistle* and the *Rue*, which he composed into a [l] *Collar* of his *Order*, and for his Motto *Pour ma defence*: giving intimation thereby, that he feared not the powers of Foreign Princes, seeing he leaned on the succour and alliance of the *French*.

g h i k l *Theat. d'Honneur. l. 5. c. 3.*

And though hence may be inferr'd, that these two Plants, were the united Symbols, but of one Order of Knighthood, yet doth [m] *Mennenius* divide them into two, making one, whose chief Badge was the *Thistle*, (whence the *Knights* were so stiled) and the Motto, *Nemo me impune lacessit*: and another vulgarly called [n] *Sertum Rutæ*, or the *Garland* of *Rue*, whose *Collar* was composed of two Branches or Sprigs thereof, or else many of its leaves: Nevertheless, that at both these Collars hung one and the same Jewel, to wit, the Figure of [o] St. *Andrew* Patron of that Kingdom, bearing before him the Cross of his Martyrdom.

m *In Delic. Equest. p. 146.*
n *Ibid. p. 147.*
o In cujus patrocinio gens Scotiæ acquiescit. *Lesleus, l. 5. p. 177.*

But there are some (saith the same [p] *Author*) who refer the Institution of the *Order* of the *Thistle*, to later times, (albeit the *Thistle* [q] from the Reign of *Achaius*, had been acknowledged for the Badge and Symbol of the Kingdom of *Scotland*, in like manner as the *Rose* was of *England*, the *Lilly* of *France*, the *Pomegranate* of *Spain*, *&c.*) to wit, in the Reign of [r] *Charles* the Seventh of *France*; when as the League of amity was renewed between those two Kingdoms, and especially for the succour and aid which *France* then received from *Scotland*, it being in a time of so extraordinary distress: and, last of all, others place the Foundation yet later, *viz.* in the year of our Lord [s] 1500.

p q r *Mennen. ubi nuper.*
s *A. Miræus de Orig. Equest. p. 78.*

I have done with what can be said as to the Foundation of this *Order*, and the time thereof; and shall now pass on to some other particulars, relating to the Order it self.

The chief and principal *Ensign* of this *Order* is a Gold *Collar*, composed of *Thistles*, interlink'd with anulets of Gold, and pendant thereunto the Image of St. *Andrew* with his Cross, and this Epigraph, *Nemo me impune lacessit*: the Figure whereof may be seen in a Picture of *James* the Fifth King of *Scotland*, now hanging in his Majesty's Gallery at *Whitehall*, on several great Seals of that Kingdom, on some Coyns and Medals, and lastly among the representations of the Military Ensigns, placed at the beginning of this Chapter.

The [t] time of this Societies meeting, was heretofore very religiously observed and celebrated, upon the Feast day of St. *Andrew* the Apostle annually, in the Church of the Town dedicated to his name, and in testimony of the high esteem and reverence they bore unto him as their titular *Saint* and *Patron*: During the [u] solemnity of the Feast, the *Knights* of this *Order* were habited in rich and costly Apparel, and wore their Parliament Robes, having fixt on their left shoulders, an [w] azure *Rundle*, on which was embroidered St. *Andrews Cross*, environed in Center with a *Crown* composed of *Flowers de Lis*, *Or*.

t u w x y *Ex relatione præf. Cat. Areskin mil.*

For the [y] ordinary and common Ensign, the *Knights* used a *Green Ribbon*, whereat hung a *Thistle* of Gold, crowned with an Imperial Crown, within a Circle of Gold, containing also the foresaid Epigraph; but for more satisfaction, we have caused the Figures of these two to be here exactly represented, from the draughts of them sent me from the before-mentioned Sir *Charles Areskin*.

As to the number of the *Knights*, there is nothing remembred by any Author we have seen, but herein I was supplyed by the Right Honorable the Earl of *Lauderdale*, who assured me he had met with (among his readings) from good authority, a memorial, that this *Order* consisted of 13 *Knights*, in allusion to the number of our blessed Saviour, and his twelve Apostles.

The Order of Knights of our Lady of the Star *in France.*

(7.)

a (*Theat. d'* b *Honneur.* c *l.3.c.2.* d (

The Institution of this Order is by *Andrew Favin* derived from[a] *Robert* King of *France*, surnamed the Devout, who, to manifest his particular devotion to the blessed *Virgin Mary*, and in her honor, gave Being thereunto, in the[b] Month of *August*, *Anno Domini* 1022.

The *Knights* were in number[c] thirty, comprehending the King of *France*, the Chief or Soveraign; they had appointed for their *Habit*, [d] *Mantles* of *White Damask*; their Mantlets and Lining, were of light Carnation Damask, their Surcoats of the same, and on their Mantles, as also on their Surcoats, to wit, upon the left side of the breast, was embroidered a *Star*, wrought in pure Gold, with five rays or pointed beams.

e { *Loco dicto.* f g { h { *Histor. Genealog. de la Maison de France.Tom.1. c.13. p.58. & 59.* i k *Delic.Equest. p.129.& 130.* l *Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f.71. b.* m *S.Marthe de la Maison de France & Menen. locis cit.* n *Jo.Tilly Commentar. de rebus Gall.l.2. p.181.* Cujus nunc tantùm ruinosa merorum vestigia apparent. *Vinc.Lupan.l. 1.de.Magistrat. Francor.* o *Tresor des Chart. de France tit.Cortez. Beaumont. 52.* p Institutour de la Congregation militaire de l'Estoile.

The great *Collar* (c saith he) was formed of three round Chains of Gold, much like that of the Order of the *Gennet*, and united at little distances, with enamelled Roses, interchangeably *White* and *Red*, at the end whereof hung the Figure of a *Star*. The[f] Ceremonies of the Order began on the day of the Nativity of the blessed Virgin *Mary*, Patroness thereof, in the year before-mentioned.

In the[g] Reign of *Philip de Valois*, this *Order* began to be intermitted by reason of the Wars, nevertheless it was restored by King *John* his Son, the eighth of *September*, *anno* 1356.

But albeit *Favin* hath thus formally set down the Institution of this *Order*, and assign'd it to King *Robert*, adding moreover Habit, Collar, and other specious circumstances thereunto, yet the[h] *Sancte Marthe's* (his Countrymen) are not perswaded of the truth thereof, but ingeniously acknowledge, that there is not any thing of it mentioned by their ancient Writers, and coming to speak of the *Order* in particular, [i] they refer its first Institution (not renovation) so do[k] *Menenius*, [l] *Jos. Micheli*, and others) to King *John* Son of *Philip de Valois*, in the Month of *October*, *anno* 1352. in commemoration of that *Star* which directed the Wisemen, who came from far, to adore the Saviour of the World at his Nativity; the[m] Figure whereof crowned, King *John* caused to be embroidered on the Mantle or upper Garment of the Order, as also this Motto, *Monstrant Regibus Astra viam.*

The Seat of this *Order* (thus instituted by King *John*) and where the first Ceremonies were kept, was in the noble and ancient House of[n] St. *Owen*, called *de Clichy*, neer St. *Denys* in *France*; and by an ancient[o] deed of Exchange of Lands, situate in the Earldom of *Alançon*, in lieu of the House of St. *Owen* (made by King *John* to the Countess of *Alançon*, and dated at St. *Cler de Gomets* the 6. day of *June* 1356.) is the King called[p] *Institutor of the military Fraternity of the Star*; which sufficiently contradicts the fair-spun relation of *Favin*, who bestows the honor of Foundation upon King *Robert*, as before hath been said. To which we

we may add, that the day assigned by *Favin* for holding the Chapter of Election of the first *Knights*, to wit, the eighth of *September* 1356. and at *Clichy* aforesaid, was (in all probability) too neer the day of the Battel of *Poictiers*, (that being but eleven days after) and King *John* not only then at a great distance from *Clichy*, but on a * hasty March to engage the *Black Prince*, and consequently too little at leisure to enter upon the Formalities of such an Institution.

* *Froiss. Chron. l.1.c.159.*

This *Order* was of no long continuance, for being much [q] violated and dishonoured (during the confusion of the Civil and Foreign War) by the admission into it of mean and undeserving persons; it gave a fair occasion to King *Charles* the Seventh to take off the pretence of honor supposed in it, and to extinguish it.

q *S. Marthe en mesme Histor. Genealog. loco citato. videsis Seld. Th. of Honor. p.552.*

Whereupon, in the year [r] 1455. he contrived the holding of a Chapter, for giving away that Enfign thereof, which himself wore, to the Chevalier *du Guet*, Captain of the Night-watch in *Paris*, after whose example the Princes and Lords left the *Order*, thus disgraced, to the said Captain, and never after wore it.

This Story as to the time, though not the manner, doth [s] *Favin* contradict, and renders his reasons for it: howbeit, upon what occasion soever, the *Order* became relinquished or dismist, certain it is, that [t] upon (if not some time before) the Foundation of the *Order* of St. *Michael*, it grew out of request; as did that of the *Gennet* upon the erection of the *Star*.

s *Theat. d'Hon. l.3.c.2.*

t *Ibid. c.3. & c.5. vide Mennen. ubi supra. p.130.*

The Order of the Lilly *in Navarre.*

(8.)

[a] *Garcias* King of *Navarre*, the Sixth of that name, lying under the extremity of a languishing sickness, sent to divers places of Devotion, to the end, that Prayers might be offered up for the recovery of his health. In which season there hapned to be found in the City of *Nagera*, where he kept his Court, an [b] Image of the blessed *Virgin Mary*, issuing forth of a *Lilly*, and holding her *Son* between her arms, upon finding of which (if we may credit the story) he immediately recovered, and (to perpetuate his devotion to the said Virgin) [c] instituted an *Order* of *Knighthood*, in the year of our Lord 1048. which consisted of 38 Knights, drawn out of the ancientest Families in *Navarre*, *Biscay*, and *old Castile*, and Entituled it, the *Order of Knights of St. Mary of the Lilly.*

a *Andr. Favin.* b *in* c *Theat. de d'Honneur. l. 6. c.3.*

But *Jos. Mich. Marquez* gives foundation to this Order [e] 25 years before *Favin*, and draws the Institution from another ground. For [f] whereas *Don Garcias* had succeeded his Father, King *Zanchy* the Fourth, in the Kingdom of *Navarre*, the *Moors* made War against him, and he prevailing, made a Feast in honor of the blessed *Virgin Mary*, at which he instituted this Order, and adorned many Knights with the Enfign thereof, beginning with his Brothers and Sons.

e *Tesors militi. de Cavall. f. 17.b.*

Of this *Order* ([g] esteemed the most illustrious of all *Spain*) King *Garcias* [h] ordained himself, and after him his Successors Kings of *Navarre*, the Chiefs and Sovereigns. The *Knights* promised at their entrance into this *Order*, to [i] expose their lives and fortunes in defence of the Christian Faith, conservation of the Crown of *Navarre*, and expulsion of the *Moors*.

g *Mennen. p.65* h *Favin.* i *loco citato.*

The *Badge* or *Symbol* which the *Knights* wore daily on their breast, was a [k] *Lilly* embroidered in Silver; but on solemn days, a double Chain of Gold, interlaced with the letter M. made after the fashion of a *Saxon* Capital; at the end whereof did hang a *Flower de Lis* of Gold, enamelled White, bearing the foresaid Letter M. crowned upon the head of its Flower. The *Habit* was White, wrought all over in Needle-work, with *White Lillies*.

k *Tess. milit. de Cavall. loc. cit.* Tessera fuit supra Togam albam effigies Annuntiationis Deiparæ intra duo Lilia. *A. Mendo Disq 1. Quest. 4. n. 95.*

But *Jos. Micheli* differs in this also from *Favin*, for he [l] assigns for the Badge, two Branches of Skie-coloured Lillies, one crossing another, and in the middle of them the Figure of the Annunciation of the blessed Virgin, but agrees that the Habit was White.

l

The

The Order of the Sword *in Cyprus.*

(9.)

m *Andr. Favin. Theat. d' Hon. l. 9. c. 2.*

[m] *Guy* of *Lusignan*, (and according to this Author, King of *Jerusalem* and *Cyprus* in right of his Wife *Sibilla*, Sister to *Baldwin* the Leper) shortly after his setlement in the Isle of *Cyprus* (which he had bought of *Richard* the First, King of *England*, for one hundred thousand Crowns of Gold) Instituted this *Order* in the year of our Lord 1195. in remembrance of so fortunate a Plantation of 15000 persons, whom he had brought thither.

n *De Delis. Equest. p. 153. Gotofrid. Archont. Cosm. l. 3. p 11.*

But [n] *Mennenius*, and some others, are so far from being of this opinion, as to affirm, that neither the name of the Founder, nor the time of this Order's Foundation, are certainly known; though it be conceived he was one of the Family of *Lusignan*, who gave beginning unto it.

o *Theat. d' Hon. loc. cit.*
p *Vide eum loco præd.*

The [o] *Collar* of the *Order* (called a Collar of Esses by [p] *Mennenius*) was composed (as *Favin* reports) of round Cordons of *White Silk*, woven into Love-knots, interlaced with the Letters *S* and *R*. Beneath this Collar hung an Oval of Gold, wherein was figured a Sword, the Blade enamelled Silver, and the Hilt Gold; and about the Oval was engraven this Motto, *Securitas Regni*, [q] *Micheli* saith it was, *Pro fide servanda*; and * *Gothofridus*, *Pro integritate tuendâ*.

q *Teforo milit. de Cavall. f. 87. b.*
* *Loco cit.*

The [r] day appointed for holding of the solemn Ceremonies of this Order, was Ascension-day, whereon the *Founder* gave it (in the Church of St. *Sophia* the Cathedral of *Nicosia* in *Cyprus*) to his Brother *Amaury*, Constable of *Jerusalem* and *Cyprus*, and to 300 Barons, which he had established in that his new Kingdom.

r *Theat. d' Honneur, ut supra.*

There were [s] eight Kings of *Cyprus*, of this House of *Lusignan*, Great Masters or Chiefs of this *Order*; and [t] when the Isle fell into the hands of the *Turks*, this noble Institution ceased.

s t *Teforo milit. loco relato.*

The Order of the Bear *in Switzerland.*

(10.)

u w x *Favin. Theat. d' Honn. l. 7. c. 14. vide Miræum in Orig. Equest. p. 79.*

The [u] Emperor *Frederick* the Second (in favour of the Abbot of St. *Gall* in *Swaben*, and several Noblemen of that Country, who had been active in his assistance for gaining to him the Empire) instituted this *Order*, in the year of our Lord [w] 1213. and bestowed upon the elect *Knights* Collars of Gold, at the end whereof hung the Figure of a [x] *Bear*, Gold, mounted on an Hillock enamelled with Black.

y *Idem Favin. loco nuper cit.*

He ordained, [y] that this Honor should be conferr'd by the Abbot of St. *Gall*, for the time being, and that on the Anniversary of their Patron St. *Gall* (a Gentleman of *Scotland*, and the Apostle of *Swaben*) being the 16. day of *October*, the *Knights* of this *Order* should assemble at the Abbey; on which day, such Candidates as were [z] designed to receive the Honor, were girded with the military Belt (the Sword being first consecrated at the Altar) and adorned with the *Collar* of the *Order*; having kept their Vigils the preceding night, according to the ancient and accustomed manner.

z *Miræus p. 79.*

But it carried the Title of the * *Order* of the *Bear*, in memory of St. *Ursus*, of the *Theban Legion*, who was martyr'd before the Temple of the Sun, at *Soleurre* in *Switzerland*; as also of St. *Gall*, from the name of the Patron of the place, where it received Institution.

* *Favin, ut supra.*

This *Order* continued among the *Switzers*, till they became a Common-wealth, and then the Castles and strong holds of the Noblemen and Gentry of the Country being dismantled, the use thereof was wholly laid aside.

The

The Order of the Broom Flower *in France.*

(11.)

[a] Saint *Lewis* King of *France* (saith *Favin*) instituted this *Order*, to honor the Coronation of *Margaret* his Queen, eldest Daughter of *Berengarius* Count of *Provence*, *anno Dom.* 1234.

The [b] *Habit* appointed for the *Knights*, were *Cassocks* of White Damask, and Violet *Chaperons*; the *Collar* was composed of *Broom Flowers*, of the native colours, interlaced with *Flowers de Lis*, hanging thereat a *Cross Florence* Gold, to which was added this Inscription, *Exaltat humiles*, the *Founder* accounting it the Symbol of humility.

As to the [c] number of the *Knights*, it was not made certain by the *Founder*, but wholly depended on the will of the Sovereign. This *Order* [d] continued to the death of King *Charles* the Fifth.

Notwithstanding all that *Favin* thus relates, the [e] *Saincte Marthe's* are of opinion (for the reason before noted) that neither this St. *Lewis*, nor the before mentioned King *Robert*, nor King *Charlemain*, did ever institute any Military Order of Chevalry: And [f] *Mennenius* reports, that *Charles* the Sixth is said to have been the Founder of the *Knights* of the *Broom Flower*: if this be true, the *Order* will want many years of that antiquity which *Favin* bestows upon it.

[g] *Peter Bellay* rather thinks this later Institution not to have been any *Order* of *Knighthood*, but a Company of young *Esquires*, the Sons of Noblemen, who attended King *Charle*'s person as a Life-Guard, or as Esquires of the Body, and were oftentimes imployed to interpret the messages of Embassadors from foreign parts.

a (b) (c) d *En Theat. d' Honneur, l. 3. c. 3.*

e *En le Hist. Geneal. de la Maison de France, Tom. 1. p. 58.*

f *Delic. Equest. p. 64.*

g *Apud Menn. loco cit.*

The Order of the Ship, *and* double Crescent *in France.*

(12.)

[h] *Mennenius* acknowledgeth, that of old, there was such an *Order* in *France*, erected in honor of the great atchievements that Nation did by Sea; but by whom it was founded, or at what time, doth not appear from him. Yet [i] *Favin* is full in both, for he affirms, that the before mentioned St. *Lewis*, after the Institution of the *Broom Flower*, erected this likewise: for animating the Nobility of *France*, by this new prize of honor, to accompany him in his Voyage into *Africa*, 1269.

The [k] *Collar* was interlaced with double *Escallops* of Gold, and double *Crescents* of Silver, interwoven and fastned together with double Gold Chains, at which the Figure of a *Ship* was pendent in an Oval of Gold.

This [l] *Order* continued in *France* (after the death of St. *Lewis*) no longer than those *Knights* lived, who were admitted thereinto by him: but it was retained by [m] *Charles*, Brother of the said St. *Lewis*, and by him setled in *Sicily*, where it remained in request with his Successors, until the Kings of *Aragon* gained that Kingdom.

h *In Delic. Equest. p. 166.*

i (k) (l) (m) *Theat. d' Honn. l. 3. c. 4.*

Knights of St. James *in Holland.*

(13.)

[n] *Albertus Miræus*, from an old Dutch Register, called **Register der Ridderscap**, or the *Register of the Order of Knighthood*, informs us, That *Florentius* Earl of *Holland* and *Zeland*, and Lord of *Friseland*, in the year 1290. bestowed the Ensigns of his *Order* of St. *James*, in the Hall of his Palace at the *Hague*, upon twelve of his principal Nobility, whose names he sets down: among whom, the second in rank, is *Lancelot* Lord *Hamilton*, then Embassador from the King of *Scots*.

n *Orig Ord. Equest. p. 81. See Grimstons general History of the Netherlands. p. 66.*

The

o } *Ibid. p.*
p } 82.

The *Knights* of this *Order* were invested with a[o] *Collar* of Gold, or *military Belt* of Silver and gilt, adorned with six Escallops, whereat was appended the Picture of St. *James* the Apostle.

All the [p] *Knights Shields* (whereon were painted their proper Arms) were delivered to *John Paypaert*, Herald of *Holland*, and by him hung up in the great Hall of the Palace, at the *Hague*, in perpetual memory and testimony of this Institution.

Order of the Swan *in Cleveland.*

(14.)

q *Theat. d' Honneur l.7.c.11.*

r *Idem. l.9.c.5.*

If ever there was an *Order* there, under that Title, it hath been very ancient, and long since laid aside; yet [q] *Favin* says, the Princes of *Cleve* have born the *Swan* for their *Order*, Devise, Creft, and Supporters, to preserve the memory of the *Knight* of the *Swan*, the Romance of whose Adventures he also sets down; and further reports, that [r] *Charles Gonzaga* of *Cleve*, Duke of *Nivers* and *Retelois*, had it in design to re-establish this Order, peculiar to the House of *Cleve*.

The Knights of Jesus *at Rome.*

(15.)

a } *Favin.*
b } *Theat. d' Honneur l.8. c.1.*

The Popes of *Rome*, as they are Lords Paramount of St. *Peters Patrimony*, are Temporal Princes; upon which account to [a] honor the Nobles, principally of that Territory and others, they have erected and established certain *Orders* of *Knighthood*, as well *Religious* as *Military*, but all of them Stipendaries to the Papal See: Of the former sort we have spoken before in the last Chapter, but this being esteemed a *Military Order*, we therefore place it here.

It was instituted by Pope [b] *John* the 22. at *Avignon* in *France*, *anno* 1320. and much augmented by *Paul* the Fifth. The *Knights* wear for the *Badge* of this Order, a *plain Cross gules*, inclosed within a *Cross Patee Or*, hanging at a Gold Chain.

In the Month of *January* 166$^{8}_{9}$. Pope *Clement* the Ninth, created three of the Ambassadors from the Catholick Cantons in *Switzerland*, with the accustomed Ceremony; himself putting on their Gold *Chains*, with the *Ensigns* appendant, and the Captain of his Guards, girding their *Swords* about them.

Order of the White Eagle *in Poland.*

(16.)

f } *Theat. d'*
t } *Honneur. l.7. c.6.*

The information we have of this Order, is from [f] *Favin* also, who saith, that *Ladislaus* the Fifth, King of *Poland*, instituted the same, to honor the marriage of his Son *Casimire* the Great, with *Anne* Daughter of *Gedimir*, Duke of *Lithuania*, in the Month of *February*, in the year of our Lord 1325.

The Ensign hereof was a [t] *White Eagle*, crowned.

u *Banda*, vulgare Hispanorum lingua *tania* est. *Jo Mariana de reb. Hisp. l.16. c. 2.*
w *Ibid.*
x *In le Theat. d' Honneur. l.6.c.11.*
y *Orig. de Caval. p.37.b.*

The Order of Knights de la Banda *in Castile.*

(17.)

This *Order* of *Knights* called [u] *de la Banda*, was erected by *Alphonsus* the Eleventh, King of *Leon* and *Castile*, in the [w] City of *Victoria*, *anno* 1332. (but [x] *Favin* from *Antonio de Guevara*, saith it was in the City of *Palencia*, *anno* 1330. and [y] *Sansovin* in *Burgos*, *anno* 1368.) For this King considering, that he had to do with many Enemies, could find no better way to secure himself, than by erecting

erecting this *Order*, and constituting himself *Master* thereof, which he did a little before his Coronation.

Shortly after (saith *Mennenius*) to wit, *anno* 1332. the Solemnity of this Order was celebrated in the [z] City of *Burgos*, where, on the Eve thereof, in the Monastery of St. *Mary Royal*, each of the *Candidates* was conducted by the King to the Altar, and having there laid down his Arms, spent the whole night in watching and Prayer.

z *Mennen.* p. 116.

The next day after Mass, he was invested with a [a] Red military *Belt*, or a *Ribband* of four fingers broad, which came across the body, over the right shoulder, and so under the left arm; And was the *Ensign* from whence the *Knights* took their denomination.

a *Jo. Mariana, loco supra cit.*

This *Order* was instituted chiefly to honor the Nobility, and therefore at first, none were admitted, but the [b] younger Sons of Noblemen (excluding elder Brothers) or persons descended of the most noble Families in *Spain*; or else Esquires, who had served in the Court or Camp, ten years at the least: and to the end that greater honor might the more inflame them to valiant Exploits, Kings themselves, sometimes, vouchsafed to take the Ensign of this Order upon them.

b *Mennen loco citato.*

[c] It was anciently of very great esteem, but (such is the vicissitude of humane Affairs) at length it grew out of use.

The Laws and Constitutions are recorded by [d] *Anth. de Guevera* (who also gives a Catalogue of the first *Knights*) [e] *Jos. Micheli*, [f] *Sansovin*, [g] *Favin*, and [h] *Segar*; to whom we refer those that are desirous to be informed of them.

c *Mariana, loco cit.*
d *Epist. ad Petrum Pimentelium, Com. Beneventanum.*
e *Tesoro milit. de Caval. f.* 50.
f *Orig. de Cavaliere, p.* 38.
g *Theat. d'Honneur, loco supra cit.*
h *Honor Milit. & Civil. lib.*2. *cap.*22.

The Order de la Calza *in Venice.*

(18)

From the [i] example of the *Knights de la Banda* in *Castile*, and about the year 1400. was instituted a Society at *Venice*, bearing the Title *de la Calza*, in honor of the Inauguration of Duke *Michele Steno*.

i *Mennen Delic. Equest. p.* 118. *videsis Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq.* 1. *Quest.* 2. *Sect.* 28.

Meeting with but a slender account hereof, among those *Authors* who have handled *Military Orders*, and some confounding it with that of St. *Mark*; I was at length, by the friendship of the deservedly honored Sir *Charles Cotterel* Knight, Master of the Ceremonies to his Majesty, furnished with better satisfaction, which he obtained for me from Signóre *Pietro Moccinigo*, the late *Venetian* Ambassador, at his Residence here in *England*; and from Signóre *Aberti* the present Resident for that State.

This *Order* consisted of a Society of particular Noblemen and Gentlemen, who at their voluntary choice met together, and entred into a Fellowship (among whom, some person of Eminence was elected their Chief) Nevertheless, upon the recommendation of their intention and design to the Council of Ten, who confirmed their Institution, and granted them Priviledges.

It hath appeared with so much the more reputation to the world, by having had the honor to receive into it several Princes of *Italy*, especially the Family of *Este* Dukes of *Ferara*, of *Gonzaga* then Marquesses, now Dukes of *Mantua*, of the *Rovere*, *Urbino*, *Mirandula*, and others of the most conspicuous Families of that Country, namely, *Colonna*, *Ursini*, *Sanseverini*, *Visconti*, and others.

They were distinguished by wearing a *Stocking* quartered into different colours, embroidered with gold, and enriched with Jewels, which they at pleasure altered from the right to the left Leg; and in particular it is remembred, that *an.* 1529. the right *Stocking* then worn, was half the inside of Scarlet, and half the outside of Purple, and the other half gray, but the left *Stocking* was all green: and as were the Husbands Stockings, such were the Wives Sleeves in all particulars.

On their solemn days, they first went to Church, and at *Mass*, took an *Oath* to observe the *Articles* of their *Order*. Among other things which this Society (for the honor of the City) was obliged to, splendid and noble Entertainments were part; at which were exhibited Musick, Dancings, and Theatral Representations:

ons: And with such magnificent and sumptuous Divertisements, have they given reception to divers foreign *Princes*, in particular to *Henry* the Third of *France*, when he past by *Venice* in his way from *Poland* to *France*.

They wore for their *Habit* a *Crimson Senators Vest*, appearing therein very splendid, and reserved for solemn days; at which times the Foreign *Princes*, that had been admitted into this *Order*, appeared clad after the same manner.

These *Knights* had for their *Ensign* a *Sun* on a Shield painted in their *Banners*, which they used also for a *Seal*; perhaps as a happy Omen and Presage, that the *Order* (being laid aside about the year 1590. for the excess it was growing into) should like the Sun from under a Cloud, rise again in after times (when better oppottunity offered it self) in greater splendor than ever.

The Order of St. Mark *in Venice.*

(19.)

In this Seigniory there is another Degree or Dignity of *Knighthood*, commonly called the *Order* of St. *Mark*; and because it is generally reckoned among the *Orders* of *Knighthood*, and differs from the *Milites Simplices* by wearing a peculiar Title, and being invested with a particular Ensign of Honor at their Creation, we have thought good rather to discourse of it here, though the Ceremnny of Creation is perfnrmed after the manner of *Knights Batchellors*, *viz.* by Dubbing with a Sword, and their Title a bare mark of Honor only; being by our Learned *Selden* affirmed to be, [l] *the known Degree of Knighthood given by Supreme Princes, or such as have a like power with them.*

l *Additions to the Titles of Honor*, p 935.

Besides, we have been informed thence, that those *Knights* are not governed by any Laws or Statutes, and are without any Revenue or Indowment of Lands: That they are not under any particular obligation or tye, except what is common to them with other Subjects, namely that of Fidelity to the Prince, being in all things else left to their own liberty. To this we add, that the Honor is also bestowed on absent persons, by Letters Patent or Codicils (as is the Knightly Dignity sometimes) among some of which, that to the learned Sir *Daniel Heinsius*, is given us by [m] Mr. *Selden*.

m *Ibid.*

It had its Title from St. *Mark* the Evangelist, whose [n] Body was translated to *Venice*, from *Alexandria* in *Ægypt*, in the year of our Lord [o] 828. in the time of *Justinianus Patritius* Duke of *Venice*, ever since which time this *Saint* hath been assumed and taken for the [p] titular Angel and Guardian of this noble City, and his Picture very anciently painted upon their Banners and Ensigns; but as to the Institution, it is not certainly determined, when, or by whom, it was first brought in use.

n *Platina in vita Greg.* 4. *pag.* 114.
o *Alphons. Ciaconius de Vita & Gestis Pontif. l.1. p.* 224.
p *Plat. loco nuper cit.*

The Badge of Honor, wherewith these *Knights* are adorned, is a Gold Chain, put over their shoulders, at the instant of their Creation, whereat depends a Medal; on the one side is represented the Symbol of St. *Mark*, to wit, the [q] Figure of a *Lyon*, having wings, holding in his right Paw a drawn Sword, and in his left a Book, spread open, in which, this Motto, *Pax tibi Marce Evangelista meus*; on the other, the name of the *Duke* then living, beautified with a particular Impress; but in the other, he is represented on his Knee, receiving a Standard from the hands of St. *Mark*: and sometimes this *Medal* is worn on a *Cross* enamel'd blue.

q *Andr. Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq.* 1. *Quæst.* 2. *Sect.* 28.

I was further informed from the hand of the noble Signóre *Pietro Moccinigo*, that the *Duke* of *Venice* bestows this Honor, either privately in his Chamber, or publickly in a full Colledge: Some also are made *Knights* by the *Senate*, and those of the *Venetian* Nobility, at least persons of very eminent Quality and Character, who have merited well of this Common-wealth, by some extraordinary piece of service, either at home or abroad, or upon whatever occasion the *Senate* fees fitting: and forasmuch as the *Senate* is a representation of the whole Common-wealth, and that the Creations of these *Knights* are confirmed by publick Decrees; it is taken, that the Knights of their creating are of greater Dignity, than those made by the Duke. When the Creation is in a full Colledge, whether it be by the Senate or the Duke only, the *Collar* and *Medal* is bestowed at the publick Charge; but when by the Duke privately, then upon his particular expence.

These *Knights* wear the Honor among other Titles of Dignity, as I have seen it

it inscribed about the Effigies of Sir *Daniel Heinsius*, thus, DANIEL HEINSIVS D. MARCI EQVES ILLVSTR. HOLLANDIÆ ORDINVM HISTORICVS, POLITICVS, ET HISTORIARVM PROFESSOR BIBLIOTHECARIVS ACADEMIÆ ET SECRETARIVS. And among those other Titles given to that famous Mathematician and Astrologer Sir *Andrew Argoll*, that of his Knighthood by this Title, is also thus inserted, ANDREAS ARGOLVS D. MARCI EQVES, ET IN CELEBERRIMO LYCEO PATAVINO PROFESSOR MATHEMATICVS.

The Order of Seraphins *in Sweden.*

(20.)

In the year of our Lord [a] 1334. *Magnus* the Fourth, King of *Sweden*, in imitation of other Christian Princes, who had established Military Orders, instituted this of the *Seraphins*, or *Seraphick Knights*, otherwise surnamed of *Jesus*; in memory of the Siege laid to the Metropolitan City of *Upsala*.

The *Collar* of this *Order* was composed of [b] *Seraphins* and *Patriarchal Crosses*, the former of Gold, enamelled Red, the later also of Gold, but without any enamel: At the end thereof hung the [c] Image of *Christ* in an Oval. [d] *Favin* saith it was this Cipher IHS composed of three Letters, and signifying the name of *Jesus*, and in point four Nails. But [e] elsewhere 'tis said to be the Figure of the blessed *Virgin Mary*, and to make the thing yet more uncertain, [f] another tells us, it was a *Patriarchal Cross* that hung thereat.

a *Favin. in le Theat. d'Honneur. l. 7. c. 10.*
b *Mennen. p. 158.*
c *Gothofrid. Archont. Cosm. l. 3. p. 12.*
d *Loco cit.*
e *Tessera Genitilitia, p. 637.*
f *Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f. 92. b.*

The Order of the Sword *and* Military Belt *in Sweden.*

(21.)

We find mention made of another *Order* of *Knights* in *Sweden*, called of the [g] *Sword and Military Belt*, whose *Collar* consisted of *Swords* and *Belts* conjoyn'd (the Symbols of Justice and Love) the Swords somewhat bending towards the point, and so joined point to point, round into a Circle: But by whom or when this *Order* was instituted, we are not yet informed.

g *Mennen. p. 159. Archont. Cosm. loco cit. Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 2. Sect. 30. n. 71.*

The Order of the Knot *in Naples.*

(22.)

When [h] *Lewis* King of *Hungary* design'd a War against *Joane* Queen of *Naples*, he undertook an Expedition into *Italy*, not so much to deprive her of her Kingdom, as to revenge the death of his Brother *Andrew*; whom (as 'tis reported) Queen *Joane*, his Wife, had commanded to be strangled.

After many troubles and three years of War, they came to an accord, the first of *April*, *anno* 1351. and the 26. of *May* following (with the consent of Pope *Clement* the Sixth) the Queen, and *Lewis* Prince of *Tarentum*, were crowned King and Queen of that Realm; and that same day, in memory of such a happy Peace, and to take away all suspitions and enmities; the Prince instituted this *Order* of *Knights*, into which entred threescore and ten of the illustrious Lords in blood of *Naples*, and some other Strangers.

The *Habit* he appointed was *White*, and for the *Orders* chief *Ensign*, he gave a *Knot* (the Embleme of Love and Friendship) intermixt with Gold: and as the like Institutions in that Kingdom, commonly ended with the death of their Founders; so this *Order* expired in a short time.

h *Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f. 38 b. videsis Pand. Collenuccius Hist. Neop. l. 5. Angel Constantin. Hist. Neop. l. 6. An. Pacca de Ord. & Societ. militar.*

The Order of Knights of the Annunciade *in Savoy.*

(23.)

[i] *Ame* the Sixth of that name, Earl of *Savoy*, surnamed *Conte le Verde*, instituted this *Order* under the Title of the [k] *Collar*, in the year of our Lord[l] 1362. in honor of the 15[m] Divine Mysteries of the *Rosary*.

[n] *Andrew Favin*, on a mistaken ground, calls it the *Order of the Snares of Love*, in regard (as he alledgeth) the Founder had received of his Lady, the favour of a Bracelet, made of the Tresses of her hair, knit or plaited in Love-knots, and that the four Letters, afterward interlaced by the Founder, within such like Love-knots should signifie, *Frappés, Entrés, Rompés, Tout.*

But *Francis Capre* (Councellor and Secretary of State to the prefent Duke of *Savoy*) who hath given an account of the [o] Institution, together with the several restaurations of this Order, from the Records thereof (preserved in the Charter-house in *Pierre Chastle*, appointed at the time of the Foundation, for the *Seat* of the *Order*) [p] confutes this error of *Favin*, and with him several others, who have unwarily swallowed down the same mistake.

[q] *Mennenius* and [r] *Miræus* take not the least notice of its denomination from the *Collar*, but call it the Order of the *Annunciation* in *Savoy*: But it is cleer enough from the *Founders* [s] last Will and Testament, bearing date the 27. of *February*, *anno* 1383. and from what [t] *Capre* and *Guichenon* alledge, as also from the [u] *Statutes* of *Ame* the Eighth, that at the time of the Foundation, it was called the *Order of the Collar*: under which name it continued, till the time of *Charles* the Third, surnamed *le Bon*, Duke of *Savoy*, when (and not before) it had bestowed on it the Title of the *Annunciation*, from the Picture of the History of the blessed Virgin *Mary*, by him first made appendant to the *Collar*, in the year 1518.

The [w] *Founder* appointed the number of his *Knights* (reckoning himself the Chief and Sovereign for one) to be fifteen, (among whom we find [x] Sir *Richard Musard*, an *English* Gentleman, recorded) agreeable to the number of the before mentioned Divine Mysteries; but in the additional Statutes made by *Ame* the Eighth (first Duke of *Savoy*) *anno* 1434. and by Duke *Emanuel Philibert*, 1568. there is a permission given to augment their number, by adding five to the former fifteen, but the Soveraigns have not always been confin'd to this number.

Besides the Institution of this Order, the *Founder* erected and founded the [y] Chartreuse of *Pierre Chastle* in *Bugey*, wherein were entertained 15 Priests, and they obliged to celebrate every day 15 Masses, to the honor of the 15 Joys of the blessed Virgin, to the Souls health of him, his Predecessors, and all who had been, were, or should hereafter be *Knights* of this *Order*. So that the resemblance of this Institution, with the foundation of this religious house, is some argument, that the Order, as well as the House, were founded upon a religious and pious, not amorous or wanton account.

At *Pierre Chastle* were the Ceremonies observed, and the Chapters held by the Sovereign and Knights, [z] until the time that *Charles Emanuel* First of that name, Duke of *Savoy*, exchanged it, and some other places, for the Marquisate of *Saluces*, upon the Treaty of Peace concluded at [*] *Lyons*, 17. *Jan.* 1607. and then the Anniversary of the Feast, and celebrations of the Order (being fixt to the Feast-day of the *Annunciation* of our *Lady*) were translated from hence, first to the Church of St. *Dominick* at *Montmeillar*, and afterwards by his declaration, dated at *Turin* ‖ 3. *Dec.* following, to the Hermitage of *Camaldule*, situate upon the Mountain of *Turin*, vulgarly called *l' Eremo Assis*, where they were performed, as formerly, at *Pierre Chastle*.

The [a] ancient *Collar* (from which also the *Order* received its denomination) was made of Gold, about three fingers breadth, as may best be collected from the

[i] [k] [l] [m] *Fran. Capre en le Catalogue des Chevaliers de l'Ordre du Collier de Savoye, dist. de l'Annonciade, Edit. Turin.* 1654. *vide etiam Samuel Guichenon Histoir. Genealog. de la royal Maison de Savoy. l. 1. p. 111. Mennen. Delic. Equest. p. 133. & Sansovin. Orig. de Caval f. 33.*

[n] *Theat. d' Honneur, l. 8. c. 5.*

[o] [p] *In Advis au Lecteur.*

[q] *Pag. 131.*

[r] *Pag. 39.*

[s] *Guichenon. Hist. Geneal. de la Maison de Savoy. l. 6. p. 217.*

[t] *Locis supra relatis.*

[u] *Sansovin. f. 33.*

[w] *Capre. Guichen. Sansovin. locis præd.*

[x] *Guichenon. l. 2. p. 414. & Capre en le Catalog. des Cheval. &c.* Portoit d'or, a trois Pals d'azur.

[y] *Capre in advis. au Lecteur. Guichenon. l. 6. p. 217.*

[z] *Guichenon. l. 1. p. 113. & l. 2. p. 791.*

[*] *Idem Guich. l. 6 p. 548.*

[‖] [a] *Fr. Capre, ut supra.*

the Founders own Collar, which he [b] gave to the religious at *Hautcomb*, in whose Vestry it is yet preserved. Upon this *Collar* are engraved these Letters F.E.R.T, represented in ancient barbarous Characters after this manner ✠•✠•✠•✠• and one Knot (commonly called the Knot of *Savoy*) at the end of each *Fert*, which with three other like Knots entwin'd one within another, made up the circumference depending at the Collar: nevertheless, without any Figure or Image within the Circle.

[b] *Guichenon. l.1.p.112.*

These old Characters (as hath been generally taken and supposed) were the initial Letters of this Epigraph, *Fortitudo ejus Rhodum tenet*, alluding to the glorious actions of *Conte Ame le Grand*, who gallantly defended the Isle of *Rhodes*, against the *Turks*, *anno* 1310.

But the world hath now received more light in this particular, from the industrious pains of *Monsieur Guichenon*; who has very fortunately cleered this so common a mistake from all obscurity.

[d] *In Hist. Genealog. prad. l.1.p.247.*

For the Devise of the House of *Savoy*, consisting in the before noted word, or four Letters, appears to be more ancient, than the time of *Conte Ame le Grand*, in regard that *Lewis de Savoy*, Baron *de Vaud*, who dyed *anno Dom.* 1301. did always wear this Devise, as appears from some of his *Coyns*, which this Author [c] inferts; and further, the Monument of *Thomas de Savoy*, the First of that name, Son of *Humbert* the Third, *Conte de Savoy*, *de Piemont*, *&* *de Maurienne*, who died the 20. of *January*, *anno* 1233. and lies interr'd in the Cathedral Church of *Aoustie*, hath (on the Draught of the [f] Monument which *Guichenon* exhibits) a Dog lying at the feet of his Portraicture, which (on a *Collar* about his neck) bears this word *Fert*, without pointing also, or distinguishing of Letters; and is besides a strong proof, that this was but one word.

[c] *Idem ibidem.*

[f] *Idem. l.2. p. 251.*

But yet to add more strength to this assertion, he exhibits another convincing Testimony, from a [g] Brass Coyn of the same Earl *Thomas*, whereon is a bowing Escotcheon, charged with a Cross, and for the Crest, a Lyons head winged, and surmounted with a Peacocks Feather; on the one side of the Crest are these two Letters TS, being the initial and final Letters of his Christian name *Thomas*, and on the other side HI, the first and last Letters of the Surname *Humberti*, which signifies, *Thomas filius Humberti*: On the Reverse of this Coyn, is to be seen two Knots, of the fashion afore noted, and the word *Fert* in the midst.

[g] *Lib.1.p.141.*

He moreover gives us the Ectype of a [h] Silver Coyn, of *Peter de Savoy* (who for some time abode in *England*, in the Reign of King *Henry* the Third, and built that stately Structure in the *Strand*, called the *Savoy*) in which is represented the Devise *Fert*, in *Gothick* Characters.

[h] *Ib.p.145.*

From all which it is fully evident, that this *word*, as also the *Knot* and *Cross* were used for the Devise, Badge, and Arms of the House of *Savoy*, long before Count *Ame le Grand* relieved *Rhodes*, against the power of the *Turks*, or the time of the Institution of the *Order*; though for how long before is not certainly known; nor is the true interpretation of the word left rendred to Posterity.

We may here not unfitly add, that though Historians generally report for a truth, that *Conte Ame le Grand*, relinquished the *Eagle*, the ancient Arms of *Savoy*, and assumed the *Cross* of *Rhodes*, to wit, *Gules*, *a Cross Argent*, in memory of the relief he gave to that City; yet doth this particular suffer much contradiction. For it is made clear enough by [i] *Guichenon*, that some of this Conte's Ancestors, Earls of *Savoy*, and other Princes of that House, did bear the said Cross for their Arms, long before that famous action at *Rhodes*: Nevertheless he determines not when it was first so assumed by the House of *Savoy*, but modestly interposeth his conjecture; [k] conceiving, that upon the return of *Ame* the Third, Earl of *Savoy*, out of the *Holy Land*, *anno Dom.* 1147. he might assume the Cross for his Arms (for in the like kind we have several instances in the Arms of Families here in *England*, when their Ancestors returned home from that Country) as well for the honor he bore to this Pledge of our redemption, as for a memorable Badge of that his Military Expedition. And seeing that in those times Arms were not become hereditary, the Earls of *Savoy*, did one while bear an *Eagle*, another

[i] *Ib.l.1.p.126.*

[k] *Pag.127.*

another while the *Croſs*, until *Conte Ame le Grand* eſtabliſhed the later of theſe in his Family.

The ancient *Collar* had no [l] *Roſe* on the Circle of its pendant, or *Image* either of our *bleſſed Lady*, or St. *Maurice*, as[m] ſome relate: but was compoſed only of the aforeſaid word, linked together by a ſingle Knot, and three little Knots in the pendant; until the time of Duke *Charles* the Third, as may be proved by the ancient Collars of the *Soveraigns* of this *Order*, preſerved in the Monaſtery at *Hautcombe* in *Savoy* ([n] founded by Conte *Ame* the Third, *anno* 1125.) where moſt of the Soveraigns are interred, with the Figure of which Collar, *Fr. Capre* hath incompaſſed the Arms of all the *Knights*, from the firſt foundation, unto the time of Duke *Charles* the Third; as may be ſeen in his *Catalogue* of the *Knights* of this *Order*.

This ancient Collar is ſtill in uſe, and daily worn, but now called the [o] *little Collar* of the *Order*, being made of Gold, or Silver and gilt, about an inch broad, and of different weight. The *Knights* wear it about their neck, cloſe to the Collar of their Doublet, in which manner *Ame* the Tenth, Duke of *Savoy*, is repreſented, in his Picture at full length, now hanging in the Gallery at *Whitehall*, to which Collar (within a round formed of three Knots) hangs the Figure of the *Annunciation*.

As Duke *Charles* the Third reſtored much of its decayed ſplendor to this *Order*, ſo *anno* [p] 1518. did he introduce another larger Collar, and called it the *great Collar*, ſo that now the *Knights* uſe two Collars, the later being only worn upon days of Ceremony, and Feſtivals of the Order. This later and larger Collar weighs about 200 Crowns in Gold, and is compoſed of the word *Fert* interwoven with *Knots*, ſevered with *Roſes*, *viz.* 15 Roſes of Gold, whereof ſeven are enamell'd with White, and ſeven with Red, and bordered with two Thorns; as alſo the Figure of the *Annunciation* of the bleſſed Virgin, enamelled in various colours, pendant at three Chainets to another Roſe, coloured both White and Red.

We read not of any peculiar *Habit* aſſigned to the *Knights* of this *Order*, before the time of Duke *Charles* the Third, who brought into uſe the [q] great *Mantle* of *Crimſon Velvet*, his own being fur'd with Ermins, but the reſt of the *Knights* with Miniver, fringed and bordered with Knots, (to wit, of the faſhion of thoſe that adorn the Collar) in fine Gold: Under this Mantle is worn a Surcoat, of white Damask.

[r] Duke *Emanuel Philibert* his Son, changed afterwards the colour of the Mantle to Azure, and lined it with White Taffaty, of which Silk he alſo made the Surcoats.

But [s] *Charles Emanuel* altered the Mantle unto an Amaranthus or Purple Colour, ſeeded with Roſes, and Flames, in embroidery of Gold and Silver, bordered throughout with the Symbols of the Order, fringed with Gold, and lined with Cloth of Silver, tiſſued Blue, which continues hitherto in uſe: Under which inſtead of the White Taffaty Surcoat, is now worn a White Satin ſuit, embroidered with Silk, the Hoſe gathered upwards, in the faſhion of Trouſes.

Concerning the *Statutes* of this *Order*, the moſt ancient are thoſe of [t] *Ame* the Eighth (for there are none of the Founders extant) made at *Chaſtilion* the 30. of *May*, in the year of our Lord 1410. the original whereof is lodg'd in the Archives at *Turin*, which he augmented in the year 1434. and both are printed by [u] *Sanſovin*. Duke *Charles* the Third, made new Statutes at *Chambery* the 11. of *Sept. anno* 1518. theſe were enlarged by Duke *Emanuel Philibert*, *anno* 1568. and publiſhed in the year 1577.

l *Idem Guichenon, l. 1. p. 112.*
m *Fav. Theat. d' Honn. l. 8. c. 5. videſis Hierom de Bara, in la blaiſon des Armoiries p. 44 Marc. Gilb. de Varennes en le Roy d'Armes. p. 595.*
n *Guichenon in le Hiſt. Geneal. de la Maiſon de Savoy l. 6. p. 31.*
o *Capre loco ſupra relato. Guichenon. l. 1. p. 113.*
p, q *Ibid.*
r, s *Capre. Guichenon.*
t *Capre. Guichenon. l. 1. p. 113.*
u *In Origine de Cavall. f. 33. b. & 35. b.*

The Order of the Thiſtle of Bourbon *in France.*

(24.)

At the ſolemnity of the [a] marriage of *Lewis* the Second Duke of *Bourbon*, with *Anne* Daughter to the Count *Daulphine* of *Auvergne*, celebrated in the Town of *Arde*, on New-years day 1370. this Duke inſtituted the Order of *Knights* of our

a *Fav. Theat. d' Honneur. l. 3. c. 12.*

our *Lady*, otherwise called the *Thistle*, and the [b] first solemnities thereof were performed at *Nostre Dame de Maulins* in *Bourbonnois*, where he founded a College of twelve Canons in honor of the blessed Virgin.

b *Ibid.*

The ground of the Institution was [c] to strengthen this Dukes power and interest, for the aid of *Charles* Duke of *Orleans*, and of his two Brothers *Philip* and *John*, against the Faction of the House of *Burgundy*: And by joining of Flowers de Lis and Thistles (the Symbols of hope and courage) emblematically to express the nobleness of his Spirit, against all power of Fortune.

c *Menn. Delic. Equest. p. 142.*

He ordained a set number of *Knights* of this Society, to wit, [d] 26, therein comprehending himself and Successors Dukes of *Bourbon*, as Chiefs; and obliged these to wear daily a [e] *Belt* or *Girdle* made of *watchet colour Velvet*, lined with Crimson Sattin, embroidered with Gold, in the midst of which embroidery was curiously wrought the word ESPERANCE. This *Girdle* was fastned with a Buckle and a Tongue of Gold, bearded and checquered with green enamel, in form like to the head of a *Thistle*.

d *Favin.* e *Theat. d'Hon. loc cit.* f

On the Anniversary of the Festival (namely the day of the *Conception* of our *Lady* in *December*) the *Knights* wore *Cassocks* or *Surcoats* of *Carnation Damask*, with wide sleeves, gitded with the Girdle before described.

The [f] *Mantle* of this *Order* was of *Skie-coloured Damask*, having broad welts of Gold embroidered on the Collar, and lined with red Sattin; but the Mantlet of green Velvet.

The *Bonnet* was also of green Velvet, at the point of the band hung a fair Tassel of Crimson Silk and threds of Gold, the lining of Crimson Taffaty, and turned up after the antique manner, whereon they had embroidered the Golden Shield with the word *Allen*.

Whoso considers in this Constitution, the number of Knights, the principal colours of the Mantle, Surcoat and Girdle (with the injunction for wearing thereof) shall plainly see that this *Founder* took an exact pattern from the *Order* of the *Garter*, which he had observed in *England*, and acquainted himself with its Constitutions, while he was Prisoner in *Windsor* Castle: for here is little change or alteration, and only a *Belt* or *Girdle* made the chief *Ensign* of this, as the *Garter* was of that *Order*.

The great [i] *Collar* was of Gold, of the weight of ten Marks, enamelled with Green, opened like Network, which was fill'd with Flowers de Lis of Gold, and each of them (together with the Letters of the Impress) placed in a Lozenge of red enamel. At the bottom of the Collar, in an Oval of Gold (the Circle whereof was enamelled with Green and Red) appeared the Figure of the Patroness, the blessed Virgin *Mary*, surrounded with rays of the Sun, crowned with twelve Silver Stars, a Crescent of the same under her feet, enamelled with Purple and Skie colour, lastly at the end of the Oval depended the head of a *Thistle* enamelled Green, but bearded White.

i *Idem Favin. loco prad.*

Some little difference is put by [k] others in the fashion and composition of this *Collar*; namely, that it was made either of Gold or Silver, and framed of Flowers de Lis, and four leaves or Flowers of a Thistle, set in the form of a Cross.

k *Mennen. in Delic. Equest. p. 142.*

The Order of the Dove *in Castile*,

(25.)

Was instituted by [l] *John* the First of that name, King of *Castile*, in the City of *Segovia Anno Dom.* 1390. (so saith [m] *Mennenius* and [n] *Miræus*, but [o] *Favin* placeth it 1379.) and proposed to his Nobles, as a [p] reward to encourage them to prosecute the noble acts of his Grandfather King *Henry* the Second.

The [q] *Collar* of this *Order* was linked or enchained with the resplendent *beams* of the *Sun*, both waved and pointed,

l *Jos. Micheli Marquez en la Tesoro Militar. de Cavalliera. f. 81. b. And. Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 4. Sect. 4. n. 103.*

m *Delic. Equest. p. 154.*

n *Orig. Equest. p. 73.*

o *Theat. d'Honneur. l. 6. c. 12.*

p *Mennenius, loc. cit.*

q *Favin. & Menn. locis nuper cit.*

Tessera fuit Columba radiis circumdata & Torque dependens, *Mendo loc. cit.*

at

r *Micheli en Tesoro Milit. de Caval. f. 82 b.*

at which hung a golden *Dove* enamelled White, and [r] encompassed with rays, the Eyes and Beak Red.

Herewith the *Founder*, saith *Favin*, adorned himself on *Whitsonday* (yet *Mennenius* and *Miræus* will have it the Feast-day of St. *James*) and at the Altar of the great Church in *Segovia*, distributed other the like *Collars* to his intimate Favourites, together with a Book containing the *Statutes* of the *Order*. But he dying the very same year, before the Order had taken sufficient root, it became of small continuance.

The Order of the Argonautes of St. Nicholas *in Naples.*

(26.)

s *Tesoro Milit. v. de Caval. f. 60. vide etiam Pandol. Colenduc. Hist. Neap. l. 5. Aug. Constan. l. 8. Anellum Paca de Ord. & Societ Militar.*

[s] *Charles* the Third, King of *Naples*, instituted this *Order*, in the year of our Lord 1382. and with the *Ensign* thereof invested several of the Nobility of that Kingdom; with which as by a Bond, he designed to tye them one to another in a brotherly obligation.

The end of its Institution, was to preserve amity among the Nobles, to compose enmities, and suppress seditions; Insomuch, as if any of the *Knights* of this *Order*, were at variance one with another, and refused to be reconciled, the *Ensigns* were then to be taken from him: but [u] some say the ground and cause, was to advance Navigation, which the *Neopolitans* stood in need of. To which the principal *Ensign* of this *Order* seems rather to allude, it being a [w] *ship* floating upon the waters, in the midst of a storm, having this Motto, *Non credo tempori.*

u *Briet. Annal. mundi. par. 2. Tom. 2. p. 300.*
w *Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Quæst. 2. Sect 31. n. 97.*

[x] In the Convent of that sumptuous Church, which St. *Nicholas* Bishop of *Smyrna* caused to be built, was the grand Feast held, on the Anniversary of that *Saint*.

x *Tesoro Milit. de Caval. loc. cit.*

This King appointed a [y] *White Habit* for the *Knights*, and prescribed laudable Constitutions to the *Order*; but because he setled no Revenue thereupon, the splendor thereof ceased at his death; nevertheless [z] he obtained the end for which it was instituted.

Knights of St. Anthony *in Hainolt.*

(27.)

a *Alb. Miræus Orig. Equest p. 80 videsis Jurisprud. Heroic. p. 350.*

[a] *Albert* of *Bavaria*, Earl of *Hainolt*, *Holland*, and *Zeland*, designing an Expedition against the *Turks* and *Moors*, instituted this *Order*, in the year of our Lord 1382.

The *Ensign* thereof was a golden *Collar*, wrought after the fashion of an *Hermits Girdle*: at which hung a walking Staff, and a little golden Bell.

The Order of the Porcupine *in France.*

(28.)

b *Favin. in le Theat. d' Hon. l. 3. c. 11.*

[b] Monsieur *Lewis* of *France*, Duke of *Orleans*, instituted this *Order*, in the year 1393. to honor the Baptism of his eldest Son *Charles*, by *Valentina* his Wife, Daughter to *John Galeas* Duke of *Millan*; and made choice of the *Porcupine* for his Devise, with this Epigraph *Cominus & Eminus*; not only out of the high hopes he conceived of this Child, [c] but also to intimate something of revenge against *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, his mortal Enemy, no less than self-defence, against all his designs and assaults, of which this Animal is a proper Emblem.

c *Ibid.*

[d] *Paradine*, [e] *Mennenius*, and [f] *Micheli*, make *Charles*, the Son of this Monsieur *Lewis*, the Founder *anno Dom.* 1430. in imitation or emulation of *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*, Founder of the *Order* of the *Golden Fleece*; but [g] *Favin* strengthens his foresaid relation, from the authority of one *Hennotin de Clerianx* an *Herald*, who

d *Apud Favin.*
e *In Delic. Equest. p. 129.*
f *Tes. Milit. de Caval f. 95 b.*
g *Loc supra cit.*

who attended the forementioned Christning in his Heralds Coat, and set down an account of the Institution by Monsieur *Lewis*, together with the names of the Princes, Lords, and Gentlemen, on whom he then bestowed his new erected *Order*, their number being 25, including the *Founder*.

The [h] *Habit* assigned to the *Knights* were *Surcoats* of *Violet Velvet*, and over them *Mantles* of *Watchet Velvet*, lined with Carnation Satin.

The [i] *Collar* was formed of Gold Chains, at the end whereof hung a *Porcupine* of Gold, upon a little enamelled hillock of Grass and Flowers; which [k] Creature was also embroidered on the Knights Belts.

h } *Ibid.*
i }
k *Gotofrid. Archont. Cosm. l. 3. p. 10.*

The Order of the Lilly *in Aragon.*

(29.)

According to [m] *Hieronymus Zurita*, this *Order* was instituted by *Ferdinand* King of *Aragon*, called the *Infant* of *Antiquera*, in the year of our Lord 1403. and dedicated to the honor of the *blessed Virgin*.

The *Collar* was composed of [n] *Bough-Pots*, fill'd with *White Lillies*, interlaced with *Gryphons*; and as [o] *Hieronymus Romanus* reports, was vulgarly called *La Orden de la Terraca o de las Azucenas*, *ò Jarra de S. Maria*, which is as much as to say, *The Order of Lillies, or the Vessel of St. Mary.*

[p] *Favin* gives it under the Title of the *Looking-glass of the blessed Virgin Mary in Castile*, instituted (as he saith) in honor and memory of a Victory, which this King *Ferdinand* had obtained in that Kingdom against the *Moors*, *anno* 1410. to wit, seven years after the time assigned by *Zurita* for the foundation. The Founder transplanted this *Order* with him into *Aragon* 1413. when he received the Crown of that Kingdom, and where it continued under the Sons of this King, but no longer.

m *In reb. Aragon. l. 12. c. 30. vide Miræum in Orig. Equest. p. 77.*
n *P. Palliot in la vraye & parfaite Science des Armoiries. p. 498.*
o *Apud Menn. p. 67.*
p *Theat. d'Hon. l. 6. c. 16.*

The Order of the Dragon overthrown *in Hungary.*

(30.)

The Emperor *Sigismond*, surnamed the [q] Glorious (for the many Battels he gained over the barbarous Nations, in defence of the Christian Religion) [r] having greatly laboured the peace of the Churches of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and, by his Travels into *England*, *France*, and *Spain* (to invite those Princes to join with him in that his Enterprise) brought the same to pass by the Council of *Constance*; out of extream joy at the accomplishment thereof, instituted this *Order*, in the year of our Lord 1418. for defence of the Christian Religion, and to [s] crush all Hereticks and Schismaticks that should arise: which *Order* in short time became of high esteem, not only throughout *Hungary*, but *Germany* also.

The *Knights* wore daily for their *Ensign* of Honor, a [t] *Green Cross flory*, on solemn days a *Scarlet Cloak*, and on the Mantlet of Green Silk a double Chain of Gold (*Micheli* saith a Green Ribbon) at the end of which hung a *Dragon* dead, with broken Wings, in the posture of being overcome (the Symbol of Heresie vanquished) and the whole enamelled with variety of Colours proper. But this *Order* [u] continued not long, for it almost expired with the *Founder*.

Peter Beloy, President of *Tholouse*, affirms he had seen a [w] Diploma, dated *anno* 1413. purporting that *Basilius Coldba* Marquess of *Ancona* was admitted into this Order, in these very words, *Te quem manu propria militiæ cingulo & societatis nostræ Draconicæ ac Stolæ seu amprisiæ charissimi fratris nostri Regis Aragoniæ insignivimus, &c.*

q *Jos. Micheli en Tesoro Militar. de Cavall. f. 90. b.*
r *Favin. Theat. d'Honn. l. 7. c. 1. Menn. p. 155.*
s *Tesoro milit. de Cavall. loc. cit.*
t *Favin. loc. cit.*
u *Heyl. Cosmogr. l. 2. p. 190.*
w *Menn. p. 156.*

Equites Tusini *in Bohemia.*

(13.)

a *In Delic. Equest. p.* 156.
b *Michelis. f.* 60. *b.*

We find but a bare mention thereof made by [a] *Menenius*, and that it was erected in the Kingdom of *Bohemia* (or else both in [b] *Bohemia* and *Austria*) but he doth not in the least inform us either of the cause of its Institution, the Badge of the Order, or to what the Title refers.

The two first of these particulars *Jos. Micheli* supplies, but as to the third, we cannot give so perfect an account as we would; yet we remember to have read somewhere, that this Order had its name from *Toca*, a Cap or Coif.

c d e *Micheli Loco prædicto.*

The [c] Arch-Dukes of *Austria* (saith he) were Founders of this *Order*, which they instituted to ingage their Subjects in the defence of the Christian Religion, and expulsion of the *Turks*, and those they called Hereticks, out of their Dominions: for having about 200 years maintained a War with vast and excessive charge, by erecting this *Order*, and bestowing upon the *Knights* thereof all that they gained in War towards their supportation, they very much eased themselves in their Military Expences; and indeed this proved so great an encouragement to them, that in a few years (performing service wheresoever their Chiefs commanded them to ingage) they cleared their Provinces almost of both *Turks* and *Schismaticks*.

The [d] *Ensign* of this *Order* was a plain *Green Cross*, and the *Habit* of the Knights *Red*.

This and the following Order (saith the same [e] *Author*) were under the Rule of St. *Basil*, and profest conjugal Chastity and Obedience; but we see not from what ground he alledges this; for if so, then ought we to have placed it among the *Religious* rather than *Military Orders*, these being absolute notes and marks thereof. But inasmuch as we [f] elsewhere find, that *Albert* the Emperor adorned *Moyses Didacus de Valera* in *Spain* (a Knight of known and approved courage) with the *Ensigns* of his three *Orders*, *viz.* of the *Dragon*, as he was King of *Hungary*; of the *Tusin*, as King of *Bohemia*; and with the Collar *de la Disciplinas*, as Duke of *Austria*, it is hence manifest, they were all compleat *Military Orders*, of which this Emperor was *Soveraign* or *Chief*: for no man can be admitted into more than one Order at a time (if it be of a religious Constitution) and whensoever he obtains leave to change that Order, he cannot be received into another, without relinquishing the former.

f *Menn. Delic. Equest. p.* 156.

Ordo Disciplinarum *in Austria.*

(32.)

g *En Tesoro milit. de Caval. f.* 59. *b.*
h Tessera erat Aquila alba in fidei Symbolum. *Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq.* 1. *Quæst.* 2. *Sect.* 31. *n.* 75.
i *Menn. loco præd.*

Bohemia (saith [g] *Micheli*) finding it self very much endangered by *Turks* and *Hereticks*, the Kings thereof instituted this *Order*, to suppress, or at least to keep them under, and to secure the Confines of that Kingdom. But I suppose, this Author means *Austria*, in regard it appears immediately before to have been conferr'd by the Dukes of that Country.

The *Collar* of the *Order* had a [h] White *Eagle* hanging thereat.

This, and the former *Order*, together with that of the *Dragon* in *Hungary*, are said to have flourished in *Germany*, in the Reigns of the [i] Emperors, *Sigismund* and *Albert*.

Ordo de la Scama *in Castile.*

(33.)

k *Idem Menn. p.* 117.
l *Jos. Micheli, f.* 38. *a.*

This *Order* received Institution from [k] *John* the Second, King of *Castile*, about the year of our Lord [l] 1420. to perswade and stir up his Nobility to fight against the

the *Moors*. For he being overcharged with War, designed this *Order* chiefly to awaken their courage, for the defence of his and their own Estates: which afterwards upon all occasions they performed so well, and gave so great demonstrations of their Valour, that in a short time the *Moors* were vanquished.

What their *Symbol* or *Ensign* was, or the reason of the Title *de la Scama*, happened to be so far worn out, that [g] *Hieronymus Romanus* (who wrote the life of this King *John*) professeth he knew not what was meant or intended by it, though he had been very diligent in the search thereof.

Yet [h] *Jos. Micheli* informs us, that their Enfign was a *Cross*, composed of *Scales* of *Fishes*, which does plainly enough demonstrate it to be derived from the Latin word *squama*, from whence comes the Spanish word *Scama*, that signifies the Scale of a Fish.

Some that speak of this *Order*, say [i] nothing as to its beginning, being ignorant of the *Founder*; but it is generally believed to be Instituted by the foresaid King *John*, in whose time it flourished; insomuch as there were few of his Nobility, but were also *Knights* thereof.

The [k] duty to which they were obliged, was to defend the Kingdom of *Castile* against the *Moors*, and to dye in defence of the Christian Faith; besides which, upon every occasion, when the King went out to War, they march'd before him.

Their [l] Priviledges were given them by King *John*, as also Statutes and Rules to be governed by. Upon whose [m] death the splendor of this Order was eclipsed; as many times it hath fared with other Foundations in the like case: the Successors, wanting the zeal and love for their continuance, equal to that of the Founders for their Institution.

g *Apud Mennen.*

h *En su Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f. 38.* Insigne fuit super togam candidam Crux ex squamis confecta. *Mendo de Ord. milit. Disq. 1. Quest. 4. n. 98.*

i k l m *Micheli, loc. cit.*

The Order of Knights of the Golden Fleece *in Flanders.*

(34.)

[o] *Philip* the Second, Duke of *Burgundy*, of the second and last Line, issuing out of the House of *France*, surnamed the *Good*, instituted this *Order*, under the Title of the *Golden Fleece*, in memory of the great Revenues he raised by the traffick of Woolls with the *Low Countries*. Some will have it erected in commemoration of valiant [p] *Gideon*, who with 300 men vanquished a numerous Army of *Midianites*. Or else (according to others) the *Founder* followed the example of [q] *Jason*, and his *Argonautes*; whose Expedition to *Colchus* against *Aetes*, he perhaps might intend to imitate, by a Voyage into *Syria* against the *Turk*.

Whatsoever the occasion was, 'tis certain (from the preamble of the *Statutes* of Institution) that this Duke out of the perfect love he bore to the noble estate of *Knighthood*, founded this Order, to the glory of the *Almighty Creator* and *Redeemer*, in reverence of the Virgin *Mary*, and honor of St. *Andrew*, the Apostle and Martyr (whom he made *Patron* thereunto) to the advancement of the holy Faith, the service of the Catholick Church, and promoting of Virtue. For the maintaining and upholding of which, and for the increase of honor and fair renown, no less than the correction of Vice, [r] several good orders, set down in the Institution, are appointed to be observed, at the Chapter held on the last day of every Annual Feast of the Order.

The day of Institution, was the [s] 10. of *January*, *anno Dom.* 1429. on which very day the *Founder* solemnized his Marriage, with *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *John* King of *Portugal*, in the City of *Bruges* in *Flanders*.

The number of *Knights* first chosen, were [t] 24. beside the Duke, *Chief* and *Supream*, who reserved to himself the nomination of six more at the next Chapter. But *Charles* the Fifth, *anno* 1516. encreased them to fifty.

And though the *Founder* at first resolved upon the *Feast* of [u] St. *Andrew* annually, for holding the solemnities of the Order; nevertheless in consideration of the shortness of the days, at that time of the year, and how troublesome it would prove, especially to aged *Knights*, who lived at great distance, to take a Journey in

o *Favin. in le Theat. d' Honn. l. 4. c. 5.*

p *Jurisp. Heroica. p. 429. apud Joh. Germanum primum Ordin. Cancellar.*

q *Ibid. apud Olivar. Marcanum. vide Men. Delic. Equest. p. 135. & 137.*

r *Ordin. hujus statuta Aurei Velleris. Art. 31, 32, 33, 34, & 35.*

s *Praefatio ad eund. Statut.*

t *Art 18. Mennen. Delic. Equest. p. 136, 137. Jurisprud. heroica. p. 483.*

u *Art. 22.*

in so cold a season; it was afterwards ordained, that the Grand *Feast* and General *Assembly*, should be kept [w] from three years to three years, on the first of *May*, in such place as the Sovereign of the Order should beforehand give competent notice of.

w *Ibid.*

As to the *Habit*, it was at first ordained, that at the Grand Solemnity, the *Knights* should wear three different *Mantles*, to wit, the first day of the Feast, of [x] *Scarlet Cloth*, richly embroidered about the lower end, with Flints struck into sparks of Fire, and Fleeces, with Chaperons of the same; and the same day after Dinner, to proceed to Vespers in [y] *Mantles* of *Black*, and black Chaperons: The day following, the *Knights* were to hear the grand Mass of our Lady, [z] clad as should seem good to themselves. But Duke *Charles*, Son to the *Founder*, appointed them *Mantles* of *White Damask*, for that days Ceremony, and changed their Cloth Mantles into Velvet.

x *Art.* 25. & 26.
y *Art.* 27.
z *Art.* 28.

The great *Collar* is composed of [c] *double Fusils*, interwoven of equal bigness, in form of the Letter B. with *Flint-stones*, seeming to strike fire, and sparkles of fire between them, at the end whereof doth hang the resemblance of a *Fleece of Gold*, enamelled in its proper Colours. These [d] *Fusils* are placed back to back, two and two together, thereby representing the Letter B both ways, intending to signifie *Bourgoigne*, they are also intermingled with *Flint-stones*, in reference to the Arms of the ancient Kings of *Bourgoigne*; but it was the devise of the *Founder* to ingirt them with sparkles and flames of fire. To the *Flint*, *Paradine* (in his Heroical Devises) ascribes this Motto, *Ante Ferit, quam Flamma micet*, and to the *Fleece* this, *Pretium non vile laboris*.

c *Joan. Jac. Chifflet. Insign. Gent. Equit. Ord Veler. Aur.*
d *Favin in le Theat. d' Hon. l.* 4. *c.* 5.

The *Jewel* is ordinarily worn in a double Chainet or Males of Gold, linked together at convenient distances; between which runs a small Red Ribbon: and so is *Philip* the Fourth, King of *Spain*, represented, wearing his Jewel in a Picture at full length, hanging in his Majesty's Gallery at *Whitehall*; or otherwise it is worn in a Red Ribbon alone.

The *Founder* ordained [e] four *Officers* to attend and serve the *Order*, after the manner declared in the Ordinances for their Instructions, annexed to the Statutes, namely, a *Chancellor*, a *Treasurer*, a *Greffier* or *Register*, and a *King* of *Arms*, called *Toison d' Or*.

e *Ord. Statut. a. Art.* 19.

[f] *Lewis* the Eleventh of *France* refused to accept of this *Order*, because his Predecessors were not accustomed to receive the Orders of their Subjects; for such were the Dukes of *Burgundy* accounted, who held that Dutchy and other Seigniories in homage leige to the Crown of *France*.

f *Sainte Marth. de la Maison de France. Tom.* 1. *p.* 891.

Albeit the Emperors of *Germany* are descended from *Philip* Arch-Duke of *Austria*, Duke of *Burgundy*, and Count of *Flanders*; nevertheless the power of conferring the *Order* is lodg'd in the Kings of *Spain* only, the Title of Head and Soveraign being solemnly resigned by the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth to his Son King *Philip*, the [g] 25. day of *October anno Dom.* 1556. in the Royal Chappel at his Palace in *Bruxelles*, and the Collar taken from his neck, and with his own hands put over his said Sons shoulders, in the presence of divers of the *Knights*, at which Ceremony he used this form of words, [h] *Accipe Fili mi, quem è Collo meo detraho, Tibi præcipuum* Aurei Velleris Torquem, *quem* Philippus Dux Burgundiæ *cognomine Bonus Atavus noster, Monimentum fidei sacræ Romanæ Ecclesiæ esse voluit, & hujusce Institutionis ac Legum ejus sac semper memineris*.

g *Jurisprud. heroica.*
h *Jurisprud. heroica. p.* 433.

Afterwards, though *Philip* the Second, King of *Spain*, invested the *Infanta* his Daughter *Isabella*, in the Dominion of the *Low Countries*, upon the Contract of her marriage with the Arch-Duke *Albert* of *Austria*, yet he [i] retained to himself, and Successors, Kings of *Spain*, and Dukes of *Burgundy*, the honor of being *Chief* of this *Order*, in which Crown it remains to this day.

i *Ibid.*

The *Statutes* (ratified under the *Founders* Seal the 27. of *Nov.* 1431.) are printed in the [k] *Jurisprudentia Heroica*, together with those other [l] additions and alterations which were since made by his Successors. So also are the [m] Priviledges granted to the *Knights* by the *Founder*, his Son *Charles*, and *Maximilian*, which received confirmation from King *Philip* the Second, *anno Dom.* 1556.

k *Pag.* 445.
l *Pag.* 462.
m *Pag.* 470.

The

The *Names* of the first [n] 24 *Knights*, and their *Successors*, to the number of 450. are there also registred, together with a Catalogue of the [o] *Chancellors, Treasurers, Registers*, and *Kings of Arms*, and lastly a [q] Figure of a *Knight*, vested in the *Habit*, may be there likewise seen.

n *Pag.* 483.
o *Pag.* 501.
q *Pag.* 499.

The Original and Foundation of this *Order* is written at large in *French* by *William* Bishop of *Tournay*, Abbot of St. *Bertin*, and second *Chancellor* to the *Order*, in a Treatise of his called *The Golden Fleece*, dedicated to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, Son to the *Founder*, and printed at *Troyes*, in the year of our Lord 1530. In this Work the *Author* treats of two manner of *Golden Fleeces*, *viz.* first of *Jason's Fleece* (of which he useth the testimony of *Eustathius*, to assert it for a true History) and by it represents the noble Virtue of *Magnanimity*, demonstrating several Virtues appertaining to the state of Nobility. Secondly, of *Jacobs Fleece* (*viz.* the party-coloured and streaked Fleece) by which he sets forth the Virtue of *Justice*, which Virtue principally appertaining to Kings, Knights, and noble persons, moved the heart of Duke *Philip* to institute this *Order*, under it comprehending the Virtues of both the other *Fleeces*.

The Order of St. George *at Genoa.*

(35.)

The [a] Republick of *Genoa* have an *Order* of *Knighthood* among them, dedicated to the honor of St. *George*, their titular *Saint* and *Patron*; it was instituted by *Frederick* the Third, Emperor of *Germany*, and the *Knights* thereof are called, [b] *Knights of St. George at Genoa*.

a *Menn. Delic. Equest. p.* 118.
b Equites Divi Georgii apud Genuenses. *ib.*

The *Ensign* is a *plain Cross Gules*, and worn by the *Knights* at a Chain of Gold about their neck.

c *Favin. Theat. d' Honn. l.* 8. *c.* 3.

The Dukes of *Genoa* are Chiefs thereof, and in regard their Dignity lasts but two years, the *Order* is much impaired through the inconstancy and alteration of times.

The Order of the Croissant *in France.*

(36.)

[e] *Rene*, or *Renatus*, descended of the second Line of the House of *Anjou*, King of *Jerusalem* and *Sicily*, &c. Duke of *Anjou*, Count of *Provence*, &c. erected this *Order*, under the denomination of the *Croissant*, or half Moon, in the City of *Anjou*, *anno Dom.* 1464. But the [f] *Saincte Marthe's* make it 16 years older, by placing the Institution in the year 1448.

e *Favin. Theat. d' Honn. l.* 3. *c.* 14.
f *Geneal. Hist. de la Maison de France. Tom.* 1. *p.* 824.

[g] *Jos. Micheli* reports, that *Charles* King of *Sicily*, and *Jerusalem* was the first Institutor, *anno* 1268. in the great Church at *Messina* in *Sicily*, on the day of St. *Lewis* King of *France*; but he by mistake confounds this Order with that of the *double Croissant* instituted by St. *Lewis* in *France*; and after his death retained and setled in *Sicily* by the said King *Charles* his Brother.

g *Tesoro Milit. de Cavall. f.* 54. *a.*

The end wherefore King *Rene* founded this *Order*, is noted to be in [h] honor of God, support of the Church, and exaltation of Knighthood. Over which he declared himself and his Successors Dukes of *Anjou*, and Kings of *Sicily* Chiefs.

h *Favin. loc. cit.*

He also chose [i] St. *Maurice*, Knight and Martyr, for *Patron*, and held the first Ceremonies in the [k] Church of *Angiers*, dedicated to his name.

i *Sainct. Marth. loco cit.*
k *Menn. p.* 163.

The [l] *Symbol* which the *Knights* wore on the right side of their *Mantle*, was a *golden Crescent*, whereon, in red enamel, was this word *L'oz*, signifying (in the opinion of *Peter Mathieu*) *L'oz en Croissant*, [m] whereby they were encouraged to search after the increase of valour and reputation.

l *Favin. ut supra.*
m *Heylin's Cosmogr. l.* 1. *p.* 170.

At this [n] *Crescent* was fastned as many small pieces of Gold, fashioned like Columes and enamelled with red, as the *Knights* had been present in Battels, Sieges

n *Favin. loc. cit.*

of

of Towns, Cities, or Castles, which gave due intimation to all men, of their valour shewed in martial services; for [o] none could be adopted into this *Order*, unless he had well merited in some of these kinds.

[o] *Ibid.*

The *Knights*, who were 36 in number (but the *Saincte Marthe's* say 50) did wear for the *Habit*, [p] *Mantles* of *red* or *Crimson Velvet*, and a *Mantlet* of *White*, with the lining and Surcoat of the same.

[p] *Ibid.*

The Order of the Ermine *in Britagne.*

(37.)

In the year of Christ [r] 1450. *Francis* the First of that name, Duke of *Bretagne*, in memory of his [s] Grandfather *John*, furnamed the *Conqueror*, or else in imitation of other Princes of the bloud in *France*, founded this *Order*, consisting [t] of 25 *Knights*, and thereupon also, new-built his Castle of the *Ermine*.

[r] *Favin. Theat. d' Honn l. 3. c. 17. Menn. p. 160.*
[s] *S. Marthe Hist. Genealog. de la Maison de Fr. Tom. 2. p. 583.*
[t] *Favin. loco* [u] *prad.*

He ordained the [u] *Habit* to be *Mantles* of *White Damask*, lined with Carnation, and the *Mantlet* of the same.

The great [w] *Collar* to be of Gold, composed of *Ears* of *Corn* in *Saltir*, bound above and beneath with two Circles of Gold (in imitation of the Crown of *Ceres*) hereby noting the care of Husbandry, which the ancient Counts and Dukes of *Bretagne* had, as also the fertility of that Province; and hence is this *Order* otherwise called of the *Ears of Corn*.

[w] *Ibid.*

[x] At the end of this Collar hung the [y] *Mus Ponticus*, or *Ermine*, passing over a Turf of Grass, diapred with Flowers, at the edge whereof was imbossed this Epigraph in French, *A Ma Vie*, the devise of his [z] Grandfather *John*, by which he made known the greatness of his courage, and rather than fail of his word, that he would undergo any misfortune.

[x] *Menn. p. 161.*
[y] Generosum incontaminati & sincerissimi animi Exemplar. *Menn. p. 161.*
[z] *S. Marthe. loco prad.*

This *Order* took ending, when the Dukedom of *Bretagne* became * annexed to the Crown of *France*, by the marriage of *Anne* Dutchess of *Bretagne* with *Charles* the Eighth, and he being dead, with *Lewis* the Twelfth, both French Kings.

Gotofrid. Archont. Cosmica. l. 3. p. 12.

The Order of the Ermyne *in Naples.*

(38.)

[a] *Ferdinand* the First, King of *Naples*, after the end of the War which he had with *John* of *Lorain*, Duke of *Calabria*, erected this *Order*, in the year of our Lord 1463. being moved thereunto upon the Treason intended against him, by *Marinus Marcianus* Duke of *Sessa*, and Prince of *Rossona*, his Brother-in-law; who raising a confederacy against him, intended to kill him, when they should be together, that so he might transfer the Kingdom to the Duke of *Calabria*.

[a] *Jos. Micheli. Marquez Tesoro milit. de Cavall. f. 93. b vide porro Jo. Pontan de bello Neapol. l. 1. Jo. Bitta Carafa. l. 10. Angel. Constant. l. 20. Anelus Paca de Ordinib. & Societ. milit.*

But this Plot being discovered, and the Duke apprehended by the King (his Subjects expecting that he should have executed Justice upon him) he not only forbore it, but having instituted this *Order* of *Chevalry*, the first of many that were invested with the *Collar* thereof, was this his Brother-in-law, (whom he not only pardoned, but also honored) and besides whom, admitted all the Noblemen of Title in the Kingdom thereinto.

The *Collar* was of Gold intermixt with *Mud* or *Dirt*, to which depended an *Ermyne*, and this Motto, *Malo mori, quam fædari.*

The Order of St. Michael *in Naples.*

(39.)

[b] *Albertus Miræus* makes this King *Ferdinand* Founder of another *Order* of *Knighthood* in *Naples*, in memory of St. *Michael* the *Arch-Angel*, Patron of *Apulia*. The [c] *Habit* of the *Knights* was a long *White Mantle*, embroidered with *Ermyns*,

[b] *In Orig. Equest. p. 76.*
[c] *Pag. 77.*

Ermyns, and the *Collar* of Gold composed of the Letters O, to which was added for Symbol, this Epigraph, *Decorum*.

This Order is likewise taken notice of by the Author of the [d] *Jurisprudentia Heroica*; but perhaps it may be the same with that of the *Ermyn*; since we observe the *Habit* hereof is embroidered with *Ermyns*, and might be otherwise called of St. *Michael*, if so be it were dedicated to his honor.

d Pag. 390.

The Order of Knights of St. Michael *in France.*

(40.)

[a] *Lewis* the Eleventh of *France*, considering how much the Factions of the Nobility of his Realm had disordered his Affairs, to the end he might reunite their affections to himself, and confirm the same, by new obligations of Honor, instituted this *Order* in the year of our Lord 1469. to which he gave the Title of St. *Michael*, this Arch-Angel being esteemed the [b] titular Angel and Protector of the Realm of *France*; in [c] reverence of whom the ancient Kings of *France* were wont to observe the Feast-day of this Saint with great solemnity, and keep an open Court.

a *S. Marth. de la Maison de France, tom.* 1. *l.* 1. *p.* 59. *& t.* 1. *l.* 14. *p.* 656. *Item Mennen. p.* 168. *& Miræus. p.* 641.

b Princeps Imperii Francorum. Gardien & Protecteur du Royaume de France. *S. Marthe loco supra cit.*

c *Arthur de Monstier, in Neustria pia. pag.* 382.

This King *Lewis* by the foundational Statutes of the Order (which passed his Royal Assent at *Amboise* the [d] first of *August* in the year aforesaid) ordained, [e] That the number of *Knights* should be 36. whereof himself and his Successors were to be Chief: but afterwards the number far exceeded, even to [f] 300.

d *Vincent. Lupan. de Magistrat. Francorum lib.* 1.

e *In Statutis Ord. Art.* 1.

f *Heyl. Cosmogr. l.* 1. *p.* 204.

The *Collar* of this *Order* is composed of [g] *Scallop-shells* of Gold, joined one with another and double banded, fastned on small Chains or Males of Gold; to the midst thereof is annexed an Oval of Gold, on which a rising hillock, whereon standeth the Picture of St. *Michael* combating with, and trampling upon the Dragon, all curiously enamelled, to which saith * *Mennenius* was adjoined this Epigraph, *Immensi tremor Oceani*.

g *Stat. Ord. Art.* 3.

* *In Delic. Equest. p.* 169.

The *Habit* appointed by the *Founder*, was a [h] *Mantle* of *White Damask* hanging down to the ground, furr'd with Ermyn, having its Cape embroidered with Gold, and the border of the Robe interwoven with Scallops of Gold, the Chaperon or Hood, with its long Tippet, was made of Crimson Velvet.

h *Art.* 32.

But afterwards King *Henry* the Second ordered, [i] That this Mantle should be made of Cloth of Silver, embroidered with three Crescents of Silver, interwoven with Trophies, Quivers, and Turkish Bows, semed and cantoned with Tongues and Flames of fire: and moreover that the Chaperons of Crimson Velvet, should be covered with the same embroidery.

i *Theat. d'Hon. l.* 3. *c.* 7.

The [k] grand Assembly was by the *Soveraign* and *Knights* directed according to the Statutes, to be held as a solemn Festival on *Michaelmas* day, and the [l] place appointed for celebration of these pompous Ceremonies, at the Church of [m] *Mount St. Michael* in *Normandy*, built by St. *Aubert*, upon St. *Michael*'s appearing to him in a Vision, and liberally endowed by [n] *Rollo* Duke of *Normandy* and his [o] Successors, but afterwards removed to *Bois de Vincennes* not far from *Paris*.

k *Stat. Ord. Art.* 31.

l *Art.* 19.

m Mons in procella Maris, vel in periculo Maris, aut Mons in Tumba. *Ar. Monstier in Neustria pia. p.* 371.

n *Idem, p.* 375.

o *Heyl. Cosmogr. l.* 1. *p.* 205.

There is an *Herald* of *Arms* appointed to this *Order* called *Monsieur St. Michel*, whose duty is to attend the Solemnities thereof, and [q] who in most things is precedented by our *Garter*, *King* of *Arms*.

q *Heylin, loco cit.*

Such care and moderation was used by King *Henry* the Third of *France*, when he instituted the *Order* of the *Holy Ghost*, not only to preserve the honor of this *Order* in its full splendor (notwithstanding the example of former times, where the rising of a new Order hath commonly proved the setting of the old) but to reform some miscarriages which had crept into it, by bestowing it upon some mean and undeserving persons; that he not only continued the annual Solemnities thereof, and Election of *Knights* thereinto; but also declared, that neither Strangers;

[r] Strangers, nor the Natives of *France*, who before are *Knights* of any other *Order*, should enter into that of the *Holy Ghost*, except those only of St. *Michael*.

[r] *Stat, de l' Ordre du Saint Esprit. Art.* 37.

The *Collar* of which *Order* is thereby made lawful to be worn, with that of the *Holy Ghost*, and usually represented within it, that being esteemed the more worthy place: And we are told it is now [s] customary for those that are design'd to be *Knights* of the *Holy Ghost*, to be admitted into the *Order* of St. *Michael* the Evening before they receive that Order.

[s] *Present State of France, Edit. Lond.* 1671. p. 314.

Knights of St. Hubert *in Gullick.*

(41.)

[t] *Gerard* Duke of *Gullick* and *Berg* (or as the *French* call them *Juliers* and *Mont*) Instituted a *Military Order* in the year of our Lord 1473. in veneration of St. *Hubert* Bishop of *Liege*, who died *anno* 727.

[t] *Miræus Orig. Equest. p.* 82. *Item Jurisprud. Heroic. p.* 390.

The *Statutes* thereof were written in the *Dutch* Tongue, whereunto was added a Catalogue of the *Knights* and their Arms, to the year of our Lord 1487. But further mention of this *Order*, or what was the *Badge* thereof, we do not find.

The Order of the Elephant *in Denmark.*

(42.)

Observing some difference among [u] *Writers* touching the *Institution, Collar*, and *Ensign* of this *Order*, I was in doubt what to say, till at length I haply met with better satisfaction from a Letter wrote *anno* 1537. by *Avo Bilde* Bishop of *Arhusen*, sometime Chancellor to *John* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, unto *John Fris* Chancellor to King *Christian* the Third, a Copy whereof was most freely communicated to me by *Monsieur Cristofle Lindenow Envoye* from *Christian* the Fifth, now King of *Denmark*, to his sacred Majesty, the present *Soveraign* of the most noble *Order* of the *Garter*.

[u] *Mennenius, Favin. Micheli, Gothofridus, Heylin, & others.*

This Letter informs him of the Institution, and some other particulars relating to the *Order*, to wit, That King *Christian* the first being at *Rome* (whither he had travelled upon a religious account) *Pope Sixtus* the Fourth, among other Honors, invested him with this *Order*, in memory of the Passion of our Lord and Saviour; and withal ordained, that the dignity of Chief and Supream, should be continued as a successive right to the succeeding Kings of *Denmark*.

This King founded the magnificent Chappel of the three Kings in the Cathedral Church at *Roschilt* (four Leagues from *Copenhagen*) where the Knights were obliged to assemble, upon the death of any of their Fraternity. He also admitted thereinto divers Kings, Princes, and Noblemen.

The chief *Ensign* of this *Order* was the Figure of an *Elephant*, on whose side (within a Rundle) was represented a Crown of Thorns with three Nails, all bloody; in honor and memory of the Passion of our blessed Saviour.

The *Knights* were obliged to the performance of acts of Piety, Alms Deeds, and certain Ceremonies; especially upon those days, on which they wore the Ensigns of the *Order*: But King *John* set so high a value upon it, that he wore them on every solemn Festival.

He also advanc'd the honor of this Order to so great esteem, that it became accepted by both our King *Henry* the Eighth, and *James* the Fifth King of *Scotland*, his Sisters Son; with whom the Ensigns thereof, remained as a Pledge and assurance of constant and perpetual friendship; with these he likewise invested divers Ambassadors, Senators, and noble *Danes*.

There is one *Ivarus Nicholai Hertholm*, a learned *Dane* (as I am informed) who hath written a particular Treatise of this Elephantine Order, but not yet printed; The scope whereof is to shew, that the beforementioned Epistle of the Bishop of *Arhusen* does not sufficiently make it appear, that it received its first Institution, when *Christian* the First had those many Honors conferr'd on him, by *Pope Sixtus* the Fourth.

And

And that the *Badge* was an Enſign meerly Military, anciently given as a memorial and incitement to the *Daniſh* Princes, who took upon them the defence of Chriſtianity againſt the *Moors* and *Africans*. 'Tis greatly preſumed that this Book (which we hope may ſhortly be publiſhed) will furniſh the world with many choice things relating to the antiquity and honor of the Inſtitution, Enſigns and Ceremonies of this royal Order.

Heretofore the *Knights* wore a *Collar* of Gold, compoſed of *Elephants* and *Croſſes*, faſhioned ſomething like Croſſes Ancrees (*Mennenius* calls them [w] Spurs) at which hung the Picture of the Virgin *Mary* to the middle, holding Chriſt in her arms, and ſurrounded with a Glory of Sun-beams: but they have long ſince laid this Collar aſide, and now wear only a Blue Ribbon, at which hangs an Elephant enamelled White, adorned with five large Diamonds ſet in the middle. Thoſe *Elephants* worn by the *Knights* in the Reign of *Chriſtian* the Fourth, had in the ſame place within a Circle the Letter C, and in the heart thereof the Figure of 4, made to ſignifie *Chriſtianus quartus*.

w *De Delic. Equeſt. p.150.*

This Honor hath been moſt commonly conferr'd by the Kings of *Denmark*, on the day of their Coronation, both upon the Nobles and Senators of the Kingdom.

It ſeems *Frederick* the Third brought into uſe (in imitation of the moſt noble *Order* of the *Garter*) an embroidered *Glory* of Silver Purle, wrought upon the left ſide of their Cloak or Veſt, on which was embroidered two Crowns within a Rundle, bearing his Motto, *Deus providebit*; for ſuch a one did *Count Guldenlow* (Ambaſſador hither from that King) wear at his reſiding here in *England*, *anno* 1669. But we are to note, that the Motto hath changed with the King, for that of the preſent King is *Pietate & Juſtitia*; and this the *Knights* of his Election now wear, in the middle of the Circle. Nevertheleſs all the *Knights* created by his Father, are obliged ſtill to continue the former Motto.

The Order of the Burgundian Croſs *at Tunis.*

(43.)

[a] *Charles* the Fifth, Emperor of *Germany* and King of *Spain*, after he had reſtored *Mulleaſſes*, King of *Tunis*, to his Kingdom (who had been expulſed thence by that famous Pyrate *Barbaroſſa*) on the day of his victorious entrade into *Tunis*, with ſolemn and magnificent Pomp, was apparelled in a Coat which he uſed to wear in Battel, whereon was embroidered the *Burgundian Croſs*: and being deſirous to gain the good reſpect of all, who had ſerved in that War, was chiefly willing to adorn the *Commanders*, that had behaved themſelves valiantly in the Victory, with ſome Badge or token of Honor, as a reward: and for this reaſon did he inſtitute this *Order* in the year 1535. on * St. *Mary Magdalen*'s day.

a *Mennen. Delic. Equeſt. p. 180. J. Lud. Gotofrid. Archont. Coſm. l. 3. p. 13.*

* *July* 22.

To this *Burgundian Croſs* he added a *Steel* ſtriking ſparks of fire out of Flint, with this Inſcription BARBARIA, to be the Badge or Enſign thereof: And for an additional Ornament, gave a [b] *Collar* of Gold, whereat hung the ſaid Badge.

b *Joſ. Micheli. f. 94. b. vide A. Mendo de Ord. milit. Diſq. 1. Queſt. 4. n. 105.*

[c] Some ſay this *Order* was inſtituted at ten of the Clock that day, it being alſo the hour of *Mercury*, in which reſpect the Character of that Planet is uſually enamelled on the one ſide of the Jewel, as the *Burgundian Croſs* is on the other. But it was of ſhort continuance, for it expired long ſince.

c *Men. Delic. Equeſt. loco cit.*

The Order of Knights of the Holy Ghoſt *in France.*

(44.)

This *Order* received [a] Inſtitution from the French King, *Henry* the Third, the firſt Chapter being held on the laſt day of the year 1578. The deſign thereof was chiefly to [b] unite and tye his Nobility and Prelates more firmly to

a *Favin. Theat. d'Honn. l. 3. c. 9. vide porro Delic. Equeſt. p. 187.*

b *S. Marth. Hiſt. Geneal. de la Maiſon. de France, Tom. 1. l. 1. p. 60. & l. 16. p. 789.*

their natural obedience, as also to[c] stir up and encourage them to persevere in the Romish Religion, to illustrate and adorn the state of the Nobility, and to restore its ancient splendor and dignity.

It had its denomination from the *Holy Ghost* (to [d] whose power and assistance the *Founder* usually ascribed all his Actions and Councils, advanced with most glorious and fortunate successes) in[e] remembrance that he was born on *Whitsonday* in the year of our Lord 1550. elected to the Crown of *Poland* on *Whitsonday* 1573. and lastly came to the Crown of *France* on *Whitsonday* 1574.

The number of *Knights* whereof this *Order* was to consist, is by the Statutes ordained to be one[f] hundred, besides the *Soveraign* or *Great Master*, which Office and Dignity is[g] inseparable from the Crown of *France*.

A long[h] *Mantle* of Black Velvet turned up on the left side, and opened on the right, was also appointed for the Habit of this Order, being at first embroidered round with Gold and Silver, consisting of Flowers de Lis and Knots of Gold, between three sundry Cyphers of Silver; and above the Flowers de Lis and Knots were thickly seeded or powdered Flames of Fire.

This great Mantle was garnished with a[i] Mantlet of Cloth of Silver, covered with embroidery, made after the same fashion as was the great Mantle, excepting only, that instead of Cyphers there were wrought fair Doves of Silver; and both these robes double-lined with Satin of Orange-tawney colour.

The great[k] *Collar* of the Order (worn over the Mantlet) was at first composed of Flowers de Lis, cantoned or cornered with Flames of Fire, interwoven with three Cyphers, and divers Monogramms of Silver, one was the Letter H, and a Greek Lambda, both double; the first of these belonging to the Kings own name, the other to the Queen his Wife, Madam *Lovisa de Loraine*; the other two were reserved in the Kings own mind, but not without[l] suspicion of referring to some wanton Amours.

But these[m] Cyphers were taken off from the *Collar*, and the embroidery of the Robes by *Henry* the Fourth his Successor, and for a mark of his Battels and Victories, Trophies of Arms were interlaced instead thereof, with the Letter H crowned (because it was also the initial Letter to his Christian name) whereout arose flames and sparks of Fire; and for the like reason hath this Letter H been since changed into the Letter[n] L, both by *Lewis* the Thirteenth, and *Lewis* the Fourteenth.

At this Collar hung a[o] *Cross*, artificially wrought and adorned with a rich enamel, in the midst whereof was represented the form of a *Dove*, in a flying posture, as descending down from Heaven, with full spread Wings: and to the end an Epigraph might not be wanting, some have attributed to it this, [p] *Duce & Auspice*, thereby to signifie, that those who wear it, ought to hope for good success in their designs and enterprises, being guided and assisted by the happy conduct of the *Holy Ghost*.

Besides these Ornaments, the *Knights* wear a[q] Black Velvet Cap adorned with a white Plume; their[r] Breeches and Doublets are of Cloth of Silver, and their Shoes White, tyed with Roses or Knots of Black Velvet.

The *Badges* ordained to be ordinarily worn, are a[s] *Cross* of Yellow or Orange colour Velvet, wrought in the fashion of a *Malta Cross*, fixed on the left side of the *Soveraigns* breast (but this at pleasure) and the like Cross sewed on the left side of the upper Garments of the *Prelates*, *Commanders*, and *Officers*; except in actions of Arms, and then they are permitted to wear them of Cloth of Silver, or White Velvet; having in the midst thereof a Dove embroidered in Silver, and at the angles or corners, Rays and Flowers de Lis of Silver.

Moreover [t] a *Cross* of the *Order* made of Gold, like to the Cross of *Malta* also, with a Flower de Lis in each angle thereof, was appointed to be worn about their necks in a Blue Ribbon, and to be enamelled White about the sides, but not in the middle; such as are *Knights*, both of the Order of St. *Michael* and the *Holy Ghost*, are to bear the Figure of St. *Michael* on the one side, and of a *Dove* on the other.

The Anniversary of the grand *Feast* is ordained to be held on the[u] first day of the

c *In Statut. hujus Ordin. Art.*12.
d *Mennen. p.*288.
e *Favin. Theat. d' Honn. l.*3. *c.* 7.
f *Art.*40.
g *Art.*2.
h *Art.*72.
i
k *Favin. loco nuper cit.*
l *Briet. Annal. Mundi, pars* 4. *Tom.*2. *p.*310.
m *Fav. Theat. d' Hon. l.*3. *c.*9.
n *S. Marthe de la Maison de France, Tom.*1. *p.*54.
o *Boitel. Histor. Relat. p.*40.
p *S. Marth. Tom.*1. *l.*1. *p.*61.
q *Boitel. loco cit.*
r
s *Stat. Ord. Art.* 82.
t *Art.* 83.
u *Art.*71.

the new Year, but the first part of the Ceremony begins always on the [w] last day of the old; the place for celebrating thereof is the Church of [x] *Augustine Friars* in *Paris*. An account of the first Solemnity, as also of some other which have succeeded in the Reign of King *Lewis* the Thirteenth, are set forth by *Monsieur Boitel*, in his historical relations of the Pomps and Ceremonies used at the receiving of several *Knights* into this *Order* by this King, and Printed at *Paris* 1620.

w *Art.* 28.
x *Art.* 79.

The Order of the Precious Blood of our Saviour Jesus Christ *of Mantua.*

(45.)

[a] *Vincentio de Gonzago* the Fourth Duke of *Mantua*, and Second of *Montferat*, instituted this *Order*, *anno Dom.* 1608. for defence and propagation of the Christian Religion, and in honor of three drops of blood of our Saviour and Redeemer; as also the more nobly to set forth the Nuptials of his eldest Son *Francisco* (who succeeded him in his Dukedoms) with *Margaret* of *Savoy*, Daughter to *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, and *Catharine* of *Austria*.

It was allowed and approved by Pope [b] *Paul* the Fifth, and consisted of 20 *Knights*; the *Founder* declared himself *Great Master*, and after him his Successors Dukes of *Mantua* and *Montferat*.

The *Collar* is fill'd with variety of fancy and design, being [c] composed of Ovals of Gold, some extended in length, others in breadth, and interlinkt with small Annulets. On those Ovals in length, is raised in white enamel, these words, *Domine Probâsti*; on the other in breadth, upon flames of Fire on a Trevet enamelled Black, a Crucible Grey, fill'd with small rods of Gold; he being desirous to intimate by this devise, that they who entred into this Society, should hold inviolable faith, and perpetual concord, in the greatest tryals and extremities.

At the end of this *Collar* is pendent a larger Oval of Gold, in which are exprest [d] two Angels standing upright, enamelled according to life, holding between them a Chalice crowned, in the Table whereof are figured three drops of blood, enamelled Red, and round the Oval, *Nihil isto triste recepto.*

On [e] *Whitsonday*, in the year 1608. were the first Ceremonies of this Order performed, in the Dukes Chappel of the Palace at *Mantua*.

a b c d e *Mennen. in Delic. Equest p.* 192 *videsis Favin. in le Theat. d' Hon. l.*8.*c.*8. *Mirarum, p.*74. *Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq.*1. *Quæst.* 2. *sect.*29.

The Order of Amaranta *in Sweden.*

(46.)

This Order of the *Knights* of *Amaranta*, was instituted by *Christina* Queen of *Sweden* about the year 1645. in honor of a Lady of that name of great beauty, courage, modesty, and charity: The chief *Ensign* is a Jewel of Gold, composed of two great AA, adorned with Diamonds on both sides, and joined together by reversing one of them, being set within a Circle of Laurel Leaves wreathed about with White, and on the four sides this Motto, *Dolce nella memoria*; which Jewel the *Knights* wear, either in a Gold Chain, or a Crimson or Blue Ribbon, as they best like of.

The Ceremony used at the Investiture of these *Knights* with this *Ensign*, is briefly this. The *Queen* being seated under her state, the designed *Knight* is brought up, with usual Reverences, and approaching neer the *Queen*, he kneels before her, then she in a short speech acquaints him with the inducements that invited her to bestow this honor, enumerating his services and merits; to which he makes a return of humble thanks.

This done, he takes his *Oath*, still kneeling and holding his hands between the *Queens* hands; the effect whereof is to defend the *Queens* person from harm, and the persons of the *Brothers* of the *Order*, to promote to his power, Justice, Virtue, and Piety, and to discountenance Vice, Injury, and Wickedness.

Having obliged himself to the performance of this Oath, the *Queen* puts about

him (in the manner of a Baudriek) a *Crimson* Silk *Scarf*, with the *Jewel* fastned thereto, after which the *Knight* ariseth and retireth, with all suitable reverence.

To an absent Prince or great Personage, whom the Queen intends to honor with this *Order*; she sends the Jewel, accompanied with her Letter, which serves instead of a personal Investiture.

Among many others admitted thereinto, were *Vladislaus Sigismundus* late King of *Poland*, *Carolus Gustavus* late King of *Sweden*, and *Adolphus Johannes* his Brother, also *John George* Duke of *Saxony*, the Lantgrave of *Hesse*, several *German* Princes, the Count *Montecuculi* General of the Horse to the Emperor, *Don Antonio Piementelli de Parada* Envoye Extraordinary from the King of *Spain*, as also divers great Lords of the Court of *Sweden*; and of our Nation, Sir *Bulstrode Whiteloke*, to whose friendly civility we are obliged for the foregoing Account.

SECT. II.

Of Knights *in the* West-Indies.

IF after all these we take some prospect of those Martial Honors, bestowed in the *West-Indies*, which the *Europeans* commonly call by the Title of *Knighthood*; as having some resemblance to it from the nature of the Ceremonies, used at the entrance and admittance into that Dignity, and the end for which they were bestowed; we shall find they properly enough deserve mention here.

a *Purchas Pilgrimage, part* 3. *p.*1063.

The[a] *Mexicans* gave the first place of Honor to the profession of Arms; and therefore on such as had performed valiant services in Wars, they bestowed great recompence, and gave them sundry Priviledges, which none else might enjoy.

Valour and Courage were with them the steps by which a man of mean extraction, ascended to high dignity and honor; and therefore the chief of their Nobility commonly sprung from the Camp.

Mexican Knights. b *Ibid.* Eagle Knights.

Among whom[b] *Motecuma* set *Knighthood* in highest splendor, ordaining certain *Military Orders*, with several *Badges* and *Ensigns*. The most honorable among the *Knights*, were those that carried the crown of their Hair tied with a little Red Ribbon, having a rich Plume of Feathers, from which did hang branches and rolls of Feathers upon their shoulders. They carried so many of these rolls, as they had done worthy deeds in War.

The King himself was of this *Order*, as may be seen in *Capultepec*, where *Motecuma*, and his Sons are represented, attired with those kind of Feathers cut in the Rock.

Lyon & Tyger Knights. c *Ibid.* d Grey Knights.

There was another *Order* of *Knighthood*, which they called of the[c] *Lyons* and *Tygers*; these *Knights* being commonly the most valiant, and most noted in the Wars, and always bore with them their *Badges* and *Armories*.

Other *Knights* there were, as the[d] *Grey Knights*, not so much respected as the rest, they had their Hair cut round about the ear. They went to the Wars, with Ensigns like the other *Knights*, yet not armed, but to the Girdle, while the most honorable were armed all over.

All *Knights* might carry Gold and Silver, wear rich Cotton, use painted and gilt Vessels, wear Shoes after their manner; but the common people only earthen Vessels, neither might they carry Shoes, nor attire themselves but in a gross Stuff called *Nequen*.

c *Ib.p.*1064.

Every *Order* of these *Knights* had their Lodging in the Palace, noted with their Ensigns; the first was called the Lodging of the Prince, the second of *Eagles*, the third of *Lyons* and *Tygers*, and the fourth of *Grey Knights*.

Knights of Cinaola.

They of the Province of *Cinaola* (an Inland part near new *Mexico*) created their *Knights* by giving a Bow, then setting them to encounter a Lyon, or some other wild Beast; the death of which was accounted the life of their Gentility.

The

The [f] *Inguas* Lords of *Peru*, in their solemn Feasts at *Cusco*, dedicated their Children to Honor, by adorning them with *Guarras* or *Ensigns*. They pierced their Ears, whipt them with Slings, anointed their Faces with Blood, and all in sign that they should be true *Knights* to the *Ingua*.

[f] *Purchas Pilgrim. part* 3. *p.*1045.

Those of the [g] blood royal in *Peru*, before they received the Degree of *Knighthood*, pass'd through sundry probations, but chiefly they performed some Military Exercises, and managed the Lance, Dart, and other Arms. The manner and order of tryal of their skill and courage, was both rigorous and severe; [h] as abstaining from all things for seven days, except a little raw Corn and Water, then being heartned again, their running of Races, afterwards, one day holding out, another besieging a Fort, then Wrestling, Leaping, Shooting, Slinging, throwing the Dart and Lance, exercising in all Weapons of War, and enduring to be beaten on the hands and legs with wands; all these things tending to discover whether they could bear the hard adventures of War, or not; which tryals if they could not manfully suffer, they were rejected and denyed *Knighthood*.

Knights of Peru.

g *Ib. part* 4. *p.* 1474.

h } *Ibid.*

Next followed the Circumstances and Ceremonies of their Creation, as [i] boaring a hole in the Ears, putting on gallant Shoes, as also Breeches, which before they might not wear, adorning their heads with Flowers, and an Herb that none else might use; and lastly giving an Axe into their hands. All which Mr. *Purchas* having set down at large, we thought it less needful to be more particular.

i } *Ibid.*

These Knights are by [k] *Mennenius* called *Oreiones*, from the Spanish word *Orejas*, which signifies flap or loll-eared, and in Latin *Auriculares*, either from the Leaf which they carried hanging in their Ears, or as *Jos. Micheli* saith, [l] for that they were only to negotiate, and treat of great Affairs with the Emperor, and had his ear at all times.

k *In Delic. Ecquest. p.*196.

l *Teforo Milit. de Cavall. f.* 96. *a.*

To these we shall add the account we have of an *Order* of *Knights* in *Japan*, intituled [m] *Mengoras*, part of them are called *Bonzoes*, living in Fraternities, as do our religious Brotherhoods in *Europe*. Some of these relate to their *Temples*, and have the charge of their *Idols*, and the service appertaining to them; others are *Knights* and follow the Wars, accepting pay from any Lord that imploys them.

Knights of Japan.

m *Ibid. f.* 77.

Of this *Order* there are found to be about 30000. who in many things bear parallel with the *Religious Knights* in *Europe*: They profess Chastity with such severity, that into their Cities no Woman may enter. They have the Rule given them over those Kingdoms which they conquer, and are very rich; some of them having not less than 60000 Duckets *per annum* Revenue.

Every day they make and present five Arrows to the publick Armory, which is a very prudent provision, in regard no man is sensible of the charge; and thereby they find themselves well provided upon all occasions.

SECT. III.

The Feminine Cavaliers *of the* Torch *in* Tortosa.

AND now, in close of our Discourse of the *Orders* of *Knighthood*, give us leave to bring up the rere, with a memorial relating to Feminine Valour, and of the later Age (for we shall not need to instance in the *Amazons* of old, whose fame in Arms is so generally known) since some of that Sex, having acquired honor and renown, by their personal courage and valiant exploits; have had bestowed on them the priviledge of living after the manner, and in the esteem of *Knights*.

The Example is of the noble Women of *Tortosa* in *Aragon*, and recorded by *Joseph Micheli Marquez*, who plainly calls them [a] *Cavalleros*, or *Knights*; or may I not rather say *Cavalleras*, seeing I observe the words [b] *Equitissæ* and *Militissæ* (formed from the Latin *Equites* and *Milites*) heretofore applied to Women, and

a Cavalleros del Passatiempo del Hacha. *Teforo Mil. de Cavall. f.* 96. *b.*

b *Jurisp. Heroïc. p.* 413.

and sometimes used to express *Madams*, or *Ladies*; though now these Titles are not known.

"[c] *Don Raymond*, last Earl of *Barcellona* (who by an intermarriage with * *Petronilla*, only Daughter and Heir of King *Ramiro* the Monk, united that Principality to the Kingdom of *Aragon*) having, in the year 1149. gained the City of *Tortosa* from the *Moors*, they on the 31. of *December* following, laid a new Siege to that place, for the recovery of it out of the Earls hands. The Inhabitants being at length reduced to great streights, desired relief of the Earl; but he being not in a condition to give them any, they entertained some thoughts of making a surrender. Which the *Women* hearing of, to prevent the disaster threatning their City, themselves, and Children; put on mens Clothes, and by a resolute sally, forced the *Moors* to raise the Siege.

"The Earl, finding himself obliged, by the gallantry of the action, thought fit to make his acknowledgments thereof, by granting them several Priviledges and Immunities; and, to perpetuate the memory of so signal an attempt, [d] instituted an *Order*, somewhat like a *Military Order*, into which were admitted only those brave *Women*, deriving the honor to their Descendants, and assigned them for a *Badge*, a thing like a *Fryars Capoucke*, sharp at the top, after the form of a *Torch*, and of a crimson colour, to be worn upon their Head-clothes. He also ordained, that at all publick meetings, the *Women* should have precedence of the *Men*; That they should be exempted from all Taxes; and that all the Apparel and Jewels, though of never so great value, left by their dead Husbands, should be their own.

"These *Women* (saith our *Author*) having thus acquired this Honor by their personal Valour, carried themselves after the manner of *Military Knights* of those days.

We may also, not unfitly, bring in here a word or two, of a more general *Ornament* of *Honor*, not long since made peculiar to this fair Sex, to wit, that of the *Cordon*; which some will have to be an [e] *Order*, or somewhat equivalent thereto, under that Title. The [f] Institution of it, is attributed to *Anne* of *Britane*, Wife to *Charles* the Eighth of *France*, who instead of the *Military Belt*, or *Collar*, bestowed a *Cordon* or *Lace* on several *Ladies*, admonishing them to live chastly and devoutly, always mindful of the Cords and Bonds of our Saviour *Jesus Christ*; and to engage them to a greater esteem thereof, she surrounded her Escocheon of Arms with the like *Cordon*. From which Example, it is since drawn into use, that the Arms of unmarried *Ladies* and *Gentlewomen* (usually represented on Escocheons made after the form of a Lozenge) are adorned with such a *Cordon*.

But if we look back into ancient times, we may see when *Women* among the *Romans* were first thought worthy of enjoying respect and peculiar favours; and in particular, out of a great honor to the Mother of *Marcus Coriolanus*, the liberty of wearing the *Segmenta aurea*, or bordures of Gold and Purple on their Garments (the latter of which the *Romans* raised to an high esteem) was [g] first permitted to the *Roman Matrons*, since she had so extraordinarily deserved of that Common-wealth, by [h] diverting the fury of her Son, and drawing off his Army from before the City, whose ruine he had threatned, upon a just resentment of the Citizens ingratitude towards him; in memorial of which [i] preservation, was there also a Temple erected and dedicated to the *Female Fortune*. On this occasion also, other accessions of honor and respect were decreed to this Sex; namely [k] to have place in passing on the way, and the permission of wearing golden Ear-rings. To all which the *Romans* willingly condescended for her sake, whose powerful perswasions, and rhetorical tears, had gain'd them so great a deliverance.

c *Tes. Milit. loco cit.*
* *Hier. Blancus in Serie Regum Aragon.*

d Don Ramon Berenguel ultimus Comes Barchinonæ earum Fœminarum Congregationem, seu quasi militiam formavit, dictam *de la Hacha*, quia in capite gestabant purpuream Fasis formam. *Mendo de Ord. Milit. Disq. 1. Q. 4. num. 106.*

e L'Ordre de la Cordeliere, ou du Cordon. *Nouveau Theatre du Monde. Tom. 2. p. 1413.* Ordo Funigeræ vel Funis. *Gotofr. Archont. Cosm. l. 3. p. 13.*
f *Ibid.*

g *Caldernius ad Martialem annotat.*
h } *Liv. lib. 2.*
i } *c. 40. An. Vibe Cond. 264. vide Plutarch. in vita Coriolani.*

k *Cujacius l. 12. Observat. c. 24.*

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

OF THE Castle, Chappel, AND Colledge OF Windesor.

SECT. I.

Of the Castle *of* Windesor.

ALthough we intend hereafter (God assisting) to make publick a complete History of the Antiquities of the *Castle*, *Chappel*, *Colledge*, and *Town* of *Windesor* by it self (towards which we have already made some progress) nevertheless we are obliged to give a brief Account of such of them here, as bear a particular relation to our chief design unfolded in the succeeding Chapters: and more especially, for that the *Chappel* of St. *George* is situate in this stately *Castle*, made highly illustrious by those many pompous Solemnities of the most noble *Order* of the *Garter*, exhibited within its Walls.

To begin then with the Place; it's ancient name [Wynblerhora] seems to claim no greater antiquity than of the *Saxon* times, and as our Learned [a] *Cambden* conjectures, received this denomination from the winding of the shore thereabouts; as did *Wandsworth* in *Surrey*, anciently written [b] *Windlesworth*, and probably for the same reason.

[a] *In Attrebat.*

[b] *Rot. Cart. Antiq. tit. CC. num. 2.*

The first authentick notice we have of it (for we rely not upon the reports of *Geofry* of *Monmouth*, or his Followers) is from that Instrument of Donation, which King *Edward* the *Confessor* made thereof, among other Lands, to the Monastery of St. *Peters* at *Westminster*, wherein it is declared, that this King, [c] *for the hope of eternal reward, the remission of all his sins, the sins of his Father, Mother, and all his Ancestors, to the praise of Almighty God, granted as an endowment and perpetual inheritance, to the use of the Monks there, that served God,* **Wyndlesore**, (situate within, yet at the East point of the County of *Berks*) *with all its appurtenances.*

[c] *Monast. Anglican. Tom. I. p. 61.*

But it continued not long in their possession, for King *William* the *Conqueror*, the first year of his Reign, being greatly enamoured of the pleasant situation of the place, and [d] *for that it seemed exceeding profitable and commodious, because*

[d] *Ex præf. Rot. Cartar. antiq. loco citato.*

situate

situate so near the Thames, *the Wood fit for Game, and many other particulars lying there meet and necessary for Kings, yea a place very convenient for his reception*; invited *Eadwin* the then Abbot and *Monks*, to accept in exchange for it [e] **Wokendune** in **Teaford** Hundred in the County of *Essex*, a Mansion called **Ferings**, with all its Members and Hamlets in **Lexedene** Hundred in the same County, together with fourteen Sokemen and their Lands, and one Freeholder in **Thurestaple** Hundred, who held one yard Land, belonging to the said Mansion, with three Houses in **Colecestra**; and hereupon was it again returned to the Crown, where it hath ever since remained.

e *Ibid.*

The King being thus possest of *Windesor*, forthwith built a *Castle* upon the Hill, which we find by [f] *Domesday Book*, contained half a Hide of Land, and that half Hide is there noted to be parcel of the Mannor of *Clure*.

f Berkshire.
Terra Radulfi *filii* Seifridi.
Radulfus filius *Seifridi* tenet de Rege *Clivore*, pro quinque Hidis, modo pro quatuor Hidis & dimid. Castellum de *Wyndeseres* est in dimidia Hida.

This Castle King *Henry* the First [g] re-edified, and beautified with many goodly buildings; and to entertain himself with the pleasure thereof, did in the [h] tenth year of his reign, summon all his Nobility thither, where he held his *Whitsontide* with great state and magnificence.

g Hen. *Hunt. fo.* 217. *b. Londini* 1596.
h

Shortly after, we find this Castle called [i] *Mota de Windesor*, the Fortress of *Windesor*, as the *Tower* of *London* is called *Turris de London*; both which are so termed in a Charter of Peace between King *Stephen* and Duke *Henry* (afterwards King of *England*, by the Title of *Henry* the Second) and this word *Mota*, is here used for what the *French* call *Mote*, or [k] *Motte*, being the same with *Collis*, or *Colliculus*, and *Meta* in *Latin*, *viz.* a little Hill.

i *Spelman. Gless. Archaiolog. verbo* Mota.

k A little Hill, or high place, a Seat for a Fort, or strong House.

Within this Castle was King *Edward* the Third [l] born (whence commonly called *Edward* of *Windesor*) and received his Baptism in the old Chappel. The native affection he bore to this place was exceeding great, insomuch as he constituted it the Head and Seat of that most noble *Order* of the *Garter*, whereof himself became the most renowned *Founder*; in honor to which he there also founded the *Colledge* of the *Chappel* of St. *George*, and much enlarged and beautified the *Castle*: To this work he appointed several *Surveyors*, whom he assigned to press Hewers of Stone, Carpenters, and such other Artificers, as were thought useful and necessary, so also to provide Stone, Timber, and other materials and Carriages for them; among these Surveyors, we find remembred [m] *John Peyntour*, [n] *Richard de Rochell*, [o] *William de Hurle*, *William de Herland*, [p] *Robert de Bernham*, and some others.

l *Clauf. de anno* 6. *E.* 2. *membrana* 22. *Dorso.*
m *Pat. de anno* 23. *E.* 3. *pars* 1. *m.* 10.
n *Pat.* 24. *E.* 3. *pars* 1. *m.* 23.
o *Pat.* 24. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 21. *Dorso.*
p *Pat.* 25. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 11.

And to the end this great undertaking might be honestly and substantially performed, the King assigned [q] *John Brocas*, *Oliver de Burdeux*, and *Thomas de Foxle*, jointly and severally, with all care and diligence (at least together once a Month) to survey the Workmen and their works, and to encourage such as did their duty competently well, but to compel others that were idle and slothful.

q *Pat.* 25. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 12.

He afterwards commissionated [r] *John de Alkesholl*, and *Walter Palmer* to provide Stone, Timber, Lead, Iron, and all other necessaries for the work; and to impreſt Carriages for their conveyance to *Windesor*.

r *Pat.* 27. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 2 *Dorso.* *Pat.* 28. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 20.

William de Wyckham (who attained to the Dignity of Bishop of *Winchester*, and was the second *Prelate* of the *Garter*) had a [s] Supervisor's or Surveyor's place granted to him by Letters Patents bearing Teste at *Westminster* the thirtieth of *October anno* 30. *E.* 3. He had like powers given him with those Surveyors first above-named, and a grant of the same Fee as had been formerly allowed to [t] *Robert de Bernham*, *viz.* [u] One shilling a day, while he stayed at *Windesor* in his employment, two shillings a day when he went elsewhere about that affair, and three shillings a week for his Clerk: which like allowances had been first of all made to [w] *Richard de Rochell.*

s *Pat.* 30. *E.* 3. *p.* 3. *m.* 28
t
u *Pat.* 25. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 11.
w *Pat.* 24. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 23.

Afterwards he had bestowed upon him the [x] *chief custody* and *Surveyorship* of this *Castle*, of the Mannors of *Old* and *New Windesor*, and of several other Castles, Mannors, and Houses enumerated in his Letters Patents, with power to appoint and dispose of all Workmen, buy necessaries for Reparation, provide Carpenters, Masons, and other Artificers, Stone, Timber, *&c.* [y] and in those Mannors to hold Leets and other Courts, Pleas of Trespass and Misdemeanors, to enquire of the Kings liberties, rights, and all things appertaining thereunto.

x *Pat.* 33. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 20.
y

It

It may be presumed, that about the thirty fourth year of this Kings Reign, the most considerable enlargement of the Castle was made, seeing there were then great store of the best Diggers and Hewers of Stone, impreſt in *London*, and out of divers Counties in *England*, by virtue of [z] Writs, directed to several Sheriffs (dated the 14. of *April* in that year) with command to send them to *Windesor*, by the Sunday next after the Feast of St. *George* at the furthest, there to be employed at the Kings Wages, so long as was necessary, *viz.*

z *Claus.* 34 *E.* 3. *m* 34.

London.	40	*Kent.*	40
Essex and *Hertford.*	40	*Gloucester.*	40
Wilts.	40	*Somerset* and *Devon.*	40
Leycest. and *Worcest.*	40	*Northampton.*	40
Cambridge and *Huntingd.*	40		

Herewith the Sheriffs were commanded to take sufficient security of these Workmen, not to depart from *Windesor* without the License of *William de Wykham* (who was appointed to return the same Securities into the Court of *Chancery*) and all this, under the penalty of one hundred pounds to each respective Sheriff.

And because divers of these Workmen, for gain and advantage, had afterwards clandestinely left *Windesor*, and were entertained by other persons, upon greater Wages, to the Kings great damage, and manifest retarding of his Work, [a] Writs were therefore directed to the Sheriffs of *London*, with command to make Proclamation, to inhibit any person, whether Clerk or Layman, under forfeiture of all they had forfeitable, for employing or retaining any of them, as also to arrest such as had so run away, and commit them to *Newgate*, and from time to time to return their names into the *Chancery*.

a *Claus.* 36. *E.* 3. *m.* 36. *Dorso.*

But a great number of them dying of the great Pestilence, other [b] Writs issued (30. of *March*, *anno* 36. *E.* 3.) to the Sheriffs of several Counties (not of the former number) That under the penalty of two hundred pounds apiece, they should send to *Windesor*, able and skilful Masons and Diggers of Stone, to be there on Sunday the Ultas of *Easter* at furthest, to be employed in the Works, namely to the Sheriffs of.

b *Ibid. m.* 33.

York.	60	*Nottingham.*	24
Derby.	24	*Lancaster.*	24
Salop.	60	*Devon.*	60
Hereford.	50		

It was the thirty seventh year of this King, or e're the Buildings were ready for Glasing, and then [c] *Henry de Stamerne* and *John Brampton*, were employed to buy Glass in all places of the Kingdom, where it was to be sold: to press four and twenty Glasiers, and convey them to *London*, to work there at the Kings Wages; and [d] twelve Glasiers for *Windesor*, to be employed in like manner within the Castle.

c *Pat.* 37. *E.* 3. *pars prima*, *m.* 28.
d *Ibid. m.* 30.

In this year also, the work went effectually on, as may be guess'd from the great store of [e] Workmen prest for this service, as also Carriages for Stone and Timber, much of the Stone being digg'd out of the Quarries of [f] *Wellesford*, *Helwell*, and *Careby*, and the next year, not only in these, but in the Quarries of [g] *Heseleberg*, and *Demelby*, and the following year out of the Quarry of [h] *Melton*.

e *Pat.* 37. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m* 12. & 29.
f *Ib. m.* 26.
g *Pat* 38. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m* 29.
h *Pat.* 39. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 37.

From hence to the forty third year of this Kings Reign, we find Artificers were yearly prest, and the buildings of the *Castle* seriously pursued; but after we meet with nothing in that kind mentioned to be done, until the eight and fortieth year, and thence not any thing during his Reign. So that its to be presumed, this famous piece for magnificence and strength, was for the greatest part finished in his said forty third year, that is to say, the *Kings Palace*, the *great Hall* of St. *George*, the *Lodgings* on the East and South side of the upper Baily or Ward, the *Keep* or *Tower* in the middle Ward, the *Chappel* of St. *George*, the *Houses* for the *Custos* and *Canons* in the lower Ward, together with the whole circumference of the *Walls*, and their several *Towers* and *Gates*, as now they stand.

In succeeding times, some other additions were made to the buildings within the *Castle*; in particular, King *Henry* the Seventh added that stately Fabrick, adjoining to the Kings Lodgings, in the upper Ward. King [i] *Henry* the Eighth new built the great Gate, at the entrance into the lower Ward. King *Edward* the Sixth began, and Queen [k] *Mary* perfected the bringing of Water from *Blackmore Park* in *Winghfield* Parish, into a Fountain of curious workmanship, erected in the middle of the upper Ward, which served all the Castle. Queen *Elizabeth* made a [l] Terrace Walk on the North-side of the Castle, from whence there is a pleasant prospect down upon *Eaton Colledge*, the *Thames*, and neighbouring *Country*. And King *Charles* the First, *an.* 1636. built the Gate at the East end of the said Terrace, leading into the Park. Lastly, his now Majesty out of a particular regard to this princely place, hath issued great sums of money in its repair, and furnishing it with a curious and gallant Magazine of Arms; so well order'd and kept, that it is worthy the sight of every Traveller.

i *Leland ad Cygneam Cantionem verb.* Windlesora.
k *Ex Lib. Compot. penes..... Harris nuper de Windesor gen. an.* 1660.
l *Cambden in Atrebat.*

And here our learned *Cambden*'s elegant Description of this Castle's situation, must not be omitted; [m] *For from an high Hill* (saith he) *that riseth with a gentle ascent, it enjoyeth a most delightful prospect round about; Foreright in the Front, it overlooketh a Vale, lying out far and wide, garnished with Corn-fields, flourishing with Meadows, deckt with Groves on either side, and watered with the most mild and calm River* Thames: *behind it arise Hills every where, neither rough nor over high, attired as it were with Woods, and even dedicated, as one would say, by Nature to hunting Game.*

m *Cambden, loco cit.*

With this let us offer what Sir *John Denham*'s ingenious Muse hath rarely limn'd out of its situation also and majestick fabrick.

n *Coopers Hill.*

[n] Windesor *the next* (*where* Mars *with* Venus *dwells,*
Beauty with strength) *above the Valley swells*
Into my eye, and doth it self present
With such an easie and unforc't ascent,
That no stupendious precipice denies
Access, no horror turns away our Eyes:
But such a Rise, as doth at once invite
A pleasure, and a reverence from our sight.
Thy mighty Masters Emblem, in whose face
Sat Meekness heightned with Majestick Grace;
Such seems thy gentle height, made only proud
To be the basis of that pompous load,
Than which, a nobler weight no Mountain bears,
But Atlas *only that support the Spheres.*

And now to afford our Reader's Eye, yet more pleasure and satisfaction, than these verbal Descriptions can do his fancy; we shall here insert the exact Draughts of several *Views* and *Prospects* of this princely and magnificent Structure.

This *Castle* is under the government of a *Constable*, whose Office is of great antiquity, honor, and power, but of little profit.

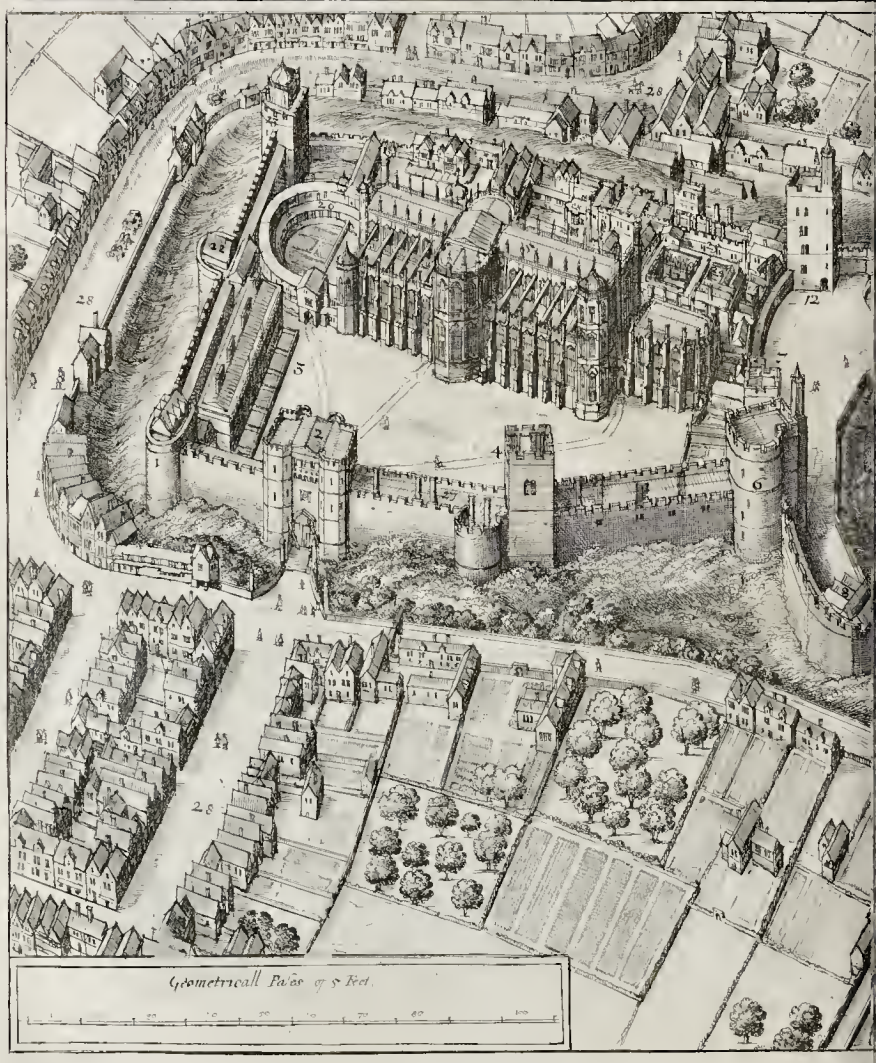
The use and signification of the word *Constabularius* (with others of a neer spelling, and like sense, found in *Historians*) is shewed by the learned [o] *Spelman*, and particularly applied to the Governour of a Castle, the *French* call him *Chastelan*, whom we call *Constable* of a *Castle*, but in the Rolls of King *John*'s time (which is as high as we have any) the Governour of this Castle is called *Constable*, and under that title hath the Office ever since passed.

o *Gloss. Archaiolog. verbo* Constabularius.

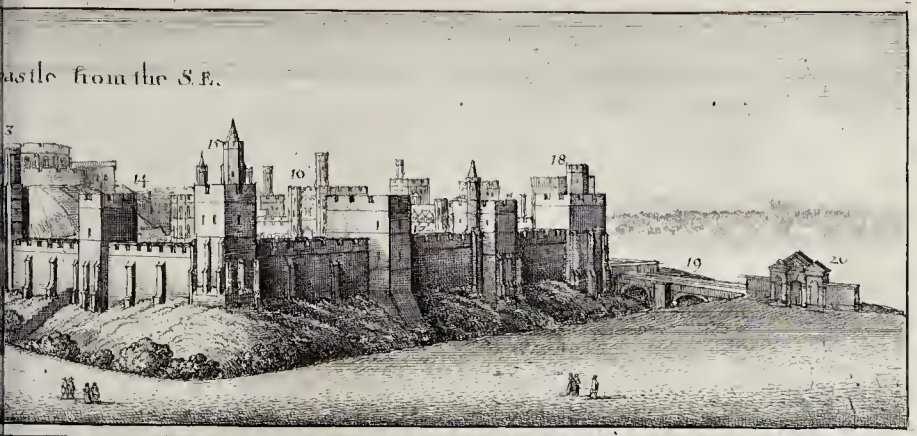
[p] His *Office* is mixt, partly *Military*, and partly *Civil*; as a *Military Officer*, pertains to him the sole Command of the place, and of any Garrison placed there, as also of the Magazine of Arms, Stores, and Houses. He is obliged to defend it against all Enemies, whether domestick or foreign, hath the charge of Prisoners brought thither; and is answerable for them, and for all that is in the Castle to the King, under whom he is *Captain* or *Governour* there.

p *Ex relatione Bulstrode Whitelocke, Ordinis Amarant. Milit.*

As a *Civil Officer*, the *Constable* is *Judge* of a *Court* of *Record*, held there by Prescription, for the determination of Pleas between party and party, arising within



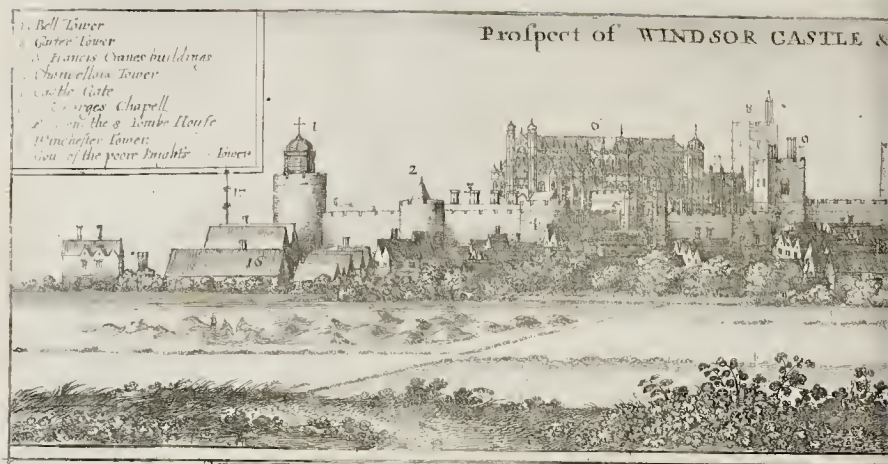
Lc, 171

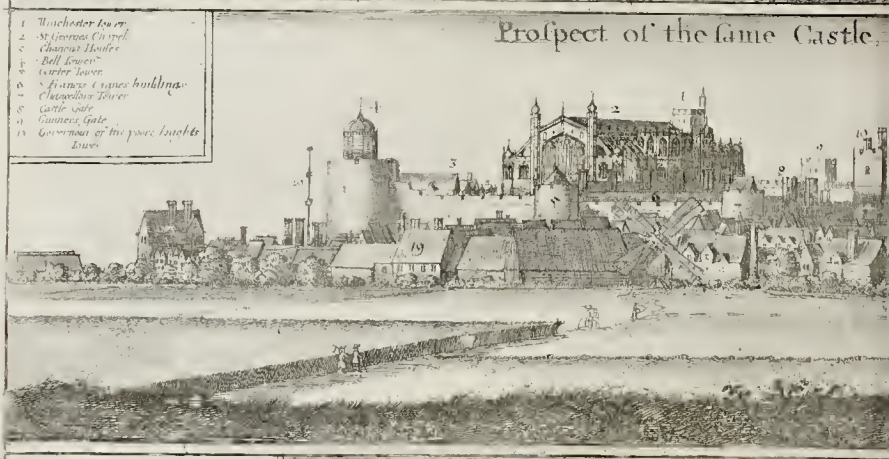


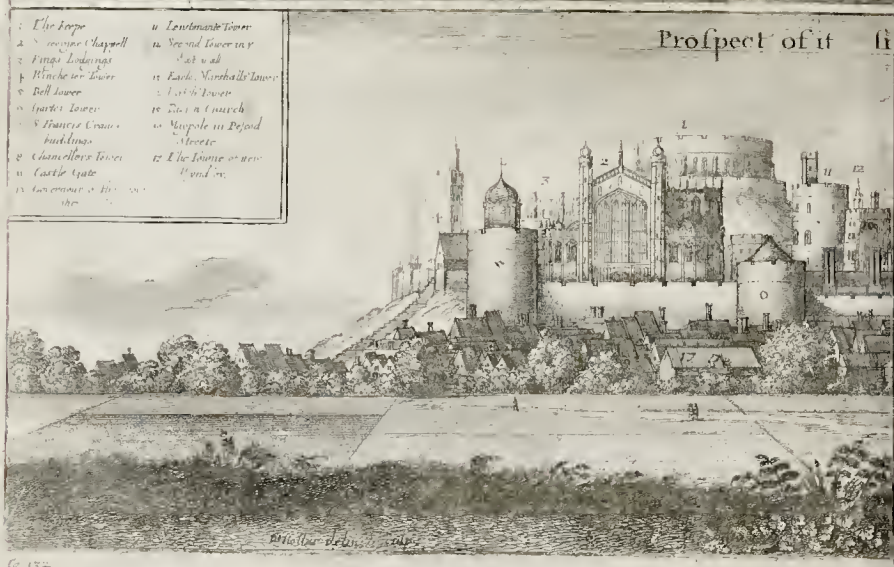
WINDSOR CASTLE

1 Chancellors Tower
2 Castle Gate
3 St Francis Cranes Buildings
4 Gouernor of the Alms Knights Tower
5 St Gedynes Chapell
6 Lieutenants Tower
7 Gunners Tower
8 The Wardrobe
9 Black Rods Lodgings
10 Earle Marshalls Tower
11 Kings gate
12 Winchester Tower
13 The Keepe
14 The ascent to the keepe is Watch Tower
16 Great gate to the kings lodgings
17 St Georges hall
18 North East Tower
19 Bridge from y^e Terrys into the little parke
20 Terras Gate
21 Parks gate
22 Gartets Tower
23 Bell Tower
24 Deanes House
25 Canons Houses
26 Petty Canons Houses
27 Alms Knights Lodgings
28 The Towne

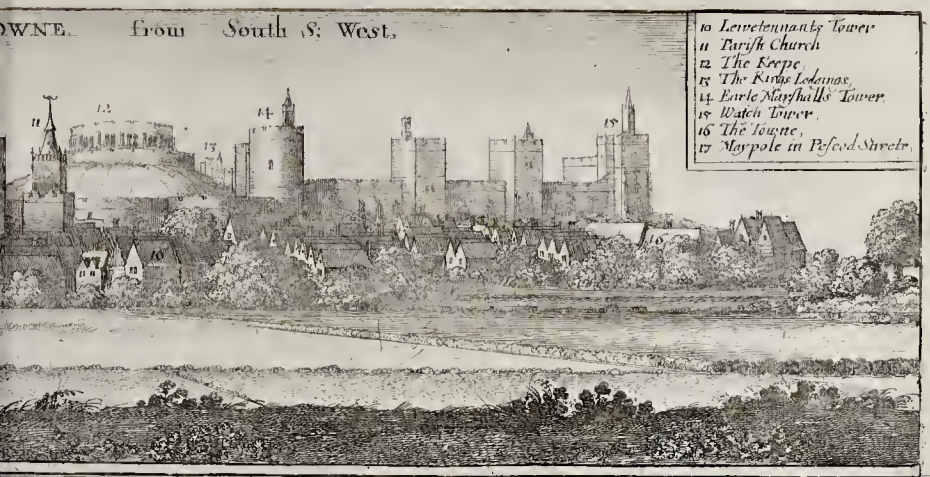
W. Hollar delineavit et Sculpsit

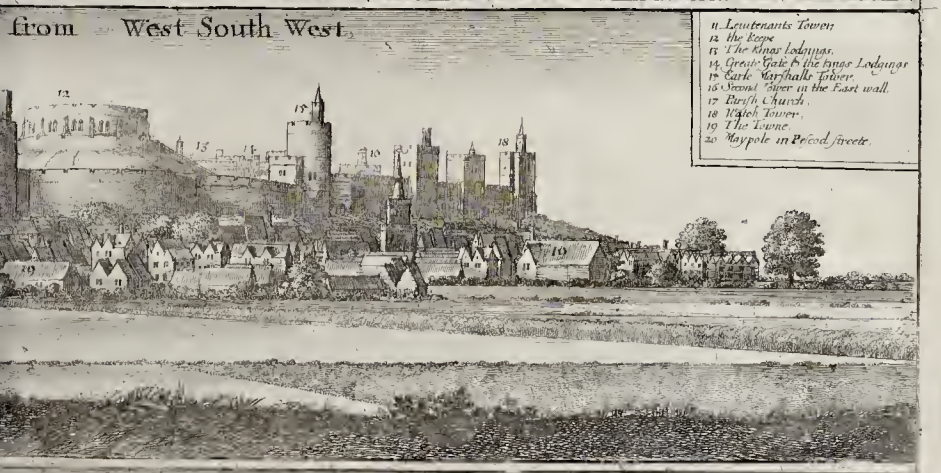

1. Bell Tower
2 Garter Tower
3 Francis Cranes buildings
4 Chancellors Tower
5 Castle Gate
6 St Georges Chapell
7 Dean the & Lombe House
8 Winchester Tower
9 Gou of the poore Knights Tower
Prospect of WINDSOR CASTLE &


1 Winchester Tower
2 St Georges Chapell
3 Chancels House
4 Bell Tower
5 Garter Tower
6 S Francis Cranes buildings
7 Chancellors Tower
8 Castle Gate
9 Gaunces Gate
10 Governour of the poore Knights Tower
Prospect of the same Castle,


1 The Keepe
2 S Georgine Chappell
3 Kings Lodgings
4 Winche ter Tower
5 Bell Tower
6 Garter Tower
7 S Francis Cranes buildings
8 Chancellors Tower
9 Castle Gate
10 Lowlmande Tower
11 Second Tower in y East wall
12 Earle Marshalls Tower
13 Fish Tower
14 Deans Church
15 Cupole in Pefood Meeete
16 The Tourne or new Pond Tow
Prospect of it

Pl. 152


WNE from South & West.
10 Lewtenants Tower
11 Parish Church
12 The Keepe
13 The Kings Lodgings
14 Earle Marshalls Tower
15 Watch Tower
16 The Towne
17 Maypole in Pefood Streete


from West South West.
11 Leutenants Tower
12 the Keepe
13 The Kings lodgings
14 Greate Gate to the Kings Lodgings
15 Earle Marshalls Tower
16 Second Tower in the East wall
17 Parish Church
18 Watch Tower
19 The Towne
20 Maypole in Pefood Streete


West & by South

within the Precincts of the *Forest* of *Windesor*, and Liberties thereof, which comprisseth many Towns, over the Inhabitants whereof this Court hath jurisdiction, to any Sum or Contract, by way of Action at the Common Law, and all legal Process, Judgments, and Executions, issue out in his name.

He hath a *Deputy* learned in the Law, who is called *Steward* of the *Court* of *Record*, and is Keeper of the Constables *Seal* of *Office*, belonging to this Court, with which all things issuing out of it are sealed. This *Officer* supplies the *Constables* place as *Judge* of that Court of Pleas, from whose Judgment the appeal is by Writ of Error returnable in the *Kings-Bench*, or *Common-Pleas* at *Westminster*.

The *Constable* of this *Castle* is likewise *chief Forester* and *Warden* of the *Forest* of *Windesor*, which is one hundred and twenty miles in compass: He hath under him one or more *Lieutenants* at his pleasure, with several other Officers, and hath power to imprison any Trespasser in Vert or Venison, being convicted according to the Law of the *Forest*, having a Prison in the Castle for that purpose, called the *Colehole*.

This Command of his, is not only great, but full of pleasure (specially to such a one as takes delight in Hunting) for he hath the freedom of using the sports of the *Forest* when he pleaseth, which none else can do, unless the Kings license, or Constables leave be first obtained. He signs all Warrants to kill Deer (except what the King signs) to fell Timber and Wood.

He that was *Chastelain* of this Castle in *William* the *Conquerors* Reign, was [q] *Walter fitz Other*, from whom the Honorable Family of Barons *Windesor* are descended; and the present *Constable* is his Highness *Prince Rupert*.

q *Cambd. in Atrebat.*

SECT. II.

Of the Chappel *of St.* George.

PRoceed we next to the *Chappel* of St. *George*, situate in the lower Ward or Court of this princely *Castle*, concerning which, we think fit to give our present discourse commencement at the foundation of the *Colledge* within this *Chappel*, by King *Edward* the Third, because it had a peculiar respect to the most noble *Order* of the *Garter*; and wave speaking of the first erection thereof by King [h] *Henry* the First, who [i] dedicated it to King *Edward* the *Confessor*.

h *Ex lib. N. p. 13. in Proœmio. See Stow in Ed. 3.*

i *Pat. 22. E. 3. p. 2. m. 6.*

First therefore, we shall observe, That King *Edward* the Third, shortly after he had founded the *Colledge* (of which we shall treat in the next Section) thought it convenient to pull down the old *Chappel*, and to erect another more large and stately: Hereupon he granted to [k] *John de Sponlee* the Office of Master of the Stone-hewers, and gave him power to [l] take and press, as well within Liberties as without, so many Masons and other Artificers as were necessary, and to convey them to *Windesor*, to work at the Kings pay, but to arrest and imprison such as should disobey or refuse, until the King took other order; with a command to all Sheriffs, Mayors, Bailiffs, *&c.* to be assisting to him on the Kings behalf.

k *Pat. 24. E. 3. p. 1. m. 28.*

l

The following year this King assigned [m] *James de Dorchester*, Sub-Constable of the Castle, to keep a Controll upon all the Provisions whatsoever, bought for the works of the *Chappel*, as also on the payments made for the same, and all other things relating thereunto.

m *Pat. 25. E. 3. p. 1. m. 10.*

Together with this Fabrick he erected several *Houses* neer adjoining for the *Custos* and *Canons* to inhabit in, and afterwards King *Henry* the Fourth gave to them a [n] void place in the Castle called the **Wodehawe**, nigh to the great Hall, for building of Houses and Chambers for the *Vicars*, *Clerks*, *Choristers*, and the other *Ministers*, assigned to the service of the *Chappel*.

n *Pat. 10. H. 4. p. 2. m. 13.*

But King *Edward* the Fourth (whose inclination to, and kindness for this place was extraordinary) finding upon survey, that the former foundation and walls

of the *Chappel* of St. *George* were in his time very much decayed and consumed, and esteeming the Fabrick not large or stately enough, designed to build one more noble and excellent in its room. To this purpose he constituted *Richard Beauchamp* Bishop of *Salisbury*, Master and Surveyor of the work. And taking notice, that divers of the [o] Officiary Houses, and other irregular Buildings and old Walls stood in his way, and hindred the design he had to inlarge the Structure, gave the Bishop power wholly to remove all such impediments, and to demolish and dig up their Foundations; particularly those ancient Buildings on the East-side of the Chappel, which reached unto the Walls on the North-side of the Castle, where the Towers, commonly called **Clure ys Tower**, and **Le Amener ys Tower**, and **Barner ys Tower** were situated; as also on the South-side of the Chappel, unto the Belfrey there, exclusively, aud to imploy the Stone, Timber, and other materials thereof, upon such Edifices in the *Castle*, as he should think most convenient.

o *Pat.* 15. *E.*4. *p.*2 *m.*17.

With what diligence and sedulity, and how well the Bishop performed this Office and Employment, appears from the testimony given him by the King in the preamble of that Patent, by which he shortly after constituted him *Chancellor* of the *Garter*, to wit, [p] *That out of meer love towards the* Order, *he had given himself the leisure, daily to attend the advancement and progress of this goodly Fabrick.*

p *Pat.* 15.*E.*4. *p.*3.*m.*18.

From the new Foundation thus laid by King *Edward* the Fourth, arose (like a Phœnix out of its ashes) the elegant and beauteous Structure now standing, enlarged in length at least [q] one hundred fathom (whose order and figure, as well on the outside as the several Views from within, are here represented) though it attained not its beauty and perfection, until the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth; together with the *Dean* and *Canons* Houses, situate on the North-side of the *Chappel*, and those for the *Petty Canons*, raised at the West end thereof, in form of a Fetter-lock, (one of King *Edward* the Fourths Royal Badges) and so vulgarly called.

q *Bulla de concessione Episcopo Sar: ad condendum novas Ordinationes.*

In *Henry* the Seventh's Reign, Sir *Reginald Bray*, (one of the *Knights-Companions* of the *Order*) became a liberal Benefactor towards finishing the Body of this *Chappel*, and building the *middle Chappel* on the South-side thereof, still called by his name (where his body lies interred) as is manifest not only from his last [r] Will, but also from his Arms, Crest, and the initial Letters of his Christian and Surname, cut in Stone, and placed in divers parts of the Roof.

r *Ex Lib. vocat. Blaymer in Officio Prærogat. Cant. n.* 26.

By [s] Indenture dated the fifth of *June*, in the one and twentieth year of this Kings Reign, *John Hylmer*, and *William Vertue* Free Masons, undertook the vaulting of the *Roof* of the *Choire* (that curious and excellent piece of Architecture) for seven hundred pounds, and to finish it by *Christmas*, *anno Dom.* 1508.

s *Ex ipso Autogr. in Ærar. Collegii Windesor.*

In his Son and Successors reign the [t] *Rood-loft* and *Lanthorn* were erected, with the contributions raised among the *Knights-Companions*, *anno* 8. *H.* 8.

t *Lib. N. p.*204.

Adjoining to the East end of this *Chappel* was a little Building of Free-stone raised by Cardinal *Wolsey*, called the *Tombe-house*, in the middle whereof he design'd to erect a goodly Monument for King *Henry* the Eighth, and had well-nigh finished it before he dyed. But this was demolished in *April* 1646. by command of the long Parliament, and the Statues and Figures provided to adorn it, being all of Copper gilt, and exceedingly enricht by Art, were taken thence.

This place [w] King *Charles* the First, of ever blessed and glorious memory, intended to enlarge, and make fit and capable, not only for the interment of his own royal Body, but also for the Bodies of his Successors Kings of *England*, had not bad times drawn on, and such, as with much ado, afforded him but an obscure Grave, neer the first haut-pace in the *Choire* of this *Chappel*, his Head lying over against the eleventh Stall on the Soveraigns side, and in the same Vault, where the Bodies of King *Henry* the Eighth, and his last Queen yet remain.

w *Ex relatione Dan. Stokes, nuper unius Canon. Coll. de Windesor.*

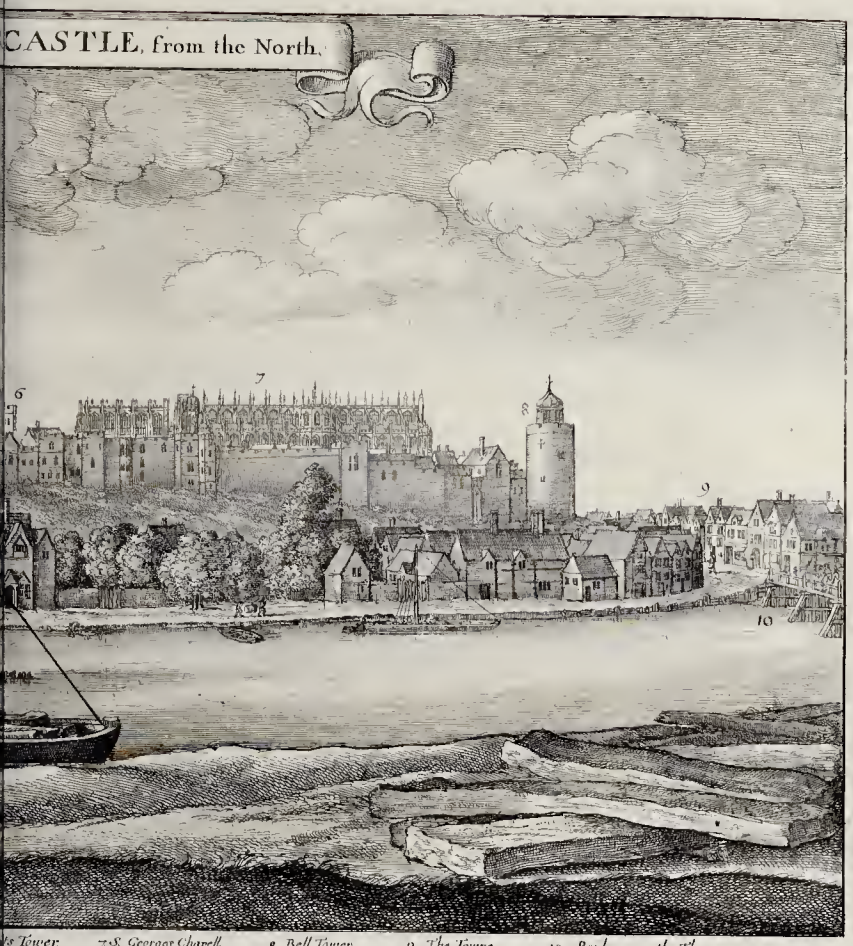
In this *Chappel* also rest the Bodies of two other *Soveraigns* of the most noble *Order* of the *Garter* (besides sundry of the *Knights-Companions*) namely of King *Henry* the Sixth, removed thither from [x] *Chertsey Abbey* in *Surrey*, and deposited under the uppermost Arch at the South side of the high Altar, but without either Monument or Inscription, only his Royal Badges may be yet seen painted in several places on the inside of this Arch; and likewise the Body of King *Edward* the Fourth,

x *Spelmans Councils, Vol.* 2. *p.*712.

1 North East Tower. 2. Kings lodgings. 3 The Gate into y^e upper Ward 4 The Keepe. 8 Winchester Tower. 9. Lieut

Christop. Wren delineavit.

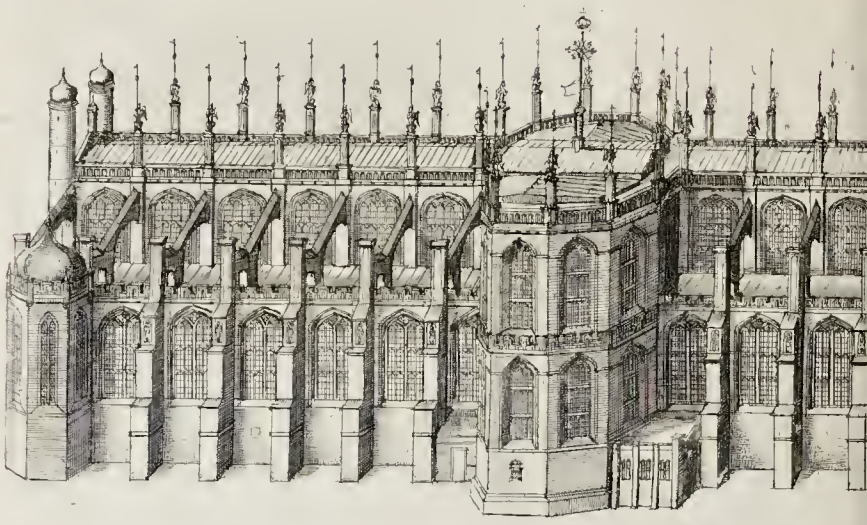
p 134.



ks Tower. 7 S. George Chapell. 8 Bell Tower. 9. The Towne, 10 Bridge over the Thames.

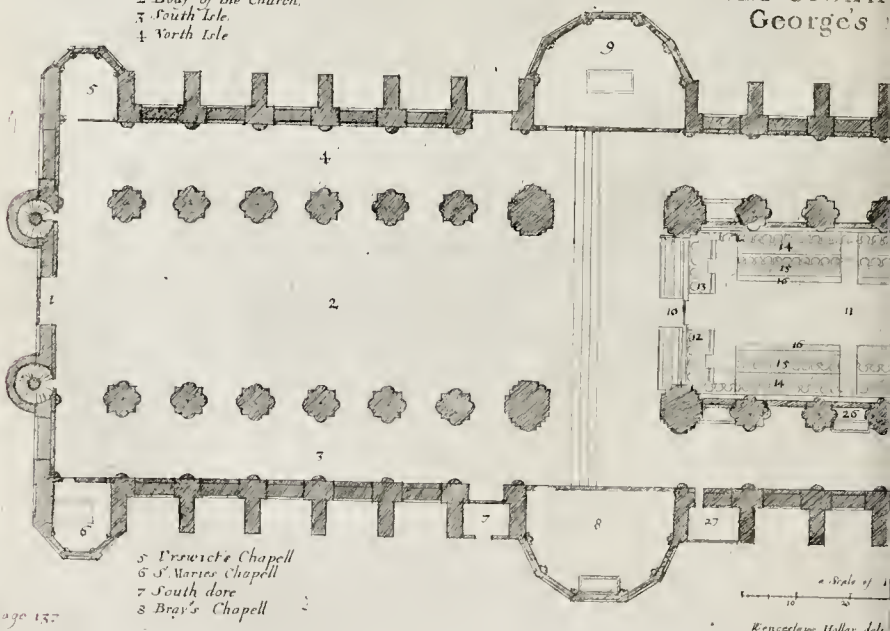
W. Hollar fecit 1657.

The Prospect of St George's Chapell from the



1 The West dore
2 Body of the Church.
3 South Isle.
4 North Isle

The Groun
George's

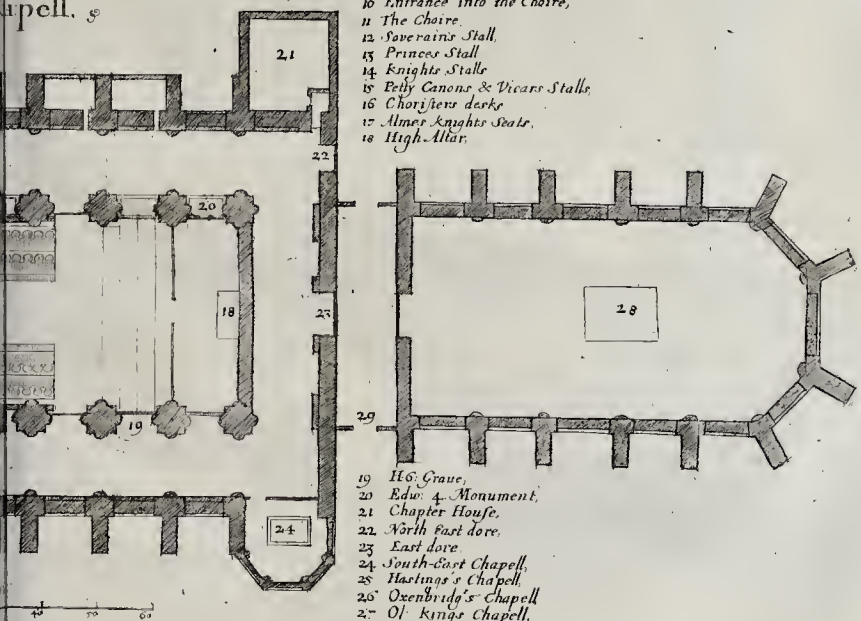


Kenceslaw Hollar delin

uth,

The Tombe House.

lot of S^t:
apell. 9



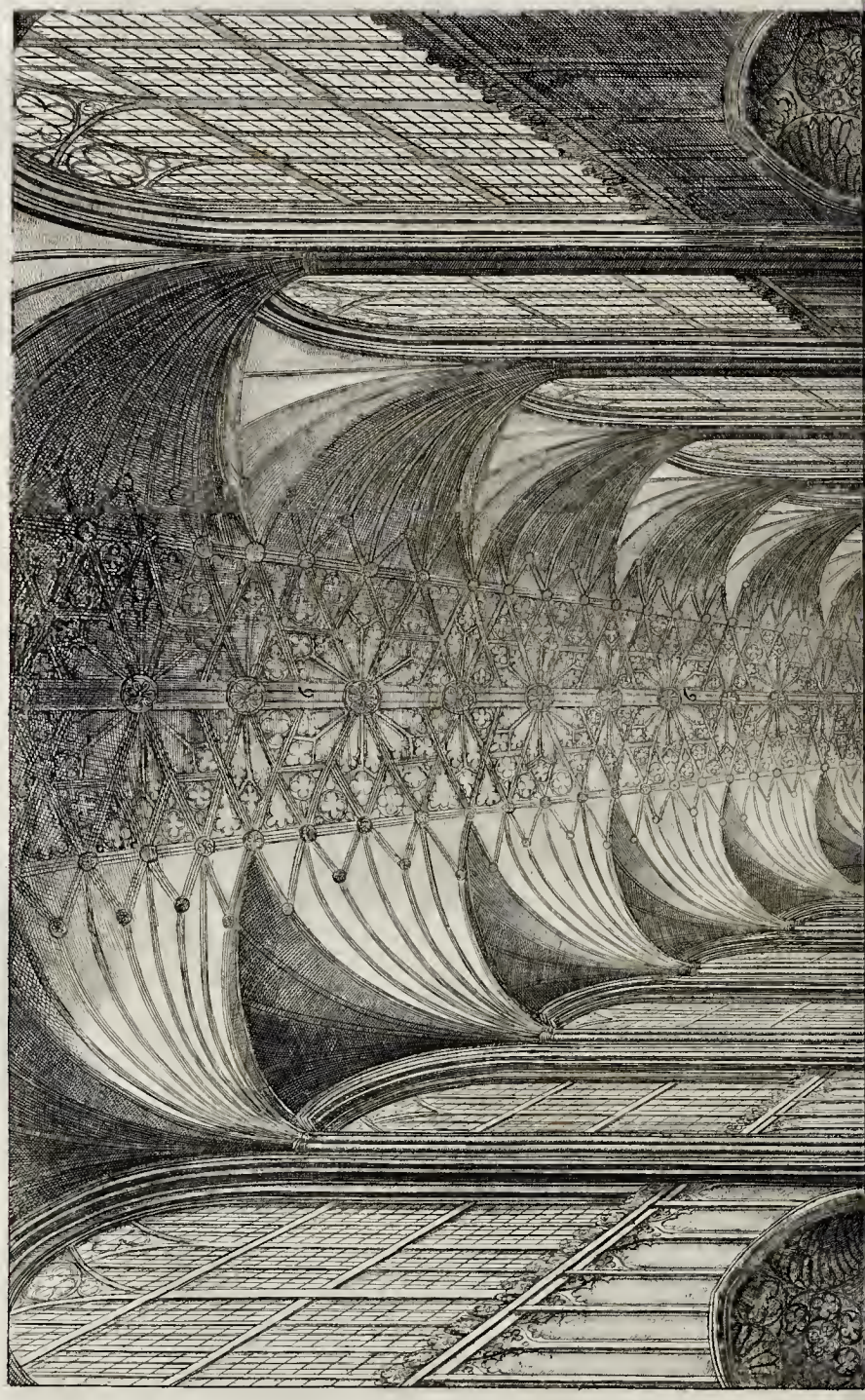
9. The midle North Chapel
10 Entrance into the Choire,
11 The Choire.
12 Soverains Stall.
13 Princes Stall
14 Knights Stalls
15 Petty Canons & Vicars Stalls,
16 Choristers desks
17 Almes Knights Seats.
18 High Altar,

19 H6: Graue,
20 Edw: 4. Monument,
21 Chapter House.
22 North East dore.
23 East dore
24 South-East Chapell,
25 Hastings's Chapell,
26 Oxenbridg's Chapell
27 Ol: kings Chapell,
28 Part of H: 8 Tombe,
29 Dore into the Cloyster,

et Sculpsit

PROSPECT OF THE WEST-END OF S^t. GEORG'S CHAPELL,

139.

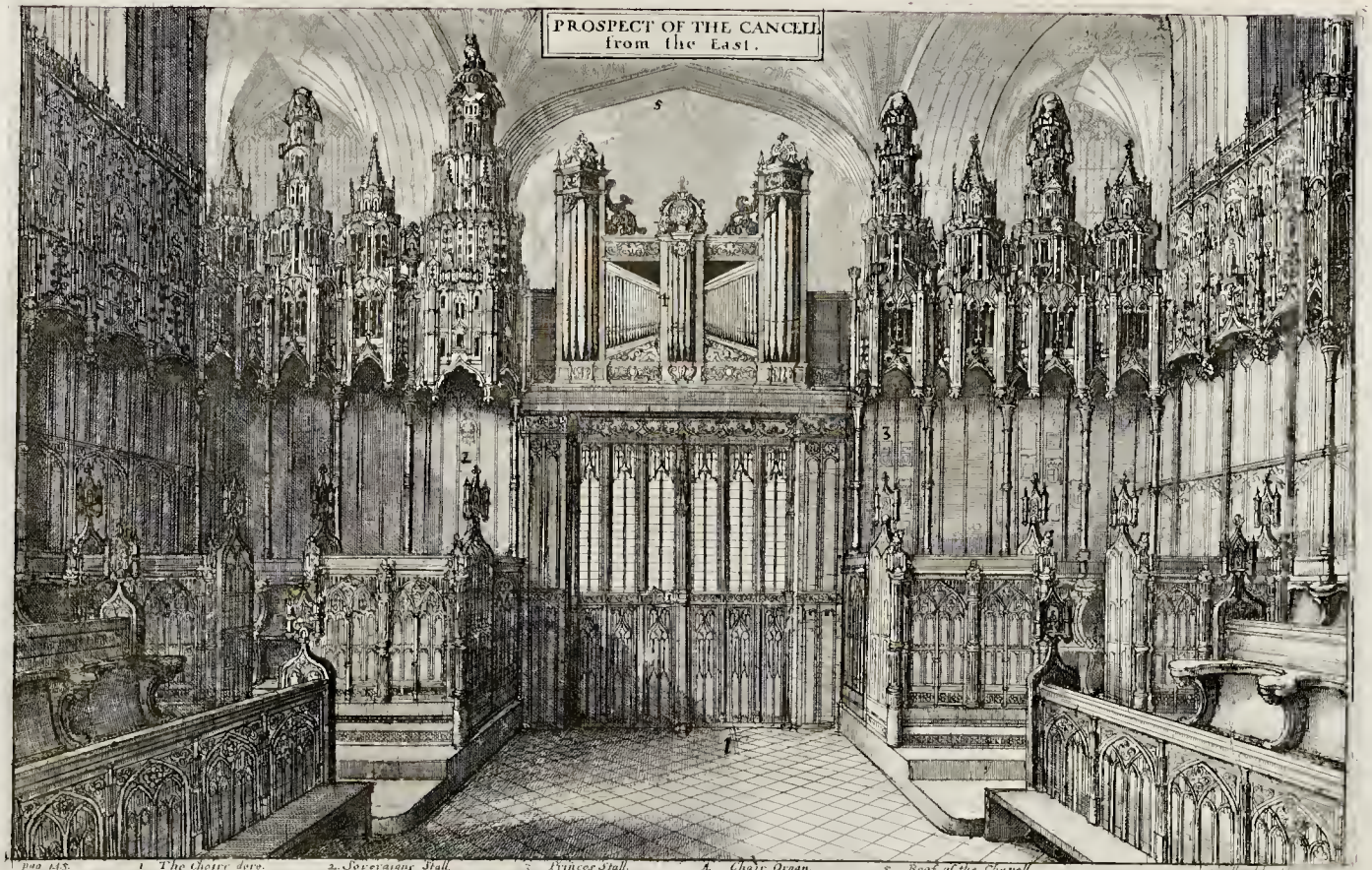


PROSPECT OF THE INSIDE OF THE CHAPEL.

1. The midle Isle,
2. The South Isle,
3. The North Isle,
4. The Pulpit,
5. The Choire Dore,
6. Roof of the Naue,
7. Roof of the Choire,
8. East Window of the Choire.

Pag. 140

dy of the Church, 3 Entrance into the Choire, 5 South Isle, 7 South dore,
ps up to the Choire 4 Bray's Chapell, 6 Pulpit, 8 Great Organ.



pag 145. 1. The Choirs door. 2. Soveraigns Stall, 3. Princes Stall, 4. Chair Organ, 5. Roof of the Chapell.

Pag. 144. 1. The Cancell W. Hollar sculp. 2. The Choire dore. 3. The Great Organ,

1 The High Altar
2 Knights Companions Stalls
3 Canons Stalls in absence of the Knights
4 Petty Canons and Vicars Stalls
8 Choristers Seats
6 Alms Knights Chairs

Knights Companions Banners
Their Helmes, Crests, and Swords
Plates of their Armes and Styles
10 Queenes Closet
11 Closet for Ladies
12 East Window of the Choire

W. Hollar. Hieroglyphus Bone
delineavit et sculpsit

Pag: 147.

1 The Railes before the high Altar.
2 Arch over King Henry 6. Grave.
3 Arch over King Edw: 4. Tombe.
4 Choire dore.

Great Organ
Roof of the Choire,
7. Roof of the Nave,
8 West Window of the Chapel,

W. Hollar Scenographus Regis delineavit et fecit

Fourth, under a large Stone of Tuch, raised within the opposite Arch, at the North side of the Altar, but without Inscription also; having on the outside of his Grave a range of Steel gilt, set to inclose it from the North Isle, cut excellently well in Church-work.

Over this Arch hung this Kings *Coat* of *Male*, gilt, cover'd over with crimson Velvet, and thereon the Arms of *France* and *England* quarterly, richly embroidered with Pearl and Gold, interwoven with divers Rubies. This Trophy of honor had ever since his Funeral hung safely over his Grave, but was plunder'd thence by Captain *Fogg* the twenty third day of *October* 1642. (on which day he also robb'd the *Treasury* of the *Chappel* of all the rich *Plate*, dedicated to the use of the Altar) yet having met with an exact measure and size of each part thereof, as also of his Banner, both heretofore taken by Sir *William le Neve*, sometime *Clarenceux* King of Arms, an exact observator of any thing curious, referring to Arms or Ceremony, we think fit to transmit it thus to posterity.

[y] *The* Coat of Arms *was two foot seven inches deep, and below two foot in breadth.*

Above (the Maunches *being extended) in breadth three foot and six inches: whereof the length of each* Maunch, *was one foot.*

The breadth of the upper part of the Coat *besides the* Maunches *one foot and a half.*

The breadth of each Maunch *one foot and eight inches.*

The Arms *were embroidered upon Velvet, lined with Sattin, and better wrought then they use to work in these days.*

The Banner *which also hung over his Grave, was of Taffaty, and thereon painted quarterly* France *and* England; *it had in breadth three foot four inches, besides a Fringe of about an inch broad, and in depth five foot and four inches, besides the Fringe.*

[y] *Ex Collectan. præf. Will. le Neve.*

There were within this Chappel of St. *George* several *Chantries*, endowed with Lands, and other Revenues, appointed for the maintenance of *Chaplains* and *Priests*, to sing Masses there, for the Souls of their Founders, and their Kindred: As first,

[z] *William of Wickham* Bishop of *Winchester*, gave two hundred *Marks* for buying of twenty *Marks* Rent *per annum*, to sustain a Chaplain to celebrate *Mass* in this Chappel, for the health of his Soul, the Soul of King *Edward* the Third, of the said Bishops *Father*, *Mother*, and all his *Benefactors*: The Covenants between *him* and the *Dean* and *Chapter* for performance thereof, bear date at *Windesor* the 29. of *May*, *anno* 3. *H.* 8.

[z] *Ex ipso Autogr. in Ærar. Colleg. Windesor.*

The[a] 26. of *November*, *anno* 18. *E.* 4. the Feoffees of *Richard* Duke of *Gloucester*, confirm'd and deliver'd to the *Dean* and *Chapter*, the Mannors of *Bentfieldbury* in the County of *Essex*, *Knapton* in the County of *Norfolk*, and *Chellesworth* in the County of *Suffolk*; who thereupon granted (among other things) that they and their Successors should cause yearly for ever, a Mass to be daily celebrated in this Chappel, for the good estate of the said *Duke*, and of *Anne* his *Dutchess* while they lived, and their souls when dead; as also for the souls of their *Parents* and *Benefactors*.

[a] *Ex ipso Autogr. in Ærar. præd.*

[b] Sir *Thomas St. Leger* Knight (sometime Husband to *Anne* Dutchess of *Exeter*, Sister to King *Edward* the Fourth) founded a Chantry of two Priests, who (in the middle Chappel, situate on the North side of the Church) were ordain'd to pray for the healthful estate of King *Edward* the Fourth, and his *Queen*, and *Cicely* Dutchess of *York* the Kings Mother, while they lived, and for their souls when dead: as also for the Soul of *Richard* Duke of *York*, the good estate of the said Sir *Thomas*, and *Richard* Bishop of *Salisbury*, then living, and after their decease for their souls, and the soul of *Anne* Dutchess of *Exeter*. The Foundation of this Chantry and the Covenants between Sir *Thomas St. Leger*, and the *Dean* and *Colledge*, are dated the 20. of *April*, *anno* 22. *E.* 4.

[b] *Ex ipso Autogr. in Ærar. præf.*

By the[c] last Will of King *Edward* the Fourth, a Chantry was ordained to be founded of two Priests, to serve at his Tomb, to whom was appointed an exhibition of twenty Marks yearly apiece. They were called King *Edward's Chantry Priests*.

[c] *Lib. vocat. Denton in Ærar. præd. f.* 260.

The

[d] *Ibid. f.* 241. The[d] Chantry of *Thomas Passche* (one of the *Canons* of this *Chappel*) was founded for a Priest to pray daily for his Soul, and the Soul of *William Hermer* (another of the *Canons* there) as also for the good estate of Master *John Arundel*, and Master *John Seymer*, *Canons*, and of Master *Thomas Brotherton*, and their Souls after they should depart this life.

[e] *Ibid.* [e] There was another Chantry Priest assigned to pray for the Souls of the said *Passche* and *Hermer*, and of *John Plumer* Verger of the Chappel, and *Agatha* his Wife; which devotion was appointed to be perform'd at the Altar on the North side of the new Church, and the setlement thereof bears date the 18. of *March*, *anno* 9. *Hen.* 7.

[f] *Ex ipso Antigr. in Ærar. Colleg. Windesor.* The[f] first of *March anno* 12. *H.* 7. *Margaret* Countess of *Richmond*, obtained license from the King, that she or her Executors might found a Chantry of four Chaplains, to pray for her Soul, the Souls of her *Parents* and *Ancestors*, and all faithful Souls departed: This Celebration was to be performed in a place neer the East part of the new work of the Chappel. And the[g] 18. of *July*, *anno* 13. *H.* 7. the *Dean* and *Canons* granted, that the Countess or her Executors, should erect such a Chantry in the Chappel, as is before mentioned.

[h] *Ex libro vocat. Denton. f.* 243. The[h] Chantry of *William* Lord *Hastings*, founded of one Priest to pray for his Soul, the Souls of the Lady *Katherine* his *Widow*, and of *Edward* Lord *Hastings* his Son, and *Mary* his Wife after their death: The Chappel wherein this Serviee was celebrated, is that on the North side of the *Choire*, about the middle thereof, where the Body of this Lord lies interred. The Ordination is dated the 21. of *February anno* 18. *H.* 7. [i] On the North side of St. *Georges Chappel* stands a little house, built for the habitation of this Chantry Priest, having over the Door (cut in stone) the Lord *Hastings*'s *Arms*, surrounded with a *Garter*.

[i] *Ibid. f.* 247.

[k] *Ib. f.* 233. *b.* [k] *Charles Somerset* Lord *Herbert* (created afterwards Earl of *Worcester*) was buried in the South Chappel (dedicated to the *Virgin Mary*) at the West end of the Church, where he ordain'd a secular Priest to say Mass every day, and to pray for the Souls of him and his first Wife, *Elizabeth* the Daughter and Heir of *William Herbert* Earl of *Huntingdon*, Lord *Herbert* of *Gower*, who also lies there interred.

[l] *Ib. f.* 237. [l] Adjoining to the House built for the Lord *Hastings*'s Chantry Priest, is another like Building, erected for this Chantry Priest, and over the Door thereof, now to be seen, is the *Founders Arms* within a *Garter*, cut also upon stone. The Foundation of this Chantry is dated the 30. of *July anno* 21. *H.* 7.

[m] *Ibid. f.* 261. & 262. To these we shall add the pious Foundation of the House called the [m] *New Commons*, erected over against the North Door of the Body of St. *George's Chappel*, by *James Denton* one of the *Canons* of the *Colledge* (sometimes Dean of *Lichfield*) *anno* 11. *H.* 8. for the lodging and dieting such of the *Chantry Priests*, *Choristers*, and *stipendary Priests*, who had no certain place within the *Colledge*, where to hold *Commons* in, but were constrained daily to eat their Meals in sundry houses of the Town: this House he furnished with proper Utensils for such a use, the whole charge amounting to 489 *l.* 7 *s.* 1 *d.* and for all which the *Choristers* were desired by him (in the *Statutes* he ordained for their Rule and Government) to say certain Prayers, when they entred into the *Chappel*, and after his death, to pray for his, and the Souls of all the faithful departed.

[n] *In Ærar. Coll. Windesor.* In this Chappel of St. *George*, there were heretofore several *Anniversaries* or *Obits* held and celebrated, some of them as they are entred down in an [n] Account of *Owen Oglethorp* Treasurer of the *Colledge* for the year, commencing the first of *October*, *anno* 38. *H.* 8. and ending the last of *September*, *anno* 1. *E.* 6. inclusive, we will here remember.

October.

2. Sir *Thomas Sentleger* Knight.
6. *John Wygrym* Canon.
8. *William Edyngton* Bishop of *Winchest.*
9. King *Edward* the Fourth.
16. *Rich. Beauchamp* Bishop of *Salisbury.*
22. *William Cock* Canon.

November.

3. *William Bewster* Canon.
5. *John Plomer* Verger.
10. *John Brydbroke* Canon.
13. *Thomas Passhe* Canon.
20. *Robert Vere* Earl of *Oxford.*
27. *Thomas Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick.*
29. *John Chapman* Vicar.

December

December.
3. *Ralph Wyndesor.*
14. *John Howden* Canon.
30. *Richard* Duke of *York.*
31. *Tho. Beauford* Duke of *Exeter.*

January.
3. *Katherine* Queen of *England.*
8. King *Edward* the Fourth.
10. *Anne Devereux.*
11. *John Chambre* Canon.
12. *Anne* Dutchess of *Exeter.*
14. *Geoffry Aston.*

February.
4. *Richard Raunds* Canon.
21. *William Mugge* Custos.
28. *Roger Lupton* Canon.

March.
1. *Richard Smith.*
4. *Knights* of the *Garter.*
5. *Walter Devereux.*
10. *Richard Welles* Canon.
19. King *Henry* the Fourth.
24. *Henry* Duke of *Lancaster.*

April.
3. *William Butler* Canon.
5. *Geoffry Wren* Canon.
6. King *Edward* the Fourth.
19. *Robert Ravendale* Canon.
20. *Anne* Dutchess of *Exeter.*
21. *John Bean* and his Wife.

May.
11. King *Henry* the Seventh.
21. King *Henry* the Sixth.

June.
2. *John Stokes* Canon.
7. *Anne* Queen of *England.*
8. *Edward* the Black Prince.
11. *William Ferrys.*
12. *John Vaughan* Canon.
13. *William* Lord *Hastings.*
14. *Brothers* and *Sisters* of St. *Anthony.*
21. King *Edward* the Third, Founder.
27. *Will. Askew* Bishop of *Salisbury.*

July.
9. King *Edward* the Fourth.
12. *Anne* Dutchess of *Exeter.*
13. *William Harmer* Canon.
16. *William Palet* Canon.
17. *Henry Deane.*
27. *John Oxenbrydge* Canon.

August.
4. Sir *Reginald Bray* Knight.
8. *John Blount.*
10. *William Mychell* Canon.
11. *Robert Burham* Canon.
17. *Philippa* Queen of *England*, Foundress.
18. *Richard Surlind* Canon.
31. King *Henry* the Fifth.

September.
5. *John Seynor* Canon.
13. *Henry Hanslappe* Canon.
14. *John* Duke of *Bedford.*
16. *William Bohun* Earl of *Northampton.*
27. *William Wykham* Bishop of *Winchest.*

It was an usual thing in former Ages, especially for those of the Military profession, after they had spent their youth and manhood in the service of their King and Country, to bestow the remainder of their lives in Prayers for both, and the salvation of their own Souls. And therefore to cherish the piety of well disposed *Knights-Companions* of the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, who for devotions sake were induced to retire to *Windesor*, permission was given then by the *Statutes* of *Institution*, [o] *to make their continual abode there.* Nevertheless to maintain themselves out of their own Estates, not at the Colledge charge.

This Article is confirmed by the [p] *Statutes* of King *Henry* the Fifth, to which those of King *Henry* the Eighth add, *That the Soveraign should assign them convenient Habitations within the Castle.* The [q] like favour upon like occasion, was afforded to other devout *Knights*, though not of the Order; but the Lodgings to be *such as the Soveraign and Knights-Companions should decree.*

o *Ed. 3. Stat. Art. 31.*

p *Art. 32. H. 8. Stat. Art. 35.*

q *H. 5. Stat. Art. 33. H. 8. Stat. Art. 36.*

We

We no where find, that any of the *Knights-Companions* made use of the benefit of this Article hitherto: but in another nature and for their better accommodation at the grand *Feast* of the *Order*, and other Solemnities held at *Windesor*; they moved the *Soveraign* in Chapter there ([r] 22. of *May anno* 14. *Car.* 1.) That they might have *Rooms* for *Lodgings* assigned them, in the great (or upper) Court (which they offered to repair at their own charge) since all the *Officers* of the *Order* had *Lodgings* in the *Castle*, but the *Knights-Companions* none. This motion was not disliked by the *Soveraign*, [f] so it might be without exclusion of the *Great Officers* of *State*, concerning whom He declared, That he would not have them removed from him at any time; and thereupon it was left to further consideration.

r Sir *James Palmer's large Journal.p.16.*

f *Ex relatione D. Chr. Wren, nuper Regist. hujus Ordinis.*

SECT. III.

The Foundation of the Colledge *within the* Chappel.

KIng *Henry* the First, as he had erected a *Chappel* within the *Castle*, so did he therein found a *Colledge* for eight *Canons*, neither endowed nor incorporate, but maintained by an annual Pension out of the Kings Exchequer. King *Edward* the Second founded here a *Chantry* for [q] four *Chaplains* and two *Clerks*, to pray for his Soul, and the Souls of all his Progenitors; as likewise a *Chappel* in the *Park* of *Windesor*, under the same Ordination, for four more *Chaplains*, whom his Son King [r] *Edward* the Third (by the advice of his Council) removed and joined to those other before setled in the *Chappel* of the *Castle*, and built [s] habitations for their better accommodation on the South side thereof: all which we shall pass over with this short mention, as not directly relative to our present purpose.

q *Claus.6.E.2. m 2.Dorss.*

r *Pat.4.E.3. p 1 m 19.*

s *Claus.11.E.3. m.18.*

But the *Foundation* that we shall treat of here, King *Edward* the Third laid by His [t] Letters Patent bearing *Teste* at *Westminster* on the sixth day of *August*, *anno regni sui* 22. that being about three quarters of a year before He instituted the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*: for (being inflamed with the zeal of a pious devotion, and desiring by a good kind of Commerce to exchange earthly for heavenly, and transitory for eternal things) at his own Royal Charge, He new founded the ancient *Chappel* in honor and to the praise of the omnipotent *God*, the glorious *Virgin Mary*, of St. *George* the Martyr, and St. *Edward* the Confessor: And by his Kingly authority and as much as in him lay Ordained, that to King *Henry*'s eight *Canons* there should be added one *Custos*, fifteen more *Canons*, and twenty four *Alms-Knights*, together with other *Ministers*, all under the Government nevertheless of the *Custos*: and these to be maintained out of the Revenues wherewith this *Chappel* was and should be endowed.

t *Appendix Num.* I.

But, according to the opinion of those times, his Kingly Authority extended not to the instituting therein men of *Religion*, and other *Officers* to perform and attend the Service of God; for that lay in the power and disposition of the Pope: And therefore this King, setting forth what he had profer'd to do, in reference to the endowment of this *Chappel*, requested Pope *Clement* the Sixth to grant to the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and Bishop of *Winchester* the authority and power of ordaining and instituting the *Colledge*, and other things thereunto appertaining.

Hereupon this Pope by his [u] Bull dated at *Avignion pridie Calendas Decembris*, in the ninth year of his Papacy (which answers to the thirtieth day of *November*, *Anno Domini* 1351.) commending the pious purpose of the King in this affair, granted to the Archbishop and Bishop, and to either of them, full power to *Ordain*, *Institute*, and *Appoint* in this *Chappel*, as should seem good to them, a certain number of *Canons*, *Priests*, *Clerks*, *Knights*, and *Officers*, continually to attend upon the Service of God, of which *Canons* and *Priests*, one should have the Title of *Custos*, and preside over the rest.

u *Appendix Num.* II.

On that day twelvemonth the *Statutes* and *Ordinances* of the *Colledge* bear date, being

being made by [x] virtue of the Popes authority, the Kings Command, the consent of the Bishop of *Salisbury* (in whose Diocess the *Chappel* is situate) and of the Dean and Chapter of *Salisbury*. By which *Statutes* the Bishop of *Winchester*, one of the Popes Delegates (for we find not the Archbishop's name used in them) did Ordain and Institute a *Colledge*, within the Chappel of St. *George*, consisting of one *Custos*, twelve secular *Canons*, thirteen *Priests* or *Vicars*, four *Clerks*, six *Choristers*, and twenty six *Alms-Knights*, beside other Officers. And to this *Custos* and *Colledge*, by the name of *Custos* and *Colledge* of the *Free-Chappel* of St. *George*, within the Castle of *Windesor*, for the most part, but sometimes of *Custos* and *Colledge* of *Chaplains*, or otherwise of *Custos* and *Chaplains* of the same *Chappel*, were the Donations of Advowsons, and other temporal Endowments, commonly made and granted.

x *In præfatione ad Colleg. Statut.*

SECT. IV.

Of the Dean, Canons, Petty-Canons, Clerks, *and* Choristers.

The Dean.

SHortly after the Foundation of the *Colledge* by the Kings Letters Patent, to wit, the [y] 14. of *November*, *anno* 22. *E.* 3. the King constituted *John de la Chambre Custos* of the *Chappel* of St. *George*, but he enjoyed this dignity not above half a year, for the [z] 18. of *June* ensuing, the Letters Patent, for constituting *William Mugg Custos*, bearo *Teste*: so that in truth *John de la Chambre* was the first *Custos*, though in the * Preamble to the Letters Patent past under the Great Seal of *England*, with consent of the Lords and Commons in Parliament, *anno* 8. *H.* 6. *William Mugg* is there said to be the first, and so hath been [a] since accounted.

y *Pat.* 22. *E.* 3. *p.* 3. *m.* 19.

z *Pat.* 23. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 29.

* *Rot. Parl.* 8. *H.* 6. *n.* 31.

a *Tho. Frith. in suo Custodum sive Decanor. Catalogo.*

But it seems the Catalogue of *Custos's* and *Deans*, took commencement at the Institution of the *Colledge* by Papal (not Kingly) authority, and though *William Mugg* (in like manner as *John de la Chambre*) had been constituted *Custos* above three years before, yet being then again nominated by the King to receive Institution from the Bishop of *Winchester* upon his ordaining the *Colledge*, he came to be accounted the first *Custos*, as being so under that Institution; and consequently *John de la Chambre* not taken notice of.

By this Title of *Custos* were those that succeeded *De la Chambre* and *Mugg*, presented by the King, till the last year of King *Henry* the Fourth, when *Thomas Kingston* was the [b] first of them presented by the name of *Dean*; and his Successor *John Arundell* observing that divers of the Lands and Endowments of the *Colledge*, were sometimes granted thereunto by the name of *Custos*, at other times of *Dean* and *Custos*, or lastly of *Dean* only; and doubting that this variation and diversity of names might beget some damage to the *Colledge*, especially being both beside and against the form of the Foundation (wherein the Title of *Custos* was only used) he applied himself by [c] Petition to the Parliament before mentioned; whereupon the King being pleased to provide for the security of the *Colledge* in this particular, did, with consent of the Lords and Commons, by Letters Patent under the Great Seal of *England*, grant and declare, That the said *John* should be *Custos sive Decanus* for his life, and enjoy all rights thereunto belonging, and for the future, he and every other *Custos* of the *Chappel* for the time being should be called [d] *Custodes sive Decani*, viz. *Wardens or Deans of the free Chappel of St.* George *within the Castle of* Windesor; and that the *Custos*, or *Dean* and *Canons* thereof, and their Successors, by the Name of *Custos*, or *Dean* and *Canons* of the said *free Chappel*, should have and hold to them and their Successors for ever, all Lands, Tenements, Rents, Possessions, *&c.* as also all manner of Liberties, Franchises, Immunities, *&c.* granted to the *Colledge* at any time before.

b *Ibid.*

c *Rot. Parl. an.* 8. *H.* 6. *n.* 34.

d *Ibid.*

So that here was instituted a kind of new Incorporation of this *Chappel*, by the Title of *Custos*, or *Dean* and *Canons* only, and the whole State of the *Colledge*, together with its possessions, strengthened and constituted in a manner *De novo*: at least this was a great step to the compleat incorporating them by King *Edward* the Fourth, when, through the interest of *Richard Beauchamp* Bishop of *Salisbury*, then also Dean of *Windesor*, and Chancellor of the most noble *Order* of the *Garter*, there was obtained from King *Edward* the Fourth, Letters Patent bearing Teste at *Windesor* the 6. of *December* in the 19. year of his Reign, for [e] incorporating the *Custos*, or *Dean* and *Canons* and their Successors, by the name of *Dean and Canons of the free Chappel of St.* George *within the Castle of Windesor*, and that thenceforward they should be one Body Corporate in thing and name, and have a perpetual Succession.

e *Pat.* 19. *E.* 4. *m.* 5.

Furthermore, that they and their Successors, should by the same Name, be persons capable in Law, to purchase, receive, and take Lands, Tenements, Rents, Reversions, Services, Liberties, Franchises, and Priviledges, or other Possessions whatsoever, to be held and possest in Fee and Perpetuity: As also to have a Common Seal, for the Affairs and Causes of them and their Successors. And that they and their Successors, by the name of *Dean* and *Canons*, &c. might plead and be impleaded, pursue all manner of Causes and Actions, real and mixt, challenge all Franchises and Liberties, and answer and be answered, before any Judges spiritual or temporal.

But for the avoiding all further doubts, which might be taken for any occasion or cause, touching the *Dean* and *Canons* of this *Chappel* in their Corporation, Capacity, or Possessions, and for the more surety of them in all their temporal Endowments; the Letters Patent of Incorporation, were within three years after, past into an [f] Act of Parliament, which yet remains in force.

f *Vide Rot. Parl.* 22. *E.* 4. *n.* 11.

Thus much for his *Title* of *Custos* and *Decanus*; we shall next touch upon his *Authority* and *Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction*: for as he is constituted (both by the [g] *Bull* of Pope *Clement* the Sixth, and the [h] Institution of the *Colledge* thereupon) *President* over the rest of the *Colledge*, to govern, direct, and order them, their Goods and Estates; so is he to [i] exercise all manner of Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction over them, with a reservation of power of Appeal to the Chancellor of *England*, Visitor of that *Colledge*.

g *Dat. Avinionæ pridie Cal. Dec. Pontif. sui anno* 9.
h } *Præf. ad*
i } *Coll. Stat.*

Moreover, [k] where any of them live inordinately or unpeaceably, he, with the advice of the *Chapter* (in cases where no particular penalty is appointed to be inflicted) hath power to reprehend or correct at discretion. [l] And in ease where discord ariseth among any of them, shall within eight days reconcile the parties, or do justice. Lastly, he hath power (after the third time of admonition) to [m] expel from the *Colledge*, all sowers of Discord, Back-biters, and Whisperers, that are below the Degree of a *Canon*.

k *Colleg. Stat. cap.* 39.
l *Ibid.*
m *Cap* 20. *vide etiam Injunct. Jo. Archiep. Ebor. Angl. Cancellar. c.* 1. & 2.

And to the end there may be no defect in Government at any time, during his non-residence, it is provided by the *Statutes* of the *Colledge*, [n] That when he hath occasion to be absent from thence, above eight days or more, he shall before his departure constitute one of the *Canon-Residents* (whom he please) for his *Deputy*, who during his absence (having the Title of *Lieutenant*) shall in all things exercise and execute his Office: for we are to note, that the said *Statutes* allow him [o] sixty days for non-residence, the Royal Visitation held *anno* 1552. enlarged that time to [p] one hundred and ten days, and the Lord Chancellor *Hyde* gave him liberty of [q] six weeks absence, to attend the affairs of his Deanry of *Wolverhampton*.

n *Cap.* 49.
o *Cap.* 7.
p } *Ex Collect.*
q } *G. Evans modo unius Canonic. hujus Colleg. lib. B. f.* 74. *a.*

But in the [r] vacancy of the *Custos*, whatever power or authority belongs unto him, the same is then devolv'd upon the *Chapter* of the *Colledge*; which *Chapter* ought within two days after the vacancy known, to elect one of the *Resident-Canons*, under the Title of *President*, to govern the *Colledge* and direct all affairs relating thereunto, until there be provided another *Custos*.

r *Colleg. Statut. cap.* 50.

Canons.

Leaving the *Custos* thus setled under the Title of *Decanus* (which later he is only known by at this day) we are now to speak of the *Canons*, whose number by the Letters Patent of Foundation, were appointed to be four and twenty, including the *Custos*; but upon Institution of the *Colledge*, by the Bishop of *Winchester*,

Winchester, there was then ordained (as hath been noted) one *Custos*, twelve *Secular-Canons*, and thirteen *Priests* or *Vicars*, in all twenty six; being the very number before ordained by the Statutes of Institution of the *Order* of the *Garter*, and answerable to the just number of the *Knights-Companions* of that most noble *Order*. And for a further distinction between these *Canons-Secular*, and the *Priests*, the first twelve are in a [f] Bull of Pope *Innocent* the Eighth, called *Majores Canonici*, the other [t] elsewhere *Canonici Minores*, or *Petty Canons*.

[f] Dat. 11. Cal. Oct. an. 1484.
[t] Lib. N. p. 221.

To these twelve *Seculars* were assigned so many [u] *Prebendships* in the Chappel of St. *George* (as also * Stalls in the *Choire*, and Places in the *Chapter*) together with that, held by the *Custos*, whence of later times they are frequently called *Prebends* as well as *Canons*, and their Dignities *Canonships* and *Prebendships*. Every *Prebend* hath a [w] Sacerdotal power given him by the *Statutes* of the *Colledge*, and in regard of this, those *Statutes* further ordained, That each *Canon* of the Chappel being a *Prebend*, if not at that time a *Priest*, should within a year after he hath enjoyed his Prebendship, be so ordained; otherwise (without further admonition) to be deprived thereof.

[u] Colleg. Stat. c. 2.
* Ibid. c. 55.
[w] Ib. c. 10. vide E. 3. Stat. Art. 4.

By the fore-mentioned Bull of Pope *Clement* the Sixth, there is reserved to the *Founder*, his *Heirs* and *Successors*, the right of presenting the *Canons*, *Priests*, *Clerks*, *Alms-Knights*, and *Ministers* belonging to the *Colledge*; and thereupon we find it noted, that [y] he nominated and presented *William Mugg*, and four other *Presbyters* to the Bishop of *Winchester*, to institute them *Canons* and *Prebends*, in the Canonships and Prebendships of the *Chappel*, which the Bishop did accordingly, and then gave the said *William Mugg* institution to the place of *Custos*, upon the *Founders* nomination and presentation also.

[y] Præfat. ad Colleg. Stat.

Notwithstanding which, it appears by the [z] Institution of the *Garter*, that the first *Canons* were presented to the *Custos* by the *first Founders* of the *Order*, *viz.* the five and twenty first *Knights-Companions*, every one of them being permitted by the *Soveraign's* favour, to present a *Canon*; yet was it therewithal provided, [a] That neither the *Knights-Companions*, who thus first presented, nor any one of their *Successors* from that time, should present to the vacant *Canonships*, but the *Soveraign* only. To which end, in another place, the *Custos* was obliged when any of the [b] *Canons* died (the *Soveraign* being out of the Kingdom) to signifie the same to him by Letter, that so he might appoint whom he thought fit to succeed him.

[z] Art. 4.
[a] Ibid. Art. 33. vide etiam H. 5. Stat. Art. 35.
[b] Ibid. Art. 33.

But upon whomsoever these Dignities are confert'd, they ought to be [c] Admitted, Instituted, and Installed, by the *Custos* (or *Dean*) or his *Lieutenant*, to whom (at the time of their Installation) they are to be obliged by Oath, to [d] yield *Canonical Obedience*, and observe the *Statutes* of the *Colledge*, so far as it concerns them. The form of their Admittance is annexed to those *Statutes*.

[c] Colleg. Stat. cap. 9.
[d] Cap. 3 & 48.

The principal duty of these [e] *Canons* (so also of the *Vicars*, *Clerks*, *Alms-Knights*, and *Ministers* of the *Colledge*) is continually and personally to attend upon the Service of God, in the Chappel of St. *George*; and upon each days omission of a *Canon-Resident*, it was Ordained, that he should forfeit his [f] quotidian distribution, *viz.* [g] twelve pence. Nor do we find any license of non-residence, or discontinuance given to any of the *Canons* by the Colledge Statutes, but only to the [h] *Custos*, and that but for sixty days in the whole year (as is before remembred) howbeit there is mention of *Canons-Resident*, and *non-Resident* in the said *Statutes*; to the *non-Residents* there are great [i] defalcations appointed to be made, and good reason for it, because the *Resident-Canons* bear not only the burthen of that duty belonging to the *Chappel* and *Colledge*, but the expence of Hospitality and other works of Charity, occasioned from their residing at *Windesor*.

[e] Præfat. ad Stat. Colleg.
[f] Colleg. Stat. cap. 11.
[g] Ibid. c. 2.
[h] Cap. 7.
[i] Cap. 20.

Nevertheless the effect of a favourable indulgence towards the *Canons* was introduced by degrees, and when *Richard Beauchamp* Bishop of *Salisbury*, had obtained power by a [k] Bull from *Sixtus* the Fourth, to make new Statutes in the *Colledge*, he in this particular dispensed with the old ones, and the fifth of *March* 1478. gave to the *Dean* and every *Canon* and their *Successors*, fourteen days of non-Residence in every Term, to wit, six and fifty days in the year. By the visitation held *anno* 1552. these days are inlarged to [l] fourscore, and the Lord Chancellor

[k] Dat. Romæ anno 11. cal. Aug. 1475.
[l] Ex Collect. præfat. G. Evans lib. B. f. 74.

cellor *Hatton* yet further indulged them with [m] two hundred and two days, which liberty the late Lord Chancellor *Hyde* [n] confirmed; and consequently there remains one hundred sixty and three days in the year, in which the *Canons* ought to be resident at *Windesor*. For each *Canons* great Residence is [o] 21 days, the looser Residence in conjunction with the greater is 163 days; that is 21 of these 163 are to be kept without interruption, and with hospitality according to the *Statute*.

The *Canons* are particularly obliged, [p] humbly to pray for the prosperity of the *Soveraign* of the most noble *Order* of the *Garter* from time to time being, as also for the * happy estate of the *Order*. [q] And if any *Knight-Companion*, or other person, should out of Devotion bestow ten pounds *per annum* revenue or more in Lands or otherwise, that so he might be made partaker of the Prayers, appointed for the Benefactors of the *Colledge*, his name was ordained to be inscribed among them, and himself also prayed for; which Article, though King *Henry* the Fifth confirmed, yet he provided [r] that neither the *Custos* or *Canons*, should thenceforth admit of any such charge upon the *Colledge*, without the consent of the *Soveraign*, his *Deputy*, or the *Knights-Companions* of the *Order*.

To this let us adjoin the care taken by the *Injunctions* of the 8. of *February an.* 4. *E.* 6. for commemorating the bounty of the *Benefactors* of this *Colledge* to Posterity, for there it is enjoyn'd, [s] That from thenceforth upon the Tuesday, next after the third Sunday in *Lent*, and on the first Tuesdays in *June*, *September*, and *December*, some one of the *Colledge* should in a brief Sermon commend the munificence, not only of the *Founder*, and of King *Henry* the Eighth, but of all other Noblemen, whose bountifulness had appeared in their pious acts, and set forth how greatly God is to be glorified, who by them had bestowed so many benefits on the *Colledge*: As also exhort his Auditors to use their gifts to the glory of God, increase of Virtue and Learning, and the pious intent of *Benefactors*; and lastly, pray the Almighty so to stir up the hearts of the living, to bestow some part of their substance likewise, to the increase of Religion, and setting forth of his glory.

Thus far of the *Canons* Ecclesiastical Duty; but those things which relate to their Civil Obligations are to attend the *Soveraign* (or his *Deputy*) and the *Knights-Companions*, at the *Grand Feast* of St. *George*, whensoever celebrated at *Windesor*, as also at the Feasts of *Installation*; or when the *Soveraign* upon any other solemn occasion shall come to the *Chappel* of St. *George* to offer; or lastly, when any of the *Knights-Companions* (being on a Journey neer the *Castle*) come thither to offer likewise.

As touching their part in the Ceremonies observed upon any of these occasions, we shall hereafter note them down in their proper places; and only mention here the *Robe* appointed for them to wear at these times over their Ecclesiastical Habit. This by the *Statutes* of Institution is appointed to be a [t] *Mantle*, and though these mention not the matter whereof it was made (which at this day is *Taffaty*, of the fashion of the three inferiour Officers of the Order) yet they set down the Colour to be [u] *Murrey*, as also that the *Arms* of St. *George* should be placed within a Rundle on the [w] right shoulder thereof.

Those, who are now called *Petty Canons*, have no nominal nor other distinction in the [x] *Founders* Patent of Foundation, from those other afterwards called *Canonici majores*, but both go under the Title of *Canons* only. In the [y] Bull of Pope *Clement* the Sixth (which recites the substance of the *Founders* Patent) in reference to the transferring his authority to the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and Bishop of *Winchester*, for instituting the *Colledge*, they are called *Presbyteri*; and by the said Bishop, in the very words of his [z] Institution, *Presbyteri seu Vicarii*, but in the [a] Foundational *Statutes* of the *Order* of the *Garter*, are stiled *Vicarii* only.

Their *Number* at the first Institution was [b] thirteen, and the same number appears to be continued, being taken notice of in all the Exemplars of the *Statutes* of the *Order*. Only [c] King *Henry* the Eighths English Statutes mention eight *Petty Canons*, beside thirteen *Vicars* (but the Latin takes notice only of [d] thirteen *Priests*, part of them are there called *Canonici minores*, and other part *Vicarii*)

m } *Ibid.*
n }
o *Collect. præf. G. Evans, lib. A. f.* 143.
p *Colleg. Stat. c.* 34.
* *Ord. Stat. in lib. N. Art.* 4.
q *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 32.
r *H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 34. *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 37.
s *Art.* 16.
t } *Art.* 5. *vide*
u } *Hen.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 5.
w *Ord. Stat. in lib. N. Art.* 5.
Petty Canons.
x *Pat.* 22. *E.* 3. *pars* 2. *m.* 6.
y *Præfat. ad Colleg. Stat.*
z *Ibid.*
a *Art.* 4. *vide H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 4.
b *Præf. ad Colleg. Stat.*
c *Art.* 13.
d *Lib. N. p.* 221.

Vicarii) afterwards the *Injunctions* of the Kings Commissioners dated the 23. of *November anno* 1. *E.* 6. appointed [c] twelve *Priests*, and they to be called *Petty Canons*: that is, four to be added to the former eight, mentioned in King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, which the said Article directed to be done after this manner, to wit, that at the first avoidance of the next Vicar, his stipend should be equally divided among three of the eldest Vicars, who thereupon were to be called *Petty Canons*; and when the room of another Vicar became void, then five marks of his stipend should be appointed to the next senior Vicar (who was likewise to be stiled *Petty Canon*) and this direction being observed, the number of twelve Petty Canons became compleated. Yet in Queen [f] *Elizabeths* Ordinances for the continual charge, the number of *Petty Canons* thereby provided for, are noted to be thirteen, agreeable to the ancient number of *Vicars*; but at this day they are but seven, and one of them *Sub-chanter*.

c *Art.* 5.

f *Penes Camerarios Scaccarii.*

The *Vicars* at their admission (according to the appointment both of the *Statutes* of the *Colledge*, and those of the *Order*) are bound to be [g] *Priests*, or at least *Deacons*, from whence they are next to be ordained *Priests*, to wit, [h] the next time appointed for Ordination. Those *Statutes* bound them also to [i] continual personal residence, and if absent without a lawful cause, from Mattens, they were amerced [k] two pence apiece for each omission, and two pence a time more, if not at every grand Mass, and one penny for their absence from every Canonical hour, the Mass of the Virgin *Mary*, or for the Defunct. All which forfeitures were to be deducted out of their Sallary, and divided among those *Vicars* who gave their attendance in the foresaid Duties. But the [l] *Injunctions anno* 1. *E.* 6. appoint the forfeit of absence from Mattens, to be one penny half penny, and from either Procession, Communion, or Even-Song the like Sum, to be paid to the poor Mens Box.

g *Colleg. Stat. cap.* 3. *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 4. *H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 4.

h *Ord. Stat. in lib. N. Art.* 4.

i k *Colleg. Stat. cap.* 11.

l *Art.* 7.

And not only they, but all other *Ministers* of the *Chappel*, if absent from the *Colledge* above [m] twenty days, without just cause approved of by the *Resident Canons*, or do behave themselves scandalously in life or conversation, are by the *Statutes* of the *Colledge* to be expell'd, after the fact proved before the *Custos* or his *Lieutenant*; but if any of them absent themselves for less than twenty days, without the like approbation, then to be punished at discretion.

m *Colleg. Stat. c.* 18.

Each of these *Vicars* had at first but the annual Pension of [n] eight pounds Sterling, paid after this manner, to wit, every Kalendar Month eight shillings for their Diet, and that which then remained at the Quarters end, went towards furnishing them with other necessaries. Afterwards King *Edward* the Fourth encreased their Pensions to [o] twenty marks apiece. To which Queen *Elizabeth* in augmentation of their livings (they being then called *Petty Canons*) added thirteen shillings four pence *per annum* to each of them, out of the Lands setled on the *Colledge* by King *Edward* the Sixth, as appears by the [p] Book of Establishment made by her, among the certain disbursments. And now their yearly Pensions are lately encreased by the *Colledge* to [q] thirty pounds. One of these *Petty Canons* is chosen from among the rest, to be *Sub-Chanter* (and usually the same person is the *Deans Vicar*) to whose duty belongs the cure of Souls, Marrying, Burying, *&c.*

n *Ibid. c.* 3.

o *Ex lib. vocat. Denton. f.* 177.

p *Penes Camerar. Scaccarii.*

q *Collect. praef. G. Evans lib. B. f.* 85. *b.*

To these *Petty Canons* it is requisite that we subjoin those, who after the Foundation of the Colledge by King *Edward* the Third, were took into the Choire for the service thereof. As first the *Quatuor Clerici*, remembred in the Preface to the Statutes of the *Colledge*, whereof [r] one was to be instituted a *Deacon*, and another a *Sub-Deacon*, before their admission: and these two were next in designation, and accordingly promoted to the *Vicars* places; but for the other two, it was sufficient if they had institution into lesser Orders, in which they were to continue. Each of the two first of these had [s] eight Marks yearly Pension, and the two last but six.

Four Clerks.

r *Colleg. Stat. c.* 17.

s *Ibid. c.* 3.

King *Edward* the Fourth increased their number to thirteen, and allowed them [t] ten pounds *per annum* apiece. The same number do we find mentioned in [u] King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes* of the *Order*, and by the [w] *Injunctions* 23. *Nov. anno* 1. *E.* 6. made by the Kings Commissioners, they were increased to fifteen, but here appointed to be *Laymen*, wearing Surplices in the Choire, each having an allowance of ten pounds annually for his service.

t *Lib. Denton. f.* 177.

u *Art.* 18.

w *Art.* 5.

In

In the 23. Article of the Injunctions, of 28. *Feb. an.* 4. *E.* 6. a course is prescribed to bring these fifteen *Clerks* to twenty, but in [x] Queen *Elizabeth's* Establishment, they were again reduced to thirteen, which number is yet continued, (one of them being *Organist*, hath a double Clerks place, and consequently reckoned for two of the thirteen) and an augmentation to each of two pounds thirteen shillings four pence half penny farthing yearly; which being at first opposed by the *Dean* and *Prebends*, they at length (*anno* 5. *Eliz.*) consented to allow them forty shillings *per annum* apiece, not out of the New-lands, but out of other payments, which the *Dean* and *Canons* should otherwise yearly receive, and [y] *anno* 1662. increased their annual Pensions to three and twenty pounds apiece.

x *Penes Camerar. Scacc.*

y *Ex Collect. præf. G. Evans. lib. B. f. 86. a.*

They are tyed to be [z] present in the Choire at all times of Service, as are the *Petty Canons*, and under the same forfeitures, [a] nor may they, or the *Petty Canons* go out of Town, without the *Dean's* or his *Lieutenant's* license, nor then neither, above [b] three at once, except for very weighty cause, lest the Choire should be unfurnished of a convenient number, to perform the daily Service.

z *Injunct.*
a *dat. 8. Feb.*
b *an. 4. E. 6.*

Choristers.

Secondly, There were appointed for the further service of the Choire [c] six *Choristers*, and they to be likewise *Clerks*, or at the time of their admission to have been [d] instituted of the Clerical Order, to each of which was allowed five Marks Sterling annually, or to the value thereof in common Money. And in like manner as the *Deacon* and *Sub-Deacon* were placed in the *Colledge*, only in addition to the *Vicars*, and designed to succeed them as vacancies hapned, so also were there [e] six secular Children, endued with cleer and tuneable voices, admitted and design'd to succeed the *Choristers*, when their voices altered.

c *Præfat. ad Coll. Statut.*
d *Colleg. Stat. c. 3.*
e *Cap. 17.*

King *Edward* the Fourth enlarged the number of *Choristers* to [f] thirteen, and allowed them annually six Marks apiece, and though this number was confirm'd by [g] King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, yet the [h] *Injunctions* dated the 8. of *Feb. anno* 4. *E.* 6. reduced them to ten, nevertheless by [i] Queen *Elizabeth's* Establishment, the former number of thirteen was restored, and thereby given in augmentation among them all, [k] three pounds eleven shillings eight pence: Howbeit they were since brought to eight, and their present exhibition is twelve shillings a Month to each.

f *Lib. Denton. f. 177.*
g *Art. 13.*
h *Art. 27.*
i, k *Penes Camer. Scacc.*

SECT. V.

Of the Alms-Knights.

PUrsuing the Order of our Discourse, the *Alms-Knights* come next to be spoken of, wherein to avoid confusion, we shall consider them, first, under the Foundation of King *Edward* the Third; Secondly, when separated from that, by Act of Parliament; and lastly, as they were established anew by Queen *Elizabeth*.

First then, King *Edward* the Third, out of the great respect he bore to Military honor (of which himself had gain'd a large share) and due regard had of valiant men, chiefly such as had behaved themselves bravely in his Wars, yet afterwards hapned to fall in decay; took care for their relief and comfortable subsistence in old age, by making room for them within this his *Foundation*, and uniting them under one Corporation and joint Body, with the *Custos* and *Canons*; these he called *Milites Pauperes*, and we vulgarly *Poor* or *Alms-Knights*, the ordained number being at first but [l] four and twenty, as were the *Custos* and *Canons* at the first foundation of the *Colledge*. But shortly after upon his Instituting the Princely Society of *Knights* of the most noble *Order* of the *Garter*, consisting of six and twenty, there were added two more to the former number (as there was to the first *Canons*) to make them of like number with the *Knights-Companions* of that *Order*; which number of twenty six we after find setled at the Ordination of the *Colledge* by the [m] Bishop of *Winchester* the Popes Delegate.

l *Pat. 22. E. 3. pars 2. m. 6.*
m *Præf. ad Colleg. Stat.*

The

The charitable intention of the Royal *Founder*, was to provide for such only, as were truly objects of Charity, and therefore he describes (even in the Instrument of Foundation) what kind of men they should be, to wit, *Poor Knights, weak in body, indigent and decayed*; and to like effect is their qualification inserted in the *Statutes* of Institution of the most noble *Order* of the *Garter*, viz. [n] *such, as through adverse fortune were brought to that extremity, that they had not of their own wherewith to sustain them, or* [o] *live so gentilely as became a military condition*; but this being thought not enough, the same is repeated (probably for greater caution) in King [p] *Henry* the Fifth, and King [q] *Henry* the Eighth's Statutes to prevent diverting the *Founders* pious intention, and against admittance of such as are otherwise able to live of themselves; which conjecture is not improbable, because we find the [r] ancient *Statutes* of the *Colledge* Ordained (as also the Orders of [s] Queen *Elizabeth*) That in case there should happen to fall to any of the *Alms-Knights* either Lands or Rents, by succession or any other way, to the yearly value of twenty pounds or more; then such *Knight* should immediately be removed from the *Colledge*, and made incapable of receiving any profits or emoluments thence, and another *Alms-Knight* preferr'd into his place.

n *Art. 6 videsis Hist. Tho. de la Mare. f. 156. b.*
o *Cart. an. 25. E. 3. n. 14. m. 6.*
p *Art. 6.*
q *Art. 16.*
r *Cap. 6.*
s *Art. 20.*

Their presentation when first admitted, was by the same hands that presented the first *Canons, viz.* [t] Each *Knight-Companion* of the *Order* presented his *Alms-Knight*, nevertheless it was then also Ordered, *That from thenceforward, every Election should remain at the disposal of the* Soveraign *of this most noble* Order.

t *E. 3. Stat. Art. 6.*

To each of these *Alms-Knights* was appointed for their Habit, a [u] *Red Mantle*, with a Scutcheon of St. *George*, but without any Garter, to surround the same.

u *Ibid. Art. 7. H. 5. Stat. Art. 7.*

Their *Exhibition* from the *Colledge* at first, was [w] twelve pence apiece for every day they were at Service in the *Chappel*, or abode in the *Colledge*, and forty shillings *per annum* for other necessaries; it being the like allowance as was appointed to each of the *Canon-Residents*, which shews the quality and esteem then had of these *Alms-Knights*.

w *Stat. Colleg. Cap. 5.*

It seems (about the beginning of King *Henry* the Sixth's Reign) these quotidian distributions, and the forty shillings *per annum* so assigned them, had been unpaid by reason of some dissentions and quarrels that had risen between the *Dean* and *Canons*, and *Alms-Knights*; but upon complaint to *John* Archbishop of *York*, Lord Chancellor of *England*, Visitor of the *Colledge*, by the [x] *Injunctions* issued upon his Visitation *anno* 10. *H.* 6. the Arrears of both were appointed to be forthwith paid without charge, and in case the Treasurer of the *Colledge* became negligent in future payments, he was to incur the loss of his own Quotidians, from the time of his voluntary delay; the same to be divided among the *Alms-Knights*.

x *Art. 36.*

Their duty was to attend the Service of God, and pray for the prosperity of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* of the *Order*, to be [y] every day present at high Mass, the Masses of the Virgin *Mary*, as also at Vespers and Compline, from the beginning to the end, except any lawful occasion did impede. But it was Ordained that for [z] every days absence from the *Chappel*, they should be debarred of receiving the twelve pence *per diem*, and whatsoever was raised from such forfeitures, should be converted to the use of the rest of the *Alms-Knights* then being in the *Castle* of *Windesor*.

y *Colleg. Stat. c. 6.*
z *Cap. 5.*

Notwithstanding which *Decree*, it appears that the *Dean* did afterwards take upon him the disposure of these Mulcts at his pleasure, which occasioned the *Alms-Knights* to complain to *Adam* Lord Bishop of St. *Davids*, Chancellor of *England* and Visitor of the *Colledge*, who among other of his *Injunctions* [a] dated the 8. of *October anno* 2. *R.* 2. commanded that the Mulcts should be equally distributed among those *Alms-Knights*, who did attend at Divine Service in the *Chappel*, as the *Statute* had enjoin'd. And besides, the like complaint being made for the *Dean*'s disposing of Donations and other Liberalities of the *Knights-Companions*, so that the *Alms-Knights* had no part thereof towards their sustentation, this Chancellor also appointed [b] an equal distribution of them among the *Alms-Knights* and *Canons*, until the King and his Council should otherwise determine.

a *Pat. 2. R. 2. pars prima, m. 15.*
b *Ibid.*

These and other differences between the *Dean* and *Canons*, and *Alms-Knights*, grew

grew at length so wide, that they could not be reconciled; insomuch as in the Act of Parliament, *anno* 22. *E.* 4. for the Incorporation of the *Custos* and *Canons*, by the name of *Dean* and *Canons*, the *Alms-Knights* were not only omitted, but this Clause inserted, [c] *That the Dean and Canons, and their Successors, should for evermore be utterly quit and discharged from all manner of Exhibition or Charge of or for any of the said Knights.* And this was obtained upon pretence, [d] That the King had greatly increased the number of the *Ministers* of the *Chappel*, so that the Revenue was not sufficient to maintain both them and the *Alms-Knights*, as also [e] that the King had otherwise provided for the *Alms-Knights*. But we elsewhere find some other cause, and this afterwards alledged by the *Dean* and *Canons* in their Answer to the *Knights* Petition for Repeal of the said Act, to wit, [f] That *William Omercy* and *John Kendall*, *Alms-Knights*, laboured much before this Act pass'd, to be incorporate by themselves, to get Lands setled on them, to be exempt from the obedience and rule of the *Dean* and *Canons*, and governed by Ordinances made among themselves.

c *Rot. Parl.* d *anno* 22. e *E.* 4. *m.* 11.

f *Collect. præf. G. Evans, lib. A ad Calcem.*

In the second place, this Act being thus obtained, and the *Alms-Knights* divided from the Body of the *Colledge*, as also struck off from the benefit of the Quotidians, Portions, and Fees, assigned by the Foundation of King *Edward* the Third; how they next subsisted doth not fully enough appear: but so soon as King *Henry* the Seventh came to the Crown, [g] they petitioned the King and Parliament, for repeal of the Act *anno* 22. *E.* 4. affirming it was gained without their knowledge, or being called thereunto; to which Petition the *Dean* and *Canons* answered, and the *Alms-Knights* replied, but it seems all they could alledge did not induce the Parliament to repeal the Act: but on the contrary the *Dean* and *Canons* some years after obtained an [h] Exemplification thereof under the Great Seal, dated 4. *Feb. anno* 18. *H.* 7.

g *Ex veteri MS. f.* 12.

h *Collect. præf. G. Evans, lib. A. f.* 76.

And it is clear from King *Henry* the Eighth's [i] Letter to the *Colledge*, which takes notice of their discharge from any exhibition to the *Alms-Knights*, by virtue of the said Act, That what the *Colledge* did in that kind, after this Act past, was meerly upon courtesie, and not obliged thereunto; for He thanks them for granting a Pension of twenty Marks to *Peter Narbone*, whom He had recommended to an *Alms-Knights* place, and promiseth they should be no further burthened with *Alms-Knights*, but that he would setle Lands upon them for their maintenance, and free the *Colledge* from the said Pension.

i *Ex lib. Denton. f.* 72. *b.*

Besides, when Mr. *Narbone* had the Pension granted him, it was by an [k] Indenture made between *Nicholas West* then *Dean* of *Windesor* and the *Canons* on the one part, and the said *Peter* on the other, dated 18. *July anno* 3. *H.* 8. wherein he covenanted, that when the King should setle any Lands on the *Colledge*, for sustentation of such *Knights*, then the grant of the Pension should be void, and of none effect.

k *Ibid. f.* 73.

In the interval between the disunion of the *Colledge* and *Alms-Knights* by the foresaid Act, to their establishment by Queen *Elizabeth*, their *Habit* and *Badge* continued the same, and was so confirm'd by King *Henry* the Eighth's [l] *Statutes*: But it may be collected from his last Will, that there was then an intention to draw the *Garter* about the Scutcheon of St. *George*'s Arms, but it took no effect: We observe also, that in this interval several persons who had been of considerable quality and worth, became *Alms-Knights*, some of them were nevertheless great objects of Charity; among whom was Sir *Robert Champlayne* Knight, a valiant Soldier, and one whose martial services abroad, rendred him an honor to our Nation.

l *Art.* 16.

It seems he had taken part in the Civil Wars here, with King *Henry* the Sixth, against King *Edward* the Fourth, shortly after whose coming to the Crown he left *England*, and travelled into [m] *Hungary* (having with him an Equipage of three Servants and four Horses) where, in the assistance of *Matthias Corvinus* King of *Hungary* against the *Turk*, he behaved himself bravely, and like a valiant Knight: But prosperous Fortune not attending him at all times, he received many wounds, and at length was taken Prisoner, lost all, and forced to pay 1500 Ducates for his Ransom. For the justification of all which, he obtained [n] several authentick

m *Ex vet.* n *MS.*

authentick Testimonies under the Great Seals of *Mathias* King of *Hungary*. *Jeronimus* Archbishop of *Crete*, *Legate de Latere* in *Hungary*, *Frederick* the Third Emperor of *Germany*, *Renat* King of *Sicily* (Father to Queen *Margaret* Wife of our King *Henry* the Sixth) *Frederick* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, and lastly a Declaration thereof from our King *Edward* the Fourth, under his Privy Seal, dated the third of *April* in the nineteenth year of his Reign. And being reduced to a low condition, by his great losses and the charge of his Ransom, he was through the favour of King *Henry* the Seventh [o] admitted an *Alms-Knight* here.

[o] *Ann.* 1. *H.* 7.

But some others made their retreat hither, and obtained admittance into this *Fraternity*, probably out of devotion, rather than cause of poverty; and among these were [p] *Thomas Hulme* sometime Clareneeux King of Arms, [q] *Lodowick Carly* the Kings Physician, [r] *John Mewtes* Secretary of the French Tongue, and [s] *Bartholomew Westby* made second Baron of the *Exchequer* [t] 2. *June anno* 1. *H.* 8.

[p] *Pat.* 22. *E.* 4. *pars* 1. *m.* 26.
[q] *An.* 7. *H.* 7.
[r] *Pat* 18. *H.* 7. *p.* 1.
[s] *An.* 6 *H.* 8.
[t] *Pat.* 1. *H.* 8. *p.* 2. *m.* 31.

It is manifest by the Will of King *Henry* the Eighth (as also by an [u] Indenture Tripartite between King *Edward* the Sixth of the first part, the *Executors* of his Father of the second part, and the *Dean* and *Canons* of *Windesor* of the third part, dated the fourth of *August anno* 1. *E.* 6.) that he intended a re-establishment of half the ancient number of *Alms-Knights*, viz. *Thirteen*, to which end he appointed, that as soon as might be, after his death (if not done in his life time) there should be a Revenue of 600 *l. per annum* in Mannors, Lands, and Spiritual Promotions (above all charges) setled upon the *Dean* and *Canons* and their *Successors* for ever, upon the Conditions following, that is to say, That the *Dean* and *Canons* should for ever find two *Priests* to say Mass at the Altar neer his Tomb, to keep yearly four solemn Obits for him, and at every Obit to distribute ten pounds in Alms, as also to pay twelve pence a day to each of those thirteen *Alms-Knights*, and they to have once in a year a long *Gown* of White Cloth, and a *Mantle* of Red Cloth, besides five Marks annually, to such one among them as should be appointed for their Governor: And lastly, to cause a Sermon to be made at *Windesor* every Sunday throughout the year.

[u] *Ex lib vocat. Frith in Arar. Coll. Windesor. p.* 55.

King *Edward* the Sixth (in performance of this Will) the 7. of *October*, in the first year of his Reign, did setle several Lands upon the *Colledge*, which we shall mention by and by; immediately after which, the [w] *Dean* and *Canons* were put in possession thereof, and received the Rents: but 600 *l. per annum* of these Rents, were by them paid back at the appointment of the then Lord Treasurer, to be imployed in building of Houses for the *Alms-Knights*, intended to be setled as King *Henry* the Eighth designed.

[w] *Ibid. p.* 57.

But it seems this work was not begun till the last of *February anno* 3. & 4. *Ph.* & *Mar.* and finished the 25. of *Sept. anno* 5. & 6. of the same King and Queen, the charge whereof came to [x] 2747 *l.* 7 *s.* 6 *d.* These Houses are situate in the South side of the lower Ward of the *Castle*, and contain thirteen Rooms, besides a Hall, a Kitchin and Pastry. The [y] Stone for building was brought from *Redding*, the Timber from several places in the *Forest*, and the Lead and Apparels for Chimnies, from *Suffolk-place* in *Southwark*.

[x] [y] *Lib. Compot. præf. penes.... Haris nuper de Windesor.*

At a Chapter of the *Order* of the *Garter* held the [a] first of *June anno* 4. & 5. *Ph.* & *Mar.* (these Houses being then neer finished) debate was had about placing some *Alms-Knights* therein, if possible by *Michaelmas* following, whereupon it was Ordered, *That the* [b] *Marquess of* Winchester *Lord Treasurer, should assign Lands for their maintenance, that not any thing might be wanting to finish so pious a work.* And towards the completing of all, the Queen had nominated nine of the thirteen designed *Alms-Knights*, namely [c] *James Crane*, *Michael Whiting*, *Silvester Clessop*, *Hugh Johans*, *Robert Case*, *John Brigby*, *George Fothergill*, *George Thackwell*, and *William Eerd*: but she fell sick of a Fever in *August* following, and so a stop was put to this business.

[a] [b] *Lib. C. p.* 24.
[c] *Lib. vocat. Frith. p.* 68.

But now (in the third place) to come to the Establishment, which these *Alms-Knights* obtained, and under which to this present they continue, Queen *Elizabeth*, immediately after her coming to the Crown, confirmed her Sisters Grants to the

the said nine *Alms-Knights*, and associated unto them [d] *Thomas Kemp*, *William Barret*, *William Cowper*, and *John Acton*, to make up the full number of thirteen, ordained by King *Henry* the Eighth.

d *Ibidem.*

Afterwards, *viz.* [e] 30. *Aug. anno primo Eliz.* the Queen, minding the continuance of the *Foundation* erected by King *Edward* the Third, and as neer as might be the performance of the intent of her Progenitors, and advancement of the most noble *Order* of the *Garter*, and especially of the knowledge given her of the last mind and Will of her Father King *Henry* the Eighth, to make a special Foundation and continuance of thirteen poor men, decayed in Wars, and such like service of the Realm, to be called *Thirteen Knights* of *Windesor*, and kept there in succession: And having also set forth and expressed certain *Orders* and *Rules* for their better *Government*, and declared how and in what manner the profits of certain *Lands*, of the yearly value of 600 *l.* given and assigned by her *Father* to the *Dean* and *Canons* and their Successors, should be imployed for the maintenance of these *Poor-Knights*, and otherwise according to his mind and will, she lastly declared her pleasure, That the *Dean* and *Canons* and their Successors should for ever cause the said *Orders* and *Rules* to be observed and kept, which are these that follow.

e *Ex lib. pergam penes Camerar. Scacc.*

f *Ibidem.*

1. [f] First, *We do establish* 13 Poor-Knights, *whereof one to be* Governor *of all the residue by such Order as followeth; The same* 13 *to be taken of Gentlemen, brought to necessity, such as have spent their times in the service of the Wars, Garrisons, or other service of the Prince, having but little or nothing whereupon to live, to be continually chosen by Us, and our Heirs, and Successors.*
2. Item, *We Ordain, that the* Governor *and* Knights *shall be chosen of men unmarried, and shall continue, except in special case, where it shall please Us the* Soveraign, *and the Heirs, and Successors of Us the Soveraign Kings of this Realm, to dispense with any person to the contrary. Provided nevertheless, if any of them will marry, he may so do, losing his place at the day of his Marriage.*
3. Item, *We Ordain, that no man defamed, and convicted of Heresie, Treason, Fellony, or any notable Crime, shall be admitted to any Room of the said* 13 Knights, *and if any so admitted be afterwards convicted of any such Crime, he shall be expelled out of that company, and lose his Room.*
4. Item, *The same* 13 Knights *to have yearly for their Liveries, each of them one Gown of* 4 *yards of the colour of Red, and a Mantle of Blue, or Purple Cloth, of five yards, at six shillings eight pence the yard.*
5. Item, *The Cross of St.* George *in a Scutcheon, embroidered without the Garter, to be set upon the left shoulder of their Mantles:*
6. *Item, The charges of the Cloth, and of the Lyning, making, and embroidering, to be paid by the* Dean *and* Chapter, *out of the Revenue of that foundation, and endowment given for that and other causes.*
7. Item, *The said* 13 Knights *to come together before Noon, and afternoon daily, at all the Divine Service, said within the* Colledge, *in their ordinary Apparel, and to continue to the end of the same Service, without a reasonable lett, to be allowed by the* Governor.
8. Item, *The said* 13 Knights *shall keep their Lodgings appointed unto them, and their Table together in their common Hall appointed, and to have their provisions made by their common Purse, except for any reasonable cause, any of them be licensed to the contrary, by the* Dean *or his* Deputy, *and that License to endure not above* 20 *days in no year, except it be for sickness only.*
9. Item, *The said* 13 Knights *shall not haunt the Town, the Ale-houses, the Taverns, nor call any Woman into their Lodgings, without it be upon a reasonable cause, and that with the License of the* Dean *or his* Deputy.
10. And further, *We will that* 12 *of the said* Knights *shall be obedient to the thirteenth, appointed for the* Governor, *and all* 13 *shall be obedient to the* Dean *and* Chapter, *in the observation of these* Statutes, *for the good Order of themselves.*

11. Item,

11. Item, *The said* 13 Knights *shall be placed within the Church where the* Dean *and* Canons *shall think best, to hear the Divine Service together, where they shall least trouble the Ministers of the Church.*

12. Item, *They shall be present at the Service, to be done quarterly for the memory of the* Patrons *and* Founders *of the said* Colledge, *and specially of our said dear* Father *and* Us, *and have for every of them at each time* 20 *d. and the* Governor 2 *s. The said Service shall be used at the four quarters of the Year, every Sunday next before the Quarter-day; That is to say, the Sunday next before the Feast of the Annunciation of our* blessed Lady, *the Sunday before the Nativity of St.* John Baptist, *the Sunday before the Feast of St.* Michael *the Archangel, and the Sunday before the Nativity of our* Lord God.

13. Item, *If any of the* 12 Knights *do not obey the Governor in the observation of these* Statutes, *he shall sustain for every time of such disobedience, such forfeiture as the* Dean *and* Chapter *shall put on him. The Governor shall make report of all such disobedience and other Offences committed by any of the said Knights to the* Dean *and* Chapter; *and if the offence be such, as shall seem to them to require such punishment, they shall besides a pain Arbitrary, give a warning to the Offender, causing the same to be registred, and he that shall so twice be warned by them, shall immediately upon the third offence, be expelled for ever out of that company. And if the* Governor *disobey the* Dean *and* Chapter *in the Observation of the said* Statutes, *upon such warning by them, he shall receive like punishment as the other twelve.*

14. Item, *The Penalties of such as are punished by the* Dean *and* Chapter *for not observing of these Statutes, shall be imployed, by the discretion of the* Dean *and* Chapter, *upon any of the Ministers or Choristers of the Church where they think best.*

15. Item, *When it shall please God, that We, or our Successors, Kings of this Realm, shall repair to the Castle of* Windesor, *the said* 13 Knights *shall stand before their doors in their Apparel, to do their obedience unto Us, then, at the coming and going away.*

16. Item, *Yearly at the keeping of the Feast of St.* George, *they shall stand likewise in their Apparel, before their doors, at the coming and going out of the* Lieutenant, *and of the other* Knights *of the* Order, *chosen for the keeping of that Feast.*

17. Item, *When any Feast of St.* George *is kept within that Castle of* Windesor, *the* Governor *and* Knights *at the Dinner, shall sit together in their Apparel, as aforesaid, at one Table, and have allowance of meat and drink, at the charges of Us, our Heirs, and Successors.*

18. Item, *The said* 13 Knights *shall daily in their Prayers, pray for Us the* Soveraign, *our Heirs and Successors, and for the* Companions *of our said* Order *of the* Garter.

19. Item, *The said* 13 Knights *shall all lye within their Lodgings provided for them, and if any of them shall lye without their said Lodgings, and the Colledge, without the license of the* Dean, *or his* Deputy, *he shall lose for every time twelve pence.*

20. Item, *If any of the* Poor-Knights, *after his admission into that room, shall have Lands or Revenues fall unto him to the yearly value of* 20 *l. or upwards, he shall immediately upon the coming of such Lands or Revenues unto him, be removed, and put from his said room of a* Poor-Knight, *and another, such as aforesaid, taken into his place.*

21. Item, *The said* Poor-Knights (*excepting cause of sickness*) *shall be every day present in the* Colledge, *at Church at Divine Service as is aforesaid, and receive there for a daily distribution of twelve pence by the day, to be paid them Monethly, if it may be, or at least in such sort as the other Ministers of the Chappel be paid; and he that shall be absent from the Church one day without leave of the* Dean *or his* Deputy, *shall lose his distribution of* 12 *d. aforesaid.*

22. Item, *The* Governor *shall keep a Book, and therein note aswell the absence of every* Knight *from the Church, as other faults committed by them, punishable*

by these Statutes, *whereof he shall deliver one to the* Dean *or his* Deputy, *and another to the* Steward, *or him that payeth the* Poor-Knights, *who by order of the* Dean *or his* Deputy, *shall defaulk at the time of their pay such sums as are set upon any of the said* Knights *for* Penalties *as aforesaid.*

23. Item, *The* Dean *or his* Deputy *shall once in the year at least, appoint a day and hour, at the which the* Poor-Knights *shall be warned to be present, unto whom the said* Dean *or his* Deputy, *or one of the Commons to be appointed by the* Dean, *or in his absence by his* Deputy, *shall read these* Statutes, *and if any of the* Knights, *being warned, shall be absent from that reading, without license of the said* Dean *or his* Deputy, *he shall lose for every time of such absence, six shillings eight pence.*

24. Item, *The* Poor-Knights *so chosen, as is aforesaid, and every of them, before he take any commodity of his Room, shall give a corporal Oath before the* Dean *or his* Deputy, *to be faithful, and true to Us, and to our Heirs, and Successors, Kings of this Realm, and that he or they for the time of their tarrying there, shall truly observe these* Statutes *and* Ordinances, *so far as the same concerneth them, or such other as shall be hereafter made by Us, or our Heirs, and Successors, touching the good order of that Company, upon the pains contained in the said* Statutes.

25. Item, *Notwithstanding the Article before expressed, prescribing the aforesaid number to be chosen of Gentlemen, which we do most allow, yet considering that before the perfection of these* Orders, *we be advertised, that the more part of them now chosen, and admitted, be not certainly known Gentlemen, we received into the same* Order, *as men well reported for honesty, and thought meet to be relieved for their poverty, we are pleased to dispence with all such, as are presently placed, being not Gentlemen born, and hereafter mean in that point, not to have any admitted, contrary to the said* Order.

The annual allowance to each of these *Alms-Knights* upon this new Establishment is 18 *l.* 5 *s.* 0 *d.* to be paid by the *Dean* of *Windesor* (but their *Governor* hath 3 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.* more) besides a Gown or Surcoat of Red Cloth, and a Mantle of Blue or Purple Cloth, on the left sleeve whereof is embroidered the Arms of St. *George* in a plain Scutcheon. King *James* was pleased to double this Pension, *viz.* to each of them [g] 18 *l.* 5 *s.* 0 *d.* more, and made it payable out of the *Exchequer* by quarterly payments.

g *Homes Chron. p.* 1037.

To these thirteen *Alms-Knights* there was added, in the Reign of the late Soveraign King *Charles* the First of ever blessed memory, five more; to wit, two of the Foundation of Sir *Peter la Maire* Knight, and three of Sir *Francis Crane* Knight, sometime *Chancellor* of this most noble *Order*.

For Sir *Peter la Maire*, by his [h] last Will and Testament, bearing date the eighth of *January anno* 1631. bequeathed the sum of 1500 *l.* to be bestowed and setled to and for such charitable and pious uses, and in such manner and form as Sir *Francis Crane* (who had married his Sister) should think fit and appoint, within four years after his death.

h *Ex lib. vocat. Audely in Officio Prærogat. Cant. f.* 7.

Afterwards [i] Sir *Francis* determining (very greatly to his own Fame and the honor of the *Order*) to erect certain Houses in *Windesor Castle*, for the dwelling of five *Alms-Knights*, did thereupon design the said 1500 *l.* towards that use, and added also money of his own to make up the rest; charging his *Executor* [Sir *Richard Crane* his Brother, afterwards created Baronet] by his [k] Will, dated the 27. of *August*, *anno* 1635. to see the buildings, which himself had begun, finished. He also bequeathed for ever two hundred pounds *per annum*, to be setled in Lands by his Executor, according to the advice and direction of *Thomas* then Earl of *Arundel* and *Surrey*, and *Henry* Lord *Matrevers* his eldest Son, to serve for the perpetual maintenance of five *Alms-Knights*, after the rate of forty pounds *per annum* to every one of them.

i *Lib. R. p.* 113.

k *Lib vocat. Pyle in Officio præd. f.* 105.

But his *Executor* growing slack in the performance of this, the work being rather exposed to ruine than any way forwarded by him, by whom the same was only expected to be finished; and complaints thereof several times made to the *Sove-*

Soveraign and *Knights-Companions* in Chapter, [l] *Orders* were issued thereupon to quieken him, and a [m] peremptory *Letter* sent him, dated the 7. of *March* 1639. to go on with the work forthwith; which commands he evading, and bad times growing on, the building was wholly neglected.

l *Lib.R.p.*140.
m *Sir James Palmer's Journal pro anno* 1639 *p.*64.

Sir *Richard Crane* afterwards dying, by his [n] Will dated, the 20. of *Sept.* 1645. appointed that his Mannor of *Carbrooke* in *Norfolk*, should for ever stand bound for the payment of the said 200 *l. per annum*, whereupon by an Inquisition taken at *Windesor*, 4. *Mar.* 1652. by virtue of a Commission upon the Statute, *anno* 43. *Eliz.* for charitable uses, the Mannors of *Woodrising* and *Wesfield*, with other Lands in the County of *Norfolk* were found liable to satisfie for building and finishing the said five Houses, and payment of the 200 *l.* yearly; and further, that the Arrears thereof from Sir *Francis Crane*'s death, came at that time to 3200 *l.*

n *Vide lib. vocat. Aylet in Officio prad. f.* 186.

Some contest then ensued in the Court of *Chancery*, between *Ralph Mabb*, with other Prosecutors on the *Alms-Knights* behalf, and *William Crane* Esquire (to whom the Estate of Sir *Richard Crane* fell) nevertheless the 200 *l. per annum* was (19. *July* 1655.) Decreed to be paid out of all the Lands which were Sir *Richard Cranes*, and the building of the Houses out of his personal Estate. And upon this (about two years after) that fair pile of Building, erected between the *Chancellor*'s and *Carter*'s *Towers*, against the West wall in the lower Ward of the *Castle*, was taken again in hand, and finished in the following year; the charge whereof amounted to 1700 *l.*

But for a final end of the Sute it was *Decreed*, the 27. of *January* 1659. That the before mentioned Mannor of *Carbrook* should for ever stand charged with 200 *l. per annum*, to be paid half yearly at *Michaelmas* and our *Lady-day*, or within thirty days after, for the perpetual maintenance of five *Alms-Knights*, together with 30 *l.* yearly for repairs, payable at the foresaid times, and an assurance thereof to be made accordingly: towards the recovery and setling of which, the care and assistance of Sir *Bulstrode Whiteloke* (then *Constable* of the Castle of *Windesor*) was not wanting.

The setlement being perfected, the present *Soveraign*, in a Chapter held at *Whitehall* the 14. of *January anno* 12. *Car.* 2. Decreed, That the *Chancellor* of the *Order* for the time being, should receive the said annual sum of 230 *l.* and dispose thereof thus; 200 *l. per annum* among the five new-instituted *Alms-Knights* quarterly, by even and equal portions, at the four usual Feasts of the year, and to employ the residue (being 30 *l. per annum*) upon repair of the new buildings, erected for their Lodgings, which powers were inserted into the Patent for his Office, bearing date the 20. of the same Month.

And it was further decreed at the same Chapter, That these five *Alms-Knights* should be subject to the same Rules and Government, under which the other thirteen were established by Queen *Elizabeth*'s Foundation, and made equal partakers of the same Priviledges, and have the like Habit assigned to them.

The number of *Alms-Knights* being by the donation of Sir *Francis Crane*, increased to eighteen. King *Charles* the First of ever blessed memory, taking notice thereof (though they were not yet setled) intended to make them up six and twenty, as they were at the Institution of the *Order*; to which end, in a Chapter held at *Whitehall* the 18. of *April* 1637. it was Ordered, [p] *That the* Knights-Companions (Commissioners *for other affairs of the* Order) *should consider of the best way how the same might be effected, and report their opinions to the then* Soveraign: But nothing being done thereupon, this Affair yet waits a more propitious season for the compleating thereof.

p *Lib. R.* p. 121.

SECT.

SECT. VI.

Of other Ministers *of the* Colledge.

IN the last place, the *Ministri* or *Officers* of the *Colledge* and *Chappel* of St. *George*, bring up the rear in the Patent of Foundation, under which Title are comprehended, first, the Superior Officers, namely the *Chantor*, *Steward*, and *Treasurer*.

Chantor. q *Colleg.* r *Stat. c.37.*

The q *Chantor* is ordained to be chosen from among the *Canons*, the chief part of whose Office is to govern those that sing in the Choire, and such as are employed about Divine Service: Before the Reformation in Religion, he appointed who of them should begin the Antiphones, celebrate the Masses, and read the Lessons, Epistles, and Gospels; with these, to his care was committed the r custody of the Books, Crosses, Chalices, Vestments, and all the sacred Ornaments of the *Chappel*. He receives the Offerings there made, and accompts for them, for all which service an annual Pension of 5 *l.* is allowed him.

s *Ibid. cap.* 38. Steward.

The *Steward* and *Treasurer* are s annually chosen on the morrow after *Michaelmas-day*, from out of the *Canon-Residents*. To the *Stewards* Office belongs the Government of all the Revenue of the *Colledge*; the Rents and Profits arising thence, he is to pay to the *Treasurer*: To his keeping is delivered all the Ornaments, Jewels, and other Treasure of the *Chappel*, not committed to the *Chantor*, under the obligation of rendring an account, and his yearly Pension is 5 *l.*

Treasurer. t *Ibid.*

The t *Treasurer* is appointed to distribute to the *Custos*, *Canons*, *Vicars* and every other *Minister* of the *Chappel*, the Pensions and Allowances assigned to them, of which if he fail eight days after the expiration of their set times of payment, he is debar'd of his own Quotidians, as *Canon-Resident*, until such Arrears be discharged, so also the *Steward* if he be faulty herein. The Pension allowed him is also 5 *l. per annum.*

As there is one *Treasurer* who receives the Rents of the *Old Lands*, so was there appointed another distinct from the former, and chosen from among the *Canons* to receive the Rent of the *New* (within few years after they were setled on the *Colledge*) to whom the like annual Pension of 5 *l.* hath been also allowed. The Title of the former being *Senescallus veteris Dotationis*, and of the latter *Senescallus novæ Dotationis*.

Steward of the Courts. u *Lib. Collect. pref. G. Evans, lib. A. f. 74. b.* w *Ibid. f. 75. a.*

There is also the *Steward of the Courts*, and *Clerk of the Lands*, which is an Officer under both the before mentioned Stewards: He u keeps the Courts by himself or Deputy, he is a Barrister at Law, and the standing Council for the Colledge; his yearly Pension is w twenty Nobles; but the Council in *Spiritualibus*, is usually a Graduate in the Civil Law.

Chapter-Clark. x *Ibid.* y

The x *Chapter-Clerks* Office, or *Registership*, is to enter or register all Acts agreed upon in the Chapter-house, he also draws, ingrosseth, and registreth all Indentures, Patents, Grants, Leases, and other Writings, which pass under the common Seal of the *Dean* and *Canons*. His Pension is y 3 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d. per annum.* The *Under Stewardship* and *Chapter-Clarkeship* went sometimes heretofore together, but of late they are divided, and now this Officer is also a Barrister at Law.

Verger. z *Colleg. Stat. Cap.* 54.

Of the *Vergers* Institution the z *Statutes* of the *Colledge* take notice, and appoint that in the Chappel at Processions and other Solemnities, he shall go before the *Dean* and *Canons* bearing his Rod: for which service there was then allowed him annually one Robe, and six pence *per diem*. And besides these Officers, there are two *Sextons*, two *Bell-ringers*, a *Clock-keeper*, and a *Porter*, who attends the shutting and opening of the Gates.

Sextons. Bell-ringers. Clock-keeper. Porter.

SECT.

SECT. VII.

Of the Endowment *of the* Colledge.

OUR brief account relating to the *Dean*, *Canons*, and other *Members* of the *Colledge*, being now dispatch'd, it follows that we treat of the *Endowment* thereof, and shew what *Lands* were given towards the maintenance and support of this Foundation. But because we intend no other account here, than in that of the *Castle*, *Chappel*, and *Colledge*, which was but short; we will only set down what Lands, *&c.* the *Founder* endowed the *Colledge* with, and then touch upon those other considerable additions made by some of his Successors, *Soveraigns* of the most noble *Order* of the *Garter*, and of the *Knights-Companions*, referring the rest (after a bare mention of some other that were taken into the first Foundation) to the larger discourse which we intend hereafter to make publick.

The Endowments wherewith King *Edward* the Third invested this *Colledge* by his Letters Patent of Foundation before mentioned, were first the [a] Advowsons of the Churches of **Wyrardesbury** (vulgarly ealled *Rasbury*) in the Diocess of *Lincoln*, of **Southtanton** in the Diocess of *Exeter*, and of **Uttoxater** in the Diocess of *Coventry* and *Lichfield*. These he gave to the *Custos*, *Canons*, *Alms-Knights* and *Ministers* of the *Colledge*, to hold in free, pure and perpetual Alms, throughly and perpetually, free from all secular exactions, with license to appropriate the same to the *Colledge*, notwithstanding the Statute of *Mortmain*. [b] He thereby also appointed so much of his Treasure as should be for their decent support, until he had setled an immoveable estate of 1000 *l. per annum* upon them in Lands, Benefices, or Rents.

[a] *Pat. de an.* 22. *E.* 3. [b] *pars* 1. *m.* 6.

But as for two of these Advowsons, namely *Uttoxater* and *Southtanton*, 'tis to be doubted there was afterwards discovered some defect in the Kings Title to them, and that the right of Patronage lay rather in *Henry* Earl of *Lancaster*, and *Thomas* Earl of *Warwick*: for the 18. of *June anno* 23. *E.* 3. the King granted special Licence to *Henry* Earl of *Lancaster* that he should give and assign to the *Custos* and *Chaplains* of the *Chappel* of St. *George* in *Windesor*, and their Successors for ever, the [c] Advowson of the Church of *Uttokesstatre*, it being there said to be of the Earls proper Patronage. And the like license to *Thomas Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*, for assigning to them the [d] Advowson of the Church of *Southtanton*, that being of his Patronage also: The King gave special license likewise to receive these Advowsons from these Earls, and to appropriate them to the use of the *Colledge*.

[c] *Pat.* 23. *E.* 3 *p.* 2 *m.* 7. [d]

Another like license pass'd ([e] 26. *Jan. anno* 24. *E.* 3.) to *William de Bohun* Earl of *Northampton*, that enabled him to assign to the said *Custos* and *Chaplains* and their Successors, the [f] Advowson of the Church of **Dadyngton** in the County of *Oxford*, which he held of the King *in Capite*, with license for them to receive and appropriate the same.

[e] *Pat.* 24. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 37 [f]

The 28. of *January* following, this royal *Founder* gave unto the *Custos* and *Colledge*, by the name of Custos and Chaplains of his Free Chappel of *Windesor*, [g] one Messuage, seventeen Acres of Land, one Acre of Pasture, and three shillings Rent, with the appurtenances, lying in **Wyrardesbury** in the County of *Buckingham*, which had been conveyed to him by *Rich. de Gloucester* Heir to *Isabell de Ditton*. And on the 22. of *May* ensuing, he also granted unto them, the [h] Advowson of the Church of **Datchet** neer *Windesor*, with license to appropriate it to them and their Successors.

[g] *Pat.* 24. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 36. [h] *Pat.* 24. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 14.

In the following year (*primo Martii*) the King gave them the [i] Advowsons of the Churches of **Eure** in *Buckinghamshire*, of **Ritton** in the County of *Norfolk*, and of **Whaddon** and **Caxton** in the County of *Cambridge*, to appropriate these also to them and their Successors. And the 9. of *May* after he likewise granted and assigned to them, the [k] Advowson of the Churches of **Symondesbourn** (which

[i] *Pat.* 25. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 24. [k] *Pat. de eod. an p.* 1. *m* 14.

(which the *Colledge* in the Reign of King *Edward* the Fourth surrendred to *Richard* Duke of *Gloucester*) and of St. *Stephens* of **Saltash**, with like license of Appropriation. But the first of these was the gift of Queen *Philippa*, she having purchased it of [l] Sir *John Darcy* Knight; and the other of *Edward* the black Prince; and both granted by them, first to the King, that by his Grant afterwards to the *Colledge*, its Title might be better strengthened.

l *Ibidem.*

The 26. of *October* in the same year, the King granted to the said *Custos* and *Colledge* and their Successors, [m] *one hundred Marks per annum*, to be received out of the Farm of the Town of *Northampton*; and paid them by the hands of the Bailiff of that Town for the time being, at *Easter* and *Michaelmas* by equal portions, towards their sustentation and maintenance, and the supportation of the burthen of the *Chappel*.

m Pat. 25 E. 3. p. 3. m. 15.

It was at the instance of the *Founder* (and therefore we mention it here) That the Bailiffs and Communality of **Yarmouth** granted to the Colledge (the first of *April anno* 26. *E.* 3.) under their Common-Seal, a [n] *Last* of *Red Herrings* yearly, well dried and cleansed; to the end they might take this Corporation into their Prayers. But some say it was enjoin'd them as a Penance, for murdering a Magistrate among them.

n Ex ipso Autograph. in Archiv. hujus Colleg.

Moreover the *Founder* granted to them and their Successors (18. *July anno* 26. *E.* 3.) the [o] Mannor of **Eure** neer *Weybrigg*, with its appurtenances in *Buckinghamshire*, the Mannor of **Craswell**, with its appurtenances in the Parish of *Bray*, in the County of *Berks*, and a certain **Weare**, called *Braybrok*, placed in the River of *Thames*, with all the Lands and Tenements in the said Parish conveyed unto him by Sir *John Philibert*, together with the Knights Fees, and Advowsons of Churches, Chappels, Chanteries, and other things whatsoever, to the said Mannors, Lands and Tenements belonging or appertaining. And the 23. of *February* following, a [p] Writ issued to *Henry de Greystock* Clerk, Steward of the Lands set apart for the use of the Kings Chamber, and to *Robert de Haddon* Escaetor of the same Lands, to give full seisin to the *Custos* and *Colledge* of these Mannors of *Eure* and *Bray St. Philebert*, as also of a Wood called **Temple-Wood** in *Stoke-pugeys*, conveyed to the King by *John de Molyns*.

o Pat. 26. E. 3. pars 1. m. 1.

p Claus. 27. E. 3. m. 25.

Afterwards, the King considering, that all the Lands he had assigned for support of this *Colledge*, were yet too little for that end; and being desirous to have it better provided for, he further granted to the *Custos* and *Colledge* and their Successors by like Letters Patent, a [q] *Pension* of one hundred pounds yearly out of his Exchequer. These Letters Patent were afterwards vacated, for that by other like Letters dated the 12. of *May anno* 34. *E.* 3. he gave them Lands to the yearly value of [r] 101 *l.* 11 *s.* 11 *d.* of the possessions of *Religious Aliens*, which fell into his hands, by occasion of the *French* Wars. One hundred pounds *per annum* part of this, was in recompence of the said 100 *l.* yearly Pension issuing out of the Exchequer, and the 1 *l.* 11 *s.* 11 *d.* in part of satisfaction of the Lands, which the King intended to provide for the further maintenance of the *Colledge*; nevertheless he thereby also granted, [s] that in case these Possessions should by Treaty of Peace or otherwise be restored, they should then receive the said yearly sum of 101 *l.* 11 *s.* 11 *d.* out of his Exchequer as before, until there was provided for them Lands of the like annual value.

q Pat. 28. E. 3. p. 2. m 22.

r s Pat. 34. E. 3. p. 1. m. 13

And whereas in the Patent of Foundation it is said, that the King designed to setle upon the *Colledge* Lands of the value of 1000 *l. per annum*; now in another Letters Patent bearing *Teste* the said 12. of *May*, there is notice taken only of Lands of the annual value of [t] 655 *l.* 15 *s.* 0 *d.* (as if his intended Donation had extended to Lands of no greater value) and that the King in pursuance of such his purpose, had already provided Lands and other Possessions, rated at 604 *l.* 5 *s.* 3 *d. per annum*, the residue to make up the intended sum here expreſt, being but 51 *l.* 9 *s.* 9 *d.* He thereupon [u] appointed the *Colledge* to receive that sum yearly out of 126 *l.* 0 *s.* 0 *d.* which the Prior of *Takkele* paid to him for the Farm of that Priory, it being then in the Kings hands by reason of the War with *France*: Howbeit in case Peace was so concluded, that the same should be restored to the Prior, the King then further granted, [w] that the *Custos* and *Colledge* should thence-

t u w Ibid.

thenceforward receive the said sum of 51 *l.* 9 *s.* 9 *d.* out of his Exchequer, at *Michaelmas* and *Easter*, by even Portions.

But it seems the Lands fell short of the value rated at in this Account, and reached not to the total of the Kings intended Endowment by 90 *l. per annum*: For the first of [x] *June* in the following year, by other Letters Patent, he granted to the *Custos* and *Colledge*, so much money to be annually paid them out of his Exchequer (to make up what yet fell short) until he should cause to be provided Lands or Rents of that value, to be setled on them and their Successors.

x *Pat.* 35. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 21.

Lastly, the 2. of *April anno* 39. *E.* 3. the *Founder* bestowed on them a [y] piece of ground in *New-Windesor* (upon which had stood a House sometime of *John de London*) in lieu of the great Garden lying on the South part of the *Castle*, [z] formerly given them by him, for the use of the *Custos* and *Canons*. And also a Garden opposite thereunto, on the other side of the way, with its appurtenances, for the use of the *Alms-Knights*, *Vicars*, *Clerks*, *Choristers*, and other the *Officers* of the *Colledge*; and herewith he closed his Endowments.

y *Pat.* 39. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 22.

z *Pat.* 25. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 37.

But besides all these Donations made by the *Founder*, to the *Custos*, *Colledge*, and their *Successors*, there were other Lands, Parsonages, Pensions, and Portions given to them by pious and devout persons, in free, pure, and perpetual Alms for ever, towards their sustentation, which are said [a] to be taken into the first Foundation, and made up that Revenue, which [b] *William* Bishop of *Winchester*, accounted and declared sufficient for the maintenance of the *Custos* and those other of the *Colledge*, according to the number by him limited in the Colledge Statutes, as also for the due defraying of all charges imposed upon them, and these we shall let pass with the bare mention only.

a *MS.*

b *Præfat. ad Colleg. Stat.*

The [c] Mannor of **Dodyngton Castle**, two Pastures called **Frith** and **Aberoft**, the Chappel of **Langeley**, the Parsonages of **Eltriton**, **Langeley-Paries**, **Wantynge**, **Shaldeborne**, **Wedonbeek**, **Glynde**, and **Rysleye**, the Pensions of the Vicarages of **Wantynge**, **Clyte**, **Cyltehey**, and **Gottesford**, and the Portions of **Bachyngborne**, **Pecchewyke**, in **Haseley** magna, **Chalgrave**, **Adewelle**, **Aston**, **Rowhand**, **Sebyngdon**, **Kyngeston**, and **Henton**, in **Stoke-Basset**, and **Clopecote**, in **Gatehampton**, **Whytechyrche**, **Napleberham**, **Retherfeld**, **Elthenrith**, **Stretham**, of **Thernecroft** in **Letherhed**, of **Totynbeek** in **Wodesdon**, **Etyngton**, **Woodmerthborne**, of **Fordham**, **Ethorpe**, **Newenham**, and in **Colleswoth**.

c *MS.*

In following times, there were many other considerable Donations bestowed on the *Colledge*, by the succeeding *Soveraigns* and *Knights-Companions* of the *Order* (for as to what was given by others, we shall not need to take further notice of now) either out of devotion, or desire to be more especially taken into their Prayers, or in honor to the Military Order; some of which, as they fall into our way, we will here set down.

King *Richard* the Second, Grandchild and Successor to the *Founder* (13. *Feb. anno Regni sui* 13.) gave to the *Custos* and *Canons* [d] one Croft in the Town of **Northmolton**, together with the Advowson of that Church, it being in the Diocess of *Exeter*, and license to appropriate the same.

d *Pat.* 13. *R.* 2. *pars* 2. *m.* 11.

John Duke of *Bedford*, third Son to King *Henry* the Fourth, bestowed on this *Colledge*, by his Deed dated the 3. of *December anno* 9. *H.* 5. the [e] Priory of **Okeborne** in the County of *Wilts* (a Cell to the Abbey of *Bec* in *Normandy*) together with all and singular the Possessions thereunto belonging or appertaining. This Grant King *Henry* the Fifth [f] confirmed, and that it might be more valid, was likewise confirmed by King [g] *Edward* the Fourth.

e *Ex ipso Autogr. in Ærar. hujus Colleg.*

f *Ex Lib. vocat. Arundel in Ærar. præd. f.* 91.

g *Cart. de an.* 1. *E.* 4. *m.* 20.

King *Edward* the Fourth had a singular respect and favour for this *Colledge*, to which, the 18. of *July* in the seventh year of his Reign, towards augmentation of its maintenance, and ease of the great burthens of the *Dean* and *Canons*, he gave the [h] Mannors of **Atherston** in the County of *Warwick* (a member of the Priory of *Okeborne*) the Mannors and Advowsons of the Churches of **Chesingbury** in *Wiltshire*, and of **Quarle** in *Huntshire*, the Church and Priorate of **Uphaven**, and the Deanry or Chappel of St. **Burien** in *Cornwall*, with all rights and appurtenances thereunto appertaining, as also an annual *Pension* which

h *Pat.* 7. *E.* 4.

the Abbot of *Sautre* paid for the Church of *Fulburne* to the Abby *de bonâ Requie*, and another annual *Pension* of 20*l.* paid by the Abbot of *Rousford* for the mediety of the Church of *Rotheram*.

i *Pat.*13.*E.*4. *p.*2.*m.*6.

The 29. of *January anno regni sui* 13. he gave the [i] Mannor or Priorate of **Munclane** in the County of *Hereford* (parcel of the possessions belonging to the *Priories Alien*) with all and singular its appurtenances.

k *Pat.*14.*E.*4. *p.*2.*m.*5.

The following year (*viz.* 27. of *February*) he granted to them, by the name of *Custos* or *Dean* and *Chapter* of this *Colledge*, the [k] Custody, Patronage, and free disposition of the Hospital or Free-Chappel of St. **Anthonies** *London* (a Preceptory of the Monastery of St. *Anthony* at *Vienna*) with all the Liberties, Priviledges, Lands, Rents, Services, and Emoluments whatsoever thereunto belonging, upon the first vacancy, whether it should happen by death, resignation, or otherwise.

l *Pat.*14.*E.*4. *p.*1.*m.*1.

He also gave them (the 17. of *May* ensuing) the [l] Priorate of **Bzimsfield** in the County of *Gloucester*, the Mannor of **Blakenham** in the County of *Suffolk* (parcel of the Priory of *Okeburne*) the Priorate of St. **Elene** in the Isle of *Wight* in *Hampshire*, the Priorate or Mannor of **Charleton** in *Wiltshire*, and all the Lands, Tenements, Rents, and Services in **Mozthumudon**, **Compton**, and **Welegh** in the Counties of *Sussex* and *Southampton* (which sometime belonged to the Abbey of *Lucerne* in *Normandy*) the Mannor of **Ponyngton** and **Wedon** in the County of *Dorset* (parcel of the possessions of *Okeburne Priory*) one annual *Pension* of twelve Marks, payable by the Prior of the Priory of *Monte-Acuto*, together with all and singular the Lands, Tenements, Rents, Advowsons, Liberties, &c. annexed to the said Priorates and Mannors, or in any manner appertaining, with license to appropriate the same to them and their Successors.

m *Ibidem.*

About two Moneths after, this King gave also to the *Colledge*, the [m] Mannor of **Demburp** in *Devonshire*, and Lordships of **Pzeston** and **Donkeülber** in the County of *Somerset*, the Advowsons of the Churches of **Purpton**, and **Wollabington** in the said County (being parcel of the Priory of *Goldyf* in *Wales*, and one of the Priors Aliens) together with the Knights Fees, Advowsons, Profits, Rights, *&c.* thereunto belonging.

n *Ex ipso Autogr. in Ærar. Colleg. Windesor.*

In the 18. year of his Reign, the *Queen*, *Thomas* Archbishop of *York*, and several Bishops, Noblemen and others, being seised to the use of the King his Heirs and Successors of the [n] Mannor of **Wykecombe** called **Bassetsbury**, the Fee Farm of the Town of great **Wykecombe**, the Mannor of **Crendon** in the County of *Buckingham*, and of the Mannors of **Haseley** and **Pyrton** in the County of *Oxford*, parcel of the Lands of the Dutchy of *Lancaster*, they (at the special command of the King) demised and granted the premises with all their appurtenances to the *Custos* or *Dean* and *Canons* and their *Successors*, until such time as the King, his Heirs or Successors should grant to them other Lands of the like yearly value.

o *Pat.*18.*E.*4. *p.*2.*m.*4.

The 17. of *February* following, this King gave them the [o] Advowson of the Church of **Chesbunt**, being of his own Patronage, with license to appropriate the same, provided the Vicarage were sufficiently endowed, and a competent sum of money annually distributed among the poor Parishioners, according to the Diocesan's Ordinance, and form of the *Statute* in such case provided.

This King the 21. of *February* following united the Custody or Deanry of the Free Chappel of **Wolverhampton** in the County of *Stafford*, to the *Custos* or *Dean* of this *Colledge*, and his *Successors* for ever. This Church *cum membris* is exempt not only from the Jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Lichfield* and *Coventry*, but (by a Papal Bull) from all his Legates, and Delegates; nor is it subject to any terrene power but the Majesty of *England*, and under it, to the perpetual visitation of the Keepers of the Great Seal *pro tempore*.

q *Pat.*20.*E.*4. *p.*2.*m.*23.

He likewise gave them the [q] Advowson or Patronage of the Prebend of **Twern** in the County of *Dorset*, the 27. of *Sept.* in the 20. year of his Reign, with all its rights and appurtenances, and also a license of appropriation.

r *Pat.*21.*E.*4. *p.*1 *m.*3.

And lastly, the 21. of *November* in the ensuing year, he granted to them two parts of the [r] Mannors of **Old-Swynford** and **Gannow** in the County of *Worcester*,

Worcester, and the Reversion of the third part of them after the death of *Margaret* Wife of *Fulk Stafford* Esquire; with the Advowson of the Church of **Old-Swynford**.

These were the effects of this most noble and munificent Princes piety and liberality towards this *Colledge*: Nor was he alone bountiful, but excited others to be so likewise, and to that purpose, in the first year of his Reign, [r] licensed all his Subjects in general to give what Lands, Rents, or Advowsons they pleased, to the *Dean* and *Canons*, within the value of 300 Marks *per annum*, as well such as they held of the King *in Capite*, or in *Burgage*, or otherwise, as any other Land; the same to be united and appropriated to the *Colledge* and its uses perpetually, notwithstanding the *Statute* of *Mortmaine*; and afterwards increased this license to Lands of the value of [t] 500 *l.* a year (but King *Henry* the Eighth extended the like license to the value of [u] 1000 *l. per annum.*)

[r] *Cart. an. 1. E. 4. m. 20.*

[t] *Pat. 19. E. 4. m. 5.*

[u] *Ex lib. Denton. f. 115.*

Hereupon shortly after, to wit, *June* 29. *anno Regni sui* 20. he granted license to *John* Duke of *Suffolk* and *Elizabeth* his Wife the Kings Sister, to give and assign unto them the [w] Manor or Lordship of **Grobeburg** otherwise called **Leighton-Bufard** with its appurtenances in the County of *Bedford*, the Church of **Tintagell** in *Cornwall*, with all its emoluments; as also 19 Messuages, 7 Tofts, 140 Acres of Land, 14 Acres of Medow, 140 Acres of Pasture, 100 Acres of Wood, and 4 *l.* Rent, with their appurtenances in **Newford** and **Blanford** in the County of *Dorset*. And 70 Messuages, 12 Tofts, 500 Acres of Land, 100 Acres of Medow, 300 Acres of Pasture, 100 Acres of Wood, and 100 shillings Rent, with the appurtenances in **Stokeley**, **Northall**, **Edelesburgh**, and **Rodenach** in *Buckinghamshire*. And 20 Messuages, 8 Tofts, 300 Acres of Land, 60 Acres of Medow, 200 Acres of Pasture, 40 Acres of Wood, and 20 shillings Rent, with the appurtenances in **Compton-St. John** in the County of *Sussex*. And 10 Messuages, 9 Tofts, 200 Acres of Land, 20 Acres of Medow, 100 Acres of Pasture, 10 Acres of Wood, and 20 shillings Rent, with the appurtenances in **Portsmouth** and **Burghegge** in *Hampshire*. And one Messuage, 3 Tofts, 60 Acres of Land, 6 Acres of Medow, 40 Acres of Pasture, and 20 shillings Rent, with the appurtenances in **Stodeham** in the County of *Hertford*, held of the King *in Capite*; notwithstanding the *Statute* of *Mortmaine*, or any other restriction or proviso whatsoever.

[w] *Pat. 20. E. 3. p. 2. m. 26.*

We shall here note, that the 24. of *July anno* 18. *E.* 4. this [x] Duke of *Suffolk* infeoffed *Richard* Duke of *York*, *Thomas* Bishop of *Lincoln*, and others, of the Mannor of **Leighton-Bufard**, who the 25. of *June anno* 19. *E.* 4. at his speeial instance Demised and Granted the said Mannor to the *Dean* and *Canons* for ever. And in the *Octaves* of St. *John Baptist*, *anno* 20. *E.* 4. the [y] Duke of *Suffolk* and his Dutchess levied a Fine to the *Dean* and *Canons*, who thereupon agreed that for this their so large Donation they should be had in their perpetual Orisons.

[x] *Lib. Denton. f. 148.*

[y] *Ibid. f. 149.*

The 10. of *January* next after, [z] Sir *Walter Devoreux de Ferrers* Knight, following this pious Example, together with Sir *John Devoreux*, and others his Feoffees, of the Mannor of **Sutton-Courtney** in the County of *Berks*, and of the Church of **Sutton-Courtney** (having withal obtained the [a] Kings license to that end) did give and grant unto the *Dean*, *Canons*, and their *Successors* for ever, the Advowson or Patronage thereof, with all rights appertaining thereunto.

[z] *Ex ipso Autogr. in Æxar. Colleg. Windesor.*

[a] *Pat. 20. E. 4. p. 2. m. 3. vide Lib. Denton. f. 41. & 42.*

All the before mentioned Endowments are called the Lands of the *Old Dotation*, to distinguish them from those setled on the Colledge by King *Edward* the Sixth, which bear the title of Lands of the *New Dotation*, concerning which we shall speak in the next place. But several of them so given by King *Edward* the Fourth, the *Colledge* never enjoyed, namely, the Mannor of *Atherston*, the Mannor and Advowson of *Quarle*, *Uphaven*, St. *Burien*, *Fulburne* Pension, *Brimfeld*, St. *Elen*, *Charleton*, *Blakenham*, *Ponyngton*, *Wedon*, *Old Swinford*, and *Gannow*: And of some others they were seised but a short time, to wit, *Chesinghury* Mannor and Advowson, the Lands in *Newford*, *Blanford*, and *Portsmouth*. Besides these, the *Colledge* was dispossest of *Gottesford* in the Reign of King *Henry* the Sixth, of *Chesnunt* Advowson in *Henry* the Seventh's Reign, and in the time of King *Henry* the

the Eighth (or some time before) of *Wodemershthorne*, *Tyltehey*, *Retherfeld*, *Levyngdon*, *Stoke-Basset*, *Stretham*, *Totingbeek*, *Fordham*, *Ethorp*, *Newenham*, and *Tollesworth*; afterwards they surrendred into the hands of King *Henry* the Eighth; the Mannors and Advowsons of *Eure*, *Clyff*, *Ashton*, *Rowhand*, *Kingston*, *Est-Henrith*, *Northumunden*, *Compton*, *Weleg*, *Compton-St. John's*, and *Shobingdon* Portion.

And lastly, the *Colledge* lost at least 1000 Marks *per annum*, upon the Reformation of Religion, in the profit made by St. *Anthonies Piggs*, which the appropriation of the Hospital of St. *Anthonies London* had brought to it, and no less than 500 *l. per annum*, the Offrings of Sir *John Shornes Shrine*, at *Northmarston* in *Buckinghamshire*; a very devout man, of great veneration with the people, and sometime Rector there. The Advowson of this Church was appropriate to the *Dean* and *Canons*, by the Prior and Convent of *Dunstaple*, the license of King *Edward* the Fourth being obtained for that purpose the [b] 15. of *November*, *anno regni sui* 19. in exchange for the Advowson of the Church of *Wedenbeck* in *Bedfordshire*.

b *Pat.* 19. *E.* 4. *m* 3.

The *Dean* and *Canons* having by their Deed under their Chapter Seal, conveyed unto King *Henry* the Eighth the [c] Mannor and Rectory of *Ivor* in *Buckinghamshire*, the Mannor of *Dammery Court* in *Dorsetshire*, and divers other Lands, Rents, Portions, and Pensions in the Counties of *Somerset*, *Hants*, *Middlesex*, *Oxford*, and *Sussex*, for which they had no recompence in his life, nevertheless by his last [d] Will and Testament, he appointed them satisfaction; and thereby charged and required his Son, and all his Executors, and likewise all his Heirs and Successors Kings of *England*, as they would answer the neglect before Almighty God at the dreadful day of Judgment, that they should see assurance made to the *Dean* and *Canons* for setling Lands on them and their Successors, in performance of his Will, and the uses therein appointed.

c *Regist. vocat. Frith*, *p.* 53.

d *Ex lib. vocat. Alen in Regist. Cur. Prerog. Cant. n.* 32.

And it being manifest to the *Lord Protector* and his Co-Executors (after this *Kings* death) [e] that the *Dean* and *Canons* upon the commutation and agreement of an exchange, performed on their part by assigning to the said King the Mannors and Lands above specified, being of the yearly value of 160 *l.* 2 *s.* 4 *d.* for which they were as then unrecompenced; King *Edward* the Sixth, minding the accomplishing and performance of his Fathers last Will, as well for the assurance of Lands to the yearly value of 600 *l.* to the *Dean*, *Canons*, and their *Successors* for ever, to the uses in the Will, and for maintenance and performance of such other Ordinances and things, as he and the said Executors should limit and prescribe to them; as also for the assurance of other Lands of the annual value of 160 *l.* 2 *s.* 4 *d.* to be made to the *Dean* and *Canons* in recompence of the Lands, they had released and assigned to King *Henry* the Eighth; was pleased by his Letters Patent bearing Teste at *Hampton Court*, the 7. day of *October* in the first year of his Reign, to give and grant to the said *Dean* and *Canons* the Rectories, Impropriations, Parsonages, Chappels, Portions, and Tithes here named, *viz.*

e *Regist. vocat. Frith. p.* 56.

The Rectories and Churches of [f] **Bradnynche**, **Northam**, **Iplepen**, **Illington**, and **Southmolton** in *Devonshire*, and the Tithe of Corn of **Otery** in that County, part of the Duke of *Somersets* Possessions, as also **Blosoms-Inn** in St. *Lawrence-Lane*, *London*, sometime parcel of the Possessions of the late Colledge of *Otery*. The Tithes of Grain, *&c.* of the Rectory of **Ambrosbury** in *Wiltshire*, and all the Tithes of **Bedwyn**, **Stoke**, **Wilton**, **Harden**, **Harden-Tunrige**, **Knoll**, **Pathall**, **Chisbury**, **East-Grafton**, **West-Grafton**, **Grafton-Harten**, and **Wexcombe**, parcel of the Prebend of *Bedwyn* in that County; as also the Prebend of **Alcannynge** and **Urchesounte**, the Rectories of **Urchesounte**, **Stapleford**, **Tytcombe**, and **Froxfield** in the said County, and all the annual *Pension* of 8 *l.* issuing out of the Mannor of **Icombe** in the County of *Gloucester*. The Rectory and Vicarage of **Ikelington** in *Cambridgeshire*. The Rectory of **East-Bechworth** in the County of *Surrey*. The Reversion of the Portion of Tithes of **Trequite** in *Cornwall*, and the *Rent* of 13 *s.* 4 *d.* reserved upon the same. All the Portion of Tithes of **Trequite** aforesaid, belonging to the Priory of St. *Germans* in *Cornwall*. The Rectory and Church of **Plymton**, the Chappels of **Plymstoke**,

f *Pat.* 1. *E.* 6. *pars* 5.

Plymstoke, **Wembury**, **Shagh**, **Sanford-Spone**, **Plymton**, St. **Maurice**, and **Bryrton** in *Devonshire*, belonging to the late Priory of *Plymton*, the Rectory of **Isleworth** and **Twickenham** in the County of *Middlesex*, parcel of the possessions of the Colledge of St. *Maries* of *Winchester*, and the Rectory of **Shiplake** in *Oxfordshire*, lately belonging to the Monastery of *Missenden* in *Buckinghamshire*. As also all the Reversion of the Rectory of **Aberguille**, and of the Chappels of **Llanlawett** (*alias dict.* **Llanbadock**) and **Llanpenysaunt**, (part of the Monastery of *Karmarden* in *South-Wales*) with the *Rent* of 30 *l. per ann.* reserved thereon; the Reversion of the Rectory of **Talgarth** (part of the Priory of *Brecknock* in *South-Wales*) with the reserved *Rent* of 11 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.* The Reversion of the Rectory of **Bara** in the County of *Brecknock* (belonging to the Priory of *Brecknock*) and 6 *l. Rent.* The Reversion of the Rectory of St. *Germans* in *Cornwall* (appertaining to the Monastery or Priory of St. *Germans*) with 61 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d. Rent.* To have and to hold all the premises, unto the *Dean* and *Canons* and their *Successors* for ever; except the Tithes in *Woolpall* and *Fitz-Waren* in *Wiltshire* (belonging to the Priory of *Bedwyn*) The Vicarage-house of *Ikelington*, the Monies called *Marriage-Money*, *Dirge-Money*, and *Mass-Money*, and the whole profit of the *Bedrolls* of *Ikelington*. Nevertheless to pay the King and his Successors in the Court of *Augmentation*, for the Rectories of *Aberguille*, *Talgarthe*, and *Bara*, the Chappels of *Llanbadock* and *Llanpenysaunt* 4 *l.* 2 *s.* 8 *d.* in the name of Tenths, and for all Rents, Serviees, &c. of the other Rectories, &c. 48 *l.* 7 *s.* 4 *d.* annually at *Michaelmas*.

Furthermore, within all these premisses the King (by the said Letters Patent) granted to the *Dean* and *Canons*, *Court Leets*, or *Views* of *Frankepledge*, and to have *Fines* and *Amerciaments*, *Free-Warrens*, *Waifs*, and *Felons Goods*, and all other *Profits*, *Commodities*, *Liberties*, *Emoluments*, and *Hereditaments* whatsoever. All which Rectories, Tithes, Pensions, Rents, &c. before mentioned, and all other Gifts and Grants in the possession of the *Dean* and *Canons anno Jac. Reg.* 2. were confirmed and made good and effectual in Law to them and their Successors, by *Act* of Parliament that year.

The 8 2. of *August* preceding the Grant made by King *Edward* the Sixth, a Rental pass'd under the hand of Sir *Edward North* Chancellor of the Court of *Augmentation*, containing the particular charges issuing out of the aforesaid Rectories, *&c.* whereunto certain Articles were annexed, and according to which the said Deed of Conveyance from the King was drawn. g *Regist. Frith*, p. 57.

The ancient rate of these *New Lands* in the Kings Books was h 661 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d. per annum*, but according to the improved Rents, to wit, as they were then turn'd over to the *Colledge*, was 812 *l.* 12 *s.* 9 *d.* out of which improved value (as appears by the Articles now mentioned) i 160 *l.* 2 *s.* 4 *d.* was yearly allowed them in satisfaction of the Lands past over to King *Henry* the Eighth, and 600 *l. per annum* for accomplishment of his Will, but the remaining sum, *viz.* 52 *l.* 10 *s.* 5 *d.* was reserved in lieu of Tenths, to be yearly paid into the Court of *Augmentation*; howbeit this last reserved sum was not agreed unto by the *Dean* and *Canons* to be so paid, because the Charges issuing out of the Lands were greater than were expressed in the Rental. h *Ibid. p.* 54. i *Ibid. p.* 57.

And we find, that shortly after the k Rents of the Parsonage of St. *Germans*, the Rectories of *Northam*, *Ilsington*, *Icklington*, *Ambrosbury*, *Stapleford*, and *Orchesount*, the Prebends of *Alcanings* and *Orchesount*, being part of the New Lands, were received and accounted for, according to the old rate in the Kings Books, to wit, 162 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d. per annum*, by the *Steward* of the Old Lands, in recompence for the Lands conveyed to King *Henry* the Eighth, and out of which they paid a yearly surplusage of 2 *l.* 2 *s.* 1 *d.* this sum together with the Rents of the rest of the *New Lands*, being upon the said improvement accounted to be 597 *l.* 17 *s.* 11 *d.* made in all 600 *l. per annum*; and this was paid by the *Dean* and *Canons* for some time towards building the *Alms-Knights* Houses, as is before remembred. k *Ibid. p.* 54.

Thus stood the Lands accounted for, till the setlement made by Queen *Elizabeth*, for the disposition of the whole Revenue, which then was accounted to the

the *Colledge*, but at the value entred in the Kings Books; upon which setlement the Queen appointed the *Dean* and *Canons* to convert the Rents of these *New Lands*, from time to time to such uses and intents, and in such manner and form as she had set down in a [l] *Book* signed with her Sign Manual, and annexed to an *Indenture* bearing date the 30. of *August*, in the first year of her Reign, made between *Her* on the one part, and the *Dean* and *Canons* on the other part. By which *Indenture* the *Dean* and *Canons* Covenant for themselves and *Successors* [m] to distribute and employ at all times for ever the Rents and Profits of these Lands, in such manner as in the Book is declared and appointed, and to observe and keep all the Ordinances, Rules, and things whatsoever contained therein, which on their part and behalf is limited and appointed to be performed and executed, according to the true meaning of the same.

l { *Penes Canc. merar. Scaccarii.*

And if the *Dean* and *Canons* or their *Successors* should omit any thing to them appointed to be performed by the said Ordinances, Rules, and Statutes, then for every such default they are to abide such Order as shall be made by the *Queen*, her Heirs, or Successors, or by any of the *Knights-Companions* of the *Order*, as by her or her Successors should be thereunto appointed.

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
In this Book, the Total of the *Revenue*, reckoned at the ancient value amounts to———	661	06	08
The Annual charge and disbursements to the *Colledge*, therein set down, is———	430	19	06
And so Remains———	230	07	02

Which Remainder hath been and is [n] assigned and employed for payment of *Tenths* to the *Crown*, *Vicars* and *Curates* annual stipends, *Officers-Fees*, *Reparation* of the premisses, and for the relief of the *Dean* and *Canons* and their *Successors*, in maintenance and defence of the said Lands.

n *Ibid.*

And to the end the *Queen* might know how the Revenue of these *New Lands* was disposed of, she also Ordered, [o] That her *Lieutenant* and the *Knights-Companions*, should annually (at the Feast of St. *George* held at *Windesor*) see the just account thereof, how the Income was expended, and the payments made; and that one of the *Officers* of the *Order*, should from time to time yearly put her *Lieutenant* in mind thereof.

o *Ex eod. lib.*

Which Order was renewed in a *Chapter* of the *Garter* held *April* [p] 24. *ann. Jac. Reg.* 21. and the *Chancellor* of the *Order* appointed to be the Remembrancer: and in obedience thereunto, the Account of these *New Lands* (which begins annually at *Lady-day*, as that of the *Old Lands* doth at *Michaelmas*) was afterwards exhibited in *Chapter*, and in particular that [q] Account, presented by the *Dean* of *Windesor*, and submitted to the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* consideration, (the 6. of *November anno 9. Car. 1.*) was referr'd to the perusal and inspection of the [r] *Knights-Commissioners*, appointed at the same *Chapter* to consult the Affairs of the *Order*.

p *Lib. R. p.* 10. & 15.

q { *Ibid.*
r { *p.* 88.

SECT. VIII.

Of the Priviledges *of the* Chappel *and* Colledge.

IN the last place, the *Priviledges* of both are to be considered, which we shall divide into *Ecclesiastical* and *Temporal*.

Touching the first, it appears by a [s] *Bull* of Pope *Clement* the Sixth, dated at *Avignion*

s *In Ærar. Coll. Windesor.*

Avignion the 12. of *February* in the 9. year of his Papacy, That at the desire of the *Founder*, this Pope exempted the *Chappel*, *Colledge*, *Canons*, *Priests*, *Clerks*, *Alms-Knights*, and *Officers* of the *Colledge*, from all ordinary Jurisdiction, Dominion, and Superiority of *Archbishops*, *Bishops*, *Archdeacons*, and all other *Judges* and *Officials*, and received them within the protection of the *Papal See*. And further granted, That the *Custos* for the time being, should have Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction over the *Canons*, *Priests*, *Clerks*, *Alms-Knights*, and *Officers*, and their *Successors*, as also the Cure of their Souls; notwithstanding any Papal Constitution, Statutes, Customs, whether Provincial or Synodical, or other whatsoever to the contrary. Willing nevertheless, that the *Custos* should receive the Cure of their Souls from the *Diocesan* of the place. And in consideration of this Exemption and Priviledge, the *Custos* was obliged to pay annually on St. *Georges* day, one Mark in Silver to the Popes Chamber.

About two years before the date of this *Bull*, we find that this *Chappel* had the title of [t] *the Kings free Chappel*, given unto it (so also whilst under the [u] former Foundation) and still enjoys the same: which title of *Free Chappel* is not only intimated but confirmed by its exemption from the Jurisdictions now mentioned.

It is subject to no power (since the Supremacy in Ecclesiasticks became vested in the King, by the Law of this Realm) but only to the King of *England*; as heretofore it stood divided to the King and See of *Rome*.

The Priviledge of Exemption by Pope *Clement* the Sixth, is included in the [w] Confirmation of Liberties made by the *Founder* in his Charter, dated the 28. of *February anno regni sui* 47. and all Priviledges and Liberties granted by him, are [x] confirmed to the *Colledge* by Act of Parliament, *anno* 8. *H.* 6.

As this *Colledge* doth depend immediately on the *King*, so is it visitable only by his *Chancellor*, whose [y] Visitations, and accustomed Jurisdictions exercised by him in the *Chappel*, *Colledge*, and *Persons* thereunto belonging, are reserved to him by the *Statutes* of the *Colledge*; and himself called in the Kings Commission for Visitation of the *Colledge anno* 2. *R.* 2. [z] *Governor* of the said *Chappel*, as well in Spirituals as Temporals, and under the King immediate *Custos*.

And so jealous were the *Dean* and *Canons* lest the power of the foresaid Exemption should be infringed, that when *Sixtus* the Fourth had granted a [a] *Bull* to the Bishop of *Salisbury* and *Dean* and *Canons*, with authority to make new Ordinances, and to interpret the ancient Statutes, they within few years obtained a [b] Revocation of that Authority; lest the said Bishop (in whose *Diocess* the *Colledge* is situate) being so impowered, might prejudice their Liberties, new form their *Statutes*, and by degrees bring them under his Jurisdiction, in prejudice to the said Exemption.

And further, to prevent any such design, the same Pope commissionated the [c] Archbishop of *Canterbury*, the Bishops of *Winchester* and *Worcester* to see this Bull of Revocation take effect, and enjoined them not to suffer the Bishop of *Salisbury* to intermeddle further in the *Colledge* Affairs or Statutes; but that the [d] Bishops of *London*, *Lincolne*, and *Rochester*, and the Chancellor of *England*, or any two or more of them, with the *Dean* and *Canons* should review, alter, or new make such *Statutes* or *Ordinances*, as might be for the utility and advantage of the *Colledge*: This later Bull is dated at *Rome*, 7. *Cal. Aug. an. Dom.* 1485.

It is an argument of no small priviledge, that if the [e] Archbishop of *Canterbury* be present in the *Chappel* of *Windesor*, yet he sits below the *Dean*; nor can he consecrate there without his License. And the instance is no less remarkable, that at the Solemnity of ratifying the Peace between King *Charles* the First of ever blessed memory, and *Lewis* the Thirteenth of *France*, the 6. of *September* 1629. in the *Chappel* of St. *George* at *Windesor*, [f] Doctor *Matthew Wren* then *Dean*, gave the Oath (as *Dean* of this *Colledge*) to the Marquess of *Chasteneauf* the French Kings Ambassador, and not the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, though he was then present.

By the *Statutes* of the *Colledge*, the [g] *Dean* and *Chapter*, are at their yearly *Chapters*, diligently to consider and debate all things that shall fall out, or seem fit to be dispatcht, in reference both to the Spiritual and Temporal Affairs of the

t *Pat.* 24. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 36.
u *Rot. Finium anno* 1. *E.* 3. *m.* 21.
w *Cart. de an.* 47. *E.* 3.
x *Rot. Parl. an.* 8. *H.* 6. *n.* 31.
y *Præfat. ad Colleg. Stat.*
z *Pat.* 2. *R.* 2. *p.* 1. *m.* 15.
a *Lib. Denton. f.* 10.
b *Ibid. f.* 16.
c } *Fol.* 18.
d }
e *Ex Collect. præf. G. Evans lib. A. ad Calcem.*
f *Lib. R. p.* 53.
g *Cap.* 41.

the *Colledge*, and whatsoever Ordinances or Determination shall be made at these *Chapters* (not repugnant to the *Colledge Statutes*) all persons belonging thereunto, are firmly obliged to observe, so far as they are concern'd in them, until they happen to be altered by later Resolves of succeeding *Chapters*.

Other Notes and Marks of Exemption appears in the *Deans* taking no *Institution* from any other Bishop; but that his[h] Institution, Investiture, and Installation into the Custoship, Canonship, and Prebendship, is received from such of the *Canons-Resident*, to whom the King (who Collates) doth recommend him by his Letters. As also in the constant[i] proving of Wills before him, or in his absence before his *Lieutenant*: In using the power of Excommunication within their Jurisdiction (which is the Precincts of the *Colledge*) and dispensing with themselves, for eating of Flesh in *Lent*.

h *Stat. Colleg. Cap.* 9.

i *Ad Calcem, Collect. præf.*

Add to these, that the[k] Ordinations for the *Chantry Priests* were confirmed by the *Dean* and *Chapter*, not the Bishop of the *Diocess*, so also were the *Statutes* of the *New Commons*. Nor doth the[l] *Dean* who hath the cure of Souls (as is before noted) pay any *Synodals* or *Procurations*, nor can any of the[m] *Kings Chaplains* preach in the *Chappel* of St. *George*, unless he be a *Canon* there, without the *Kings* special mandate, or leave of the *Dean* and *Canons*.

k *Ibid.*

l *Ibid.*

m *Lib. R. p.* 53.

The *Dean* and *Canons* send no[n] Delegates to the *Synod*, and when this point fell into debate, *anno* 1640. it was carried in the Negative, as being a perfect Novelty, and against their Liberties, and might intitle them to the payment of Subsidies, and consequently bring a new charge upon the *Colledge*. Nor have they share in the Government of the *Church*, as other *Deans* and *Chapters* have. So that notwithstanding any alteration or dissolution of the Government of the Church here in *England* by Archbishops, Bishops, Deans and Chapters, this *Colledge* cannot be concerned, more than the *Colledges* in the *Universities*, where there are many nominal *Deans*.

n *Ex præf. Collect.*

Lastly, after the *Act* for *Uniformity* past,[o] *an.* 14. *Car.* 2. whereby every *Clergyman* was bound to subscribe before the *Archbishop* or his *Ordinary*, the[p] *Canons* subscribed before the *Dean* of *Windesor*, he being the *Ordinary* of the place: And though some of them *in majorem cautionem*, subscribed also before the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, yet was it with this *Salvo*, saving the rights and priviledges of this *Free Chappel*.

o *Ibid.*

p *Ibid.*

Thus much in relation to the *Ecclesiastick Priviledges* of the *Colledge*: As to the *Temporal* and *Civil*, what the *Founder* granted to it, being very large and beneficial (in regard he was born here, and toucht with a prerogative of affection to this place) and hath been since confirm'd by several of his Successors, we shall here insert.

First then the *Founder* King *Edward* the Third, by his[q] Charter dated the 6. of *March* in the 27. year of his Reign, granted them several Profits, Priviledges, and Immunities to the effect following.

q *Cart. de anno* 17. *E.* 3. *m.* 6. *n.* 14.

That the *Custos* and *Canons*, and their *Successors*, should for ever be free from payment of any *Aid*, for making the eldest Son of any King of *England* a Knight, and for marrying their eldest Daughter: as also of all *Aids* to the King, *Contributions* and *Tallages*.

That whensoever the *Clergie* of this *Realm*, or of the Province of *Canterbury* or *York*, should give a *Tenth* or other Imposition, out of their Spiritualities; or the *Commons* of *England* should give a *Tenth* or *Fifteenth*, or any other *Tax*, out of their Temporalities or moveable Goods, or that the *King* and his Heirs should cause his own *Demain* to be taxed; or that the Pope should impose any *Tax* or *Imposition* upon the Clergy of this *Realm*, and give the same to the King and his Heirs; this *Colledge* with all its *Lands* and *Possessions* should be wholly freed thereof.

That they should be free from any charge of *Arraying Soldiers*, for the service of the King and his Heirs; and from sending them for the *Custody* of the *Sea-Coasts*, and from every *Fine* or *Composition* for the same.

That their Houses, as well those within the *Castle* of *Windesor*, as else-where, should be free from any *Livery* of the *Kings Stewards*, *Marshals*, *Purveyors*, *Officers*, and *Servants*, and from the like *Officers* of the *Queens*, or any of their *Children*

Children, or of the *Peers* or *Nobles*. And that the said *Officers* should not intermeddle there, without the leave of the *Custos* and *Canons*, and their *Successors*.

That no *Duke*, *Earl*, *Baron*, or *Nobleman*, nor any *Stewards*, *Marshals*, *Escheators*, *Sheriffs*, *Coroners*, *Bailiffs*, or *Officers*, nor any other person of what condition soever, should upon any colour lodge or stay in the *Houses* of the *Custos* or *Canons*, without their consent.

That they the said *Custos* and *Canons*, and their *Tenants*, should for ever be free from payment of *Toll*, *Paviage*, *Picage*, *Barbicanage*, *Terrage*, *Pontage*, *Murage*, *Passage*, *Paiage*, *Lestage*, *Stallage*, *Tallage*, *Cariage*, *Pesage*, and from *Scot* and *Geld*, *Hidage*, *Scutage*, working about *Castles*, *Parks*, *Bridges*, *Walls* for the *Kings Houses*. And from *Suits* to the *County* or *Hundred Court*, and *Wapentakes*, *Court Leets*, *Murder*, and *Common Amerciaments*, whether they should happen before the King, or any of the Justices of the Bench, or Justices Itinerant, or other Justices whatsoever, and from every other like Custom.

That they should have within their *Lands* and *Fees*, the *Chattels* of all *Felons* and *Fugitives*, and seize them to their own use.

That they should have all *Fines* for *Trespasses*, and all other *Contempts* and *Misdemeanors*, *Fines*, *pro licentia concordandi*, and for all other causes.

That they should have all *Amerciaments*, *Redemptions*, *Issues*, and *Forfeitures* whatsoever, *Annum*, *Diem*, *Vastum*, *&c. Streppum*, and all things which might belong to the King and his Heirs thereupon.

That they should have *Wrecks*, *Waifs*, and *Strays*, within all their Lands and Fees.

That no *Purveyance* of *Corn*, *Hay*, *Horses*, *Carts*, *Carriages*, *Victuals*, or any *Goods*, *Chattels*, or any thing whatsoever, should be taken by any of the Kings Officers or Ministers, in, or upon any of their Lands, or the Lands of any of their Tenants.

That they should be free from the payment of any *Pension*, *Corrody*, or other *Sustentation* to be granted by the King, his Heirs or Successors.

That they should have *Free-Warren* in all their Demain Lands wheresoever. And that, although they lay within the bounds of the Kings Forest.

That they should have a *weekly Market*, to be held on *Wednesdays*, at their Mannor of *Eure* in *Buckinghamshire*, and *two Fairs* to endure for eight days, *viz.* on the Eve and Feast-day of the Apostles *Peter* and *Paul*, and for two days next following: and upon the Eve and Feast-day of St. *Peter ad vincula* and two days following, with all *Liberties* and *Customs* to the said *Market* and *Fairs* belonging.

That they should enjoy all their Lands, with the Liberties of *Soc* and *Sac*, *Infangthef*, *Utfangthef*, and *View of Frankepledge*; with *Thewe*, *Pillory*, and *Tumbrel*, for punishment of Malefactors; and power to erect *Gallows* upon their own soil, for Execution of such Malefactors as should fortune to be apprehended within their Jurisdiction.

That they should be freed and discharged from all *Suits* and *Pleas* of the *Forest*, and of all *Charges* or *Fees*, which the Justices or other Officers of the Forest might demand. And from *Expeditation* of their *Doggs*, and *Suits* of *Court* there.

That they should be free from *Gelds*, *Dane-gelds*, *Knights-Fees*, *Payments* for *Murther* and *Robbery*, *Building* or *Repairing* of *Bridges*, *Castles*, *Parks*, *Pools*, *Walls*, *Sea-banks*, *Causeways*, and *Inclosures*, and of all *Assises*, *Summons*, *Sheriff-aids*, their *Bailiffs*, or *Officers*, carrying of *Treasure*, and all other *Aids*, as also from the *common Assessments* and *Amerciaments* of the *County* and *Hundred* and all *Actions* relating to them.

That they should be freed from the payment of *Ward-penny*, *Aver-penny*, *Tithing-penny*, and *Hundred-penny*, and discharged from *Grithbrech*, *Forstall*, *Homesoken*, *Blod-wite*, *Ward-wite*, *Heng-wite*, *Fight-wite*, *Leyr-wite*, *Lastage*, *Pannage*, *Assart*, and *Waste* of the *Forest*, so that such Waste and Offences be not committed in the Forests, Woods, or Parks of the King his Heirs and Successors; and if it should happen so to be, that then reasonable satisfaction, without imprisonment or grievous recompence, should be accepted.

That they should have *return* of all *Writs* and *Attachments*, as well relating to the *Pleas* of the *Crown*, as other, throughout all their Lands or Fees, and that

no *Sheriff*, *Bailiff*, or other *Officer* should make any *Execution* of such *Writs* there, unless in default of the *Custos* and *Canons* and their *Successors*.

That they should have and hold *Leets* and *Law-days*, for all within their Lands and Fees.

That they should have *cognisance* of all *Pleas* betwixt their *Tenants*, as well of *Trespasses* and *Contracts*, as others, in their own Courts.

And lastly, that they should have and hold *Wards*, *Reliefs*, *Escheats*, *Forfeitures*, and other *Profits*, *Issues*, and *Emoluments* whatsoever, within their own Fees, from all their Tenants, which might belong to the King or his Heirs, and which the King might receive by reason of those Fees, in case they were in his own hands, as if the Tenants did hold of him or others *in Capite* of the Crown.

CHAP. V.

THE Institution OF THE MOST NOBLE Order *Of the* Garter.

SECT. I.

The several Opinions *touching the occasion of its* Institution.

EDward King of *England* and of *France*, of that name (after the *Norman* Conquest) the Third, was the first *Founder* of this most renowned *Order* of the *Garter*: And this is not only unanimously attested by our own, and other Historians, but also by good Authorities and Records of the *Order* it self.

The Historians generally agree in the person of the *Founder*, but as to the original occasion, that gave beginning to the *Order*, and the time when it was erected, there is not small difference among them; by reason whereof, the truth of both is left so perplext, that if we had not clearer light from some other means, the world might yet live in ignorance of the verity of either: But that we may set down these two particulars more exactly than hitherto hath been done, and give a more perfect account of a *Military Order*, whose fame hath spread all over

over the World, and been conferr'd on the greatest Princes thereof, is our design in this present Work.

First then, as to the occasion of its *Institution*, the opinions of *Writers* (as we said) are various: The vulgar and more general is, That the *Garter* of *Joane* Countess of *Salisbury* falling casually off, as she danced in a solemn Ball, King *Edward* hastily stooping, took it up from the ground; whereupon some of his Nobles and Courtiers smiling, as at an amorous action, and he observing their sportive humour, turn'd it off with this reply in French, *Honi soit Qui mal y Pense*; but withal added in disdain of their laughter, That in a short time, they should see that *Garter* advanced to so high honor and estimation, as to account themselves happy to wear it.

But taking leave to examine this *Tradition*, we shall only make two or three Remarques, and then refer it to the judgment of others, what credit ought to be given thereto.

First, Sir *John Froissart* (who only among the Writers of that Age speaks of this *Institution*) assigns it no such original, as that of the falling of a Ladies *Garter*: Nor is there found any thing to that purpose in our other Historians, for the space of two hundred years, till *Polydor Virgil* took occasion to say something of it; whose grounds we shall examine immediately. Besides it might be expected, that some Historian among the *French* (who were so forward to jeer at our King *Henry* the Fifth's design of invading them, with a return of Tennis Balls) would not have forborn to register some where or other, a scoff at the Ladies *Garter*; especially in a time when the fury of War had dissolv'd all obligations of friendship and civility, and opened the mouth of slander. Whereto we must add, that there is not the least appearance in the original *Statutes* of this most noble *Order*, to countenance the conceit of such a Feminine Institution; no not so much as obliging the *Knights-Companions* to defend the quarrels of Ladies (as the Rules of some *Orders* then in being enjoin'd) nor doth the *Author* of that piece intituled, *Institutio clarissimi Ordinis Militaris à prenobili Subligaculo nuncupati*, written by way of Preface to the *Black Book* of the *Garter*, let fall the least touch to that purpose.

As to what *Polydor* says, it is even thence to be noted, that he himself is not so confident, as to ascertain the person whose *Garter* it was, but warily declining that, says, it was [b] *either the Queens, or the Kings Mistress*; and if it were the later, yet doth he with the same caution omit her name and title of dignity, both which hath since been supplied (but on what authority we find not) by some of our modern Historians, who call her [c] *Joane* Countess of *Salisbury*; and there is as little reason, why she should be supposed to be *Joane*, called also the *Fair Maid of Kent* (whom *Edward* the *black Prince* afterwards married) inasmuch as no Historian takes the least notice, that King *Edward* the Third ever courted her as a Mistress.

We suppose our learned *Selden* points at her, when he calls the Lady from whom the *Garter* slipt, [d] Countess of *Kent* and *Salisbury*: but about the time of the Foundation of the *Order* of the *Garter*, she in truth was neither: for albeit she was Daughter to *Edmund* of *Woodstock* Earl of *Kent*, and had been sometime the reputed Wife of *William Mountagu*, second Earl of *Salisbury* of that Family; yet then she could not properly be accounted Countess of *Salisbury*, because she was actually Wife to Sir *Thomas Holland* (one of the first Founders of that *Order*) and so [f] adjudged to be, by Pope *Clement* the Sixth, in a controversie depending before him, between Sir *Thomas* and the *Earl*: and for this reason not taken notice of either by *Brooke* or *Vincent* (in the title of *Salisbury*) to have been his Wife.

Nor was she yet (though afterwards) Countess of *Kent*, because her Brother *John* Earl of *Kent* at the *Institution* of this *Order*, was alive, and died not till *anno* 26. *E.* 3.

But that there was a Countess of *Salisbury*, of whom King *Edward* the Third became greatly enamoured, is reported by [h] Sir *John Froissart*, after this manner; That this *King* having relieved a Castle belonging to the Earl of *Salisbury*, in the North of *England*, wherein his Countess had been besieged by the *Scots* (the

b *Angl. Histor. l.19.p.379.*

c *Cambd. Brit. in Atrebat. p. 208. Speeds Chron. p. 588. Bakers Chron. p.139. Edit. Lond. 1665. Fullers Holy State. p.349.*

d *Titles of Honor, p.793.*

f *Ex lib. in Offic. principal. Cantuar. vocat. Islip, f. 178.a. See Heylins Hist. of St. George, part 3. c.2.sect.7.Edit. 1633. where the Case is Reported.*

g *Escaet. de an. 26 E.3.n 54.*

h *Chronic. l.1. c. 78.*

Earl himself being at that time Prisoner in *France*) upon sight of her extraordinary beauty fell in love with her: but she so virtuously demeaned her self towards the *King*, during his short stay there, that he declined further sollicitation. Howbeit some time after, the *King* out of desire to see her (saith the same[i] *Author*) proclaimed a solemn Justs in *London*, whither this *Countess*, and many other *Ladies*, being invited, came.

[i] *Ibid. c. 90.*

Froissart names not the Castle, wherein this Countess lay, when the *Scots* besieged it, but only gives this note upon it, * *That the King gave the same Castle to her Husband for his good service past, when he first married her, being then but a Knight.*

[*] *Ibid. c. 76.*

The name of the place being left thus by him in the dark, those who hitherto sought after it, have but roved at it with uncertain guesses. But upon more diligent search we have hit the mark, and find it was the Castle of ‖ *Wark* upon *Tweed* in the County of *Northumberland*, upon the Borders of *England* towards *Scotland*, which King *Edward* had so bestowed upon Sir *William Mountagne* (afterwards created Earl of *Salisbury*) for his life, together with the Mannor, Lands, and Tenements within the Liberty of the said Mannor.

[‖] *Pat. 7. E. 3. p. 2. m. 24.*

This Castle being grown very ruinous, and the said Sir *William* undertaking the charge of the repair, (which hapned to be very great) the King thereupon * granted the same anew to him for life, by the service of one Knights Fee, the remainder after his death to his Son *John*, and the Heirs of his body lawfully begotten, to hold by the foresaid service; and if he dyed without such issue, then to the right Heirs of Sir *William* for ever.

[*] *Ibid.*

Though then it should be admitted, that this Countess of *Salisbury* was the *Kings Mistress*, yet must it be noted, that she was Wife to *William Mountagne*, created Earl of *Salisbury*, [k] *anno* 11. *E.* 3. Mother to *William* the before mentioned second *Earl*, that her Christian name was [l] *Katherine*, not *Alice*, as *Froissart*, nor *Joane*, as others call her, and Daughter to *William* Lord *Granson*, a Nobleman of *Burgundy*; and that she died [m] *anno* 28. *Ed.* 3. and lies buried at [n] *Eysham* Abbey in *Berkeshire*.

[k] *Rotul. Cart. 11. E. 3. memb. 26 num. 54.*
[l] *Escaet. bundel. anno 9. E. 2. n 4.*
[m] *Escaet. anno 28. E. 3. n. 29.*
[n] *Ex Collect. Jac. Strangeman.*

But that the whole story may appear, no otherwise than indeed it is, a Fable; we shall here insert the opinion of a late learned Writer, who hath taken no small pains to satisfie himself and the world in this particular.

* *This* (saith Doctor *Heylin*) *I take to be a vain and idle Romance, derogatory both to the* Founder *and the* Order; *first published by* Polydor Virgil, *a Stranger to the Affairs of* England, *and by him taken upon no better ground, than* [o] Fama vulgi, *the tradition of the common people, too trifling a foundation to so great a building, common bruit being so infamous an Historian, that wise men neither report after it, nor give credit to any thing they receive from it.* And yet hath it so fallen out, that many learned men, for want of reflection, have incautelously swallowed and run away with this vulgar error; whereupon it hath come by degrees to the vogue it is now in.

[*] *Cosmography, l. 1. p. 287. Edit. 1652.*
[o] Et Fama vulgi talis. *Pol. Virg. Angl. Hist. l. 19. p. 379.*

Of the same spinning with the former, is another Tradition, and no less uncertain; [q] That the *Queen* being departed from King *Edward*'s presence to her own Lodgings, he following her soon after, hapned to espy a *Blue Garter* lying on the ground (thought to have slipt from her Leg as she went along) whilst some of his Attendants passed by it, as disdaining to stoop at such a trifle; but he knowing the Owner, commanded it to be taken up and given to him, at the receipt whereof, he said, [r] *You make but small account of this* Garter, *but within few Months, I will cause the best of you all to reverence the like.*

[q] *Andr. du Chesne Histoire generale d' Angleterre, d' Escosse, & d' Irlande. p. 670.*
[r] *Ibidem.*

And some think that the *Motto* of the *Garter* was the [s] *Queens* answer; when the *King* asked her, what men would conjecture of her, upon losing her *Garter* in such a manner.

[s] *Ibidem.*

But both these Relations are remote from truth, and of little credit; nevertheless, they give us opportunity to note here, That it hath thus fared with other *Orders* of Soveraign Foundation; and an Amorous instead of Honorable Account of their *Institution*, hath by some been untruly rendred.

For instance, that of the *Annunciade*, Instituted some few years after this of the

the ennobled *Garter*; concerning which, though *Andrew Favin* hath given it an amorous original, yet have we (in the[t] third *Chapter*) from better authorities, cleared his mistaken account thereof.

[t] *Sect. I. pag. 108. & 109.*

Nor hath it hapned otherwise with the *Order* of the *Golden Fleece*, even that also hath met with the same fate; and the Institution reported to have risen from an effeminate ground: for it is said, that its[u] *Founder* entring one morning into the Chamber of a most beautiful Lady of *Bruges* (generally esteemed his *Mistress*) found upon her [w] *Toilet*, a Fleece of low Country Wooll; whence some of his Followers taking occasion of sport, as at a thing unusually seen in a Ladies Chamber, he (as is reported of King *Edward* the Third, upon such another occasion) vowed that such as made it the subject of their derision, should never be honored with a *Collar* of the *Order* thereof, which he intended to establish, to express the love he bore that *Lady*.

[u] *Favin, in le Theatre d'Honneur, l.4.c.5.*
[w] Toilet, *or* Toilette, *called also* Tavayolle, *is a large Napkin, or cloth, usually laid over Womens dresses, and other Clothes after they are spread on a Table.*

There is a third opinion, grounded on a Relation having an aspect to time before King *Edward* the Third's *Institution*, which is reported of King [x] *Richard* the First, and is this; that while his Forces were employed against *Cyprus* and *Acon*, and extreamly tired out with the tediousness of the Siege, *He, by the assistance and mediation of St.* George (*as imagined*) *was inspired with fresh courage, and bethought himself of a new device, which was, to tye about the legs of a chosen number of Knights, a* Leathern Thong *or* Garter (*for such had he then at hand*) *whereby being put in mind of the future glory that should accrue to them, with assurance of worthy rewards if they overcame, they might be rouzed up to the behaving themselves gallantly and stoutly in the Wars, much after the manner of the ancient* Romans, *among whom were various* Crowns, *with which for several causes, Soldiers were adorned; to the end that by those encouragements, all sluggishness being shaken off, the virtue and fortitude of their minds might spring up and appear more resolute and vigorous.*

[x] *Lib. N. p. 13. in proœmio.*

It further continues in the same Preface, *That after a long interval of time, and divers Victories obtained by him, the said King returning into his Country, determined with himself, to institute and settle this most noble* Order *of St.* George, *on whose patronage the* English *so much relied.*

But admit this (though we are to note, it is only a Relation put down in the Preface of the *Black Book*, but not any part of the *Annals* of the *Order*, nor can it plead higher antiquity than the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, because written a little after the time he reformed and explained the *Statutes* of the *Garter*) all this we say admitted, and that King *Richard* the First did make use of this devise in the *Holy Land*, as a signal or distinction of a party going out upon some warlike exploit: yet that he thence took occasion to frame a distinct *Order of Knighthood* afterwards, there is not the least mention, nor any ground to imagine. So that all the advantage can be made of it is, that (as[y] Doctor *Heylin* affirms) we may warrantably be perswaded, this occasion much heightned the reputation of that *Saint* among the *English*, by which means in process of time, the most heroick *Order* of the *Garter* came to be dedicated to him; and not that it any way contributed to the *Institution* of it.

[y] *Hist. of St. George, part 3. c.1. sect. 6.*

SECT. II.

The true Cause *asserted.*

THus far of the conjectures of others, concerning the *Institution* of this most noble *Order*; now come we to unfold the true occasion thereof.

We affirm then, that King *Edward* the Third had no reflection, either upon a *Ladies Garter*, or King *Richard's Leathern Thong*, when he first designed the *Institution*, but that it did proceed from a much more noble cause; to wit, that

that this *King* being a person of a most absolute and accomplisht virtue, gave himself up to a prudent management of Military Affairs; and being ingaged in War for the recovery of his right to the Kingdom of *France*, in the prosecution of which enterprise, he had great use of the stoutest and most famous *Martialists* of that Age, did thereupon first design (as being invited thereto by its ancient fame) the restauration of King *Arthur's Round Table*, which he exhibited with magnificent Hastiludes and general Justs, to invite hither the gallant and active spirits from abroad: and upon discovery of their courage and ability in the exercise of Arms, to draw them to his party, and oblige them to himself.

And conceiving no place more fit than [a] *Windesor*, upon [b] *Newyears-day*, *anno* 1344. he issued out his Royal Letters of Protection for the safe coming and return of *Forreign Knights*, their Servants and what belonged to them, that were desirous to try their valour at the solemn Justs, by him appointed to be held there, on [c] *Munday* after the Feast of St. *Hillary* next following (which that year happened on the 19. of *January*) and these Letters of safe conduct continued in force until the [d] *Octaves* of the *Purification* of our blessed *Lady* ensuing, being in the 18. year of his Reign.

At the time appointed, he provided a great [e] Supper to begin the Solemnity, and then *Ordained*, that this Festival should be annually held there at [f] *Whitsontide*; and immediately after these first Martial Exercises were over (to the end better accommodation might be provided for the *Knights* that should afterwards come thither) he caused to be imprest [g] Carpenters, Masons, and Carriages, for erecting a particular building in the *Castle*, and therein placed a *Table* of [h] two hundred foot diameter, where the *Knights* should have their entertainment of diet at his expence of [i] 100 *l.* a week, to which building he gave the name of the *Round Table*. By this means he associated to himself, from most parts beyond Seas, the prime spirits for martial valour, and gain'd the opportunity of ingaging them on his side in the ensuing War.

And, as at these solemn conventions, and great assemblies, the days were spent in exercising all kind of noble feats of Arms, Justs, and Turnaments; so were a great part of the nights consumed in publick Balls, and dancing with the Ladies, which attended the *Queen* thither; and perhaps it was hence conjectur'd, that at some of these Balls, the *Queen's Garter*, or the *Garter* of *Katherine* Countess of *Salisbury* might slip off, and that King *Edward's* stooping to take it up, might beget smiles in the by-standers; and afterwards, when the *King* had modelled his intended *Order*, a *Garter* appearing for its chief *Ensign*, might add something to the conjecture: But that any such accident became the principal cause of erecting the *Order*, and that the *Founder's* particular design therein was to advance the honor of that Garter so accidentally taken up, is only a groundless imagination, and hath been already disproved.

And though King *Edward* so far advanced the honor of a *Garter*, as that the *Order* did derive its [k] title and denomination from it; yet is it most evident, that he founded this most famous *Order*, not to give reputation to, or perpetuate an effeminate occasion, but [l] *to adorn Martial Virtue, with Honors, Rewards, and Splendor: to* [m] *increase Virtue and Valour in the hearts of his Nobility*: or as *Andrew du Chesne* saith, [n] *to honor military Virtue with some glorious favours and rewards; that so true Nobility* (as is noted in the Preface to the *Black Book* of the *Order*) *after long and hazardous adventures, should not enviously be deprived of that honor which it hath really deserved; and that active and hardy Youth might not want a spur, in the profession of Virtue, which is to be esteemed glorious and eternal.*

Upon these grounds no doubt does our learned *Selden* affirm, that [o] this *Order* was raised chiefly out of the *Round Table* of that time (the *Knights* thereof being the flower of that Age) as out of a Seminary.

It is further observable, from the current of the Histories of those times, that the [p] French King, *Philip de Valoys*, in emulation of these martial associations at *Windesor*, practised the like at his Court in *France*, for he set up a *Round Table*, and invited the *Knights* and valiant men of Arms out of *Italy* and *Almaine* thither, lest they should repair to our King *Edward* the Third. Which meeting with

a *Tho. Walsingh. sub. anno* 1344. *apud Lond.* 1579.
b { *Pat.* 17.
c { *E.* 3. *p.* 2.
d { *m.* 2.
e { *Ex vet.*
f { *MS. Chronic. penes Ranul. Pigott Ar.*
g *Pat.* 18. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 39. *Dorso & p.* 2. *m* 39.
h { *Walsingh.*
i { *ut supra.*
k *Pol. Virg. Angl. Hist. l.* 19 *p.* 378.
l Ut militarem virtutem honoribus, præmiis atq; splendore decoraret. *Cambden in Attrebat.* *p* 207.
m *Heyl. Cosmogr. l.* 1. *p.* 287.
n Ed. 3. desireux d'honorer la Vertu militarie de quelqs faveur & recompence glorieux, &c. *Hist. general. D'angleterre, &c. p.* 070.
o *Tit. Hon. p* 394.
p *Tho. Walsingh. loco citato. Sam. Daniell. History f.* 233. *Speed's Chron. p.* 587.

with success, proved a Countermine to King *Edward*'s main design, who thereby finding, that his entertainment of *Stranger Knights*, upon the account of reviving King *Arthur*'s *Round Table*, was too general, nor did sufficiently oblige them to him, but being free and at liberty, did after their departure take what side they pleased in the following Wars; he at length resolved upon a design, more particular and select, and such as might oblige and tie those whom he thought fit to make his Associates, in a firm Bond of Friendship and Honor.

And having given forth his [q] own *Garter* for the signal of a Battel that sped fortunately, (which with [r] *du Chesne* we conceive to be that of *Cresy*, fought almost three years after his seting up the *Round Table* at *Windesor*; rather than with the Author of the [f] *Nouveau Theatre de Monde*, that of *Poictiers*, which happened above seven years after the Foundation of the *Order*, and whereat King *Edward* was not present) the Victory (we say) being happily gained, he thence took occasion to Institute this *Order*, and gave the *Garter* (assumed by him for the Symbol of *Vnity* and *Society*) preheminence among the Ensigns of it, whence that select number, whom he incorporated into a Fraternity, are frequently stiled *Equites Aureæ Periscelidis*, and vulgarly, *Knights of the Garter*.

q *Cambd. in Attreb. p.207.*
r *Hist Generale d' Angleterre, &c. p.670.*
f *Tom. 2. p. 1407. Edit. Paris. 1661.*

By this Symbol he design'd to [t] *bind the* Knights *or* Fellows *of it, severally unto one another, and all of them joyntly to Himself, as* Soveraign *of the* Order. And accordingly (saith an industrious Historian) this did not only serve *as a* [u] *vehement incentive to Honor and martial Virtue, but also a golden Bond of unity and internal society*: it being most just, that those whom equal virtue and fortitude of mind, had joined together, no Fortune should separate or estrange, by occasion of any accident or difference.

t *Heylin's Cosmogr. loco supra cit.*
u *Speed. Chron. p. 588.*

Whereunto may be added this further consideration; how neerly the Princely *Garter* (which ennobleth the *Order*) as it is framed with a Buckle to fasten it close to the Leg, doth resemble *the* [w] *Bond of most inward Society*; and can be called nothing more aptly, than a [x] Badge of *Vnity* and *Concord*.

w *Cambd. in*
x *Attrebat. p. 208.*

By this *Garter* [y] *the* Knights-Companions *are admonished, religiously, sincerely, friendly, faithfully, and dextrously, to go through whatsoever they undertake, but not to undertake or attempt any thing, contrary to the* Oath, *and Statutes of the* Order, *neither to frustrate the rights of peace and friendship, vilifie the Law of Arms, or to proceed in any thing further than Faith or Compact, or the Bond of Friendship will admit.*

y *Lib. N. in proœmio.*

And much to this purpose, they who will take the pains to read the [a] *Catechismus Ordinis Equitum Periscelidis Anglicanæ*, will find the Author [*F. Mondonus*] Symbolically to descant upon the chief *Ensigns* of the *Order*.

a *Edit. Colon. Agripp. anno 1631.*

Moreover [b] *Salmuthus*, out of *Stephanus Frocatulus* notes, that in the binding of the Leg with this doubled Ensign, there was given this honorable Caveat and Exhortation; *That the* Knights *should not cowardly (by running away from Battel) betray the valour and renown which is ingrafted in Constancy and Magnanimity.*

b *Natis Guid. Pancirell. de Rebus deperdit. p.170.*

Nay, so exactly did the *Founder* suite the whole *Habit* unto the signification of this Princely *Ensign*, that he Ordained *Ties*, and the *Knights-Companions Robes* and *Ornaments* to be all alike, both for materials and fashion; thereby intimating, [c] *That they ought to conserve brotherly love among themselves.* And left at any time there should fall out the least breach of Amity, the great *Collar* of the *Order* (ordained to be of equal weight, and composed of a like number of small Links and Knots) was so made, *in* [d] *witness of the like Bond of Faith, Peace, and Amity, strictly to be observed among them.* In fine, all things relating to the *Order*, were so designed and appointed, [e] *That every one might plainly perceive, how much these things tended to the maintaining of* Amity *and* Concord.

c *Lib. N. p.*
d *16. in proœmio.*
e *Ibid. p.15.*

In further reference to the Institution and perpetual establishment of this *Order*, the foresaid *King*, [f] calling together the *Earls, Barons*, and principal *Knights* of his Kingdom, *freely and obligingly declared his mind to them, concerning this Affair*: To which [g] *all of them being well inclined, entertained the motion with equal joy and applause; considering it would prove a very great advancement to Piety, Nobility, and Virtue, and likewise an excellent expedient for the uniting,*

f *Froissart's Chron. l. 1. c.101.*
g *Ibid.*

not

not only his Natives one with another, but all Forreigners with them in the Bonds of Amity and Peace.

And 'tis very improbable, that this prudent *Founder* should summon his *Nobles*, solemnly to consult about so high and noble an advancement of an *Order*, had it taken its first rise from so slight an occasion, as the accidental dropping of a *Garter* from a Ladies Leg. On the contrary it is manifest from *Froissart*, that the declaration which the *King* made to them of his intention and design (when they were assembled) appeared [h] *a matter very honorable, and* (as hath been alledged) *such as contributed to the improvement of Love and Amity among themselves*; which we see this *Historian* assigns to be the only cause, why they joyfully consented to his proposal.

h *Loco cit.*

Now to make the Bond and Tye of Love and Friendship yet more close and obliging, the *King* caused those who were (or should be) of the *Order*, to be called [i] *Fellows, Associates, Colleagues, Brethren, and Knights-Companions*, and the *Order* it self [k] *a Society, Fellowship, Colledge of Knights, and Knight-Companionship*; and their [l] *Habit* and *Ornaments* to be all alike, as to Fashion and Materials: *and to no other end, but to represent how they ought to be* [m] *united in all chances of Fortune, Copartners both in Peace and War, assistant to one another in all serious and dangerous transactions, and through the whole course of their lives, faithful and friendly one towards another.*

i, k, l, m *Lib. N. p. 15.*

But besides these Authorities, we have met with some other testimonies, much to the same effect; namely, that this most noble *Order* of the *Garter* was first instituted, *to* [n] *fortifie the confidence of the King, the Kingdom, and Martial Virtue*: that is to say, *to strengthen the faith of the subjects towards them, and for their greater security.*

n *Caii Antiq. l. 2. c. 217.*

The *French Orator*, who made the Harangue at the investiture of *Henry* Prince of *Orange*, seems to account the denomination of this *Order*, by the stile of the *Garter*, to be very significant, and only for this reason; [o] *because it carries with it a Bond or Tye of Fellowship, and a Symbol of Amity and Friendship between Princes, being Companions of the same Order.*

o *MS. in Officio Armor. [L. 18.] circa medium.*

In the last place, if we look back upon the *Statutes* of Institution, as also those that have succeeded, we shall find the *Injunctions* wholly *Military*, and so are the words of *Admonition*, appointed to be pronounced, at the putting on the *Ensigns* of the *Order*: and the grouud of the Institution (in the Preamble to King *Henry* the Eighth's Exemplar) is said to be, [p] *For the honor of God, and exaltation of the Catholick Faith, joined both with Piety and Charity*; *in establishing a* [q] *Colledge of religious men, to pray for the prosperity of the* Soveraign *of the* Order, *and the* Knights-Companions, *and to perform other holy duties*; *as also* [r] *Ordaining sustentation for a company of Alms-Knights, who have not otherwise wherewith to live.* But not one word relating to any obligation or ingagement, on behalf of the Feminine Sex.

p *Article 1.*
q *Art. 13.*
r *Art. 16.*

And whereas King *Edward* the Third had set on foot a Title to the Kingdom of *France*, and in right thereof assumed its Arms; he from the [u] Colour of them, caused the *Garter* of the *Order* to be made *Blue*, and the circumscription *Gold*. And it may, without any straining, be inferr'd from the *Motto* [**Honi soit qui mal y pense**] [w] that he retorted shame and defiance upon him, that should dare to think ill of so just an enterprise, as he had undertaken for the recovery of his lawful right to that *Crown*; and that the magnanimity of those *Knights*, whom he had chosen into this *Order* was such, as would inable them to maintain that Quarrel, against all who durst think ill of it. Consonant to this is the conjecture of [x] *Harpsfield*, that this Apothegme was designed to put the *Knights-Companions* in mind, *not to admit any thing in the actions of their lives, or among their thoughts, unbeseeming themselves and their honor.*

u, w *Ex Collect. præf. Will. le Neve.*
x *Hist. Anglic. Eccles. p. 507.*

And here we have a fitting opportunity to inform our Reader, that the Age we speak of did exceedingly abound with *Impreses Motto's*, and *Devises*, of which the *Rolls* of the great *Wardrobe* will afford variety; and particularly that King *Edward* the Third (upon almost every occasion) was much inclined thereto, so far, as that his *Apparel, Plate, Beds, Houshold-furniture, Shields*, even the very *Harness* of his *Horses*,

Horses, and the like, were not without them; many of which, for any man now to descant upon, would be an endless and fruitless attempt, seeing the occasion of their invention, and the circumstances thereupon depending, are irrecoverably lost.

Add to which, that others by reason of their brevity, seem insignificant, in regard it is to be imagined, that something was purposely omitted, and left to be understood, which cannot now be rightly supplied, so as to arrive at the mind of the Inventor. Of this number may well be this *Motto*, [y] **It is as it is**, being embroidered upon a Dublet, made for the King of white Linen Cloth, having about the sleeves and skirt a border of green Cloth, wrought over with golden Clouds and Vines.

y *Rotul. Liberat. Draper. Offic. mag. Gardrob. ann.* 21. *&* 22. *E.* 3. *membr.* 11. *penes Rememorat. Regis.*

But there are others, which seem more easie to be understood, as is that daring and inviting Motto of this *King*, wrought upon his Surcoat and Shield, provided to be used at a Turnament

[z] **Hay hay the wythe Swan,**
By Gods Soul I am thy man.

z *Ibidem.*

We further observe, that although *David Brus* King of *Scotland* was a Prisoner in the *Tower* of *London*, yet such was the nobleness of this *King*, that he sometimes permitted him the use and exercise of Arms; for against a [a] *Hastilude* kept at *Windesor*, he had a [b] Harness made of Blue Velvet (at King *Edward's* charge) whereon was embroidered a *Pale* of Red Velvet, and beneath a White *Rose*. And that it was the custom then to have the Arms of a *Knight*, set upon his *Horse-Harness*, to distinguish him from others, appears by those eight Harnesses, which the *King* gave (and were among the preparations made for the Hastilude appointed at *Canterbury*, *anno* 22. *Ed.* 3.) of Indian Silk, beaten with the Arms of Sir *Stephen Cosyngton* Knight, of the *Prince*, of the *Earls* of *Lancaster*, and *Suffolk*, of Sir *John Grey*, Sir *John de Beauchamp*, Sir *Robert Maule*, Sir *John Chandos*, and Sir *Roger de Beauchamp*: four of these Martialists being shortly after chosen among the first *Knights-Companions* of this most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*.

a, b *Ibid.*

SECT. III.

The Time *when the* Order *was Instituted.*

IN what year of the Reign of King *Edward* the Third, the *Order* of the *Garter* received *Institution*, cannot certainly be deduced from our Historians, for the difference among them in this point is very wide.

Our most learned *Selden* would have it, to be in the [c] 18. year of the *Founder's* Reign, and relies chiefly upon the authority of [d] Sir *John Froissart*, who lived neer that time (for he wrote his History in the Reign of King *Richard* the Second) But since Mr. *Selden* does acknowledge him guilty of a mistake in the number of the first *Knights-Companions* (and a gross one indeed it is) by making them no fewer than forty; why might he not likewise erre in this point, namely the Time? and as unwarily confound the year of its Erection, with that wherein the *Founder* renewed the *Order* of the *Round Table*? *Windesor* being the place for holding the grand celebration of both.

c *Titles of Hon.* p. 793.
d *L.* 1. *c.* 100.

For should we admit, that during some part of the great Solemnity held in this Kings 18. year, the accident of the Ladies *Garter* slipping off happen'd; and that the King taking it up declared, he would make it highly renowned: what other inference can be made, but that he had then only an intention or resolution at most, to do somewhat afterwards, not that there was an *Erection* or *Order* actually *Instituted* at that time.

Besides, if the *King* had been desirous to fall upon the establishment of the *Order*, immediately upon the said accident, yet may it well be supposed, that the jollity of the season, and remaining part of the *Feast*, was too busie a time to admit of much consultation tending thereunto; at least serious enough to mould a design, so compleat and substantial, as it appears to have been, even at first; whether we consider the substance of the *Statutes* of Institution, or variety of the matter, and so fully, judiciously, and warily contrived, as little of that subject could be found worth the adding in many years after.

To these, if we join the authority of *Fabian*, he is plain, [e] that though the King design'd the *Institution* at the end of the Festival (which he placeth between *Candlemas* and *Lent* in the 19. not 18. year of this King) yet was it not then (saith he) but afterwards established by him.

As to the testimony given by the [f] Author of *Les grandes Chroniques de Britaigne, &c.* who likewise alledgeth, that the *Institution* of the *Order*, was in the 18. year of the *King:* We suppose his best authority was also taken from *Froissart*, supposing him (as Mr. *Selden* doth) the more to be relied upon, because he wrote so near that time.

But 'tis a fault too frequent among Historians, to run away with what they find spoken by those from whom they collect (especially if such have gained any good opinion or credit in the world) though perhaps erroneous; without making a sufficient enquiry, either into the probability or truth of the thing. And for an instance of some unwarinesse in collecting, we may trace the now mentioned *Author* in another passage, relating to this matter, where he tells us it was the day of [g] St. *Gregory* (instead of St. *George*) whereon the Grand *Feast* of the *Order* was ordained to be solemnized.

We now see that *Froissart*, and with him Mr. *Selden*, place the beginning of this *Order* to the 18. year of King *Edward*'s Reign; with whom agrees *Thomas Cooper* in his [h] *Epitomy* of *Chronicles*. And yet the same Mr. *Selden*. in [i] another place, notes, that it took beginning in the 24. year of the said *King*, and our industrious *Stow* (with whom [l] *Lilly*, [m] *Speed*, and [n] *Segar* agree) tells us, that the first *Feast* of the *Order* was celebrated in the year of our *Lord* 1350. which answers to the said four and twentieth year of King *Edward* the Third.

But [o] *Polydore Virgile* in the series of his History, placeth it after *Henry* Earl of *Derby* was created *Duke* of *Lancaster*, and *Ralph Lord Stafford*, *Earl* of *Stafford*, which hapned in [p] *March*, *anno* 25. *E.* 3.

Thus it appears, that our Historians took little heed to transmit the true time of so famous an *Institution* to posterity (and their neglect perhaps was the cause why our judicious *Cambden* became silent herein) yet how this Chronological note slipt all their Pens, is much to be wondred at: We must therefore have recourse to some other proofs, whence our Reader may receive better satisfaction.

Admitting then, that the erecting this *Order* entered into *King Edward*'s thoughts, at some of those grand Assemblies of the *Round Table*, held after the *French* King had set up the like, yet was it not brought to any maturity, till after his glorious Triumphs over the *French* and *Scots*, in the Battels of *Cresey* and *Nevils Cross* (in which both the *French* and *Scotch* Armies were utterly vanquished, and *David* King of *Scots* taken Prisoner) and until King *Edward* had *Calais* surrendred to him, as will now be manifest.

Among the *Rolls* of the great Wardrobe, we have met with one which contains the Accounts of all the Kings *Liveries*, from *Michaelmas*, *anno* 21. *E.* 3. to the 31. of *January* in the 23. year of the same *King:* In this *Roll* are divers things mentioned to be adorned with *Garters*, which were provided against the first grand Feast of St. *George*, and among the rest are the *Robes* for the *Soveraign* of the *Order*; namely his [r] *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, and *Hood*, as also a [s] *Bed* of *Blue Taffaty* adorned with embroidered *Garters*, containing the Motto, *Honi soit qui mal y pense*. There were then likewise made for the *Soveraign* [t] three *Harnesses*, whereof two were of *White Velvet*, wrought over with *Garters de blu & diaspriz. per totum compedinem cum Woodhouses*, and the third *de Velvetto Tude, coni. Lappekin quisseux, & caligas*, wrought over likewise with *Garters*.

Had

e *Chronic.* f 219.

f *Apud Selden,* p. 794.

g *Ibid.*

h *Third part fol.* 240. *b. Edit. Lond.* 1560.

i *Notes upon Poly.lib. Song* 15.

l *Angl. Reg. Chron.p.*44.

m *Chron. p.* 488.

n *Hon.Mil.& Civil.p.*69.

o *Angl. Histor. l.*19.*p* 378.

p *Pat.*25 *E.* 3. *par.*1.*m.*18. *Cart. de ann.* 25.*E.*3.*n.*31.

r & s *Ex Rot. Compot. Jo. Coke Cler.mag. Garderob penes Remembr. Regis. m.* 8.

t *m.* 10.

Had this *Roll* been divided into years, or had there been other notes thereupon, to have distinguished whether these particulars were made and provided at the beginning of his 22. year against the Feast-day of St. *George* ensuing, or else towards the later end of that year, against the same Feast-day *anno* 23. *E.* 3. we might have been thereby guided with more certainty, as to the right and true year of the *Institution*.

However, we may thence safely conclude, that this *Order* was not founded in the 18. year of King *Edward* the Third, according to *Froissart*, and his Followers; because we here find, that the *Soveraign's Robes* were not made until the 22. year of his Reign at the soonest, perhaps not till the beginning of the 23.

But to put all out of further doubt, the [u] *Founder*'s *Statutes* fix the time of *Institution* to his 23. year; so do the [w] *Statutes* of King *Henry* the Fifth, and the [x] Preface to the Black Book; the same also is attested by [y] *Leland*, and affirmed by [z] *Mills*, and * Doctor *Heylin*.

u *Edwardus tertius Rex Angliæ, anno regni sui post Conquestum* 23. *Ordinavit &c.*

w *Edoard apres la conquest D' angleterre l' an de son reigne vingt & trois Ordonne & Estably, &c.*

x *Edwardus tertius, anno regni sui* 23. *cum de Gallis atque Scotis plus semel illustrissime triumphasset, &c.* p. 14. in procemio.

y *Ad Cygn. Cant. verbo* Windelesora.

z *Catalog. of Honor, f.* 88.

* *History of St. George, part* 3. *c.* 2. *Sect.* 5.

To conclude, when this famous *King* had resolved upon the day and place for keeping the first grand *Feast* of this most noble *Order*, which he designed to exhibit with as much glory as could be imagined, [a] He sent his *Heralds* into *Germany*, *France*, *Scotland*, *Burgundy*, *Hainault*, *Flanders*, and *Brabant*, to invite all *Knights* and *Esquires* who were willing to meet at that grand *Solemnity* (with assurance to every one of safe conduct and Liberty for fifteen days, both before and after the same) to shew their Military Prowess and Valour, in all kind of Martial Feats, and other Publick Exercises, there to be held, proper to the place and occasion.

a *Lib. N. p.* 20. *vide etiam Froissart. Chron. l.* 1. *c.* 100. *&* 102.

According to which *Invitation*, there came over at the appointed time, sundry *Knights* and other brave *Martialists*, out of desire to signalize their valour; and what made the Solemnity more glorious, King *Edward*'s *Queen*, attended with [b] three hundred of the fairest *Ladies*, adorned with all imaginable gallantry were there likewise present.

b *Ibid.*

SECT. IV.

Of the Patrons *of the* Order.

KIng *Edward* the Third, upon his Instituting this Princely *Colledge*, of a select number of *Knights*, did (according to the custom and opinion of that Age) make choice of several *Patrons* to this his most noble *Order*; under whose protection *Himself* and all the *Knights-Companions*, together with the *Affairs* of the *Order*, might be defended, conserved, and governed.

The first and chiefest *Patron* that he elected for this end, was the [c] *holy Trinity*, which, though indeed it be the *Creator* and *Governor* of all things, yet nevertheless was in a more especial manner invocated to the aid and assistance of this *Order*.

c *Lib. N. p.* 24. *in proœmio.*

Nor was it in those times accounted any derogation to *God*, or his *divine worship*, but rather on the contrary a great addition thereunto, that what he is alone the giver of, should be desired and implored, by their means, through whom he is well pleased to be sought unto: Upon which consideration this religious and pious *King*, being singularly affected to the [d] *blessed Virgin Mary*, though she was accounted the general *Mediatrix* and *Protectress* to all men and upon all occasions, yet did he more peculiarly intitle her to the *Patronage* of this most noble *Order*.

d *Ibid.*

And no less was King *Edward* the Fourth in a special manner devoted towards

the same *blessed Virgin*; insomuch as he thought it necessary, that some additional Ceremonies within the *Order*, should be observed by *Himself* and the *Knights-Companions* to her peculiar honor: and thereupon Ordained, [c] *That on her five Solemnities, the* Knights-Companions *should annually (as was wont and accustomed, at the yearly Feast of St.* George) *wear the peculiar Habit of the Order, as long as Divine Service was celebrating (unless they had sufficient cause of excuse) bearing on the right shoulder of their Robes, a golden figure of the* Virgin Mary, *and further, that they should go in the same manner and Habit upon all the Sundays throughout the year: and lastly, that on the same days for ever, they should say five* Pater Nosters, *with as many* Ave Maria's.

c *Ibid. p.* 37.

Thirdly, [f] *Saint George* of *Cappadocia*, a most choice Champion of *Christ*, and famous *Martyr*, was also chosen one of the *Patrons* to this *Order*; and that [g] not so much because in his life, he was a *Candidate* of the *Christian Faith*, a real *Professor*, and a sincere *Defendor* thereof, or for that he was an armed *Soldier* or *Knight* of *Christ*; but much more because in those Wars, which were waged by *Christians*, against the *Infidels*, he by several appearances shewed his presence, as a most certain encourager and assistant to the *Christians*; the relations of some of which Visions may be seen at large [h] elsewhere.

f g *Ibid. p.* 25.

h *Heylins Hist. of St. George, part* 2. *c.* 7. *sect.* 4. *&* 5. *& part* 3. *c.* 1. *sect.* 6.

There is no need we should in this Work engage at all, in asserting the *History* of *Saint George*, against those who will neither allow him either a place in *Heaven*, or a being in the *Church*; since that is both learnedly and judiciously maintained to our hand, out of the venerable *Records* of *Antiquity* and *Church-History*, by the elaborate endeavours of the late reverend Divine, Dr. *Peter Heylin*, in a particular [i] Tract.

i *Hist. of St. George asserted &c. Printed* 1633.

The like pains we are eased of, in avouching and assuring him to be the special *Patron*, *Protector*, *Defendor*, and *Advocate* of this Realm of *England*, and manifesting in what veneration he hath been held abroad, especially among the *Eastern Churches*; by the Pen of our most learned [k] *Selden*. To whose testimonies we shall only add, that this Title of [l] *Patron* to our *Nation* is given to St. *George* by the *Founder* of this most noble *Order*, in a Patent granted to the *Deans* and *Canons* of the Chappels of St. *Stephen* at *Westminster*, and St. *George* at *Windesor*, which dischargeth them from payment of *Tenths* (for the *Churches* appropriate to those *Chappels*) that were or should be given by the *Clergie* to *Him* and his *Successors*: As also by [m] King *Henry* the Eighth, in the Preamble of his *Statutes*: Nay further, that he was likewise called our Nations *Patron*, in relation to the [n] *Spiritual Militia* of this *Kingdom*.

k *Titles of Honor, p.* 811.

l *Beatus* Georgius *invictissimus Christi Athleta, cujus nomen & patrocinia* Gens Anglicana *veluti Patroni sui singularis, in expeditione prefertim Militari invocat & implorat, instinctu divino ut credimus excitati.* Pat. de anno 25. E. 3. p. 2. m. 12.

m *The blessed Martyr St.* George, *Patron of the right noble Realm of* England.

n *Sanctus* Georgius *Martyr, qui totius Militiæ Anglicanæ Spiritualis est Patronus.* Regist. MS. Arundel. Arch. Cant. par. 1. fol. 53. art. 37.

And though in general he is stiled, the [o] *Principal Patron* of the Affairs of *Christendom*, and a *Tutelar Guardian* of *military men*; yet among all *Christians* the *English* did the best, and in *England* the *Founder* of this most noble *Order*, in making particular choice of such a [p] *Captain* and *Patron*, under whose conduct to fight, to wit, a *Captain* so approved and tryed by such high testimonies as he had given. In particular relation to whom, the *Knights-Companions* had bestowed on them, the title of *Equites Georgiani*, St. *George's Knights*; and the *Order* it self came to be stiled, *Ordo divi Sancti Georgii, the Order of St. George.*

o *Heylins Hist. of St. George, part* 2. *c.* 7. *Sect.* 1.

p *Ordo est divo* Georgio *ut Bellatorum præsidi dicatus.* Pol. Virg. Angl. Hist. l. 19. p. 378.

It is worthy of observation that *du Chesne* (a *French* Writer) acknowledges, [q] *it was by the special Invocation of St.* George, *that King* Edward *the Third gained the battel of* Cresey, *which afterward calling to mind, he founded* (saith he) *to his honor, a Chappel within the Castle of* Windesor. But if we may go higher, and credit our [r] *Harding*, it seems King *Arthur* paid St. *George* particular honors, for he advanced his Picture in one of his *Banners*: and this was about 200 years after his Martyrdom, and very early for a *Country* so remote from *Capadocia*, to have him in so great estimation.

q *Histoire generale d' Angleterre, &c. p.* 670.

r *Cap.* 72.

Lastly, The *Founder* added to these a fourth *Patron*, whose Name himself bore, namely,

namely,[t] *Saint Edward* the *Confessor*, sometime King of *England*, and his *Predecessor*, by which choice the *Patronage* of the *Order* belongs also to him. And we find he was wont to be invocated by this noble *Founder* (as well as *Saint George*) at such time as he found himself in any great streight; of which a memorable instance is recorded by[u] *Thomas Walsingham*, who reports that at a Skirmish neer *Calice*, *anno Dom.* 1349. King *Edward* in great heat of anger and grief, drew out his Sword, and most passionately cried out, **Ha Saint Edward, Ha Saint George**, which his *Soldiers* hearing, ran presently unto him, and rushing violently upon the Enemy, put many of them to the Sword.

t *Lib. N. p.26.*

u *Hist. Angl. p. 159.*

But in further declaration of electing all these for *Patrons* to the *Order*, we find them ranked together, in the[w] *Preamble* of the *Charter* of *Foundation* of *Windesor Colledge*, granted by King *Edward* the Third; though in the Preamble to his *Statutes* of the *Order*, and to King *Henry* the Fifth's *Statutes*, *Saint Edward* the *Confessor* is omitted; nevertheless, in the Preamble to *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, he is there remembred with the rest.

w *In honorem omnipotentis Dei, & suæ Genetricis Mariæ virginis Gloriosæ, Sanctorumq; Georgii Martyris & Edwardi Confessoris nostris Regiis sumptibus fecimus, &c* Pat. 22. E. 3. par.2. m.6.

SECT. V.

The Honor *and* Reputation *thereof.*

BEfore we leave this *Chapter*, we shall note some few things touching the *Honor* and *Reputation* of this most noble *Order*; and that, either as comparing it with other *Orders* of *Soveraign Foundation*, or else in relation to it self.

First then, let what our learned *Selden* affirms be observed, *viz.* That this *Order* of the *Garter hath*[x] *precedency of antiquity, before the eldest rank of honor of that kind any where established.*

x *Notes upon Polyalb. Sorg. 15.*

Secondly, The *Statutes* of *Foundation* were so judiciously devised and contrived; and framed upon such solid grounds of Honor and Nobleness, that they afterwards became a *Precedent* to other *Orders*, particularly those two of the *Golden Fleece*, and of *Monsieur Saint Michael*; as may be readily seen, by any that will take the pains to compare them.

Thirdly, It hath begot no small honor to the *Order*, that the number of the first *Knights-Companions*, were never yet increased, but as there were five and twenty of them elected at the Institution, they, with the *Soveraign* of the *Order*, made up that[y] *Number*, which at no time hitherto hath been exceeded, *ut pretium faciat raritas*, saith[z] *Heylin*, lest being else communicated to many, it might at last become despicable. For it is manifest enough, that an invasion in this particular, hath like an undiscerned Rock, split several other *Military Orders* into contempt and ruine: nothing so much abasing the worth of *Glory* and *Honor* (which are to be desired by all, yet granted to few) than when made common, and given indifferently without choice and merit, to persons of mean condition: as may be sufficiently instanced in the *Order* of the[a] *Star* in *France*, under the Reign of *Charles* the Seventh, and the now declining *Order* of[b] St. *Michael*.

y E. 3. Stat. H. 5. Art. 3. *Præf. to H. 8. Stat.*

Pol. Virg. Angl. Hist. l. 19. p. 378.

z *Hist. St. George, part 3. c. 2. sect. 5.*

a *Andr. Favin en le Theatre d'Honneur. l. 1. c. 5.*

Fourthly, It hath been honored with the Companionship of divers[c] *Emperors*, *Kings*, and *Soveraign Princes* of *Christendom*, who reputed it among their greatest honors, to be chosen and admitted thereinto; insomuch as some of them have with impatience courted the honor of *Election*. For we find remaining upon this *Registry* of *Honor*, eight *Emperors* of *Germany*, three *Kings* of *Spain*, five *French Kings*, two Kings of *Scotland*, five Kings of *Denmark*, five Kings of *Portugal*, two *Kings* of *Sweden*, one *King* of *Poland*, one *King* of *Aragon*, two *Kings* of *Naples*, besides sundry Dukes

c *Rex instituit Garterium Ordinem, cui tantus deinde accessit honor, ut maximos quosq; Reges, non pœniterit in id venire Collegium.* Polyd. Virg. Angl. Hist. loco suprà cit.

Dukes and other *Free Princes*, as one *Duke* of *Gelderland*, one *Duke* of *Holland*, two *Dukes* of *Burgundy*, two *Dukes* of *Brunswick*, one *Duke* of *Milan*, two *Dukes* of *Urbin*, one *Duke* of *Ferrara*, one *Duke* of *Savoy*, two *Dukes* of *Holstien*, one *Duke* of *Saxony*, and one *Duke* of *Wertemberg*, seven *Counts Palatines* of the *Rhyne*, four *Princes* of *Orange*, and one *Marquess* of *Brandenburgh*.

Fifthly, It entitles those *Knights* and *Noblemen*, whose virtue hath raised them to this degree of honor, to be *Companions* and *Fellows* with *Emperors* and *Kings*; a Prerogative of an high nature, and a reward for greatest merits.

In the last place, we shall close up all with the *Elogie* given to this most noble *Order*, by our learned *Selden*; [d] *That it exceeds in Majesty, Honor, and Fame, all Chivalrous Orders in the world.*

d *Notes upon Polyalb. Song* 15.

CHAP. VI.

THE Statutes *and* Annals OF THE Order.

SECT. I.

Of the Statutes *of* Institution.

AMong *Societies* in general, it hath been found expedient, to plant *Rules* for them to walk by: Order and Regularity being not only the beauty and Symmetry of Government, but the parent of that Being, which greatly contributes to their perpetuity: Besides, *Statutes* and *Rules*, are as well the Bounds to determine, as Bonds to unite *Fellowships* and *Societies* together; and if either through negligence fall into disuse, or be unadvisedly broken, they readily open a way to dissolution and ruine.

Upon such like considerations therefore, that most famous, happy, and victorious Prince, King *Edward* the Third (after he had advisedly determined the Erection of this most noble and renowned *Order* of the *Garter*) did most prudently [a] *devise and institute several laudable* Statutes *and* Ordinances, *to be duly observed*

a *Lib. N. p.* 214.

observed and kept within the said Order; which being collected into one Body, are called the *Statutes of Institution.*

The original of these was Ordained to be safely kept within the [b] Treasury of the Colledge of *Windesor*, but hath long since wholly perished, yet there is a Transcript of them recorded in the Reign of King *Henry* the Fifth, at the begining of the old Book, called *Registrum Ordinis Chartaceum*; a Copy whereof we have placed first in rank of the Insections and Autographs in the *Appendix*: nevertheless, bearing the marks of the Transcribers negligence or inadvertency, as will appear in several places, by the words we have supplied in the margent, warranted by two ancient *Exemplars* of this Body of *Statutes.*

b *Ed.3.Stat. Art.* 27.

The first of which, written in an ancient hand, I had communicated to me by the favour of the late Lord *Hatton*, that noble Patron of all good learning and learned men. But 'tis evident these were not the *Original Statutes*, from a part of the 10. *Article*, where speaking of the penalty for a *Knight*'s not coming to *Chapter* on the Eve of the Grand Feast, at the assigned hour, it is there added, *Concerning which there is a Decree extant.* So also in the 12. *Article* relating to the penalty, where a *Knight-Companion* is found without his *Garter*; the payment whereof is there appointed to be made after the same manner, *as those who failing in like sort have been used to pay.* And lastly, the 33. *Article* here is wholly added out of King *Henry* the Fifth's Body of *Statutes.* This *Exemplar* next follows the Transcript of the *Original Statutes* in the *Appendix*, and where we have occasion, is cited thus, *Ordinis Statuta in Bibliotheca Hattoniana.*

Another *Exemplar* of the *Founder*'s *Statutes* is registred at the beginning of the *Black Book* of the *Order*, it being the same in substance, put only into purer *Latin*, and the Articles rendred in a more eligant stile; yet there is one thing must not slip our observation, that whereas in the 17. *Article* of the *Statutes* entred in the *Registrum Chartaceum*, the Title of *Marquess* and *Viscount*, with the proportions they were decreed to pay *an.* 24. *H.* 6. upon the death of each *Knight-Companion*, are both interlined by another hand, and with fresher Ink, this *Exemplar* hath put them into the *Text*: But the same *Titles* being not interlined in the 22. *Article*, in the said *Register* (where there is a like occasion to speak of the Degrees of Nobility in the *Order*) are also omitted in that very Article of this *Exemplar*: which is a sufficient Argument, to manifest that it was compiled from the *Statutes* in the *Registrum Chartaceum*; and as to the time, after the 24. year of King *Henry* the Sixth, at soonest. These also are printed next the former *Exemplar*, and cited under this Title, *Ordinis Statuta in Libro Nigro.*

c *Regist.Chart. f.* 24. *a.*

SECT. II.

Of those other Bodies *of* Statutes *since established.*

BEsides these *Statutes* made at the *Institution* of the *Order*, there are two other *Bodies* or *Exemplars* established since; the one by King *Henry* the Fifth, and the other by King *Henry* the Eighth.

King *Henry* the Fifth, that happy restorer of the honor of the *Order*, having (at his entrance to the Royal Throne) found its glory upon abatement, not only raised it to its former lustre, but very much increast the honor thereof. For He renewed the *Grand Festival* and other *Solemnities*, He commanded a strict observation of all the *Founders Statutes*, and [d] brought many more to a like perfection, which He subjoined to such of them where they properly might be inserted, and are these that follow.

d *Lib.N. p.*65.

Article

3. *That the* Knights *should make their obeysance in the Choire, first to the* Altar, *and next to the* Soveraign.

8. *That*

8. *That the* Deputy *should elect, if the* Soveraign (*when abroad*) *had not six* Knights *with him.*
9. *That the* Feast *of St.* George *should not be kept on St.* Marks *day*, May-day, *&c.*
12. *That when a* Knight *should ride, he might wear a* Blue Ribband *instead of his* Garter.
14. *That the order and manner of offering up the Atchievements of deceased* Knights, *should be such as is there prescribed.*
20. *That* Knights *absent in the* Soveraigns *service, might be Installed by* Deputy.
31. *That the* Soveraign *should take a Signet of the* Order *abroad with him.*
34. *That no Charge should be admitted upon the* Colledge, *by the* Custos *or* Canons, *without the* Soveraigns *consent.*

The *Statutes* of Institution, with these Additions, this King caused to be translated into *French*, and transcribed into a *Roll*, the Transcript whereof was lent me by the right honorable *Basill* Earl of *Denbigh*, a person who through an industrious search into his own ancient Evidences, is become fortunately happy, by adding thence great light to his [e] high and noble Descent; and a no less encourager of, than really affected with the Studies of venerable Antiquity.

This *Roll* (as before the *Statutes* of Institution) was Ordained to issue out thenceforth to the *Knights-Companions* under the [f] *Common Seal* of the *Order*. In after times it was transcribed into *Books*; and by a Decree pass'd *an.* 3. *H.* 7. *an* [g] Original Book *of these* Statutes *and* Institutions *fair written, was to be laid up in the* Colledge *of St.* George; *and the* Scribe *or* Register *to have Transcripts of it in readiness to present the* Elected Knights *withall.*

The last and largest *Body* was undertaken and compleated, by that munificent increaser of the splendor of this most Noble Order, King *Henry* the Eighth; chiefly in regard some of the former *Statutes* were obscure, doubtful, and needed further explication; others wanted reducing and contraction, where the necessity of the case required.

And to set this worthy work on foot, this *Soveraign* gave Order (in a *Chapter* held at [h] *Greenwich* on St. *George*'s day, *anno regni sui* 9.) [i] *That all the* Knights-Companions *should be carefully summoned, to assemble together in the year then next following (whilst the solemnity of the Feast lasted) to consult and conclude upon the abrogation of such things as tended to the dishonor of the Order (if any such were) and for the advancement of other things that might augment and promote the honor thereof*, but it seems there was not any thing done thereupon.

Afterwards, to give greater reputation to this his Royal design, this *Soveraign* on the [k] 28. of *May* in the 11. year of his Reign, entred upon this great and noble work, with all magnificent Ceremony, being accompanied with [l] 19 *Knights-Companions* of the *Order*, all [m] proceeding on Horseback to the *Chapter-house* at *Windesor*; where being entred, and consideration had of the old Statutes; *the* [n] Knights-Companions, *with all due reverence, intreated the* Soveraign *to reform and explain them, as he should think convenient; who thereupon determining so to do, the whole Company gave their advice and consent.* That done, all present besought the *Soveraign*, kneeling, *that where any of them had* [o] *offended, in breaking any Ordinance concerning the* Order, *he would please to remit it, and give them a general pardon*, which most benignly he granted, and the next day, in *Chapter*, ratified it to them.

But it seems this undertaking held yet [p] three years, before it came to perfection; nevertheless then, *viz.* the 23. of *April, anno* 14. *H.* 8. *the* Soveraign *out of* [q] *right singular love, good zeal, and entire affection to this most Noble* Order, *to the estate of* Chivalry, *and the continuance and increase thereof; as also at the humble request and instant desire of the then* Knights-Companions, *and by their advice, counsel, and consent did make Interpretation, and Declaration of the obscurities, doubts, and ambiguities of the former* Statutes *and* Ordinances.

And having [r] reformed divers things in them, he thereunto made several additions,

e *From the Earls of* Hapsburg *in* Germany, *Dugd. Antiq. of Warr. p.* 57.
f *Art.* 27.
g *Lib. N. p.* 168
h } *Lib. N. p.*
i } 205.
k } *MS. in Offic. Arm.*
l } [M. 17.]
m } *p.* 26. *b.*
n } *Ibid.*
o } *p.* 27.
p *Lib. N. p.* 196.
q *Ibid. p.* 215.
r *Id.*

[s]additions, no less necessary than expedient.[q] The [t]*Original* whereof being signed and sealed, was commanded to be carefully laid up, in the *Treasury* of the *Colledge* at *Windesor*, there to remain to succeeding times, notwithstanding which, it hath not been seen there these many years past.

[s] *Lib. N. p. 215.* [t] *Ibid. 229.*

The *Articles* and *Clauses* added to the former *Statutes* in this last Body are these.

Article

1. *That the interpretation of the* Statutes, *&c. belongeth to the* Soveraign.
2. *The three points of* Reproach, *declared; and what is meant by a* Gentleman *of* Blood.
4. *Of the* Prorogation *of the* Feast.
5. *How the* Feast *is to be observed by* absent Knights.
6. *Attendance on the* Soveraign, *if he be not at the Feast.*
7. *That the* Soveraign's Deputy *may correct things in* Chapter.
12. *The Offering up of* Atchievements, *and a Taper armed with a Scutcheon.*
13. Canons *to sit in the lower Stalls, when any* Knights *are present.*
14. *That six* Knights *make a* Chapter.
20. *The manner of* Installation *set down.*
21. *Clause for a forreign* Knight's Deputy *to be conducted from the* Chapter-house *to his* Stall; *and for making an* Election *void, if the* Knight *send not his* Proxy *within seven months.*
23. *For Advancing and Translating of* Stalls.
25. Plates *not to be larger than the first* Founders, *except* Strangers.
38. *Concerning the* Collar *of the* Order.

This Body *of* Statutes *was compiled in* Latin, *and is recorded in the* [u]Black Book *of the* Order; it was translated into [w]*French* and *English* by Sir *Thomas Wriothesley* Knight, then *Garter* King of *Arms:* The *English* Version is that which hath been since delivered (instead of the former *Statutes*) to all succeeding *Knights-Companions*, according to the Injunction, but of late times appointed to be sent to *Forreign Princes*, and other *Elect Knights* abroad, [x]sealed with the *Great Seal* of the *Order*, affixed to a Label of Blue Silk and Gold.

[u] *Pag. 214.* [w] *Ib. p. 196.* [x] *Lib. R. p. 120.*

Where this *Book* hath been delivered to a *Knight-Companion* at the *Soveraign's* charge, the *Knight's* [y]*Executors* are obliged to send it back to the *Colledge* of *Windesor*, and there to deliver it to the *Custos* or *Register* of the *Order*. And because this Law was defective in point of time, therefore King [z]*Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes* appoint the same to be sent to either of them (or to one of the principal *Officers* of the *Order*, for the time being) within three Months next after the decease of such *Knight-Companion*.

[y] *E. 3. H. 5. Stat. Art. 28.* [z] *Art. 31.*

And yet besides these three *Bodies*, most eminently known by the title of *Statutes*, there was another drawn up and published, *anno* 7. *E.* 6. the Reformation of Religion here in *England* giving the occasion; but it being within few Months repealed by * Queen *Mary*, his Sister and Successor, before it received the life of Execution, and not since revived, we suppose it not proper to rank it in the *Appendix* or make any use thereof in the following Discourse.

* *Lib. C. p. 6.*

In the Month of *December* 1666. the Right Reverend Father in God *Matthew Wren*, late Lord Bishop of *Ely*, shewed me a Manuscript, compiled by himself, about the year 1631. being at that time *Register* of this most Noble *Order*: wherein by way of Comment upon King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, he briefly shews (out of the *Statutes* and *Annals* of the *Order*) what alteration there hath been in the Law of the *Garter*, both before and since. It is a work composed with a great deal of judgment, and exceeding useful; and had it been my good hap to have met therewith before I had so neer finished this Work, the ready directions therein would have eased me of much toil, whilst I was about the composing it.

SECT. III.

Several endeavours for Reforming *the* Statutes, *ſince the Reign of King* Henry *the Eighth.*

AS the Kings of this Realm, immediately at their attaining the Crown, do become *Soveraigns* of this moſt Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, and conſequently the [a] *Supream Law*, and *Interpreters* thereof; ſo is the regulation of the whole their undoubted Prerogative; and this hath been evidenced in nothing more fully than from their conſtant courſe in exercising the power, not only of making and eſtabliſhing, but changing and altering the *Laws* and *Statutes* thereof; which upon intereſt of *Religion*, pleaſure of the *Soveraign*, change of *times*, or any other fit or neceſſary *Occaſion*, hath from time to time been done by them. Upon this ground was it, that King *Edward* the Sixth went about to alter and reform ſuch things in the preceding *Statutes* as ſeemed not conſiſtent with the Religion he had eſtabliſhed in *England*. To which purpoſe, at a *Chapter* holden at *Greenwich*, the 23. of *April* in the 3. year of his Reign, it was agreed, [b] *That the Lord St.* John, *the Earl of* Arundel, *and Sir* William Paget *ſhould peruſe over the* Statutes *of the* Garter; *and that the ſame ſhould be* reformed, *and made agreeable to the Kings Majeſty's other proceedings, by the advice of the Duke of* Somerſet *Lord Protector, and other* Companions *of this Noble* Order.

a *Lib R. p.* 119 & 122.

b *Lib. N. p* 302.

This was ſeconded by another *Order*, made alſo in *Chapter* at *Greenwich*, on St. *Georges* day in the following year; where it was agreed, [c] *That the Book of* Statutes *ſhould be reformed, and thereupon the* Soveraign *delivered to the whole Company, a* Book, *wherein was contained certain* Statutes, *by the ſame to be corrected and reformed as they thought beſt, until the next* Chapter.

c *Ib. p.* 304.

But it ſeems, nothing was as yet done, in purſuance of either of theſe *Orders*, for at the next Feaſt, on the 24. of *April, anno* 5. *E.* 6. another *Order* paſt, [d] *impowering the Duke of* Somerſet, *the Marqueſs of* Northampton, *the Earls of* Warwick, Arundel, Bedford, *and* Wiltſhire, *to peruſe over the* Statutes *and other* Books *of the* Order, *and the ſame to be* reformed, *as aforeſaid.*

d *Ib. p.* 306.

This third *Order* it ſeems took more effect than the former; for thereupon a new Body of Laws was collected together (wherein ſome things were reformed, others newly added; but in effect the *Laws* of the *Order* very much altered) and publiſhed *March* 17. *anno* 7. *E.* 6. But this King dying within four Months after, the very firſt thing Queen *Mary* (his Siſter) took care for, in reference to the Affairs of this *Order*, was to ſee theſe *new Statutes* abrogated and made void.

To which purpoſe in a *Chapter* held at St. *James's* Houſe, the 27. of *September* next following her coming to the Crown, it was among other things Decreed and Ordained, [e] *That the ſaid* Laws *and* Ordinances, *which were in no ſort* [f] *convenient to be uſed, and ſo impertinent and tending to novelty, ſhould be abrogated and diſanulled; and no account to be made of them for the future.*

e *Lib C. p.* 6.
f *Ibid.*

And for the ſpeedy execution of this Decree, command was then alſo given to Sir *William Petre* (who that [g] day was admitted *Chancellor* of the *Order*) to ſee, [h] *that they ſhould be ſpeedily expunged out of the* Book *of* Statutes, *and forthwith defaced; leſt any memory of them ſhould remain to poſterity: and only thoſe Decrees and Ordinances, which her Father, and his royal Predeceſſors had eſtabliſhed, ſhould be retained and obſerved.*

g *Ib p.* 7.
h *Ibid.*

It may be alſo noted, that in this particular of Reformation, King *Philip* her Husband appeared no leſs zealous: for on the 5. of *Auguſt, an.* 1. & 2. *Ph. & Mar.* (which was the third day after he had been inveſted, with the Habit and Enſigns of the Order) himſelf being preſent at a *Chapter* in *Windeſor Caſtle*, it was then Ordained; [i] *That all* Acts *and* Decrees *being recorded in divers places of the* Great Book (to wit, the *Black Book* of the *Order*) *which were repugnant and diſagreeable*

i *Ibid p.* 12.

disagreeable either with the ancient and received Statutes of the Order, *or else with the* Laws *of the* Realm; *should clearly be abolished and taken away; by the Marquess of* Winchester, *the Earls of* Arundel, *and* Pembroke, *and the Lord* Paget.

And we no sooner see Queen *Elizabeth* ascending the Throne, but shortly after, on St. *George*'s day in the 2. year of her Reign, a view of the *Statutes* is committed (by Commission) to four of the *Knights-Companions*, namely the[k] *Marquess* of *Northampton*, the Earls of *Arundel*, and *Pembroke*, and the Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*: [l] *Who were thereby impowered to read over and consider those* Statutes, *and being so read over and viewed, to consider with a watchful care and diligence, if any of them were disagreeable to the* Religion, Laws, *and* Statutes *of this* Realm; *and if any such were found, the same to be faithfully represented to the* Soveraign, *to the end that* She, *with the* Knights-Companions, *might establish such Decree concerning them, as she should think fit.* [k] *Lib. C.* [l] *p. 53.*

Whether any thing was done pursuant hereunto, or not, doth not appear in the *Annals* of the *Order*, or any where else that we have seen; nor do we conceive there was, or that this *Soveraign* saw much cause, to alter the frame of those *Statutes*, which King *Henry* the Eighth had established, and Queen *Mary* confirmed; since the *Books* of *Statutes* delivered to the *Knights-Companions* at their Installations, throughout her Reign, were no other than Transcripts of her Father's Body of *Statutes*, and besides, the practice of her time was generally pursuant to the direction therein; except in some few things, now and then added or altered, at future *Chapters*, when there arose new cause for so doing; of which we shall give an account as the matter occurs.

After her Reign, King *James*, her Successor, observing the obscurity and disagreement of some passages among the *Statutes*, attempted something towards their reformation, and in reference thereto, the [m] 14. of *May*, in the 9. year of his Reign, Decreed, *That Commissionary Letters should be made forth to the Earls of* Nottingham, Worcester, Pembroke, *and* Northampton, *whereby power should be given them,* [n] *to examine the* Registers, *and other* Monuments, *which pertained to the* Order; *and where any thing should be found obscure, to make it cleer, where contrariety appeared, fitly to reconcile it, yet with no endeavour of innovating any thing, but an intention of renewing all things, as neer as might be to the first and most ancient Institution of the Order: Saving always power to himself, as* Soveraign *of the* Order, *to add or change any thing (according to the occasion) as it should seem agreeable to his prudence, for the honor of this most Noble Order.* What was done hereupon appears not, but some few years after, this Affair was revived, and the following *Commission* issued forth. [m] *Ibid. p.* [n] *173.*

James R.

JAmes *by the grace of God King of* Great Britain, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith, and* Soveraign *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *To our Right trusty, and Right well beloved Cousins and Councellors,* Charles *Earl of* Nottingham, *and* Edward *Earl of* Worcester, *and to our right trusty, and right well beloved Cousin* Henry *Earl of* Southampton, *and to our right trusty, and right well beloved Cousin and Councellor* Thomas *Earl of* Arundel, *and to our right trusty, and right well beloved Cousins,* Philip *Earl of* Montgomery, *and* Robert *Viscount* Lisle, Knights *and* Companions *of our said* Order, *Greeting;* Whereas, *ever since our coming to the Crown of this our Realm of* England, *We have had a special care to maintain and uphold the dignity and honor of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *whereof we are* Soveraign, *as to the world hath well appeared, both by our careful observation at all due times of all the Ceremonies and Solemnities belonging to the same, and also by the choice we have made of Noble and Worthy persons, whether Princes of Forreign Nations, or Subjects of our own Kingdoms, to supply the places which have been void of that Society. Now forasmuch as We are not ignorant that in all humane Constitutions, there may be not only Ambiguity, suffering doubtful Interpretation, but also defect, for which addition is requisite, the same best appearing in time, which is the producer and tryer of truth, We have therefore thought fit, out of the knowledge and* *Ex Collect. Guil. le Neve mil. super Glar. R. Armor.*

experience we have of your understanding and wisdom, and the confidence we repose in your faithfulness and sincerity, being men of honor, and Knights *and* Companions *of our said* Order, *to nominate you six, and to appoint you, or any four of you, to take an exact view of all the ancient* Statutes *and* Articles *of our said* Order. *And do give unto you, or any four of you, full power and authority to call before you all such persons, whether Officers of our said* Order, *or others, as can give you light or information concerning the same; and after a serious consideration thereof had by you all, or four of you, We will and require, that you set down in writing, what in the said ancient* Statutes *and* Articles, *you shall conceive meet to be explained, and what to be added, whereby our said* Noble Order *may be made more famous and illustrious, that the same being presented to us the* Soveraign *and the* Society, *at a* Chapter *holden, may be resolved on, in part or in all, to be put in execution, if to us it shall seem so good.* Given *under the Seal of our said* Order, *at our Palace of* Westminster, *the 26. day of* April, *in the sixteenth year of our Reign, &c.*

Notwithstanding the powers and directions given by this *Commission*, the progress in this business was very slow paced, but towards the later end of his Reign, the Earls of *Worcester*, *Montgomery*, *Arundel*, *Surry*, and *Leicester*, four of the six Commissioners above-named, having had divers meetings, and debated several things represented to them; did at a *Chapter* holden at *Whitehall*, the 19. of *May*, *anno Jac. Regis* 20. present to the *Soveraign* certain *Articles*, subscribed with their hands, which for the Honor of the *Order* they thought necessary to be observed.

By the first of which they endeavoured to provide for a further progress and advance of the same, in proposing, [o] *that every year a* Commission *from the* Soveraign *should be given or continued to such* Knights *of the* Order, *as in* Chapter *should be thought fit; to consider of all things to the* Order *belonging; and that the year following an account by the* Knights *in* Chapter *should be given of their proceedings, by virtue of the said* Commission.

o *Lib C.p.11. & 12.*

This with 8 other Articles, were [p] confirmed by the *Soveraign*, and twelve of the *Knights-Companions*, the [q] 22. of *May* following, in a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall*.

p *Ib. p.12.*
q *& 13.*

And so happily and effectually went this work forward, that on the Feast-day of St. *George* held at *Windesor* in the ensuing year, the said Earl of *Worcester* (being then the *Soveraign's Deputy* for that Feast) with ten *Knights-Companions* more, did agree to eight other *Articles* (most of them concerning the *Alms-Knights*) which the next morning were [r] approved of by the *Soveraign*; and that day, before the celebration of Divine Service, by the *Soveraign's Deputy*, and *Companions* assembled in the *Chapter-house*, [r] the observation thereof was also Decreed.

r *Ib p.14.*

And now to come neerer, even to the Reign of his late sacred Majesty, King *Charles* the First, of ever blessed and glorious memory, who while it lay in his power, was (and much more would have been, had not the angry Fate of our late times opposed) the greatest Increaser of the Honor and Renown of this most *Illustrious Order*: He, I say, taking into his princely thoughts all things whatsoever, which carried any shew or probability of adding lustre thereunto, designed and endeavoured, the most compleat and absolute Reformation of any of his Predecessors.

And first, at the Solemnity of St. *George* held at *Windesor* the [a] 6. day of *October* in the 6. year of his Reign, He commissionated nine of the *Knights-Companions*, namely, the Earls of *Molgrave*, *Pembroke*, and *Montgomery*, *Arundel* and *Surry*, *Salisbury*, *Carlisle*, *Dorset*, *Holland*, *Berkshire*, and *Suffolk*, with command to assemble four times in a year, to consult and handle the Affairs of the *Order*.

a *Lib. R. p. 65.*

All these, but the Earls of *Molgrave* and *Dorset*, met at *Whitehall*, the 2. of *January* following, where some [b] few things were considered of.

b *Ibid. p. 67.*

This *Commission* was seconded by one more ample, about three Months after, and directed to the before-named *Knights-Companions*, or to any 8, 7, 6, 5, or 4 of them, thereby impowring them, [d] *to meet, consult, and take an exact view, and to peruse all the* Statutes *and* Ordinances *of the* Order; *as well such as were established in the beginning, as such as had been since made by Explanation or Addition, and*

d *Ib p.68.*

and to consider advisedly, whether any thing had been Ordered, that had brought Doubt or Ambiguity, or did stand in need of Alteration or Amendment. To the end, that if upon mature deliberation by them, there should appear any contrariety or other defect, by want of plain expression or other omission, which were fit by the Soveraign *to be supplied for the augmentation of the Honor of the* Order, *that then in such case, He* [the Soveraign] *might (upon return of their Proceedings) resolve of some general Declaration in* Chapter, *to reform and reduce into one body all the* Statutes *and* Ordinances *thereof, that the same being compiled and setled in a perfect form, might be so delivered over to posterity, cleered and freed from all future questions and doubts.*

We see here the largeness of this noble design: Nevertheless not any thing was done upon this *Commission*, though it stood in force even from the 6. to the 13. year of this *Soveraign*'s Reign: but where the neglect lay appears not, though it may not untruly be conjectured by that which follows.

At the Feast of St. *George*, celebrated by Prorogation at *Whitehall*, for the year [e] 1636. upon the 17, 18, and 19. days of *April*, *anno* 1637. divers humble Petitions for [f] Reformation and Renovation, were presented to the *Soveraign*, the said 18. day of *April*, by the *Chancellor*, and them also read; some of which more especially tending to the honor of the *Order* were accepted and decreed by the *Soveraign*, and the rest referred and transmitted to the *Knights-Commissioners* before mentioned.

[e] *Sir Thomas Rowes Journal* p. 8.
[f] *Ibid. p. 9.*

The first of those Decrees which at this time past, was [g] to revive and renew the powers given in the former *Commission*, and thereupon a *new Commission*, dated the 7. of *May* then following, issued under the Great Seal of the *Order*, having the same Preamble with the former *Commission*, and was directed to the Earls of *Molgrave*, *Derby*, *Pembroke*, and *Montgomery*, *Arundel*, and *Surrey*, *Kelley*, *Salisbury*, *Dorset*, *Holland*, *Berkshire*, *Suffolk*, *Lindsey*, *Exceter*, Marquess *Hamilton*, Duke of *Lenox*, the Earls of *Danby*, *Moreton*, and *Northumberland*, or to three or more of them, to [h] meet and consult of any matter, concerning the *Statutes*, or *Honor* of the *Order*. These *Knights-Commissioners*, were likewise armed with [i] all the powers given in the foresaid *Commission*, dated *anno* 6. *Car.* 1. Unto which was added, for the better effecting the *Soveraign*'s royal care; [k] *That three or more of them should meet at the* Soveraign's Court, *and begin to execute the said* Commission, *in* Whitson-week *next ensuing, attended and assisted by the* Chancellor *of the* Order, *and all or any other* Officers, *or such of them as they should call and find serviceable. And being met and assembled, to have power to hear, propound, and debate whatsoever should be presented, or that they should conceive conducible, to the honor and perfect establishment of the Order. And to prepare all matters of such their consultation to be presented unto the* Soveraign, *at the next Feast of* St. George, *and so successively at every* Chapter *to be held by the* Soveraign: *therein to receive his full determination, approbation, and royal assent: with further power to adjourn from time to time, after the first opening and reading of the said* Commission, *their meetings to such places and days, as to them should seem most convenient.*

[g] *Lib. R. p. 118.*
[h] [i] *Rowes Journal, p. 18.*
[k] *Ibid. p. 19.*

Now who would think, that, after so noble a designation of the *Soveraign*, after his care to send forth a second *Commission* with augmentative powers, after his earnest [l] recommending this Affair to their diligence, his pressing their dispatch for the speedy accomplishment of his Royal Intentions, and lastly, his expecting from them an account of their Transactions, at or before the celebration of the next Feast, these honorable persons who were *Companions* of so noble and honorable an *Order*, and at their admission sworn to advance the honor of the same, no less than to defend and maintain it, should need a Spur to so worthy a design? But it was so!------

[l] *Ibid.*

For although the foresaid *Commission* was opened and read at the *Court* at *Whitehall*, the 30. of *May* following, in the presence and session of the Earls of *Pembroke*, and *Montgomery*, *Salisbury*, *Holland*, Marquess *Hamilton*, and Duke of *Lenox*, *Commissioners* and *Companions* of this most Noble Order; yet I find the then *Chancellor* Sir *Thomas Rowe*, in an account of that day's proceedings by Letter, dated

dated the fourth of *June* 1637. and directed to Dr. *Christopher Wren*, then *Register* of the *Order* (whose attendance was on that day excused) sadly profess; *That it was as much as he could do, to procure and draw together five of the* Knights-Companions, *to open and read the Commission, and this also in haste*, quasi in transitu; *and all that was done, was to appoint another meeting at the* Court *in* Midsommer-week, *then next ensuing; and to lay a charge upon the* Chancellor *to prepare matter* (to wit, [m] Propositions and Observations upon the *Statutes*) *fit for their Consultation, against that time, according to the tenour of the* Commission. And elsewhere he makes this ingenuous acknowledgment, *That he found such difficulty to procure meetings, and a certain* non-chalance *in every one, as if it were but a ceremonious Affair, and so few hearty in it, that he feared, he and the Officers should wait to little purpose.*

m *Ibid.* p. 21.

And so indeed it fell out, for albeit he attended the said *Knights-Commissioners* in *Midsomer-week*, according to the appointment at their last sitting; yet there was nothing done, save only the adjourning of their meeting to [n] *London.*

n *Ibid.*

Some little (and but little) progress was afterwards made in this Affair, at another meeting at *White-hall*, the [o] 8. of *February* following; where three of the said *Knights-Commissioners* were present, namely, the Earls of *Berkshire, Lindsey*, and *Northumberland*; who Ordered, [p] *That the* Chancellor, Register, *and* Garter, *should prepare an abreviation of the* Statutes, *and reduce every thing of one head, into an act, to avoid confusion:* And this being the half of what they then did, caused this Expression to fall from the Pen of this worthy *Chancellor*, in another Letter to the *Register*, of the 24. of *Nov.* 1637. *There is little hopes of the* Knights; *they never meet, or to no purpose; though I am tired with solicitations.*

o *Ibid.* p. 31.
p *Ibid.* p. 36.

Finally, the [q] first of *February* after, another assembly of seven of the *Knights-Commissioners* was held also at *Whitehall*, in whose presence a few things were debated, but little concluded: and further than this sitting, can I not trace the prosecution of this noble design and intendment of the late *Royal Soveraign*, all the following years of his Reign; but that here it slept in silence and neglect.

q *Ibid.* p. 36.

SECT. IV.

Of the Annals *of the* Order.

AND because the several *Orders* and *Decrees* occasionally made in *Chapters* (being of good authority and binding to the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers*) with many other Historical and Ceremonial matters, relating to the *Order*, lye dispersi throughout the *Annals* thereof; it will be requisite here, to give some account of those Books wherein they are so recorded, because we shall make frequent use of them in the progress of our Discourse.

Registrum Ordinis Chartaceum.

The first of these in order of time, is an old Paper Book, written in *French* (hitherto fortunately preserved in the *Paper-Office* at *Whitehall*) which in all probability was begun by *John Coringham*: for we find him 1414. (which was a little before the *Annals* therein entred do commence) made [e] *Canon* of *Windesor*, and constituted [f] *Register* of the *Order*. And in regard that one and the same kind of hand-writing is continued from the beginning of this Book, until *anno* 16. *H.* 6. *inclusive*, where follows an *Hiatus* till *anno* 23. *H.* 6. that the *Annals* begin to be entred with another hand, and that he shortly after died, *viz.* [g] *anno Dom.* 1445. 'tis very probable, the Book so far was writ by himself.

e (*Tho. Frithin*
f < *suo Canoni-*
g (*cor. Catal.*

Hence forward these *Annals* are entred with several hands, and those generally in use about the times, wherein the Transactions passed, whence may well enough be presumed, that these were the proper hand-writings of each *Register* of the *Order*, and that this *Book* was transmitted from one *Register* to another, wherein, after their death or other removal, the *Annals* and *Acts* were continued by

by the hand of the next Succeſſor; and from this conjecture may ſome light be alſo given of the time how long each *Regiſter* or *Scribe* enjoyed his Office.

After *Richard Sidnor* was made *Regiſter*, to wit, [h] *anno* 16. *H.* 8. (who ſubſcribed his name to the foot almoſt of each leaf) the *Annals* were written in one hand, until *anno* 26. *H.* 8. that [i] *Robert Aldrydge* Doctor of Divinity, and one of the Canons of *Windeſor* [k] ſucceeded him in that Office, and then 'tis evident the hand-writing alſo was changed, to an old ſet *Roman*, which ran on to the end of 29. *H.* 8. in which year he was advanced to the Biſhoprick of [l] *Carliſle*, and this Book ends in the 31. of his Reign.

h *Lib. N. p.* 245.
i *Ex Catalog. præd.*
k *Lib. N. p.* 265.
l *Godwins Catal. of Biſhops, p.* 543.

Beſides this, there is another *Book* wherein the *Annals* of the *Order* are recorded in *Latin*, concerning which there paſt a Decree, *anno* 3. *H.* 7. [m] *That it ſhould be fairly tranſcribed*, and [n] afterwards, *That the* Soveraign *ſhould be put in mind of it, as being then needful to be renewed*; but neither of theſe *Decrees* took effect, nor was this done till towards the end of the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth.

Liber Niger.
m *Lib. N. p.* 168.
n *Anno* 12. *H.* 7. *vide Lib. N. p.* 181.

This *Book* agrees very neerly with the *Regiſtrum Chartaceum*, for therein is nothing entred relating to the *Order* (except [o] one of the *Exemplars* of the *Founder's Statutes*, and a [n] *Catalogue* of the firſt 25 *Knights-Companions*) before the fourth year of King *Henry* the Fifth; the *Annals* of the *Order* until then being wholly loſt. It hath the ſame *Hiatus* or *Intervals*, *viz.* from the 16. to the 23. year of King *Henry* the Sixth, from the 7. to the 10. of *Edward* the Fourth, from the 4. to the 7. of *Henry* the Seventh, and from the 10. to the 14. of the ſame King; it alſo runs parallel therewith for the moſt part, yet where there is any thing more recorded in the *Regiſtrum Chartaceum* than in the *Black Book*, we ſhall note it, as we have a fitting occaſion offered.

o *Lib. N. p.* 27.
n *Ibid. p.* 38.

And that it was compiled by Dr. *Aldrydge*, while he was *Regiſter*, may be collected from a ſhort Account given in the [o] *Preface*, of all the *Soveraigns* of the *Order*, ending with King *Henry* the Eighth; with a memorial relating to Cardinal *Wolſey*, who, as it there appears, was then dead.

o *Pag.* 22. & 23.

The Tranſcription of this *Book* was finiſhed *anno* 31. *H.* 8. for ſo far it is written (as alſo the *Appendix*) with one and the ſame hand (being a middle ſized Text Letter) but *anno* 32. *H.* 8. 'tis moſt apparent, another hand is introduced, which with ſome variation is afterwards carried on to the end of *anno* 5. *E.* 6. where this *Book* ends.

The *Regiſter* of the *Order*, by the Conſtitutions of his Office, was obliged to prouide [p] two *Books*, and therein to enter the *Ordinances* and *Statutes*, with other *Acts* of the *Order*, whereof one was appointed to be kept in the *Chapter-houſe* at *Windeſor*, and called *Index Windeſorienſis*; and the other (being a duplicate of the former) to remain in the *Regiſter's* keeping, ready at hand to ſhew the *Soveraign* whenſoever he ſhould require it; and this latter was called *Aulæ Regiſtrum*.

p *Lib. N. p.* 235

As to the general directions given for compiling theſe *Books*, and of what particulars they are principally to conſiſt, we have ſome information from the *Statutes* of the *Order*, and the foreſaid *Conſtitutions*; for beſides the entry this Officer is enjoined to make of all the *Scrutenys* taken in *Chapter*, and *Elections* thereupon made (which we ſhall at large diſcourſe of in its [q] due place) his duty is to record the [r] *Penalties inflicted on* Knights-Companions, *and the reaſon thereof, the* [ſ] *reconciliatin of thoſe that have ſuffered penalties as Delinquents, with other Acts and their cauſes, appertaining to the Order:* All which are Decreed to be [t] recited before the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, at the beginning of the *Chapter*, yearly on the Eve of St. *George*; to the end they may be corrected, and reduced into Method, if need require.

q *Chap.* 9. *Sect.* 15.
r *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 34.
ſ *Ord. Stat. in Bibl. Hatton. Art.* 36.
t *E.* 3. *Stat Art.* 34. *H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 36.

Moreover, he is, by the foreſaid *Conſtitutions*, *to make entry of all the* [u] *Policies in War, Exploits, Tranſactions, and memorable Atchievements, both of the* Soveraign *and* Knights-Companions, *according as he can beſt attain the knowledge of them, either by his own diligent ſearch, or the aſſiſtance of Mr.* Garter, *which having firſt ſet down and committed to writing, as paſſages and accidents happen from year to year, whatſoever is thus noted by him, is to be red and peruſed at the next* Chapter, *by the* Knights-Companions *there aſſembled, that if any thing be found to ſtand in need of Correction, it may there be forthwith amended, and again in like manner at*

u *Lib. N. p.* 235.

another

another Chapter *afterwards*; *which done, he is to take care, that they be fairly ingrossed in the foresaid* Book, *for a perpetual memorial.*

And because the time assigned for rehearsal of these particulars in *Chapter*, had in succeeding years been taken up with other Affairs; in one of those *Articles*, which the *Knights-Companions* (to whom King *James* recommended the framing of some *Articles*, necessary for the honor of the *Order*) presented to the *Soveraign* the 19. of *May*, *anno Jac. Regis* 20. and confirmed the 22. of *May* following, it was Decreed, [w] *That nothing of this nature, or any other Act in Chapter should be Registred, before it had been perused and considered by the then* Knights-Commissioners, *or at least four of them*, who when they should set times apart, to consult of the Affairs of the *Order*, for which they were chiefly constituted, might then also make use of such opportunities, as should give this business dispatch with more conveniency.

w *Lib. R. p.* 13.

Upon due consideration had of these *Injunctions*, the present *Register* (at a *Chapter* held the 19. of *November*, *anno* 22. *Car.* 2.) [x] exhibited the continuation of the *Annals* of this Noble *Order*, which he had prepared to register in the *Liber Carolinus*, and humbly submitted it to the perusal and approbation of the *Knights-Companions* whom the *Soveraign* had deputed to take into their consideration the Affairs of the *Order*; which tender when they declined, he proposed that it might be examined by the *Prelate*, but that not being liked by them (on consideration that the *Register* was obliged under an Oath, to deal faithfully in his *Report*) it was Decreed, [y] *That the said Annals should be recorded in the said* Book *without any further examination.*

x, y *Lib. Carol. p.* 76.

Besides the above-mentioned particulars, there were materials of another nature, ordered to be collected, both from the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, and *Garter Principal King of Arms*, to be digested by the *Register*, and entred also upon Record; for, whereas one part of the *Chancellor*'s duty was to [z] *set forth and declare every year in* Chapter, *at the Feast of St.* George, *the renowned and praiseworthy Acts of the* Knights *of this* Order, *as many as had so merited, and as for those who had deserved the contrary, to make relation also of their scandalous and disgraceful actions*; the *Register* was to take these in writing, and record them for a memorial of their honor or shame, never to end.

z *Lib. N. p.* 234.

And it is part of the duty of Mr. *Garter*, [a] *diligently and industriously to make enquiry after the valiant, fortunate, and renowned Acts, both of the* Soveraign, *and the rest of the* Knights-Companions, *which having learnt, he is to make a true and faithful relation of them to the* Register, *to be by him entred upon Record for a perpetual memorial.*

a *Ibid. p.* 237.

But we find very little of this hitherto done, and how sparingly inserted, the *Annals* themselves are but too evident Witnesses. Nevertheless, the present Garter, Sir *Ed. Walker*, hath drawn up a faithful account of the noble Actions and Characters of the *Knights-Companions*, beginning with *Thomas* Earl of *Strafford*, and continuing it down to his Son; which he delivered to Dr. *Ryves*, the now *Register*, for the use afore directed.

Among the *Articles* established at the Feast of St. *George*, *anno Jac. Regis* 21. the last is, [b] *That the then* Register *of the* Order *should compose a* Book, *wherein should be orderly transcribed the form and manner of all the* Solemnities, Ceremonies, *and* Processions, *which were accustomably used at the Feast of St.* George, *and celebration of the* Order, *as also of taking down and offering the* defunct Knights Atchievements, *to the end the* Knights-Companions, *upon recourse to it, might have full information thereof.* But (after much enquiry) we have not heard that such a *Book* was drawn up by him, or any of his Successors.

b *Lib. R. p.* 16.

And that some course should be taken for the safe custody and preservation of the *Annals* of the *Order*, such was the worthy care of the foresaid *Knights-Commissioners*, that the said 22. of *May*, *anno Jac. Regis* 20. it was Ordained, [c] *That a secure and certain place within the Castle of* Windesor, *should be provided and appointed, in which all* Acts *concerning the* Order *should be kept, and to which every* Knight-Companion *at all times might have access.* And further, [d] *That upon the remove, or after the death of the* Register *of the* Order, *the* Book *containing*

c, d *Ibid. p.* 13.

an

an account of all such acts as had been Registred and there reserved, should be delivered to one of the Knights *of the* Order.

The second of these *Books* is called the *Blue Book*, and so called from the colour of the Cover, being fairly bound in *Blue Velvet*. It begins with the first year of Queen *Mary*, and ends at the 18. year of King *James*. Liber Cœruleus.

The third, being bound up in *Red Velvet*, goes therefore under the name of the *Red Book*; it takes commencement where the *Blue Book* ends, and contains like Acts and Entries with the former, it ends in the 14. year of King *Charles* the First of ever blessed memory, having first given a full account of the Ceremonies performed at the Installation of the present *Soveraign*. Liber Rubeus.

And as to a great part of this *Book* may I justly and without flattery say, (and to the honor of that right Reverend Prelate, Doctor *Wren* the late Lord Bishop of *Ely*, let it be remembred) that from the Institution of this most Noble *Order*, until he was chosen into the Office of *Register*, the *Annals* of the *Order*, were at no time recorded by a Pen neer so judicious or eligant; whose excellent Patern his worthy Brother, and Successor into that Office, Doctor *Christopher Wren*, (who most freely and readily communicated to me, what materials he had, to encourage my first design and entrance upon this Work) hath exactly copied in its following leaves.

The fourth and last Book commenceth, *anno* 1640. wherein the *Annals* are continued down to the beginning of the year 1670. according to the English Account, by the learned pains of Dr. *Brune Ryves* the present *Register* of the *Order*. And in a *Chapter* held at *Windesor* the 16. of *April*, *anno* 13. *Car.* 2. it was Decreed, [e] That there should be two of these Books made, the one penn'd in *Latin* to remain with the *Register* at *Windesor*, and the other in *English* to be kept at *Whitehall*, and called *Registrum Aulicum*. Liber Carolinus. e *Lib. Carol.* p. 30.

THE Account drawn up of the Founder *and first* Knights-Companions *of this Noble* Order, *we designed for the next Chapter, but for some considerable reasons cannot bring it in here; nevertheless we intend it to usher in the* Catalogue *of their* Successors, *and join them together in the last Chapter, where our* Reader, *if hence he cast his eye thither, may read it in due Order.*

CHAP. VII.

THE Habit *and* Enſigns OF THE Order.

SECT. I.

Of the Garter.

AMong the Ancients, the *Romans* were moſt exact, in aſſigning each Degree, a peculiar *Habit* and *Veſture*; by which alone the quality and condition of their *Citizens*, might be known and diſtinguiſhed. This Cuſtom of diſtinction in Apparel was afterwards taken up by ſundry other Nations alſo, whence it came to paſs, that every *Military* as well as *Eccleſiaſtick Order* of *Knighthood* did appropriate to it ſelf a peculiar *Habit*, *Enſign*, or *Badge*; and theſe, the *Fellows* and *Companions* of thoſe *Orders*, were appointed and enjoined to wear, to the end, they might be diſtinguiſhed by them, as from others, ſo from one another, and beſt ſet forth the State and Honor of their ſeveral *Societies*.

Among the *Military Orders*, the *Habit* and *Enſigns* of this moſt Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, are highly honorable, and eminently magnificent; and conſiſt of theſe particulars following. Namely the *Garter*, *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Hood*, *George*, and *Collar*. The four firſt were aſſigned by the *Founder*, and the two laſt by King *Henry* the Eighth, and all theſe together, are called [a] *the whole Habit or Enſigns of the Order*. Concerning each of which we ſhall here deliver a ſhort account, beginning with the principal *Enſign* the *Garter*.

a *Lib. N. p.* 209.

The Royal *Garter* challengeth the preheminence; for from it this moſt famous *Order* received a Name and Title. [b] It is the firſt part of the *Habit* preſented to foreign *Princes*, and abſent *Knights*, and that wherewith they, and all other *Elect Knights* are firſt adorned; and of ſo great honor and grandeur in this Inſtitution, that by the bare Inveſtiture with this Noble *Enſign*, the *Knights* are reckoned and accounted *Companions* and *Fellows* of the greateſt *Military Order* in the World.

b *E.* 3. *Stat. Art* 19. *H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 19. *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 20.

Of

The Garter

The Soveraign's A

Wenceslaus Hollar delineavit et sculpsit 1656.

Of what materials this principal *Enſign* was at firſt made, we have not yet found, nor is it deſcribed by any, before *Polydore Virgile*, and he, but in general, as to the ornamental part of it, to wit, That it was[c] adorned with Gold and precious Stones, and had a Buckle of Gold at the end, wherewith to faſten it about the Leg. But doubtleſs, it was alſo wrought with rich Embroidery, and thereon the Symbolical word or *Motto* was raiſed with Gold, Pearl, and ſundry ſorts of Silks; as may be gueſſed from the *Garters* anciently placed on the left ſhoulder of the *Knights-Companions* Mantles, and theſe other little embroidered *Garters*, wherewith their Surcoats and Hoods were heretofore adorned, which we ſhall deſcribe by and by.

c *Angl. Hiſt. l.19.p 378.*

But touching thoſe made in the laſt Age, we have received more particular ſatisfaction: for we find, that the *Garter* ſent to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, *ann.* 1 & 2. *Phil. & Mar.* was ſet with[d] Letters of Goldſmiths Work, the *Buckle* and *Pendant* of the ſame, and on the Pendant, a Ruby and a Pearl hanging at the end. The *Garter* made for *Francis* the Second, *anno 6. Eliz.* was[e] richly wrought with Letters of Gold, garniſhed with Stones: the *Buckle* and *Pendant* weighing[f] three Ounces and a half and half quarter, was richly ſet with Rubies and Diamonds. The *French* King *Henry* the Fourth, had a *Garter* of[g] Purple Velvet, embroidered with Letters of Gold, garniſhed with Diamonds and Rubies; and the *Garter* of *Chriſtiern* the Fourth King of *Denmark*, was[h] embroidered with Gold and Pearls.

d *Ex Collect. Will le Neve Eq. Aur. nuper Clarencieux R. Armorum.*
e *Ex Collect. Aug. Vincent nuper Windeſor Peraldi.*
f *MS. fol. pen. Georg. Owen, nuper York Herald. p.154.*
g *Ib.p.229.*
h *Ib.p.295.*

But that *Garter* ſent to *Guſtavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, did excel all others, beſtowed by former *Soveraigns*, for richneſs and glory; each Letter of the *Motto* being compoſed of Diamonds. A particular Inventory whereof (taken the 24. day of *May*, *anno* 14.*Car.*1. when delivered by the *Soveraign*'s Command, to the cuſtody of the Dean and Chapter of *Windeſor*, to be preſerved there in memory of that famous King) we here exhibit; it being the tranſcript of that Counterpart, ſigned by Doctor *Chriſtopher Wren*, then Dean of *Windeſor*, and ſeven *Canons* of that *Colledge*, upon the receipt thereof.

Under the Letters of the Garter ſmall Diamonds on [the lower] *ſide*	52
Item, on the upper ſide of the Garter of ſmall Diamonds	52
In the Letter H *Diamonds ſmall*	10
In the Letter O *Diamonds ſmall*	12
In the Letter N *Diamonds ſmall*	11
In the Letter I *Diamonds ſmall*	4
The firſt ſtop Diamond	1
In the Letter S *Diamonds ſmall*	11
In the Letter O *Diamonds ſmall*	12
In the Letter I	4
In the Letter T *Diamonds*	10
The Stop,	1
In the Letter Q *Diamonds*	13
In the Letter V	9
In the Letter I	4
The Stop,	1
	207
In the Letter M *Diamonds ſmall*	11
In the Letter A *Diamonds ſmall*	10
In the Letter L *Diamonds ſmall*	6
The Stop,	1
The Letter Y *Diamonds*	6
The Stop,	1
The Letter P	10
The Letter E	9
The Letter N	11
The Letter S	11
The Letter E	9
	85

In the firſt Button, Diamonds	6
In the ſecond	6
In the third	6
In the fourth	6
In the Star of longer Diamonds	7
Small Diamonds.	31
In the Chapes border, Diamonds of a bigger ſize	32
In the Croſs, four faucet long Diamonds, and four three ſquare faucet Diamonds	8
One large Diamond long and faucet encompaſſed with ſeven ſquare Diamonds and faucet	8
In the Buckle, one faucet table Diamond in the end, and twenty ſeven in the compaſs and tongue	28
In the Hinge of the Buckle, one foul ſquare Diamond, and eleven other faucet and ſquare Diamonds	12
	88
Total of the Number	411

See the Truſtees Book of Sales.

This rich *Garter*, being (for greater ſecurity) buried in St. *George's* Chappel, at the beginning of the late War, was diſcovered by *Cornelius Holland*, and fetch'd thence by *John Hunt* Treaſurer to the Truſtees for ſale of the late Kings Goods, and ſold by them to *Thomas Beauchamp* their then Clerk.

The *Garter* which his ſaid late *Majeſty* wore upon his Leg at the time of his Martyrdom, had the Letters of the *Motto* compoſed likewiſe of Diamonds, which took up the number of 412. It came into the hands of [i] *Captain Preſton* (one of the late Uſurper's Captains of Horſe) from whom the ſaid [k] Truſtees received it, and ſold to Mr. *John Ireton*, ſometimes Lord Mayor of *London* for 205 *l.* But ſince the happy Reſtauration of the preſent *Soveraign*, Mr. *Ireton* was ſummoned before the Commiſſioners, impowered by a Commiſſion under the Great Seal of *England*, to enquire after the *Crowns, Plate, Jewels, &c.* of the ſaid late *Soveraign*, which had been concealed or imbezeled, and being charged with the buying the forefaid *Royal Garter*, and not denying it, Compoſition was offered him, according to the direction of the Commiſſion (as in all other like caſes, where any thing could not be had in kind) but he refuſing the offer, the *Kings Attorney General* proceeded againſt him in an Action of *Trover* and *Converſion*, in the Court of *Kings-Bench*, which coming to trial in *Trinity Term, anno* 16. *Car.* 2. upon a full hearing, a Verdict was given for the *King*, againſt the ſaid *John Ireton* for 205 *l.* and 10 *l.* Coſts of Suits.

i { *Ex relatione pred. Tho. Beauchamp.*

The *Motto* of the now *Soveraign's* Royal *Garter*, is ſet with Diamonds upon Blue Velvet, and the borders wrought with fine Gold Wire; the Diamonds which frame the Letters of the *Motto* are Roſe Diamonds, much of a bigneſs, but thoſe which make the Stops, table Diamonds; and the number which ſet each Letter are as followeth.

In the Letter H *ſmall roſe Diamonds*	10
In the Letter O	12
In the Letter N	11
In the Letter I	4
The firſt ſtop Diamond	1
In the Letter S	9
In the Letter O	11
In the Letter I	4
In the Letter T	8
The Stop,	1
In the Letter Q	12
In the Letter V	9
In the Letter I	4
The Stop,	1

In

In the Letter M	13
In the Letter A	10
In the Letter L	6
The Stop,	1
In the Letter Y	8
The Stop,	1
In the Letter P	9
In the Letter E	9
In the Letter N	12
In the Letter S	8
In the Letter E	9
In each of the four Ilot holes ſix little Diamonds	24
In the Buckle, two very large Diamonds, four ſomewhat leſs, three leſs than they, and four ſmall Diamonds	13
In the Tab, three very large Diamonds, ſix a little leſſer, one ſomewhat leſs, four ſmaller Diamonds, two leſs than they, and fourteen ſmall Diamonds	30
Total	250

The *Hinge* of the *Buckle* is pure Gold, and thereon the *Soveraign*'s Picture to the breaſt, curiouſly cut in flat-ſtich, crowned with a Laurel, and veſted in the Military Habit worn by the firſt Roman Emperors. The *Tab* or *Pendant* is alſo Gold, and on the back ſide thereof engraved a *Saint George* on Horſeback, encountring the Dragon. The order of placing the Diamonds on the Buckle, Tab, and about the Ilot holes, may be ſeen in the Draught which (with the reſt of the Noble Ornaments, that make up the whole *Habit* and *Enſigns* of the *Order*, exactly taken from the particulars themſelves) is placed at the beginning of this Chapter.

This Noble *Enſign* [the *Garter*] was at the Foundation of the *Order*, appointed to be worn on the [l] left Leg, a [m] little beneath the Knee, and ſo hath the uſage in all time ſince continued. And its apparent, that the manner of placing this *Garter* on the left Leg of the *Knights-Companions* Sepulchral Portraictures, was very early brought into uſe; ſeeing in that Alablaſter Figure, of Sir *William Fitz Waren* (who died a *Knight-Companion* of this Noble *Order*, in the [n] five and thirtieth year of the *Founder*'s Reign) lying with his *Lady* on a raiſed Monument, in the North ſide of the Chancel of *Wantage* Church in *Berkſhire* (and yet to be ſeen) with his Surcote of Arms upon the breaſt) the reſemblance of his *Garter* (but without any *Motto*) is carved upon its left Leg. In like manner is the *Garter* [o] repreſented on the left Leg of the Alablaſter Portraicture of Sir *Richard Pembridge*, elected *Knight* of this moſt Noble *Order*, in the *Founder*'s Reign, and in the room of Sir *Thomas Vfford*: whoſe Monument is erected in the [p] South ſide of the Cathedral Church of *Hereford*, below the Pulpit, and encompaſſed with a Rail of Iron Spikes.

l *Polid. Virgil. Angl. Hiſt. l. 19. p. 378.*

m *in Lib. N p. 66.*

n *Ex vetuſto Codice de Epiſcopis & Prioribus Dunelmenſ. Eccleſiæ, vide Tho. Walſingh. ſub anno 1361.*

o } *Ex Collect.*
p } *Silæ Taylour gen. lib. D. f. 129. b.*

The next Monument in time, whereon we have ſeen the *Garter* ſo repreſented, is that made for Sir *Simon Burley* ([q] beheaded *anno* 1388.) and raiſed in the North wall ſiding the Quire of St. *Paul*'s Cathedral *London*, almoſt over againſt the Monument of *John a Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaſter*. Thence forward the uſage became more frequent (and then the *Motto* began likewiſe to be cut thereon) inſomuch as even until theſe days, the *Garter* is to be ſeen thus repreſented, upon all the Monumental Portraictures of thoſe, who were ſince *Companions* of this moſt Noble *Order*.

q *See the Inſcript. in Mr. Dugdales Hiſtory of St. Pauls Cathedral, p. 103. & Placita coram Rege an. 5. H. 5 rot. 46. Heref.*

And albeit this *Princely Enſign* of the *Order*, was at firſt deſigned for an Ornament to the left Legs of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*; yet was not its uſe confined only thereto, but extended to ſome other particulars: For, in the next place it was (and that anciently alſo) made uſe of to incircle the *Scutcheon* of St. *George*'s *Arms*, worn by the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* on the left ſhoulder of their *Mantles*; who within a ſhort time after took it to ſurround each of their proper *Coats* of *Arms*: which uſage, their Succeſſors in this moſt Noble

Order

Order have retained, as a peculiar priviledge, but not permitted to any other, except the *Prelate* of the *Garter* their principal Officer.

The firſt Example which hath occurr'd to our view, is the before mentioned Monument of Sir *Simon Burley*; where on the front towards the head is a Scutcheon of his Arms, impaled with his firſt Wives, ſet within a *Garter* (wanting the *Impreſs*) but another having the ſame impalment (placed below the Feet) is ſurrounded with a *Collar* of *SS*, of the faſhion with that about his neck.

The Monument alſo of *Joane* Wife to *Ralph Nevill* Earl of *Weſtmerland*, Daughter to *John a Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaſter* (who died on the Feaſt-day of St. *Brice*, *anno* 1410.) raiſed on the South ſide of the Quire in the Cathedral Church of *Lincolne*, hath the Arms of *Nevill*, impaled with thoſe belonging to the ſaid *Joane*, incircled with a *Garter*: And by theſe two (among other Examples) it appears to have been the uſage about thoſe times, to ſurround *Scutcheons* of *Arms*, and other *Devices*, with a *Collar* of *SS* alſo: for ſo, on this great *Ladies* Monument, is there ſuch a Collar, faſhioned like that of Sir *Simon Burley*'s placed about a ſquare, whereon, what was painted doth not now appear.

r *MS. in Bibl. Hatton.*

Another ancient inſtance is that Scutcheon, *viz.*[r] *Sable*, three *Oſtrich Feathers Argent*, ſurrounded with the *Garter*, ſet up in the Glaſs Windows of *Greenwich* Church in *Kent*, by *Humfry* Duke of *Glouceſter*, and ſupported with a Greyhound and an Antilope. It is ſaid, that theſe three Feathers were the Badge of King *Henry* the Fourth, which he had from *John a Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaſter* his Father, who bore them for his *Device* (as might be ſeen not long ſince in the North Window, againſt his before mentioned Monument, in St. *Paul's London*) and placed in a Field Sable as here, but the Pens were powdred with Ermyns, for a difference from the *Black Prince*'s Feather. The *King* likewiſe, ſo alſo the Houſe of *Somerſet*, gave the White Oſtrich Feather for a Device; but all the difference lay in the Pen, for the *Kings* Pen was *Or*, the *Princes* Argent, the *Duke* of *Lancaſters* Ermyn, and the *Duke* of *Somerſets* Compony, Argent, and Azure.

The Arms of Sir *Lewis Robſort* Lord *Bourchier*, one of the *Knights* of this *Order*, Elected in the Reign of King *Henry* the Fifth, are to be ſeen painted within a *Garter*, on each ſide his Monument, in St. *Paul's* Chappel in *Weſtminſter* Abbey. Afterwards we find at the Interment of *Richard* Duke of *York*, Father to King *Edward* the Fourth (ſlain at the Battel of *Wakefield*) that every corner of the *Majeſty Scutcheon* (ſet over the Image of the defunct) had[f] a Scutcheon of the Arms of *France* and *England* quarterly, and four Angels *Gold*, holding the Arms within a *Garter*.

f *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [I.3.] *f* 8 *b. vide lib.* I.11. *in ead. Offic. f.* 84.

In like manner, ſome of the *Scutcheons* prepared for the Funeral of *John* Viſcount *Wells* (who married *Cicely*, third Daughter to King *Edward* the Fourth and died the[t] 9. of *February anno* 14. *H.* 7.) were[u] ſurrounded with the *Garter*; and ſo were others having his[w] *Ladies* Arms, of both Metal and Colour. At the Interment of *Thomas* Duke of *Norfolk* in *Thetford* Abbey (who dyed *anno* [x] 16. *H.* 8.) there was provided a *Shield* of his Arms[y] within a *Garter*, and a *Coronet* ſet over it. A *Target* alſo of the Arms of *George* Earl of *Shrewsbury*[z] within a *Garter* was born at his Funeral, *anno* 33. *H.* 8.

t *MS. in Offic. prad.* [I.3.] *f* 32.
u *Ibid.*
w *f.* 2.
x *Aug. Vincents diſcovery of Errors in Brooke Nobi liv. p.* 356.
y *Ex praef. MS.* [I.3.] *fol.* 103.
z *MS in ead. Offic.* [I.11.] *f.* 67. *b.*

It was the cuſtom (begun with us about the Reign of King *Henry* the Seventh) when the Obſequies of any *Forreign Prince* were celebrated here in *England*, to paint the *Scutcheon* of ſuch Princes Arms within the *Collar* of that *Order*, whereof he was *Soveraign*, or a *Fellow-Companion*; for inſtance,

At the *Obſequies* of the *French* King *Charles* the Eighth, celebrated in the Cathedral of St. *Paul's London*, the *Scutcheons* of the Arms of *France*, were placed[a] within the *Collar* of the *Order* of Saint *Michael*, of which he was *Soveraign*. At each end of the *Hearſe*, [b] when the Obſequies of *John* King of *Portugal*, were kept in St. *Paul's* Cathedral, there was among others, one great *Scutcheon* of his Arms,[c] within the *Collar* of the *Golden Fleece*, wrought with Metal upon Wax, in regard he was one of the *Knights* of that *Order*. The *Obſequies* of the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth, being performed in *Weſtminſter* Abbey the 22. and 23. days of *December anno* 1558. there were ten great *Scutcheons*, [d] compaſſed with *Garters*; to ſhew he was a *Fellow*, and *Knight-Companion* of this *Order*.

a *MS.* [I.3.] *f.* 10.
b 18 *&* 19. *Aug.* 1557 *MS.* [I.15.] *in ead. Offic. f* 245. *b.*
c *Ead.*
d *Ib. f* 284. *b.*

And

And upon the ſame account, where any *Forreign Princes*, were not only *Soveraigns* of one *Order*, but *Companions* of another; their *Herſes* were garniſhed with *Scutcheons* of their proper Arms, ſurrounded with the *Collars*, or principal *Badges* of both thoſe *Orders*. Hereupon we find, at the Obſequies of *Francis* the Firſt, the *French King*, celebrated the 19. of *June* in St. *Paul's London*, *anno* 1. *E.* 6. the *Herſe* was adorned with the *Scutcheons* of the Arms of *France*, placed both [e] within the *Garter* of St. *George*, and *Collar* of St. *Michael's Order*; in regard he had been a *Fellow* of the one, and *Soveraign* of the other. e *MS.* [I. 11.] *f.* 112.

At the Obſequies performed for *Henry* the Seeond of *France*, on the 9. of *September*, *anno* 1. *Eliz.* in St. *Paul's* alſo, there were ſome *Scutcheons* of his Arms, incireled both with the [f] *Garter* and *Collar* of the [g] *Golden Fleece*, he having been a *Knight-Companion* of both theſe *Orders*; under the Joyſts was a *Majeſty Scutcheon* of Black Taffaty, of this Kings Arms within a *Garter*, crowned with an Imperial Crown: This *Scutcheon* was garniſhed in eight places, with eight *Bundles*, and therein his *Impreſs*, *Donec totum impleat Orbem*, with three *Creſcents*, and two D's of the *Roman* Letter, linked back to back; and in ſeveral other places of the Herſe, were faſtned other *Scutcheons* of his *Arms* within this principal *Enſign* of the *Garter*. f *Lib* I. 13 *f.* 8. g I. 14 *f.* 7.

King *Henry* the Eighth was firſt of the *Soveraigns* of this moſt Noble *Order*, who introduced into his *Great Seal*, the *Scutcheon* of his *Arms*, incircled within a *Garter*; as may be [h] ſeen placed on either ſide of his Portraicture, ſitting in his Royal Throne. Since his Reign, all ſucceeding *Soveraigns* have born their *Arms* within the *Garter*, not only in their *Great* and *Privy Seals*, but alſo in thoſe other belonging to their Courts of Juſtice; and generally in all things (except *Coyns*) whereon the *Scutcheon* of their *Arms* have been ſinee cut, carved, graved, painted, or wrought (in imitation of whom the *Knights-Companions* have done the like) But there were *an.* 21. *Car.* 1. certain half Crowns ſtamped in the Weſt of *England*, having the *Soveraign's Arms* ſo encompaſſed, and this was the firſt Money, whereon the Royal *Garter* appeared amongſt us. h *Speed's Chron.* *f.* 765.

And the preſent *Soveraign*, intending the augmentation of the Honor of this renowned *Order*, as in many other things, ſo in advancing the reputation of this Noble *Enſign* by a more publick way; hath cauſed the irradiated *Croſs* of St. *George*, encompaſſed about with the Royal *Garter*, to be ſtamped in the Center of his *Silver Coyn* made upon the alteration of it, *anno* 14. *Car.* 2.

There were likewiſe *Medals*, heretofore ſtamped upon ſeveral occaſions, wherein the *Garter* was deſignedly added, ſome of which are here exhibited; As that in the year when *Frederick* Prince *Palatine* of the *Rhyne*, was crowned King of *Bohemia*, and *Robert Cecil* Earl of *Salisbury*, made Lord Treaſurer of *England*, both *Knights-Companions* of this moſt Noble *Order*.

We have ſeen *Gold Rings* caſt into the Figure of *Garters*, the ground on the outſide enamelled with a deep Blue, through which the golden Letters of the *Motto* appearing, ſet them off with an admirable beauty. And it ſeems ſuch *Garter Rings* have been of ancient uſe, ſince the Preface to the *Black Book* of the *Order*, taking notice of wearing the *Garter* on the left *Leg* and *Shoulder*, adds alſo the [i] *Thumb*; by which we ſuppoſe is meant *Gold Rings*, made into the faſhion of *Garters*, and beſtowed by ſome new inſtalled *Knights* upon their Relations and Friends, to wear in memorial of ſo great an honor conferred upon them.

i Interdum Pollice geſtare. *lib. N.p.15.*

Among the *Officers* belonging to the *Order*, the *Prelate* is allowed to bear his proper *Arms*, (impal'd with thoſe of his See) within the *Garter*: and the reſt of the *Officers* are permitted only to wear the *Badges* of their *Office*, ſurrounded with the ſame, to expreſs their peculiar relation to this moſt Noble *Order*.

Beſides the manner of bearing *Arms* within the *Garter* of this *Order*, the *Garter*, either in whole or part, hath been given by way of *Armory*, (but without the *Motto*) and in ſundry manners of *bearing*. As in the Seal of *Arms*, belonging to the Office of *Garter*, Principal King of Arms; where the *Garter* (ſurrounding a Crown) is placed in Chief, between one of the Lions of *England*, and a Flower de Lis of *France*. And to inſtance in *Families*; we find, [k] *Argent*, three demy Garters Azure, buckled and garniſhed *Or*, granted by King *Henry* the Seventh, to his Servant *Peter Nerborne*: and [l] *Sable* a Garter *Or*, between three Buckles of the ſecond, to be born by the name of *Buckland* or *Bowland* in the County of *Northampton*.

k *Pat.17.H.7. pars 2.m.1. vide porro MS. Offic. Arm.* [G.15.]
l *Ibid. See alſo Glovers Ordinary, p.419.*

SECT. II.

Of the Mantle.

IN the *Founder*'s Statutes, mention is made of no other Robe among thoſe appointed for the Habit of this moſt Noble *Order*, but only an *upper Garment*, to which is there given the name of *Mantle*; and is the chief of thoſe Veſtments, which the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* wear upon all ſolemn occaſions relating to the *Order*.

That this kind of *Mantle* was transferred and derived to us from the ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*, is not to be doubted; ſince it ſo little differs in faſhion from their *Pallium* or *Toga*. For the [m] *Grecian Pallium*, was a kind of long Cloak, which only wanted a Coller or Cape: and the [n] *Roman Toga*, a Garment as common in faſhion with, and proper to them, as the *Pallium* to the *Grecians*; and the uſe ſo ancient, as *Romulus* is noted by [o] *Plutarch* to have worn it.

m *Pancirell. lib. 1. rerum memorab. deperdit. Tit.44.*
n *Car. Sigonius de Judiciis, l. 3. c.17. p.459.*
o *In Vita Romuli.*

We find the *Pallium* further deſcribed to be [p] a kind of upper Robe, that covered the whole Body, made faſt on the right ſhoulder with a *Fibula*, or Claſp: It was uſually worn over the *Tunica*, or ſhort Coat, whence grew the Proverb, *Tunica Pallio propinquior eſt*; and is more particularly obſerved by [q] *Erhard. Cellius* from the

p *Pancirell. eod. lib. Tit.43.*
q *Ej. Aur. Anglo Wittemb. p.137.*

the authority of *Livie*, *Suetonius*, *Tacitus*, and other *Latin* Authors to have been a Garment, made without Sleeves, that reached down to the Ancles.

In describing this upper Robe called the *Mantle*, (the *Soveraign's* being differenced from the *Knights-Companions*, only by a long Train) we shall first set down the various *Names* given it in the Records of the Order, secondly the *Materials* whereof made, thirdly the *Colour*, fourthly the *Quantity*, and last of all the *Ornamental Trimming* used about it. Wherein, though some things hereafter inserted, may perhaps to some seem light and trivial, and fitter to fill up a a Taylors Bill, than have place in a serious Discourse; yet well knowing they will be thought to others worthy remembrance, and as much esteemed, as necessary to be known; we thought good, not to omit the least particular, that might contribute to the satisfaction of any enquiry.

1. Its Name.

In the *Founder's* Statutes it is called [r] *Mantellum*, and in *Henry* the Fifth's *Manteau*, both which in *English* we render a *Mantle*. But the Exemplar of the *Founder's Statutes* entred in the *Black Book*, and the Statutes of *Henry* the Eighth call it *Trabea*, which [t] *Rosinus* also reckons among the different kinds of *Mantles* or *Gowns*. And in the 20. Article of King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, it is applied both to the *Mantle* and *Surcoat*. Sometime it is called [t] *Chlamyda*, sometime [u] *Stola*, but in other places (and more agreable to the *Greek* and *Latin* denomination) [w] *Pallium*, and [x] *Toga*.

r *Ed.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 3. 9. 11. 16. 20. *&c.*
t *Lib.* 5. *c.* 32. *vide etiam Rom. Hist. Anthologia*, *p.* 154. Trabea quoq; Toga erat, *Panciroll. Rer. memor. deperdit. L.* 1. *Tit.* 45.
t *Lib. N. p.* 30. 31. 310.
u *Lib. R. p.* 120.
w *Lib. N p.* 209.
x *Ib. p.* 317.

2. Materials.

In the second place, as to the *Materials*; That *Mantle* made for the *Founder*, against the first Feast of this *Order*, appears to have been of [y] fine *Wollen Cloth*. And it is not unlikely, the *Founder* made choice of Cloth for the *Robes* of the *Order* (rather than any richer material) to the end he might give a reputation to that our homebred and native Commodity: albeit we find in the Statutes of Institution, a permission for the Proxies of *Forreign Princes*, to bring over with them *Mantles* of [z] *Silk* or *Velvet*, when they came to receive the possession of their Principals Stalls; either because other Countries were better furnished with such Commodities, than our *English* Cloth, or that it might rather stand with the liking or esteem of *Forreign Princes*, as accounting *Silk* or *Velvet* the nobler material.

y *Ex Rotul. Compot. Jo. Coke Cler. mag. Gardrob. ab an.* 21. *ad* 23. *E* 2. *m.* 8. *penes Rem. Regis in Scaccario.*
z *Ed.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 20. *vide H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 20.

How long the *Soveraigns* of this most Noble *Order* continued wearing of *Cloth*, we cannot directly say, the first time we discover their *Mantles* to be made of [a] *Velvet*, is about the beginning of the Reign of King *Henry* the Sixth; which sort of Silk hath thence continued in use until this day. About this time also we observe the *Mantles* of *Forreign Princes*, were likewise made here of *Velvet*; for so was [b] that sent to the King of *Portugal*, elected [c] *anno* 13. *H* 6.

a *Ex lib. vocat. Cotom, in Offic. mag Gardrob. f.* 47 *&* 52.
b *Ibid f* 92.
c *Lib. N. p.* 91.

As touching the *Mantles* of the *Knights-Companions*, there is no question, but they were of the same materials, with those made for the *Soveraign* of the *Order*; namely, at first, of fine Wollen Cloth, and when the *Soveraign* changed Cloth to Velvet, they did so likewise: But we cannot meet with equal satisfaction in this particular, as we have done in the *Mantles* belonging to the *Soveraign*, because the *Knights-Companions* provided this *Robe* at their own charge, and their private accounts, through many casualties were of no great durability; but their *Surcoats* were of the *Soveraign's* donation, and consequently the particulars of them remain on Record, in the Rolls and Accounts of the *great Wardrobe*.

3. Colour.

The *Colour* of these *Mantles* is appointed by the Statutes to be [d] *Blue*; and of this coloured Cloth, was the [e] first *Robe* made for the *Founder*; by which, as by the ground-work of the Royal *Garter* it is not unlike, he alluded (in this no less than that) to the Colour of the *Field* in the *French* Arms; which a few years before he had assumed in *Quarter*, with those of his Kingdom of *England*: But the Colour of the *Surcoat* was changed every year as will appear by and by. Of the same [f] *Colour* were the Velvet *Mantles* made in King *Henry* the Sixth's Reign, who though he changed the Stuff, yet did he not vary the dye.

d *Ed.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 11. *H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 11.
e *Ex præd. Rot. Compot. Jo. Coke m.* 8.
g De Velvet blodio, *vid. lib. præd. vocat. Cotom. f.* 47. 54.

It is also manifest, that the *Blue* Colour was retained to King *Edward* the Fourth's Reign, for when this *Soveraign* sent the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order* to *Julianus de Medicis*, the *Mantle* was made of [i] *Blue Velvet*.

i *Ex Coll Jac. Ware Eq. Aur.*

 But

But in King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, there is no mention at all of the *Colour* of this upper *Robe*, ſave only of the *Mantle*, which a *Forreign Princes* Proxy is enjoined to bring along with him, when he comes to aſſume the Stall of his *Principal*, which though it be not directly to the point, yet is it there noted to be of [k] *Blue Velvet*: and it is more than probable, that the *Blue Colour* continued ſtill in uſe; for within a few years after the compiling this laſt mentioned Body of Statutes, it appears, the *Mantle* ſent to *James* King of *Scotland*, was of [l] *Blue Velvet*. And [m] *Polydore Virgile*, who wrote his Hiſtory about that time, affirms as much. Moreover in the ancient form of admonition and ſignification, appointed to be ſpoken at the Inveſtiture of *Forreign Princes*, and then in uſe, it is called the *Mantle* of [n] *Celeſtial Colour*.

If we paſs from the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, to the firſt and ſecond years of King *Philip* and Queen *Mary*, it will appear, the *Mantle* ſent to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy* was likewiſe of [o] *Blue Velvet*.

But in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign (upon what ground is no where mentioned) the Colour of Forreign *Princes Mantles*, was changed from *Blue* to *Purple*: for of that Colour were the *Mantles* ſent to the *French* Kings, [p] *Charles* the Ninth, *anno* 6. *Eliz.* and [q] *Henry* the Third, *an.* 27. of the ſame Queen: So alſo to the Emperor [r] *Maximilian*, *an.* 9. *Eliz.* to [s] *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*, *an.* 24. *Eliz.* to [t] *John Caſimire*, Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, *an.* 21. *Eliz.* and to [u] *Chriſtierne* the Fourth King of *Denmark*, *an. Jac. R.* 4. but that ſent to [w] *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg* in the ſame year, was of a mixt Colour, to wit, *Purple* with *Violet*.

Thus the *Purple* Colour came in, and continued till about the 12. year of King *Charles* the Firſt, when that *Soveraign* (having determined to reſtore the Colour of the *Mantle* to the primitive Inſtitution, namely *a rich Celeſtial Blue*) gave directions to [x] Mr. *Peter Richaut* Merchant (afterwards Knighted by him) to furniſh himſelf with a parcel of Velvets of that Colour from *Genoa*, and upon their arrival into *England*, commanded [y] Sir *Thomas Rowe*, then Chancellor of the *Order*, forthwith to ſignifie by Letters to all the *Knights-Companions* his Soveraign Pleaſure; that every one of them ſhould take ſo much of that Velvet as would make new Robes, againſt the following St. *George's* day, and ſatisfie for them; in obedience to this command the Chancellor within ten days gave notice thereof to the *Knights-Companions*.

Hereupon all the *Knights* furniſhed themſelves with new *Mantles* at the rate of thirty ſeven ſhillings a yard, being the price the *Soveraign* paid to Mr. *Richaut* for the Velvet of his own Robes; and the firſt time theſe Mantles were worn, was to honor the Inſtallation of the preſent *Soveraign*.

And becauſe there were many *Knights-Elect* to be Inſtalled, after the happy return of the preſent *Soveraign*, it was therefore Ordered, at a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall*, the 14. of *January*, *an.* 12. *Car.* 2. (called to conſider what preparations were fit and neceſſary to be made, againſt the grand Feaſt of St. *George* then at hand) That directions ſhould be given to the Maſter of the Wardrobe, to ſend abroad for ſpeeial good Velvets, of *Skie-colour* and *Crimſon*, and other materials of the proper Colours for the *Mantles* and *Surcoats*, both of the old *Knights-Companions*, and thoſe that were then to be Inſtalled; which was accordingly done, and they brought over in time to accommodate them at the ſaid Feaſt.

Albeit the juſt number of Ells of Cloth, which went to the making the *Founder's* firſt *Mantle*, are not ſet down, yet in groſs for his *Mantle*, *Hood*, and *Surcoat*, there was allowed [a] 10 Ells of long Cloth. The *Mantle* of King *Henry* the Sixth took up [b] one Piece, 5 Ells and 3 quarters of Blue Velvet; and thoſe ſent to [c] *Frederick* the Second, and [d] *Chriſtiern* the Fourth, Kings of *Denmark*, and to the *French* King [e] *Henry* the Third, contained each 20 yards of Velvet. This we find to be the allowance for the Mantles of *Forreign*

k *Hen* 8. *English Statutes Art.* 21.
l *Autogr. in Bibl. Hatton.*
m Utuntur pallio cœruleo. *Angl Hiſt. l.* 19 *p.* 378.
n Accipe Chlamydem hanc cœlesti color's. *lib. N p.* 210.
o *Ex lib. Warr. Dom. temp. H.* 8. *E.* 6. *Ph. & Mar. & Eliz. Reg. in Offic. mag. Gardrob. pag.* 364.
p *Ex lib Warr. particular. temp. Eliz. R. in Offic. prad. p.* 85.
q *Ib. p.* 201.
r *Ib. p.* 17.
s *Ex lib.* 4. *in Offic. prad. p.* 446.
t *Ib. p.* 157.
u *MS. fol. penes praf. Geo. Owen, York fol.* 299.
w *Ex lib. Cellius in Eq. Aur. Anglo. Wirtemb. pag* 135.
x *Ex Autogr. penes Jac. Palmer Eq. Aur. nuper Cancell. hujus Ord.*
y 3 *Jan.* 1637.

4 Quantity.
a *Ex prad. Rot. Comp. Jo. Coke, m.* 8.
b *Ex lib. praf. vocat. Cotom. f.* 52.
c *Ex lib.* 4. *in Offic. mag. Gard. p.* 446.
d *MS. fol. penes Geo. Owen nuper York Heraldi. p.* 299.
e *Ex lib. Warr. particular temp. Eliz. R. in Offic. mag. Gardrob. p.* 201.

Forreign Princes, and are the more large by reaſon of their long Train, which being wanting in the Mantles of *Knights Subjects*, 18 yards ſerved to make one of them. The full length of the preſent *Soveraign's Mantle*, from the Collar behind to the end of the Train, is 3 yards; the length of the foreſide 1 yard and 3 quarters; from the foot along the bottom to the ſetting on of the Train is 2 yards; and from thence, the length or compaſs of the Train is 2 yards.

The left ſhoulder of each of theſe *Mantles* have (from the Inſtitution of the *Order*) been adorned with one large fair *Garter*, containing the Motto, *Honi ſoit qui mal y penſe:* Theſe were diſtinguiſhed from the *leſſer Garters*, anciently embroidered upon the *Surcoats* and *Hoods*, of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, by the name of [f] *Garters groſs*. 5. Trimming.

Within this *Garter* was embroidered the [g] Arms of St. *George*, *viz. Argent a Croſs Gules*; and was heretofore wrought upon [h] Satin, with Gold, Silver, and Silk; but in ſucceeding times, more coſt was beſtowed upon this *Enſign*; the embroidery being curiouſly wrought upon Velvet, with Damask, Gold, and ſundry ſorts of Purls, Plates, Venice Twiſts and Silks; and the Letters of the *Motto* and Borders of the *Garter*, compoſed of fair Oriental Pearl. The *Garter* fixt upon the *Mantle* of the preſent *Soveraign*, is encompaſſed with large Oriental Pearl, ſo alſo are the Letters of the *Motto*, and the Croſs within the *Garter* (an exact Figure whereof is to be ſeen in the Plate ſet at the beginning of this Chapter) the Diameter of this *Garter* is ſeven Inches, but the depth, from the upper part to the end of the Pendant, ten Inches.

In the Reign of King *Henry* the Sixth, it ſeems to have been the faſhion to garniſh the *Mantle* with three or four Welts drawn down the ſides, and round the bottom; for ſo have I found it expreſt on the Monument of *John Talbot*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, ſet in the South Wall of the Chancel in the Church of *Whitchurch* in *Shropſhire*.

About this time alſo the *Lining* of this *Robe*, was [i] *White Damask*, and afterwards [k] *White Satin*; but of later times, it was lined with *White* [l] *Taffaty*, which continues yet in faſhion.

For further Ornament, the *Mantle* had fixed to its Collar, a pair of long ſtrings, anciently woven of [m] *Blue Silk* only; (called *Cordans*, *Robe-ſtrings*, or *Laces*) but of later times [n] twiſted round, and made of Venice Gold, and Silk of the Colour of the Robe; at each end of which, hung a great [o] Knob or Button wrought over and raiſed with a rich Caul of Gold; and Taſſels thereunto of like Silk and Gold.

Laſtly, at the Collar was uſually fixed, an [p] Hook and eye of Gold; for the ſurer faſtning it about the ſhoulders.

f *Ex eod. lib. voc. Cotom. f. 43. 47. 52. 92. 96. b & 99.*
g *Ib. f. 52. b.*
h *Vid. Hiſt. Tho de la Mare p. 156. b. MS.*
i *Ex eod lib. fo. 47 92. & 96. b.*
k *Ex vet. pergam Cod. in Offic. mag. Gard. p. 47.*
l *Lib. Warr. Dorm temp. H. 8. & c. f 364*
m *Ex lib præd. voc. Cotom. f. 52 b. & 96. b.*
n *Ex Collect. præf. Aug. Vincent.*
o *Ex eod. lib. voc. Cotom. loco ſuper cit.*
p *Ex lib. tertio in præd. Offic. p. 17.*

SECT. III.

Of the Surcoat.

WE obſerved before, that the *Mantle* or *upper Robe* is only taken notice of in the *Founder's Statutes*, but not the *Surcoat* or *Kirtle*; nevertheleſs this part of the *Habit*, is as ancient as the other, being made uſe of at the Inſtitution of the *Order*: For ſuch a Garment the *Founder* then made, together with his *Mantle* (as alſo a *Hood*) to wear at the firſt Feaſt of this moſt Noble *Order*.

And as the *Mantle* was derived from the *Greeks* and *Romans*, ſo was the [q] *Surcoat* alſo; it being not much unlike the *Tunick* or *upper Coat*, now in faſhion with us, and worn over the *Veſt*. This Garment among the *Romans* was called *Tunica*, and worn, [r] next under the *Toga*, but both [s] narrower and ſhorter than it; it was girded cloſe to the Body with a Girdle, and ſo girded, that the [t] Hem of it reached

q *Pancirol. lib. 1. tit. de perdit. Rom. 44.*
r *Roſin. ant. l. 5 c. 33.*
s *Id. inq. Rom.*
t *Quinbill. lib. 1.*

a little below the Knee, or to the middle of the Ham. [u]It was the proper Mode of the *Roman Citizens*, and by its trimming were the three degrees among them known: For the [w]*Senators Tunicks*, were embroider'd or purfel'd over with broad purple Studs, the *Knights* with narrow ones, and the *Plebeians* plain, and without any ſuch embroidery.

u { *Roſin. loco cit. Baiſius de re Veſtiar. p.* 212.
w

In ſeting forth the *Surcoat* which was heretofore annually beſtowed by the *Soveraign* on the *Knights-Companions*, and therefore called his [x]*Livery*, we ſhall follow the method uſed in deſcribing the *Mantle*, and ſay ſomething of the *Name*, *Materials*, *Colour*, *Quantity*, and *Garniſhing*.

x Liberationes dicuntur res neceſſariæ quæ vel ex debito, vel honori gratiâ, Magiſtratui, Hoſpitibus, ſeu Peregrinantibus miniſtrantur. *Spelman. Gloſſar. verbo* Liberatio.

1. Its Name.

As to the Name, we obſerve, this Garment hath had ſundry denominations; that beſtowed on it in the old Rolls of the great Wardrobe is [y]*Roba*, a Robe; but more properly (as the *Founder*'s firſt *Surcoat* is called) [z]*Tunica*, which Name is alſo given it, in the *Red Book* of the *Order*. In *Engliſh* it is rendred *Gown*, *Kirtle*, [a]*Surcoat*, [b]*Undercoat*, and *Robe*.

y *Ex Rot. Compot Johan. Newbury, an.* 34. *E.* 3. *m* 1. *penes Remem. Regis in Scaccario, & Rot. Compot. Hen. de Snaith, an.* 37. *E.* 3. *m.* 3. *Vide porro Rot. Compot. Alani de Stoke an.* 7. *R.* 2. *m.* 9. *&* 15. *& lib Comp. de liberat. Pannorum, &c. temp. R.* 2. *in Offic. mag. Gardrob. f.* 155. 167. 173. 184. 194.
z *Rot. Compot. Johan Coke, ab anno* 21. *ad annum* 23. *E.* 3. *m.* 8. *& lib. R. p.* 120.
a *MS. in Offic. Armur.* [L. 1.] *f.* 19.
b *Sir Tho. Rowes Journal, p.* 35.
d *Ex Lib. præd. vocat. Cotom.*
e *Ex Autogr. penes Jac. Ware Eq. Aur.*
f *Ex vet. MS. penes præf. Will. le Neve Eq. Aur. f.* 295.

The firſt of theſe Engliſh Names, [*Gown*] is attributed to the Surcoats of the *Soveraign* and *Forreign Princes*, in the times of [d]*Henry* the Sixth, [e]*Edward* the Fourth, and [f]*Henry* the Seventh; but ſince his Reign, and (till very lately) it hath been beſtowed alſo on the Surcoats of *Knights-Companions*; and that of *Kirtle* ſometimes given to thoſe ſent to *Forreign Princes*, as doth almoſt every where appear among the Books of Warrants, in the *great Wardrobe*; but the reſt are terms made uſe of in our Age.

2. Materials.

As the firſt *Mantles*, ſo the firſt *Surcoats* were made of [h]*Woollen-Cloth*: and though the Cloth of the *Mantles*, was in time changed to *Velvet*, yet were the *Surcoats* for ſome time after made of [i]*Cloth*, at leaſt till after the Office of *Chancellor* of the *Garter* was erected by King *Edward* the Fourth, as appears by the [k]*Precedent* of this *Livery*, in the *Soveraign*'s great Wardrobe; where after the diſtribution of materials for this Garment, proportionable to each Degree of *Nobility*, the like follows for the *Liveries*, given to the *Officers* of the *Order*, among whom the *Chancellor* is there mentioned. But at length they alſo came to be made of *Velvet*, which ſort of Silk is ſtill retained.

h *Ex præf. Rot. Comp. Jo. Coke, m.* 8. *vide etiam lib. Comp. de Liberat. pannor. temp. R.* 2. *f.* 124. 155. 167. 173. 184. *&c.*
i *Ex lib. vocat. Cotom. f.* 47. *&* 92.
k *Ex vet. pergam. Cod. in Offic. mag. Gardrob. p.* 12.

3. Colour.

The Colour of this Veſture was anciently changed every year, commonly into one of theſe four Colours, either *Blue*, *Scarlet*, *Sanguine* in grain, or *White*; but the Colour of the *Mantles* remained one and the ſame, as at the Inſtitution, until Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, namely *Blue*: and note that the *Surcoats* of the *Knights-Companions*, were always changed to the ſame Colour with the *Soveraign*'s.

The *Founder*'s firſt *Surcoat* was of the ſame Cloth and Colour with his *Mantle*, *viz.* [l]*Blue*; but that *Surcoat* provided for him in the 34. year of his Reign, was [m]*Black Cloth*. And of the [n]ſame Colour were thoſe he beſtowed (againſt the Solemnity of the Feaſt held that year) upon theſe following *Knights-Companions*, namely, the [o]*Black Prince*, the Earls of *Ulſter*, *Richmond*, and *Salisbury*, *Edmund* of *Langley* (his Son) Sir *Richard la Vache*, Sir *Hugh Wroteſley*, Sir *Reignald Cobham*, Sir *Bartholomew Burgherſt*, the Lord *Mohun*, Sir *Walter Manney*, Sir *Nele Loring*, Sir *Walter Paveley*, Sir *William Fitz Waryn*, Sir *Miles Stapleton*, the Earls of *Stafford*, *Warwick*, and *Suffolk*, and Sir *Thomas Vghtred*. But we conceive this mourning Colour was then aſſumed, becauſe the [p]Peſtilence began again to encreaſe; the dreadful remembrance of that great Peſtilence, which ſo furioſly raged eleven years before (called *Peſtilentia magna*) inviting to all kind of humiliation. The *Surcoats* which the *Soveraign* gave the Dukes of *Lancaſter* and *Clarence*, and 14 other *Knights-Companions*, [r]*an.* 37. *E.* 3. were of Cloth, *Sanguine in grain*.

l *Ex præd. Rot. Compot. Jo. Coke. m.* 8.
m *Ex Rot. Jo. Newbury, m.* 13
n { *Ibid. m.* 1.
o
p Peſtilentia minor.
r *Ex præf. Rot. Compot. Hen. de Snaith, m.* 3.

Thoſe 24. provided for the Feaſt of St. *George*, *an.* 7. *R.* 2. were [ſ]*Violet in grain*; whereof one was for the *Soveraign*, the other 23. for theſe *Knights-Companions*

ſ *Ex præd. Rot. Comp. Alani de Stoke, m.* 15.

Companions following, [t] *John* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, Duke of *Lancaster*, the Earls of *Cambridge*, *Buckingham*, *Derby*, *Kent*, *Warwick*, *Stafford*, *Salisbury*, *Northumberland*, and *Nottingham*, the Lords *Nevil*, *Basset*, and *John Holland*, Sir *Guy Bryan*, Sir *William Beauchamp*, Sir *Thomas Percy*, Sir *Nele Loring*, Sir *John Sulby*, Sir *Lodowick Clifford*, Sir *Simon Burley*, Sir *Richard Burley*, Sir *Bryan Stapleton*, and Sir *Soldan de la Trane*.

t *Ib. m. 9.*

Anno 11. *R.* 2. there were made against St. *George's Feast*, three and twenty *Surcoats* of [u] *White Cloth*, for the *Soveraign* and 22 *Knights-Companions*. And in the 12. and 19. year of the same King, the *Soveraign* bestowed on the same number of *Knights*, *Surcoats* of [w] long *Blue Cloth*, as were the first.

u *De Panno Elank long. Videsis lib. Comp. de Liberat. Pannor. &c. temp R.* 2. *f.* 155. *&* 167.
w *Ib f.* 155. *&* 173. *b.*

The 23 *Surcoats* provided for the Feast of St. *George*, *an.* 1. *H.* 5. were of [x] *White Cloth*.

x *MS. in Bibl. Hatton.*

Anno----- *H.* 6. the *Soveraign's Gown* or *Surcoat* was made of [y] *Scarlet*; and so was that sent to the [z] King of *Portugal* in the 13. year of the same King. *Anno*---- *H.* 6. the *Soveraign* had [a] *White Cloth*; and of [b] like Colour were the *Surcoats* provided for 20 *Knights-Companions* in the------ year of his Reign.

y *Ex lib. præd. vocat. Cotom. f.* 47.
z *Ib. f.* 92.
a *Ib. f.* 51.
b *Ib. f.* 91. *b.*

Afterwards the before mentioned four Colours, began to be laid aside, and others brought into use; for the *Surcoat* sent to *Julianus Medices*, in the Reign of King *Edward* the Fourth, was [c] *Purple Velvet*.

c *Ex Autogr. penes Jac. Ware Eq. Aur.*

And by the *Soveraign's* Warrants entred in the *great Wardrobe*, towards the latter end of the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, and since; it is manifest the *Surcoats* of the *Soveraign*, and all the *Knights-Companions* were *Crimson Velvet*: Nor was this Colour altered in the *Surcoat*, though the late *Soveraign* restored the *Mantle* to its first and ancient Colour, *an.* 12. *Car.* 1.

It is evident that in provisions of *Surcoats* made for the *Knights-Companions*, against one and the same Feast, there hath been some difference in the *Quantity* of the *Cloth* allowed: for we find, *an.* 34. *E.* 3. the Earls of *Stafford*, *Warwick*, and *Suffolk*, as also Sir *Thomas Vghtred*, had then allowed for each of their *Surcoats*, [d] 6 Ells of Cloth (perhaps the tallness of their stature required it) when the other 15 *Knights-Companions* were allowed but [e] 5 Ells, being the [f] same quantity put into the *Soveraign's Surcoat* at the same time.

4. Quantity.
d *Ex Rot.*
e *Compot Jo. Newbury, m.* 1.
f *Ibid. m.* 13.

The Dukes of *Holland* and *Clarence* (*an.* 1. *H.* 5.) with the Earl of *Arundel*, were allowed [g] 8 Ells of Cloth apiece, the Dukes of *Bedford*, *Gloucester*, and *York*, the Earls of *Westmerland* and *Warwick*, the Lords *Grey*, *Fitz-Hugh*, and *Roos*, [h] 6 Ells apiece, the Earls of *Dorset*, with six Barons, and five Knights-Batchellors, but [i] 5 Ells apiece.

g *Ex lib. MS. in Bibl. Hatton.*
h
i

Afterwards, when the number of Ells of *Cloth*, *Garters*, and *Furrs* came to be ascertained for each Degree, all the *Knights-Companions* (even the Prince of *Wales*) were stinted to a certain allowance of [l] 5 Ells of Cloth. But since *Velvet* came into use, the allowance for *Surcoat* and *Hood* (as appears by the *Soveraign's Warrants*) hath been eighteen yards; that is, while the *Surcoat* reached down to the feet, but now it being the fashion to wear it shorter, the allowance is but ten yards.

l *Ex vet. per. gam. Cod. fol. in Offic. mag. Gardrob. f.* 12.

The length of the now *Soveraign's Surcoat*, is one yard and a half; and of the sleeve one yard wanting a Nail.

In the last place, the ornamental *Trimmings* of these *Garments*, especially at the time of Instituting the *Order*, are worthy observation; for they were then, and for a long time after, garnished or [n] powdered all over with little *Garters*, embroided with Silk and Gold Plate; in each of which was neatly wrought the Motto, **Honi soit qui mal y pense.** Besides, the Buckles and Pendants to these small *Garters* were Silver, gilt. Of these embroidered *Garters*, there were laid upon the first *Surcoat* and *Hood* made for the *Founder*, no less than [o] 168.

5. Trimming.
n *Ex præd.*
o *Rot. Comp. Jo. Coke m.* 8.

In King *Richard* the Second's Reign, the little *Garters* that adorned the *Surcoats* of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, were wrought in embroidery upon [p] Blue Taffaty, with Cyprus and Soldat Gold, and Silk of divers Colours; and the Letters [q] Gold.

p *Lib. Comp.*
q *de Liberat. Pannor. &c. temp. R.* 2. *f.* 155. 173. 184. *& Rot. Comp. Alani de Stoke m.* 16.

And as the *Soveraign* was not limited in the proportion of *Cloth* or *Velvet* for his *Surcoat*; no more was he confined, to a certain number of *Garters*, wherewith

to

to adorn it: nor do I find, that any of the *Knights-Companions* were, until the *Precedent of the Livery of the Garter* was ſetled. For *an.* 1. *H.* 5. the Dukes of *Holland* and *Clarence*, the Earl of *Arundel*, the Dukes of *Bedford* and *Glouceſter*, had each of their *Surcoats* adorn'd with [r] 120 *Garters*: but the Duke of *York*, and the reſt of the Earls, Barons, and Knights-Batchelors wore but 100.

r MS. in Bibl. Hatton.

The ſetlement in the *Precedent of the Livery* was made in relation to the Degrees of honor of each *Knight-Companion*, according to which, they had an allowance of a greater or leſſer number of *Garters*, that is to ſay

A Duke	120	Garters.
A Marqueſs	110	
An Earl	100	
A Viſcount	90	
A Baron	80	
A Baneret	70	
A Knight-Batchellor	60	

About the Reign of King *Henry* the Sixth, the *Soveraign's* number of *Garters* did not much exceed thoſe which the *Founder* allowed to himſelf at the Inſtitution; for the *Surcoat* and *Hood* of the ſaid King, took up but [t] 173. and the King of *Portugal*, *an.* 13. *H.* 6. [t] 129 *Garters*. But this manner of adorning theſe Garments, grew at length quite out of faſhion (perhaps when Cloth was altered to Velvet) and the plain *Surcoat* hath to this day continued in uſe.

s Ex prad. lib. voc. Cotom. f. 52. b.
t Ib. f. 92.

In the ſecond place it is to be noted, that all theſe *Surcoats* (whilſt made of *Cloth*) were lined with *Fur*, of one and the ſame kind, to wit, with Bellies of pure *Miniver*; only the *Soveraign's* were [u] purfled with *Ermyn*; and of theſe it ſeems a like proportion was at firſt allowed to all the *Knights-Companions*, *viz.* [w] 200 Bellies.

u Ex præf Rot. Compot. Jo. Newbury m. 13. & Lib. Comp. de liberat. Pannor. temp. R. 2. f. 129 vid. porro lib. prad vocat Cotom. f. 51 b. & f. 104.
w Ex eod. Rot. Comp Jo. Newbury m. 1. & Rot. Comp præf. H Snaith m. 3. & Rot. Comp. prad. Al. de Stobe m. 9.

Yet in the Reign of King *Richard* the Second, ſome difference began in the allowance to the *Knights-Companions*; for a Baron and all Degrees upward had the ſame allowance of [x] 200 Bellies, but the Degrees under a Baron only [y] 120. Howbeit *an.* 1. *H.* 5. the Barons were equalled to the Knights-Batchellors, for all Degrees [z] above a Baron were allowed a Fur of 200 Bellies, but the Barons and Knights Batchellors Furs were only of 120 Bellies.

x Ex eod. lib.
y Comp. de liberat. Pannor f. 167. 173. & 184.
z MS in Bibl. Hatton

Afterwards by the *Precedent of the Garter*, there was another Proportion ſet; the Prince, a Duke, a Marqueſs, an Earl, had each of them [a] 5 Timber of pure *Miniver* allowed to a *Surcoat*, but the Viſcount, Baron, Baneret, and Batchelor Knight, but 3 Timber apiece. In time theſe *Furs* alſo were laid aſide, and then the *Surcoats* came to be lined with White *Sarcenet*, to which, in Queen *Elizabeth's* Reign, White *Taffaty* ſucceeded, and that ſtill continues.

a Ex vet. pergam. Codic. in Offic. mag. Gardr. p. 12.

What became of theſe *Surcoats* heretofore, ſeeing the *Knights-Companions* had new ones every year, appears from this Note entred in the *Black Book* of the *Order*, [b] *That on the Eve of the Feaſt of St.* George, *the* Knights *wore to Veſpers the* Soveraign's Livery *or* Surcoats *uſed by them the preceding year, which after that night they did not wear* (for the new *Surcoats* were firſt worn on the *Feaſt-day*) *but the* Enſigns *and* Ornaments *of this kind, were afterwards diſpoſed of to the uſe of the* Colledge.

b Pag. 318.

SECT. IV.

Of the Hood *and* Cap.

THE *Hood* comes in the next place to be ſpoken of, which in King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, and the *Black Book* of the *Order*, is called *Humerale*; but

but in the *Rolls* of Accounts in the *Soveraign*'s great *Wardrobe*, *Capucium*. In the *French* it is *Chaperon*, a word uſed in the *Statute*, *an.* 1. *Ric.* 2. *c.* 7. and alſo retained in an old Engliſh Draught of *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, that ſeems to have been prepared for the view of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, at their ſolemn meeting in *Chapter* at *Windeſor*, *an.* 11. *H.* 8. for it carries the date of 29. of *May*, in that ſame year; on which day that memorable *Chapter* was held, for Reforming and Explaining the *Statutes* of the *Order*.

Hoods were anciently worn for defence of the Head, againſt the inconveniences of weather, *&c.* but in later times *Caps* and *Hats* have ſupplied their place. How they were then worn and ſat upon the Head, may be obſerved in that [c] Plate, which exhibits the Portraictures of the firſt *Founders* of the *Order*, ſtanding compleatly robed. As alſo with ſome variety of faſhion in ſucceeding times, in the Pictures of [d] *William Beauchamp* Lord *Bergaveny*, *Richard* Earl of *Warwick*, *Humfry* Earl of *Stafford*, and *John* Duke of *Norfolk*. Yet is not the *Hood* quite laid aſide, ſince ſtill kept hanging down the back (almoſt like a *Pilgrims* Hat) as if put in hopes (being ſo ready at hand) that it may again be reſtored to its former uſe.

[c] *Vide infra Chap.* 26.

[d] *Dugdales Antiq. of Warwickſh. p.* 121.

This *Hood* was Ordained, and is yet retained as part of the *Habit* of this moſt Noble *Order*: And though neither it, nor the *Surcoat* is remembred in the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution*, or in either of its *Exemplars*, nor doth King *Henry* the Fifth's take notice of it, yet is it of equal antiquity with the reſt of the *Habit*; as appears from ſeveral places before cited, out of the *Rolls* of the great *Wardrobe*; and *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes* have made ſpecial obſervation of it, as part of the *Habit*, for there the *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Hood*, and *Collar*, are called [e] *the whole Habit of the Order*. Nay, before this time, mention is made of it in the *Black Book* *anno* 22. *H.* 7. where at the Inveſtiture of *Philip* King of *Caſtile*, the *Mantle*, *Kirtle*, [f] *Hood*, and *Collar*, are expreſt to be the *whole Habit*, wherewith he was inveſted.

[e] *Art.* 3.

[f] *Pag.* 184.

The form of this part of the *Habit* is perfectly deſcribed in the Plate at the beginning of this Chapter. It was heretofore, and now is, generally made of the ſame materials with the *Surcoat*, and conſequently of the ſame Colour. Moreover it was anciently trim'd and garniſhed, with a proportion of little embroidered *Garters*, lined with Cloth of a different colour, and ſuch as would beſt ſet off to view; but now with *Taffaty*, as is the Lining of the *Surcoat*; of all which mention is made, in thoſe authorities cited before, and relating to the *Surcoat*.

As to the *Cap*, which in uſe and place ſucceeded the *Hood*, we ſhall briefly ſay thus much: That it hath been, and yet is made of *Black Velvet*, lin'd with *Taffaty*, but the faſhion hath ſeveral times varied: for in the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, the *Cap* was flat, as appears in a *Proceeding* of that *Soveraign*, and the *Knights-Companions*, fairly limned in the [g] *Black Book* of the *Order*. In Queen *Elizabeth*'s time, it was a little raiſed in the head, as may be ſeen in another *Proceeding* in her Reign, which [h] hereafter follows. But in King *James* his Reign, they were much more high crown'd; and the preſent faſhion is ſhewn in our before mentioned *Plate*.

[g] *Pag.* 196.

[h] *Chap.* 20.

This *Cap* hath been uſually adorned with Plumes of white Feathers, and Sprigs, and bound about with a Band, ſet thick with Diamonds; [i] ſo was that *Cap* provided for the Inſtallation of the preſent *Soveraign*: And ſometimes the Brims have been tackt up with a large and coſtly Jewel.

[i] *Lib. R. p.* 146.

It ſeems the cuſtom of wearing *Caps* and *Feathers* at the grand Solemnities of the *Order*, had for ſome time (about the beginning of King *James* his Reign) been neglected; and thereupon, in a [k] *Chapter* held the 13. of *April*, *an.* 10. *Jac. Regis*, this laudable uſage was re-eſtabliſhed.

[k] *MS. penes Edw. Fauconbridge gen.*

To all theſe may be ſitly added, the *Croſs* of the *Order*, encompaſſed with a *Garter*, which by King *Charles* the Firſt was * Ordained to be worn, upon the left ſide of the *Soveraign*'s and *Knights-Companions* Cloaks, Coats, and Caſſocks, when they did not wear their Robes. The Order for which we ſhall here inſert.

* *Lib. R. p.* 29.

Charles

Charles R.

Ex Collect. praef. Will. le Neve.

WHereas the Robes *concerning the* Order, *firſt, having the ſame ordinary uſe which Cloaks have at this time, and now are worn only at the Feaſt of St.* George, *Inſtalling of* Knights, *and holding of* Chapters, *ſo that the* Arms *of the* Garter, *not being daily worn thereon, may be thought an omiſſion, whereby the* Order *doth receive ſome diminution of honor, contrary to the intention of the* Founder. *King* Charles *out of his princely deſire by all due means to advance the honor of the ſaid Noble* Order, *at a* Chapter *holden at his Palace of* Weſtminſter, *on the* 27. *day of* April, *in the* 2. *year of his Reign of Great* Britain, *the ſame day, being by Prorogation appointed for the day and Feaſt of St.* George, *for that year, His Majeſty, with eleven* Knights *of the* Order, *viz.* Edward *Earl of* Worceſter *Lord Privy Seal,* Robert *Earl of* Suſſex, William *Earl of* Pembroke *Lord Chamberlain of his Majeſties Houſe,* Philip *Earl of* Montgomery, Francis *Earl of* Rutland, George *Duke of* Buckingham *Lord high Admiral of* England, William *Earl of* Salisbury, James *Earl of* Carliſle, Edward *Earl of* Dorſet, Henry *Earl of* Holland, *Captain of his Majeſties Guard, and* Thomas *Earl of* Berkſhire, *hath Ordered and and Ordained, That the* Knights *and* Companions *of the* Order, *and the* Prelate *and* Chancellor *of the ſame, ſhall after three months next after the date before mentioned of the ſaid Order, wear upon the left part of their* Cloaks, Coats, *and* Riding Caſſocks, *at all times when they ſhall not wear their* Robes, *and in all Places and Aſſemblies, an Eſcotcheon of the* Arms *of St.* George, *that is to ſay, a* Croſs *within a* Garter, *not enriched with Pearls or Stones; that the wearing thereof may be a teſtimony apert to the World, of the honor they hold from the ſaid moſt Noble* Order, *Inſtituted and Ordained for perſons of the higheſt honor and greateſt worth.*

And it ſeems it was not long after e're the *Glory* or *Star* (as it is uſually called) having certain beams of Silver that ſpread in form of a Croſs, was introduced and added thereunto, in imitation (as is thought) of the *French*, who after that manner wore the chief Enſign of the *Order* of the *Holy Ghoſt*, being the reſemblance of a *Dove*, irradiated with ſuch like beams.

And whereas ſome allow this Symbol of the *Holy Ghoſt*, to be properly enough ſurrounded with a *Glory*, like as are the repreſentations of the Heads of our *Saviour* and his *Apoſtles*, by a general conſent among Painters, yet cenſure it altogether improper for a *Garter* to be ſo adorned; let them conſider that King *Edward* the Fourth, encompaſſed his *White Roſe* with the like *Glory* (whereof both the Stone-work, and Wood-work of St. *George's* Chappel in *Windeſor Caſtle* afford divers inſtances) and then there will be found ſomething of Precedent for it, long before the Inſtitution of the *Order* of the *Holy Ghoſt*, as alſo of its application to other no leſs than ſacred things. But this *King* aſſumed this *Deviſe*, upon the *Sun's* appearance like three Suns, which ſuddenly united together into one, immediately before his fortunate Victory at the Battel of *Mortimer's Croſs*: an occaſion, which he thought himſelf much obliged to perpetuate.

And they miſtake, who take it to be the *Garter*, in this new Ornament, that is thus irradiated, but there is ſomething elſe in it, which was then thought more worthy of the *Glory*, and from it, not the *Garter*, do the beams and rays ſpread; namely the *Croſs* of the *Order*, eſteemed glorious, ſince it ſhined ſo in Heaven, at its appearance to *Conſtantine* the Great; which that it may more evidently appear, a draught of the *Medal* ſtamped in memorial of adding this honorable *Deviſe* is here repreſented, whereby it is manifeſt, the *Glory* iſſues from the *Croſs*, not *Garter*.

SECT.

SECT. V.

The Robes *anciently aſſigned to the* Queen *and great* Ladies.

HAving thus diſpatcht our diſcourſe concerning the *Robes* of the *Order*, we ſhall next give ſome light to a Cuſtom taken up ſhortly after its Inſtitution, of honoring the *Queen*, ſome of the *Knights-Companions Wives*; and other great *Ladies*, with *Robes* and *Hoods*, of the gift of the *Soveraign*, and of the ſame materials, as were the *Soveraign*'s and *Knights-Companions Surcoats*; garniſhed alſo with little embroidered *Garters*, and lined with rich *Furs*; which *Robes* they likewiſe wore during the Solemnity of the Feaſt of St. *George*.

The firſt mention of this, which hath occurr'd to us, is[m] *an.* 7. *R.* 2. (though we conceive 'tis elder) where, againſt the Feaſt of St. *George*, appointed to be held that year, ſuch kind of *Robes* and *Hoods* were provided for the[n] *Queen*, the *Soveraign*'s *Mother*, the Dutcheſs of *Lancaſter*, the Counteſſes of *Cambridge*, *Buckingham*, *Penbroke*, *Oxford*, and *Salisbury*, the Ladies *Philippa* and *Katherine*, Daughters to the Duke of *Lancaſter* and the Lady *Mohun*. [m n o p q r ſ] *Ex prad. Rot. Comp. Alani de Stoke m.* 9.

They were made of *Cloth*[o] Violet in grain, like as the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions Surcoats* that year. The *Robes* lined with[p] *Fur*, but the *Hoods* with[q] *Scarlet*, and both embroidered over with[r] little *Garters*; and the proportion of Cloth, Furs, and Garters were allowed according to their ſeveral Degrees. For the *Queens* allowance was[ſ] 8 Ells of Cloth, and half an Ell of Scarlet, for the lining of her *Hood*; the *Soveraign*'s *Mother* had allowed her one whole Cloth, and a double proportion of Scarlet: but we conceive ſhe had two *Robes* and *Hoods* made at this time, in regard ſo large quantity of all things were aſſigned her, beſides the particular number (accounting the *Queen* for one) are but 11. and cannot elſe reach the total of *Robes* provided for them, and expreſly ſet down to be[t] 12.

The Dutcheſs of *Lancaſter* had the allowance of half a Cloth, and half an Ell of Scarlet, the Counteſs of *Cambridge* 7 Ells of Cloth, and half an Ell of Scarlet; and the reſt of the *Ladies* the ſame proportion of Cloth with the *Knights-Companions*; that is, each of them 5 Ells apiece, and half an Ell of Scarlet.

According to their proportion of Cloth, was alſo their proportion of *Minivers*, the *Queens* allowance was two *Furs*, each of them containing 300 Bellies of pure *Miniver*; the *Soveraign*'s *Mother* had double that proportion; the Dutcheſs of *Lancaſter*, and Counteſs of *Cambridge* a like proportion of *Minivers* as had the *Queen*, but all the reſt of the *Ladies* had only one *Fur*, conſiſting of 200 Bellies of pure *Miniver*: Beſides, the embroidered *Garters* provided to adorn and garniſh the[u] 24 *Surcoats* of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, and the[w] 12 Robes for the *Queen* and other *Ladies*, amounted to the number of[x] 2900 *Garters*. [t u w x] *Ibid. m.* 15.

In like manner were there prepared againſt the Feaſt of St. *George*, *an.* 11. *R.* 2. [y] 15 *Robes* and *Hoods* for the *Queen* and other *Ladies*, of the ſame livery and ſute, which the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* then wore: namely, *white long Cloth*, and *blue Cloth* for the lining of their *Hoods*: the proportion in all things being like the former: [z] The Dutcheſs of *York* having here the like allowance as had the Dutcheſs of *Lancaſter* above mentioned. [y z] *Lib. Comp. 2. & de Liberat. Pannor. temp. Ric. 2. in Offic. prad. f.* 167.

Anno 13. *R.* 2. the *Ladies Robes* and *Hoods* were[a] *Sanguine Cloth*, and the lining of their Hoods Cloth in grain; and in the 19. year of the ſame King they were[b] *Blue Cloth*, and long Cloth in grain for lining their Hoods. In both theſe years we find the Dutcheſs of *Aquitane* had double the proportion of Cloth allowed her (as had alſo the Dutcheſs of *York*) *viz.* 14 Ells (the *Queen* having then but the former allowance of 8 Ells) and yet her proportion of lining both for the *Robe* and *Hood*, was no more than is mentioned before to be allowed the *Queen*. [a] *Ibid. f.* 184. [b] *Ib. f.* 173.

But *an.* 1. *H.* 5. the proportion of Cloth, Minivers, and Garters were alike to *Ladies*

of all Degrees, whether Dutchesses, Countesses, or other Ladies, and that was to each 5 Ells of White Wollen Cloth, (only the *Queen Mother* had 8 Ells of White Cloth, and 8 Ells of Black Cloth) a *Fur* containing 200 Bellies of *Miniver* pure, and 100 embroidered *Garters*. And by a [d] Letter dormant, under the Privy Seal, dated the 3. of *November, an.* 12. *H.* 6. and directed to the then Master of the *Soveraign*'s great *Wardrobe*, the like *Livery* (both for Colour of Cloth, number of Ells, Bellies of Miniver, and Garters) is commanded to be provided, for the Countess of *Suffolk*, against the succeeding Feast of St. *George*.

d *Ex Collect. Guil. le Neve Eq. Aur. nuper Clarenc.*

The last mention we find of these *Liveries* was [e] *an.* 16. *E.* 4. when at the Feast of St. *George*, held the Sunday after the 27. of *February* at *Windesor*, the *Queen*, the Lady *Elizabeth* the Kings eldest Daughter, and Dutchess of *Suffolk* the Kings Sister, had for their Livery *Murrey Gowns* embroidered with Garters.

e *MS. penes Hen. St George Ar. Richmond Herald.*

Besides, these Robes worn by the Ladies, at the Festivals of the *Order*, there seems to be some intimation of wearing a *Garter* also on their left arms, in like manner as the *Knights-Companions* do on their left Legs; for it is observed to our hand, from the Countess of [f] *Tankerviles* Monument, that she is portrayed with such a *Garter* on her left Arm.

f *Ex præf. lib. vocat. Cotom. f.* 92.

After a long disuse of these *Robes* by the *Queens* of *England*, and *Knights-Companions Ladies*, there was (at the Feast of St. *George*, celebrated *an.* 14. *Car.* 1.) endeavour used to have them restored; for the then Deputy Chancellor moved the *Soveraign* in Chapter (held the [g] 22. of *May*) [h] *That the* Ladies *of the* Knights-Companions *might have the priviledge to wear a* Garter *of the* Order *about their arms*; *and an* upper Robe, *at Festival times, according to ancient usage.* Upon which motion the *Soveraign* gave Order, [i] *That the* Queen *should be acquainted therewith, and her pleasure known, and the affair left to the* Ladies *particular suit.*

g *Sir James*
h *Palmers*
i *Large Journal, p.* 16.

The [k] 10. of *October* in the following year (the Feast of St. *George*, being then also kept at *Windesor*) the Deputy Chancellor, [l] reported to the *Soveraign* in *Chapter*, the Answer which the *Queen* was pleased to give him to the aforesaid Order; [m] *Whereupon it was then left to a Chapter to be called by the* Knights-Companions *to consider of every circumstance, how it were fittest to be done, for the honor of the* Order; which was appointed to be held at *London*, about *Alhollantide* after: but what was then, or after done, doth not appear; and the unhappy War coming on, this matter wholly slept.

k *See his*
l *Journal*
m *pro anno* 1639. *p.* 59.

SECT. VI.

Of Collars *in general.*

THE *Collar* is an Ornament, not of late, but ancient invention; and certainly, could we not deduce its antiquity very high, yet the wonderful consent of most Nations therein, would sufficiently plead for it, since such a consent can scarce be found, unless in things most ancient.

As to its Antiquity, the *Author* of the first Book of [n] Sacred Writ, setting down the Ornaments bestowed by *Pharaoh* on *Joseph*, mentions the *Collar* to be one, and of Gold; that being the Metal whereof it was in all times ordinarily made: And it may be inferr'd, the use of it in that, was the same as in this Age, *viz.* to be worn about the neck; in regard *Pharaoh* put it about *Joseph*'s Neck.

n *Gen.* 41. *v.* 42.

Again, the Draught of that most ancient *Hieroglyphical Table*, reserved of old in the Temple of *Isis* in *Ægypt*, and most happily conserved till of late years (when, though it unhappily perished at the [o] sacking of *Mantua* by the *Spaniards*, *an.* 1630. yet was fortunately set forth before in Picture by *Laurentius Pignorius*) doth evidence the great antiquity of this Ornament among them; for there are to be found incircling the Necks of the Images of *Isis* and *Osiris* such like *Collars*, in a manner

o *Athan Kircher. Oedip. Tom.* 3. *p.* 80.

manner extending to their shoulders: Their workmanship seems curious, being intersected with various lines, and divided with Tablets and precious Stones.

The *Collar* became first and principally famous among the *Romans*, for having given a [p] *Surname* of perpetual memory to one of the chiefest Families in *Rome*, derived unto it from *T. Manlius Torquatus*, who fought with a Champion of the *Gauls*, neer the River *Anio*, *Anno V. C.* 392. and having vanquished him, [q] cut off his Head, then pluckt off his *Collar*, and (bloody as it was) put it about his own neck. *Livy* saith, [r] the Soldiers, when they presented him to the *Dictator*, were heard to Surname him *Torquatus*, and from him that honorable name descended to his Posterity.

[p] *Liv l.7. c.10.*
[q] *Gell l.4.c 14.*
[r] *Loco citato.*

In further memory of this gallant action, and to shew the original of this *Surname*, the representation of the *Collar* of this *Gaul*, is found stamped upon some *Roman Coyns*, in particular that referring to [s] *L. Torquatus*, Consul with [t] *L. Cotta*, *An. V. C.* 688. which we have here inserted, to the end its fashion may be the better known.

[s] *Fulv. Ursin. de Familiis Romanor. p.152.*
[t] *Iussi l.x.*

And we shall herewith note, that when one of another Tribe became adopted into this *Family*, he also did assume this Badge of Honor; as may be seen in another Coyn relating to *D. Junius Silanus*, sometime * Pretor of *Macedonia*, adopted into the *Manlian* Family of the *Torquati*; though the fashion of the work be somewhat differing from the former.

* *Flor. Epit. L. 54.*

In eldest times, none but *Kings* and *Princes* wore *Collars*, and therefore their first use seems to be a note of Dignity and Power: as is evident out of *Daniel*, where is noted, that the *Assyrian* Kings used this Ornament. Afterwards men famous for wisdom, excelling in Counsels, and thereby beneficial to their Country, had *Collars* bestowed on them, for tokens of *Reward*; and this is plain, as in the Example of *Joseph*, so likewise from the [u] Proclamation of *Belshazzar* King of *Babylon*, among the Rewards proposed to him, that could read and interpret the Writing on the Wall. But the *Collar* was bestowed as a Reward also upon those, whose famous actions and military enterprises merited well, and rendered them deserving of eminent recompences, though otherwise persons of no great or extraordinary note.

[u] *Dan.c.5.v.7.*

Thus the *Romans* among the [w] *Dona & Præmia Militaria*, those solemn Rewards, wherewith they honored *Virtue*, which upon occasion of merit and desert, they bestowed among such of their Commanders and Soldiers, as had gallantly exposed their lives to dangers for the service of that *Common-wealth*; and no less to excite others to like performances, than to recompence the deserving for great services done; among these (we say) *Collars* were of the number, and the honor of receiving them thought worthy to be preserved for the notice of Posterity, in Marble *Inscriptions*; of which sort there are many collected by the industrious [x] *Gruter*, out of whom, for a specimen of this kind, we have transcribed this that follows,

[w] *Such were the* Coronæ, Armillæ, Hastæ, Phaleræ, Vexilla, *&c.*

[x] *Pag. 358. Inscr 2. p.391. Inscr.4. p.443. Inscr.2.p.1102 Inscr 4.*
* *Pag. 429. Inscr. 1.*

* M. LICINIO. MVCIANO. &c.
------DONIS. DONATO------ob vir
TVTEM. ET. FORTITVDINEM.
BELLO. DACICO. AB. IMP. TRAIANO·
CORONA. VICTRICI. PVRA. HASTA. TORQVIBVS. ARMILLIS. PHALERIS. &c.

This custom of bestowing *Collars*, as a peculiar *Reward* for military and memorable services, was continued down to, and used by the later Emperors, as the learned *Budæus* observes. And we read of Investing a *Knight* of the *Sepulchre*

with a *Collar*, at his Creation: where aſſoon as the Ceremony of his Ordination is finiſhed, the *Padre Guardian* kiſſeth the new made *Knight*, and [y] puts about his neck (according to the manner of the Ancients) a *Golden Collar*, with a *Croſs* hanging thereat.

y *Fr. Mennen. Delic. Equeſt. p. 45.*

Moſt fitly therefore have the *Soveraigns* of *Military Orders*, added this Ornament of the *Collar* to their *Habit*, and beſtowed it on the *Fellows* and *Companions*; many of whom have meritorioufly deſerved it, upon account of thoſe ancient qualifications, *Wiſdom* and *Valour*.

SECT. VII.

The Collar *of the* Order.

HEreupon alſo, in addition to the *Enſigns* and *Ornaments* of this moſt Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, there was inſtituted a *Collar*, compoſed after a peculiar manner, exactly relative to the name and title of the *Order*; to the wearing of which, the *Soveraign* obliged both himſelf, and *Knights-Companions*, and His and their Succeſſors.

This *Collar* was Ordained to be [a] *Gold*, 30 ounces *Troy* weight, but not above: howbeit, that *Collar* ſent to *Guſtavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, weighed 34 ounces and a quarter; and that belonging to the late *Soveraign* King *Charles* the Firſt, 35 ounces and a half; which after his Sufferings coming into the hands of [b] *Thomas Hariſon*, ſometime called *Major General Hariſon*, was by him delivered to the *Truſtees* for ſale of this *Kings Goods*, who [c] *Anno* 1649. ſent it to the Mint with the [d] *Regalia* here particularized to ſet the Stamp on work for the firſt Gold that the upſtart Common-wealth coyned, *viz.*

a *Hen. 8. Stat. Art. 38.*

b c d *Ex Relatione Tho. Beauchamp gen.*

Inventory Book of the late Kings Goods, fol. 36. a.

The Imperial Crown, *weighing 7 l. 6 ounces, enriched with 19 Saphirs (3 of which were exceeding large) 232 Pearls, 58 Rubies, 28 Diamonds and 2 Emeralds.*

The Queens Crown, *weighing 3 l. 10 ounces 1 half, enriched with 20 Saphirs, 22 Rubies, and 83 Pearls.*

An ancient Crown *weighing 2 l. 1 ounce, enriched with one fair Diamond (valued by the Truſtees, who rated ſuch things far beneath their worth, at 200 l.) 13 other Diamonds, 10 Rubies, 1 Emerald, 1 Saphir (valued by them at 60 l.) and 70 Pearls: which Stones and Pearls weighed 3 ounces.*

Fol. 37. *The* Globe *or* Orb, *weighing 1 l. 5 ounces 1 quarter.*

Two Coronation Bracelets *(adorned with 3 Rubies Ballas, and 12 Pearls weighing an ounce) in all 7 ounces 1 quarter.*

Two Scepters, *weighing 18 ounces 1 quarter.*

A long Rod *Silver gilt, weighing 1 l. 5 ounces.*

One Gold Porringer *and* Cover, *weighing 15 ounces 1 half.*

One Chalice, *adorned with 2 Saphirs and 2 Ballas Rubies, weighing 15 ounces 1 half.*

Two Patena's *enamelled, weighing 25 ounces 1 half.*

Two Spoons, *with flat heads, weighing 5 ounces 1 quarter.*

One Taſter, *enamelled with a Phenix, weighing 5 ounces 1 half.*

Two Offering Pieces *and a* Sey *of Gold, weighing 10 ounces 1 quarter.*

Fol. 40. a. Queen Edith's Crown *(formerly thought to be of maſſy Gold, but upon tryal found Silver gilt) enricht with Garnets, Pearls, Saphirs, and other Stones, weighing 50 ounces.*

King Elfrid's Crown, *of Gold Wirework, ſet with Stones, and two little Bells, weighing 79 ounces 1 half.*

A

A Patena *enamelled, set with Stones, weighing* 23 *ounces* 1 *half.*
The Ampulla, *set with Stones and Pearls, weighing* 8 *ounces* 1 *half.*
A large Staff, *with a Dove on the top, the upper part Gold, the lower part Silver gilt, weighing* 27 *ounces.*
A small Staff, *with a Flower de Lis on the top, being Iron within, and Silver gilt without.*
Two Seepters, *one set with Pearls and Stones, the upper end Gold, weighing* 23 *ounces, the lower end Silver gilt. The other* Seepter *Silver gilt, having a Dove weighing* 7 *ounces* 3 *quarters.*
The Gold of the Tassels of a Liver-coloured Robe *(adorned with Pearl) weighing* 4 *ounces, also the Gold of the Neck Button of the* Coat, *weighing* 1 *ounce.*
A pair of Silver gilt Spurs, *set with* 12 *Stones, (having Straps of Crimson Silk) weighing* 6 *ounces* 3 *quarters.*

Besides these, there were other parts of the *Regalia* fetcht from *Westminster-Abbey*, and sold by these *Trustees*, namely

One large Chalice *of Glass, wrought in Figures, and set in Gold, with Stones and Pearls, weighing* 68 *ounces* 1 *half.*
A Staff *of black and white Ivory, having a Dove on the top, the binding and feet Gold.*
A Silver Spoon *gilt weighing* 3 *ounces.*
One Crimson Taffaty Robe. *Ibid. f. 4b.*
One Robe *trim'd with Gold Lace.*
One Liver-coloured Silk Robe.
One Robe *of Crimson Taffaty Sarcenet.*
One pair of Buskins *Cloth of Silver.*
One pair of Shoes *Cloth of Gold.*
One pair of embroidered Gloves.
Three Swords, *with Scabards Cloth of Gold.*
One Horn Comb.

It was further appointed by King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, that this *Collar* should be composed of [c] pieces of Gold in fashion of *Garters*, the ground enamelled *Blue*, and the Letters of the *Motto Gold.* In the midst of each *Garter*, two [f] Roses placed, the innermost enamelled Red, and the outermost White; contrarily in the next *Garter*, the innermost Rose enamelled White, and the outermost Red, and so alternately continued: but of later times these Roses are wholly Red. [c] *Art.* 38. [f]

The number of these *Garters* are so many, as be the ordained number of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, by the Institution of the *Order*, *viz. Twenty six*; being tyed together with as many Knots of Gold: and this fashion hath in all particulars hitherto continued invariable.

Nor ought the *Collar* to be garnished or enriched with precious Stones (as may the *George* which hangs thereat) such costly embelishments being absolutely prohibited by the [g] Law of the *Order.* [g] *Ibid.*

At the middle of the *Collar* before, is to be fastned the Image of St. *George* armed, sitting on Horseback, who having thrown the Dragon upon his back, encounters him with a tilting Spear. This Jewel is not surrounded with a *Garter*, or row of Diamonds, as is the *lesser George*, but made according to the representation in the Plate above, and called the *Great George.* It is allowed to be [*] garnished with Diamonds, and other enrichments, at the pleasure of the *Knight-Companion* who owns it; and upon that license, hath been frequently adorned with variety of costly art, whereon the Diamonds and other precious Stones are so disposed, as may upon its motion and agitation cast out the greater lustre. [*] *Ibid.*

But before the establishment of this *Article* by King *Henry* the Eighth, it appears the *Knights-Companions* were invested with *Collars* at their Installations; for the *Black Book* takes notice of a [h] *Collar* among the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, wherewith *Philip* [h] *Propriam Ordinis Togam Trabeam Humerale ac Collare statim induit. p.* 184.

Philip King of *Caſtile* was inveſted, *an.* 22. *H.* 7. but whether a *Collar* of *SS*, or other faſhion, doth not there appear. Nevertheleſs this doubt is in part cleared, by an old memorial of the ceremonies uſed at the [i] Creation of *Henry* Lord *Stafford* Earl of *Wiltſhire* (Brother to *Edward* Duke of *Buckingham*) 3. *Feb. an.* 1. *H.* 8. where it is noted, that after he was inveſted with the Robes of his State and Dignity, [k] *The Collar of the* Garter *was put about his neck, denoting him a* Knight *of that* Order.

And to make it yet more evident, there is found in a [l] Vellom Book of *Statutes* in *French*, ſent to *Maximilian* the Emperor, ſigned the 5. of *January* 1508. by *T. Ronthale* then Regiſter of the Order. And in [m] another belonging to *Edward Stanley* Lord *Mounteagle*, elected [n] *an.* 6. *H.* 8. a particular Article (namely the 41.) that Ordains a *Collar* to be publickly worn by each *Knight-Companion*, there called the *Collar of the Order*, which though it be not in all reſpects agreeable to the faſhion of that preſcribed by King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, yet comes it very neer, and ſaid to be a *Gold* Collar, *coupled together by ſeveral pieces of Links in faſhion of* Garters, *with a Vermilion Roſe, and the Image of St.* George *hung thereat.* The reaſon of the *Knights-Companions* wearing it, the times appointed therefore, the Licenſe for putting it to mending, the command not to enrich the *Collar*, but the *George* only, and obligation not to ſell, pawn, or alienate it for any neceſſity whatſoever, are wholly the ſame, as were afterwards enjoined by [o] King *Henry* the Eighth; ſo that in truth he did no more but adjoin to his Body of *Statutes*, a Decree, which (for the main) had been in practice before. Beſides, *an.* 11. *H.* 8. upon interpretation of the 11. Article of the *Statutes* for wearing the *Habit* of the *Order*, at the grand Feaſt of St. *George*; the [p] *Collar* is there enumerated among thoſe Ornaments (as part of the *whole Habit*) that a *Knight-Companion* is obliged to wear.

i *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [L. 12.] f. 27.

l *Penes Arthur. Com. Angleſey.*

m *In Biblioth. Hatton.*

n *Lib. N* p. 202.

o *Art.* 38.

p *Ibid.* p. 209.

In further proof that the *Collar* of *Garters* was uſed before King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign, let us offer here the Monument of Sir *Giles Daubeney* (who died *an.* 22. *H.* 7.) erected in St. *Paul*'s Chappel ſituate on the north ſide of St. *Edward*'s Shrine in *Weſtminſter Abbey*, whereon his Portraicture, in his *Robes* of the *Order*, is adorned with ſuch a *Collar*, as King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes* do afterwards deſcribe.

As the *Garter* ſent to *Guſtavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, ſo the great *George* (pendant at his *Collar*, weighing ſeven ounces) was ſet with large and reſplendent Diamonds; the particulars and order do fully appear, out of the Counterpart of that *Inventory* (mentioned at the beginning of this Chapter) taken upon its delivery into the cuſtody of the Dean and Canons of *Windeſor*, and were as followeth.

In the three Chains of the George, *ſmall Diamonds*	10
In St. George's *Feather, three ſmall, middlemoſt wanting*	2
In his Forehead	1
In his Breaſt-plate, four faucet Diamonds, of a reaſonable bigneſs	4
In the right Arm, faucet big	4
In the left Arm	4
In his Baces, of a big ſort	4
Thigh, Knee, Leg, and Foot, one in each	4
The Horſes head, in the forehead a faucet Diamond	1
In his Creſt, very ſmall, beſide two wanting	5
In his Mane, four lozenge Diamonds	4
In his Neck,	1
In his Bridle [4] *ſmall, one wanting*	3
On his ſhoulder, two ſquare, and two lozenge Diamonds of a bigger ſize	4
On his buttock, one ſquare Diamond, and eight about, on his Traps and Crupper ſix, four wanting on the border of his Saddle behind	21
Four ſquare Diamonds large, at the skirts and leg	4

Between

Tab. 1.


LVDOVICVS·XI·DEI·GRATIA·FRANCORVM·REX·
CHRIST
AR
AR

Tab. 2.


AR
AR
AR
AR
AR
AR

Between the fore legs, one fair ſquare Diamond ———— 1
The Dragon's forehead ———— 1
In his Wing and Body, fauceet Diamonds, one wanting ———— 9

Total of the George *are juſt* ————87

This *George* (with the *Collar*) was ſold by the *Truſtees* for ſale of the late *Kings Goods*, to the before named *Thomas Beauchamp*.

Of what account this Noble *Enſign* of Honor [the *Collar*] hath been with the *Soveraigns*, and *Knights-Companions*, not only of the *Order* of the *Garter*, but other *Military Orders*; may be obſerved from the *Pictures* of ſome of them, as alſo their *Seals*, *Coyns*, and *Medals*: which later paſſing up and down, after a publick manner, proclaim its honor throughout the world: for in theſe they have been pleaſed to exhibit as well their *Effigies*, as *Scutcheons* of *Arms*, incircled therewith; and alſo the Symbols of their ſeveral *Orders* pendant thereto.

There is a Picture (hanging in his Majeſties Gallery at *Whitehall*) of *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*, Founder of the *Golden Fleece*, adorned with the *Collar* of that *Order*. And the leading example of the like repreſentation in *Seals*, was first given by a Succeſſor of his, above 180 years ſince, as appears from the great Seal of [q] *Maximilian* and *Philip* his Son, Archdukes of *Auſtria*, *Burgundia*, *&c.* fixed to the agreement of Peace made between them and the *Flemings*, *an.* 1485. wherein the Pictures of both theſe *Princes* are repreſented, wearing their *Collars* of the *Golden Fleece*; and this faſhion hath been ſince continued in Seals, by their deſcendents Kings of *Spain*, *Soveraigns* of that *Order*.

[q] *Sigilla Comit. Flandriæ. p.* 116.

The *French* King *Lewis* the Eleventh, after he had inſtituted the *Order* of St. *Michael*, cauſed his *Picture* to be drawn (hitherto preſerved at *Fountain-bleau*) with the *Collar* of that *Order*; the Copy of which *François de Mezeray*, having exhibited in his [r] Hiſtory of *France*, we thence made a draught of it.

[r] *Tom.* 2. *p.* 98.

In like manner, in a Picture of *Ame* the Tenth Duke of *Savoy* (now hanging in the Gallery at *Whitehall*) is repreſented the ancient *Collar* of the *Annunciade*, and thereon the *Motto* in old Characters, uſed at the Foundation of that *Order*: All which we have cauſed to be etch'd (*Tab.* 1.) for the Readers ſatisfaction; together with the *Medals* made upon the Coronation of King *Charles* the Firſt at *Weſtminſter*, and of the preſent *Soveraign* there alſo, on the Feaſt day of St. *George* (*Patron* to this moſt Noble *Order* of the *Garter*) *an.* 1661. in both which, the *Collar* of the *Garter* may be ſeen placed over their Royal Robes.

Soon after the Inſtitution of the *Order* of the *Holy Ghoſt*, the *French* Kings were repreſented wearing the *Collars* both of St. *Michael* and the *Holy Ghoſt*; it being Ordained by the *Statutes* of the later *Order*, [t] that whoſoever ſhould be honored with both *Orders*, ſhould wear their *Collars* together: and perhaps, upon the ſame ground it was thought fit, that the *Collars* of both the *Garter* and the *Thiſtle*, ſhould be expreſt in the Coronation *Medal* of King *Charles* the Firſt in *Scotland*, *an.* 1633.

[t] *Art.* 37.

And as the *Soveraigns*, ſo the *Knights-Companions* of ſeveral *Orders*, have aſſumed this manner of adorning their *Effigies* with the *Collar* of that *Order*, whereof they were Fellows: the Copies of ſome of their *Medals* and *Coyns*, are alſo expreſt in *Tab.* 2. that is to ſay, the Funeral Medal of [c] *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, Knight and Companion of the *Golden Fleece*, another Medal of [d] *James* the Fourth King of *Scotland*, Knight of the Order of St. *Michael*, ſtamped at ſuch time as he invaded *England*, *an.* 1513. one of [e] *Chriſtierne* the Second, King of *Denmark*, upon his Expedition againſt the *Swedes*: as alſo the Dollars of *George* Duke of *Saxony*, *Henry* Duke of *Brunſwick*, and a piece of Gold of *Sigiſmund* the Fourth King of *Poland*; which laſt is now in his *Majeſties* rich Cabinet of *Medals*. And in like manner are extant the Pictures of divers *Knights-Companions* of the *Garter* in Painting, Limning, and Sculpture, adorned with the *Collars* of that *Order*.

[c] *Siloge Numiſ. elegantiorum. p.* 62.
[d] *Ibid. p.* 27.
[e] *Ib. p.* 45.

And to make this Noble *Enſign* become ornamental to the Arms alſo both of *Soveraigns* and *Knights*, they have been placed (ſometimes with their *Quarterings*) within

within it; the first we find ordered in this manner, was a Seal of [f] *Charles* the bold, Duke of *Burgundy*, Chief and Soveraign of the *Order* of the *Golden Fleece*, put to an Instrument, dated *anno* 1470. and whom we observe to have adorned the neck of the Lion of *Flanders* therewith, in another of his [g] Seals, as in *Tab.* 3. The *Chiefs* of other *Orders* did the like, as may be seen from other examples of *Coyns* and *Medals* in the same *Table*: But the *Soveraigns* of the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, usually incircled their *Arms*, not within the *Collar* of the *Order*, but the Royal *Garter*, that being its principal *Ensign*.

f *Sigilla Com. Fland.* p. 95.

g *Ibid.* p. 107.

This led on the custom to the *Fellows* and *Companions* of other *Orders*, to encompass their Arms with the *Collars*, both in *Coyns*, *Medals*, *&c.* examples of some are added by the Graver, in *Tab.* 4. Among these is the draught of a Seal of *Charles* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, incircled both with the *Garter* and *Collar* of the Order, and is the first example we have met with, wherein both these *Ensigns* are used together. The last in the 4. *Table*, is the full Atchievement of *Bernard de Foix de la Valette* Duke of *Aspernon*, *&c.* set beneath his Effigies, graved at *Paris* by *P. Van Schuppen*, where his Arms and Quarterings are encompassed with the chiefest *Ensigns* of those three *Orders*, whereof he was a Brother and Companion.

And here it is proper to observe, that the more ancient the *Order*, whose chief *Ensign* is after this manner represented, the neerer ought it be set to the Scutcheon of Arms being the more honorable place: and consequently, a great mistake was committed, in marshalling the *Collars* of the several *Orders*, about the Arms of the Duke of *Chevereux*, in his Plate remaining over his Stall at *Windesor*, where the *Collars* of St. *Michael* and of the *Holy Ghost* are both placed neerer to his Scutcheon, than is the *Garter*.

SECT. VIII.

Collars *of* SS.

IT will not be amiss in this place, since there are now in use with us several sorts of *Collars*, worn as Badges of lower and inferior Honors (some of which are adorned with part of the *Collar* of the *Garter*) and vulgarly called *Collars of SS*: to note down a few things concerning them: having first given a more exact account, as to their antiquity, than yet hath been made publick among us.

[h] *Georgius Wicelius* informs us, that he found a Book remaining in the Library at *Fulda*, where (in the life of the two Brothers *Simplicius* and *Faustinus*, both Senators, and [i] suffered Martyrdom under *Diocleſian*) is a description of the *Society* of Saint *Simplicius*, consisting of persons noble in their own Families; and so coming to describe the *Collar* used, as the Note and Badge of their *Society*, he says thus: *It was the custom of those persons to wear about their necks Silver* Collars, *composed of double SS, which noted the name of Saint* Simplicius: *between these double SS the* Collar *contained* 12 *small plates of Silver, in which were engraved the* 12 *Articles of the Crede, together with a single Trefoyle. The Image of Saint* Simplicius *hung at the Collar, and from it* 7 *Plates, representing the* 7 *gifts of the Holy Ghost.*

h *Histor. de Divis tam vet. quam novi Testamenti. Edita Basilæ, an.* 1557. p. 258.

i *Videsis Baronii Annal. ad annum Christi* 302. *necnon Surium, Tom.* 3. *ad diem* 31. *Maii.*

As to the manner of their suffering, it is thus set down in an old *Legend*; [k] *They were commanded to undergo the sentence of death, their Bodies to be bound together by the neck to a Stone, and sent to the Bridge over the* Tiber *in* Rome, *and thence thrown into the River*: All which was executed upon them, the [l] 287. year after the Incarnation of our *Saviour*.

k *MS. in Bibliotb. Coton.*

l *MS.*

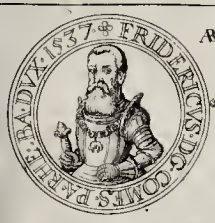
How long since the *Collar* of *SS* came into use here in *England*, we no where find, though we have done our endeavour to be satisfied: But if credit may be given to a Monument, standing at this day entire, in the Collegiate Church at *Warwick* it will appear, to have been at least 300 years since, and worn as an Ornament

Tab. 3

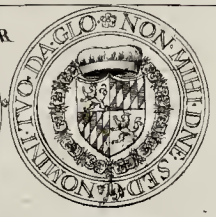
AR

AR

Tab. 4



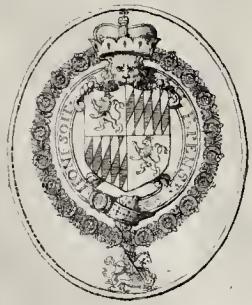
AR

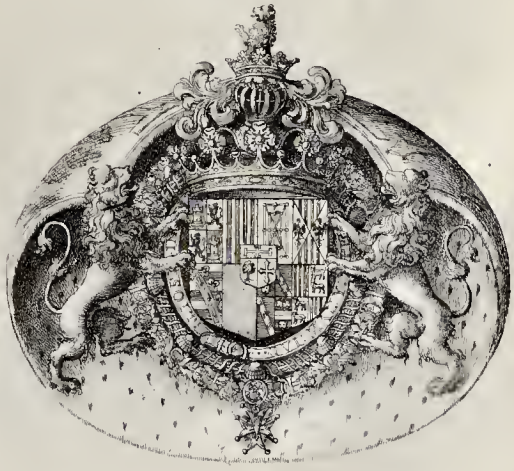


AR

AR

AR





Ornament for *Women* as well as *Men*: for there the Portraicture of *Margaret* Wife of Sir *William Peito* (said to be buried in the Reign of King *Edward* the Third) hath a *Collar* composed of *SS*, drawn about and set close to her neck; which the Graver, in the [m] *Antiquities of Warwickshire*, hath through mistake, represented like to a set Ruff. There was to be seen a *Collar of SS*, also about the neck of Sir *Simon Burley*'s Statue in St. *Pauls* Cathedral *London*, but the Monument perished in the dreadful fire *anno* 1666.

m *Pag.*350.

And 'tis probable, that to these *Collars*, the passage in *Walsingham* (cited by [n] Mr. *Selden* to this purpose) should refer; where speaking of the Earl of *Kent*'s coming to *Sunning* neer *Reading* in *Berkshire*, where *Richard* the Second's Queen then lay, to comfort her with the assurance, that her Husband was then at liberty; [o] to the end he might gain credit to his relation, forthwith pluckt off the *Collars* from some there present that wore them, letting them know, they ought not to wear a *Badge*, so particularly relative to *Henry* the Fourth.

n *Titles of Honor*, *p.*835.

o *Walsingh. sub anno* 1400.

In the ancient creation of an *Esquire* in *England*, part of the Ceremony was, that the *King* put about his neck a [p] Silver *Collar* of *SS*, as an *Ensign* of that Dignity: and our learned *Selden* contemns not the authority of that old Ballad, **The Tanner of Tamworth**, to [q] prove the making of Esquires in King *Edward* the Fourth's Reign, by bestowing such *Collars*.

p *Cambd. Brit.* *p.* 128.

q *Titles of Honor*, *p.*836.

But that the *Golden Collar* was the undoubted Badge of a *Knight*, may be instanced in a multitude of Examples, deduced from the Monuments of persons of that Degree in the Reigns of *Henry* the Sixth, *Edward* the Fourth, *Henry* the Seventh, *Henry* the Eighth, and since: and so justly and legally appropriate thereto, that in the [r] *Act of Parliament* made for reformation of Apparel, there is a Proviso entred, That *Knights*, notwithstanding, might publickly wear a *Gold Collar* of *SS*, though since it hath grown out of fashion.

r *Anno* 24. *H.* 8. *cap.*13.

[t] *Andrew Favin* tells us, that our King *Henry* the Fifth Instituted an *Order*, surnamed *Knights of the SS*, on the day of the Martyrs St. *Crispine* and *Crispianus*: of which Institution, though he found nothing mentioned in our *English* Histories, yet out of the Chronicle of *J. Juvenal des Ursins*, where it treats of the Battel of *Agin-Court*, he collected this following relation.

t *Theatre d'Honn.l.*5.*c.*2.

[t] *The King of* England *exhorted his men, and commanded, that if any of them had trespassed against another, they should be reconciled, and confess to the Priests, that were in their company, otherwise no good could happen to them in their undertakings: He further exhorted them to be civil in their march, and to do their duty well, and thus agreed with them: That all those of their company who were not* Gentlemen, *he would make them so, and give them Warrants for it, and have them thence forward enjoy such Priviledges as the* Gentlemen *of* England *had; and to the end they should be particularly known from others, he gave them leave to wear a* Collar *powdered with the letter S.*

t *Ibid.*

Among the variety of *Collars* of *SS* now in use with us, there are these following differences in Figure and Fashion.

The *Lord Mayor* of *London*'s *Collar* is Gold, having a knot (like one of those which tye the *Garters* together, in the great *Collar* of the *Order*) inserted between two *SS*, and they again placed between two *Roses*, *viz.* a White Rose within a Red; and in the middle before the Breast, is a large *Portcullis*, whereat hangs a most rich Jewel, set with fair and large Diamonds.

The Collars of the *Lords Chief Justices* of both the *Benches*, and the *chief Baron* of the *Exchequer*, are (in [u] memory of the before mentioned Saint *Simplicius*, a Senator and consequently a Gown-man) formed of the Letter *S* and a Knot alternately; having a Rose set in that part of it, which falls out to be in the middle of their Breasts, and another on their Backs: the five Flowers of these Roses, are made of five large Pearls.

u *Camd. Remains*, *p.*193. *Edit. an.*1657.

Those *Collars* which appertain to the *Kings* and *Heralds* of *Arms*, so likewise to the *Serjeants* at *Arms*, having been bestowed by former Kings, and renewed to them by his present Majesty, to be worn upon all days of solemn attendance for his honor, are also composed of *SS*, linked together; in the middle of the

Breaſt is a Roſe, and another in the middle of the Back, at each of which hang three ſmall drops of Silver. But the *SS* in the *Collars* worn by the *Kings of Arms*, are made ſomewhat bigger than the other; and in that part lying on either ſhoulder, is a *Portcullis* taken in between the *SS*, which are wanting in the reſt.

The general difference between the *Collars*, appropriate to the Degrees before named, is this: All ſuch perſons as are honored with *Knighthood*, have allowed them *Collars* of *Silver gilt*, but to *Eſquires* thoſe of *Silver* only: and therefore he that is created an *Herald*, is alſo in part of that Ceremony made an *Eſquire*, by putting on a Collar of *SS* of *Silver* about his neck: and ſo is a *Serjeant at Arms*.

The Kings of *England* have ſometimes heretofore drawn a *Collar* of *SS* about their *Arms*, in like manner as we have ſhewed, how the *Garter* doth ſurround them: and we have ſeen an impreſſion of King *Henry* the Eighth's *Privy Signet*, whereon his Royal Arms (crowned) are incircled with a *Collar* of *SS*, to the lower end of which is affixed two Portculliſſes.

SECT. IX.

The leſſer George.

WE do not find among the Records of the *Order*, that the *Image* of St. *George* was at any time worn by the *Soveraign*, or *Knights-Companions* before the Breaſt, or under the right Arm, as now uſed, until the 13. year of King *Henry* the Eighth: But then that *Soveraign* paſt a Decree in Chapter held at *Greenwich*, the morrow after St. *George*'s day, with conſent of the *Knights-Companions* preſent, to this effect. [w] *That every* Knight *of the* Order, *ſhould wear looſely before his Breaſt, the* Image *of St.* George *in a Gold Chain, or otherwiſe in a Ribband, the ſame to be thence forward placed within the ennobled* Garter; *to the end a manifeſt diſtinction ſhould thereby appear, between the* Knights-Companions *and others* of the Nobility and Knights, who according to the faſhion of thoſe times, wore large Gold Chains, the ordinary Enſign of their *Knighthood*. And thus the wearing the Medal or Jewel (uſually called the *Leſſer George*, to diſtinguiſh it from the other *George* worn at the *Collar* of the *Order*) was firſt enjoined, and hath ſince been conſtantly ſo uſed.

w *Lib.N.p.212*

This *George* was for the moſt part made of pure Gold, curiouſly wrought by the hand of the Goldſmith, but we have ſeen divers of them exquiſitely cut in *Onix's*, as alſo in *Agats*, and therein ſuch happy choice of the Stones, that by joining thereto the Workmans ſkill, in deſigning and laying out the Figures, to expreſs the Hiſtory, the natural tincture of the Stones have fitted them with Colours, for Fleſh, Hair, and every thing elſe, even to admiration. In this Jewel is St. *George* repreſented in a riding poſture, encountring the *Dragon* with his drawn Sword.

By the laſt Article of King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes* this *George* is allowed to be enriched and garniſhed at the pleaſure of him that wears it (as is the *great George*) which for the moſt part hath been curiouſly enamelled, and the *Garter* about it ſet with Diamonds, in the beſt order either art or invention could deviſe. And of what weight and bigneſs theſe *leſſer Georges* formerly were, may be judged from that ſent to the *French* King *Charles* the Ninth, being [x] an ounce and a half, and half quarter weight.

x *MS. fol. penes pref. G. Owen p. 154.*

The variety of Workmanſhip ſhown in thoſe *Gold Chains*, whereat this Jewel hung; was uſually great, and the Artiſts upon all occaſions expreſt much ingenuity and skill in them, according to the fancy or pleaſure of the perſons for whom they were made.

But

But within a short time, wearing the *lesser George* in *Silk Ribbands*, as well as *Gold Chains* was indifferently used and at pleasure (so were the *Symbols* of Forreign *Orders*, as appears from sundry Coyns and Medals) but the Colour of these *Ribbands* at their first use were Black, as is noted of those belonging to the *Georges*, wherewith [y] *John Dudley* Viscount *Lisle*, the Lords *Saint John* and *Parr* were invested, *an.* 35. *H.* 8. and in the Pictures of several *Knights-Companions* about that time (both painted in Oyl, and limned with Water Colours) the *Ribbands* of their *Georges* are visibly Black.

That small *Chain*, whereat hung the *lesser George* sent to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, *an.* 1. & 2. *Phil. & Mar.* was formed of [z] twelve pieces of Gold, in every of which were set three small Diamonds; and of twelve other like pieces, wherein were three Rubies and twenty four Pearls.

It appears by a Letter sent from [a] Sir *Richard St. George* Knight *Clarencèux*, and the *Heralds* of Arms, to *Henry* Earl of *Holland*, dated the 10. of *July* 1627. [b] that the *Blue Ribband* had some years before been added to the Ornaments of the *Order*. And 'tis said [c] that *Robert* Earl of *Essex* being in *France*, and observing the Jewels of the *Order* of St. *Michael* and St. *Esprit*, worn in *Blue Ribbands*, upon his return did occasion the altering those Ribbands; whereat the *George* hung, into that Colour: And I have seen the [d] Picture of Queen *Elizabeth*, drawn towards the end of her Reign, wherein was represented the *Lesser George*, hanging before her Breast at such a *Blue Ribband*.

It was not long, e're this Colour grew into great estimation with the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*; the rather, for that it was the ground of the *Garter*, and colour of the *Mantle* of the *Order*. And toward the * later end of King *James* his Reign (because the Colour of the Ribband had not been peculiarly exprest in any Article of the *Statutes*, and the Blue or Sky Colour used for some years past) it was Decreed, [e] *That for the future it should always be of a* Blue Colour, *and no other*: [f] *nor in time of mourning for any of the* Knights-Companions, *of what Degree soever, should the Colour be changed.*

The ordinary manner of wearing this *Ribband* in time of peace, was (till of late) about the neck, down to the middle of the Breast, where the *lesser George* hung; but now for the more convenieney of riding or action, the same is spread over the left shoulder, and brought under the right arm, where the Jewel hangs.

y, z } *Ex Collect. præf. W. le Neve. Eq. Aur.*

a, b } *MS. in Officio Armor.* [L. 2.] *p.* 2.

c *Ex relatione Will. Dugdale Ar. Norroy.*

d *Penes Erasm. Moyse nuper de Tottenham in Com. Mid. Ar.*

* 22. *May an. regni sui* 20.

e, f } *Lib. R. p.* 12.

But where the Pictures of the *Soveraign*, or any of the *Knights-Companions* are drawn in Armour, there, even to this day, the *George* is repreſented, as fixed at a *Gold Chain*, inſtead of the *Blue Ribband*, and worn about the neck (not brought under the right arm) which alſo was ſo exhibited in the three pound pieces of Gold, ſtamped at *Oxford* by the command of his late Majeſty of ever bleſſed memory King *Charles* the Firſt, whereby he publiſhed to the world, that the true and juſt occaſion of his taking up Arms in the late War, was *to maintain the Proteſtant Religion, the Laws of the Land, and the Priviledge of Parliaments.* And in like manner is the *Gold Chain* repreſented in a Medal of *Charles* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, now ſenior *Knight-Companion* of this moſt Noble *Order*.

Among thoſe rich and invaluable Jewels, and other choice Curioſities of his ſaid late *Majeſty*, which came to the hands of the Truſtees appointed for ſale of his Goods, there were ſeveral of theſe *leſſer Georges* [g] ſold by them to the foreſaid *Thomas Beauchamp*, the particulars whereof, how low they were valued, and for what ſold, appears thus from the Book of Sales.

g 25. Oct. 1651

	Valued at			Sold for		
A George *containing* 161 *Diamonds, which came from the Counteſs of* Leiceſter, *and was diſcovered by* Cornelius Holland.	60	00	00	71	02	00
A George *cut in an Onix, with* 41 *Diamonds in the garniſh.*	35	00	00	37	00	00
A ſmall George *with a few Diamonds.*	8	00	00	9	00	00
A George *with* 5 *Rubies and* 3 *Diamonds, and* 11 *Diamonds in a Box.*	10	00	00	11	00	00
A George *cut in a Garnet.*	7	00	00	8	00	00
Total	120	00	00	136	00	00

The *George* which his ſaid late *Majeſty* wore at the time of his Martyrdom, was curiouſly cut in an *Onix*, ſet about with 21 large Table Diamonds, in the faſhion of a *Garter*: On the back ſide of the *George* was the Picture of his *Queen*, rarely well limn'd, ſet in a Caſe of Gold, the lid neatly enamel'd with Goldſmiths work, and ſurrounded with another *Garter*, adorned with a like number of equal ſized Diamonds, as was the foreſide. A Draught of this Jewel, in three parts, open and ſhut, we have exhibited to the Readers view, among the *Enſigns* of the *Order*, at the beginning of this Chapter.

Nor will it be unfitly here remembred, by what good fortune the preſent *Soveraign's leſſer George* ſet with fair Diamonds was preſerved, after the defeat given to the *Scotch* Forces at *Worceſter*, *an.* 4. *Car.* 2.

Among the reſt of his Attendants then diſperſt, [h] Colonel *Blague* was one, who taking ſhelter at *Blore-pipe* Houſe (within two miles of *Eccleſhall* in *Staffordſhire*) where one Mr. *George Barlow* then dwelt, delivered his Wife this *George* to ſecure. Within a week after Mr. *Barlow* himſelf carried it to *Robert Milward* Eſquire (now ſecond Juſtice of the great Seſſions of the County Palatine of *Cheſter*, one of the Commiſſioners of the *Privy Seal*, and Son unto Sir *Thomas Milward* Knight, late Chief Juſtice of the ſaid great Seſſions, both perſons of known loyalty, and great ſufferers for his late *Majeſty*) he being then a Priſoner to the Parliament, in the Garriſon of *Stafford*; and by his means was it happily preſerved and reſtored: for not long after he delivered it to Mr. *Iſaac Walton* (a man well known, and as well beloved of all good men, and will be better known to poſterity, by his ingenious Pen, in the lives of Doctor *Donne*, Sir *Henry Wotton*, Mr. *Richard Hooker*, and Mr. *George Herbert*) to be given to *Colonel Blague* then Priſoner in the *Tower*; who conſidering it had already paſt ſo many dangers, was perſwaded it could yet ſecure one hazardous attempt of his own, and thereupon leaving the *Tower* without leave taking, haſted the preſentation of it to the preſent *Soveraign's* hand.

h *Ex relatione Geo. Barlow gen. 11. Junii 1660. ac Roberti Milward ar. & Iſaaci Walton gen.*

We ſhall hereunto ſubjoin this Obſervation: That other *Princes* in Chriſtendom


I
II
III
IIII
V
DO. DE. MAN.
SANCT GEOR.
MON. ARG.
VINC. D. G. D. V. X. MANT. III. T. E. MONTFER.
COLLECTOR. NOSTER. A. ASD.
C.A.S.A.I.

Pag 229

dom (beſides the *Soveraigns* of the moſt Noble *Order* of the *Garter*) have aſſumed the bearing St. *George* encountring the *Dragon*, and in like poſture (though not ſo anciently, nor upon the ſame account) as they: probably having choſen him *Patron* of their *Countries* or *Families*, as namely the Emperors of *Ruſſia*, the Dukes of *Mantua* in *Italy*, and the Counts *Mansfield* in *Germany*, which will better appear by the exhibits of ſome of their *Seals* and *Coyns* here.

The firſt is the Great Seal of *Borice-Feodorwiche* Emperor of *Ruſſia*, affixed to his Letters ſent to Queen *Elizabeth*, dated at his Imperial Palace of *Mosko* the 12. of *June* 1602. and 39. year of his Reign: A Tranſlation of which was moſt courteouſly afforded me by Mr. *Ja. Freſe* (Interpretor to the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſadors, ſent over hither to his now *Majeſty*, *an. Dom.* 1660.) and is as followeth.

By Gods providence, We the great Lord, Emperor, and great Duke Boreece Feodorwiche *of all* Ruſſia *Self-upholder, of* Wolodeemer, Mosko, Novograde, *Emperor of* Kazan, *Emperor of* Aſtracane, *and Emperor of* Seebeeria, *Lord of* Pſokoſke, *great Duke of* Smolenskee, Twerskee, Ugarskee, Permskee, Vaticekee, Bolgarskee, *and other; Lord and great Duke of* Novagradia, *the* lower Countries, Cheringoskee, Rezanskee, Roſoskee, Yaroſlaveſkee, Beloozerskee, Leeſlandia, Udorſkee, Obdorskee, Kondinſkee, *and Commander of all the* Northern *parts, and Lord of all the* Iverskee *Countries, and* Granziſkee *Empires, and of the* Caberniſkee *Countries*, Cherkaſkee, Igorſkee, *and of many other* Kingdoms, *Lord and Conqueror.*

We have likewiſe ſeen another of this Emperors great *Seals*, fixed to his Letters, bearing date the 31. day of *May*, *an. Dom.* 1594. which he alſo ſent to Queen *Elizabeth*, and was preſented to her at *Richmond*, the 14. of *October* following, by his Ambaſſador *Evanowich*: the Circumſcription containing the ſame Stile and Titles above ſet down.

There is preſerved in the Archives at *Oxford*, an Inſtrument containing Letters teſtimonial of this Emperor, given to Doctor *Chriſtopher Ritinger* his chief Phyſician, the Seal whereof is Silver gilt, but differs in ſize and deſign from the former, and contains on the reverſe the Figure of St. *George* and the *Dragon* only. A tranſlation of the whole Inſtrument I have tranſcribed hither, as it was communicated to me by my worthy friend Mr. *Thomas Hyde*, the preſent Library-Keeper of that famous *Univerſity*, a Gentleman of eminent Learning, in all kinds, and eſpecially in the Oriental Tongues.

By the great mercy of God, *We, great Lord, Emperor and great Duke* Borrys Feodorwich *of all* Ruſſia *ſole Commander, of* Volodemerſky, Moſcoveſky, Novogorodſky, *King of* Cazanſky, *King of* Aſtracanſky, *King of* Siberſky, *Lord of* Vobſky, *and great Duke of* Smolenſky, Twerſky, Ugorſky, Permeſky, Votſky, Bulgarſky, *and many others, Lord and great Duke of* Novogorod, Levelandſky, Udorſky, Obdorſky, Kondniſky, *and all the* Northern *parts, Commander. Lord of* Iverſkyland, *King of* Gruſinſky, Caberdinſky *Country*; Chercaſky, *and the Country of* Iverſky, *and of many other Kingdoms Lord and Commander, together with our princely Son* Pheodor Burriſſiwich *of all* Ruſſia, *do by theſe our princely Letters, given unto Doctor* Chriſtopher Ritinger *Phyſician,* Hungarian *born, acknowledge his true, faithful, and willing ſervice unto our Highneſs: in which his profeſſion, We Lord, King and great Duke* Burrys Feodorwich *of all* Ruſſia, *have ſufficiently tryed his skill, on our princely perſon, which he carefully performed for the better preſervation of our health: and through Gods great mercy, by his diligent and faithful ſervice hath cured our Highneſs of a dangerous ſickneſs. And therefore we Lord King and great Duke* Borys Feodorwich *of all* Ruſſia *ſole Commander, with our princely Son* Pheodor Burryſſiwich, *in regard of his great learning and faithful ſervice to us, have admitted him to be our Princely Doctor, to miniſter Phyſick, and attend on our royal perſon: to which end we have granted him our Letters, and hereby we teſtifie his ſufficient knowledge and practice in Phyſick,*

Physick, who hath by our selves well deserved, to publish and make known the same. And if the said Doctor Christopher *shall repair to any other* Princes, Countries, Emperors, Kings, Curfists, Arch-Dukes, *or* Dukes, *to offer his service unto them, We do by these our princely Letters wheresoever they shall come, give true testimony on the said Doctor* Christopher's *behalf, to be of great learning, sufficient knowledge, well practised in Physick matters: as also in that profession, careful, diligent, and trusty to be credited, We having had sufficient tryal of his faithful carriage, in all true and honest services towards us. These our Princely Letters, given in our great and chiefest* Palace *in the Kingdom of* Mosco, *in the year of the creation of the* World 7109. *and in the moneth of* August.

The Style about the Seal.

By the great mercy of God, We great Lord, Emperor, and great Duke Borys Feodorwich *of all* Russia *sole Commander, Lord and Governor of many other* Countries *and* Kingdoms.

The third, is the great Seal of *Alexeye Michailowiche*, the present Emperor of *Russia*, wherewith was sealed the Letter sent to his now Majesty, *an. Dom.* 1660. by his Ambassadors, Duke *Peter Semoenowiche Prosoroskee*, Lord and Possessor of the Dukedom of *Toole*, and *Evan Offonosyewiche Zelabuskee, Namestirek* of *Coormeskee*. Which having obtained by the favour of Sir *William Morice* Knight and Baronet, late principal Secretary of State, we also here exhibit to publick view, with a translation of this Emperor's Style, rendred into English by the said Mr. *Ja. Frese*.

By Gods mercy, We the great Lord, Emperor, and great Duke Alexeye Michailowiche *of all the great and lesser and white* Russia *Self-upholder, of* Moscovia, Kneveskee, Wolodeemerskee, *and* Novagardskee, *Emperor of* Kazan, *Emperor of* Astracan, *Emperor of* Siberia, *Lord of* Pscoskee, *and great Duke of* Lettow, Smolenskee, Twerskee, Wolniskee, Podolskee, Ugarskee, Permskee, Waticekee, Bolgarskee, *and others. Lord and great Duke of* Novogradia, *the* lower Countries, Cheringoskee, Rezanskee, Polotskee, Rostoskee, Yaroslaskee, Belozerskee, Udorskee, Obdorskee, Kandinskee, Weetepskee, Meestesloskee, *and of all the* Northern *parts Commander. Lord of the* Iverskee Countries, Cartalinskee, Groonsiskee, *and* Igerskee *Empires, and of the* Kabardinskee *Countries*, Cheringoskee, *and* Igorskee *Dukedoms, and of many other Dukedoms Eastern, western and northern, from Father and Grandfather heir apparent Lord and Conqueror.*

This representation of St. *George* and the *Dragon* we find assigned for Arms to *Anne de Russie*, Daughter to *Jaroslaus* King of *Russia* and *Moscovia*, married to *Henry* the First King of *France*, in the year of our Lord 1051. and thus blazoned. [i] *De Gueules, à un homme à Cheval, d' Argent, tenant une Lance en la main, qu'il darde en la gueule d'un Dragon renversé.*

i *S. Marthe Hist. Geneolog. de la Maison de France. Tom* 1. *l* 12. *c*.4.p.453.

The Counts of *Mansfield* in *Germany*, have likewise frequently stamped on their *Coyns*, the Figure of St. *George* killing the *Dragon*: from which we have singled out one, bearing the name of St. *George*, and placed it under the *Number* IV.

In the last may be seen the Effigies of *Vincentius* Duke of *Mantua* and *Montferat*, a *Knight* of the *Order* of the *Golden Fleece*, and on the Reverse thereof, St. *George* encountring the *Dragon*, in the manner generally worn by the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* of this most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*.

SECT.

SECT. X.

When the Habit, *or part of it, ought to be worn.*

THere are ſeveral ſolemn days and occaſions, on which the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* of the *Garter* are enjoined to wear, either the *whole Habit* of the *Order*, or ſome part of it.

The more ſolemn, and which require a full conformity, as to wearing the *whole Habit*, that is, the *Garter*, *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Hood*, *Collar*, *Great George*, and *Cap*, are firſt, the high Feſtival of the *Order* (commonly called St. *George's Feaſt*) whether it be ſolemnized on the 22, 23, or 24. days of *April* annually, or any other days within the following year by Prorogation. And for this there is cleer Text, in all the *Bodies* and *Exemplars* of the [k] *Statutes*; as alſo to the time how long they ought to be worn on every of thoſe days, before the *Soveraign* or *Knights-Companions* put them off.

For firſt, it was Ordained, [l] That the *Knights-Companions* ſhould put on the *whole Habit*, on the *Eve* of St. *George*, before the *Soveraign* proceeded to the Chappel, to hear Divine Service; and being ſo habited, ſhould attend the *Soveraign* to the Chapterhouſe, thence to the Chappel, and return with him back, continuing in the ſame manner habited (as well ſuch of them as ſhould be minded to Sup, as thoſe that ſhould not) until after Supper; [m] nor might they put off their *Robes* until the *Soveraign* or his *Deputy* had put off his, or declared it time for his or their ſo doing.

By the ſame third Article of the *Statutes*, the wearing of the *whole Habit* was alſo enjoined on the Feaſt day of St. *George*, both at their Proceeding in the morning to the Chapterhouſe or Chappel, at their return to Dinner; from thence to the ſecond *Veſpers*, and back to Supper; as alſo till Supper ſhould be ended, and until the *Soveraign* or his *Lieutenant* took leave of the reſt of the *Knights-Companions*.

Secondly, it is manifeſt from King *Henry* the Eighth's [n] *Statutes*, that the Eve, the day of St. *George*, and morrow following, were appointed to be kept with ſolemn ſervice, and holding of *Chapters*, wherefoever the *Soveraign* ſhould then be, though the Grand Feaſt and Solemnity of St. *George* were prorogued, to ſome further time in the year: And therefore, when by reaſon of ſuch Prorogation, the *Knights-Companions* do meet in any other place beſides the Caſtle of *Windeſor*, to attend the *Soveraign* for the obſervation of St. *George's* day only, they then are appointed to wear the *whole Habit* of the *Order*, from beginning of the firſt Evening Service, until the laſt Evening Service on St. *George's* day.

Thirdly, on ſuch other days of the year, whereon the *Grand Feaſt* is held by Prorogation; and during ſuch part of the Eve, and day of the Feaſt, as is before appointed, when the ſaid Feaſt is held on its proper day.

Fourthly, by abſent *Knights*, whenſoever the Grand Feaſt of St. *George* ſhould be celebrated, and [o] wherefoever they ſhould at ſuch time happen to reſide or be ([p] if at liberty, and not under reſtraint) in like manner, as if then preſent with the *Soveraign* or his *Deputy*, in the place where he ſhould celebrate the *Feaſt*. The time of wearing the *whole Habit* in this caſe, extends but to the end of the ſecond *Veſpers*, as in the ſecond inſtance above.

Fifthly, in like manner are the *Knights-Companions* to wear the *whole Habit* of the *Order*, at the *Feaſts* of *Inſtallation*, I mean ſuch of them as are appointed by the *Soveraign* to aſſiſt at that Ceremony; where, if it begin in the Evening, then are they not to diſrobe themſelves, till after Supper; and being the next morning habited as before, then to proceed to the Chapterhouſe or Chappel, and not put off their Robes till Dinner be ended.

The leſs ſolemn Occaſions, are thoſe which require wearing the *Mantle*, or *Collar* of the *Order* only.

And

k Art. 3.

l m Ord. Stat. in Lib. N. Art. 3.

n Art. 4.

o E. 3. Stat. 1. H. 5. Art. 12. H. 8. Stat. Art. 5.

p Ord. Stat. in Lib. N. Art. 9.

And they are, first, upon the [r] morrow after the Grand Feast day, when the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* proceed to the Chappel, and make their Offering of Gold and Silver; for it then sufficeth that they put on the *Mantle* only: which (service being finished) they were wont to leave at the Chapterhouse door, as they went out of the Chappel.

Secondly, as often as [s] *Chapters* are called, and in what place soever held, either for Elections, or other Causes, as it shall please the *Soveraign* to name.

And also as often as it is requisite for the *Soveraign*, or any of the *Knights-Companions*, to [t] enter into the Chappel of St. *George* at *Windesor*: and with reference hereunto was it Ordained; [u] That every one of the *Knights-Companions*, should leave a *Mantle* at *Windesor*, to the end, that upon any sudden and unexpected occasion of access thither, there might be *Robes* found in readiness for the due observing the *Statutes* in this point, with all the Commands and Decrees of the *Soveraign*.

Its manifest that anciently (in pursuance of this Article) both the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* left *Mantles* in the *Vestry* at *Windesor*, for such accidental Occasions: for in the Inventory of Ornaments belonging to the Chappel taken *an.* 8. *Ric.* 2. We find remaining at that time in the Vestry, a *Mantle* belonging to the *Soveraign*, another to *John* Duke of *Britain*, a third to *John Holland* Earl of *Huntingdon*, another to *Edmund Langley* Earl of *Cambridge*, and one to *Thomas Holland* Earl of *Kent*, all of them then alive. And by a Decree past, at the Grand Feast, *anno* 1. *H.* 6. the [w] *Mantle* of the young *Soveraign* was appointed to be left at *Windesor*, as the *Statutes* required. It is further to be noted, that this Article of the *Statutes* was confirmed by King *Henry* the Eighth's [x] *Statutes*: by force whereof the *Mantles* of the Emperor [y] *Charles* the Fifth, and *Anna* Duke of *Montmorency* Constable of *France*, were left in the custody of the Dean and Canons of *Windesor*. And heretofore, in the general Bill drawn up of things necessary to be prepared for Installation of a *Knight-Companion*, there were usually [z] two *Mantles* set down, the use of the one being therein expresly mentioned to remain in the Colledge at *Windesor*, and the other for all other occasions elsewhere.

These *Mantles* thus enjoined to be left in the Colledge for sudden chances, the owners living; were anciently committed to the Custody of the *Black Rod*, as we find it granted by * Letters Patent to *John Athelbrig*, with the grant of that Office, and fell after the death of the Owners, to the Dean and Canons of *Windesor*, being then reserved, either for publick use of the *Knights-Companions*, when they casually came to *Windesor*, or else sold, sometimes to the Heirs of the Deceased, or other *Knights-Companions*, who succeeded in the *Order* (as that of *Charles* the Fifth was to the Earl of *Bedford*, and that of the Constable of *France* lent to the Earl of *Warwick*, *an.* 7. *Eliz.*) which appears from the [a] Accounts of the Chanter of the *Colledge*, in the Reigns of King *Henry* the Fourth, King *Henry* the Fifth, King *Henry* the Eighth, Queen *Elizabeth*, and King *James*, who in all times answered the full benefit thereof to the *Colledge*; as [b] being a certain and unquestionable due to the Dean and Canons; and this they have accordingly had and enjoyed.

And yet we find some of the *Colledge* made over bold with the Robe of *Sigismond* the Emperor and [c] sold it while he was yet alive: But the Archbishop of *York* (who, as Chancellor of *England*, was Visitor of the *Colledge*) upon a Visitation made by him shortly after, *viz.* the 22. of *February*, *anno* 1431. [d] kept the Money from being distributed among those who had sold it, and reserved the dividend to the Dean and Canons, who should happen to be of the *Colledge* at the time of that Emperors death: and withall commanded for the future, under pain of Excommunication, [e] *That no Dean and Canon should presume to withdraw or aliene any of the* Knights-Companions Mantles, *while he was alive, but the same as much as possible, should be well, decently, and faithfully kept and preserved.*

But we are informed, that the before mentioned *Statute* was altered [f] *anno* 9. *Eliz.* and a new one made to this effect, [g] *That the* Knights-Companions *should be bound by* Oath, *to take care by their Wills, that after their decease, all the* Ornaments *which*

r 18. Stat. Art. 12.
s E.3. } Stat. H.5. } Art.3.
t Ed.3. Stat. Art.16.
u E.3. Stat. Art.14. H.5. Stat. Art.15.
w Lib.N.p.75.
x Art. 15.
y Ex Autogr. penes Christ. Wren super hujus Ord. Regist.
z MS. in Bibliath. Coton [sub effigie Julii] F. 11. inde Collect. Aug. Vincent.
* Pat.1.H.5. pars 3.m.18.
a } Ex Collect.
b } G. Evans modo unius Canonic. Colleg. Windesor.
c } Videsis Junii. Ebora. Archiep. Art. 19.
d
e Ibid.
f } Ex Autogr.
g } per Sacrament. pr.ej.D. Christ. Wren at. 1. that. 12. Mar. 1651.

which they had received, ſhould be reſtored; the Robes *to the* Colledge, *and the* Jewels *to the* Soveraign *that gave them.*

We come, in the laſt place, to the times of wearing the *Collar* of the *Order*, with the *Great George* thereunto appendant, which is not only enjoined to be worn (as part of the *Habit*) at the *Grand Feaſts*, and *Feaſts of Inſtallation*, but alſo at other times, when not any of the reſt of the *Habit* (ſaving the *Garter*) is appointed to be worn, as in ſpecial, at *the* [h] *principal and ſolemn Feaſts of the year:* and other Feaſt days, to which a particular *Order* in *Chapter*, *anno* 4. *Eliz.* thus directs. h *H.8.Stat. Art.38.*

The Holy days, and Sundays, within the twelve days.
Saint Matthias day.
Holy days in Eaſter week.
Saint Marks day.
Saint Philip and Jacobs day.
Holy days in Whitſon week.
The Feaſt days of
St. Peter.
St. James.
St. Bartholomew.
St. Matthew.
St. Luke.
St. Simon and Jude.
St. Andrew, and
St. Thomas.

Beſides theſe, the *Soveraigns* and *Knights-Companions* have been accuſtomed to wear this Noble *Enſign*, upon the *Aniverſary* of the *Soveraign's Coronation*, of the *Gunpowder Treaſon*, and now lately, on the preſent *Soveraign's Birth day.* So alſo heretofore, upon ſome occaſional Ceremonies, not relative to the *Order*; as when a *Knight-Companion* hath been created into Titles of Dignity and Honor, he had the [i] *Collar* of the *Garter* added to his Inveſtiture, as appears in the caſe of *Henry Stafford*, created Earl of *Wiltſhire*, *anno* 1. *H.* 8. And at a *Chapter* held the twenty ſecond of *May* 1622. it was Ordained, [k] *That ſuch* Knights-Companions *of this moſt Noble* Order, *as ſhould afterwards aſſiſt at the Funeral of any* Knight-Companion, *ſhould wear the* Collar *apert, at the ſaid Funeral:* and it was ſo obſerved by the Dukes of *Ormond* and *Richmond*, the Earls of *Mincheſter* and *Sandwich*, at the ſolemn Funeral of his Grace *George* late Duke of *Albemarle.*

i *MS. in Offic. Armor.* [L.12. f.27.]
k *Lib.R.p.13.*

Howbeit, the cuſtom is otherwiſe, as to wearing the *Garter*, that principal *Enſign* of the *Order*; for though it be enjoined to be worn, eſpecially at the [l] *Grand Feaſt*, and all times of entring into St. *George's* Chappel, or holding of *Chapters*; yet doth not this imply, that it may be left off, at all other times as may the reſt of the *Habit*: for indeed it ought daily to be worn, both by the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions.* And therefore was it Decreed, even at the Inſtitution of the Order: [m] *That if any of the* Knights-Companions *ſhould in publick be found without his* Garter, *and that the ſame was not buckled about his Leg, in decent and uſual manner; upon challenge thereof, he ſhould preſently pay,* a [n] *Noble to the Dean and Colledge of* Windeſor. By King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, the Fine was raiſed to a [o] Mark: the ſame to be paid forthwith after challenge made, by any of the five Officers of the *Order*, or as before, by the Dean of *Windeſor*; beſide which [p] Fine, the *Knight* lies liable to a [q] check.

l *Ed.3.Stat. Art.3.*
m n *Ibid. Art. 12. & E. 5. Stat. eod. Art.*
o p *Art.10.*
q *Ord. Stat. in Lib.N. Art.10.*

But the Article in the *Statutes* of Inſtitution being pen'd too ſtrictly, and without any exception, the ſeveral occaſions of military or neceſſary affairs diſcovering the inconvenience; King *Henry* the Fifth admitted of a qualification, and in caſe of riding with Boots, Ordained, That it might ſuffice, if the *Knight-Companion* wore ſome [r] *Ribband* or *Silk Lace*, to repreſent the *Garter:* nevertheleſs in this very Article there is a Proviſo added, *That no* Knight-Companion *ſhould enter into Chapter, without his* Garter *buckled about the Leg.*

r *H.6.Stat.Art. 12. & H.8. Stat.Art.10.*

To conclude, King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes* provide, that the *Gold Chain*, whereat the *Lesser George* (in that Age) hung, should be worn [f]all other days of the year, except the [g]principal and solemn Feasts, whereon the *Great Collar* was Ordained to be worn, and except in time of War, Sickness, or long Voyage; in any of which cases, it should suffice the *Knight-Companion* concern'd, to wear only a *Silk Lace* or *Ribband*, with the Image of St. *George* thereat: and the *Blue Ribband*, having since succeeded in place of the *Gold Chain*, the Injunction of this *Statute*, extends to it in all particulars.

[f] Art. 58.

CHAP. VIII.

THE Officers APPOINTED FOR THE SERVICE OF THE Order.

SECT. I.

The Prelate's *Institution, his* Oath, Robe, *and* Priviledges.

TO give increase and augmentation to the Honor of this most Noble *Order*, the *Founder* constituted certain *Officers*, namely, a *Prelate*, *Register*, and *Usher*, to whom he assigned several and particular duties: Some of his Successors added the *Chancellor*, and *Garter*, upon the same account, and all of them sworn to be of the [a] *Council* of the *Order*. Among these, the *Prelate* and *Chancellor* are usually called the [b] principal, the other three, the inferior Officers of the *Order*; known and distinguished by the Robes or Ensigns of their peculiar Offices.

a H. 2. Stat. Art. 15.

b Lib. N. f. 237.

In this Chapter, we shall only give some account of their *Institution*, *Oath*, *Habit*; *Ensigns*, *Priviledges*, and *Pensions*; for as to the nature of their Offices, so far as they relate to the Duties enjoined them within the *Order*, they are, for the general, set down in that ancient Establishment, recorded in the [c] *Black Book*, Entituled, *Constitutiones ad Officiales Ordinis* [*Garterii*] *peculiariter attinentes*, *&c.* established by King *Henry* the Eighth, in the [d] 13. year of his Reign, *an. Dom.* 1521. adjoined

c Pag. 233. [MS. penes Arm. [M.8.] f. 31.

d MS. penes Arm. [M.8.]

The ancient Habits and Ensigns assigned to the Officers of the Order.

Prelate

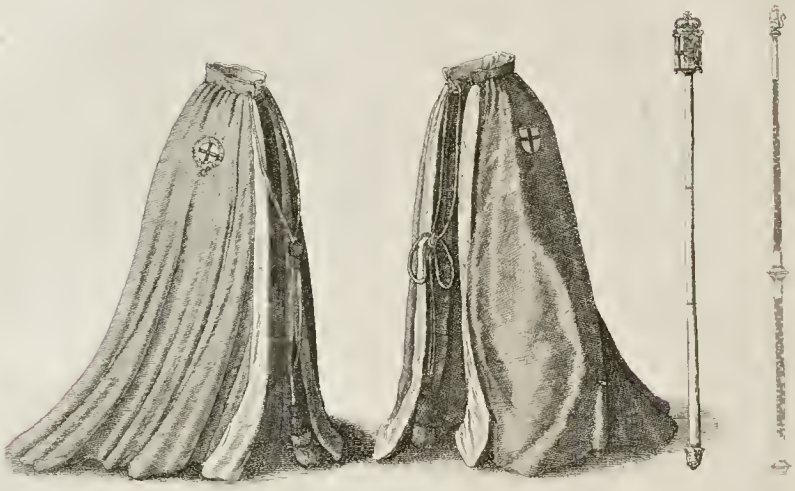
Chancellor

Register

Garter

Black Rodd

The present Habits Ensigns and Badges belonging to the Officers of the Order



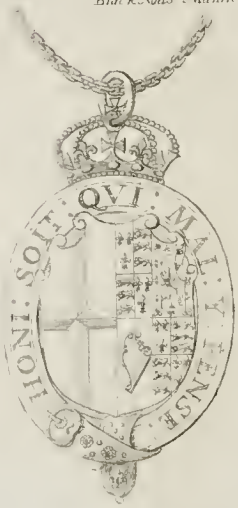
The Prelate and Chancellor's Mantle

Registers, Garters & Black Rods Mantle

Garters Sceptre

The Black Rodd

Chancellors Badge



Garters Badge

Black Rods Badge

Pag: 277

and adjoined to his Body of [e] *Statutes*, from whence we have transcrib'd them into the *Appendix*. But more particularly their duties are to be met with in several places of the ensuing Discourse, where they properly fall in to be treated of.

e *Lib.N.p.*232.

The *Prelate* is the first and principal Officer belonging to the *Order*, and in the *Founder's Statutes* is called [f] *Prelatus Ordinis*; thus we see his Office is as ancient as the Institution of the Order, and that the then Bishop of *Winchester* [*William de Edyngton*] was the first *Prelate*, is as apparent [g] thence. He is an Officer of honor only; and hath not either Pension or Fees allowed him.

His Institution.

f g *Art.*18.

By the said Constitutions this Office is vested in the Bishops of *Winchester* for the time being; and from sundry passages in the *Annals* of the *Order*, it is further manifest, that the Successors to *William de Edyngton*, have continued *Prelates* to this day, except the interruption only of a few months, *anno* 7. *E.* 6. immediately after publishing this Kings Statutes; wherein the other four Officers were constituted anew, to attend the service of the *Order*, but the [h] *Prelate* wholly set aside.

h *Chap.*8.

Of what estimation this See hath been, may be collected from the precedency granted to the Bishops thereof, by an Act of Parliament, Entituled, [i] *An Act concerning the placing of the Lords in Parliament Chamber, and other Assemblies and Conferences of Council*, wherein it is Enacted, that this *Bishop* shall sit next to the Bishop of *Durham*, who hath place (by that Act) assign'd him next the Archbishop of *York*: though before, in [k] respect of the honor and preheminence of this most Noble *Order*, he had precedence and place, granted above all Bishops, and next unto the Archbishops.

i *Rot. Parl.an.* 31.*H.*8.*n.*10.

k *Constitut. ad Officialis Ordinis attinentes. cap.*1.

At this Officer's admittance, he is obliged to take an *Oath* in the presence of the *Soveraign* or his *Lieutenant*, which consists of these particulars.

Oath.

1. [l] *To be present in all Chapters, whereunto he is summoned.*
2. *To report all things truly, without favour or fear.*
3. *To take the Scrutiny faithfully, and present it to the* Soveraign.
4. *To keep secret and not disclose the Counsels of the* Order.
5. *To promote and maintain the honor thereof.*
6. *To withstand and reveal, what is design'd to the contrary.*

l *Vide Append. Num*, VI.

This *Oath* is read or pronounced in *Chapter* by the *Register* of the *Order*, the [m] *Gentleman* Usher of the *Black-Rod* holding the Book, whilst the *Prelate* kneels between the *Soveraign*'s knees.

m *Lib.R.p.*39. & 84.

As the *Knights-Companions* had their Surcoats bestowed on them at the *Soveraign*'s charge, and therefore called the *Kings Livery*; so had the *Officers* of the *Order*, their *Liveries* or *Robes*, out of the *Soveraign*'s Wardrobe likewise, and in particular the *Prelate* of the *Order*: For in the Rolls of the Great Wardrobe we find that [n] *William de Edyngton* had allowed him for his *Robe* of the *Soveraign*'s *Livery*, against the Feast of St. *George*, *anno* 37. *E.* 3. one Cloth of Sanguine in Grain, and a large quantity of Furs, for trimming it up.

Robes.

n Domino *Willielmo de Edyngton* Episcopo *Winten.* ad unam Robam sibi, de Liberatura Domini Regis, contra Festum Sancti *Georgii*, de secta Militum de Garterio, faciend. & Furrurand. per Literam Privati Sigilli, *Scilicet*,
1 Pannus Sanguin. in grano.
1 Mantell.de 454 Ventr. Miniver pur.
1 Furrura de 244 Ventr.Miniver pur.
1 Furrura de 270 Ventr. Miniver pur.
1 Capucium de 154 Ventr.Miniver pur.
1 Furrura dimid. de Bifs, furrata de Bifs.
*Ex Rotulo Computi Hen. de Snaith Custodis mag.Gardrob. Regis an.*37.*E.*3.*m.*3.

We have had occasion in the [o] last Chapter to observe, that the word *Roba* in the Rolls of the Wardrobe, is used to signifie a *Surcoat* (being there applied to the *Knights-Companions* Surcoats) not *Mantle*, which in reference to the *Prelate* is to be understood by it. And we find this *Robe*, so assigned to the *Prelate*, noted to be of the Sute or Colour of the *Knights-Companions* Surcoats, the foresaid year, *viz.* [p] Sanguine in grain. But whereas each *Knight-Companion* had [q] 15 Ells of this Cloth for a Surcoat, the *Prelate*'s allowance is said to be, one Cloth of the same Colour: Yet what difference there was in Measure, between one Ell, and so many as made one Cloth, we have not hitherto learnt: but in Fur the *Prelate* much exceeded them, every *Knight-Companion* then having but [r] one Fur of 200 Bellies of Miniver pure.

o *Sect.* 3.
p *Rotul.prad.m.* 3.
q *Ibid.*
r

Anno [t] 7. *Ric.* 2. we meet with the same allowance of Cloth and other materials to *William de Wyckham* (then also *Prelate*) but the difference lay in the [t] Bellies of Minivers, whose number now was much encreased: and that the same allowance was made him, in the 11. and 19. years of the said King. But in these three Instances, the Colour of the Cloth was different, and changed to that assigned for the *Knights-Companions* Surcoats those very years, to wit, [u] *Violet* in grain, [w] *White*, and [x] *Blue*. And *anno* 12. *H.* 6. the Robe of *Henry Beaufort* Cardinal and Prelate, was [y] *White*, as then were the Surcoats of all the *Knights-Companions*; whence it is evident, the Livery anciently allowed the *Prelate*, annually varied in Colour, as did the *Knights-Companions* Surcoats.

[t] *Ex Rotulo Compoti Alani de Stake Custod mag. Gardrob. Regis m.* 8.
t viz. 1 Pannum Violettum in grano.
1 Mantellum de 600 Ventr.
1 Capucium de 140 Ventr. Miniver pur.
1 Furrura de 400 Ventr.
1 Furrura de 360 Ventr. Miniver gross.
1 Furrura de Eiss de 140 Best. *Ibid.*
u *Ibid.*

w *Lib Compot. de Liberat. Pannorum, &c. temp. R.* 1. *f.* 167.
x *Ibid. p.* 173.

y *Ex Lib. vocat. Comm. in Offic. mag. Gardrobe, f.* 91. *b.*

In that ancient Precedent of the Liveries of the *Garter*, recorded in an old Velam Manuscript, remaining in the *Soveraign's Great* Wardrobe, wherein the Surcoats bestowed on the *Knights-Companions* are reduced to a certainty, as to the measure of Cloth, number of Furs and Garters, nevertheless proportioned according to their several Degrees; there the *Prelate* hath the following allowance for his Livery.

z *Fol.* 12.

z 24 *Yards of Woollen Cloth.*
18 *Timbr. pur.* } *Miniver.*
18 *Timbr. gross.* }
3 *Timbr. de Biss.*

By all which it is manifest what Materials and Colour the *Prelate's Robe* was of, as at the *Institution* of the *Order*, so for a long time after; nor can we find, any alteration therein, until the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, and then his Habit was [a] ordained to be of *Crimson Velvet*, lined with White Taffaty, faced with Blue, and thereon richly embroidered, sundry royal Cognizances, such as appear on the front of the *Prelate's Robe*, in the Draughts of the Officers ancient Habits placed at the beginning of this Chapter.

a *Constitutiones ad Official. Ord. attinentes. cap.* 1.

The first of which is the Rose of *England* crown'd.

The second, one of King *Edward* the Fourth's Badges; and may be seen in several places of the Stone-work, in and about St. *Georges Chappel* at *Windesor*.

The third is the Flower de Lis of *France*, crown'd.

And the fourth King *Edward* the Third's peculiar Badge, *viz.* the Sun Beams issuing out of a Cloud. [b] Forty of these Clouds, embroidered with Gold, Silver, and Silk, having in the middle the Saxon Letter E of Gold, were provided to trim several Garments made for this King in the 21. year of his Reign, and garnished with Stars.

b *Ex Rot. Comp. Joh. Coke Clerici Provisionis mag. Gardrob. m.* 9.

As the left shoulder of a *Knights-Companions* Mantle, so the right shoulder of the *Prelate's Robe*, is ordained to be embroidered with a [c] Scutcheon of St. *George's Arms*, encompassed with the *Garter*; and [d] adorn'd with *Cordons* of Blue Silk mingled with Gold.

c } *Ibidem.*
d }

After a while (though we find not the certain time) the Colour of this *Robe* became changed to *Murrey*, the allowance of Velvet [e] 16 yards, of White Sarcenet for lining 12 yards, and a Garter for the shoulder embroidered with Purls of Damask Gold. But by a Warrant dated the 22. of *March anno* 23. *Eliz.* directed to the Master of the great Wardrobe, for the *Livery* of the *Order* for Bishop *Watson*, then newly admitted *Prelate*. The quantity of Velvet was encreased to [f] 18 yards, but the lining and Garter as before, so also the Cordon, having Buttons and Tassels of Blue Silk and Venice Gold. The like Robe in all particulars was made for his Successor Bishop *Cooper*, upon the Soveraign's [g] Warrant (11. *April an.* 26. *Eliz.*) and for Bishop *Bilson*, by a [h] like Warrant *an.* 41. of the same Queen.

e *Ex vetust. pergam. MS. in Offic. mag. Gardrob. p.* 46.

f *Lib. Warrant. particul. temp. Eliz. Reginæ in Offic. mag. Gardrob p.* 232.
g *Ibid p.* 359.
h *Ex lib. partic. Warrant. ab an.* 1593. *ad ann.* 1603. *p.* 167.

About the 12. year of King *Charles* the First, the *Prelate* and *Chancellor* petitioned the *Soveraign* to restore them their ancient right and estimation, in relation

relation to their *Robes* and *Badges* of Honor, upon their outward Garments; whereupon it was Ordered in a *Chapter* held the 18. of *April*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 1. (being the Feast-day celebrated by prorogation for the year 1636.) among many other things relating to the Honor of this most Noble *Order*, [i] *That the* Knights-Commissioners (newly established by [k] that Chapter) *should consider of the* Robes *to be worn by the* Prelate *and* Chancellor, *and certifie the* Soveraign *the ancient* Colour *and* Form.

[i] *Lib.R.p.122.*
[k] *Ibid.p.118.*

But we have not met with any thing further done in relation thereunto, during that *Soveraign*'s Reign; nor until after the happy Restauration of the present *Soveraign*, and then by Warrant under the Signet of the Order, (dated *Feb.* 19. *an.* 13. *Car.* 2.) the *Prelate* had assigned him for his Livery of the Order one *Robe* of * *Purple Velvet*, containing 18 yards, and 10 yards of White Taffaty for lining, as also a Scutcheon of St. *George* within a Garter, wrought with Letters and Purls of Damask Gold and Pearls, having Laces, Buttons, and Tassels of Purple Silk and Venice Gold; but what inducements the *Soveraign* had, for changing the Colour from *Murrey* to *Purple* we have not heard.

* *Appendix Num.* IX.

An Account being thus given of the *Prelates Robe*, it follows that we note, at what times he is enjoined to wear it, concerning which it is set down in express Text, [m] *That he should be obliged to wear it yearly on the Vigil and day of St.* George, *wheresoever he is at his Liberty, whether it be in Parliament, or any other solemn occasion, or Festival whatsoever.*

[m] *Constitut. ad Offic. Ord. attinentes. cap.* 1.

Priviledges.

The Honors conferr'd on this Officer are, That his *Place* in all Proceedings and Ceremonies of the Order is on the [o] right hand of the *Chancellor*. That he may [p] marshal his *Arms* within the ennobled Garter, and accordingly hath it been customary for the *Prelate*, to surround them (impaled with those of the See of *Winchester*) with this Noble Ensign. He hath allowed him convenient [q] *Lodgings* within the Castle of *Windesor*, and these are in a Tower, situate on the North side of the Castle in the middle Ward, called [r] *Winchester-Tower*. And as often as he shall come thither, or to any other place at the *Soveraign*'s command either to celebrate the Solemnity of St. *George*, or do any act or thing belonging to the *Order*, he ought to have allowed him of the [t] *Court-Livery* for himself and Servants, according to the rate that Earls resident in Court are used to have.

[o] [p] [q] *Ibid.*
[r] *Lib. R.p.*55.
[t] *Ex praef. Constitut. c.* 1.

Lastly, at a *Chapter* held the 27. of *April*, *anno* 2. *Car.* 1. this *Officer* (so also the *Chancellor*) had the Priviledge granted to [t] wear upon the left part of his Cloak, Coat and Riding Cassock, at all times when he should not wear his Robe, and in all Places and Assemblies a *Scutcheon* of the Arms of St. *George*, but not enriched with Pearls or Stones, That the wearing thereof might be an open testimony to the World, of the honor he held from this most Noble *Order*.

[t] *Vide supra cap.* 7. *Sect.* 4. *p.*216.

But not long after there was some restraint put upon this Act, though I do not find it repealed.

SECT. II.

The Institution *of the* Chancellor's Office, *his* Oath, Robe, Badge, *and* Pension.

His Institution.

AT the Institution of this most Noble *Order*, [a] The *Common Seal* was ordained to remain in the custody of whomsoever the *Soveraign* should please; nevertheless, such person is expressly appointed to be [b] one of the *Knights-Companions*. Among them in after times Sir *John Robertsack* (to whom its custody was committed, by Decree in *Chapter an.* 1. *H.*6.) is stiled [c] *Custos Sigilli Ordinis*; and within a few lines in the Book and Page now cited (the same *Chapter* still sitting) there is mention made also of the [d] *Chancellor*: where though the reference be not to Sir *John Robertsack* by express Name, yet in all likelihood is intended to him, the *Seal* of the Order being at his Nomination delivered into his keeping. And though in the

[a] *E.*3. *Stat. Art.*26.
[b] *Art.*30.
[c] *Lib.N. p.*74.
[d] Dominus Guliel. Haryngton per Cancellarium excusatus est. *Ibid.*

the course of the *Annals* there recorded, this Title is given to Sir *John Robertsack*, preceding the entry of the [e] Decree, which constituted him *Keeper* of the *Seal*, yet is it probable his nomination past one of the first things in the *Chapter*; after which, the Register might justly afford him that Title, though not as yet drawn up into an Order: That work being commonly done after the *Chapters* were broke up.

e *Ibid. p.* 75.

But King *Edward* the Fourth, finding it necessary to settle the Office of *Chancellor* of the *Garter*, in a person distinct from the *Knights-Companions*, and subservient to them, *Ordered*, in a Chapter held at his Palace of *Westminster* the 4. of *November*, in the 16. year of his Reign, [f] *That the* Seal *of the* Order *should be delivered to* Richard Beauchamp *then Bishop of* Salisbury *to keep during pleasure*; and he to be called *Chancellor* of this most Noble *Order*.

f *Lib. N. p.* 141.

Not long after, this King by [g] Letters Patent under the Great Seal of *England*, bearing *Teste* at *Westminster*, the 10. day of *October*, in the 15. year of his Reign, declared, That though among the *Officers* of the *Order* of the *Garter*, the *Office* of *Chancellor* was not appointed by the *Founder's Statutes*, yet was it nevertheless very lawful and necessary. And therefore did *Ordain*, that for the advancement and good of the *Order* in those Affairs, there should be constituted an *Officer* named *Chancellor*. And forasmuch as this *Office* was great, and of great charge, and required an able and dextrous person, it was his further pleasure, that none should be admitted thereinto, unless he were of *Ecclesiastical Dignity*, that is to say, a *Bishop*. Moreover, considering the Chappel of St. *George* in the Castle of *Windesor*, was founded and established within the Diocess of *Salisbury*, and having regard to the prudence and diligence of *Richard Beauchamp* then Bishop of that Diocess, who out of meer love towards the *Order*, gave himself the leisure daily to attend the advancement and progress of that goodly Work, wherewith the King was then in hand, in the Castle of *Windesor*, for enlarging the Chappel there, He did therefore likewise Ordain and Establish the said Bishop for the term of his life *Chancellor* of the *Order*, and did further Will and Ordain, that after his decease his Successors Bishops of *Salisbury* should always have and hold the said *Office* of *Chancellor*. Nevertheless, in this Patent there is a Proviso, that the Kings Concession, should be put in execution by the advice of the *Knights-Companions*, and without prejudice of the Bishop of *Winchester* in those things, which, touching the *Order*, ought by the *Statutes* of *Institution* to belong unto him.

g *Appendix. Num. IV.*

This *Office* being thus conferred upon *Richard Beauchamp* personally, for term of life, and perpetually, to the sueeeeding Bishops of the See of *Salisbury*, divers of his Successors (some of whom are remembred in the *Black Book*, though the names of special Officers are seldom set down in Chapter Acts) were, by virtue of this Grant, continued therein, and exeeuted the Office; nor doth it appear by the Records of the *Order*, that any other person had been invested therein, besides the Bishops of *Salisbury*, until *an.* 7. *E.* 6. that Sir *William Cecil*, then Principal Secretary of State, was made *Chancellor*; concerning which more by and by.

If recourse be had to the *Constitutions* peculiarly relating to the *Officers* of the *Order*, it will appear, [h] That this *Office* is very noble and honorable, of great trust and care, requiring a person of much Honor and Reputation to exercise and manage it: In which regard it is therein provided, that no man should be advanced to this Digaity, unless he be a Prelate of the Church, *viz.* Archbishop, or Bishop, or of some other such like eminent preferment therein: Or if a Layman, then to be a Knight of known Extraction, expert, learned, and of untainted Reputation.

h *Cap.* 2.

By this Clause, a Lay-man no less than a Clergy-man was made capable of this *Office*, nevertheless it amounted not to a devesting the Bishop then living, or excluding any of his Successors, unless it had pleased the *Soveraign* after making that Constitution, to have passed by the Bishop of *Salisbury*, and bestowed it elsewhere, which he did not; for *Edmund Audeley* the then Bishop, some time after the establishing these Constitutions, and his immediate Successor Cardinal *Campeius* (till he went to *Rome*) if not more of them, enjoined and executed the same.

But

But upon Reformation of the *Order* by King *Edward* the Sixth, his *Statutes* wholly leave out the *Ecclesiasticks*, and [i] appoint that the *Chancellors Office* should be executed by a *Knight*, qualified as before. And thereupon Sir *William Cecil* was constituted *Chancellor*, whose Patent bears date the [k] 12. of *April* *anno* 7. *E.* 6. And here first entred a secular person, though he enjoyed the Office but a while, for the [l] 27. of *September* following, Sir *William Petres* was admitted thereinto, since which time, until now, the Chancellorship hath continued in the execution of persons of that rank and quality.

i *Cap.* 9.
k *Pat.* 7. *E.* 6. *pars* 2.
l *Lib.C p.* 7.

Notwithstanding which, in a *Charter* granted to the Bishop of *Salisbury* the [m] first of *Dec an.* 4. *Eliz.* (confirming the Charters of Queen *Mary*, King *Henry* the Eighth, and King *Henry* the Seventh) as also in another by the late *Soveraign* King *Charles* the First, ([n] 6. *Mar. an. reg. sui* 4.) the forementioned Letters Patent made to Bishop *Beauchamp* by King *Edward* the Fourth, are therein recited *totidem verbis*, and confirmed, as a tacite Reservation of the right and title of the Bishop of *Salisbury*, whensoever the favour of the *Soveraign* should grow propitious to that See.

m *Confirm.* 4. *Eliz pars prima.*
n *Pat.* 4. *Car.* 1. *p.* 25.

It doth not appear that any of the Bishops of *Salisbury*, after the Reign of King *Edward* the Sixth, concerned themselves for recovering the Execution of this Office to their See, until the [o] sixth year of King *James*, that *Henry Cotton* then Bishop, upon the death of Sir *Edward Dyer* sometime *Chancellor*, set forth by Petition to the then *Soveraign*, That this *Office* belonged to him and his Successors Bishops of *Salisbury*, and therefore humbly prayed Restitution thereof to the Church of *Salisbury*.

o *Ib. p.* 167.

But before the *Soveraign* would determine any thing hereupon, he was pleased to call the two Chief Justices and Chief Baron to advise with, who were of opinion (saith the *Blue Book*) [p] *That this* Office *was not compleatly or sufficiently annexed to the Bishoprick of* Salisbury *by King* Edward *the Fourth.* But Sir *Edward Cooke*, one of those Judges, Reports the point upon which it was void, to be [q] *the incertainty of the Grant, for that a new Office was erected, and not defined what Jurisdiction or Authority the Officer should have.* And yet we find elsewhere this third reason given, [r] *That the Grant was in the* Soveraign's *disposition, because the Patent was granted without Fee.* With one, or more of these opinions, the *Soveraign*'s judgment being swayed, He forthwith nominated Sir *John Herbert* one of his Privy Council to the *Chancellorship*, and so this Affair slept, until *anno* 12. *Car.* 1.

p *Ibidem.*
q 4. *part Institut. p.* 200.
r *MS. de Festis temp. Jac. Regis f.* 147. *b. penes Ed. Walker Eq. Aur. modo Garter, Princ. R. Armorum.*

When *John Davenant* Bishop of *Salisbury* (Sir *Francis Crane Chancellor* being lately dead) with all due humiliation remonstrated to the *Soveraign*, That the *Office* of *Chancellor* was perpetually annexed to his See, by the foresaid Letters of King *Edward* the Fourth, and though in following times it had been bestowed upon Lay-men, yet he humbly desired his right might be restored. Whereupon at a *Chapter* of the Order held in the Chapterhouse within the Castle of *Windesor*, the 5. of *December* in the year aforesaid, the *Soveraign* proposed to the *Knights-Companions* present, [s] "That though he had of his especial Grace, "made Election of Sir *Thomas Rowe* Knight for his *Chancellor* at that time, yet "having understood a Claim made by the Bishoprick of *Salisbury*, that the place "was annexed to that See. He commanded the *Lords-Companions* of the *Order*, "to take the pretence of right into their considerations: To which proposition "of his *Majesty*, the *Lords* humbly answered, That they thought it was not "their part to search for the Title of any; but that if the Bishop of *Salisbury* did "produce his Evidence, and the proofs thereof, he might present it in Chapter, "to his Majesty, to be considered.

s *Sir Thomas Rowes Journal. p.* 2. *vide etiam Lib. R. p.* 115.

Upon this encouragement, the Bishop prepared a Petition, which was [t] presented and read in *Chapter*, held at the Feast of St. *George* celebrated at *Windesor*, the 18. of *April* ensuing, and here inserted.

t *Ibid. p.* 12. & *Lib. R. p.* 121.

[u] *To the King's most Excellent Majesty* Soveraign *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter.

The humble Petition of John *Bishop of* Sarum, *your Majesties Chaplain in ordinary.*

Sheweth,

That whereas your Majesties most noble Progenitor, King Edward *the Fourth, did by Letters Patent, erect and establish one* Office *of* Chancellor *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *and did then also grant a Charter unto* Richard Beauchamp *Bishop of* Salisbury, *and his Successors for ever, that they should execute that* Office, *in consideration that the Chappel of St.* George *in your Majesties Castle of* Windesor, *was within the Diocess of* Sarum, *and for other considerations in the said Charter specified. Which* Office *was enjoyed by the said* Richard Beauchamp, *and divers of his* Successors *in the See of* Sarum, *according to the Charter, which Charter hath also been confirmed under the great Seal of* England, *by some other* Kings *and* Queens *since the Reign of King* Edward *the Fourth. And was lastly most graciously confirmed by your Royal* Majesty, *in the fourth year of your happy Reign. But to the great prejudice and dishonour of the See of* Sarum, *the use and exercise of the said* Office, *hath been for many years discontinued from the Bishops of your Majesties said Church.*

May it therefore please your most Excellent Majesty, out of your accustomed goodness to the Church, graciously to consider of your Petitioners Claim and Charter, and if your Majesty shall so think fit, to vouchsafe your Petitioner a hearing, or to refer the examination thereof to some others. That thereupon such course may be taken for the restoring and preserving of the right of the said Church herein, either for the present or future time, as your Majesty in your Princely wisdom shall find agreeable to honor and justice.

And the Petitioner according to his duty, shall pray for your Majesties long, happy, and glorious Reign.

To the substance of this Petition it was objected.

1. [w] That the Great Seals of *England*, did not work within, or upon the Statutes and Rules of the *Order* of the *Garter*.

2. That no Grant could prescribe or limit the present *Soveraign*; it being a Fundamental Law within the *Order*, *Suprema Lex*, was *Supremi voluntas*.

3. That it did not appear by the Records of the *Order*, that the place of *Chancellor* was any otherwise conferred upon *Richard Beauchamp* Bishop of *Salisbury*, than, *quam diu Regiæ celeitudini complaceret:* So as the free disposition thereof did remain with the *Soveraign*.

To the first; It was [x] answered by way of exception, as to the Grant of Offices: forasmuch as the power of the Great Seal of *England*, was anciently took into, and became legal within the *Order* in like Cases, and not any Patent for an Office, from the Institution of the Order unto that time; had past under the *Seal* of the *Order*, but under the Great Seal of *England*, and in particular the *Office* of *Chancellor* (as was manifest enough from their Enrolments) For besides the first Grant made by King *Edward* the Fourth, when the *Office* came afterwards into the hands of Lay-men (from the Patent granted to Sir *William Cecil* to that made to Sir *Thomas Rowe*) all past under the said Great Seal; which had not been done, if any legal defect had been therein.

To the second; it being so as was objected, it thence appeared, that the *Soveraign* was as much at liberty to restore this *Office* to the See of *Salisbury*, as continue it to secular Dignities.

To the third; What was alledged out of the Records of the *Order*, related only

[u] *Ex Autogr. penes Jac. Palmer Eq. Aur. nuper hujus Ordin Cancell.*

[w] *Rowes Journal, & Lib. R. Locis cit.*

[x] *Ex Autogr. penes præf. Jac. Palmer.*

only to the time of delivering the Seals to Bishop *Beauchamp*, but when afterwards the *Office* was erected by Letters Patent, it was then granted to him during life.

Something was replied from the Judges opinions, given in this case, *an. Jac. Regis 6.* but the *Soveraign* thought it was not then well considered, to permit the *Chapter Acts* of this *Order*, which hath *Statutes* and *Rules* of its own, and wholly independent from other *Laws*, to receive construction and determination from the Measures and Rules of our *Common-Law*, and therefore notwithstanding what had been objected against the Bishops Claim, the *Soveraign* was pleased justly to pronounce; "[y] That he ought to be heard: and to that purpose, gave "the *Chancellor* order to signifie unto him, that he should prepare and set down "in writing, a brief of the Vouchers and Proofs of his Pretensions, in verification "of his Petition, and send them to the *Chancellor*, to be delivered to the *Knights-*"*Commissioners* (appointed for the Affairs of the *Order*) to consider of them, and "present them at the next *Chapter* to the *Soveraign*, who would therein take such "Order, as was conformable to his most impartial and untainted Justice. y *Rowes Journal. pag.* 12.

The 4. of *October* after, in a Chapter held at *Windesor* during the Feast of St. *George*, the *Chancellor* represented the said Bishop's Petition, with the Vouchers to his Pretensions, which the Bishop exhibited no otherwise than as Inducements and humble Motives, for restoring the ancient right of the Church of *Salisbury*, and perpetually re-uniting the *Chancellorship* of the *Order* to that See, if it should seem agreeable to his Will, Wisdom, and Justice. "[z] But the *Knights-Commissio-*"*ners* having not to that time met, the business was again referr'd to them to be "considered, prepared and abreviated for the *Soveraign*'s consideration and final "judgment. All which the *Chancellor* by Letter thus signified to the Bishop. z *Ibid. p.* 29.

[a] *Right Reverend and my very good Lord,* a *Ibid. p.* 33.

I *May have justly incurred the censure of your Lordship, either of want of manners, or prevarication, that I have not given you an account of the trust you pleased to repose in me, and that I so willingly undertook, both out of true respect I bear to your Lordship, and duty and service to the Church, whose cause you solicite; but I hope your goodness will acquit me of any of these crimes, and be pleased to take my just excuse, that I deferred only, to give you a more certain answer than yet I am able, ye lest a longer delay might endanger the good opinion, which I desire to preserve with you, you may be pleased to know; that at the last* Chapter *of the* Order *held in* October *at* Windesor, *I represented your Lordships Petition, and all the several Vouchers and verifications of your demand and pretension, but his* Majesty *having not leisure at that time to enter into a full debate, did refer it to the* Knights-Commissioners *standing for the* Order, *both to consider and to deliver their opinions, and to make report to him at the next Feast, reserving to* Himself *the final judgment. Of this I have made a Record and registred it in the* Acts *of the* Order *for continuance of your Claim. I have since solicited the* Knights-Commissioners *often to meet upon it, and other occasions of the* Order, *but* hic labor hoc opus, *I cannot procure them till after the Term, when I beseech you to believe, that I will be a faithful Remembrancer, and Advocate of your cause, and that as soon as I can get any resolution, I will thereof render you an account: and if they will do nothing therein, I will again bring it to his* Majesty. *In this business, I cannot omit to let you know, the care of his* Grace *my Lord Archbishop of* Canterbury *in your behalf, who doth often call upon me, and if you please to take notice thereof to him, and to desire him to move his* Majesty *to command some of the* Knights *to meet and to hear it, it will procure both a quick and effectual dispatch, and there shall be of my part no manner of omission, to testifie to your Lordship both my reverence to your person, and desire to deserve of you the name of*

St. Martyns-Lane 29. *Nov.* 1637.

Your Lordships most humble servant Tho. Rowe.

Nor was this worthy *Chancellor* unmindful of his promise, for the next time the *Knights-Commissioners* sat, which was the first of *February* following at *Whitehall*, "He to their considerations presented the foresaid Petition, Claim, and Vouchers, "to be heard by them according to the former *Order*: But it was their opinion, "That unless the Bishop were himself present, it would be labour lost, and that "they could not conclude in the cause, without hearing his own Reply: And there-"fore they entred not into the debate, but *Ordered* the *Chancellor* to write a Letter "to his Lordship, that whensoever he came up to *London*, he should be heard per-"sonally, and his reasons considered, and to the *Soveraign* represented.

b *Rowes Journal. p.36.*

The Letter upon this occasion was as followeth.

c *Ibid. p.37.*

c *My Lord,*

IT hath pleased the Lords Knights-Commissioners *for the* Garter, *to meet upon* Thursday *last, the first day of this Month: where in the first place I presented your Lordships Petition to his* Majesty, *and read the* Order *of Reference upon it made in* Chapter, *and offered unto their consideration the authentick Vouchers to every part, sent me by your Lordship, and urged your Claim as far, as if it had been my own, both by succession of Bishops of* Salisbury *in the* Office *of* Chancellor *until* Henry *the Eighth, and of the first Grant made under the Broad Seal, and of continual renewing thereof in all the* Charters *of Bishops since, to your Lordship, and all other arguments, which either my wit could present, or to which by sincerity, and your trust, I was obliged. But could not induce their Lordships to view them, nor to make any report upon the cause, all the answer I obtained, was, that it was not proper for me to be the Advocate, nor for them to hear, where I could not be furnished with a reply on your part, if they found cause to except against any part of the title, and so they would not judge you by any prejudice: But commanded me to signifie to your Lordship, that whensoever your occasions should bring you to* London, *or the* Court, *that they would hear you, and from you only receive the information. And that when your Lordship should call upon them, they would give you such an answer as the justice of your cause should merit.*

I am sorry to write your Lordship so weak effects, but I desire you to believe, that I have proceeded with all faith and integrity, and that I could do no more: Of this proceeding I acquainted his Grace my Lord Archbishop of Canterbury, *who did think it fit that I should signific to you, how the business stood, that you might be the better prepared against your coming to* London, *where I shall be ready to do you all service in my power, and until then will keep your Papers safe for your use: Unless his* Majesty, *to whom I purpose to render an account of the business, make a new Order for more expedition, which I believe will not be done before your coming, or the next* Chapter. *In hope and desire to be of more use to your Lordship when you shall make your own Claim, or in any other of your commands, I shall ever rest*

St. Martins-Lane
6.Feb.1637.

Your Lordships most humble servant
Tho. Rowe.

After which we find not, that the *Knights-Commissioners* met, either upon this or any other Affair relating to the *Order*, before the Feast of St. *George*, begun to be held at *Windsor* the 20. of *May*, *an.* 14. *Car.* 1. and to that, being added the Ceremonies of the present *Soveraign's Installation*, the Bishop of *Salisbury* thought it not convenient to interrupt any part of that great Solemnity, with the consideration of this Affair; and the *Scotch* War shortly after breaking forth, and troubles growing high at home, the further prosecution was laid aside, and not revived until the 19. of *November*, *an.* 21. *Car.* 2. when *Seth Ward* now Lord Bishop of *Salisbury* took encouragement upon the former grounds and the *Soveraign's* favour, to set on foot this Claim by a Petition presented in *Chapter* then held at *Whitehall*, where after a full debate and consideration had of the justness of his Claim, he obtained the following Decree for re-establishment of this Office on the Bishop of that See upon the first vacancy.

At

[d] *At a* Chapter *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *held by his Majesty* Soveraign, *and the most noble* Companions *hereafter named, in the* Red Chamber *next the* Bed-Chamber *in* Whitehall, *the nineteenth of* November 1669.

d *Vide Lib.Carolin. p.* 65.

Present
His Majesty Soveraign.

His Royal Highness the Duke of York.	*Prince* Rupert.
Duke of Ormond.	*Earl of* Bristol.
Earl of Oxford.	*Earl of* Sandwich.
Earl of Manchester.	*Duke of* Monmouth.

Officers { Prelate, *the Bishop of* Winchester. Register, Garter, Usher.

The Soveraign *then declared, That the reason of calling this* Chapter *was to consider of the pretensions of Dr.* Seth Ward *Bishop of* Salisbury, *exhibited in a Petition; concerning the Title and Claim of himself and his Successors, unto the* Office *of* Chancellor *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter (*when the same should become void*) *the Bishop grounding the equity of his Claim, upon a Charter first granted by King* Edward *the Fourth, in the* 15. *year of his Reign, unto* Richard Beauchamp *Bishop of* Salisbury *and his Successors for ever, which Charter hath been since confirmed under the Great Seal of* England, *by other* Kings *and* Queens, *and particularly by King* Charles *the First, of ever blessed memory; hereupon the Bishop being called in, and commanded to produce his proofs to make good that his pretension, accordingly the Bishop humbly offered an authentique Copy of the original Charter, of the said King* Edward *the Fourth, renewed and confirmed by the said King* Charles *the First, in the fourth year of his Reign; The which being read and duly considered, together with the Objections to the contrary, particularly that the possession and execution of the said* Office *of* Chancellor, *had been for above an hundred years, commited unto Laymen, notwithstanding which, the* Soveraign *and* Companions, *being fully satisfied with the justness of the Claim of the said Bishop, grounded upon the aforesaid Charters, and likewise considering, that the returning of the said* Office *to the first Institution, would be for the honor and dignity of the said most Noble* Order, *the* Soveraign *thereupon, with the unanimous consent of the most Noble* Companions *then present, did Declare and Ordain; That the Bishop of* Sarum, *and his* Successors *for ever, shall have and execute the* Office *of* Chancellor *of the said most Noble* Order, *and receive and enjoy all Rights, Priviledges, and Advantages thereunto belonging, immediately upon the first vacancy of the said Office.*

Proceed we next to the *Oath* the *Chancellor* takes at his admission, which we find to be the [e] same with the *Prelate's*, and in the like humble posture, that is, upon the Knee, and usually administred by the [f] *Register* of the *Order*. When Sir *James Palmer* was to be admitted *Chancellor* ([g] 17. *Jan.an.* 20.*Car.*1.) the *Register* moved the [h] *Soveraign*. That in regard his Majesty had made choice of him for that Office in place of Sir *Thomas Rowe* deceased; and though he had long executed the same, in his absence, and taken the *Oath* as *Deputy Chancellor*, yet being now elected *Chancellor*, ought to take the *Oath* in the quality he was in: The *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* present thought it fit to be done, and thereupon the *Register* gave him the *Oath*; after which being saluted by the *Knights-Companions*, and joy given him of his new Office, he went on with the business of the *Chapter*.

Oath.
e *Lib.N.p.*313.
f *Lib.C p.*107. 112. *& Lib.R. p.*114. *See Palmers large Journal.p.*53. *& Lib.Carolin. p.* 24.
g *Palmers large Journal p.*56.
h *Ibid.*57.

It is clear from the *Precedent* of the *Soveraign's Livery* of the *Garter*, that the *Chancellor's Robe*, was at first the same with the *Prelates*, both for Cloth and Colour, but his proportion of Cloth far less, having allowed him but [i] 5 yards when the *Prelate* had 24. nor but 3 Timber of Miniver gross, where the *Prelate* had 19. beside a large quantity of other Furs. Nor was the *Colour* setled to one kind, until the *Constitutions* of his *Office*, appointed it to be [k] the same with the

Robe.
i *Ex Vetust. MS. pergam. in Officio mag. Gardrob.p.*2.
k *Cap.* 2.

Prelates, [*Crimson*] for no doubt, it was before annually changed (as was the *Prelates*) to the Colour of the *Knights-Companions Surcoats*. Howbeit by the Plate of the ancient Habits of the Officers, it is visible to have wanted the Royal Badges, wherewith the *Prelate*'s *Robe* was then embroidered. When the Colour of the *Prelate*'s *Robe* was changed to *Murrey*, then was the *Chancellors* so also, and made alike in all other particulars. The proportion allowed to Sir *Thomas Smith* for his Livery, *an.* 14. *Eliz.* was[l] 18 yards of Murrey Velvet, 12 yards of Sarcenet for the Lining, one Garter wrought with Pearls of Damask Gold, for the shoulder one Lace (or Cordon) with Buttons and Taffels of Blue Silk and Veniee Gold. And the same materials and proportions were afterwards given out of the *Soveraign*'s great *Wardrobe*, to the succeeding *Chancellors*.

l *Ex Lib. tertio particular. Warrant. temp. Eliz. Reg. p.* 203.

But *an.* 13. *Car.* 1. the *Prelate* and *Chancellor* endeavoured a Reformation of their *Robes*, and upon meeting of some of the *Knights-Commissioners* at *Whitehall* the first of *February* in the foresaid year, who heard and debated several things relating to the *Order*, it was determined, "[m] That the said *Knights* should move "the *Soveraign* for a new *Robe* for the *Chancellor* (notice having been given to "the *Knights-Companions* about a week before, to provide for themselves new "*Mantles* of Celestial Blue) and the Colour being in question, upon the Refor- "mation of the *Knights* Robes, it being alledged (*but without ground*) that the "*Prelate* and *Chancellor* for their upper Robe had from the Foundation, the same "Stuff and Colour that was worn by the *Knights*, it was referr'd to the *Soveraign*. But herein nothing was done till *an.* 13. *Car.* 2. when the Colour both of the *Prelate* and this *Officers Robe*, was changed to *Purple*.

m *Rowes Journal f.* 36.

Badge.

Besides this *Robe*, the *Chancellor* of the *Order* hath an honorable *Badge* assigned him to wear, first granted to Sir *William Peters*, and his Successors, the 9. of *October*, *an.* 1. & 2. *Phil.* & *Mar. viz.*[n] a *Rose* Gold, enclosed within a *Garter*, which he and the succeeding *Chancellors* of the *Order* have ever since worn daily about their necks; at first in a Gold Chain, but since in a Purple Ribband. The Figure of which with those *Badges* worn by *Garter* and *Black-Rod* are to be seen at the beginning of this Chapter.

n *Lib. C. p.* 16.

It seems something to this purpose had been in design a little before, so soon as the *Chancellorship* became vested in a Lay-man; for King *Edward* the Sixth's Statutes did Ordain, [o] That the *Chancellor* should wear about his neck a Cross of the Order, with a Red Rose in a White, of Gold, all compassed within a Garland of Red and White Roses.

o *Cap.* 9.

And beeause it was suggested to the late *Soveraign* King *Charles* the First, That there were differences and uncertainties in some Books remaining with the *Chancellor* touching the wearing his *Badge*; He thereupon gave out the following Warrant, under His Royal Hand and Signet of the *Order* to ascertain the form therein described, and manner of wearing it.

Charles R.

Ex Original penes praef. Jac. Palmer.

CHarles *by the Grace of God King of Great* Britain, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith, and* Soveraign *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, &c. *To all and singular to whom these presents shall come Greeting.* Whereas *there are differences and uncertainties in Books of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *remaining in the custody of the* Chancellor *of our said* Order, *about his wearing of his* Badge *or* Token *about his Neck. And beeause our pleasure is, that the same might be certain and constant: We do therefore of our Soveraign Power and Authority, to whom in any ambiguities arising, the Interpretation, decision, correction, solution, and dispensation of all* Statutes *only belongs, and with the knowledge and consent of our* Companions *of our said* Order, *at this time remaining with us,* Decree *and* Ordain *that our trusty and well beloved Servant Sir* James Palmer *Knight and Baronet,* Chancellor *of our said* Order (*and his* Successors) *shall wear about his neck at all times in honor of his said place (that thereby he may be known to be of that Office and Dignity, as hath been accustomed) a Medal or Jewel of Gold, enamelled with a* Red Rose (*within a* Garter *of Blue enamel with this sentence inscribed* Hony soit qui mal y pense) *or such*

such a one as We or the rest of the Knights-Companions *of the said most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *do or shall from time to time hereafter wear in our* Collars *of the said* Order, *in particular reference unto us and them: And in the reverse thereof he shall bear the Scutcheon of* St. George *enamelled within a* Garter *also, in reference to the* Order *it self, which he only shall wear hanging by a light Purple Ribband, or in a Gold Chain, as hath been accustomed.* Given *at our* Court *at* Oxenford *under the Signet of our* Order, *the* 16. *day of* December, *in the twentieth and one year of our Reign* 1645.

Among the *Officers* of the *Order* the *Chancellor* hath place next beneath the *Prelate*, and in all Proceedings and Sessions, goeth and sitteth on his left hand. And as it was provided by the *Constitutions* of the *Officers*, That if the *Chancellor* hapned to be a Lay-man, he should be also a *Knight*, and have other personal endowments, before set down. So did the late *Soveraign* King *Charles* the First conceive it requisite to confer some further note of honor and estimation upon this Officer, in relation to place and precedence without the *Order*, to which effect there past the following Decree. Priviledges.

q *At a* Chapter *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter *held by the* Soveraign *at* Whitehall *the* 23. *of* April 1629. *present the Right honorable the Earls of* q *Lib R.p.49. vide etiam Lib. I. 25. in Offic. Armor.f.62.*

Mullgrave.	Pembroke.
Montgomery.	Arundel *and* Surrey.
Rutland.	Salisbury.
Carlisle.	Dorset.
Holland.	Barkshire.
Suffolk.	Northampton.

Charles R.

THE Chancellor *of the* Order, *being by the Institution a place of honour, and so disposed of, that the same hath ever been possessed by persons of great worth and virtue, yet because it appears not, that any declaration hath been made of the Rank and right of Place belonging to that* Office, *His* Majesty *hath therefore by the advice of all the* Knights *present at the* Chapter, *held upon the day and Feast of St.* George, Ordered *and* Decreed *that Sir* Francis Crane *the present* Chancellor, *and all others that shall succeed him in that place hereafter, shall in right of that place, in all assemblies, and upon all occasions, be ranked and placed immediately after* Knights, Privy Councellors, *and before the* Chancellor *of the* Exchequer, *the persons holding both places being in* pari gradu, *and consequently before all others, whom the said* Chancellor *is to precede. And to the end publick notice may be taken hereof, and the respects known that is due to that place, His* Majesty *hath commanded an Entry thereof to be made in the* Register *of the* Order. *And is pleased, that the Earl* Marshal *of* England *shall likewise cause the same to be entred in the* Office *of* Arms.

And to the end the place belonging to the *Chancellor* of the *Exchequer* may be certainly known, we have thought fit to transcribe hither so much of the Decree and Establishment of King *James*, made the 20. of *May* in the 10. year of his Reign, as will evidence the same.

r *And his* Majesty *doth likewise by these presents, for Himself, his Heirs, and Successors,* Ordain, *That the* Knights *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *the the* Privy Councellors *of his* Majesty, *His Heirs and Successors, the* Master *of the Courts of* Wards *and* Liveries, *the* Chancellor *and* Under-Treasurer *of the* Exchequer, Chancellor *of the* Dutchy, *the* Chief Justice *of the Court commonly called the* Kings Bench, *the* Master *of the* Rolls, *the* Chief Justice *of the Court of* Common Pleas, *the* Chief Baron *of the* Exchequer, *and all other the* Judges *and* Barons *of the Degree of the Coife of the said Courts, now and for the* r *Pat.10. Jac. pars 10. m.8.*

the time being shall by reason of such their honorable Order, and employment of State and Justice, have place and precedency in all places, and upon all occasions before the Younger Sons *of* Viscounts *and* Barons, *and before all* Baronets, *&c.*

[f Cap. 2.] The foresaid *Constitutions* appoint the *Chancellor* of the *Order* an [f] *Habitation* within the Castle of *Windesor*, like as hath the *Prelate*, and that is the South-west Tower, in the Lower-Ward of the *Castle*, hence called the *Chancellors-Tower*. It appears the possession thereof had been for some time, in the hands of others, and therefore in a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall* the 5. of *November*, *an.* 5. *Car.* 1. it [t Lib. R. p. 55.] was decreed to be [t] restored unto Sir *Francis Crane* then *Chancellor* of the *Order*, and after his decease, to descend to his Successors in right of this *Office*. These Constitutions also Ordained, [u] That this *Officer* should have the like *Diet* and *Liveries* in the *Soveraign's Court*, as were allowed to the Prelate.

[u Loco citato.]

Pension. At the erection of this *Office*, the *Chancellor* had no *Pension* allowed him, towards defraying his charge in the Execution thereof: nor until the *Constitutions* relating to the *Officers* were established: but thereby is setled on him a [w] *Pension* of 100*l. per annum.* in consideration of his Employment, or else an allowance proportionable in *Fees*, *Offices*, or other *Promotions*, over and beside his Lodgings in the Castle, and Liveries at Court.

[w Ibid.]

But as to *Fees* or *Perquisites*, there are none due to this Officer; and for that reason he hath not only the foresaid *Pension*, but all his *disbursements* touching the Affairs of the *Order* allowed him, even to Paper, Wax, and Wafers: and indeed those persons who formerly enjoyed this *Office*, have thought it much below them, to accept either of Fee or Gratuity for any thing done within the *Order*: and so that truly noble person Sir *Thomas Rowe* (sometime the worthy *Chancellor* of this *Order*) out of an extraordinary sence of Honor, affirmed in a [x] Letter to Doctor *Christopher Wren*, *Register*, upon the tender (but his refusal) of some Gratuity; *That his Office was an Office of* Honor, *and not of* Fees, *and that he had always excepted against Fees for the disbursements of the* Soveraign's *Money*. Though he acknowledged some had given his Clerk a small Gratuity for the bare Ingrossing of an *Alms-Knights Patent*, but nothing further.

[x 23. Nov. 1637.]

Seals of the Order. And because the Custody of the *Seals* of the *Order*, belong to this Officer, before we leave this Section, it will be here the fittest place to say something concerning them.

[y E. 3. Stat. Art. 26.] It appears by the *Statutes* of *Institution*, to have been then agreed, [y] That there should belong to this most Noble *Order* a *Common Seal*. This is confirmed by the *Statutes* of King [z] *Henry* the Fifth, and since called the [a] *Great Seal* of the *Order*.

[z Art. 26. a Pat 15. E. 4. p. 4 m 18.]

The use of this Seal is declared to be to [b] seal not only the *Original Statutes*, appointed to remain perpetually within the Treasury of *Windesor Colledge*, as also those [c] *Copies* of which each *Knight-Companion* is obliged to have one in his keeping, but likewise all [d] *Letters* of *Licence* to any of the *Knights-Companions* desirous to purchase Honor abroad, and all [e] *Mandates* and *Certificates* relating to the Order.

[b E. 3. Stat. c Art. 27. d Ibid. Art. e 30. H. 5. Stat. Art. 31.]

After what manner this first *Seal* was designed, or what was engraven thereon, we yet could never find: *Polidore Virgile* tells us, [f] That when the *Founder* of the *Order* had made choice of St. *George* for its *Patron*, he represented him armed, mounted on a Horse, bearing a *Silver Shield*, and thereon a *Red Cross*. But whether St. *George* thus designed was engraved on the first Seal, or only a Scutcheon of his Arms, as in after times, is not certain: But this Author notes, that the Founder clothed his Soldiers in *White Jackets* or *Coats*, and on their Breasts and Backs sowed *Red Crosses*, parallel to the Arms anciently assigned to St. *George*, as also to the Kingdom of *England*, placed under his Patronage, which Arms the *Soveraigns* of this *Order* have ever since advanced in their Standards, both by Land and Sea.

[f Argl Hist l. 19. p. 379.]

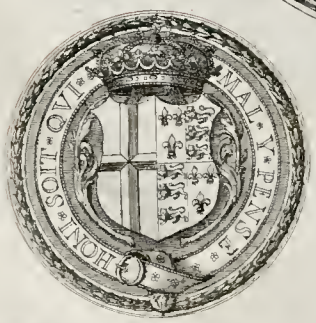
But besides this *Common Seal* King *Henry* the Fifth, in the [g] 9. year of his Reign, Instituted a [h] *Privy Signet*, in case weighty Affairs should occasion the *Soveraign* to go out of this Kingdom: The use whereof was to set to all Acts made by the *Soveraign* beyond Sea, to difference them from those of his *Deputies* here in *England*.

[g Lib. N. p. 67. h H 5. Stat. Art. 21 vide Lib. N. p. 67. & 68.]

King

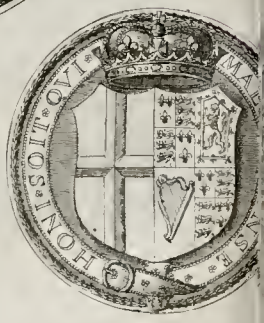
III

I



IIII

II



W. hollar fecit. A° 1670

King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes* ordain the making both of a *Common-Seal* and *Signet*; and direct, that the *Arms* of the *Order* should be engraved upon each of them. The *Common-Seal* used in his Reign we have seen and represented in the inserted Plate under the Number [I] the *Signet* being designed after the same manner, but less. The use of this *Seal* was continued (as appears from several Commissions of Lieutenancy, that have come to our hands) until the Reign of King *James*, and then altered to that Draught placed under number [II].

There was a like *Seal* made at the beginning of the Reign of King *Charles* the First, which *being* [i] *judged too little for the honor of the Soveraign's Commissions*, it was afterwards Decreed in *Chapter* held the 18. of *April*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 1. [k] *That a new one should be made of a larger size, with the accustomed Arms and Motto, and the care thereof left to Sir* Thomas Rowe *the then Chancellor*, and it appears he executed this Command with all due consideration, by the nobleness of the design exhibited under the Number [III]. In the same Decree direction was given for making a new *Signet*, the former being thought too big for Letters; this also was effected by the said *Chancellor*, and represented under the number [IV].

i k *Rowes Journal.* p. 11. *vide Liv. R.* p. 121.

It was at the same Chapter further Decreed, [l] *That all* Legations *to deliver the* Order *to Forreign Princes, all other* Acts *bearing the stile of* Commissions, *all* Patents *of Offices and Fees, all* Grants *or* Licenses *to go out of the Kingdom, should be sealed with this Seal, which should be thence forward called the* Great Seal *of the* Order. *So also the* [m] *Book of* Statutes *sent to Elect* Knights *or* Forreign Princes, *being fixed to a Label of Blue Silk and Gold, according to ancient Custom. And* [n] *that all* Letters *concerning the* Order, *whether of signification of Election, or Lieutenancy, or Summons upon Prorogation, or other directions from the* Soveraign, *should only be sealed with the Signet.*

l *Lib. R.* p. 119.
m *Ibid.*
n *Ibid.* p. 120.

These

o *Lib.R.p.* 120.

These two *Seals* were by the said Decree appointed *to be thenceforth*[o] *born before the* Soveraign *in all publick Assemblies, during the celebration of St.* George's *Feast, or in other its Solemnities, by the* Chancellor *of the* Order, *in a Purse of Blue Velvet.* And[p] command given to Sir *Thomas Rowe* to provide one accordingly. On the[q] foreside of which Purse, was richly embroidered (by *Edmund Harison* the *Soveraign*'s Embroiderer) with fine Venice Gold and Silver, Gold and Silver Purls and Plates, and variety of coloured Naples Silks, the Arms of St. *George* impaled with the *Soveraign*'s, surrounded with a Garter, and Crowned, having a very fair running work or compartiment round about, the charge of which came to[r] 13 *l.* 6 *s.* 10 *d.*

p *Rowes Journal. loco cit.*
q *Vide Comput. Tho. Rowe nuper Cancellar. penes praef. Jac. Palmer.*

By the *Statutes* of *Institution* it was Ordained, [s]That in case the *Knight-Companion*, to whose trust the *Soveraign* did commit the *Seal* of the *Order*, should upon any lawful occasion happen to be absent from the Court, he should in the mean time leave it behind him, with some other of the *Knights-Companions* present with the *Soveraign*, to the intent it might be always neer him, so long as he remained within the Kingdom: but if the *Soveraign* went beyond Sea, then his *Deputy* was to have the same disposal of it, as himself had: and the *Signet* of the *Order* should suffice him to Seal all such Acts and Writings as should be made there.

s *Art.* 31. *vide H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 31.

The distance from Court, is by the[t] *Constitutions* for the *Officers* of the *Order*, limited to 10 Miles, and by the[u] *Statutes* of King *Henry* the Eighth to 20.

t *Cap.* 2.
u *Art* 29.

Upon consideration whereof we find[w] Sir *Thomas Rowe* Chancellor having some occasions *Anno* 13. *Car.* 1. to be absent from the Court above 20 Miles, acquainted the *Soveraign* therewith, and tendring him the *Seals* of the *Order*, He was pleased to dispence with the *Statutes*, and give him leave to keep them, nevertheless in his own Custody.

w *See his Journal.p.*21.

SECT. III.

The Register's Institution, Oath, Mantle, Badge, Priviledges, *and* Pension.

His Institution.

THis Officer was one of the three constituted at the *Institution* of the *Order*, under the Title of *[a] *Registrator* and[a] *Registrarius*, and so is called in the[b] *Statutes* of King *Henry* the Fifth. Yet in the *Black Book* he is frequently stiled *Scriba*, and in the *Registrum Chartaceum*, and *Blue Book*, *Actuarius*.

* *E.*3 *Stat. Art.*34.
a *Ord Stat.in Bibl. Hatton. Art.* 36.
b *Art.*18. & 36.

What was the first Register's Name, or who were his Successors, unto the Reign of King *Henry* the Fifth, we cannot discover, but it may be presumed they were *Canons* of *Windesor*, because this Office was at first appointed to[c] one of the Colledge, namely a[d] *Canon Resident* there: besides, those *Registers* we meet with, mentioned in the *Black Book* from the Reign of King *Henry* the Fifth, to the beginning of King *Henry* the Eighth, were also *Canons* of this *Colledge*, among whom (and the first we observe so called) was *John Coringham*, as (among other Testimonies) the fragments of a Glass Inscription in the Chancel of *Clure* Church, neer *Windesor*, where he was Rector, witnesseth.

c *E.*3 *Stat. Art.*34.
d *Ord. Stat in Bibl. Hatton. Art.*35.

The first *Dean* of *Windesor*, constituted *Register* of the *Order*, was[e] *John Vesey*, *an.* 8. *H.* 8. the next[f] *Owen Oglethorp*, *an.* 1. *Mar.* many of whose Successors in this Deanry (though not all) have since been admitted to this Office, nevertheless as they were[g] *Canons* not *Deans* of *Windesor*. And 'tis not unlike, but the *Deans* were made choice of for this Employment, as being enabled to support the reputation of the Registership with the Revenue of this Deanry, better than any of the *Canons* though with addition of the Pension appointed thereto. But at a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall* the 22. of *April*, *an.* 11. *Car.* 1. it pleased the then *Soveraign* to declare[h] how suitable and convenient it seemed to him, that the Office of the *Dean* and *Register* should meet in one and the same person, as for some time past it had

c *Regist. Chartac. f* 53.*b.*
f *Lib.C p.*7.
g Non quatenus Decani sed quatenus Canonici ejusdem muneris capaces facti sunt. *Frith in suo Decan. & Canonic. Catalog.*
h *Lib.R.p.*107.

had been enjoyed, and therefore commanded this his judgment and purpose to be entred among the *Annals* of the *Order*, that so it might pass to future times, from Example into Rule.

If we look into the *Constitutions* of this *Office*, we shall find that a [i] *Secular* person is made capable of this Employment no less than an *Ecclesiastick*, howbeit to be a [k] *man of singular integrity, eminent quality, a Knight, and well approved of for Experience and Learning.* But if an Ecclesiastick, then is it appointed that he be [l] *Learned, a professor either of Divinity or Law, that is either Canon or Civil Law, in which respect he is supposed to have dignity in some Cathedral Church, or else promoted by the* Soveraign *to a Canonship at* Windsor. Nevertheless, whether he be a Lay-man or Ecclesiastick, there is here put upon him Qualifications sutable to what the *Statutes* of *Institution* do Ordain, to wit, [m] *That he be a very knowing person, able to perform the Office, and* [n] *most fit both for Learning and Virtue.*

i & k *Cap. 3.*
l *Ibid.*
m *Art. 24. vide etiam H. 5. Stat. Art. 36.*
n *Ord. Stat. in Lib. N. Art. 33.*

The particulars of the ancient *Oath*, taken by the *Register*, are set down in the *Statutes* of *Institution*, the substance being [o] *To enter upon the Registry with all fidelity, the Scrutenies, Elections, Penalties, Reconciliations, and all other Acts relating to the Order.* To which in one of the Exemplars this general Clause is added, [p] *That he shall faithfully discharge his Duty in all things.* But in King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign, the [q] same *Oath* was enjoined him, as the *Prelate* and *Chancellor* took.

Oath.
o *Art 34. H. 5. Stat. Art 35.*
p *Ord Stat. in Lib. N. Art. 33.*
q *Lib. N. p. 313.*

At this *Officer*'s admittance, he takes the *Oath*, kneeling at the *Soveraign*'s feet, while the *Prelate* heretofore pronounced the words, for so did he when [r] *Owen Oglethorp* took it *an.* 1. *Mar.* so likewise upon [s] *John Boxolls* admittance *an.* 5. & 6. *Phil. & Mar.* But being absent *an.* 3. *Eliz.* when *George Carew* was sworn, the *Oath* was administred by the [t] *Chancellor*. *An.* 4. *Car.* 1. the *Prelate*, *Chancellor*, and *Register* took their *Oaths* at one time, and then the Ceremony was ordered in this manner, [u] First Doctor *Matthew Wren Register* took it kneeling between the *Soveraign's* Knees, the *Black Rod* holding the Evangelists, whereon he laid his hand, and *Garter* read the words out of the *Black Book*: this done the *Register* read the words of the *Prelate's Oath* when he was sworn, and in the last place did the like to the *Chancellor*. Thus also did *Garter* read the words to Doctor *Christopher Wren*, admitted *Register*, [w] *an.* 11. *Car.* 1. as also [x] *an.* 12. *Car.* 2. to Doctor *Brune Ryves*.

r *Lib. C. p. 7.*
s *Ibid p. 23.*
t *Ib. p. 32. vide etiam p. 194.*
u *Lib. R. p. 39.*
w *Ibid. p. 107.*
x *Lib Carolin. p 22.*

What *Habit* was assigned this *Officer* at the Institution of the *Order* we do not find; but it afterwards appears by the *Precedent* for the *Livery* of the *Garter*, that his allowance was the same with the *Chancellors*, that being 5 yards of Woollen Cloth, and three Timber of Miniver gross, and as much as those *Knights-Companions* had, who were under the Degree of an Earl.

Mantle.

That *Habit* wherein he is represented in a [y] Proceeding of King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign, appears to be Ecclesiastick, *viz.* a Black Gown, a Surplice over that, reaching to his Ancles, and thereon a Mantlet of Furs; but the [z] *Constitutions* of his *Office* appoint him not any, wherein there seems some defect, seeing the *Habits* thereby assigned both to *Garter* and *Black Rod* refer to the *Registers*, to be the same with his. Notwithstanding from the Plate of the Officers ancient Habits, exhibited above, it may be plainly seen to be a *Mantle*, somewhat of a Russet Colour, faced with a pane of Blue, whereon is embroidered a Flower de Lis, crowned Gold, then another pane of Red, thereon a Lion crowned Gold, and so are they alternately placed to the bottom. To this *Mantle* belong Cordans of Silk, Blue and Yellow.

y *Lib. N. p. 196.*
z *Cap 3.*

Since that time, not only the *Register*'s, but also *Garter*'s, and *Black-Rod*'s *Robes* have received some alteration; for by a Decree in *Chapter* held at St. *James*'s House, the first of *June an.* 4. & 5. *Ph. & Mar.* these Officers were assigned *Mantles* of *Crimson Sattin*, lined with Taffety, and a Scutcheon of St. *George*'s Arms embroidered on the left shoulder, but not encompassed with a *Garter*, having like Buttons and Tassels, as were appointed to the *Prelate* and *Chancellor*. The Proportion of Sattin assigned to each *Mantle* was * 14. yards, and as many yards of White Taffety.

* *Ex Lib. præf. particular. Warr. in mag. Gardrob. p 131*

And though the *Register*'s *Mantle* was *an.* 27. *Eliz.* made of the preceeding

 materials,

materials and had like trimming, yet did it differ in the proportions, here being allowed[a] 18 yards of Crimson Sattin, and but 12 of Taffety. From hence these *Mantles* continued unalterable in every thing until after the present *Soveraign's* return into *England*, when (20. *Feb. an.* 13. *Car.* 2.) there issued a[b] Warrant to the Master of the Great Wardrobe, to prepare for this *Officer*, as also for *Garter*, and *Black Rod*, for their Liveries *Mantles* of *Scarlet Sattin*, each containing 18 yards, and 10 yards of White Taffety for lining, but agreeable in all other things with the former: yet why the *Colour* became altered, the Warrant doth not express.

a *Lib. particular. Warr. temp. Eliz. R. p.* 201.
b *Appendix Numb.* X.

Badge.

Though this *Officer* hath not any *Badge* assigned, for daily wearing, yet in the Plate at the beginning of this Chapter, he seems (at the publick Solemnities of the Order) to have heretofore carried a *Scrowle* in his hand, and by the Proceeding in Queen *Elizabeth's* Reign (c hereafter inserted) a *Book*, both proper Symbols of his Office.

c *Cap.* 21. *Sect.* 3.

In Doctor *Christopher Wren's* Registership, the *Soveraign* gave him command to cover the *Red Book* of the *Order* with Crimson Velvet, and assigned for the Device two *Pens* in Saltire within the *Garter*, above which these two Letters C. R. crowned; all being wrought in rich embroidery (so also the Border) with *Venice* Gold and Silver, Purls and Plates of Gold and Silver, and various Colours of *Naples* Silk by *Edmund Harison* the then *Soveraign's* Embroiderer, after the manner here exprest, cost[d] 12 *l.* 17 *s.* 6 *d.* This *Book* he was commanded to bear before his Breast, on all solemn occasions, when he wore his Mantle; and thereupon, for his better ease and convenience, he made a Belt and Ouch to hang it at.

d *Vide Autogr. penes præf. Jac. Palmer.*

So

So great a regard had the *Soveraigns* of this *Order*, not only to this *Officer*, but likewise to *Garter* and *Black-Rod*, that they took them into a particular protection, and by the *Constitutions* of their *Offices*, Granted, [e] *That they, their Goods and Servants should securely remain under the perpetual protection and safeguard of the* Soveraign. *And if any injury or violence should chance to be offered them, either by Subjects or Forreiners, whensoever they should exhibit their complaints to the* Soveraign, *either Himself, with the* Knights-Companions, *should afford them Justice, or cause it to be administred according to right and equity; but if the adverse party should refuse to submit his cause to the* Soveraign, *then the* Soveraign *and* Knights-Companions *should shew themselves so far inclinable towards these* Officers, *as to be ready to allow them all due favour, countenance, and protection, as much as should be consistent with justice and equity.* Priviledges. e Cap. 6.

Upon the strength and security of this ancient Priviledge, and to avoid the charge and tediousness of a Sute at Law, Doctor *Christopher Wren, Register*, petitioned the *Soveraign* in *Chapter* held at *Whitehall* the [f] 19. of *April an.* 13. *Car.* 1. against one *Thornhill*, who under pretence of digging for Salt-Petre, had so undermined his Pigeon-house, built on the Rectory of *Knoil-magna* in *Wiltshire*, that it fell down: Upon reading of the Petition it was resolved by the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, [g] *That they would consider the extent and purport of the* Grant *in the* Constitutions, *and until it were further declared, the* [h] Chancellor *of the* Order *should have power upon Information from any of the said* Officers, *of any rigour upon controversie begun in any other* Court, *to write Letters under the Signet of the* Order, *That all vexation against them should be superseded, until information of the Cause were given to, and determination therein resumed by the* Soveraign, *or leave of him obtained to proceed.* f Lib.R. p.125. g } Rowes h } Journal pag.15.

After this it seems *Thornhill* was summoned before the *Lords-Commissioners* of the *Navy*, and his [i] negative Answer given them, represented to the *Soveraign* in another *Chapter*, held the 4. of *October* ensuing, whereupon it was Ordered, [k] *That the* Chancellor *should write a Letter to the same* Lords-Commissioners, *and another to the Earls of* Pembroke, Arundel, *and* Dorset, *three of the* Knights-Companions *of the* Order, *to be enjoined to them, that they, or any three of them should convent the said* Thornhill *before them, and write their Letter to any Gentlemen or others neer dwelling unto* Knoil-magna, *to view and testifie the truth, to hear any further proof on the behalf of either party, and to give sentence according to Justice, that so a tedious suit in Law might be prevented, and the dignity of this most Noble* Order *protected.* These Commands the *Chancellor* performed the [l] 10. of *November* following, and Certificates being returned from the Country, the *Knights-Companions* (in a *Chapter* held the [m] 23. of *May an.* 14. *Car.* 1.) were moved to peruse them, which they promised to do; but [n] before they could meet, *Thornhill*, being Indicted for conveying Salt-Petre to *Dunkirk*, fled: and so the prosecution of this business fell. i Ibid. k } l Ibid. p.30. m } Palmers n } Journal pro anno 1638. p. 21.

Upon the same ground was it, that the *Register* obtained from the late *Soveraign* his gracious protection for Himself, Servants, and Estate, in the late War, in the form following.

Charles R.

WHereas *by the ancient constitutions and Laws of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *the* Register *of our said* Order *is to have his person and estate secured from violence and injury, to the end he or his Ministers may securely live under our perpetual protection and safeguard, and as often as he shall be molested for himself, or for any thing that belongs unto him, he is to receive our protection, and the assistance of the* Companions *of our said* Order *according to equity and right.* Palmers large Journal p.68.

These are therefore to will and command all men of what condition soever they be, not to trouble or molest Doctor Christopher Wren *Dean of* Windesor, *and* Register *of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter; *or any of his Ministers whomsoever, or any thing that belongs to him whatsoever, but to suffer his Person, Servants, and Estate to*

be in quiet, security, and peace, without any injury or violence to be offered by any unto him or his, as they and every of them will answer the contrary at their peril. Given *at our Court at* Oxford, *under the Signet of our* Order, *the* 12. *day of* December *in the* 19. *year of our Reign.*

Pension. o *Cap.* 3.

This *Officer* by the *Constitutions* of his *Office*, hath a *Pension* of o 50 *l. per annum* allowed him; or proportionable in Fees, Offices, or other Profits. And *an.* 1. & 2. *Phil. & Mar.* the like Pension was granted to p *Owen Oglethorp*, Dean of *Windesor*, out of the Exchequer, until some Ecclesiastical Preferment of like value should be conferr'd on him by the *Soveraign*. The same was confirmed to q Doctor *Maxey*, by Decree in *Chapter* 23. *April an. Jac. Reg.* 16. and afterwards to r Doctor *Beaumont* by Letters Patent under the Great Seal of *England* in the 20. of the said King: for which there is a f most grateful acknowledgment entred among the Annals.

p *Lib. C. p.* 18.
q *Ibid. p.* 192.
r *Lib. R. p.* 4.
f Gratiæ itaq; amplissimæ & perennes pro maximo isto favore Regiæ celsitudini sint semper debitæ & exolutæ. *Ibid.*

But there needed no assignment of Lodgings at *Windesor* to this Officer, as there was to the rest, considering both the *Canons* and *Dean* were provided of Houses belonging to their Ecclesiastical Dignities within the *Colledge*, at the Institution of the *Order*.

SECT. IV.

Garter's Institution, Oath, Mantle, Ensign, Badge, Priviledges, *and* Pension.

His Institution. a b c *Appendix Numb. V.*

KIng *Henry* the Fifth *Soveraign* of this most Noble *Order*, a seriously contemplating its honor upon good and mature deliberation, and with advice and consent of all the *Knights-Companions*, b Ordained and Instituted this *Officer*, and for the Dignity of the *Order*, was pleased he should be the c Principal Officer within the *Office* of *Arms*, and chief of all the Servants of Arms.

d *Colleth. W. le N. Cl.*
e *Pat.* 41. *E.* 3. *pars* 1. *m.* 13.
f *Pat.* 3. *R.* 2. *p.* 1. *m.* 10.

The services enjoined him relating to the *Order*, were in time preceding performed by d *Windesor Herald* at Arms, an Officer created with that Title, by King *Edward* the Third, much about the time of his Instituting the *Order*; and an annual Pension of e 20 Marks granted him out of the Exchequer, by Letters Patent for life, which received confirmation from King f *Richard* the Second.

But as to the nature of his employment, comprehended under this later part of his Title, and thus annext to the Office of *Garter*, we have here no direct occasion to discourse off; nothing therein properly relating to the service he is to perform within this *Order*. Nevertheless, where any are desirous to be informed of it, some part of his Priviledges, Employments, and Duty, are to be found in the g *Constitutions* of his *Office*, others in the h *Constitutions* made by the Duke of *Norfolk* Earl Marshal of *England*, *an.* 10. *Eliz.* and lastly by the i *Lords Commissioners* constituted for the Office of Earl Marshal, dated the 22. of *November an.* 20. *Car.* 2.

g *Cap.* 3.
h i *In Archiv. Offic. Arm.*

Sir *William Brugges* was the person first created *Garter*, and called in the Institution of his Office *Jartier Roy d' Armes des Anglois*, but else where his Title is found to run thus, k *Willelmus Brugges alias dictus Gartier Rex Armorum.* This Sir *William* became a great Benefactor to St. *George*'s Church at *Stamford*, and in the Windows of the Chancel caused to be represented King *Edward* the Third, with his 25 first *Knights-Companions* kneeling, habited in their Mantles, and Surcoats of Arms: which upon my journey thither, *an.* 1664. I found so broken and defaced, that no tolerable Draught of them could be taken, fit to exhibit to the Readers satisfaction.

k *Pat.* 7. *H.* 6. *m.* 8.

John Smert, the immediate Successor to Sir *Will. Brugges*, had this Office given him

him by Letters Patent under this Title [l] *Johannes Smert Rex Armorum de Garteria*, and *John Wrythe* was ſtiled [m] *Principalis Heraldus & Officiarius incliti Ordinis Garterii Armorum*; *Rex Anglicorum*. But [n] Sir *Gilbert Dethick*, leaving out *Heraldus*, joined *Principalis* with *Rex*, and ſo it hath continued ſince *Principalis Rex Armorum Anglicorum*, Principal King of Engliſh Arms.

l *Pat.* 28. *H.* 6. *m.* 25.
m *Pat.* 18. *E.* 4. *p.* 2. *m.* 28.
n *Pat.* 4 *E.* 6. *p.* 2.

In the *Conſtitutions* of his *Office*, he is called [o] *Garterus Rex Armorum Angliæ*, whom the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* thereby Ordained, to be a Gentleman of Blood and Arms, of untainted reputation, and born within the Kingdom of *England*. Beſides, as King *Henry* the Fifth did before, ſo doth King *Henry* the Eighth here declare, [p] That he ſhould be chief of all the Officers of Arms, attending upon the Crown of *England*.

o *Cap.* 4.
p *Ibid.*

Oath.

The ſubſtance of his *Oath* adminiſtred by the *Regiſter* at his admiſſion, whilſt he humbly kneeleth at the *Soveraign*'s feet, in the Chapter-houſe, is

1. [q] *To yield obedience to the* Soveraign *and* Knights-Companions.
2. *To keep ſilence, and not diſcloſe the ſecrets of the* Order.
3. *To make ſignification of the death of each* Knight-Companion.
4. *To execute all things faithfully, committed to his care.*
5. *To enquire diligently after all the* Noble Acts *of the* Knights Companions, *and certifie them to the* Regiſter.
6. *To be faithful in the exerciſe of his* Office.

q *Appendix Num.* VII.

And we find it obſerved, that an [r] *Oath*, conſiſting of theſe particulars, was adminiſtred to *Garter*, at a Chapter held at *Greenwich*, *an.* 28. *H.* 8. which is to be underſtood of Sir *Chriſtopher Barker*, admitted *Garter* that very year.

r *MS.* 4. *penes W. le N Cl.*

Mantle.

We find no allowance given to this *Officer* for his *Habit* in the *Precedent* of the *Garter* for *Liveries*, nor among the *Books* in the *Soveraign*'s *Great Wardrobe*, whence it may be preſumed, he had no particular Habit aſſign'd him at firſt, but was diſtinguiſhed from the reſt of the *Officers* of the *Order*, by his *Coat* only, embroidered with the *Soveraign*'s *Arms*, like as the Provincial Kings then wore.

But after the *Conſtitutions* of the *Officers* were eſtabliſhed, there was appointed him a [s] *Habit*, in all things like to the *Regiſters* (ſaving that the Ground whereon the Lions and Flowers de Lis were embroidered, was wholly Red) and this to be worn only at the Publick Solemnities of the *Order*; the faſhion and embroidery of which appears in the Plate exhibited at the beginning of this Chapter. Queen *Mary* caus'd it to be made of [t] *Crimſon Sattin*, and ſo it continued till ſhortly after the preſent *Soveraign*'s return, when the Colour was altered to *Scarlet*.

s *Cap.* 4.
t *Lib.C. p.* 24.

Enſign.

This *Officer* is appointed to bear a [u] *White Rod* or *Scepter* at every Feaſt of St. *George* the *Soveraign* being preſent, gilded at both ends, and at the top a Scutcheon of the Arms of the *Order*, impaled with the *Soveraign*'s *Arms*. In the fore-mentioned Plate, the Figure of this *Scepter* hath theſe Arms crowned, but no directions for it given in the Conſtitutions, nor for the Crown on his head, wherewith he is there repreſented, which at theſe Solemnities of the *Order*, neither is, nor hath been uſed that we can diſcover.

u *Conſtitut. ad Officiales Ordin attinentes, Cap.* 4.

Badge.

There was aſſigned him by Queen *Elizabeth* a [w] *Badge* of Gold, to be worn daily by him and his Succeſſors, before the Breaſt, in a Gold Chain or Ribband, and thereon enamelled the *Soveraign*'s *Arms*, crowned with an Imperial Crown, and both furrounded with the Princely *Garter*; but Sir *Edward Walker* when made *Garter*, obtained the *Soveraign*'s Licenſe to impale therein St. *George*'s *Arms*, with thoſe of the *Soveraign*'s of the *Order*, of which *Badge*, the foreſide and backſide are both alike.

w *Lib.C. p.* 53.

Priviledges.

There is a *Houſe* appointed for his habitation within *Windeſor Caſtle*, and is the middle Weſt Tower in the lower Ward, which thereupon hath gain'd the name of *Garter's Tower*. It was by a Decree in *Chapter* [x] annexed for ever to the *Office* of *Garter*, and reſtored to Sir *William Segar*'s poſſeſſion the 2. of *May* 1630. By the *Conſtitutions* of his *Office* he is to be allowed [y] *Baron Service* in the *Soveraign*'s *Couri*, and his Table ſerved next after the Dean of the Chappel, with ſuch [z] *Liveries* as of old were accuſtomed.

x *Lib.R. p* 55.
y, z *Cap.* 4.

It

Pension.

a b c *Appendix Num.* V.

It appears that King *Henry* the Fifth, after his instituting this Office, died, [a] before he had setled any Pension upon Sir *William Brugges*, for supportation of his little Estate, which the *Knights-Companions* taking into consideration, and desiring that for the honor of the *Order* he should receive a reasonable subsistence among themselves, by which he might more honorably comport himself to the service of the *Order*, till the Infant King should come to age, and be more largely provided for: [b] They being present in *Chapter*, with the consent of the *Prelate*, did assign and ordain the said Sir *William* to receive of each of them annually at the Feast of St. *George* the Pensions following, *viz.*

Of the [c] Bishop *of* Winchester Prelate	5	*Marks.*
Of every Duke	5	
Of every Earl	6	*Nobles.*
Of every Baron *or* Baneret	4	*Nobles.*
Of every Knight Batehelor	2	*Nobles.*

The first payment was agreed on to be made in hand, and so to continue yearly without failing; with request to the absent *Knights*, that for the honor of the *Order*, and causes in the Instrument exprest, they would consent to and approve of their Ordinance and Agreement, which pass'd under the *Seal* of the *Order*, and bears date in the Chapter-house at *Windesor* in the Feast of St. *George*, *an.* 1422. but there is a mistake in the date, for at that time King *Henry* the Fifth was alive, and died not till the 31. of *August* following St. *George*'s day in that year.

Afterwards King *Henry* the Sixth, in consideration of the good serviecs performed by Sir *William Brugges* to his Father and Himself, with consent of his Council [d] granted him by Letters Patent an annual Pension of 20 *l.* out of the Fee Farm of the City of *Winchester* during pleasure, which Pension upon surrender of this Patent, He [e] granted a new to *him* and *Agnes* his Wife for their lives, and the longer liver of them. And when this Office (upon Sir *William Brugges* death) was given to *John Smert* Guyenne Herald (3. *April an.* 28. *H.* 6.) he had the [f] yearly Pension of 20 *l.* granted him therewith for life, out of the Exchequer. But his Successor *John Wrythe* Norroy, obtained an increase of Pension to [g] 40 *l. per annum* made payable out of the small Customs of the City of *London*. This annual sum was after confirmed to *Garter* by the [h] *Constitutions* of his *Office* and an [i] augmentation from the then *Knights-Companions* also made to the Pensions granted by their Predecessors upon the death of King *Henry* the Fifth, *viz.*

d *Pat.* 7. *H.* 6. *m.* 8.
e *Pat.* 24. *H.* 6. *p.* 1. *m.* 11.
f *Pat.* 28. *H.* 6. *p.* 2. *m* 25.
g *Pat.* 18. *E.* 4. *p* 2. *m.* 28.
h i *Cap.* 4.

Of *A* Duke	4	*Pounds.*
Of *A* Marquess	5	*Marks.*
Of *An* Earl	4	*Marks.*
Of *A* Baron	6	*Nobles.*
Of *A* Knight-Batehellor	4	*Nobles.*

In succeeding times the *Soveraign* thought fit to increase his Pension to 50 *l. per ann.* (now paid out of the Revenue setled upon the Order) and the *Knights-Companions* yet to augment their Annuities, which they did by the following Decree.

Ex ipso Autogr.

AT a Chapter *holden at* Windesor, *the Feast of St.* George *being there solemnized the xiii. xiv. and xv. days of* September, Anno Domini 1617. *It was* Ordained *and* Decreed *by the mutual consent of the* Knights *and* Companions *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter *then present (the* Soveraign *thereto assenting) That their Officer Sir* William Segar Garter *Knight, King of Arms of that* Order, *should then, and from thenceforth have renewed and paid unto him certain Annual Fees and Pensions, anciently due to his Place and Predecessors, with an increase of ten pounds* per annum, *which his* Majesty *forth of his Royal Bounty hath given unto his said Servant for his better maintenance and support; As also of Prince* Charles *Prince of* Wales *the sum of eight pounds, and of every* Duke *of the blood six pounds; all other Estates,* viz. *a* Duke *not of the Blood, four pounds, a* Marquess *five Marks, an*

an Earl *four Marks, a* Viſcount *ſeven Nobles, a* Baron *forty ſhillings, and a* Knight Batchelor *that ſhall be of the* Order, *twenty ſix ſhillings and eight pence. All which ſaid ſums of money, according to the ſeveral degrees of their Eſtates, are to be paid unto the ſaid* Garter *or his Aſſigns yearly at St.* George's Feaſt, *or immediately after, as well by the* Knights *then preſent, as by thoſe that ſhall be abſent, or hereafter are to ſucceed in the ſaid* Order. *And after the deceaſe of the ſaid* Garter *to his* Succeſſors *for ever.*

Prince Charles, *Prince of* Wales	viii *l.*
The Earl of Nottingham	liii *s.* iv *d.*
The Earl of Northumberland	liii *s.* iv *d.*
The Earl of Worceſter	liii *s.* iv *d.*
The Lord Sheffeild	xl *s.*
The Earl of Suffolk	liii *s.* iv *d.*
The Earl of Suſſex	liii *s.* iv *d.*
The Earl of Derby	liii *s.* iv *d.*
The Earl of Exceter	liii *s.* iv *d.*
The Duke of Lenox	iv *l.*
The Earl of Southampton	liii *s.* iv *d.*
The Earl of Marr	liii *s.* iv *d.*
The Earl of Penbroke	liii *s.* iv *d.*
The Earl of Montgomery	liii *s.* iv *d.*
The Earl of Arundel	liii *s.* iv *d.*
The Earl of Somerſet	liii *s.* iv *d.*
The Earl of Kelly	liii *s.* iv *d.*
The Viſcount Wallingford	xlvi *s.* viii *d.*
The Earl of Rutland	liii *s.* iv *d.*
The Marqueſs of Buckingham	iii *l.* vi *s.* viii *d.*
The Earl of Leiceſter	liii *s.* iv *d.*

Charles P.

Nottingham.	Northumberland.
E. Worceſter.	E. Sheffeild.
T. Suffolk.	Ro. Suſſex.
Will. Derby.	Exceter.
Lenox.	H. Southampton.
Penbroke.	Montgomery.
T. Arundell.	R. Somerſet.
Fenton.	W. Walingford.
J. Rutland.	G. Buckingham.

Laſt of all at [l] St. *Georges Feaſt* held at *Windeſor* the 22. 23. and 24. of *April, an.* 15. *Car.* 2. Sir *Edward Walker* now *Garter* repreſented to the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* by Petition, That the annual *Penſions* of the *Inſtalled Knights* then in arrear for one year amounted to 94 *l.* 13 *s.* 04 *d.* according to the proportions laſt above decreed, whereof the *Soveraign's* part (he being to pay for all *Stranger-Knights*) was at that time 32 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* And therefore humbly prayed, that his *Majeſty* would pleaſe to grant him and his Succeſſors, to receive in lieu, not only of the ſaid Penſions from *Himſelf* and *Knights-Companions* both Strangers and Subjects, but for quitting his right and juſt pretence to his annual Penſion of 50 *l.* to his allowances for preparing *Scutcheons*, and removal of *Atchievements*, 100 *l. per annum*, out of the yearly Revenue ſetled and aſſigned to the uſe of the *Order*. l *Ex Colleg. E. W. G.*

This Petition the *Soveraign* was pleaſed to refer to a [m] *Committee* of the *Knights-Companions*, namely the Duke of *Albemarle*, the Earls of *Lindſey*, *Mancheſter*, *Sandwich*, and *Strafford*, who being attended by *Garter*, and [n] conſideration had upon the Propoſals contained in the Petition, they humbly offered their opinions to the *Soveraign*, to grant him the ſaid 100 *l. per annum*, in lieu of what he offered to quit; and thereby he ſhould not only gratifie him, by preſerving the intereſt of his Office in a more certain way than it was, but be freed from thoſe ſmall payments for *Strangers*, and other yearly Charges the Petitioner pretended unto, as alſo exempt the *Knights Subjects* from the payment of their annual Penſions. m n } *Ibid.*

Shortly

o *Ibid.*

Shortly after, the o *Chancellor, Register*, and *Garter* attended the *Soveraign* with the Report, which he approving of, ordered the *Chancellor* to pay unto *Garter* and his *Successors* the said annual sum of 100*l.* which he accordingly performed, and for testimony thereof signed the ensuing Declaration.

Ex Collect. Ped.

I Henry de Vic *Knight* Chancellor *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter *do certifie and declare. That upon certain Proposals made by Sir* Edward Walker *Knight*, Garter Principal King of Arms, *to the* Lords Commissioners *for the Affairs of the said* Order, *It was certified by a Writing under their said Lordships hands, dated the* 26. May 1663. *That in lieu of all* Fees *and* Salaries *in the said Proposals contained, the said Sir* Edward *and his Successors* Garters *and* Principal Kings of Arms *shall be paid by me and my Successors, in the said Office of* Chancellor *of the* Garter, *the sum of* one hundred pounds *by the year, out of the Revenue of the* Order; *with which Writing having attended the* Soveraign, *his Majesty was pleased to conform unto it, and to direct in his Commission unto me, under the* Seal *of the* Order, *to pay and issue the said one hundred pounds accordingly to the said Sir* Edward Walker Garter. *In witness whereof I have set my Hand and Seal to this present Certificate, this* 5. August 1664.

De Vic.
Canc.

q *Constitut. ad Officialet Ordin. attinentes Cap.* 4.

Touching the *Duty* of this *Officer* in general, it is to q perform or cause to be done, what businesses soever, relating to this *Order*, the *Soveraign*, or *Prelate*, or *Chancellor* shall enjoyn him to do: but his duty in particular is dispersedly set down in the following Discourse, under such heads to which it properly relates.

SECT. V.

Institution *of the* Black Rod's Office, *his* Oath, Habit, Ensign, Badge, Priviledges, *and* Pension.

His Institution.

THis *Officer* was instituted by the *Founder* of this most Noble *Order*, but whether so soon as the Institution of the *Order* doth not yet appear. Howbeit within a few years after, *viz.* the 13. of *April* in the 35. year of his Reign, he granted to r *William Whitehorse* Esq; for life, *Officium Hostiarii Capellæ Regis infra Castrum de Windesore*, with a Fee of twelve pence a day out of his Exchequer.

r *Videsis Pat.* 50. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 25. & *p.* 4. *m.* 5.

An. 3. *H.* 4. This *Office* is called s *Officium Virgarii comitivæ de la Garter infra Castrum Regis de Windesore*: and under that title was then granted to *Thomas Sye* with the Fees and Profits thereunto belonging. In the Patent granted to his Successor *John Athilbrigg, an.* 1. *H.* 5. we observe it called t *Officium Virgarii sive Ostiarii, &c.* Afterwards it hath this Title, u *Officium Virgæ-bajuli coram Rege ad Festum Sancti Georgii infra Castrum Regis de Windesore.* And ever since it hath part in Patents by the name of *Virgæ-bajulus, Virgarius*, or *Nigri-virgifer*. But in the *Constitutions* of his *Office* he hath given to him the title of w *Hostiarius*; and these qualifications put upon him, x That he be a Gentleman of Blood and Arms, born within the *Soveraign*'s Dominions; and if he be not a *Knight* at his entrance upon the *Office*, he ought then to be Knighted.

s *Pat.* 3. *H.* 4. *p.* 4. *m.* 21.

t *Pat.* 1. *H.* 5. *p.* 2. *m.* 18.

u *Term. Mich. an.* 1. *E.* 4. *rot.* 46.

w } *Cap.* 5.
x }

As *Garter* was declared the *Principal Officer of Arms*, so was the *Black Rod* (for the honor of the *Order*) appointed the *Chief Usher* in the Kingdom: And as he is so, and frequently called *Gentleman Usher of the Black Rod*; so we shall wave (as we did in the account of *Garter*'s *Office*) all things appertaining to his Imployments, other than what directly relate to this most Noble *Order*.

In a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall* the 13. of *February, an.* 6. *Car.* 1. it was Decreed,

y *Lib. R. p.* 71.

That the Office of Black Rod *should from thenceforth successively, as soon as the same*

same should become void (*James Maxwell* Esquire then enjoying the Office) *be annext to some one of the* Gentlemen Ushers daily-waiters, *whom the* Soveraign *should appoint.* This was obtained upon the Petition of the *Gentlemen Ushers daily-waiters*, seconded by the Lord *Chamberlain*, the Earl *Marshal*, and divers others of the *Knights-Companions*, as appears from another Petition of theirs presented to the *Soveraign* in *Chapter* held at *Oxford*, the [z] 17. of *Jan. an.* 20. *Car.* 1.

[z] *Palmer's large Journal.* p. 63.

But it seems some years after this Decree past, *viz. an.* 1642. the Lord *Lenerick* Secretary for *Scotland*, had (on Mr. *Maxwell's* behalf) obtained the *Soveraign*'s hand to a Warrant for passing[a] Letters Patent, under the Great Seal of *England*, for two lives (his own, and Mr. *Alexander Thayne*'s) and the longest liver of them, whereby the *Soveraign*'s intention (signified in the foresaid Decree) to the *Gentlemen-Ushers* was frustrate; of which they complaining in this last mentioned *Chapter*, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* then present (in regard this later Grant was not only repugnant to the preceding Decree, and the Great Seal surreptitiously gained, but ought to have pass'd the Seals of the *Order*, to be made authentical, according to a Decree made, *an.* 20. *Car.* 1.) Ordered, [b] *That* Peter Newton *Esquire, should be presently sworn into this Office :* Which was then done in the presence of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions.*

[a] *Ibid.*

[b] *Ibid.*

Nevertheless shortly after the present *Soveraign*'s happy return, *viz.* [c] 14. *Jan.* 1660. (the said *Peter Newton* being deceased) the *Gentlemen-Ushers daily-waiters* petitioned the *Soveraign* in *Chapter* for the void place, which being read, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* Ordered, That the Petition should be shewed to Mr. *Thaine*, and he to be heard in the next *Chapter*, what cause he could alledge, why it should not be granted.

[c] *Lib. Carolin.* p. 23.

To this, Mr. *Thaine* drew up his Answer; which being taken into consideration by the *Soveraign*, in a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall*, the 20. of *February an.* 13. *Car.* 2. as also the Decree in Chapter before specified, which fixed the *Office* to one of the *Gentlemen-Ushers daily-waiters*, The *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* adjudged and declared the said *Thaine*'s Answer not satisfactory, as to the right by him pretended to the said *Office*, and thereupon confirmed the foresaid Decree: and further Ordered, [d] That *John Ayton* Esquire one of the Petitioners should be forthwith sworn *Gentleman-Usher of the Black Rod*, to execute the place upon all occasions hereafter, which was done by the *Register* of the *Order* in the presence of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, the Chapter sitting.

[d] *Ibid.*

The *Oath*, as we find it given to this *Officer* in the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, was, [e] *Truly and faithfully to observe and keep all the points of the* Statutes *of the* Order, *as to him belonged and appertained.*

Oath.

[e] *Appendix Numb.* VIII.

He hath the like *Habit*, with the *Register* and *Garter*, before described.

Habit.

But his *Ensign* and *Badge* are somewhat different from *Garter*'s; for first it was Ordained, [f] *That he or his Deputy should carry a* Black Rod (whence he hath his ordinary Title) *before the* Soveraign *or his* Deputy *at the Feast of* St. George *within the Castle of* Windesor, *and at other Solemnities and Chapters of the Order.* On the top of which there ought to be set a Lion of *England.* This *Rod* serves instead of a *Mace*, and hath the same authority to apprehend such persons as shall be found Delinquents, and have offended against the *Statutes* and *Ordinances* of this most Noble *Order.* And [g] if at the command of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* he should apprehend any one of the *Order* as guilty of some Crime, for which he is to be expell'd from the *Order*, it is to be done by touching them with this *Black Rod*, in consideration whereof, his Fee is 5 *l.*

Ensign.

[f] *Pat.* 50. *E.* 3. p. 1. *m.* 25. *vide Constitut. ad Offic. Ordin. attinentes. cap.* 5.

[g] *Ibid.*

There is also assigned him a Gold *Badge*, to be openly worn in a Gold Chain or Ribband before his Breast, composed of one of the *Knots* in the *Collar* of the *Garter*, which tye the Roses together, and encompassed with the ennobled *Garter*, being alike on both sides; which honor is conferr'd on him and his Successors by [h] Decree in *Chapter* held the 24. of *April an.* 8. *Eliz.*

Badge.

[h] *Lib. C.* p. 52.

'Tis as ancient as King *Henry* the Fifth's Reign, that we find a[i] House in *Windesor Castle* granted to this *Officer* by Letters Patent (together with his Office) during life, and the like provision is made for him by the[k] *Constitutions* of his *Office.* It is scituate on the South side of the *Castle* in the middle Ward. The said Constitutions

Priviledges.

[i] *Pat.* 1. *H.* 5. p. 3. *m.* 18.

[k] *Cap.* 5.

l, m { *Ibid.*

ſtitutions give him l *Baron-ſervice* at Court, and *Livery* thereto appertaining; and beſides theſe, the m keeping of the ſaid *Caſtle*, and the two *Parks* adjacent.

n *Lib.R.p.54.*

n King *Charles* the Firſt, having taken into his hands the *Little Park* of *Windeſor* (by the reſignation of Sir *William Herwyd*, who had it by Grant under the Great Seal of *England*) and beſtowed it upon the foreſaid *James Maxwell* then *Uſher* of the *Order*. He alſo thought fit, with the advice and conſent of the *Knights-Companions*, at a *Chapter* held in the With-drawing Chamber at *Whitehall*, 5. *November* 1629. to Order and Decree, That as the Cuſtody of the ſaid *Little Park* was conferr'd on Mr. *Maxwell* in right of his *Office* (purſuant to the Inſtitution) ſo the ſame ſhould for ever after be annexed thereto, and not be diſpoſed of, but under the *Great Seal* of the *Order*, and that only to the *Uſher* of the *Order* for the time being.

Penſion.
o *Pat.50.E.3. p.1.m 25.*
p *Cap.5.*

Laſtly, this *Officer* had anciently a o Fee of 12 *d. per diem* allowed him, which we find continued down in the Letters Patent whereby this Office was granted; beſide which, the *Conſtitutions* of his *Office* allow him an p annual Penſion of 30 *l.* heretofore paid him out of the *Soveraign's* Exchequer: but by King *Charles* the Firſt, aſſigned him out of the 1200 *l. per annum*, ſetled upon the *Order*, touching which we ſhall Diſcourſe in the next *Section*.

SECT. VI.

The payment of the Officers Penſions *upon the new Eſtabliſhment.*

KIng *James*, ſometimes *Soveraign* of this moſt Noble *Order*, well conſidering its Inſtitution, Nature, and Conſtitution; and that it was in the nature of a diſtinct Soveraignty, govern'd by Laws, Statutes, and Aſſemblies of its own; and Himſelf as *Soveraign*, in matters and things immediately relating thereto, had ſole and abſolute power of altering, changing, adding, or explaining. And finding that the annual Penſions paid to the *Officers* of the *Order* (as thoſe to the *Alms-Knights*) and ſome other its Expences, had been anciently made payable out of his Receipt of the Exchequer, either upon and by virtue of the *Great Seals* of *England*, or otherwiſe by *Privy Seals*; and conceiving it incongruous, that the *Officers* ſhould longer receive or challenge their *Penſions* by virtue of any other *Seal* than that of the *Order*; and in ſome kind derogatory to the Dignity of the *Order* it ſelf, to permit other *Seals* longer to work within or upon the ſame. *He* thereupon, with twelve *Knights-Companions*, in a Chapter held at *Whitehall* the 22. of *May* in the 20. year of his Reign, Ordered, q *That all things concerning the Order ſhould thereafter be paſſed under the* Seal *of the* Order *only*, and in particular, *That the* r Grants *of* Poor-Knights Places, *after their being ſigned by the* Soveraign, *ſhould be paſſed under the* Seal *of the* Order *only, and none other.*

q, r { *Ex ipſo Autogr. vide etiam Lib.R. p. 12.*

And whereas at the Feaſt of St. *George* the following year, the s Chancellor had received from the Dean of *Windeſor* a Note in writing of the *Penſions* given to the *Poor-Knights*, and by whom, and in what manner the ſame had been given; it was alſo Ordered, t *That he ſhould take advice of the* Soveraign's Attorney General, *how by virtue of the* Seal *of the* Order, *the ſaid* Penſions *might be paid and received*, His Majeſties further pleaſure being, u *That all* Grants *and* Payments *concerning the* Order, *ſhould afterwards paſs under the* Seal *of the* Order *only, and by virtue thereof.*

s, t, u { *Ex ipſo Autogr. vide parro Lib. R.p.15.*

As to the *Alms-Knights* Patents, this Decree took effect, but in the other generals referring to the *Order*, how far it was purſued we know not; for in ſome of them we find it not obſerved. But in a *Chapter* held at *Windeſor*, on the 22. of *April* in the 10. year of the Reign of his late *Majeſty* of ever bleſſed memory, debate was had about ſetting a part from the profits of his Revenue, to the peculiar uſe of the *Order*, the annual ſum of w 1000 *l.* to be aſſigned out of the Receipts

w *Lib.G.p.54.*

Receipt of his Exchequer, and employed particularly in discharge of Expences towards the *Feasts* of the *Order*, *Legations* to *Foreign Princes*, payment of the *Officers Pensions*, and all other *Titles*, by which any thing, should at any time be disbursed for the necessity or reputation of the said most Noble *Order*.

Afterwards at a *Chapter* held the 18. of *April an.* 13. *Car.* 1. the *Soveraign*[x] ratified his Royal Assignation, and increased his graeious bounty to the sum of 1200 *l. per annum*, setling it (for the uses aforesaid) in a Perpetuity for ever, and making it payable out of the *Customs* in the Port of *London*; but to be received by the *Chancellor* of the *Order* for the time being, as *Treasurer* of this Money[y] of which he should be obliged to render an account, to the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* yearly at St. *George's* Feast. And in pursuance of this Ratification, was pleased to give his[z] *Attorney General* directions to draw up a Book for his Royal Signature, to warrant its passing under the *Great Seal* of *England*. The further care of which Affair being committed to Sir *Thomas Rowe* then Chancellor, he readily undertook it, and on the[a] first of *February* following, at a meeting of the *Knights-Commissioners* (impowered to consider of matters touching the honor of the *Order*) gave them an account that the same was dispatcht. The Letters Patent bearing Teste at *Westminster* the[b] 23. day of *January* preceding.

x *Ibid. p.* 121.
y *Ibid. p.* 134.
z *Rowes Journal p.* 27.
a *Ibid. p.* 36.
b *Appendix Numb.* XI.

He then also presented their *Lordships* with a List of the *ordinary Fees* and *Charges* of the *Order*, upon consideration of which, it was thought fit,[c] *That there should issue out a* standing Commission *to the* Chancellor, *under the* Great Seal *of the* Order, *to warrant the yearly* Payments, *and he to be discharged, according as the said Patent had provided.*

c *Ibid.*

Hereupon a *Commission* was drawn up, which past the said *Great Seal* the 3. of *May, an.* 14. *Car.* 1. [d] whereby the *Soveraign* declared his will and pleasure, and impowered the *Chancellor* to pay out of the said annual Revenue of 1200 *l.* all and every the yearly and ordinary Fees, Pensions, Sallaries and other Payments usually paid to any the *Officers* of the *Order*, *Alms-Knights*, or *others*, who do their yearly duty and service, any way unto the *Order* appertaining, either by Charter, Grant, or Assignation, under the *Seal* or *Signet* of the *Order*, or by any other lawful way whatsoever, and in particular

d, e *Appendix Num.* XII.

		l.	*s.*	*d.*	
To	Himself as *Chancellor.*	100	0	0	*per annum.*
	Register of the Order.	50	0	0	
	Garter Principal King of Arms.	50	0	0	
	Usher of the Black-Rod.	30	0	0	
	Thirteen *Alms-Knights.*	237	5	0	
	Total	467	5	0	

[e] All which yearly *Pensions* are thereby appointed to be quarterly paid, that is to say, at the four usual Feasts in the year. As also any other annual and usual charge, to any other inferiour Officer or Servant, for their service or attendance. And all these upon account thereof to be made and given, and Acquittances to be produced for the receipt, to be presented to the *Soveraign*, or so many of the *Knights-Companions* as he should depute in *Chapter*, to take liquid, and allow the disbursments under their hands in writing, for the *Chancellor's* discharge.

By virtue of the foresaid Letters Patent Sir *Thomas Rowe*, and in his absence beyond Sea, Sir *James Palmer* Deputy Chancellor, received out of the *Soveraign's* Receipts of Subsidies, Customs, and Imposts, the 1200 *l. per annum*, out of which they paid the annual Pensions above mentioned, under the notion of *certain* and *ordinary charges*, as also such as came within the compass of *uncertain* and *extraordinary Expences*; some of which as we can collect from the[f] Accounts of the said Chancellor and Deputy Chancellor, (they falling within the disbursments of their time) were such as these;

f *Penes praef. Jac. Palmer.*

Mantles, when the *Soveraign* pleased to bestow them on the *Knights-Companions.*
Plate for the *Altar* in St. *George*'s Chappel at *Windesor.*
Embroidery of the *Purse* for holding the *Seals.*
Removal of *Atchievements* and *Plates* against Installations.
Scutcheons set up at St. *George*'s Feast.
Privy Seals and *Fees*, disburst for receiving the 1200 *l. per annum.*
Fees for *Installation* of *Forreign Princes*, and *Stranger-Knights.*
Parchment used in *Dispensations* and *Prorogations.*
Blue Wax for the *Seals* of the *Order.*

By all which may be guest, what other particulars ought to be accounted *Extraordinary Charges*; towards the discharge whereof this annual sum was to be employed as far as it would go, to ease the Expences of the *Great Wardrobe*, formerly charged with Provisions of the *Order*, both for Forreign Embassies, and Expences at home.

And when Sir *Thomas Rowe* was sent Ambassador to *Ferdinand* the Third, Emperor of *Germany*, he paid over to the said Sir *James Palmer*, upon the * *Soveraign*'s Warrant dated the 4. of *May an.* 14. *Car.* 1. the sum of 600 *l.* then resting in his hands of the said annual Receipts; which he adding to the growing Income, disbursed in ordinary and extraordinary Expences.

* *Ex ipso Autographo*

In reference to the manner of the *Chancellor*'s passing his *Account*, as is directed by the said *Commission* we find it thus done by Sir *James Palmer*: he humbly moved the *Soveraign* in a g *Chapter* held the 10. of *October an.* 15. *Car.* 1. That it would please him and the *Knights-Companions* to view the disbursments made for the Expences of the *Order*, which thereupon being examined by the *Knights* in the *Soveraign*'s presence, the same were found agreeable to the directions of the Commission, and the Payments justified by the Acquittance of every Officer, to whom any Fee was due (no payment having been made, but the *Soveraign*'s hand was first had to authorize the same) All which being seen and allowed, the Account (wherein his disbursments exceeded his Receipts 37 *l.* 13 *s.* 10 *d.*) was esteemed just, and allowed by the subscription of the present *Soveraign* then *Prince*, the Earls of *Penbroke* and *Montgomery*, *Salisbury*, *Holland*, *Berkshire*, Duke *Hamilton*, and the Earl of *Northumberland.*

g *See his Journal pro anno* 1639. *p.* 57.

SECT. VII.

The Execution of these Offices *by* Deputies.

THough all the *Officers* of the *Order* are strictly obliged personally to attend the duties of their several Places; yet in case of sickness, absence out of the Kingdom, or other lawful or emergent cause, the *Soveraign* hath pleased to dispence with their attendance, and appointed other to officiate in their stead; who on such occasions wear the Robe of that Officer for whom they serve: So also in case of Vacancy.

The absence of the *Prelate* from the Grand Feast celebrated at *Windesor*, *an.* 31. *H.* 6. is noted in the *Black Book* to have been upon just cause, and the h Bishop of *Bangor* was appointed to celebrate Divine Service in his stead; who the next morning celebrated Mass *pro defunctis.* The following year his place in these Religious Duties was supplied by the i Bishop of *Salisbury*: as also *an.* * 36. & ‖ 37. *H.* 6. And at all times of the *Prelates* absence since, the *Soveraign* hath appointed which of the *Bishops* should officiate for him.

h *Lib. N. p.* 109.
i *Ibid. p.* 112.
* *Pag.* 118.
‖ *Pag.* 119.

The

The Office of *Chancellor* hath been executed by Deputy also; to this may first be referred a passage in the [k] *Black Book*, where Doctor *Taylor* hath the Title of *Vice-Chancellor*. Of later times when Sir *Thomas Rowe* was employed upon the fore-mentioned Embassy into *Germany*, Sir *James Palmer* Knight (one of the Gentlemen-Ushers of the Privy Chamber) was deputed by the *Soveraign* to the execution of the *Chancellorship* during his absence, having the [l] Purse with the Seals delivered unto him by the *Soveraign* the 4. of *May* 14. *Car.* 1. He first entred upon this Employment at the Installation of the present *Soveraign*, being sworn by the *Register* of the *Order* (the [m] 22. of the said Moneth) *durante deputatione & beneplacito Regis:* which [n] Clause was likewise added in the Deputy Chancellors Oath *an.* 12. *Car.* 2.

After Sir *Thomas Rowe*'s return into *England*, being sick, and not able to officiate at the Feast of St. *George* held at *Whitehall* the first of *March*, *an.* 16. *Car.* 1. [o] Sir *James Palmer* was again deputed Chancellor, to supply his place in that particular Ceremony: As also a third time, when the Feast was kept at [p] *York*, the 18. of *April an.* 18. *Car.* 1. and thence-forward he continued *Deputy-Chancellor* unto the death of Sir *Thomas Rowe*; of which the *Soveraign* having notice given him at *Oxford*, in [q] *November an.* 1644. was graciously pleased to reserve the gift of this Office, till Sir *James Palmer*'s return to Court out of *Wales* (where he was employed in his Service) and then [r] gave him permission to wear the *Badge* and *Ribband* about his neck, till a *Chapter* of the *Order* should be called to compleat his admittance: in token of his due acknowledgment for so high a favour, he humbly upon his knees gave the *Soveraign* thanks, and received the honor of kissing his hand.

In the vacancy of the *Registership*, *an.* 2. *H.* 8. [s] *Thomas Ruthall* Bishop of *Durham* supplied it, and *an.* [t] 18. & [u] 19. *Eliz.* Doctor *Day* Dean of *Windesor* executed the Office, and attended at the Feasts of St. *George* as Deputy *Register*, Doctor *George Carew* then Register having license by his Patent to exercise it by himself or [w] Deputy, with allowance of the *Queen* or *Soveraign* of the *Order*, in case of sickness or other impediment. After his death Dean [x] *Day* was commanded still to execute the Office during its vacancy (being 14 years) which he did, until advanced to the Bishoprick of *Winchester*, *an.* 38. *Eliz.* upon which Doctor [y] *Robert Bennet* (who succeeded him in his Deanry) was the same year admitted *Register*. Afterwards towards the later end of Doctor *Beaumont*'s time (he being much broken with age and sickness) Doctor [z] *John King* the *junior* Canon supplied the place.

The Office of *Garter* hath likewise been supplied by Deputy, for in those Embassies with the *Ensigns* or whole *Habit* of the *Order* to Foreign Princes, where special occasions detained *Garter* at home, some of the *Kings* or *Heralds of Arms* have been sent upon those Employments, nevertheless upon *Garter*'s recommendation of them to the *Soveraign*, of which several instances shall be hereafter inserted. So also in case of vacancy, for we find that *Clarenceux* King of Arms executed this *Office* after Sir *Gilbert Dethick*'s death, in [a] *January an.* 27. *Eliz.* being then sent in the Embassy with the Earl of *Derby*, to carry the *Habit* of the *Order* to the French King *Henry* the Third. As also in reference to the [b] preparations, made for his Installation, the 15. of *April* following, and service performed thereat, and at the [c] Feast of St. *George* ensuing.

And lastly the *Constitutions* of the *Office* of *Black Rod* admit of a [d] Deputy to bear the Rod before the *Soveraign*, which is to be understood where a lawful occasion hinders his personal service. And [e] Sir *Peter Young* (chief Gentleman Usher) executed this Office at the Feast of St. *George*, held at *Windesor*, *an.* 6. *Car.* 1. *James Maxwell* Esq; *Black Rod* being then in *France* upon the *Soveraign*'s service. He being also sent by the King into [f] *Scotland*, *Peter Newton* Esquire was appointed to wait in his place, at the Feast held at *Windesor* the 8. 9. and 10. of *October*, *anno* 15. *Car.* 1.

k *Pag.* 157.
l *Lib.R.p.*138.
m *See his large Journal p.*15.
n *Lib. Caroline. p.*22.
o *Palmer's large Journal. p.* 29.
p *Ib.p.*35.
q *Ib.p.*46.
r *Ib. p.* 47.
s *Lib.N.p.*199.
t *Lib.C.p.*73.
u *MS.penes G. O.T p.*113.
w *Pat.*3.*Eliz. par.*10.
x *Lib.C p.*94. Quamvis Scribæ sive Actuarii nobilissimi Ordinis Officium supplevit, non tamen Juratus nec admissus est. *Tho. Frith. in suo Custodum Catalog.*
y *Lib.C.p.*130.
z *Lib R.p.*35.
a *Ex Collect. W. le N.Cl.*
b *MS.*4.*penes W.le N.Cl f.*8.
c *Ibid.f.*10.
d *Cap.*5.
e *Lib.R.p.*61.
f *Palmer's Journal pro anno* 1639. *p.* 18.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

THE Election *of a* Knight INTO THE Order.

SECT. I.

Of Summons *to the* Election.

THE *Statutes* of *Institution* Ordained, [a] *That whensoever any of the* Knights-Companions *happened to depart this life, the* Soveraign (*or his* Deputy) *after certain notice had thereof, should forthwith by his* Letters *summon all the* Knights-Companions, *then within the Realm* (*who were able to come*) *to meet him within six weeks after such notice, in what convenient place soever he pleased to assign, for the* Electing *a new* Companion *into the Society.* Thus did the *Law* of this most Noble *Order*, in case of *Death*, and to avoid long *Vacancies*, at first provide, wherewith we observe the practice of elder times did punctually concur: and among other Testimonies, they are not the least which may be collected from the ancient *Letters* of *Summons* issued out upon this occasion.

[a] *Ed.3. Stat. Art.18.*

For assoon as *Garter* (in discharge of his [b] Oath, and pursuance of the [c] duty of his place) had made [d] *Certificate* to the *Soveraign* of a *Knight-Companion*'s decease, or otherwise to the *Register* of the *Order*; care was taken thereupon to fill up the vacant Stall, within the time limited by this Article of the *Statutes*, or shortly after; in order whereunto *Letters* of *Summons* were sent to the *Knights-Companions* to appear at the *Election*, which hath induced us to exhibit two of these ancient *Letters* in the [e] *Appendix*: The first contains several particulars no less pursuant to the *Statutes*, than worthy observation; and especially these.

[b] *Liber N. p.* 314.
[c] } *Ibid. p.*
[d] } 237.

[e] *Num.*XIII. *&* XIV.

1. First, the day whereon the defunct *Knight-Companion* died is therein set down, and is a note useful in *Story*.

2. Direction is given for celebrating *Masses*, according to the tenor of the *Statutes*, of which more shall be spoken in its due place.

3. Intimation that a *Stall* is become *void* by the *Knights* decease.

4. The

4. The *Law* of the *Order* vouched, which appoints an *Election* of another *Knight*, within six weeks after Certificate made of the death of the former, to avoid (as much as might be) an interval in succession, by a speedy filling up the number of *Knights-Companions.*

5. The *Soveraign*'s power asserted, where he sees cause to prorogue the *Election.*

6. An *Injunction* to attend personally at the *Election*, under a penalty expreſt in the *Statutes*, of which more hereafter.

7. The *Day*, *Place*, and *Hour* for appearance, is with certainty appointed and set down, to the end the *Knights-Companions* might so accommodate themselves, as to be present at the time prefixed.

8. The end of coming is mentioned, with full disposition and preparation, *to perform what the Statutes in this case required.*

9. Lastly, direction is there given to the *Knight summoned*, that in case any accident obstructed his Journey, or hinder'd him from coming to the *Chapter*, he should certifie the reason of his default, against the day and time of his appearance; of the sufficiency whereof, the *Soveraign* was to be sole Judge. And generally of these heads, and to this purpose were the *Letters* of *Summons* in succeeding times framed.

The before mentioned branch of the Statutes of *Institution* we observe (from its insertion into the [g] following bodies of *Statutes*) to have been sufficiently confirmed, nor hath it since received alteration; howbeit some enlargement and explanation was given thereunto, in the [h] 21. year of King *James*, at a *Chapter* held the last day of the Feast, *viz.* the [i] 24. of *April* at *Windsor*; where in the first place (among other things then also established) it was thus Decreed: [k] *That the* Soveraign *being advertised of the death of a* Knight-Companion *of the* Order, *the* Knights-Companions *remaining at the Court should move him to declare his pleasure, whether he would that* Letters *should be sent to all the* Knights-Companions *within the Realm, to attend his person for the choice of a new* Knight, *at a day by the said* Soveraign *appointed, according to the ancient Statutes of the Order; or be pleased to defer the* Election *until the day and Feast of St.* George, *at what time Elections have been most usually made, wherein the* Soveraign'*s pleasure and direction was to be followed and observed, and according as he resolved, in what place it should be, so it ought* (by Letters directed to the *Knights-Companions* within the Realm) *to be made known unto them.*

g *H.5. Stat. Art.18. H.8. Stat.Art. 19.*
h *Lib.R.*
i *p.14.*
k

This deferring or proroguing the *Election* was (to say truth) no new thing, nor more than what had been anciently practised (though not indulged by the *Statutes* of *Institution*, or declared *Law*, before this 21. year of King *James*) as appears from the fore-cited *Letters* of *Summons*, both which take notice of the limitation of time given by the *Statutes*, after Certificate of death, *viz. six weeks*; within the compass whereof, a new *Election* was to be made. And where a *Chapter* for Election could not conveniently be held, within that limited time, it was enough if the *Soveraign* declared (as he did in that *Summons* sent after Sir *Robert D'umfrevils* death, and entred in the *Black Book*) [m] *That being then involved in other business, he could not well attend this Affair, and therefore deferred the time for* Election *unto the Eve of St.* George *next following.* So that it is plain, the Decree *an.* 21. of King *James*, was but declaratory of an old and practised Custom.

m *Pag.82.*

But of later times this formal way of Summons by *Letter* to *Knights-Companions* attending at the Court, hath been left off (yet continued to such as are remote) and notice given them by a verbal message only: For the *Chancellor* of the *Order* having known the *Soveraign*'s pleasure, as to the day and place, usually acquaints *Garter* therewith, who thereupon goeth immediately to the *Knights-Companions* then at Court, and desires their attendance at the *Chapter*, according to the *Soveraign*'s appointment.

And here it is to be understood, that no *Knights-Elect*, ought to be summoned to a *Chapter* of *Election*, or are capable of giving their Votes therein, until they be compleatly *installed*, either in Person or by Proxy: Nor indeed did any necessity fall out from the Foundation of the *Order*, that did require they should, until

until the late rebellious times, when the Castle of *Windesor* being Garrisoned by the Parliaments Forces, it was not possible for his Royal Highness the Duke of *York*, and his Highness Prince *Rupert*, to take possession of their *Stalls*, in such manner as the *Law* of the *Order* enjoined.

Therefore the then *Soveraign* (to whom the power of dispensing with any of the *Statutes* is reserved) did on the 17. of *Jan.an.*1644. (so inevitable necessity requiring) [n] dispence with their *Installation* in the Chappel of St. *George* at *Windesor*, for the present, and invested them with all the Priviledges of the *Order*; among which, the power of giving their Votes in *Chapter* was one: Provided, these *Princes* should first take the Oath given at Installations, and afterwards perform the accustomed Ceremonies at *Windesor*, so soon as it should be thought fit, after the *Castle* was delivered out of the power of the Rebels, and returned into the possession of the *Soveraign* of this most Noble *Order*.

n *Palmer's large Journal. p.66.& 69. vide Appendix Num.* XV.

In compliance with this *Proviso* they both then took the [o] *Oath*: And on the Eve of the first Feast of St. *George*, celebrated after the present *Soveraign*'s happy Restauration, the *Duke* was Installed by the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Berkshire*: and on the Eve of the second Feast, being the 22. of *April*, *an.* 15. *Car.* 2. the *Prince* likewise received his Installation by the hands of the Duke of *Albemarle* and Earl of *Lindsey*.

o *Palmer's large Journal. p.65.& 66.*

SECT. II.

The Place *of Assembly.*

BUT at what time soever this Ceremoney of *Election* is appointed, the same ought to be celebrated in *Chapter* (for so is the assembly of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* called, wheresoever or whensoever held on this occasion) whether at the Solemnity of St. *George's Feast*, which hath been the ordinary and most usual time, or on other certain days, set apart for this affair, by more special appointment of the *Soveraign*. And therefore when the *Soveraign* thinks fitting (in the interval of *Feasts*) to Elect any Forreign Prince, or other person, either Stranger or Subject, He many times doth it in peculiar *Chapters*, called to that end and purpose; and then he appoints his own both day and place, having the prerogative to declare them at pleasure.

This we find hath been practised both heretofore and of late times; and by those few of many *Chapters*, holden at sundry places, most convenient to the *Soveraign*'s present occasions (drawn out and here exhibited) will be sufficiently manifest, whereunto we shall add the *Names* of those *Persons* of eminence, who at such times and places have been Elected.

Place.	*Day and Year.*	*Knights Elected.*
1. Sign of the *Lion* in *Brainford.*	11. *July* 24. *H.*6.	*Albro de Vasques Dalmadea* Earl of *Averentia.* Lord *Beauchamp.* Lord *Hoo.*
2. *Soveraign's Bedchamber* at *Westminster.*	27. Nov. 25. H.6.	Sir *Francis Surreyne.*
3. *London* within the *Bishop's Palace.*	8. Febr. 39. H.6.	*Richard* Earl of *Warwick.* Lord *Bonvile.* Sir *Thomas Kyriell.* Sir *John Wenlock.*
4. *Tower* of *London.*	8. Aug. 14. E. 4.	*Guido Ubaldus* Duke of *Urbin.* *Henry Percy* Earl of *Northumberland.*

5. *Star-*

5. *Starchamber.*	15. May 15. E. 4.	*Edward* Prince of *Wales.* *Richard* Duke of *York.* *Thomas Grey* Marquess *Dorset.*
6. Soveraign's *Bedchamber in the Wardrobe London.*	10. Febr. 19. E. 4.	*Ferdinand* King of *Spain.* *Hercules* Duke of *Ferrara.*
7. *Greenwich.*	14. July 15. H. 8.	Lord *Ferrers.*
8. *Calais.*	27. Oct. 24. H. 8.	*Anne Montmorency* Earl of *Beaumont.* *Philip Chabot* Earl of *Newblanke.*
9. *Hampton-Court.*	9. Jan. 32. H. 8.	*Edward Seymour* Earl of *Hertford.*
10. *Windesor.*	6. Aug. 1. & 2. Ph. & M.	*Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy.*
11. *Whitehall.*	8. Febr. 20. Eliz.	*John Casimire* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne.*
12. *York.*	12. Sept. 16. Car. 1.	*Thomas* Earl of *Strafford.*

But for the most part, since the beginning of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, *Whitehall* (the *Soveraign*'s usual Court of Residence) hath been the place, whereunto the *Knights-Companions* have been specially summoned, and peculiar *Chapters* held for *Election* of *Knights*, in the interval between the *vacancy* and St. *George*'s *Feast*: Howbeit of late, while the present *Soveraign* was abroad beyond the Seas, and wanted the full number of *Knights-Companions* to constitute a compleat *Chapter*, He hath been necessitated to make use of his supream power, not only in [p] dispencing with the Ceremony of *Election* in *Chapter*, but also in [q] supplying the defect of a *Scrutiny*, by making his own choice; nevertheless, since his most happy return to the Throne of his Ancestors, *Whitehall* hath also recovered her accustomed Honors, and beheld again a most worthy advancement of *Knights* into this most Noble *Order*, at a *Chapter* specially called and held in the *Bedchamber* there, the first day of *April*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 2. in the *Election* of the Duke of *Richmond*, the Earls of *Lindsey*, *Manchester*, and *Strafford.*

[p] *Ex Collect.*
[q] *Edw. Walker Eq. Aur. Garter.*

SECT. III.

The Number *of* Knights *that constitute a* Chapter.

IN the next place we are to consider, what number of *Knights-Companions* ought to assemble for constituting a compleat *Chapter* of *Election.*

By the *Statutes* it is appointed, there should be [r] *six* at the least, besides the *Soveraign* or his *Deputy*; the due observation of which hath been so strictly stood upon heretofore, that *Elections* were ordinarily deferr'd, where the *Chapters* consisted not of so many. For proof of which we find that the Duke of *Gloucester*, *anno* 9. *H.* 6. then *Deputy* to the *Soveraign* (at that time in *France*) for celebrating the Feast of St. *George* at *Windesor*, [s] forbore to proceed to *Election*, *because the Number of* Knights-Companions *there assembled, was less than the Statutes required to constitute a Chapter.* We likewise take notice, that *anno* 10. *H.* 5. no *Election* was made (the Feast being also celebrated at *Windesor*) though one Stall was void, by the death of the [t] *Lord Clifford*; and probably the reason (though not exprest) might be for want of that full number of *Knights-Companions*, the *Statutes* required: For the *Duke* of *Bedford* (then the *Soveraign*'s *Deputy*) had but [u] three *Knights* present with him.

[r] *E.* 3. *Stat.* *H.* 5. *Art.* 1. *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 19.
[s] *Lib. N. p.* 88.
[t] *Ib. p.* 69.
[u] *Ib. p.* 68.

But in this case we need not fly to conjectures, there are direct and cleer instances enough; wherein, if we abound, we hope the satisfaction they will give the concern'd *Reader*, beside the antiquity of the Precedent may obtain our pardon.

In the [w] 22. year of *King Henry* the Sixth, or rather 23. (for so the [x] *Registrum Chartaceum*

[w] *Ib. p.* 95.
[x] *Fol.* 23. *b.*

Chartaceum hath it in the hand of that very Age) *Humfry* Duke of *Buckingham*, being deputed to celebrate the *Feast* of St. *George* at *Windesor*, although there were at that time four Stalls vacant, yet did no *Nomination* pass, one reason being[y] *because there was not present a sufficient* Number *to make Election.* So when the same *King* celebrated the Grand *Feast*[z] personally at *Windesor*, in the 31. year of his Reign, having but three *Knights-Companions* attending him thereat, and two Stalls void; the *Election* was prorogued[a] for the very same reason. In like manner the want of a sufficient Number of *Knights-Companions*, hapning at the *Feasts* held the 32. 33. and 34. of *Henry* the Sixth hindred the *Election* at those times: for at the first of them there were but[b] two *Knights-Companions*, beside the *Soveraign's Deputy*, and at the two last but[c] four besides the *Soveraign*, though the *Registrum Chartaceum anno* 33. names five, by adding the *Duke* of *Somerset*.

y *Fol.*23.*b.*
z *Lib N.* a *p.* 108.
b *Ib.p.*111.
c *Ib.p.*112. 114.

At the *Feast* of St. *George*, celebrated at *Windesor*, *anno*[d] 1471. which answers to the 11. year of King *Edward* the Fourth (although from what is spoken, concurrent with the following circumstances, both out of the [e] *Black Book of the Order*, and the[f] *Registrum Chartaceum*, we suppose it should more rightly be transferr'd to the twelfth of this *King*'s Reign; and therefore this passage throughout may fitly be corrected by those Authorities) the *Soveraign* intending to make an Election, and having but five *Knights-Companions* present with him, *Calys* Purfivant at Arms, was sent to *London* for Sir *John Astley*, to come and furnish the *Chapter*; in which, saith this Fragment, there were chosen seven Knights, namely the *Prince*, the King of *Portugal*, the Duke of *Norfolk*, the Earl of *Wiltshire*, the Lord *Ferrers*, the Lord *Montjoy*, and the Lord *Howard*.

d *Ex MS. in Offic. Armor.* [M. 15.] *fol.* 12. *b.*
e Dominus *Johannes Ascheley* literis suis per Garterum missis sufficientem excusationem obtendit. At à fine celebritatis, quia minor erat illic numerus quam ut Electioni suscipiendi sufficeret, eundem Rex accercebat, ut suppleret. *Lib.N.p.* 132.
f Et puis envoyes per le Roy pour Mesficur *Astley John* desire a l'elexion condemayn apres St. George, *fol.* 42.

But here are some other mistakes, for the *Prince* was not elected until *anno*[g] 15. *E.* 4. and the King of *Portugal* not until the[h] 22. year of the same King. As for the rest we not finding the true time of their Election elsewhere, shall let them stand; having been loth to make use of so imperfect an authority, but that the circumstance of sending for Sir *John Astley*, to make up a *Chapter*, rather than violate the Laws of the *Order*, may be faithfully enough related, and well worth observing through the other false lights cast in, from the inadvertency of the Relator.

g *Lib.N.p.*138. *vide Regist. Chartac. f.* 44.*b.*
h *Lib N.p.*149. *Regist. Chartac.f.*49.*b.*

Lastly, the 31. of *January*, *anno* 21. *Car.* 2. being designed for the *Election* of *Christopher* Duke of *Albemarle*, and there appearing but five Knights at the Chapter, the *Election* was put off till the 3. of *February* following, at which time a statutable number of *Knights* being present, his *Election* past.

SECT. IV.

Dispensation *for want af a full* Number.

AND whereas some may suppose that the *Soveraigns* of this *Order* in later times, have appeared less careful in the due observation of its *Statutes* and *Laws* than were their *Predecessors*, by making use of *Dispensations*, where the number of six *Knights-Companions* have been wanting, they are to consider the License herein, is no other than an advantage to be laid hold on, in cases of necessity only (for necessity can bring a sufficient plea, where the infringement of a Decree is objected, in the Law of this *Order*) and withal to shew that the power and prerogative of *Dispensation* is reserved to the *Soveraigns* of this most Noble *Order*, in all cases of exigency: albeit not to be made use of, where there is a possibility to perform the Rules and Injunctions of the *Statutes*.

The *Soveraigns* therefore in succeeding times, for sundry reasons, and upon important and urgent occasions have been induced to dispence with this branch of

of the *Statute*, as to a full *Number* of *Knights-Companions*; in case so many were not in readiness as the *Law* appointed to make a compleat *Chapter*. And the first liberty we observe to have been taken herein, was by King *Henry* the Eighth, in the [i] 26. year of his Reign; who after he had received intelligence of the death of the Lord *Montjoy*, immediately called a *Chapter* at *Whitehall*, where no more than [k] five *Knights-Companions* being present, the absence of the rest were excused by his special favour, and *the* [l] *Injunction of the Statute* (as the *Annals* further add) *concerning the due* Number *of* Nominators, *were by the same clemency remitted, because of the exigency of the time and place*; and forthwith upon a *Scrutony* then taken, *James* the Fifth King of *Scotland* was elected into the fellowship of this most illustrious *Order*.

i *Lib. M p.266.*
k *Ibidem.*
l *Idem & ibidem.*

From this time to the late Rebellion, we meet not with the like case; but then the wickedness of those days created new necessities, which occasioned or rather inforced the then *Soveraign* (one of the exactest observers of the *Laws* and *Ceremonies* of this *Order*) most unwillingly to awaken this dormant prerogative, which he first put in execution at a *Chapter* specially called for the Election of that deserving and renowned Knight, *Thomas* Earl of *Strafford*, held at the City of *York*, upon the [m] 12. day of *September*, *anno* 16. *Car.* 1. where at that time and place, by his Supream Authority, he dispensed with the defect of *Number* of [n] *six Knights-Companions* (having then with him [o] four only, some of the rest being employed in his Service against the *Scots*) and gave Sir *Thomas Rowe* then *Chancellor* of the *Order*, directions to prepare a *Dispensation* accordingly; which (in regard that *Soveraign* did therewithal command should be [p] entred among the *Annals* of the *Order*) we have thought fit to insert in the [q] *Appendix*.

m, n, o, p *Palmer's large Journal. p.25.*
q *Numb. XVI.*

Afterward, when several of the *Knights-Companions* so much adhered to the Long-Parliament, that no summons could draw thence their attendance upon the *Soveraign*, though but to celebrate the grand Festival of their *Patron* (much less to the compleating *Chapters* of *Election*) to which the Oath taken at their Installation had equally obliged them; the *Soveraign* was constrained to make further use of his Supream Authority, in this very particular; and thereupon at the Feast of St. *George* celebrated at [r] *York*, upon the 18. 19. and 20. days of *April*, in the 18. year of his Reign, in a *Chapter* held on the Eve of the said Feast, by *Himself*, and but [s] four other *Knights-Companions*, *viz.* Prince *Charles*, the Prince *Elector*, the Earl of *Lindsey*, and Duke of *Richmond* and *Lenox*, it was *Ordered*, [t] *That* Letters *of* Dispensation *should be drawn up by Sir* James Palmer (then Deputy Chancellor) *for the insufficient Number* (as wanting of six Knights) *to hold a* Chapter *of* Election; *and for authorizing the* Knights *then present, to deliver in their Votes, according to custom in other Scrutenies, that so the* Soveraign *might proceed to the Election designed.* By virtue of which *Dispensation*, the * Duke of *York*, and Prince *Rupert*, were Elected *Fellows* and *Companions* of this most Noble *Society*.

r *Palmer's large Journal. p. 35.*
s, t *Ibid. p. 36.*
* *Ibid. p. 42.*

The like *Dispensation* was made for the defect of *Six Knights*, to hold a *Chapter* of *Election* at *Oxford*, upon the second day of *March*, *ann.* 20. *Car.* 1. there being then but [u] five *Knights-Companions* present with the *Soveraign*, namely the Duke of *York*, Prince *Rupert*, the Earls of *Dorset* and *Berkshire*, and the Duke of *Richmond* and *Lenox*; at which *Chapter*, *William* Prince of *Orange*, Son-in-Law to the *Soveraign*, and *Bernard de Foix* Duke of *Espernon* were Elected.

u *Ex Autographis penes præf. Jacob Palmer.*

Last of all, in reference to the holding * three several *Chapters*, preparatory to the Feast of St. *George*, and *Grand Installation* celebrated at *Windesor* the 15. 16. and 17. days of *April*, in the 13. of his Majesty the now *Soveraign*'s most happy Reign (one of which *Chapters* was called for the *Election* of four *Knights*, and to deliberate with the surviving *Knights-Companions*) the *Soveraign* was pleased (the 29. day of *March* immediately foregoing) to pass the like [w] *Dispensation*, under the Signet of the *Order*, and his own Sign manual for this defect; and * thereby made those three *Chapters* as legal and of as much force and validity, as if the *Number* of *Knights-Companions*, required by the *Statutes*, had been full and compleat.

* *29. Mar. 1. Apr. 10. Apr.*
w *Lib. Carol. p. 24 & 25.*
x *Appendix Num. XVII.*

SECT. V.

Of opening the Chapter.

WE are now arrived at opening the *Chapter*, whereinto neither the *Soveraign* of the *Order*, nor any of the *Knights-Companions* are to enter, without wearing both their *Mantles* and *Garters*, for so the[y] *Statutes* of the *Order* ordain, and so hath the *Law* been understood, in case where a *Chapter* hath been held elsewhere than at *Windesor*; as for instance at a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall*, for the Election of *John* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, *an.* 20. *Eliz.* the [z] Earl of *Huntingdon*, and the Lord *Grey* of *Wilton*, not having their *Mantles* then at Court, not permitted to enter into that *Chapter*, to give their *Votes* for his Election.

y E. 3. } Stat. H. 5. } Art. 3.

z MS. quart. penes W. le N. Cl. f. 23. b.

The late *Soveraign* King *Charles* of ever blessed memory [a] determining to call a *Chapter* for Electing the foresaid *Thomas* Earl of *Strafford* at *York*, where neither *He*, nor any of the *Knights-Companions* then attending his person, had their *Robes* of the *Order* with them, and taking notice of the Injunction of the *Statutes* now mentioned, did by his supream authority, as *Soveraign* of the *Order*, [b] dispence with the *Knights-Companions* then present, for coming into the *Chapter* without their *Mantles*.

a Palmer's large Journal p. 25.

b Appendix. Num. XVI.

Afterward, upon great necessity, occasioned by the late Rebellion, the same *Soveraign* was inforced to make further use of his Prerogative, relating to this particular, in some [c] following *Chapters* held at *Oxford*.

c Palmer's large Journ. p. 48. & 55. vide Autogr. penes eundem Jac. Palmer.

In like manner shortly after the present *Soveraign* returned to his Throne, a like *Dispensation* pass'd under the *Signet* of the *Order* (the *Great Seal* being then under the hand of the Graver, but not finished) dated the 10. of *January* in the 12. year of his Reign, He being then necessitated to make use of his Supream authority for holding a *Chapter* the 14. of *January* following, in regard the *Knights-Companions*, then in being, were not as yet provided of new *Robes*.

Presuming then, that a full Number of *Knights-Companions* (in obedience to their Summons) are attending the *Soveraign*, habited in their *Mantles* and *Garters*, and entred into the *Chapter-house* at *Windesor*, or other place appointed for this their Assembly, the *Soveraign* having taken his Seat, at the upper end of the Table, and given leave to the *Knights-Companions* to sit; the occasion of their being called together, is first declared, either by the *Soveraign* himself, or by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, upon his command.

The next thing in course, is to give the *Soveraign* information of all the *Stalls* then void, the notice of which vacancies, if (as sometimes formerly) the *Soveraign* happens to be in foreign parts, ought to be before sent him, by his [e] *Deputy* or *Lieutenant*; but if in *England*, and present in *Chapter*, then to be presented by the *Chancellor*, or in his absence, by the *Register* or other *Officer* of the *Order*.

e Lib. N. p. 65.

This done, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* enter into consideration how the room of the defunct *Knight*, or *Knights*, shall be [f] supplied; and sometimes (where two or more *Stalls* are found void) whether they shall be all fill'd up at that time, or if not, [g] how many *Knights* then Elected.

f } Lib. C. g } p. 109.

But where the *Scrutany* is intended to be taken in the *Choire* of St. *George's Chappel* at *Windesor*, these or the like particulars (referring to *Election*) are commonly consider'd of on the *Feast day*, in the *Chapter* held immediately before *Vespers*; wherein it is most usually *Ordered*, That the *Scrutany* shall be taken in the said *Chappel* that following Afternoon, and so was it Decreed on St. *George's* day *anno* 5. *E.* 6. *viz.* [h] *That the* Elections *of* Knights *should be taken that* Evensong, *and in the Chappel.*

h Lib. N. p. 304.

After this, the *Chancellor* begins to collect the *Knights-Companions* Votes, and this is frequently termed, the taking of a *Scrutany*: To the full understanding the nature of this Action and Ceremony, we shall proceed to certain considerations preparatory thereunto; beginning with what concerns the *Nomination* of the Persons to be proposed to *Election*.

SECT.

SECT. VI.

That Knights *only present in* Chapter *ought to* Nominate.

THE *Nomination* of those persons proposed to the *Soveraign*'s Election, belongs only to such of the *Knights-Companions* as are present in *Chapter* when the *Scruteny* is taken; for therein not only all the Bodies of the *Statutes* are positive, but Entrances to that purpose, are made in sundry places of the *Annals*; insomuch, that from the Institution of this most Noble *Order*, it hath not been otherwise used, that we can collect.

And it is observable, that *anno* 26. *Eliz.* (the Feast of St. *George* being celebrated at *Greenwich*) the Earl of *Warwick*, and Lord *Burley* (Lord Treasurer of *England*) fell both ill of the Gout, upon the Feast day, which occasioned their absence at Evening Prayer, whilst the *Scruteny* was taken: whereupon we find their [i] indisposition of body, and absence noted in that Scruteny instead of, and in those peculiar places, where their *Nominations* should else have been entred, had they been present at the taking thereof. And beside this we meet with an observation made upon the same occasion, by *Robert Cooke* Esquire, then *Clarenceux* King of Arms[c] [k] *That as for those* Knights-Companions, *who happen to be absent, when the* Scruteny *is taken, although this absence be occasioned by accident of sickness, or with the* Soveraign's *license, nevertheless, in regard of this their absence, at that very time their* Votes *may not be received.*

[i] *Lib.C.p.95.*

[k] *MS.quart. penes W. le H. Cl.f. 8.*

Those *Knights-Companions* that come late to the Chapter, lose also the priviledge of giving their *Votes* for that time, which so hapned to [l] Prince *Rupert* and the Earl of *Strafford* at the Chapter held for the Election of *James* Duke of *Monmouth* in the *Privy-Chamber* at *Whitehall* the 29. of *March*, *an. Dom.* 1663.

[l] *Lib.Carolin. p.44.& 47.*

Now though none of the absent *Knights-Companions* can give a Proxy to Vote, or otherwise send their suffrages into the *Chapter* or *Chappel*, there to pass in *Nomination*; yet anciently (about the Reigns of King *Henry* the Fifth, and King *Henry* the Sixth) when divers of the *Knights-Companions* were frequently employed in the Wars of *France*, and consequently so strictly obliged to their several Commands, that they could not personally attend the celebration of the *Feast* of St. *George* at *Windesor*, it was usual for the *Commander* there in *chief*, with consent of those *Knights-Companions*, to make a formal *Certificate* or *Presentment* (but not to pass it by way of *Nomination* or *Vote*, for that the Law of the *Order* did not permit) to the *Soveraign* of the *Order*, or his *Lieutenant*, and *Knights-Companions* assembled at the *Feast*, of such persons famous for martial Valor and Virtue, with an account of their notable services and atchievements (attested by other persons of honor also) as were at that time, and in that *Kingdom*, employed in the *Soveraign's* service, and seemed worthy the honor of Election; to the end that famous and deserving men might be preferr'd to so noble a Dignity. Which manner of Recordation we having most happily lighted upon, among the Collections made by the great industry of *William Dugdale* Esquire, now *Norroy* King of Arms; and esteeming it to carry the just reputation, both of authority, for informing us of this custom, and of antiquity, for the hand of that time, cannot without injury to its due worth omit.

My Lord the Duc of Bedford **remembrith, as by the Statutes of the Order of the Gartire, the Election of the Stalls bovde; he saith in the bovre of the Brethren, and of the Fellowship, beyng at the tyme at the Fest, in the presence of the** Soverain **or hys** Deputy; **It thinkyth to my said Lord, that for hys acquital to Knighthood, it syttetb hym to give in knowledge to the Kyng,** Soverain **of the** Ordre, **and to his Fellowship of the same** Ordre, **the great honours of the notable Knights, that from tyme**

tyme to tyme exercyseth, and have exercysed in Knighthood, and especially in the service of their Soveraign Lord; and of such notable Knyghts, as my Lord of Bedford, for the tyme remembreth hym of; he hath, by the advyce of them of the Fellowshyp of the Order, being now in France, in the Kyngs service, and givyng in charge to the said Garter, Kyng of Armes of the Order, to shew theyr Names to the Kyng, and to expound part of theyr Deeds, Acts, and of theyr worthynesse. First, to expose the honour of Sir John Radeclyff, that hath continowed all the tyme of the vitorious Kyng that last dyed, whom Christe absolve, at the first landing of hym at * Quies-de Caux, where the sayd Radeclyff receyved the order of a Knyght, and after continowed the Seige of Harefleu; And after with my Lord of Excester, at the Battaile of Vallemont, and of Quies-de Caux. And also sythen the deth of the sayd vitorious Kyng, Radeclyff being Seneschall of Guyen, hath brought by hys labour in Knyghthood, to hys Soveraign Lord's obeysance, within the Duchie of Guyen many dyverse Cities, Towns, and Fortresses. And in especial deserved great and notable merits, at the Seige of the City of ‖ Bazates, wych Seige was accorded, appointed, and set day of Battaile, and of Rescous, the wych day was kept and houlden, with great power on both sydes, and under Banners displayed, the Enemyes doubtyng to syght wyth Radeclyff required hym of apoyntment they to depart, under safe conduit, from the said feild, the wych safe conduit he graunted them, for the term of eight days, like as they required. The honour and the emprise, rested in the sayd Radeclyff, and to hys hygh merytes; for incontynent followyng, was delyvered to hym the reddyction and possession of the sayd Cytty of Bazates. And also the sayd Radeclyff was at the Battaile of Assincourt, and hath continowed and exercysed the Armys, the space of xxviii. Wynter unreprorhed. And in the tyme of his Esquierhood, was at the Battaile of Shrewsbury, and at the Journey of Hulks, wyth the Lord Grey at the discomfiture and taking of Owenson.

* Ches de Caux.

‖ Bazas.

Syr Thomas Ramston.
Syr Rauff Butler.
Syr William Oldegall.
Syr Ro. Harlyng.
Syr Gilbert Hallall.

Item, my Lord the Duc of Bedford, desereth the Kyng, Soveraign of the Order, to have also for recommendyd to his good grace and highnesse, other of his Subjects and Servants, now being in hys service, in his Realme of France, wych hath doon, and yet doth take great payne by their Knyghtly labour, dayly to serve the merite of worthynesse and prowesse; as Sir Robert Hungerford, Sir Thomas Beamont, Sir John Popeham, Sir Nicholas Burdett, Sir Rauff Nevell, Sir Edward Wyver, Sir John Robesart, Sir Tyre Robesart, Sir William Bretton, Sir Thomas Kyngston, Sir Richard Hankford and dyverse other.

But lest peradventure it may seem to some, that the *Knights-Companions* present in *Chapter* can at their pleasures, *Nominate* or propose to Election such persons as they think fit, so they be qualified according to the *Statutes* of the *Order*; this priviledge is to be understood of *Knights Subjects* only; for in all cases concerning *Strangers*, the *Soveraign* doth but permit, and may direct and confine the *Knights-Companions* to the *Nomination* of such, as *He* at any time intends to Elect, which *Prerogative* we find more particularly asserted in the 31. year of the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, and third year of King *Charles* the First.

In the first of these instances, the [m] *Blue Book* of the *Order* recordeth, That at a *Chapter* held immediately before *Vespers* on Saint *George*'s day, the Earl of *Huntingdon*, then Lieutenant for the *Soveraign*, acquainted the *Knights-Companions*, that

m *Pag.* 113.

That the Soveraign *did* [n] permit *them, or leave it to their pleasure, to chuse into the Order whatsoever* Foreign Prince *they should by their Votes approve of.*

n Locum-tenens certiores facit Commilitones superiorem permittere ipsorum voluntati, quemcunq; externum Principem; quem suis suffragiis comprobarent in hunc Ordinem Eligere. *Ibid.*

Hence there may be observed two things, First, that the *Knights-Companions* have not the priviledge and liberty to *nominate* what Foreign *Prince* they please, but the same is derivative from the *Soveraign*, and only by his particular license or leave, at some times permitted to them.

Secondly, if this Paragraph be well weighed (as also that which succeeds) it is most clear from the context, that *Nominare* ought to be understood here by the word *Eligere*, and that the power delegated to the *Knights-Companions* from the *Soveraign*, was only to *Nominate*, not *Elect*. For it immediately follows, [o] *That the* Knights-Companions *went from the* Chapter *to the second* Vespers, *and while the Divine Offices were celebrating, the* Prelate *received their* Nominations, *and that very Evening the* Lieutenant *presented them to the* Soveraign, *for her to consider of:* which had been needless, if the *Knights-Companions* had been impowered by her said License, to have made the choice themselves: But the contrary is yet more evident by that which follows, for the next morning, all the *Knights-Companions* attending the *Soveraign* in *Chapter*, she her self made there the *Election*, not of any Foreign *Prince*, but of the * Earl of *Sussex*, and Lord *Buckhurst*.

o A Capitulo ibant ad Vesperas, dum illæ celebrantur, Equites Nuncupationes Votorum ineunt quas Prælatus Ordinis excepit. *ead. pag.*

* *Ibid. p.* 114.

In the other Instance *anno* 3. *Car.* 1. the *Soveraign* in a [p] *Chapter*, held before *Vespers* on St. *George's* day, signified it to be his pleasure (three *Stalls* being then vacant) that out of Foreign *Princes* (*the* [q] Nomination *of whom* (saith the *Annals* in that very place) *belongs only to the* Soveraign; that is, the *Soveraign* has the prerogative to direct the *Knights-Companions* to *Name*, or impose upon them the *Nomination* of such Foreign *Princes* as he pleaseth) they the *Knights-Companions* should *Chuse*, which must nevertheless be understood to *Nominate*, or enter down into the *Scruteny* (not *Elect*) *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, and *Henry* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*: For there a little after, it in like manner appears (when the *Scruteny* was presented to the *Soveraign*) that *Himself*, not the *Knights-Companions*, made *Election* of them.

p *Lib. R. p.* 33.

q Quorum nominatio ad se solum spectat. *Ibid.*

And it is further manifest by the *Scruteny* [r] there inserted, that both these *Princes* were named by every of the *Knights-Companions* then present, according to the *Soveraign's* signification (which has been usually done at all other times, upon the like occasions, as may be seen by the *Scrutenies* entred in the *Annals*) But concerning the third person then to be *Elected*, the *Soveraign* (intending him to be a *Knight-Subject*) left it wholly to their pleasure, to *Nominate* whomsoever they esteemed worthy of their *Votes*.

r { *Lib. R. loco citato.*

Since this time, the *Nominations* in like cases have been sufficiently owned, by the *Knights-Companions* themselves, to be a Prerogative belonging to the *Soveraign*: For, to the end they might more readily and fully comply with the observance of this particular; it was moved in a [t] *Chapter* held at *Oxford*, the second day of *March*, *an.* 19. *Car.* 1. [u] *That it might become a custom for the* Soveraign *to declare before hand, whether He would Elect any* Foreign Prince, *and whom*; *that so the* Knights-Companions *might be sure to* Name *him in the* Scruteny.

t { *Ex Autograph. penes præf. Jac. Palmer.*

SECT. VII.

Of the Number, Qualifications, *and* Degrees *of the Persons to be* Nominated.

ANother consideration in our progress towards the act of *Election*, is touching the *Number*, *Qualifications*, and *Dignities* of the *Persons Nominated*, which

which may be best known from another branch of the before mentioned *Article* of the *Statutes*, and is to this effect, [w] *That every one of the* Knights-Companions *present at the Election, should* Nominate *for himself nine very sufficient* Persons, *whom he should judge free from all reproach and scandal, whether Subjects to the Soveraign, or Forreigners. Provided they are known not to favour or abet any party at enmity with him: that is to say three* Earls, *or others of higher degree, three* Barons, *and three* Knights.

w E.3. Stat. Art. 18.

The things chiefly observable out of this *Text*, we rank under *five heads.*

First, The Number of Persons Nominated, or to be given in by every *Knight-Companion*, are to be exactly *Nine.*

Secondly, They ought to be of *unblamable Reputation.*

Thirdly, Either *Subjects* to the *Soveraign*, or else *Strangers.*

Fourthly, Such as are known not to be engaged in any party against the *Soveraign.*

Lastly, To be *Earls* (or of greater dignity) or *Barons*, or *Knights.*

1. For the first of these, their *Number*; every one of the *Knights-Companions* assembled in *Chapter* are enjoined to name *nine*, neither more nor less. So also saith King *Henry* the Fifth's [x] *Statutes*, whereunto are consonant the [z] *Statutes* of King *Henry* the Eighth. And in this particular the *Statutes* have been hitherto observed (except in one case) as from the Entries of those many *Scrutenies*, in the *Annals* of this most Noble *Order*, is fully evident.

x Art 18.
z Art. 19.

As to Numbers, we are taught that great Mysteries lie wrapt up in them, the excellency and dignity whereof, and particularly of this number *Nine* (which [a] *Scaliger* calls the most perfect number) are largely celebrated among the Learned, both ancient and modern, which are easie to be met with; wherefore we shall not spend further time to insist upon them.

a Poet. l. 1. c. 1.

But why our Royal *Founder* made choice of this *Number*, to be put in *Nomination*, above all other, unless he had some reflection on the *Nine Worthies* (men reported famous for valour and martial exploits, and therefore not unlikely to be at first proposed as Examples to the *Knights-Nominators*) or otherwise considered it as a trebled threefold Cord, and Symbol of perfect stability and solid amity (for so also is the number *Nine* accounted to signifie) can neither easily nor certainly be resolved.

2. As to the second point; the *Injunction* in the Statutes of Institution takes order, that the Persons designed for *Election*, should be *free from all reproach, and of untainted reputation*; and according to those of King *Henry* the Fifth, are to be [b] *the best and most sufficient* Knights, *and freest from reproach, that the Nominators know.* To the same purpose speaks the *Exemplar* entred in the *Black Book*, [c] *Such as are fittest, and whom they who Nominate believe to be free from ignominy and dishonour.* And to this Act of *Nomination* belongs part of the second *Article* in *Henry* the Eighth's Statutes, [d] *That no* Knight-Companion *should name any Person whom he thinks or esteems in his Conscience, to have upon him any spot of Reproach:* But on the contrary in another place of the same *Statutes*, it is provided, that they be nominated and proposed, [e] *out of the number of the most worthy and select Knights.*

b Art. 18.
c Art. 17.
d Lib. N. p. 215.
e Art. 19.

How tender the *Knights-Companions* were in ancient time of infringing the *Statutes* in this particular, is manifest from a notable passage, which fell out [f] *an.* 39. *H.* 6. at a *Scruteny* taken the 8. of *February*, in the Bishop of *London's Palace*; where *John de Foix* Earl of [g] *Kendall*, a *Gascoigner* by birth, (which makes the Example more eminent, where a Stranger became so tender of the honor of the *Order*) not being acquainted with the [h] quality and merit of Knights and honorable Persons among us, so well and sufficiently, as to name such whom he was confident were irreprehensible, and without blemish, forbore to [i] nominate any person at all. And certainly, seeing the *Statutes* put very considerable qualifications upon the *Deputies* and *Proxies* made choice of for the Installation of *Strangers* (as shall be discourst of in its proper [k] place) much more caution and regard ought to be used and had, both in the *Nomination* and *Election* of *Knights*, into this so Illustrious *Society.*

f g h i } Lib. N. p. 121.
k Cap. 16. N. 2.

3. Touching

3. Touching the third point; the *Statutes* make indifferently capable of being *Nominated* or *Elected*, either *Knights-Subjects*, or *Strangers*, [Free Princes or their Subjects] and it was so even at the Institution, upon the first choice; where among the 25 Elected *Knights*, 23 of them were *Subjects* (among whom we reckon *Piers Capdull de la Buche*) but Sir *Sanchio dabrichecourt*, and Sir *Henry Eme* were both born Strangers, and Subjects to other Princes.

And thus was it practised, not only in the remaining part of the *Founder*'s Reign, and during the Reigns of three of his *Successors*, as appears in the *Catalogue* of *Knights* elected in their times; but also ever since, as is more particularly and fully evident, from the *Scrutenies* taken and entred throughout the *Annals* of the *Order*.

Of those who were admitted into this Noble *Order* by *Election*, we shall in the last Chapter give an account in a compleat *Catalogue* of them: Here we think it sufficient, to insert the *Names* of such, as having not been Elected, are not to be forgotten, out of this very respect, that by their standing *Candidates* in Elections into this *Order*, have the fame of being mentioned in the principal *Register* of *Honor* now in the *Christian* world: Giving a List, not of all (for that were too numerous) but only those of eminent quality in Foreign parts, with the time when the *Scrutenies* were taken, that transmitted them to our hands.

A Catalogue of some Strangers, *who have been* Nominated *yet not Elected.*

Franciscus Sforza dux Mediolani	28. H. 6.
Franciscus secundus dux Britanniæ	13. 14. 15. 22. E. 4.
Henricus quartus Rex Legionis & Castillæ.	14. E. 4.
Matthias Corvinus Rex Hungariæ	19. 22. E. 4.
Fredericus secundus Dux Austriæ	22. E. 4. & 1. R. 3.
Philippus quartus Dux Burgundiæ	14. H. 7.
Franciscus Maria Dux Urbini	1. 2. H. 8.
Vladislaus secundus Rex Hungariæ	1. 2. 6. 8. H. 8.
Christianus secundus Rex Daniæ	6. 8. H. 8.
Dux Barrye. / *Comes Galaciæ*	8. H. 8.
Alphonsus Dux Ferrariæ	13. 15. H. 8.
Lodovicus secundus Rex Hungariæ	13. 14. 15. H. 8.
Maximilianus Sforza Dux Mediolani	14. 15. 16. H. 8.
Marchio Piscaræ	17. H. 8.
Johannes tertius Rex Portugalliæ	17. 18. 26. 28. H. 8.
--------*Marchio Mantuæ*	18. H. 8.
Carolus Burbonus Dux Vandosme	24. H. 8.
Guilielmus Dux Clivensis / --------*Dux Bavariæ*	32. H. 8.
Dux Alvæ / *Dux Medinæ Cœli* / *Comes Fereæ*	1. & 2. Ph. & Mar.
Franciscus secundus Rex Galliæ	1. Elizab.
Franciscus tertius Comes Palatinus	10. 11. 12. 13. 16. 17. Eliz.
Augustus Dux Saxoniæ	11. Eliz.
Alphonsus secundus Dux Ferrariæ	13. Eliz.
--------*Dux Andegavensis*	13. 22. 23. 24. Eliz.
Rambrith de Walsey / *Johannes de Voynada*	25. H. 6.
Dominus Grabazenby / *Dominus Humers* / *Dominus Johannes Mounte* / *Dominus Harmibolt* / *Dominus Boyssy*	24. H. 8.

4. In the fourth place, they are not in a capacity of *Nomination*, who are known to have taken contrary part against the *Soveraign*; or as the *Exemplar* entred in the *Black Book* more largely than any of the *Statutes* express, [l] *such as are not his Adversaries, or Abettors or willing defenders of his Adversaries.* But concerning such, we no where observe they had room in the *Scrutenies*, all *Knights-Companions* having been more wary and discreet, than by Nominating a known or publick Enemy, to put either disrespect upon the *Soveraign*, or offer violation to the *Statutes*.

Art.17.

5. In the fifth and last place, concerning the *Degree*, *Rank*, and *Dignity* of the Nine *Knights* propounded to *Election*; the *Statutes* of *Institution* appoint, That they be, first, *three* Earls, *or persons of greater dignity*, *secondly*, *three* Barons, *and thirdly*, *three* Knights; or as it is in *Henry* the Fifth's Statutes, [m] *trois* Contes, *ou de greigneur estat*, *trois* Banerets, *&* *trois* Batchelers. These Degrees are to be ranked in three *Classes*, and they distinguished by three *Divisions*, all comprehending the three *Degrees* aforesaid.

m *Art.18.*

As touching the first of these *Divisions*; whereas all other *Bodies* and *Exemplars* of the *Statutes* make positive mention of *Earls* only (taking in nevertheless the higher Degrees though not named) the *Statutes* of *Henry* the Eighth express themselves in this point somewhat more amply than the rest, by mentioning in the first Class, [n] *Dukes*, *Marquesses*, and *Earls*, *or persons superiour* to these in Degree, wherein the highest Dignities are included.

n *Art.19.*

In this place we may properly observe, the different Title (*viz. Baneret*) that *Henry* the Fifth's *Statutes* (but now mentioned) hath given us, instead of *Baron*; and not only in this *Article*, but in all [o] other, where there is occasion to speak of *Barons*; nevertheless the *Record* intends by it, to signifie no other than the very same Degree, namely a *Baron*. For albeit a *Baneret*, who had his name [p] a *Vexillo*, from the *Banner*, was usually taken to signifie a Degree of Honor next beneath that of *Baron*, both heretofore and in later times (as may be collected from that famous [q] establishment made on the behalf of the *younger sons* of *Viscounts* and *Barons*) yet formerly among our *Records* it is found to be a Synonimy to *Baron*, and so clearly made out by our most learned [r] *Selden*, and is to be so taken here; and not as a distinct Title of a lower Degree, because also we observe the *Banerets* ranked in all Scrutenies before King *Henry* the Eighth established his Statutes (except [s] one) with the *Knights-Batchelors* not with *Barons*.

o *Art.21.22.*
p 2. *part Institut. f.667.*
q *Pat.10. Jac. pars 10.m.8.*
r *Titles of Honor, p.736.737*
s *An 14. H.7. vide Lib. N. p.172. & 173.*

Besides this, something further may be said concerning the *Title* of the third and lowest rank in this *Classis*; for in the *Statutes* of *Institution* they are called [w] *Milites Bachalauri*, in those of King *Henry* the Fifth [x] *Batchelers*, and elsewhere [y] *Bachalauri*, and [z] *Bachalauri Equites*, which in common acceptation are all the same with *Milites*; though thus rendred to express and manifest their difference from *Knights Banerets*, who are of a higher Degree of Honor. And here we have an occasion given to note, That there is no place in a *Scruteny* for any under the degree of Knights *Batchellors*.

w *Art. 18.*
x *Art.18.*
y *Ord.Stat. in Lib. N. Art.17.*
z *H.8. Stat. Art.19.*

And though [h] three of the Nine named are appointed to be *Barons*, and three other *Earls*, or of a higher Degree, yet must these six be such as have received the *Order* of *Knighthood*, else ought not their names be either given or taken in Nomination; for the Text is plain, *That each of the Knights assembled at the Election shall name nine* [i] *Knights*.

h 5 *Ord.Stat.*
i 2 *in Bibl. Hatton Art.18. H.5. Stat. Art. 18.H.8.Stat. Art.19.*

Thus his late *Majesty* of blessed memory, in the sixth year of his Reign, intending to chuse *James* Marquess *Hamilton* into the Society of this *Order*, conferr'd the honor of [k] *Knighthood* upon him immediately before his *Nomination*; and the *Annals* in that place give this Remarque upon the Action, and the reason for it, [l] *Because by the* Statutes *it is provided, That none should be Elected into the* Order, *that have not been dignified with the title of* Knight.

k *Lib.R.p.59.*
l *Ibid.*

Yet it seems the Ceremony of *Knighting* the person designed for *Election*, was not so strictly and duly observed as it ought, but that sometimes this branch of the Statute was either not taken notice of, or else confounded with the second *Article*, throughout the several *Bodies* of the *Statutes*, which prohibits the *Choice* or *Election* of any person into the *Society* (of which we shall speak by and by) as this

this doth the *Proposal* or *Nomination*; and thereupon perhaps it was conceived, that although the *Nomination*, *Election*, and sometimes delivery of the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, were first dispatcht and past, yet it was well enough if the honor of *Knighthood* were conferr'd afterward. As it was in the case of *William* Earl of *Derby*, and *Thomas Cecil* Lord *Burleigh*, *anno* 43. *Eliz.* where the *Register* notes, [m] that as soon as their *Election* was past, and they brought into the *Chapter*, the Earl of *Derby* (who it seems had not been Knighted before) was dubbed *Knight*, with a drawn Sword, according to Custom, after which they had the *Garter* and *George* put on by the *Soveraign* her self.

m *Lib. C. p.* 144.

In like manner [n] *Ulrick* Duke of *Holstein*, and *Henry* Earl of *Northampton*, immediately after their *Election* (being the last day of St. *George*'s Feast, *an.* 3. *Jac.*) and before they received the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, had the dignity of *Knighthood* conferr'd on them by the *Soveraign*. So also in the case of the Earl of *Suffolk*, *an.* 3. *Car.* 1. which the *Red Book* of the *Order* taking notice of, saith, [o] *that as soon as it was understood, that the* Earl *had not received the* Order *of* Knighthood *before, the* Soveraign *immediately drawing his Sword* Knighted *him*; which was not done till after his [p] *Election*, and Investiture with both the *George* and *Garter*.

n *Pag.* 159.

o, p *Pag.* 35.

Thus also did the Ceremony of *Knighthood* succeed the *Election* of his sacred *Majesty* the present *Soveraign*, the 21. of *May*, *an.* 14. *Car.* 1. For [q] after he had been *Elected*, and the *Ensigns* of the *Order* placed upon him, and that the two *senior Knights* (the Earls of *Penbroke* and *Montgomery*, and of *Arundel* and *Surrey*) were intreated by the rest of the *Knights-Companions*, to present his *Highness* to the *Soveraign* in the name of all the rest, to be initiated into the Title and Dignity of a *Knight-Batchelor*, he was conducted by the said *Earls* (his Supporters) into the *Presence Chamber* in *Windsor Castle*, where before the Chair of State, he most solemnly [r] received the *Order* of *Knighthood* from the *Soveraign* his late *Majesty* of blessed memory.

q, r *Palmer's large Journal. p.* 9.

To [s] honor which *Knighthood*, and the memory thereof, four of the chief *Nobility* then present were also *Knighted*, namely, the Earls of *Essex*, *Saint Albans*, and *Elgin*, and Viscount *Grandison*; the first of them being conducted from the great Chamber to the *Soveraign*'s *State*, between two Batchellor Knights, Sir *Frederick Hamilton*, and Sir *Robert Humwood*; the second by Sir *Roger Palmer* Knight of the Bath, and Sir *Henry Mildmay*; the third by Sir *John Meldram* and Sir *William Withrington*; and the fourth by Sir *John Harpur* and Sir *John Lucas*.

s *Lib. R. p.* 143.

Afterwards the *Law* in this point began again to be more rightly understood, and by that time his *Royal Highness* the *Duke* of *York*, came to be Elected (which was on the [t] 20. of *April*, *an.* 18. *Car.* 1. being the last day of the *Feast* of Saint *George*, then celebrated at the City of *York*) the *Soveraign* appointed and accordingly conferr'd the honor of *Knighthood* upon him, the [u] day before, which he received upon his knees; being first conducted into the *Presence Chamber*, between two of the *Nobility*, who were also *Knights*, namely, the [w] Marquess of *Hertford*, and Viscount *Grandison*: In honor and memorial whereof, there were also four *Noblemen* Knighted at that time, the [x] Earl of *Carnarvan*, supported by Sir *William Killegrew* and young Sir *Arthur Ingram*; the Lord *George d' Aubigne*, supported by Sir *William Howard* and Sir *Peter Wyche*; the Lord *John Stewart*, by Sir *Peter Killegrew* and Sir *Capell Bedell*; and the Lord *Bernard Stewart* by Sir *Edward Savage* and Sir *Henry Blount*.

t, u *Palmer's large Journ. p.* 42.

w, x *Ibid. p.* 39.

And thus [y] Prince *Edward* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and *George* Duke of *Buckingham*, being designed by the present *Soveraign* to be admitted into this most Noble *Order*, were both first *Knighted* at *Saint Germans* in *France*, *an. Dom.* 1649. and afterwards had the [a] *Ensigns* of the *Order* sent unto them by the hands of Sir *Edward Walker Garter*, who, in right of his *Office*, invested them therewith.

y, z, a *Ex Collectan. Ei. W.G.*

Nevertheless in the case of his *Highness Prince Rupert*, who had the honor to be *Elected*, with his *Royal Highness* the Duke of *York*, *an.* 18. *Car.* 1. His want of *Knighthood* became no impediment thereunto, being then a *Prince* in another *Country*, *viz. Count Palatine* of the *Rhine* and Duke of *Bavaria*, and might therefore justly claim the priviledge, to come within the rule of *Foreign Princes*, mentioned a little lower.

But herein also the *Soveraign*, to come as neer to the intention and observance of the *Statute* as he could (where there was a possibility to do it, and the honor also would be well accepted by the *Prince*) thought it requisite by *Commission*, under the great Seal of *England*, to impower [b] *Thomas* Earl of *Arundel* and *Surrey*, and *George* Lord *Goring* (late Earl of *Norwich*) both being then in *Holland*, or either of them, to [c] *Knight* the said *Prince*, [d] before the putting on his *Garter* (seeing it could not possibly be done before his *Election*) which was intended to be sent and presented unto him, by the hands of Sir *John Burrough Garter*; but his * death after hapning, the *Soveraign*'s intention herein was frustrated. Albeit the *Prince* upon his coming afterwards into *England*, received both the *Garter* and *George* from the *Soveraign* himself at [e] *Nottingham*, nevertheless without being *Knighted*, which to excuse it may well be alledged, that the *Soveraign* might not take into his thoughts this part of the *Ceremony*, it being a time of so greas busines and trouble, occasioned by the then setting up of his *Standard*.

However, upon the [f] 17. day of *January*, *an.* 1644. when a Decree past in *Chapter*, then held at *Oxford*, that both the Duke of *York* and the *Prince* should enjoy all [g] Rights and Priviledges of the *Order*, though they were not hitherto Installed (until *Windesor* was free from the Enemy, but then to perform the Ceremonies of *Installation* there) the *Prince*, [h] before he took his *Oath*, was conducted by the Earl of *Berkshire*, and Duke of *Richmond* and *Lenox* (two of the *Knights-Companions*) unto the *Soveraign*, and kneeling down received the honor of [i] *Knighthood* from him. There being at the same time, [k] two of the *Nobility* likewise *Knighted* in memorial of that Solemnity; namely, the Lord *Henry Seymour*, second Son to the Marques of *Hertford*, brought up to the *Soveraign* between Sir *John Stawell* Knight and Baronet, and Sir *Francis Lloyd* Knight; and the Lord *Capell* conducted between Sir *Richard Willis* and Sir *Thomas Corbet* Knights.

b, c, d *Palmer's large Journal p.45.*
* *Pag.* 48. & 53.
e *Pag.* 33.
f *Id. p.62.*
g, h, i, k *Id. p.65.*

SECT. VIII.

Of the Scruteny, *and by* whom *it ought to be taken.*

ALL this being premised, we are led directly to the *Scruteny* it self, in reference to which we shall first consider by *Whom* it ought or hath been usually taken, next the *time* when, and then the *manner* and *form* thereof.

By the *Statutes* of *Institution* the collecting the *Knights-Companions Votes*, and entring them in the *Scruteny*, properly belongs to the [p] *Prelate* of the *Order*, and upon him is this employment conferr'd, not only by the other [q] *Bodies* of *Statutes* that succeeded, but also by the [r] *Constitutions* of his *Office*, and the obligation of his * *Oath*; whose right thereunto we find afterwards duly [s] asserted, upon this Officers taking a *Scruteny*, *anno* 27. *Eliz.* on the Feast day of St. *George*.

Nevertheless the *Statutes* provided, that if the *Prelate* were at any time absent, then the [t] *Dean* of *Windesor*, or the [u] *Register*, or the [w] *senior Residentiary* of the *Colledge*, or the [x] *Secretary* or *Scribe* of the *Order*, should undertake the employment; and the *Constitutions* of the Officers say, the * *Chancellor*, *Dean*, or *Register* shall in like case do it; which when they did, it is frequently mentioned to be performed by them, [y] *in absence of the Prelate*, as implying a reservation of his right to the employment; or as in another place more expresly, [z] *In the absence of the* Prelate, *whose particular duty otherwise it had been.* Now there are various Examples of all these, given us in the *Annals* of the *Order*, but among the many, take these that follow, and first of the *Prelate*.

The *Prelate* of the *Order* gathered and received the *Suffrages* from the *Knights-Companions*, [a] *anno* 9. *H.* 5. when *John Earl Marshal*, and four other *Knights* were

p *E.3. Stat. H.5. Art.18*
q *H 8. Stat. Art. 19.*
r *Lib.N p.232.*
* *Ib. p.313.*
s Wintoniensis Antistes Ordinis Prælatus *cujus illud erat Officium*, summa cum reverentia ad solitam Equitum nomenclaturam procedit. &c. *lib. C. p.100.*
t, u, w *E.3. Stat. Art.18.*
x *Ord. Stat. in Lib.N. Art.17.*
* *Lib.N p.232.*
y *Lib.N p.77. & 89.*
z In absentia *Prelati* cujus Ordinarium alioquin id erat Officium. *Idem p. 84.*
a *Lib.N.p.64.*

were Elected. The like did *Henry Beaufort Lord Cardinal, Prelate* of the *Order*, upon the Election of the *King* of *Portugal*, [b] *an.* 13. *H.* 6. And when the Duke of *Norfolk* was Elected, [c] *an.* 28. *H.* 6. the *Prelate* then also collected the *Suffrages*; which he likewise did, upon the Feast days of St. *George*, celebrated in the [d] 12. [e] 13. [f] 14. [g] 27. [h] 28. [i] 30. [k] 31. [l] 34. and [m] 35. years of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign.

Sometimes the *Scrutenies* have been collected, both by the *Dean* of *Windesor* and the *Register* of the *Order* jointly; as at the Elections of [n] *John* Lord *Talbot an.* 2. *H.* 6. of [o] Sir *John Fastolf, an.* 6. *H.* 6. and the Duke of [p] *Quinbery, an.* [q] 5. *H.* 6. all taken at the *Feasts* of St. *George* celebrated at *Windesor*.

And peradventure the *Dean*, at those times, received the *Votes* from the *Knights-Companions* on the *Soveraign*'s side, while the *Register* collected those other on the *Prince*'s; for we observe, that in King *Henry* the Fifth's Reign, in employments of other natures (but of like manner as to the performance) one whereof was, to signifie the pleasure of the *Soveraign* to the *Knights-Companions*, about their giving due *Reverence*, first to *God*, and afterwards to *Himself*; and the other in a *Ceremonial*, which directs and appoints the manner and order of [r] *Censing* the *Knights-Companions*; in both which, the *Dean* was sent to perform the service on the [s] right hand the *Choire* [the *Soveraign*'s side] and the *Register*, on the [t] left.

Sometimes the *Register* of the *Order* took them himself alone, as at the Election of [u] *John* Earl of *Arundel, an.* 10. *H.* 6. as also at another Election of the [w] Earl of *Morteyne* and Sir *John Grey, an.* 14. *H.* 6. And we likewise find, that when the *Office* of *Register* was void, and *Thomas Ruthall* Bishop of *Duresme*, executed it during its vacancy, the Bishop himself [x] *an.* 2. *H.* 8. collected the *Suffrages*. In like manner, when *William Day* Dean of *Windesor*, officiated in the absence of *George Carew* Dean of the *Chappel* and *Register* of the *Order*, at the Feasts of Saint *George* held at *Whitehall* the [y] 18. and [z] 19. years of Queen *Elizabeth*, he performed this service.

This duty was likewise performed by the *Register*, from the 15. year of King *Henry* the Eighth, to the end of his and his *Sons* Reign, as appears by the *Black Book* of the *Order*, in those places, where the taking of *Scrutenies* is treated of, as also on the day of St. *George*, celebrated the first of Queen *Elizabeth* by [a] *John Boxhall*, and again at the Feast of St. *George* held, *an.* 1. *Jac.* by [b] *Gyles Thompson*, who in the several times were *Registers* of this most Noble *Order*. Nevertheless here it must be understood, that what was in these Instances done by the *Register* or such as officiated for him, was on the behalf of the *Prelate*, and not otherwise.

But in the * beginning of Queen *Maries* Reign, we find the *Chancellor* of the *Order* began to perform this service, being by || King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, adjoined to those other *Officers*, before appointed to collect the *Scrutenies*, in absence of the *Prelate*, and thereby made capable of the employment; which afterwards we observe somewhat tacitely noted to be performed, as if in his own right, when the *Register* hath done it, in the *Chancellor*'s absence. Though in truth it was no other, then as when the Bishop of *Duresme*, and Doctor *Day* (immediately before remembred) took the *Scruteny* in the vacancy of the *Office*, and absence of the *Register*, nevertheless on the behalf of the *Prelate*.

For instance, *an.* 4. *Eliz.* the *Register* in the [c] absence of the *Chancellor* (who was sick) upon the Feast day of St. *George* collected the *Suffrages*; and *an.* 8. *Eliz.* *George Carew* then *Register* of the *Order*, took the *Votes* of the *Knights-Companions*, [d] *in absence of Sir* William Petre *Chancellor of the Order*. So also *anno* [e] *Jacobi* 4. where the cause of the *Chancellor*'s absence is noted to be [f] sickness, and *an.* 6. *Jac.* to be [g] death.

In the first of these Instances we find the *Prelate* expresly mentioned to be present; in the two following his presence implyed, for it is said, that the [h] four *Officers* of the *Order* did attend both *Feasts*, whereof (the *Chancellor* being wanting) the *Prelate* must needs be one.

Now all these passages seem to relate to the *Chancellor*'s, rather than the *Prelate*'s right, by this Remarque; That every of the *Scrutenies* were taken in the

b *Id. p.* 91.
c *Pag.*105.
d *Lib C.p.*60.
e *Idem p.*62.
f *Pag.*64.
g *Pag.*100.
h *Pag.*103.
i *Pag* 108.
k *Pag.*113.
l *Pag.*119.
m *Pag.*128.
n *Lib.N. p.*77.
o *Pag.*81. *& Regist. Chartac. f.* 13.*b.*
p Conimbero.
q *Lib.N.p.*84.
r *Regist Chartac.f.*9.*b.*
s *Lib. N.*
t *p.* 65.
u *Ib.p.*89.
w *Pag.*92.
x *Pag.*199.
y *Lib.C.p.*73.
z *MS.penes C. O.T.p.*113.
a *Lib.C.p.*29.
b *Pag.*150.
* *Pag.*7.
|| *Att.*19.
c *MS.penes W. Le.N.Cl.*
d *Lib.C.p.*51.
e *Pag.*161.
f *MS. penes Guil.Dugdale Ar.modo Norroy Reg. Armor.*
g *Lib.C.p.*166.
h *Ex eod. MS. pen.Guil.Dugdale.*

the absence of the *Chancellor*, which looks something like a cautionary note, that intended the preservation of the right of performing this service to the *Chancellor*, rather than the *Prelate*.

Furthermore, when a *Deputy Chancellor* hath been admitted to officiate in the *Chancellor*'s absence, he and not the *Prelate* hath taken the *Scruteny*, though present; as at that made for the Election of his *sacred Majesty* the present *Soveraign*, the [i] 20. day of *May*, *an.* 14. *Car.* 1. and at another *Scruteny* taken the [k] 22. of *May* following. As also when the *Suffrages* were collected, for the *Election* of his *Highness* the [l] *Duke* of *York*, and *Prince Rupert*, at *York* *anno* 17. *Car.* 1.

i } *Palmer's*
k } *Large Journal p.* 18.
l *Ibid.p.*40.

But there is one passage more (upon taking a *Scruteny*, *an. Jac.* 22.) which seems advantageous to the *Chancellor* in this point, where it is said, [m] *That when the* Knights-Companions *had given their Votes* (as in the *Annals* they are described) *the* Chancellor *who*, according to his Office, *was to receive them, presented them to the Soveraign.* Howbeit in truth, we find no sufficient ground for the *Register* to record this as done by the *Chancellor*, *by virtue of his Office*, or any one *Act* or *Decree* of *Chapter* that hath suspended or taken off the *Prelate's* right, which is reserved to the *Prelate*, even by the * Patent for erecting the *Office* of *Chancellor*, particularly in those things, which touching the *Order*, ought by the *Statutes* of the Institution to belong to him. But forasmuch as at the usual time of performing this Ceremony in the *Chappel*, the *Prelate* (if present) is presumed to be officiating at the Altar, in discharge of another part of his Duty: Upon this consideration hath the service been then imposed upon the *Chancellor* and *others*.

m Suffragia quum dedissent prænominati milites, & ea supremo detulisset, Cancellarius, qui eis ex officio excipiendis incumbebat, Supremus &c *lib.R.p.*23.
* *Pat.*15. *E* 4. *par.*3.*m.*18.

Lastly, we have observed the *Scruteny* to be once taken by [n] *Garter*, *an.* 16. *Car.* 1. at the Election of the renowned *Thomas* Earl of *Strafford*; but this was at a time when not only the *Prelate*, but all the other *Officers* of the *Order*, excepting Sir *John Burrough Garter*, were absent; and consequently this *service* being so performed by him, ought rather be judged (from what hath been said) to have been done in the *Prelate's*, than *Chancellor's* right.

n *Palmer's Large Journal. p.* 27.

SECT. IX.

The Time *when.*

BUT whosoever of the *Officers* of the *Order* they were that gathered the *Knights-Companions Suffrages*, the time when they entred upon this duty (in the intervals of *Feasts*, where the occasion required a peculiar *Chapter* to be called for *Election*) was usually after the *Chapter* had been opened, and the matter of *Election* proposed by the *Soveraign*; after which (to the execution of this accustomed employment) the *Officer* usually proceeded with great Reverence and all possible Respect.

Howbeit upon an extraordinary occasion (in the interval of the Grand *Feasts*) the *Soveraign* hath sometimes caused an assembly of the *Knights-Companions* to be had at the *Castle* of *Windesor*, who in the *Choire* of St. *George's Chappel* (not *Chapter-house*) after the more solemn way, have delivered in their *Nominations*, and returning thence into the *Chapter-house*, *He* there hath made his *Election*. Thus did King *Henry* the Eighth, upon the [o] 7. of *June* in the 17. year of his Reign in reference to the *Election* of the [p] Lord *Henry Fitz Roy* (so is he styled in the *Scruteny*, and there ranked among the *Barons*) for as yet he was not created *Duke* of *Somerset* and *Richmond*, nor until the [q] 18. day of the same Month) and *Ralph Nevil* Earl of *Westmerland*; the Ceremony of whose *Nominations* having been performed in the [r] *Choire*, the *Soveraign* returned into the *Chapter-house* where the *Election* passed.

o *Lib. N. p.* 248.
p *Ibid.p.*249.
q *Pat.de an.*17. *H.*8.*pars* 1.
r *Lib.N.p.*249.

Again

Again we obſerve, that the [f] 20. of *May an.* 14. *Car.* 1. being *Trinity Sunday*, the *Soveraign* cauſed a *Chapter* to be held that afternoon in the *Chapter-houſe* at *Windeſor*, in reference alſo to the *Nomination* and *Election* of his *ſacred Majeſty*, the preſent *Soveraign*; at the breaking up whereof, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* proceeded immediately to *Saint George's Chappel*, where at [t] *Evening Prayer* (which was not within the compaſs of the *Feaſt*, for that began not until the next day) the *Scruteny* was taken.

And beſides thoſe Examples, which ſhew the *Nominations* have been collected (upon peculiar occaſions) in the *Choire* at *Windeſor*, there are alſo one or two Inſtances, where it appears they have been alſo taken in the *Chappel* at *Whitehall*, as on the [u] 15. of *May*, *an.* 1. *Car.* 1. at the Election of *Edward* Earl of *Dorſet*, *Henry* Earl of *Holland*, and *Thomas* Viſcount *Andever* (afterwards Earl of *Berkshire*) as alſo on the [w] 4. of *July* the ſame year, whereat the Duke of *Cheverenx* was choſen one of the *Companions* of this moſt Noble *Order*.

Otherwiſe, and that moſt uſually, the *Suffrages* have been collected at the *ſecond Veſpers*, or in the time of *Evening Prayer*, on St. *George's* day, or that day whereon the *Feaſt* of St. *George* hath been celebrated by *Prorogation*. And with this note of time do we find the taking of divers *Scrutenies* marked.

Howbeit, we once have met with a *Scruteny*, made in the *Chapter-houſe* at *Windeſor*, on the [x] *Eve* of the Grand *Feaſt*, at which the *Perſon* immediately *Elected* was ſent for in, and had the [y] *Enſigns* of the *Order* placed upon him: when forthwith the *Soveraign* proceeded to the *Chappel*, and after ſome ſpace the *Elect Knight* followed to his [z] *Inſtallation*.

And this was the caſe of *James* Marqueſs *Hamilton*, *an.* 6. *Car.* 1. who being neceſſitated to begin his Voyage the next morning towards *Germany* (whither he went General of 6000 Foot, in aſſiſtance of the King of *Sweden*) occaſioned the *Soveraign* to diſpatch theſe Ceremonies on the Eve of the Feaſt.

Formerly the time wherein the *Scruteny* was begun to be taken in the *Chappel* may be noted to have been ſpoken of ſomewhat general and indefinite, as in the [a] 2. [b] 3. [c] 4. [d] 5. [e] 8. and [f] 9. years of Queen *Elizabeth*, during the time of *Evening Prayer*. And ſo in like manner, *an.* [g] 4. *Jac.* and *an.* [h] 13. *Car.* 1. And when the Feaſt of St. *George* was held at *Whitehall* upon the 18. of *April*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 1. the *Annals* ſay, [i] *That the* Soveraign *recreated himſelf with the melody of Evenſong, during which, the* Chancellor *collected the Votes of the* Knights-Companions.

But in ſome other places, the time of this Action, is delivered more limited to a preciſe time, or ſome particular part of *Evening Prayer*. As *an.* 26. and 27. *Eliz.* [k] *Whilſt the Choire ſung the ſervice*. And the like, *an.* [l] 14. *Jac.* but *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. *while the Anthem was ſung, after the ſecond Leſſon*, but more frequently after the *firſt Leſſon*, as in the 2. and 9. years of King *Charles* the Firſt, [n] *while the Anthem was ſinging*, or *during the Anthem of the bleſſed Virgin, called the Magnificat*; and which is all one with that *an.* 14. *Car.* 1. viz [p] *aſſoon as the firſt Leſſon was read*, or [q] *at the firſt Leſſon*, which is there remembred to be, *the* [r] *uſual part of the ſervice, in which the* Nomination *ought to begin*.

[f] *Lib.R.p.*139.
[t] *Palmer's large Journal. p.* 5.
[u] [w] *Lib. R. p.*26.
[x] *Lib.R p.*59.
[y] [z] *Id.p.*61.
[a] *Collectan. W.de N.Cl.*
[b] [c] *MS fol.penes eund. W.de N.Cl.*
[d] [e] [f] *MS. penes praef. W. D. N.*
[g] *Lib.C.p.*160.
[h] *Lib R. p.*30.
[i] *Lib.R. p.*122.
[k] *Lib C.p.*94.
[l] *Ib.p.*185.
[m] *Lib.R.p.*44.
[n] *Ib.p.*33.
[o] *Ib. p.* 88.
[p] *Palmer's large Journal. p.*25.
[q] [r] *Journal pro an.*1638. *p.* 23.

SECT. X.

The Manner *and* Order *of it.*

AFter what manner the *Knights-Companions* Votes ought to be collected, when the *Scruteny* is taken in the *Choire*, if we have recourſe to the celebration of Saint *George's* day at *Greenwich*, *an.* 28. *H.* 8. entred into the *Black Book* of the *Order*, we ſhall be informed from the then *Regiſter*, [s] *That he uſed his diligence in going to and fro, from one ſide to the other, to demand and redemand the* Suffrages, *from*

[s] *Pag.*269.

from the Knights-Companions, *according to the variety and order of their Stalls*, which like course and proceeding we find recorded, *in eisdem terminis*, to have been observed by the *Chancellor*, *anno*[t] 24. *Eliz.* And without question was generally thus performed at other times; for in other places of the *Annals*, it is mentioned to be done[u] *de more*, after the usual manner, as *an.* 5. *Eliz.* or[w] *juxta Ordinis Constitutiones*, according to the Ordinances and Decrees of the *Order*, as *anno* 26. *Eliz.*

t *Lib.C.p.*88.
u *Ib.p.* 42.
w *Pag.* 94.

That the *Officer* who collects the *Nominations*, ought to begin at the *youngest Knight-Companion*, and so proceed upward towards the eldest, doth plainly appear from the order mentioned to be used in the[x] 2. and the[y] 20. years of Queen *Elizabeth*, as also *an.*[z] 15. *Car.* 1. But to give the *Reader* a more particular account of this *Ceremony*, with its circumstances, as it was performed in his late *Majesties* Reign of blessed memory, and doubtless long before, though it hath not been our good hap to meet therewith *in scriptis*, it was as followeth.

x *Ex Collect. W.le N Cl.*
y *MS.penes G. O.T. p.*114.
z *Palmer's Journal pro anno* 1639. *p.* 23.

[a] First the *Officer* arose, and went into the middle of the *Choire*, directly over against his own Seat, where he made two Reverences, first towards the *high Altar*, and next to the *Soveraign*: thence he proceeded up the *Choire*, neer the *hault pace*, against the Stall of the *Junior Knight-Companion*, and there made like Reverences: This done, he went up to the Stall of the said *Junior Knight*, and with a single Reverence to him only, demanded whom he pleased to *Nominate*, which having taken (making to him a second Reverence) he descended into the *Choire*, and thence passed to the next *senior Knight* on the other side (unless by reason of the vacancy of that Stall he sate on the same side with the *Junior*) and received his *Nominations*. [b] From the second *Knight-Companion* he again crossed the *Choire* to the third, and in like manner he ascended, according to the seniority of the *Knights-Companions* present (always crossing the *Choire* where there was occasion) until he arrived at the *senior Knight-Companion*; and having thus received all their *Nominations*, he returned into the middle of the *Choire*, and after usual and accustomed Reverences, took his Seat.

a { *Ex relation.Chr. Wren.nuper Regist. hujus Ordin. & Dan. Stokes nuper unius Præb. Reg. Cap. S. Geor.Windesor.*

This method and order of collecting the *Votes*, as to the general, and in the *Choire*, ought likewise to be observed, when they are taken from the *Knights-Companions* in *Chapter*, they being ranked in due order, on each side the *Table*, according to the seniority of their *Elections*, and position of *Stalls* in the *Choire*, the *Officer* who gathers them beginning with the *Junior*, and thence orderly ascending to the *Senior Knight-Companion*; concerning which more need not be said, than is before delivered.

And that it may be understood in what form every *Knight-Companion* ranketh the *Names* of those *Persons* he proposeth, and how each *Classis* is distinguished and divided, the following *Scruteny* will fully enough declare, it being taken the 12. day of *May*, *an.* 13. *H.* 6. upon the vacancy of one *Stall*, hapning by the death of Sir *Heer Tanke Clux* a *German* by birth, and is the first *Scruteny* we find marshalled among the *Annals* of this most Noble *Order*.

Nominabant

	Principes.	*Barones.*	*Equites.*
Dux Exoniæ	*Ducem Norfolciæ* *Ducem Warwici* *Comitem Oxoniæ*	*Dominum Lovell* *Dominum Audley* *Dominum Dudley*	*Dominum Tho. Stanley* *Dominum Joh. Holland* *Dominum Joh. Steward*
Marchio Suffolciæ	*Ducem Norfolciæ* *Comitem Devoniæ* *Comitem Oxoniæ*	*Dominum Lovell* *Dominum Audley* *Dominum Foix*	*Dominum Jacobum Fenys* *Dominum Ric. Woodvyle.* *Dominum Andream Ogard*
Comes Salopiæ	*Ducem Warwici* *Ducem Norfolciæ* *Comitem Oxoniæ*	*Dominum Audley* *Dominum Dudley* *Dominum Foix*	*Dominum Rogerum Fenys* *Dominum Thomam Stanley* *Dominum Thomam Kiriell*

Dominus

Dominus Sudeley	*Ducem Norfolciæ* *Ducem Warwici* *Comitem Devoniæ*	*Dominum Foix* *Dominum Lovell* *Dominum Audley*	*Dominum Rogerum Fenys* *Dominum Jacobum Fenys* *Dominum Gulielm. Bonevile*
Dominus Willoughby	*Ducem Warwici* *Ducem Norfolciæ* *Comitem Oxoniæ*	*Dominum Wells* *Dominum Lovell* *Dominum Laware*	*Dominum Thomam Kiriell* *Dominum Jo. Montgomery* *Dominum Rob. Shotesbroke*
Dominus Scales	*Ducem Warwici* *Comitem Oxoniæ* *Comitem Devoniæ*	*Dominum Foix* *Dominum Clyfford* *Dominum Laware*	*Dom. Edm. Hungerford.* *Dom. Guliel. Beauchamp* *Dom. Andream Ogard*
Dominus Johannes Faſtolph	*Ducem Norfolciæ* *Ducem Warwici* *Comitem Oxoniæ*	*Dominum Boucer* *Dominum Audley* *Dom. Grey Ruffyn*	*Dominum Ro. Hungerford* *Dominum Rob. Roos* *Dom. Andream Ogard*
Dominus Johannes Beauchamp	*Ducem Warwici* *Comitem Devoniæ* *Comitem Oxoniæ*	*Dominum Foix* *Dominum Lovell* *Dominum Audley*	*Dominum Rogerum Fenys* *Dominum Jacobum Fenys* *Dominum Robertum Roos*

Here may be obſerved, how each *Knight-Companion* hath his own *Name* prefixed to thoſe *Perſons* for whom he gives his Vote, to the end it may be known and remembred by whom the *Knights-Candidates* are *Nominated*, and theſe are ranked in three ſeveral *Diviſions*.

The firſt contains the Degrees of *Earls*, *Marqueſſes*, *Dukes*, *Princes*, *Kings*, and *Emperors*; howbeit at a *Scruteny* taken *an.* 24. *H.* 6. in a *Chapter* held at *Brainford*, [a] *Albro Vaſques Dalmadea* (who immediately following is ſtyled *Comes Averentiæ*) is by miſtake ranked but in the ſecond diviſion, among the *Barons*, and twice among the *Knights*, in the *Votes* of the Marqueſs of *Suffolk*, and Earl of *Shrewsbury*: but this Error peradventure aroſe for want of due information either of the *Law* in the *Statutes*, or his *Degree*; the later of which is more probably true, for being a *Stranger*, his Title of *Earl* might not be ſo generally known; nor is it taken notice of in the *Scruteny* it ſelf, though in the *Annals* immediately after. [a] *Lib. N. p.* 98.

And which is more apparent, the Earl of *Oxford*, *Devonſhire*, and *Arundel* (whoſe degrees were ſufficiently known) at a *Scruteny* taken *an.* [c] 24. *H.* 6. are once ranked in the ſecond *diviſion* among the *Barons*, and *an.* [f] 1. *H.* 8. the Earl of *Derby* is three times ſo placed, and again *an.* [g] 13. *H.* 6. the Earl of *Devonſhire* twice. But this hapned not through any overſight, or neglect in obſervation of the *Statutes* in this particular, but becauſe at theſe *Nominations*, wherein they are ſo placed, the firſt *diviſion* (to which they belonged) hapned to be fill'd up, with thoſe other higher degrees, appertaining to the ſame *Claſſis*, that is to ſay, *Kings* or *Dukes*; as when the before mentioned Earls of *Oxford*, *Devonſhire*, and *Arundel*, were named in the place of *Barons*, the King of *Portugal*, the Dukes of *Warwick* and *Norfolk*, were ſet down in the place of *Princes*; and ſo it fell out in like manner in the other inſtances. [c] *Lib. N. p.* 98. [f] *Pag.* 197. 198. [g] *Pag.* 211.

On the contrary *an.* 15. and 16. *E.* 4. the Lord *Richard Grey* one of the *Queens* Sons by her former Husband Sir *John Grey* of *Groby* Knight, in reſpect of his alliance to the *Royal Family*, is ranked in the firſt *Diviſion* among the [h] *Princes*, under this Title *Dominus Richardus filius Reginæ*, and afterwards, *an.* 19. of the ſame *King*, ſet only among the [i] *Barons*, as well with the former Title, as this, *Ricardus Dominus Grey*. But in the 22. of the ſame *King*, he is thrice regiſtred among the *Princes*, and as often with the *Barons*; whence we ſee, that ſometimes the place among *Princes* may be afforded of courteſie to *Perſons* of moſt *eminent Relation*, but then again as it is not their due, ſo ſuch of the *Knights-Companions* as rank them lower, paſs no diminution on their honor. [h] *Lib. N. p.* 138 140. [i] *Ib. p.* 144. 145 148. 149. [k] *Lib. N. p.* 99. 104. 110. 244. & *Lib. C. p.* 17. 40. 51. 55. 57. 59. 60. 62. 64.

Within the ſecond *Diviſion* are placed *Barons* and *Viſcounts*; for *Viſcounts* were in all *Scrutenies*, after the firſt Erection of that Dignity, ranked with [k] *Barons*, until

until the [l] 3. of King *James* (saving only [m] *John Dudley* Viscount *Lisle*, *an.* 35. *H.* 8. who by every *Knight*, the Duke of *Norfolk* excepted, is ranked in the first *Division* with the *Princes*) and in a *Scruteny* then taken, *Robert Cecil* Viscount *Cranborne* is the second *Viscount* that we observe to have been ranked with *Princes*, from whence it became usual so to do, in succeeding *Scrutenies*, until *an.* [n] 14. *Car.* 1. and then upon a question put in *Chapter* (held at *Westminster* the [o] 23. *Maii anno prædicto*, whether *Earls Sons* and *Viscounts* were elegible with *Barons*; it was resolved they were, and that by all practice (except in the two cases now mentioned) it was usually done, and it seems so again observed neer that time, for in [p] two *Scrutenies* taken the 19. and 21. of that instant *May*, the *Viscounts* are therein reduced to the second *Division*, and ranked with *Barons*.

Finally, in the third *Division* the *Knights-Batchellors* receive their place; so also did *Banerets*, until King *Henry* the Eighth in his * *Body* of *Statutes* gave them equal rank in *Scrutenies* with *Barons*. Only in that one *Scruteny* taken *an.* [q] 14. *H.* 7. Sir *Reignald Bray*, Sir *Richard Gouldford*, and Sir *Rice ap Thomas* (all three [r] created *Banerets* at the Battel of *Black-heath*) are registred among the [s] *Barons*, and yet two of them are oftner ranked with the [t] *Knights-Batchellors* in the very same *Scruteny*.

But though the word in King *Henry* the Eighth's *Latin Statutes* is *Baronettus* instead of *Banerettus*, yet is this a mistake met with anciently in some both *Records* and *Books*, as well as in those places of the *Annals*, all written long before the Title of *Baronet* was conceived, or the Dignity in use with us; for the * first Creation of that hapned but in this last Age. And hereof more satisfacton may be received ‖ elsewhere.

In the last place, he who demands these *Suffrages*, given according to the judgment of each *Knight-Companion* present, is by the *Statutes* of *Institution* appointed to take them in [u] *writing*. In pursuance of which, we find it so observed, at a *Scruteny* taken *an.* 2. *H.* 6. for the Election of [w] *John* Lord *Talbot* and *Furnivall* (afterwards created Earl of *Shrewsbury*) where the *Dean* of *Windesor* and the *Register* of the *Order*, [x] *wrote down the* Votes *and* Nominations *of every one of the* Knights *present at the day of Election*.

Again, at a *Scruteny* made *an.* 4. *H.* 6. (so also at sundry other times) to supply the *Stall* of *Ralph* Earl of *Westmerland*, then lately deceased (for whom mistakingly, the *Black Book* of the *Order* sets down [y] Sir *Henry Fitz Hugh*, in whose room a little before in the same [z] *Book an.* 3. *H.* 6. it appears the Lord *Scales* was Elected, and elsewhere, that [a] Sir *John Fastolfe* was chosen a *Companion* of this most Noble *Order*, upon the death, not of Sir *Henry Fitz Hugh*, but of the said Earl of *Westmerland*) we find it noted, that *the* [b] Dean *and* Register *wrote down in order* (according to their seniority) *the* Votes *of the* Knights-Companions.

And after the *Scrutenies* began to be entred on the Pages of the *Annals*, it is evident the general practise hath gone along with the Injunction of the *Statutes*, only there are two Instances of an *Election* made, without taking a *Scruteny* in *writing*; one in the case of *Prince Henry*, and *Christierne* the Fourth, King of *Denmark*; where the *Knights-Companions* in a Chapter held at *Whitehall* the 14. of *July*, *an. Jacobi Regis primo*, gave their Votes [c] *Viva Voce*, and forthwith the *Soveraign* Elected them both into the Fellowship of the *Order*. The other was the case of *James* Marquess *Hamilton*, Elected the 2. of *February* in the 20. year of the same King, with the [d] vocal consent of all the *Knights-Companions* present.

But it's to be considered, that this course, and the omission of taking the *Scruteny* in *writing*, is not only contrary to the *Law* of the *Order*, so enjoined for a more certain memorial of the action, and more faithful transmission of it to Posterity, but exceeding prejudicial to persons of *Honor* and *Merit*; whose *Names* would otherwise live with great reputation among the *Candidates* of this Illustrious *Order*: and of which honor many deserving persons will be hereafter deprived, if the *Injunction* of the *Statutes* be not observed in this particular.

l *Lib.C.p.*157. m *Lib.N.p.*289

n } *Palmer's*
o } *Large Journal. p.*21.

p *Ex eod. Journal.p.*5.&18.

* *Art.*19.

q *Lib.N.p.*171. 172.173.

r *Rot. pergam. nuper pen.Sim. Archer Eq.Aur.*
s } *Lib.N.p.*
t } 172.173.

* *Pat: an.* 9. *Jac.Reg.pars* 2.
‖ *Cooks Institut. pars* 2 *f.*607. *Selden's Tit. of Hon. p.*736.& 737. *Spelman's Gloss verbo Baronettus.*

u *E.*3.*Stat.Art.* 18.

w } *Regist.*
x } *Chart.ac. fol.*12.*b.*

y *Pag.* 81.

z *Pag.*78.

a *Regist. Chart.ac.f.*13.*b.*

b *Lib.N.p.*81.

c *Lib.C.p.*150.

d *Lib.R.p* 4.

SECT. XI.

The Presentation *of it to the* Soveraign.

THE *suffrages* being received from the *Knights-Companions*, the *Officer* by whom they are collected, is to present the whole form of the *Nominations* to the *Soveraign*, with all due *Reverence*; for so is it recorded, *an.* [c] 9. *H.* 5. when the *Prelate* of the *Order* had taken the *Scruteny*.

If these *Votes* were taken in *Chapter*, the Paper wherein entry was made hath been usually forthwith presented to the *Soveraign*'s hands, who upon perusal of it made *Election* and *Choice* before the *Chapter* broke up; of which practice we could give sundry Instances, did not the generality thereof render it needless.

But if collected in the *Chappel*; sometimes it was immediately delivered to the *Soveraign*, before he went thence, though no Election were made until the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* met in *Chapter* the next morning. And thus in the [f] 2. and [b] 5. years of Queen *Elizabeth*, as soon as the *Nominations* were all received, the *Chancellor* of the *Order* (who then took them) presented the *Scruteny* to the *Soveraign*, [c] before *service* ended: the like did the *Register* of the *Order*, *an.* [d] 8. *Eliz.*

At other times it hath not been presented until *Vespers* were finished, as in the [e] 4. [f] 14. and [g] 28. years of Queen *Elizabeth*, and the [h] 6. [i] 9. [k] 13. and [l] 14. of King *James*.

Lastly (and which hath been frequent in use of later times) the *Scruteny* hath not been presented to the *Soveraign* until the next morning, after opening the *Chapter* (customarily held before *Morning Prayer*) as in the [m] 13. [n] 15. [o] 22. and [p] 30. years of Queen *Elizabeth*, and again in the [q] 3. [r] 9. [f] 10. [t] 13. [u] 14. [w] 15. and [x] 17. years of the Reign of his late *Majesty* of ever sacred memory: against which last time of presentation, it was transcribed into a little [y] *Book*, and with all due reverence offered upon the Knee, [z] before any thing else was treated of in the *Chapter*.

If the *Soveraign* be absent from the *Chappel* when the *Votes* are collected, that *Officer* by whom they are taken, is to present them into the hands of the [a] *Soveraign*'s *Deputy*, or *Lieutenant*; who thereupon is obliged to deliver them to the *Soveraign*, either that Evening or the next Morning.

Besides the general practice hath gone along therewith, as we see *an.* [c] 2. *H.* 6. where the *Dean* of *Windesor*, and the *Register* of the *Order* having collected the Vote of every *Knight*, [d] *they were immediately presented to the Soveraign's Deputy*. So also when *John* Duke of *Bedford* was *Lieutenant*, *an.* 4. *H.* 6. the *Votes* taken for Election, [e] *were delivered unto him*. Again *anno* 20. *Eliz.* Sir *Francis Walsingham* then *Chancellor*, having taken the *suffrages*, forthwith (before Evening Prayer was ended) gave them to the [f] Earl of *Sussex*, then *Lieutenant* to the *Soveraign*: and the like did the *Prelate* to the [g] Lord *Howard* of *Effingham Lieutenant*, *an.* 30. *Eliz.* as also in the [h] 33. 35. 36. and 37. years of the said *Queens* Reign.

And that the *Lieutenant* in discharge of his duty, did present them afterwards to the *Soveraign*, appears likewise from several places in the *Blue Book* of the *Order*: for after the *Nominations* were received, and delivered to him by the *Prelate*, in the said 30. year of Queen *Elizabeth*, [i] *He presented them unto her*: and to the like purpose is it remembred in the [k] 34. [l] 38. and [m] 40. years of this *Queen*.

But it seems in the 12. year of King *James*, some exceptions were taken, for that the *Chancellor* did not present the *Scruteny* to the [n] *Prince* (at that time the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant*) but afterwards to the *Soveraign* himself: wherein he committed an Error, which some of his *Predecessors* had fallen into before, *viz. an.* [o] 2. [p] 3. and [q] 25. *Eliz.*

c *Lib. N. p.* 64.

f *MS. penes W. le N. Cl.*
b *Lib. C. p.* 42.
c *Ex Collect. an. W. le N. Cl.*
d *MS. penes W.D.N.*
e
f *Lib. C. p.* 66.
g *Ibid. p.* 103.
h *Lib. C. p.* 166.
i *Ib. p.* 172.
k *Ib. p.* 184.
l *Ib. p.* 187.
m *Ib. p.* 63.
n *Pag.* 70.
o *Pag.* 84.
p *Pag.* 108.
q *Lib. R. p.* 35.
r *Ib. p.* 90.
f *Pag.* 97.
t *Pag.* 124. 132.
u *Pag.* 142.
w *Palmer's Journ. pro an.* 1639. *p.* 20.
x *Palmer's large Journal p.* 42.
y
z *Lib. R. p.* 142.
a *E.* 3. *H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 18.
c *Lib. N.*
d *p.* 77.
e *Ib. p.* 81. *vide de Regist. Chartaceum. f.* 13. *b.*
f *MS. penes G. O. Z. p.* 114.
g *Lib. C. p.* 103.
h *Ex ead. lib.*

i *Ib. p.* 113.

k *Vota Nominantium excepit Prælatus Ordinis, qui ea* Locum-tenenti *exhibit, & is Superiori Lib. C. p.* 119.

l *Vota Nominantium excepit Cancellarius, excepta sine mora* Locum-tenenti *tradidit; eademq; ille postmodum* Supremæ *exhibebat. Ib. p.* 131.

m *Nomina in Scrutinio excepta,* Locum-tenenti *Cancellarius obtulit, hic Supremæ. Ib. p.* 137.

n *MS. de Festis temp. Jac. R. penes E. W. G. f.* 151. *b.*

o *Lib. C. p.* 32. 33.

p *MS. fol. penes W. le N. Cl. f.* 4.

q *Lib. C. p.* 91.

SECT. XII.

His Considerations *thereupon, referring to the* Qualification *of each* Person *to be* Elected.

THE *Scruteny* being thus taken, and presented to the *Soveraign*, we now proceed to those particulars, which are to be weighed by him, upon view and consideration had thereof.

For, as the *Knights-Companions* are obliged by the *Statutes* to *Nominate* no other than such as ean abide the Test of those *Qualifications* before remembred; so is there a standard of *Honor*, provided and ordained for the *Soveraign*, whereby to measure the *Extraction*, *Quality*, and *Merit* of the *Person* proposed to Election; lest peradventure in less circumspect times, the favour of the *Soveraign* might become over indulgent, to [f] inferior or unworthy persons, who ought here utterly to be rejected, because this *Order*, [t] *consisting of goodness and honorable virtue, doth not admit or uphold unworthiness and villany.*

Here then falls in to be considered the substance of the second *Article*, throughout all the *Bodies* and *Exemplars* of the *Statutes*, wherein the *Qualifications* for *Election* are exhibited, as in the 18. *Article* are those for *Nomination*. In the first of which *viz.* those of *Institution*, the words, [u] *That none shall be Elected into the Order, &c.* can refer to the Act of *Election* only, if we consult the rest of the *Statutes*, and compare them with this place; for thus they severally deliver themselves, *That none shall be* [w] *Elected Companion of the Order. That none shall be* [x] *Elected and Chosen a Companion of this Order.* All pointing to the time of *Election* more properly and directly, than to any other Ceremony succeeding, either of *Investiture* with the *Garter* and *George*, *Installation*, or to what ever else it may more dubiously be wrested, from the Expressions of [y] *Admitting* and [z] *Receiving Knights* into this *Order*, used in the *Exemplars* of the *Statutes* of *Institution*. And that this doth so is further cleared, from another passage in the said second *Article* of King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, which speaking of the last point of *Reproach*, saith, the guilt thereof so incapacitates any mans *Election*, that he ever after ought to be esteemed unworthy of Election into the *Order*.

The *Qualifications* and *Endowments* are chiefly noted to be two; first, that the Person in Nomination be a *Gentleman of Blood*; and secondly a *Knight* and without *Reproach*. As to the first of these, finding the phrases somewhat varied throughout the *Statutes*, we shall therefore single them out.

By the *Statutes* of *Institution* no man ought to be *Elected*, [a] *unless he be a Gentleman born*, and so saith King *Henry* the Fifth's [b] *Statutes*. The *Exemplar* entred in the *Black Book* saith, [c] *unless he be worthy upon the account of Birth and Arms*; whereunto is added (in this *Exemplar* only) [d] *that he be one eminent for his demeanour and good Report*; hereby linking together, *Blood* and *Virtue*, which indeed make the noblest Conjunction. Finally, King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes* speak a little larger, and appoint him to be a [e] *Gentleman by Name, Arms*, and *Blood*; and lest this Character might seem in any part obscure; a *Gentleman of Blood* is determined to be [f] *one descended of three descents of Nobles, viz.* of *Name* and *Arms*, both of his *Father* and *Mothers* side.

For most certain it is, that *Gentility* is not made perfect or accomplished in the *Person* in whom it takes beginning, but rather compleated by *Succession*. And we find among the *Romans*, though the *Father* was free born, and of the *Equestrian Censc*, yet was it further requisite, that the [g] *Grandfather* should be so likewise, for obtaining a *Ring*, one of the *Symbols* of the *Equestrian Order* with them. Whence have been wisely found out, those three Degrees of *Gentility*; *Beginning, Encrease*, and *full Ripeness*: for [h] *Gentility* hath its beginning in the *Grandfather*, its encrease in the *Father*, and full ripeness in the *Son*; and therefore in the constitution of *Gentility*, the *Father* and *Grandfather* (bringing renown and reputation

f, t *Ord.Stat.in Lib. N. Art. 2.*

u *E 3. Stat. Art. 2.*

w *H.5.Stat. Art 2.*

x *H.8.Stat. Art. 2.*

y *Ord.Stat in Bibliotb.Hatton. Art. 2.*

z *Ord.Stat.in Lib.N.Art. 2.*

a *Art. 2.*

b *Art. 2.*

c, d *Art. 2.*

e *Art. 2.* Eum nomine & armis nobilem esse, qui proprii Cognominis Tessaram gentilitiam gestat, & eo sanguine genitus est, cujus idem insigne & nomen propria sint. *MS. de Arte Heraldica apud Jurisp. Heroic. p. 438.*

f *H. 8. Engl. Stat.Art.2.*

g *Anno V. C. 775.* Constitutum est ne cui jus Annuli esset, nisi cui ingenuo ipsi Patri Avoq; paterno sexterta 40 census fu sient. *Plin. l.33.c. 2.*

h *Jurisprudentia Heroica. p. 8. a.*

reputation to the *Son*, by fame and estimation of life and actions) are at least required to make it perfect and compleat; because it cannot naturally and congruously grow to ripeness in the *Son*, unless it hath formerly encreased in the *Father*, and long before begun from the *Grandfather*.

As to this particular, there is a memorable instance in that of the Lord *William Pagit*, devested of the *Garter*, about five years after his *Election*; upon pretence of his [i] not being a *Gentleman* of *Blood* by either *Father* or *Mother*.

But it is also observable in the *Blue Book*, that this severity towards him proceeded not altogether from defect in point of Extraction, but most from the prevalence and practice of *John Dudley* Duke of *Northumberland* ([k] by whose means he was most unjustly and undeservedly put out of the *Order*) haply grudging the great honor he had formerly done the said Lord, when being Earl Marshal of *England*, [l] his good advice and character of him procured from King *Edward* the Sixth, a new Grant of those *Arms*, under the Great Seal of *England*, which he had sometime before [m] received from *Garter* Principal King of Arms.

But admit the defect of *Blood* and *Arms* for three descents, were the true cause of his deprivation of the *Garter*; yet what follows is mis-related by [n] Sir *Jo. Haward* (as also by [o] *John Stow*) to wit, that the *George* and *Garter* were forthwith bestowed upon the Earl of *Warwick* eldest Son to the Duke of *Northumberland* (who out of [p] curtesie was so called, as commonly *Dukes Sons*, in the life time of their *Fathers*, are entituled of some *Earldom*, whereof their *Fathers* have the honor) but more truly had he said, they were bestowed upon Sir *Andrew Dudley*, *Brother* to the said *Duke*.

For although we find the said Earl of *Warwick* put in the *Scruteny*, entred among the *Annals* of the *Order*, of *Edward* the Sixth's Reign, and taken at a *Chapter* held on St. *George*'s day, *an. 6. Ed. 6.* (the Lord *Pagit* being [q] degraded in a *Chapter* held on the [r] *Eve* of the said *Feast*) yet was not the Earl *Elected* at that or any other time; nor was any other person then chosen, who had the honor to be inserted into that *Scruteny*, except the [s] Earl of *Westmerland*, and the said [t] Sir *Andrew Dudley*.

But to return; the *Ensigns* of this most Noble *Order* were not with more disgrace taken from, than with honor restored to the Lord *Pagit*, assoon as Queen *Mary* came to the Crown; and that by as great and absolute authority, as did deprive him of them, namely by *Decree* in *Chapter*, holden at St. *James*'s the 27. of *September*, *an.* 1. *Mar.* so that this *Honor* might be said, to have been rather wrongfully suspended than justly lost.

For in confirmation of this *Lords* restauration, he had the [u] *Garter* forthwith buckled on his Leg again, by two of the *Knights-Companions* present, and the [w] *Collar* of the *Order* put about his shoulders, with the *George* depending thereat. [x] And a command then also given *Garter*, to take care that his [x] *Atchievements* should be again publickly set up, over his *Stall* at *Windesor*: being the same he before possest, *viz.* the 9. on the *Soveraign*'s side.

In this case of the Lord *Pagit*, we observe that the very Records of the *Order*, brand his degradation of injustice upon the foresaid pretence, as if it were inferable thence, that when *Honor* is conferr'd upon the score of *Virtue*, and great Endowments, the consideration of these supplies the defect and obscurity of *Extraction*. Whence it came that the then *Soveraign* (whose prerogative it was [y] to declare and interpret the *Statutes*) being at that time present in *Chapter*, thought fit to qualifie the Law, and gave him this honorable commendation, [z] *That he had highly deserved of the Nation by his Prudence and Counsel.*

And though the *Exemplar* entred in the *Black Book* hath the qualification of [a] *Virtue* and *good Report* inserted only into it; yet we observe the same (in effect and practice) considered in foregoing times, with great circumspection, by the *Soveraigns* and their *Lieutenants* before Election; and that the *Magnanimity*, *Fortitude*, *Prudence*, *Generosity*, *Fame*, *Reputation*, and other *Virtues* and *Merits*, whether innate or acquired, of the *Person* proposed to *Election*; have been by their prudent Inquisition looked into, deliberately weighed, and brought to the Rule for tryal, as to their fitness and capacity of the honor of this most Noble *Order*.

These

i *King Ed. 6. Diary in Bibl. Cotton. Sir Ja. Hawards life of the said King. Print. 1636. p. 343.*

k *A quo procurante Duce Northumbriæ fuerat injustissime ac immeritissime deturbatus. Lib. C. p. 6.*

l m *Ex Collect. Pat. Arm. à Rob. Glover nuper Somerset. Herald. f. 45. b.*

n *Hist. E. 6. loco cit.*

o *Chronic. f. 1026.*

p *Dugdales Antiq. of Warwickshire p. 339. a.*

q r *Lib. N. p. 320. vide Autogr. penes præf. Guil. Dugdale. See also King Ed. 6. Diary in Bibl. Cotton.*

s t *Lib. N. p. 321.*

u w x *Lib. C. p. 6.*

y *H. 8. Stat. Art. 1.*

z *Lib. C. p. 6.*

a *Art. 2.*

These and such like Qualities we see [b] King *Henry* the Fifth took into his consideration, at an *Election* in the 9. year of his Reign, and for which he preferr'd before others (then *Nominated* and presented unto him) *John Earl Marshal, William* Earl of *Suffolk*, *John* Lord *Clifford*, Sir *Lewis Robertsack*, and Sir *Heer tanke Clux*. In like manner did [c] *Humfrey* Duke of *Gloucester* (*Deputy* to King *Henry* the Sixth, in the second year of his Reign) weigh and examine diligently with himself, the *Fortitude* and *Prudence*, with other the illustrious *Actions* and *deserts* of *John* Lord *Talbot* before his *Election*; and thereunto gave an approbation worthy his own judgment, and not less than that noble *Candidates* virtue merited.

[b] Ille Nominatos expendens, ut aliis alii *Fortitudine, Prudentia, reliquisq; Virtutibus* ac *Meritis* antecellerent, è Comitibus *Johannem* Comitem Mareschallum (ut vocant) &c. aptissimos atq; quam dignissimos & ob id in Ordinem suscipiendos esse decrevit. *Lib. N. p.* 64.

[c] *Ibid. p.* 77.

It is further remembred in the *Annals* of this *Order*, that for these and such like noble and heroick *Qualifications*, persons in after times were likewise preferr'd in *Election* before others: And particularly, we observe it taken notice of, *an.* 28. *H.* 8. upon the Election of Sir *Nicholas Carew*, [d] *That he was a very fit person, upon the eminency of his* Extraction *and* Fame, *and the many worthy and noble Actions he had performed; so as that all present did without any delay unanimously approve of his Election.* Of like nature are those Commendations given to *Henry* Earl of *Cumberland* upon his Election, wherein also particular services are taken notice of, viz. *the* [e] *many famous and loyal Atchievements performed by him, both at several other times, and then more especially, when the tumult of Rebellion, began to break forth in those Borders, where he had his habitation.*

[d] *Lib. N. p.* 271

[e] *Ibid. p.* 274.

The second *Point* is, That unless he be a [f] *Knight*, he is not qualified for Election; (or as one of the *Exemplers* express it [*] *unless girded with the unstained Girdle of Knighthood*) and the same in terms do the other [g] *Bodies* of *Statutes* declare. Whence we may again mind the *Reader* of the singular regard and jealousie the *Law* of the *Order* hath of this particular *Qualification*, above the rest:

[f] *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 2.

[*] *In Bibl. Hatton. Art.* 2.

[g] *H.* 5. } *Stat.* *H.* 8. } *Art.* 2.

And lest chance or inadverteney might let slip a Person not *Knighted* into the *Scrutiny* (besides the two former cautions given touching *Nomination*) yet is it also here (in another *Article*) a third time remembred and provided against, to secure such from passing through the *Soveraign's Election*. For this cause also were the words [h] *ut minimum* (*That he be* at least *a* Knight *before he be elected*) added as a special Item, to give a more than ordinary caution, when the *Soveraign* comes to make his Choice.

[h] *Lib. N. Ord. Stat. in Art.* 2.

And to make it clear, that the second *Article* in the *Statutes* hath long since received this construction, we shall insert an eminent case, which fell out [i] *an.* 17. *H.* 8. where the *Soveraign* (keeping the Feast of St. *George* at *Greenwich*) having Elected the Lord *Roos* (created Earl of *Rutland*, the 18. of *June* following) into the Society of this most Noble Order, *and being* [k] *advertised on the morrow after St.* Georges *day, while the* Mass of Requiem *was celebrating, that he had not before received the dignity of Knighthood*, according to the *Statutes*, which positively enjoin, [l] *That whosoever is elected into this Society, should be in degree at least a Knight*, that is actually *Knighted* beforehand; for so the words *ut minimum* here in this place also of the Annals vouched, ought justly to be understood, in regard the Lord *Roos*, was at the time of his Election a Baron of this *Realm*, and consequently stated in a higher degree of honor than a *Knight*: The *Soveraign* therefore immediately after *Mass*, recalled the *Knights-Companions* to a new consultation, whereat he declared the *Election* void, for the reason before alledged, and commanded the Ensigns of the Order, [the *Garter* and *George*] so lately received to be withdrawn, which being accordingly done, He in the same place, drew his Sword, and therewith dubbed him *Knight*, and then proceeded, with the *Knights-Companions* present, to a new Election, wherein the said Lord *Roos* was with their unanimous consent again Elected a *Companion*, and so declared by the *Soveraign's* own mouth: by whose command also, the aforesaid *Ensigns* and *Ornaments* were restored unto, and placed upon him by the Dukes of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*.

[i] *Lib. N. p.* 246.

[k] *Pag.* 242.

[l] *Ibid.*

And declaratory to this, is it since recorded in the *Red Book* of the Order, [m] *That none of the* English, Scotch, *or* Welch *Nation, how considerable soever otherwise,*

[m] *Pag.* 143.

otherwise, in the prerogative of Blood or Virtue, can be Elected *into this most honorable Society, but that he ought to be first ennobled and rendred capable by this first Degree of Knightly honor.*

But in reference to Foreign Princes being in their own Country, this *Law* hath now no force; for by a Decree made at *Whitehall*, in a *Chapter* there held, the [n] 18. day of *April, an.* 13. *Car.* 1. it being the day whereon the *Feast* of St. *George* was also celebrated, these words [*ut minimum*] are explained to relate to [o] all *Subjects*, of what Degree soever, within the *Soveraign*'s Dominions ([p] not *Foreign Princes*) who before their *Election* at least (if not *Nomination*) ought to be *Knighted*, as the Basis and first Degree of *Chivalry*.

n *Lib.R.p.*119.

o Placuit *Supremo*, ut solos Majestati p suæ subditos Lex ea comprehenderet, primi hujus gradus expertes; Non autem *Principes Exteros* superiori gradu ornatos. *Ib.p.* 119.

And as they ought to be *Knights*, so as well *Knights free from Infamy* or *Reproach*; for so the [q] *Statutes* of *Institution* enjoin. In *Henry* the Fifth's *Statutes* it is thus rendred, [r] *Chivalier sans reproche*, which is the same with [f] *Eques irreprehensus*. And we find it one of the Arguments used by *John* Duke of *Bedford*, on the behalf of Sir *John Radcliff*, to promote his Election; [t] That he had continued and exercised the Armies, the space of eight and twenty Winters *unreproached*.

The three points of Reproach.

q *Art.* 2.
r *Art.* 2.
f *H.*8.*Stat. Art.*2.
t *Ex Autogr. penes W.D.N.*

But for as much as the points of *Reproach* may be accounted many and diverse, and through their incertainty and number, rather become Traps to ensnare, than Rules for caution and direction, [u] King *Henry* the Eighth determined and limited them to *Three* only.

u *Stat Art.*2.

The first *species* or *point* of *Reproach* is, where *a Knight hath been convicted of* Heresie, *against the Catholique faith, or suffered any publique punishment for such offence.* Here we may see, *Heresie* is reckoned among those defects that deprive men of *Honor*, in as much as bending its force against the *Catholique Church*, it not only renders a man in the ballance of Honor of no weight, but more than all other sins makes him infamous. And therefore when either by *Tongue*, *Pen*, or *Actions*, a man endeavours to trample under foot the sacred Law, scandalizeth Government, seduceth others, or in like execrable wickednesses discovers himself, he is judged void of *Conscience* and *Equity*, and a most notorious destroyer of that divine part of man, the *Soul*, and consequently deserving, not of external infamy alone (which the guilt of this Offence justly contracts) but other punishments extending to life.

1. Conviction of Heresie.

The second *Point* of *Reproach* is, *where any Knight hath been arraigned, convicted, and attainted of* Treason. Nevertheless Queen *Elizabeth* qualifies this point by a Decree in *Chapter* held at the *Tower* the [w] 12. of *January*, in the first year of her Reign (which we conceive was made upon occasion of restoring in Blood *William* Marquess of *Northampton*, and the Lord *Robert Dudley*, after created Earl of *Leicester*, who with others had been attainted of high Treason in the first of Queen *Mary*, and the attainder confirmed by *Parliament* the same year) *viz.* [x] That in case any *Person* (so convicted) were pardoned by the *Soveraign*, and restored in Blood, every such *Gentleman* in Name, Arms, and Blood, and descended as aforesaid, being otherwise qualified according to the ancient *Statutes* of the *Order*, should be thenceforth accounted *Eligible*, and might be chosen a *Companion*. And we find that the very next St. *George*'s *Feast*, held the [y] 22. 23. and 24. of *April* following, the said Marquess of *Northampton*, and the Lord *Robert Dudley* (who during the remaining part of Queen *Maries* Reign, lay under the burden of a heavy fate) had now recovered the Priviledges of *Honor*, and were preferr'd in *Nomination*, and on the last day of the said Feast [z] *Elected* into this most Illustrious *Society*.

2. Attainture of Treason.

w *Lib.C.p.*26.

x Decretum est, si quis ex familia nobili aut generosa procreatus, cujus uterq; parens avus & proavus generosi fuerint, Læse Majestatis vel ante hac condemnatus est, vel post hac condemnabitur, si ei post eam condemnationem a Principe, ignoscatur, ita ut ad familie sue beneficium, Insignia & dignitatem restituatur; talibus ortus majoribus quales antea notati sunt, sitq; hujusmodi qualem ejus Ordinis Leges & Instituta describunt, ut is deinceps Ordinis nobilissimi capax sit, & in ejus Comilitonum adlegi & coaptari rite possit. *Ib.p.*29.

y *Ibid.p.*29.

z *Pag.*30.

And here may further notice be taken of the said Marquess of *Northampton's* case, who having been restored in Blood, and his restauration to the honor of this most Noble *Order* also designed (for he had been formerly, *an.*35. *H.*8. [a] *Elected* and [b] *Installed*) it was thought necessary to descend to a new *Nomination* and

a *Lib.N.p.*289.
b *Ib.p.*290.

and *Election*, which as may be collected from the aforesaid *Decree* ought now to be done, and was in him accordingly performed, the [c] 3. of *June*, *anno primo Eliz.*

[c] *Lib.C.p.31.*

3. Flying from Battel.

The third and last *Point* of *Reproach*, is *where a* Knight-Companion *hath fled from* Battel, *in which the Soveraign, or his Lieutenant, or other Captain (having the Kings authority) were present, when Banners were displayed, and both sides proceeded to fight.* Now for a man to carry himself cowardly in the *Field*, abandon his *Colours*, leave his *Prince*, *Friends*, and *Companions* in hazard of life; are undoubtedly things highly reproachful, and draw dishonor upon the *Order*, the *Soveraign*, and *Knights-Companions*; and a sufficient testimony, that he valueth more his *life* than his *honor*, and prefers an infamous safety before an honorable death.

If we look back into ancient *History*, we shall meet with a great Example of *Honor* and *Courage* in [d] *Judas Maccabeus*, who though he had but 800 of 3000 men left him (the rest being fled out of fear to encounter *Bacchides* Army, consisting of 20000 Foot, and 2000 Horse) and these 800 too forward to follow after; yet rather than cowardly forsake the Field (whereby in all likelihood, he might have saved his life which was there lost) he encouraged his Soldiers to receive the onset of his Enemies, with these words, [e] *God forbid that I should do this thing, and flee away from them; if our time be come, let us die manfully for our Brethren, and let us not stain our Honor.* And to say truth, the resolution of a right *Martialist* ought to be either to return with Honor, or die upon the Bed of Honor.

[d] *Maccab.l.1. c.9.ver.4.5.6.*

[e] *Verse 10.*

By the *Laws* of King *Edward* the *Confessor*, where a *Soldier* in any expedition either by Land or Sea, runneth from his *Colours*, his [g] *life* and *Estate* was made liable to answer the Offence. And sad experience, having from time to time made appear the inconvenience, danger, and loss occasioned by such cowardly and dishonourable departure out of the Field; at length our *Parliaments* taking the same into serious consideration, made it [h] *Fellony* without benefit of Clergy, forasmuch as this Offence tended to the hurt and jeopardy of the [i] *King*, the *Nobility*, and all the *Common-wealth*. And to secure our Naval Forces, as well as Land Armies, Queen *Elizabeth* extended the Statute of 18. *H.6. cap.* 19. no less to Mariners and Gunners, to all intents and purposes, than to other Soldiers.

[g] *Lamberts Arch.f.147. de Heretochiis Edit. Cantabr. 1644.*

[h] *Stat.18 H.6 c 19.3.H 8 c.5 2.E.6. c. 2. 4. & 5. Ph. & Mar c.3.*

[i] *Stat.7.H.7. c. 1.*

But much greater may the danger be, and far more dishonorable to them than private Soldiers, where a *Commander* in *chief*, or other *Officers* (having the conduct of an Army, or any part of it) shall herein offend; of which there is a notable example in *Thomas* Earl of *Lancaster*, who *an.* 12. *E.* 2. was * proclaimed Traitor for leaving the *Army* at the Seige of *Berwick*, the consequence whereof proved the loss of the whole design. And therefore, whoever is culpable of any of these three points of *Reproach*, is altogether [k] uncapable of *Election* into this most Noble *Order*.

* *Walsingh. sub an.* 1319.

[k] *Lib.N p.216.*

Ere we pass further, let us take notice of an Error, which *Polydore Virgil* hath linked with one, justly observed and refuted by the learned Pen of [l] Doctor *Heylin*, and which [m] *Erhardus Celius* hath transcribed from the said *Polydore*; namely, that the *Knights-Companions* have certain *Laws* belonging to their *Order*, whereby they are obliged, [n] *To defend and help one another, and in time of Battel never to betake themselves to shameful flight.*

[l] *Histor. of St. George, part. 3 ch.3.sect. 6.*

[m] *Ep.Aur. Anglo Wirtemb. p. 24.*

[n] *Hist Angl. l 19 p.378.*

But the first of these Clauses, is not in truth, any part of the *Statute-Law* of the *Order*; nor is the latter otherwise to be taken, than as one of those *points* of *Reproach* laid down in the second Article of King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*; which renders the person nominated uncapable of *Election*, if known guilty thereof.

Now that which gives some umbrage to the *Knights* mutual assistance and defence, is an *Article* of the *Statutes*, which prohibits the arming themselves one against another. For to avoid begetting of Feuds among them, whereby brotherly love might be extinguished (a thing in all Societies specially to be preserved) it was not the *Founder*'s least care to provide against so great a mischief. And therefore he Ordained (which since the ensuing Bodies of

of Statutes have confirmed) * *That none of the* Knights-Companions *should* Arm *themselves against any of their* Fellows, *unless either in the cause of his Soveraign, or his own just quarrel.*

* E. 3. Stat. Art. 29. 4. 5. Stat. Art. 30. H. 8. Stat. Art. 33.

Upon this Clause some of them took hold, when in the great and fatal controversie between the Houses of *York* and *Lancaster*, they divided themselves to either side, and both pretended to take part with the *King*: some sticking close to *Henry* the Sixth, whom they accounted *Soveraign* of the *Order*, both *de facto*, and *de jure*; others taking part with *Edward* the Fourth, as esteeming him *Soveraign de jure*, though not *de facto*.

But to make the obligation and tye of this most Noble *Fraternity* more strong, and to preserve a perpetual unity among the *Companions* thereof, lest they should unhappily engage in factions one against another, specially to the effusion of blood: it was further Ordained, || That if a *Knight-Companion* should happen to be retained in the service of a Foreign Prince, to take up Arms in his quarrel, and after his Adversary desired to entertain another *Knight-Companion* on his side also; he that was last invited, was bound to wave the proffer, and in no wise to give his consent. And therefore in all Reteynors of War, the *Knight-Companion* was obliged to make a special precaution, that his engagement should become void, if any of his *Fellows* were before retained on the other side. And if at the time of his reteynor, he knew not that another of his *Fellows* had been engaged with the Adversary, so soon as it came to his knowledge, he was obliged to relinquish the service he before undertook.

|| Ibid.

Besides these three points of *Reproach*, in a *Manuscript* of the *Statutes* in *English*, which hath before it the whole preamble to *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, and did belong to *Henry Grey* third Marquess *Dorset*, Duke of *Suffolk*, as appears by his Coat of *Arms*, painted in the beginning of it within a *Garter*, and his *Name* subscribed with his own hand, under the Coat; we find a *fourth point* of *Reproach*, added to these other Three, in these words.

> The fourth point of Reproach is, That if any Knight of the Order from henceforth, by prodigality or rvot, wilfully and negligently misspend, sell, aliene, or do away his Patrimony or Livelihood, by reason whereof, he shall not be able honourably to maintain himself and his Estate, in such honorable manner, as may conserve the honor of the said Order and of himself; In this case he shall be summoned by the Ulher of Arms of the Order, called the Black Rod, by Commandment of the Soveraign, his Lieutenant, or Deputy to appear before his Majesty, or his Commissioners, and the Knights of the Order, at the next Chapter ensuing, there to be examined before the Soveraign, or his said Commissioners, and the Knights and Companions of the said Order, and if he be found in such great default of Prodigality, insolent Riot, or wilful negligence; That then the Soveraign, with the advice of the Company of the said Order, may deprive and degrade him of the said Order, at the said Chapter, if it be their pleasure.

But this point of *Reproach* is not inserted into King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*; nevertheless the substance thereof appears to have been approved of before: for we find among some *Orders* prepared in the *Chapters* held at *Windesor*, by the Marquess of *Exiter*, and other *Knights-Companions* then present, the 25. and 26. days of *May*, *an.* 8. *H.* 8. one of them was something to [o] this purpose.

o Deinde quatenus Equites hoc Insigni Subligaculo decorati, si præclari status obliti, minus honestè viverent, excludentur ab hac honoranda Societate; nisi commoniti propere resipuerint. *Lib. H.* p. 204.

SECT. XIII.

Of other Inducements *for* Election.

p (*E.3.Stat.*
q) *Art.18.*
r) *H.5.Stat.*
s (*Art.18. H.*
8.Stat.Art.19.

AMong the number of these *Candidates*, the *Soveraign* is to regard those who have [p] *most voices*, or whom he conceives likely to contribute most to the [q] *honor of the Order*, and prove most [r] *serviceable to himself*, or *most* [s] *useful to his Crown and Kingdom.*

1. The having most voices.

Touching the first of these *Inducements*, *the greater number of Voices*; we find the *law* hath not been always observed, as from the many *Scrutenies*, entred in the *Annals* will appear, if need were to refer thereunto. Nevertheless it is sometimes noted to have taken place, as at the Election of the Duke of [t] *Quinbere*, *an.* 5. *H.* 6. where after a due and sufficient examination had of the *Scrutony* then taken, the said Duke [u] *by the consent of most voices*, was then Elected into the Stall of *Thomas* Duke of *Exiter*. This plurality of *Voices* is again taken notice of (among other Inducements) for the Election of Sir *Nicholas Carew*, the [w] 24. of *April*, *an.* 28. *H.* 8.

t *Conimbero:*
u *Lib.N.p.*84.
w *Lib.N.p* 271

It is remarkable that one time when the number of *Voices*, on the behalf of two *Knights*, were upon Examination found equal (which hapned in the case between Sir *John Fastolf*, and Sir *John Radcliff*, *an.* [y] 4. *H.* 6.) Sir *John Fastolf*, being by the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* esteemed the more [z] worthy of the two, obtained the *Election*.

y { *Ib.p.*81.vi-
z { *de Regist.*
*Chartac.f.*13.*b*

2. Being most honorable for the Order.

The second *Inducement* relates to such, as in probability may bring most reputation to this *Order*, or advance the good and prosperity thereof; and these have been chiefly *Foreign Princes*, esteemed so in respect of that high pitch of *Honor* they attained, and whose eminent *Valour* and *Worthiness* proclaimed them deserving, both of *Nomination* and *Election*.

a *See the Commission of Legation.*

And therefore the late *Soveraign* of blessed memory, [a] *upon consideration had of the* Glorious Atchievements *and* high Renown *of* Gustavus Adolphus *King of* Sweden, *judg'd it a part of his respect, not only to render him all offices of kindness and friendship, as to a Prince neerly allyed, and his most special friend; but also to impart to him, as far as in him lay, the greatest and highest honors that might be, and especially such wherewith the Military Virtue of a great Captain was wont to be adorned.*

But the general consideration, for which the *Soveraigns* thought fit to Elect *Foreign Princes* into this most *Noble Society*, and to impart to them these Testimonies of Honor, hath been exprest in the *Commissions* of *Legation* to be *in respect of their* Glorious Merits, *ennobled by the lustre and grace of their* Heroick Virtues, *their* eminent Nobleness, Grandeur, Prowess, *and* Magnificence, *the renown of which, Fame had divulg'd and spread abroad through the World.*

3. Serviceable to the Soveraign.

Thirdly, where the advantage of the *Soveraign's* service was cast into the Ballance, it frequently out-weighed other pretensions; insomuch, that (*an.* 2. *H.* 6.) the consideration of the [c] *Eminent services* of *John* Lord *Talbot*, for his *King* and *Country*; appears to be the strongest motive for his *Election*. And [d] the great zeal and affection which *John Gaspar Ferdinand de Marchin* had, to engage himself in the present *Soveraign's service* and *Cause*, for the recovery of his just rights (besides his eminent and famous actions, performed in several military *Commands*, wherein he had been for many years employed) was the strongest inducement that swayed with the *Soveraign*, to chuse him a *Knight-Companion* of this most Noble *Order*, *an.* 10. *Car.* 2.

c *Lib.N.p* 77.
d *Ex Collect.*
E.W.G.

4. And useful to the Kingdom.

But the last of these *Inducements* is of greatest latitude, for thereby the *Soveraign* has power to reject whosoever he pleases, though they exceed in number of *Voices* or other *Qualifications*, and to Elect a Person, but once named, which appears full enough in the case of *Casimire* the Fourth King of *Poland*, *an.* 28. *H.* 6.

who

who having but the [e] single Vote of the Lord *Scales*, yet upon consideration had by the *Soveraign*, how advantageous he might become to his, and his *Kingdoms* Interest, pass'd in *Election*.

[e] *Lib.N.p.*104.

And of later times (as appears in some of the Preambles to the [f] *Commissions* for carrying the *Ensigns, &c.* to *Foreign Princes*) the advantages which the *Soveraign* has conceived to possess himself of, in the improving, confirming, and establishing of a most strict and inviolable *Bond* of *Friendship* and *fair correspondency*, between *him* and *Foreign Princes*, their *Realms* and *Subjects*; hath been a main Inducement to *Elect* such into the *Order*.

[f] *See the Appendix.*

SECT. XIV.

That the Soveraign *only doth* Elect.

UPon the vacancy of any of the *Knights-Companions Stalls*, the *Election* of *new Knights* [g] appertains to the *Soveraign*, and in some case to his *Lieutenant*; in declaration of which, it is recorded in the *Black Book* of the *Order*, [h] *That if any Stalls fall vacant, it should belong to the* Soveraign *to* Elect new Knights, *wheresoever he were resident*; provided he have with him the compleat number of [i] six *Knights-Companions*; but if he be beyond Seas, wanting that *Number*, and the *Feast* of St. *George* held by his *Lieutenant* at *Windesor*, [k] in such case the *Election* belongs to the *Lieutenant*, who is first to be certified of the *Soveraign*'s pleasure, as also who they are that in *His* esteem appear fit persons to be chosen, to the end such *Information* may guide his Election.

[g] *E.*3. *H.*5. *H.*8. *Stat. Art.*18. *Stat. Art.*19.
[h] *Pag.*65.
[i] [k] *Ib.p* 65.66.

This power of *Election* is fully acknowledged by the *Knights-Companions* themselves to be in the *Soveraign*, as appears out of their *Letter* sent to King *Henry* the Fifth then in *France*, and dated at *Windesor*, on the morrow after Saint *George*'s day, where it is said, [m] *That the* Soveraign *in what place soever residing, may, as is most fitting, elect into a vacant Stall (there being a sufficient number of Knights called to the* Election) *such as he shall judge serviceable to his Crown, or do exceed others in deserts, and nobleness of descent.* Observable herewith is this, that at the publishing the Election of *Emanuel Duke* of *Savoy*, King *Philip* and Queen *Mary*, being at that time, joint *Soveraigns* of the *Order*, it is called, *the Election of the* * *King and Queen.*

[m] Et quia metuendissimè domine plane noverimus, quod vestra regalis sublimitas ubicunq; fuerit locorum potest prout decet & convenit vacantibus Stallis Commilitonum vestri Collegii militaris; adhibito numero eorundem pro Electione celebranda, requisito tales eorum loco subrogare & præficere, quos vestræ coronæ regiæ tanta celsitudo verisimiliter magis sencerit profituros ac morum probitate & nobilitate sanguinis noverit præpollere. *Ex vetusto Codice MS. penes Sylam Taylor Gen. f.* 158. *b.*
* *MS.p.* 14.

This grand Prerogative of the *Soveraign*, being not duly considered by *Polydore Virgil*, occasioned his committing a great mistake (and [n] *Claudius Coteræus* from him) for speaking of this *Order*, and the succession of new *Knights* into the rooms of those deceased, he hath this passage, [o] *One* Knight *is received into the room of another deceast, by the* Choice *and* Election *of all the rest.* But *Erhard Celly* being as much ignorant of the *Soveraign*'s Prerogative, and rather more mistaken, sticks not to affirm, [p] *That no person may be received into this Order, not so much as by the* Soveraign, *unless with the common consent or suffrage of all the* Knights-Companions.

[n] *De jure & Privileg. Millium l.*1.*c.*15.
[o] *Angl.Histor. l.*19.*p.*378.
[p] *Anglo-Wirtemb.p.*103.

But these passages are altogether erroneous; the *Knights-Companions* part being only to *Nominate* the Persons (nevertheless qualified as aforesaid) but the right of *Election* remains wholly in the *Soveraign* of the *Order*. For whosoever *He* designs, appoints, and chuseth, is forthwith admitted: *His* only pronouncing the *Name* of the *Person* in *Chapter* being sufficient.

For after the *Scruteny* hath been taken, and presented to the *Soveraign*, in the manner and order before laid down, *He* peruseth it himself, or otherwise the *Chancellor*, or other *Officer* of the *Order* that took it, [q] reads it over to him;

[q] *Lib.R.p.*132.

which done, the *Soveraign* (with reference to the considerations before expressed) forthwith resolves upon some one, or more of the *Knights*, named in the *Scruteny*, and thereupon openly and publickly [r] declareth the *Name* of him, or them, whom he doth *Elect*: by which bare *act of Pronunciation*, and without any further *Ceremony*, the Person or Persons so named, stand and become *Elect Knights*: And this is the manner used at the conferring an Election; except now and then the *Soveraign* is pleased to give his reasons why the *Knight* is Elected by him.

But though this act of *Election* be setled by the *Law* of the *Order* upon the *Soveraign*, yet is the consent of the *Knights-Companions* thereunto, frequently entred down among the *Annals*, and sometimes mentioned in the *Commissions* of *Legation* to *Foreign Princes*: Not that the single act of *Election* is in truth the act of the whole *Chapter*, or is invalid or incompleat, without the joint consent of the *Knights-Companions* present at the *Election*; but their consent so expressed is to be understood, as an honorary respect given them by the *Register*, and signifying rather an applauding or praising the *Soveraign*'s *Choice*, as being in their judgments, according to the merits of the *Person Elected*, than a necessary circumstance, contributing to the ratification or strengthning the *Election* made by the *Soveraign*, as if defective without it.

[r] *Supremus* pro Electis tres illustrissimos Principes (Ducem *Brunswick*. Comites *Salisbur.* & *Carliolensem*) pronunciabat. *lib.R. p.* 23. *Supremus* Comitem *Northamptonæ* Electum pronunciat. *Ib. p.*45. *Supremus* accepta & perpensa Nomenclaturæ Schedula, Electos pronunciat Comi[illegible] *bis* [illegible] nia [illegible]

SECT. XV.

The Scruteny *ought to be entred among the* Annals.

AMong other the duties laid upon the *Register* and set down in the * *Statutes* of the *Order*, and *Constitutions* of the *Officers* this is one; of which mention is made to this effect, [t] *That the* Registers *part is to set down and record for a memorial, the* Elections (*or Scrutenies*) *and* Names *of the Knights Elected.* But in succeeding times a scruple arose, whether this need be done, when the *Scruteny* should be taken, yet no *Election* made?

To clear which doubt, in a *Chapter* held on *Saint George*'s day, *an.* 5. *Eliz.* we find it the *Soveraign*'s will and pleasure, that thence forward it should be enacted, and accordingly it was established for a *Law* within this *Order*, [t] *That if any* Nominations *were taken from the* Knights-Companions, *the same should be entred in the* Annals, *though there were no* Election *made of any Person into the* Order *at that time.* Which we suppose was so decreed, out of great respect to those *Princes* and Noble *Personages*, who in future times should by the glory of their actions appear but worthy the honor of *Nomination* into so Illustrious an *Order*. And in pursuance of this *Decree*, there is frequent mention made of the delivery of the *Scruteny* into the hands of the *Register*, to make entry thereof accordingly.

For instance, *an.* 22. *Eliz.* the *Blue Book* saith, [u] *That the Chancellor himself delivered the* Knights-Companions Votes *to the Register, to be committed to writing, for a perpetual memorial; and accordingly the Register, as his duty obliged him, having transcribed them, put them into their proper place, with all care and fidelity.* In like manner, *an.* 26. *Eliz. After the Chancellor had presented the* Scruteny *to the* Soveraign, *he delivered it to the Register,* [w] *to insert among the Annals of the* Order, *who immediately committed it to posterity; after the accustomed form.* Again, *an.* 34. of the same *Queen*, [x] *The* Votes *were delivered to the Register, who took care to* Record *them, according to the usual order.* Nevertheless since the aforesaid Law pass'd, the Entry of *Scrutenies* hath been sometimes omitted, either through the *Registers* not calling to memory the duty enjoined by the before mentioned *Decree*, or else by some accidental miscarriages, or other neglects.

As for Example, in some places of the *Annals*, instead of *Scrutenies* we find *Excuses*

* *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 34. *vide H.* 5. *Stat. Art.*36.

[t] *Lib.N.p.*235.

[t] *Lib.C.p.*42.

[u] *pag.*82.

[w] *Ibid.p.*94. & 100.

[x] *Ibid.p.*120. & 131.

Excuses entred, as *an.* 28. *Eliz.* where it is said; That the [y] *Prelate* immediately after *Vespers*, presented the *Scruteny* to the *Soveraign*, but because there was [z] no *Election* made of any new *Knights*, in regard of the croud of weighty and pressing affairs, which seemed very much to concern the *Soveraign* and State, it was laid aside, [a] *and through neglect lost*; at least it came not to the [b] *Registers* hands, to be inserted in its proper place. So *an.* 18. *Eliz.* although the *Dean* of *Windesor* took the *Scruteny* at *Vespers*, on St. *George*'s day, nevertheless it is said, [c] *That no* Election *was made, nor any thing else done.* The like Excuse is made, *an.* 5. *Car.* 1. but the fault is here laid on the *Chancellor*; for though the *Scruteny* had been taken by him during the *Vespers* of the *Feast day*, [d] *yet would he not suffer it to be entred.*

y, z *Lib. C. p.* 103.
a, b *Ibid.*
c *Ib. p.* 73.
d *Lib. R. p.* 50.

In the next place we read, That the Votes being presented to the *Soveraign*, *an.* 31. *Eliz.* [e] *they were left with her.* And *an.* 11. *Car.* 1. the [f] *Scruteny* of *Algernon* Earl of *Northumberland*, never came to the *Registers* hands, and lastly *an.* 33. *Eliz.* we only find, [g] that the *Chancellor* delivered the *Votes* to the *Lieutenant*, but no mention is there made, what became of them afterwards.

e *Lib. C. p.* 113.
f *Lib. R. p.* 108.
g *Lib. C. p.* 118.

But the *Law* yet remains in force, that all *Nominations* and *Votes* of the *Knights-Companions* ought to be entred among the *Annals*; whether *Election* be made or not, unless it shall please the *Soveraign*, for any extraordinary reason, upon particular occasions, to forbid it. One Example (and but one) of such a Prohibition we have met with, *an.* 40. *Eliz.* where [h] *by the Queens special command, the* Scruteny *then taken was not recorded among the acts of this most Noble Order*; nor is any thing thereof to be found in the *Blue Book.* But it is there also said, that the *Register* took care to set down all the passages as they hapned, [i] the *Names* only excepted.

h *Lib. C. p.* 137.
i *Ibid.*

And that it may not seem strange, why the *Scruteny* is not inserted in the *Registry*, *an.* 44. *Eliz.* this account is given, [k] That upon assembling the *Knights-Companions*, it seemed good to the *Soveraign* for several urgent Reasons, best known to her self, to give commandment; [l] *That for that time they should wholly forbear all* Scruteny *of Votes and Nomination of Persons*; except which, there was nothing wanting to the height of Solemnity at that meeting. But this we find noted in the *Annals*, to be [m] *præter morem*, contrary to the usual Custom.

k *Ibid. p.* 146.
l *Ibid.*
m *Ib.*

SECT. XVI.

The Scruteny *ought not to be* viewed *until it be entred.*

HEnce we are led to take notice of the following passage: It seems the [n] Earls of *Derby* and *Rutland*, two of the *Knights-Companions* (on the morrow after St. *George*'s day, *an.* 27. *Eliz.*) were desirous to have seen the *Scruteny*, which was delivered into the *Dean* of *Windesor*'s Custody to be Registred, in pursuance of the before mentioned *Decree*, *an.* 5. *Eliz.* But he gave them a modest denial, and said [o] *it ought not to be seen before it was Registred.*

n *Ex Collect.*
o *Rob. Cooke*
p *Ar. nuper Clar. R. Armor. fol.* 10.

Whereupon the Earls, not satisfied with this answer, requested the opinions of the rest of the *Knights-Companions* (present at that *Feast*) in this case; who upon consideration thereof adjudged the point [p] against them. And since this occasion, we have observed it elsewhere noted. [q] *That no* Knight-Companion *ought to see whom the other hath named.*

q *Ex Autogr. pen. præf. Jac. Palmer.*

SECT.

SECT. XVII.

Of Scrutenies *taken, yet no* Election *made.*

IT hath often hapned, that though the *Nominations* for *Election*, have been formally taken, presented, and perused, yet hath not the *Soveraign* thought fit at present to make any *Election*, being moved thereunto from several considerations; principally where an intent was to keep open a *Stall*: But this must be understood of such *Scrutenies* as are taken of course, at the *Vespers* on the *Feast day.*

The most notable Example in this kind, is that of *Sigismond* the *Emperor*, who died in the [r] 16. year of *King Henry* the Sixth, and whose *Stall* was not disposed of till 21. years after, *viz.* the [s] 37. year of the said *King*; and then determined to be reserved for [t] *Prince Edward*, the *Soveraign*'s only Son, he being at that time about six years of age.

This is that *Emperor*, whose Election (being about the [u] 7. of *May*, *an.* 4. *H.* 5.) is the first Election we find *Registred* in the *Annals*, where he is styled [w] *Sigismundus Imperator Almanicus.* He was then lately come into *England*, and so was the *Duke* of *Holland*, [x] *cum præclaro Duce de Brigâ, una ex comitatu Imperatoris* (as he is there styled) who hitherto had the ill fortune not to be remembred in any of the *Catalogues* of *Knights-Companions*, that we have yet met with; nevertheless at the Feast of St. *George* celebrated at *Windesor*, the day abovesaid, was [y] Elected *Knight* of this most Noble *Order.*

And the reserving a Stall was sometimes given by the *Soveraign*, as a reason for deferring his *Election*; as upon the 4. of *October*, being the morrow after the *Feast* of Saint *George*, held by prorogation at *Windesor*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 1. (when the *Scruteny*, taken the day before, was read over in the *Chapter-house*) where the *Soveraign* declared, [z] *That he would receive no man into the Order, before his Son Charles*: whereupon, all the *Knights-Companions* gave their sence, [a] *That this resolution, was rather an effect of Justice than fatherly indulgence; since they all acknowledged him to be more a Prince by merit and towardlinesse of his youth, than by the fortune of his Birth*, at which the *Soveraign* expreest his satisfaction, no otherwise than by silence.

For such like cause, *an.* [b] 15. *Car.* 1. when the *Scruteny* was presented to the *Soveraign*, by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, the 10. of *October* (being the last day of the *Feast*, celebrated at *Windesor* by prorogation) the *Soveraign* declared, [c] *That he had a purpose to have chosen* Prince Rupert *his Nephew, a Knight of the Order, but being then a Prisoner with the* Emperor, *he would not Elect any at that time*: Whereupon the vacancy of a *Stall* was reserved.

At other times, we note the pleasure of the *Soveraign* in deferring *Elections*, to be frequently entred down only in the general, and without expressing the cause, as *an.* 13. *Eliz.* on the morrow after St. *George*'s day, upon perusal of the *Scruteny* by the *Soveraign* in *Chapter*, held in the *Privy Chamber*, where the *Blue Book* tells us; [d] *That the said* Soveraign *made no Election, though there were two* Stalls *vacant.* Nay although there were found to be three Stalls void, on the *Feast days* in the 23. 24. and 25. years of the said *Queens* Reign; nevertheless upon receipt of the *Scruteny* no *Election* was made by the *Soveraign*, until the following year, *viz. an.* 26. *Eliz.* Thus was it in the 2. 8. 11. and 12. of King *James*, where no other mention is made than this, [f] *None were admitted into the Order this year.* And in such case, the *Soveraign* only [g] views the *Scruteny*, [h] approves of every *Knight-Companion*'s *Nomination*, and gives them *thanks.*

Sometimes we meet with this *Prorogation* of *Elections* recorded, as done at the pleasure of the *Soveraign* only; and at other times, by the *Soveraign*, with the approbation of the *Knights-Companions.*

r *Lib. N.* p. 4. *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [F. 9.] *f.* 19 *b.*
s } *Lib. N.*
t } p. 119.
u }
w } *Ibid.* p. 57.
x }
y }
z } *Lib. R.*
a } p. 132.
b } *Palmer's*
c } *Journal pro an.* 1639. p. 34.
d *Pag.* 63.
e *Lib. C.* p. 87. & 93.
f *C.* p. 156.
g *Palmer's large Journal.* p. 20.
h *Palm. Journ. pro an.* 1639. *f.* 34.

To

To the first of these pertains a memorial entred, *an.* 22. *Eliz.* on the 24. of *April*, at a *Chapter* held before Morning Prayer; where the *Knights-Companions* received notice, [i] *that it was the pleasure of the* Soveraign *to prorogue the* Election *for that time.* And *an.* 38. *Eliz.* though there was an [k] earnest expectation on the morrow after Saint *George*'s day, of the *Election* of a new *Knight*, yet [l] *it seemed good to the* Soveraign, *to prorogue the* Election *to the following year.*

Again, *an.* 10. *Car.* 1. on the morrow after the *Feast day*, then celebrated at *Windesor*, when the *Scedule* of *Nominations*, taken the Evening before, was presented to the *Soveraign* in *Chapter* by the *Chancellor*, and one place void; [m] *The Soveraign did not think fit to make any* Election *at all.*

As touching the second, we meet with this instance, *an.* 27. *Eliz.* [n] *That with the concurrent approbation and assent, of the* Knights-Companions *then assisting, the* Soveraign *thought fit to put off the* Election *to another time.* But as to the reason of this seeming difference in the *Soveraign*'s absolute power, yet taking in the *Knights-Companions* approbation, it may be said, as is already spoken, in the act of *Election*; That though it be the unquestionable prerogative of the *Soveraign*, to prorogue *Elections* at pleasure, yet out of respect and honor to the *Knights-Companions*, their approbation hath been sometimes expreſt.

i *Lib.C.p.*84.
k *Pag.*132.
l
m *Lib.R.p*97.
n *Lib.C.p.*101.

SECT. XVIII.

The Penalties *inflicted on* Knights-Companions *who appear not at an* Election.

LAstly, to close up this *Chapter*; where any *Knight-Companion* hath received *Summons* to appear at a *Chapter* of *Election*, and doth [o] refuse to come, or wilfully withdraw himself, unless he be hindred for some just cause; and the reason of that impediment [p] signified to the *Soveraign*, under his *Seal* of *Arms* beforehand (which if found to be just and reasonable is forthwith [q] allowed and accepted, if otherwise, rejected and disallowed) his disobedience was Ordained to be punished with the payment of [r] *one Mark* (which King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes* inlarged to *twenty shillings*) to the *Dean* and *Colledge* of *Windesor*, and heretofore disposed towards praying for the Soul of the *defunct Knight.* At his next coming to *Chapter*, he is to tarry [s] kneeling upon the ground in the midst of the *Chapter*, before the *Soveraign* (or his *Deputy*) and the whole company there present, which penalty he must still undergo, until such time, as finding favour with them he be restored.

o, p, q, r *E.*3.*Stat. Art.* 18. *H.*5.*Stat. Art.*18. *H.*8.*Stat. Art.* 19.

And for greater caution this *Clause* was heretofore inserted in the *Letters* of *Summons*, as appears (among others) in that which issued out after the death of Sir *Robert D'umfrevile*, where after the time and place for *Election* was certified, and command given to observe both; the *Letter* eloseth thus, [t] **Et se estre np pouez nous signifiez soubz**, &c. *And if it cannot be accomplished*, that is, if the *Knight-Companion* could not meet at the appointed time, to perform his part in what the Statutes oblige, he should then *signifie to the* Soveraign *under his Seal the cause of his impediment; that so he might perceive by his excuse, whether it were worthy acceptance, or he in fault or not.*

t *Regist.Chart. f.* 12.*b.*

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

THE Investiture OF A KNIGHT SUBJECT WITH THE Garter *and* George.

SECT. I.

The Notice *given to a* Knight Subject *of his* Election.

IN reference to this Ceremony, we are first to premise something, concerning the notice to be given the *Knight-Elect* of his Election into this most Noble *Order*; whether he be at such time personally at *Windesor*, or other place where the *Chapter* is then held, or employed in some more remote parts within the Kingdom, or elsewhere beyond the Seas, upon the *Soveraign*'s Affairs.

To the newly *Elect-Knight*, who upon this acquisition of Honor happens to be at *Windesor*, or wheresoever else the *Chapter* is held, [a] *Garter* (immediately after the *Soveraign* hath signified his pleasure, in Election of the person) is sent out of the *Chapter* to give him notice of it; for we find this employment recorded as part of the [b] duty of his Office, and asserted to be so by the general practice; and (among other Precedents in the *Annals*) upon the Election of the [c] Lord *Howard*, and Sir *Henry Marney*, *an.* 2. *H.* 8. (both then present at Court) it appears *that* Garter *was forthwith sent out of the* Chapter, *to give them notice thereof, and to conduct them to the* Soveraign'*s presence*; where both were invested, with the two principal Ensigns of the *Order*, the *Garter* and *George*. And upon the like service was he employed, at the Election of Sir [d] *Nicholas Carew* *an.* 28. *H.* 8. and of the [e] Lord *Burghley*, and Lord *Grey* of *Wilton*, *an.* 14. *Eliz.*

a } *Constitut.*
b } *ad Official. Ordin. attinentes. c.* 4.

c *Ibid.*

d *Ib. p.* 271.
e *Lib C. p.* 66.

And as *Garter* hath been accustomed to carry the verbal notice of a Knights Election; so also the *Soveraign's Letters*, signifying Election, to a *Knight* then likewise at Court, where the *Soveraign* is pleased (for the greater honor of the Person)

Person) to wave a verbal notice, and send *Letters* of *signification* in its stead. And in such case these *Letters* are drawn up by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, and pass under both the *Soveraign*'s Sign manual, and Signet of the Order. Such a particular Honor was afforded the present *Soveraign*; to whom [f]immediately after his Election, in a *Chapter* held at *Windesor*, the *Soveraign* directed the following Letter, presented to him by [g]Sir *John Burrough Garter*, who found him walking in St.[i] *George's Hall.*

f g i (Palmer's large Journal p. 7.)

Charles R.

OUR *most dear and entirely beloved* Son, *having to our great comfort seen, and considered the ripeness of your youth, and conceived joyful and pregnant hopes of your manly virtues, in which we are assured, you will encrease to your own honor, both in prowess, wisdom, justice, and all princely endowments: and that the emulation of* Chevalry *will in your tender years provoke and encourage you, to pursue the glory of heroick actions, befitting your royal birth, and our care and education.* We *with the* Companions *of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *assembled in* Chapter, *holden this present day at our Castle of* Windesor, *have elected and chosen you one of the* Companions *of our* Order. *In signification whereof, we have sent unto you by our trusty and well beloved servant Sir* John Burrough *Knight* Garter, *and our Principal King of Arms, these our* Royal Letters, *requiring you to make your speedy repair unto us, to receive the* Ensigns *of our most honorable* Order, *and to be ready for your* Installation, *upon the* 21. *day of this present Month. Given under the Signet of our Order, at our Castle of* Windesor, *the* 20. *of* May, *in the* 14. *year of our Reign* 1638.

Rowes Journ. p. 42.

To our dearly beloved
Son Prince Charles.

This is the only Instance we have met with, where a *Letter* was sent to an *Elect-Knight*, and he at the same time present at Court. But when an Election passeth, and the *Knight Elected* is remote from Court, then the general form of the *Letter* is both to signifie his *Election*, and summon him to his *Investiture* with the *Garter* and *George*: of which see a Precedent in the[l] *Appendix.*

l *Num.* XVIII.

But where the *Soveraign* is pleased to descend to mention particular services, or other inducements for a *Knights Election*, there the Preamble of the Letter is worded accordingly: and that this hath sometimes, though but rarely been used, appears thus in that Letter which certified Election to Sir *John Fastolfe*, [m]*We considering the virtuous fidelity you have shown, and the honorable exploits you have done, in the service of our thrice renowned Father, and that in our service also, you (as many others) have given proofs of that honor and those deserts wherewith God hath endowed you, always suffering, as is the part of a good and faithful subject, the pains and toyls of War, for the vindicating and maintaining of our just right, claims, and title; have chosen you one of our* Companions *of our* Order, &c.

m *Appendix Num.* XXI.

Where the Letter barely signifies *Election*; that is, when the *Soveraign* doth not design a present Investiture with the *Garter* and *George*, but defers that Ceremony till the *Elect-Knight* comes to *Windesor*, to take possession of his Stall; in such case notice of the day of his Installation is also inserted towards the end of the Letter, and upon his appearance at *Windesor*, so soon as he is called into the *Chapter-house*, the *Garter* is first buckled about his left leg, next follows his *Investiture* with the rest of the *Ornaments* of the *Order*, and lastly his *Installation.* And thus (in the case of *Henry* Earl of *Cumberland*, *an.* 29. *H.*8.) was the Investiture with the *Garter* deferr'd, till his appearance at *Windesor*, where that Ceremony, as also his Investiture with the *Habit* and *Collar*, and lastly his Installation, were dispatcht at one time.

SECT. II.

His Reception *into the* Chapter-house.

IF the *Elect Knight* be neer where the *Chapter* is held, and that *Garter* hath been sent forth to give him notice of the Honor, and to usher him into the *Chapter-house* to receive the *Garter* and *George*, before the *Chapter* break up; intimation being given of his approach, the Soveraign sends forth two of the *Knights-Companions* to meet him, who after a mutual salute, conduct him between them to the presence of the *Soveraign*, *Garter* going before them.

a *Lib.C.p.*159. For instances herein, first of *Strangers*, we shall remember [a] *Ulrick* Duke of *Holstien*, *an.* 3. *Jac. R.* who being sent for by *Garter*, was introdueed into the *Chapter* between Prince *Henry* and the Earl of *Dorset*, and by them presented to

b *Lib.R. p.*23. the *Soveraign*: So [b] *Christian* Duke of *Brunswick*, *an.* 22. *Jac. R.* proceeded with much state and honor, in the midst between *William* Earl of *Penbroke* and *Philip* Earl of *Montgomery*, to receive the *Garter* and *George*.

c *Collect. E.* d *W.G.* The [c] 6. of *November*, *an.* 14. *Car.* 2. *Christian* Prince of *Denmark* being Elected in a Chapter, held in the Withdrawing Room at *Whitehall*, and then absent, *Garter* was sent next day by the *Soveraign*, to give him notice thereof, with desire to be present the following day, at the forefaid place, to receive his *Investiture*; where the *Soveraign* and several of the *Knights-Companions* being assembled, [d] *Garter* was sent out for the Prince (then at the Earl of *Bath*'s Lodgings in the matted Gallery) and thence usher'd him into the Lobby between the said Gallery and the Withdrawing Room; where he was received by the Earls of *Lindsey* and *Manchester*, and conducted between them into the Chapter, *Garter* preceding them, and after three obeysances they brought him up to the *Soveraign*.

e *Lib.C p.*66. Among *Knights-Subjects*, we find the [e] Lord *Burghley* and Lord *Grey* were conducted (*an.* 14. *Eliz.*) to the *Soveraign* by the Lord *Clynton* and Earl of *Bedford*;

f *Ib. p.*109. and [f] *Robert* Earl of *Essex*, *Thomas* Earl of *Ormond*, and Sir *Christopher Hatton*

g *Ibid.* (present at *Greenwich*, *an.* 30. *Eliz.* when their Election passed) [g] were severally led into the *Chapter*; the first of them between the Earls of *Worcester* and *Penbroke*; the second between the Lord *Hunsdon* and Lord *Grey* of *Wilton*; and the third between the Earl of *Leicester* and Lord *Burghley*; and as soon as they were brought up before the *Soveraign*, with all Reverence and Humility they fell upon their knees.

h *Ex lib. C. p.*163. In like manner, *an.* 4. *Jac. R.* [h] *Robert* Earl of *Salisbury* proceeded up to the *Soveraign*'s Throne, between the Earls of *Nottingham* and *Dorset*; and Viscount *Lindon*, between the Earls of *Suffolk* and *Northampton*. And *an.* 22. *Jac. R.* the

i *Lib.R p.*23. Earl of *Arundel* and *Surrey*, and Earl of *Kelly*, took [i] *William* Earl of *Salisbury* between them, and presented him to the *Soveraign*: So also in the Reign of his late

k *Ibid.p.*45. *Majesty* of blessed memory, it is remembred, that the [k] Earl of *Northampton* was conducted to his receipt of the *Garter*, in the *Chapter-house* at *Windesor*, between the Earls of *Penbroke* and *Montgomery*, *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. and the Earls of *Danby* and

l *Ib.p.*90. m *Moreton*, being Elected also at the same place, *an.* 9. *Car.* 1. the [l] former of them was conducted to the *Soveraign* by the Earls of *Penbroke*, and *Arundel* and *Surrey*, and the [m] latter by the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Carlisle*. And when the present *Soveraign* appeared upon his Letter of Summons, at the *Chapter* held in the Withdrawing Chamber in *Windesor* Castle, to receive his Investiture, two of

n *Lib.R.p.*142 the senior Knights, *viz. Philip* [n] Earl of *Penbroke* and *Montgomery*, and *Thomas* Earl

o *Palmer's large Journal p.*8. of *Arundel* and *Surrey*, were sent forth to conduct him in, who (ushered by the [o] *Black Rod*) brought him between them up to the *Soveraign*.

p *Ex Collect. E.W.G.* The [p] Duke of *Monmouth* being Elected at a *Chapter* held in the Withdrawing Room at *Whitehal*, the 28. of *March an.* 15. *Car.* 2. *Garter* was immediately sent to him in the Soveraign's Bedchamber, who being met at the door by the Earls of

of *Lindsey* and *Manchester*, *Garter* (the *Black Rod* joining himself to him in the Room) pass'd to the lower end of the Room before the *Duke* and the two *Knights-Companions*, whence they proceeded up to the *Soveraign* with three Reverences.

Lastly, at the Election of [q] *James* Duke of *Cambridge*, in the same Room at *Whitehall* (3. *Dec. an.* 18. *Car.* 2.) *Garter* was also sent forth into the Bedchamber, to acquaint him that the Earl of *Manchester* and Duke of *Monmouth* were appointed by the *Soveraign* and *Chapter* to bring him in thither. That done, the said *Knights-Companions* arose and went to the *Duke*, whom meeting at the Bedchamber door, they took their compass about the rest of the *Knights-Companions* (then standing) and brought him between them (*Garter* and *Black Rod* preceeding) from the lower end of the Room close before the *Soveraign*.

q *Ibidem.*

SECT. III.

The Ceremonies of Investiture *with the* Garter *and* George.

THE *Knight-Elect* being thus introduced, and brought to the *Soveraign*, having first with all reverence bowed himself before him, it was usual heretofore to make a short gratulatory speech, in acknowledgment of so great an evidence of the *Soveraign*'s royal bounty, and the *Knights-Companions* respects: The substance of such an address, we find coucht in that speech made by Sir *Nicholas Carew*, after he had been conducted into the *Chapter-house* at *Windesor*, to receive his Investiture, *an.* 28. *H.* 8. who first [a] giving infinite "thanks, both to the *Soveraign* and the whole *Society*, for that they had vouch-"safed to receive him into the honor of this most illustrious *Order*, being a per-"son in his own esteem most unworthy thereof; in the next place profest, That "whereas he was preferred in this choice before many others much more de-"serving than himself, it was not to be attributed to his merits, or any thing "by him performed, but meerly to the *Soveraign*'s bounty, and the favour of "the *Knights-Companions* present towards him.

a *Lib.N.p.*271.

The bestowing of so singular an honor, being thus thankfully acknowledged the Ceremony of *Investiture* with the two principal Ensigns of the *Order* begins, first with the *Garter*, as the most ancient and chiefest Ensign, and next with the *George*: but the further Investiture with the Habit, and other the Ornaments of this Order, are to be compleated at the time of the *Elect-Knights* Installation at *Windesor*.

Now the manner and order in the aforesaid *Investiture*, was anciently as followeth; first the *Elect-Knight* set his left foot upon a Stool, and then one of the *Knights-Companions*, by the *Soveraign*'s appointment, as his Substitute, buckled the Enobled *Garter* about his left leg; and this is to be seen in Picture in the margent of an old Draught of the Combats of Sir *John Astley*, set forth in the [b] Antiquities of *Warwickshire*, where the said Sir *John*'s Investiture with the *Garter*, is represented after the aforesaid manner. But of late times, the *Elect-Knight* [c] kneeled on his right Knee, whilst this Ceremony was performed; during which, the [d] words of *Admonition* or *Signification* at this part of the *Investiture* are to be read.

b *Pag.* 73.
c *Ex Collect. A. V. W.*
d *Lib.N.p.*202.

The *Forms* of *Admonition* anciently used at the Investiture of *Knights-Subjects* are inserted in the [e] *Appendix*; but that particularly relative to the putting on the *Garter*, is entred in King *Henry* the Eighth's Book of [f] *English Statutes*, and is as followeth.

e *Numb.* XXXVI.
f *Art.*27.

Sir, the loving Company of the Order *of the* Garter *hath received you their* Brother *and* Fellow, *and in token of this, they give and present you this present*

present Garter, *which God grant that you receive and wear from henceforth to his praise and glory, and to the exaltation and honor of the said Noble* Order, *and your self.*

Afterward it was decreed in a *Chapter* held at *Windesor* the 5. of *August, an.* 1. *&* 2. *Ph. & Mar.* to this effect, [g] That not only the same *Advertisements* and *Admonitions* which were wont to be given to *Strangers* at their Investitures, should be likewise given to *Knights-Subjects*, that in time to come should be Elected and Installed; but also, that among the *Knights-Companions* there should not be any *Investiture* differing either in Ceremony or Habit.

g *Lib.C.p.*12.

Hereupon the foresaid words of *Admonition* at putting on the *Garter* were left off, and [h] those used at the *Investiture* of *Strangers* given and continued to *Knights-Subjects*; the English Version of which may be seen at the end of the said *English Statutes*, which thence we have transcribed hither: being pronounced by the Chancellor, if the Soveraign or his Lieutenant be present, otherwise by the Register.

h *Lib.N.p.*310.

To the laud and honor of Almighty God, his imaculate Mother, and Saint George *the holy Martyr, tye or gird your Leg with this Noble* Garter, *wearing it to the encrease of your honor, and in token and remembrance of this most Noble* Order; *remembring, that thereby you being admonished and encouraged, in all just Battels and Wars, which only you shall take in hand, both strongly to fight, valiantly to stand, and honorably to have the Victory.*

But against the Investiture of the present *Soveraign*, the words of Signification, being better weighed and considered, were put into this form.

h *Palmer's large Journ. p.* 8.

[h] *To the honor of God omnipotent, and in memorial of the blessed Martyr St.* George, *tye about thy Leg for thy renown this Noble* Garter; *wear it as the Symbol of the most illustrious* Order, *never to be forgotten or laid aside: That thereby thou mayst be admonished to be courageous, and having undertaken a just War, into which only thou shalt be engaged, thou mayest stand firm, valiantly fight, and successfully conquer.*

The Princely *Garter* being in manner aforesaid buckled on, and the words of Signification pronounced, the *Elect-Knight* is brought before the *Soveraign*, who puts about his Neck the *George*, pendant at a Skie coloured Ribband; at which part of the Ceremony, the Admonition used at the adorning of an *Installed Knight* with the Collar of the Order (changing only the word Collar for Ribband) is pronounced; but were thus framed for the before mentioned occasion, of the present *Soveraign*'s Investiture with the *George* and *Ribband.*

i *Ibid.*

[i] *Wear this* Ribband *about thy Neck, adorned with the Image of the blessed Martyr and Soldier of Christ St.* George; *by whose imitation provoked, thou mayest so overpass both prosperous and adverse encounters, that having stoutly vanquished thy Enemies, both of Body and Soul, thou mayest not only receive the praise of this transient Combat, but be crowned with the Palm of eternal Victory.*

In further progress upon this Ceremony, we shall note, that so great a respect hath been given to *Foreign Princes* who receive the honor here, that the *Soveraign* most usually performs the Investiture himself: For so when *Philip* King of *Castile* received a personal Investiture, in the *Chapter-house* at *Windesor*, it was from the [k] *Soveraign*'s own hands, for he took the *Garter* from the King of Arms, put it about the Kings Leg, and Prince *Henry* fastned the Buckle.

k *Lib.N.p.*184.

Queen [l] *Elizabeth* her self buckled the *Garter* about the Leg of *John Casimire*, Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*; and hung about his Neck a Gold Chain with the

l *Lib.C.p.*79.

the *George* at it. The like honor did [m] King *James* to the Duke of *Holstein* in the third year of his Reign.

[m] *Ib.p.*159.

And now and then (though seldom) out of speeial graee and favour hath the *Soveraign* done this honor to a *Knight-Subject*: though when Queen *Eliz.* was pleased to adorn the Lord *Burghley* with the *Garter*, the *Annals* note it to be done as it were [n] *by the by*; and *Henry* Earl of *Sussex*, *an.* 31. *Eliz.* received these *Ensigns* of the *Order* from the [o] *Soveraign* her self. The like favour did she to the [p] Earl of *Shrewsbury* in the 34. year of her Reign. So also did [q] King *James* invest *Henry* Earl of *Northampton*, with the prineipal Ensigns of the *Order*; as a person worthy so great an honor: and lastly, his [r] late *Majesty* of blessed memory, plaeed both the *Garter* and *George* upon the present *Soveraign*, the 21. of *May* 1638. with his own hands.

[n] *Ib. 66.*
[o] *Ib.p.*113.
[p] *Ib.p.*121.
[q] *Ib.p.*159.
[r] *R.p.*142. & 143. *vide porro Palmer's Large Journ.p.*8.

Sometimes the *Soveraign* hath performed but part of the Investiture, and commanded the senior *Knight* to do the rest. Thus when the Earl of *Devonshire*, *an.* 13. *H.* 8. received these Ensigns, it was on this manner; first the *Soveraign* reached out the *Garter* to the Marquess *Dorset*, and commanded him to buckle it about his left Leg, which as he was doing, the Duke of *Norfolk* gave him his assistance; then the [s] Soveraign put on the *Gold Chain*, with the Image of Saint *George* at it. At the Investiture of *Christian* Duke of *Brunswick*, *an.* 22. *Jac. R.* the [t] *Soveraign* put about his neck the Blue Ribband, whereat hung the Effigies of St. *George*; and the Earls (who introduced him to the Soveraign's presence) buckled on the *Garter*. The like did the [u] late *Soveraign* to *William* Earl of *Northampton*, *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. at which time the Earl of *Penbroke* fastned the *Garter* about his left Leg; and *an.* 9. *Car.* 1. the Earls of *Danby* and *Moreton* were both of them invested with the *George* by the [w] *Soveraign* himself, while the Earl of *Penbroke* invested the former, and the Earl of *Carlisle* the latter, with the *Garter*.

[s] *Lib.N.p.*211.
[t] *Lib.R.p.*23.
[u] *Ibid.p.*45.
[w] *Ib.p.*89.

So also (since the *Soveraign*'s happy return) in the eases of the Prince of *Denmark*, the Dukes of *Monmouth*, *Cambridge*, and *Albemarle*, was the Investiture begun with the *George*.

And thus we see, that *an.* 22. *Jac. Reg.* the order of *Investiture* began to be inverted, the *George* and *Ribband* being then first put on, and the *Garter* last: Nevertheless, the *Garter*, as it was the first, so the prineipal and most worthy *Ensign* of the *Order*, and therefore in the practiee of all former times, thought fit to have the preeedenee of Investiture given it; and was so observed at the Investiture of the present Soveraign.

Lastly, the *Investiture* with these two *Ensigns*, hath for the most part been heretofore performed by the two *senior Knights*, and at the eommand of the Soveraign, but always in his presence, the *Chapter* sitting; but if absent, then by his *Lieutenant*: and so it hapned *an.* 31. *Eliz.* for the Lord *Buckhurst* being Elected at *Whitehall*, upon the 24. of *April* that year, and eoming to Court (having no knowledge of his Election) after the *Soveraign* was risen (yet leaving the *Chapter* sitting) her [x] *Lieutenant* invested him both with the *Garter* and *George*.

[x] *Lib.C.p.*113.

The Solemnity of Investiture being compleated, the *Elect-Knight* recollecting himself with all befitting humility, [y] renders thanks to the *Soveraign* for these Tokens and Ensigns of Honor, and after, with due respects, salutes the *Knights-Companions*, [z] who thereupon re-salute the *Elect-Knight*, and joyfully receive him into their Fellowship and Society.

[y] *Lib.N.p.*211.
[z] *Palmer's large Journal. p.*9.

In ease two or more *Elect-Knights* receive the honor of this Investiture at one time, then so soon as the senior hath been Invested, and his humble thanks presented, he * passeth down towards the Chapter-house door, and there stands, while the next junior is in like manner invested; which Ceremony being ended, he also goes down, and stands with the other *Elect-Knight*; and so do the rest in order (if there be more present, that attend their Investiture) until the *Chapter* break up.

* *Ex Collect. A.V.W.*

SECT.

SECT. IV.

Of sending the Garter *and* George *to an* Elect-Knight Subject.

WHere a *Knight-Subject* at the time of his Election is remote from Court, or beyond Sea, and the *Soveraign* determines to send him the two principal *Ensigns* of the *Order*, the charge of this employment doth of right belong to * *Garter*; and herein there are divers Precedents. Sir *Thomas Wriothesley Garter*, was sent to the [a] Earls of *Arundel* and *Westmerland*, with the *Garter* and *George*, *an.* 17. *H.* 8. So also was Sir *Gilbert Dethick Garter*, sent upon the like employment, to the Earl of [b] *Westmerland an.* 6. *Ed.* 6. to the Earl of [c] *Sussex*, *an.* 1. & 2. *Ph.* & *M.* to the Lord [d] *Grey* of *Wilton*, *an.* 3. & 4. *Ph.* & *M.* to the [e] Earl of *Shrewsbury*, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* to the Earl of [f] *Bedford*, *an.* 6. *Eliz.* to the Earl of [g] *Warwick*, *an.* 5. *Eliz.* (being then at *Newhaven* in *France*) to *William* * Earl of *Worcester an.* 12. *Eliz.* to ‖ *William* Lord *Cobham an.* 26. *Eliz.* and to the Lord *Scroop* the same year who then was at *Carlisle* in *Cumberland*.

This Investiture of the Lord *Scroop*, was the [i] last action in this kind, which Sir *Gilbert Dethick* performed; who had served four *Soveraigns* of this *Order*, an Officer of *Arms*, the space of [k] 65. years, whereof he had been [l] *Garter* 38. years, and having most worthily and faithfully accomplished his service, upon his return to *London* from *Carlisle* aforesaid, he languished by the space of ten weeks or thereabouts, and dyed the [m] 3. day of *October*, *an. Dom.* 1584. in the 81. year of his age.

The *Letters* heretofore sent from the *Soveraign* along with these *Ensigns* of the *Order* to the *Elect-Knights*, have for the most part been drawn after the form of those certifying Election; only instead of the last Clause, which therein requires the *Elect Knights* repair to the *Soveraign*: for receiving the *Garter* and *George* from him, in these was an allowance to [n] use them, as to their Election appertain.

And these were the two general forms of *Letters*, sent upon the foresaid occasions: all further difference lay, not in the body, but direction of the *Letters*, which were evermore worded according to the quality of the person to whom sent: as to a Knight Batchellor, the direction was, *To our trusty and wellbeloved, &c.* to a Baron, *Right trusty and wellbeloved, &c.* to an Earl, *Right trusty and right wellbeloved Cousin, &c.* and to a Duke, *Right trusty, and right entirely beloved Cousin, &c.*

But we observe the forms of those [o] *Letters*, sent upon like occasion to *Knights-Subjects*, when the present *Soveraign* was beyond the Seas, were pen'd after another manner, and (the necessity of those times requiring) contained some other particulars, namely (besides a large preamble relative to the Election of Knights, eminent for noble birth and heroick virtue) additional clauses of (1.) Power to wear the *Star* of Silver about St. *George*'s Cross: (2.) The great *Collar* of the Order: And (3.) to stile themselves *Knights* and *Companions* of the *Order* of the *Garter*, in as ample manner as if they had been Installed at *Windesor*; with an assurance of receiving the whole Habit there, when the *Soveraign* was restored to the possession thereof.

And it appears from some of these [p] Letters, that by reason Sir *Edward Walker Garter* was otherwise employed in the *Soveraign*'s service, when they were sent, therefore the *Soveraign* made choice of other persons to carry both the said *Letters* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*, nevertheless [q] reserving unto him as *Garter*, the rights of his *Office*.

Howbeit, the said Sir *Edward* looking on the disposing this employment to others, as an invasion upon the rights of his Office, and having a just regard to the preservation of the interest of his Successors, no less than his own; humbly petitioned the present *Soveraign* for redress, and obtained his gracious Reference thereupon to several *Knights-Companions* of the *Order*, to examine the matter,

* *Constitut. ad Official Ordinatinentes c.* 4

a *Ex ver. MS. penes Jo. Vincent gen. p.* 159.

b, c, d, e, f, g *Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

h *Ibid p.* 96.

* ‖ *Ex Collect. E W.G.*

i, k, l, m *Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

n *Appendix. Num.* XIX.

o *Appendix. Num.* XX.

p *To the Duke of Ormond Marq. of Montrose, &c.*

q *Letters to Duke Hamilton. Marq. of Newcastle. &c.*

matter, and make report both what they found, and what they thought fit to be done therein; upon whose Report the *Soveraign* did him full right, by his gracious Declaration. All which Proceedings we think necessary to insert here, for cleering and setling the interest of so ancient an Office.

To his sacred Majesty, Soveraign of the most Noble Order of the Garter. [Ex Collect. E.W.G.

The most humble Petition of Sir Edward Walker *Knight*, Garter, *Principal King of Arms, and Officer of the said Order.*

In all humility representing,

THat by the especial favour of his late Majesty your Royal Father, of ever glorious and blessed memory, he was created Garter *Principal King of Arms, and was thereby to enjoy all immunities and advantages thereunto belonging, as amply as any of his Predecessors.*

That since your Majesties accession to the Crown, he hath by right continued in the said Office, it being granted during life by Letters-Patent.

Notwithstanding which, there have lately some disputes arisen about the execution of that part of his Office, wherein he conceives himself most concerned, and for which his Office was at first erected.

He therefore, in all humility, appeals to your Majesty, as Soveraign *of the said* Order, *and Protector of the Officers thereof, for the vindication of his just rights, which were never questioned, until this time of general Invasion, hoping clearly to make it appear.*

First, when any Foreign Prince is chosen, that the Ensigns *of the* Order *are sent and delivered him by an Ambassador, and* Garter *joined with him in the presenting thereof.*

Secondly, that until this time of Rebellion (wherein your Majesty cannot formally either Elect, or Install any Subject) the Garter *hath rarely been sent to any of them, but according to the Statutes was always delivered them in the Chapterhouse, Garter, and the rest of the Officers of the Order assisting.*

To prove the first, he refers himself to the Statutes, and to the constant practice; As for example, the Garter *was delivered by the Earl of* Arundel, *and* Garter *King of Arms, to* Philip *the second King of* Spain, *in the time of Queen* Mary. *By the Lord* Spencer, *and Sir* William Dethick Garter, *in joint Commission with him, to the Duke of* Wertemberg, *in the first year of King* James. *By the Lord* Carleton, *and Sir* William Seagar, *to* Maurice *Prince of* Orange. *By Mr.* Peter Young *Gentleman Usher, and Mr.* Henry St. George, *Richmond Herald, Deputy to Sir* William Scagar Garter, *to the King of* Sweden, *by whom they were both Knighted: and, as he remembers by Sir* William Boswell, *and Mr.* Philpot *Deputy to Sir* John Burrough Garter, *to the now Prince of* Orange, *from all which,* Garter *and his Deputies received large and honorary rewards.*

To the second, by the Statutes, no Knight chosen or elect shall be installed by Attorney, except he be a Stranger, or busied without the Realm, for the affairs of the Soveraign; *nor receive the* Garter, *but in Chapter, so that the sending of the* Garter *to any Subject, rarely happens. The only example he remembers, is, of that sent by* Garter *to the Lord* Scroop *President of the North, in Queen* Elizabeth's *time. As for the other alledged of that sent to the Earl of* Holland, *into* France, *it is subsequent in time, and was only the delivery of the* Garter, *and no compleating of the* Order, *and may (if it were so) for ought appears to the contrary, have been done by* Garter's *consent. Besides, he is in the affirmative, and so to be believed touching the rights of his own Office and Profession, before others that understand them not.*

By all which he hopes it is evident, That Garter *is the proper Officer to be sent with an Ambassador, to present the* Order *to a* Foreign Prince, *and that your Majesty sends not Embassadors, to your own Subjects. So then it follows, when*

when any such cases happen (as of late have done) that Garter *only, or his Deputies, and none other, ought of right to be employed therein.*

Wherefore, not to mention at large, how that your Majesty hath by your Royal Letters, with dispensation, fully invested eight most noble and eminent persons with the Order, and all the rights and honorary advantages thereof, and his preparing the Letters, and setling the manner and form, without any notice taken of him for doing thereof as yet, and that a great advantage hath been made by another, by performing that, which he hopes fully to evidence is the right of his Office.

He doth therefore in all humility appeal unto your Majesty, Soveraign *of the said most Noble* Order, *beseeching that he may be heard, to make the particulars appear, either before your Majesty alone, or attended by as many of the* Companions *of the* Order, *Peers and Council, as your Majesty shall please to call to that purpose, or by any other way that shall seem best to your Majesty: And that he who hath disputed it may be present, and then if it shall appear that the right is his, that he may have your Majesty's Declaration to fortifie it, with direction, that the same be entred in the* Register Book *of the said* Order, *that so the Precedents that have been of late made, may not for the future be brought in example against him, or his Successors, to the prejudice of his right, and the loss of the greatest honor and advantage of his Office. The which will more reflect on him than any that have held that Office formerly. He having had the extraordinary happiness to enjoy more of his Soveraign's favours and employments, than any of his Predecessors.*

And (as in duty bound) he shall ever pray, &c.

At the Court at Breda *the* 21. *of* April 1650.

His Majesty is graciously pleased to refer the consideration of this Petition, to the most honorable Lords, the Dukes of Buckingham *and* Hamilton, *and the Marquess of* Newcastle, *Companions of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *to examine the Allegations of this Petition, and such other proofs as the Petitioner shall produce, for the justifying of his right; and thereupon to make report unto his Majesty what they find, and think fit to be done therein.*

Rob. Long.

Breda 27. *May* 1650.

WE George *Duke of* Buckingham, William *Duke of* Hamilton, *and* William *Marquess of* Newcastle, *Knights of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *having read and considered the within written Petition, do find the Allegations therein mentioned to agree with the Statutes and ancient practice of the said* Order. *And that* Garter *King of Arms, and his Deputies, ought to bear all Letters-Patents, appertaining to the Brethren of the said* Order, *and all Elections to the Knights-Elect. And we do therefore make this Report to your Majesty, to the end you may be pleased to maintain the Petitioner in his just rights. And that no examples lately made may be brought in Precedent against him, or his Successors in the said Office.*

G. Buckingham.
Hamilton.
W. New-Castle.

His

His Majesties Declaration of the Rights of Garter *King of Arms to Sir* Edward Walker.

Charles R.

CHARLES *the Second of that name, by the Grace of God, King of* England, Scotland, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith, &c. And* Soveraign *of the most Noble* Order *of Saint* George, *called the* Garter. *To all and singular the Princes and Peers, Knights and Companions of the said most Noble* Order, Greeting. Whereas *we have for the continuation and honor of the said most Noble* Order (*in this time of general Rebellion in our Dominions*) *by our power, as* Soveraign *of the said* Order, *lately Elected into the Fellowship thereof, divers eminent persons, whom for their great Nobility, Courage, and Fidelity, we have esteemed worthy of the same; and have by our necessary dispensations, fully invested them with all the honorary priviledges and advantages thereof, and have employed divers of our Servants, and others unto them, with Letters missive declaring the same. And whereas we have been by the humble Petition of our trusty and well beloved Servant, Sir* Edward Walker *Knight,* Garter, *principal King of Arms, and Officer of the said* Order, *informed, That by the Statutes and ancient practise of the Order, when any of our Predecessors, have Elected any Foreign Prince thereinto, that the* Ensigns *thereof were always sent and delivered by an Ambassador, and* Garter *King of Arms joined with him in the doing thereof. And that when any of our Subjects was Elected, the* Garter *was delivered him in the Chapter-house, or (being employed abroad) was sent unto him by* Garter *King of Arms Officer of the said* Order. *All which we having taken into our consideration, were graciously pleased for the preservation of the rights of the Officers of the said* Order, *to refer the examination of the particulars unto our right trusty and entirely beloved Cosens and Counsellors,* George *Duke of* Buckingham, William *Duke of* Hamilton, *and* William *Marquess of* New-Castle, Knights *and* Companions *of the said most Noble* Order, *who upon due examination of the particulars, have made their Report, That they find all the allegations above-mentioned, to agree with the Statutes and ancient practice of the said* Order. *And that Garter, King of Arms, and his Deputies, ought to bear all Letters Patents appertaining to the Brethren of the said* Order, *and all Elections to the Knights Elect; Wherefore, to the end that the rights and priviledges of the* Officers *of the said* Order *may be fully preserved and established,* We *are graciously pleased (by the advice of the said most Noble* Companions) *hereby to declare, that although we have (in regard of the other employments of the said Sir* Edward Walker Garter, *in our service) sent the said declaratory Letters with the* Garter, *by others, unto the persons Elect, yet that the doing thereof shall not be brought in example against him the said Sir* Edward Walker Garter, *or his Successors in the said Office, to the prejudice of his* right, We *being fully satisfied, that it is his right, and properly belongs unto his Office, as* Garter, *King of Arms to perform the same. And we do therefore hereby command, that an Entry be made hereof, in the Book of the said most Noble* Order, *by the* Register *thereof, assoon as conveniently it may be done, To the end it may appear, we have preserved the said* Garter *King of Arms, and his Successors in their just rights, and that he hath not failed to prove the same. Given at the Castle at* Breda *this* 28. *day of* May, *in the second year of our Reign.* Anno Domini 1650.

t Ex cod. Collect.

By his Majesties command

Rob. Long.

We shall further add, that together with the *Letters* signifying an Election and the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, it was anciently in use, to send the *Book* of *Statutes* under the Common Seal of the *Order*, no less to a *Knight-Subject*, than (in like case) to a *Stranger*; and to the same end, *viz.* that he might peruse and advise thereupon, whether he would accept of the Election or not: for so it appears by the [u] Letters signifying Election sent to Sir *John Fastolf*, *an.* 4. *H.* 6.

u *Appendix. Num.* XXI.

Within a few days after his Highness Prince *Rupert* was Elected into this Order (being then in *Holland*) a [w] *Commission* of *Legation* was prepared to be sent thither with the *Garter* and *George* by Sir *John Burrough Garter*, to perform the Investiture with them: but Sir *John* [x] falling sick and dying, prevented the designed Ceremony. Nevertheless, some while after the Prince had been in *England*, the then *Soveraign* thought fit to command Sir [y] *James Palmer* Chancellor of the Order to attend his Highness, to declare the reasons, why the said *Commission* was not sent and executed, as was designed, as also to deliver him the Commission it self; to the intent (being prevented of receiving his Installation at *Windsor*, because that Castle continued in the possession of the Rebels) it might remain with him as a memorial of this *Soveraign*'s Princely favour, and respect to his quality and merits, as also for a further evidence of his admittance into this Noble *Order*, since there was no other memorial thereof, but the minutes of his Election and this Commission.

w *Palmer's large Journal p.* 45
x *Ibid. p* 48. *&* 53.
y § *Pag.* 48.
z ℨ

On [z] Monday therefore the 14. of *Jan.* 1644. the said Chancellor accompanied with Dr. *Chr. Wren* Register, and Sir *Edward Walker*, then newly made *Garter*, attended the Prince at his Lodgings in *Oxford*, who having notice of their coming, received them with all obliging civility: and after a little pause, the Chancellor made known to his Highness the *Soveraign*'s Commands in the following Speech.

* *Ibid. p* 49.

* *May it please your Highness,*

THE *Kings of* England Soveraigns *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *ever since that honorable Foundation, have thought fit (not only for the reward of eminent services done by their own Subjects, but also for incouragements to noble acts of Chivalry and virtue, and partly for further augmentation and extention of the renown and honor of that most Noble Society) have made it so estimable amongst all the Foreign Princes of Christendom, that they have not thought their fames sufficiently advanced, till they have been taken notice of by this Princely Society, and Elected into this most Noble* Order *of the* Garter. *Which Election hath been so welcomed, even to the* Emperors *and* Kings *of highest degree of Renown in* Europe, *that no tye of allyance, amity, or league hath proved a stronger bond of affection between this and Foreign Crowns, than that of the* Companionry *of the most* Noble Order *of the* Garter; *in which nine Christian* Emperors, *fifty five crowned* Kings, *and four hundred* Princes *and* Peers, *having taken the Oath of homage and fealty to the King of* England, *as their* Soveraign *in the said most Noble* Order, *have already had their Names and glorious Acts registred in the Records thereof.*

According to which Example of his Majesties Progenitors of famous memory, his Majesty King Charles *my Master* Soveraign *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *died at a Chapter held at his City of* York, *the* 20. *of* April *in the* 18. *year of his Reign (when though many Stalls remained vacant) yet did think fit then to elect but two Knights only; namely, Prince* James *Duke of* York *his Son, and your* Highness *his Nephew; whom his Majesty thought worthiest to make choice of, not only for your Princely descent of Blood, but for his own particular interest in that noble consanguinity (as being the Son of his only beloved Sister the virtuous Queen of* Bohemia) *and for many eminent virtues besides (as well heroical as moral) inherent in your person.*

And that his Majesties affection to you might be the more emphatically expressed, he elected your Highness *a* Companion *of the* Order *in the company of*

of his own Son, both to manifest thereby the intimatenes of affection to your Highnes, *as well as to shew Prince* James *his tender years, a glorious pattern for his Princely imitation of valour and martial Atchievements; in which choice, his Majesty did not prove himself a King of Grace and Goodnes only, but a King and a Prophet also; as if he could by his foreseeing judgment divine, how happy an instrument of valour and safety you would after prove, to his Crown and dignity, in their greatest distresses. In the conduct of whose Armies, your* Highnes *hath hitherto been so prosperous and successful, that it will be my duty to truth, as well as to the propriety of my Office, to give a timely recordation of each particular to the Register of the* Order, *that he may eternize the memory of your noble Acts, to remain in the Records of the* Order, *that posterity may know as well as we find, what happy assistance your Princely Conduct (of his Majesties Armies) hath brought to his Kingdoms and Dominions.*

Sir, the Reasons and Motives of this your Election being so many, it behoves me now to inform your Highnes, *the reasons why this Commission hath not been sooner delivered unto your hand; and those are, that immediately upon your Election at* York, *his Majesty commanded me to draw up a Commission of legation to Sir* John Burrough *Knight (then principal King of Arms and* Garter) *to bring the* Ensigns *of the* Order, *together with the notice of your Election, unto your* Highnes *then in the* Low Countries, *and to perform the same with all the Solemnities thereunto belonging. Another Commission also under the Broad Seal of* England *was directed to the right Honorable the Earl of* Arundel *and* Surrey, *Earl Marshal of* England; *and to the Lord* Goring *his Majesties Embassador extraordinary with the States of the United Provinces; to give your* Highnes *the honor of* Knighthood, *a Ceremony always by the Statutes of the said* Order *necessarily to be performed to any Elected* Knight, *before he can be admitted to be a* Companion, *and receive the* Ensigns *of the* Order *of the* Garter. *But the said King of Arms then falling sick shortly after dyed, and your* Highnes *suddainly coming in person into* England, *that Ceremony was prevented by those casualties, and his Majesty at* Nottingham *himself performed that Office, in delivering both the* Garter *and* George *unto your* Highnes; *since which time your continual employments in his Majesties Wars, and your absence thereby necessarily inforced from* Oxford *(where the Commission and Seals of the Order remained) the delivery thereof was necessarily delayed till this present; when his Majesties express command to me, and to those Gentlemen Officers of the most Honorable* Order, *is to deliver it now unto your* Highnes *hands, considering the place of your Instalment at the Castle of* Windesor *is necessarily prevented (by reason of the possession thereof by the Rebels) and no other memory, but your Election and this Commission remains upon Record. But his Soveraign Majesty is so desirous to invest you and the Prince his Son, in the full priviledges of the said* Order *and Society, that assoon as a competent number of* Knights *can be assembled to make a Chapter, his Majesty determines to consult of a course how the Instalment at* Windesor *may (if possibly it can) be dispensed with, that rather than you should be deprived longer of the full enjoyment of all rights of* Installation, *his Majesty is fully determined to make ordinary rules of Ceremony and Order, to give place to extraordinary Examples of merit and fidelity, already so amply performed by your* Highnes *to his Crown and dignity, which is the sum of what his Majesty hath commanded me to present unto your* Highnes, *which he desires you to take in good part till the rest can be performed.*

At the ending of this Speech, Sir **James Palmer* presented the Commission to the *Prince*, who gave his *Majesty* many humble thanks for this gracious Message, and acknowledged his *Majesties* favours far beyond his desert; but promised he would study to be more worthy by his actions, than in return of words, with many thanks to the *Chancellor* and the other *Officers* of the *Order* for their pains: whereupon they took their leave, and the *Chancellor* went immediately to his *Majesty*, and rendered him an account of this Employment.

* *Ibid. p. 55.*

SECT. V.

The Manner *of a* Knight's Investiture.

IN ancient time it was part of the Ceremony, belonging to the *Investiture* with the *Garter*, of an *Elect-Knight* (whether a Stranger or Knight Subject) to give him an Oath, which we find called, *The Oath in such cases accustomed to be taken*, and was to this effect, that the Knight [a] *should well and faithfully keep and observe, so far as God should enable him, all that was contained in the Statutes of the Order.* But we find not of late, that the taking such an Oath, at performing this Ceremony hath been imposed upon any but Foreign Princes, of which anon.

a *Appendix. Num.* XXI.

It is also observable that *an.* 4. *H.* 6. a particular [b] *Commission* issued to the Earls of *Warwick*, *Salisbury*, and *Suffolk*, with power to any two or one of them, to receive this *Oath* from Sir *John Fastolf*, upon his Investiture: And this was besides the Oath, which his Proctor was afterwards to take at Installation, as is manifest out of the Letters of Procuration, whereby the said Sir *John Fastolf* gave to his Procter license to take on his behalf, [c] *such Oath as should be required at the time of his Installation.*

b *Appendix. Num.* XXII.

c *Regist. Chartac. fol.* 14. *b.*

As to the Ceremony and manner of Investing a *Knight-Elect* with the *Garter* and *George*, albeit we have discourst thereof before, we nevertheless think it necessary to subjoin two or three considerable Instances as most proper to this place.

When [a] *Philip* Prince of *Spain*, *an.* 1. *Mariæ*, had these *Ensigns* of the *Order* sent him, the *Soveraign* joined *Garter* King of Arms, with the Earl of *Arundel* to perform the *Investiture*, who upon notice of his arrival on the Coast of *England*, set forward on their journey to *Southampton*, where on [b] *Friday* the 20. of *July*, they took Water, and meeting the *Prince* before he landed, entred his Barge, [c] and gave him notice of his *Election* in a short speech, which being ended, Garter having the *Garter* in his hand, [d] kissed it, and so presented it to the Earl, who forthwith fastned it about the *Princes* Leg: in like manner Garter presented the Earl with the *George* hanging at a Chain of Gold, who put it also about the Princes neck.

a, b *MS p.* 3.

c, d, e, f *Ib. p.* 4.

The Ceremony of *Investiture* being thus performed, the *Prince* came on shore at *Southampton*, and on the uppermost stair there were ready attending his landing, the [e] Marquess of *Winchester*, Lord high Treasurer of *England*, with divers other Lords; the *Prince* gave the [f] Lord *Williams* his White Staff, and made him Lord Chamberlain of his Houshold; and Sir *Anthony Brown* Master of his Horse, presented him from the *Queen* a Horse with a Footcloth of Crimson Velvet, richly embroidered with Gold and Pearls, having the Bridle and all other Furniture suitable, whereon he rode to the Cathedral, and after Prayers to the Lodgings prepared for him.

Touching *Garter's* Investiture of the Earl of *Warwick*, at *Newhaven* in *France*, the first of *May*, *an.* 5. *Eliz.* it was as followeth,

First *Garter* repairing to the Earls Lodgings, [d] put on his Mantle in the next Chamber to the Earls, and thence proceeded into the Earls Chamber, where having made three Reverences, he buckled the *Garter* about his left leg, and next put on the *George* and *Ribband* about his neck; reading to the Earl the words of *Signification*, appointed to be pronounced at the Investiture; which done, *Garter* retired into the Room, where he had put on his Mantle and there disrobed himself, and so the Ceremony ended.

d, e *MS. fol. penes W. le N. Cl. f.* 10. *b.*

And it seems to have been a custom about these times, for the Nobility and others, the Allyes or Friends to the *Elect-Knight*, to send unto him by *Garter* several *Garters* and *Georges*, as tokens of congratulation for the Honor he was at

at this time to receive; which so soon as the *Investiture* was finished, and *Garter* returned from putting off his Robe, he delivered unto him, with the particular services and respects of those his Friends who had so bestowed them; for such we find to have been sent by *Garter*, and presented to the aforesaid [e] Earl of *Warwick* at *New-haven*, and to the [f] Lord *Scroop* at *Carlisle*, *an.* 26. *Eliz.*

[f] *Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

At *Garter*'s return to Court, he is obliged to deliver an account to the *Soveraign* how he hath discharged his employment, and therewith by special directions from the *Elect-Knight*, also presents the [g] highest thanks he can express, as well to the *Soveraign* as the rest of the *Knights-Companions*, for honoring him with a reception into so illustrious an *Order*.

[g] *Lib. C. p. 95.*

We shall close this *Section*, with a brief account of the *Investiture* of his Highness the late Duke of *Gloucester* at the *Hague*, on *Easter-day* in the morning, being the [h] 14. day of *April* 1653. in reference to which Ceremony there was provided,

[h] *Lib. Carolin. p. 16.*

1. [i] A *Garter* with the Motto, to be tyed about his left Leg.
2. A *George* in a *Ribband*, to put about his Neck.
3. An embroidered *Cross* of St. *George* within a *Garter* and *Star*, to be sowed on the left shoulder of the Dukes Cloak.
4. A Velvet *Cushion*, whereon the *Ensigns* and *Ornaments* of the *Order*, as also the *Letter* signifying his Election, were to be laid.

[i] [k] *Collect. E. W. G.*

Moreover, for the honor of the *Order*, and his said Highness, Sir *Edward Walker Garter*, humbly proposed as followeth.

[k] That he might be assisted by two or four Knights, in performing his duty.

That his *Highness* the Duke, might receive the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, in the Presence Chamber of the *Princess Royal*, or in his own, accompanied with the Queen of *Bohemia*, her *Highness Royal*, and some other persons of Honor and Quality.

That his *Highness* having placed himself under the State, *Garter* should take the Cushion upon his Arms, on which were to be laid all the particular Ornaments above mentioned; and being assisted with the Knights, and a passage left for him to make his three obeysances, he should proceed up towards the *Duke*, and lay the Cushion with the Ornaments on a Stool set neer his *Highness* for that purpose.

That he should signifie to his *Highness*, in few words, the cause of his coming; and then deliver into his hand the *Soveraign*'s *Letter*.

That his *Highness* having received it, should break it open, and deliver it back to *Garter* to read, which he having done should return it to his *Highness*.

That after this, he should proceed to the Investiture of his *Highness* with the *Ensigns* of the *Order*.

Which having finished, briefly to represent unto his *Highness*, in a Speech somewhat of the quality and splendor of the *Order*.

And lastly, to kiss his *Highness* hand, and attend what he should please to say and so depart.

According to these proposals and in the same order, were all things performed; and the Speeches then made to his *Highness* by Sir *Edw. Walker*, and first that signifying the cause of his coming was as follows.

[l] *May it please your Royal Highness,*

[l] *Ex eod. Collect.*

HIs *sacred Majesty the King your Royal Brother*, Soveraign *of the most Noble ancient and renowned* Order *of Saint* George, *called the* Garter, *hath commanded me Garter Principal King of Arms and Officer of the most Noble* Order, *humbly to attend your* Highness, *and from his Majesty to deliver unto your* Highness *the* Ensigns *of that most Noble* Order, *together with* Letters *of* Dispensation, *for the present investing your* Highness *in all the honorary Ornaments and accidents thereof. And because the Reasons inducing his Majesty to Elect your* Highness, *into this most Noble Society and Fellowship of the* Order, *are best exprest in his Majesties graci-*

ous

ous Letters, *I do humbly preſent them unto your* Highneſs, *that they may be read, and then I ſhall proceed in full obedience to his Majeſties Commands, to Inveſt your* Highneſs *with the* Garter *and* George *therewith ſent.*

Having ſpoken this, he proceeded to the *Inveſtiture*, which being finiſhed, he thus continued his Speech.

Now that your Highneſs *is by his Majeſties Royal Election and Diſpenſation for the preſent Inveſted, and made a* Companion *of this moſt Noble and famous* Order, *I ſhall humbly preſume (according to the obligation of my Office) ſuccinctly to repreſent unto your* Highneſs, *ſomewhat of the antiquity and reaſon of the Inſtitution, what qualifications are requiſite to all perſons Elected, and how in all ages (ſince the Inſtitution) this* Order *hath been highly valued and eſteemed: All which, I believe, your* Highneſs *having lived from your Cradle under the power and barbarous reſtraint of the moſt unparallel'd Rebels and Traytors uſurping in* England, *hath not yet known.*

And firſt, for the Antiquity and Inſtitution of this moſt Noble Order, *your* Highneſs *moſt glorious and victorious Anceſtor King* Edward *the Third (for the honor and encouragement of Martial Actions, and to oblige unto him by the neereſt tyes of Royal favour and ſociety, ſuch perſons of eminent birth, as by valiant and noble acts had highly merited of him) Inſtituted this* Order, *and Elected into the Fellowſhip thereof (with himſelf the* Soveraign*) the number of* 25. *other renowned Knights, by giving them the* Garter, *with this moſt ſignificant and generous Motto,* HONI SOIT QUI MAL Y PENSE, *aſſigning them likewiſe a peculiar and ſtately habit, ordaining them yearly to attend him on the Feaſt of St.* George, *at his Caſtle of* Windeſore *(the ſeat of the Foundation) where he regally entertained them, and framing Statutes which themſelves and their Succeſſors were obliged to obſerve, for the honor of the* Soveraign *and the* Order.

By which Statutes, *in the ſecond place, the proper qualifications are fully declared, which are principally, that every perſon elected into this moſt Noble* Order, *be a Knight without reproach, a Gentleman of Blood and Arms, of three deſcents by Father and Mother, a man of courage, a lover of Juſtice, and of unblemiſh'd fame and honor; who likewiſe at his Inſtallation is by Oath obliged to defend and ſuſtain the honor, quarrels, rights, and dominions of the* Soveraign, *and to endeavour the augmentation of the* Order; *And if any one elected into this moſt Noble* Society *ſhall be either convict of Hereſie, Treaſon, Cowardiſe in flying from the Kings Banner or Standard in the field, or that by prodigality he hath wilfully waſted his Patrimony, he may (if the* Soveraign *and* Companions *pleaſe) be degraded and deprived of the* Order *as unworthy thereof.*

Laſtly, The Inſtitution of this moſt Noble Order *hath been ſo inviolably obſerved, as that the* Soveraign *and* Companions *have never augmented their number, and but very rarely diſpenſed with any of the qualifications, whereby the dignity and ſplendor of the* Order *hath been entirely preſerved. And ſo great a value and high eſteem hath been ſet upon this moſt Noble* Order, *as the greateſt and moſt powerful Monarchs of* Europe *have accounted it an honor to be* Companions *thereof, amongſt whom the Emperor* Sigiſmund, *in the Reign of King* Henry *the Fifth, and that moſt potent and glorious Emperor* Charles *the Fifth, in the Reign of King* Henry *the Eighth, came perſonally into* England *to receive it. And although the number of the* Companions *from the firſt Inſtitution (now full* 303 *years) is with your Highneſs but* 444 *perſons, yet of them there have been* 8 Emperors, *and* 52 Kings *and* Princes *of Foreign Countrys, beſides other moſt illuſtrious and eminent perſons, ſome of them Strangers, the reſt Subjects to the Kings of* England, Soveraigns *of the moſt Noble* Order.

Thus Sir, I have repreſented unto your Highneſs, *the noble ends for which this* Order *was Inſtituted, the qualifications required, and the care in preſerving the dignity and honor thereof: I ſhall now preſume to add, that as your* Highneſs *moſt Royal extraction is equal to any Prince of* Europe, *ſo your moſt*

most towardly and generous inclination gives great assurance, that you will encourage magnanimity and honorable enterprises, appear equal to the most renowned Princes that have been Companions *of this most Noble* Order; *And as your* Highness *bears the Title of the Duke of* Gloucester, *so that you will inherit the great and heroick virtues of that excellent Prince your Predecessor,* Humphry Plantagenet *Protector of the Realm and Person of his Nephew King* Henry *the Sixth, who by his great wisdom, bounty, and justice, obtained the title and appellation of the good Duke.*

I shall conclude with my humble and real Prayers for long life, honor, and all prosperity to your Royal Highness, *the most high, mighty, and excellent Prince,* Henry *Duke of* Gloucester, Knight, *and* Companion *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter.

SECT. VI.

Allowances *and* Rewards *given to* Garter *for his service in this Employment.*

THE *Soveraign* of this most Noble *Order* bears the charges of *Garter*, whensoever, and as often as he is sent to any *Elect Knight Subject*; either with *Letters* to signifie his Election, or the *Garter* and *George*, wherewith to invest him; and this is commonly proportioned, according to the length or shortness of the Journey.

The allowance for that Journey which Sir *Gilbert Dethick Garter* made into the Counties of *Lincolne* and *Cumberland* (by the [n] *Soveraign*'s command given in *Chapter*) first to the Earl of *Rutland*, and next to the Lord *Scroop*, *an.* 26. *Eliz.* appears to have been [o] 20 *l.*

Besides the *Soveraign*'s allowance to *Garter*, he hath been accustomed to receive honorable gratuities and rewards from the *Elect-Knight* himself, after the Investiture performed; and these have usually been proportioned according to the esteem of the honor he receives, and his particular inclinations to *Garter*, and the service done by him. Among whom we find the [p] Earl of *Arundel*, *an.* 17. *H.* 8. gave to *Thomas Wriothesley Garter* 10 *l.* in Angelotts, being then at his Manor of *Dawnley*, and [q] *Ralph* Earl of *Westmerland*, elected at the same time with the said Earl of *Arundel*, then at *Myle-end*, 6 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* But the [r] Earl of *Northumberland*, *an.* 23. *H.* 8. gave *Garter* for the verbal certifying him of his Election 4 *l.* though he went no farther than the Chapter-house door.

Lastly, *an.* 26. *Eliz.* the Earl of *Rutland* honorably rewarded *Garter* at *Newark*; and the Lord *Scroop* gave unto him [s] 30 *l.* in Gold, a Velvet Cloak, and a Gallaway Nag, and to *William Dethick York* Herald, who then went along with *Garter* to *Carlisle* [t] 10 *l.* But since these times, the Knights-Elect have greatly enlarged their Gratuities to Garter, for his service upon this occasion.

n *Lib. C. p.* 96.

o *Appendix. Num.* XXIII.

p } *Ex vet.*
q } *MS. fol. penes Johan. Vincent Gent.* p. 159.

r *Ib. p.* 160.

s } *Ex Collect.*
t } *W. le N. Cl.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

OF

Preparations

FOR THE

Perſonal Inſtallation

OF A KNIGHT.

SECT. I.

That Inſtallation *gives the Title of* Founder.

THE *Inſtallation* or *Inauguration* of a *Knight* of this moſt Noble *Order*, conſiſts in a conjunction of many Ceremonies, and contains the moſt ſolemn part of thoſe, whereby ſo great an honor is conferr'd; indeed that which compleateth all the reſt. And till this great Ceremony be duly and ſolemnly performed, the perſon Elected hath not the honor of being reckoned among the number of *Founders*, but barely paſſes for an *Elect Knight*, and no other. For the expreſs Text is, [a] That in caſe a *Knight Elect* dye before his Inſtallation, *he ſhall not be named one of the Founders*. And the reaſon is there given, [b] foraſmuch as *he hath not had the full poſſeſſion of his ſtate*; and in this point do the other [c] Bodies of the *Statutes* agree. Howbeit aſſoon as the Ceremonies of *Inſtallation* are compleatly finiſhed, the *Knight* is unqueſtionably veſted in full poſſeſſion of all the Honors and Priviledges belonging to a *Founder* of this moſt Noble *Order*.

But to quicken each *Elect Knight*, who is either a Subject to the *Soveraign*, or reſides within his Realm (and conſequently in a more ready capacity of receiving Inſtallation, then one remaining in Foreign parts) to the full attainment of his honor, or otherwiſe to wave what hath been conferr'd on him, by the Act of Election; the compaſs of [h] one year after ſuch his Election, is allowed him by the *Statutes* for Inſtallation (albeit for ſooner ſpeeding thereof, the *Statutes* do as well appoint him to uſe all convenient diligence) otherwiſe *his Election*

a 5 E. 3. Stat. b 2 Art. 19.

c H 5 Stat. Art. 19. H.8. Stat. Art. 20.

h E. 3. Stat. Art. 19. H. 5. Stat. Art. 19. H. 8. Stat. Art. 20.

Election is ordained to be *absolutely* [i] *nul and void.* Nor can any thing hinder, but that the *Soveraign* may then freely proceed to a new Election; unless the [k] *Elect-Knight* send or produce an excuse for such delay, sufficient and fit to be accepted by the *Soveraign*, or his *Deputy*, and the whole *Society*; or that the *Soveraign* himself think fit to defer the Ceremony of Installation for some longer time.

i *Ibid.* k

For which cause, when certain Articles concerning the honor of the *Order* had been prepared by the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant*, and ten *Knights-Companions*, approved by the *Soveraign*, and in a *Chapter* held [l] 24. *April an.* 21. *Jac.R.* ordered to be observed; one of them was for hastning the *Installation*, after a *Knight* had been Elected, nevertheless with this Exception, [m] *unless for some special cause, the Soveraign should think fit to defer the same, until the Eve or day of Saint* George *next following the time of Election.*

l *Lib.R fol.* 14. & 15.
m *Ibid.*

SECT. II.

Of the Time *and* Place *appointed for* Installation.

THE *Feast* of *Installation* hath not been hitherto fixed to any certain time, but always rested in the pleasure of the *Soveraign* to assign a convenient day; which hath been obtained, either upon the suite of the *Knight-Elect*, or some other of the *Knights-Companions*, whose favour and esteem with the *Soveraign* was best able to prevail. Such a one do we find the Lord *Burghley*, [n] *an.* 35. *Eliz.* (partly in regard he had been Lieutenant at St. *Georges Feast* immediately preceding, and partly by reason of his being Lord Treasurer of *England*) who on the behalf of the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland* obtained the 19. of *June* in the foresaid year, to be appointed for the day of their *Installation.*

n *MS. fol. penes G.O.Y. p.* 202.

It sometimes fell out that though the day for Installation was set down, nevertheless, upon some extraordinary occasion intervening, it hath been prorogued to a further and more convenient time for the *Soveraign*'s Affairs: and the most remarkable instance is that, *an.* 3. & 4. *Ph.* & *Mar.* when the [a] Earl of *Sussex*, the Lord *Grey*, and Sir *Robert Rochester*, Knights Elect, had their [b] *Installation* together with St. *George*'s *Feast*, prorogued to the 10. of *May* in the year aforesaid. But [c] many and urgent affairs, relating both to the *King* and *Queen*, hapning about that time, not only the [d] *Grand Feast*, but the Solemnity of their *Installations* were in a *Chapter* held the 3. of the same Month, prorogued to the [e] 5. of *December* following, and on the last day of *October* preceding, were they again prorogued to the first Sunday after *Twelf-day*, in ease the *King* should not return into *England* before the said 5. of *December*. After all this on the 5. of *January* following, the *Grand Feast* was prorogued a fourth time to the 20. of *February* next coming. Nevertheless it was then Ordered, that the Earl of *Sussex* (one of the three Elect Knights) should be forthwith Installed, which was performed on the 8. of the same *January*. And the 6. of *February* following, the Lord *Grey* also obtained an appointment for his Installation, and that was celebrated the 20. of *April* ensuing; but we do not find that Sir *Robert Rochester* ever received that honor.

a *Lib. C.* b *p.* 20.
c d e *Ib. p.* 21.

But though the time of Installation be arbitrary and uncertain, yet hath the place been from the Institution of the *Order*, fixt (as an essential Priviledge) only to the *Soveraign*'s free Chappel of St. *George* in the Castle of *Windesor*; within whose Choire stand erected the *Soveraign*'s and *Knights-Companions Stalls*, and under its sacred Roof their *Banners* and *Atchievements* are set up, as Monuments of their high deservings, and so great honor. For albeit the celebration of the *Grand Feast* of St. *George*, hapned to be withdrawn from *Windesor*, by a

o *Lib C.p.54.* p *Ibid.* Decree past *an.* o *9. Eliz.* nevertheless the p *Feast* of *Installation* was therein excepted, and appointed to be solemnized at that place. And this was again provided for among the before mentioned Orders, *an. Jac. Regis* 21. to wit, q *That after an Election made of a* Knight *of the* Order, *his* Installation *should be performed at* Windesor, *according to the ancient Custom and Statutes of the* Order. q *Lib.R.p.15.*

When therefore the *Soveraign* hath been pleased to prefix a certain day, for Installation, in order to this great Solemnity, several things are necessarily to be prepared; as namely, (1.) a *Commission* to admit and install the *Elect-Knight*, (2.) *Letters* to each of the Commissioners, and the *Elect-Knight*, for their repair to *Windesor*, (3.) *Warrants* for the *Soveraign*'s *Livery*, (4.) a *Bill* or *Warrant* for the removal of *Stalls* and *Atchievements* (all which are to be obtained from the *Soveraign* under his Sign manual by the Chancellor of the *Order*) and (5.) lastly the *Knights* own Preparations; among which his Atchievments are to be got in readiness for setting up, so soon as he is Installed.

SECT. III.

Of Commissions *for* Installation.

IN the first place we are to note, that no *Elect-Knight* can be *Installed* unless by the *Soveraign* of the *Order* himself, or (being present) by such of the *Knights-Companions* whom he shall verbally authorize, or (if absent) by his *Commission* drawn up in writing, and past under the great Seal of the Order, directed either to his *Lieutenant*, or *Knights-Commissioners*.

We have met with but one Instance, where the *Soveraign* hath been pleased to honor a *Knight* by performing the Ceremony of Installation himself, and that was in the case *Philip* King of *Castile* and *Leon an.* 22. *H.* 7. yet it is probable enough that *Sigismond* the Emperor, and anciently some other *Foreign Princes* of eminence and dignity, might receive Installation from other of the *Soveraigns*, though no memorial thereof hath been transmitted to us. As to the Soveraign's verbal appointment, we shall mention it t by and by: But in reference to Installation by *Commission* we shall speak of it here. For it was Ordained by the Statutes of Institution, r *That in case the* Soveraign *should be absent out of the Kingdom at the time of* Installation *of any of the* Knights, *so that he could not personally perform those things his Office obliged him to, it should be lawful for him to constitute as his Deputy in this affair, whomsoever of the* Society *he should think fit, and he to have power and authority in the* Soveraign's name *to perform and execute those things, which it would have been his own part to have done, had he been present.*

t *Chap.* 12. *Sect.* 6.

r *Art.*25. *vide etiam H.* 5. *Stat. Art.*25.

By virtue of this Article the *Soveraign's Deputy* or *Lieutenant* (in his absence) performed the Ceremony before the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, which was usually done at the *Feast* of St. *George* (for the Celebration of which he had another Commission) but in the *Commission* given out for Installation, formerly the *Lieutenant* was first named, and the s *Knights-Companions* appointed for his Assistants at the said Feast, were joined with him in the Commission for Installation, to assist in that Ceremony also; but of later times, the Commission hath pass'd to the u *Lieutenant* alone.

s *Appendix Num.*XXIV.

u *Num.* XXV.

King *Henry* the Eighth enlarged the powers given by the former *Statutes* to a *Deputy, to* w *two or more of the* Knights-Companions, *that should exercise the same by the* Soveraign's *Letters of Commission.* And therefore by the liberty and priviledge of this Article, whensoever after the *Soveraigns* did appoint an Installation, at other times of the year, than at the Feast of St. *George*, they then delegated their authority to such of the *Knights-Companions* as were thought most fit to perform this great Ceremony.

w *H.8.Stat. Art.*28.

And the very next year after making this Statute, we find such a x *Commission* issued

x *Appendix Num.*XXVI.

issued to the Marquess *Dorset*, and Earls of *Devonshire* and *Kent*, to Instal the Lord *Ferrars* of *Chartley*; the substance of which hath been ever since, and is yet retained, though the form hath received some little Variation, as may be seen by two other *Commissions* immediately following in the [y] *Appendix*. [y] *Num.* XXVII & XXVIII.

The particular powers granted by the *Commissions* are these, to accept and admit the *Knight Elect* into the *Order*, to receive his *Oath*, and to *Instal* him; and the general power is, to do and accomplish every thing which belongeth to his due Admittance and full Installation, as to the Statutes and laudable Usages, Rules, and Customs of this *Order* appertaineth.

We shall only add this observation out of the *Commission* given to the [z] Marquess *Dorset* and the Lord *Cobham*, *an.* 5. *E.* 6. for Installation of the Lord *Darcy* (which else is the same verbatim, with former *Commissions*) that in the last clause of general power, the word * *Usage* is put down, instead of the words *Statutes* and *laudable Customs*, which were generally inserted in the more ancient Commissions; perhaps, as restraining the Ceremonies of *Installation*, to such as were in use about that time, (when many Ceremonies accustomably used were forborn) not what the Statutes and laudable Customs of former days, had appointed and practised: Howbeit shortly after, these words were restored to the Commissions of Installation as appears from a || Commission made to the Earl of *Huntingdon*, and Lord *Clynton*, *an.* 2. & 3. *Ph.* & *Mar.* for the Installation of *Anthony Brown* Viscount *Mountague*. [z] *Lib. N. pag.* * 306. || *Appendix Num.* XXIX.

SECT. IV.

Letters *of* Summons.

BEsides the *Commission* impowering the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant*, or *Knights-Commissioners* therein named to Instal the *Elect-Knight*, it hath been usual for the *Soveraign* (upon the Chancellors motion) to issue out *Letters* of *Summons* under his privy Signet (but of late under the Signet of the Order) both to the *Commissioners* for *Installation*, and to the *Elect Knights*. Those to the *Commissioners* are directed severally to each, nominated in the *Commission*: the effect whereof, is to give them notice of the *Installation*, and to require their repair to *Windesor*, against the day therein assigned, to the end the *Elect Knight* might proceed to his Installation; a Precedent whereof is also added in the * *Appendix*. But at the Installation of *Algernon* Earl of *Northumberland*, *an.* 11. *Car.* 1. a || Clause to this purpose is inserted into the *Commission* itself. * *Num.* XXX. || *Numb.* XXVIII.

Those directed to the *Elect Knight*, pass likewise under the *Soveraign*'s Sign manual and Signet of the *Order*, by which he is required to repair to *Windesor Castle*, at a certain day therein prefixt, to proceed to his *Installation*, according to the *Statutes* of the *Order*; and of this kind we have also inserted a Form in the [a] *Appendix*. Where note, that if there be two or more *Knights* appointed to be Installed on the same day, the like *Letter* is sent to each of them, the difference being only in the direction. [a] *Numb.* XXXI.

Besides these *Letters* sent from the *Soveraign*, the *Chancellor* (in case the *Soveraign* afford his presence) in his Circular Letters to the *Knights-Companions* for their repair to the *Feast* of St. *George*, gives them also intimation of the designed *Installation*. And if the said Feast be held either by the *Soveraign* or his *Lieutenant*, he dispatcheth a Letter to the *Prelate* of the *Order*, signifying the *Soveraign*'s commands for his attendance at the day appointed: In both which cases, as also if the Installation be dispatcht by *Commissioners*, he writes his *Letters* to the three inferior *Officers* of the *Order*, purporting the same command. The conveyance of all which appertain to *Garter*, and are left to his care and trust by the [d] *Constitutions* relating to the *Officers* of the *Order*; whose allowance and reward upon these and such like services, shall be noted in its due place. [d] *Cap.* 4.

SECT. V.

Warrant *for the* Livery *of the* Order.

THE third thing to be obtained by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, is the *Soveraign's Warrant*, directed to the *Master* of the Great *Wardrobe* for the time being, to deliver so much Velvet for the *Livery of the Order* as will make the *Knight Elect* a Sureoat and Hood, and as much Sarcenet or Taffety, as will line them.

Of such a *Warrant* there is an ancient Preeedent in *Latin* entred in the *Black Book* of the *Order*, and transferred to the [a] *Appendix*; together with which, we have also inserted another [b] Precedent in *English*, for delivery forth of materials for the *Livery*, to Sir *John Wallop* Knight, [c] Elected *an.* 35. *H.* 8. And in the same form run all the *Warrants* we have seen in the Reigns of [d] Queen *Mary*, and [e] Queen *Elizabeth*.

There is also to be provided a *Book*, wherein King *Henry* the Eighths English *Statutes* are written in a fair and legible hand upon Vellom: having in the beginning the *Soveraign's* Arms impaled, with those of the *Order*, and the proper Arms of the *Knight* for whom the Book is provided, both fairly limned and surrounded with the *Garter*.

This *Book* of *Statutes* is prepared by the *Register* of the *Order*, to whom, for the writing there is an allowance made, which generally in the Reigns of King *Edward* the Sixth, Queen *Mary*, and Queen *Eliz.* was [g] 2 *l.* but at King *James* his coming to the Crown, it was enlarged to [h] 3 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

a *Num* XXXII
b *Num* XXIII.
c *Lib. N. p.* 291.
d § *Ex vet. Cod. MS. in Offic. mag. Gard. Regis pag.* 72. 81. 126. 127. 148. *&c. Videsis lib. Warr. dormant in eod. Offic. pag.* 57. 60. 68. 94. *&c. Et lib. tertium Warr. particul. pag.* 126. 171. 231. 110. 298.
e § *Ex Autogr.*
h § *Jene W. Le N. Cl.*

SECT. VI.

The Removal of Atchievements *and* Plates.

BEsides these particulars before mentioned, there is a *Warrant* or *Scheme* prepared for the *Soveraign* to sign, wherein the order of the *Stalls* in the Choire at *Windesor* is set down, according as he appoints them to stand at the ensuing Installation; by virtue of which, *Garter* is impowered to remove the *Plates* and *Atchievements* of the present *Knights-Companions*, that so way be made for the *Elect Knight*, or *Knights*, and to fix the new *Plates* and *Atchievements* within and over the *Stalls*, in such order as they are ranked in the said *Scheme*.

In reference to this alteration, *Garter* (so soon as the *Soveraign's* pleasure is known touching an Installation) brings to the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, the Names of the present *Knights-Companions*, ranked in the order they then sit in, their Stalls (in which the Stalls void are to be so noted) to the end he may present them to the *Soveraign*; who, upon observing the series wherein they be already placed, may the better consider and determine how to alter and seat both them, and the new *Elect Knights*.

And we find in the vacancy of *Garter's* Offiee, this Employment was put upon *Clarenceux*; for [g] *an.* 27. *Eliz.* the *Soveraign's Warrant* for removal and placing of *Plates* and *Atchievements* was delivered to [h] him five days before the Installation of the Earl of *Rutland*, the Lords *Cobham* and *Scroop*, who thereupon fixed them according to the direction therein given.

This Section may be further enlarged, by adding thereunto an account, upon what ground this Alteration and Removal came to be made, and how it continueth

g § *Ex Collect.*
h § *R. Cook mod. Clarenc. pag.* 8.

continueth now in practice, seeing it was otherwise at the Institution of the Order; wherein we must first have recourse to the *Statutes* of the *Order*, and ancient practice grounded thereupon.

Among the *Statutes*, those of *Institution* did Ordain, [i] *That if any Earl, Baron, or Knight Batchellor should depart this life, he that succeeded in his place, of what condition or state soever, should possess the same Stall, which his Predecessor held before, without changing:* So that it might happen for an *Earl* (or *Duke*) to succeed a *Knight*, and a *Knight* an *Earl* (or *Duke*). And it was thus at first appointed, [k] *That it might be known who were the first* Founders *of this most Noble* Order.

1. The Elect Knight to succeed in to the Stall of his immediate Predecessor.
i *E. 3. Stat. Art. 21. vide etiam H. 5. Stat. Art. 21. H. 8. Stat. Art. 22.*
k *E. 3. Stat. Art. 21.*

Now how punctually this Article of the *Statutes* hath been observed, and what care was generally taken (for a long time after the *Institution* of the *Order*) that none chosen should interrupt or change this course, we shall shew in the following Instances; conceiving it very material to make use of those *Tables*, yet preserved in the *Chapter-house* at *Windesor* (but heretofore in the * *Choire* of St. *George's Chappel* there) wherein are collected the Names of all those *Knights Companions*, who succeeded one another in each Stall until the beginning of King *Henry* the Seventh's Reign, a transcript whereof we have inserted in the *Appendix* next after the *Constitutions belonging to the Officers of the Order.*

* *Heylin's Hist. of St. George, Part. 3. c. 4. sect. 1.*

From which Series of succession, and other Authorities, we shall note how exactly the Law in this point hath been kept and observed, even unto King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign (when it received some alteration in this particular) with reference no less to *Election* than *Installation:* for we find in the *Annals* several *Knights* designed to the Stall of their immediate Predecessor, by the honor only of *Election*, albeit prevented of *Installation* by death, or other accidental occasion, and the *Statutes* do not bind him only, who shall fortune to attain the honor of Installation, but him [o] *who shall come after or succeed the defunct Knight*, which may as well be understood of, and applied to an *Elect*, as *Installed Knight*; though the before mentioned *Tables* take notice only of the latter of these.

o *E. 3. Stat. Art. 21.*

First therefore, we shall instance in foreign *Kings*, among whom we see the King of *Denmark* [*Ericus*] to have received Installation in [q] King *Henry* the Fifth's Reign, not according to his own state and degree (as a King) but into the Stall of that *Knight-Companion* whom he succeeded, namely the Duke of *Bavaria*, it being the eighth on the *Soveraign's* side, whose first Predecessor and Founder was Sir *John Grey* of *Codnore Castle* in the County of *Darby*.

q, r *Lib. N. pag. 58. & 64.*

Besides, *John* [the First] King of *Portugal* (a *Knight-Companion* in [r] King *Henry* the Fifth's time also) was installed in the second Stall on the *Soveraign's* side, which belonged to *Henry* Duke of *Lancaster*, his first Predecessor, and to this King did succeed (in the same Stall) his Son *Edward* King of *Portugal* elected [s] *an.* 13. *H. 6.* to whose Successor [*Humfry* Duke of *Gloucester*] [t] *an.* 34. of the same King, succeeded *Alphonsus* [the Fifth] King of *Portugal*, and to him, as saith the *French Table*, *John* [the Second] King of *Portugal*. But I rather doubt this Table (as to the last King) is mistaken for the second Stall, not on the *Soveraign's* but *Princes* side; because there we find (as may be seen) *George* Duke of *Clarence* seated; and the *Black Book* saith, this King of *Portugal* was Elected, *an.* 22. *E.* 4. [u] in the place of *George* Duke of *Clarence*, whose Stall had been long vacant, and whereinto *an.* 19. *E.* 4. had been Elected (though perhaps not installed) [w] *Henry* King of *Spain*. So the King of *Poland* [*Casimir*] was Elected [x] *an.* 28. *H. 6.* into the sixth Stall on the *Princes* side, at that time void by the death of the Duke of *Conimbero*, whose first Founder was Sir *John Mohun*.

s *Ibid. p. 91.*
t *Ib. p. 114.*
u *Ib. p. 149.*
w *Ib. p. 145. sub finem.*
x *Ib. p. 105.*

Again *Alphonsus* King of *Aragon* and *Naples*, [a] *an.* 38. *H. 6.* was Elected into the Stall of Don *Albro Vasques Dalmadea* Count *d' Averence*, being the seventh on the Soveraign's side, Sir *Hugh Courtney* first possessing it. *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* and *Sicely*, Elected [b] *an.* 3. *E.* 4. was Installed in the third Stall on the *Princes* side, *Ralph* Earl of *Stafford* having been the first installed therein. To this King succeeded *Hercules* Duke of *Ferrara*, [c] Elected, *an.* 19. *E.* 4. and after him *Guido Ubaldus* Duke of *Urbin*, chosen a Companion of this most Noble Society by King *Henry* the Seventh.

a *Ibid. p. 105.*
b *MS. penes Syl. Taylor. fol. 160.*
c *Lib. N. p. 145.*

Lastly,

Lastly, we find that *Alphonsus* King of *Sicely* and *Jerusalem*, being Elected also by King *Henry* the Seventh, received his Installation in the second Stall on the *Princes* side, whose first Predecessor was *Thomas Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*.

In the second place, if we descend to Foreign *Princes*, it may be observed that *William* Duke of *Gueldres*, Elected by King *Richard* the Second, was installed in the sixth Stall on the *Soveraign's* side, which Sir *John Beauchamp*, one of the first Founders sometime possest. That *William* of *Henault* Earl of *Ostervant* (afterwards Earl of *Holland*, *Haynalt*, and *Zeland*) chosen Companion of the *Order* by the said King *Richard*, was Installed in the eleventh Stall on the *Soveraign's* side, whose first Predecessor was Sir *John Chandos*. That *Robert* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, Elected by King *Henry* the Fourth, was installed in the eighth Stall on the *Soveraign's* side.

h *Lib.N.p.77.* That *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy* was Elected by [h] King *Henry* the Fifth (though not Installed) into the Stall of Sir *John Clifford*, which appears to be the eleventh on the *Princes* side. Sir *James Audeley* one of the first Founders, having been first placed therein. And that *an.* 28. *H.* 6. *Henry* Duke of *Brunswick* was Elected into the Duke of *Suffolk's* Stall (*viz.* the seventh on the same side) it having been the Stall of Sir *Thomas Holand* (Earl of *Kent*) one of the first Founders. And lastly, that *Frederick* Duke of *Urbyn* sat in the twelfth Stall on the *Soveraign's* side, he therein succeeding Sir *Walter Blount*, *an.* **14.** *E.* 4. and having Sir *Otho Holand* (Brother to the aforesaid Sir *Tho. Holand*) for his Founder.

Add to these the *Sons* of *Kings*, and we find *Peter* Duke of *Conimbero*, one of the Sons to *John* the First King of *Portugal* (Elected [i] *an.* 5. *H.* 6.) to have been Installed in the sixth Stall on the *Princes* side, therein succeeding the Duke of *Exceter*. So also *Henry* Duke of *Visen* (another of this Kings Sons) Elected *an.* 21. *H.* 6. succeeded Sir *Simon Felbrige* in the lowest Stall on the *Princes* side, whose first Predecessor therein was Sir *Walter Pavely*.

i *Ibid.p* 84.

And as the *Statute* was carefully observed with reference to the *Election* and *Installation* of Foreign *Princes*, so no less in relation to the *Princes* of the *Blood* at home, among whom, let us (in the third place) observe the placing the *Sons* of the *Founder* of this most Noble *Order*, where first we see *Lyonel* Duke of *Clarence* his third Son to have been Installed in the sixth Stall on the *Soveraign's* side, whose immediate Predecessor was Sir *John Beauchamp* one of the first Founders. In like manner *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster* his Fourth Son was Installed in the seventh Stall on the *Princes* side, having Sir *Thomas Holand* for his Predecessor, and a Founder.

Again *Edmund* of *Langley* Duke of *York* his fifth Son was Installed in the seventh Stall on the *Soveraign's* side, Sir *Hugh Courtney*, one of the first *Founders*, being first placed therein. And *Thomas* of *Woodstock* Duke of *Gloucester* his sixth Son sat in the eighth Stall on the *Soveraign's* side, whose first Predecessor was Sir *John Grey*, one of the first Founders likewise.

It may be further observed that the Rule in the *Statute* was strictly pursued in relation also to the Sons of King *Henry* the Fourth, for *Thomas* Duke of *Clarence* his second Son, was seated in the seventh Stall on the *Princes* side. *John* Duke of *Bedford* and Regent of *France* his third Son, was installed in the seventh Stall on the *Soveraign's* side; *viz.* opposite to the Duke of *Clarence* his elder Brother, and in a Stall of higher dignity. And *Humfry* Duke of *Gloucester* his fourth Son, sat in the eleventh Stall on the same side.

To instance next in the *Brothers* and *Sons* of King *Edward* the Fourth; *George* Duke of *Clarence* was placed in the second Stall on the *Princes* side. *Richard* Duke of *Gloucester* (afterwards King of *England* and *Soveraign* of this *Order*) was Installed in the fifth Stall on the *Soveraign's* side, whose first Predecessor was Sir *John Lisle*. And *Richard* Duke of *York*, the said Kings second Son, received his Installation in the fourth Stall on the *Princes* side.

In the last place, if we review the foresaid *Tables*, we shall find, that as the *Knights-Companions* of higher dignity, assumed the Stalls (when they became vacant) though often of the lower sort, so some of the lowest degree among them, have had the honor to be Installed in Seats of superior rank; and this meerly by virtue and observance of the Law in this case provided. Among

Among these *Knights-Companions* we shall first reckon Sir *Philip la Vache*, a *Gascon*, who in the Reign of King *Richard* the Second was first Installed in the *Princes* Stall (that being void by the death of *John* of *Gaunt*, in whose room he hapned to be Elected) though afterwards removed to the third Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side. As also Sir *John Dabrichcourt*, Elected *an.* 1. *H.* 5. who died possest of the said *Princes* Stall in the fifth of the said King.

Next, Sir *Nicholas Sarnesfield*, Standard-Bearer to the *Founder*, who succeeded *Hugh* Earl of *Stafford*, and after him Sir *William Arundel*, immediate Successor to the said Sir *Nicholas*, were both installed in the second Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side. Sir *John Robsart* an *Heynower*, was *an.* 9. *H.* 5. installed in the second Stall on the *Princes* side. Sir *Gilbert Talbot*, and after him Sir *John Grey* were both installed in the third Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side. And in the third Stall on the *Princes* side was *Ralph Stafford* one of the first Founders installed, in which Stall successively sate Sir *Alan Boxhull*, Sir *Bryan Stapleton*, and Sir *William Scroop*.

We could add here divers other instances, how the *Knights-Companions*, both in the case of *Elections* and *Installations*, have succeeded in the Stalls of their immediate Predecessors; but these already inserted may suffice, since they include the chief and most considerable particulars; and sufficiently manifest that the usage and practice down to the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, was pursuant to the ancient Law of the *Order*.

But we are here to note, that notwithstanding each *Knight* was by the before mentioned *Article* appointed to succeed his immediate Predecessor, in the Stall void by his death; yet doth there follow an Exception, as to the Stall belonging to the *Prince* of *Wales*. This Stall is the first on the left hand at the entrance into the *Choire* of St. *George*'s Chappel at *Windesor*, and wherein *Edward* the Black *Prince* was Installed; from this Stall doth the whole range of Stalls on the same side take their denomination, and to which the [k] *Prince* of *Wales* assoon as he is Elected into the *Order*, hath a due Title.

[k] *E.* 3. } *Stat.* *H.* 5. } *Art.* 23. *H.* 8. *Stat.* *Art.* 22.

But though this Stall *de jure* belongs to the *Prince* of *Wales*; nevertheless heretofore when the *Soveraign* had no Heir, then was it (for the present) disposed of (otherwise a defect in the full number of *Knights-Companions* would have ensued) to some other *Knight*, who received the honor of Installation therein.

The first that obtained that honor (besides *Princes* of *Wales*) was *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*, it being conferr'd on him by Decree of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* (*Richard* the Second, having no issue, neither then nor afterwards) and thereupon removed thither, from the seventh Stall on the same side, wherein he had been installed at his first admission into the *Order*.

But the first *Knight-Companion* that hapned to be installed in it, was Sir *Philip la Vache* (a little before remembred) and a very great honor it was, for one of his rank: But it fell to him by the then Law of the *Order*, being elected into the room of the said Duke of *Lancaster*, who dyed possest thereof.

Howbeit shortly after (such was the change of times) King *Henry* the Fourth coming to the Crown, and his eldest Son being [n] created *Prince* of *Wales*, laid then claim to this Stall by virtue of the foresaid Statute, and had it surrendred to him. Nevertheless, that the former possessor might suffer as little diminution in the honor of his Session, as might be, he was removed no lower than to the Stall, which King *Henry* the Fourth lately held when Earl of *Derby*, *viz.* the third on the *Soveraign*'s side, and had now relinquished for the *Soveraign*'s royal Stall.

[n] *Rot. Parl. an.* 1. *H.* 4. *n.* 72.

Upon the death of King *Henry* the Fourth, and removal of King *Henry* the Fifth from the Princes Stall (whereby a vacancy therein ensued) to the *Soveraign*'s Seat: Sir *John Dabrichcourt* (Elected *an.* 1. *H.* 5.) was Installed therein, and he (*an.* 5. of the same King) dying possest thereof (of which a notable testimony remains, by the continuance of his Plate in that Stall to this day) and the *Soveraign* yet unmarried, the Emperor *Sigismond* became the next Successor to Sir *John Dabrichcourt*, both into the Society of the Order, and the Princes Stall.

He

o *Lib.N p.94.* He dying[o] *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, afterwards Emperor (there being hitherto no Prince born) was Elected in his room, *an.* 16. *H.* 6. but this Emperor was never Installed, and thereupon during his life (neer 20. years after his Election) the Princes Stall was not otherwise disposed of, but remained vacant, and so is it noted in several Pages of the[p] *Black Book*.

p *Ibid pag.*95. 101. 104 108. 109.112. 113. 114

But some few years before King *Henry* the Sixth dyed, he had a Son born, to wit, in the 32. year of his Reign, in which regard, though the Emperor *Frederick* was Elected into the Order,[q] *an.* 35. *H.* 6. upon the death of *Albert*, yet was the said Stall reserved for the *Prince* (but he never possest it) and the Emperor[r] *an.* 37. *H.* 6. Installed by Proxy in the Duke of *Somersets* Stall, then lately deceased, being the eighth on the Princes side.

q *Ib. p.* 117.

r *Ib. p.* 119.

In King *Edward* the Fourth's Reign, we find the right in this Stall returned again to *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, his eldest Son; and in King *Henry* the Seventh's Reign to Prince *Arthur*; but upon his death, *Maximilian* Son of *Frederick* King of the *Romans*, and after Emperor, sat therein: So also did the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth (his Grandchild) in regard that as yet, there was no Son born to the *Soveraign*.

But Prince *Edward* being born, while this Stall was possest by *Charles* the Fifth, it happned also that the King of *Scots* dyed, which caused King *Henry* the Eighth to reserve his Stall (the third on the *Soveraign*'s side) for the *Prince*, albeit he never had possession of it, nor was ever Elected into the Order, though we find him[s] once registred in a Scruteny. And King *Henry* the Eighth dying, Prince *Edward* became both by inheritance and succession, *Soveraign* of this most Noble *Order*, by virtue of the first Article of the *Statutes*; not needing any Ceremony to make him so.

s *An.*32. *H.*8. *Lib. N. p.* 281.

From this time to the eighth year of King *James* there was no *Prince* of *Wales*; which King, finding the *Princes* Stall void at his entrance upon the *English* Throne, did (in a *Chapter* held the[t] 3. of *July*, *an.* 1. *Jac. Regis*) advance the *French* King *Henry* the Fourth, from the second Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side into it; and appointed Prince *Henry* to be Installed[u] in that Kings void seat, where he remained till *an.* 3. *Jacobi.* that *Christierne* the Fourth King of *Denmark* came to be Installed by his Proxy, to make way for whom, the *Prince* (though his Senior both by Election and Installation) was removed yet lower, *viz.* to the[x] second Stall on the Princes side, and the said *King* Installed in the Seat which *Prince Henry* had to that time possest. And yet[y] *an.* 9. *Jac. R.* upon the death of the foresaid French King, not the Prince (as was his right, since now he was created Prince of *Wales*) but the[z] said King of *Denmark* was translated to the Princes vacant Stall; hereupon Prince *Henry* was returned again to the[a] second Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side, which he enjoyed while he lived, and upon his death[b] Prince *Charles* was removed into it, *an.* 11. *Jac. R.* and there rested all King *James* his Reign.

t } *Ex Collect.* u } *A.V.W.*

x *Ex Collect. præf. R. Cooke, Ib. fol.* 17.

y (*MS. penes* z) *Edw. Fau-* a) *conbridge.* b (

In like manner, when the present *Soveraign* came to be Installed, the then *Soveraign* finding him prevented for assuming the Princes Stall (the foresaid King of *Denmark* yet living) assigned to him the second Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side, (wherein himself sat, while Prince of *Wales*) and where hitherto the present *Soveraign*'s Plate remains fixt as a memorial of his Installation therein.

2. Removal upon extraordinary Occasion, by Order of Chapter.

Albeit (as hath been before cleered) that the *Knights-Companions* at their Election or Installation succeeded the immediate defunct *Knight* in his Stall, yet do we also observe, that somtimes, after Installation, as an especial mark of favour and indulgence, the *Soveraign* hath been pleased (though but seldom and rarely) to advance a *Knight-Companion* to a higher Stall (when it became vacant) then that wherein he was at first Installed. And though there be no such liberty given by the Law of the *Order*, nevertheless in the first Precedent (very early after the Institution) in the case of *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster* (who as is before noted was removed from the seventh Stall on the *Princes* side (wherein he was first placed) to the Princes Stall it self) this act is said to be done[c] *by the decree of the Soveraign and Knights-Companions*; and no doubt, but as this was done by so good authority, so upon no less inducements to the *Soveraign* and whole

c *See the second Table in the Appendix.*

whole Society. But there are few of these extraordinary eases, which (taking up little time) we will remember here.

William of *Henalt* Earl of *Ostervant*, was advanced by King *Richard* the Second from the eleventh Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side, to the Duke of *Britains* Stall, it being the second on the *Princes* side. Next, *Humfry* Duke of *Gloucester*, in the Reign of King *Henry* the Sixth, having been first installed in the eleventh Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side, was (when he came to be Lord Protector) removed to the second Stall on the same side. Afterward *Richard Nevill* Earl of *Warwick*, by the [d] consent of the *Knights-Companions* in *Chapter, an.* 39. *H.* 6. was translated to the Duke of *Buckingham*'s Stall, the Lord *Bonvill*, to the Lord *Scales* his Seat, Sir *Thomas Kyriell* to the place of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, and the Lord *Wenlock* to the Stall of Viscount *Beaumont*. And lastly, *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* and *Sicily*, was removed to the third Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side, after he had been installed in the third on the *Princes* side: yet this was an advance of so little honor, as it is scarce worth taking notice of, being but the very next above that, wherein he was first Installed.

d *Lib.N.p.*121.

But King *Henry* the Eighth thinking it requisite for the *Soveraigns* of this most Noble *Order*, to be impowered by a general Law, to do that at pleasure, which the former *Soveraign*'s did not but by the power of particular Acts or Orders in *Chapter*; after he had confirmed the [e] ancient Law of succeeding in the Stall of the immediate Predecessor, not to be changed without the *Soveraign*'s License (nevertheless excepting *strangers*) he in the next succeeding *Article* established this Priviledge upon Himself and Successors, [f] *That if there were any Place or Stall void, the* Soveraign *at his own pleasure might advance and translate any* Knight *of the* Society *into the void Stall, so that it were higher than that wherein he sat before.*

3. Translation at pleasure by the Soveraigns Warrant.

e *Art.* 22.

f *Art.* 23.

This in effect did vacat the ancient Law of succeeding in Stalls by him seemingly confirm'd to *Knights-Subjects*; for afterward Translations preceding to Installations, became so frequent, that the right an *Elect-Knight* had to his Predecessors Stall was seldom enjoyed. Howbeit, hereby he setled a power to gratifie and oblige such of the *Knights-Companions* as should be thought worthy the honor of advancing, without recourse had to a *Chapter* for a special and particular allowance: and from hence the Custom began to issue out *Warrants* under the *Soveraign*'s Sign manual for the Translation of *Stalls*, some convenient time before the day of Installation approched, and consequently the alteration and removal of such of the *Knights-Companions* Helms, Crests, Banners, and Plates, who should receive the honor of a higher Place; their Atchievements being by virtue of such Warrants set up over the Stalls, to which they were advanced, there to remain during the time their owners continued therein.

And now that we may see in what manner King *Henry* the Eighth made use of the powers and priviledges setled by the foresaid *Articles*, both as to the removal of *Stalls*, and doing it by special *Warrant* (which is *Garters* discharge) we shall exhibit a few *Examples*; first shewing in what order the *Stalls* were ranked, shortly after passing this Law, that by comparing some following years with these Schemes, the alteration may with greater readiness be discerned.

Knights of the Order of the *Garter*, as they stood ranked in their Stalls, *Anno* 17. *H.* 8.

The Soveraign's side.	The Princes side.
1. The *Soveraign*.	1. The Emperor *Charles* the Fifth.
2. Duke of *Richmond*.	2. Archduke of *Austria*.
3. Marquess *Dorset*.	3. Duke of *Norfolk*.
4. Marquess of *Exceter*.	4. Earl of *Northumberland*.
5. Earl of *Shrewsbury*.	5. Duke of *Suffolk*.
6. Earl of *Essex*.	6. Earl of *Arundel*.

Ex Collect. Tho. Wrothesley pen. G. O. K. f. 1. *b.*

7. Earl of *Worceſter.*	7. Viſcount *Liſle.*
8. Viſcount *Fitz Walter.*	8. Lord *Bergaveny.*
9. Lord *Dacre.*	9. Lord *Ferrars.*
10. Lord *Dudley.*	10. Lord *Darcy.*
11. Earl of *Weſtmerland.*	11. Lord *La Ware.*
12. Earl of *Rutland.*	12. Lord *Sandys.*
13. Viſcount *Rocheſord.*	13. Sir *Richard Wingfield.*

Knights of the Order of the *Garter* as they ſtood ranked in their Stalls *Anno* 18. *H.* 8.

Ibid.

1. The *Soveraign.*	1. The Emperor *Charles* the Fifth.
2. Duke of *Richmond.*	2. Archduke of *Auſtria.*
3. Marqueſs *Dorſet.*	3. Duke of *Norfolk.*
4. Marqueſs of *Exceter.*	4. Earl of *Northumberland.*
5. Earl of *Shrewsbury.*	5. Duke of *Suffolk.*
6. Earl of *Eſſex.*	6. Earl of *Arundel.*
7. Earl of *Weſtmerland.*	7. Viſcount *Liſle.*
8. Viſcount *Fitz-Walter.*	8. Lord *Bergaveny.*
9. Earl of *Rutland.*	9. Lord *Ferrars.*
10. Lord *Dudley.*	10. Lord *Darcy.*
11. Void.	11. Viſcount *Rochford.*
12. Lord *Mountjoy.*	12. Lord *Sandys.*
13. Sir William *Fitz Williams.*	13. Sir *Henry Guldeford.*

In the latter of theſe two *Schemes*, drawn for the Tranſlation of Stalls *an.* 18. *H.* 8. it may be obſerv'd, firſt, that on the *Soveraign*'s ſide the Earl of *Weſtmerland* was advanced from the eleventh Stall to the ſeventh, being void by the death of the Earl of *Worceſter*: The Earl of *Rutland* from the twelfth to the ninth, that being alſo void by the Lord *Dacres* death; then Viſcount *Rochford* from the thirteenth Stall to the eleventh on the *Princes* ſide, where the Lord *La Ware* lately ſat, but then alſo deceaſed. And laſtly, the [h] three newly *Elect Knights* were thus diſpoſed of at their Inſtallation; firſt the Lord *Montjoy* into the twelfth Stall, then lately void by the removal of the Earl of *Rutland*, next Sir *William Fitz Williams* into the thirteenth Stall, from whence Viſcount *Rochford* was removed, and laſtly, Sir *Henry Guldeford* into that void by the death of Sir *Richard Wingfield*, *viz.* the thirteenth on the *Princes* ſide; but the Stall from whence the Earl of *Weſtmerland* was removed, remained yet void.

h *Lib. N. p.* 252.

An appointment for the *Tranſlation* of *Stalls* upon admiſſion of *Francis* the *French* King, *An.* 19. *H.* 8.

Ex Collect. prefat. Thn. Wrothesley, fol. 12. *vide etiam MS. in Offic. Arm.* [M. 17.] *fol.* 31.

1. The *Soveraign.*	1. The *Emperor.*
2. The *French* King.	2. The King of *Bohemia.*
3. Duke of *Richmond.*	3. Duke of *Norfolk.*
4. Marqueſs of *Exceter.*	4. Marqueſs *Dorſet.*
5. Earl of *Shrewsbury.*	5. Duke of *Suffolk.*
6. Earl of *Eſſex.*	6. Earl of *Arundel.*
7. Earl of *Weſtmerland.*	7. Viſcount *Liſle.*
8. Viſcount *Fitz Walter.*	8. Lord *Bergaveny.*
9. Earl of *Rutland.*	9. Lord *Ferrars.*
10. Lord *Dudley.*	10. Lord *Darcy.*
11. Earl of *Oxenford.*	11. Viſcount *Rochford.*
12. Lord *Mountjoy.*	12. Lord *Sandys.*
13. Sir *William Fitz Williams.*	13. Sir *Henry Guildford.*

The

The setlement of Stalls made the [i] 26. of *January*, in the following year, affords us these observations. [i] *Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

First, by reason of the *French* Kings Election (which past the [k] 21. *Oct. an.* 18. *H.* 8.) and to make room for his Instalment in the second Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side (which hitherto had been possessed by the Duke of *Richmond*) both the said Duke and Marquess of *Dorset* were removed lower, the Duke into the said Marquess's Stall, and the Marquess into the Earl of *Northumberlands*, then lately void by death. [k] *Lib. N p.* 255.

And this was now so done, that the *Soveraign* might express what honor he could to a King, between whom and him there had lately past so great endearments. All the rest of the Stalls may be observed to stand ranked, as they did the year before; and the void Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side to be here supplied by the Installation of the Earl of *Oxford*, Elected in the same Chapter with the *French* King.

In the 20. 21. and 22. years of King *Henry* the Eighth, the Stalls received no alteration; and but little *an.* 23. of the same King; when the death of the Marquess *Dorset* occasioned advancing the Duke of *Suffolk* into his void Stall, and placing the Earl of *Arundel* in the Dukes. Whereupon the Earl of *Northumberland* (Elected in the room of the Marquess *Dorset*) was Installed in that which the Earl of *Arundel* relinquished: and in this order they continued the [m] 24. and 25. years of this King. [m] *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [M. 17.] *fol.* 33. *b.*

Nor was there any removal made *an.* 26. *H.* 8. for albeit the Earls of *Beaumont* and *Newblanke* [French Noblemen] were elected in a *Chapter* held at *Callice* the 27. of *Oct. an.* 24. *H.* 8. yet at their Installation, they were placed in the two Stalls, then void by the death of two of the *Knights-Companions*, *viz.* the [n] first in the Stall of the Lord *Dudley*, and the other in that of Sir *Henry Guilford*. [n] *Ex Collect. Tho. Writhesley Garter, penes G. O. T. f.* 6. *b.*

But the alterations became yet more considerable, and extended almost to a general Translation, which were made in the Stalls, *an.* 27. *H.* 8. upon the admission of *James* the Fifth, King of *Scotland*, (one Stall being then void by the death of the Lord *Montjoy*) for there remained unchanged only these five, *viz.* the Earl of *Rutland*, and Earl of *Beaumont* (but called only Lord *Beaumont* in the Warrant for Translation) on the *Soveraign*'s side; and the *Emperor*, the King of *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Suffolk* on the *Princes* side.

Nevertheless this so great an alteration was not made but upon consultation in [o] *Chapter* held at *Greenwich* on St. *George*'s day, in the aforesaid year, where the *Soveraign* with the assent of the rest of the *Knights-Companions* present, thought it expedient, that forasmuch as the said King of *Scots*, was newly admitted into the Society of the *Order*, and that there ought to be assigned a Stall answerable to his greatness; that the Stalls of the *Knights-Companions* should be translated, [q] *so as the said King should be placed next to the King of the* Romans, *and the rest to be ranked according to the* Soveraign's *pleasure*; and thereupon it was given in charge to *Garter*, to see the same accordingly performed. The setlement of the *Stalls* at this time, as it was sub-signed by the *Soveraign*, coming to our hands, we have exactly transcribed hither. [o] *Lib. N p.* 267. [q] *Ibid.*

The *Kings Highness* appointment for the *Stall* of the King of *Scots*; *An. R. sui* 27. 23. *April* 1535.

1. The *Soveraign*.
2. The *French* King.
3. The King of *Scotland*.
4. The Duke of *Norfolk*.
5. The Marquess of *Exceter*.
6. The Earl of *Arundel*.
7. The Earl of *Northumberland*.
8. The Earl of *Wiltshire*.
9. The Earl of *Rutland*.

1. The *Emperor*.
2. The King of the *Romans*.
3. The Duke of *Richmond*.
4. The Duke of *Suffolk*.
5. The Earl of *Shrewsbury*.
6. The Earl of *Essex*.
7. The Earl of *Westmerland*.
8. The Earl of *Sussex*.
9. The Earl of *Oxenford*.

10. The Lord *Beaumond.*	10. The Viscount *Lysle.*
11. The Lord *Burgaveny.*	11. The Earl of *Newblanke.*
12. The Lord *Ferrars.*	12. The Lord *Darcy.*
13. The Lord *Sandys.*	13. Sir William *Fitz William.*

Henry R.

In this *Scheme* we find the King of *Scots*, placed in the Duke of *Richmond*'s Stall, who with the Duke of *Norfolk*, the Earls of *Shrewsbury*, *Arundel*, *Essex*, *Northumberland*, *Westmerland*, and *Sussex*, were all removed into the next Stall below that which each of them sat in before, whether it were on the *Soveraign*'s or *Princes* side. The Marquess of *Exeter* to the next below his own on the *Soveraign*'s side, Viscount *Lisle* from the seventh to the tenth Stall on the *Prince*'s side, the Lord *Abergaveny* from the eighth on the *Prince*'s side, to the eleventh on the *Soveraign*'s side; the Lord *Ferrars* from the ninth on the *Prince*'s side, to the twelfth on the *Soveraign*'s side; the Lord *Darcy* from the tenth on the *Prince*'s side, to the twelfth on the same; and the Lord *Sandys* from the twelfth on the *Prince*'s side, to the thirteenth on the *Soveraign*'s.

And as these before mentioned *Knights Companions* were removed lower, so the Earls of *Oxford*, *Wilts*, and *Newblanke*, were honored with higher Stalls than they before possest; for the first of them was advanced from the eleventh Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side to the ninth on the *Prince*'s, the second from the eleventh on the *Prince*'s side to the eighth on the *Soveraign*'s, and the third from the thirteenth of the *Prince*'s to the eleventh on the same side. So that in this last example, though many of the *Knights-Companions* were removed lower, yet it may be observed, that the *English* Nobility were now ranked according to their Degrees; first *Dukes*, next a *Marquess*, then *Earls*, next *Viscounts*, afterwards *Barons*, and last of all *Knights*.

Some few removals were made in the following years of this *King*, but none of so great note as this last mentioned, and therefore we need not enlarge our Instances. Nor were there any considerable translations, in the Reigns of King *Edward* the Sixth, or Queen *Mary*.

But immediately after Queen *Elizabeth* came to the Crown, by consent of the *Knights-Companions* in Chapter held the 12. of *January an.* 1. *Eliz.* the Atchievments of [p] *Philip* King of *Spain* (late *Soveraign* of the *Order*) were removed to the Stall of the Emperor *Ferdinand*, void by his being advanced into the *Princes* Stall, for which [q] *Garter* had then command given him.

p } *Lib. C.*
q } *p.* 28.

And when the *French* King *Charles* the Ninth was Elected into this *Order*, to wit, on the [r] morrow after St. *George*'s day *an.* 6. *Eliz.* it occasioned the *Soveraign* then to alter some Stalls, to leave one vacant for him: and the better to observe this alteration (which was considerable) we shall first shew how they stood ranked on the Eve of the said Feast.

r *Lib.C.p.*48.

Elizabeth R.

MS. ten. W. D. N. fol. 14.

1. The *Soveraign.*	1. The Emperor *Ferdinand.*
2. The King of *Spain.*	2. The Duke of *Savoy.*
3. The Constable of *France.*	3. The Duke of *Holstein.*
4. The Earl of *Arundel.*	4. The Marquess of *Winchester.*
5. The Earl of *Derby.*	5. The Earl of *Penbroke.*
6. The Duke of *Norfolk.*	6. The Lord *Clynton.*
7. Void.	7. The Marquess of *Northampton.*
8. Void.	8. Void.
9. The Lord *Effingham.*	9. The Earl of *Sussex.*
10. The Earl of *Shrewsbury.*	10. The Lord *Hastings.*
11. The Viscount *Mountagu.*	11. The Lord *Robert Dudley.*
12. The Earl of *Northumberland.*	12. The Earl of *Warwick.*
13. Void.	13. The Lord *Hunsdon.*

The

The 14. of *May* following, being appointed for the Installation of *Francis* Earl of *Bedford*, and Sir *Henry Sidney*, Elected at the same time with the *French* King, the Stalls were removed, by the *Soveraign*'s appointment, and setled in the following order.

Elizabeth R.

1. The *Soveraign.*
2. The King of *Spain.*
3. The Duke of *Savoy.*
4. The Earl of *Arundel.*
5. The Marquess of *Winchester.*
6. The Earl of *Penbroke.*
7. The Lord *Clynton.*
8. The Lord *Effingham.*
9. The Earl of *Shrewsbury.*
10. The Viscount *Mountagu.*
11. The Earl of *Northumberland.*
12. The Lord *Hunsdon.*
13. Void.

1. The Emperor *Ferdinand.* *Idem fol. 17.*
2. Void.
3. The Constable of *France.*
4. The Duke of *Holstein.*
5. The Earl of *Derby.*
6. The Duke of *Norfolk.*
7. The Marquess of *Northampton.*
8. The Earl of *Sussex.*
9. The Lord *Hastings.*
10. The Lord *Robert Dudley.*
11. The Earl of *Warwick.*
12. The Earl of *Bedford.*
13. Sir *Henry Sidney.*

Where, beside the translation of the *Stranger Princes* (whom we shall mention a little below) we see the Marquess of *Winchester*, the Earls of *Derby* and *Penbroke*, the Duke of *Norfolk*, and the Lord *Clynton*, were each of them seated in the next lower Stall to that they enjoyed before. And by the advancement of the Lord *Effingham*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, Viscount *Mountagu*, and Earl of *Northumberland*, each a Stall higher on the *Soveraign*'s side; and the like advance of the Earl of *Sussex*, Lord *Hastings*, Lord *Dudley*, and Earl of *Warwick*, on the *Princes* side; the eighth Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side, and that opposite thereunto on the *Princes*, were now filled up. The Lord *Hunsdon* was likewise advanced from the lowest Stall on the *Princes* side, to the twelfth on the *Soveraign*'s; and lastly the two *Elect-Knights* were installed in the twelfth and thirteenth Stall on the *Prince*'s side.

Beside the power established upon the *Soveraign*'s of this most Noble *Order*, of translating Stalls, when a vacancy hapned, King *Henry* the Eighth further added this larger Prerogative [r] *That the* Soveraign *once in his life, might if it pleased him, make a general Translation of all the Stalls at his pleasure, except of* Emperors, Kings, Princes, *and* Dukes, *who* (being setled in Stalls agreeable to their Dignities) *should keep their Stalls and Places* (if such a general Translation happened) *unless advanced to a higher Room and Stall. In which Translation, the long continuance in the* Order, *and the praises, worthiness, and merits of the* Knights-Companions *were to be considered and remembred.* [r] *Art. 23.*

But this branch of the *Soveraign*'s Prerogative in the *Order*, was never yet made use of as we can find (though that Translation *an.* 27. *H.* 8. came somthing neer it) perhaps left it might raise too great animosities among the *Knights Subjects*, forasmuch as that of translating only (when there hapned a vacancy) begot great emulations, which at length introduced an alteration, and to which we shall pass, after we have taken notice of a Clause added in the 22. *Article* of King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, relating to *Stranger Princes.*

Here therefore it is to be observed, that the ancient Law of succeeding in Stalls, was also, in relation to them, wholly altered: For King *Henry* the Eighth upon the establishment of his Body of *Statutes*, not only appointed those *Strangers*, then present of the *Order*, to be seated next himself, but that [t] *all Emperors, Kings, and Princes should hold their Stalls after their Estates, and the very next unto the* Soveraign, though *Knights-Subjects* upon vacancy became removeable at pleasure. [t] *Art. 22.*

Hereupon the Emperor [u] *Maximilian* the Second, and after him *Rudolph* the Second his Son, had the *Princes* Stall assigned them after their Election into the *Order.* [u, w] *Collect. Wile N. Cl.*

The

The *French* Kings [x] *Francis* the First, [y] *Henry* the Second, [z] *Charles* the Ninth, [a] *Henry* the Third, and [b] *Henry* the Fourth, were Installed in the next below, being the second on the *Soveraign*'s side. And when there were more then one *King* at a time in the Order, the second Stall on the *Prince*'s side was assigned to him, of whom the former had precedency allowed him, in relation to his State and Dignity, not of antiquity in the *Order*; as it was by the King of [c] *Bohemia*, *an.* 19. *H.* 8. The King of [d] *Spain*, *an.* 8. *Eliz.* So also upon the same Rule, and for the same Reason was somtimes the third Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side possest by *Kings*, as in the eases of [e] *James* the Fifth King of *Scotland*, *an.* 27. *H.* 8. and [f] *Frederick* the Third King of *Denmark*, *an.* 25. *Eliz.*

And lastly we find, that *Princes Strangers* were placed next to *Kings*, according to their state as were the Dukes of [g] *Savoy*, *Montmorency*, and *Holstein an.* 3. *Eliz.* [h] *John Casimire* Count Palatine of the *Rhine an.* 25. *Eliz.* and [i] *Frederick* Prince *Palatine*, and *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, *an.* 11. *Jac. Regis.*

But notwithstanding these Assignments of Stalls to *Strangers*, they were nevertheless subject to removal; somtime to Stalls higher than their own, upon the death of a *Stranger*, who died possest of a superior Stall, and somtimes again to others lower, for the advancing a *Knight* of greater dignity, where the upper Stalls were already fill'd: else could they not be placed or hold their Stalls according to their respective States, as the *Statute* doth enjoin; nor indeed would any *Stranger King* (since the ancient manner of succeeding in Stalls received alteration) have accepted of Election into the *Order*, unless room had been made to seat him in a Stall suitable to his Dignity.

Instances of *Advancement* in translation of Stalls are of *Ferdinand* Emperor of *Germany*, who after the death of the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth, his Brother, was advanced from the second Stall on the *Prince*'s side into the *Prince*'s Stall, [k] *an.* 1. *Eliz.* Of *Philip* the Second King of *Spain*, advanced from the second on the *Prince*'s side to the [l] second on the *Soveraign*'s, *an.* 2. *Eliz.* after the death of the *French* King *Henry* the Second. Of *Henry* the Fourth of *France*, advanced from the second on the *Soveraign*'s side to the [m] *Prince*'s Stall, *an.* 1. *Jac. R.* Of *Christerne* the Fourth King of *Denmark*, *an.* 9. *Jac. R.* from the second on the *Soveraign*'s side to the said [n] *Princes* Stall, after the death of the *French* King *Henry* the Fourth. And of *Christierne* the Fifth King of *Denmark*, advanced from the fourth Stall on the *Prince*'s side, to the second on the *Soveraign*'s, *an.* 22. *Car.* 2.

Among the *Princes Strangers*, we find *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy* advanced from the third on the *Prince*'s side, to the [o] second of the same side, *an.* 2. *Eliz.* *John Casimire* Count *Palatine* from the fourth on the *Soveraign*'s side, to the [p] third on the *Prince*'s *an.* 32. *Eliz.* four years after the Duke of *Holstein*'s death. *Frederick* Prince *Palatine an.* 1. *Car.* 1. was advanced from the second on the *Prince*'s to the [q] second on the *Soveraign*'s side: And *Henry Frederick* Prince of *Orange*, from the third on the *Soveraign*'s to the [r] second on the *Prince*'s, *an.* 10. *Car.* 1. upon the death of the King of *Sweden*.

In those Instances of *Removals lower* after Installation, we shall first remember, That *an.* 6. *Eliz.* when the *French* King *Charles* the Ninth was Elected, the superior Stalls were already fill'd with *Strangers*, and there was no way left to make room for him to the Stall designed him by the *Soveraign*, but by removal of some of those *Knights Strangers* lower, and thereupon for the present, *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy* was removed one Stall lower, *viz.* to the [s] third on the *Soveraign*'s side, *Anne* Duke of *Montmorency* to the [t] third on the *Prince*'s side, and the Duke of *Holstein* to the fourth on the same side.

But the said *French* King was not Installed until the 16. of *January an.* 8. *Eliz.* and before that it was concluded to [m] remove the King of *Spain* to the Duke of *Savoy*'s Stall, voided as before, and to Instal the *French* King in the King of *Spain*'s void Stall, [n] which was accordingly done; so that on this occasion there were four *Strangers*, and five *Knights Subjects* (before remembred) removed lower, to make way for the *French* King.

The 20. of *April*, *an.* 2. *Jac. Reg.* the Duke of *Wirtemberg* was installed in the

x *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [M.17.] *f.* 31.
y } *Ex ipso*
z } *Autogr.*
a *Collect. A. V.W.*
b *Ex Collect. pref. R. Cook f.* 12.
c *Ex pref. Collect. Tho. Wriothesley.*
d *MS. penes W D.N. f* 19.
e *Ex ipso Autogr.*
f *Collect pref. R. Cook f.* 6.
g *Ex ipso Autogr.*
h *MS. penes G. O. T f* 115.
i *Collect. A. V.W.*
k *Lib. C p.* 28.
l *Ib. p.* 37.
m *Collect. A, V.W.*
n *MS. penes Ed. Faucon-bridge gen.*
o *Lib. C. p.* 37.
p } *Collect. W.*
q } *le N. Cl.*
r }
s } *MS. penes*
t } *W.D.N.f.* 17
m } *MS. fol.*
n } 24. *b.*

the [o] third Stall on the *Prince*'s side, and on St. *George*'s Eve in the following year advanced a Stall higher, *viz.* to the third on the *Soveraign*'s side. The 16. of *May* ensuing [p] *Ulrick* Duke of *Holst* had assigned him that Stall from whence the Duke of *Wirtemberg* was advanced, and installed therein: But against the Installation of *Christierne* the Fourth King of *Denmark* (which happened to be the 9. of *September* in the same year) the [q] Duke of *Wirtemberg* was removed back to the Seat wherein he was Installed, and the [r] Duke of *Holst* advanced into his void Stall. All which will appear more clear, from the appointment of Stalls on these occasions which follow.

[o] *Collect. præf. Rob. Cooke, p. 15.*
[p] *Ib. p. 16.*
[q] [r] *Ib. p. 17.*

A Remove of *Banners* and *Plates* at the Installation of *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg*, *Anno Jac. Reg.* 2. *Ex Collect. præf. R. Cooke f. 15.*

James R.

1. The *Soveraign*	1. The *French* King.
2. The *Prince*	2. Void.
3. Earl of *Nottingham.*	3. Duke of *Wirtemberg.*
4. Earl of *Ormond.*	4. Earl of *Dorset.*
5. Earl of *Shrewsbury.*	5. Earl of *Cumberland.*
6. Earl of *Northumberland.*	6. Earl of *Worcester.*
7. Lord *Sheffield.*	7. Earl of *Suffolk.*
8. Earl of *Devonshire.*	8. Sir *Henry Lea.*
9. Earl of *Sussex.*	9. Lord *Scrope.*
10. Earl of *Darby.*	10. Lord *Burghley.*
11. Duke of *Lenox.*	11. Earl of *Southampton.*
12. Earl of *Marr.*	12. Earl of *Penbroke.*
13. Void.	13. Void.

The order of *Stalls* at St. *George*'s Feast, *an. Jac. Regis* 3. *Ibid.*

James R.

1. The *Soveraign.*	1. The *French* King.
2. The *Prince.*	2. Void.
3. Duke of *Wirtemberg.*	3. Earl of *Nottingham.*
4. Earl of *Ormond.*	4. Earl of *Dorset.*
5. Earl of *Shrewsbury.*	5. Earl of *Cumberland.*
6. Earl of *Northumberland.*	6. Earl of *Worcester.*
7. Lord *Sheffield.*	7. Earl of *Suffolk.*
8. Earl of *Devonshire.*	8. Sir *Henry Lea.*
9. Earl of *Sussex.*	9. Lord *Scrope.*
10. Earl of *Darby,*	10. Lord *Burleigh.*
11. Duke of *Lenox.*	11. Earl of *Southampton.*
12. Earl of *Marr.*	12. Earl of *Penbroke.*
13. Void.	13. Void.

A Remove of *Banners* and *Plates* at the Installation of *Ulrick* Duke of *Holst*, the 16. of *May an. Jac. R.* 3. *Ibid. Fol.* 16.

James R.

1. The *Soveraign.*	1. The *French* King.
2. The *Prince.*	2. Void.
3. Duke of *Wirtemberg.*	3. Duke of *Holst.*
4. Earl of *Nottingham.*	4. Earl of *Ormond.*
5. Earl of *Dorset.*	5. Earl of *Shrewsbury.*

6. Earl

6. Earl of *Cumberland.*	6. Earl of *Northumberland.*
7. Earl of *Worcester.*	7. Lord *Sheffeild.*
8. Earl of *Suffolk.*	8. Earl of *Devonshire.*
9. Sir *Henry Lea.*	9. Earl of *Sussex.*
10. Lord *Scroope.*	10. Earl of *Derby.*
11. Earl of *Exceter.*	11. Duke of *Lenox.*
12. Earl of *Southampton.*	12. Earl of *Marr.*
13. Earl of *Penbroke.*	13. Earl of *Northampton.*

Ib. Fol. 17. A Remove of *Banners* and *Plates* at the Installation of *Christierne* the Fourth, King of *Denmark*, the 8. of *Sept. an. Jac. Reg.* 3.

James R.

1. The *Soveraign.*	1. The *French* King.
2. The King of *Denmark.*	2. The *Prince.*
3. Duke of *Holst.*	3. Duke of *Wirtemberg.*
4. Earl of *Nottingham.*	4. Earl of *Ormond.*
5. Earl of *Dorset.*	5. Earl of *Shrewsbury.*
6. Earl of *Cumberland.*	6. Earl of *Northumberland.*
7. Earl of *Worcester.*	7. Lord *Sheffeild.*
8. Earl of *Suffolk.*	8. Earl of *Devonshire.*
9. Sir *Henry Lea.*	9. Earl of *Sussex.*
10. Lord *Scrope.*	10. Earl of *Derby.*
11. Earl of *Exceter.*	11. Duke of *Lenox.*
12. Earl of *Southampton.*	12. Earl of *Marr.*
13. Earl of *Penbroke.*	13. Earl of *Northampton.*

Here in this last Scheme we see Prince *Henry* was removed from the second on the *Soveraign*'s, to the second on the *Prince*'s side, to make room for the King of *Denmark*. And though the Duke of *Cheverenx An.* 3. *Car.* 1. upon the death of the Duke of *Brunswick*, was advanced from the third Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side into the [f] Duke of *Brunswick*'s void Stall, namely the second on the *Prince*'s side: nevertheless, the year following, upon the admittance of *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, he was removed [t] two Stalls lower; and at that time the Prince Elector *Palatine* one.

[f] MS penes [t] Edw. Fauconbridge gen.

4. The ancient Law of succeeding in Stalls altered.

But let us return from the Removal and Translation of a *Knight-Subject*, after he had been installed, to the Assignment of his Stall at the time of Installation it self, and (in the last place) note, That on the 24. of *April an.* 6. *Eliz.* instead of the ancient Law which appointed each *Elect-Knight* to succeed in the Stall of his Predecessor, and the latter, which permitted a Translation at pleasure, a new one was introduced; being framed (as was conceived) upon a more equal ground than the former, and to avoid as much as might be the danger of emulation, which was this, [u] *That all Knights who for the future were admitted into the Society of the Order, should take and be installed in the* lowest Stall, *according to the course and seniority of their Election; except only stranger Kings and Princes.*

u *Lib. C. p.* 49.

Whereupon it came to pass, that when a *Knight-Subject* Elect was to be Installed (he taking the lowest Stall) all the *Knights-Companions*, between him and the vacant Stall, were removed higher, to the end such vacancy might be supplied: or if two or more were to be Installed at one time, they took the lowest Stalls according to the seniority of their Election; the senior *Knight-Elect* being placed higher than the junior. And albeit this manner and order in Removals is now become a thing of course, and the method easie; yet may it not be done, or the Atchievements, Banners, or Plates removed, unless the *Soveraign* Sign a Warrant as formerly, wherein they are orderly ranked, to justifie *Garter* for so doing, which will be the more easily understood by the insertion of a *Scheme* or two.

The

The order of *Stalls* as they stood at the Feast of St. *George an.* 29. *Eliz.* *Ex Collect. A.V.W.*

Elizabeth R.

1. The *Soveraign.*	1. Void.
2. The *French* King.	2. The King of *Spain.*
3. The King of *Denmark.*	3. Void.
4. Duke *John Casimire.*	4. Void.
5. The Viscount *Mountague.*	5. The Earl of *Leicester.*
6. The Earl of *Shrewsbery.*	6. The Earl of *Warwick.*
7. The Lord *Hunsdon.*	7. Void.
8. Void.	8. The Earl of *Worcester.*
9. The Earl of *Huntingdon.*	9. The Lord *Burghley.*
10. The Lord *Grey.*	10. The Earl of *Derby.*
11. The Earl of *Penbroke.*	11. The Lord *Howard* of *Effingham,*
12. Void.	12. The Lord *Cobham.*
13. The Lord *Scrope.*	13. Void.

A Translation of *Stalls* made against the Feast of Installation, *an.* 30. *Eliz.*

Elizabeth R.

1. The *Soveraign.*	1. Void.
2. The *French* King.	2. The King of *Spain,*
3. The King of *Denmark.*	3. Void.
4. Duke *John Casimire.*	4. Void.
5. The Viscount *Mountague.*	5. The Earl of *Leicester.*
6. The Earl of *Shrewsbury.*	6. The Earl of *Warwick.*
7. The Lord *Hunsdon.*	7. The Earl of *Worcester.*
8. The Earl of *Huntingdon.*	8. The Lord *Burleigh.*
9. The Lord *Grey.*	9. The Earl of *Derby.*
10. The Earl of *Penbroke.*	10. The Lord *Howard* of *Effingham.*
11. The Lord *Cobham.*	11. The Lord *Scroope.*
12. The Earl of *Essex.*	12. The Earl of *Ormond.*
13. Sir *Christopher Hatton.*	13. Void.

The first of these *schemes* shew how the Stalls were ranked on St. *George*'s Eve, *an.* 29. *Eliz.* and the second how altered against the Installation of the Earls of *Essex* and *Ormond*, and of Sir *Christopher Hatton*, the 23. of *May an.* 30. *Eliz.* by which those three *Elect Knights* appear to be Installed in the lowermost Stalls, (as the last mentioned Decree enjoins) and by reason that the Earl of *Essex* and Sir *Christopher Hatton* were setled on the *Soveraign*'s side, the vacancy before in the eighth and twelfth Stalls of the same side became filled up; the Earl of *Huntingdon* (seated before in the ninth Stall) being advanced into the eighth, the Lord *Grey* into the ninth, and the Eearl of *Penbroke* into the tenth Stall.

So also by the like advance of the Earl of *Worcester* into the seventh on the *Prince*'s side, the vacancy is therein supplied, and the other *Knights-Companions* seated below him, by a joint and orderly removal, left the twelfth Stall for the Earl of *Ormond*, and the thirteenth void for the next *Elect Knight.*

The like order was observed by King *James*, as appears by another Scheme of the Stalls, setled in *Chapter* held the [w] 3. of *July an.* 1. *Jac. R.* at the Election of the Duke of *Lenox*, the Earls of *Southampton*, *Marr*, and *Penbroke.*

[w] *Lib.C.p.*150

Ex Collect. Johannis Vincent Gen.

Stalls altered at a Chapter held at *Windesor*, the 3. of *July an.* 1. *Jac. R.*

James R.

1. The *Soveraign.*	1. The *French* King.
2. The *Prince.*	2. Void.
3. The Earl of *Nottingham.*	3. Void.
4. The Earl of *Ormond.*	4. The Lord *Buckhurst.*
5. The Earl of *Salop.*	5. The Earl of *Cumberland.*
6. The Earl of *Northumberland.*	6. The Earl of *Worcester.*
7. The Lord *Sheffeild.*	7. The Lord *Howard* of *Waldon.*
8. The Lord *Hunsdon.*	8. The Lord *Montjoy.*
9. Sir *Henry Lea.*	9. The Earl of *Sussex.*
10. The Lord *Cobham.*	10. The Lord *Scrope.*
11. The Earl of *Derby.*	11. The Lord *Burghley*,
12. The Duke of *Lenox.*	12. The Earl of *Southampton.*
13. The Earl of *Marr.*	13. The Earl of *Penbroke.*

From hence it appears that these *Elect-Knights* were Installed in the lowest Stalls; and so were all other *Elect-Knights* Subjects throughout his Reign and since, except the *Prince* of *Wales*, and *Charles* Duke of *York*, Sons to the said *Soveraign*: for the *Prince* was Installed in the second Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side; and upon the election of the said Duke of *York*, [a] *an.* 9. *Jac. R.* the second Stall on the *Prince*'s side was first designed for him, and in [b] place answerable thereunto, did he proceed to the Chappel, the morrow after St. *George*'s day upon which he was elected. But upon *Whitsunday* following, at a solemn debate in *Chapter*, it was determined; [c] That notwithstanding he was the *Soveraign*'s Son, yet should he have no more preheminence than other *Knights-Companions*, but come in as a *Puisne*, and that his [d] Atchievements (which it seems had been set up over the [e] second Stall on the *Prince*'s side) should therefore be removed to that Stall next above the Viscount *Rochesters* (being the eleventh on the same side) and so to be [f] consorted with the Earl of *Montgomery* (before whom he proceeded on *Whitson Monday* to the *Chapter-house* towards his Installation) and it was moreover then Decreed, [g] *that all* Princes *not absolute, should be installed thenceforth in the puisne place.*

a *MS. fol. penes E.W.G f.* 149. *a*

b c d e f g *Ibid. f.* 149. *b.*

But after this, endeavours were used to advance the said *Duke* into the Stall to which he was first appointed, and the *Kings* of *Arms* were consulted with in the case, who certified that [h] *Richard* Duke of *York* second Son to King *Edward* the Fourth, was Installed in the fourth Stall on the *Prince*'s side, and had precedence of the Duke of *Suffolk*, the Earls of *Douglas* and *Essex*, who were elected long before him: That *Henry* Duke of *York*, second Son to King *Henry* the seventh, was Installed in the third Stall on the *Soveraign*'s side, and had place of the Duke of *Buckingham*, and the Earls of *Oxford* and *Derby* his ancients: and lastly, that *Henry Fitz Roy* Duke of *Richmond*, base Son of King *Henry* the Eighth, had place and precedence before the Dukes of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk* and others. Whereupon it was thought fit, that the *Soveraign*'s Children should be as well priviledged in this case, as *Stranger Princes*; and therefore in another [i] *Chapter*, held at *Whitehall* on the 13. of *April* (being *Easter Monday*) *an.* 10. *Jac. R.* the *Order* which past the year before for making the Duke a *Puisne*, was [k] abrogated, and he translated to the second Stall on the *Prince*'s side, and paired with Prince *Henry*; as may be also seen by the order of the Stalls then setled, and entred in the [l] *Blue Book* of the *Order.*

h *Ex ipso Autogr.*

i k *MS. penes Edw. Fauconbridge, gen.*

l *Pag.* 174.

We need not bring hither more instances in proof of the observation of the *Chapter Act* made *an.* 6. *Eliz.* as it hath relation to *Knights Subjects*, since the same hath been to this time punctually pursued; but in regard *Strangers* are therein excepted, it will be necessary to note here concerning them, that the rule

rule and practice continued as eſtabliſhed by King *Henry* the Eighth, *viz.* That they were Inſtalled in Seats next to the *Soveraign*, according to their ſtate and dignity.

We ſhall only add an inſtance of the manner of placing both *Strangers* and *Knight Subjects* at one and the ſame time: for at the coming of King *Charles* the Firſt to the Crown, there were of both conditions to be Inſtalled in one day, namely the Duke of *Brunſwick* a *Stranger Prince*, the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Carliſle Knights Subjects*, elected by King *James* the [m] 31. of *December* in the 22. year of his Reign; as alſo the Earls of *Dorſet* and *Holland*, with *Viſcount Andover*, elected by the ſaid King *Charles*, the [n] 15. of *May* following, and the Duke of *Chevereux* elected the [o] 4. of *July* after. And when the Removal of Stalls was conſidered on for admiſſion of theſe ſeven *Elect Knights*, it was determined, that the Dukes of *Brunſwick* and *Chevereux* ſhould be inſtalled in the uppermoſt Stalls among Strangers, as King *Henry* the Eighth had ordained, but the *Knights Subjects* in the lowermoſt Stalls, according to the conſtant practice, ſince paſſing the Decree *an. 6. Eliz.* as doth appear from the ſetlement of Stalls then made, and thus Intituled.

m *Lib.C.p.23.*

n, o *Ibid. p.26.*

A Remove of *Banners* and *Plates* at the Feaſt of St. *George*, and Inſtallation holden at *Windeſor* the 13. 14. and 15. days of *December*, *an.* 1625. At which time were Inſtalled the Dukes of *Brunſwick* and *Chevereux*, the Earls of *Salisbury*, *Carliſle*, *Holland*, *Dorſet*, and the Viſcount *Andover*, as followeth. *Ex ipſo Autogr.*

Charles R.

1. King *Charles Soveraign.*	1. The King of *Denmark.*
2. The Prince *Palatine.*	2. The Duke of *Brunſwick.*
3. The Duke of *Chevereux.*	3. The Earl of *Northumberland.*
4. The Earl of *Worceſter.*	4. The Lord *Sheffield.*
5. The Earl of *Suffolk.*	5. The Earl of *Suſſex.*
6. The Earl of *Derby.*	6. The Earl of *Marr.*
7. The Earl of *Penbroke.*	7. The Earl of *Montgomery.*
8. The Earl of *Arundel.*	8. The Earl of *Somerſet.*
9. The Earl of *Kelly.*	9. The Viſc. *Wallingford.*
10. The Earl of *Rutland.*	10. The Duke of *Buckingham.*
11. The Earl of *Leiceſter.*	11. The Earl of *Salisbury.*
12. The Earl of *Carliſle.*	12. The Earl of *Dorſet.*
13. The Earl of *Holland.*	13. The Viſcount *Andover.*

Shortly after the Reſtauration of the preſent *Soveraign* to his Crowns and Kingdoms, when ſeveral *Knights-Companions*, both *Strangers* and *Subjects*, were to be Inſtalled, debate was had in *Chapter* held at *Whitehall* the 10. of *April*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 2. about placing their *Atchievements* over their Stalls, whereupon the following *Order* iſſued.

Charles R.

WHereas divers Elected Knights *and* Companions *of our moſt Noble Order of the* Garter, *are by our ſpecial appointment, to be inſtalled in the Chappel of our Caſtle of* Windeſor, *upon the* 15. *day of this inſtant, and that ſome of them who are* Strangers, *do not yet, nor are likely to appear either in their own perſons or by their ſufficient Proxies at the ſaid Inſtalment, and ſo might run hazard to loſe the benefit and advantage of their pre-election in point of rank and precedency in reſpect of ſome of our* Subject Knights, *who though ſince Elected will be firſt inſtalled, without ſome expedient taken therein to prevent it. There being no reaſon (nor is it in our intention) that thoſe Noble Perſons ſhould ſuffer that prejudice for want* *Ex Collect. E. W. G.*

of that usual formality, and for which they are not in fault, but others, who according to the Statutes *and ancient* Custom *were to give timely advertisement to the said* Foreign elected Knights, *and to summon them by themselves or Proxies to assist at the said Instalment: Our will and pleasure is you proceed forthwith to the placing of the* Hatchments *of all the respective* Knights *and* Companions *of our said* Order, *whether Installed, or Elect,* Subject, *or* Strangers, *over the* Stalls *which we do in manner as followeth assign and appoint them in our foresaid* Chappel.

2. The Duke of *York.*	1. The *Soveraign.*
3. Prince Elector of *Brandenburg.*	3. Prince of *Orange.*
4. Prince *Rupert.*	4. Prince *Edward.*
5. Earl of *Salisbury.*	5. Earl of *Berkshire.*
6. Earl of *Northumberland.*	6. Duke of *Espernon.*
7. Duke of *Ormond.*	7. Duke of *Buckingham,*
8. Earl of *Southampton.*	8. Marquess of *Newcastle.*
9. Earl of *Bristol.*	9. Prince of *Tarente.*
10. Count *Marsbin.*	10. Duke of *Albemarle.*
11. Earl of *Sandwich.*	11. Earl of *Oxford.*
12. Duke of *Richmond.*	12. Earl of *Lindsey.*
13. Earl of *Manchester.*	13. Earl of *Strafford.*
	1. ———
	2. The Elector *Palatine.*

And for so doing this shall be your sufficient Warrant, any Statute or Custom to the contrary notwithstanding. Given *under the Signet of Our said* Order *at Our Court at* Whitehall *the* 10. *of* April 1661.

To our trusty and wellbeloved servant Sir Edward Walker *Knight,* Garter, *and* Principal King *of* Arms *of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter.

By the Soveraign's command

Hen. de Vic.

So that here we see the *Stranger Princes* are setled in the upper Stalls, neerest the *Soveraign*, according to their several dignities and degrees, and all the *Knights Subjects* (among whom were reckoned the Duke of *Espernon*, the Prince of *Tarente*, and Count *Marsbin*) according to the times of their Elections: this being in confirmation as well of the setlement made by King *Henry* the Eighth, as of Queen *Elizabeth* before remembred. And among the *Knights Companions* in this setlement it is to be noted, that though the Earl of *Southampton* did not receive his *Garter* and *George*, till the *Soveraign*'s happy return into *England*, and then from his own hands; yet was his place and precedence here allowed him according to the time of his Election, in the Isle of *Jersey*, in *January an. Dom.* 1649. some few days before Duke *Hamilton*, and the Marquess of *Newcastle* were elected.

But the 10. of *January, an.* 14. *Car.* 2. the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, assembled in *Chapter*, Ordered, q *That thence forward all* Princes Strangers *of what condition soever, should have precedence among themselves, according to the seniority of their Elections and Installations*; and thereupon the *Soveraign*'s Warrant issued out to *Garter* under the Signet of the *Order*, dated the 30. of *March* following, to authorise him to set up their *Atchievements* in the Chappel of St. *George* at *Windesor*, in the order here exhibited.

q *Lib. Carolin. p.* 43.

Charles

Charles R.

[r] 1. The *Soveraign.*	1. Void.
2. Duke of *York.*	2. Prince Elector *Palatine.*
3. Prince *Rupert.*	3. Prince of *Orange.*
4. Prince Elector of *Brandenburg.*	4. Prince of *Denmark.*
5. Earl of *Salisbury.*	5. Earl of *Berkshire.*
6. Earl of *Northumberland.*	6. Duke of *Ormond.*
7. Duke of *Buckingham.*	7. Earl of *Southampton.*
8. Marquess of *Newcastle.*	8. Earl of *Bristoll.*
9. Prince of *Tarente.*	9. Count *Marshin.*
10. Duke of *Albemarle.*	10. Earl of *Sandwich.*
11. Earl of *Oxford.*	11. Duke of *Richmond.*
12. Earl of *Lindsey.*	12. Earl of *Manchester.*
13. Earl of *Strafford.*	13. Duke of *Monmouth.*

[r] *Lib. Carolin. p.* 43.

Nevertheless the 19. of *November, an. Dom.* 1669. at a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall,* upon due consideration had of the Law made by King *Henry* the Eighth, for placing of Strangers, as also of Queen *Elizabeth* for *Knights Subjects,* and to remove all *Orders* made in alteration thereof; the *Soveraign* by the advice and consent of the most Noble *Companions* present, was pleased to Ordain and Declare,

[s] *First, that the* Princes *of* Wales, *and such* Emperors *and* Kings, *that should be of the* Order, *should be placed in the neerest Stalls, to that of the* Soveraign, *according to their Elections and Installations.*

Then, that all other Soveraign Princes, *and* Princes *of the* Blood, *should be placed in the Stalls, next unto Kings according to their seniority in the Order.*

And thirdly, that all other his Majesties Subjects *and* Strangers, *not of the dignity above mentioned, should be installed in the lowest Stalls, according to their antiquity in the Order, and the ancient Practice.*

[s] *Ibid. p.* 72.

Thus stands the Law for setlement of *Stalls* at this day. And whereas the Stall commonly called the *Prince*'s Stall, was and had been long void, the *Soveraign* by the advice of the most Noble *Companions* (present in *Chapter* the said 19. of *November*) was pleased to order, [t] *That the present King of* Sweden *should by his Proxie be placed in that Stall, and his Atchievements hung up thereon accordingly, in convenient time:* All which being done as this *Order* directed, the *Stalls* at the Feast of St. *George* celebrated, *an.* 23. *Car.* 2. were ordered in the following manner.

[t] *Ib. p.* 73.

1. The *Soveraign.*	1. The King of *Sweden.*
2. King of *Denmark.*	2. Duke of *York.*
3. Prince Elector *Palatine.*	3. Prince *Rupert.*
4. Prince of *Orange.*	4. Prince Elector of *Brandenburgh.*
5. Prince Elector of *Saxony.*	5. Duke of *Ormond.*
6. Duke of *Buckingham.*	6. Duke of *Newcastle.*
7. Earl of *Bristol.*	7. Prince of *Tarente.*
8. Count *Marshin.*	8. Earl of *Sandwich.*
9. Earl of *Oxford.*	9. Duke of *Richmond.*
10. Earl of *Strafford.*	10. Duke of *Monmouth.*
11. Duke of *Albemarle.*	11. Void.
12. Void.	12. Void.
13. Void.	13. Void.

SECT.

SECT. VII.

Preparations *made by the* Knight Elect.

HAving in the preceding *Section* laid down the ancient Law of *succession* into void Stalls, and of *Translation* from one Stall to another; with several instances, both while such removals were at the *Soveraign*'s pleasure, and after, when they became confin'd to the regular course now observed; and having also discourst concerning those things which are to be prepared for the Installation of a *Knight Subject* on the *Soveraign*'s part, and for which his *Warrants* and *Letters* issue forth, as is before shewed at large: we come now to consider, what is further to be prepared for the *Knight Elect*, at his own charge, against the day of this great Solemnity, and they are chiefly these which follow.

1. A *Mantle* or upper Robe, with its appurtenances.
2. A *Collar* of the Garter, and Great George.
3. A *Cap* of black Velvet adorn'd with Plumes.
4. An *Helm*, *Crest*, *Mantlings*, and *Sword*.
5. A *Banner* of his Arms.
6. A *Plate* of his Arms and Stile.
7. A *Cushen*, to carry his Robes and Collar upon.
8. *Lodging Scutcheons*.

i Mantle. We do not find that the *Mantle* of the *Order* was anciently bestowed by the *Soveraign* upon *Knights Subjects*, as was the *Kirtle* or *Surcoat*; nor indeed of late (unless now and then as a peculiar favour) for seeing the [a] Injunction for returning the *Mantle* upon the death of a *Knight-Companion*, is restrained to such only on whom the *Soveraign* should vouchsafe to bestow them, it is thence evident, that the *Soveraign* is not obliged to give the *Mantle* at all, nor to all, but only where himself pleaseth. But it appears that the *Soveraign* always bestowed the *Mantle* (together with the rest of the *Habit*) upon *Strangers*, after he had Elected any of them into the Society of the *Order*. And when the whole *Habit* was sent over by *Garter* to the King of *Portugal an.* 13. *H.* 6. the *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, and *Hood* were accompted for together in the Accompts of the *Great Wardrobe*; and the like hath been done in all such cases since.

a *Lib.R. p.* 43. & 120.

b *Ex lib. vocat. Coterm. in Offic. mag. Gardrob. fol.* 92.

Howbeit of late times the *Soveraign*, as an especial mark of favour, hath been pleased now and then to give a *Knight-Subject* the *Mantle* also: as did King *James* to [c] *James* Marquess *Hamilton*, *an.* 21. *Jac.R.* and King *Charles* the First to [d] *Theophilus* Earl of *Suffolk an.* 4. *Car.* 1. to [e] *William* Earl of *Northampton*, *an.* 5. *Car.* 1. and *an.* 14. *Car.* 1. Sir *James Palmer* by this *Soveraign*'s direction [g] paid for the Velvet and Taffety of the Earl of *Kelly*'s *Mantle* and *Surcoat* to Sir *Peter Richaut*, and put it upon the Accompt of [h] extraordinary charges of the *Order*.

c *Lib Warr. in Offic. prs.d. à festo S. Mich.* 1623. *ad an.* 1624.

d *Warr. curr. in eod Offic. de an* 1628.

e *Lib. Warr. de an* 1629.

g 5 *Ex Autogr.*

h *Expenes praef. Jac. Palmer.*

Besides which the present *Soveraign*, as a mark of like favour, caused 17 *Mantles* (with the usual Liveries of *Surcoat* and *Hood*) to be provided against the Grand Feast of St. *George*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 2. which were bestowed not only among the new *Elect Knights*, but the three senior *Knights-Companions* also, namely, the Earls of *Salisbury*, *Berkshire*, and *Northumberland*; for which see the Warrant in the [i] *Appendix*.

i *Numb.* XXXIV.

But the *Elect Knight* being otherwise to provide the Mantle at his own charge, directions may be had in the [k] *Chapter* of the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*, as to all the materials for making thereof.

k *Sect.* 2.

2. Collar. The *Collar* of the *Order* with the *Great George* is to be provided by the *Elect Knight*, unless where the *Soveraign* is pleased to bestow the *Mantle*; and in such case he also bestows the *Collar*, and then a like Warrant issues to the *Master* of the *Jewel-house*, as did for providing the 17. *Collars* [l] *an.* 13. *Car.* 2. The

l *Appendix Num.* XXXV.

The Black Velvet *Cap*, mentioned and described [n] before, and therefore needless to speak of it here; is also to be provided at the charge of the *Knight Elect*. 3. Cap.

n *Chap.* 7. *Sect.* 4.

Likewise the *Helm*, and *Crest*, with *Mantlings* thereunto belonging, also a *Sword* and *Girdle* (usually called within the verge of this *Order*, the *Atchievements* of a *Knight-Companion*) are to be got in readiness, by the care and direction of *Garter*, but at the *Elect Knights* cost; all which are to be set over his Stall, assoon as his Installation Fees are paid. 4. Helm, Crest, &c.

This honor, that every *Knight-Companion* should have his *Helme*, *Crest*, and *Sword*, hung up over his *Stall* in the *Chappel* of St. *George* at *Windesor*, is particularly provided for, in all the several Bodies of *Statutes*; and are ordained to remain there during the lives of the possessors, [o] *in memory* (or as a [p] Token or Mark of Honor) *of him that bears them, and a testimony of the defence of the Church, as the Oaths of Military Orders require.*

o *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 9.
p *Ord. Stat. in Bibl. Hatton. Art.* 9.

The *Helms*, used for this purpose and upon this occasion, are made of Steel large and fair, and of a more than ordinary proportion: they are likewise (for the most part) of two sorts, the one appointed for *Soveraign Princes*, and framed [q] open, with large Bailes or Bars; the other for *Knights Subjects*, whose Vizors are made [r] close. About King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign the *Knights Subjects Helms* were parcel gilt with fine Gold in Oyle, wrought with Rabeskys and other works, and burnished with fine Gold. But in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, and since, it hath been the Custom to gild their Helms all over, placing St. *George*'s *Arms* in the middle before the Vizors.

q *Collect. W.*
r *le N. Cl.*

The *Mantlings* that hang down on either side the Helm, which, with the Wreath, are in some places called [s] *Appendixes*, are all of Tissue or Cloth of Gold, and heretofore lined with [t] *Sarcenet*; but in Queen *Mary*'s Reign they began to make use of [u] White *Satin*, for of such were the Linings to the Mantlings of [w] *Anthony Brown* Viscount *Mountague*, and [x] *William Howard* Lord Admiral.

s *Lib. N. p.* 67. 70. *videsis Stat. in Bibl. Hatton. Art.* 7. *& H.* 8 *Stat. Art.* 8.
t *Collect. W.*
u *le N Cl.*
w *Collect. Jo.*
x *Vincent.*

At the bottom of these *Mantlings* hang a pair of gilt *knobs*, burnished with Gold, from which issue *Tassels* of either Gold or Silver (according as is the metal in the *Knights* Coat Armour) mixed with Silk of the chief Colour in his Arms.

Upon the *Helm* and *Mantlings* is placed a *Wreath* of corded Silks, of the *Knights* colours, which was heretofore made of Sarcenet, but now of Taffaty.

The *Crest* of the *Knight* is placed either upon these Wreaths, or issuant out of a Crown, or ducal Cap; turned up with Ermyn, and of what kind soever the Crest is, the same is neatly carved in wood, and either gilt or wrought in its proper colours in Oyl.

Directly before the *Helm*, an arming *Sword* hangs down, the Pomel, Cross, and Chape are gilt; the *Scabberd* is made of the same Tissue or Cloth of Gold, as are the Mantlings, and so is the *Girdle* thereunto belonging; but the Buckles and Pendants are of Copper gilt.

It appears a little before, that the custom of setting up the *Helm*, *Crest*, and *Sword*, over the *Knights* Stall is as ancient as the Institution of the *Order*; but when their *Banners* were first hung up, is not so clearly manifest; for neither do the *Statutes* of Institution, or King *Henry* the Fifth's *Statutes* take notice of them. 5. Banner.

The first mention of them that we find is in the *Black Book* of the *Order*, *an.* 2. *H.* 6. where the [a] *Banner* of the King of *Portugal*, is particularly named among the *Atchievements* then set up over his Stall; but *Henry* the Eighth's body of *Statutes* makes particular [c] mention of them.

a *Lib. N. p.* 76.
c *Art.* 8.

The fashion of the *Soveraign*'s and all the *Knight-Companions Banners* are square; but it doth no where appear to us, of what size their *Banners* anciently were; yet in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, we find them [d] two yards and a quarter long, and a yard and three quarters broad, beside the Fringe (which is made of Gold or Silver and Silk, of the colours in the Wreath) and thereon are wrought or beaten upon Taffaty-Sarcenet, double-Sarcenet, or rich Taffaty, with fine Gold and Colours, on both sides, the paternal Coat of the *Knights Companion*, together

d *Collect. W. le N. Cl. videsis MS.* 4. *penes E. W. G.*

together with his Quarterings, or so many of them as he please to make use of, wherein *Garter* is to take care that they be warrantably marshalled.

a § *Collect. W. Ile N.Cl.*

And because a [a] single *Coat* was conceived not to stand fair enough in a *Banner* of this proportion, therefore the *Soveraign* hath been pleased (where a *Knight-Companion* wanted *Quarterings*) to grant a new Coat to bear in Quarter with his paternal Coat; as did King *James* to [b] *Robert Carr* Viscount *Rochester*, afterwards Earl of *Somerset*; to whose paternal Coat (8. *Jun. an.* 9. *Jac. R.*) he first added a [c] Lyon passant gardant *Or*, in the dexter part, as an especial gift of favour, and then a new invented Coat to be born in quarter therewith, *viz.* [d] *Quarterly* Or *and* Gules, *a Lyon Rampant sable over all.* He also granted to Sir *Thomas Erskin* (afterwards created Earl of *Kelly*) a Coat of Arms to be quartered with his paternal Coat, *viz.* [e] *Argent, a pale Sable.*

b § *Ex Collect. J.V. gen.*

c § *Ibid.*

d § *Ibid.*

e § *Ibid.*

These *Banners* of Arms are fixed to the end of long Staves, painted in Oyl, formerly with the Colours of the Wreath, but now Red: Their ends are put into Sockets of Iron, well fixed in the Wall, directly over the *Knights-Companions* Helms and Crests; and commonly lined with thick Fustian, to preserve them.

6. Plates of Arms.

Besides these, there is also to be provided a *Copper-plate* gilt, whereon a Scutcheon of the *Knight-Elect*'s *Arms*, and Quarterings within a *Garter*, are engraved and enamelled in Colours, with his Helm, Crest, and Supporters, and underneath his Style and Titles of honor: which *Plate*, *Garter* usually takes care to provide, and is to be fixed on the back of the *Knight-Elect*'s Stall assigned for his Installation.

7. Cushen.

Moreover a Velvet *Cushen* is to be also provided, whereon to carry the *Knight-Elect*'s *Mantle*, *Collar*, *Hood*, and *Book* of *Statutes* before him, in the proceeding to the *Choire* at his Installation. Concerning the materials and garnishings of some of these Cushens, we find this account of those used at the Installation of the Lord Treasurer *Weston*, the Earls of *Exceter* and *Lindsey*, Installed *an.* 6. *Car.* 1. that each of them contained one yard and a half of Crimson Velvet, one Ell of rich Taffaty for their lining, and 4 yards of Fringe, and 4 great Tassels.

8. Lodging Scutcheons.

Lastly, there hath been commonly provided a convenient number of *Lodging Scutcheons*, of the *Elect-Knight*'s Arms, invironed with a *Garter*, with his Stile and Titles underneath; and these *Garter* also gets in readiness, for it hath been an ancient custom, to distribute at the Inns in the *Knight*'s passage, to and at *Windesor*, these Scutcheons, to be set up in the principal Rooms of those Houses, as a memorial of the honor of the *Knights* Installation.

Such of the foresaid particulars as are committed to the care of *Garter* to prepare and make ready, the charges thereof have been sometimes cast up, and the Accompt stated and paid off beforehand; by which means he was the better enabled to furnish out the same, for so did the [f] Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, *an.* 34. *Eliz.* And in *Garter*'s Bill there is to be inserted the price of a *Trunk*, the charge for Carriage of those things he provides for the *Knight-Elect* to *Windesor*, and for their setting up.

f *MS. fol. penes G.O Tp.* 203.

Lastly, besides all these things before mentioned, to be prepared and provided either by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, or *Garter*; there are other to be taken care for, by the *Knight-Elect*, relating more particularly both to himself and his retinue; as his own Apparel, the number of his Attendants and Servants, with their Clothes and Liveries, his Coach and Sadle Horses, both for himself and them; with divers other things necessary for setting forth his *Cavalcade* and *Proceeding*, to and at *Windesor*; all which have usually been the richest and best that could be made or gotten, that so the show might be furnished out, with all possible splendor and gallantry.

Together with these, the *Provisions* for *Dyet* at *Windesor* (if the *Feast* be kept at the *Elect-Knight*'s charge and expence) is to be considered of, and to that end for the most part some one of the Clerks of the *Soveraign*'s Kitchin is to be consulted, who commonly undertakes the management of that Affair.

To conclude this *Chapter*, the *Hall* or Room where the grand Dinner is to be kept, the *Chapter-house* and *Chappel*, ought chiefly to be set forth and adorned with rich and sumptuous Furniture, against this solemnity, over and beside what is of ordinary and necessary use.

The

The *Hall* or Dining room, to be furnished with rich hangings, and if the *Soveraign* or his *Lieutenant* hold the *Feast*, then must there be a[k] *Cloth* of *State* set up at the upper end of it: but not if the Installation be performed by Commissioners.

[k] *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

The *Chapter-house* is then also to be hung, a rich Carpet spread upon the Table, and set about with Velvet Chairs and Cushens; and because in the late times of plundering, this place had suffered its share, and nothing found there upon the present *Soveraign*'s happy return, that was worth taking away; his said Majesty in a *Chapter* held the 14. of *January an.* 12. *Car.* 2. among other preparations relating to the *Order*, caused directions to be given to the *Master* of the *Wardrobe*, to provide Velvet for *Chairs* to furnish the Chapter-house, and *Cushens* to be used in the Choire of St. *George*'s Chappel, which accordingly were made ready for the service of the following Feast.

Against the Installation of *Philip* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, *an.* 22. *H.* 7. The [m] *Table* in the *Chapter-house* was covered with cloth of Gold, and the Forms with Baudkin; before the *Soveraign* was laid a Cushen of Cloth of Gold, whereon a Crucifix lay, and the [n] Evangelists turn'd open to the place of the Canon, with several Tapers burning on either side. At the upper end of the Table towards the right hand was set a Chair for the *Soveraign*, under a golden Canopy, with Cushens of Cloth of Gold, and on the left hand a Stool with like garnishing, for the King of *Castile*.

[m] [illegible]
[n] [illegible] *vide Lib.* [illegible] *p.* 183.

In St. *Georges* Chappel, the *high Altar* is to be richly adorned with Plate, the *Soveraign*'s Stall with a Canopy, and other usual ornaments, and lastly, the *Stalls* of the *Knights-Companions* present at this Ceremony with Velvet Cushens.

As to the furnishing of other places in the Castle of *Windesor*, on such a solemn occasion, we will in the last place borrow an account from the Relator of the Ceremony of Installation of the aforesaid King of *Castile* and *Leon*, whose words are these.

To witt of the gret rich cobbord, which continually stode in the gret hall, which was all guilt Plate; or of the gret and rich beds of estate, hangyngs of rich Cloth of Gold, or of the rich and sumptuous clothes of Arras, with divers Clothes of estate, both in the Kings Logging, and in the King of Castil's Loggings, so many Chambers, Haulle, Chappell, Closetts, Galleries with odir Loggings, so richly and verely well appointed, with divers odir things, that I suffice nor cannot discern, and as I suppose, few or none that there were, that ever saw Castell or odir Logging, in all things so well and richly appointed, and the great continual fare, open household, so many noble men soo well appareilled, and with soo short warnyng, heretofore as I thinke hath not been seen. *Ibid.*

CHAP. XII.

THE Personal Installation OF A Knight Subject.

SECT. I.

Of the Cavalcade *to* Windesor.

IN former times, the *Knights-Elect* frequently took their journey from *London* to their Installation at *Windesor*, in the nature of a solemn and stately *Cavalcade*; and this Proceeding on Horseback was generally set forth with exceeding pomp; whether we consider the great number of their honorable Friends, who on gallant Coursers rode along with them, or the multitude of their own Attendants well mounted, the richness of whose Apparel, Jewels, Gold Chains, rich embroideries, and Plumes of Feathers of their Lords Colours, even dazled the Eyes of the beholders.

Suitable thereto was the *Feast*, which had in it all manner of magnificence and plenty, as well of provision, as all other things that could add glory thereunto: and in which the *Elect-Knights* (when kept at their charge) strove not only to exceed their Predecessors, but one another: Insomuch that Embassadors and Strangers esteemed it one of the goodliest sights, that was to be seen in *Christendom*; and to which (as is noted by a [a] *Stranger*) a great concourse and innumerable multitude of People, used to flock from *London* and other places, some reasonable distance from *Windesor*, to behold the Solemnity. But to make the splendour of the *Cavalcade* no less conspicuous to the City of *London*, than Town and Castle of *Windesor*, the *Knights-Elect* have taken up their Lodgings sometimes in the *Strand*, at other times in *Salisbury Court*, then in *Holborn*, or within the *City*; to the end it might pass through some of the eminent streets, for the Peoples satisfaction, whereof we shall here descend to some particulars.

[a] Hist. Chi- [illegible] Sax. [illegible]

Gilbert Earl of *Shrewsbury*, in order to his *Cavalcade an.* 34. *Eliz.* was lodged in

in [b] Mr. *Gresham*'s house (afterwards knighted, and this house since known by the name of *Gresham Colledge*) whence he rode [c] through the *City*, accompanied with sundry of his honorable Friends, and a numerous and gallant Train of Attendants and Servants to *Charing Cross*; where he met [d] *George* Earl of *Cumberland* (his Companion Elect) and thence both together rode towards *Windesor*, within a mile or two of which place, [e] *Garter* King of Arms met them, and set their Attendants in order; and thence the *Elect-Knights* took their way, in goodly Equipage through the Town into the Castle, the Proceeding being thus ordered.

[b] (*MS. fol. penes G. O. T.*
[c] [d] *pag.* 203.
[e]

Trumpets, two and two.
Gentlemen in Blue Coats and Gold Chains.
Gentlemen of note.
Garter.
Gentlemen-Ushers.

Earl of *Ormond.*	The two *Elect Knights.*	Baron of *Effingham.*

With their *Footmen* about them.
Noblemen, *Knights*, and *Gentlemen* of Quality.
All their *Servants* in the rear.

In like manner Custom and Peace begat many such glorious *Cavalcades*, during the Reigns of Queen *Elizabeth*, and King *James*, specially that at the Installation of [f] *Robert* Earl of *Salisbury*, and *Thomas* Viscount *Bindon*, *May* 21. *an.* 4. *Jac. R.* who came to *Windesor* honorably [g] accompanied, with a great appearance of Nobility, Knights, and Gentlemen of special note.

[f] [g] *MS. penes E. W. G. f.* 147.

But the fate of this Solemnity, much like that glorious body the Sun (whose lustre at such times it strove to outshine) had at sometimes its short intermitting Clouds, at others, long nights, and the glory thereof appeared but now and then, when the pleasure of the *Soveraign* grew auspicious, or the honor of the *Order* became placed upon more generous Spirits. And to say truth, there may grow an excess in such Solemnities, even to surfet; which is then best cured by a long abstinence. Nor was this Festival at all times free from this distemper; but then the *Soveraign* readily cured it, by taking away the cause, and prohibiting excess in their Attendants.

Hereupon it was that King *James*, observing those Excesses the *Knights-Elect* run into upon this occasion, and willing to check the growing inconveniences, took occasion against the Installation of *Francis* Earl of *Rutland*, Sir *George Villars* Knight (after created Earl, then Marquess, and lastly Duke of *Buckingham*) and of Viscount *Lisle*, *an.* 14. of his Reign, to forbid [h] *Livery Coats, for saving charge, and avoiding emulation*; and shortly after, in a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall*, *an.* 16. *Jac. R.* with the consent of the *Knights-Companions* then assembled, put some restraint upon the number of Attendants; and Decreed, [i] *That every of the* Knights-Companions *should have* 50 *persons to attend him unto the annual Solemnities of the Order, and no more.*

[h] *Ibidem.*
[i] *Lib. C. p.* 191.

Some litle exceeding (above that allowed number) we meet with afterwards in the Attendants of Gentlemen and Yeomen upon *William* Earl of *Northampton* *an.* 5. *Car.* I. to the number of fourscore, who began his *Cavalcade* to *Windesor*, from [k] *Salisbury* House in the *Strand*; and certainly would have exhibited a more glorious show, had not the continual Rain for [l] three days space together impeded: Nevertheless conceiving that a Proceeding designed with so much gallantry as it was, ought to outlive the accident of foul weather, we shall insert the order of it here.

[k] *Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
[l] *Lib. R. p.* 47.

The order of riding to the Installation *of* William *Earl of* Northampton, *the* 20. of *April*, 1629. *Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

Trumpets, whose Banners were of Damask, and thereon the Earls Arms within a Garter, with his Crest and Supporters.

The meanest of his Servants, as *Grooms*, and *Yeomen*, in Blue Coats, two and two.

His Lordships other Servants in Blue Coats as *Gentlemen*, *Esquires*, and *Knights* two and two.

Two *Secretaries*; Mr. *Ralph Goodwyn*, and Mr. *Francis Mewse*.

Steward, Mr. *Cuthbert Ogle*. *Controller*, Mr. *William Goodwyn*.

Two *Pages*, *Thomas Floyd*, and *Francis Browne*.

His spare *Horse*, led by the Gentleman of his Horse.

His *Chaplain* to distribute his Alms.

Pursuivants at Arms, two and two.

Heralds at Arms, two and two.

Gentleman Usher, Mr. *Walter Thomas*, bareheaded. The *Senior Herald* covered.

Earl of *Berkshire*. Earl of *Northampton*. Earl of *Salisbury*.

Noblemen in their places, two and two.

Knights, *Esquires*, and *Gentlemen*, which accompanied him.

The *Commissioners Servants*.

Other *Noblemens*, *Knights*, *Esquires*, and *Gentlemens Servants*.

Thus *Henry* Earl of *Danby*, and *William* Earl of *Morton*, being to receive the honor of Installation, *an.* 10. *Car.* 1. so disposed of themselves, for their more commodious passage and the peoples view; that the one lodged at [m] *Warwick* House in *Holborne*, the other at [n] *Dorset* House in *Salisbury Court* neer *Fleet-street*, and proceeded severally through the Streets to [o] *Hide Park*, each berween two Noblemen to support him, with their Footmen in rich Coats on either side them.

m { *Ex Collect. W.le N.Cl.* n { *wide Lib.* o *R p.93.*

Their *Gentlemen-Ushers* rode bare-headed, and before them the *Officers* of *Arms* wearing their Coats, then their *Servants* in Blue Coats and Cognizances (as was the ancient manner) all led on by *Trumpets*. The rest of the *Lords*, *Knights*, and *Gentlemen* followed after each *Knight-Elect* in Troop, according to their Degrees, those of the best quality formost. In particular, the Proceeding of the Earl of *Morton*, was marshalled in the following order.

Ex Collect. W.le N. Cl.

Trumpets, two and two.
Grooms in Coats, two and two.
Yeoman two and two.
Gentlemen, two and two.
Secretaries.
Steward. *Gentleman* of the *Horse*.
Pages.
4 *Officers* of *Arms*.
Gent. Usher bare. *Lancaster Herald* covered.
Earl *Morton*
supported between two chief *Lords*.
Footmen on each side in rich Coats.
Noblemen and *Gentlemen*, according to their Degrees.

At *Slow* (two miles on this side *Windesor*) they all made a stand, and being put again into order, proceeded to *Windesor* Castle, where alighting in the lower Court, the *Knights-Elect* were thence conducted to their several Lodgings.

To these already mentioned, we shall add the order of that stately *Cavalcade*, set forth by *Algernon* Earl of *Northumberland*, from *Dorset* house in *Salisbury Court*, toward *Windesor* the 13. of *May an.* 11. *Car.* 1. which though the last this age hath beheld, yet was it not the least in pomp and glory; and disposed as followeth.

Mr. *Butler*.

Ex Collect. Wale N.Cl.

Mr. *Butler.*	Mr. *Githens.*
Mr. *Havelocke.*	Mr. *Blackſtone.*
Mr. *Hillman.*	Mr. *Harris.*
Mr. *Eglebie.*	Mr. *Hall.*
Mr. *Gradye.*	Mr. *Newland.*
Mr. *Williams.*	Mr. *Hubbald.*
Mr. *Sheares.*	Mr. *Lambe.*
Mr. *Collins.*	Mr. *Clarke.*
Mr. *Simpſon.*	Mr. *Emery.*
Mr. *Barnard.*	Mr. *Meriwether.*
Mr. *Gates.*	Mr. *Guppie.*
Mr. *Johnſon.*	Mr. *Cobbie.*
Mr. *Fenwick.*	Mr. *Holdridge.*
Mr. *Granger.*	Mr. *Baldwine.*
Mr. *Cappon.*	Mr. *Thorneton.*
Mr. *Browne.*	Mr. *Edmunds.*
Mr. *Ruſhton.*	Mr. *Francis Moſe.*
Mr. *Percy.*	Mr. *William Moſe.*
Mr. *Gibbons.*	Mr. *Cartwright.*
Mr. *Muſgrave.*	Mr. *Cardinal.*
Mr. *Millar.*	Mr. *Wivild.*
Mr. *Heron.*	Mr. *Pagler.*
Mr. *Potter.*	Mr. *Smith.*
Mr. *Dodſworth.*	Mr. *Taylour.*

Pages, being Earls Sons, *viz.*

Mr. *William Herbert.* Mr. *John Herbert.*
Mr. *Philip Cecil.* Mr. *Algernon Sidney.*

Heralds at *Arms*, two and two.

Mr. *Blundevile Gent.* *Norroy* King of Arms.
Uſher, bareheaded.

Marqueſs of *Wincheſter.* Earl of *Northumberland.* Earl of *Kent.*

And ſomewhat behind him the reſt of the *Lords*, *Knights*, and *Gentlemen* in order, the beſt formoſt, two and two, the Coaches cloſing up the Troop.

There was a publick *Cavalcade* deſign'd from *Somerſet* Houſe in the *Strand* to *Windeſor Caſtle*, when the preſent *Soveraign* was to be Inſtalled; which though it took not effect, yet is fit to be remembred by the inſertion of the then *Chancellor's* Letter to each *Knight-Companion*, for making preparations to accompany him thither.

May it pleaſe your Lordſhip,

THE Kings Majeſty Soveraign *of the moſt Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *having determined to create the* Prince *his eldeſt Son* Knight, *and to propoſe him in* Election *to be a* Companion *of his* Order; *for the better conveniency of his* Inſtallation *hath prorogued by a Commiſſion under the Seal of his* Order, *given the* 25. *of* February *now remaining in my Cuſtody, the celebration of the* Feaſt *of St.* George *from the* 22. 23. *and* 24. *of* April *next, whereon it ſhould have been ſolemnized, unto the* 21. 22. *and* 23. *of* May, *immediately enſuing, and thereby given Command to all the* Knights-Companions, *and* Officers *of his* Order, *that they ſhould attend his royal perſon at his Palace of* Whitehall *upon thoſe days appointed. In diſcharge of the duty of my place, and by ſpecial order, I do ſignifie unto your* Lordſhip *his* Majeſties *will, and that it is his pleaſure for the more honor of the* Prince, *and the noble Feaſt of his* Election *and* Inſtallation, *that your* Lordſhip *ſhould be attended with your Servants and Retinue according to ſolemn Cuſtom, and be prepared to accompany*

Rows Journal, p. 39.

accompany his Highness *from* Somerset-house *in the* Strand *unto the* Castle *of* Windesore, *upon the* 19. *of that moneth, to assist at the Ceremony, and Feast of his* Installation *upon the day following: Praying your* Lordship *that you will be pleased to take knowledge hereby, both of the time and place designed, and of the* Soveraign's order, *I humbly rest*

St. Martin's Lane
27. *Feb.* 1637.

In all due obedience
and observance
Tho. Rowe.

When this Letter was sent, the *Soveraign* intended to create the Prince * *Knight* of the *Bath*, which Ceremonies were designed to begin at the old Palace at *Westminster*, upon the 21. day of *May an.* 13. *Car.* 1. as also to hold the Feast of St. *George* for that year, at *Whitehall*, on the 23. of the same Moneth; and to take the Scruteny that Evening for his Election into this *Order*: The next day was designed to invest him with the *Garter* and *George*, and the day following, to set forward the *Cavalcade* towards *Windesor*, wherein also the *Knights* of the *Bath* (intended to be created with the *Prince*) were to ride in their Robes. But this resolution being changed, and the intention of creating the *Prince* a *Knight* of the *Bath*, altered to that of a *Knight-Batchellor*, the Ceremony thereof was deser'd to *Windesor*; and so the *Cavalcade* followed not.

* *Ex Autogr. penes præf. Jac. Palmer.*

It was the manner heretofore, for the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* (when the *Soveraign* thought fit to appoint the Installation at the same time with the Feast of St. *George*) to ride to *Windesor*, attended with a gallant Train, and no small number of his own Gentlemen and Yeomen richly habited, and in all things well appointed; as was seen in that *Cavalcade* of the [q] Duke of *Norfolk* Earl Marshal of *England*, and *Lieutenant* to the *Soveraign*, for St. *George*'s Feast, *an.* 5. *Eliz.* (at which time the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Warwick* were to be Installed) who had then attending on him [r] 200 of his own Gentlemen and Yeomen.

q { *Collect. Jo.*
r { *V. Gen.*

The *Lieutenant* and his *Assistants* (or otherwise the *Knights-Commissioners*, if the Feast of St. *George* be not then held) being arrived in the Castle, forthwith retire to their Lodgings, which most usually have been prepared at the *Deans* house, the Rooms therein being the fairest, and best fitted for accommodation in the Castle (next those of the *Soveraign*'s in the upper Ward) but the *Knights-Elect* were at all times furnished with Lodgings, in some of the *Prebends* houses.

SECT. II.

The Offering *in the Chappel, on the* Eve *of the* Feast.

IF it so happened, that the Installation passed by *Commissioners*, and the *Cavalcade* set forth from *London* in the morning of the day preceding the Installation, and arrived at *Windesor Castle* early that afternoon; then the *Knights-Commissioners* have been accustomed to put on their [s] *Mantles* only (at the Chapter-house door) and enter St. *George*'s Chappel to offer; but without the attendance of [t] *Heralds*, or any solemne Proceeding before them into the *Choire* (only brought in by the *Prebends*) where having taken their Stalls with usual Reverences (the order of which shall be discourse d at large in the 20. *Chapter*) and heard an *Anthem*, they pass'd up to the Altar, with the [u] *Verger* and [w] *Garter* before them, and there made their [x] *Offering*, both of Gold and Silver, according to usual custom. As soon as the *Vespers* were ended, they descended from their Stalls (after the accustomed manner) and departed to their Lodgings; and in this case the *Knights-Commissioners* * put not off their Mantles till after Supper.

s { *MS. fol. penes, G.O.T. p.* 203.
t { *MS. fol. penes E.W.G. f.* 147.
w { *MS. penes*
x { *G.O.T. loco cit.*
* *Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

In this manner was the Ceremony of *Offering* (on the Eve of the Installation) performed

performed by the [y] Lord *Admiral*, and Earl of *Ormond*, *Commissioners* for the Installation of the Earl of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, *an.* 34. *Eliz.* as also by the Earls of [z] *Nottingham*, *Worcester*, *Suffolk*, and *Southampton*, *Commissioners* appointed for the Installation of the Earl of *Salisbury*, and Viscount *Bindon*, *an.* 4. *Jac. R.* But at the Installation of the Earl of *Rutland*, and others, *an.* 26. *El. z.* the Lord *Hunsdon* (one of the *Commissioners* for that Solemnity) refused to go to the *Chappel* to *Offer* alone, albeit he arrived at *Windesor Castle* [a] timely enough on the Eve; because he wanted the company of Viscount *Mountague* (joined in Commission with him) who came not thither till the [b] next morning.

y *Ex eod. MS. penes G. O. Y. locum ante citatum.*
z *MS penes E. W. G. f. 147.*
a } *MS 4 penes W. le N. Cl.*
b }

The *Offering* thus made, at the *Knights-Commissioners* coming to the Castle, on the Eve of Installation, is in conformity to an Article in the *Statutes* to this effect, [c] *That if any of the* Knights-Companions *being upon a Journey, should accidentally pass by* Windesor Castle, *he is to turn in thither* (if he can with convenience, and be not hindred by some just and allowable cause) *in honor of the place, and prepare himself to enter into the* Chappel *to Offer; first putting on his* Mantle, *without which he must never presume to enter into it.*

c } *E 3. Stat. Art. 16 vide etiam H 5. Stat. Art. 16. & H 8. Stat. Art. 17.*
d }

After the *Knight-Companion* had entred the Castle, the *Canons-Resident* were by this Artiele appointed to meet and receive him, and with due reverence conduct him into the *Choire*. If it were in the time of high *Mass*, the *Knight* was obliged to stay and hear it, in honor of *God* and St. *George*, but if he came thither in the afternoon, he was to stay till the *Canons*, with the rest of the *Choire*, had sung the Anthem *de Profundis*, which being ended, he proceeded to the high Altar and *Offered*, and returned to his Stall, with usual Reverences, and then departed.

But if the *Knight-Companion* [e] passed through the Town of *Windesor*, and did not go to the *Chappel* to *Offer*, in manner as before is ordained; so often as he omitted doing thereof, he was bound upon his obedience to walk a mile on foot to the *Chappel*, in honor of St. *George*, otherwise for every time he failed to offer one Penny, which by King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes* is inlarged [f] to a Groat.

e *Ibid.*
f } *Art. 17.*
g }

It seems at last, there hapned some dispute about the just distance (intended by this *Article*) from the *Castle*, and to the end the *Knights-Companions* might fully know when they came within the breach of this Injunction, it was thought requisite by King *Henry* the Eighth, to set down a certain bound, which in his Statutes is there declared to be [g] *two miles*: within which, if any of the *Knights-Companions* come, and do not repair to the *Chappel* and *Offer*, he is liable to the penalty or mulct above specified.

And because it oftentimes fell out, that some of the *Knights-Companions* did accidentaly ride within the said limits, whilst they took the pleasure of hunting in *Windesor Forest* (some part of it lying neer the *Castle*) nevertheless could not conveniently leave their sport to perform all the Solemnity required, they usually (in such case) sent their *Offring* in money to the *Canons*, which being received, the *Knights* took it for a dispensation of the Ceremony, enjoined by the *Statutes*.

But they still apprehending inconvenience in this Article, endeavours were used to have it interpreted with greater latitude, which so far took effect, that at a Chapter held at *Windesor* the 10. of *October*, *an.* 15. *Car.* 1. it was ordered to be considered of at the next *Chapter*, [h] that so some provision might be made to save the *Knights* from breach of their Oath, if they came within the foresaid limited distance of *Windesor Castle*, and passed thence without *Offring*. But nothing being then done, nor at any time since, the Law stands as it did.

h *Sir James Palmer's Journal pro anno 1639. p. 60.*

SECT.

SECT. III.

The Supper *on the Eve.*

THE *Supper* at night, after their arrival at *Windesor*, is but in the nature of a private Meal; and prepared for the *Lieutenant* (or *Commissioners*) and the *Knights-Elect*, generally in the *Deans* House; and where, on the Eve of Installation of the * Earl of *Rutland* and Lord *Cobham*, *an.* 26. *Eliz.* the *Commissioners* supped together, with such Lords and Gentlemen of account, as came along with them; no Nobleman having above || one servant to wait on him at the Table; the rest had their diet prepared in the *Town* at their own [illegible]

But now and then they have been permitted to sup in some of the Rooms in the *Soveraign*'s Lodgings; for [c] there was the Supper made ready at the Installation of the Lord *Russel*, and other *Elect Knights*, *an.* 31. *H.* 8. and at the Installation of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, and Lord *Hunsdon*, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* the *Lieutenant* and *Knights* supped in the [d] *Great Chamber* there, all sitting together at one Table, in the [e] same order as was used at other times; but the [f] *Heralds* then supped in St. *George*'s *Hall*. And in the 34. of Queen *Elizabeth*, when the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland* were Installed; all the *Lords* and *Gentlemen* supped together at one long Table set in the [g] *Council Chamber*.

* Collect. W. le N. Cl.

c MS. in Offic. Arm. [L. 1.] p. 19.

d Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

f

g MS. penes eund. G. O. T. p. 203.

SECT. IV.

The order in Proceeding *to the* Chapter-house.

WE come now to the chief Circumstances of this great Solemnity; namely the particular Ceremonies of *Installation*, managed and ordered after either the *Soveraign*, (or in his absence his *Lieutenant* or *Commissioners*) and *Knights-Elect*, are arrived at *Windesor*. In reference to which we shall premise this general note; That since neither the *Statutes* of *Institution*, nor the *Statutes* of King *Henry* the Fifth afford us a Formulary, for the personal Installation of a *Knight-Elect* (though each of them contain some part of those Ceremonies, observed at the [h] Installation of *Strangers* by Proxy) yet those made by King *Henry* the Eighth do exhibit (in short) the [i] order and method thereof; which we shall make use of as we pass along, and regularly place those directions, under their proper heads.

h E. 3 Stat. H 5. Art. 20

i Art. 20.

We must further observe, that if the *Installation* be appointed together with the *Feast* of St. *George*, then either the *Soveraign* (and consequently the *Knights-Companions*) or else his *Lieutenant* and *Assistants* are present; but if at any other time of the year, then it passeth by *Commissioners* only: and where we mention the *Soveraign* and his *Lieutenant*, and *Commissioners* together, there the Case or Rule inserted, will suite with every of them.

After such time therefore as the *Soveraign* (his *Lieutenant* or *Commissioners*) have prefixed an hour wherein to begin the *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house*, in order to the Installation of the *Elect Knight* (which Ceremony for the most part hath been performed and dispatcht on the Evening of their arrival at *Windesor*, but sometimes the next morning) all the *Knights-Companions* and *Elect-Knights*, the *Officers* of the *Order*, and of *Arms*, the *Prebends* of the *Colledge*, and *Alms-Knights* are to give their attendance: that is to say, the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the *Order* on the *Soveraign* in his inward Lodgings, the

the *Elect-Knights* and *Officers* of *Arms* in the Presence Chamber, the *Prebends* and *Alms-Knights* in the Great Chamber, where they wait the *Soveraign*'s coming forth.

The attendance to be given upon the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*, and such of the *Knights-Companions* as are appointed for his *Assistants*, is by the *Officers* of the *Order* and of *Arms*, the *Prebends* and *Alms-Knights*, either at his Lodgings, or else where, as he shall appoint; but not by any other of the *Knights-Companions*. For though we find the *Knights-Companions* have sometimes proceeded to the *Chappel*, before the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*, when an Installation was celebrated, yet hath it been at such time only, as they came to *Windesor* with the *Soveraign*, chiefly to hold St. *George's Feast*; where though the *Soveraign* through indisposition of body or weighty affairs, could not pass down to the *Chappel* on the Eve of the Feast, yet they being obliged by the *Statutes* to celebrate *Vespers*, did on this occasion, not that of Installation proceed thither; as it fell out at the Installation of [k] Prince *Henry*, and four other *Knights*, *an.* 1. *Jac. R.* when the Proceeding began from the *Presence Chamber*, and thence past to the *Chapter-house* in the following Order.

k *MS. penes E. W. G. f.* 144.

Alms-Knights.
Prebends.
Pursuivants.
Heralds.
Ulster King of Arms.
Lyon King of Arms. *Clarenceux* King of Arms.
The four *Elect-Knights.*
Knights-Companions.
Black Rod. *Garter.*
Register. *Chancellor.*
The *Soveraign's Lieutenant*, leading the *Prince* in his hand.

The *Knights-Companions* proceeded likewise before the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*, at the Installation of the Duke of [l] *Brunswick* and five other *Elect-Knights*, the 23. of *Nov. an.* 1. *Car.* 1. but the *Soveraign* was then at [m] *Windesor Castle* (though not in the Proceeding) and the Feast of St. *George* there also solemnized.

l *MS. penes Edw. Faucon-bridge gen.*
m *Lib. R. p.* 29. & 30.

But upon the *Soveraign's Commissioners*, neither the *Knights-Companions*, nor the [n] *Prelate* nor *Chancellor* do give their attendance; only at the Grand Feast of St. *George*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 2. the *Chancellor* then waiting on the *Soveraign* at *Windesor* in the duties of his place, out of a particular regard to his Royal Highness the Duke of *York* (being then Controller of his Houshold) attended the *Commissioners* in the proceeding to his Installation.

n *Ex Autogr. penes praef. Jac Palmer, videsis alium Autogr. in Bibl. Cotton.*

The Proceedings upon this solemn occasion, have been generally ordered on foot: Nevertheless, upon some extraordinary account marshalled and disposed on Horseback, in manner of a *Cavalcade*; as was that set forth at the Installation of [o] *Philip* King of *Castile*, *an.* 22. *H.* 7. and that when the [p] Lord *Russel*, and other *Elect-Knights* were installed, *an.* 31. *H.* 8. So also at the Installation of the [q] Earl of *Sussex*, *an.* 1. *&* 2. *Ph. & Mar.* which King *Philip* honored with his own presence; Himself, and several of the *Knights-Companions*, [r] riding on Horseback from his Lodgings in the *Castle*, down to the *Cloister* door at the East end of the *Chappel*, and there alighting, proceeded directly into the [s] *Chapter-house*.

o *Ex ver. MS. penes Wale. Cl. p.* 29. b.
p *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [L. 1.] *fol.* 19.
q r s *MS. p.* 11.

When the Earl of *Shrewsbury* and Lord *Hunsdon* were installed, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* the Proceeding was likewise ordered on [t] Horseback. So also at the Installation of the [u] Earl of *Northumberland*, and Earl of *Warwick* *an.* 5. *Eliz.* and lastly at the Installations of *Francis* Duke of *Montmorency*, the Viscount *Hereford*, and the Lords *Burghley*, *Grey*, and *Shandos* *an.* 14. *Eliz.* concerning which it is further observed; [w] that the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*, and *Knights-Assistants*, did then put on their Robes in the *Soveraign's* Lodgings in the *Castle*, and meeting in the *Presence-Chamber*, proceeded down to the outward Hall door, in the upper Ward of the Castle, where taking their Horses, adorned with foot Clothes, they proceeded on Horseback to the West door of the *Chappel*.

t *Ex Collect. Wale N. Cl.*
u *Ex Collect. J. V. gen.*
w *Ex eod. Collect.*

If the Proceeding was ordered on Horseback at the beginning of the Feast, it continued the same throughout at the usual times, so often as the *Soveraign* (his *Lieutenant* or *Commissioners*) went to the *Chapter-house*, or *Chappel*; and all the returns were marshalled in the like order as the settings forth.

As concerning the marshalling this proceeding to the *Chapter-house*, it hath been done after the same manner and order, as that celebrated on the Eve of the Grand Feast of St. *George* (in relation to the degrees, whereof it was composed) of which we shall discourse at large[x] below; nevertheless, where there happened any considerable difference, it shall be noted in this Section, as we have occasion.

x *Chap.* 20.

To begin now (as we shall do there) with *Servants* and *Attendants* belonging to the *Knight-Elect*; who (if they be taken into the Proceeding) pass on first, two and two in rank, according to their quality; those of the meanest condition formost.

Next the *Alms-Knights* in their Habits, and usual order.

Then follows the *Verger* of the *Colledge*.

After him the *Prebends* or *Canons*; but what attendance they have given heretofore at Installations we cannot make appear; for in those *Schemes* left us of Proceeding to Installations in the Reigns of King *Henry* the Eighth, King *Edward* the Sixth, Queen *Mary*, and part of Queen *Elizabeth*, we find them not inserted, though since they are.

Next to the *Prebends* of the *Colledge* do the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings* of *Arms*, proceed in a Body.

And after them the *Knight-Subject Elect*, unless the *Proctor* of an absent *Knight-Subject* pass at the same time in this Proceeding, whose place is immediately next after the *Provincial Kings*: And if it so happen that the *Proctor* to a *Stranger-Prince* be then also present, he is to proceed between the *Knight-Subject's Proctor*, and the *Knight-Subject Elect*. But Prince *Henry* at his Installation, *an. Jac. R.* 1. went in a place[y] above all the *Knights-Companions*, and was paired with the Earl of *Nottingham*, the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* for that occasion.

y *MS. fol. penes E. W. G. f.* 144 a

Where two or more *Elect-Knights* proceed to their Installation at the same time, they take place, according to the seniority of their Election; proceeding two and two together; and if the number be odd, the junior *Elect-Knight* passeth alone.

Some other notices may here take place; as first, that the *Elect-Knight* passed heretofore in his ordinary Apparel (wearing over it long since a short Gown, afterwards a Cloak, and of later times a Coat) as did the Earl of * *Northumberland*, *an.* 5 *Eliz.* and the Earls of[a] *Penbroke* and *Derby an.* 16. *Eliz.* And this also the *Annals* of the *Order*, and other Authorities particularly note of the Earl of[b] *Sussex* and Lord *Buckhurst*, *an.* 31. *Eliz.* of[c] *Charles* Duke of *York* and others *an.* 9. *Jac. R.* of the Duke of * *Lenox an.* 22. *Jacobi*, the Earl of[d] *Northampton*, *an.* 5. *Car.* 1. and Marquess * *Hamilton* the year following.

* { *Collect. J.* a { *W. gen.*

b *Lib. C. p.* 114.

c *MS. penes E. W. G. f.* 149. b.

* *Lib. R. p.* 18.

d *Coll. W. le N. Cl.*

* *Lib. R. p.* 61.

But this was before any peculiar under *Habit* was appointed to the *Knights-Companions*; for now there being a Cloth of Silver Doublet, and Trunk Hose established to be worn at the Feasts of *Installation* and of St. *George*, the *Elect-Knight* proceeds in this *Habit*, and so did the Duke of *Albemarle*, *an.* 23. *Car.* 2.

Secondly, In this Proceeding to the *Chapter-house* he weareth only the *Garter* about his Leg, and the *George* and *Ribband* wherewith he was invested, either about his neck, or (as of late) drawn under his right arm; which being omitted by Sir *George Villars*, and *Viscount Lisle*, is noted to be[e] contrary to order.

e { *MS. penes* f { *E. W. G. f* 153. *a.*

Thirdly, that the Earl of[f] *Rutland* with his Fellow *Elect Knights*, *an.* 14. *Jac. Reg.* proceeded bareheaded, as also the Duke of * *Lenox*, *an.* 9. *Car.* 1. and so did the Duke of *Albemarle*, *an.* 23. *Car.* 2.

* *Coll. W. le N. Cl.*

Fourthly, the *Elect Knight* doth not always go in this *Proceeding*, but sometimes stays at his Lodgings in the Castle, as did the Earls of[g] *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, *an.* 34. *Eliz.* or else at some other convenient place neer unto the *Chapter-house*, till he be sent for in thither, to receive Investiture with the *Surcoat*; an instance whereof we have in the Duke of[h] *Montmorency*, *an.* 14. *Eliz.* and the other *Elect Knights* that were to be installed at the same time with him, who

g *MS. penes G. O. T. p.* 203.

h *Coll. W. le N. Cl.*

who (before the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* and *Aſſiſtants* proceeded to the *Chapter-houſe*) went privately from the *Soveraign's Lodgings* down to the Houſe of Mr. *French* (then one of the *Prebends*) for the *Dean* was abſent at that time and his Houſe unprovided for their Reception) and reſted in the Parlour until they were ſent for: Or otherwiſe he hath gone privately into the Eaſt Iſle of the *Chappel* behind the High Altar and there ſtayed till called in, as did the Duke of *Monmouth*, *an.* 15. *Car.* 2.

If the *Soveraign* be preſent at the *Inſtallation*, the *Knights-Companions* proceed next after the *Knights-Elect* (or the *Proctor* to a ſtranger *Prince*) according to the order of their Stalls; but if the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*, then his *Aſſiſtants* go in their place: of which there is a Preſident at the Inſtallation of the Earl of *Shrewsbury* and Lord *Hunſdon an.* 3. *Eliz.* the Proceeding being ordered in the following manner.

[i] *Vergers.*
Alms Knights.
Officers of *Arms.*
Elect-Knights.
Aſſiſtants to the *Lieutenant.*
Officers of the *Order.*
Earl of *Arundel Lieutenant.*

i *Collect. W. le N.Cl.*

And if the Inſtallation be diſpatcht by *Commiſſioners*, then the three inferiour *Officers* of the *Order*, immediately follow the *Knight-Elect* and proceed next before the *Commiſſioners* (becauſe they have no *Aſſiſtants* appointed them to paſs between, as hath the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*) and thus we find them marſhalled at the Inſtallation of the Earl of *Northampton*, *an.* 5. *Car.* 1.

[k] The Earls *Servants.*
Alms-Knights.
Prebends.
Heralds.
Elect-Knights.
Officers of the *Order.*
The *Soveraign's Commiſſioners.*

k *Lib.C.p.*114. *videſis Autogr. in Biblioth. Cotton.*

Nevertheleſs once (and but once) *viz. an.* 16. *Eliz.* at the Inſtallation of the Earls of [l] *Penbroke* and *Derby*, we find the ſaid *Officers* did precede the *Elect-Knights*; but this was through miſtake.

l *Collect. J. V. gen.*

Something more may be added, concerning theſe three Officers place and order; in proceeding at the Solemnities of Inſtallation, ſince there hath heretofore fallen out both queſtion and diſpute thereupon: For at the Inſtallation of the ſaid Earl of *Northampton*, ſome queſtion and debate hapning touching their place in this Proceeding, it was at length concluded; [m] That from the *Caſtle* to the *Chappel* they ſhould proceed before the *Commiſſioners*, but in returning from the *Chappel* to the *Caſtle* they ſhould follow.

m *Lib.R.p.*48.

We ſuppoſe the Queſtion (whatſoever it was) chanced not to be propounded till the Proceeding was ready to paſs on, and then ſtarted on a ſudden; becauſe the *Heralds* not readily reſolving (as the *Annals* note) ſeems rather to proceed from ſurprize, than want of ability to anſwer; and it alſo appears, that the determination which took place was grounded but upon [n] conjecture; and how fit ſoever it was then thought, yet if well conſidered, will appear not conſonant to Precedents and Practice, both before and ſince; as alſo to the uſual rule, where all returns are marſhalled anſwerably to their ſettings forth, unleſs the condition of any perſon in the Proceeding be in the mean time changed.

n Tandem igitur per conjecturam concluſum eſt, &c *ibid.*

But perhaps it will be anſwered, that the ground of this reſolution, of following the *Commiſſioners* in their return, was, becauſe the authority wherewith they were impowered, ſeemed to ceaſe as ſoon as the *Knight* was Inſtalled;

and consequently the attendance, which that authority exacted from the *Officers*, then ceased also. Yet if so, what needed any Proceeding back at all, but that the *Commissioners* should have put off their Habits in the *Chapter-house*, and pass thence privately to their Lodgings? But to proceed,

It is further to be observed, that when Installations pass by *Commissioners* only, these three inferior Officers wear their *Robes* (for they are appointed to be worn * at all solemn Assemblies of the *Order*, no less than at the Feasts of St. *George*) but bear not the *Ensigns* of their Offices in the Proceeding. And this seems to be deduced from particular Injunctions, laid down in the *Constitutions* appertaining to the Officers of the Order, which appoint[o] *Garter*, and [p] *Black Rod*, to bear the Ensigns of their Offices at the Feast of St. *George*, *when the Soveraign or his Deputy shall be present*, whence it may be inferred, that if either happen to be absent, they need not bear them: We also find this in practice, and their Ensigns not carried at the Installations of [q] *Frederick* King of *Denmark*, and *John Casimire* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, *an.* 25. *Eliz.* next of the [r] Earl of *Rutland* and Lord *Cobham* the following year, and thirdly so noted in the [s] *Red Book* of the *Order*. But if the *Soveraign* himself be present, or that he constitute a [t] *Lieutenant* in his stead, the *Register* then carries the [u] *Red Book*, and *Garter*, and the *Black Rod*, bear each of them their *Rods*. And note also, that in every Proceeding to Installation by a *Lieutenant* or *Commissioners* [w] *Garter* carries the *Soveraign*'s Commission in his hand to the *Chapter-house* before them.

We now are arrived at the place of the *Soveraign* (his *Lieutenant* or *Commissioners*) which is in the Rear, and with which we shall close the ordinary Proceeding.

But because we would give some instances where the *Soveraign*, willing to add honor to the *Elect-Knights*, hath appointed their Installation at such time, as he personally solemnized the Feast of St. *George*, we shall insert here first that memorable but mixt Proceeding on Horseback (when the Election and Installation of *Philip* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, past *an.* 22. *H.* 7.) from the *Soveraign*'s Lodging in the *Castile*, to the South door of St. *George*'s *Chappel*, and was thus ordered.

[d] *Knights* according to their Degrees.
Lords after their Degrees.
Knights-Companions, in their whole Habit, bearing company with some of the *Knights* of the Order of *Toyson d' or*.
Prelate of the *Order*. *Archbishop* of *Canterbury*.
The *Spanish Ambassador*.
Toyson d' or, King of Arms, in his Coat of Arms. *Garter* King of Arms in his Coat of Arms.
The *Sword*.
The *Prince*.
Philip King of *Castile*. King *Henry* the Seventh, Soveraign of the *Order*.

Another but later instance, shall be that at the Feast of St. *George*, *an.* 9. *Jac.R.* when [e] *Charles* Duke of *York*, *Thomas* Earl of *Arundel*, and *Robert* Viscount *Rochester*, were installed.

[f] *Alms-Knight*.
Prebends.
Officers of *Arms*.
Visc. *Rochester*. Earl of *Arundel*.
Duke of *York*.
Knights-Companions.
Officers of the *Order*.
The *Sword*.
The *Soveraign*.

The

* *Lib.C.p.*24.
o *Cap.*4.
p *Cap.*5.
q *Ex Collect. R. Cook nuper Clar.fol.*28.
r *Collect.W.le N.Cl.*
s *Pag.*48.
t *Ex Collect. J.V. gen.*
u *MS. penes Ed. Faucon-bridge, gen.*
w *Collect. R. C.Cl. fol.* 32. *videsis MS.*
d *Lib.N.p.*183. *videsis MS. vet. penes W. le N.Cl.f.*294.*b.*
e } *MS penes*
f } *E.W.G. fol.*149.*b.*

The same *Soveraign* with several of the *Knights-Companions*, proceeded also to the *Chappel* at the personal Installation of [g] *Frederick* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne*, *an.* 10. *Jac.R.* the Feast of St. *George* being then solemnized; and again at the Installation of the [h] Earl of *Rutland*, Sir *George Villars*, and Viscount *Lysle*, in the 14. year of the same King. The like honor did King *Charles* the First to the [i] Earl of *Suffolk*, *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. and to the [k] Duke of *Lenox an.* 9. *Car.* 1. as also to the [l] present *Soveraign*, when his Installation was celebrated at *Windesor an.* 14, of the same King. To these examples we may add, the present *Soveraign*'s personal appearance at the Grand Feast of St. *George*, held next after his happy Restauration; whereat 12 *Elect Knights Subjects* received the honor of Installation, namely, the Dukes of *Ormond*, and *Buckingham*, Earl of *Southampton*, Marquess of *Newcastle*, Earl of *Bristol*, Duke of *Albemarle*, the Earls of *Sandwich*, and *Oxford*, Duke of *Richmond*, and the Earls of *Lindsey*, *Manchester*, and *Strafford*.

[g] *Lib.C.p.*178.
[h] *Ex eod. MS. penes E.W.G.*
[i] *Lib.R.p.*39.
[k] *Ibid.p.*83.
[l] *Palm. large Journ.p.*11.

As also at the Installations of the Prince of *Denmark*, and *James* Duke of *Monmouth*, the 22. of *April*, *an.* 15. *Car.* 2. and lastly of the King of *Sweden*, the Duke of *Saxony*, and *Christopher* Duke of *Albemarle*, the 28. of *May*, *an.* 23. *C.* 2.

Lastly, at this Solemnity of Installation, the *Soveraign* proceeds in full Robes, having the Sword of State born before him by a Nobleman not of the *Order*, his *Train-Bearers* and *Attendants* following, and the Band of *Pensioners* closing up the Proceeding.

The *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant* and his *Assistants* (so also the *Commissioners*) proceed in full Robes likewise, which we find not only mentioned, but the particulars * enumerated; *an.* 31. *H.* 8. when the Earl of *Arundel* and his *Assistants*, installed the Lord *Russel*, and two other *Elect Knights*; but the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant* (not any of the *Commissioners*) hath his Train carried up, and this service is usually performed by some of his own Gentlemen. The || Earl of *Arundel*'s Train was carried up by his Gentleman Usher, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* And the * Duke of *Norfolk*'s, *an.* 5. *Eliz.* by Sir *Nicholas Strange*, his Chamberlain.

* *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [L.1.] *fol.*19.
|| *Collect. W. le N.Cl. fol* 4.*b.*
* *Ibid.fol.*11.*b videsis Collect. J.V. gen.*

The *Processional way* (if the Proceeding take beginning in the *Presence Chamber*) is down thence into the upper ward of the *Castle*, and through the other Wards in at the *Cloyster door*, and so to the *Chapter-house*; but if from the *Deans* house, then the way is but short, and taken only through the *Cloysters*, into which there is an immediate passage from the Deanry.

The Proceeding having entred the East door of St. *George*'s Chappel, and passed by the *Chapter-house* door, makes a stand in the North Isle; while first the || *Officers* of the *Order*, next the *Knights Commissioners*; or else the Knights *Assistants* and the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant*; or lastly the *Knights-Companions*, and the *Soveraign* (with the Sword born before him) pass into the *Chapter-house*. But the [m] *Knight* (or *Knights*) *Elect*, ought not as yet to enter, but as they come in at the *Chappel* door, fall off on the left hand into the *East-Isle*, behind the high Altar, where they may either walk or repose themselves at pleasure (on Velvet Chairs or Stools, with Cushens, there prepared for them) [n] until they are called into the *Chapter-house*. And this hath been so usual a custom, that we find very frequent mention made of it; amongst others, it is thus noted of the Earl of *Northumberland*, *an.* 5. *Eliz.* that he entred not into the *Chapter-house* with the *Lieutenant* and *Assistants*, but [o] walked before the door, until he was called in. The like did the [p] Earls of *Essex*, and *Ormond*, and Sir *Christopher Hatton*, while the *Commissioners* appointed for that Installation, *an.*30. *Eliz.* went into the *Chapter-house*. At the Installation of the Earl of *Rutland*, Sir *George Villars*, and Viscount *Lysle*, *an.* 14. *Jac. R.* there were prepared in the foresaid Isle, [q] Stools set upon Carpets, one an Ell distant from another, on which they sat, according to the order of their Election, whilst the *Soveraign*, *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the *Order* entred into the *Chapter-house*. So *an.* 1. *Car.* 1. the Earl of *Salisbury*, and the rest of the *Elect Knights*, [r] retired out of the Proceeding as it entred the *Chappel*, and rested themselves in Velvet Chairs placed in the aforesaid Isle. Lastly, all the *Elect Knights* that received their Installation at the Grand Feast of St. *George*, happily celebrated in the 13. year of the present *Soveraign* did the like.

|| *Lib.C.p.*114.
[m] *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [H.2.] *f.*8.*b.*
[n] *Ibid.*
[o] *Ex Collect. J.V. gen.*
[p] *Lib.C.p.*110.
[q] *Collect.W. le N. Cl.*
[r] *MS.penes Ed. Fauconbridge.*

Nevertheless,

Nevertheless, out of extraordinary respect to great personages, they have been sometimes (though but rarely) admitted into the *Chapter-house*, with the *Soveraign* or his *Lieutenant*; among whom [f] *Philip* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, *an.* 22. *H.* 7. was one, and also [t] Prince *Henry*, *an.* 1. *Jac. R.* he being led in by the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*, while the other four *Elect Knights* (installed at that Solemnity with him) sat upon Benches in the accustomed place, until they severally received their Summons to enter.

f *Lib. N. p.* 183.
t *MS. penes E. W. G. f.* 149. *b.*

Sometimes the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* in their Proceeding to Installation, have waved going to the *Chapter-house*, and pass'd immediately into the Choire, as did King *James an.* 9. when [u] *Charles* Duke of *York*, and others were Installed: The like did King *Charles* the First at the Installation of the Earl of *Suffolk*; but then the *Soveraign* had held a Chapter in the [x] *Privy Chamber*, immediately before the Proceeding set forward, and it is to be noted, that in the former instance, when the Proceeding came as far as the East end of the *Chappel*, the Duke of *York*, and the two other Elect Knights, with *Norroy* before them, went out of the Proceeding into the *Chapter-house*, and there reposed themselves while the *Soveraign* proceeded on to the South door of the *Chappel*, and thence into the *Choire*.

u *Ibidem.*
w *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
x *Lib R. p.* 38.

SECT. V.

The Ceremonies *performed in the* Chapter-house.

1. Reading the Commission.

After the *Lieutenant's* entrance into the *Chapter-house*, and opening of the *Chapter*; * *Garter* (with three Reverences) presents first the *Commission* [a] of *Lieutenancy* to hold the Feast, next that of *Installation*, to the *Lieutenant* (or if the Installation pass by *Commissioners*, then only the [b] Commission of Installation to the *Senior Commissioner*) which being received, he delivers it to the *Register* of the *Order*, who forthwith [c] reads it, for to him this duty appertains, as is recorded in the [d] *Black Book* of the *Order*, upon occasion of *Garter's* reading the Commission for Installation of Sir *Thomas Brandon*, *an.* 22. *H.* 7. the *Register* being then absent.

* *Lib. C. p.* 110. & 114.
a *Collect. W. le N. Cl.* & *J. V.*
b *MS. penes Arthur Comit. Anglesey f.* 119. *a.*
c *Lib. N. p.* 277. *vide etiam Lib. C. in locis cit.* & *porro pag.* 135. & 140.
d *Pag.* 181.

When the *Register* hath read the *Commissions*, he [e] returns them to the *Lieutenant* (or *Commissioners*) and he again to the custody of [f] *Garter*, as it is noted to be done at the Installation of the Earls of [g] *Shrewsbury*, and *Cumberland*, *an.* 34. *Eliz.*

e, f, g } *MS. fol. penes G. O. Y. pag.* 203.

2. Receiving the Elect Knight into the Chapter-house.

If the *Soveraign* be present, the *Chancellor* acquaints him that the *Knights-Elect* are without, otherwise the *Lieutenant* and *Assistants* (or *Commissioners*) consult together for some short space, touching the manner of calling in, and receiving the *Elect-Knight*; which being concluded on, they immediately send out for him; and [h] *Garter* is usually imployed in this service, [i] who with all due respect invites and conducts him, to the *Chapter-house* door. But *an.* 34. *Eliz. Garter* went to the [k] Lodgings of the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, where they waited the Summons from the *Commissioners*, and having delivered his message, they forthwith repaired to the *Chapter-house*; their Train attending them to the door.

h } *Lib. N. pag.* 277. *vide sis Collect. J. V. gen.* & *Lib. R. pag.* 5. & 6.
i, k } *Ex cod. MS. penes G. O. Y. in loc. cit.*

At the Installation of *Francis* Duke of *Montmorency*, the Earl of *Leicester* (then the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*) as an evidence of singular respect, sent from the *Chapter* [l] two of the four *Assistants* assigned him, (namely the Earl of *Bedford*, and Sir *Henry Sidney*) to Mr. *Frenche* his Lodgings; who taking [m] *Garter* and the *Officers* of *Arms* before them, led him thence between them, into the *Chapter-house*.

l, m } *MS. in quarto penes W. le N. Cl. f.* 25.

When there are two or more *Elect-Knights* that wait without in the East Isle, expecting

expecting to be called in; *Garter* first conducts the [n] senior by Election, to the *Chapter-house* door, and afterwards the next, and so the rest in like order: for Instance, *an.* 14. *Jac. R.* when three *Elect-Knights* remained without, *Garter* came forth and made his Reverence to the Earl of *Rutland* (the senior *Elect-Knight*) and [o] first ushered him to the *Chapter-house* door, leaving the other two reposing upon their Seats; again, *Garter* returning the second time, introduced Sir *George Villars*, the next senior *Knight-Elect*; and last of all brought Viscount *Lisle* the junior *Elect* to the same place. In like manner and order did *Garter* perform this service to all the *Knights-Elect*, according to their seniority of Election, *an.* 13. *Car.* 2.

n Ex Collect. o J.V. gen.

As soon as *Garter* hath conducted the *Elect-Knight* to the *Chapter-house* door, two of the *Commissioners* (when the Installation is performed by *Commissioners*) or two of the *Knights-Assistants* (when by the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*) or two of the senior *Knights-Companions* (if the *Soveraign* himself be present) receive him *without. Thus did the two *Commissioners* receive the Earls of [p] *Derby* and *Penbroke*, *an.* 16. *Eliz.* and the [q] Earl of *Essex an.* 30. *Eliz.* In like manner did two of the *Lieutenants* four *Assistants*, receive the * Lord *Cromwell*, *an.* 29. *H.* 8. as also the Earl [r] of *Huntington*, *an.* 3. *E.* 6. and Earl of [s] *Northumberland*, *an.* 5. *Eliz.*

* MS in Offic. Arm [H.2] fol 8 b & vide etiam MS penes G. O. T. fol 162. p Collect. J.V. gen. q Lib. C. pag. 110. * Lib. N. p. 277. r Ex præd. MS. penes eand. G. O. T. fol. 80. s Collect. J. V. gen.

The *Elect-Knight* being thus received, is immediately [t] conducted from the Chapter-house door up to the *Soveraign* (his *Lieutenant* or *Commissioners*) unto whom he maketh humble Reverence, and after some short congratulation, the *Lieutenant* (or senior *Commissioners*) in a short speech makes [u] known to him, the effect of his *Commission*, and [w] declares the *Soveraign's* bounty and ready kindness towards him, for a full admittance into this most honorable *Society*; which the *Elect-Knight* most humbly and gratefully acknowledgeth and accepts.

t Lib. N. p. 277. u Ibid. w Lib. C. p. 114 videsis MS. præd. penes G. O. T. fol. 203.

When *Philip* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, was to be Installed (which he personally received at *Windesor* the 9. of *Feb. an.* 22. *H.* 7.) the [x] *Soveraign* himself (being present in the *Chapter-house*) rose up from his Throne, and gave him information of the *Statutes* and *Ceremonies* of the *Order*, and what they obliged him to perform; to all which he gave his ready assent.

x Ex vet. MS. penes W. le N. Cl. fol. 294.

The Complements at receiving the *Elect-Knight* into the *Chapter-house* being over, he disrobes himself of his [a] upper Garment, and then the *Surcoat* or *Kirtle* is taken from the Table (where it and the rest of the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order* are decently and seperately laid in readiness before hand) and he invested therewith; at the doing of which these words of *Admonition* (entred at the end of King *Henry* the Eighth's Book of *English Statutes*) are to be read or spoken.

3. Investing him with the Surcoat. a Lib. N. p 274. & 277. Lib. C. pag. 114. 135. 140. & Lib R. p. 6. & 18.

> *Take this* Robe *of* Purple *to the encrease of your honor, and in token or sign of the most honorable* Order *you have received; wherewith you being defended, may be bold not only strongly to fight, but also to offer your self to shed your blood for Christ's Faith, the liberties of the Church, and the just and necessary defence of them that be oppressed and needy.*

See also the Appendix, Num. XXXVII.

After this, his *Sword* is close girt about him, over his *Surcoat*, by the [b] *Commissioners* (or the *Assistants* to the *Lieutenant*, or some of the *Knights-Companions*) and sometimes (in way of assistance) *Garter* hath put on the *Elect-Knights Surcoat*, [c] girt his *Sword* about him, and laid his *Hood* over his shoulder, as in the case of the Earl of *Rutland*, *an.* 26. *Eliz.* And as soon as this Ceremony is dispatcht, the *Soveraign* (or his *Lieutenant*) proceed into the *Choire* leaving the *Elect-Knight* behind them.

b MS. penes E. W. G. f 25 vide etiam Collect. J.V. gen. c MS.

The *Hood* was heretofore put on in the *Chapter-house* (for so King *Henry* the Eighth's [h] *Statutes* do appoint) [i] after the *Elect-Knight* hath been invested with his *Surcoat*, and before he proceeded to his *Installation*; but of late, because it must be [k] taken off again in the *Choire*, and laid aside, to the end the *Mantle* may be put on, and after that laid on the shoulder a second time (over the *Mantle*) it hath been conceived a sort of diminution in the investiture, to take off any part of the *Habit* before the whole investiture be compleated. Whereupon at the beginning of King *James* his Reign, it was thought more convenient, that the *Hood* should be

h Art. 20. i Collect. J.V. gen. k MS. in Offic. Arm. [I.1.] p. 19.

be carried upon the Cushen by *Garter* into the *Choire*, together with the *Mantle* and *Collar*, and not be put on till after the Investiture with the *Mantle*, and so was it observed at the Feasts of St. *George an.* 13. 15. & 23. *Car.* 2.

And though anciently it was laid over the left shoulder of the *Elect-Knight*, and so worn upon all occasions, yet *an.* 2. & 3. *Phil.* & *Mar.* the wearing thereof being taken notice of to obscure the *Scutcheon* of St. *George* (embroidered on the same shoulder of the *Mantle* it was therefore in a *Chapter* held at St. *James's*, on the 22. of *April*, in the foresaid year Decreed, [l] *That thenceforth the* Knights-Companions *should wear their* Hoods *on the* right shoulders, *to the end the* Scutcheon *might be the better seen and appear.*

l *See the Decree entred at the end of King Henry the Eighth's Book of English Statutes.*

Nevertheless there was a question moved, *an.* 12. *Jac. R.* [m] whether the *Knights-Companions* should not restore the usage of wearing their *Hoods* to the *left shoulder*; which it seems was over-ruled, and the custom of wearing them on the *right*, thought fit to be continued, as the foresaid *Decree* appoints. And on the Eve of the Feast of St. *George an.* 23. *Car.* 2. some of the *Knights-Companions*, supposing the *Hoods* ought to be worn rather on the *left shoulder*, did so wear them to *Vespers*, but the next morning being better perswaded, of the Law and later Custom, they altered them to the *right*.

m *MS. penes E. W. G. f.* 151. *b.*

To great *Princes-Strangers*, there is a liberty given by King [n] *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, to receive (if they please) their *Habit* wholly within the *Chapter-house*, and before they enter their Stalls; and it thereby appears, that this was the Custom in times past; and whereof we have an Instance in *Philip* King of *Castile an.* 22. *H.* 7. who was [o] fully invested in the *Chapter-house* with the *Garter*, *Surcoat*, *Mantle*, *Hood*, and *Collar*, the *Soveraign* himself putting his hand to his Investiture with the *Mantle*.

n *Art.* 20.

o *Lib. N. p.* 184. *vide sit vet MS. penes W. le N. Cl. f.* 295.

Hereupon King *Philip* (Grandchild to the foresaid King of *Castile*) was invested with the whole *Habit* of the *Order*, before he assumed his Stall, for arriving at *Windesor* the 3. of *Aug.* 1. & 2. *Ph.* & *Mar.* he proceeded to the *Chappel*, and received his Investiture within the [p] West door; where was prepared a Form (adorned with Carpet and Cushens) and there the [q] *Register* of the *Order*, delivered the *Mantle*, to the Earls of *Derby* and *Penbroke*, who kissing it, presented it to the *Queen*, and [r] she her self (assisted by the said Earls) invested the *King* therewith; next *Garter* gave the *Collar* to the Earls of *Arundel* and *Penbroke*, who presented it also to the *Queen*, with the like ceremony wherewith the *Mantle* was delivered; and She thereupon put it about King *Philips* neck, and forthwith the *Knight-Companions* (having also robed themselves within the Chappel door) proceeded before the *King* and *Queen*, who with joined hands passed into the *Choire*; where being arived, the *Queen* led him to the *Soveraign's* Stall, which having ascended, they both sat therein.

p *MS pag.* 9 & 11.

q

r *Lib. C p.* 11.

s *Ibid.*

But as the foresaid *Statute* leaves this to the pleasure of the *Stranger-Prince*, and was permitted only for gaining of time, so have not any (who received a *Personal Installation* at *Windesor* since) been fully invested before they entred the *Choire*. For [t] *Francis* Duke of *Montmorency*, *an.* 14. *Eliz.* and [u] *Frederick* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne*, *an.* 10. *Jac. R.* were both invested with their Surcoats only in the *Chapter-house*; but received the *Mantles*, *Hoods*, and *Collars* in their Stalls, after they had taken their Oaths.

t *Collect R. C. Cl. f.* 25. & 26.

u *MS penes E. W. G. f.* 151.

SECT. VI.

The Proceeding *into the* Choire.

THE *Elect-Knight* habited as before, forthwith passeth from the *Chapter-house* along the North Isle, and so in at the West door of the *Choire*, in solemn order; but his place in this *Proceeding* is changed, for here he is led between

between two of the *Knights-Companions.* This is noted in the [a] *Black Book* to be the order wherein *Albro Vasques d'Almadea* Earl of *Averence*, and two other *Elect-Knights* proceeded to their Installation, *an.* 24. *H.* 6. And albeit the *Statutes* of *Institution*, and those made by King *Henry* the Fifth are silent in the order of this *Proceeding*; yet for an *Elect-Knight* to be led to his Stall, between two other of the *Knights-Companions* is no modern Ceremony; since we also find that [b] Viscount *Bouchier*, *an.* 30. *H.* 6. past to his Installation between the Lord *Hastings* and Lord *Beauchamp.* But the order of Proceeding is precisely set down in [c] King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, to wit, *That the* Elect-Knight *attended by his Gentlemen and Servants, shall be led between two other of the* Knights-Companions, *the Officers of the Order going before them.*

[a] Educti sunt singulatim è Consilio. p. 99.

[b] *Ibid* p. 108.

[c] *Art.* 20.

To this Rule the constant practice hath been answerable, at all Installations since; the *Knight-Elect* proceeding either between [d] two of the *Knights-Commissioners*, when there hath been no *Lieutenant*, or between two of the [e] *Knights Assistants*, where a *Lieutenant* was constituted, or lastly between the two [f] senior *Knights-Companions*, the *Soveraign* being present. Of which cases we shall here assign each a President.

[d] *Lib.C.p.* 114.

[e] *Lib N.p.* 274. & 277. *videsis MS. in Offic. Arm.* [H. 2.] *fol.* 8 *b.*

[f] *Lib C.p.* 178. & *Lib K p.* 19.

* A *Proceeding* from the *Chapter-house* into the *Choire*, at the Installation of the Earl of *Rutland*, *an.* 26. *Eliz.* Viscount *Mountagu* and Lord *Hunsdon* being *Commissioners* for that Solemnity.

* *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

Verger with his Rod.
Alms-Knights, two and two
Pursuivants, *Heralds*, and *Norroy*.

Black Rod.	*Register.*	*Clarenceux*, who then executed the Office of Garter.
Lord *Hunsdon.*	Earl of *Rutland.*	Viscount *Mountagu.*

‖ Another Proceeding from the *Chapterhouse* at the Installation of the Lord *Russel*, *an.* 31. *H.* 8. the Earls of *Essex* and *Rutland*, being then the *Lieutenant's Assistants.*

Heralds.

	Register.	*Garter.*
Earl of *Rutland.*	Lord *Russell.*	Earl of *Essex.*

* A third *Proceeding* at the Installation of the present *Soveraign*, *an.* 14. *Car.* 1. the two senior *Knights-Companions* being appointed to conduct the *Prince* from the *Chapter-house* to his *Stall* in the *Choire.*

Alms-Knights, two and two.
Officers of *Arms*, two and two.

Black Rod.	*Register.*	*Garter.*
Earl of *Arundell*	The *Prince*	Earl of *Penbroke.*

But when there hath been three *Commissioners* nominated, then the two senior *Commissioners* take the *Knight-Elect* between them, and the * junior *Knight Commissioner* proceeds before them; and thus was it ordered at the Installation of the Earls of *Essex*, and *Ormond*, and Sir *Christopher Hatton*, *an.* 30. *Eliz.* where the [g] Earl of *Essex* proceeded from the *Chapter-house* into the *Choire*, between the Lord *Hunsdon* and Earl of *Worcester*, and the Lord *Grey* the junior *Commissioner* past singly before them.

* *MS. penes Arthur. Comit. Anglesey, fol.* 119. *a*

[g] *Lib.C.p.* 110.

In all cases where the *Soveraign* is present at an *Installation* (since the Custom of Investing with the *Collar* in the *Chapter-house* was left off) this is generally to be observed; that so soon as the Investiture with the *Surcoat* is finished, the

Soveraign passeth from the *Chapter-house* into the *Choire*, with the whole *Proceeding* before him, leaving the *Elect-Knight* behind. And so soon as he and the *Knights-Companions* have taken their Stalls, in the [h] usual manner, the two senior *Knights-Companions*, upon the *Soveraign*'s verbal directions, descend from their Stalls and stand under their Banners, while the *Alms-Knights* (but not the *Prebends*) *Officers* of *Arms*, and the three inferior *Officers* of the *Order* pass out of the *Choire* in usual manner, and proceed before them to the *Chapter-house*, from whence they introduce the *Elect-Knight* into the *Choire* to his *Installation*. But if there be more *Knights* to be Installed, then the two next senior *Knights* descend, and after them the next seniors to them, till all the *Elect-Knights* are conducted in.

h Ex Collect. J. V. gen.

And this course is likewise observed when a *Lieutenant* is constituted, and hath been generally so practised, since the Investiture with the *Collar*, was performed in the *Choire*, and particularly at the Installations of the [i] Duke of *Lenox*, and Earls of *Penbroke*, *Marr*, and *Southampton*, *an.* 1. *Jac. R.* and of the Duke of *Holstein* and Earl of *Northampton*, *an.* 3. *Jac. R.* In this *Proceeding* to *Installation*, the *Register* usually carries a Book of the *New Testament* for the *Elect-Knight* to take his *Oath* upon; as also the *Oath* it self, fairly written in Parchment.

i MS. penes E. W. G f. 134. a. & 146. a.

[k] *Garter* bears before the *Knight-Elect* his *Mantle*, until he arrive at his Stall, and [l] King *Henry* the Eighth's Statutes place this service upon some one of the *Knights-Companions* likewise; but we have not found in all our search, that it was ever performed by any of them.

k Lib. N p 274. 277 & Lib. C. p 110.
l Art. 20.

It should seem, that about the time when this *Injunction* passed, it was the Custom for *Garter* to bear the *Mantle* upon his arm; for we find it so carried at the Installation of the Lord [m] *Russel*, and others *an.* 31. *H.* 8. But it was not long after, that the laying it on a Velvet *Cushen* began.

m MS in Offic. Arm. [L. 1.] p. 19.

The great *Collar* of the *Order* was also laid upon the *Cushen*; at the Installation of [n] Sir *Henry Sidney*, *an.* 6. *Eliz.* of the [o] Earl of *Derby*, *an.* 16. *Eliz.* of the [p] Earl of *Rutland*, *an.* 26. *Eliz.* and of the [q] Earl of *Shrewsbury*, *an.* 34. *Eliz.* and in this manner born before the *Knights-Elect*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 2. and before the Duke of *Monmouth*, *an.* 15. *Car.* 2. and the Duke of *Albemarle*, *an.* 23. *Car.* 2.

n MS. f. 1. 20. b.
o Collect. J. V. gen.
p Ex Autogr.
q Ex eod. Collect. J. V gen.

With these the *Hood* (though heretofore put on in the *Chapter-house*, yet) of late hath been laid upon the *Cushen*, and also the *Book* of *Statutes*, and so we find them born by *Garter* before [r] Prince *Henry* *an.* 1. *Jac. R.* and *Frederick* [s] Elector Palatine in the 10. year of the same King, as also before the *Knights* Installed, *an.* 13. *Car.* 2. and since.

r MS. penes E. W G f. 144. b.
s Ibid. f. 151. a.

And here we must note, that when *Garter* bears these Ornaments and Ensigns upon the Cushen before an *Elect-Knight*, or a *Proctor*, he is always placed between the *Register* and *Black Rod* in the Proceeding.

Lastly, in this *Proceeding* also the *Knight-Elect* goeth bare headed, holding his *Cap* in his hand, and so did the Duke of *Albemarle*, *an.* 23. *Car.* 2. for it hath been thought incongruous to the order of Investiture (as is before noted of the *Hood*) to put on any part of the *Habit* or other *Ornaments* that must be taken off again, before the Investiture be compleated; and the due place (among the Ceremonies of Investiture) for putting on the *Cap* is not till all the other be finished.

SECT. VII.

The Ceremonies *of* Installation.

WHen the *Proceeding* hath entred the *Choire*, the *Alms-Knights* and *Officers* of *Arms*, make their obeysances towards the *high Altar*, and the *Soveraign's royal Stall*, in the same manner and order as we shall [a] describe anon to be

a Chap. 20. Sect. 6.

be done on the Eve of St *George*. Then they proceed up to the steps before the *Altar* and[b] divide themselves, next the *Officers* of the *Order* make their like double Reverence, and last of all the two *Commissioners* (or *Knights-Assistants*, or *Knights-Companions*) and *Knight Elect*, all three together.

After this the *Officers* of the *Order* turn aside towards the *Stall*, designed for the *Elect Knight*, and approaching neer it, stand below in the *Choire*, while the *Commissioners* (or *Assistants*, or *Knights-Companions*) pass into the[c] lower row of Stalls (sometimes called the[d] middle row) directly under the designed *Stall*, [e] leading the *Elect Knight* with them. And in this [f] place is he to take his *Oath*, called in the Annals, the[g] *Sacred Oath of the Order of the Garter*: during which time he ought to stand between the *Knights-Companions*, who brought him thither.

At the Installation of Prince *Henry an.* 1. *Jac. R.* the[h] *Soveraign's Lieutenant* himself, with the Lord *Buckhurst* (the next senior *Knight-Companion*) led him directly under his own *Stall*, and there gave him his *Oath*. And when the Earl of *Shrewsbury* was Installed, *an.* 34. *Eliz.* we find it noted, that the[i] senior *Commissioner* first entred the lower row of Stalls; but *an.* 31. *H.* 8. at the Installation of the Lord *Russell*, and others, the[k] junior *Assistant* went up first.

The *Knight Elect* being thus placed, the *Register* of the *Order* (standing before them, but below in the *Choire*)[l] readeth or pronounceth the *Oath*, for it is part of his duty, to administer the same.

In this solemn Ceremony, the *New Testament* whereon the *Oath* is taken (commonly opened in some place of the *Gospels*) is indifferently held by one of the three inferiour *Officers* of the *Order*, for sometimes the[m] *Register* hath held it, as at the Earl of[n] *Derby*'s Installation, *an.* 16. *Eliz.* as also at the Installation of the[o] Earl of *Rutland*, and Lord *Cobham*, *an.* 26. of the same *Soveraign*. At other times *Garter* hath held it, as *an.* 5. *Eliz.* when the[p] Earl of *Northumberland* took his *Oath*, and *an.* 10. *Car.* 1. at the Installation of the[q] Earl of *Moreton*. But when the[r] Earl of *Shrewsbury* was sworn, *an.* 34. *Eliz.* the Usher of the *Black Rod*, performed this Office.

While the *Oath* is administring, the *Elect Knight* holds his right hand upon the[s] holy *Evangelists*, and assoon as the *Register* hath ended pronouncing the words, the *Elect Knight* answereth, * *I will, so help me God*, and then taketh off his hand reverently kissing the *Book*; and by this Ceremony sealeth his obligation to the *Statutes* of this most Noble *Order*.

The Ceremony used when *Philip* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, took the *Oath* (which to him was administred in the *Chapter-house* at *Windesor*) *an.* 22. *H.* 7. was this, The said King *laid his hand upon the*[t] *Canon* (*under which was placed the Book of the* Statutes *of the* Order, *by the Prelate, to whom it was delivered by the Register*) and repeated the words of the *Oath*, and having reverently kist all those things, by which he swore, he took a Pen from the *Prelates* hand, and signed the *Oath* he had taken, with his own hand-writing; and forthwith delivered it to the *Soveraign* then present.

Now the *Oath* which a *Knight-Subject* takes, at his *personal Installation*, being of very great weight and concernment, it is fit we here render some account of the nature and form thereof, and (leaving those others taken by *Stranger-Princes*, and their *Proctors*, and the *Deputies* of *Knights-Subjects*, to their proper places) enquire, what was its original form, and how, when, and upon what occasion it received addition and enlargement.

First then, the form of the ancient *Oath*, which the *Statutes* of *Institution* appointed to be taken by the *Elect-Knight* was very short, but comprehensive, and was, [u] *That he should well and faithfully observe, to the uttermost of his power, all the* Statutes *of the* Order.

This was the full content of the *Oath*, taken by the first *Founders*, and to which they also affixt their[w] *Seals*; and so it continued without alteration or addition, till towards the end of King *Edward* the Fourth's Reign. But at a *Chapter* held at the Kings Wardrobe in *London* the 10. of *February*, in the 19. year of the same *King*, it was Decreed, That all the *Knights-Companions* then alive, and all such

b *Collect. J. V. gen.*
1. Taking the Oath.
c *MS penes Arthur Comit Angleseyi, f.119.*
d *MS penes E. W. G f. 144 a.*
e *Lib. C. p. 140. & Li R. p. 154*
f *H 8. Stat Art. 20. videsis Lib: C. pag. 110, 114 140.*
g *Lib. C. p. 50.*
h *MS. fol. penes E W. G loc. cit.*
i *MS fol. penes G. O T. p. 206.*
k *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [L.1.] *p. 19.*
l *Lib. N. p. 274. Lib. C. p. 114. 151. & Lib. R. p. 6 19. 47. 61. 85. & 140*
m *[illegible] lect.*
n *J. V gen.*
o *Autogr.*
p *MS. penes W. le N. Cl. f. 11. b.*
q *MS.*
r *MS fol. penes G. O. T. p. 206.*
s *Lib. R. p. 61.*
* *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
t *Lib. N p. 184. videsis vet. MS penes W. le N. Cl. f. 294.*
u *E. 3. Stat. Art. 24.*
w *Lib. N. p. 20.*

such as were afterwards admitted into the *Order* (and that before they took possession of their Stalls) should be obliged to take this *Oath* also, [x] *That they would aid, support, and defend, with all their power, the Royal* Colledge *of St.* George, *within the Castle of* Windesor, *as well in its possessions, as all other things whatsoever.*

[g] *Lib.N p.146*

In pursuance of which Decree, there was a form drawn up, wherein both *Oaths* were joined together, and entred in the *Black Book*, the Transcript whereof we have placed in the [y] *Appendix*. But when the *Register* of the *Order* pronounced the *Oath*, (he premising such compellation as was due to every *Elect Knight* by name) it was altered to the form [z] there likewise following.

[y] *Num.* XXXVIII.

[z] *Num.* XXXIX.

This Clause (relating to the maintenance and defence of the liberties of the *Colledge*) we also find retained in the *Oath* drawn up for the Prince of *Wales*, and entred for a Precedent in the *Annals* of the *Order*, which we have also thought fit to subjoin to the * former.

* *Appendix, Num.* XL.

But when King *Henry* the Eighth new modelled the *Statutes*, we observe this Clause to be omitted, and some other particulars of another nature added to the general *Oath*, for due observation of the *Statutes*; as first, instead of maintaining and defending the *Colledge* in its rights and possessions; there is adjoin'd a Clause, *to defend the Honors, Quarrels, Rights, Dominions, and Cause of the* Soveraign, *to augment the Honor, and accomplish all the Statutes, Points, and Ordinances of the Order*, as may be seen at large in his Body of [a] *Statutes*, all which we find sum'd up together, in that form of the [b] *Oath*, taken by the Earl of *Cumberland*, at his Installation *an.* 29. *H.* 8.

[a] *Art.* 27.

[b] *Appendix, Num.* XLI.

In the third year of King *Edward* the Sixth, at the Installation of the Earl of *Huntington*, and other *Elect Knights*, a new form was agreed on, by consent of the Earl of *Derby*, then the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*, and the *Knights-Assistants* appointed for that Solemnity; the alteration being such, as the *Reformation* in *Religion*, and the *Soveraign's Interest*, thought fit to make: and to the end the difference between this and former *Oaths* may be observed, it is also inserted in the [c] *Appendix*.

[c] *Num.* XLII.

But *an.* 1. *Eliz.* the *Blue Book* affords us a notable instance, of a dispensation for taking the *Oath* at the Installation of the Duke of *Norfolk* and others, in regard the [d] Rites and Ceremonies of *Religion* were then altered, and no new form of an *Oath* yet setled; for which cause the Earl of *Penbroke* (then the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*) dispensed with their taking any *Oath* at that time; upon promise [e] they would observe such *Statutes* and *Orders*, as the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* should decree to be observed and kept in the next Council of the *Order*.

[d] *Lib.C. p.31.*

[e] *Ibid.*

And accordingly (within a short time after) another Form was Ordained, wherein the words of Obligation were put in the Negative: And this is the form of the *Oath*, taken by a *Knight-subject* at this day; it being recorded at the end of the *Red Book* of the *Order*, both in *Latin* and *English*, and thence transcribed into the * *Appendix*.

* *Num.* XLIII.

2. Investiture with the Mantle, &c.

As soon as the *Knight-Elect* hath taken the usual *Oath*, he is led by the *Knights-Commissioners* (or *Knights-Assistants*, or *Knights-Companions*) up to the *Stall* appointed for him, through that entrance next beneath it, and by them placed before it. In the mean time *Garter* advanceth into the lower row of Stalls to the place where the *Elect Knight* stood, when he took his *Oath*, and from thence he presenteth to them (with due Reverence) the *Mantle*, *Collar*, and *Book* of *Statutes*, who invest the *Elect Knight* first with the [f] *Mantle*, by putting it upon his shoulders.

[f] *E.3.* } *Stat.* *H.5.* } *Art.* 19 *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 20.

But we have met with some Examples, where *Garter* hath delivered the *Mantle*, while the *Elect-Knight* remained in the lower row of Stalls, and wherewith he was invested before he went up to his Stall; and these were in the cases of the [g] Earl of *Northumberland*, *an.* 5. *Eliz.* of [h] *Francis* Duke of *Montmorency*, and others, *an.* 14. *Eliz.* the [i] Earls of *Dunbar*, and *Montgomery*, *an.* 6. *Jac. R.* and the [k] present *Soveraign*, *an.* 14. *Car.* 1. Whereto may be added, that those *Elect-Knights* installed at the Grand Feast of St. *George*, most happily celebrated, *an.* 13. *Car.* 2. were

[g] *Ex Collect. J.V. gen.*

[h] *MS.* 4. *penes W le N. Cl.*

[i] *MS. penes E. W. G. f.* 148.

[k] *Palmer's large Journ. pag.* 13.

were conſtrained to receive their Inveſtiture below in the *Choire*, yet directly under their proper *Stalls*. But this hapned through the great concourſe of people, which at that time had flockt to *Windeſor* (greedy to behold the glory of that Solemnity, which for many years had been intermitted) and rudely forced, not only into and fill'd the lower row of Stalls, but taken up almoſt the whole *Choire*.

But it is noted in the *Red Book* that the Inveſtiture with the *Mantle* and *Collar*, hath been ſometimes performed by the *Black Rod*: as at the Inſtallation of the * Earl of *Northampton*, *an.* 5. *Car.* 1. and of the Lord Treaſurer ‖ *Weſton*, the Earls of *Exiter* and *Lindſey*, and *James* Marqueſs *Hamilton*, *an.* 6. *Car.* 1. Nevertheleſs this is to be underſtood, of this Officers aſſiſtance given to the *Knights-Companions* whoſe Office it only is, and no otherwiſe.

* *Lib. R. p.* 47.
‖ *Ibid. p.* 61.

[l] Whilſt the Ceremony of Inveſtiture with the *Mantle* is performing, the words of *Admonition* proper thereunto are pronounced, and are theſe that follow.

[l] *MS. fol.* 20.

> *Take this* Mantle *of* Heavenly Colour *in ſign and token of the moſt honorable* Order *you have received, and to the increaſe of your honor, ſigned and marked as you ſee with a* red Scutcheon *of our Lords* Croſs, *to the intent that you being always defended by the virtue and ſtrength thereof, may paſs through your Enemies, and them alſo overcome and vanquiſh, ſo that at the laſt for your worthy and approved acts, you may after this temporal Chivalry come to eternal triumphant joys in Heaven.*

See the Appendix, Num. XXXVI. *&* XXXVII.

But at the Inſtallation of the preſent *Soveraign*, they received ſome alteration, and were put into this form.

> *Receive this* Robe *of* Heavenly Colour *(the* Livery *of this moſt excellent* Order*) in augmentation of thy honor, enobled with the* Shield *and* Red Croſs *of our* Lord, *by whoſe power thou mayeſt ſafely pierce Troops of thy Enemies, and be over them ever victorious; and being in this temporal warfare glorious in egregious and heroick actions, thou mayeſt obtain eternal and triumphant joy.*

Palm. Large Journ. p. 13.

In the next place the *Commiſſioners* (or *Aſſiſtants* or *Knights-Companions*) lay the *Hood* upon [n] the *Knights right ſhoulder* over the Mantle, and bringing the *Tippet* athwart his *Breſt*, tuck it under his *Girdle*, at which his Sword hangs.

[n] *MS. pages G. O. Y. f.* 80. *&* 87.

And laſtly, they tye the *Collar* about his ſhoulders, over his *Mantle* and *Hood*, and at this part of the Inveſtiture theſe words of *Admonition* are alſo pronounced.

> *To the encreaſe of your honor, and in token of the* Honorable Order *you have received; Take this* Collar *about your* Neck, *with the* Image *of the holy* Martyr *and Chriſts* Knight St. George, *by whoſe aid you being defended, may paſs through the proſperities and adverſities of this world; that having here the Victory, as well of your Ghoſtly as Bodily Enemies, you may not only receive the glory and renown of temporal Chivalry, but alſo at the laſt the endleſs and everlaſting reward of Victory.*

Appendix, Num. XXXVI. *&* XXXVII.

This form of words received likewiſe alteration when the preſent *Soveraign* was to be Inſtalled, being varied after this manner.

> *Wear this* Collar *about thy* Neck, *adorned with the* Image *of the bleſſed* Martyr *and Soldier of* Chriſt St. George, *by whoſe imitation provoked, thou maiſt ſo overpaſs both proſperous and adverſe encounters, that having ſtoutly vanquiſhed thy Enemies, both of body and ſoul, thou mayeſt not only receive the praiſe of this tranſient Combat, but be crowned with the Palm of eternal victory.*

Palm. large Journal. p. 8.

And

And here (before we pass further) it will be needful to observe, that anciently at the Solemnities of *Installation* when the *Soveraign* or his *Lieutenant* was present, the *Elect-Knight* after he had been invested with the *Mantle* in his *Stall*, was immediately conducted out of the *Choire*, back to the *Chapter-house* (where the said *Soveraign* (or his *Lieutenant*) was accustomed to remain till he returned) there to receive Investiture with the *Collar* of the *Order*, from the *Soveraign* (or his *Lieutenant's*) hands; which being done, he is said to have received the full possession of his *Habit*.

And this is evident, first from King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, which direct (after the *Elect-Knight*'s Investiture with the *Mantle*) [o] *That he shall return into the* Chapter-house, *where he shall receive from the* Soveraign *or his* Deputy, *the* Collar *of the* Order; and secondly from the Practice about that time, as is manifest in the cases of the Lord [p] *Montjoy*, Sir *William Fitz Williams*, and Sir *Henry Gouldford*, installed *an.* 18. *H.* 8. and the [q] Lord *Cromwell*, *an.* 30. *H.* 8. as also of the [r] Lord *Russell*, Sir *Thomas Cheney*, and Sir *William Kingston*, installed *an.* 31. *H.* 8. of the [s] Marquess *Dorset*, Earl of *Derby*, Lord *Seymour* of *Sudeley*, and Sir *William Paget*, *an.* 1. *E.* 6. of the [t] Earl of *Huntingdon*, Lords *La Ware* and *Cobham*, and Sir *William Herbert*, *an.* 3. *E.* 6. so likewise of the [u] Earl of *Shrewsbury*, and Lord *Hunsdon*, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* of the [w] Earl of *Northumberland*, *an.* 5. *Eliz.* and of the [x] Duke of *Montmorency*, *an.* 14. *Eliz.*

o *Art.* 20.
p *Lib. N. p.* 254
q *Ibid. p.* 277.
videsis Lib. vocat. Dalton. p. 119. *b.*
r *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [L. 1.] *pag.* 19.
s *MS. penes G. O. T. fol.* 87.
t *Ibid. fol.* 80.
u *Collect. W. le N. C.*
w *Collect. J. V. gen.*
x *Collect. R. C. Cl. pag.* 26.

The *Proceeding* back into the *Chapter-house*, upon this occasion, was ordered almost after the same manner, as that before mentioned into the *Choire*, only with this difference; that the new installed *Knight* took here his place, according to the dignity of his *Stall*: and so did the aforesaid Duke of *Montmorency*, when he returned to the *Chapter-house*, to receive his *Collar*; for because the Stall wherein he had been installed, was of a [y] higher rank, than either of those belonging to the two *Assistants*, that conducted him to his *Installation*, they therefore proceeded before (not on either side) him thither.

y *Ibidem.*

But this is observable, that when the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant* remained in the *Chapter-house*, while the *Elect-Knight* proceeded to his *Installation*, the *Usher* of the *Black-Rod*, proceeded not with the said *Knight*, but stayed behind, to attend upon the *Lieutenant*: as appears from the notices of the before mentioned Installations, of the Lord *Russell*, Earl of *Huntington*, and Earl of *Northumberland*; and as soon as the Investiture with the *Collar* was finished, the *Lieutenant* proceeded to the *Choire* in the Rear, and the new invested and installed *Knight* in place according to his Stall: A President or two of such *Proceeding* follows.

MS. in Offic. Armor. [L. 1.] *p.* 19.

The *Lieutenant's Proceeding* into the *Choire*, at the Installation of the Lord *Russell* and others, *an.* 31. *H.* 8. after they had received their *Collars* in the *Chapter-house*.

Officers of Arms.
Knights newly installed, the junior formost.
Knights-Assistants.
Black-Rod. *Register.* *Garter.*
The *Lieutenant.*

MS. penes G. O. T. fol. 87.

In the same manner was the *Lieutenan's Proceeding* ordered at the Installation of the Marquess *Dorset*, and others, *an.* 1. *E.* 6.

After the *Proceeding* had entred the *Choire*, and the *Lieutenant* and *Knights-Companions* taken their Seats, with the usual Ceremonies; the Service of the Church began.

But when the *Installation* was performed by *Commissioners*, then was the *Collar* of the *Order* laid on the *Cushen* with the *Mantle*, and born before the *Elect-Knight* to his *Stall*, where, after his Investiture with the *Mantle* and *Hood*, he received

received Investiture with the *Collar* also, and among sundry examples we shall instance in these; The[a] Lord *William Howard*, *an.* 1. & 2. *Phil.* & *Mar.* was first invested with his *Mantle*, and then had his *Collar* put about his neck by the Lord [b] *Clynton* and Lord *Pagit*, the two *Commissioners* appointed for his Installation. The[c] Earl of *Lincoln*, and Viscount *Mountague*, *Commissioners* for the Installation of the[d] Earls of *Derby* and *Penbroke*, put on their *Collars* in their *Stalls*: and thus was it done by the *Commissioners* at the Installations of the[e] Earl of *Rutland*, and Lord *Cobham*, *an.* 26. *Eliz.* and of the[f] Earls of *Shrewsbury*, and *Cumberland*, *an.* 34. of the same *Queen*.

a b c d *Collect. J. V. gen.*

e *Autogr.*

f *MS. fol. penes G.O.T. p.206.*

And in like manner, at all Installations solemnized since *Queen Elizabeth's* Reign, where the *Soveraign* hath vouchsafed his presence (the ancient Custom of returning to the *Chapter-house* for the *Collar* being laid aside) the *Knights-Companions* who led the *Elect-Knights* to their *Stall*, did there invest them with the *Collars* also; as we find in the case of the[g] Earl of *Rutland*, Sir *George Villars*, and Viscount *Lisle*, *an.* 14. *Jac. R.* who being come to their several *Stalls*, were first invested with their *Mantles*, next their *Hoods*, and after that their[h] *Collars*. In like manner did the[i] Earls of *Dorset* and *Holland* invest the Earl of *Suffolk* with the *Collar* in his *Stall*, *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. and thus hath it been observed, at all *Installations* since, where the *Soveraign* hath been present at the Solemnity.

g h *MS. penes E. W. G. f.153.b.*

i *Autogr. penes Camer. Scaccarii.*

As soon as the Ceremony of Investiture, with the *Mantle*, *Hood*, and *Collar*, is finished; the *Commissioners* (or *Knights-Assistants*, or *Knights-Companions*) take the[k] *Book* of the *Statutes* of the *Order*, and deliver it into the hands of the new invested *Knight*. Thus this part of the Ceremony was observed to the[l] Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland* after their Investiture, *an.* 34. *Eliz.* and to the ‖ Earl of *Rutland*, Sir *George Villars*, and Viscount *Lysle*, *an.* 14. *Jac. R.* and so generally to all *Elect-Knights* since.

3 Delivery of the Book of Statutes.

k *MS.*

l *MS. fol. penes G.O.T. p.206.*

‖ *MS. penes E. W. G. f.153.b.*

This *Book* the *Knight* is to keep safe in his own custody, both for instruction and direction, in such things as relate to the *Laws* and *Ceremonies* of this most Noble *Order*, therein contained.

After this, they also give unto him the Black Velvet *Cap*, adorned with Plumes of White Feathers; and this in particular is noted to be the last among the Ceremonies performed at the Installation of the present[m] *Soveraign*.

m *Lib. R. p.* 146.

All things relating to the full *Investiture* being ended, there only remains, to compleat this great Ceremony, the *Installation* it self, which is performed in the following manner.

4. Placing the Knight in his Stall.

The new invested *Knight*, standing before his *Stall*, and turning himself towards the *High Altar*, first makes an humble Reverence thitherward, and after a like obeysance towards the *Soveraign*, or in his absence towards his *Stall*, (Thus is it noted of[q] *William* Lord *Howard*, 1. & 2. *Phil.* & *Mar.*) which having done, the[r] *Commissioners* (or *Assistants* or *Knights-Companions*) forthwith jointly imbrace him, with much joy (as their *Fellow* and *Companion*) according to the Custom of Installations, and set him down in his assigned *Stall*; thereto adding their wishes for his happiness and honor.

q *Ex Collect. J. V. gen:*

r *Lib. C. p.* 110. & *Lib. R p.* 61.

With the like[s] courteous and civil expressions and congratulations, we find this Ceremony was closed to the Lord *Russel*, *an.* 31. *H.* 8. which he answered with equal respect; giving moreover to the *Knights* who installed him, great thanks for the honor of their assistance: and to the Marquess *Dorset* and others installed, *an.* 1. *E.* 6. the *Commissioners* for that Ceremony, added this Vote, [t] *That God would give them much honor*; and after such like Complemental respects have past, the *Commissioners* (or *Knights-Assistants*, or *Knights-Companions*) take their Stalls.

s *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [lib. L.] *pag.* 19.

t *MS. fol penes G.O.T. p.87.*

But we have a notable instance in relation to this Ceremony, at the Installation of *Philip* King of *Castile*, *an.* 22. *H.* 7. where the *Soveraign* himself,[u] solemnly introduced him into his *Stall* (being the[w] next unto his own) and[x] therein placed him. At which action it seems there was a form of words pronounced, relating to the *Elect-Knight's Session* and act of *Installation*, no less than at his *Investiture*, though we are not so happy as to know them: the *Relator* of the manner

u *Lib N. p.* 184.

w x *Ex vet. MS. pen. W. le N. Cl. fol.* 295.

manner and order of this great Ceremony, having in the place of the words added an *&c.* and left a blank for them; but with this short note at the instant of Installation; [y] *The Soveraign saying these words,* Don ſilz, &c.

y *Ex vet. MS. penes W. le N. Cl. fol. 295.*

SECT. VIII.

The Order *observed, when two or more* Knights *are* Installed *in one day.*

WHen there are two or more *Elect-Knights* appointed to receive the honor of *Installation* at one Solemnity; and that the Ceremony is performed by two *Commissioners* (or two *Knights-Assistants*) then as soon as they have finished all the Ceremonies of *Investiture* and *Installation*, due to the senior of them, they leave him so possest of his Stall, and forthwith * return to the *Chapter-house*; the *Proceeding* of *Alms-Knights*, *Officers* of *Arms*, and the inferior *Officers* of the *Order* (after their usual Reverences made in the middle of the *Choire*) passing forth before them, to the *Chapter-house*, and thence they conduct the next senior *Elect-Knight* into the *Choire*, where they perform all the circumstances of *Investiture* and *Installation* to him, as they did to the first Installed *Knight*: Which having finished, they leave him also in his *Stall*, and [a] proceed back as before for the third *Elect-Knight*, and after the like manner do they introduce and instal him, and so the rest (if there be more that wait their Installation) till all be installed.

This seems to have been the ancient practice, for it is noted in the *Annals*, that Viscount *Beaumont*, and the Lord *Sudeley*, *Commissioners* appointed by King *Henry* the Sixth, for the Installation of *Albro Vasques d' Almadea* Earl of *Averence*, the Lord *Beauchamp*, and Sir *Thomas Hoo*; led them into the Choire [b] singly and apart by themselves, and there installed them in their proper Stalls. And thus is it noted of the two *Assistants* at the Installation of the Earl of *Huntingdon* and others, *an.* 1. *E.* 6. who [c] after they had invested and installed the said Earl; [d] proceeded back to the *Chapter-house*, for the Lord *La Ware*, and he being installed, they [e] returned again for the Lord *Cobham*, and lastly for [f] Sir *William Herbert*. In like manner, when the *Commissioners* had given the *Proctor* to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, possession of his Principals Seat, *an.* 1. & 2. *Ph. & Mar.* they [g] proceeded back for *William* Lord *Howard*, and conducted him to his Installation. Thus did the *Commissioners* by the Earl of [h] *Penbroke*, *an.* 16. *Eliz.* when they had first installed the Earl of *Derby*; and by the [i] Earl of *Cumberland*, after the Earl of *Shrewsbury* had been installed.

When the *Soveraign* hath nominated three *Commissioners* to his service, in such case they have returned [k] altogether to fetch in the other *Knights* (after the Ceremonies of Installation were performed to the senior *Elect-Knight*) singly, that were to be installed, and alternately changed their places in the Proceeding to the several Installations: (one of them always going single and formost) an instance whereof we have at the Installation of the Earls of *Essex*, and *Ormond*, and Sir *Christopher Hatton*, *an.* 30. *Eliz.* where the Earl of *Essex* having been first conducted to his Installation, between the Lord *Hunsdon*, and Earl of *Worcester*, the Lord * *Grey* the third *Commissioner* went single next before them, then all three *Commissioners* returned to fetch in the Earl of *Ormond*, who proceeding into the *Choire*, between the Lord *Hunsdon* and Lord *Grey*, the Earl of [l] *Worcester* went alone immediately before them; and his Installation being likewise dispatcht, Sir *Christopher Hatton* was conducted to his Stall, between the Earl of *Worcester* and the Lord *Grey*, the [m] Lord *Hunsdon* in the proceeding going next before them.

If the *Lieutenant* had four *Assistants* appointed him, (which was necessary when there were many *Knights* to be installed) the order of their Installation hath been

* *Ex Collect.* a *J. V. gen. vide MS. penes Arthur. Comit. Anglesey. fol. 119. a.*

b *Lib. N. p. 99.*

c (*MS. fol. penes* d) *G. O. Y.* e) *pag. 80.* f (

g *Collect. J. V.*

h *Collect. R. C. Cl. f. 29.*

i *MS. fol. penes G. O. Y. p. 206.*

k *Collect. R. C. Cl. f. 34.*

* *Lib. C. p. 110.*

l *Ibid. pag.* m *111.*

been as followeth; first two of the senior *Knights-Assistants* conducted the senior *Elect-Knight* to his Installation, next the two other *Assistants* proceeded with the second *Elect-Knight*, and installed him; then again the two senior *Knights-Assistants* introduced the third *Elect-Knight* to his Stall, and in this manner they alternately changed, till all were installed. Thus was it ordered at the Installation of [n] *Francis* Duke of *Montmorency*, and others, *an.* 14. *Eliz.* for at this Solemnity the [o] Earl of *Bedford*, Sir *Henry Sidney*, the Earl of *Worcester*, and the Earl of *Huntington*, were appointed *Assistants* to the Earl of *Leicester* (then the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*) the [p] two first conducted the *Duke* to his Stall, and the two last the Earl of *Essex*, then the two first proceeded again with the Lord *Burghley*, and the two last with the Lord *Grey*, and lastly the two first proceeded a third time, with the Lord *Shandos* between them.

n, o, p *Collect. R. C. Cl. fol. 26.*

And the like method and alternate change is observed, if four *Commissioners* be constituted, as at the Installation of *Frederick* King of *Denmark*, and *John* Prince *Palatine* of the *Rhyne*, *an.* [q] 25. *Eliz.* where the Kings *Proxy* was conducted into the *Choire*, between the Earl of [r] *Leicester*, and Lord *Hunsdon*, being the two senior *Commissioners*, and the *Prince* between the [s] Earl of *Huntingdon*, and the Lord *Charles Howard*, the two junior *Commissioners*.

q, r, s *Ibid. fol. 31.*

But some have been of opinion, that the *Commissioners* nominated to this employment, ought not to divide the duty, and part of them to instal one *Knight*, and part another, and by such an alternation to dispatch the Ceremony, as in the former cases; but on the contrary, that all should jointly assist at each *Installation*. And in favour of this opinion, there is an instance at the *Installation* of the Earl of *Salisbury* and Viscount *Bindon*, *an.* [t] 4. *Jac. R.* for the said Earl, having been brought in to the *Choire*, and both invested and installed by the Earls of *Nottingham* and *Suffolk*, (then the two senior *Commissioners*) the other two *Commissioners*, who were left behind in the *Chapter-house*, to conduct Viscount *Bindon* to his Stall, calling to mind that all four were [u] joint *Commissioners*, conceived that the said Earl was not legally installed by the two other, because themselves had not been assistant at the Ceremony. And upon consultation with the senior *Commissioners*, it seems this opinion prevailed so far with them, that they agreed to impart it to the Earl of *Salisbury*, who thereupon [w] descended into the lower Seats before his Stall, and there all [x] four *Commissioners* gave him his *Oath* again, then led him up into his foresaid Stall, and a second time [y] *Invested* and *Installed* him; each of the four *Commissioners* putting to their hand: and the like [z] joint assistance was given by them to the Viscount *Bindon*, installed at the same time.

t, u *MS. penes E. W. G. f. 147. a.*

w, x, y, z *Ibid.*

But this method was not only new, but different from former practice, for in all like cases as before are cited, we have observed that both the *Knights-Commissioners*, and *Lieutenant's Assistants* have constantly divided the employment, by an alternate change; and besides, where the *Soveraign* hath authorized his *Lieutenant* to perform this Ceremony, and appointed some of the *Knights-Companions* to assist therein, these *Assistants* and not the *Lieutenant* have done the duty appertaining to the *Installation*, that part of it of investing with the *Collar* heretofore in the *Chapterhouse*, and the whole duty at the Installation of Prince *Henry*, excepted.

And it is to be further noted, that this way of joint assistance at the installation of the Earl of *Salisbury*, was afterwards thought so little essential or necessary, that it became no Precedent; for at the very next Feast of Installation, when the [a] Earls of *Dunbar* and *Montgomery* were installed (in the sixth year of the same *King*) and for which Ceremony four *Commissioners* were likewise appointed; the two senior of them installed the Earl of *Dunbar*, and the two junior, the Earl of *Montgomery*; and this we find again in Practice, *an.* 10. *Car.* 1. when the [b] two senior *Commissioners* installed the Earl of *Danby*, and the other two the Earl of *Morton*.

a *Ibid. f. 148. a.*

b *Autogr.*

But in the last place, if the *Soveraign* be present, and consequently that the *Knights-Companions* perform this Ceremony of *Introduction*, *Investiture*, and *Installation*, there is commonly then so many of them, as can go through the

 whole

whole work, without changing by turns, after the manner used when done by a few, either *Commissioners* or *Assistants*, and therefore in this case the order is thus,

First, the two senior *Knights-Companions* (having descended from their *Stalls*, and past out of the *Choire* to the *Chapter-house* with the *Proceeding* before them) conduct to his Installation the eldest *Elect-Knight*, and having performed that whole Ceremony, they return and take their *Stalls* with accustomed Reverences. Then the two next senior *Knights-Companions*, descend and go out, and return with the next senior *Elect-Knight*, to his Installation, and after that two other *Knights-Companions* go out and fetch in the third, and so the rest in due order.

And this method, we observe to have been practised at the Installation of Prince *Henry*, and other *Elect-Knights*, [c] *an.* 1. *Jac. R.* for after the *Prince* had been placed in his Stall, by the Earl of *Nottingham* and Lord *Buckhurst*; the [d] Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, came down from their Stalls, and went to the *Chapter-house*, taking the Proceeding before them, and thence conducted the Duke of *Lenox* to his *Stall*, and returned to their own. In like manner the [e] Earls of *Northumberland* and *Worcester*, went next out for the Earl of *Southampton*; and having installed him, the [f] Lord *Sheffield*, and Lord *Howard* of *Walden*, past forth of the *Choire*, and brought in the Earl of *Marr*; and lastly, the [g] Lord *Montjoy* and Earl of *Sussex*, Installed the Earl of *Penbroke*.

c Lib. C. pag. 151. d vide fis MS. fol. e penes E. W. f G. f. 144. b g

The like order was observed at the Installation of the [h] Earl of *Rutland*, and others, *an.* 14. *Jac. R.* who having been left behind in the *Chapter-house*, while the *Soveraign* proceeded to the *Choire*, were afterwards by several *Knights-Companions* ([i] the seniors going out first) introduced to their Installations; one after another, according to the seniority of their Election.

h Ibid. f. 153 a

i Lib C. p. 188.

But to be more particular in the order of the Ceremony in this case, we shall lay down the method observed at the grand Feast of St. *George*, held at *Windesor*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 2. which was as followeth.

First, the two *senior-Knights*, the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Berkshire*, descended from their Stalls with the usual Reverences, and stood before them.

Next the *Alms-Knights* came down in a body, from the hault paces of the *Altar*, into the middle of the *Choire*, and having there made their double obeysances proceeded forth.

After them the *Officers* of *Arms* descended also (the *Pursuivants* formost) and having made the double Reverences in the middle of the *Choire*, went out after the *Alms-Knights*.

Then followed the three inferiour *Officers* of the *Order*, having first made their usual Reverences.

And lastly, the two *senior Knights* joining together in the middle of the *Choire*, (after their double Reverences) past out in the Rear.

In this order they proceeded towards the *Chapter-house*; and when the *Alms-Knights* came neer the door, they fell off and divided themselves; the like did the *Officers* of *Arms*, and both thereby opened a way for the *Officers* of the *Order*, and *Knights-Companions*, to pass between them into the *Chapter-house*; where being entred, they first brought forth the Duke of *Oromnd* (the senior *Elect-Knight*) and taking him in the middle between them, the *Proceeding* went before into the *Choire*, in the same order as it came thence, *Garter* then bearing (on a Velvet Cushen) his *Mantle*, *Hood*, *Collar*, and *Book* of *Statutes*.

The *Alms-Knights* being entred the *Choire*, made their double obeysances in the usual place, and ascended the hault-paces of the *Altar*, flanking on the other side.

After them, the *Officers* of *Arms* did the like.

Then the three inferiour *Officers* of the *Order*, coming up into the middle of the *Choire*, made their double Reverences, and so passed before the *Knights* to the place directly under the *Stall* designed for the *Duke*, whither he (conducted as aforesaid) followed, after that he and the two *Knights-Companions* had also made their usual Reverences, in the middle of the *Choire*; for the Croud was so great through the concourse of People to this grand Festival that the *Knights-Companions*

Companions could not pass into the lower row of Stalls with the Duke, (being the usual place for the *Elect-Knight* to be brought unto) but were necessitated to invest him below in the *Choire.*

After the *Duke* was *Invested* and *Installed*, the *Proceeding* (ordered in all points as before) went again to the *Chapter-house*, and brought the Duke of *Buckingham* into the *Choire*, where he received his Installation, in the manner aforesaid.

But the day being far spent, and these *Proceedings* to and from the *Chapter-house* taking up much time; the *Soveraign* to shorten the Ceremony, commanded that with the next *Proceeding*, all the rest of the *Elect-Knights*, being eight, (beside two *Proxies*) should be introduced at once; which command being obeyed, and each *Elect-Knight* placed before his *Stall*, they took the *Oath*, received their *Investiture*, were led up to their *Stalls*, and took possession of them by a solemn *Installation.*

And in regard so many *Elect-Knights* were introduced together, it was thought fit (because necessary) that their *Mantles* and *Collars* should be also brought in the Proceeding, and to effect this, each *Knight-Elect* appointed one of the Gentlemen that attended on him, to bear the Cushen (whereon his *Mantle* and *Collar* were laid) before him to the *Choire* door, which was accordingly done; and where they stood holding them in their arms, until *Garter* had in due order (as they were to be made use of) fetched them into the *Choire.*

And here we may insert this general Rule, That at all *Installations* where some of the *Elect-Knights* are not sent for in to the *Chapter-house*, to receive investiture with the *Surcoat* (before the senior *Elect-Knight* hath been conducted to his *Stall*, but left to repose themselves, in the *East Isle* of the *Chappel*, during his Installation (as hath many times happened) the *Knights-Commissioners* or *Assistants*, upon their return to the *Chapter-house*, send *Garter* for the next senior *Elect-Knight*, whom they receive at the door thereof, and having invested him with his *Surcoat*, and girt his *Sword* about him, proceed with him to his Installation in the usual order: and the same method is observed, if there be more *Elect-Knights* that wait their calling into the *Chapter-house*. And thus we find it practised to Sir [k] *Thomas Cheney*, and Sir *William Kingston*, *an.* 30. *H.* 8. after the *Knights-Assistants* had returned from the Installation of the Lord *Russell*; and to the Earl of [l] *Penbroke*, as soon as the *Knights-Commissioners* had installed the Earl of *Derby*, *an.* 16. *Eliz.* as also to the Earl of [m] *Cumberland*, when the *Commissioners* returned from the Installation of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, *an.* 34. *Eliz.* and lastly to the [n] Earl of *Morton*, after the Earl of *Danby* had received his Stall, *an.* 10. *Car.* 1.

k *MS. in Offic. Armor.* [L. 1.] *pag.* 19.
l *Collect. J. V. gen.*
m *MS. fol. penes G. O. T. p.* 206.
n *Autogr.*

The *Knight* or *Knights* having now received a compleat *Installation*, the *Knights-Commissioners* (*Knights-Assistants*; or *Knights-Companions*) with all civil respect take their leaves of the last *installed Knight*, and descend into the *Choire*, and with usual Reverences take their own Stalls, but the senior *Knight-Companion* ascends first. Where note, if the Stalls of the *Commissioners*, or *Assistants*, or *Knights-Companions* be on the same side with the last *installed Knight*, they then descend not into the *Choire*, but (after their Reverences made above) pass directly to them along the Stalls, and this we find done by the Lord [o] *Howard* of *Effingham*, and the Earl of *Ormond*, *an.* 34. *Eliz.* when they had finished the Installation of the Earl of *Cumberland.*

o *Ex eod. MS. fol. penes G. O. T. in loc. cit.*

The Ceremonies and Circumstances of *Installation* being finished, the *Officers* of *Arms* first, next the *Alms-Knights* descend from the Steps of the *Altar*, and take their several stations in the *Choire.* Then one of the *Prebends* of the *Colledge* (but if the *Soveraign* be present, the *Prelate* with the *Serjeant* of the *Vestry* before him) is conducted to the *Altar* by the *Verger* of the *Chappel*, and there begins the *Service* appointed by the *Church*, which being finished, the *Proceeding* passeth out of the *Choire* in the usual order (the new installed *Knight* being ranked according to his Stall) either to the *Presence Chamber*, or the *Lieutenants*, or *Commissioners' Lodgings*, as the occasion is.

SECT. IX.

The Offring *of Gold and Silver.*

BUT if the *Inſtallation* be ſolemnized in the morning, the *Service* of the *Church* having proceeded as far as the *Offertory*, two of the *Prebends* (appointed to receive the *Offring*) are conducted to the *Altar* by their *Verger*, and forthwith firſt the *Alms-Knights*, and then the *Officers* of *Arms* aſcend again to the ſteps of the *Altar*, and ſtank on each ſide as before.

After this, *Garter* ſummons down the *Knights-Companions* to the *Offering*; who deſcend with uſual Reverences, and ſtand in the *Choire* under their proper Stalls, whilſt the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant* deſcends from his Stall, and offers (firſt) for the *Soveraign* (he receiving the *Bezant* from the *ſenior Knight*) and then returns to his Stall.

And at this inſtant was the uſual time heretofore for offring the defunct *Knights Atchievements*; which by King *James* his appointment was altered, and ordained to be performed before the *Elect-Knights* were inſtalled; of which we ſhall ſpeak * anon.

* *Chap.* 25.

The *Lieutenant* after a ſhort ſtay in his Stall, deſcends again, and proceeds up to the *Altar* to make his own Offring both of *Gold* and *Silver*, and then returns; and after him do the reſt of the *Knights-Companions* (including thoſe newly inſtalled) offer in their due order, the circumſtances we ſhall largely ſet down in our diſcourſe upon the *Offring* on the || *Grand Feaſt-day*.

|| *Chap.* 21.

But when the *Inſtallation* paſſeth by [p] *Commiſſioners*, there is then [q] no *Offring* made for the *Soveraign*; but the *Commiſſioners* offer firſt, beginning with the two [r] Seniors, and after them the other *Knights-Companions* in their due order.

p { *Colleft. R.*
q { *C.Cl.f.*33.
r *MS.*

The Ceremony of *Offring* at the Inſtallation of [t] *Philip* King of *Caſtile*, *an.* 22. *H.* 7. is remarkable, and therefore we ſhall note it here: For he deſcending from his Stall into the *Choire*, and [t] ſtanding before it (as the other *Knights-Companions* did) the *Soveraign* left his royal Stall, and haſtned down to proceed to the *Offring*; to which the King would have [u] followed, this the *Soveraign* would not permit, but obliged the King to proceed along with him [w] on his left hand, though he [x] deſired to perform his duty as a *Brother* of the *Order*, and *Knight-Companion*, ſo that at laſt they both made their *Offrings*, [y] ſo neer together, that though the *Soveraign* had the precedence, yet was it hardly obſervable.

t { *Ex vet. MS.*
*penes W. le N. Cl.f.*295.*b.*
u *Lib.N.p* 185.
w { *Ex eod.*
x { *vet. MS.*
y *Lib.N.loc.cit.*

SECT. X.

Of the Grand Dinner *at the* Inſtallation.

ON the day of Inſtallation, there hath from ancient time been accuſtomably prepared, a very ſumptuous and noble *Feaſt*; and though it was agreed on in *Chapter*, *an.* 3. *E.* 6. [a] *That the* Knights-Elect *from thenceforth might be inſtalled by Commiſſion without a Feaſt*, yet after his Reign, we find the old uſage of making a *Feaſt* at this Solemnity reſtored.

a *Lib.N.p.*302 *videfis lib. vocat. Dalton. p.*129.*b.*

If the *Soveraign* appoint the Inſtallation to be when the Feaſt of St. *George* is alſo celebrated, and himſelf perſonally preſent, the *Feaſt* is then kept at the *Soveraign*'s charge.

If in ſuch caſe he conſtitute a *Lieutenant*, the Inſtallation Dinner is kept at the expence of the *Lieutenant*; and uſually prepared in ſome of the *Soveraign*'s *Lodgings*

Lodgings in the *Castle*, but seldom in St. *George's Hall*; though [b] there, the Earl of *Arundel*, at the Installation of the Earl of *Shrewsbury* and Lord *Hunsdon*, kept his Feast, *an.* 3. *Eliz.*

[b] *MS penes W. D. N. f. 5. b.*

But when the *Installation* is kept at any other time of the year, without the joint observation of St. *George's Feast*, then the [c] new installed *Knight* or *Knights* are at all the charge; who for the most part have had the *Grand Dinner* prepared at the *Dean's Lodgings*. Nevertheless, where ever it is appointed, thither do the *Soveraign* (his *Lieutenant* and *Assistants*, or *Commissioners*) together with the new installed *Knights* proceed in full Robes, which at the *Installation* of the [d] Marquess of *Dorset* and other *Knights*, *an.* 1. *E.* 6. we find noted to be [e] *according to the ancient custom.*

[c] *Collect. R. C. Cl. f. 34.*

[d] *MS. penes G. O. T. f. 87.*

At the *Installation* of the Lord *Russell*, Sir *Thomas Cheney*, and Sir *William Kingston*, *an.* 31. *H.* 8. the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* [f] washed alone, the water being brought up with three Reverences; after him did his two *Assistants* wash, and lastly the three new installed *Knights*.

[f] *MS. in Offic. Armor. [L. 1.] pag. 19.*

The *Lieutenant's* place at the Table, is somewhat on the [g] left hand the cloth of State, and there sat the Earl of *Arundell*, *Lieutenant* for St. *George's Feast*, when the Earl of *Shrewsbury* and Lord *Hunsdon* were installed, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* But the other four *Knights-Companions* (his two *Assistants*, and the two new installed *Knights*) sat towards the [h] Tables end on both sides, for that they could not well sit all on a side.

[g] [h] *MS penes W. D. N. f. 5. b.*

But of late times, *viz.* at the [i] Installation of the Earl of *Northampton an.* 5. *Car.* 1. a question was started, whether the *Lieutenant* (or *Commissioners*) should sit at Dinner in their *Habit*, or not? since the powers given them by their *Commissions*, seem to terminate as soon as the *Knights* are installed (though it was allowed that the new installed *Knight* ought to sit in his Robes) as also because at the Installation of the [k] Lord *Cromwell*, *an.* 29. *H.* 8. after all the Ceremonies were finished in the *Chappel*, the *Knights* went to the *Deans* house, and there put off their *Habit*, and [l] dined in their ordinary Apparel. So also at the Installation of the Earl of [m] *Rutland*, and Lord *Cobham*, *an.* 26. *Eliz.* the *Commissioners* when they were returned from the *Chappel*, did put off the [n] *Habit* of the *Order*, before they went to Dinner, and the new installed *Knights* kept on [o] only their *Surcoats*; and thus sat all Dinner while.

[i] *Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

[k] [l] *Ex lib. vocat. Dalton. pag. 119. b.*

[m] [n] [o] *Autogr.*

What was answered to these objections, or whether they dined without their *Habit*, we do not find; but the practice to the contrary, to wit, of keeping on the whole *Habit* till the grand Dinner be ended, hath been at other times generally observed.

At the [a] second *Course* (called also the [b] second *Mess*, and second [c] *Service*) doth *Garter* (accompanied with the *Officers* of *Arms*) proclaim the *Stiles*, and *Titles* of *honor* of the *Soveraign* (if he be personally or by *Lieutenant* present) in *Latin*, *French*, and *English*, and crys *Largess* thrice: next the *Stiles* of the new installed *Knights* in *French* or *English* only, with two *Largesses*, and in that order they were installed. Thus was it done at the installation of [d] *Charles* Duke of *York an.* 9. *Jac. R.* of [e] *Frederick* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne an.* 10. *Jac. R.* of the [f] Earl of *Rutland*, and others, *an.* 14. *Jac. R.*

[a] *MS. penes Edw. Faucon-bridge gen. videsis MS. fol. penes W. D. N. fol. 5. b. & 12. b*

[b] [c] *MS. fol. penes E. W. G. f. 151. a. & 153. b.*

[d] [e] [f] *Ibid.*

[g] *Philip* King of *Castile* dined with the *Soveraign* in his *Privy Chamber*, the day of his installation *an.* 22. *H.* 7. whose Stile was proclaimed by *Garter* not in the same Room, but at the *Soveraign's* [h] great *Chamber-door*, and in St. *George's Hall* (after *Largess* had been thrice cryed) in this manner.

[g] [h] [i] *Ex vet. MS. penes W. le N. Cl. f. 30.*

> [i] *Du treshault trespuissant trescxcellent Prince, le Roy de Castile de Leon & de Granade Archduc Daustrich, Duc de Bourgoine, & Chevalier de la tres-noble Ordre de la Jartier.*

When the *Soveraign* constitutes a *Lieutenant*, then is the *Lieutenant's Stile* also proclaimed, and to his other Titles is added that of this present honor of *Lieutenantship*; and afterwards the *Stiles* of the new installed *Knights*; which we find noted at the installation of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, and Lord *Hunsdon*, *an.* 3.

an. 3. *Eliz.* where *Garter* and the *Officers* of *Arms* proceeded into the middle of St. *George*'s Hall (the *Grand Dinner* being held there) and after three obeysances, proclaimed their Stiles (only in *French*) as followeth.

k *MS. penes W. D. N f. 5. b.*

k *Du tres-noble & puissant Seigneur,* Henry Fytz Allen, *Conte de Arundell, Seigneur Matravers, & de Clun, Chevalier du tres-noble Ordre de la Jartier, & Lieutenant de cest noble Feste de St.* George.

Du tres-noble & puissant Seigneur, George *Conte de* Shrewsbury, *Seigneur Talbot, Furnivall, Verdon, & Strange de Blakmer, Chevalier du tres-noble Ordre de la Jartier, & Justicier des Forrestz & Chasez, de la Riviere de Trent envers le North.*

Du tres-noble Seigneur Henry Cary, *Baron de Hunsdon, Chevalier du tres-noble Ordre de la Jartier.*

The order of this Ceremony is more particularly noted at the Installation of the Duke of *Montmorency*, and others, *an.* 14. *Eliz.* and was thus; first o *Garter* cryed *Largess*, and next proclaimed the *Soveraign*'s Stile, and Titles of honor, in three Languages, then going two foot back, he proclaimed the *Lieutenants* Stile only in *French*, with two *Largesses*, after that he cryed one Largess for the *Duke*, and lastly for all the other new installed *Knights*, only two *Largesses*, and the other *Officers* of *Arms* did the like; and still as *Garter* had finished his proclamation of the Stiles, the *Heralds* joined with him in crying *Largess*; and so with Reverence they departed the *Hall*.

o *Collect. R. C. Cl. fol. 27.*

But we are in the last place to note, that when neither the *Soveraign* is present, nor his *Lieutenant*, then the *Soveraign*'s Stile is p not proclaimed, nor those of the q *Commissioners*, but only of the r new installed *Knights*.

p q r *Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

Assoon as *Dinner* is ended, the *Knights-Companions* rise from the Table, and withdraw to disrobe themselves, and therewith the Solemnity of *Installation* takes ending: but if at any time the Solemnities continue to that evening and the following day; it is only, because the *Soveraign* (or his *Lieutenant*) is present, upon the account of celebrating the Feast of St. *George*, and not with reference to the Solemnity of Installation.

We shall conclude with this Observation, that the ancient custom of preserving the memory of remarkable actions by some Emblematical Representations, Figures and Devises (whereof, for the last Century, s *Lukius* affords plenty of Examples) is still continued in use; and therefore upon consideration had of the honor they thereby brought the persons to whom they related, was it, that the late *Soveraign*, of ever blessed memory, thought fit to perpetuate the Solemnity of the present *Soveraign*'s Installation, by certain *Medals*; whereof the forms and inscriptions were these.

s *Sylloge Numismatum Elegantiorum.*

SECT.

SECT. XI.

Of setting up the Knights Atchievments.

THE last thing to be done, at this great Solemnity, is setting up the *Helm*, *Crest*, *Sword*, *Banner*, and *Plate* of the new installed *Knight*, over his *Stall*, in the *Chappel* of St. *George* at *Windsor*; to which purpose they are to be provided in readiness, according to the [a] directions before given. This, though it be no part of the Ceremony of *Installation*, yet is it a consequent thereunto, and an unseparable appendix; and therefore proper enough to be added here.

a *Chap.* 11. *Sect.* 7.

The setting up of *Trophies*, *Ensigns*, and *Atchievements* of honor anciently in *Churches*, as well in the life time of such worthy and deserving men, who had performed some gallant action, as on their Tombs and Monuments after their death, was chiefly designed to this end; that the Beholders thereby put in mind of their great virtues, might be excited to the imitation and pursuit of true *Nobility*, *Valour*, and *Virtue*.

Hereupon at the *Institution* of this most Noble *Order*, the *Atchievements* of the *Knights-Companions*, were thought fit to be set up in the *Choire* of the said *Chappel*; and hence also the remarkable *Plates*, wherein their *Escotcheons* of *Arms*, curiously wrought in enamel, were fastned to the back of their *Stalls*. "[b] Not that the outward form of such things, have in them any great force; but that the memory of great actions done, beget that ardour in the breasts of excellent persons, which never is at rest, till some eminent atchievements of theirs have overtaken the others fame and glory.

b *Lib.N. p.*10.

By the *Statutes* of *Institution* it is ordained, that the time for setting up the *Atchievements* shall be [c] when the *Elect-Knight* comes to *Windesor Castle*, that is, to his *Installation*, and not before; and the reason is there likewise given, [d] lest it should happen (he not coming within the time limited for his *Installation*, and consequently the vacating his *Election* thereupon ensuing) that a new Election being made, those *Military Ensigns* might seem to be disgracefully withdrawn, and an [e] occasion of dishonor given, which otherwise could not be avoided, if they should be suddenly taken down from a place so high.

c *E.*3. *Stat. Art.* 19.
d *Ord. Stat. in Bibliith. Hatton Art.* 19.
e *Ord. Stat. in Lib.N. p.*18.

Now 'tis most clear, that the intention of this *Article* extends to the finishing the Ceremonies of *Installation*, before the *Atchievements* ought to be set up, by so carefully providing against the dishonor of taking them down, in case the *Election* should become void, which must certainly happen, if the *Knight-Elect* died but the hour before he were compleatly installed. And accordingly in the ancient Deputations both to [f] Sir *William Philip*, and Sir *John Fastolf* power is given their *Proctors* first to demand, receive, and obtain their Principals *Stalls*, and next to tender their *Helms* and *Swords*, to be hung up in the *Choire* of *Windesor* according to custom: and for clearer information of the order and course in this Ceremony, it may be observed, that the *Soveraign* impowered his *Commissioners* * first to give the *Deputy* possession of his Principals *Stall*, and after to receive the *Atchievements*, and place them over it. Herewith it may be considered, That the *Atchievements* are set up in memorial of the *Knight-Elect*'s being installed a *Companion* of the *Order*; and 'tis incongruous in the rules of Honor, to have the sign or memorial of an action, precede the action it self.

f *Appendix, Num.* XLIX. *and* L.
* *Appendix, Num.* LI.

Again, the *Statutes* of this most Noble *Order* expresly provide, That the *Knights Atchievements* shall not be permitted to be hung up, until all the [g] *Duties* and *Fees* enjoined by the *Statutes*, to be paid the *Colledge*, be first discharged: but 'tis certain there are no Fees due (and consequently cannot be challenged) till the Ceremonies upon which they become due are compleatly finished. And it is remembered as the Custom in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, for the *Elect-Knights* [h] Steward, or some other of his Servants, to bring money with them to *Windesor*, and

g *E.*3. *Stat. H.* 5. *Art.*22 *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.*24.
h *Collect. A. V.W.*

and there pay the *Fees* at the *Chappel door*, so soon as the *Installation* was dispatcht, to the end the *Atchievements* might immediately after be set up.

But to clear all doubts which may arise upon this point, it was in a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall*, the 4. of *February*, *an.* 22. *Car.* 2. Ordained and Decreed,* *That not any of the* Atchievements *of an* Elect-Knight *shall be set up in the Chappel at* Windesor, *before he be* Installed *and the* Fees *of* Installation *paid.*

* *Lib. Carolin.* p. 81.

It should seem that though anciently they did not set up the *Elect-Knights Atchievements* before he was installed, yet were they prepared and brought to *Windesor*, and disposed of or [i] set before his *Stall*: and in case of his not coming to receive Installation, then (being no otherwise placed) might be the easier removed without the *Choire*, in as decent a manner as could be, that so the honor of * *Knighthood* might be preserved entire; nevertheless to be thenceforth kept for || publick use, and benefit of the *Colledge*.

i E. 3. *Stat.* *Art.* 19.

* *Ord. Stat.* || *in Lib. N.* p. 18.

Where we find mention made in the *Annals* of any person employed to set up the *Atchievements* of a *Knight*, it is to be understood, that he was his *Proctor*, and installed on the behalf of that *Knight* whose Atchievements he so hung up. And the Lord [k] *Fitz Hugh*, who set up the *Atchievements* of the King of *Denmark*, *an.* 9. *H.* 6. took also possession of that Kings Stall, for, and on his behalf, and in his name.

k *Lib.N.p.*64.

There is but a single instance (as we remember) where one man hung up a *Knights Atchievements*, and another was installed for him: and this hapned, *an.* 29. *H.* 6. where the Lord [l] *Ryvers*, having been Elected to the Stall of the Lord *Hungerford*, the [m] 4. of *August* that year, his *Sword* and *Helm* were hung up on the 8. of *September* next after, by *William* [n] *Bolden* his Esq; and *Guyen Herald*, and he installed the [o] 30. of *October* following, by Sir [p] *William Crafford* his *Proctor*: But this was contrary to the Law of the *Order*.

l *Ibid.p.*105.
m *Regist. Chart.f.*28 *b.*
n Bouden, *ib.*
o *Ibid.*
p

Moreover, where the setting up of a *Knights-Atchievements*, is barely mentioned without taking notice of the *Installation*, it is to be understood, that such *Knights* Installation was also solemnized at that time: as in the ease of the [q] King of *Portugal*, concerning whom the *Annals* only [r] note, that he had taken care to set up over his *Stall* his *Helm*, *Sword*, and *Banner*, and all things belonging thereunto, at the Feast celebrated at *Windesor*, *an.* 2. *H.* 6.

q *Lib.* N.
r *pag.*76.

In what manner and order these *Atchievements* are fixed, will partly appear from the *Statutes*, *viz.* the [s] *Helm* and *Crest*, are thereby appointed to be set over each *Knight-Companion*'s Stall, and the *Sword* to hang directly underneath them. But the *Plate* is nailed to the Back of the *Knights Stall.*

s E. 3. *Stat.* *Art.* 9. *vide* *Ord. Stat. in* *Bibl.Hatton.* *Art.* 9.

And here for a *Corollary* to this *Chapter*, let us add, That as the *Statutes* of two of the most noted *Orders* of *Knighthood* in Christendom, have in them the substance of those of the *Garter*, and being of later Institution, cannot but be acknowledged Copies from this Original; so we here think it requisite, to exhibit the manner of *Investiture* with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order of St. *Michael*, of our King *Edward* the Sixth, *Thomas* Duke of *Norfolk*, and *Robert* Earl of *Leicester*, to the end the *Reader* may also observe, that the order of our *Ceremonies* used at the *Investiture* of a *Knight-Companion* of the *Garter*, is also the Precedent to theirs of St. *Michael.*

The manner of receiving the Order *of Saint* Mychaell, *by King* Edward *the Sixth.*

*MS. penes Arthur Comit. Anglesey f.*87.a

FIrst, *the* King's Majesty *to be in his Privy Chamber, accompanied with his Noble-men, and all them of the* Order *of the* Garter, *to have their Collars about their necks, and the* French *King's* Ambassador *to enter with the* Order, *and so after his obeysance, the proposition to be given, and after the proposition done, the* King's Majesty *must put off his uppermost garment, the* Ambassador *shall invest him with the Robes of that, and afterwards, when the* King *is full invested, then all the Noblemen to proceed afore the* King, *and the* Ambassadors *which be in* Commission *to go afore the* King, *with the Noble-men, in order, to the* Chappel, *and after*

after them the two French Lords, *then the* King *of* Arms, *then the* Sword, *then the* King's Majeſty *himſelf, then the Lord* Chamberlain, *and the* Vice-Chamberlain *to bear the train of the Robes, and in this order to proceed to the* Chappel, *and the* King *to go into his* Stall, *and the other into their* Stalls, *and at the* Offering *time the* King's Majeſty *to Offer, and the greateſt man about the* King *to give the* King *his* Offring, *and then the two other to Offer according to their Eſtates; when the* King *is in his Stall, and when all the Service is done, they to proceed in like order, as they came to the* Chappel, *to the place appointed for Dinner, and none to ſit at the* King's *Board, but only the two* Knights *which be of the ſame* Order *of* France; *and after Dinner, the* King's Majeſty *to put off his* Robes, *and to wear ſuch Apparel as ſhall pleaſe his* Majeſty. *Note, the* King's Majeſty *when he paſſeth by the* French *King's* Stall, *is to make but only a beck with his head.*

Add hereunto, That King *Edward* the Sixth obſerved the Anniverſary of St. *Michael*, after the ſame manner and order as *Strangers* were long before obliged to do that of St. *George*; and cauſed his * *Arms*, ſurrounded with the *Order* of St. *Michael* to be ſet up in his *Chappel* at *Hampton Court*, each *Michaelmas-day* after his acceptation of that *Order*, during his life. * *Collect. E. W. G.*

The order and manner of furniſhing the Chappel *at the* Queen's *Palace of* Weſtminſter, *againſt* Thurſday *the* 24. *of* January 1565. *Anno* 8. Eliz. Reginæ, *that the Duke of* Norfolk *and Earl of* Leiceſter *received the* Order *of* Saint Michael *there.*

ITem, *the ſaid* Chappel, *both before and behind the* Stalls *to the ground, was hanged with rich Arras, and the upper part from the Table of Adminiſtration, to the Stalls, hanged with like Stuff, which ſaid Table was richly garniſhed with Plate and Jewels as followeth. First, to the wall was ſet in a row five gilt Baſins, and afore them another row, and in the middle a gilt Croſs between two great gilt Cups covered, garniſhed with Stone, a Ship or Ark likewiſe garniſhed, a Fountain of Mother of Pearl, and a pair of gilt Candleſticks; afore that another row, in the middle whereof was ſet a rich Baſon and Ewer gilt railed over with Gold, between two great Mawdlyn Cups with Covers, two great Leywres, two Cruets, and a Pax all gilt, and ouer the ſaid Table on the wall upon the Arras was faſtned a fronte of Cloth of Silver, embroidered with Angels of Gold, and before the ſaid Table to the ground, a front of the ſame ſuit.* MS. f. 24. b.

The Dean's *Stall was garniſhed with Cuſhens, and a rich Cloth of Eſtate, whereon was ſet within a black Table, the Arms of the* French *King, within his own* Order, *under a Crown Imperial, the ground palee of 6. Blue, White and Orenge Tawney, without any Style.*

Then on the ſame ſide over the 6. Stall *on the Arras hanged a like Table, with the Arms within the Order, Creſt and Supporters of the* Deputy, *Mounſieur* Remboilliet (*with a Cuſhen before him*) *the Table palee of ſix* Ar. *and* Sa. *the Arms*, Sab. *a* Saulter Ar. *the Creſt a* Lyon couchant Ar. *collored* Or, *his Supporters two* Woodmen *with Clubs in their hands the great end downward, and under his Style written, viz.* Meſſier *Jaques D'augennes* Seigneur de Remboilliet Chivaler de L'ordre du Roy, & Capitaine des Cinquantes hommes des Armes de ſes Ordonnances.

On the other ſide on the Arras over the eight Stall *hanged a little Table palee of ſix* Ar. *and* Gu. *with the Arms within that* Order *of the Duke of* Norfolk, *under a Dukes Crown, with no Creſt, nor Supporters, but his Style*, De treſhault, puiſſant & treſnoble Prince, *Thomas* Duc de *Norfolk* Conte Mariſhall D'angleterre, Seigneur de Mowbrey Segrave & de Brews, Chivaler de treſnoble Ordre de la Jarritier, & auſſi du treſnoble Ordre de St. Michell.

On the third Stall beneath on the ſame ſide, hanged a like Table Palee of ſix, Or & Az. *with the Arms in that Order of the Earle of* Leiceſter, *under an Earls Crown, without Creſt or Supporters; but his Style*, Du treſnoble & puiſſant Seigneur *Robert*

Conte de *Leicester*, Baron de Denbeigh, Chivaler du tres-noble &c. & Grand Escuyer de la Royne nostre Souveraigne.

On the ground before the Duke *and* Earls Stall, *stood two Chairs with Cushens for them to sit on, if they pleased, till they took their Stalls. And about the Stalls on the South side was set a Chair, Carpet, and Cushen, where the* Embassador Leger *sate all the Ceremony time, And below afore the* Deputy's *Stall was set a Form, covered with a Carpet for* Monsieur Doze *alias St.* Michell, *to sit on; And above that on either side were Tables and Forms, for the Gentlemen and Children of the Chappel.*

The receiving of the said Order *of St.* Michaell, Thursday *the* 24. *of* January, Anno 8. Reg. Elizab.

Fol. 25. ITem, *about* 10. *of the Clock the said day, the* Embassador Leger, *with Mounsieur* Remboilliet *the French King's* Deputy, *together with the other Lords and Gentlemen accompanied with certain English Gentlemen, came to the Court at the* Queen's *Palace of* Westminster, *where, at the Gate, they were met by the Earl of* Warwick *and others, and conveyed up to the* Queen's *great* Closset, *whither after a while came the Duke of* Norfolk *and Earl of* Leicester; *And for that the said* Duke *and* Deputy, *had not till then seen either other, they then embraced each other, and then communed a while; And then the said* Deputy *left the same Lords there, and he with Mounsieur* Doze *alias St.* Michaell, *Mr.* Garter *and others, went down through the* Chappel *into the* Vestry, *where he shifted him, into the Robes and Habit of the* Order *of St.* Michaell *as followeth.*

First, Having on afore his Hose, Shoos, Girdle, and Scaberd of White Velvet, he there put on a Cote with Sleeves of Cloth of Silver, the edges laid with Gold Lace, and over that his Mantle *of Cloth of Silver broad garded with Scallop shells, environed with Clowds and Rays of the Sun, and other Embroidery of Gold very richly, lined with White Taffeta, and on the right shoulder it was tyed, and turned up on the left shoulder, to put his Arm underneath, at, and over that on his right shoulder, lay his* Hood *of Crimson Velvet, spreading all over his back, the Tippet over his breast, the end put under the Hood, on the left shoulder, garded and embroidered like the Mantle; And over th' oder lay the* Collar *of Gold, made with Knots and Scallop shells, whereat hanged the Picture of St.* Michaell, *garnished with Stones. And whiles the said Deputy was shifting him, the* Duke *and* Earl *came down into the Chappel, apparelled as followeth, And first, the* Duke *with his Shoes, Hose, Girdle, and Scabbard of White Velvet, his neather Stockings of white Silk knit, his Cote with the Sleeves on of Cloth of Silver, the edges laid with Gold Lace, and in a short* Gown *of Russet Velvet, garded with the same, furred with Leopards, and faced with Lisards, the sleeves set with eighteen pair of Agglets of Gold, and a* Cap *of black Velvet with a Silver band; the Earl of* Leicester *likewise in all points apparelled, but that his* Gown *was Russet Satten, garded with Velvet, furred and faced as the other, the Sleeves set with thirty pair of Aglets of Gold, and in his* Cap *a White Feather, and so the* Duke *and* Earl *being come into the* Chappel, *stood beneath on the ground, before their Arms and Stalls, And then they there staying, proceeded forth of the* Vestry *into the* Chappel *two Noblemen, named Mounsieur* Cleremont *and Mounsieur* de Luppe *carrying the two* Mantles *and* Hoods *in their arms, after them Mounsieur* Doze *alias Saint* Michaell *King of Arms, carrying the two* Collars *lying on a Cushen upon his arms, without any Cote of Arms, but wearing about his neck, hanging at a Riband, at his breast the Arms of* France, *within the* Order *of Gold, After him followed the* Deputy Remboilliet, *doing reverence to his* Majesty's Stall *as he passed by, and there went up and stood with his back to the Communion Table, The* Embassador *then standing somewhat near him; Then St.* Michaell *went and brought the* Duke *and* Earl *to the* Deputy, *afore whom his* Secretary *read the* Commission, *whereby he had authority from the* King *his Master, to make those two Noblemen* Knights *of the* Order *of St.* Michaell, *which read out, on Cushens they two kneeled down, and the* Deputy *himself read unto them their*

their Oaths, *which ended they ſtood up, and then* Doze *alias St.* Michell *took off their two* Gowns, *and they two again kneeled down, and the two Lords, Mounſieur* Cleremont *and Mounſieur* de Lupe, *preſented the* Mantles *and* Hoods *to the* Deputy, *who put on the ſame. Firſt that on the* Duke, *and then the other on the* Earl *himſelf, reading unto them the ſignification thereof, And then the ſaid* Deputy *put on their* Collers, *likewiſe reading the ſignification thereof, which ſaid* Mantles, Hoods, Collers, *and* Cotes *were ſent them by the* French *King, and were in all points like to the* Deputy's *afore declared, and the* Cotes *were ſent them to their Chambers afore they came, where they put them on. Then the* Deputy *with St.* Michell *before him, and the other two following proceeded down, and after reverence done to the* King's *Stall, took theirs, the* Deputy *firſt, the* Duke *next, and the* Earl *laſt. Then the Prayers, as the Letany and Commemoration began, and at the* Offring *time, the* Deputy *came forth of his Stall, and ſtood in the middle of the* Chappel, *below, before his Stall, and made his obeyſance both to the Table, and his* Maſters Stall, *and then proceeded with St.* Michell *before him, up to the* Offring, *making as he paſſed by a beck to either of his Companions (they ſitting or ſtanding ſtill in their Stalls) which Offring ended, he returned and took his Stall. Then the Duke of* Norfolk *came forth making obeyſance to the* French *King's Stall and proceeded up with St.* Michell *before him, and Offered and returned to his Stall. And then the Earl of* Leieeſter *likewiſe offered. Then the Service being ended, with reverence to the* King's *Stall, they proceeded forth of the* Chappel, *firſt St.* Michell, *then the* Earl, *then the* Duke, *laſt the* Deputy, *till they came into the* Counſel Chamber, *where they dyned, all three ſitting in three Chairs on one ſide of the Table, which Dinner ended, they went all three into the* Privy Chamber *to the* Queen, *and after a while came forth into the* Counſel Chamber, *where they put off their* Cotes, Mantles, Hoods, *and* Collars, *and put on their uſual Apparel; And then the ſaid* Duke *and* Earl *brought the* Deputy *to the Great Chamber Door, where they took their leave of him, and they returned into the* Chamber *of* Preſence *again, and ſo ended this Ceremony.*

CHAP. XIII.

THE Installation OF A KNIGHT SUBJECT BY Proxie.

SECT. I.

The original cause *of making* Proxies.

THere was no liberty given at the *Institution* of the *Order*, to Instal a *Knight-Subject* by his *Proctor* or *Deputy*; but on the contrary in the *Founders Statutes*, was inserted this expres Prohibition, [a] *That none of the* Knights-Elect *should be permitted to be Installed by* Proxie, *unless he were a* Stranger.

a *E. 3. Stat. Art. 24.*

The Law in this particular continued unaltered, till the Reign of King *Henry* the Fifth, when *John* Duke of *Bedford*, the *Soveraign*'s *Deputy* for holding the Feast of St. *George* at *Windesor*, *an. 7. H. 5.* and other the *Knights-Companions* then present, took it into consideration, That where a *Knight-Subject*, Elected into the *Order*, was at that time employed beyond the Seas, in service of the *Soveraign*, and likely to continue there upon that Employment, it was concluded, that the said Duke should make an address to the *Soveraign*, by Letter under the Seal of the Order (he being at that time engaged in the War with *France*) wherein, for the reasons set down in the Letter (which we have inserted in the [b] *Appendix*) he should petition him, to remove from the *Statutes*, all manner of scruple, and (in cases of like hazard and danger) to Ordain, [c] *That* Knights-Subjects *might be permitted to receive the priviledge and favour of a compleat admittance, and full possession of their Stalls and rights, by their* Deputies *or* Proctors, *no less than* Strangers; *notwithstanding the clause in the* Statutes *to the contrary.*

b *Num.* XLIV.

c *Regist. Chartac. f. 6. b.*

It likewise appears from that Letter, as also from the [d] *Black Book* of the *Order*, that

d *Lib. N. p. 59. & 62.*

that Sir *John Grey*, and the Lord *Bourchier* had been installed at the foresaid *Feast* by their several *Proxies*, which the *Soveraign's Deputy* permitted out of great tenderness to their persons, lest by an over punctual and too rigid an observance of the *Statutes* in this point, the foresaid *Knights*, through the misfortunes and casualties of War, whereunto they were daily exposed, should be snatcht away by a sudden death, and so want the desired suffrages of those Masses, ordained to be sung for a defunct *Knight*; as had been seen in the case of divers other, prevented thereof by over much delay.

Nevertheless, by that more ample and large Copy of the foresaid Letter, recorded in the *Registrum Chartaceum* (which we think necessary also to add in the [c] *Appendix*) it appears, that the *Soveraign*, and *Knights-Companions* remaining at that time with him in *France*, had before (upon the Duke of *Bedford*'s request) signified their approbation of installation by *Proxie*; by the favour of which Certificate, and virtue of this consent (though as yet not formed into a Decree) Sir *John Grey*, and Sir *John Robessart* were installed upon their Letters missive, wherein they only named their *Proctors*. In this Letter it also appears, that the Lord *Bourchier*'s *Proctor* (made so by a deprecatory Letter sent over to his Deputy from the [f] Countess of *Stafford*) was only promised to be installed, in regard there was no express caution given in the *Statutes*, concerning the sufficiency of this sort of *Proxie*.

But to clear all doubts, which for the future might arise, it was among other things Decreed, *an.* 9. *H.* 5. [g] *That where any* Elect-Knight *was actually in the* Soveraign's *Wars, or otherwise employed abroad upon the* Soveraign's *affairs, he should possess and enjoy the priviledge of a* Stranger *in this particular*, namely, to be admitted to his Stall by a legal *Proxie*; who should do and perform all things enjoined to the *Proxie* of a *Stranger*. Which Decree we find added to [h] King *Henry* the Fifth's *Statutes*.

Hereupon, it was in a short time after enjoined the *Elect-Knight* (upon notice of his Election) to [i] take care that his *Proctor* should be appointed to take possession of his Stall with all possible speed; to the end he might enjoy the rights and priviledges of a *Founder*; for such an obligation we find laid upon [k] Sir *John Fastolf*, who at the reception of the *Garter*, was in *France*, and there employed in the *Soveraign*'s service.

But King *Henry* the Eighth, besides his confirmation of this Decree, for allowance of a *Proxie* in the foresaid two Cases, further enlarged it, to [l] such as the *Soveraign* should either command or permit by License, to be installed by *Proxie*, which is to be understood of *Knights-Elect* within the Kingdom, no less than those beyond Sea. By virtue of which clause, the Earl of *Dorset*, being [m] sick, *an.* 1. *Car.* 1. obtained the *Soveraign*'s License, to be Installed by [n] his *Deputy* [o] Sir *Richard Young*, who accordingly took possession of the Stall appointed for him.

c *Num.* XLV.
f *Regist. Chart. fol.* 6. *b.*
g *Lib. N. p.* 67. *prope finem.*
h *Art.* 20.
i, k *Regist. Chartac. f.* 14 *b.*
l *Art.* 26.
m *Lib. R. p.* 28.
n *Ibid. p.* 29.
o *videsis MS. penes Edw. Fauconbridge gen.*

SECT. II.

Letters *of* Procuration.

WE noted before, out of the [a] *Registrum Chartaceum*, that Sir *John Robessart*, Elected into the *Order* by King *Henry* the Fifth, was Installed by virtue of his Letter missive, sent to (Sir *Thomas Barr*) his *Proxie*. But the same *Register* in another place, calls it a [b] sufficient Procuration under his Seal of Arms, enabling him to [c] do and perform in his name, all things which might appertain to the observance and Ceremony of his Installation.

a *Fol.* 6. *b.*
b *Ibid. fol.* 5.
c *Ibid.*

The Copy of this Instrument we have not met with, but that other Letter missive which Sir *John Grey* directed to Sir *John Lisle*, to take the possession of his Stall, and by virtue of which he was Installed, is transferred to the *Appendix*.

[d] *Num.* XLVI. [d] *Appendix.* Nor have we seen the before mentioned Deprecatory Letter, sent over from the Countess of *Stafford*, for the Installation of *Hugh Stafford* Lord *Bourchier*, but it seems to have been esteemed so sufficient and authentick, as to obtain for his substitute the title of [e] *Proctor.*

[e] *Lib.N.p.59. & Regist. Chartac. f.6.b.*

This example became a President to the now Countess of *Bristol*, whose Lord having been Elected a *Knight-Companion* of this *Order*, by the present *Soveraign*, and being absent on an Embassy when the Grand Feast of St. *George* happily celebrated, *an.* 12. *Car.* 2. was drawing on, she wrote a Letter to Sir *Richard Fanshaw* Knight and Baronet, to desire him [f] to appear and act at that following Solemnity, in quality of her Lord's *Proxie.*

[f] *Num.* XLVII.

And because there grew some doubt from the Lord *Bourchier*'s Case, of the sufficiency of such a Nomination, the request of the said Countess was thought requisite to be strengthened by the *Soveraign*'s Authority and [g] Nomination likewise, which being obtained was ratified under the Seal of the Order.

[g] *Num.* XLVIII

And doubtless in the case of a *Knight-Subject*, the *Soveraign* may if he please, nominate and appoint a *Proxie* for *Installation*, where the *Elect-Knight* hath not done it himself; for here all those considerations of grand respect, form of the Oath, *&c.* always afforded to *Strangers* have no place; and this is evident from the [h] *Soveraign*'s Letters of Summons, to the *Commissioners* nominated for Installation of the Lord [i] *Grey, an.* 4. *&* 5. *Ph. & M.* who at that time was Prisoner in *France*; and whose Deputy, [k] Sir *Humfry Radcliff* Knight is therein mentioned to have been appointed by the *Soveraign* her self.

[h] *Collect. A.*
[i] *V. W.*
[k]

The first President of *Letters* of *Procuration* or *Deputation*, drawn into a solemn form, is that made by Sir *William Philipp*, whereby he (having obtained the *Soveraign*'s License) impowers two Knights, namely Sir *Andrew Butreley*, and Sir *John Henington*, or either of them (as their occasions would permit) to supply his place, and take possession of that Stall which should be assigned him, in the Choire at [l] *Windesor.*

[l] *Num.* XLIX.

This Procuration and the time of Sir *William Philipp*'s Installation by virtue thereof, is entred in the [m] *Black Book* of the *Order*, under the eighth year of King *Henry* the Fifth, but certainly misplaced; for though the year of our *Lord*, or of the *Soveraign*'s Reign be wanting in the date of the Instrument, yet is there added a note remarkable enough; to wit, that it was made while the *Soveraign* lay in Siege before *Roan* in *France*, which as our *Chronicles* report was begun the [n] 13. of *October an.* 5. *H.* 5. and taken the 19. of *January* following, so that by this account, the Procuration was sealed the 11. of *November, an.* 5. *H.* 5. and ought to have been placed in the *Annals* under that year.

[m] *Lib.N. p.62.*

[n] *Fabians Chron. part 7. pag.499.*

Besides this, the *Registrum Chartaceum* expresly saith, That Sir *William Philipp* was Installed the [o] same day with Sir *John Robessart* (and so it is also exprest in the *Duke* of *Bedford*'s before mentioned [p] Letter) which Solemnity is there entred as held on the [q] 17. of *February*, and though the year be not set down (and all the former part of this *Register* wanting) yet in the course thereof, it may be observed, that the following year is the 7. of *H.* 5. Add to all this, that the *Black Book* it self, under that seventh year, ranks both [r] Sir *John Robessart*, and Sir *William Philipp*, for *Knights-Companions* among the other *Knights* Installed before that year, and notes them to be then attending upon the *Soveraign* in *Normandy*; whence it may be collected, that Sir *William Philipp* was installed, if not in the 5. yet in the 6. year of King *Henry* the Fifth at the farthest. And that this Procuration made by Sir *William Philipp* became a President in that Age, appears from the [s] Deputation given by Sir *John Fastolf* to Sir *Henry Inghouse*, and Sir *William Breton*, under his Hand and Seal of Arms, which is [t] little different from Sir *William Philipp*'s Procuration, in [u] *French*, unless in the alteration of the Persons Names.

[o] *Fol.* 5.
[p] *Num.* XLIV.
[q] *Regist. Chartac. loco cit.*
[r] *Pag.58. videsis Regist. Chartac. f.6.*
[s] *Appendix, Num.* L.
[t] *Regist. Chartac. f.14.b.*
[u] *Ibid. fol.5.b.*

SECT.

SECT. III.

Qualifications *of a* Proxie.

As touching the Qualifications of a *Proctor* nominated by a *Knight-Subject*, they are the same with those wherewith the *Proxie* of a *Stranger* is to be endowed, and of which we shall discourse * anon: that permissive clause in the [a] *Statutes* affording the same favour to a *Knight-Subject*, as to *Strangers*, and is the ground whence he derives like Priviledges.

* *Cap.* 16.
[a] *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 20.

We shall only add here, that not any *Deputy* or *Proxy* for a *Knight-Subject*, hath at any time been admitted to be Installed for an *Elect-Knight*, under the degree of a *Knight*; it being thought fit (as in other essentials and circumstantials, so especially and chiefly in this) that a *Knight-Subject* should exactly observe the Rule, which the *Statutes* have imposed on a *Stranger*. And in this respect, the case is very observable, where Sir [b] *William Lysle* (though one of the *Alms-Knights* of *Windesor*, yet in Degree a *Knight*) was not refused but allowed *Proctor* to Sir *John Grey*, *an.* 7. *H.* 5.

[b] *Lib.* N. *p.* 59. *videsis Regist. Chartac. fol.* 6.

It appears by the Characters given to the *Proctors* nominated by Sir *William Philipp*, and Sir *John Fastolf*, that the Qualifications required in a *Proctor* (*viz.* to be (1.) a sufficient *Proctor*, of (2.) unblamable *Reputation*, and at least (3.) a *Knight*) were to be found in them: for when the *Soveraign* was induced (by reason that the Employments of Sir *William Philipp*'s in his service, detained him beyond Sea) to give him leave to nominate his *Proctor*, it may be observed, that this License was not granted, but under this Proviso, *That his Procuration should be executed by a* [c] Knight *at least in degree, ennobled with Arms, and of an honest and untainted reputation.* And when the said Sir *William* did make choice of and depute his *Proctors*, they were *Knights*, and such and so nobly qualified, [d] *That there was nothing wanting in them which belonged to true valiant* Knights: and the like Character is bestowed upon those two *Knights* nominated by Sir *John Fastolf*, to take the possession of his Stall; to wit, [e] *That in them there could be found no defect of ought that should belong to magnanimous and couragious* Knights.

[c] *Regist. Chartac. fol* 5 *b.* & *Lib.* N. *p.* 62.
[d] *Lib.* N. *p.* 62.
[e] *Regist. Chartac. f.* 14. *b.*

SECT. IV.

Preparations *for Installation.*

The day for Installation of a *Knight-Subject* by *Proxie*, being by the *Soveraign* appointed, there are to be provided for him, and got ready against the Solemnity, these things following.

First, a *Commission* for Installation is to be drawn up, and by the *Chancellor* of the *Order* presented to the *Soveraign* for his Sign manual; to which is after affixt the great Seal of the Order. The substance of the ancient *Commissions* may be found in [b] that directed to Sir *John Robessart*, *an.* 5. *H.* 6. to accept of Sir *Henry Inghouse*, one of the two *Knights* which Sir *John Fastolf* had constituted for his *Proxie*; himself being at that season employed in the Wars of *France*; the powers granted by the *Soveraign* to the said Sir *John Robessart* were these.

1. Commissions for Installation.
[b] [c] *Appendix, Num.* LI.

1. [a] To conduct Sir *Henry Inghouse* to *Windesor Castle*.
2. To put him in possession (as from the *Soveraign*) of the Stall assigned to his *Principal*.

3. To

3. To invest him with all the Benefits, Honors, Prerogatives, Franchises, and Liberties thereunto appertaining.
4. To receive his Mantle, Helm, and Sword; and set them up where the Earl of *Westmerland*'s stood, in whose room he was Elected.
5. To add thereunto all usual Solemnities.
6. Lastly, this *Commission* contained an Injunction to all the *Knights-Companions*, to suffer and permit the said Sir *John Fastolf*, fully and peaceably to possess the said Stall, Places, Honors, Franchises, Prerogatives, and Liberties, in the same manner as the Statutes import, without any contradiction or scruple.

d *Appendix*, e *Num.* LII.

There is another Precedent almost as ancient in a [d] Commission granted to the Earl of *Essex*, the Lords *Berners*, and *Wenlock*, for Installation of the Earl of *Worcester*, and other *Elect-Knights* by their *Proxies*, *an.* 2. *E.* 4. in regard they for the present were, and for some time would be, so far employed about the *Soveraign*'s Person, and in his Service, that they could not receive a Personal Installation: but the *Commissioners* Authority in this is comprised in fewer particulars than the former, namely to [e] admit, receive, and establish with all convenient speed, the *Elect-Knights* by their *Proctors* into their Stalls at *Windesor*, in the same manner, as if one, and all of them had been present in their own persons, any Ordinance or Statute to the contrary notwithstanding.

Of later times the *Commissions* granted upon such occasions, differ from those made for the Personal Installations of the *Knights* themselves, only by premising the cause of their *Principals* absence, and the Employment or Negotiation he is then ingaged in, and then authorising the *Commissioners* to admit the *Proxie*, into his Stall; a Precedent of which kind is added in the [f] *Appendix* to the former.

f *Num.* LIII.

2. Letters of notice to the Commissioners.

In the next place, where the Installation by *Proxie* is performed by two or more *Commissioners*; the *Soveraign* directs Letters to each of them, giving notice of the intended Solemnity, and requiring them to make their repair to his Castle of *Windesor*, by a certain day therein prefixt, to the end the *Proxie* may proceed, to take possession of his *Principal's Stall.* Of such a Letter see also a form in the [g] *Appendix.*

g *Num.* LIV.

3. And so: Removal of Stalls, &c.

And as there is, upon admission of an *Elect-Knight*, installed by *Proxie*, the same ground for removal of Stalls in the Choire, as for one who receives a Personal Installation; and in like cases: So is it usual to issue out the like *Warrants* from the *Soveraign* to *Garter*, some time before the Solemnity, to remove the Atchievements and Plates, and place them in the order as his Warrant directs.

Anciently the Stall for the *Elect-Knight* was assigned in the body of the *Commission*, which issueth out for his Installation; as it appears in the before mentioned [i] *Commission* for admitting Sir *Henry Inghouse*, Proctor to Sir *John Fastolf*, to whom the Stall which the Earl of *Westmerland* held, while living, was [k] thereby appointed for him.

i *Num.* L. k

4. Mantle of the Order.

The rest of the particulars to be prepared against the day of Installation, are provided at the *Knight*'s own charge; and they are first, his *Mantle* of the *Order*, which, according to the injunction of the [l] *Statutes*, the *Proctor* is obliged to bring along with him to *Windesor*, at the day appointed for Installation.

l *E.* 3. *Stat.* *H.* 5. *Art.* 20 *H.* 8. *Stat.* *Art.* 21.

5. Atchievements.

Garter is also to be consulted with, as to the preparing the *Elect-Knight's Atchievements*; namely, his *Helm*, *Crest*, *Mantlings*, *Sword*, and *Banner* of Arms; and to bring these to *Windesor*, is likewise part of the duty assigned to the *Proctor* by the [m] *Statutes.*

m *Locis supra citat.*

6. Plate of Arms.

Besides these Atchievements, the *Proxie* is to provide a *Plate* of Brass gilt, whereon is to be engraved the Arms, Crest, and Supporters, enamelled in their proper Colours, together with the Stile of the *Elect-Knight*: and this to be fixt upon the back of his Stall.

7. Velvet Cushen.

A *Velvet Cushen* also for *Garter* to bear the *Mantle* on when the *Proctor* proceeds to the *Choire*.

8. And Lodging Scutcheons.

Lastly, A dozen or more of *Lodging Scutcheons* to set up at the *Inns* by the way, and other places in *Windesor*.

SECT.

SECT. V.

Proceeding *to the Chapter-house.*

THE next thing to be considered of, is the *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house*, and therein chiefly the *Proxie*'s place; for it will be needless here, to speak of his journey to *Windesor Castle*, his arival there, or ordering of this Proceeding, in relation to those Degrees whereof it is composed; since what hath been already said touching these particulars, and other circumstances, having reference to the Personal Installation of an *Elect-Knight*, may be made applicable to a *Proxie*, or else such part of them as he shall judge most conducing to the honor of his Principal.

The place therefore belonging to the *Proxie* of a *Knight-Subject* in this Proceeding, is that immediately after the *Provincial Kings of Arms*, because as yet he hath not taken possession of his *Principal*'s Stall, which gives him a place in his return according to its dignity; and in this place did the *Proctors* of the Marquess (since Duke) of *Newcastle*, and Earl of *Bristol*, proceed (bare-headed) to the Chapter-house, *an.* 13. *Car.* 2.

And though this be the *Proxie*'s usual place, in this Proceeding, yet Sir *Henry Sidney*, Proctor to the Earl of *Warwick*, *an.* 5. *Eliz.* (and 'tis the only instance we have met with) proceeded immediately before the *Alms-Knights*; the order of which Proceeding was as followeth.

MS. fol. penes W.D.N.f.11.

First, *Gentlemen Attendants.*
Knights.
Sir *Henry Sidney Proctor.*
Alms-Knights.
Verger.
Pursuivants.
Heralds.
Provincial Kings.
E. of Northumberland, a Knight-Elect.
Visc. Mountague } *Assistants.*
Lord Loughborow }
Black-Rod. *Register.* *Garter.*
Duke of Norfolk Lord Lieutenant.

Lastly, the *Proxie* (as in the case of an *Elect-Knight*) passeth into the East Isle behind the high Altar, as soon as he ariveth within St. *George*'s *Chappel* (while the *Soveraign*, or his *Lieutenant*, or *Commissioners* proceed into the *Chapter-house*) and there [r] reposeth himself, till he be sent for in; for so did the foresaid *Proctors* to the said Marquess of *Newcastle*, and Earl of *Bristol*. But if the *Proxy* pass not in the Proceeding, he then goes privately to this place before the Proceeding sets forward.

[r] *MS. in Offic. Armor.* [H.2.] *fol.* 8. *b.*

SECT. VI.

Transactions *in it.*

AFter the *Chapter* is opened, the first thing done, is for [a] *Garter* to present the *Commission* or *Commissions*, which he carried in the *Proceeding* thither, afwel

[1] Reading the Commission.
[a] *MS. in Bibl. Hatton.*

b *MS. penes W D.N. f.* 11.
c *Collect R C. Cl. f.*32. *videfis MS. f.*20.
d *Sect.* 6.

aſwel that for b *Lieutenancy* (in caſe a *Lieutenant* then held the *Feaſt*) as of c *Inſtallation* (for admitting a *Proxie*) the order of which, and by whom read, is noted before in the d precedent *Chapter*.

2. Receiving the Proxie.
e *Ex eod. MS. penes W D.N. loco cit. vide etiam Collect. R. C. Cl. fol. prec.*
f *MS. penes W. D.N. loco ante cit.*
g *Ibid. f.* 17. *b.*

The *Letters* of *Procuration* or *Deputation* are in the next place read, after which, the *Proxie* is ſent for into the *Chapter-houſe* by *Garter*, who conducts him to the door, and there the *Commiſſioners* (or e *Aſſiſtants*, or *Knights-Companions*) receive him: But *an.* 5. *Eliz.* Sir *Henry Sidney* exhibited his f *Deputation* after he was called in: Or ſometimes the *Proxie* produceth his *Deputation* before the *Proceeding* paſs to the *Chapter-houſe*, for ſo did g Sir *George Howard*, Deputy to the Earl of *Bedford*, *an.* 6. *Eliz.* and in ſuch caſe, there is no need of admitting the *Proxie* into the *Chapter-houſe*, but that he may reſt without, till the *Soveraign* (his *Lieutenant*, or *Commiſſioners*) are paſt into the *Choire*, and he ſent for in thither; at which time the *Mantle* was wont to be laid upon his right arm, at the Chapter-houſe door, by the *Knights-Companions* appointed to introduce him.

3. Delivery of the Mantle.
k *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 20.
l } *Collect. R.*
m } *C. Cl. f.*32.
n *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 20. *H.* 8. *Stat. Art* 21.
o } *MS. penes*
p } *W. D. N.*
q } *f.* 11. *b.*

Heretoſore, ſo ſoon as the *Proxie* was admitted into the *Chapter-houſe*, and the Letters of *Procuration* read, the *Mantle* of his *Principal* was uſually laid upon his k right arm by the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant* (or *Commiſſioners*) and being ſo laid, part of it was alſo l ſpread upon the *Proxies* ſhoulders, the m Scutcheon of St. *George* lying uppermoſt, and the Cordons laid fair to be ſeen; and in this manner he bore it in the *Proceeding* to the Stall of his *Principal*, where he held it till n Service was ended. But now, the preſent *Soveraign* hath directed the *Mantle* to be born upon the *left arm*.

But *an.* 5. *Eliz.* the Earl of *Warwick*'s *Proctor* had the *Mantle* born before him into the *Choire* by o *Garter*, in the ſame manner as is uſed to *Knights* Perſonally Inſtalled, and not delivered him, till he had p taken the *Oath*; aud at the delivery thereof the q words of *Admonition* were pronounced by the *Regiſter* of the *Order*. So was it obſerved to the *Proxies* of the Duke of *Newcaſtle*, and Earl of *Briſtol*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 2.

SECT. VII.

Proceeding *to the Choire*.

u *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 21. *vide MS. penes W. D.N. f.* 11. *b.* & *MS. f.* 20. & *Lib R. p.* 19.
w *Chap.* 12. *Sect.* 6.
x *MS. f.* 20.

THE *Proxie* proceeds from the Chapter-houſe door, u between the *Soveraign*'s *Commiſſioners* (*Aſſiſtants*, or *Knights-Companions*): Concerning the order of this Proceeding, ſo much is ſpoken w before, that we ſhall need to add but one Example, and that is *an.* 6. *Eliz.*

x *Verger.*
Alms-Knights.
Officers of Arms.
Officers of the Order.

Lord Hunſdon. *Proctor to the Earl of Bedford.* *Lord Clynton.*

SECT. VIII.

Ceremonies *performed there*.

1. Taking the Oath.
a *MS. fol.* 20.

THE Proceeding having entred the *Choire* the *Commiſſioners* (*Knights-Aſſiſtants*, or *Knights-Companions*) conduct the *Proxie* into the a lower Stalls

Stalls directly under the Stall designed for his *Principal*, where the [b] *Register* of the *Order* reads the words of the *Oath*, while the *Proxie* ([c] laying his hand upon the Book) [d] repeats them after him, and in confirmation thereof [e] kisseth the Book; and this *Oath* his [f] *Deputation* impowers him to take, in the [g] name and behalf of his *Principal*.

b *Ibid. f.* 20. *b.*
c *MS. penes* d *W. D. N.*
e *fol.* 17 *b.*
f *Lib.* N. *p.* 62. *sub finem.*
g *Ibid.*

The form of the *Proctor's Oath* hath no difference from the *Oath* which an *Elect-Knight* himself takes; the substance of the ancient *Oath* is [h] already noted down; and that taken of later times may be seen in the [i] *Appendix*. Nevertheless some variation and inlargement (though the same in effect with the ancient *Oath*) do we observe to be in that Form, which Sir [k] *Thomas Barr* (*Proctor* to Sir *John Robessart*) took, *viz.* [l] *Faithfully to keep and observe all the* Articles *of the* Statutes *whatsoever, in all things appertaining thereunto, according to the form and efficacy of the said* Statutes, *and to the utmost of his power.*

h *Chap.* 12. *Sect.* 7.
i *Num.* LV.
k *Num.* LVI.
l *Reg. Chartac. fol.* 5.

The *Oath* being taken in this solemn manner, the *Proctor* is led up into the *Stall* of his *Principal*, where both the *Knights* who conducted him into the *Choire*, first take the *Mantle* and lay it on his left (though formerly on his right) arm, next laying their hands upon him, in the [m] Name of his *Lord* and *Master* (from whom he received his Dputation) set him down therein: and so the Ceremony of *Installation* being fully finished, the *Service* of the *Church* begins.

2. Giving possession of the Stall.
m E. 3. *Stat. Art.* 20. *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 21.

If the Installation be performed in the morning, then there is an *Offring* of Gold and Silver; at which time the *Proxie* in his turn comes down from his *Principal's Stall*, and stands before it, and when the *Soveraign* hath offered (or the *Lieutenant* for him, and for himself, or otherwise the *Commissioners*) as also the rest of the *Knights-Companions* present, in their due order, then the *Proxie's* [n] turn coming (being joined with the *Knight* sitting in the opposite Stall to that of his *Principal*, if he be present at this Solemnity, and having two *Officers* of *Arms* before them) he proceedeth to the high *Altar*, and there *offereth* both Gold and Silver; and afterwards returns and takes his Stall in the same order as the *Knights-Companions* do. In this manner *an.* 5. *Eliz.* the [o] Earl of *Warwick's Proxie*, joining himself with the Earl of *Northumberland* (installed at the same time) jointly proceeded to the *Offring*, with *Richmond* and *Lancaster Heralds* before them. The like did the *Proctor* to the [p] Earl of *Bedford*, and offered together with the Lord *Hunsdon*, *an.* 6. *Eliz.*

3. Offring at the Altar.
n *MS. in Offic. Armor.* [H.2.] *fol.* 8. *b.*
o *MS. penes W. D. N. f.* 12. *b.*
p *MS. fol.* 20. *b*

As soon as the Ceremony of the *Offring* is finished, the *Service* of the *Church* proceeds, which being ended, the *Proceeding* returns in the same order it came to the [q] *Chapter-house*, except that now the *Proxie* takes his place, according to the dignity of the Stall, of which he lately took possession for his *Principal*: But in regard the *Statutes* do expressly declare, [r] That after the *Proxie* hath been admitted to the Stall of his *Principal*, he shall neither wear the *Mantle*, nor have any *Voice* in *Chapter*, nor presume to enter there in the absence of him that sent him; therefore hath it been the common practice to take off the *Mantle* from his arm, at the *Chapter-house door*, in his return from the *Choire*, so that at this place the bearing thereof hath usually terminated, having for the most part been delivered to the [s] *Verger* of the *Chappel* (though sometimes to the [t] *Sexton*, at other times to [u] *Garter*, so also to the [w] *Black-Rod*) who hath taken it from off the *Proxie's* arm, and carried it into the *Chapter-house*; this done, the *Proctor* retires privately out of the *Proceeding* to his *Lodgings*.

q *MS. fol.* 21.
r E. 3. *Stat. Art.* 20. *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 21.
s *MS. præd. loco cit.*
t *Ex eod. MS. penes W. D. N. f.* 11. *b.*
u *Ibid. f.* 13. *b.*
w *Collect. R. C. Cl. f.* 33.

Nevertheless it appears (but by what indulgence is not recorded) that though *Garter* took from Sir *Henry Sidney*, *an.* 5. *Eliz.* the *Mantle* at the *Chapter-house door*, on the Evening as he returned from taking possession of his *Principal's* Stall, yet the next morning he [x] rode in the *Proceeding* to the *Chappel* (the celebration of St. *George's* Feast continuing) with the *Mantle* on his right arm, on the left hand of the Earl of *Northumberland* (the place of his *Principal*) and, having entred the *Choire*, took his *Principal's* Stall; afterwards he bore the *Mantle* in the [y] *grand Procession*, at the *Offring* of *Money*, and during divine *Service*; and from the *Chappel* proceeded in the foresaid place up to the *Castle* to Dinner.

x *MS. pen. W. D. N. f.* 12.
y *Lib. C. p.* 45.

In the Afternoon of the said Feast-day he again [z] rode on horse-back in the *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house* door, (but [a] there the *Mantle* was taken from

z *Ex eod.*
a *MS. penes W. D. N. f.* 13.

him and laid within upon the Table, whilst he retired into the East Isle of the *Chappel*) and at the rising of the *Chapter* was it again delivered to him, whence he proceeded in his *Principal*'s place to the second *Vespers*.

The next morning after the *Lieutenant* and his *Assistants* had ended the *Chapter*, the [b] *Mantle* was again laid on his arm, and in that manner he pass'd into the *Choire*, where he entred the Stall of his *Principal*, and afterwards [c] *Offred* in the same order he did on the Feast day; and when the morning Service was finished, the *Lieutenant* and *Assistants* returned to the *Chapter-house* door, where they put off their *Mantles*, and at the same place the *Sexton* of the *Colledge* received the *Mantle* from him.

b { *Exeed. MS.*
c { *penes W. D. N. f.* 13.

SECT. IX.

The Grand Dinner.

AT *Dinner* the *Proxie* sits with the *Lieutenant* (or *Commissioners*) and takes the place where his *Principal* should sit if he were present; and this was so observed at the Installation of the Earl of *Warwick*, *an.* 5. *Eliz.* [d] for the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant* sate on the left hand of the Cloth of State, his two *Assistants*, the Earl of *Northumberland* (newly installed) and the said Earl of *Warwick*'s [e] *Proxie* sate on the same side.

d { *MS. penes*
e { *W. D. N. f.* 12. b.

The *Stile* of the *Knight*, who is installed by *Proxie*, is proclaimed in *French* or *English*, at the usual time, and in his due place, together with the other Stiles that then ought to be proclaimed, as we find it observed *an.* 25. *H.* 8. at the Installations of the Earls of [f] *Beaumont* and *Newblanke* by their *Proctors* (for they were *Knights-Subjects*, though not to the *Soveraign*, and therefore not improper to be made use of, for an instance in this case) in the order following.

f *Lib. N p.* 264.

MS in Offic. Armor. [L. 1] *fol.* 46.

Du noble & puissant Seigneur le Compte d' Essex, *& de Enseigneur de* Bourchir, *& de* Loueyn, Lieutenant, *&* Depute *de la Feste* Saincte George, *Chevaler, Frere & Compaignon de la tres-noble Ordre de la* Jartier.

Du tres-noble & puissant Seigneur la Conte de Beaumont, *Seigneur de* Montmorency, *premier Baron, grand Maistre & Mareschall de* Fraunce, *Baron de* Montberon, *& fere*------tertenois *Seigner de* Lysleadam, *de* Compiegne, *de* Chantelly *& de* Escouen, *Gouverneur & Lieutenant General pour le Roy tres-cristien au* Paris *de* Longuedoe, *Chevaler frere & Compaignon de la tres-noble Ordre de la* Jartier.

Du tres-noble puissant Seigneur le Conte de Neublance, *Seigneur de* Beron, *Baron d'* Aspremont, Buransay, Beaumont, Paygin, Mirebeau, *& de* Fonteyne François, *Admirall de* France, *Gouverneur & Lieutenant Generall pour le Roy tres-cristien, en la Duché de* Bourgoigne, *Chevalier, Frere & Compaignon de la tres-noble Ordre de la* Jartier.

And when the forementioned Earl of *Warwick* was installed by *Proxie*, the order was thus.

MS. penes W. D. N. f. 12.

Du tres-hault puissant, & tres-noble Prince, Thomas *Duc de* Norffolk, *Conte Marshall d'*Angleterre, *Seigneur* Mowbray, Segrave, *& de* Brews, *Chivalier du tres-noble Ordre de la* Jartier, *& Lieutenant de ceste noble Feste de Seint* George.

Du

Du tres-noble & puissant Seigneur Thomas *Conte de* Northumberland, *& Baron de* Percye, *Chivalier de tres-noble Ordre de la* Jartier.

Du tres-noble, & puissant Seigneur Ambrose *Conte de* Warwick, *Baron de* Lisle, *Chivalier, &c. Maistre de L'artillerie de la Royne nostre Soveraine, & Lieutenant pour sa Majestie, au pais de* Normandie, *& Defendeur de la Ville* François de grace.

To conclude, the *Proctor* is to take care that the *Atchievements* and *Plate* of his *Principal* be set up in the *Chappel* of St. *George*, so soon as the Installation is compleated, for he is obliged to [g] offer and present them to that end, according to custom, which doth further appear, not only out of the ancient Letters of *Procuration*, but also by *Commissions* for Installation, which appoint, [h] That the *Soveraign's Deputy* should receive from the *Proctor* his *Principal's* Helm and Sword (for we find no mention of the Banner till afterwards) and place them over his Stall.

g *Lib.N. p.62. videsis Regist. Chartac. f. 5.b. & f. 14.b.*

h *Regist. Chartac. f. 15.*

CHAP. XIV.

THE Signification *of* Election TO Strangers.

SECT. I.

Within what time, and in what manner Certificate *is made of their* Election.

FOrasmuch as *Strangers Elect* are for the most part *Emperors*, *Kings*, or *Soveraign Princes*; the necessity of whose affairs, obliged them to abide in their own Dominions, and seldom or rarely permitted them, to receive a Personal Installation in the *Colledge* of the *Order*; therefore several Priviledges were thought fit, by the wisdom of the *Founder* of this most Noble *Order*, to be offered and established in their favour: as principally the giving them honorable notice of their *Elections*, allowing convenient

venient time of consideration for *Acceptance*, affording to them Investiture in their own *Countries*, and permitting their *Installations* to be performed at *Windesor* by *Substitutes*, or *Deputies*.

a E 3. Stat. b Art. 20. c H. 5. Stat. Art. 20.

It was therefore by the *Statutes* of the *Institution* Ordained, [a] *That when any such were chosen into the* Order, *they should be* certified *of their* Elections *by the* Soveraign; *and besides, that at his charge, the* [b] Garter *should be sent over to them, with the* Mantle *and* Statutes *of the* Order, *sealed with the Common Seal.* And this to be done with all convenient speed, so [c] *that they might have notice thereof at least within four moneths, from the time of Election, to the end they might advise and determine with themselves* (from consideration had of the tenor of the *Statutes*) *whether they would receive, or refuse, the honor of this most Noble* Order.

In pursuance of these directions, it became customary for the *Soveraign*, together with his *Letters* to the *Elect Stranger*, giving *signification* of his *Election*, to send (and that by way of solemn Embassy) the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*, as also a *Book* of the *Statutes*; and in ease the *Election* were accepted, then the *Elect Stranger* might receive *Investiture*, before the return of the persons by whom the *Habit* was sent.

e N Rittershus. in Tab. Reg. Portugal. edit. Tubing. an. 1608. f Lib N. g pag 91.

And this is manifest from the direction given, upon the Election of *Edward* King of *Portugal* ([e] Son of King *John* and of the Lady *Philippa*, Daughter to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*) at the Feast of St. *George* celebrated at *Windesor* the 8. day of *May an.* 13. *H.* 6. to wit, [f] That because the *Election* then but newly transacted, was not known to the said King, it seemed good to the Chapter, [g] *that he should be speedily certified thereof*: And that *Garter* King of Arms should be sent over to him to signifie his *Election*; and upon his acceptation thereof to present him with the *Garter* and *Habit* of the *Order*, as also with the *Book* of *Statutes*; which he was likewise appointed to carry over with him.

And it may be presumed, that a *Certificate* of *Election* was sent to the Duke of *Urbin*, within the time limited by the *Statutes*; since it appears, that (being Elected the [i] 18. of *August an.* 14. *E.* 4.) all things were fitted for his Installation against the following St. *George*'s Feast, at which he was Installed. And upon the Election of the King of *Portugal*, *an.* 22. *E.* 4. the *Register* observes, that notice was sent to him of his Election, [k] within the appointed time.

i Lib. N. p. 136. k Ibid. p. 149.

l Appendix, Num. LVII.

The purport of which *Letters* certifying a *Stranger*'s Election, may be understood and known from [l] that which King *Edward* the Sixth sent to the French King *Henry* the Second, whereby (briefly) for his eminent Nobleness and Virtues, and to augment and improve the brotherly amity and fair correspondeney between them, He had in *Chapter*, with the consent of the *Knights-Companions*, Chosen and Elected him into the number of the Society of the *Garter*, and therefore thought good to acquaint him therewith; desiring also the said King to give him and the Society the honor of consenting to and accepting of the *Election*; forasmuch as he should thereby perform that which would be very acceptable and grateful to him, as he should more fully understand by the *Ambassadors* who were preparing for their journey, to *Invest* him with the *Habit*.

m Cap. 4.

The right of bearing these *Letters* signifying Election, and returning the *Stranger*'s answer, belongs to *Garter*; being confirmed to him by the [m] *Constitutions* appertaining to his Office.

n H. 8. Stat. An. 21.

We see before, that the *Certificate* of *Election* was ordained to be dispatcht within four months, from the time of Election. Nevertheless to afford the *Soveraign* more liberty, where the nature of the Affair required it; King *Henry* the Eighth added this necessary Clause to the foresaid Article. *That where the* Soveraign *had any great or high impediment, He* [n] *should defer certifying the Election, till a more opportune or convenient time.*

o Lib. N. p. 117. p ibid. pag. q 118.

But in this particular we observe, that like liberty had been taken, in times preceeding, though no provision by *Statute* was made for it before; as namely, by King *Henry* the Sixth, in the ease of *Frederick* the Third, Emperor of *Germany*, who having been Elected *an.* [o] 25. of the said King, had not Letters sent him to signifie his Election until the [p] following year. It likewise appears, that *Letters* to the [q] same effect were then also dispatcht to the King of *Aragon*, the

the Duke of *Brunswick*, and King of *Poland*, who had been Elected [r] eight years before. [r] *Ibid.p.*105.

And yet we find it recorded, that the [s] *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order* were sent by special *Ambassadors* to all three, *an.* 34. *H.* 6. *viz.* two years before: but perhaps this ought to be understood of their being but then designed and ordered to be sent, and upon second thoughts might be stopped, or if they were sent, might miscarry by some accident; for if they had arrived at these Princes Courts, it would have been needless to send other *Letters* to give notice of their Election, [t] two years after. But to clear this doubt, we after find a [u] second mention of sending the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order* to the King of *Poland*, *an.* 37. *H.* 6. by which it is sufficiently apparent, that the first *Embassy* took no effect. [s] *Ibid.p.*114. [t] *Ibid.p.*118. [u] *Ib.p.*119.

In the foresaid Memorial entred in the [w] *Black-Book* of the *Order*, and placed under the 34. year of King *Henry* the Sixth, touching the King of *Aragon*, King of *Poland*, and Duke of *Brunswick*; we suppose the King of *Aragon* is mistaken for the King of *Portugal*, Elected *an.* 25. *H.* 6. Since the [t] *Registrum Chartaceum* calls him King of *Portugal*, and both authorities agree in sending over Mr. *Fetiplace* with the *Garter* and *Mantle*, though the *Black-Book* doth not distinguish (as doth the [u] other) to which he was sent. [w] *Pag.*114. [t] Le Roy de Portugale est Esluz & ad le Jarretier, & le Mantel envoiez par Fetiplas, *f.* 32. *b.* [u] Le Roy le Poleyne est Esluz, & ad le Jarretier & se Mantel envoyez par Newport. *f.* 32. *b.*

It may much rather be presumed that Mr. *Fetiplace* was sent on this Legation to the King of *Portugal* (not *Aragon*) since [w] *Beatrix* the natural Daughter of *John* King of *Portugal* was his Mother, and * he by this relation, and being in those times a [x] Courtier in King *Henry* the Sixth's Court, might the sooner obtain the honor of this Employment: And there is in the *Registrum Chartaceum* another particular (eo-relative with the former) yet more clear and full than the *Black-Book*; for it tells us that Mr. [y] *Newport* was at the [z] same time sent in the Legation with the *Garter* and *Mantle* to the King of *Poland*.

[w] *Cambd. Brit. in Attreb.*

* This Gentleman was Progenitor to the Family of *Fetiplace*, late of *Besselsligh* in *Berkshire*, of *Swinbroke* in the County of *Oxford*, and many other Families of note of the same Name, now residing in those Counties.

[x] *MS. in Offic. Armor.* [C. 18.] *f.* 35.

[y] Le Roy le Poleyne est Esluz, & ad le Jarretier & se Mantel envoyez par Newport. *f.* 32. *b.*

[z] *An.* 34. *H.* 6.

But to return; we have not found that King *Henry* the Eighth, or any of his Successors, *Soveraign*'s of the *Order*, have made much use of that liberty (granted by the foresaid *Article* of his *Statutes*) for deferring the *Significatory Letters* of *Election* beyond the time appointed by the *Statutes* of *Institution*. And that it may be the better observed, how soon notice of *Election* hath been given to *Strangers*, we will insert all the instances in this kind, that have come to our knowledge.

It is recorded, that the French King *Francis* the First was Elected [n] *Oct.* 21. *an.* 19. *H.* 8. and albeit we find not the exact time, when the *Soveraign*'s *Letter* for giving notice of his Election was sent him; yet must that complement be most certainly dispatcht within the time limited by the ancient *Statutes*, since we observe he was Installed within three months after, *viz.* the [o] 25. of *January* following. [n] *Lib.N.p.*257 [o] *Ex Autogr. in Bibl. Cotton.*

When *James* the Fifth King of *Scotland* was Elected [*Jan.* [p] 20. *an.* 26. *H.* 8.] the Lord *William Howard* was [q] forthwith sent to inform him of his *Election*. *Henry* the Second of *France* (before mentioned) having been Elected the [r] 24. of *April*, *an.* 5. *E.* 6. had *Letters* of signification sent him in *May* following. [p] *Lib. N.* [q] *pag.* 267. [r] *Ibid.p.*305.

Emanuel Duke of *Savoy* was chosen a *Knight-Companion* [s] 6. *Aug. an.* 1. *&* 2. *Ph. & M.* and the same day it was Decreed, [t] *That Letters should be sent unto him with the illustrious* Garter, *and other* Ensigns *of the* Order: But hereby is to be understood, the *Soveraign*'s *Credential Letters* sent to accompany the *Habit* of the *Order* (the *Commission* for delivery whereof bears *teste* the 17. of *October* following) not the *Letters signifying* his *Election*; for it appears clearly from the said *Credentials*, that the *Soveraign* had not only before that time given him notice of his *Election*, but that the Duke had returned a cheerful and ready acceptance of the honor. [s] *Lib. C. pag.*14. [t]

The Election of *Charles* the Ninth of *France*, passed the [u] 24. of *April*, *an.* 6. *Eliz.*, and in [w] *May* ensuing the Lord [x] *Hunsdon* carried him the *Habit* of the *Order* [u] *Lib.C.p.*48. [w] *Collect.* [x] *A.V.W.*

Order, which he received at [y] *Lyons* the 24. of *June* following; and the French King *Henry* the Fourth, and *James* the Sixth King of *Scotland* (afterwards *Soveraign* of this most Noble *Order*) were both Elected together, the [z] 24. of *April an.* 32. *Eliz.* to the [a] former of these, the *Certificate* of *Election* was sent by Sir *Edward Stafford* Knight, and to the [b] later, by the Earl of *Worcester*.

Lastly, *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*, Elected the [c] 14. of *June*, *an.* 1. *Jac. R. Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, chosen the [d] 19. of *December*, *an.* 10. *Jac. R. Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, and *Henry* Prince of *Orange*, both Elected the [e] 24. of *April*, *an.* 3. *Car.* 1. as also *Charles* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne* chosen a *Knight-Companion* the [f] 18. of *April*, *an.* 9. *Car.* 1. had *Letters* sent to signifie their *Election* within a few days after they were Elected. And at such times as the present *Soveraign* made Election of any *Stranger*, whilst he remained abroad; care was also taken to send his *Letters*, to acquaint them with their *Election*, [g] immediately after the Ceremony of Election had past.

y MS. penes W. le N. Cl. fol. 16. b.
z Lib. C. p. 117.
a Collect. A.
b V.W. vide-sis Hist. And. du Chesne pag. 1114.
c Lib. C. p. 150.
d Ibid. p. 177.
e Lib. R. p. 35.
f Ibid. p. 80.
g Collect. E. W. G.

SECT. II.

Of Notice given of an Election, *before sending the* Habit.

HEre it is to be observed, with how much more caution than the former, the *Statutes* made by King *Henry* the Eighth do Ordain, *to* [a] *send Letters that signifie Election, and the Book of Statutes only at the first*; but not the *Garter* and *Mantle*, till a return be made, whether the *Stranger-Elect* (after consultation had with the *Statutes*) will receive the *Order* or not. And [b] after the Certificate of Acceptance returned to the *Soveraign*, then, but not before is it there also Decreed, to send a solemn Embassy with the whole *Habit*, *George*, and *Collar*. And consonant to these directions in the *Statutes* hath the Practice sometimes been: As for instance, in the cases of the French King *Henry* the Second, *an.* 5. *E.* 6. and *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, *an.* 1. & 2. *Ph.* & *Mar.* both remembred a little before; as also in that of [c] *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg*, to whom Queen *Elizabeth* sent Letters signifying his Election, shortly after she had chosen him into the Society of the *Order*, to which the Duke returned thanks and acceptation, by two Ambassadors, *Benjamin a Buwinkhausen* of *Walmeroet* one of his privy Council, and *Cristopher ab Hangwitz* Master of his Horse: who received a promise from the *Soveraign*, that the sending him the [d] whole *Habit* of the *Order* should not be long deferr'd, howbeit the same was not sent during her life.

a Art. 21.
b
c Erhard.
d Cellius in suo Equ. Aur. Angl. Wirtemb. p. 107. & 108.

SECT. III.

Notice of Election *sent with the* Habit.

WHen the *Soveraign* hath been well assured beforehand, that the *Elect-Stranger* would not refuse the Honor; upon such confidence, the same Embassy (as anciently before the adding this Clause) dispatcht both Ceremonies. The *Soveraign's Letter* certifying *Election* being first presented, together with the *Book* of *Statutes*, to peruse and consider of; and if (upon consideration thereof) the *Stranger* declared his acceptance, then within few days after, the whole *Habit* of the *Order* was with due Solemnity delivered.

And

And thus do we find it directed, ſhortly after the Election of *James* the Fifth King of *Scotland*; the Lord *William Howard* (ſent on that Embaſſy) his *Inſtructions* as to this point, being as followeth.

[c] *That he ſhould within five or ſix days next after he had been with the ſaid King of* Scots, *for his firſt Embaſſade and reſort to Court there, and in moſt reverend faſhion deliver unto the King of* Scots, *the* Letter Miſſive *of Certification of his* Election *into the noble* Order *of the* Garter, *from the* Soveraign *of the* Order, *with due commendation from his Highneſs.*

The Letter read, and the ſaid King conſenting to the Reception of the ſaid Order, *then incontinent the* Book *of* Statutes *to be delivered unto him, and a day appointed to have his conſentment on the Articles of the ſaid* Statutes.

In like manner were the *Letters* certifying Election, and the *Commiſſion* for preſenting the *Habit* and *Enſigns* of the *Order*, diſpatcht together to *Chriſtian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*, *an.* 1. *Jac. R.* and ſent by the Earl of *Rutland* who went hence [f] within a fortnight after the ſaid King had been Elected. As alſo to *Guſtavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, and *Henry* Prince of *Orange*, within two months; their Election falling on the [g] 24. of *April*, *an.* 3. *Car.* 1. and the date of the *Commiſſion* for delivering the *Order* being on the [h] 24. of *June* following.

The manner and order of the delivery of theſe *Letters* ſignifying Election, when the *Habit* is ſent therewith, is thus.

[i] "Firſt the *Ambaſſador* and *Officer* of *Arms*, having notice given them of the "firſt Audience, do preſent themſelves to the *Stranger-Prince*, in the accuſtomed "manner of *Ambaſſadors*; and deliver the *Soveraign's Letters Miſſive*, with all "due reverence. The *Ambaſſador* therewithall ſignifying (after ſome ſhort ge-"neral Complement from the *Soveraign*) how his Maſter and the honorable So-"ciety of the *Garter*, in reſpect of his renowned proweſs, valour, virtues, *&c.* "and for to eſtabliſh and augment the amity which is betwixt them, hath *Elect-"ed* him into the moſt renowned *Order* of St. *George*; and that the *Soveraigns* "do never Elect any *Stranger*, but ſuch as they do moſt highly honor, and "therefore deſires that it may be accepted as a true teſtimony thereof: to "which end the *Soveraign* hath ſent him over, and his *Herald* there preſent, to "perform the Ceremonies due thereunto.

But of late, when through the *Soveraign's* multitude of Affairs (in particular the late *Soveraign* while engaged in the Wars) or ſuddenneſs of the occaſion, they have had no convenience for the preſent, to ſend a ſpecial *Commiſſion* of *Legation*, with the *Habit* and *Enſigns* of the *Order* to any *Stranger*: They therefore thought fit, at ſuch time as they ſent their *Letters* ſignifying Election, to Commiſſionate their *Agent*, reſiding in that Princes Court, and *Garter* Principal King of Arms, to deliver part (but the two chief and * moſt peculiar) of the *Enſigns* of this moſt illuſtrious *Order*, namely the *Garter* and *George*, pendent at a Blue Ribband, to the Elect-*Stranger*; deferring the ſolemn *Legation* till a further and more convenient time.

The firſt Precedent we have met with in this kind, was *an.* 10. *Jac. R.* when [k] Sir *Ralph Winwood*, and *William Seagar* Eſq; *Garter*, (afterwards Knighted) were Commiſſionated to deliver only at the preſent the *Garter* and *George* to *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, *the* [l] *reſt of the* Habit *being intended to be preſented afterwards in their due time.* And this was ſo done, within five days after his Election; that Ceremony being diſpatcht on the [m] 19. of *December* in the foreſaid year, and the *Soveraign's Letters* of notice, and the *Commiſſion*, both bearing date the [n] 24. of the ſame month.

In like manner were the *Garter* and *George* only, ſent over to *Charles* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne*, and preſented to him by *William Boſwell* (then) Eſq; the *Soveraign's Agent* in *Holland*, and *John Philpot* Eſq; *Somerſet Herald*, *an.* 9. *Car.* 1. So the late *Soveraign*, by reaſon of the many diſturbances occaſioned by the unhappy War with the *Long Parliament*, could not conveniently ſend over to *William* Prince of *Orange*, and *Bernard de Foix* Duke of *Eſpernon*, other *Enſigns* of the *Order*, than the *George* and *Garter*.

And laſtly, during the preſent *Soveraign's* aboad in Foreign parts, it was the general

c *Appendix, Num.* CII.

f *Colleſt. A. V. W.*

g *Lib. R. p.* 35.

h *Colleſt. Tho. Rowe Eq. Aur nup. Ord. Canc. f.* 207.

i *Autogr. penes W. Io N. Cl.*

* *Appendix, Num.* CV.

k *Du Cheſne Hiſt. p.* 1138.

l *Appendix, Num.* LXXII.

m *Lib. C. p.* 117

n *Joh. Olers in Genealog. Com. Naſſoviæ, p.* 89. *Videſis Continuat. Thuani. p.* 331.

general practice (in regard the whole *Habit*, could not with conveniency be provided, nor the Ceremonies of Investiture fully performed) to present the *Elect-Knight* in confirmation of his Election (whether he were a *Stranger*, or *Subject*) with the *Garter*, *George*, *Ribband*, and sometimes a Saint *George*'s *Cross*, irradiated within a *Garter*, to be fixt on the left shoulder of their *Cloaks* or upper *Garments*, of which we shall speak more largely in the following * *Chapter*.

* *Sect.* 3.

SECT. IV.

Certificate *of* Acceptation.

AFter that the *Soveraign*'s *Letter* signifying Election, hath been delivered by the *Ambassador*, and the *Elect-Stranger* doth readily accept the *Order*, and thereupon is desirous to have it confirmed to him; he is obliged by the *Statutes*, to return to the *Soveraign* a [p] *Certificate* of such his acceptance, and desire of ratification.

p *Art.* 21.

And we observe, that before this additional Clause made by King *Henry* the Eighth, this ceremonious course had been of ancient time practised, and both expected from, and observed by the King of *Denmark*; who having been [q] Elected *an.* 6. *H.* 5. was *an.* 8. of the same King, taken notice of, for [r] not returning (before that time) an answer whether he would accept of the honor of the *Order*, or not? And it appears, that before the next St. *George*'s Feast in the following year, [s] he sent over to the *Soveraign* his ready acceptance, both of the honor of his *Election*, as also of the *Ensigns* of the *Order*; and thereupon [t] directions were then given for his Installation by his *Proxie* the Lord *Fitz-Hugh*.

q *Rot. pergamen penes Sim. Archer Eq. Aur. nup. defunct.*
r *Lib. N. p.* 61.
s *Ibid. f.* 64.
t

But for an instance (after the said additional Clause) we have one remarkable enough, in the preamble of the *Soveraign*'s [u] *Credential Letters* to the Duke of *Savoy*, *an.* 1. & 2. *Ph.* & *Mar.* sent together with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*; in which it appears, [w] *that the* Soveraign *having given him notice of his* Election *into this most Noble* Order, *he had returned back his cheerful and ready* Acceptance *of, and singular satisfaction in the said choice; and therefore cordially wisht that it might attain its due effect.*

u *Appendix, Num.* LVIII.
w

In succeeding times it was thought necessary (in case where the whole *Habit* of the *Order* was sent over to a *Stranger*, together with the *Soveraign*'s *Letters*, signifying his Election) to make a provisional Decree (which pass'd the 18. of *April an.* 13. *Car.* 1.) * *That* Garter, *and all others (whom it pleased the* Soveraign *jointly to commissionate with him) should be most punctually careful, that they delivered not the* Ensigns *of the* Order *into the hands of any such Prince, till they were fully satisfied by his* Letters Patent *of his kind and grateful acceptance thereof*, [y] or in case of refusal to forbear their presentation.

x *Lib. R. p.* 120
y *Sir Tho. Rowe's Journal p.* 11.

And that care was taken for the due observation of this *Decree* (even in such case where only the *Garter* and *George* were sent) appears from the *Instructions* of the [z] 4. of *March*, *an.* 19. *Car.* 1. sent to Sir *William Boswell* Knight, he being appointed by the then *Soveraign* to present those two principal *Ensigns* of the *Order*, to *William* Prince of *Orange*, the said *Soveraign*'s Son-in-Law; where among other things he is expresly commanded, * *to take a Testimonial from the said* Prince, *of his kind acceptation thereof, before he should deliver those Ensigns of honor to him.*

z *Ex Autogr. penes Jac. Palmer Eq. Aur. nup. hujus Ord. Cancel.*

The like ‖ Clause (for demanding of a *Certificate* of willing and grateful Acceptance of the *Order*) we also find to have been inserted in those *Instructions*, under the same date, for the delivery of the *Garter* and *George* to *Bernard* Duke of *Espernon*.

SECT.

SECT. V.

Of an Election *not accepted of.*

THat there hath been a non-acceptation of this honor, by the person Elected, appears in that single case of *Philip* the Second Duke of *Burgundy*; who having been Elected by King *Henry* the Fifth, then in *France* into the Stall of the [a] Lord *Clifford*, (slain at the Siege of [b] *Meux* in *Brie*) had not (*an.*[d] 1. *H.* 6.) sent his answer whether he would have his Election confirmed. It was therefore concluded on, at the Feast of St. *George* held at *Windesor*, in the foresaid year, by *Humfry* Duke of *Gloucester* (then *Deputy* to the *Soveraign*) having therein the unanimous consent of the *Knights-Companions* present, to send [c] *Letters* to the said *Duke Elect*, [f] by which he might be entreated to give his Resolution, whether he would accept of the Election or not.

a *Lib.N.p.77.* b *Ib.p.69.* d *Ibid p.75.* c f *Ibid.*

It seems the Duke of *Burgundy* returned no answer to this Letter, and therefore at the next years Feast, it came again to be considered of, by the Duke of *Gloucester* (the *Soveraign's Deputy* for that Feast also) and the *Knights-Companions* present, and upon further debate it was thought fit, [g] that there should be those persons sent over to him with the *Nomination*, who should desire to receive his final answer.

g *Ibid.p.77.*

And then it appears, that the Duke of *Burgundy*, well considering the *Statutes* of the *Order*, and reflecting on the [h] Quarrels between the Duke of *Gloucester*, and the Duke of *Brabant* his Uncle, made a most plaucible excuse, refusing the Election, least [i] he should be forced, either dishonorably to violate the pious Constitutions of the Order, or the obligations of Alliance.

h i *Ibid.*

The substance of this Excuse, was afterwards represented to the *Soveraign*'s said *Deputy*, and *Knights-Companions*, in a *Chapter* held at *Windesor*, *an.* 2. *H.* 6. [k] who considering the reason and manner thereof, the long voidance of the Stall, and the strictness of the Statutes in this case, vacated the former *Election*, and proceeded to a new one, which brought [l] *John* Lord *Talbot*, into the room and Stall of the said Lord *Clifford*.

k l *Ibid.*

This is the only instance of any *Stranger*, who after Election refused his acceptance of the *Order*. On the contrary, how desirous and earnestly solicitous some others (even of the highest rank) have been of admittance into this illustrious *Society*, may appear by these few Examples.

Alphonsus King of *Naples*, and Duke of *Calabria*, did with [n] great importunity solicit his *Election* into this *Order*, and was accordingly chosen, *an.* 7. *H.* 7.

n *Heylin Hist. of St. George, Part* 3. *Ch.* 3. *Sect.* 6.

The *Black-Book* of the *Order*, mentioning the Election and Installation of *Philip* King of *Castile*, saith, that [o] he not only assented to what was offered, namely the honor of admittance into the *Order*; but with much gladness and infinite thanks accepted thereof. A little before, we are informed, how [p] gratefully the King of *Denmark*, *an.* 20. *H.* 7. accepted of his Election. And in the memorial of the *Soveraign*'s sending his *Ambassadors*, with the *Ensigns* of the *Order* to the French King, *Francis* the First, it is noted, [q] that he received them with such a [r] cheerfulness of mind, as the Affair required.

o *Lib.N.p.183.* p *Ib.p.178.* q *Ib.p.257.* r *Regist. Chartac.f.66.*

Some few years before this King was Elected, *Ferdinand* Brother to the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth was chosen into the *Order*, of whom it is said, [f] That he took it for a very high honor, to be made a Collegue of this most Noble Society; and that he * received the *Order* at *Norimberg* in *Germany* to his great contentment. *Maximilian* his Son was presented with the *Habit* of the *Order*, by *Thomas* Earl of *Sussex*; who giving the *Soveraign* an account by Letter of his reception thereof; affirms, that he received the Honor gladly, and with manifest satisfaction. Such is also the expression of *Frederick* the Second

f *Eq. Aur. Anglo-Wirtemb. lib.* 1. *p.* 28. * *Bakers Chron. Edit.* 1665. *p.* 291. t *Ms. penes G. O.T.f.*110.

King of *Denmark*, in his *Letters* of *Procuration* to the Lord *Willoughby*, [u] That he received the *Order* with as much gratitude, as if it had been presented to him by the *Soveraign* her self.

But that which *Erhardus Celius* reporteth of [w] *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg*, is beyond all; who being in *England*, and seeing the [x] magnificence of the Castle and Chappel of *Windesor*, was induced by the sight of the illustrious *Arms* and *Ensigns* of Honor of so many great Princes and famous Personages of this most Noble *Order*, to wish himself one of the renowned Society.

Being afterwards Elected, he exprest his acknowledgments of the Honor done him, not only by a solemn *Embassy* to Queen *Elizabeth*, but also by the great Preparations he made, the vast Expences he was at, and his extraordinary munificence in Rewards, at his *Investiture* with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*; which indeed were such grand testimonies of his glad acceptation of this additional flower of Honor, as nothing could more fully evidence it to the World. To these we may add the * re-iterated follicitations made to the present *Soveraign*, on the behalf of *Frederick Guillaume* Marquess of *Brandenburgh*, and his great impatience till his Election was past, though not easily nor suddenly obtained.

In fine, how acceptable this Honor hath been to several other Kings and Princes, and what esteem and value they have set upon it, may be further seen, in their several *Certificates*, sent back to the *Soveraign* of this most Noble *Order*, after their *Investitures* with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* thereof.

u *Appendix, Num.* LXVII.

w } *Eq. Aur.*
x } *Anglo-Wirtemberg. l.* 3. *p.* 82.

z *Ib. l.* 5, 6. & 7.

* *Ex relatione Edw. Nicholas Eq. Aur.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

THE Investiture of Strangers WITH THE HABIT and ENSIGNS Of the ORDER.

SECT. I.

The Time *for sending the* Habit *and* Ensigns *unlimited.*

ALbeit the *Statutes* of the *Order* do appoint and prefix a time, within which the *Soveraign's Letters* giving notice to a *Stranger* of his *Election*, ought to be sent unto him, as before is shewed; yet as to the sending a solemn Embassy, with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*, they do not limit a certain time, but leave that wholly to the *Soveraign's* pleasure; wherein his conveniency, and other Interests, as also those of the Elect *Stranger*, are to be consulted and considered.

But nevertheless, the *Statutes* of *Institution* appoint and direct, that this *Legation* shall be dispatcht [a] *with convenient speed*; which must needs be interpreted with such latitude, as may refer both to the *Soveraign's* conveniency of sending, and the *Stranger's* capacity of receiving. a *Art.* 20.

And therefore we find it six years after the Election of the Kings of *Aragon* and *Poland*, and the Duke of *Brunswick*, e're we meet with the first notice of the *Soveraign's* determination of sending over the *Habit* of the *Order* to them: For they having been Elected the [b] 4. of *August*, *an.* 28. *H.* 6. the preparations for the intended *Legation* were not made until the [c] 34. year of the same King. And doubtless some cause, within the limits of that conveniency (allowed to the b *Lib.* N. p. 104. c *Ibid.* 115.

the *Soveraign* by the foresaid *Article* of the *Statutes*) or the accident of miscarriage might fall out, particularly in reference to the King of *Poland*, (if not of the other) because [d] three years after the former Order for *Legation* had past, we find new directions issued for sending the *Ensigns* of the *Order* to him.

d *Ibid.* p. 119.

But in King *Henry* the Eighth's body of *Statutes*, this Clause of sending the *Legation* with convenient expedition, is wholly omitted, and the *Soveraign* is now unlimitted as to the time: by which liberty it hath come to pass, that the *Habit* and *Ensigns* have been sent over, sometimes soon after the *Stranger's* Election, at other times not till some years after, and at all times when the *Soveraign* hath thought fit and convenient.

Thus was it four years after *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark* had been [f] Elected, before *Peregrine* Lord *Willoughby* of *Ersby*, together with [g] Sir *Gilbert Dethick* Garter, and *Robert Glover* Somerset Herald (by Order of *Chapter* [h] 24. *Apr. an.* 24. *Eliz.*) were sent over into *Denmark*, to present him with the *Habit* of the *Order*.

f *Lib.C.p.*77.
g *Autogr.penes Rob. Com. Ailesbury.*
h *Lib.C.p* 87.

Maximilian the Emperor was Elected, the [i] 24. of *April*, *an.* 8. *Eliz.* but it was above a year after ere the *Commission* issued out to the Earl of *Sussex*, (*viz.* 20. *May*, *an.* 9. *Eliz.*) for carrying the *Ensigns* of the *Order* over to him.

i *Ibid.* p. 52.

It was seven years after the Election of the French King *Henry* the Third, before the [k] Warrant issued out to provide his Robes, and almost two years longer ere the [l] Earl of *Derby* went over with them: in all, about nine years and something above eight months.

k *Collect.W.le N Cl.*
l *Lib.C.p.*97.

And in another instance of a French King, namely *Henry* the Fourth, we find it six years and a half from the time of his Election, to his reception of the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*, which Solemnity fell on the [m] 10. of *October*, *an.* 38. *Eliz.*

m *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

Lastly, we observe that it was five years and a half, after the Election of *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg*, before the *Embassy* with the *Ornaments* of the *Order*, were sent unto him: for we find he was [n] Elected at St. *George's* Feast, *an.* 39. *Eliz.* and the *Commission* of *Legation* to the Lord *Spencer*, and Sir *William Dethick* bears Teste at *Woodstock*, the [o] 18. of *Sept. an.* 1. *Jac. R.*

n *Lib C.p.*134. *vide ejs Collect. R.C.Cl.p.*11. *& Eq. Aur. Anglo-Wirtemb.p.*107.
o *Num.*LXXI. *vide du Chesne Hist.p.*1138.

SECT. II.

Preparations *made for the* Legation.

IN reference to this solemn *Embassie*, there are several things to be provided before the *Ambassadors* or *Commissioners* take their journey; as first (1.) *Credential Letters*, (2.) *Commission* of *Legation*, (3.) *Warrants* for the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*, and (4.) *other Necessaries*.

1. Credential Letters.

The *Credential Letters* are (as to particulars) drawn sutable to the present occasion, by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, and directed to the *Stranger-Elect*; but the substance (in general) is [a] *That the* Soveraign *having elected him into the Society of the* Order, *hath sent his* Ambassadors *with full power to present the* Habit, *and perform the* Ceremonies *in such case due and accustomed, as if himself were present.* And further, to desire him, [b] *to give credit to all that his* Ambassadors *shall say or perform in his behalf, in reference to their* Commission, *as he would do to himself.*

a 5 *Appendix*, b 7 *Numb.* LVIII. LIX. LX. LXI.

These *Letters* pass under the Sign manual of the *Soveraign*, and [c] Signet of the *Order*; but it is observable, that those sent to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy* were subscribed both by [d] King *Philip* and Queen *Mary*.

c *Lib.R.p.*120
d *Appendix*, *Num.*LVIII.

The

The *Commission* of *Legation* is likewise to be prepared by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, fairly ingrossed in Velom, and sealed with the [e] Great Seal of the *Order*; the substance of which (for the most part) hath been as followeth. 2. Commission of Legation. e *Lib.R.* p.119. & 120.

* First, the merits and worthiness of the *Elect-Stranger* to deserve the honor of *Election*, and the reasons inducing the *Soveraign* to confer the same upon him; are elegantly set forth in the Preamble. * *Appendix, Num.* LXII. LXIII. &c.

Secondly, the persons nominated for this honorable employment, are ordained, authorized, and deputed (and therein styled) *Ambassadors*, *Procurators*, and special *Messengers*; and so are they acknowledged to be, by the *Strangers-Elect* in their *Certificates* of the Receipt of the *Habit*.

Thirdly, their power, authority, and special command, is to address themselves to the *Stranger-Elect*, and to present and deliver him from the *Soveraign*, the *Garter*, *Mantle*, and other the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, with due and accustomed Ceremonies and Solemnities: where note, that if there were four or five joined in a *Commission* (as it hapned sometimes heretofore) then any five, four, three, or two were of the *Quorum*, whereof the Principal in the Embassy was always one.

Fourthly, they were impowered to require from the *Stranger-Elect* his *Oath*, according to the form and manner prescribed in the *Statutes*, but this clause we only find inserted in the *Commissions* of *Legation*, to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* *an.* 9. *E.* 4. and *Ferdinand* Arch-Duke of *Austria*, *an.* 15. *H.* 8. and omitted in all *Commissions* since that time.

And lastly, to perform, accomplish, and dispatch those things, which they should judge necessary on this occasion; in like manner as if the *Soveraign* should or were obliged to doe, if he were present in his own person. And this latitude was thought convenient, to allow the *Ambassadors*, in case any matter in Ceremony, or other Circumstances should be thought necessary or expedient to use (not repugnant to the *Statutes* of the *Order*) which their *Instructions* had not sufficiently provided for.

As touching the first of these particulars, we have spoken to it * already, but the second particular, relating to the persons nominated in the *Commission*, to perform this service, we conceive most proper to handle here. * *Chap.* 9. *Sect* 13.

The first *Embassy* upon this occasion, recorded in the *Black-Book* of the *Order*, is that to *Edward* King of *Portugal*, *an.* 13. *H.* 6. to whom, [f] for the dignity of the Affair, *Garter* was thought fit by the *Chapter* to be sent alone with the *Habit* of the *Order*: And hence is the original of *Garter*'s claim to this Employment. Of Persons nominated in the Commission. f *Lib.N.p.*91.

Nevertheless, in succeeding times, as the *Order* grew up into esteem, both at home and abroad; some one of the *Knights-Companions* was made choice of by the *Soveraign* to be the Principal in these *Legations*; as were *Galliard* Sieur de *Duras*, sent to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, *an.* 9. *E.* 4. [g] *Arthur Plantagenet* Viscount *Lysle*, to the French King *Francis* the First, *an.* 19. *H.* 8. *William* Marquess of *Northampton*, to the French King *Henry* the Second, *an.* 5. *E.* 6. *Edward* Lord *Clynton* and *Say*, to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, *an.* 1. & 2. *Ph.* & *Mar.* *Henry* Lord *Hunsdon*, to *Charles* the Ninth French King, *an.* 6. *Eliz.* *Thomas* Earl of *Sussex*, to *Maximilian* the Emperor, *an.* 9. *Eliz.* *Henry* Earl of *Derby* to the French King *Henry* the Third, *an.* 27. *Eliz.* And *Gilbert* Earl of *Shrewsbury* to *Henry* the Fourth, the French King, *an.* 38. *Eliz.* g *Ibid.p.*257.

Sometimes other Noblemen, and persons of great quality (though not *Knights-Companions* of the *Order* yet) correspondent to the Degree of the *Stranger-Elect*, or to the esteem the present Interest begat with the *Soveraign*, were employed chief in these Embassies; among whom [i] Sir *Charles Somerset* (created after Earl of *Worcester*) was sent to the Emperor *Maximilian*, *an.* 6. *H.* 7. *Henry* Lord *Morley* to Don *Ferdinand* Prince of *Spain*, Arch-Duke of *Austria*, *an.* 15. *H.* 8. The [k] Lord *William Howard*, Brother to *Thomas* Duke of *Norfolk*, to *James* the Fifth King of *Scotland*, *an.* 26. *H.* 8. The [l] Lord *Willoughby* of *Ersby*, to *Frederick* the Third King of *Denmark*. *Roger* Earl of *Rutland*, to *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*, *an.* 1. *Jac.R.* The Lord *Spencer* of *Wormleighton* to *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg*, the same year. Sir *Ralph Winwood* to *Maurice* i *Collect. A. V.W.* k *Lib.N.p.*267 l *MS. quarto penes Arthur. Com. Anglesey. p.* 133. *b.*

Maurice Prince of *Orange*, *an.* 10. *Jac. R.* Sir *Jacob Spene* of *Wormston*, to *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, *an.* 3. *Car.* 1. *Dudley* Viscount *Doncaster*, to *Henry* Prince of *Orange*, the same year. And Sir *William Boswell*, to *Charles* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne*, *an.* 9. *Car.* 1.

In *Embassies* of this nature, it was heretofore usual, to join some persons of rank and quality, or Office neer the *Soveraign*, in the Commission; and such were Sir * *John Scott*, Controller of the *Soveraign*'s House, and Sir *Thomas Vaughan*, Treasurer of his Chamber, both joined in *Commission* with *Galliard* Sieur de *Duras*. Sir *William Hussey* with the Lord *Morley*; and Sir [l]*Nicholas Carew*, and Sir *Anthony Brown*, with Viscount *Lysle*.

* *Ibid. pag.* 133. *b.*

To these persons, the *Soveraign* thought fit sometimes to add a *Doctor* of the *Civil Law*, or an *Ecclesiastical* person having dignity, and such as had the Language of the *Country* whither they were sent; not only the better to make answer to such questions, as the *Stranger-Elect* might start, upon his perusal of the *Statutes*, but also to inform him touching the *Institution* of the *Order*, or other Historical passiges, relating to the *Founder*, the preceding or present *Knights-Companions*, or honor of the *Garter*: all which (if judiciously and accurately rendred) might add reputation to the *Order*, and beget in the *Stranger-Elect* the better esteem of it.

Besides, an Ecclesiastical person was in those times thought fittest to [m] administer the *Oath*, and to [b] pronounce the words of *Signification*, at the time of Investiture with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*.

And for these Reasons was [c] *John Russell* Doctor of the Civil Law, and Arch-deacon of *Berkshire*, joined in *Commission* with the aforesaid *Galliard* Sieur de *Duras*; and [d] *Edward Lee* Doctor in Divinity, Arch-deacon of *Colchester*, and the *Soveraign*'s Almoner, sent over with the Lord *Morley*: In like manner was [e] *John Tailour*, Arch-deacon of *Buckingham*, and [f] Vice-chancellor, joined with *Arthur Plantagenet* Viscount *Lysle*; and Doctor [g] *Goodrick* Bishop of *Ely* with the Marquess of *Northampton*.

m *Lib.* N. *p.* 309 *sub finem.*
b *Ibid p.* 310.
c *Appendix, Num.* LXII.
d *Ibid. Num.* LXIII.
e *Lib* N *p.* 257 *& Regist. Ch. m. f.* 66.
f Vicechancellier D'angleterre, *so called in the Certificate of* Francis *the First his Receipt of the Habit.*
g *Collect. A. V. W.*

But of later times, the Soveraign's Ambassador, resident with the *Stranger-Elect*, hath supplied this place; as did Sir *Thomas Smith* in the Legation sent over to the French King *Charles* the Ninth; and Sir [i] *Edward Stafford* in that to the French King *Henry* the Third; and [k] Sir *Anthony Mildmay*, when the Earl of *Shrewsbury* was sent upon the like Legation to the French King *Henry* the Fourth.

h *Collect. W.*
i *Collect. W.*
k *le N. Cl.*

Garter joined in the Legation.

Besides the before mentioned persons, *Garter* Principal King of Arms, was always joined in these *Commissions* of *Legation*, not only to keep on foot his right to the employment, but to manage the ceremonious part of this Solemnity: and if we shall be thought over numerous in Instances to justifie this particular, let our *Reader* excuse it, since it is to make good the Priviledge of an Office, and maintain the interest of an ancient right.

This reason (we presume) will also excuse our repetition here, of the ancient President when [l] *Garter* carried over the *Habit* of the *Order*, to *Edward* King of *Portugal*, *an.* 13. *H.* 6. to which we shall subjoin the Embassies to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, where Sir [m] *John Writh Garter*, was joined in the *Commission* with *Galliard* Sieur de *Duras*, and that to [n] *Guido Ubaldus* Duke of *Urbyn*, *an.* 22. *H.* 7.

l *Lib.* N. *p.* 91.
m *Collect.* A. V. W.
n *Collect.* A. V. W.
o *Collect.* A. V. W.

Sir [o] *Thomas Wriothesley* was also joined with Sir *Charles Somerset*, in the Legation to the Emperor *Maximilian*; with the [p] Lord *Morley* sent to *Ferdinand* Arch-Duke of *Austria*, and with [q] *Arthur* Viscount *Lysle*, to the French King *Francis* the First.

p *Append. Num.* LXII.
q *Ex Collect. præd.*

[r] Sir *Christopher Barker*, *Garter*, was also sent with the *Habit* of the *Order* into *Scotland* (immediately after the Lord *William Howard*) who jointly presented the same to King *James* the Fifth.

r *Lib.* N. *p.* 267.

Sir *Gilbert Dethick* likewise was joined in the *Commission* with the Marquess of *Northampton*, in the Embassy to the French King *Henry* the Second; also with the Lord *Clynton* in that to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*; with the Lord *Hunsdon* in that Legation to *Charles* the Ninth, with the Earl of *Sussex*, in that to the Emperor *Maximilian*, and with *Peregrine* Lord *Willoughby*, in that to *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*.

Afterwards

Afterwards Sir *William Dethick* (his Son and Successor in the Office of *Garter*) was in like manner joined in *Commission* with the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, sent to *Henry* the Fourth French King, and with *Robert* Lord *Spencer* to *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg*.

Lastly, [f] Sir *William Segar*, when the *Habit* of the *Order* was sent to *Henry* Prince of *Orange*, was [t] joined in *Commission* with Viscount *Carleton*, for the presentation thereof.

And it is here further to be noted, that at such times as any other of the *Officers* of *Arms* were employed in this Affair (as hath sometimes hapned, when *Garter* could not undertake the Voyage in person) such *Officer* (recommended by him to, but approved of by the *Soveraign*) was sent to execute his *Office*, nevertheless, under a particular reservation of his Rights.

And therefore the Embassy to *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*, falling out ncer to the Coronation of King *James* (in reference to the [u] preparations for which grand Solemnity, *Garter* could not be spared) [w] *William Segar* Esq; then *Norroy* King of Arms, was joined in *Commission* with the Earl of *Rutland*.

When *Henry St. George* Esq; *Richmond* Herald, was joined with Sir *James Spens* Knight, and *Peter Toung* Esq; in the *Commission* of Legation to *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, he went [x] Deputy to Sir *William Segar*, *Garter*, and was [y] accountable to him for the Rewards he did receive. Nor was *John Philpot* Esq; *Somerset* Herald any otherwise sent, than Deputy to *Garter*, though joined in Commission with *William Boswell* Esq; for delivery of the *Garter* and *George* to *Charles* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne*, *an.* 9. *Car.* 1.

In like manner, when the Embassy was less solemn, and only part of the *Ensigns* of the *Order* sent, *Garter* hath been jointly employed with the other *Commissioners*: for so was *William Segar* Esq; *Garter*, with Sir *Ralph Winwood*, for presenting the *Garter* and *George* to *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, *an.* 10. *Jac. R.*

But beside the ancient right, the usage and prescription on *Garter*'s side (as is before laid down) we find it declared by a Decree in *Chapter* (pass'd the 18. of *April*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 1.) [a] *That the carrying of the* Ensigns *of the* Order *to* Stranger-Princes, *doth properly belong to* Garter.

Besides those persons joined in the *Commission* of *Legation*, there hath been oft times appointed either [b] *Norroy* King of Arms, or some one of the *Heralds*, to go in the quality of an Attendant on this Service, not only for the [c] honor of the *Soveraign*, but of the *Stranger* that is to receive the *Habit*; in regard the [d] Ceremonies of *Investiture* with the whole *Habit*, require the presence and assistance of two Officers of Arms; concerning which we have met with these Presidents.

[f] *Lancaster* Herald attended the Embassy to *Charles* the Ninth *French* King, *Chester* Herald, and *Rouge Dragon* Pursuivant at Arms, waited on the Embassy, to the French King *Henry* the Third. A *Herald* also attended the Embassy to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*. *York* Herald attended that to *Maximilian* the Emperor: And *Somerset Herald* to the French King *Henry* the Fourth.

And whereas there went only *Norroy* to *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*; it was because no more of the Officers of Arms could be then spared, from their necessary attendance on the *Soveraign*'s Coronation then at hand. So in the Embassy to *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, one *Herald* sufficed, [g] because the *Garter* and *George* only (not the whole *Habit* of the the *Order*) were sent unto him, and consequently there was then but little service to be done at such an Investiture.

Concerning other Companions and Attendants in these *Legations*, they are both for Quality and Number such and so many, as the Chief in the *Legation* thinks sufficient, for the honor of the *Soveraign*, and the reputation of the *Embassy*: and in what Equipage some of these *Ambassadors* have been attended heretofore, may be seen from the following Lists.

f *Collect. E. W. G.*
t *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [L. 18.] *circa medium.*
u } *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
w }
x *See before fol.* 302. *Sir Ed. Walkers Pet. for the rights of his Office.*
y *Collect. E. W. G.*
a *Lib. R. p.* 120.
Heralds attendant in the Legation.
b }
c } *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
d }
f *MS. fol. penes G. O. T. p.* 106.
g *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

Ex eod. MS. in Bibl. Cotton. [sub Effigie Julii] C. 9.

The Names of the *Noblemen*, *Knights*, and *Gentlemen*, that accompanied the Marquess of *Northampton* in his *Legation*, with the *Habit* of the *Order* to the French King *Henry* the Second, 15. *May an.* 5. *E.* 6.

The Earls of *Worcester.*
Rutland.
Ormond.
Viscounts *Fitzwalter.*
Lysle.
Lords *Bourgonne.*
Bray.
Evers.
Mr. *Throgmorton.*
Mr. *Sidney*, both of the *Soveraign*'s Privy Chamber.
Sir *William Cobham.*
Sir *John Cutts.*
Sir *John Perrott.*
Sir *Anthony Guydot.*
Sir *Gilbert Dethick.*
Mr. *Fitz Williams.*
Mr. *Carre.*
Mr. *Knolles.*
Mr. *Edw. Warney.*
Mr. *Fr. Warney.*
Mr. *Young.*
Mr. *William Thomas* Secretary to the Lords Commissioners.
Mr. *Nicholas Alexander.*
Mr. *Lucas Frugard.*
Chester Herald } at Arms.
Rougdragon Pursuivant }

The whole number of *Noblemen* and *Gentlemen*, with all their Trains, was 260.

MS. penes G. O. T. f. 118.

The Names of the *Noblemen*, *Knights*, and *Gentlemen*, who accompanied the Earl of *Sussex* in his Legation with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*, to *Maximilian* the Emperor, *an.* 9. *Eliz.*

The Lord *North*, Baron of *Kyrtling.*
Sir *Egremond Radcliff*, the Ambassador's Brother.
Sir *Thomas Mildmay.*
Sir *Gilbert Dethick*, Garter.
Sir *Henry Cobham* } Two of the *Soveraign*'s band of Pensioners.
Sir *Edmund Powell* }
William Dethick Rouge Cross Pursuivant at Arms.
William Weston, one of the Queens Servants.

Gentlemen attending on the Ambassador.

John Valpe Doctor of Physick.
Anthony Overton Prothonotary.
William Chancellor, Chaplain.
George Frevill,
Robert Butler.
William Mesten.
Henry Mildmay.
Thomas Higham.
Peter Gough.
Arthur Hevingham.
Albert Philipps.

Servants to the *Ambassador.*

Henry Eritage.
James Bradshaw.
William Hamlett.
Thomas Gest.
Simon Smith.
Thomas Barber.

Servants to the Lord *North.*

Arnold Segrell.
Leonard Dickes.

Servants to Sir *Tho. Mildmay.*

John Strange.
James ——

Servants to Sir *Gilbert Dethick.*

Charles Poirett.
John Rudde.
John Child.
John Fletcher.

Servant to Sir *Henry Cobham.*

Hans ------

Servant to Sir *Edmund Powell.*

Charles ------

The

The Names of the *Emperor's Gentlemen*, that waited upon the Lord *Ambassador* the Earl of *Sussex*, in *Vienna* 1567. *MS. penes G. O. T. f.154.*

Casper van Mynkonitz, Sewer.
Seymfred van Alderston, Carver.
Marquess Spiller, Cupbearer.
William van Pellustrans } Heralds of
Hans Poyntsott } Arms.
Nicholas Radode, Comptroller of the House.
George Swikle, Clerk of the Kitchin.
Item 10 Archers.
Item 10 Holbardiers.
George Weaver, Master Cook.

In the Kitchin 10 persons.
In the Cellar 5.
In the Larder 5.
In the Confectionary 5.
In the Chaundry 2.
In the Wardrobe 3.
In the Scullery 3.
And one Porter.

In all 62 persons.

The Names of the *Noblemen*, *Knights*, *Esquires*, and *Gentlemen*, who gave their attendance on the Earl of *Derby*, sent *Ambassador* with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*, to the French King *Henry* the Third, 20. *Jan. an.* 27. *Eliz.* *Ibid. f.32.*

The Lord *Sands*.
The Lord *Windsor*.
Mr. *Scroop*, Son and Heir to the Lord *Scroop*.
Mr. *Windsore*, Son and Heir apparent to the Lord *Windsore*.
Sir *Richard Shirborne* Knight, Treasurer.
Sir *Randolph Brereton*, Knight.
Mr. *Clarencieux*, King of Arms.
Mr. *Anthony Cook*, Heir to Sir *Anthony Cook*.
Mr. *Gerard*, Son and Heir to Sir *Thomas Gerard*.
Mr. *Fleetwood*.
Mr. *Newdygate*.
Mr. *Stallange*.
Mr. *Somerset* Herald of Arms.
Mr. *Crompton*.
Mr. *Smith*.
Mr. *Denton*.
Mr. *Milles Secretary*.
Mr. *Thomas Arderne*, Steward.
Mr. *Fox*, Comptroller.
Mr. *Newton*, Gentleman Huisher.
Mr. *Philipps*, Chaplain.
Mr. *Alexander*, Gentleman of the Horse.
Mr. *Moorcroft*, Physitian.

The Earls waiting Gentlemen.

Mr. *Dawney*, Son and Heir to Sir *John Dawney*.
Mr. *James Legh*, Son and Heir to Sir *Pierce a Legh*.
Mr. *Warenne*.
Mr. *Thomas Shirborne*.
Mr. *Stanley*.
Mr. *Charles Doyley*.
M. *Chevalier Machett*.
Mr. *Richard Starkey*.
Mr. *Brereton*.
Mr. *Thomas Hamner*.
Mr. *Richard Lloyd*.
Mr. *Salisbury*.
Mr. *Richard Bussy*.
Mr. *John Downes*.
Mr. *Francis Starkey*.
Mr. *Baptist*.
Mr. *Thomas Randolph*.
Mr. *Tusser*.
Mr. *Anthony Chambers*.
Mr. *Nicholas Forton*.
Mr. *Gervase Rosell*.
Thomas Burscogh } Clerks of the
Roger Jollibrand } Kitchin.

In the third place, there is to be prepared for this Legation, *Warrants* for the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*; and these are also to be drawn up by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, who is to attend the *Soveraign* for his Sign manual thereunto. 3. Warrants for the Habit.

One *Warrant* is to be directed to the *Master* of the *Soveraign*'s Great *Wardrobe*, to deliver to *Garter* King of Arms, the [h] *Mantle*, with a Scutcheon of St. *George* within a Garter, embroidered on the left shoulder, and Tassels thereunto belonging, as also the [i] *Surcoat* and *Hood*. [h] [i] *Appendix, Numb.* LXXVI. LXXVII. LXXVIII. & LXXIX.

There is also another *Warrant* drawn up, for the delivery of the *Ensigns* of the *Order* to *Garter*; namely [k] the rich *Garter*, the Great *Collar* of the *Order*, with a *George* appendant, and another smaller *George* hanging in a Blue Ribband: together with Cases for them, lined with Purple Velvet, and gilt on the outside.

k *Ibid. Num.* LXXX. LXXXI. LXXXII & LXXXIII.

And sometimes these *Ensigns* have been delivered out of the *Jewel-house* to the *Herald* at Arms, joined in the Legation in *Garter*'s stead, as were those sent to *Charles* King of *Sweden*, *an.* 20. *Car.* 2. But those provided for *John George* Duke of *Saxony* to Sir *Thomas Higgons*, the principal in the *Legation* to him; for which they gave their [m] several Receipts.

m *Ibid. Num.* LXXXIV. & LXXXV.

The *Soveraign*'s Warrant for the delivery of those *Ensigns* sent to *Maximilian* the Emperor, was directed to the *Lord Treasurer* of *England*, for which *Garter* gave his * Receipt. But for those sent to the French King *Henry* the Fourth, the Warrant was directed to the *Master* of the *Jewel-house*: and out of this Office have all the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, before mentioned, been since delivered.

* *Ibid. Num.* LXXX.

4. Other Necessaries.

There are several other Necessaries to be provided, which may pass as appurtenances to the former, and are sometimes inserted into the *Soveraign*'s *Warrants* for the *Habit* of the *Order*, and at other times issue forth by particular Warrants; namely,

A [n] *Black Velvet Cap*, with white Feathers and a Heron Sprig.

A [o] *Girdle* and *Hangers* of the same coloured Velvet with the Surcoat.

n, o *Appendix, Numb.* LXXXVII. & LXXXVIII.

A yard of Purple Velvet hath been usually allowed out of the Great *Wardrobe*, for covering the *Book* of *Statutes* which the *Soveraign* sends to the *Elect-Stranger*; and for the Velom, Writing, and Binding the said Book, there is a Fee paid by the *Soveraign* to the *Register* of the *Order*, which generally hath been proportioned according to the Degree of the *Stranger*; for this *Officer* had allowed him for the *Book* sent

m *Collect. Wale N. Cl.*

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
[m] To the French King, *Henry* the Fourth	5	0	0
To *John Casimire* Count Palatine	4	0	0
To the Duke of *Holstein*, *an.* 3. *Jac.*	3	6	8
To the King of *Sweden*, *an.* 3. *Car.* 1.	3	0	0

n *Append. Num.* LXXVIII. o *MS. fol. penes G.O.T. p.* 104.

That *Book* of *Statutes* sent to the *French* King *Henry* the Third, was fairly bound in [n] Crimson Velvet, and edged with Gold Lace: That to the *French* King *Henry* the Fourth was [o] painted with Arms, wrought with Goldsmiths work, bound in Blue Velvet, with Laces of Gold and Silk. But to be more particular, we will insert a Transcript of the Bill of Charges for the *Book* of the *Statutes*, provided for and sent to *James* the Fifth King of *Scotland*, *an.* 26. *H.* 8.

MS. vet. penes G.O.T. f. 1.

	s.	*d.*
First, *For Vellym*	5	0
Item, *For illuminyng the Arms and Letters*	10	0
Item, *For writing*	20	0
Item, *For Binding and Gilding*	2	8
Item, *For half a yard of Purple Velvet*	7	0
Item, *For half a yard of Crimson Sattin*	7	0
Item, *For the Purple Silk for the Laces*	0	4
Item, *For the white and green Silk for the Seal*	1	0
Item, *For red Silk for the Strings and garnishing of the Book*	1	0
Item, *For an Ounce and a half of Venice Gold*	5	2
Item, *For shaping, making of the Bag, and garnishing*	3	4
Item, *For the Red Sarcenet for the lining of the Bag*	1	4
Item, *For a Box*	0	8
	1 4	6

This

This *Book* of *Statutes* ought to be Sealed, with the [p] *Common Seal* of the *Order*; which not only the *Statutes* of *Institution*, but all the other succeeding Bodies of *Statutes* do appoint: Besides, at a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall*, 18. *Apr. an.* 13. *Car.* I. this Law was confirmed, and thereupon it was again Decreed, [q] *That the* Book *of* Statutes *sent to any* Stranger-Prince *should be sealed with the* Great Seal *of the* Order, *affixed to a Label of Blue Silk and Gold.*

p E. 3 Stat. Art 20. H. 5. H. 8. Stat. Art. 21.

q Lib. R. p. 120.

There is also to be provided a large Purple Velvet *Cushen*, to carry the Robes on, when they are to be presented; this is put likewise into the *Soveraign's Warrant*, and provided by the *Master* of the *Great Wardrobe*; and it usually contains [r] one yard and a quarter in length, being adorned [s] with Fringe, Cauls, and Tassels of Gold and Purple Silk, and within it a [t] Pillow of Fustian filled with Down.

r Collect. A. V. W.

s t Ex Lib. Warr. particular in Offic. mag. Gardrob. ab. an. 1593. ad an. 1603. pag. 85.

There were two Velvet *Cushens* prepared for the Service of the Duke of *Wirtemberg*'s Investiture, *an.* 1. *Jac. viz.* [u] one of Purple for the *Soveraign*'s State, and another of Crimson for the Dukes: So also were there carried over the same year, for the Service of *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*, [w] two Purple *Cushens* garnished with Fringe, Buttons, Cauls, and Tassels. Two *Majesty Scutcheons* are likewise to be provided, painted in Oyl, and gilded with fine Gold; the one whereof to have the Arms of the *Soveraign* surrounded with a *Garter*, under an Imperial Crown; the other of the *Stranger*'s Arms, within a *Garter* also, and such a Crown as belongs to his Dignity. Both these are to be put in Frames, painted, and gilt, with their several *Stiles* fairly written underneath the Arms, and set upon the back of the *Soveraign*'s Stall, under the State, as also on the back of the Stall of the *Stranger-Elect*. But there were [x] three *Majesty Scutcheons* sent over in the Legation to *Henry* Prince of *Orange*, in regard that at his Investiture *Frederick* Prince Elector Palatine was present.

u MS fol. penes G O T p. 193.

w Ibid. p. 299.

x Collect. W. le N. Cl.

And in case the chief person in the Legation be a *Knight* of the *Order*, then is he to have a like *Scutcheon* of his [y] own Arms to set over his Stall also: for so had *Henry* Earl of *Derby* provided for him at the *Soveraign*'s charge, when he was sent with the *Habit* to the French King *Henry* the Third.

y Append. Num. LXXVIII.

The remaining Necessaries are such as relate to the *Transportation* of the *Habit* of the *Order*, and what appertains to them, to wit;

[z] One pair of fine *Holland sheets*, to fold the Habit in.
Two *Sweet Bags* of Taffaty, to lay amongst them.
Two *Trunks*, to put the said parcels in.
One *Sumpter Saddle.*

z Ibid. Num. LXXVI. LXXXVII. LXXXVIII.

All which are to be provided at the *Soveraign*'s [b] charge, and is also his gift to the *Elect-Prince.*

b Ex eod. MS. penes G. O. T. f. 97. b.

What further *Warrants* are to be obtained from the *Soveraign*, relate to *Garter*, and such other *Officer* of *Arms* as is appointed to attend the *Legation*; as first, a *Warrant* whereby the *Soveraign* ascertains an allowance for their *Dyet* and *Reward*, during their Journey, and till their return; and upon which most commonly, for greater certainty of the payment, the *Soveraign*'s *Privy Seal* is obtained.

5. Warrants for allowances to Garter and the Herald.

The allowance to *Garter* in the Reign of King *Edward* the Sixth, was 10 *s.* a day for his dyet, and 10 *s.* a day the *Soveraign*'s Reward, in all 20 *s. per diem.*

[d] Thus much we find to have been allowed Sir *Gilbert Dethick* Garter, in the Embassy to the French King *Henry* the Second, and appointed to [e] begin the 28. of *April*, *an.* 5. *E.* 6.

d e Appendix, Numb. LXXXIX.

The like [f] sum *per diem* was allowed him in the Legation to *Maximilian* the Emperor, and to [g] begin seven days before his arrival at the Sea side: In this service * 250 days being spent, his allowance came to 250 *l.*

f g Ib. Num. XC.

* MS fol. penes G.O.T. p 159.

In the Voyage to *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*, the said Sir *Gilbert Dethick*, had the [h] same allowance given him, which [i] began the 29. of *June an.* 24. *Eliz.* (being the tenth day before his embarking) and ended the 2. day of *October* following.

h i Appendix, Num XCI.

And when *Clarenceux* was sent [k] in the place of *Garter* (that Office being void by the death of the said Sir *Gilbert Dethick*) with the Earl of *Derby*, to the French King *Henry* the Third, the like sum of [l] 20 *s. per diem* was also allowed him,

k Collect. W. le N. Cl.

l Appendix, Num. XCII.

him, to begin from the 17. of *Jan. an.* 27. *Eliz.* though the said Earl went not till the [m] 26. of the same month, and returned not till the 16. of *March* following.

We further find, that the very [n] same allowance was also setled upon Sir *William Dethick* Garter, when the *Habit* of the *Order* was sent to the French King *Henry* the Fourth, which Journey began the [o] 11. of *September*, *an.* 40. *Eliz.* and lasted till the 7. of *November* ensuing, in all 60. days. As also in his Voyage to the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, which began the [p] 6. of *September*, *an.* 1. *Jac. R.* and ended with his return to *Hampton-Court*, on *Christmas* Eve following, and amounted to 109 *l.* But *an.* 10. *Jac.* upon the carriage of the Habit over to Prince *Maurice* of *Nassau*, the allowance to Sir *William Segar*, Garter, was encreased to [q] 30 *s.* a day: so much also was after allowed to the same Sir *William Segar*, when the *Habit* of the *Order* was sent over to *Henry* Prince of *Orange*, *an.* 3. *Car.* 1. *viz.* [r] 15 *s. per diem*, for his Dyet, and the same sum *per diem* by way of Reward.

Of this daily allowance *Garter* hath usually obtained an advance beforehand, for his better support by the way: For instance, he had an advance of [u] two months pay for his Voyage towards *Vienna*, and when he accompanied the Lord *Hunsdon* into *France*, he had an advance also of [w] 40 *l.* In like manner when *Clarenceux* went in the *Legation* to the French King *Henry* the Third, he received a [x] hundred Marks beforehand.

When any of the *Heralds* were sent in *Garter's* place, the same allowances were made them, as if *Garter* had gone in person; for we find the sum of [y] 30 *s.* a day allowed to *Henry St. George* Esq; *Richmond* Herald sent with the Earl of *Carlisle* to *Charles* King of *Sweden*, whither he began his Journey the 5. of *February*, *an.* 21. *Car.* 2. As also to [z] *Tho. St. George* Esq; *Somerset* Herald, sent with Sir *Tho. Higgons* to the Duke of *Saxony*, upon the like Employment, the 27. of *February* following.

As concerning the allowance to such *Officers* of *Arms*, not joined in, but appointed to attend any of these *Legations*, it was as followeth.

If he were a *Herald*, his allowance was the moyety of what was given to *Garter*; to wit, heretofore 5 *s. per diem* for his Dyet, and the like sum for the *Soveraign's* Reward, *in toto* 10 *s. per diem.* And if a *Pursuivant* at Arms was sent on this Employment, his allowance was half as much *per diem* as an *Herald* had.

Agreeable hereunto was the allowance given to [a] *Chester* Herald, and [b] *Rouge Dragon* Pursuivants, in the Embassy to the French King *Henry* the Second, *an.* 5. *E.* 6. and [c] there called the old Rate. So also to *Somerset* Herald, in the Voyage [d] to *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*, and to the same *Herald* when he attended the *Legation* to the French King [e] *Henry* the Third, and likewise in that *Embassy* to [f] *Henry* the Fourth of *France*.

Moreover the *Herald* or *Pursuivant* had also a proportionable part of their daily allowances advanced beforehand, to fit them for their Journey, like as *Garter* had, as in the foresaid Legation to *Henry* the Third, *Somerset* Herald an advance of an [i] hundred Nobles.

Over and above the before mentioned allowances to *Garter*, for Diet and the *Soveraign's* Reward; he hath also an allowance for [k] *Postage*, both outward and homeward, of himself and his Servants, and Transportation of the *Habit* of the *Order*, and other things necessary for the Voyage: And of this, because there can be no estimate made beforehand, whereby to ascertain any allowance for the same, it hath been usual to insert a Clause in the *Soveraign's Warrants*, including the allowances for these things, to be such as [l] *Garter* (upon his return) should in a Bill of particulars, subscribed with his hand, signific to the *Treasurer* and *Chamberlains* of the *Exchequer* to have been disbursed by him.

The *Warrant* to furnish *Garter* or the *Herald* with [m] *Post-horses* from place to place, is commonly had from the *Lords* of the *Privy Council*, or *Secretary* of *State*: as likewise for convenient [n] *Shipping*, for the Transportation of himself, Servants, Trunks, and other necessaries, when he passeth over Sea, either before or after the Lord *Ambassador*, and is not provided for in his Ship.

m *Appendix*, *Num.* XCII.
n } *MS. in Bibl. Hatton. fol.* 227. *b. & MS. fol. penes G. O. T. p.* 61.
o }
p *Ex eod. MS. penes G. O. T. p.* 60.
q *Appendix*, *Num.* XCIII.
r *Ibid. Num.* XCIV.
u *Ibid. Num.* XC.
w *MS. fol penes G. O. T. p.* 106.
x *Appendix*, *Num.* XCII.
y *Ibid. Num.* XCV.
z *Num.* XCVI.
a } *Ibid. Num.*
b } LXXXIX.
c }
d *Ibid. Num.* XCI.
e *Ibid. Num.* XCII.
f *MS. in Bibl. Hatton. fol.* 227. *b. & MS. fol. penes G. O. T. p.* 65.
i *Append. Num.* XCII.
k } *Ibid. Num.*
l } XC.
m } *Ibid. Num.*
n } XCVII. & XCVIII.

SECT.

SECT. III.

The Ceremonies *of* Investiture.

THE Ceremonies observed at a *Stranger Prince*'s Receipt of the whole Habit and Ensigns of the Order, are highly solemn, whether we consider the manner of *Investiture* performed by the *Soveraign*'s *Ambassadors*, or the *Festivity* and *Triumphs* added by the new *Invested Stranger*; and therefore that nothing may hinder a full prospect into the state and magnificence of both, we shall handle the same at large; and give such instances thereof, as may illustrate so great a Solemnity.

First then, the *Commissioners* joined in the *Legation* (after their arrival at the *Elect-Stranger*'s Court, and receiving notice of their first Audience) are to present themselves in the [a] accustomed manner of *Ambassadors*, *Garter* or his Deputy going in breast with the chief in the *Legation*, if there be only himself joined in the *Commission* with the Lord *Ambassador*: and in that [b] place is it remembred, that *William Segar* Esq; *Norroy* King of *Arms* (sent in the place of *Garter*) did proceed with the Earl of *Rutland*, at their first audience before *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*. 1. First Audience. a Colleß. W. b Ile N. Cl.

Being arrived neer the *Elect-Stranger*, they present the *Letters* [c] certifying *Election*, or their *Credential Letters* from the *Soveraign*; and after some short general Complement delivered from the *Soveraign* of the *Order*, by the chief *Ambassador* in the *Legation*, he further makes known how that the *Soveraign* and "*Knights-Companions* of the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, have elected him "into that most renowned *Society*, for the reasons which are commonly laid "down in the Preamble of their *Commission*, and which he ought then to repeat; "further acquainting him, that the *Soveraign* doth never Elect any *Stranger* in-"to the said Society, but such as he doth most highly honor and respect; and "therefore desires him, that he would accept of it, as a true testimony thereof; "to which end he adds, that the *Soveraign* hath sent him over, together with "*Garter* Principal King of Arms (or his *Deputy*) to perform the Ceremony of "*Investiture*. And this is the substance of his address for the general representation of his Affair. c Appendix, Num. CII.

But more particularly in this first speech, he is to prosecute the method and order laid down in his *Instructions*, concerning which we have some light from those given to the Earl of *Shrewsbury* upon his Embassy, with the whole *Habit* of the *Order* to the French King *Henry* the Fourth, which were as followeth.

"[c] First, you shall let the *King* understand, that the *King* who was first *Insti-*"*tutor* of this *Order*, did principally dedicate the same to *Noble persons*, remark-"able for extraordinary valour and command in martial Affairs; and as both "*We* and *Our* Predecessors have usually bestowed it upon personages of highest "Estate and dearest unto Us, so both these respects concurring in this *Election* "of him (as that *Prince* whose preservation we have ever held most dear, and "who liking personal valour and experience hath gotten to himself the greatest "reputation by the same, that ever any *Prince* hath done in *Europe*) we have "had no small desire long ere this time, to possess him of this further pledge "of our perfect amity, being one of the greatest signs of honor, wherewith we "can honor any *Prince*; and therefore do desire him to make no other judg-"ment of the protraction of the same hitherto, but that his own uncertainties "of residence, in regard of the continual actions of War, wherein he is daily "engaged, hath given us cause to think, it would have come unseasonably un-"to him; when now that the Treaties and other Circumstances seem more fit-"ting, we assure our self, that it shall be received with that sure measure of "good will and kindness, wherewith we offer it; and as we take our self c Ex Colleß. W. Ile N. Cl.

"honored

"honored by such and so choice a *Companion*, so can no *Prince* go before *Us* in "*Our* true and perfect obligation, to the rights of all happiness in all his Fortunes.

After the formality of this first address is over, and that the *Stranger* hath by his answer accepted of the Election, and consented to the reception of the *Order*; then doth the *Ambassador*, immediately [f] deliver to him the *Book* of *Statutes* (that so he may peruse them before he assume the *Habit*) and desires his consideration thereupon: Next, both the Commissioners in the Legation present him with the *George* and *Ribband*, and put it about his Neck, for so did * Sir *James Spens* and Mr. *Henry St. George*, *Richmond* Herald, to *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden* the 21. of *September*, *an.* 3. *Car.* 1. and in the last place, the Ambassador moves him to be pleased to name both a fit time and place, for his consent to the *Articles* of the *Statutes*, and the reception of the *Habit*; which being appointed (after some further Complements) the *Ambassadors* depart for that time.

f *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [L. 1.] *fol.* 47. *vide etiam Appendix, Num.* CII.
* *Collect. E. W. G.*

2. Preparations for the Investiture.

In the interim, before the day of *Investiture*, time is usually set apart for Conference between the *Soveraign's Ambassadors*, and some of the *Elect-Princes* Council, touching the ordering of the Ceremonies at this great Solemnity, and wording the *Oath* to be by him taken, before he is invested (in case any Exceptions shall be made to the *general Oath* of the *Order*, or that the form thereof hath not been fully agreed upon beforehand) in relation to which we shall particularly discourse in the following [g] *Chapter*.

g *Sect.* 11.

[h] *Garter* is likewise to consider, what places in the *Elect-Princes* Court (fittest to perform the Ceremonies in) are to be made ready, and in what manner; as also to instruct his Officers, what duties and services are on their part to be undertaken.

h *MS. in Bibl. Coton.* [*sub effig. Julii* C. 9]

If the great *Hall*, or other large Room, be appointed for the place of *Investiture*, there ought to be prepared a *Table*, with a rich Carpet, whereon the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order* are to be laid, during the reading of the *Soveraign's Commission* of *Legation*; with another *Table* for the *Stranger*, who receives the *Order*, and a third for the *Soveraign's Ambassadors*.

In the *Church* or *Chappel* into which the invested *Stranger* is to proceed, to hear Divine Service, is to be erected a *Stall* (under a [i] Cloth of *State*) on the right hand entrance of the *Choire*, for the *Soveraign* of the *Order*, within which is to be fixed the *Majesty-Scutcheon* of the *Soveraign's Arms*, mentioned among the preparations made for the *Legation*.

i *Ibidem.*

Also another *Stall* placed at that distance from the *Soveraign's Stall*, and on the same side of the *Choire*, as is the *Stall* designed for the *Elect-Stranger*, in the *Choire* at *Windesor*; over which a *State* is likewise to be set, and within the *Stall* fixt the other *Majesty-Scutcheon* of his own *Arms*, brought likewise over by *Garter* or his *Deputy*.

And lastly, a third *Stall* for the Lord *Ambassador*, who (if he be a *Knight-Companion* of the *Order*) hath in like manner a *Scutcheon* of his own *Arms* within a *Garter*, set over it; for so had the [k] Marquess of *Northampton*, at the *Investiture* of the French King *Henry* the Second, *an.* 5. *E.* 6. and the [l] Earl of *Derby* at that of *Henry* the Third, and the *Constable* of *France* (being a *Knight-Companion* of the *Garter*) attending at the former of these two *Investitures*, in his whole *Habit*, had also a [m] *Scutcheon* of his *Arms*, placed over the *Stall* provided for him.

k *MS. penes G. O. T. f.* 239.
l *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
m *Ex eod. MS. penes eund. G. O. T. loc. cit.*

And we are further to note, that underneath all these *Scutcheons* of Arms, the *Stiles* and *Titles* (fairly written) of the *Soveraign* and each *Knight-Companion* are to be affixed.

But where there hath followed no solemn Proceeding to *Church* after Investiture, the *Soveraign's Scutcheon* of *Arms* with his *Titles* have been set up at the upper end of the Room where the Investiture was performed, so also the *Stranger-Knights* at due distance: for so was it done at the Investiture of * *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, which he received in his Tent at the Leaguer neer *Darshaw* in *Prussia* the 23. of *September*, *an.* 3. *Car.* 1. and likewise at the Investiture of || *John George* Duke of *Saxony*, the 13. of *April*, *an.* 22. *Car.* 2.

* *Collect. E W. G.*

Howbeit

Besides the before mentioned *Preparations*, the *Church* or *Chappel* into which the new Invested *Stranger* proceeds, is to be richly adorned: This, for instance, we find done at the *Investiture* of *Henry* the Third, the *French* King, the *Church* of *Augustine Friers* in *Paris*, being hung with rich Arras, and all the *Choire* and *Stalls* with Cloth of Gold: and how the *Church* of St. *Ulrick* at *Studtgard* was adorned at the reception of the *Habit* by *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg* will appear by and by.

3. The order of Investiture.

The day whereon the Solemnity of *Investiture* is to be celebrated, the *Elect-Stranger* sends his Coach, and some persons of Quality to accompany the *Soveraign's Ambassadors* to his Court. At the Investiture of *Henry* Prince of *Orange*, [n] *Frederick* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne*, sate with Viscount *Charleton* in one Boot of the Prince's Coach, and Sir [o] *William Segar* in the other; who arriving at the Court, were met by the said *Prince*, at the foot of the Stairs, and conducted thence into his great Chamber.

n } o } *Vide Gulielmi Segar Supremo Relationem, inter Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

After such time as the *Elect-Stranger* and the *Soveraign's Ambassadors* have a while retired, the *Stranger* hath usually first entred the Room, appointed for the Ceremony, and stood under his own *State*, expecting the coming in of the *Ambassadors*, and notice thereof being given them (they reposing themselves in a Room neer unto it) forthwith proceeded in manner following.

Servants to the Lord *Ambassador*, two and two.

The *Herald* in his Coat of the Soveraign's *Arms*, bearing the *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Hood*, and *Cap* on his arms, and if there be a *Pursuivant* attending the Embassy, he (wearing his Coat) proceeds before him, bearing part of the said *Habit*.

Garter, vested in his [p] rich Coat of the *Soveraign's* Arms also (but at the *Investiture* of the Duke of *Wirtemberg* he wore his *Robe* of Crimson Sattin, so did *Clarenceux* at the *Investiture* of the French King *Henry* the Third, and lastly *Richmond* and *Somerset* at the *Investiture* of *Charles* King of *Sweden*, and the Prince Elector of *Saxony*) bearing on a Cushen the *Garter*, the *Collar* of the *Order*, with the great *George*, the *Book* of *Statutes*, and the *Commission* of *Legation*.

p *MS. in Bibl. Cotton. [sub effigii Julii] C. 9.*

Lastly, the Lord *Ambassador*, or chief in the Embassy, who, if he be a *Knight-Companion*, proceedeth in his compleat *Habit*.

If there happen to be any other *Knight-Companion* present at this high Solemnity, he also wears his whole *Habit* of the *Order*, as did [q] *Frederick* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne*, at the *Investiture* of *Henry* Prince of *Orange*, *an.* 3. *Car.* 1. the like did the [r] *Constable* of *France*, when the *French* King *Henry* the Second received the whole *Habit* at *Castlebriand* the 21. of *June*, *an.* 5. *E.* 6. The said *Constable* also paired in the Proceeding with the *Soveraign's Ambassador*, into the said Kings Privy Chamber, the place appointed for performing this Ceremony.

q *Ex præf. Relatione.*

r *MS. penes G. O. T f. 229.*

In this Proceeding up to the *Soveraign's State*, they all make three Reverences, and drawing neer thereunto, the *Ambassador's Servants* fall off on either side, for the *Herald* to pass up to the *Table* set before the *Soveraign's State*, where being arrived (with a single Reverence) he lays down the *Robes* thereupon.

Then *Garter* draws neer the *Table* also, and with a like Reverence towards the *Soveraign's State*, deposites there the *Ensigns* of the *Order*.

The Lord *Ambassador* follows and makes his Reverence towards the *Soveraign's State*, and after turning to the *Stranger-Elect*, and doing him Reverence, he (or some other fit person thereto appointed) delivers himself in a short, but grave and learned, *Oration*; "In which he not only [t] fets forth the praises of the most "illustrious *Order*, and of the King the *Soveraign* thereof (his Majesties hearty "affection and good will appearing in this Action) but also the virtues, the me-"morable and praise worthy Actions of the *Elect-Stranger*, to whom the *Habit* "and *Ensigns* of the *Order* are sent: neither are his Ancestors (if happily any of "them have attained and enjoyed the honor, reputation, and dignity of this "*Order*) to be pass'd over in silence; whereby his heart (already sufficiently "of it self breathing impatience and desire) may be so much the more inflamed "with an earnestness to obtain the honor and favour of this so great a dignity.

t *Lib. N. p. 309.*

"He adds beside, that the *Soveraign* having well weighed these and the like "things in his mind, and maturely advised thereof with his *Knights-Companions*;

"*nions*; they were perswaded and well satisfied in themselves to nominate "and chuse him before others, to the end that he might both himself be honor-"ed by the choice of such a person, and also thereby give an encrease and addi-"tion of Lustre to those renowned actions and virtues, which already were a "chief ornament unto him.

"Lastly, he points towards the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, which he declares to "have been sent by the *Soveraign*, out of great love and singular affection to "dignifie him therewith, as to a person unto whom he wisht as well and hono-"rably as to any other *Prince* whatsoever: and withall intreats him kindly to "accept of, and wear them in remembrance of the *Soveraign* and his *Order*.

This, [w] or the like *Oration* being ended, the *Ambassadors* present their *Commission* of *Legation* to the hands of the *Elect-Stranger*, who delivers it to his *Secretary*, and he publickly reads it.

w *Ibid.*

At the before mentioned *Investiture* of the *French* King *Henry* the Second, the Bishop of *Ely*, one of the *Commissioners* in the *Legation*, made the Speech, to which the Cardinal of *Loraine* returned answer, in the said *Kings* behalf, with all thankful acknowledgments of the honor of the *Order*.

x *MS. in Bibl. Cotton.* [*sub Effig. Julii C.9.*]

And when *Henry* the Third of *France* received the *Habit* of the *Order*, [y] Sir *Edward Stafford*, the *Soveraign's Leiger Ambassador*, performed this service.

y *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

After the *Commission* is read, *Garter* presents the *Oath*, fairly written, which is administred to the *Elect-Stranger*, where if any exceptions were before made and admitted, they must be here rehearsed; as we find it directed in the [z] *Instructions* given for the *Investiture* of *James* the Fifth King of *Scotland*.

z *Appendix, Num.* CII.

But the *Oath* was not taken by the *French* King *Henry* the Third, till after his *Investiture*, and in the *Augustine Fryers Church* in *Paris*; which being before prepared and written on Parchment in Letters of *Gold*; the said *King* there * signed it, by the subscription of his name [*Henry*] and then delivered it to his Secretary, to have his Privy Seal put to it. So also was the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, *an.* 1. *Jac.* [a] first *Invested* in his great *Hall* at *Studtgard*, and then proceeded to the great *Church*, [b] where he took the *Oath*.

* *Lib. C. p.* 97.

a *Erhard Celhius Eq. Aur. Anglo-Wirtemb. p.*133 & 135.
b *Ibid.* 153.

The [c] Ceremony of the *Oath* being finished, *Garter* takes from off the Cushen the *Garter*, and having kiss'd it, presents it to the Lord *Ambassador*, who kneeling down, puts it with all Reverence about the *Stranger's* left leg, being assisted by *Garter*, and therewithall [d] *Garter* pronounceth these words of *Signification*.

c *Lib. N. p.* 310.
d *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

c *Lib. N. p.* 310

[e] *Ad laudem atq; honorem Omnipotentis Dei, intemeratæ Matris ejus, & Sancti* Georgii *Martyris; cinge Tibiam tuam hoc insigni Subligaculo, circumferens in augmentum honoris tui, & in signum ac memoriam illustrissimi Ordinis, nusquam oblivioni daturus, aut omissurus, quod eo moneris; ut valeas, inquam, & velis in justo bello, quod solùm inibis, stare firmitèr, agere fortitèr, & feliciter omnino vincere.*

This being said, *Garter* next takes the *Surcoat*, and delivers it with the Ceremony of a Kiss to the Lord *Ambassador*, who (after the *Elect-Stranger* hath put off his Cloak, or upper Garment and Sword) puts it upon him in this manner: First the [f] Lord *Ambassador* begins at the *Stranger's* right arm, and *Garter* (or the *Leiger Ambassador* if present) assists at the left shoulder. The *Stranger* being thus vested with the *Surcoat*, both the Lord *Ambassador* and *Garter* gird his *Sword* about him, with a Velvet Girdle of the same colour, at the doing whereof *Garter* saith these words.

f *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

g *Lib. N. p.* 310.

[g] *Capito vestem hanc purpuream, ad incrementum honoris, & in signaculum Ordinis accepti: quâ munitus non vereberis pro fide Christi, libertate Ecclesiæ, pro jure, & oppressorum atq; indigentium necessaria tuitione, sanguinem etiam fundere, nedum fortitèr ac strenuè dimicare.*

After this, *Garter* takes up the *Mantle* and *Hood*, which having in like manner kissed, he delivers to the Lord *Ambassador*, who invests the *Stranger* therewith

with, and lays the *Hood* upon his [h] right shoulder (the Train being given into the hands of some noble Personage, to be born up) *Garter* also pronouncing these words.

h *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [L. 1. f. 47.] *vide sis MS. penes G. O. T. f. 239.*

[i] *Accipe Clamidem hanc Cœlici coloris, in Signum Clarissimi hujus Ordinis, & in augmentum etiam honoris tui, rubeo Clypeo Dominicæ Crucis, uti cernis, insignitam: ut cujus virtute semper ac vigore protectus per Hostes tutus abeas, eos ubiq; superare valeas, & pro clarissimis deniq; meritis, post egregiam hanc hujus temporis militiam, ad æterna veréq; triumphalia gaudia pertingas.*

i *Lib. N. loco cit.*

And in the last place, *Garter* takes up the *Collar*, and with a Kiss also, presents it to the Lord *Ambassador*, who placeth it about the *Stranger*'s shoulders, at which part of the Investiture *Garter* uttereth these words.

[k] *Torquem hunc in Collo deferes, ad augmentum honoris, & in signum quoq; clarissimi Ordinis à te suscepti, cum imagine sanctissimi Martyris, & Christi Militis Georgii: cujus præsidio suffultus, Mundi hujus tàm prospera quàm adversa sic pertranseas, ut animæ pariter ac corporis hostibus hic strenue devictis, non temporariæ modo Militiæ gloriam, sed & perennis victoriæ palmam deniq; recipere valeas.* Amen.

k *Ibid. 311.*

As soon as this Ceremony of *Investiture* is finished, the Lord *Ambassador* congratulateth the new invested *Stranger* in the Soveraign's name, and in the name of all the *Knights-Companions*; and then delivers to him his Velvet *Cap*, adorned with White Plumes, and next the *Book* of *Statutes*.

By the *Instructions* drawn up for the *Investiture* of [l] *Julianus de Medicis*, and [m] *James* the Fifth King of *Scotland* (though the form of the words of *Admonition* and *Signification*, are therein more briefly couchet) it may be observ'd, that this was the ancient series and order of *Investiture*, and was performed [n] all together, and [o] before the *Stranger* proceeded to the *Church*.

l m *Appendix, Num. CI. & CII.*

n o *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [L. 1.] *fol. 47. videsis MS. penes G. O. T. p. 156. in the case of the Emperor* Maximilian, *and fol. 239. in that of the French King* Henry *the Second.*

The Stranger being thus Invested, stayeth a while in the Room, where he received this honor, and either discourseth with the *Ambassador*, or else is entertained by him, with some short congratulatory Oration: which Complement being ended, he goeth to the *Church* in a solemn manner, having the Train of his Mantle carried up.

The Proceeding to the *Chappel*, after the *Investiture* of the *French* King *Henry* the Second.

[p] *Gentlemen* of *France* and *England*.
Noblemen of *France* and *England*.
Knights of the *Order* of St. *Michael* in their Collars.
Commissioners of *England*, where Sir *John Mason* placed himself with Monsieur *de Omable*, above the other *Commissioners*, because he was the *Soveraign*'s *Ambassador Resident*.
Chester Herald, in the *Soveraign*'s Coat of Arms.
Marquess of *Northampton*, and *Constable* of *France*.
Serjeants at Arms.
Garter in the *Soveraign*'s Coat of Arms.

Cardinal of *Chattillion*. | The *French King* in the *Habit* of the *Order* of the *Garter*. | The *Cardinal* of *Loraine*.

His Train born by the Duke of *Longueville*, as great *Chamberlain* of *France*.

p *MS. in Bibl. Coton.* [*sub. effig. Julii*] *C. 9. vide MS. penes G. O. T. p. 239.*

At the entrance into the *Church*, all in the Procession make three Reverences, the first towards the high *Altar*, the next towards the *Soveraign*'s *Stall*, and the third towards the new-invested *Stranger*'s *Stall*.

The Lord *Ambassador* proceedeth towards the Seat assigned for him, and stands before

before it till the Stranger hath ascended his Stall, and after that (making his Reverences as before) he takes his; then *Garter*, making the like Reverences, sits down on a Chair, placed for him before the *Soveraign's* Stall.

But the *Herald* at Arms ought to be often neer the *Stranger*, or else the Lord *Ambassador*, to inform them of the order of the *Ceremony*, if there be occasion; because *Garter* is obliged to attend the *Soveraign's* Royal Stall.

After a solemn *Anthem* sung, *Garter* passeth into the middle of the *Choire*, and by a Reverence, first to the Invested *Stranger*, and next to the Lord *Ambassador*, gives them the Signal for descending.

They being both come down, *Garter* passeth up before the *Stranger* to the high Altar, where he makes his *Offring* of Gold and Silver, being accompanied with the Lord *Ambassador*, the *Herald* laying the Cushen whereon he kneels while he offers.

But in case a *Knight-Companion* of the *Order* be sent on this *Legation*, then he proceeds first up to the Altar, preceded by *Garter*, and offers for the *Soveraign*, which done, he returns to his own Stall: Next the Invested *Stranger* proceeds up (preceded as before) and offers, and returns back to his own Stall; afterwards the foresaid *Knight-Companion* proceeds up again, and at this time offers for himself: and in this [r] order was the Offring made, when the Emperor *Maximilian* was Invested at *Vienna*, the 4. of *January*, *an.* 10. *Eliz.*

[r] *MS. penes G. O Y. f.* 156.

At the *Investiture* of the *French* King *Henry* the Second, there was a solemn *Mass* sung, and at the Offring time [t] *Garter* proceeded before the *King* to the Altar, and Monsieur *Dangennes* the Duke of *Vendosme's* Brother, presented to the *King* his Offring; and when he was returned to his Stall, the [u] *Constable* of *France* proceeded up with *Garter* before him, and offered; and in like manner after him the [w] Marquess of *Northampton*, with *Garter* also before him, made his Offring and returned to his Stall.

[t] *Ibidem.*
[u] *fol.* 239.
[w] *l.*

The new-invested *Stranger* having offered, returns to his Stall, and the Lord *Ambassador*, with three Reverences takes his Seat, the Organs or other Musick, playing all the while.

As soon as the solemn Service is finished, the *Stranger* descends again from his Stall, and with the Proceeding before him, returns in the same order he came, to the Room where he received his *Investiture*.

And it is observable that the Emperor *Maximilian*, out of compliance with the *Protestant Religion*, caused on the day of his *Investiture*, all [x] Prayers to *Saints*, *Incensing*, and other matters and Ceremonies, not used by the Church of *England*, to be wholly omitted at the service in his *Chappel*.

[x] *Ibid. f.* 110.

At these great Solemnities, the invested *Strangers* have heretofore held most magnificent *Feasts*, but they of late are not so much in use: And when Dinner was ready they proceeded thither in their whole *Habit*, which they [y] wore all Dinner while.

[y] *Ex Autogr. in Bibl. Hatton.*

At the Investiture of *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*, *an.* 1. *Jac.* the *Soveraign's Stiles* and *Titles* of honor were proclaimed thrice ([z] before they sat down to Dinner) and the said *Kings* twice: But when * *Maurice* and [a] *Henry* Princes of *Orange* received Investiture, the Stiles were proclaimed immediately after they were *Invested*, and in the same Room, that Ceremony being performed to both in an [b] Afternoon.

[z] *Colleft. W. le N. Cl.*
[a] *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [L. 18.] *circa medium.*

We have had the perusal of a fair Vellom [c] Manuscript, wherein there is very curiously limned the order and manner of *Maximilian* the First (King of the *Romans*) his sitting at *Dinner*, on the day of his *Investiture* with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*, together with Sir *Charles Somerset* and Sir *Thomas Wriothesley*, sent on the *Embassy* to present him therewith. As also the order observed of sitting at *Dinner* by Don *Ferdinand* Prince of *Spain*, Arch-Duke of *Austria*, on the like solemn occasion; the Lord *Morley* and Sir *William Hussey* sitting on his right hand, and Doctor *Lee* and the said Sir *Thomas Wriothesley* on his left, these four being joined in the *Commission* of *Legation* to him; which two Draughts for Antiquity's sake, we have copied thence, and thought good here to exhibit.

[c] *Penes Joh. Vincent gen.*

At

The Manner of sitting at Dinner, of Maximilian King of the Romans, on the day of his Investiture.

The Manner of sitting at Dinner, of Ferdinand Prince of Spanie, on the day of his Investiture.

At the Feaſt made on the like occaſion by the *French* King *Henry* the Second, he [d] admitted to his Table, (beſide the Marqueſs of *Northampton*, the principal perſon in the *Legation*) the before mentioned *Conſtable* of *France*; and all three ſat in their full *Robes* of the *Garter*, which they [e] put not off till after Dinner: The [f] Cardinal of *Loraine*, ſate alſo at the *Kings* Table, but it was on the other ſide.

When the *Inveſtiture* hath been performed in the Afternoon, then was the grand *Dinner* turned into a *Supper*; and thus it fell out at the *Inveſtiture* of [g] *Maximilian* the Emperor, and two of the *French* Kings, namely [h] *Charles* the Ninth, and [i] *Henry* the Third, as alſo of * *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*.

But when *Henry* Prince of *Orange* received the *Enſigns* of the *Order*, there was no *Feaſt* at all, but purpoſely omitted, to prevent the difference which might have been occaſioned, by [k] the precedency and place between *Ambaſſadors*, drinking of Healths, and other Complements. Only the next day, the ſaid *Prince* invited [l] *Garter* to Dinner, who ſate on the ſame ſide with him, yet at a [m] convenient diſtance, and on the other ſide of the Table were placed, [n] Count *Lodowick* of *Naſſau*, and Collonel *Bogg* a *Scotchman*.

Thus have we briefly touched at the moſt material particulars, relating to the *Inveſtiture* of *Strangers*; of which Solemnity, and the honor they derived from it, ſome have thought ſit to tranſmit the memory to Poſterity, by *Medals*, with Inſcriptions relating thereto. Such were thoſe of Gold and Silver, which *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg* cauſed to be made, [o] having on one ſide his Effigies, and on the other the Arms of *Studtgard* (his chief City) and over them the imperial Eagle crowned: ſome of which were preſerved, and others diſperſt abroad, for a perpetual commemoration of that ſolemn act of his Inveſtiture, with the *Habit* and *Enſigns* of the *Order*. So alſo thoſe made by *Charles* King of *Sweden* at his *Inveſtiture*, emblematically pointing out the happy concord ſetled between the Crowns, both of this and that Kingdom, being copied out and here inſerted.

d MS penes G. O. T.
e f. 239.
f
g Ibid. f. 155.
h MS. fol. 19.
i Collect. W. le N. Cl.
* Genealog. Com. Naſſoviæ, p. 93.
k MS. in Officie. Armor.
l [L. 18.]
m
n
o Erhard Celius Eq. Aur. Anglo Wirtemb. l. 7. p. 184.

What is wanting in the courſe of the Solemnity on the day of *Inveſtiture*, may be ſupplied from the large account we ſhall give of the *Ceremonies* on the *Eve* and Feaſt-day of St. *George*; from whence many things may be transferr'd to their uſe, who ſhall be employed abroad upon the Like *Legations*.

Yet for their ſakes, whoſe curioſity will like a more particular account of the Solemnities in Foreign parts, we have thought ſit to inſert here the *Relations* of ſome eminent *Inveſtitures*, wherein ſeveral paſſages may ſeem remarkable enough, while drawn together in a continued Narrative, but perhaps would not appear ſo, if taken aſunder; nor indeed can divers minute things (in ſome kind worthy of knowledge) be preciſely referr'd to thoſe few heads we have choſen to diſcourſe of, without too much ſtraining.

A Relation of the manner of investing the *French* King *Henry* the Third, with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*, *An. Dom.* 1585.

Collect. W. de N. Cl.

HEnry *Earl of* Derby, *appointed by her Majesty, Ambassador to* Henry *the Third* French *King, and to invest him with the* Order *of the* Garter, *took his leave of the* Queen's *Majesty at* Greenwiche *the* 20. *of* January, *an.* 27. *Eliz. and with him, such Gentlemen as were present, were admitted to kiss her Highness hand*; *Mr.* Cook, Clarenceux, *appointed to attend in that Voyage, in place of* Garter, *whose room was void, and* Robert Glover, Somerset *Herald, likewise appointed to that Journey.*

On the 26. *of* January, *the* Earl, *with his Train, passed from* London *to* Gravesend, *where taking Post-Horses they rid to* Sittingborne, *and from thence to* Dover, *where they embarqued, and landed at* Callis, *on the first of* February; *on the third of* February *the* Earl *with his whole Train went from* Callis *to* Boloigne *to Bed, where they were very well entertained*; *On the fourth of* February *they rid to* Monstreuil, *on the fifth to* Abbevil, *where they were met with* 150 *shot of Hacquebusers*: *On the sixth they took their Journey to* Amyens, *being by Monsieur* Crevecœur, *accompanied with* 100 *Gentlemen, and best Citizens, met half a Mile without the Town*; *that night the said* Crevecœur *presented the* Earl, *with great store of very large and good Fresh-water Fish, and the Town with Wine of divers sorts, and the day following, being Sunday, the said* Crevecœur *invited the* Earl *to Dinner, which Dinner was highly commended*; *after Dinner the* Earl *with his Train went to* Breteuil *to Bed, the next night to* Cleremont, *where they stayed* Tuesday, *and* Wednesday, *the tenth of* February *he went to* Luserche; *on the eleventh to* St. Dennis, *where by the way he was met by Sir* Edward Stafford, *her Majesties Ambassador, resident with the* French *King, who brought with him divers Gentlemen of* England, *to the number of thirty horse, and so accompanied him to* St. Dennis, *where they kept Company all the day following, being* Friday.

On Saturday *his honor made his Entry into* Paris, *about two or three of the Clock at Afternoon, there being of the Lord Ambassadors Train more than two hundred horse, and mid-way between* St. Dennis *and* Paris *there met with them (sent from the* King) *the Duke of* Montpensier, *a Prince of the blood*; *the Lords* Chauigny, *le* Chapelle, *Comte* de Lude, de Pienne, de Malicorne, de la Mothefelon, *who had sometimes been Ambassador Leiger in* England, D'estree, d'Abin, *de* Fontaines *de* Cornusson, *the Marquess of* Curton, *the Comte de* Grignan, *all Councellors to the Council, and Knights of the* Holy Ghost, *the Duke of* Iremonille, *the Counts of* Brisac, *de* Creance, Sancerre, *and of* Lazure, *with a great number of Lords and Barons, Gentlemen of the Chamber*; *these did accompany the Earl of* Derby, *unto* Hostell de Longuevill, *sometime called the* Hostell *of* Anjou, *there was his Lordship with the other Lords and Gentlemen lodged, where was three Tables very sumptuously furnished for them, all of the* Kings *cost*; *the one Table in the great Chamber, for the Lords and Gentlemen, Servants to her Majesty*; *the other in the Hall, for the Earl of* Derby's *Gentlemen*; *and a third in a Gallery beneath, for Gentlemens Servants, besides livery into every Chamber, both of Wax, Wood, Wine, and such like, in as great plenty as could be desired.*

On Sunday, the said Earl, betwixt the hours of two and three in the Afternoon, went from his Lodging by a Postern, through the Garden, accompanied with the said Lords de la Mothefelon, de Curton, *and* Grignan, *together with others, and and found the Captains of the Regiment of the* Kings *Guard, making two ranks on either side of the streets, beginning from the Postern to the* Louvre *Gate, who welcomed him in the* Kings *behalf*; *without the Gate of the said* Louvre *he was received by the Lieutenant of the great Provost of* France, *and his Archers*; *at the* Louvre *Gate by the Sire* de Montigny, *Captain thereof to his Majesty, and his Archers*; *which Archers, together with those of the great Provost, made two ranks from the said*

Gate

Gate of the Louvre *to the foot of the Stairs, from which foot his Lordship was received by the Sire* de Pardillon, *the* French *Lieutenant of the* Switzers, *of the* Kings *Guard, which from the foot of the said Stairs to the door of the Hall, made two ranks for his Lordships passage; at the entrance of the Hall his Lordship was received by the Sire* de Chasteau Viaux, Knight *of the* Holy Ghost, *and Captain of Archers of the* Kings *Guard, who likewise from the said door unto the door of the Antichamber, made two ranks; from the door of the Antichamber his Lordship was received by Sire* de Combault, Knight *of the* Holy Ghost, *Chief Master de Hostell to his Majesty, and by his Gentlemen Waiters, and there in the said Antichamber all the said Earl of* Derby's *Officers and Gentlemen, wearing Liveries, were appointed to stay; and the* Queens *Servants that proceeded next went still forward; at the Entry of the Chamber of Estate, his Lordship was received by the Sire* de Lenoncourt, Knight *of the* Holy Ghost, *chief Escuier of the Kings Escurie, and the other Escuiers of the Escuire, together with the Lieutenant of the hundred Gentlemen of his Majesty, who made two ranks from that Chamber door to the Chamber of Audience, every of them having Halberts in their hands; at the Entrance of the Antichamber his Lordship was received by the Duke* Joyeuse, *accompanied with the Gentlemen of the* Kings *Chamber Ordinary, who made two ranks from that Chamber door, to the door of the Chamber Royal, into the said Chamber Royal.*

First entred all the Gentlemen, the Queen's *Majesty's Servants, the Lords that had received and accompanied the said Earl, and Lords, and the said Duke de* Joyeuse, *accompanied the said Earl of* Derby *unto the Bars, that stood about the hault-pace or mounting floor in the said Chamber, where the* King *stood at his Beds feet, accompanied with the said Barriers on his right hand, with the Cardinals of* Bourbon, Vandosme, *and* Joyeuse, *and on the left hand with the Lords, the Princes of* Conty, *the Comte* de Soissons, *and* D. Montpensier, *Princes of the Blood, the Dukes of* Nevers, Delbœuse, de la Joinuille, de Retz, *Monsieur le Chancellour, Sier* de Villequier, du Bouchage, de la Valette, d'Antragues, de la Chappelle aux Ursius, Chavigny, la Vivone, *Comte* de Mauleurier, Clermont, Denitragues, de l'Archant, *and other* Knights *of the* Holy Ghost, *and Councellors of the Estates in great number.*

The said Earl *with the Lord Ambassador Ordinary of* England, *only entred the said halt-space within the Barriers unto his Majesty, of whom they were received with great curtesie, and as amiable countenance as could be; and the Earl delivered the* Queen's *Majesty's Letters unto the* King, *with great reverence, and then making rehearsal of that he had in charge to say, the said Ambassador presented unto the* King *the Lord* Sands *and* Windsore, *and other the* English *Knights and Gentlemen, which all one after another mounted upon the halt-pace, kissed their hands, and did reverence unto the* King. *Then the* Earl *took his leave, and was conducted by all the Lords and Captains unto the place where they had first received him.*

After, he went to salute the Queen Mother, *and at the entrance into her Chamber he was received by Monsieur* de Lansac, Knight *of the* Holy Ghost, *and* Knight *of Honor unto the said* Queen, *whom he found accompanied with her Neece, the Princess of* Loraine *standing at her Beds head, the Princess of* Conde *and the Dutchess of* Nevers *standing at the Beds feet, the Dutchess of* Duzez *and of* Retz, *and other Ladies and Gentlewomen in great number; from thence his Lordship was conveyed to the* Queen Regents *Chamber, and at the entrance whereof he was received by the Comte* de Fiesque, Knight *of the* Holy Ghost, *and her* Knight *of Honor, finding her accompanied with the Dutchess of* Montpensier, *and* Joyeuse *who stood at her Beds feet, the Lady of* Royden *her Lady of Honor, and other Ladies and Gentlewomen in great number, and then returned to the aforesaid* Hostell de Longueville.

On Monday the 15. *of* February, *the* King *by Monsieur de* Mothefelon, *told the Lord Ambassador his mind, touching the receipt of the* Order, *that he intended to receive it on Thursday following, in the Afternoon at the* Augustine Friars, *which was done accordingly, the* 18. *day of* February, *an.* 27. Eliz.

About two of the Clock in the Afternoon, the Earl *and Leiger Ambassador, and all the other Gentlemen of their Train, in Coaches, were conducted from the house of* Longueville

Longueville, *where the Earl of* Derby *was lodged, unto the house of Monsieur* de Mantuliet, *Provost of* Paris, *where the Earl did put on his* Robes *of the Garter, and* Clareneeux *then representing the place of* Garter, *did put on his Mantle, and made ready the Kings Robes. The* King *also with a great number of his Nobility came from the* Louvre *to the same house of* Mantuliet, *for whom there was provided two Chambers, in the inner Chamber over the Chimney was set up a Cloth of Estate, and on the left hand thereof a board covered with a rich Carpet; against the end of which board the* King *did stand in a short Gown of rich Taffata, having on either hand of him some sixteen of the greatest of his Nobility, the rest abode in the outward Chamber (for so was the* Kings *pleasure) that there might be the more room, and freer access for the* Earl, *and the* English *Noblemen and Gentlemen; all things being put in good order, the* King *sent the Earl word by Monsieur* Lamothe, Fluelon, *and Monsieur* de Rhoades, *Master of the Ceremonies that he stayed for him.*

Whereupon thirty of the English *Gentlemen, accompanied with as many* Freneh *Gentlemen, proceeded two and two together up the Stairs before the Earl, towards the* King, *then marched* Somerset *Herald in his rich Coat of Arms, bearing on his Arms the Kings* Kirtle, Mantle, *and* Hood; *after him went* Clarenceux *in a Robe of Crimson Satin; having on his arms a fair large Cushen of Purple Velvet, and thereon the* Collar *of the* Order *of the* Garter, *and the little Chain with the* George. *After* Clarenceux *went the Earl in his Robes, and the Ambassador Resident: And being thus come before the* King, Somerset *(after due reverence) laid the Robe he bare upon the Table, that the* King *leaned unto, so also did* Clareneeux *the Cushen, with the Jewels thereon. The Earl also being entred, and having made his due reverence,* Clareneeux *delivered him his* Commission, *who giving the same reverently to the* King, *he forthwith gave it to his Secretary* Pinart *to be read, according to the form: Though at that time it was not read at all.*

That done, Clarenceux *delivered unto the Ambassador the* Garter, *who gave it unto the* King, *who also kissing the same kneeling, did put it about the* Kings *left leg, the Ambassador pronouncing these words following.*

* *See before p.* 402. * Ad laudem atq; honorem Omnipotentis Dei, *&c.*

That being done, Clarenceux *kissing the* Kirtle *of Crimson Velvet gave it to the Ambassador, who also delivered it to the* Earl, *and he to the* King, *putting the same on with a Crimson Velvet Girdle, whereunto was put a gilt Rapier; which Girdle and Rapier was formerly provided by a Gentleman of the Kings Chamber, at the doing whereof the Ambassador pronounced these words following.*

|| *Pag.* 403. || Capito Vestem hanc purpuream, *&c.*

The Kirtle *being put on,* Clarenceux *delivered the* Mantle *of Purple Velvet, and the Hood of Crimson Velvet, which the* Earl *put upon the* King *also with the assistance of the Ambassador, that pronounced these words following.*

* *Ibid.* * Accipe Clamidem hanc Cœlici coloris, *&c.*

Lastly, Clarenceux *kissing the* Collar *of Gold, gave the same also to be put about the Kings neck, which was done by the* Earl, *the Ambassador using these words following.*

|| *Ibid.* || Torquem hunc in Collo deferes, *&c.*

After the King *was thus invested with all the Habilements of the* Order *as aforesaid, the Earl delivered unto him, first the* Book *of* Statutes *of the said* Order *fairly bound in Crimson Velvet, and Gold Lace; which Book the* King *gave to the Duke of* Joyeuse, *to carry after him to the Church; and lastly, the small Chain with the* George, *which was by the Earl delivered to the* King, *which also was delivered by him to the Duke of* Joyeuse.

These

These Duties thus performed, the King *standing invested with his Robes, and the Earl likewise by him, the Ambassador for and in the name of the Earl (for want of the Language) used a Speech to this effect.*

"*Sir, we rejoice greatly, to see your Majesty now invested into this honorable* "*Society and Order of the* Garter, *desiring of God, that long and most happily* "*you may wear and use the same to his Glory, and the advancement of your own* "*greatness, equal with all your Predecessors, being right well assured (for so hath* "*her Majesty commanded my Lord to say unto you) that if her Highness, and the* "*residue of the* Knights *of this* Order, *certainly had understood of the day and* "*time of this your Majesties reception of the same, both she, and all they would* "*not have failed, in their Robes, to celebrate this day, in token of the honor and pro-* "*sperous success they wish unto your Royal* Person.

When the King *had thus received the* Order, *and was invested as aforesaid, he proceeded to the Church of the* Augustines; *some* 15 *or* 20. *score off to Evensong, being about* 4 *of the Clock, the way being all railed in with Timber, and gravelled with fine Sand, and guarded on each side with the Kings several Guards, that the Train might not be troubled in proceeding.*

The body of the Church was hanged with rich Arras, and all the Choire of the same Church and Stalls with Cloth of Gold. At the entry of the Choire was erected two Cloths of State, one for the Queens *Majesty, and that was over the Stall on the right hand of the same Choire, and the other for the* French *King, and that was over the Stall, next unto the* Queens *Majesty, on the left hand; within these two States royal were affixed the Arms of these two Princes,* viz. *over the* Queens *Stall the Arms of* England *and* France *quarterly, and over the* Kings *Stall the Arms of* France, *both within the Garter, and set in Frames of Wood richly gilt. The Earls Stall was about eleven Stalls beneath her Majesties, and on the same side, whereon was also affixed the* Earls *Arms within the* Garter, *and his Stile fairly written under them; directly before the* Queens *Cloth of State was placed a Form, covered all with Cloth of Gold, for Mr.* Clarenceux *to sit upon, during the time of Evensong.*

At the right side of the Altar within the same Choire was made a place of bords Scaffoldwise, two yards high from the Ground, covered with rich Carpets, and hanged with Cloth of Gold, whereon was placed the Queen Mother, *and* Queen Regnant *with other Ladies and great Princes, and directly on the other side against them was another place made and erected, whereon stood the Popes* Nuntio, *with the Cardinals, and all the Ambassadors that then were in* Paris.

All things being thus put in Order at the Church, and all persons placed therein according to their Degrees, the King *proceeded thither in this sort following.*

First, Trumpets and Drums.

Then thirty English *Gentlemen, accompanied by the* Kings *especial order and care, with thirty* French *Gentlemen, of equal or better degree.*

Then the Lord Windesor, *with a* French *Lord.*

Then the Lord Sands, *so also accompanied.*

Then Serjeants at Arms with their Maces.

Then Somerset *Herald at Arms.*

Then Clarenceux.

Then the Ambassador Leiger Sir Edward Stafford.

And then the Earl of Darby *Chief Commissioner.*

After him followed the King, *his Train being born by a Brother of the Duke of* Joyeuse, *being a Gentleman of the* Kings *Privy Chamber.*

And after the King *came the Princes of the Blood Royal.*

Then Dukes, Marquesses, Earls, and other Noblemen.

Note, That the King *had especially ordered, that for her Majesties special Honor, none should that day proceed before him, but* English *and such* French *as were ordered to go with them, and his own Nobility to wait behind him.*

Note also that all personages of the Order *of the* Holy Spirit, *went next to the* King *in their Cloaks of the Order, and* Collars *of Gold about their necks of the same Order, the person of the* King *was guarded all the way, by a number of Gentlemen Pensioners, with their Poll-axes in their hands.*

In this order, the King *with his Train entred the Church, and in the entring in of the Choire,* Somerset *Herald in his rich Coat of Arms made his three Reverences, the first towards the Altar, as it was formerly agreed upon before by the Lord Ambassadors. Secondly, towards the* Queens *Stall. Thirdly, towards the* Kings *Stall.*

And after him, Clarenceux *entring the same Choire did the like. Then the Ambassador Leiger, then the Earl; which done, the said Earl went before his own Stall, and there stayed till the* King *had taken his Stall Royal, and then the Earl making his Reverence as before went up into his Stall.*

After him the Ambassador Leiger did the like, and went into the Stall next beneath the Earl, towards the High Altar; Then Clarenceux *having made the like Reverence, sat him down on his Form placed as aforesaid, directly against the* Queen's *Stall, where he remained till the Choire began to sing* Magnificat.

At which time he stepped forward into the midst of the Choire, and there making his three Reverences, as aforesaid, turned himself to the Earl *and Leiger Ambassador, then the Ambassador came forth of his Stall, and making his three Reverences, followed* Clarenceux *over the Choire towards the* King, *and there stayed afore the Kings Stall, until* Clarenceux *returned and fetched the* Earl *unto him, who making his three Reverences, came also with* Clarenceux *before the* King, *to the right side of his Stall, where standing,* Clarenceux *delivered the* Oath, *fairly written in Parchment and Letters of Gold, which by the* Earl *was laid before the* King *to be Signed, the Ambassador Leiger being ready to have read it (but that the* King *said it needed not, because he was privy to it before) who taking it in his hands, received of his Secretary* Pinart *a Pen with Ink, and therewith did subscribe his Name, only by the Name of* Henry, *which done, he gave the same unto the said Secretary, to have the Privy Seal put thereto, which was done accordingly, and the next day delivered to* Clarenceux.

After the King *had thus taken his* Oath, *as aforesaid, the* Earl *and the Ambassador with* Clarenceux *before them, returned back to their Stalls, not omitting three Reverences, and there remained till the end of Evensong, at which time the* King *standing up in his Stall, being ready to depart, all the other Strangers Ambassadors, presented themselves before him, with words of special Congratulation, to whom he gave several thanks and answers, and so departing out of the Church, in the same order as he came thither, he returned again to the House of* Mantuhet, *where in the same Chamber as he had put the Robes on, he put them off, and after some speeches with the* Earl, *and Ambassador some Quarter of an Hour or thereabouts, he departed with his Nobility over the Water to the* Louvre, *leaving the Earl and Ambassador, and all their Trains, to return in their Coaches through* Paris *to the House of* Longueville.

The same night, the Earl *with the Lord Ambassador, and all the* English *Gentlemen that were the* Queens *Servants, did sup at the Court, the Earl and the Ambassador at the lower end of the Kings Table, at which Board did also sit with the* King *the two* Queens, *and six or seven other great Ladies, among whom the Lady* Sheffield *was one, and at another Table in the same Chamber did sit divers great Ladies all along one side, and over against them the Lord* Sands, *the Lord* Windesor, *and the other* English *Gentlemen. Supper being ended, and the place ordained for dancing, the* King *took his Wife by the hand, and danced with her; the like did divers other great Lords and Ladies of* France, *and lastly, three* English *Gentlemen; I omit the description of the Masque, and other singular Musick both costly and curious, whereby the Evening was spent till three of the Clock the next morning.*

On the 28. *of* February, *the Ambassador with his Train took their leave, at whose return from the Court to his Lodging, he was presented that night with a rich Cupboard of Plate, worth* 1200 l. *at the least, and unto Mr.* Clarenceux

was

was given a Chain of Gold worth 120 l. *and better, of* 236 *links*; *to Master* Somerset *a Chain of* 150 *links, worth* 100 *Marks*; *and to* Thomas Milles *a Chain of the same value.*

On Thursday *next, the* Earl *with his Train set forward homeward, from* Paris *unto St.* Dennis, *and so were lodged all the way in the same Lodgings that before they had been received in, and arrived prosperously in* England, *from* Boloigne *to* Dover, *the* 12. *of* March, *and on the* Tuesday *following were brought to the* Queen's *Majesty's presence at* Greenwich, *who graciously welcomed them home.*

A Relation of that pompous Solemnity, celebrated at the Duke of *Wirtemberg*'s Investiture with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter, an.* 1. *Jac.* R. extracted out of *Erhardus Cellius* his *Eques Auratus Anglo-Wirtembergicus.*

RObert *Lord* Spencer *of* Wormleiton, *and Sir* Gilbert Dethick *Knight*, Garter *Principal King of Arms, were joined in* Commission, *bearing* Teste *at* Woodstock, *the* 18. *day of* September, an. 1. Jac. R. *to present and invest* Frederick *Duke of* Wirtemberg *and* Teck, *with the* Habit *and* Ensigns *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter.

They began their Journey in the beginning of October, *an.* 1603. *and came to the City of* Studtgard *the second of* November *following.*

Upon their arrival, they presented their Credential Letters, *which being read,* Lib. 4. p. 122. *the said* Duke *began to treat the Ambassadors with the highest respect imaginable, and to put all things into a readiness for his solemn reception of the Ornaments of the* Order. *To which end, he sent for his three Sons, with their Tutors, from the Castle of* Tubing, *where they followed their Studies, to be present at this Solemnity*; *likewise he ordered the Vice-President and twelve Assistants of his Ducal Consistory, and all the principal and most noble Persons of his Court to be present.*

Moreover, he appointed an English *Lord, and the Lord* Benjamin Buwingkshausin, *one of his Privy Council, to be the principal Contrivers, Directors, and Managers of all things that should belong to the setting forth of this Solemnity*; *for the performance of which, two places were especially allotted, prepared, and adorned, namely the great* Church *of* Studtguard *where the Investiture was to be conferr'd, and the* Pag. 123. *great Hall of the Castle called from hence* Hypocaustrum Equestre, *whence the Proceeding was to begin, and pass toward the Church.*

At the entrance of the Choire were four stately Stalls *erected with their Canopies, Footstools, and ascents on each side, and covered with Velvet*; *the first Stall was assigned to the* Soveraign *of the* Order, *on the back side whereof his Majesties Arms and Stile were engraven, besides his Stile written underneath in* French *thus.* Pag. 124.

Du tres-hault, tres-puissant, & tres-excellent Prince *Jaques* par la grace de Dieu Roy *d' Angleterre, d' Escosse, France,* & *d' Irelande*, Defenseur de la Foy, *&c.* Souveraigne du tres-noble Ordre de la *Jartier.*

The second Stall was placed on the right hand next to the Soveraign's, *in like manner adorned and assigned to the Principal Ambassador the Lord* Spencer, *who in conferring the* Order *was to represent the* Soveraign's *person.*

The third Stall was on the left hand next to the second, assigned to Sir William Dethick, Garter, *Principal King of Arms.*

The fourth Stall was also on the left hand over against the Soveraign's *Throne, after the same manner made and adorned, assigned to the Elect Duke: and on the back side thereof his own Arms and Stile also engraven, besides his Stile likewise underwritten in* French *thus.*

Du tres-hault, puissant & tres-noble Prince, *Frederick* par la grace de Pag. 125. Dieu, Duke de *Wirtemberg* & *Teck*, Comte de *Montbeliardt*, Seigneur de *Haydenhemb, &c.* Chevalier du tres noble Ordre de la *Jartier.*

There were also on the right and left hand of the Stall, Benches or Seats continued on either side as far as the Altar; these Seats were all covered with red Cloth, and also the stone Pavement, from the steps of the Vestry unto the Stall of the Elect-Duke, *and so from the middle of the Vestry unto the Altar, in the form of a Cross. The* Altar *was covered with red Silk hanging down to the ground, in the middle of which three gilt Basons were set upright; the first for the* Soveraign, *the second for his Ambassador, and the third for the* Elect-Duke.

Pag. 126. *The* Hall *of the* Castle *was magnificently set out with rich Hangings, and other costly Furniture. Towards the East and South were placed five stately long Tables covered with Velvet, as also the Seats and Benches about them; the middlemost of these Tables was called the* Soveraign's Table, *in honor of the King of* England, *though absent; over the* Soveraign's *Chair was set a stately Canopy of Silk, and on the back side of the Seat towards the middle thereof, were sixt his Majesty's Arms with his Stile underwritten, after the same manner as on his Stall in the Church.*

Pag. 127. *At the right hand of the* Soveraign's Table *were two other Tables, the one for the Lord Ambassador* Spencer, *the other for Sir* William Dethick *Garter, both covered in like manner with Silk, and adorned with Canopies, and their Arms.*

On the left hand of the Soveraign's Table *were likewise two other Tables, one for the new invested Duke, covered and adorned with his Arms, and a Canopy in the same manner as in the Church; the other for the Duke's* Wife *and* Children, *who were ten in number of either Sex.*

Besides those that were particularly warned to be present at this Feast *(which was cheerfully performed by them) there came divers of their own accord, from all parts of the Dukedom, drawn by the fame of a Feast and Solemnity, the like whereof had not been in those parts within mans memory.*

Pag. 128. *The day appointed for this Solemnity, namely, the 6. of* November, an. Dom. 1603. *being come, the Peers, Nobles, and Councellors of the Duke of* Wirtemberg, *according to Summons, appeared at the Castle of* Studtguardt, *attending the Dukes coming forth.*

Lib. 5. p. 130. *And at length he proceeded out of his Bedchamber, most splendidly clad, in very rich and sumptuous Habit; there going before him, first the Nobles of his Dukedom, the great Master of his Court, the Marshal, the great Master of his Hall, the Tutors and Attendants of the Dukes five Sons, then the five young Princes themselves, going next immediately before their Father, who thus illustriously attended entred into the said Hall, and placed himself between the* Soveraign's Table *and his own, expecting the coming of the* Soveraign's *Ambassadors.*

The Elect-Duke *was most sumptuously habited from Head to Foot, his Hose were Ash-colour and seamless, his Breeches, Doublet, and Sleeves were of Silk prickt, slasht, and fringed, there shining all along through the Cutwork the gilt Plate upon which it was wrought; his Sleeves were wrought after the manner of a long Pretext or Senators Robe, with the finest sort of Linen, embroidered with Needlework Blue, upon his Wrists were Bracelets of costly Gems, upon his Fingers Gold Rings, most exquisitely wrought and inlaid with Rubies, Diamonds, Saphirs, Emeraulds, and other such like precious Stones, casting forth a radiant mixture of divers colours; the Collar of his Doublet was in like manner of the finest and softest Linen, and of a Blue Amethist colour, and wrought all about with oylet holes, his Cap was of Silk ending in a Cone at the top, and girt about with a Hat-band of Gold and precious Stones, especially Pearls of a very large size, and also a Circle of white Plumes erected up towards the top, and bending a little downward at the end. His Shoes were likewise of Silk*

Pag. 131. *adorned with Roses, artificially wrought with Precious Stones, Gold, and Pearls, a cross his middle he had a Belt very skilfully wrought, and adorned with a Sword appendant to it on the left side, and a Dagger (inserted into the Belt) the Hilt and Handle whereof were all wrought about and enamelled with Gold and Precious stones, his Cloak was of black Silk, bordered about with several orders or rows of Not broad Gold Fringe.*

long after, the Lord Ambassador Spencer, *from another part towards the South, came forth out of his Chamber, through a little stone Gallery, into the Hall where the* Duke *was. There went before him Sir* Gilbert Dethick, *Garter, clad in*

in a long Crimson Mantle reaching down to his heels, lined within with White Silk, and carrying in both hands a Cushen of Crimson Velvet, upon which were laid the Robes *and* Ornaments *of the* Order, *as the Gold* Collar *of the Order, with the* George *hanging at it, the Blue* Garter *and the other Vestments and Ensigns belonging thereunto; and making thrice a low Reverence, first to the* Soveraign's *Table, and next to his Highness the* Duke *as he drew neer; he gently laid down the Cushen with the aforementioned Ornaments upon the Soveraign's Table; in the mean time the Lord Ambassador* Spencer *representing the person of the* Soveraign, *bowing himself to the illustrious Elect-Duke placed himself at his right hand, whom his Highness courteously received, as also* Garter *King of Arms, taking them by the hand. After which the Lord* Buwingkshausen *made an Oration in the Dutch Tongue, wherein he briefly toucht upon all the Circumstances of the occasion of this solemn meeting, which were more at large contained in the* Commission *of Legation and the* Soveraigns *Letters, which after a low obeysance were delivered by the Lord Ambassador into the* Dukes *hands, who presently gave them to his principal Secretary and Councellor the Lord* John Stattler, *standing neer him, to read them publickly in that solemn assembly.* Pag. 132.

Before the Letters of Legation were read, in the attentive hearing of the whole Assembly, Garter *made a short speech also in* French, *to the illustrious Elect Duke, wherein he declared the will and pleasure of his most serene Master the* Soveraign *of the* Order; *which speech being ended, and the Commission read, they proceeded to the Investiture.* Pag. 133.

Garter *first devested the* Duke *of his Cloak, Sword, and Dagger, which according to the custom of the* Order, *he reserved to himself as his own Fees; but presently in the room thereof he invested him with a Surcoat of Crimson Velvet lined with White Taffaty, which he girded close to his Waste with a silken Girdle, by which there hung a Fauchion or shorter kind of Sword, made plain after the ancient fashion: Over his Surcoat he put on the* Mantle *of the Order, which reached down to his heels, with a long Train behind, and buttoned before at the top; it was of Velvet, and of a mixt colour, Purple with Violet, and lined within with White Taffaty, as also faced with the same, and very neatly fringed, and made after the ancient fashion used at the Institution of the* Order, *over the left shoulder whereof hung the Tippet or* Hood. Pag. 134.

The Duke *splendidly clad with the aforesaid Vestments of the* Order, *proceeded from the Hall through the four square Court of the Castle, and over the large Bridge to the Church of* St. Ulrick, *to receive the rest of the Ensigns of the Order, there sounding all the time of his Procession several Trumpets, and other Musitians, placed on high in the stone Gallery of the Castle.*

As to the order of the Proceeding, it was in this manner, First went two Trumpeters belonging to the Troops of Horse, whose Trumpets were adorned with silk Banners, painted with the Arms of Wirtemberg *in their proper colours, and after them ten other Trumpeters in the same equipage: Next a Flute-player and a Drummer, the military Musick belonging to the Foot. These fourteen Musitians were clad in Silk intermixt White and Red, at equal intervals, and Caps of black Velvet on their heads. After these rode the Captain of the Life-Guard, habited in the same colour, but more richly, and with a gilt Truncheon in his hand, then the Troop of the Life-Guard, habited in like manner as before is specified, and carrying Poll-axes. Next, after a little interval, went the Lord Marshal Baron* Princenstein, *carrying in his hand a silver Wand; then came all three together,* Anwill *the great Master of the Hall,* Hugwizt *the great Master of the Horse, and* Daxperg *Captain of the Horse-Guard. After them rode the* Knights *in a long Train, and then the* Soveraign's Ambassador's *Retinue of Knights and Gentlemen, very splendidly accoutred and adorned; next the chief Peers and Nobles of the Dukedom, together with the principal Courtiers and chief Officers of the Duke's houshold, after whom rode the Duke's five Sons, in the richest and most splendid equipage that could be imagined; at a little distance from them came very nobly attended and also accoutred,* Garter, *King of Arms, carrying before him with both hands, the Cushen upon which lay the* Ensigns *of the foresaid* Order; *namely the Great* Collar *of the Order, with* Pag. 143. Pag. 144.

the

the Image of St. George, *in a riding posture, hanging at it, also the* Garter *wrought with Gold and Precious Stones. He carried moreover the* Book *of the* Statutes *of the* Order. *Next after* Garter, *came jointly together the Lord Ambassador* Spencer, *rickly glistering with Gold and Precious Stones, and with him the illustrious Duke of* Wirtemberg *himself, so personable, and withall so magnificently attired, that he attracted the admiration of all upon him; some thinking his Habit to be* Turkish, *some* Hungaric, *some* Imperial, *others* Electoral, *others* Pontifical. *The Train of his Mantle was held, and carried after by Count* Lodowick Leostein.

Pag. 148. *The last part of the Procession consisted of the grand Councellors and Senators of* Wirtemberg, *as namely, the Lord* Eberard, *Lord of* Limpurg, *hereditary Cupbearer of the sacred Roman Empire, Great Master of the Court of* Wirtemberg, James Reenhard *Doctor of Law, Assistant at the Imperial Chamber, and Chancellor, besides many other Councellors and Noblemen.*

Pag. 150. *Thus nobly and magnificently attended, the* Duke *entred into the Church, where in the midst of the Body thereof, he and the Lord Ambassador* Spencer, *walking upon Red Cloth, spread for that purpose, they first made obeysance, according as the manner is in* England, *to the* Soveraign's *Royal Stall, all the rest of the Company doing the like as they past by; then the Lord Ambassador went to his own* Stall, *placed at the right hand next after the* Soveraign's, *and seated himself therein,* Garter *also placed himself in his, and lastly the* Duke *possessed his* Stall *on the left hand: As soon as they were seated thus in the Church, a loud volley was discharged by* 300 *Musketiers.*

Pag. 151. *The concourse of People at this Solemnity was very great, but to repress the Croud from rushing in with too much violence, there were placed at the entrance both of the Church and the Castle, on the one side a row of Musketiers, and on the other a row of Halberdiers.*

Pag. 152. *The* Soveraign's Ambassadors *and the* Duke *being thus seated, each in their* Stalls, *the Peers and Nobles that attended took their places also, the* English *Nobles and Gentlemen on the right hand of the Lord Ambassador* Spencer, *those of* Wirtemberg *on the left hand of their Duke; and in the first place on the foremost Seats, covered with red Cloth, sate the Dukes five Sons, vested in ducal habits. Then began a threefold sacred Musick, first the Organ played to certain Anthems, next the Children of the School sung certain Psalms in Dutch, lastly the principal Musitians of the Court sung in Consort: and during the Musick the Investiture of the Duke went forward.*

For the Lord Ambassador Spencer *and* Garter *rising from their Seats, went upon the red Woollen Cloth towards the* Duke, *and making a low obeysance to him with great honor and respect, they addressed their speech to him in a certain form of words, commonly used upon that occasion, and presented unto him the Ensigns and Ornaments of the* Order.

Pag. 153. *First they delivered into his hands the* Book *of the* Statutes, *which he again delivered unto his chief Secretary the Lord* John Stattler, *who stood ready at the Duke's side, according to his place, to receive it; and who thereupon delivered to the Ambassadors, from the Duke an* Oath, *to keep and observe faithfully all the Statutes*

Pag. 162. *and Articles of the Order. After that, the* Garter *was tied upon his Highness left leg, a little beneath the Knee; Then they put the* Collar *about his neck.*

Pag. 163. *All these things being performed, the Lord Ambassador* Spencer, *and* Garter, *congratulated the* Duke *with much respect, and a while held discourse with him; and then after a low obeysance made to the* Soveraign's Stall, *they returned towards their several Seats.*

Lib. 6. p. 164. *Then the Musick ceasing, that most eminent Divine* John Magirus *Councellor to the new invested* Duke, *and President of* Studtguardt, *made a most learned and elegant Sermon, wherein he discourst of the friendship and discord of Princes, and shewed how excellent a thing the mutual concord amity and benevolence of Princes was, how much it was to be esteemed by their Subjects, and what great benefits and conveniences arose from thence.*

Sermon

Sermon ended, the Musick was again renewed, which consisted of the Voices of two Youths clad in White Garments, with Wings like Angels, and standing opposite one to another; so after a Tenor, *an* Altus, *and a* Base *was sung, the* Organ *and other instrumental Musick, together with vocal, went together in consort.* Pag. 180.

After, according to the Custom at the Anniversary Feast of St. George *at* Windesor, *the new invested* Duke *rising from his seat, and thrice as he passed by making Reverence to the* Soveraign's Stall, *went upon the Red Cloth* (Garter *going before*) *immediately to the Altar, (his Train being held up by Count* Leostene, *and his Sword carried after him by his Esquire of honor) where when he was come, the Reverend Divine* Fælix Bidembachin, *Chaplain to his Highness, set a gilt Bason upon the middle of the Altar, into which the* Duke *put* 50 *Duckets, which he took out of a little red silk Purse, giving charge to his said Chaplain to distribute them to the Poor; which done he betook himself again to his* Stall, *saluting the* Soveraign's *in passing by as before.* Pag. 183.

The Solemnities in the Church being finished, this illustrious company returned to the great Hall in the Castle, in the same order and pomp as they proceeded thence, the Trumpets sounding, and the Guns going off. Pag. 184.

After several congratulations from the Lord Ambassador Spencer, *and* Garter, *and many other noble Personages, to the new invested* Duke, *in the said* Hall, *they parted and went to their several Chambers till Dinner was ready.* Pag. 185.

Dinner time being come, the Duke *and Lord Ambassador* Spencer, *with all their* Train, *went into the great Hall to Dine; where the preparation and order of the Feast, was after the manner of* St. George's *Feast in* England; *the* Soveraign's Table *was served with all manner of varieties, as if he had been there present himself, the Carver and Sewers and all other Officers attending and serving on the Knee.* Lib. 7. p. 190.

Also Water was presented by three that carried the Bason, Ewer, and Towel, with the same obeysance as is used in England, *to the* Soveraign, *being present. Water also was presented to the* Duke *after the custom of* Wirtemberg, *the like to the Lord Ambassador* Spencer *and* Garter, *to the* Dutchess *and the* Duke's Children. Pag. 193.

Then each ones proper place was assigned by certain Officers appointed for that purpose. Pag. 194.

At the four ends of the Soveraign's Table *were placed Tasters; he that was at the North side received the Dishes from the Sewers, and delivered them to him that stood opposite on the South side, who standing on the right side of the Soveraign's Chair, tasted of the meat cut off it, and put it upon a Plate that was laid as for the* Soveraign, *and after a while changed the Plate, giving it to him that stood at the West side, and did the like with the rest of the Viands.*

The fourth Taster stood at the East side of the Table, and his Office was to taste and administer the Soveraign's Wine; *reaching it over to the Southern Taster, that stood by the* Soveraign's *Chair, in like manner as the meat was served.* Pag. 196.

Likewise the Duke, *the Lord Ambassador* Spencer, *and* Garter, *had their several Tables as hath been said before, and sate under their several Canopies, and at another Table sate the* Dutchess *and her ten* Children. Pag. 212.

After exceeding plenty, state, and variety of Dishes, there were served all manner of Curiosities in Paste, as the Figures and shapes of several kinds of Beasts and Birds, as also the Statues of Hercules, Minerva, Mercury, *and other famous persons. All Dinner time and a pretty while after, the* English *and the* Wirtemberg *Musick sitting opposite to one another, these on the* Dukes *side, the other at the* Soveraign's *and Lord Ambassadors side; sung and plaid alternately to one another.* Pag. 213. Pag. 230.

After Dinner certain Balls were danced in a long Gallery of the Castle, towards the Paradise of Studtguardt. Pag. 233.

This Festivity lasted that night and the next day, and afterwards the English *Guests were conducted to see some of the principal places of the Dukedom; as* Waltebuch, *the University of* Tubing, *&c. where they were entertained with Comedies, Musick and other delights, and at their return to* Studtguardt, *were presented with very* Pag. 245. Pag. 259.

very magnificent gifts; and being to return for England *were accompanied by the* Duke *as far as* Asperg, *where with great demonstrations and expressions of amity and affection on both sides, solemn leave was taken.*

Pag. 260.

A Relation of the order observed when *Maurice* Prince of *Orange* was Invested, *an.* 11. *Jac. R.*

Johan. Olers in Genealog. Comit. Nassoviæ. pag. 90.

ON *the* 4. *of* February, an. 1613. *the Citizens of the* Hague *met in Arms, together with the Troops of Prince* Maurice, *of Prince* Henry *his Brother and the Earl of* Chastilion; *the Citizens kept Guard in the outermost Court, where also several pieces of Ordinance were placed, and the three aforementioned Troops in the innermost Court. From the Palace to the Shambles were Pitch Barels placed, as also at the* Soveraign's Ambassadors *Lodgings.*

At 3 *a Clock in the Afternoon the* States *of the* United Provinces *assembled in the usual place, where other persons of great quality were admitted as Spectators. The first that came thither was* Refuge *the* French *Kings Ambassador, who took his Seat at the upper end of the Table; not long after came Prince* Maurice, *conducted by the* Soveraign's Ambassador, *and those deputed by the* States; *before them went* 12 *Trumpets sounding, and after several Noblemen and Persons of Honor two and two, the Guards attending on each side. After these went* Garter *Principal King of Arms, vested with his Coat of Arms, embroidered with the Arms of* England, Scotland, France, *and* Ireland, *and carrying in his hand a Purse of Green Silk, wherein were the* Garter *and* George; *next him went Prince* Maurice, *and after him his Brother* Henry, *the Prince of* Portugal, *and others of his kindred, as the Earls of* Nassau *and* Lippia; *then several of the Nobility, and many others of great quality.*

Then Prince Maurice *taking his place where these Solemnities were performed, sat at the upper end of the Table, at the left hand of the* French *Kings Ambassador, but Sir* Ralph Winwood *the* Soveraign's *Ambassador, took his place in the middle over against the President of the* States, *and began a short Oration in* French *to this effect.*

My *Lords,* from those things which I have in the Convention declared, by the command of the *King* my Master, you have sufficiently understood his purpose, of conferring the *Order* of the *Garter* upon Prince *Maurice,* as also the causes, wherewith he thought himself moved to do it; and whereas it hath been decreed, by the common suffrages of the *Knights-Companions* of the *Order,* that he should be joined in Companionship with the *Elector Palatine,* it seemed good to the *Soveraign,* to command me to present him with the *Ensigns* of this *Order,* and hath confirmed this his command by the testimony of his *Commission,* under the Great Seal of *England,* which *Commission* I here deliver unto you, and pray it may be read.

Hereupon he delivered the Commission *to the* President, *from whose hand the* Secretary *then taking it, read it aloud; which having finished, the* Soveraign's Ambassador *continued his discourse.*

Both the honor of this *Order,* and ancient Custom require, that it be sent out of *England* to *Stranger Princes,* by persons of honor peculiarly deputed to this Employment, and who are themselves *Knights-Companions* of the *Order,* or at least deserve to be so: but because that the Ceremonies there used, seem not so well to agree with the Discipline of your Church, and that the conditions thereof are not altogether consistent with the state of your *Common-wealth,* it hath pleased the *Soveraign* of the *Order,* for the avoiding all scandal, to confer this *Order* without any pomp, or external magnificence. We have therefore made choice of this place, in compliance with your pleasure, as the most commodious for the performance of our duty, in that we might present it in the presence of your *Lordships,* who, as being the Supream Lords of this *State,* will not think much to be Eye-witnesses of that honor, which the *King* of *Great Britain* your best Friend and Allie, offers to the chief General of your *Armies,* and *Governour* of your *Provinces,* as also to your whole State in general, whereof

whereof each of you are a part. Nor could his *Majesty* have given greater testimonies, either of his affection towards the happy State of your Commonwealth, or of the joy which he hath conceived, for that he sees your Affairs, after so many troubles and storms, brought to a Haven of rest and quiet, or likewise of his most entire good will; wishing that that League of Friendship which is contracted between his Kingdoms and your Provinces, may be perpetual and inviolable. Now therefore, desiring first your good leave, we shall convert our Address to Prince *Maurice.*

At this instant, Garter *King of Arms opened the Silk Purse, and took out the* Garter, *set with rich Diamonds, and laid it on the Table, and then the* Ambassador *addrest himself to Prince* Maurice *in the following manner.*

To you my *Lord,* we offer in the name of the *King* my Master, the *Order* of the *Garter,* which we may say without boasting or flattery, is the most ancient and most illustrious *Order* of all *Europe,* which in all times hath been kept inviolable, without any spot or blemish, wherewith all the greatest *Emperors* and *Monarchs* suing to be graced and adorned, have esteemed the greatest part of their felicity, that they could obtain it; his *Majesty* judgeth the greatness of your Family, which he acknowledgeth to be most illustrious, worthy of this Honor, your piety also and zeal to promote the Reformed Religion, likewise your warlike virtues, which the God of Hosts hath blest with so many Victories, but especially those high merits, whereby you have obliged these *United Provinces,* and by consequence his *Realms,* and so thereby the whole *Christian World,* his *Majesty* being altogether of opinion, that the quiet of *Christendom* consisteth much in the happy state of these *Provinces,* and that the condition of these *Provinces* what ever it be, and that of those *Realms* have a mutual dependence one upon the other: This is the motive and sole cause that hath induced his *Majesty* to confer upon you an Honor, the greatest his Kingdoms can bestow, of which behold these the Marks and Ensigns [*and with these words produced the* Garter] which your Excellency is to receive from us, according to the commands of our *King,* and those altogether free from any Ceremonies, except such wherein you shall voluntarily and willingly consent to be engaged.

This Speech being ended, Prince Maurice *in brief gave thanks for the Honor offer'd him, and then forthwith the* Ambassador *and* Garter *having made due obeysance, tyed on the* Garter *about his Leg; next* Garter *took out of the forementioned Purse, the* Golden Medal, *whereon was the Effigies of St.* George, *with the subdued Dragon under his feet, this Medal hanging upon a Blue Ribband,* Garter *put about the* Princes *Neck, after which he unfolded a Parchment, wherein were contained the* Titles *of Prince* Maurice *in* French, *which he read aloud.*

The high, mighty, and excellent Prince, *Maurice* Prince of *Orange* Earl of *Nassau, Catzenelleboge, Viand, Dietz, Meurs, Linge,* Marquess of *Vere* and *Flushing,* Baron of *Grave,* the Territory of *Kuyke, Lece,* and *Nyervaert,* Governour and Captain General of *Gelderland, Holland, Zealand, Utrecht, West-Friesland, Zutphen,* and *Overyssell,* Admiral General of the *United Provinces,* and *Knight* of the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter.*

Assoon as he had made an end of reading these Titles, *presently all the Trumpets sounded, and the Troops in order shot off their Pistols, which Volly was seconded by the Trained-Bands, after which the great Guns were discharged.*

These things being thus performed, and silence made, Sir John Oldenbarnevelt *Lord of* Tempel, *making an Oration in the name of the* States General, *reckoned "up in brief, the Leagues contracted heretofore at several times, between the Pro-"vinces and the Kingdom of* Great Britain, *and thereupon rendred humble thanks "to the* King *for the continuance of them, specially for that by this action he went "about to manifest the same to all men; for as much as that so remarkable Honor, "which his* Majesty *was conferring on those Provinces in the person of Prince* Mau-"rice, *their Governour and Commander both in War and Peace, was an honor used "to be shewn but only to the very choicest of his Friends; but most principally of*

"*all for that he was pleased to confer this honor on Prince* Maurice, *without en-*
"*joining any strict obligation upon the receipt of the* Order. *Next he gave thanks*
"*to the* Ambassadors, *for the diligence they had employed in this affair; and lastly,*
"*directing his Speech to Prince* Maurice, *he in the name of the* States General,
"*congratulated his new honor, assuring him on their behalf, that they conceived ve-*
"*ry great joy and satisfaction, and wisht him a very long and a happy enjoyment*
"*thereof, to the glory of God, and the enlargement of his Family, and the conser-*
"*vation of the publick liberty of the* United Provinces, *in which thing, as hitherto*
"*they had done, so for the time to come, they would for ever afford him their best*
"*and most faithful assistance.*

As soon as he had finished his Speech John Utenbogard *Minister of the* Hague, *as he had been ordered, standing at the end of the Table, made a very admirable and learned Sermon, wherein he most devoutly praised God, for what had hapned, imploring him to bless Prince* Maurice, *in his new obtained honor, and to endue him with his Grace.*

The Sermon ended, the Trumpets sounded, the Muskets also, and great Guns were again discharged: Then Prince Maurice (*accompanied by the* Ambassadors *and other Noble* Persons) *returned in the same order as he came, and then again the third time Vollies of great and small shot were discharged; after which the Soldiers and Trimmed-Bands went every one to their own homes and quarters. At Evening the pitcht Barels were set on fire, and Bonfires kindled; a magnificent entertainment also was given by Prince* Maurice *to the* Ambassadors, Princes *and great* Persons *above mentioned, at which, while Healths were drunk to the King of* France *and* Great Britain, *all the Guns were again discharged.*

A Remonstrance made by Sir *William Segar*, Knight, *Garter* Principal King of Arms, joined in Commission with the right honorable the Lord *Carleton*, Ambassador to the high and mighty Prince, *Henry* Prince of *Orange*, for presenting him with the Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, 1627.

MS. in Offic. Armor. [L. 18. *circa medium*]

WE *took our journey from* Whitehall, *on a* Thursday *to* Gravesend, *being the*-----*of* April, Anno Domini 1627. *and lodged there that night. On* Friday *morning we embarqued in two Merchants Ships of* London, *in the one went the Lord Ambassador* Carleton, *Secretary of State to the Kings Majesty King* Charles, *accompanied with the young Lord* Dormer, *and divers other Gentlemen, his Followers and Servants; my self embarqued in the other Merchants Ship, with my two Sons, Mr.* Henry Lennard, *my three Servants, Trunks, and other Provisions.*

We set sail about 9 of the Clock, and sailed all that day and night following, and arrived on Saturday *at* Delf Haven *in* Holland, *about 6 of the Clock in the Evening; where being landed we could have no lodging in the Town, all was taken up for the Lodging of the Lord Ambassador, and his Train, and I forced to hire two Waggons for the transport of me and mine, our Trunks and baggage to the Town of* Delf, *whither we came about eleven of the Clock that night, and lodged at the Sign of the* Golden Fleece.

The next day being Monday, *the Ambassador coming by water to* Delf *was entertained and feasted at the* English *House by the* English *Merchants, and that Afternoon was conveyed by Water, in the* Princes *Barge to the* Hague; *and by the way was met with, by his Excellency, and divers of the States, who complemented his welcome.*

My self followed his Lordship by Waggon, and had my Lodging and Diet provided in the Chastelins *House in the* Hague, *where I was well entertained and accommodated. The day following being* Tuesday, *my self with my two Sons, and Mr.* Lennard, *went to kiss his Excellencies hands, who very kindly entertained me, and remembred he had seen me there before, upon the like occaston, with his Brother* Maurice, *Prince of* Orange; *so after our humble salutations we departed.*

It was about nine or ten days before we could be resolved, whether the Order *should*

should be accepted of or not; for the French *Ambassador there resident, opposed it by all means possible that he could, alledging it stood not with the* French *King his Masters honor, considering the League between him, the Prince, and States, that his Enemy the King of* Great Britain, *should be so much favored and honored by the Prince, as to have the Order of the* Garter *by him received, the King of* Great Britain *having entred his Dominions in hostile manner, surprised the Isle of* Ree, *slain his People, and endeavoured to relieve* Rochell, *which he held Rebels to him; all which by the wisdom of the Lord Ambassador* Carleton, *was so discreetly answered, and so far prevailed, that a day was appointed for the reception of the Order, which was to be done on the* Sunday *following, in the Afternoon, and was performed as followeth.*

The Prince of Orange *his Regiment of Shot and Pikes, the* English *Regiment, and some* Dutch *Companies, having placed themselves in two Battalions, on either side of the great Court of the* Princes *Palace, we proceeded between them.*

First went a number of Collonels and Captains, English, Scots, *and* Dutch, *after whom followed the chief Officers of his Excellency's Household, then my self, bearing on a Purple Velvet Cushen the* Robes *of the* Order, *the great* Collar, *and the* Garter, *and a lesser Jewel of the* George, *fastned to a Blue Ribband, with King* Charles *his Commission, under the Great Seal of* England: *The* Prince *went between the Lord Ambassador and the* Palsgrave, *who that day wore the whole Habit of the Order of the* Garter. *We were conducted up the great Stairs, through the old Hall of the Palace, and so brought to the Council Chamber of the* States General, *who were all placed on either side of a long Table, the whole length of the Room.*

The Estate of the Table was holden in the midst thereof, where four Chairs were placed, the Prince of Orange *and the* Ambassador *took the two middlemost Chairs, the* Palsgrave *on the right hand, and my self on the left. The* French *Ambassador, and the* Venetian, *sate at the upper end of the board. The Earl of* Coningburg, *President of the Council of the States, the Treasurer, and Admiral of* Holland *sate opposite to the* Prince, *and all other of the States on either side in their degrees. Silence being made, the Ambassador* Carleton *stood up, and began his Harangue or Oration, signifying, that by the Example of the great love and amity long time continued, between the* Queen's *Majesty of* England, Elizabeth *of famous memory, and Prince* Maurice, *with the States General of the* United Provinces; *King* James *her Successor intending no less good, welfare, and prosperity to his Excellency, and the States then and still being, had presented him with the Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *as to his intimate Friend, Confederate, and Ally, which he princely accepted, acknowledged, and used during his life. And that now the high and mighty Prince, King* Charles *his Son, understanding of the right noble and valorous disposition of his Excellency,* Henry *Prince of* Orange, *and having a like desire, as his Father had, to continue the same amity and friendship inviolably between them, had made especial choice of him the said* Prince, *to be a Companion and Confrere of the said most Noble* Order, *which he was there by Commission to present his Excellency withall.*

The Oration ended, the Ambassador presented his Majesty's Commission, under the Great Seal of England, *during the reading whereof, by one of the Secretaries of the States; The whole Table of the States stood up, their heads uncovered, only the* French *Ambassador excepted, who sate covered.*

Then Garter, *after Reverence made, with an audible voice, pronounced in French the Stile of the* King *of Great* Britain, *as is accustomed, and after it the Stile of* Henry *Prince of* Orange; *which done, by a signal made at one of the Windows, the Trumpets sounded, the Drums strook up, and a thousand Musket shot were discharged in Volley.*

Then stood up at the Table a French *Orator, who began his Harangue in the praise of the Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *relating as he said he was informed, how many* Emperors, Kings, *and* Princes *had been thereof, applauding the worthy Election and choice of both the famous Princes of* Orange, *Prince* Maurice *lately deceased, and Prince* Henry *then Governing; only he excepted against the patronage of* Saint George, *who was he said, but a Legendary Saint, and not Canonical, nor approved*

by general Councils, and in effect, but a moral Allegory: For every Christian man that for his Faith would fight, and defend the Church, yea and for the same suffer Martyrdom, he should conquer the Dragon, that is the Devil, and be as much holy reputed as St. George. *But the Order to be stiled of the* Garter, *was more significant, because it carried with it a bond or tie of Fellowship, as a Symbol of Amity and Friendship between Princes, being Companions of the said* Order. *So concluding his Harangue with a Prayer for the* Soveraign's *prosperity King* Charles, *and the whole Fellowship of the said most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *he ended.*

Then the Lord Ambassador Carleton, *with his Excellency the Prince of* Orange, *the Prince* Palatine, *and my self standing up, the Ambassador took the great* Collar *with the* George, *and assisted by the* Palatine, *put it over the head of his Excellency, and fastned it on his shoulder; for at that time he refused to wear the Robes of the Order, because he said, his Brother Grave* Maurice *had not done it, but laying up his leg on my Chair, the Ambassador and I put on the* Garter.

Which done, by another signal, six and thirty Canons reported, and so way being made, we returned that way as we came, the Trumpets sounding, and the Drums beating, until his Excellency was entred into his Court. That day or night we had no Feast, for avoiding Precedency and Place between the Ambassadors, drinking of Healths, and other complements, which might have occasioned question or difference on either party. That night Bonfires of pitched Barels were made through the Town, as is accustomed to be done in all their Triumphs.

The next day following, being Monday, *I was invited by a Messenger to dine with his Excellency, where, in his great Chamber, the Table ready furnished with meat, without Ceremony of other service, or attendants, but his own Pages, being half a dozen in number, his Excellency sate down, not at the end of the Board, but at the right hand thereof, and Count* Lodowick *of* Nassaw *his Uncle on the left hand side, I was placed on the Princes side, at a convenient distance from him by his Marshal; Collonel* Boage *a* Scottish *man sate right against me, next to Count* Lodowick, *and these were all the Guests at the Table; during Dinner, his Excellency asked me sundry questions, namely, whether Queen* Elizabeth *did wear the Garter of the Order about her leg, as the* Knights *did? I answered, I thought not, for it was not proper for her Sex so apparently to shew her leg. Then he demanded, whether the* Institution *of the* Order *was from the fall of a Blue Garter from the Ladies leg, with whom the King danced? I told him it was so holden by tradition, but the truth was otherwise, as it is recorded in the old* Register Book *of the* Order, *that King* Edward *the Third returning home after his conquest of* France, *to remunerate those* Knights, *that had done him the most noble service in that Expedition, did select of them the number twenty five, and gave them Blue Garters embroidered, and buckled under the Knee, with this Motto,* Hony soit, qui mal y pense, *as a caveat to avoid the emulation of others, who might perhaps presume, they had deserved as much honor as others. Now the question may be asked, said the* Prince, *why a* Garter *rather than any other thing should be made an Order? It is to be answered, said I, that at that time most men (especially men of Arms) wore their Boots close up gartered, and buckled with thongs of Leather under their Knees (a Custom yet used of some men for the strengthening of their Leg) so with divers other trivial questions the Dinner was spent and ended, and I with due thanks and humble salutations took my leave.*

Tuesday *morning I delivered the* Robes *of the* Order *to the Master of his Wardrobe, and on* Tuesday *in the Afternoon, I with my Sons, and Mr.* Lennard *kissed his Excellencies hands, and took our leave, who most princely thanked us for the pains we had taken to do him honor.*

Wednesday *in the morning, I was presented with four Chains, one for my self of the value of* 240 l. *sterling, two Chains for my Sons, the third for Mr.* Lennard, *being all lesser in value than those which I had received of Grave* Maurice *by* 130 l. *The Ambassador Lord* Carleton *had a standing Cup with a Cover of* 500 l. *being of pure Gold. The same day in the Afternoon I gave Rewards to the* Chastellain, *and his Wife, with the Servants of the House, and taking my leave that night of the Ambassador,*

Ambassador, with whom I supped, I took my Journey on Thursday *in the morning by Water to* Delf, *where I hired two Waggons to transport me to* Maitland Sluce, *where I took shipping for* England, *in the same Merchants Ship that brought me thither.*

Friday *morning, the first of* June, *we set sail, and on* Saturday *in the Afternoon we all safely arrived at* Gravesend, *thanked be God*; Tuesday *following, I went by Coach to* Oatlands, *and delivered my Letters to the* King, *from the Prince of* Orange, *and the Lord Ambassador* Carleton, *making a brief relation of the performance of our Employments, which it was his Majesties pleasure I should do.*

A Relation of the *Investiture* of *Charles* the Eleventh King of *Sweden*, with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*, drawn up by *Henry St. George*, Esq; *Richmond* Herald.

CHarles *the Eleventh, King of* Sweden, *&c. being elected into the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *at a Chapter held by the* Soveraign *and* Companions *of the said* Order, *the* 18. *day of* June 1668. *The Right Honorable* Charles *Earl of* Carlisle, *&c. was by the* Soveraign *appointed his* Ambassador *extraordinary to the said King, and* Henry St. George, Esq; Richmond Herald, *was commanded to attend the Ceremony of his said Majesty's* Investiture, *in the place of* Garter *Principal King of Arms.*

Being furnished with all Necessaries for this service, as the Robes, Collar, George, Garter, *&c. and having received his Majesty's* Commission, *under the Seal of the said Order*; *they set sail from* Greenwich *in the* Anne (a Yaght *belonging to his Royal Highness the Duke of* York) *on* Friday *the* 5. *of* February 1668. *and landed at* Rotterdam *on* Sunday *the* 7. *of the said Month, from whence they proceeded on their journey to* Stockholme, *first to* Hamborough, *and then to* Lubeck, *where my Lord* Ambassador *having received command from the King, to go for* Denmark, *they took shipping at* Framond (*the Port of the said City*) *on* Saturday *the* 20. *of* March, *and landed at* Copenhagen *on* Monday *the* 22. *of the said Month. After some* 10 *days there, in which time his Lordship dispatched his business in that Court, they again imbarqued themselves in a Frigat of the King of* Denmark's, *and arrived at* Stockholme, *on* Saturday *the* 10. *of* April, *being* Easter *Eve, where his Excellency continued some weeks* incognito, *till the arrival of his Train and Equipage.*

Saturday, June *the* 5. *the Countess of* Carlisle *landed at* Stockholme, *and about* 4 *week after arrived the Ship with my Lord* Ambassador's *Goods and Retinue.*

Wednesday *the* 7. *of* July, *my Lord* Ambassador *made his Entry into* Stockholme, *and on* Saturday *the* 10. *of the said Month had his publick Audience of the King.*

Monday *the* 26. *of* July *my Lord* Ambassador *and Mr.* St. George, *at a private Audience, delivered their* Credentials *concerning the* Garter; *and his Majesty of* Sweden *received the lesser* George.

Thursday *the* 29. *of* July *was appointed for his Majesty's publick reception of the whole* Habit *of the* Order, *which Ceremony was performed as followeth*; *About three of the Clock that Afternoon, my Lord* Ambassador *and Mr.* St. George, *were by two principal Senators Count* Neile Brahe, *and Count* John Steenbook, *the Master of the Ceremonies, with the King's Coaches, Pages, and Footmen (all in new Liveries) with many Officers and Cavaliers, conducted to the* Castle, *being come into the great Court, they were met at the Stairs foot (where they alighted) by several of the King's Servants, and so conducted up to certain Rooms, where the* Robes, *&c. were deposited (having been sent thither that morning) here my Lord* Ambassador *for a while reposed himself, whilst Mr.* St. George *made ready the* Robes, *&c. and put on his Mantle, and having now notice, that his Majesty was come into the Great Hall, they proceeded thither, Mr.* St. George *bearing the* Robes, *&c. on a Velvet Cushen: At the entrance into the Hall, they were met by the Rix-Marshal Count* Gabriel Oxenstiern (*having in his hand a long Staff of silver gilt*) *and conducted to the upper end of the Room, which was inclosed within a Rail and Ballister. Here stood the* King *in*

a Suit

a Suit and Cloak of Cloth of Silver, with a large Plume of White Feathers in his Hat, under a State of Crimson Velvet, fringed with Gold, to the back of which said State was affixed an Escotcheon of his Majesty's Arms within the Garter, *and his Stile underneath; on the King's right hand was erected a like State for the* Soveraign, *with an Escutcheon of his Arms, and his Stile also underneath, with a Chair and Foot-stool. Opposite to the King of* Sweden's *Chair, was placed a Chair, like in all things to that of the King's, for my Lord* Ambassador, *and on the left hand of my Lord* Ambassador *was a Chair set for Mr.* St. George, *and near it, close to the Rails, was a little Table to lay the* Robes *on. On the King of* Sweden's *left hand, at a good distance, near the other end of the Rails, sate the* Queen, *under a lesser State of Cloth of Silver, the haut-pas was covered with Turkie Carpets, as was also all the ground within the Rails, where stood the Regents and the rest of the* Senators *(all in Cloaks and Bands as is used at their Dyets and most solemn Assemblies) with Chairs behind them: The whole Room was hung with Tapestry, having a great number of Scaffolds in it, filled with the principal persons of quality, both of the Court and City.*

After my Lord Ambassador *and Mr.* St. George, *had saluted the* King, *Mr.* St. George *placed the* Robes, *&c. on the* Table, *and having made an obeysance first to the* Soveraigns State, *then to the King of* Sweden, *stood before his own Chair, till the King and my Lord* Ambassador *were both of them seated; they being seated, Mr.* St. George *sate down on his Chair, until the Trumpets and Kettle Drums ceased (which had beat and sounded from their first entrance in the Room) all being quiet Mr.* St. George *arose, and making an obeysance first to the* Soveraign's State, *and then to the King of* Sweden, *stood by the Table, then the* Ambassador *arising, began his Speech to the King, which ended, his Secretary delivered a Copy of it, in the* Swedish *tongue, to the* Ambassador, *who gave it to the Lord* Stein Bielk, *who delivered it to a Secretary, by whom it was read aloud, whereunto a Reply was made by the same* Senator, *in* Swedish; *this Reply translated into* English, *was given by the said* Senator *to the* Ambassador, *and by him to his Secretary, who read it in* English. *Then did Mr.* St. George *deliver the* Commission *under the Seal of the Order, to my Lord* Ambassador, *who presented it to the* King, *who having received it gave it to a Secretary, by whom it was read aloud.*

The Commission *being read, Mr.* St. George *devested the King of his* Cloak, Sword, *and* Belt, *untying also the Silk* Garter *on his left leg, and delivered the* Book *of the* Statutes *of the* Order *to the* Ambassador, *who presented them to the* King, *then was the* Garter *of the* Order *presented to his Majesty by Mr.* St. George, *who at the delivery pronounced the accustomed words in* Latin, *which ended, my Lord* Ambassador *and Mr.* St. George *did both of them buckle it on the King of* Sweden's *left leg; in like manner was presented the* Surcoat, *the* Girdle, *and* Hangers *with the* Sword, *the* Mantle, *the* Hood, *the* Collar, *and great* George, *last of all the* Cap *and* Feather. *His Majesty thus fully invested with the whole* Habit *of the* Order, *continued standing under his State, whilst Mr.* St. George *descending from the haut-pas, towards the lower end of the Rails, returned, and having made three obeysances as he came up, proclaimed the Stile of the* Soveraign *in* Latin, French, *and* English; *and afterwards the Stile of the King of* Sweden *in* French *only.*

This being done, Mr. St. George *returned and stood before his Seat, whilst my Lord* Ambassador *complemented his Majesty in a short Speech in* English, *which was afterwards read in* Swedish *by a Secretary; and a Reply made by the afore named Senator* Stien Bielk *in* Swedish, *read in* English *by my Lord* Ambassador's *Secretary.*

After this another Senator, viz. *Baron* John Gyllenstiern, *did in a long Harangue congratulate his Majesty's* Election *and* Investiture *into this most Noble* Order; *which ended, the* King, *my Lord* Ambassador, *and Mr.* St. George *took their Seats again, whilst the Trumpets and Kettle Drums beat and sounded, being the signal for the firing* 124 *great Guns, from the Ships of War in the River, and several parts of the City, and of divers Vollies of small shot from Horse and Foot, purposely drawn into the Town for this occasion; after they had all fired the first time, they gave a second Volley, which being near ended, my Lord* Ambassador, *and Mr* St. George *arose, and making their obeisances to the* King *(who stood in his* Robes *under his* State) *they withdrew, and were conducted by the afore mentioned Senators*

Senators Count Brahe *and Count* Steenbook, *to the same Room from whence the* Robes *of the* Order *had been brought, where Mr.* St. George *put off his Mantle, and after a little rest, my Lord* Ambassador *and Mr.* St. George *were in the same manner conducted home to my Lord Ambassador's House.*

About eight of the Clock that Evening, my Lord Ambassador *and Mr.* St. George *were again brought to Court in the King's Coach, by Count* Torstenson, *and the Master of the Ceremonies, to Supper; where in a fair Room, under a state of Crimson Velvet, sate the* King *covered, and in the* Robes *of the* Order, *on his left hand the* Queen, *and on her left hand my Lord* Ambassador, *all under the State, at each end of the Table sate two of the Regents, and on the other side of the Table near each end, sate two of the senior Senators, and between them stood two Carvers.*

At another Table in the same Room sate Mr. St. George, *with the other Senators and the Officers of the Army; during Supper, several Healths were drank, as the* Soveraign's, *the King of* Sweden's, *the two* Queens, *the Duke of* York's, *the* Companions *of the* Order, *&c. at each of which were fired* 4 *great Guns,* 24 *being purposely planted for that service, under the Wall of the* Castle *: Supper being ended my Lord* Ambassador *and Mr.* St. George, *having waited on the* King *and* Queen *back again in the same manner they attended them to Supper, about three of the Clock the next morning, they were again conducted home by Count* Torstenson, *and the Master of the Ceremonies, in the King's Coach; and as they descended from the* Castle, *the* 24 *great Guns were all fired twice over.*

Sunday, *the* 1. *of* August, *my Lord* Ambassador, *and Mr.* St. George *were by Count* Torstenson, *and the Master of the Ceremonies, in the King's Coach, brought to the* Castle *about* 7 *of the Clock in the Evening, from whence they went with their Majesties in their Barge, to see the Fireworks which had been preparing about three Months, an English mile from* Stockholme *(in honor of this Solemnity) this divertisement continued about two hours, and was concluded with a Banquet; which ended, they returned in the same manner, being saluted both in their going and return, with four Guns from each Ship of War in the River, besides the Guns from the Fort; At their landing, Count* Torstenson, *and the Master of the Ceremonies were ready to conduct my Lord* Ambassador, *and Mr.* St. George *home, in the same manner as they came.*

Thursday *the* 19. *of* August, *Mr.* St. George *received his Majesty of* Sweden's *Letter to the* Soveraign, *and a* Certificate *of his Majesties* Reception *of the said* Order, *both signed by the Queen and the Regents.*

Sunday *the* 22. *of* August, *Mr.* St. George *took his leave of the* King *and* Queen, *being attended by the under Master of the Ceremonies.*

Thursday *the* 2. *of* September, *Mr.* St. George *was presented by the under Master of the Ceremonies, with a Chain of Gold, and a Meddal set with Diamonds, from his Majesty.*

Saturday *the* 4. *of* September, *Mr.* St. George *began his Journey from* Stockholme *to the* Sound *by Land, and came to* Elsineur *the* 12. *of the said Month; the* 29. *he took shipping for* England, *and landed at* Hull *the* 20. *of* October, *the* 27. *he came to* London, *and was the next day by the Earl of* Carlisle *(who was newly returned) brought to his* Majesty *in his Bed-chamber, where he kissed the* King's *hand, presented the King of* Sweden's Letter *to his* Majesty, *and so concluded his Employment.*

The *Fire-works* above mentioned, which the King of *Sweden* caused to be prepared, to close the Solemnity of his *Investiture*, and manifest to the world his great satisfaction in the honor received, were ordered in the following manner.

In the middle of the work was erected a great *Pillar* 52 foot high, on the top of which was placed a gilt *Crown*; 18 foot below the Crown were the initial Letters of the *Soveraign*'s and King of *Swedens* Christian Names, set breast to breast: and below at the Foot were placed several Military *Colours*, both of Horse and Foot, filled with Fire-works.

The *Pillar* stood in the middle of four antique *Trophies*, filled with Fire, and upon each side of the *Pillar*, 40 foot distance from it, was placed St. *George* on Horse-

Horseback, having the Dragon under his Feet, of 24 foot in length, and 28 in heighth, and on each side of St. *George* two *Pyramids* of 36 foot high.

In several places of the Work were set great *Wind-Pipes*, filled with Water, for playing of Water-Balls, and round the Work about 2000 *Musket-Pipes*, 60 together in a Frame, with 72 *Chests* in and about the Work, full of *Rackets* 12 foot high, besides 28 *Chests* with *Swarmers* in the Earth, 2 foot high; and above 1000 *Pattroles* fired by Degrees, which flying high threw from them all sorts of Figures of Fire. Lastly, at each corner a *Fire Murser*, which threw up all sorts of pleasant *Fire-Balls*, and in their breaking presented several Figures.

A Relation of the *Investiture* of *John George* Duke of *Saxony*, with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*, drawn up by Sir *Thomas St. George* Knight, *Somerset* Herald.

JOhn George *the second, Duke of* Saxony, *was elected into the Society of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter *the* 18. *of* June 1668. *at a* Chapter *held at* Whitehall, *and by the* Soveraign *and several of the* Companions *of the* Order, *Sir* Thomas Higgons *Knight, and* Thomas St. George *Esq*; Somerset *Herald, in the place of* Garter *Principal King of Arms, were then appointed and ordered to carry the* Garter, *with the* Habit *and other* Ensigns *appropriated to the* Order, *to the said Duke of* Saxony; *which being provided and delivered unto them, on the* 27. *of* February *following they set forward from* London, *and arrived at* Dresden *the* 5. *of* April 1669. *and lodged at an Inn, from whence they gave notice to the* Hoff Marshal *of their arrival.*

Upon Wednesday *morning about* 10 *of the Clock, being the* 7. *of* April, *the Duke of* Saxony *sent his Coach and several of his Servants, for them to their Audience, where Sir* Thomas Higgons *presented his Majesty's* Credentials, *and Mr.* St. George *the Book of* Statutes, *the* Elector *having sent to see them the day before.*

They were conducted from this Audience by the Duke's Servants to their several Lodgings within the Castle, *where they remained and were entertained at the Duke's charges, and attended by his Servants during their stay at* Dresden.

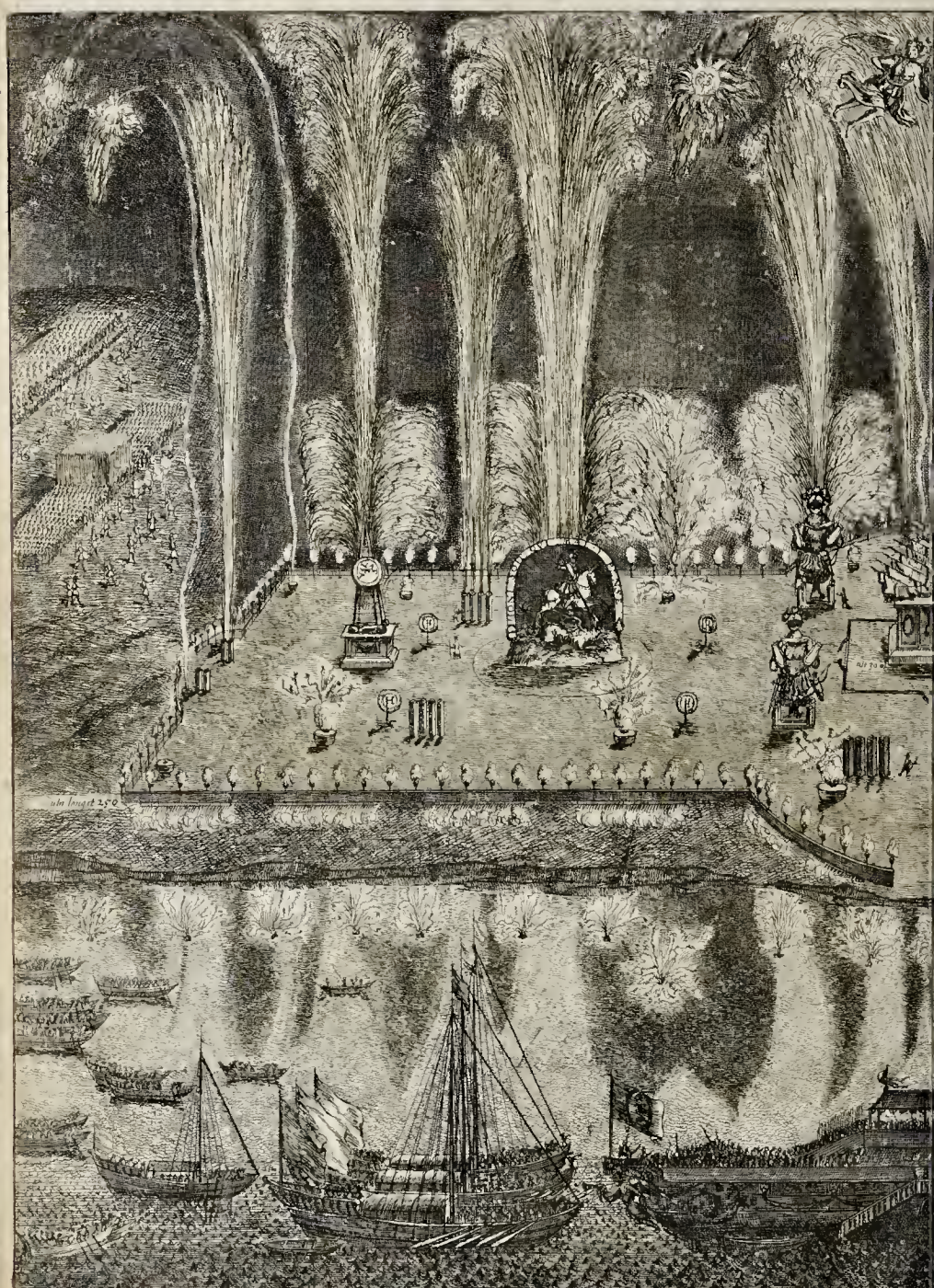
Upon the 8. *of* April *in the morning, the* Duke *sent a Complement to them, acknowledging how sensible he was of his* Majesty's *great affection unto him, in sending him the Order of the* Garter, *and that he was very desirous to receive it, whereupon they desired an Audience, to which they were conducted about* 4 *of the Clock in the Afternoon by the Dukes Servants.*

Being brought to the Duke, Sir Tho. Higgons *told him that he understood by his Secretary Mr.* Voght, *his Electoral Highness was very desirous to be invested with the* Order *of the* Garter, *and that thereupon he and Mr.* St. George *were come to present his Electoral Highness with the* George *and a* Blue Ribband, *which was usually worn by the* Companions *of that most Noble* Order, *before their Investiture, whereupon he gave them thanks; and then Mr.* St. George *delivered to Sir* Tho. Higgons *the* George, *and by him it was presented to the* Duke, *who having received it, and viewed it a little while, returned it again to Sir* Tho. Higgons, *then he and Mr.* St. George *put it about his neck; which being performed, the* Duke *returned thanks, and declared that he intended to be invested on* Tuesday *or* Wednesday *following, whereof they should receive more particular notice.*

Upon the 9. *of* April *the* Duke *sent to them by his Secretary, to signifie that he had resolved to be invested on* Tuesday *following, and thereupon discoursing about the Ceremonies, said that his Electoral Highness had given order for the furnishing a stately Room for that occasion, which he was ready to shew them, but that if any part of the Ceremony were accustomed to be performed in the Church, he desired that might be omitted; which being by them consented unto, they repaired to the Room appointed, and gave directions how it should be ordered.*

Upon Easter-day, *being the* 11. *of* April, *they were attended by several of the Duke's Servants to Church first, and after to Dine with him.*

Upon



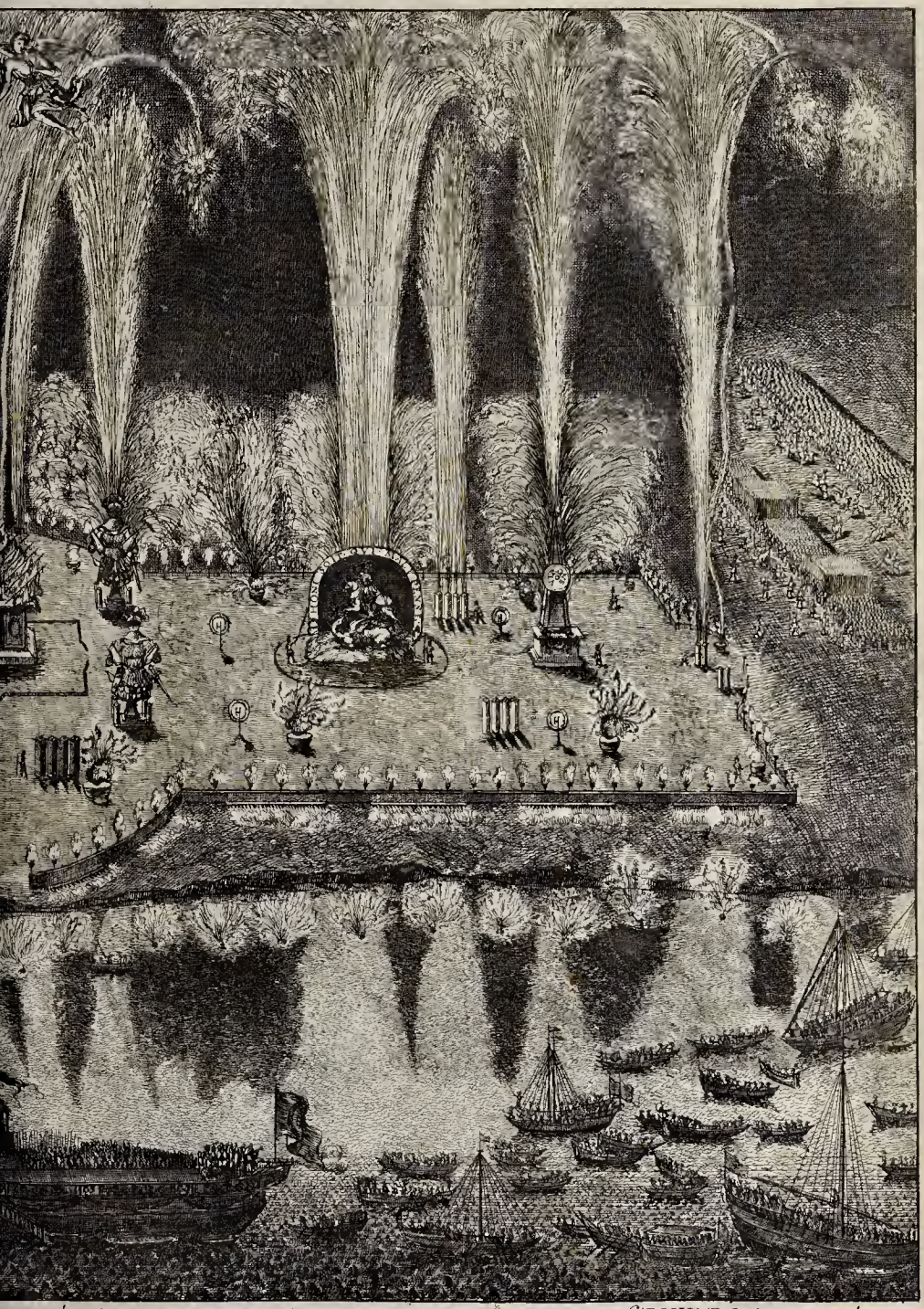
In Magnificentissimum hoc supra designatum Spectaculum nocturnorum Ignium, jactorum inter solemnia honoris Equestris Ordinis D
Wandalorumque Rex et Princeps hereditarius Magnus Dux Finlandiæ, Dux Scaniæ, Esthoniæ, Livoniæ, Carelliæ, Bremæ, Verdæ, Stetini, Por
et Montium Dux, a SERENISSIMO et POTENTISSIMO PRINCIPE ac DOMINO DNO. CAROLO ejus nominis S
Extraordinarium, Illustrissimum et Excellentissimum D. Carolum, Com. Carleolensem Vice Com. Howard a Morpeth, Baronem D'Aere de Gilled

Adspice sidereis certantes Ignibus Iones,
Ecce repentino summa subire gradu
Cerne Coronatas Turres quæ pegma tropheis
Fœdaque Principibus Romina sacra suis

Cernitam facibus noctem hinc mirare, suumq.
Tulgura fulminibus insia, luctata Iovem,
Inde Equitem et totâ jactata incendia mole,
Atque Periscelidis nobile schema vide,

Nempe Caledonias n
Et duo qui Regum
Dum satis est terra
Vt solum hunc im

Pag. 124.



cum eundem SERENISSIMVS atque POTENTISSIMVS PRINCEPS ac DOMINVS, DN. CAROLVS D.G. Svecorum, Gothorum
, Cassubiæ, et Vandaliæ, Princeps Rugiæ, Dominus Ingriæ, et Wismariæ, nec non Palatinus Comes ad Rhenum, Bavariæ, Iuliaci, Clivi
DO, D.G. Magnæ Britanniæ Franciæ et Hiberniæ Rege, Fidei Defensore, per ejusdem S.R. Maj. Magnæ Britanniæ Regis Legatum
atæ Militiæ Præfectum, et Locumtenentem Regium in Provincijs Cambriæ et Westmerlandiæ, Oblatum suscepit Holmiæ, 29 July, A. 1669.

rgitus honores,
vit Amor;
tis aquore notus,
lica lingua sonet,

Dumque hæc mortales longum spes ducit in ævum
Et lætum æterni fœderis omen habet;
Restat ut Astriferos fama hæc quoq; permeet orbes,
Ne qua pari plausu rerum Elementa vacent,

Hic ævo incolas, Reges dicturus Amicos;
Dicturus Fratres Nūncius Ignis, abit;
Vtque paret, qua sese hæc olim fascia digna
Parte Poli statuat. Pactor hic Ignis abit.

Upon Tuesday *the* 13. *of* April, *between* 10 *and* 11 *of the Clock in the morning, the* Duke *sent a great number of his Servants to them, to let them know he was ready to receive the Order; whereupon Mr.* St. George *put on his Robe or Mantle, and having placed the* Habit, Collar, George, Garter, *and his Majesty's* Commission *upon a Blue Velvet Cushen, they were conducted to a little Room appointed for that purpose, where the Duke stayed for them, Mr.* St. George *carrying the* Robes *and the other* Ensigns *of the* Order, *which he presented to the* Duke, *and after placed them on a Table standing by him.*

Then Sir Thomas Higgons *and Mr.* St. George, *having first prayed the* Duke's *leave, took off his Cloak, and his Sword and Belt, which the said Mr.* St. George *had for his Fee, and after that the* Blue Ribband *and* George, *which they had presented to him before, which Mr.* St. George *delivered to one of the* Duke's *Servants.*

The Duke *being in this posture, Mr.* St. George *took the* Surcoat *which Sir* Thomas Higgons *and he presented to the* Duke, *and then put it on; after that the* Girdle *and* Hangers, *which they likewise girt about him, having received another Sword from the Master of his Horse.*

Then the Duke's Secretary brought and laid upon the Table before his Electoral Highness, the Letters Testimonial *ingrossed in Parchment, of the presenting him with the* Ensigns *of the* Order, *which he there signed, and being sealed by him before them, they were delivered to Mr.* St. George *by the* Duke.

These things being thus performed, they proceeded to the great Room prepared, where the principal part of the Ceremony was to be accomplished, where there was a great concourse of People, and towards the upper end on the right hand was a place raised, where sate the Dutchess, *the* Prince *of* Saxony *and* Princess, *the* Princess *of* Anhalt, *and below them a great many Ladies of quality, and the Ladies of the Court.*

First passed the Dukes Servants *two and two.*

Then the Cap *and* Feather, *carried by Mr.* St. George's *Son.*

Next Mr. St. George, *carrying the rest of the* Habit *and the* Ensigns *of the* Order.

Then Sir Thomas Higgons.

After him the Duke of Saxony *in his Surcoat, his Sword girt about him.*

On each side, and closing the Rere, were his Guard *of* State *richly habited, with Partizans in their hands, the Staves covered with Blue Velvet, and set thick with gilt Nails.*

In this manner they passed through divers stately Rooms, entertained with several sorts of Musick, until they came to the great Room, where there was also excellent Musick of several sorts, with Kettle-Drums and Trumpets, placed in a high Gallery at the lower end, which entertained them as soon as they entred.

In this Room was two States *of Crimson Velvet, the one at the upper end for the* Soveraign *with a Chair and a Foot-stool, and an Escotcheon of the* Soveraign's Arms *within a* Garter, *having his* Stile *underneath, set over the Chair; the other on the side of the Room on the right hand of the* Soveraign's *State for the* Duke, *with an Escotcheon of his* Arms *within a* Garter, *and his Stile underneath; and on the left hand two Chairs, the one for Sir* Thomas Higgons, *the other for Mr.* St. George.

Being entred this Room, as they passed from the lower end, three obeysances were made to the Soveraign's State *going up, then the* Duke *going to his* State, *and there standing, Mr.* St. George *placed the* Robes *on a Table on the Duke's right hand; which being done, Sir* Thomas Higgons *and Mr.* St. George *did go to their Chairs opposite to the Duke's, on the left hand of the* Soveraign's State, *making their obeysances to it as they passed by, then the* Duke *sate down, and they did the like. Then being entertained with Musick for a little while, they rose from their Seats, and making their obeysances as before to the* Soveraign's State *as they passed by it, and repaired to the* Duke, *who standing up, they placed themselves on each side of him: being in this posture Mr.* St. George *took up the* Commission, *and holding it in his hand, Sir* Thomas Higgons *made a Speech to the* Duke, *relating to the Antiquity and Nobleness of the* Order, *declaring how many Emperors, Kings, and Foreign Princes had been* Companions *thereof since its institution, and in relation to the election of his* Electoral Highness *of the splendor and greatness of his Family, &c.*

which having ended, Mr. St. George *gave the* Commission *to Sir* Thomas Higgons *who presented it to the* Duke, *which he caused to be read with a loud voice by his Secretary, and then received it again, and delivered it to Mr.* St. George.

After this Mr. St. George *took the* Garter, *and with the assistance of Sir* Thomas Higgons, *buckled it about the Duke's left Leg, then they put on the* Mantle, *the* Hood *upon the right shoulder, and last of all the* Collar *and* George.

Thus being fully invested, Mr. St. George *spoke to the* Duke *as followeth,* Ayant investi vostre Altesse Electorale avec tous les habits & les autres ornaments du tres-noble *Ordre* de la *Jartiere,* Je souhaite toute sorte de prosperité de grandeur & de longue vie au tres-hault tres-puissant & tres-illustre Prince *Jean George* le Second, par la grace de Dieu Duc de *Saxe,* de *Juliers Cleves,* & des *Montz,* Archimareschall & Prince Electeur du Saint *Empire,* Landgrave de *Thuringe,* Margrave de *Misnie,* & de la haute & basse *Lusire,* Burgrave de *Magdeburg,* Conte de la *Marche* & *Ravensperg,* Seigneur in *Ravenstein,* & Chevalier du tres-noble *Ordre* de la *Jartiere*; *which being ended, the Trumpets and loud Musick sounded.*

The Musick ceasing, Sir Thomas Higgons *congratulated his Electoral Highness's* Investiture, *whereupon one of his Council made a Speech in Latine, declaring his Electoral Highness's great obligation to the King of* Great Britain, *how highly he esteemed the* Order, *and his Majesty's particular kindness to him, &c. and concluded with his thanks to Sir* Thomas Higgons *and Mr.* St. George.

Then Mr. St. George *took the* Cap *and* Feather *and presented it to the* Duke, *which he put on*; *and they returned in the same order as they came, to the Chamber from whence they brought him, Mr.* St. George's *Son bearing his Train*; *and there they left him and retired, being attended to their Apartments by the Duke's Servants. About half an hour after, the* Duke *sent his Servants again for them, they found him in the same Room where they left him, in the* Habit *of the* Order, *and in the same manner as before they passed to the Room, where the Duke's Dinner was upon the Table, and they dined with him that day, the* Duke *wearing the* Habit *of the* Order, *and Mr.* St. George *his Rob*[illegible] *After Dinner they attended him back to the same Room, and there took their leaves and departed.*

Upon Sunday *the* 18. *of* April, *the* Duke's *chief Chamberlain came to Sir* Thomas Higgons *first, and after to Mr.* St. George, *and presented each of them with a Chain of Gold, and the Electors Picture set in Diamonds hanging at it, and also to each of them a Bason and Eure*; *he also presented Mr.* St. George's *Son with a little Jewel of Diamonds, and invited them to Dine with the Duke, and the Master of the Ceremonies presented all their Servants.*

On Monday *the* 19. *of* April, *Sir* Thomas Higgons, *and Mr.* St. George *took their leaves of the* Duke *to return for* England, *and dined that day with him: and that Evening the Duke's Secretary brought them a* Proxie, *under the Duke's hand and Seal to the Earl of* Bath, *to be installed for him at* Windesor.

The next morning being Tuesday, *the* 20. *of* April (*Sir* Thomas Higgons *and Mr.* St. George, *having before hired a Boat to carry them down the River of* Elbe *to* Hamburgh) *the Dukes Coaches and Servants attended them to their Boats, and there all but two of them took their leaves of them, those two that remained had laid in provision, and attended and defrayed them by the Dukes command, as long as they travelled in the Dukes Territories, which was within two German Miles of* Magdeburgh, *and there they took their leaves.*

Sir Thomas Higgons *and Mr.* St. George *parted at* Hamburgh, *the former to go for* England *by the way of* Holland, *the other by shipping. Upon* Sunday *the* 16. *of* May, *Mr.* St. George *arrived first in* England, *and that day Fortnight Sir* Thomas Higgons; *and when Mr.* St. George *kissed his Majesties hand at his return, he was pleased to confer the honor of* Knighthood *upon him, with the same Sword the Duke of* Saxony *gave him.*

By way of *Corollary* to the present *Section,* it will be necessary to give an account of those Transactions relating to this most Noble *Order,* which past, during the interval of the late Rebellion and Usurpation.

The

The present *Soveraign*, by reason of his frequent removals from several places, beyond the Seas, where his rebellious Subjects had forced him to retire, was obliged to dispence with the accustomed Ceremonies of the *Order*, and to such *Strangers* as he was pleased to *Elect*, to send only the *George* and *Garter*, together with the *Glory* or *Star* of Silver (to wit the *Cross* of St. *George* irradiated within a *Garter*, curiously wrought in rich embroidery) to be worn upon their upper Garments: Declaring also, that the *Investiture* therewith should be sufficient to stile themselves *Knights-Companions* of this most Noble *Order*, as effectually, as if they had been formally, and with the usual Solemnities, installed at *Windsor Castle*, where then it was not possibly to be done.

And in these Cases, instead of such formal *Commissions* of *Legation*, as had been accustomed to be made out, the *Soveraign* sent only his *Letters* [a] signifying Election to the *Elect-Stranger*, and a [b] *Warrant* to Sir *Edward Walker* Garter, under his sign manual, whereby he was authorised, according to his Office, to deliver those *Ensigns* to the *Elect-Stranger*, with such Ceremonies as were usual, and might be performed in the place where he was.

a *Appendix, Num.* CIII. CIV. CV. & CVII.
b *Num* CVI. & CVIII.

Of this kind were the *Warrants* issued out to the said Sir *Edward Walker*, for delivery of the *Garter*, *George*, and *Star* [d] to *Charles* Prince of *Tarante*, to [e] *William* Prince of *Orange*, to [f] *Frederick William* Marquess of *Brandenburgh*, and by virtue of which he invested these *Princes* with them.

d e f *Ex Collect. E. W. G.*

The manner and order of *Investiture* of a *Stranger* upon these occasions, was briefly thus.

The *Stranger-Elect*, to whom the *Ensigns* were sent, entred into the Room, appointed to receive the Ceremony, and placed himself under the State.

In the mean time, Garter, having retired into another Room neer thereunto, put on his rich *Coat* of the *Soveraign's Arms*, and placed the *Garter*, *George*, and *Cloak* (on the left shoulder whereof was embroidered the Cross of St. *George*, within a Glory of Silver) upon a Velvet Cushen; then taking them on his arms before him (together with the *Soveraign's Letters*) went towards the Room, where the *Elect-Stranger* expected his coming, and where (a free passage being made) he proceeded up with three Reverences, and being arrived neer unto him, laid down the Cushen on a Table, placed for that purpose, neer the foresaid State.

This done, he began his *Oration*, and having made an entrance, sufficient to usher in the delivery of the *Soveraign's Letters*, he presents them to the *Elect-Stranger*, who opening the same, returned them back for *Garter* to read, which having done he redelivered them to him.

These things being dispatched, he took the *Garter* from off the Cushen, and kneeling down, first buckled it on the *Elect-Strangers* left leg, next he took the Blue *Ribband* and *George*, and hung it about his Neck, and lastly the *Cloak*, which he put likewise over his shoulders; and leaving him thus Invested, proceeded on with his *Harangue*: which being ended, he attended what the *Invested-Stranger* should please to say, by way of acknowledgment, or thanks to the *Soveraign*, for the Honor received: and then with usual obeysance departed the Room to put off his Coat.

The Copy of Sir *Edward Walker's* Speech, made in delivering the *Garter*, to *William* Prince of *Orange*, at the *Hague*, on Sunday in the Afternoon, being the 4. of *May* 1653.

May it please your Royal Highness,

I *Have lately received the Commands of his sacred Majesty, the King your Brother,* Charles *the Second of that name, by the Grace of God King of* England, Scotland, France, *and* Ireland, *Defendor of the Faith, and* Soveraign *of the most Noble and Renowned* Order *of St.* George, *called the* Garter, *humbly to attend his Nephew the Prince of* Orange, *only Son unto your Royal Highness, and to deliver unto* *Ex Collect. E. W. G.*

him the Ensigns *of that most Noble* Order, *with his* Majesty's Letters *of* Dispensation *investing his Highness with the most splendid Ornaments thereof. But because the tenderness of his Highness age allows him not the capacity to comprehend the great honor the King hath done him, in this early electing his Highness into this most Noble* Society, *the Reasons whereof are best exprest in his Majesty's gracious* Letter; *I shall therefore humbly address my self unto your Royal Highness, his Mother and Tutrix, and by your permission, open and read his Majesty's* Letters, *and shall then, in obedience to his Majesty's Commands, deliver unto his Highness the* Garter *and* George *therewith sent.* The Investiture being dispatched, he thus proceeded.

Now that his Highness is by his Majesty's gracious Election and Dispensation Invested, and become a Companion of this most Noble Order, *I should according to the obligation of my Office, represent unto his Highness somewhat of the Antiquity, Nature, and Dignity of this most famous* Order; *but (as I said before) the tenderness of his Highness age denying him the notion of matters of this kind, my hopes and wishes shall supply that present defect, which are, that as his Highness grows in years, under the happy tuition of your Royal Highness, and observing that he wears an* Order *and* Habit *not common to others, that he will with curiosity examine the cause of that effect, and then I doubt not but he will be informed, and with delight retain in his memory, that it was the most victorious King of* England, Edward *the Third, his Highness Ancestor, that* 300 *years past for noble and generous ends instituted this* Order, *that it was the* King *his Uncle that elected him thereunto in his infancy, That he is of an* Order *neer* 100 *years more ancient than any other meerly* Military, *and that it hath been so highly valued and desired, as that the greatest Monarchs of* Europe *in their times have been* Companions *thereof. And to make the impression deeper, his Highness will then also find, that his great and excellent Father, your Royal Highness Husband, was a* Companion *of this most Noble* Order, *as were formerly those two most potent and fortunate Supporters of this State, his Highness most heroick Grandfather* Henry, *and his great Uncle* Maurice, *all Princes of* Orange *in succession; The great Examples of whose admired and noble actions, as of other his Royal and Princely Ancestors, will certainly induce his Highness with alacrity and vigour to endeavour to be equal unto them in all honor, magnanimity, and princely virtues.*

I shall conclude, that as your Highness hopeful Son, the Prince here present, is the youngest that ever yet was chosen into this most Noble Society, so it cannot be otherwise esteemed, than an early Omen of his future felicity and greatness, which with length of days and all prosperity, is humbly and heartily wished by me unto his Highness, the most high, mighty, and excellent Prince, William Henry *of* Nassau, *Prince of* Orange, *&c.* Knight *and* Companion *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter.

A brief Journal of Sir *Edward Walker's* passage and employment, in passing from *Amsterdam* to *Hamborough*, and so from thence to *Berlin*, to deliver the *Garter* to his Electoral Highness, *Frederick Guillaume* Marquess of *Brandenburg*, *An. Dom.* 1654.

Ex cod. Collect.

ON Tuesday *in the Afternoon, being the* 17. *of* March *New Stile, I began my Journey, and arrived at* Hamborough *the* Monday *following being the* 23. *I stayed there from* Monday *till* Thursday *in the Evening, and then I departed with the Messenger of* Berlin. *On* Monday *morning I came to* Spanda, *a good Town, where there is the strongest Fort I ever saw, of four Bulwarks, environed by the River* Sprey, *and a Morass towards* Berlin, *from which place the Elector hath caused the Wood to be felled, that he might see this Fort from his Castle at* Berlin.

At 11 *of the Clock that day I arrived at* Berlin, *here I lodged my self in the Burgomasters house, a good Inn, and that Afternoon sent for one Mr.* Roe *an* English-man, *but an old Servant of the Electors Family; to him in general I made my self known, and desired his advice for my addresses, he presently went and acquainted the Electors Marshal with my Arrival, who presently informed the Elector, and so*

so I had answer, if I sent to the Marshal the next day at 10 *of the Clock, I should understand his Highness pleasure; accordingly I sent, and the Marshal returned me answer, that at* 11 *his Highness would send a Gentleman to conduct me to the Court, and accordingly there came his Carver, in one of his Highness Coaches, to conduct me thither, where when I was arrived, I was brought through two or three Rooms (the Guards standing in order in the first, and Gentlemen in the rest) by the Gentleman to the Electors Anti-Chamber; there his Chamberlain received me, and brought me into his Highness Bed-chamber, to whom I presented my self in the best posture I could, and briefly gave him an Accompt of my Employment, and delivered him his* Majesty's Letter, *which he presently opened and read, and in few words of great respect acknowledged his Majesty's favour: After that I delivered him her Majesty the Queen of* Bohemia's *Letter, which he received with great demonstration of affection, and then returned to discourse with me about the time and manner of receiving the* Order.

Hereupon I having prepared a Paper of all things necessary, that so I might do my best for his Majesty's honor and service, I presented it unto his Highness, which he presently gave to Monsieur Scurein *(one of the chief of his Council, and the only person, besides his Chamberlain, then present) to read, which he did, and it gave the Elector so full satisfaction, as he proposed to receive the* Order *the next day being* Wednesday; *but I being weary, and besides other particulars being to be advised, I put it off till* Thursday: *so I took my leave of his Highness for that instant, and the Surintendant being Hofmaster to the Electrix, brought me to her Apartment to wait upon her, to whom I likewise delivered her Majesty's Letter, she received me with great favour, and told me her Mother had given her notice of my coming, so after some questions of the young Prince of* Orange, *the Princes* Royal, &c. *I took my leave, and was conducted into his Highness Dining-Room, where the Dinner being on the Table, he presently appeared, leading his Mother who with her Brother the Palatine of* Zimerne, *his Lady, with a Son and Daughter came to this Court few days before. The old Electress, seeing me present, with high civility seemed as if I should apply my self unto her; hereupon I briefly told her, that I was assured, had her Majesty the Queen of* Bohemia *known I should have found her there, I should have had the honor to have brought her Letters from her Majesty, which she took in good part, so she placed her self with her Sister-in-Law, her Daughter-in-Law, the young Electress her Sister, the Princess* Katherine, *and the young Princess of* Zimerne *on the outside of the Table; in the interim the Elector, the Duke of* Zimerne *and his Son washed, the Chamberlain giving the Towel, then the Gentleman gave water to the Ladies, so they took their places at a long Table; at the end sat the Dutchess of* Zimerne, *and the old Electress on the inside of the Table, the Electress, the Princess* Katherine, *and the young Princess of* Zimerne, *on the outside sate the Duke of* Zimerne, *then the Elector (then stood the Carver) and below sat the young Prince of* Zimerne, *and below him the Chamberlain, opposite to the young Prince and next to his Sister I was placed, beneath me the Master of the House to the old Electress, and then at the end sate the Electors Master of his Horse, and another: The Table was excellently served, having at the first course* 20 *Dishes of gilt Plate, covered with Silver, and the Plates the same; so was the second course, and at the third, the Banquet was served in, in as many standing scalloped Cups gilt. At the second course the Elector began to me his* Majesty's *Health, and a while after the Duke of* Zimerne *the Queen of* Bohemia's, *and these were all the Healths past at the Table, so as to my great joy, instead of drinking after the* German *mode, I rose from Table thirsty.*

Dinner being done, his Highness and the Ladies returned into her Highness Chamber; in the interim I stayed in the Dining-Room, where the Marshal came and told me, his Highness had given order, I should be lodged neer the Court, at his Stables, and should have a Coach to wait upon me to come to Court that Evening, and so constantly while I stayed. I excused the first, at least till the next day, and the last for that time, and so returned to my Lodging. The next day after Dinner, I went into the Electress Room with the Elector, and presently the old Electress applied her self to entertain me, and did so neer an hour. Then I took my leave of her and the Elector for that time, and was brought by one of his Gentlemen to my new Lodging at the Stables, where (after a large half pace, at the top of a Stair)

I was

I was brought into my Stove hung with good Arras, at the upper end were two large round Tables, the one covered with a Carpet of Crimson Velvet fringed with Gold, the other of Cloth of Gold, on which stood a great Silver Bason and Ewer, out of that Room I went into my Bed-Chamber hung with Silk Hangings, the Bed was of Cloth of Gold Damask, and the Counterpart of rich Cloth of Gold, and Chairs of Crimson Velvet; towards Evening I was sent to, to know whether I would sup at the Court or there, I desired the last at my Lodging, in regard I was to deliver the Garter *the next day. So in the Evening Wax Candles were brought me in great Silver Candlesticks, and Wine and Beer in two great standing gilt Cups, and then eight or ten Dishes of meat in Silver Dishes, and (the Table being covered with rich Damask Linen) the meat was brought by six or eight Footmen, and a Page of the Electors to wait upon me, towards the end of Supper, five or six Plates of Sweet-meats were set on the Table, and so the Supper ended.*

The next morning being Thursday, *the* 3. *of* April, Stilo Novo, *I made my self ready to deliver the* Garter, *and about* 10 *of the Clock went to Court conducted by a Gentleman sent of purpose, when I came there I found all things ready as I had designed, and presently the Elector came and set himself under the Cloth of State, a Table standing by him whereon to lay the* Garter, *&c. Then I presently retired into another Chamber, and put on my Coat of Arms, having laid on a Velvet Cushen his* Cloak, *the* Garter, George, *and his* Majesty's Letter *(which was again delivered me, as I had proposed, to be then publickly read) so having made my three Reverences, I approached near his Electoral Highness, and then laid down the Cushen, and applied my self by way of introduction in the* French *Tongue, to give an account of my Employment, and therein again delivered to his Highness his* Majesty's Letter, *which he re-delivered me. Then having finished my introduction, I read openly his* Majesty's Letter, *which done, I again delivered it to him, and kneeled down and put on the* Garter, *then the* George, *and lastly the* Cloak, *and so proceeded with the rest of my Harrangue; which done, the Elector in few words returned humble thanks to his Majesty, for the great honor he had done him, in making him Companion of so Noble and worthy an* Order, *and was likewise pleased to give me thanks for the pains I had taken in bringing it unto him; so I made my Reverences and departed to put off my Coat. During the time of exercising my Function, I saw him very well pleased with it, and after, all the Company present, being his Council and Servants, congratulated his admission.*

Presently after his Highness came forth to Dinner with the accustomed company, and as formerly he drank to me his Majesty's Health; afterwards the Duke of Zimerne *began his Highness Health to me, and her Majesty of* Bohemia's *Health and the Electresses passing, Dinner was ended, so being weary I went not into the Elector's Chamber, but returned to my Lodging; where I had not been long, but the Elector accompanied with the Duke of* Zimerne, *and most of his Court, came to the Ffeure to see his Horses, so I presently went down to wait upon his Highness, who used me with high civility, causing me to put on my Hat (for by the way, at home I never saw him covered) at first I saw his Stables full of excellent Horses, at least* 30 *of several breeds for the Great Saddle, thence he went up Stairs, the Stable being a quadrangle well built, and the Rooms above divided into six or eight Rooms, all full of Carbines, Pistols, Swords, rich Armour, &c. of divers fashions and richness, and the two last of very rich Saddles of all fashions, and Furniture for Horses, many of them set with Turquoises, Rubies, Emeralds, &c. and one set with Diamonds; which done, his Highness took his Coach and departed. That Evening I had a Supper at my Lodging as formerly, and the Mr.* de la Lane *grand Esquire came to me from his Highness, telling me he had order, if I pleased, to wait upon me to shew me the Fort at* Spanda, *and likewise that at* Castrein 10 *Miles off, I excused the last as being far off, and would take the opportunity of seeing the other at my return.* Fryday *I went to Court again, and then I delivered his Highness the Copy of my Speech, and told him I had no more to do now, but to attend his Commands, resolving to depart about the middle of the week following.*

The next day being Saturday *I dined at Court as formerly: The following day being* Easter-day, *I went early to the Court, and waited on the Elector to the Church, which by a Gallery is joined to the Court, I had the honor immediately to precede his*

his Highness leading his Mother, and to have a stool set me in his Closet, which is at the lower end opposite to the Altar above his Chamberlain, next the young Prince of Zimerne; *there I heard the Service and Sermon, which ended, the Elector and all the Company went down to receive the Sacrament, leaving me in the Closet with two Lutheran Gentlemen to bear me company; all being done, we returned in the same order we came to Church, and went immediately to Dinner, which was served up as formerly, but the number of Dishes of all sorts surpassing other days, yet there past only his Majesty's health, and the Elector's at that time. That Evening I supped at Court, where the entertainment was agreeable to the former.*

Monday *after Dinner I represented to his Highness, that having obeyed his Majesty in delivering the* Order, *I had no more to do, but to beseech his Highness leave to depart on* Thursday, *and therefore prayed him to honor me with his Commands on* Wednesday, *which he granted, though at Dinner he proposed to me to go and see his strong Fort at* Castrin 10 *Dutch Miles thence, but I excused it, saying, I would satisfie my self with seeing that at* Spanda *two Miles in my way back, which is of great strength both by art and situation.*

The next day being Wednesday, *I sent to have audience, to take my leave of his Highness in the Morning, but I was put off till after Supper. Yet I waited on his Highness to Dinner, and after Dinner I waited upon the old Electress, the Duke of* Zimerne, *and his Lady and Children, and the Princess* Katherine, *and had Letters from most of them to the Queen of* Bohemia *and Princess* Louisa, *with as great testimonies from them of their affection and good wishes to his Majesty, and respect and thanks to my self as was imaginable: After Supper that Evening, I took my leave of his Electoral Highness, who with all respect delivered me his Letter to his Majesty, and then with extraordinary civility he dismissed me. After that, although the Electress had taken Physick that day, I had audience of her, who gave me her Letter to the Queen of* Bohemia, *and when I desired one to her Mother, she told me she had written by the Post, and so I returned to my Lodging.*

The next morning being Thursday, *Monsieur* le Cane *Captain of his Highness Guard and Master of his Horse brought me a Present of* 100 *pieces of Gold, weighing each* 5 *Daiats, which were coined of purpose for me, using much Complement from the Elector his Master in the delivery, and then presently by his Highness Order, he brought me out of Town in one of his Highness Coaches, there being two other Gentlemen with him: and first he shewed me the place of casting Ordinance, where there were newly cast two great whole Cannons and a very large Mortar-piece, then through a very large Park we came to* Spanda, *where at the entry of the Fort I was saluted with three pieces of Cannon, and met by the Governor, who shewed me all the strength and provisions thereof, which are in all kinds very great both of Brass, Ordinance, and Arms. After that, I was very well entertained at Dinner by the Governor, and after Dinner saw the Elector's Lodgings, where only the great variety of rare Stags-horns is worth observation, and so the Messenger being arrived, I took my leave of the Governour and Monsieur* le Cane, *who brought me out of the Fort, and through the Town, returning by the same way and means. Thus I came to* Hamburg *on* Monday *following, and so returned to* Amsterdam *on* Sunday *night the* 20. *of* April.

Shortly after the present *Soveraign* was most happily restored to his Kingdoms, he took care to send over the rest of the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order* (namely the *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Hood*, and *Collar*) to the said Prince Elector of *Brandenburgh*, who had yet been invested but with part; these were committed to the care of *Garter*, who thereupon sent them to Prince *Maurice* of *Nassau* to be conveyed to the said Elector; the Receipt of which, with the *Elector's* partieular thankful acknowledgments to the *Soveraign*, may be found in the[h] *Appendix*.

h *Num.* CIX. CX. CXI. CXII. & CXIII.

SECT.

SECT. IV.

Certificates *of having received the* Habit *and* Ensigns *of the* Order.

THE great and magnificent Solemnity of *Investiture* with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of this most Noble *Order*, being compleatly finished, and the *Ambassadors* having fully performed their duties therein, with all circumstances of honor, as belongs to so great a Ceremony, they are yet further to obtain from the new *Invested Stranger*, before their departure, a publick Instrument, testifying the reception of the said *Habit* and *Ensigns*, signed with his Hand, and sealed with his Great Seal.

This we find anciently done, as appears from that Certificate sent back by *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, bearing date at *Gaunt* the 4. of *February an. 9. E. 4.* and was generally demanded and obtained since that time, as will fully appear from the several *Certificates* sent from those *Stranger-Princes*, to whom the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order* have been presented.

Hereupon was a Clause to this effect usually added in the Instructions, given to *Ambassadors* in such their Legations, as appears from those to the Lord *Howard* and *Garter*, in the Embassy to *James* the Fifth King of *Scotland*; namely, [b] *That* Garter *should remember* (after the *Investiture* was performed) *to purchase and solicite a* Certificate *from the said King, of his reception of the Order, and taking the Oath, both under his Seal.*

[b] *Appendix, Num.* CII.

The form and substance of those *Certificates* which have come to our view, are much alike; for [k] after a recital of all the powers given to the *Ambassadors*, named in the *Commission* of *Legation*, the *Stranger-Prince* first makes Certificate of his Receiving, and Investiture with the *Garter*, *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Collar*, and other *Ornaments* of the *Order*, and that they have been presented to him by the *Soveraign's Ambassadors*, with due honor, and all the Solemnities accustomed: and generally where the Letters signifying *Election*, and the *Habit* of the *Order* have been sent together, the *Certificate* of receiving them hath also contained the Strangers grateful acceptation of the *Order*, together with his due thanks (in such cases necessary to be returned) and an acknowledgment, how acceptable the choice, and assumption into this *Society*, hath been to him.

[k] *Ibid. Num.* CXIV.&c.

And in some of these *Certificates*, namely from [l] *Ferdinand* Prince of *Spain*, *an.* 15. *H.* 8. from [m] *Francis* the First, the *French* King, *an.* 19. *H.* 8. and from [n] *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, *an.* 3. *Car.* 1. we find, the taking the *Oath* appointed by the *Statutes* to be also certified, with such qualifications and under such conditions, as had been advised and agreed upon, between them and the *Soveraign's Ambassadors* beforehand.

[l] *Ibid. Num.* CXV.
[m] *Num.* CXVI.
[n] *Num.* CXIX.

Of the return of these *Certificates*, the *Annals* of the *Order* sometimes take notice, as in particular, that of [o] *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*, which the Lord *Willoughby* brought back with him, [p] signed by that King, and sealed with his Great Seal, which he presented to the *Soveraign* in the [q] *Chapter-house* at *Windesor*, upon the finishing of his *Legation*; as also that of the *French* King [k] *Henry* the Third, by the Earl of *Derby*.

[o] [p] [q] *Lib. C. p.* 89.
[k] *Ibid. p.* [illegible].

Moreover by a late [r] Decree *an.* 13. *Car.* 1. care was taken to oblige the *Ambassadors* to produce these *Certificates* to the *Soveraign* at their return.

[r] *Lib R. p.* 120. (*See the Letter inserted at the beginning of* Eth. Celius *his* Eq. Aur. Anglo-Wirtemb. *in the Soveraigns Library at St.* James's.

And besides the *Certificate* testifying the *Investiture*, sometimes the *Stranger-Prince* hath been pleased to give therewith, a particular testimonial of *Garter's* punctual discharge of his duty in the *Legation*, or of the *Officer* of Arms employed in his stead; as did [t] *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg*, in a Letter to the *Soveraign*, *an.* 1. *Jac. R.* The like did *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, in the preamble of his [t] *Diploma*, whereby he testifies the bestowing upon *Henry St. George Richmond* Herald, the honor of *Knighthood*.

[t] *Seld. Tit of Honor. p.* 459.

Of

Of those *Gratuities* given to *Garter* by *Strangers*, after they had received their Investiture, notice of some of them have come to our hands, which we therefore think fit to mention here.

Ferdinand Arch-Duke of *Austria* gave him a [u] Cup worth 22 *l.* and 100 Rhenish Guilders.

The *French* King *Francis* the First [w] 250 Crowns.

James the Fifth King of *Scotland* [x] 100 Crowns of the Sun.

John Casimire Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, a Gold Chain and a Cup worth 30 Pounds.

Frederick Duke of *Wirtemberg*, a [y] rich Sword and Dagger, a Chain of Gold with his Picture hanging at it, and lastly 1000 Rix Dollars.

Maurice Prince of *Orange* a [z] Chain of 6 pound weight, and a Medal with his Picture thereat, set about with Diamonds.

Charles Prince of *Tarent* a [a] Diamond of 200 *l.* value.

William Prince of *Orange* [b] 1200 Dollars.

Frederick William Elector of *Brandenburgh* [c] 100 pieces of Gold, each of the value of 10 Rix Dollars.

John Gasper Count *Marchin* about [d] 200 *l.* in Gold.

Charles the Eleventh King of *Sweden* gave to *Henry St. George* Esq; at his Investiture, a [e] Gold Chain and a Medal pendant thereto, worth 200 *l.*

And lastly, *John George* Duke of *Saxony* bestowed on *Thomas St. George* Esq; a [f] Silver Bason and Eure, a Gold Chain and Medal, and a Sword with a Cross Hilt of Agat, adorned with Gold.

u, w, x *Ex Collect. E. W. G.*

y *Eq. Aur. Anglo-Wirtemb. p. 259.*

z *MS. penes G. O. T. p. 132.*

a, b, c, d, e, f *Ex Relatione E. W. G.*

CHAP. XVI.

THE Installation OF A Stranger *by* Proxie.

SECT. I.

Touching the Choice *and* Nomination *of a* Proxie.

THE Invested *Stranger*, of what Dignity, State, or Condition soever, is enjoined by the *Statutes* (after such his Investiture) to send hither a [a] *Proctor* or *Deputy* (for we find both Titles indifferently applied to one person) to be installed on his behalf, in the Seat assigned him within the Chappel of St. *George* at *Windesor*.

[a] *Ed.3. Stat.* [b] *Art.20.*

The time limited by the *Statutes* of *Institution*, for sending him hither, is [b] eight Months after Investiture with the Habit and Ensigns of the *Order*. Yet in King *Henry* the Fifth's *Statutes* it is but [c] seven Months; and those of King *Henry* the Eighth allow only [d] seven Months and no more, and that not only after Investiture, but after the *Stranger* hath [e] certified the *Soveraign* of his Reception of the *Order*.

[c] *Art.20.* [d] *Art.21.* [e]

The *French* King *Francis* the First, was so earnest for the compleating this honor, that he [f] speedily (after he had received the Habit and Ensigns) dispatcht his *Proctor* hither, to perform what the *Statutes* required in this particular. And for the general we observe so little slackness in *Stranger-Princes*, nay so great a forwardness to obtain the accomplishment of this Honor, that their Deputies have been installed for them within the limited time.

[f] *Lib.N.p.257.*

But

But King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes* have further provided, [g] *That in case a* Stranger *do not send his* Deputy *or* Proctor *within seven Months, without having a reasonable excuse, and such as should be allowed by the* Soveraign *or his* Deputy, *the Election* (notwithstanding his former acceptation) *should be also void, except so it be, that the* Stranger *be hindred or disturbed by great Affairs, and then might he send his Excuse to the* Soveraign *or his* Deputy, *within one month after; and according as the* Soveraign *or his* Deputy *should allow or disallow of his Excuse, that then the* Soveraign *or his* Deputy *might give unto him four months of respite more, within which time, if he neither come nor send his* Deputy *to be installed for him, then the said Election should be void for that time.* g Art. 21.

And sometimes it hath fallen out, that through the multiplicity of Affairs, *Strangers* could not punctually observe the ancient Law of the Statutes in this point; nevertheless, by virtue of the limitation in those Statutes of King *Henry* the Eighth, upon a sufficient cause, the *Soveraign* hath been pleased to excuse the delay; but the instances are very few, as that of the *French* King *Charles* the Ninth, who was [h] invested at *Lyons, an.* 6. *Eliz.* but not installed till the [i] 22. of *January*, in the eighth year of the same *Queen*. h Ex Collect. A. V. W. i Lib. C. p. 50.

And when of late the *Garter* and *George* only were sent to a *stranger*, the Ceremonies of Installation have also been dispensed with till a more convenient time, as appears from the [l] Instructions of the 4. of *March, an.* 19. *Car.* 1. given at the sending these two Principal Ensigns of the *Order* to *William* Prince of *Orange*, and *Bernard de Foix* Duke *d' Espernon* (in regard of the interruptions then given by the Rebellion here) nevertheless [m] then to be performed with all usual Rites and Honors due to persons so neerly allied unto, and so much esteemed by the then *Soveraign* of the *Order*. l Ex Autogr. penes pref. Jac. Palmer. m

Such Dispensations, and for the same reason, was the present *Soveraign* necessitated to give those *Strangers*, whom he honored with Election into this most Noble *Order*, while he remained in Foreign parts.

And upon his Majesties happy Restauration, among many other things relating to the *Order*, this particular was at several *Chapters* taken into serious consideration, in reference not only to the Duke *d' Espernon* and Prince *Maurice*, that were dead, but those *Strangers* also then living, both wanting the full complement of their Honor by a formal Installation; for at a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall* the 10. of *April, an.* 13. *Car.* 2. [n] directions were given to *Garter*, to place the Banners, and other Atchievements of the surviving *Strangers* over their respective Stalls: The *Soveraign* then also did by his Supream power (induced by divers considerable reasons) [o] dispence wholly and absolutely with their *Installations*, nevertheless declared them and every of them to be esteemed *Companions*, and to enjoy all priviledges of the *Order*, as if they had been installed Personally, or by Proxie; with this further declaration notwithstanding, That as the like necessity and conjuncture could never happen again, so he would not upon any motion or pretence whatsoever give the like Dispensation. Finally, at another *Chapter*, held at *Whitehall* the 20. of *February* following, it was concluded, and the *Soveraign* again declared his pleasure, to dispence with the said *Strangers Installations* by a formal Act, thereupon commanded to be drawn up by the *Chancellor*; which he having performed, read it in a subsequent Chapter, where it received approbation. A Copy whereof here follows. n Lib. Carolin. p. 27. o Collect. E. W. G.

WHereas it is expresly provided by the Statutes *of the most Noble Order of the* Garter, *That no* Companion Elect *of the same, shall enjoy the priviledges of a compleat* Knight *thereof, before he be actually installed, either in his Person or by his sufficient* Proxie, *within the accustomed time, and according to the usual Rites and Formalities, which some of those noble Persons, who though Elected, could not possibly perform and receive, during the late troubles, nor legally since our return into our Dominions, by reason of the space of time elapsed since their Election, beyond that which is allowed and prescribed by the* Statutes, *as also for the many difficulties and incumbrances, through which the performance of their* Installations *must pass, in some of them who are* Strangers, *and have their abead in Foreign and* Ex Lib. Collect. Hen. de Vic. Bar. nuper hujus Ord. Cancel. p. 23.

remote parts; which we taking into our consideration, and that if not all, most part of the foresaid Knights *were admitted into our said* Order, *without those Formalities, which at other times, to have omitted had been an unexcusable breach of* Statute: *We conceiving it no more irregular to pass by the* Statutes, *in matter of their* Installation, *than it was in point of their* Election, *the observation of the usual forms in either of them having proved equally difficult or rather impossible; for these and other reasons, particularly for the avoiding that prejudice, which some of the said Companions, who are now dead, and have a like interest therein, with those that survive them, would have undergone (who for want of being installed, would have been lest out of the Catalogue of the Founders in the Register-Books of our* Order) *as we heretofore declared our pleasure to be, That such of them as are dead, should not for want of being installed, be deprived of the honor of being called Founders, and for those that are yet alive, that they should not suffer likewise in that respect, or in point of their Ranks and Precedency: And accordingly with the advice and consent of our other Companions, in the Chapter held the* 10. *of* April *last, we did regulate the Stalls, and command their Hatchments to be set up in the Chappel of St.* George, *in our Castle of* Windesor, *according to their* Elections *in point of time, We continuing in our former purpose, for the putting an end to the irregularities which the late troubles occasioned in our foresaid* Order, *and the many questions and difficulties which have ensued thereupon, and especially in this particular, We have thought good to dispence with the* Installation *of all the said* Knights, *whether they be* Subjects *or* Strangers, *dead or living, and whatsoever omission of, or contravention to the* Statutes, *may have hapned upon that account, And that the same notwithstanding, they all shall be held and reputed for compleat* Knights *of our foresaid* Order, *and enjoy all the priviledges and advantages of it, with the rest of the Companions, in as full and ample manner, as if they had been installed and performed all the Rites, and Ceremonies, usual upon such occasions.*

But it seems to rest in the pleasure of the *Stranger*, whether he will chuse to send over hither any person of his own Court, or give his Procuration to some one of the *Soveraign*'s Subjects, to receive his Stall, and in his name to take possession of it; the later of which hath been several times done, out of desire to favour some of our Nobility, or other persons of quality at Court; with this honor: For instance, *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*, gave his Procuration to the [p] Lord *Willoughby* (principal in the Legation, for the carriage of the Habit of the Order to him) to be installed for him; and in like manner, [q] *John* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne*, deputed Sir *Philip Sidney* to the same Employment: [r] Viscount *Dorchester* was installed for *Henry* Prince of *Orange*, to whom he (and Sir *William Segar, Garter*) had before earried the Habit and Ensigns: and this was done by virtue of a Deputation pen'd in [s] *French*, and sent him hither from the said Prince. The Earl of *Carlisle* received his Deputation from *Charles* King of *Sweden* at *Stockholme*; and the Prince Elector of *Saxony* sent his hither to the Earl of *Bath*.

p } *Append.* q } *Num.* CXXI. & CXXII.

r } *Lib. R.* s } *p.* 41.

But it hath sometimes hapned, that a *Proctor* for the installation of a *Stranger*, hath been appointed and nominated by the *Soveraign* of the *Order*, though the Principal had named another before, perchance induced thereto by some extraordinary necessity. Thus it hapned in the case of *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, *an.* 10. *Jac. R.* who having deputed [t] Count *Henry* his Brother to be installed for him, and he having put to Sea in order thereto, but by reason of [u] contrary winds, not arriving in *England* before the day appointed for his Installation, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* ordered, that [w] *Lodowick* of *Nassau*, Kinsman to the Elect Prince, should take possession of his Stall on his behalf; to the end that the honor designed the said Prince, in accompanying *Frederick* Prince Elector *Palatine* to his personal Installation, might not become frustrate.

t } *MS. penes* u } *Edw. Fauconbridge.* w

A ease somewhat like to this, was that of *John George* Duke of *Saxony*; for having sent over his Procuration to *John* Earl of *Bath*, and he being detained in the West by extraordinary occasions, when St. *George*'s Feast was held at *Windesor*, *an.* 23. *Car.* 2. wrote to the Chancellor of the Order, to obtain the

Soveraign's

Soveraign's Dispensation for his not appearing there in the name of his Principal; who * representing his humble request to the *Soveraign*, in *Chapter* held on the Eve of the said Feast, he was pleased to grant it, and appointed *Heneage* Earl of *Winchelsey* to be the Duke's *Proxie*, who performed the whole service.

And there is an ancient Example in this kind, [x] *an.* 9. *H.* 5. where the *Soveraign* nominated the [y] Lord *Fitz-Hugh*, *Proctor* for the King of *Denmark*; which yet was not done, till after the *Soveraign* had been certified, that the said *King* had been invested with the Habit and Ornaments of the *Order*, and also [z] obliged himself by Oath to the observation of the *Statutes*.

In like manner it is recorded, that the Earl of *Cleveland* was by the *Soveraign* appointed *Deputy*, for the Installation of *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*; and yet not unlike but this might be by consent of the said King, though the Annals herein are silent; (as is very usual, and sometimes in circumstances and passages of note) for if we look towards the end of the said King's *Certificate*, returned of his Receipt of the Habit and Ensigns of the *Order*, we shall there find he desired, [b] that the Qualifications therein before mentioned, might be admitted into his Oath, *when any solemn attestation should be made by his* Proctor *in his Name*; whence it may be well enough (and without much wresting) inferr'd, that he had not then named his *Proctor*, but probably either by a private Letter, or verbal message, returned by those (or some of them) joined in the Legation with the Habit, might leave him and the time to the choice and appointment of the *Soveraign*.

But suppose the *Soveraign* (being loth to defer this King's Installation too long, considering the hazards of War) did appoint a *Deputy* for his Installation, without his direction; as the case stood he might do it, and not intrench upon that leave given a *Stranger* by the *Statutes*, to chuse his own; because in the body of the said Kings Certificate, there is set down the very qualifications wherewith his *Oath* should be taken by his *Proctor*, which being allowed and admitted by the *Soveraign*, any further concern in this Affair was but matter of indifferency.

But if the *Soveraign*, having nominated a *Proctor*, should also cause him to take the ancient Oath, in its absolute nature and form, not allowing those qualifications, which the interests of his Principal, to his Religion, or to other Princes Orders, and such like, might justly exact (which without consulting an invested *Stranger*, cannot well be known or set down) and such an Oath as his Principal had neither allowed of, nor consented unto: this might seem good cause of exception, and be esteemed done in prejudice to his preingaged interests.

* *Ex Praef. lib. Collect. Hen. de Vic. p.* 159.

x, y, z *Lib. N. pag.* 164.

a *Lib R p.*46.

b *Appendix, Num.*CXIX.

SECT. II.

The Proctor's Qualifications.

BUT whether the *Proctor* be nominated by his *Principal*, or by the *Soveraign*, the *Statutes* of the *Order* put some qualifications upon the person so sent, or appointed as aforesaid: and first,

That he be * *Procurator sufficiens, & [a] idoneus*; that is, [b] such a person who hath been always accounted of an unblamable conversation, not branded with any note of infamy, but altogether irreproveable. And such a one was *Dominus Franciscus*-------Deputy to *Hercules* Duke of *Ferara*, who in the *Black-Book* of the *Order*, is characterised to be [c] *a Knight of an incorrupt Fame*; nor are we to doubt, but that other *Proctors* to *Strangers* were such, though the testimonials of their virtue do not appear in the *Annals* of the *Order*.

* *E.* 3. *Stat.* *Art.* 20.

a *Ib. Art.* 24.

b *Ord. Stat. in Lib. N. Art.* 19.

c *Pag.* 147.

Secondly,

d E.3. Stat. Art. 20. Videlis H. 5. Stat. Art. 20. & H. 8. Stat. Art. 21.

Secondly, the *Proctor* ought to be a person[d] correspondent to the State and Dignity of that *Stranger* which doth depute him; so that answerable to the dignity of the Invested *Knight*, ought to be (in some Proportion) the quality of the *Proctor*. And how this Injunction hath been observed, will sufficiently appear in the following Scheme.

	Knights.	*Proctors.*	
Emperor.	*Maximilian* the First.	Marquess of *Brandenburgh.*	*An.6. H.7.*
Kings.	*Ericus* King of *Denmark.*	Lord *Fitz-Hugh.*	*An.9. H. 5.*
	Francis the First of *France.*	*Adrian de Tercelin* Lord of *Bross.*	*An. 19. H. 8.*
	James the Fifth King of *Scotland.*	Lord *John Erskine.*	*An. 26. H. 8.*
	Charles the Ninth of *France.*	*Jaques* Lord *Remboilliet.*	*An. 8. Eliz.*
	Frederick the Second King of *Denmark.*	*Peregrine* Lord *Willoughby* of *Ersby.*	*An. 24. Eliz.*
	Henry the Fourth of *France.*	*Sier de Chastes* Vice-Admiral of *France.*	*An. 42. Eliz.*
	Christierne the Fourth King of *Denmark.*	*Henry Ramell*, hereditary Lord of *Wosterwitz* and *Beckeskaw.*	*An. 3. Jac. R.*
	Gustavus Adolphus King of *Sweden.*	*Thomas Wentworth* Earl of *Cleveland.*	*An. 4. Car. 1.*
	Charles King of *Sweden.*	*Charles Howard* Earl of *Carlisle.*	*An. 23. Car. 2.*
Arch-Duke.	*Ferdinand* Arch-Duke of *Austria.*	*George de Halwyn*, Baron of *Gomynus.*	*An. 16. H. 8.*
Dukes.	*Peter* Duke of *Conimbero.*	*John* Lord *Typtost.*	*An. 6. H. 6.*
	Guido Ubaldus Duke of *Urbin.*	Sir *Balthasar de Castilian* Knight.	*An. 22. H. 7.*
	Emanuel Duke of *Savoy.*	*Johan Thomas Langusts* des Contes de *Stropiane.*	*An. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar.*
	Adolph Duke of *Holstein.*	*Walter Devereux* Viscount *Hereford.*	*An. 3. Eliz.*
	Henry Prince of *Orange.*	*Dudley Carleton* Viscount *Dorchester.*	*An. 4. Car. 1.*
	John George Duke of *Saxony.*	*Heneage Finch* Earl of *Winchelsey.*	*An. 23. Car. 2.*
Earls.	*Anne Montmorency* Earl of *Beaumont.*	Sir *Amye de Courteney* Knight *Sier de Villert.*	*An. 25. H. 8.*
	Philip Chabot Earl of *Newblank.*	Sir *James Deschateners* Knight Sier de *Beaulion.*	*An. 25. H. 8.*

e Ibid.

Thirdly it is provided, [e] that he be a *Knight*, and without any manner of Reproach; and if it so happen, that he have not received the degree of *Knighthood*, the *Soveraign* is to bestow that honor, before he be allowed to take upon him the execution of his deputative power; for none but [f] *Knights* are capable of this Honor, or [g] permitted to bear the Ensigns of so great an *Order*.

f Nam fas non eq alios quam Milites munus istud in se suscipere, R. pag. 29.

g Ibid. p. 159.

Hereupon the Lord *Willoughby* of *Ersbie*, *Proctor* for *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*, and Sir *Philip Sidney*, for *John* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*; were * both Knighted by the *Soveraign* at *Windesor* Castle, the morning before they proceeded to take possession of their Principals Stalls.

* Colleti. R.C. Cl. fol. 30.

Not-

Notwithstanding, there was a reason why this particular was not strictly stood upon (though moved) in the case (and it is the single case) of [h] *Henry Earnell*, *Deputy* for *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*, *an.* 3. *Jac. R.* for it being taken notice of, that he was not a *Knight*, certain persons were sent from the *Soveraign* to signifie his pleasure, that he should be advanced to the honor of *Knighthood*, before he took upon him the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, in his Kings behalf; to which he made answer, [i] that he appeared here not in his own, but in the name of the King of *Denmark*, and that such a Degree of honor was unusual in his own Country (being born in *Pomerania*) and therefore humbly desired that he might be excused for receiving the honor. Upon which answer the *Soveraign* was pleased to [k] dispence with him, and forthwith the said *Deputy* (but no *Knight*) [l] received the Ornaments of the *Order*, and was admitted to take the Stall assigned to the said King his Principal.

h *Lib. C. p.* 153

i *Lib. R. p.* 160.

k } *Ibid.*
l }

SECT. III.

His Letters *of* Procuration.

THE authority wherewith an *Elect-Stranger* invests his *Proxie*, is chiefly deduceable from the words in his *Letters* of *Procuration* or *Deputation*, which ought to pass under the Hand and Seal of his Principal, and do generally contain these particulars.

First, [m] he premiseth the *Soveraign*'s Election of him into the *Order* of the *Garter*, and his Receipt of the *Habit* and *Ensigns* thereof; then takes notice of the obligation which the *Statutes* of the *Order* put upon him, for sending a *Proxie* to take possession of his Stall, in regard the dignity whereunto he is advanced in his own Country, will not permit him to repair personally to *Windesor*; and being not only desirous, that the Election and Investiture should obtain its due effect, but to fulfil, as far as in him lies, the Injunctions of the *Statutes*, in what concerns the assuming of his Stall, and taking the Oath appointed, He therefore ordains, authorises, and deputes, a person fitly qualified (named in the *Deputation*) his sufficient *Proctor* and special *Deputy*, to appear at the Castle of *Windesor* on his behalf, and in his Name at the next Solemnity that should be held there, to supply his room, and receive possession of the Stall assigned him, according to the usual form; and to perform in all respects those Ceremonies and things, in his behalf, due and accustomed, or should appear to belong any way to the splendor or ornament of the *Order*: As also to take the accustomed Oath, with those qualifications, and in that form, as had been (or should be) agreed upon; and further to fulfil all other things, which he should think necessary, to be performed on this occasion, or whatsoever thing might require a more special command, than was contained in the *Letters* of *Procuration*; and as fully as the *Stranger* should be obliged unto, and would do, if he were there present in his own person. Lastly, there is usually added a Clause of Ratification and Confirmation of all such things, as the *Proctor* should say or do, in reference to the Solemnity of Installation.

m *Appendix. Num.* CXXI. CXXII. CXXIII.

SECT. IV.

Of the Proctor's Reception.

SOon after the arrival of the *Proxie*, and that the *Soveraign* is acquainted with the occasion of his coming, he at some convenient time [a] giveth him Audience

a *Collect. W. le N. Sl.*

ence; after which a day for Installation is assigned, (where the *Soveraign* or his *Lieutenant* are present) the *Soveraign* nominates some of the *Knights-Companions* his *Commissioners* to perform the Ceremonies.

Heretofore, the *Soveraign* hath caused the *Proctor* to be received with very great state; for so was [b] Sir *Balthasar Castilian*, sent hither from the Duke of *Urbin*, *an.* 22. *H.* 7. whom Sir [c] *Thomas Brandon*, with a goodly company of his own Servants, well horst, met at the Sea side; and thence continually kept company with him, till they came neer *Deptford* in *Kent*, where, by the *Soveraign*'s command, he was met by Sir [d] *Thomas Dokara*, Lord of St. *Johns*, and Sir *Thomas Wriothesley* Garter: The said Sir *Thomas Dokara* had attending him [e] 30 of his Servants all in new Liveries, well horsed, every Gentleman bearing a Javelin in his hand, and every Yeoman a Bow, and a Sheaf of Arrows, and so they conveyed him to his Lodging. The next day they conducted him to *London*, and by the way there met him divers *Italians*, and *Paulus de Gygeles* the Popes Vice-Collector, to whose house he was conveyed and there lodged.

b (*Ex vet.* c) *MS. penes* d) *W. le N. Cl.* e) *p.* 24. *b.*

The Reception also of *James* Lord *Rambouillet*, Proctor for the *French* King *Charles* the Ninth, was very noble; to whom, as soon as the *Soveraign* heard of his arrival at *Gravesend* (being [f] *Tuesday* the 8. of *January an.* 8. *Eliz.*) she sent thither [g] *Arthur* Lord *Grey* of *Wilton*, Mr. *Midlemore*, and other Gentlemen, who the next day landed him at the *Tower-Wharf*, where all taking Horse, they conducted him to his Lodgings, neer St. [h] *Maries Spittle*, without *Bishops-Gate*; within which place lay the Ambassador Leiger of *France*.

f (*Collect. W.* g) *le N. Cl.* h)

SECT. V.

The Preparations *for* Installation.

THE Preparations for the Installation of a *Stranger* by *Proxie*, are the same as for the *Proxie* of a *Knight-Subject*, and mentioned as before, namely the (1.) *Commission* for Installation, (2.) *Letters* of notice to the *Commissioners*. (3.) *Warrants* for removal of Stalls, (4.) for the *Strangers Atchievements*, and (5.) some other particulars of less note: All which are to be obtained by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, under the *Soveraign*'s Sign Manual, to which the Signet of the Order is to be affixt.

1. Commission for Installation.

The form of the *Commission* is much the same, with that drawn up for Installation of a *Knight-Subject*, both as to the material and circumstantial parts; whereof we have [a] already discourst. The [b] Preamble contains the same matter, and the authority wherewith the *Proxie* is impowered, and is penn'd with like words; the variation lies only in those expressions, which lay down the causes of the *Stranger*'s absence, and for the most part are generally exprest, but if in particular, then are the words fitted with alterations sutable to the occasion.

a *Chap.* 11. *Sect.* 3. b *Appendix. Num.* CXXIV. CXXV. CXXVI. CXXVII.

2. Letters to the Commissioners.

The *Letters* sent from the *Soveraign* to each of the *Commissioners* appointed for Installation, [c] giving them notice and information of the Solemnity, and requiring their attendance at *Windesor*, on the day assigned, are of the same nature with those prepared against the Installation of a *Knight-Subject* by his *Proxie*; the necessary alterations being taken in, where the occasion requires.

c *Ibid. Num.* CXXVIII. & CXXIX.

3. Warrants for removal of Stalls.

Thirdly, a *Warrant* for the *Removal* of *Stalls*, is likewise to be obtained from the *Soveraign*, and sent unto *Garter*, to see it put in execution, according to its tenour, whereby a Stall being assigned to the *Stranger*, his *Proxie* having taken possession thereof, may set over it the Atchievements of his Principal. The ground of this Removal, and the practice thereupon, in relation both to *Strangers* and *Knights-Subjects*, is discourses of at large, among the [d] Preparations made for the Personal Installation of a *Knight-Subject*.

d *Chap.* 11. *Sect.* 6.

In

In the last place, a *Warrant* is to be drawn and signed by the *Soveraign*, for providing the *Stranger's Atchievements* at the *Soveraign's* charge; namely, his *Helm*, *Crest*, *Mantlings*, and *Sword*, together with a *Banner* of his Arms and Quarterings; and these the *Proctor* is * enjoined to bring along with him to *Windesor*. 4. Warrants for Atchievements. * E.3. Stat. Art. 20. H. 5. Stat. Art. 20. H.8. Stat. Art 21.

Sometimes a *Warrant* hath been directed to the *Master* of the *Wardrobe*, to provide but some part of these Atchievements; and another Warrant to the *Lord Treasurer* of *England*, to deliver *Garter* money to provide the other part; in each of which, the particulars relating to either are enumerated. For so were the *Warrants* drawn up, for the *Atchievements* of the *French* King [a] *Henry* the Second. At other times the direction hath been to the *Master* of the Great *Wardrobe*, to provide and deliver to *Garter* the whole, who thereupon put the charge upon account; as were those *Warrants* for *Atchievements* for the [b] Duke of *Chevereux* and King of *Sweden*. a *Appendix, Num* CXXX. & CXXXI. b *Ibid. Num.* CXXXII. & CXXXIII.

Sometimes particular *Warrants* have been directed to the *Master* of the *Wardrobe*, to deliver forth several parcels of the Materials, for the making up these *Atchievements*, to the persons employed in the work, or oversight thereof, as were those *Warrants* to deliver the [c] *Soveraign's* Embroiderer, and to [d] *Garter* so much Velvet, Cloth of Gold, *&c.* for making the great Banner and other the *Atchievements* of *Charles* the Ninth, and *Henry* the Third the *French* Kings, and *Christian* Prince of *Denmark*. c } *Ibid. Num.* d } CXXXIV CXXXV. CXXXVI. & CXXXVII.

But it appears that *Garter* hath sometimes laid out the money, for making all, or part of the *Atchievements*, and then he delivered his Bill of disbursements into the *Wardrobe*, as is manifest from those Bills drawn up for the *Atchievements* of [e] *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*, [f] *John* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, and the [g] Duke of *Holstien*. e *Ex Collect. A. V. W.* f } *MS. penes* g } *G. O. T.* f.160. & 156.

Besides the Atchievements, some other things used at the Solemnity, are commonly included in the foresaid Warrants, as (1.) a *Plate* of Brass gilt, whereon are engraven and enamelled in Colours the *Stranger's* Coat of *Arms* and *Quarterings*, within a *Garter*; as also his *Helm*, *Crest*, and *Supporters*, and underneath these his whole *Stile* and *Titles* of *Honor*: (2.) A *Majesty Scutcheon*, to be set over the *Soveraign's* Stall, and another over the *Strangers*, there to remain during the time of Installation. And when Prince *Henry* was constituted the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* for St. *George's* Feast, at which time also *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark* was installed; he likewise had a [h] *Majesty Scutcheon* placed over his Stall: (3.) Some *Lodging Scutcheons* of his Arms, marshalled in the same order as they are in his Plate: And (4.) a *Cushen* of Crimson Velvet, whereon to lay the Mantle, when *Garter* bears it before the *Proctor* into the Choire, in case the *Proctor* doth not carry it on his own arm. Lastly, for the carriage of all these things to *Windesor*, a Trunk is likewise to be provided. 5. Some other particulars. h *Ex Autogr. penes Guil. Knight, an.* 1657.

We do not think it needful to place the *Mantle* of the *Order* here, with those things that are to be prepared at the *Soveraign's* charge against this Solemnity; for the [i] *Statutes* of *Institution* appoint the *Proxie* to bring one with him, not that the *Soveraign* should provide it, having done that before at the [k] *Legation* with the whole *Habit*: Nor have we found in the Rolls or Books of the *Soveraign's Great Wardrobe*, any account made for providing a second *Mantle*, when the *Proxie* of a *Stranger* came hither; which, had the *Soveraign* been at such charge, would not have been omitted. i *E.3. Stat. Art. 20. vide etiam H. 5. Stat. Art. 20. & H.8. Stat. Art. 21.* k *Ibid.*

SECT. VI.

The Proctor's Cavalcade *to* Windesor.

THE day appointed for the Installation drawing on, the [a] *Proxie* was heretofore accompanied on Horseback, from *London* to *Windesor*, with the a *Lib. N. p.* 316.

Soveraign's Lieutenant and his *Assistants* (if the Feast of St. *George* were then also celebrated) or otherwise the *Soveraign's Commissioners*, with a very great Retinue.

Amongst the rest, when *Adrian de Tercelin*, *Deputy* for the *French* King *Francis* the First, rode to *Windesor*, the day before his Installation (being the 24. of *Jan. an.* 19. *H.* 8.) [b] all the *Knights-Companions* that were in *Commission* for that Solemnity, assembled at the Lord *Sandys* his Place, neer St. *Paul's* Church in *London*, whence they rode to the *Deputies* Lodging, then at the Dean of *Pauls* his House; and thence accompanied him in good order and gallant equipage, to the Castle of *Windesor*; where Lodgings were prepared for him at the *Dean's* House.

b *Autogr. in Bibl Coton. vide MS. fol. penes G.O.T.p.21*

In like manner on *Tuesday* the 15. of *January an.* 8. *Eliz.* the [c] Earls of *Sussex* and *Leicester* and Lord *Clinton*, ([d] three of the four *Commissioners* appointed for the Installation of the *French* King *Charles* the Ninth) with other Lords and Gentlemen, took their Horses at the [e] Court Gate at *Westminster*, and with a great Train rode to the Lodging of the said Kings *Proxie* (being then at St. *Mary's Spittle* in *London*) whence they took their way through *Holborn* towards *Windesor*, the Earl of *Southampton*, Viscount *Mountague*, Sir *Henry Lea*, and Sir *Edward Umpton* met them at *Langford* neer *Colebrook*, with their Hawks, and there shewed the *Proxie* variety of sport, with which he being exceeding well pleased, they rode to *Windesor*; where he was accommodated with Lodgings in the *Dean's* House, [f] for that hath usually been the place to entertain the *Stranger's Proxies*, when they came to *Windesor*, upon this solemn occasion.

c *MS. penes W. D. N. f.* 24. *b.*
d *Lib. C p.* 50.
e *Ex MS. prad.*
f *Lib. N. p.* 316.

SECT. VII.

Supper *after his arrival there.*

THE Evening of their arrival passeth with a *Supper*, for the most part costly and sumptuous; but the principal entertainment is reserved to set forth the magnificence of the following days *Dinner*, in case the Instalment be appointed to be solemnized on the next morning.

At the Installation of the *French* King *Francis* the First, all the [g] *Commissioners* met at the Marquess of *Exceter's* Lodgings, and went together to the *Dean's* House, where they were entertained by him at [h] *Supper*, all at one Table, at another Table sat [i] *Garter*, with certain of the *Deputy's* chief Gentlemen, and some of the *Heralds*; and at a third Table sat the [k] rest of the *Heralds*, and other of the *Froxy's* Servants.

g, h, i, k *Autogr. in Bibl. Coton.*

The [l] *Commissioners*, and other *Noblemen*, who also accompanied *Charles* the Ninth's *Proctor* to *Windesor*, supped (the Evening of their arrival) with him; he [m] himself sitting at the upper end of the Table, then the Earls of *Sussex* and *Leicester* by him, one against the other, next the Earl of *Southampton*, and Viscount *Mountague*, then the Lord *Clinton*, and Lord *Herbert* of *Cardiff*, after them two *Strangers*, namely Monsieur *Cleremont*, and Monsieur *de la Lupe*, then lower sat the Lord *Grey*, and other *Strangers*, and last of all sat Monsieur *Doze* alias St. *Michael*, the French *Herald*, at the lower end, opposite to the *Proctor*. [n] *Garter*, *Black-Rod*, and divers *Strangers*, supped with the Dean; and in the Parlour and Hall sat divers Pensioners, Gentlemen, and Strangers.

l, m, n *MS. penes W. D. N. fol.* 25.

SECT.

SECT. VIII.

Of the Proceeding *to the* Chapter-house.

WHat hath been before set down, touching the publick *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house*, at the personal Installation of a *Knight-Subject*, and other particulars relating to that Ceremony, will extend hither, both as to order and circumstances; and there needs no further instruction here, but to look back to the * Discourse thereupon: Nevertheless, this general rule is to be born in mind, That the place of a *Stranger-Prince*'s *Proctor* here, is [a] next after the *Provincial-Kings* (unless the *Proctor* of a *Knight-Subject* happen to intervene) and [b] before the junior *Knight-Companion* (unless a *Knight-Subject* Elect pass then in the Proceeding) of which we have an instance at the Installation of the Dukes of * *Brunswick* and *Cheverenx*, and the Earl of *Dorset* by their *Proctors*, but the Earls of *Salisbury*, *Carlisle*, and *Holland*, with Viscount *Andover*, in person, *an.* 1. *Car.* 1. when the *Proceeding* was ordered as followeth.

* *Chap.* 12. *Sect.* 4.

a } *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

* *Lib. R. p.* 29.

|| First, two *Waiters* of the *Soveraign*'s Hall in their Livery Coats, bearing white Rods.
Alms-Knights.
Prebends of the *Colledge.*
Officers of *Arms.*
Proctors to the absent *Elect-Knights.*
Elect-Knights in person.
Knights-Companions.
Black-Rod. *Register.* *Garter.*
Chancellor. *Prelate.*
Soveraign's *Lieutenant.*
Courtiers and *Gentlemen* in the Rear.

|| *MS. penes Edw. Fauconbridge, gen.*

Only in the single case of *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*, *an.* 3. *Jac.* (as an extraordinary respect and honor) his *Proxie* went in the Proceeding to the *Chapter-house*, [c] next before the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant.*

c *MS. fol. penes E. W. G. fol.* 146. *b.*

As we had an example before, of a *Proctor* to a *Knight-Subject*, who past in this *Proceeding* before the *Alms-Knights* and *Officers* of *Arms*, namely, Sir *Henry Sidney*, *Deputy* to the Earl of *Warwick*, *an.* 5 *Eliz.* so here (in the case of a *Stranger*) the Viscount *Hereford*, *Proxie* to the Duke of *Holstien*, [d] installed the 15. of *December*, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* who went in the *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house* before the *Officers* of *Arms* also: which *Proceeding* was ordered in this manner.

d *Lib. C. p.* 37.

[e] *Gentlemen*, and *Knights.*
The *Proctor*, and *Ambassador* of *Holstein* together.
Officers of *Arms.*
Register and *Garter.*
Lord *Hastings* } *Commissioners.*
Lord *Paget* }

e *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

If the *Proxie* of a *Stranger* pass in the *Proceeding* which the *Soveraign*, or his *Lieutenant*, or *Commissioners* make to the *Chapter-house*, then doth he for the most part give his attendance in the *Presence-Chamber*, or in that Room, from whence the *Lieutenant* or the *Commissioners* do proceed, and there joineth himself thereunto.

But sometimes the *Commissioners*, after their setting forth (as an act of grand respect) have taken the *Proxie*'s Lodgings by the way, and there received him

into the *Proceeding*. Instances in this, are first Prince *Henry*, *Lieutenant* at the Installation of *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*, who proceeded from the [f] *Presence-Chamber*, down to the *Deans* House (where the said King's *Proxie* lodged) and [g] received him at the Door, from whence the *Lieutenant* pass'd to the *Chapter-house*. And at the Installation of the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, [h] 19. *April an.* 2. *Jac. R.* the *Commissioners* proceeded from their [i] Lodgings (having the *Alms-Knights* and *Officers* of *Arms* before them) unto the *Dean*'s House, where [k] *Grave van Evestion* his *Proctor* likewise lodged; and from whence to the *Chapter-house*, the now full *Proceeding* passed.

f } *Ex eod.*
g } *MS. penes eund. E.W.G. loco citato.*
h *Lib.C.p.153.*
i } *Ex MS.*
k } *præd.*

We observe, that the *Proxies* of *Strangers* have not always gone in the *Proceeding*, but sometimes stayed at their Lodging in the *Castle*, till the *Commissioners* were ready to send for them into the *Chapter-house*. And thus it was at the Installation of the *French* King *Charles* the Ninth, for on the [r] 16. of *January*, *an.* 8. *Eliz.* in the morning (at the Earl of *Leicester*'s Lodgings in the *Castle*) the other three *Commissioners* met, where they and the three inferior *Officers* of the *Order*, robed themselves, and went thence to the *Proxie*'s Lodging; and having a while conferred with him, took leave and [s] proceeded to the *Chapter-house*. After some time of consultation there, they [t] sent out *Garter* to the *Proctor*, with desire to repair to them, who, upon the delivery of the message, was forthwith conducted by [u] *Garter* (attended with the Earl of *Southampton*, the Lords *Herbert* and *Grey*, and many others) to the *Chapter-house* door; where being arrived, the Earls of *Sussex* and *Leicester* (being the two senior *Commissioners*) received him between them.

r } *MS. penes D. N. fol.*
s } *5.*
t } *Ex Collect.*
u } *A.V.W.*

Sometimes the *Proxies* have past privately to the East-Isle of St. *George*'s Chappel, and there rested, before the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* went into the *Chapter-house* (or proceeded into the Choire, without entring thereinto, for so it hath sometimes hapned) as did the [w] Earl of *Cleveland*, and Marquess *Dorchester*, Proxies for *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, and *Henry* Prince of *Orange*, *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. The like did the [x] Earl of *Dover* Proxie to *Charles* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne*, *an.* 9. *Car.* 1. and of late, Sir *George Carteret*, Proxie to *Christian* Prince of *Denmark*, *an.* 15. *Car.* 2. So also the Earls of *Carlisle* and *Winchelsey*, Proctors to *Charles* King of *Sweden*, and *John George* Prince Elector of *Saxony*, *an.* 23. *Car.* 2.

w *Collect. W.le N. Cl.*
x *Lib.R.p.84.*

SECT. IX.

The Ceremonies *performed therein.*

When the *Proceeding* hath arrived at the *Chapter-house* door, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* (or the *Lieutenant* and his *Assistants*, or *Commissioners*) with the *Officers* of the *Order* before them, enter to hold their Consultation: but first the *Stranger*'s *Proctor* is [a] intreated to stay without, until his *Deputation* or *Letters* of *Procuration* be read, to the end they may understand the effect thereof.

a *Lib.N.p.316.*

To this purpose we find it also [b] directed, (under an ancient hand) that where any *Knight* is installed by his *Deputy*, he ought to stay without the Vestry (or Chapter-house) door, until he be brought in by two *Knights-Companions*: Hereupon the [c] Lord *Pagit*, one of the *Commissioners* for installation of the Duke of *Savoy*, when the *Proceeding* was come to the *Chapter-house* door, acquainted his *Proxie* with this Custom and Injunction, and desired him to walk aside, which he accordingly did.

b *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [H.2.] *fol.8.b.*
c *Collect. A. V.W.*

The *East-Isle* behind the High Altar, is the [d] accustomed place for the *Proxies* to walk or repose themselves in, till they be called into the *Chapter*; as it is also

d *MS. fol. penes E.W.G.*

also for the *Deputies* of *Knights-Subjects*, where Chairs and Cushens are ready prepared for this occasion.

The first thing done, after the *Chapter* is opened, is [e] Reading the *Commission* for *Installation*, by the *Register* of the *Order* (but if the *Soveraign* be present at the Installation, no *Commission* issues) and next the *Letters* of *Procuration*; this being as the most proper, so the most accustomed place for this act. 1. Reading the Commissions. e Collect. W. le N. Cl.

Nevertheless, at the Installation of the *French* King *Francis* the First (we know not by what (but certainly a most unusual) compliance, the [f] *Commissioners* went from the *Chapter-house*, after they had called in and invested the Earl of *Oxford* (then also present to receive his Installation) with his Surcoat and Hood, unto the *Deans* House, where the *Proctor* was lodged, and in the great *Chamber* there, [g] shewed him the *Soveraign's Commission*, and in it the authority for admitting him into the Stall of his Lord and Master: Whereupon the *Proctor* [h] presented them with his *Procuration*, by which he was impowered to take the possession of his Principal's Stall, and further to do and perform all such Ceremonies, as to the *Order* of the *Garter* did appertain, which Instrument was forthwith read before them, by the *Register*. This Ceremony being ended, they all proceeded to the *Chappel*; where entring, they waved their return into the *Chapter-house*, and pass'd directly into the Choire. f Autogr. in Bibl. Hatton. g h

After some time of consultation in the *Chapter-house*, the *Proxie* is sent for in thither by *Garter*, who conducts him to the *Chapter-house* door; and his [i] Reception there by the *Commissioners*, is after the same manner, and with the same circumstances of respect and ceremony, as is used to the *Knight-Elect*, or to his *Proxie*. But whether he ought to enter into the *Chapter-house*, or be admitted any further than the door or Porch thereof, (and to pass thence immediately into the Choire) hath been some question; because the practice seems to have been sometimes one way, and sometimes another. 2. Receiving the Proxie into the Chapter-house. i Collect. W. le N. Cl.

All that we find to prohibite his entrance thereinto, is an expression in the [k] short Ceremonial of Installation of *Strangers* by *Proxie*, entred in the *Black-Book*, where it saith, That the *Mantle* is to be laid on the *Proctor*'s right shoulder in the *Porch* of the *Chapter-house*, [l] *because he is not to enter into it.* k Lib. N. p. 316. l Ibid.

And there are two instances, where the *Mantle* was delivered to the *Proctor* at the *Chapter-house* door, from whence some may infer, that the Practice also of those times was agreeable to the aforesaid direction; namely, that of the *Proctor* of the *French* King [m] *Francis* the First, *an.* 19. *H.* 8. where [n] *Garter* stood at the *Chapter-house* door, with the *Mantle*, and as the *Proceeding* passed by presented it to the two Senior *Knights-Companions* (the Marquess of *Exeter* and Viscount *Lysle*) who placed it upon the *Proctor*'s right arm, and of the *Proctor* to [o] *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, *an.* 1. & 2. *Ph.* & *M.* who entred not into the *Chapter-house*, but had the *Mantle* of his Principal, laid on his arm and spread upon his shoulder at the [p] door. m n Ex Autogr. in Bibl. Hatton. o p Ex Collect. A.V.W.

But these instances (if duly weighed) cannot properly or with advantage, be alledged to prove the assertion, because the affairs relating to both, received dispatch in the *Proctor*'s *Lodging*, a little before, and where the *Proctor* himself was present; which Convocation or meeting of the *Commissioners* and *Proctor*, cannot be called less than a *Chapter* (though not held in the *Chapter-house*) from the Transactions which pass'd therein, namely producing the *Soveraign's Commission*, and the *Proctor*'s *Instrument* of *Deputation*, which were both read before them by the *Register*, and the *Proctor* accordingly admitted, which being finished, nothing referring to the present occasions, required their passing into the *Chapter-house*, or remained to be done till they came into the Choire.

But the general practice runs strong on the contrary side, for we find, that the *Proxie* for [u] *Charles* the Ninth of *France*, *an.* 8. *Eliz.* was met at the *Chapter-house* door, by the Earls of *Sussex* and *Leicester*, who took him [w] in thither between them; where after the *Register* had read as well the *Soveraign's Commission* for Installation, as his [x] *Letters* of *Procuration*, and the *Commissioners* had admitted him *Deputy* for the said King, they all came forth and laid [y] his Principal's Mantle on his right arm and shoulder, the [z] Train whereof was born by the Earl of *Southampton*, assisted by the Lord *Herbert* of *Cardiff*. u w x y z Lib. C. p. 5. & MS. penes W. D. N. f. 25.

Again

[a] *Ex Collect. R. C. Cl. f. 30. sub finem.*

Again it is remembred, *an.* 25. *Eliz.* that *Garter* conducted the *Proxie* of [a] *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*, to the *Chapter-house* door; and at that place the Earl of *Leicester* and Lord *Hunsdon*, received and led him in. So also was *Christian* the Fourth's *Proxie* [c] led in thither, by the Earls of *Nottingham* and *Dorset*; and *an.* 10. *Jac. R.* [d] *Lodowick* Count *Nassau*, *Proctor* to *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, was called into the *Chapter-house* and there [f] left, while the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* proceeded into the Choire: And so in like manner was Sir *George Carteret* Vice-Chamberlain, *Proctor* to *Christian* Prince of *Denmark*, *an.* 15. *Car.* 2. and the *Proctors* to the King of *Sweden* and Duke of *Saxony*, *an.* 23. *Car.* 2.

[c] *MS. fol.*
[d] *Penes E. W. G. fol.*
[f] *151. a.*

Nor are these instances, and the practice in this latter case (in truth) derogatory to the *Statutes*, which though it prohibite the *Proxies* entrance into the *Chapter-house*, yet doth not this Prohibition extend to any time before, but after the Ceremony of Installation is finished; for the Article of the *Statutes* having first directed the delivery of the *Mantle* to the *Proxie*, and next the assumption of his Principals Stall, in these words, *Dictus Procurator installatus*, it immediately subjoins [i] *that from thenceforth* (namely the time of installation) *he shall neither wear the* Mantle, *nor enter into the* Chapter, *nor have any voice there, by virtue of any power granted unto him:* all which are prohibitions, plainly relateing to the future, and after such time as the Ceremonies of Installation are past, and not to any time preceding.

[i] *3. Stat. [illegible] videsis [illegible] Art.* [k] *H. 8. [illegible] Art. 21.*

And it seems the Law hath been thus understood, in regard the greater stream of Practice hath gone along with it; for not only the *Proxies* of *Strangers* (as before is observed) but generally of *Knights-Subjects*, have been called into the *Chapter-house*, and there received the *Mantle* before they proceeded into the Choire.

2 Delivering him the Mantle.

The Ceremony of delivering the *Mantle* to the *Proctor* is performed by the [k] *Soveraign*, his *Deputy*, or the *Commissioners* (*Garter* presenting it to them) and the manner thereof was heretofore, by putting it upon the *Proxies* [l] right arm, * or shoulder, in the name of his Lord and Master, there to hold it until the end of Divine Service.

[k] *Ibid. & loc.*
[l] *Frequent.*
* *Ord. Stat. in Lib. N. Art. 19.*

But as there hath hapned some doubt, touching the entry or not entry of *Proctors* into the *Chapter-house*, before they proceeded to Installation; so likewise here, concerning the receiving of the *Mantle*, *viz.* whether in the *Chapter-house*, or *Stall* allotted to their Principal, of which there are Examples.

That part of the *Article* of the *Statutes* of *Institution* which concerns this point runs thus, *That the* Mantle [m] *tempore Installationis Procuratoris, shall be laid upon his Arms, &c.* but whether this shall be strictly limited to that instant of time, when the *Proctor* is brought to the Stall of his Principal, or with some greater latitude construed, to be during the time of Installation (including the very first action, or beginning of the Ceremony of Installation, namely, the being called to the *Chapter-house* door, and entrance into it) is the question; because there are instances in both, but the latter is more warrantable by the *Statutes* and general practice.

[m] *E 3 Stat. Art. 20.*

The [w] *Article* in King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, being much more large in description, and passing further in setting down the Ceremonies of Installation, than any of the former (the particulars of which, as in the rest, so to this point, we take to be as well placed in a true series and order of action) having mentioned the *Soveraign* (or his *Deputy*'s) laying the *Mantle* on the *Proxies* Arm; it immediately follows (as the very next thing to be performed in course of time) *That afterward he shall be led by two* Knights, *from the* Chapter-house *door, unto the* Stall, *and there being shall make his Oath, and be installed*; but it saith nothing of laying the *Mantle* on the arm of the *Proctor*, now at the instant of installation in the Choire; for that was directed to be done before. It is also recorded in the *Black-Book*, where the order of this Ceremony is more fully and particularly set down, *That* * Garter *shall take the* Mantle *upon his Arms, and deliver it to both the* Knights-Commissioners, *and that they (according to the tenor of the Statutes) shall lay it on the* Proctors *right shoulder, in the Porch of the* Chapter-house.

[w] *21.*
[x] *Lib. N. p. 316*

Besides

Besides which, and the ancient usage of receiving the *Mantle* in the *Chapter-house*, or at the *Chapter-house* door, either before or in the Proceeding to the *Choire*, by the *Proctors* of the *French* King *Francis* the First, of *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, * of *Charles* the Ninth the *French* King, and || *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*; we have likewise the Examples of later times, as that of the *Proctor* for *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. who [y] proceeded into the *Choire* with the *Mantle* upon his arm; and that at the Installation of *Charles* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne*, the [z] 5. of *November*, *an.* 9. *Car.* 1. where the Earl of *Dover* his *Proxie* bare the [a] *Mantle* on his right shoulder into the *Choire*, and *Garter* carried the [b] *Collar* of the *Order*, before him, on a Velvet Cushen.

But there are several modern instances, where the *Mantle* hath been born to the *Choire* (and sometimes the *Collar* of the *Order* with it) not by the *Proctor* but by *Garter* before him, and delivered in his Principal's Stall; as in the Proceeding of the *Proxie* for the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, *an.* 2. *Jac.* when [c] after he had taken the Oath and was led into the Duke's Stall (not before) was the *Robe* laid upon his arm; and so was it done in the following year, at the Installation of [f] *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*.

So also at the Installation of [g] *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, *an.* 10. *Jac.* *Garter* performed the like service for him, and in the very same manner, and after he had taken the Oath appointed, the *Mantle* was laid upon his arm. And lastly, [h] after the *Proxies* of the Duke of *Brunswick* and *Chevereux*, had taken the Oath, not only the *Mantles* but *Collars* were placed on their arms.

Which manner hath so far prevailed, as to be continued in practice since the Restauration of the present *Soveraign*; for at the Installations of the Prince of *Denmark*, *Charles* King of *Sweden*, and Duke of *Saxony*, *Garter* carried the *Mantle* on a Cushen before their *Proctors* into the Choire, nor was it laid on their arms, till they had taken their Oaths, and so laid, that the *Cross* of St. *George* might be conspicuous.

* *Ex Collect. A. V. W.*
|| *Collect. R. C. Cl. f* 30.
y *Lib. R. p.* 40.
z *Ibid. p.* 83.
a } *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
b }
c *MS. penes E. W. G. f.* 145. *b.*
f *Ib. f.* 146. *b.*
g *Et fol.* 151.
h *MS. penes Edw. Faucon-bridge gen.*

SECT. X.

Of the Proceeding *to the* Choire.

BUT let us pass on to the *Proxie*'s proceeding into the *Choire*, concerning which, King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes* direct, (as is remembred a little before upon another point) [d] *That he shall be accompanied and led by two* Knights-Companions *of the* Order, *from the door of the* Chapter-house, *unto the Stall assigned to his Principal*; agreeable to which is that passage in the short Memorial of Installation entred in the *Black-Book*, *That as soon as the two* Knights *have placed the* Mantle *on his arm*, [e] *they shall take him between them, and conduct him to the Stall of his Lord:* and thus assisted have all *Proxies* proceeded to the Choire.

But in relation to the order of the rest of the Proceeding, it will be necessary to exhibit a Scheme or two.

The ordinary *Proceeding* into the *Choire*, the Installation being celebrated when the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant* holds the Feast of St. *George*.

d *Art:* 21.
e *Pag.* 316.

Alms-Knights.
Verger of the *Chappel.*
Prebends of the *Colledge.*
Officers of *Arms.*
Black-Rod. *Register.* *Garter.*
The *Proxie* between two *Knights-Assistants.*
The *Lieutenant* having his Train born.

Collect. W. le N. Cl.

The

The *Proceeding* into the *Choire*, at the Installation (by *Commission*) of *Charles* the Ninth the *French* King, *an.* 8. *Eliz.*

MS. penes W. D.N. fol. 25. *b. vide etiam Collect. A.V.W.*

Gentlemen, attendants on the *Soveraign's Commissioners.*
Gentlemen, attendants upon the *Proctor.*
Verger of the *Chappel.*
Alms-Knights.
Officers of *Arms.*
Black-Rod. *Register.* *Garter.*
Viscount *Mountague* } the two *Junior Commissioners.*
Lord *Clinton.* }
The *Proctor*, between the Earl of *Sussex* and Earl of *Leicester* (the two senior *Commissioners*) his Train being born by the Earl of *Southampton*, assisted by the Lord *Herbert.*

Since the Custom of receiving the *Collar* in the *Chapter-house* was laid aside, if the *Soveraign* (or his *Lieutenant*) was present at an installation of a *Stranger*, so soon as the *Mantle* was delivered to the *Proctor*, or (as of late) that he hath been admitted, according to the purport of his *Deputation*, the *Soveraign* (or his *Lieutenant*) proceeds to the Choire with the *Knights-Companions* present, and leaves the *Proxie* behind him in the *Chapter-house*, and after he and the *Knights Companions* have taken their Stalls, directs two of the *Knights-Companions* to descend; who taking the *Alms-Knights*, *Officers* of *Arms*, and the three inferior *Officers* of the *Order* before them, pass to the *Chapter-house*, and bring thence the *Proxie* to his Installation.

Thus was it done *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. at the Installation of the King of *Sweden*, when [f] *William* Earl of *Penbroke*, and *Philip* Earl of *Montgomery*, proceeded forth of the Choire, and introduced the Earl of *Cleveland*, *Proctor* to the said King: In like manner, the [g] Earls of *Penbroke* and *Arundel* went out to conduct in the Earl of *Dover*, *Proctor* to *Charles* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne.*

*f Lib.R.p.*40. *vide MS. penes Edw. Faucon-bridge gen.*
*g Lib.R.p.*84.

So also were the Duke of *York* and Prince *Rupert* sent out, to introduce Sir *George Carterett Proctor* to the Prince of *Denmark an.* 15. *Car.* 2. and the Earl of *Carlisle Proctor* to the King of *Sweden*, *an.* 23. *Car.* 2. And where there are more than one *Stranger*, at the same time to be installed by *Proxie*, there the two next *senior Knights* pass out, as did the [i] Earls of *Kelly* and *Salisbury*, who brought in Sir *Dudley Carleton*, *Proctor* to the Prince of *Orange*, *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. and the Dukes of *Ormond* and *Buckingham*, the Earl of *Winchelsey*, *Proctor* to the Duke of *Saxony an.* 23. *Car.* 2.

*i Lib.R.p.*40.

In this Proceeding the *Proxie* goes bare-headed, for so did the before mentioned [k] Earl of *Dover*, Sir *George Carterett*, the Earl of *Carlisle*, and the Earl of *Winchelsey.*

k Collect. W. le N. Cl.

SECT. XI.

The Ceremonies *of* Installation.

[a] *Collect. W.* [b] *le N. Cl.*

WHen the *Proceeding* hath entred the *Choire*, and [a] paid the accustomed Reverences, both towards the *Altar* and the *Soveraign's Stall*, and the *Alms-Knights*, *Officers* of *Arms*, and of the *Order*, taken their usual Stations; the two *Commissioners* (*Knights-Assistants* or *Knights-Companions*) and *Proctor* make their Reverences together, and then is he conducted by them into the [b] lower Stalls, directly before the Stall appointed for his Principal, the foresaid *Officers* of the *Order* standing below in the *Choire.*

If

If the Installation pass by more than two *Commissioners*, then the two [g] senior *Knights-Commissioners* bring him to the foresaid lower Stalls, and perform the Ceremonies belonging to his Installation, while the rest of the *Commissioners* at their entrance, take their Station [h] below in the *Choire*, before their proper Stalls, and there stand until the Installation be finished. And the like do the *Lieutenants Assistants*, except the two senior that are employed in the Ceremonies of Installation.

g Collect. W. le N. Cl.
h Ibid.

The *Proxie* thus introduced into the lower Stalls, [o] stands there while the *Register* [p] pronounceth the *Oath* of the *Order* to him, after whom he [q] repeateth the words distinctly; during all which time he [r] layeth his hand upon the New Testament, and lastly kisseth the Book.

Taking the Oath.
o Sedere Deputato non licet. Lib. R. p. 40 circa finem
p Collect. W. le N. Cl.
q Lib. R. p. 41.
r Ex Collect. R. C. Cl. p. 32.

The ancient *Oath*, [t] appointed by the *Statutes* of *Institution*, to be taken by a *Stranger*'s *Proxie*, is short, absolute, and without limitation or exception, and in all points the same with that, which a *Knight-Companion* himself took, at his Personal Installation, *viz.* [t] *Faithfully to observe to the utmost of his power, the* Statutes *of the* Order.

t Art. 24.

But afterwards the *Soveraigns* and *Fellows* of those other *Orders* of *Knighthood*, whereof Kings or Free-Princes are *Soveraigns*, (as the *Golden-Fleece*, *Monsieur St. Michael*, and the *Annunciade*) before their admition into the *Order* of the *Garter*, sued for, and obtained the allowance of some relative exceptions or provisoes, to be added to the foresaid *Oath*; which commonly were such as stood with the *interest* of their *Religion*, their great *state* or *dignity*, or precedent *obligation* to the *Orders* they had before accepted.

There is a Precedent entred in the [a] *Black-Book*, of the *Oath* to be taken by an *Emperor*; whereby he is obliged to [b] promise upon his Royal word, and give his Faith, upon his honor and the holy Evangelists, [c] *That he will faithfully and truly, to the utmost of his power, observe the* Statutes *of this most Noble* Order, *and that particularly in every branch and Article thereof*; [d] *at least so far as they can or ought to be observed by him, and so far as they shall not be contrary or derogatory to those, whereunto he hath before given his name and sworn, and saving all other conditions agreed on.*

a (Pag. 311.
b, c, d Appendix, Num. CXXXVIII.

Besides this, there are also two other Precedents lodged in the [e] *Annals*, the one of the form of the *Oath*, as it is fitted for the *Proctor* of an *Emperor* or a *King*; the other for the *Proctor* of a *Prince*, *Arch-Duke*, and every other inferiour *degree* to a *Knight*, including him also.

e, f, g Pag. 312. Ib. Num. CXXXIX.

By the first of these, the [f] *Proctor* is to oblige himself in the name and behalf of his *Lord*, and with a sincere heart and true faith shall promise and swear, *that his said* Lord *shall well and faithfully fulfil and observe, all and every the* Statutes, Ordinances, *and* Decrees *of this* Order, *according to the force, form, and effect, any way thereunto belonging, saving the conditions before agreed on between him and the Soveraign.* By the second he is [h] also in the name and behalf of his *Lord*, with a real heart and sincere faith, to promise and swear, *That his said* Lord *shall faithfully observe and fulfil the* Statutes, *and every several Branch and Article thereof, according to the force, form, and effect of the same*, [i] *at least so far as the* Soveraign's *Dispensation shall limit and appoint.* But we have not found any of these Precedents made use of, because being rather too general, they have otherwise and more particularly fitted the *Oath* to the present interest and occasion, at least so far, as they could obtain the *Soveraign* to condescend unto.

h, i Ibid. Num. CXL.

And hereupon *Philip* King of *Castile* and *Leon* (*Soveraign* of the *Order* of the *Golden-Fleece*) when he received a Personal Installation at *Windesor*, *an.* 22. *H.* 7. though the *Oath* he took was absolute and without limitation, *viz.* [p] *To observe all the* Statutes *of the* Order *of the* Garter, *according as they were contained in the* Book *then lately sent unto, and accepted by him*; *as faithfully, as if every one of the Articles were then rehearsed unto him, and to fulfil them from Article to Article, as faithfully and readily as he looked for help from God and all his Saints.* Yet nevertheless, soon after he obtained the *Soveraign*'s free and full Dispensation, in these two things only; first, [q] that the use of the *Collar*, and the other *Ensigns* of the *Order*, might be left to his pleasure; and secondly, that he might not be obliged to be present at future *Chapters*.

p Lib. N. p. 184 Append. Num. CXLI.
q Lib. N. loc. cit.

Not long after, some other *Exceptions* were admitted, but such were obtained with very great difficulty, and much debate had between the *Soveraign's Council*, and the *Stranger-Princes Ambassadors*, lest otherwise the dignity and reputation of the *Order* should (instead of being kept up) be lessened; because, where the forbearance or omission of any circumstance, either in the Investiture or Ceremony of Installation, hath been yielded unto, it hath sometimes or other been taken notice of, and brought into Precedent, to the prejudice of the *Order*. Therefore great circumspection ought to be taken, in yielding to the omission of any part of so grand a Ceremony: And the standing upon terms hath not been without good success, since known, that though other Interests (different or contrary to the *Soveraign's*) have sometimes assaulted *Strangers* desirous of this Honor, yet their present necessities of obtaining his Friendship, by receiving this *Order*, have caused them (though with some unwillingness) to accept of this obliging Tye from him.

The Exceptions that were allowed to *Ferdinand* Arch-Duke of *Austria*, when he took the *Oath* at his Investiture at *Noremberg*, the 8. of *December*, *an.* 15. *H.* 8. were these that follow.

t *Append. Num.* CXLIII. [t] *Not to wear the* Garter *and* Collar, *but at some certain times in the year, at his own pleasure.*

That if he were not in place convenient, to go to hear Mass on St. George's *day, he should cause a Priest to say it in his presence.*

Not to be obliged, if busied in weighty Affairs, to wear the Garter, Collar, *or whole* Habit *of the* Order *on St.* George's *day, longer than during Divine Service: Nevertheless he promised, if he could not then wear it, for a whole day together, he would willingly wear it upon some other solemn day, within the compass of the year.*

u *Ibid. Num.* CXLIV. And much to the same purpose is that Proviso, added in the *Oath* of *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, taken the 6. of *November*, *an.* 1. *&* 2. *Ph. & Mar.* viz. [u] *To observe the* Statutes *of the* Order, *so far forth as they might be conveniently observed by him, and were not inconsistent with those things, wherein he had formerly bound himself by Faith and Oath; yet not to be obliged to wear the* Garter *and* Habit *of the* Order, *but when he should see good, and have convenience so to do, and never else.*

Of another nature were the Exceptions which *Francis* the First of *France* procured to be admitted into the *Oath*, taken by *Adrian Tercelin* his *Proctor*, *an.* 19. *H.* 8. viz. [w] *To observe the* Statutes *of the* Order *of the* Garter, *so far as they were consistent with, and not contrary or prejudicial to the* Statutes *of the* Order *of St.* Michael, *and other* Orders, *which his Principal had before taken of other Princes.*

w *Ibid. Num.* CXLV.

And like to this, was the *Oath* of *Charles* the Ninth, adding only an exception of any thing contrary to his royal dignity, which was received from him in the Church of the Colledge of St. *Johns* at *Lyons* in *France*, the 24. of *June* in the morning after Mass, *an.* 5. *Eliz.* namely, [x] *To observe the* Statutes *of the* Garter, *so far forth as they were not contrary or derogatory* (1.) *to his* greatness Royal, (2.) *the* Statutes *of St.* Michael, *nor* (3.) *to any other* Oath, *which he had before taken.*

x *Ibid. Num.* CXLVI.

Neer to these, were the Provisoes allowed in the *Oath* made by *Maximilian* the Emperor at *Vienna*, the 4. of *January an.* 10. *Eliz.* [y] *To observe the* Statutes, *so far forth as they were not contrary or derogatory to his* (1.) Greatness *and* Majesty Imperial, *nor to the* (2.) Statutes *of any other* Order, *nor any* (3.) Oath *which he had before taken.*

y *Ibid. Num.* CXLVII.

But by the *French* King *Henry* the Third, because now our Church was reformed, the Exception of the *Catholick Religion*, was thought of consequence to be gained from the *Soveraign*, and thereupon the Proviso in the *Oath*, which he took in the Chappel of the *Augustins* in *Paris*, *an.* 27. *Eliz.* runs thus, [z] *so far forth as the* Statutes *of the* Order *should not be found contrary* (1.) *to the* Catholick Religion, *his* (2.) Greatness *and* Majesty Royal, *and* (3.) *the* Statutes *and* Ordinances *of the blessed* Holy Ghost, *and St.* Michael.

z *Ibid. Num.* CXLIX.

And this was the form of the *Oath* word for word, which [a] *Henry* the Fourth of *France* took at *Roane*, *an.* 38. *Eliz.* And when *Monsieur de Chastes* came over four

a *Ibid. Num.* CL.

four years after, to be Installed for him, *viz. an.* [b] 42. *Eliz.* his *Oath* then taken, referred to the [c] form of the foresaid *Oath*, which *Henry* the Fourth himself had before made, and upon the Conditions agreed on, between the *Soveraign* and his *Master*.

b *Lib.C.p.*148
c *Appendix, Num.*CLI.

Such like *Exceptions* were allowed, in the *Oath* of *Gustavus Adolphus* and *Charles* Kings of *Sweden*; [d] *To observe the* Articles *of this* Order *in all things, which should not be any way derogatory to the* Religion *by him profest, his* Dignity *and* Majesty Royal, *or contrary to any other* Articles *or* Orders.

d *Ibid. Num.* CXIX. & CXX.

Frederick the Second King of *Denmark* at his reception of the *Habit* of the *Order*, * took in effect the usual *Oath*, and to observe the *Statutes* of the *Order*, || *so that they were not derogatory to those he had before sworn unto, or other conditions whereunto he had been formerly obliged:* And yet I find that his *Proctor*, [e] *an.*25. *Eliz.* obtained a larger latitude both in point of *Religion*, and particular *Interest*, being admitted to take the *Oath* with these reservations, [f] *so far forth as the* Statutes *of the* Order, *concerned the said King, and should be agreeable to the Word of God.* And the same *Oath* was taken by Sir *Philip Sidney*, Proctor to *John* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*; But [h] *Henry Ramel, Proctor* to *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*, *an.* 3. *Jac. R.* took it with the *salvo* of those [i] *Conditions* and *Covenants*, wherein his *Master* had been already pre-ingaged.

* *Lib C.p.*90.
|| *Num.*CLII.
e *Lib.C.p.*89.
f *Append.Num.* CLIII.
h *Lib R.p.*160
i *Append.Num.* CLIV.

But the *Princes* of the *Empire* have allowed them another manner of *Exception*, as appears by that *Oath* of *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg*, *an.* 1. *Jac. R.* viz. [k] *To observe the* Statutes, *so far as they were not inconsistent with the* Constitutions *of the sacred Roman* Empire, *and faith which he owed to the Roman* Emperor *and his* Empire.

k *Ibid. Num.* CLV.

And with a like *Salvo* did *Frederick* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne* (personally installed at *Windesor*, [l] *an.* 10. *Jac. R.*) take this *Oath*, viz. [m] *Salvis sacri Imperii constitutionibus.*

l *Lib.C.p.*178.
m *Mſ. penes E. W.G. f.*151.

But as touching the *Proxies* of such *Strangers*, not *Soveraign Princes* but *Subjects*; the form of their *Oath* is usually framed (by the indulgence and dispensation of the *Soveraign*) with just limitations, not only relative to their obligation to the *Statutes* of any other *Order*, which they had before accepted, or any *Oath* formerly taken, but sometimes to the *fidelity* and *allegiance*, which they owe to their *Soveraign Lord* and *Prince*. And hereupon the Earl of *Newblank's Deputy*, *an.* 25. *H.* 8. was sworn to the observation of the *Statutes*, [n] *so far forth as they were not contradictory to the* Statutes *of the* Order *of St.* Michael, his Principal being one of the Fraternity of that *Order*.

n *MS.*

After the [o] *Oath* hath been administred to a *Strangers Proxie* (with such or the like exceptions before set down) the two *Knights-Commissioners* [p] pass up with him into the higher row of Stalls, and so to that assigned for his Principal; where being arrived, they take the *Mantle* from *Carter*, and lay it upon the *Proctor's* left arm, with the *Scutcheon* of St. *George* uppermost; for so was it ordered to be born, in a *Chapter* held at the Feast of St. *George* the 28. of *May*, *an.* 23. *Car.* 2. and to be a standing Rule for the future; and the *Proxies* to both the King of *Sweden* and Duke of *Saxony* did so observe it the same day, at and after Evening Service.

o *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [H. 2.] *fol.* 8. *b.*
p *Collect.W.le N. Cl.*

The next thing that follows is the act and ceremony of Installation, which is briefly thus; first, the *Commissioners*, who conducted the *Proxie* into the *Choire*, jointly embrace him; next, the *Proxie* makes his [t] double Reverence, and lastly the *Commissioners*, according to the custom of Installations, [u] set him down in his *Principal's Stall*, where he hath used to remain during the time of Divine Service.

t *Ex Collect. A.V.W.*
u *Lib.N.p.*316

But by the foresaid Order in *Chapter* held the 28. of *May*, *an.* 23. *Car.* 2. the *Proxies* are prohibited for [w] sitting in their *Stalls* during the time of Divine Service, but on the contrary directed to stand before them, in the uppermost Row of Stalls ([x] uncovered) holding their *Mantles* on their right arms until it be ended.

w *Ex eod.Lib. Collect. H. de Vic. loco cit.*
x *Lib.R.p.*84.

And thus this great Ceremony of *Installation* with all its Circumstances being finished, the two *Knights* (between whom the *Proxie* proceeded to Installation)

descend into the *Choire*, and stand before their own Stalls, and after a while ascend up into them with usual Reverences, but the senior *Commissioners* first; and then begins the celebration of *Divine Service*.

SECT. XII.

The Proctor's Offring.

THE *Proctor* having now received the possession of his *Principal's Stall*, performs his part in all the following Ceremonies, while he stays in the *Choire*, as if his *Lord* and *Master* were present, until he hath surrendred up his *Mantle*; the chiefest of which is, the *Offring* of *Gold* and *Silver*, and this he doth according to the [a] degree and seniority of his Principal's Stall, in case the Installation be in the morning.

[a] *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [H. 2.] *fol.8.b.*

If the Installation be celebrated when St. *George's* Feast is held by the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*, the *Proxie* ought not to offer, until the *Lieutenant* have first offered for the *Soveraign*. And in case the *Lieutenant's* Stall be higher than the *Stranger's* for whom the *Proctor* is installed, then the *Lieutenant* also offereth for himself before him.

As to the order observed in *Offring* by the *Proctor*, he doth it with all the circumstances of Ceremony, as if his *Lord* were present.

First, when the *Knights-Companions* descend from their Stalls (which Ceremony begins with the junior *Knight*) he also descends in his turn and course, and placeth himself below in the *Choire*, before the Stall of his Principal.

Then in case he have an opposite *Knight-Companion* present, he joins himself unto him, and so proceeds up towards the Altar to the *Offring*, taking the *Officers* of *Arms* before him; but if not, he then proceeds alone without him, having his Train born, and a *Knight-Companion*, or some other great personage, suitable to his degree, attending on his left hand, to give him the *Offring*, with Carpets and Cushens spread to kneel upon at the time of Offring; after whom the [c] rest of the *Knights-Companions* present offer, every one according to the seniority of their Stalls.

[c] *Lib. N. p. 316.*

The *Proctor* to *Francis* the First of *France*, was [d] served in all respects, as if himself had been there present, and at the time of the Offring, [e] Sir *Richard Sands* (who was of greatest quality there present excepting the *Knights-Companions*) gave him his *Offring*, [f] after whom the residue of the *Knights-Companions* offered in their due order.

[d] *Ex Autogr.* [e] *in Bibl.* [f] *Coron.*

Charles the Ninth's *Proctor* proceeded up to the Offring first, (no Feast of St. *George* being then solemnized, and consequently no *Lieutenant* to offer for the *Soveraign*) with the [g] three inferior *Officers* of the *Order* before him; he had his [h] Train carried up, and the [i] Earl of *Sussex* (the principal *Commissioner*) following, delivered him the *Offring*; for whom also a [k] Carpet and Cushen was laid, and assay thereof taken by Mr. *Monk*, Servant to the Earl of *Leicester*, [l] instead of a Gentleman Usher, with the assistance of a Yeoman Usher.

[g] [h] [i] [k] [l] *MS. penes W. D. N. fol.25.b.*

Henry Ramel, Deputy to *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*, was ushered up to the Offring by [m] *Garter*, and the *Black-Rod* ([n] still bearing the Mantle of his Principal on his arm) and having his [o] Train born up by a Gentleman.

[m] *MS penes E. W. G.* [n] [o] *f. 140.b.*

When the *Proxie* hath offered, he returns back to his *Lords Stall*, in the same manner as do the *Knights-Companions*, that is, by the [p] East end of the Stalls (not through the body of the *Choire*) and so along till he arrive at the Stall of his Principal, as did the foresaid [q] *Henry Ramel*.

[p] *Ex Collect. Ne N.Ct.*

[q] *Ex eod MS. penes E. W. G. loco cit.*

Divine Service being finished, and like honor in all respects shewed to the *Proxie*, as would have been done to his *Principal*, had he received a Personal Instal-

Installation; the *Proxie* ought to remain in his Masters Stall, until his next junior *Knight* have left his Stall, and then is he to descend after him, and stand below before his Stall, until his turn come to join himself again to the Proceeding, and so to pass out of the *Choire*.

Where note, that sometimes the *Proctor* hath been received at his coming down from his Lords Stall by the two *Knights-Commissioners*, who installed him; for so were the [r] *Proctors* of *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*, and of *John* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, between [f] whom they also proceeded to the *Chapter-house* door, in the same manner as they were conducted to the *Choire*.

[r] { E. Collect. R. C. Cl. p. 31.

But rather the *Proctor* ought, in this his return, to take the place of his Principal (as he did at the *Offring*, and which in truth is his right) as we find it allowed to the *Proctor* of *Francis* the First of *France*, who went [t] behind alone, in his Principal's place, and followed the *Knights-Commissioners* from the *Choire*, to the place where he lodged.

[t] Ex Autogr. in Bibl. Coton.

In like manner Viscount *Hereford*, *Proxie* to the Duke of *Holstien*, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* who though in his Proceeding to the *Choire*, he went before the *Officers* of *Arms*, yet in his return from Installation, pass'd [u] behind the *Knights-Commissioners*, in the room and place of the Duke, and the Ambassador of *Holstien* followed him, because the said Duke's Stall was higher than any of the *Commissioners*, as may be seen by the following Scheam.

[u] Collect. W. le N. Cl.

Alms-Knights.
Officers of *Arms.*
Garter and *Register.*
Lord *Loughborough* } *Commissioners.*
Lord *Pagit* }
The *Proctor.*
The *Ambassador* of *Holstien*, and
Sir *Henry Pagit.*
Knights and other *Gentlemen.*

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

The like did the *Proxie* for *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, and *Henry* Prince of *Orange*, *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. who as they returned from the *Choire*, [w] held the rooms of their Principals, among the *Knights-Companions* in the Proceeding: So also the *Proctor* to *Charles* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne*, in his [x] return; but was then commanded by the *Soveraign* (present in the Proceeding) to [y] put on his Hat, which he had kept off in all the preceeding parts of the Ceremony.

[w] MS. penes Edw. Faucon-bridge.
[x] Collect. W. le N. Cl.
[y] Lib. R. p. 85.

As the *Proctor* passeth along by the *Chapter-house* door, he hath usually heretofore delivered up his *Mantle* there, and so is it directed in the [z] *Black-Book* of the *Order*; as did the *Proctor* to the *French* King *Francis* the First, *an.* 19. *H.* 8. So also the Duke of *Savoy*'s [b] *Proctor*, *an.* 1. & 2. *Ph.* & *Mar.* And at the same [c] place did the *Verger* receive the *Mantle* from the Duke of *Holstein*'s *Proctor*, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* But of later times when the *Soveraign* hath been present at the Installation, some *Proxies* have been permitted to go along in the *Proceeding* to the *Presence-Chamber*, covered, as were the *Proxie* to [d] *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, to [e] *Charles* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, to [f] *Charles* King of *Sweden* (the Train of whose *Mantle* was born by *Monsieur Leyonberg*, the Swedish *Resident*) and to *John George* Duke of *Saxony*, whose Train likewise was carried up by Mr. *Richard Richaut*, one of the Earl of *Winchelsey*'s Gentlemen.

[z] Pag. 316.
[b] Ex Collect. A V W.
[c] Collect. W. le N. Cl.
[d] MS. penes Edw. Faucon-bridge.
[e] Lib. R. p. 85.
[f] Ex Lib. Collect. pref. Hen. de Vic p. 158.

SECT.

SECT. XIII.

The Dinner.

WHen the *Installation* hath past in the morning, there hath usually been prepared a great *Dinner* at the *Soveraign*'s charge; we shall need here only to mention such particulars as are peculiar to the *Proxie* of a *Stranger*, or different from the Instances set down in our discourse of this particular, in the [c] Personal Installation of a *Knight-Companion*.

[c] *Chap.* 12. *Sect.* 10.

And first, [d] before *Dinner* (if the Installation pass by *Commissioners*) the *Proxie* (representing the State of his *Principal*) shall wash alone, he shall sit at the chief place of the Table, and alone, and shall be served alone; but the other *Knights-Commissioners* shall sit at the end of the Table.

[d] *Lib. N. p.* 316.

Thus was it observed at the Installation of [e] *Ferdinand* Arch-Duke of *Austria*, *an.* 14. *H.* 8. and of [f] *Francis* the *French* King, *an.* 19. *H.* 8. for when the later of these was Installed, the *Dinner* was held at * the *Deans-house*, and his [g] *Proctor* washed alone, and sat down to Dinner in a Chair: nor did any of the [h] *Knights-Commissioners* sit at his Mess. The services were all performed to him in every particular, as [i] though his *Principal* had been present, saving his [k] Cloth of State. The Lord [l] Marquess of *Exceter*, and all the other *Knights-Companions* (having first washed) sat on both sides the same Table, yet beneath the *Proctor*, and in their whole *Habits* of the *Order*.

[e] *Ex lib. vocat. Dalton. p* 105. *b*
[f] *Ibid. p.* 112.
[g] [h] [i] [k] [l] *Ex Autogr. in Bibl. Cotton.*

The *Dinner* was likewise prepared in the *Dean*'s great *Chamber*, at the Installation of *Charles* the Ninth the *French* King, whose *Proctor* was served with Water and a Towel by the [m] Earl of *Southampton*, and Lord *Herbert*; Sir *John Radcliff* performed the Office of [n] Sewer, *Henry Brooks* alias *Cobham* Esq; was [o] *Carver*, and Mr. *Francis Hervy*, Cupbearer.

[m] [n] [o] [p] [q] *MS. penes W. D. N. f.* 26.

This *Proctor* had a [p] Cloth of State allowed him, under which he sat at *Dinner*, the *Mantle* lying by him all the while on a Stool and Cushen; at the [q] Tables end, on the [r] right hand, sat the four *Commissioners* in their Robes, being served [s] apart from the *Proctor*.

[r] [s] *Ex Collect. A. V. W.*

But if the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant* be present, the *Proctor* dines at the same Table with him, and then a little before the second course is brought in, is the *Soveraign*'s *Stile* proclaimed in [t] *Latin*, *French*, and *English* with usual Ceremony: but otherwise, only the Stile of the new Installed *Prince*, and but once.

[t] [u] [w] *MS. penes E. W. G.*

The Stile and Titles of *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark* were proclaimed in [u] *Latin*, and of *Maurice* Prince of *Orange* in [w] *French*.

Dinner being ended, all rise in [x] order and wash; first the [y] *Proxie* alone, and after him the *Knights-Commissioners*; and thence they accompany the *Proctor* to his Chamber, where having left him, they retire to their own Lodgings, and [z] there put off their Habits.

[x] [y] [z] [*] *MS penes W. D. N. fol.* 26.

The *Proctor* to *Charles* the Ninth took the *Mantle* of his *Principal*, on his arm into his Chamber, when he rose from Dinner; and * there delivered it to *Garter*.

So soon as the Solemnity of *Installation* is over, the *Proctor* is to take care, that *Garter* forthwith set up the *Atchievements* of his *Principal* over his Stall, and fix the *Plate* of his *Arms* upon the back thereof; in memorial of the Honor done him, by this Ceremony of Inauguration into the most Noble and most Honorable *Order* of the *Garter*.

And sometimes we find the *Proxie* hath, upon his request, obtained an Instrument under the Sign manual of the *Soveraign*, and Seal of the *Order*, attesting his being conducted to St. *George*'s Chappel at *Windesor*, and placed in, and taken possession of the *Seat* assigned to his *Principal*, in whose name he hath also taken the *Oath*, attested by his subscription, and performed all the Ceremonies in due form as the *Statutes* direct; for so did the ‖ *Sienr de Chastes*, *Proctor* to the *French* King *Henry* the Fourth, *an.* 42. *Eliz.*

‖ *Append. Num.* CLVI.

In

In cloſe of all, let us here remember, that the preſent King of *Sweden*, againſt his late Inſtallation, cauſed both Gold and Silver *Medals* to be made in memory of that Solemnity, and to perpetuate the honor ſo received: Thoſe of *Gold* were beſtowed upon the *Knights-Companions* preſent, and other perſons of quality, and thoſe of *Silver* diſtributed among ſome of the *Officers* attending at the Inſtallation, and others. The *Deviſe* was ſutable to the occaſion, and preſent intereſt of both Kings, as may be obſerved from the Repreſentation here exhibited.

CHAP. XVII.

THE Duties *and* Fees PAYABLE BY THE KNIGHTS COMPANIONS AT THEIR Inſtallations.

SECT. I.

Touching the Fees *due to the* Colledge *of* Windeſor.

SUch was the piety and bounty of our *Anceſtors*, that they thought no work well performed, without being attended with ſome charitable donation, eſpecially if it had relation to the *Church*, whereunto they generally bore a venerable eſteem. Hence was it, at the Inſtallation of this *Order*, ordained,[a] *That every* Knight-Companion *ſhould at his entrance beſtow a certain ſum of money, according to his quality and degree*, That is to ſay, *The*

[a] E. 3. Stat. Art. 22. H. 5. Stat. Art. 22. H. 8. Stat. Art. 24.

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
The *Soveraign* of the *Order*	26	13	4
A *Stranger-King*	20	0	0
The *Prince* of *Wales*	13	6	8
Every *Duke*	10	0	0
Every *Earl*	6	13	4
Every *Baron*	5	0	0
Every *Knight-Batchelor*	3	6	8

What use these sums were employed in, and how distributed, appears by the appointment there set down, *viz.* [b] *Towards the relief of the* Canons *of* Windesor, *the* Alms-Knights, *and augmentation of the* Alms-deeds *there appointed perpetually to be done.* To the end [c] *That every one entring into this* Military Order, *might thereby more worthily obtain the* Name, Title, *and* Priviledge *of one of the* Founders *of the* Order : [d] *It being supposed a worthy and just thing, that whosoever obtained this* Priviledge, *should add some small increment to this* Foundation.

b 3. *Stat.* c *Art.* 22. *H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 22. *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 24.

d *Ord. Stat. in Lib. N. Art.* 21.

Not long after establishing the *Statutes* of *Institution*, the Titles of *Marquess* and *Viscount*, came to be special dignities, for *Robert Vere* Earl of *Oxford*, was the first among us, who as a distinct dignity, received the title of [h] *Marquess*, the first of *December*, *an.* 9. *R.* 2. and *John* Lord *Beaumont* the first here also that had the Title of [i] *Viscount* conferred on him, as a distinct Title of Honor, the 12. of *February*, *an.* 18. *H.* 6. And whereas both these Degrees of Honor, at their Creations, were setled as intermediate, the first between a *Duke* and an *Earl*, for so saith the [k] Roll (where it speaks of the *Marquess* his precedency) the *Marquess* was commanded to sit among the *Peers* in *Parliament*, in a higher place (than his Degree as *Earl* of *Oxford* could justly challenge) *viz.* [l] between *Dukes* and *Earls*; and the *Viscount* between *Earls* and *Barons*, as the said *Viscount Beaumont*, is by his first Patent ranked, to wit, [m] above all *Barons*; and afterwards in another Patent, to render his place more certain and apparent, [n] above all *Viscounts* afterwards made and created, and before and above the Heirs and Sons of *Earls*, and immediately and next to *Earls*, both in all Parliaments, Councils, and other Places.

h *Cart. an.* 9. *R.* 2. *m.* 13.

i *Pat.* 18. *H.* 6. *part* 2. *m.* 21.

k *Rot. Parl.* l *an.* 9. *R.* 2. *m.* 3. *n.* 17.

m *Pat.* 18. *H.* 6. *ut supra.*

n *Pat.* 23. *H.* 6. *part* 2. *m.* 20.

Upon these grounds, and sutable to the ranks of Honor thus setled, were the Fees of Installation to the *Colledge*, from *Knights-Companions* of these Degrees proportioned, for shortly after the precedency so granted and setled to the said *Viscount Beaumont* (his latter Patent bearing date the [o] 12. of *March*, *an.* 23. *H.* 6.) the *Soveraign* with the unanimous consent of the *Knights-Companions*, at the Feast of St. *George* held at *Windesor* the [p] 12. of *May* following, Decreed, [q] *That a* Marquess, *forasmuch as his Degree of Honor was above an* Earl, *and intermediate between him and a* Duke, *should therefore contribute more than an* Earl. Now the sum for an *Earl*, being (as appears above) set at 10 Marks, the *Marquess* was by this Decree, obliged to pay 33 *s.* 4 *d.* more than the *Earl*; viz. *in toto* 8 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.* And for the same reason also, was a *Viscount* enjoined, to give the proportion of 16 *s.* 8 *d.* more than a *Baron*; and so his whole Fee amounted to 5 *l.* 16 *s.* 8 *d.* The *Installation Fees* of these two Degrees, being thus added to the former, were with them confirmed by King *Henry* the Eighth's [r] *Statutes*.

o *Ibid. Pat.*

p *Lib. N p.* 95.

q *Ibid. p.* 97.

r *Art.* 24.

And though in all the Bodies of the *Statutes*, the *Soveraign* of the *Order* is charged with payment of Fees to the Colledge, no less than the rest of the *Knights-Companions*, yet is it to be understood only of those *Soveraigns*, who were not (before the assumption of their Stall) elected into this *Order* : for we see in the case of King *Henry* the Sixth (the first *Soveraign* that had not before his being so, been elected a *Knight-Companion*) there past an order in *Chapter*, [s] *an.* 1. *H.* 6. for payment of his Fees, upon assuming his Stall, according to the appointment of the *Statute*.

s *Lib. N. p.* 75.

The case also of the Lord *Weston* is here observable, who although at the time of his Installation (the 5. of *October*, *an.* 6. *Car.* 1.) he was seated in no higher a rank of Nobility, than the Degree of a *Baron*; yet being then by an honorary

honorary Title *Lord Treasurer* of *England*, did (for the honor of his Office) not only pay as much as an [t] *Earl* ought by the *Statutes*, but in all other customary Fees and Duties bare a proportion to that Dignity.

[t] *Lib.R p.66.*

But the matter of Installation Fees, [w] being by several Petitions represented to the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* in *Chapter*, since the present *Soveraign*'s happy return, was referred to the *standing Committee* of *Knights-Companions*, to make enquiry and take into their examination, all the pretentions and demands thereunto: in relation to which, much time having been spent in a diligent and full examination thereof, through the zealous endeavours, and continual sollicitations of the *Register*, out of respect to his *Successors*, the *Colledge* and *Choire* of *Windesor*, so also of *Garter* on behalf of his *Successors*, the *Officers* of *Arms*, and other the *Soveraign's Officers* and *Servants* claiming Installation Fees, and due consideration had of the reasons and proofs to justifie the same, as also to the reasonablenes and equity of the whole matter: Finally, a *Report* was made the [x] 5. of *March*, *an.* 22. *Car.* 2. by the Duke of *Ormond*, the Earls of *Sandwich* and *Manchester*, whereby such Installation Fees were thought reasonable and requisite to be paid by the *Knights-Companions*, as were contained in an annexed *Schedule*, ascertaining the sums, proportioned according to the Dignities and Degrees of the *Knights-Companions*; which, both [y] *Report* and *Schedule* being afterwards [z] read over and approved by the *Soveraign*, part of it containing the Fees due to the *Dean* and *Canons*, *Choire* and *Alms-Knights* of *Windesor*, the *Register*, *Garter*, *Black-Rod*, and *Officers* of *Arms*, were commanded to be entred upon the *Register* of the *Order*, *in perpetuam rei memoriam*, to prevent all future questions and controversies that might otherwise arise; the other part, wherein was set down the Fees payable to the rest of the *Soveraign's Servants*, was appointed to be only signed in *Garter*'s Bills, with all the other Fees as they became due.

[w] *Lib. Carol. p.48.49.59.66. 67.73. & 74.*
[x] *Ib. p.84.*
[y] *Append. Num. CLVII.*
[z] *Ibid p.87.*

In this Decree the *Installation Fees* made payable to the *Dean* and *Canons* are these,

	l.	s.	d.		l.	s.	d.
[a] A *Stranger-King*	20	00	00	An *Earl*	06	13	04
A *Stranger-Prince*	10	00	00	A *Viscount*	05	16	08
The *Prince* of *Wales*	20	00	00	A *Baron*.	05	00	00
A *Duke*	10	00	00	A *Knight-Batchellor*	03	06	08
A *Marquess*.	08	06	08				

[a] *Ex ipso Autogr.*

These *Fees* ought to be paid [b] at the time of the *Knights Installation*, whether Personal or by Proxie, so also for a *Stranger*; and as to the practice, it hath been thus; [c] to pay them by the hands of some one of the *Knights-Companions* Servants, so soon as the Ceremonies of Installation were ended; and in truth, that which quickned their eare herein, was the strict injunction repeated in all the Bodies of the [d] *Statutes*, which do expresly prohibit the setting up of their Atchievements, till payment be made.

[b] *E.3. Stat. H.5. Art.22 H. 8. Stat. Art.24.*
[c] *See before, p. 367.*
[d] *Vide etiam Lib. Carol. p. 81.*

That anciently the *Alms-Knights* shared in the Fees paid to the *Colledge*, is manifest from the *Statutes* of *Institution*, the use for which they were given, being therein exprest to be [e] towards relief of the *Alms-Knights*, no less than the *Canons*, and so say the [f] succeeding bodies of the *Statutes*. Howbeit, since their re-establishment by Queen *Elizabeth* upon a new Constitution, they have received Installation Fees apart from those paid to the *Colledge*, which by the foresaid Establishment of Installation Fees, *an.* 22. *Car.* 2. are made [g] equal and alike to those thereby payable to the *Dean* and *Canons*.

Alms-Knights.

[e] *E. 3. Stat. Art.22.*
[f] *H. 5. Stat. Art.22. H.8. Stat. Art.24.*
[g] *Ex ipso Autogr.*

The *Choire* of *Windesor*, under which not only the *Vicars*, but the *Vergers*, *Choristers*, *Sextons*, and *Bell-Ringers*, are comprehended, reap some benefit by the Installation of a *Knight*, and have in all times been thought deserving of Fees among others, who performed service at these Solemnities: Hereupon were they taken into the Establishment made, *an.* 22. *Car.* 2. which has setled on them these following Fees, *viz.*

Choire, &c.

h *Ex ipso Autogr.*

	l.	s.	d.		l.	s.	d.
[h] A *Stranger-King*	16	00	00	An *Earl*	05	10	00
A *Stranger-Prince*	08	10	00	A *Viscount*	04	00	00
A *Prince* of *Wales*	16	00	00	A *Baron*	04	00	00
A *Duke*	08	10	00	A *Knight-Batchellor*	03	00	00
A *Marquess*	06	15	00				

SECT. II.

Fees *due to the* Register, Garter, Black-Rod, *and* Officers *of* Arms.

Register.

IN the rank of those *Officers* to whom Installation Fees are due, stands first the *Register*, who by the *Constitutions* of his *Office*, is to have of every *Knight-Companion* [i] 13 *s.* 4 *d.* in money, and a Robe.

i *Lib. N. p.* 235.

After that Doctor *Matthew Wren* had enjoyed this Office for some few years, and supposing himself defrauded by the concealment of part of his Fees, he petitioned the *Soveraign*, that the Fee anciently due to his place, might be restored and setled, with the allowance of a Robe, or composition for it from the new installed *Knight*; the grounds of which address were set forth in the following Petition.

To the King's most sacred Majesty, Soveraign *of the most Noble Order of the* Garter.

The humble Petition of Matthew Wren, *Register of the said* Order.

Sheweth,

Autogr. penes Doct. Chr. Wren nuper Ordinis Regist.

THat at his first entry into this Office, the Black-Book (*wherein the chiefest Records of the* Order *are*) *being in the custody of Sir* William Segar *then* Garter, *he was forced to receive from him the Instructions which concerned his place: And whereas at the Installation of any* Knight, *the said Sir* William Segar *did use to make a Bill of such Fees as were to be paid, wherein of later years, he would set down for the* Register *but half as much as for himself, upon whose authority the* Register *for a while rested, and knowing no other had no more; Copies of which Bills are privately transmitted from one Lords Officer to another.*

But since the Black-Book *was by the honorable Chapter remanded to the Registers custody, upon survey of the Records, and view of the* Statutes (*in the Book by him lately exhibited to your* Soveraign *Majesty*) *the rule for the* Registers Fee *in more express Text, than for any* Officer *else, appears; That as oft as any* Knight *chosen into the* Order, *is installed, the* Register *shall have of him thirteen shillings and four pence, and a* Robe. [Statut. de Officialibus Ordinis, cap. 6.]

He therefore most humbly beseecheth, on the behalf of his place, that, according to every Lords Oath, not wittingly to break the content of any Statute, *this* Statute *may be without question observed, and the* Robe *be allowed him; and that Sir* John Burrowes, *now* Garter, *may have order to reform this Error, with such of the* Companions *or their* Officers, *as have not yet paid the* Register *an Installation Fee.*

But in case that any Lord, *shall rather chuse to compound with the* Register *for the said* Robe, *That it may now please your sacred Majesty, for the avoiding of all exception to the said* Register, *to set down a proportion meet to be demanded for the same by him; who both in the order of his place is before Mr.* Garter, *and in the proportion of his Annual Fee from your* Soveraign *Majesty above him.*

At

At the Court at Greenewich, *the 6. of* May 1634.

It is his Majesty's pleasure, that all Fees *due to the* Officers *of the* Order, *by the Institution, shall be precisely paid; and that this particular of the* Register *shall be satisfied, according to the words of the Institution, and not according to the custom lately used, of which Mr.* Garter *is to give notice, as there shall be occasion.*

Fr. Crane, Canc.

But it seems that nothing was done in his time, upon the *Soveraign*'s Answer to this *Petition*, besides its entry into the[k] *Red-Book*; and thereupon afterwards, when his Brother Doctor *Christopher Wren* had succeeded him in the *Register*'s place, and the *Robe* assigned him out of the *Soveraign*'s *Wardrobe* at his entrance into his *Office*, being of the value of[p] 28 *l.* 1 *s.* 0 *d.* according to this valuation of his *Robe*, a[q] like value was proposed (by way of Composition) upon the *Knights-Companions Batchellors* (the lowest Degree among the *Knights* of the *Order*) to be paid him in lieu of the said *Robe*, supposing they could not give him less: and from hence was raised the[r] proportions, for each several Degree of honor, upon those who should be admitted into this most Noble *Order*, thus

k *Pag.* 98.

p q r *Ex Collect. prænd. Dr. Chr. Wren.*

		s.	*d.*		*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
Inprimis for a	*Knight-Batchellor*	13	04	and	28	00	00
Item for a	*Baron*	13	04	and	30	00	00
	Viscount	13	04		32	00	00
	Earl	13	04		34	00	00
	Marquess	13	04		36	00	00
	Duke	13	04		38	00	00
	Prince	13	04		40	00	00

Afterwards, taking occasion from the Instalment of the present *Soveraign* then Prince, *an.* 14. *Car.* 1. the Dean desired the *Deputy-Chancellor*, to know the *Soveraign*'s pleasure once again, and to[t] represent, that the *Registers Fees* were anciently 13 *s.* 4 *d.* in money, and the *Robe* in kind; and seeing that the *Soveraign* was pleased to allow encrease of Fees, to the other *Officers* of the *Order*, particularly to *Garter* King of Arms 40 *l.* at the Installation of the said *Prince*, and every other Officer in proportion; and that it stood both with the honor of the *Prince*, to give as honorable a Fee, as any *Prince Stranger*, at his Installation, and also with the Dignity of the *Registers* place, to expect no less than others, that were not above him in rank; that it would therefore please the *Soveraign*, to think the *Register* worthy to make the like Plea.

t u *Palm. large Journal, p.* 23. & 24.

Thus much the *Deputy-Chancellor* represented to the *Soveraign* at *Greenewich*, sometime after the Prince's Installation, and thereupon the *Soveraign* was graciously pleased, to think it most reasonable, on the *Register*'s behalf, and Ordered,[u] that at every Installation of a *Prince*, the *Register* should receive for his *Fee* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* and 40 *l.* in lieu of his *Robe*; and that Prince *Charles* (then newly installed) should pay him the said sums, which was accordingly done; and the same were since setled on this Officer by the Establishment of Installation Fees, made[w] *an.* 22. *Car.* 2. to be thenceforth paid, not only by the Prince of *Wales*, but for the Installation of[x] a *Stranger-King*; whereto is added for a[y] *Stranger-Prince* 38 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* But those thereby made due from *Knights-Subjects* of other Degrees, are the same as were proposed by Doctor *Christopher Wren*, mentioned a little above.

w x *Ex ipso Autogr.* y *Ibid.*

Next to the *Register* doth *Garter* claim both *Droits* and *Fees*, for his service and attendance at this Solemnity, who in reference to its preparations, and employment at the time, hath a greater share of business than any other Officer

Garter.

of the *Order*: As to the first of these, it was Ordained by the *Constitutions* of his *Office*, [a] *That as often as any Knight should happen to be Installed, he might challenge for himself the Garments worn by him, immediately before his Investiture with the Surcoat of the Order.* And the constant practice hath interpreted this, to be the *Knight's upper Garment*, anciently a short Gown, of later times a Cloak, but now a Coat; which he puts off in the *Chapter-house*, when the Investiture begins.

a Lib.N.p.236.

When *Garter* had received the Gown of *Philip* King of *Castile*, immediately before his Investiture with the Robes of the *Order*, *an.* 22. *H.* 7. he came before the *Soveraign*, and [b] humbly besought him to give thanks to the King, who, for his sake, had bestowed it on him, which the *Soveraign* accordingly did.

b MS veter penes W.le N. Cl. f 295.

Heretofore, when *Garter* had received the *Knight's Gown*, he immediately put it on, and wore it during the whole Ceremony of Installation, and therefore the Gown of *Henry* Duke of *York*, second Son to King *Henry* the Seventh, [d] though he was very young when installed, was made large enough for *Garter*'s use. But because this short *Gown* hath been so long out of fashion, as to be well nigh forgotten, we shall therefore mention several of the kind, wherein their description will appear remarkable enough, both for their materials, and the then fashionable Trimmings.

d MS.fol.penes Jo. Vincent, p. 151.

King *Henry* the Seventh's Gown, at his assumption of the *Soveraign*'s Stall, was made of [e] Black Velvet, and lined with Cloth of Gold, full of red Roses. Prince *Arthur* wore a Gown of [f] Crimson Velvet, lined with Black Velvet, when he proceeded to his Installation. And the Gown made for the forefaid *Henry* Duke of *York*, was of [g] Crimson Velvet, lined with Black Sattin.

e (Ex ampla f) Codice MS. g) penes pref. Jo. Vincent p. 151.

In the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, the materials of some of the *Knights* Gowns, were as followeth.

The Lord *Dudley*'s, of [i] Tinsel Sattin Violet, lined with Black Sarcenet. The Lord *Howard*'s, of [k] Tawney Velvet, furr'd with Leopards. The Lord *La Ware*'s, of [l] Tawney Velvet, lined with Black Bogye. The Earl of *Devonshire*'s, of [m] Cloth of Silver, lined with Cloth of Gold. The Viscount *Lysle*'s, of [n] Black Velvet, furr'd with Black Bogye. The Lord *Fitz Walter*'s, of [o] Black Damask, and double Black Velvet. *Henry Fitz Roy* Duke of *Richmond*, of [p] Black Sattin, with Buttons and Aglets of Gold on his Sleeves, and furr'd with Sables. The Earl of *Arundel*'s, of Tawney Velvet, lined with Black double Sarcenet. The Earl of *Westmerland*'s of [q] Black Velvet, lined with Sattin, with Aglets of Gold. The Earl of *Oxford*'s, of [r] Black Sattin, lined with Jennets. The Lord *Russell*'s, of [s] Black Velvet, lined with Black Sattin. The Coat of King *Philip* (installed *an.* 1. & 2. *Ph. & Mar.*) was [t] embroidered on Velvet, with Gold-Wire, of Goldsmiths work, and lined with White Taffaty: His Gown was made of [u] Purple Velvet, garnished with the same, and twisted Silver Lace laid on the Gard; his other Coat of Velvet embroidered with Silver, lined with White.

i (Ex eod. MS. k p. 157. l
m Ibid. p. 158.
n o p q Ibid. pag. 159.
Ibid. p. 160.
s MS. in Offic. Arm. [L. 1.] f. 19.
t u w x MS. penes pref. G. O. T. p. 132.

This kind of upper Garment or Gown continued also in fashion, a great part of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, for we likewise find, that the Earl of *Leicester*'s Gown was made of [w] Velvet, garded with four gards of the same, and thereon 38 pair of Aglets. The Lord *Burghley*'s of [x] Taffaty, with three gards of Velvet, and three dozen of great Buttons of Gold. The Lord *Buckhurst*'s of [y] Velvet, with a broad embroidery gard, and Buttons of Gold. The Lord *Shandos* [z] of Sattin, with a broidered gard of Velvet, and two dozen of Gold Buttons. The Earl of *Worcester*'s, of [a] Velvet lined with double Sarcenet, with a paceman Lace about it. The Duke of *Norfolk*'s of [b] Black Sattin, furr'd with Squirrels, faced with Sables, with-------pair of Aglets. The Earl of *Bedford*'s such another Gown, but had a Silver Lace about it. The Lord *Hunsdon*'s of Sattin, furr'd with Luzarts, and garded with----------The Earl of *Warwick*'s of Russet Sattin, embroidered all over with Russet Lace, and furr'd with Cony. The Duke of *Northumberland*'s, was a loose Velvet Gown, furr'd with Pavilion, and had a falling Cape.

y z a b Ibid.

But at length, the fashion of this *upper Garment* began to alter, and by that time *John Casimire*, Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, was received into the *Order*, it

it was converted to a *Cloak*, for ſuch was his upper Garment (and of Velvet) faced and furr'd with Sables, and two Gold Laces garded thereon, cut, with Buttons and Gold Lace, where the Sleeves were wont to be. And ever ſince, till of late, hath the Cloak been moſt in faſhion, for an upper Garment, but very much varied, both as to materials, lining, and ornament.

Sometimes *Garter* had not this Garment in kind, but received a *Fine* in lieu thereof; and this by vertue of a Decree made in *Chapter*, *an.* 25. *H.* 6. wherein it was ordained, [c] to be at the pleaſure of every *Knight-Companion*, at the time of his Inſtallation, whether *Garter* ſhould have the Garment which each *Knight* did then wear, or a compoſition in money according to his Eſtate.

c *Regiſt. Chart. f.* 25. *b.*

Since when the Compoſitions grew higher, as this upper Garment was made richer; for [d] *Algernon* Earl of *Northumberland* beſtowed on *Garter* upon this occaſion for *Fees* and *Droits* [e] 200 *l.* in Gold, and *Henry* Earl of *Danby*, the Habit he wore on the day he rode from *London* towards his Inſtallation, with * 100 *l.* in the Pockets, and by the late *Soveraign*'s order, at the Inſtallation of his Son *Prince Charles* our now *Soveraign*, *Garter* received for his Fee [f] 40 *l.* and for the compoſition of his upper Garment 60 *l.* in the whole 100 *l.* The like ſum was given the preſent *Garter*, by the Dukes of *Ormond* and *Albemarle*, and the Earls of *Sandwich*, *Lindſey*, and *Mancheſter*, ſhortly after their Inſtallations, by particular agreement; but herein his Fee for ſignification of their ſeveral Elections was included.

d *Ex Collect.* e *E. W. G.* * f *Ibid.*

Finally, by the Eſtabliſhment of Inſtallation Fees, *an.* 22. *Car.* 2. the compoſition ſet upon each *Knight-Companion*, for his upper Garment, was thus rated, proportionably leſs than what was paid for the ſaid *Prince*, *an.* 14. *Car.* 1. viz.

	l.	*s.*	*d.*		*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
[g] A *Prince* of *Wales*	60	00	00	A *Viſcount*	40	00	00
A *Duke*	55	00	00	A *Baron*	35	00	00
A *Marqueſs*	50	00	00	A *Knight-Batchellor*	30	00	00
An *Earl*	45	00	00				

g *Ex ipſo Autogr.*

Beſides this Droit or Compoſition, there hath in all times been paid to *Garter*, by every *Knight-Companion* a *Fee* for his *Inſtallation*, proportioned alſo to his ſtate and dignity, which was likewiſe brought to the following certainty by the ſaid late Eſtabliſhment.

	l.	*s.*	*d.*		*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
[h] A *Stranger-King*	30	00	00	An *Earl*	25	00	00
A *Stranger-Prince*	20	00	00	A *Viſcount*	20	00	00
A *Prince* of *Wales*	40	00	00	A *Baron*	15	00	00
A *Duke*	35	00	00	A *Knight-Batchellor*	10	00	00
A *Marqueſs*	30	00	00				

h *Ibid.*

The Fee anciently due to the *Black-Rod* at the Inſtallation of a *Knight*, like all other Fees, hath in ſucceeding times received augmentation; for the Fee paid him at the Inſtallation of *Prince Charles an.* 14. *Car.* 1. was 40 *l.* and by the foreſaid Eſtabliſhment *an.* 22. *Car.* 2. he hath allowed him

Black-Rod.

		l.	*s.*	*d.*		*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
From a [k]	*Stranger-King*	20	00	00	*Earl*	16	00	00
	Stranger-Prince	20	00	00	*Viſcount*	14	00	00
	Prince of *Wales*	40	00	00	*Baron*	12	00	00
	Duke	20	00	00	*Knight-Batchellor*	10	00	00
	Marqueſs	18	00	00				

k *Ex ipſo Autogr.*

Officers of Arms.

As Fees were in all times paid to the *Regiſter*, *Garter*, and *Black-Rod* for their particular ſervices, at the Feaſts of Inſtallation, ſo likewiſe have the *Officers of Arms* accuſtomably received *Fees*, in reward of their attendance and ſervice at thoſe Solemnities; which having been encreaſed by the bounty of the Givers, were by the ſaid late Eſtabliſhment (purſuant to the Fees, paid them for the Inſtallation of the now *Soveraign* when Prince) brought to the * ſame thereby allowed the *Black-Rod*, only in the Fee of a *Stranger-King*, they have an addition of 10*l.* more, his Fee to them being 30*l.*

* *Ex ipſo Autogr.*

Beſides theſe Inſtallation Fees, when the Elect-Knights rode publickly from *London* to *Windeſor*, to their Inſtallations, they were accuſtomed to beſtow upon the Officers of Arms, that attended them thither, Scarfs, Hats, and Feathers, as did the Earls of *Danby* and *Moreton*, *an.* 10. *Car.* 1. *viz.* to [1] each of them 9 Ells of rich Taffaty, and a black Beaver Hat and Feather. And the Earl of *Northampton*, upon the like occaſion, *an.* 5. *Car.* 1. allowed [m] 35*l.* to the ſeven Officers of Arms, that attended him to *Windeſor*, in lieu of Taffaty Scarfs of his Lordſhips Colours, and Beaver Hats, and gave each of them beſides, Feathers worth 20*s.* a piece. Laſtly, at the Inſtallation of *Charles* Prince of *Wales*, *an.* 14. *Car.* 1. there was given to the 13 Officers of Arms, for the like allowance 10*l.* a piece, in all [n] 130*l.*

[1] *Ex lib. Part. in Offic. Armor.* [3] *f.* 155. *b.* [m] *Ib. f.* 70. *b.*

[n] *Ex Autogr. penes E.W.G.*

SECT. III.

Fees *belonging to other of the* Soveraign's Servants.

TO theſe forenamed Officers, we have ſeen added in the Liſts of *Inſtallation Fees* of former times, ſome other here ſet down, who gave their attendance at theſe Solemnities, with the ſeveral ſums received: ſome were then accounted *Fees*, and other run under the Title of *Benevolences*; all which nevertheleſs were admitted into the Liſt of *Inſtallation Fees* eſtabliſhed, *an.* 22. *Car.* 2. and though not entred in the *Regiſter* of the *Order*, yet are to be given in, under the hand of *Garter*, with the other Fees payable at Inſtallations, and to be paid by every *Knight*, to all perſons concerned reſpectively, according to ancient cuſtom.

Ex ipſo Autogr.

Viz.	The *Prince*			A *Duke*			A *Marqueſs*			An *Earl*			A *Viſcount*			A *Baron*			A *Knight-Batchelor*		
	l.	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
To the Wardrobe	06	00	00	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00	01	15	00	01	10	00	01	05	00
To the Trumpets	12	00	00	06	00	00	05	00	00	04	00	00	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00
To the Serjeant Trumpeter	02	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
To the Muſicians 4 Companies.	16	00	00	08	00	00	07	00	00	06	00	00	05	00	00	04	00	00	03	00	00
Knight Harbenger	03	06	08	03	06	08	03	06	08	03	06	08	03	06	08	03	06	08	03	06	08
Drums and Fifes	04	00	00	02	00	00	01	15	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
To the Porters	06	00	00	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00	02	00	00	01	10	00	01	00	00
Maſter Cook	03	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Serjeant Porter	06	00	00	03	00	00	02	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Veſtry	02	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Yeomen Harbengers	06	00	00	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00	02	00	00	01	10	00	01	00	00
Uſhers of the Hall	02	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Grooms of the Chamber	03	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Yeomen Uſhers	06	13	04	03	06	08	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00	01	10	00	01	00	00
Quarter Waiters	08	16	00	04	08	04	03	16	08	03	06	08	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00
Sewers	08	00	00	04	08	04	03	16	08	03	06	08	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00
Buttery	03	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Pantry	03	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Cellar	03	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00

SECT.

SECT. IV.

Fees *payable for* Strangers.

AND becauſe it was thought unfit (the dignity of the *Order* conſidered) that on the one ſide *Strangers* ſhould be liable to the demand of Fees, and on the other, that charitable diſpoſals ſhould be defeated; proviſion was made in the [a] *Statutes* of *Inſtitution*, by obliging the *Soveraign* to pay the reſpective Fees, for every *Stranger* that ſhould be Elected, at the time of his Inſtallation, either Perſonally or by his Proctor. And the firſt example purſuant thereto (that we have met with) is an Order made in *Chapter* at *Windeſor*, *an.* 1. *H.* 6. which appointed, [b] *That the uſual* Fees *due for the* Inſtallation *of the King of* Denmark, *ſhould be diſcharged by the* Soveraign, *as the* Statutes *did enjoin.*

[a] *Art.* 22. *vide etiam H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 22. *& H Stat. Art.* 24.

[b] *Lib.N. p.*75.

To which purpoſe, in after times have *Privy Seals* accuſtomably iſſued forth, directed to the *Lord Treaſurer* for the time being, to pay the *Fees* due for *Strangers Inſtallations*, unto the *Regiſter* of the *Order* (and ſometimes to *him* and *Garter*) out of the *Soveraign*'s Exchequer; but thoſe due to the *Alms-Knights*, ſince their Eſtabliſhment by Queen *Elizabeth*, were paid to themſelves by particular *Privy Seals.*

And thus were the foreſaid *Fees* paid out of the *Exchequer*, as they became due, until the late *Soveraign* King *Charles* the Firſt, did by *Letters Patent*, bearing date the 23. day of *June*, in the 13. year of his Reign, ſettle an annual Penſion of [c] 1200 *l.* unto and upon the *Order*; and by a [d] *Commiſſion* dated the 3. day of *May* the following year, was the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, and his Succeſſors impowered to pay out of the ſame, not only the ordinary, but alſo extraordinary Charges of the *Order*, wherein the Fees for Inſtallation of *Strangers* are included.

[c] *Lib.R.p.*121

[d] *Rowe's Journal, p.* 40.

But notwithſtanding which, yet did [f] Sir *Henry de Vic* the late *Chancellor* make ſome ſcruple to pay the Fees due to the *Colledge*, upon the Inſtallation of *Strangers*, ſince the happy return of the preſent *Soveraign*; whereupon it occaſioned the [h] *Dean*, *Canons*, *Choire*, and *Alms-Knights*, as alſo the *Regiſter*, *Garter*, and *Black-Rod*, to petition the Soveraign at the Feaſt of St. *George*, *an.* 15. *Car.* 2. for the continuance of ſome rights, and payment of their *Fees*, which being [i] referr'd to three or more of the *Knights-Companions* of the *Order*, upon full examination of the matter, they made the following Report.

[f] *Ex Collect. E. W. G.*

[h] *Lib.Carol. P.* 48.

[i] *Ib. p.* 49.

At the Court *at* Whitehall, *the* 16. *of* May 1663.

WHereas your Majeſty, Soveraign *of the moſt Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *in a* Chapter *held in the Caſtle of* Windeſor, *the* 23. *of* April *paſt*, *where were preſent divers* Companions *of the ſaid moſt Noble* Order, *was graciouſly pleaſed to receive a Petition, humbly preſented in the name of the* Dean, Canons, Chaplains, Choire, *and* Poor-Knights, *belonging to your Majeſty's Free Chappel of St.* George *in* Windeſor, *wherein they, in all humility, deſired to have ſome* Rights *and* Fees (*which are contained in a* Schedule *thereunto annexed*) *to be continued unto them; which Petition, your Majeſty was then graciouſly pleaſed, to refer unto any three or more* Companions *of the ſaid moſt Noble* Order, *to conſider of, and examine the particulars, and accordingly to make Report unto your Majeſty, what they conceive proper to be done thereupon: And in like manner the ſaid* Lords Referrees *upon a Petition delivered the* 24. *of* April, *were to conſider, examine, and report the humble deſires of the* Regiſter, Garter *Principal King of Arms, and the Gentleman-Uſher of the* Black-Rod, *Officers of the* Order *in relation to the Fees demanded by them from your Majeſty, for the Inſtallation of all* Princes, *and other* Strangers,

Ex Collect. E. W. G. vide etiam Lib. Carol. p. 49, 50. *&c.*

Maximilian King of the *Romans* gave them	u	100 Guildings.
The King of *Portugal*	w	30 Crowns.
Philip King of *Castile*	x	100 Crowns.
Francis the *French* King	y	60 Crowns.
King *Philip* of *Spain*	z	38 *l.* 7 *s.* 0 *d.*
Emanuel Duke of *Savoy*	a	10 *l.* 0 *s.* 0 *d.*
Adolph Duke of *Holstien*	b	25 Crowns.
Charles the Ninth of *France*	c	30 Crowns.
Francis Duke of *Montmorency*	d	40 Crowns.
Frederick Prince *Palatine*	e	13 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

u, w, x *Ex MS. vetust. pergam. penes Jo. Vincent. gen.*
y *Ex lib. Partition. in Offic. Armor.* [1] *fol.* 19.
z *Ibid. f.* 169.
a *Ib. f.* 172.
b *Ib. f.* 229.
c *Ib. f.* 272.
d *Ib. f.* 314.
e *Ex lib. Partit.* [2.] *fol.* 177. *b.*

And not only to *Garter* and *Officers* of *Arms*, but likewise to several others, did the *Proctors* bestow Gratuities, as doth appear from what *Monsieur de Tercelin* Proctor to *Francis* the First of *France*, gave *an.* 19. *H.* 8.

f To *Garter* for his Gown	60	Crowns.
To the *Black-Rod*	6	
Officers of *Arms*	60	
Gentlemen-Ushers, *Guard*, and other of the *Chamber*	20	
Master of the *Houshold*, and other *Officers* of the *Houshold*	30	
The two *Sextons*	2	
Choristers	3	
Vicars and *Clarks*	6	
Vergers of the *Colledge*	8	Nobles

f *Ex Collect. pref. W. le N. Cl.*

Besides it is evident from a Bill of particulars, which Prince *Henry* of *Nassau* (Brother to *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*) paid to Sir *William Seagar*, that the *Alms-Knights*, *Trumpets*, *Drums*, *Fifes*, and *Musicians*, received *Gratuities* also upon the foresaid account.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

OF THE Grand Feast OF THE Order.

SECT. I.

The Grand Feast, *appointed to be annually celebrated on St.* George's day.

AT the *Institution* of this most Noble *Order*, it was Ordained, That its high and solemn Festival (commonly called St. *George's Feast*) should be annually celebrated on the [a] 23. day of *April*, or Saint *George's day*, in honor of that *Saint* made choice of for its peculiar *Patron*.

[a] E. 3. H. 5. Stat. Art. 9. H. 8. Stat. Art. 8.

And it is very observable, that the *Founders* of several other *Military Orders* (whose *Institutions* bear later date than this of the *Garter*) fetled also the *Anniversary* of their *Festivals* upon the *Feast-day* of their *Patrons*. Thus *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*, upon his erection of the *Order* of the *Golden Fleece*, making choice of St. *Andrew* for its Patron, ordained the *Grand Festival* to be kept on St. [b] *Andrew's day*. The like did *Lewis* the Eleventh of *France*, in appointing [c] *Michaelmas day* for holding the *Feast* of the *Order* of St. *Michael*. So also the Solemnities of the Duke of *Savoy's Order* of the *Annunciade*, are annually held upon our [d] *Lady-day* in *Lent*. And the *Festival* of the Duke of *Burbons Order* of *Knights* of our *Lady*, on the day of the [e] *Conception* of our *Lady*, being the 8. of *December*; in which kind more instances might be produced, were it needful.

[b] *Ordinances du tresnoble Ordre de la Toison d'Or Art.* 22.
[c] *Stat. de l'Ordre de Monsr. St. Michael Art.* 32.
[d] *Heylin's Geogr. Lib.* 1. *p.* 138.
[e] *Andr. Favin in le Theat. d'Honneur, lib.* 3.

Since then the *Founders* of *Knightly Orders*, have generally appointed the celebration of their Solemnities, on the days set apart by the *Church*, for commemoration of those particular *Saints*, whom they had pitched upon for *Patrons*; it will not be besides our subject to enquire, upon what grounds those days were advanced into *Festivals* for the honoring such *Saints*.

The *Church* saith [f] *Durand*, celebrates the *Feasts* of *Saints* for several causes; first by way of return of thanks to them for keeping a continual Feast for us, forasmuch as there is joy among the Angels and holy Souls, in regard of one penitent sinner. Secondly, because in honoring them, we are highly concerned our selves, their cause of Festivity being indeed ours; for charity makes all things common. A third reason he will have to be, that we may the better engage them to intercede for us. Fourthly, in imitation of them, since by their examples, we are the better incited to imitate their virtues. Fifthly, for confirmation and advancement of our hopes, seeing mortal men, like our selves, advanced to that height of glory; whereupon we have the less cause to despair of the like, since the hand of the Lord is no way shortned. Sixthly, for the honor of the Divine Majesty; because in them we honor and exalt God himself, who sanctified and glorified them. Seventhly, that upon the contemplation of their beauty and felicity, men may be weaned from their sins, and learn to contemn worldly things. But the eighth and principal for our present purpose is, because the keeping of the *Anniversary* Feasts of *Saints*, brings their actions and examples the better to our memory, for our profit and edification; not that they stand in need of our Prayers, being themselves perfectly happy, but that we should give thanks and honor to God for them.

[f] *Divin. Offic. Lib.7.c.1.nu.1. Edit. Lugd. 1612.*

Nor hath it been the practice only of later Ages, but even of the primitive *Christians* also, to make *Anniversary Commemorations* of deceased *Martyrs*, as appears from *Rodolph Hospinian*, who saith, [g] *That the ancient* Christians, *as they had an affectionate care and respect to the* Saints *and* Martyrs, *while they were yet in the flesh, so neither were they unmindful of them after their decease; for on those days, whereon, by suffring Martyrdom, they were deprived of this life, they meeting at their Sepulchres, celebrated their memorials: and this they did not only once, but every year, namely, as often as that day came about, whereon they suffred.*

[g] *Hospin. de Origine Festorum Christianorum, cap.3. fol.9.a.*

But to resume the prosecution of our present discourse; the next thing to be considered, is the *Day* whereon the *Patron* of this most Noble *Order* suffered Martyrdom, and which was thereupon designed to be his *Anniversary Festival.*

SECT. II.

The Anniversary *of St.* George *fixed by the Church unto the* 23. *of* April.

THat the 23. day of *April* was the day whereon St. *George* suffred Martyrdom, by beheading, appears from the *Greek Hexamiter* before his Commemoration, among other Testimonies given us in that most elaborate Work, the [h] *Titles of Honor*. Therefore on that very day, both the *Greek* and *Latine Church*, from ancient time, appointed and observed the *Natalis Sancti Georgii Martyris*, in commemoration of the *Passion* of that famous and victorious *Martyr*; as may be seen in the ancientest *Martyrologies*, remembred both by our learned [i] *Selden* and Doctor [k] *Heylin*.

[h] *Pag.755.*

[i] *Tit. of Hon. p.809.*
[k] *Hist of St. George, part 2. c.5. sect.3. vide Bed. in Martyrolog.*

And on this day also was the *Natalis* of St. *George* observed by our Predecessors the *Saxons*, as appears by the old *Saxon Martyrologie* (remaining now in [l] *Benet Colledge* in *Cambridge*) whence may be also collected the estimation Saint *George* had gained, even in the *Saxon* times.

[l] *Tit. Honor, p.812.*

But that we may the better understand the acception of this word *Natalis* and *Natalitium*, in the matter of Martyrology, *Durand* tells us, *That* [m] Natalis *or* Natalitium, *is said to be the departure of* Saints *out of this life, as being then born to God, and a state of Glory, by a* Nativity *tending to eternal life.* By which it plainly appears, that in the *Saints Calender*, the day of their *Martyrdom* or *death*, hath

[m] *Rationale lib.7 c.1.n.18.*

hath been accounted their true *Natalis*, their *Nativity* or *Birth-day*, rather than that generally so accounted; namely, the time of their first coming into the world. And with this the forecited *Hospinian* agrees, affirming, [n] *That the* Christians *of the primitive* Church, *appointed not the days of Martyrs* Nativities *to be celebrated as the* Ethnicks *used, but those of their* death *or* suffring. To which effect he cites St. *Ambrose*, and a little after adds, that those days, whereon *Martyrs* resolutely underwent death for *Christ's* sake, they used to call their *Genethlia*, their *Natalia* or *Natalitia*, by the testimony of *Origen* and *Tertullian*.

n *Cap.3 f.9.*

And this kind of second birth, is also known by several other names, as *Festum transitus*, so called [o] *Because their souls departing from their bodies, pass through divers and unknown places, through the aiery, ætherial, and christalline Heaven, that at length they may come to the empyreal.* It is called also *Obitus*, [p] *Because then the Angels come to meet the Soul.* Sometimes it is termed *Passio, because then the soul and body suffer most, as being violently separated one from the other.*

o } *Durandus,*
p } *loco citato.*

The *transitus* of the blessed Virgin *Mary* is called her *Assumption*. *Deposition*, is properly belonging to St. *John* the Evangelist, who entred alive into the place of Sepulture, and as it were deposited himself. *Obdormition* is the refreshment, of the Saints after sleep, *because Saints in their glorified bodies, rise as it were newly awakened out of sleep.* By all these several Names are the *Festivals* of the *Saints* celebrated, which plainly denote, the day of the *second Birth* or going out of the world, and not of the *first* or coming into the world.

And it is further observable, that the *Church*, among the many *Saints*, who have days appointed for their Commemoration, does not celebrate the *Nativities* of any, but our blessed *Saviour*, and St. *John* the Baptist: whereto those of the *Romish* perswasion have added that of the blessed Virgin *Mary*.

SECT. III.

St. George's *day made* Festum duplex.

After that the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, had given encrease of honors to this their *Patron's Festival*, our *Church* began to take a greater regard to his *day*, because he was also esteemed amongst us, the *Patron* of our Nation, and therefore bestowed an [q] addition of honor thereupon.

q *Titles of Hon. p.* 814.

For whereas it had anciently been accounted, only *minus duplex*, or, *inferius duplex* (as beside the Testimonies, both of our learned *Selden* and others, may also be deduced from the interdiction of the *minora servilia opera* upon this Saints day, by a Synod held at *Oxford*, in the year of our Lord 1222. cited by [r] *Hospinian*) it was petitioned in a Convocation, held under Archbishop *Arundel*, *an.* 1. *H.* 4. [s] that it might be observed and solemnized *sicut cæteræ Nationis suorum Patronorum facta colunt*; which though it took no effect, yet after at the [t] instance of King *Henry* the Fifth, this day was (in the [u] 3. year of his Reign) made [w] *Festum duplex, ad modum majoris duplicis*, by a *Canon* of the Convocation, of the Province of *Canterbury*: And so we find it noted to be observed, a long time after, in the *Kalender*, set before the *Horæ beatissimæ Virginis Mariæ, secundum usum Sarum*, Printed at *Paris*, by *Francis Regnault*, *anno Domini* 1526. But this is found so noted, only in some of the *Missals* used here in *England*, for in the *Roman Breviary* and *Missal*, it appears to be but *Semiduplex*.

r *De Orig. Fest. Christ. C.* 4. *f.* 17: *a.*
s *MS. in Offic. principal. Cantuar. vocat. Arundel. part.* 1. *f.* 53. *b. Art.*27.
t Constitutionem hanc edidit Hen. Chicheley ad excitationem Regis Henrici Angliæ quinti, in partes Normanniæ transitum. *Linwode in Glossa verbo ineffabilis Provincialis, Lib.*2. *C Ineffabilis de Feriis.*
u *Selden's Titles of Honor. p.* 814.
w *MS. in Offic. Principal. Cantuar. vocat. Chicheley, part.* 2. *f.* 2.

Now the better to explain, the above-mentioned distinction of *Festa majora duplicia, & minora duplicia, Durand*, as being very particular in this point, may fitly be consulted herein, who saith, [x] *Quædam festa dicuntur in totum duplicia,*

x *Ration. Divi Offic. lib.*7. *c.*1. *num.*31. *vide etiam Gavant. Comment. in Rubricas Brev. Roman, Sect.*3. *c.*2. 3. *&* 4.

duplicia, quædam simpliciter duplicia, quædam semiduplicia, &c. Some *Feasts* are said to be *totally double*, some *simply double*, some *half double*: The *totally* or *greater double* are so called, because in them the *Responsories*, as well the greater as the shorter, as also the *Verses* are sung by two, and because the *Antiphones*, both at *Mattins* and *Vespers* are doubled: of this sort, are the *Feasts* of the Nativity of our *Lord*, of St. *Stephen*, of St. *John* the Evangelist, *Epiphany*, *Purification*, *&c.* The *lesser double Feasts* are the second and third *Feriæ* before the Octaves of *Easter* and *Penticost*, the Commemoration of St. *Paul*, and in brief every Feast which is ordained to be celebrated double in all Churches, whereas the greater double Feasts are kept in some particular Churches only. The *half double Feasts* are such wherein the *Responsories* are sung by two, but neither are they begun by two, nor are the *Antiphones* sung double, yet the *Verses* and short *Responsories* are said, and these are the Feasts of St. *Andrew*, *Nicholas*, *Lucie*, *Thomas* the Apostle, *&c.*

And the reason of this variety observed in the celebration of these *Feasts*, is for that as St. *Paul* saith, [y] *One Star differs from another in glory*; so according to the degrees of merit (saith the same [z] *Durand*) their praise is so much the more or less celebrated in these Feasts.

y 1 Cor. cap. 15. ver. 21.
z Loco jam citato.

This division of *Durand* appears to be the same in effect, with that taken notice of by our learned *Selden*; where [a] *Majora duplicia*, answers to *Durandus* his *duplicia in totum*, the *Minora*, to the *simpliciter duplicia*, and the *Inferiora* to the *Semiduplicia*; only herein *Selden* notes this difference, that the grand and high Feasts of all, as *Christmas*, *Easter*, and *Penticost*, *&c.* are not comprehended under the notion of *Majora Duplicia*, but by the title of *Principaliora*. And as for the Festival of our particular Patron St. *George*, however after-Custom had slackned that due honor which was decreed unto it, by the above mentioned *Canon*; yet how great a veneration it was thought worthy of, plainly appears, both by that part of the said *Canon*, wherein it is Decreed to be one of the *Festa majora duplicia*, and also by the reasons given at large for it, in the Preamble thereof, which are these. [b] *Upon consideration therefore of this appointment, proceeding from the favourable and bountiful mercy of our God and Saviour, the faithful of the* English *Nation, although at all times obliged to worship God in all his Saints, yet as is testified by the general vote of the World, and the experience of grace given from above, the best interpreter of all things, are they more particularly bound to extol him with high acclamations, to sound forth his praises, and to give him veneration and special honors, in the person of his most glorious Martyr Saint* George, *as* Patron *and* Protector *of the said* Nation, *since by his intercession, as we verily believe, not only the* Military Power *of the* English *Nation, is strengthened, and made capable of repelling all hostile incursions, in the time of War, but also our* Spiritual Militia, *the flourishing estate of our* Clergy, *is under the tutelage of so great a* Patron *manifestly fortified in the prosperity of a holy and peaceful estate.*

a Tit. H. n. p. 816.

b MS. in Offic. Principal. Cantuar vocat. Chicheley part. 2 f. 2. & f. 114. vide etiam Concil. Spelmann Tom. 2. p. 669.

To this may be added, the division of Feasts into *Generalia*, which are called *Solemnitates*, and *Particularia*, which are peculiar to one Church only, one Parish or one Bishoprick, and also into *Mobilia*, such as are not limited to one certain day of the Month, as *Easter-day*, *Whitsunday*, *&c.* and *Fixa*, such as constantly fall upon a certain day of the Month, as *Christmas-day*, *Lady-day*, and several others: which, as falling into this subject of *Feasts*, we thought fit to mention out of the before mentioned [c] *Hospinian*, rather for satisfaction to the curious, than as necessarily relating to the present discourse.

c De Orig. Fest. Christian. c. 5. f. 19. a.

SECT.

SECT. IV.

The Place for celebrating the Grand Feast, *assigned to* Windesor Castle.

AND as King *Edward* the Third, *Founder* of this most Noble *Order*, had fixed the day of its *Feast*, to that of the *Passion* (or, according to the *Church* phrase, the *Nativity*) of his *Patron*; so as to the place, wherein to perform its Solemnities, he made choice of that of his own Nativity, the Castle of [d] *Windesor*, and appointed the observation of this *Grand Festival*, in a solemn manner, and with due Ceremonies to be celebrated there, which for a long time after was inviolably observed, either upon the very day by the *Church* made sacred to St. *George*, or else upon some other appointed by *Prorogation*, not long after: for which way of Prorogation, allowance was given by the [e] *Statutes* of the *Order*, and of which the *Registers* are full of instances.

d H. 8. *Stat. Art.* 8. *Froissard, l.* 1. *c.* 100. *Polid. Virgil. Angl. Hist. l.* 19. *p.* 378.
e E. 3. } *Stat.* H. 5. } *Art.* 9. H. 8. *Stat. Art.* 4.

SECT. V.

St. George's day *kept apart from the* Grand Feast, *and how then observed.*

HOW this Noble *Order* spread its roots and flourished, from its first plantation to the time of King *Henry* the Fifth, we can give no account, since the *Annals* thereof are wanting unto his Reign; certain it is, that then it was of a considerable growth; but afterwards, the Civil Wars, towards the end of King *Henry* the Sixth's Reign, caused it to stand at a stay. Under the benevolent aspect of King *Edward* the Fourth, it seemed to recover; and whilst King *Henry* the Eighth reigned, to have attained a greater height than at any time before.

But though the several Branches of the *Order* received some augmentation, from the favourable influence of this last mentioned *Soveraign*, yet the principal, to wit, the *Grand Festival*, began to flag, by a removal of the observation of St. *George*'s day from *Windesor* (the place particularly appointed for it) and a prorogatory celebration of the *Grand Feast* to other times. By which means, the honor of that princely Seat, and the advantages accrewing by the performance of the Solemnities there, were diverted to those other places, whereto the observation of St. *George*'s day was translated. The *Article* of the *Statutes* causing this great alteration, and which clashed so much with the design of the first Institutor, may be seen in the [f] *Appendix*, where it is manifest, that when the *Soveraign* saw occasion, to prorogue the celebration of the *Grand Feast*, he might legally do it; but when he did so, 'tis there also evident, that the day of St. *George*, was nevertheless ordained to be duly observed, singly by it self, in what place soever the *Soveraign* (if within this Realm) should then reside; *Windesor* hereby being not excluded.

f See Henry the Eighth's Statutes, *Art.* 4.

It further implies the sacred *Rites* and *Offices* to be performed, with sundry other concerns of the *Order*, for besides the particulars therein innumerated, we may observe thence this general clause, that what other urgent Affair soever (relating to the *Order*) should offer it self to be performed, the same might be treated of, and receive dispatches in the *Chapter* held, where the *Soveraign* then should be, as fully as if he were at *Windesor Castle*.

So

So that hence forward, all things began to be ordered, both on the *Eve*, the *Day* of St. *George*, and the *Morrow* after, with full as great state, all Affairs as legally dispatched, and all Ceremonies as magnificently performed (except that of *Offring* up of *Atchievements*, which is peculiar and local to the *Chappel* of St. *George* in *Windsor Castle*) as could be observed, at the *Grand Festival* it self.

And how (by virtue of this *Article*) and with what Ceremonies St. *George*'s day was held, when the *Grand Feast* was prorogued to some further time, is evident, from a full and ample Precedent (*an.* 22. *H.* 8.) now remaining in the *Office* of *Arms*.

h } *Lib. N.*
i } *p.* 258.

For albeit the *Soveraign*, with [h] thirteen *Knights-Companions*, were at *Windesor*, upon the 22. 23. and 24. of *April* that year, yet did they at that time observe only the Feast day of St. *George* (with the *Eve* and *Morrow* after) but deferred (by [i] Order in *Chapter*) the celebration of the *Grand Feast*, unto the 8. day of *May* ensuing; the Memorial whereof follows.

k *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [M. 17.] *fol.* 32.
l *Ibid.*

[k] The King went not to the Chapter before the first Evensong, but immediatelly to his Stall (viz. in the Chappel of the [l] Soveraign's Lodgings in the Upper Ward of the Castle of Windesor, not in the Chappel Royal of St. George) The Bishop of London Lord Cutberde Tunstall elect of Duresme did the Divine Service, and at Magnificat he and the Dean first tensed the Altar, and after the King; both the high Altar and the Altar which was made before the King, were richly garnished with Images and other garnishments of Gold, and Silver, and Gilt, &c. The Evensong the King returned to his----------and his Grace, and the Knights of the Order were served of the void, &c. And on the Morn at 9. of the Clock----------to be at Matyns, which was done above the Ordinary, the King ordained in the honor of St. George, a right noble Procession, whereat was 35 Copes of rich Cloth of Gold; after the Procession the King went immediately to his Stall, and High Mass, and offered as accustomed, That done; Dinner, and 4 of the greatest Estates sat at the Kings boards end. And the residue sat all along at the two Tables all on the one side, as accustomed, and before Evensong the King went to his Closet to the Chapter, and appointed the Duke of Suffolk to be his Lieutenant at the Feast, which was appointed to be kept the eight day of May then ensuing, accompanied with the Earl of Rutland, the Lord Sandys Lord Chamberlain, Sir William Fitz Williams.

Memorandum, That the low Evensongs that were said before the King, were of St. George. Also the first low Mass in the morning sung by the Lord George Grey of Dorset; two other Masses of the day, of the which Lord John Longland Bishop of Lincolne sang the third Mass, the fourth low Mass was of Recordare, and was appointed that the high Mass done, the Mass of Requiem should begin.

Thus here we have (1.) The attendance of the *Knights-Companions* upon the *Soveraign*. (2.) The *Chapter*, which accustomably was held on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, implied, by observing, that the *Soveraign* went not unto it. (3.) The *Ceremonies* at the first *Vespers*. (4.) The *Morning Service* on St. *George*'s day. (5.) The *Grand Procession*. (6.) The *Solemn Offring*. (7.) The *Grand Dinner*. (8.) The *Chapter* held before the second *Vespers*. (9.) The day for celebrating the *Grand Festival* appointed. And (10.) The *Mass* of *Requiem*, on the morrow after St. *George*'s day celebrated.

SECT.

SECT. VI.

The Grand Feast *neglected by King* Edward *the Sixth.*

BUT King *Edward* the Sixth assuming the Soveraignty of this Noble *Order*, the days became more gloomy, in as much as during his Reign, there was no *Anniversary* of St. *George* kept at *Windesor*, by a *Grand Festival*. Under what churlish Fate this noble place then suffered, we cannot guess, other than the common calamity of that Age, wherein most Ceremonies, solemn or splendid, either (chiefly such as related to Divine Services) came under the suspicion of being superstitious, if not idolatrous. Insomuch as at a *Chapter* held at *Greenewich*, upon the [m] 22. day of *April*, in the second year of his Reign (an abolition being intended of all such Ceremonies, as were not consonant to the *King's Injunctions* then lately prescribed) it was Ordained and Decreed, that [n] then and for ever from thenceforth (at the *Feast* of this most Noble *Order*) no other *Ceremonies* should be observed, than such as were appointed in the following *Letter*. Which was at that *Chapter* agreed upon, and a little before the next years Feast day of St. *George*, sent from the *Lords* of the *Council* to the *Knights-Companions*, attributing the whole procedure, to the great piety of the then *Soveraign*, and the care he took, that certain abuses and preposterous Ceremonies of the *Church*, should be reformed: Whereby the Solemnity, State and magnificence of this *Grand Festival* was very much eclipsed.

m MS. fol.
n pen. Rob. Com. Alisb. p. 24. b.

[o] *After our most hearty commendations; For as much as the* Kings Highness *hath appointed a most godly Reformation of divers abuses and rites in the* Church, *to a more convenient and decent Order, of the which some hath been used heretofore, in the most honorable and amicable* Order *of the* Garter, *and being not reformed, there should make a disagreeing from his Majesty's most godly proceedings. Therefore it is his Majesty's will and pleasure, by the advice of us the* Lord Protector, *and other his Highness* Council, *that all such things, as be not conformable and agreeing to his Majesty's* Injunctions, Orders, *or* Reformations, *now of late prescribed, should be also in that most Noble* Order *and the* Ceremonies *thereof left undone, and reformed as hereafter followeth. First, that no* Procession *be made with going about the Church or Church-yard, but the* Kings Majesty's Procession, *lately set forth in* English *to be used. His* Majesty *and other* Knights *of that honorable* Order *sitting in their Stalls, at the entry such Reverence to be made to the King's Majesty only as was heretofore. The* Offring *to be in the Box for the Poor, without any other Reverence or kissing of any Paten or other thing, but only at the return due Reverence to the King's Majesty as was used before. The* Mass *of* Requiem *to be left undone, but yet both upon St.* George's *day, and the next day a* Mass *to be sung with great Reverence; in the which immediately after the words of Consecration is said, the Priest shall say the* Pater Noster, *and so turn and communicate all, or so many of the* Order *or other, after they have done, as shall be disposed godly at the same time to receive the* Communion, *according to such order as is prescribed in his Highness Book of Communion, and without any other Rite or Ceremony after the said Communion to be used, except it be some godly Psalm or Hymn to be sung in English, and so to end the said Service. All* Chapters *and other Rites concerning the said* Order, *not being contrary to these, to remain as they have been prescribed and used, the which we have thought good to signifie unto you, that you may follow the same accordingly. From* Greenewich *the* 20. *of* April 1548.

o MS. 4. penes E. W. G.

This *Decree* we observe, signified not less than a Prohibition to the holding the *Grand Feast* at *Windesor* (although it spoke not so plain) at least the neglect of its celebration there, whilst King *Edward* the Sixth lived, makes it to

seem so. And albeit towards the end of this *Soveraign*'s Reign, some care was or seemed taken, for a permissive holding of the said *Feast*, either upon the day of St. *George*, or some other day appointed by *Prorogation*, yet was it without any regard had to the ancient and usual place, the Castle of *Windesor*. For when the[p] *Act* of *Parliament* passed, commanding the days therein mentioned to be kept holy, and none other (whereby the celebration of many days besides, which in former time, by the *Canons* of our *Church* appointed to be kept holy, were prohibited, and among the rest the *Feast day* of St. *George*, it being not found among those Feast days at that time established) It was considered, That a Proviso and allowance should be entred in the aforesaid *Act*, for the celebration of this *Feast*, particularly by the *Knights-Companions* of this most Noble *Order*, in these words.

p 5 & 6. Ed. 6. ca. 3.

> Provided always, and be it enacted by the Authority aforesaid, that it shall be lawful to the Knights of the right honorable Order of the Garter, and to every of them, to keep and celebrate solemnly the Feast of their Order, commonly called St. George's Feast, yearly from henceforth the 22. 23. and 24. Days of April, and at such other time and times, as yearly shall be thought convenient, by the Kings Highness his Heirs and Successors, and the said Knights of the said honorable Order, or any of them, now being, or hereafter to be, any thing in this Act heretofore mentioned to the contrary notwithstanding.

Which Act, although it suffred a [q] Repeal by Queen *Mary*, yet stands it at this day in force, being [r] revived by King *James*, his repealing of that *Statute* of the first of Queen *Mary*, *Cap.* 2.

q An. 1. Mar. cap. 2.
r An. 1. Jac. R. cap. 25.

SECT. VII.

Removed from Windesor *by Queen* Elizabeth.

BUT that which gave the greatest and almost fatal blow, to the growing Honor of this no less famous than ancient Castle of *Windesor*, and severed the *Patrons Festival* from the Place, was a Decree made at a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall*, upon St. *George*'s day *an.* 9. *Eliz.* with the consent of the *Knights-Companions* then present, being 12 in number (namely, the Earls of *Arundel* and *Penbroke*, the Lord *Clinton*, Marquess of *Northampton*, Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*, Earl of *Sussex*, Lord *Loughborow*, Viscount *Mountague*, Earls of *Leicester*, *Northumberland*, *Warwick*, and Lord *Hunsdon*) to the effect following.

[t] *That if on the Vigil and day of St.* George, *the* Feast *were not held at* Windesor *according to the usual Custom, it should nevertheless be sufficient, if the observation thereof were kept in the same place, where the* Soveraign *should then happen to be, where also all the rest of the* Knights-Companions *were obliged to be present, no less than if the* Feast *had been to be celebrated at* Windesor. And henceforward the glory which *Windesor Castle* had alone posseft for some Ages, began to be distributed to other places, nay, so severe was the later part of this *Decree*, to the interest of so flourishing a place, that it welnigh extended to a prohibition of all other Celebrations there, since it also commanded, [u] *That no other* Solemnity *under the notion of St.* George's Feast, *should thenceforth be celebrated at* Windesor, *except upon occasion of the* Installation *of some illustrious personage, and then also, not without the leave and appointment of the* Soveraign.

t Lib. C. p. 54.
u Ibid.

And to say truth, this *Statute* was but too strictly observed, all the remainder of her Reign; for we meet not with one *Feast* of St. *George*, held simply and peculiarly

peculiarly as a *Feast* in honor of the *Order*'s Patron at *Windesor* (unless you mistakingly account any of the *Feasts* of *Installation* for those of St. *George*, which for the most part were held at the charge and expence of the *Knights Installed*) until the first year of King *James*: But then the *Soveraign* (as yet in *Scotland*) taking notice that the [w] day of the Celebration of the Feast of St. *George* approched, and his Affairs hindring him from the observation of the just day, because he could not be so soon present, at any of his Houses of Residence, where the same was meet to be kept, he therefore thought good to defer the Celebration thereof for a time, until he could conveniently honor the same with his own presence. To that purpose, by *Commission* dated the [x] 5. of *April* in the first year of his Reign, he appointed *Charles* * Earl of *Nottingham* his *Lieutenant*, for the Proroguing thereof unto the 3. day of *July* next ensuing, Declaring also, that on that day he intended to [a] keep the said *Feast* and Ceremonies personally at *Windesor*.

w MS. quart. x penes W. le N. Cl.

* Lib. C. p. a 147. vide etiam MS. pen. E. W. G. f. 12.

This [b] *Commission* being read (upon the *Knights-Companions* assembling at *Whitehall*, on St. *George*'s [c] Eve following) they forthwith proceeded to *Vespers*, which being finished, all the *Knights-Companions* present went up to the *Closet*, and there Decreed, [d] *That the foresaid* Festival *should be celebrated upon the day, which the* Soveraign *had appointed.*

b Lib. C. c p. 147.

d Ibid.

And the *Soveraign* arriving at *Windesor* the [e] 25. day of *June* following, shortly after constituted the said Earl of *Nottingham* his *Lieutenant*, by *Commission* bearing date the second day of *July* following, thereby impowering him to perform the Ceremonies of the *Feast* (which it seems himself could not personally observe as was intended, though then in the Castle) on the 2. 3. and 4. days of the said Month, upon which days it was with all pomp and state solemnized.

e Ibid. p. 150.

And thus after a long interval did the honor of the *Feast* then return, which had this effect (towards the end of the same *Soveraign*'s Reign, and in that of his Son and Successor King *Charles* the First) that it begat a re-union of the *Feast* and *Place*; whereby that ancient Fabrick, famous for the *Institution* of this most Noble *Order*, retrived the honor of having its Solemnities celebrated within its Walls.

SECT. VIII.

Of Prorogation *of the* Grand Feast.

HAving thus noted, that from the beginning of King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign, until of late years, the *Grand Feast* was seldom observed upon the precise day of St. *George*; and that the occasion how both *day* and *Feast*, came to be celebrated apart, took its rise from the indulgence of the *Statutes*, in point of *Prorogation:* we shall further observe, that this *Prorogation* is of two sorts, either absolute, as being enjoined by the *Statutes* of the *Order*, or else arbitrary at the *Soveraign*'s pleasure, when for some reason he saw just occasion therefore.

Prorogation by Statute.

To the first of these it is said, [f] *If the Feast day of St.* George *shall happen within* 15 *days next after* Easter *day, it shall be* [g] *prorogued to the Sunday fortnight or* 15. *day next after* Easter *day*, and the reason of this is there set down, *viz.* [h] *That every of the* Knights-Companions *might have the opportunity of coming thereunto, without being constrained to ride upon any of those three holy days, immediately following* Easter *day*. The same rule for Prorogation, where there is a concurrence of these two Feasts, is likewise enjoined in the *Statutes* of King *Henry* the Fifth, and King *Henry* the Eighth.

f E. 3. Stat. g Art. 9. h

And we observe, that when the *Grand Feast* (in this case of *Easter*) hath been kept before the expiration of the said 15 days, the *Knights-Companions* then absent (to avoid the penances incurr'd for their non-attendance) have laid

hold of this following excuse, [i] *That the ancient* Statutes *of the* Order *were violated, in keeping the* Feast *within fifteen days after* Easter; and this was so alledged, when Sir [k] *John Denham* (then also Lord Treasurer) held, as *President*, the *Feast* of St. *George* at *Windesor*, the [l] 24. of *April*, *an.* 8. *H.* 7.

Anciently, where the *Register* mentions the *Grand Feast* to be held at *Windesor*, beyond the day of St. *George*, we find upon Calculation, that *Easter* day (in those years) fell too near the 23. of *April*, to celebrate the Festival on, without breaking the Law, which was the real cause of those *Prorogations:* As for instance in the [m] 13. [n] 24. and [o] 35. of King *Henry* the Sixth, when *Easter* day fell upon the 17. of *April*, and consequently St. *George*'s day within the following week. In like manner in the [p] 29. and [q] 32. of the said King's Reign, *Easter* day hapned yet neerer to St. *George*'s day, in the one upon the 25. and in the other upon the 21. of *April*. And in all of these cases, care was taken to Prorogue the celebration of the *Grand Feast*, until some further day in the Month of *May*, immediately following, as from the before cited places doth appear.

Again *an.* 11. *H.* 8. [r] *Quia festa dies Divi* Georgii Paschatis *in vigilia contigit, because the* Feast day *of St.* George *hapned upon* Easter Eve, *therefore the* Soveraign *summoned a Chapter to be held*, upon the [s] *Thursday* before *Easter* day at *Richmond*, where it was then held; and although there is nothing spoken, as to the Prorogation of the *Feast*, or when it was to be celebrated, yet doubtless something there was to this purpose then enacted, in pursuance of the foresaid *Statute*; else, why should it there be noted with the word *quia*, if it were not out of respect to the Feast of *Easter*, and that thereupon the said *Chapter* was then called.

To this place may be referred a *Commission* of *Lieutenancy*, made to *Thomas* Earl of *Arundel*, for holding the *Grand Feast* at *Windesor*, upon the [t] 24. of *May*, *an.* 21. *H.* 7. (the *Soveraign* keeping the day of St. *George* that year at *Cambridge*) the Prorogation being grounded upon the falling of St. *George*'s day, within the excepted 15 days of *Easter*, as appears by the then *Soveraign's Letters* of notice to the said *Lieutenant*; which for the antiquity thereof, as that it is a testimony of the punctual observance of the *Statutes*, we have inserted in the [u] *Appendix*.

And as the *Knights-Companions* had prohibitions put upon the solemnization of their *Feast*, in case of its interfering with *Easter*; so had the Church of *England* in their observation of the day of St. *George*. For by the *Ordinall* of the Church of *Salisbury*, published *an.* 1508. it appears to have been the usage of that *Church*, that when the Feast day of St. *George* fell upon *Easter day* or *Easter Eve*, the celebration thereof was then deferred to the 9. day or some other day of *May*, as the case required in their Ecclesiastical Discipline: And our learned *Selden* observes it noted in the end of an old *Manuscript Ordinal* of the Province of *York*, [w] That when St. *George*'s day hapned to fall upon *Easter Eve*, the celebration was anticipated, and cast into the 8. or 9. day preceding, or into the 16. or 17. days of *April*.

Hereunto may we subjoin, that in the Solemnities of the *Order*, there hath sometimes been an omission (in part or in all) of the *Service* and *Office* appointed by the *Church* to be used upon the day of St. *George*, when it hapned near to *Easter*, as it was *an.* 22. *H.* 8. St. *George*'s day falling upon [x] *Saturday* in *Easter-week* (the *Soveraign* then at *Windesor* celebrating the [y] day there, though the *Grand Feast* was prorogued to the 8. of *May* following) wherefore the [z] *Service* of the Feast of *Easter* and not of St. *George*, was celebrated on the *Vigil* (in the [a] *Chappel* above, in the upper Quadrangle next St. *George*'s *Hall*, not in the *Colledge*) but the *low Evensongs* said before the *Soveraign*, were of St. *George*.

In like manner [b] *an.* 38. *H.* 8. *Good Friday* falling upon the 23. of *April* (the day used to be kept sacred to St. *George*) the *Service* together with the *Ceremonies* wont to be performed to the honor of *God*, and in memory of St. *George*, were prorogued to *Sunday* the [c] 3. of *May*, being *Low-Sunday*, and the [d] Service of the day took place.

So reverend a regard was anciently had for the *Feasts* appointed by the *Church*

i *Lib. N.* p. 171.
k } *Ibid.* pag.
l } 170.
m *Lib. N.* pag. 90.
n *Regist. Chartac.* fol. 24.
o *Lib. N.* p. 115.
p *Ib.* p. 106.
q *Pag.* 111.
r } *Ib. Pag.*
s } 208.
t *Lib. N.* p. 179.
u *Num.* CLIX.
w *Tit. Honor*, p. 816.
x } *MS. in Of-*
y } *fic. Armor.*
z } [M. 17.]
a } f. 32.
b } *Lib. N.*
c } p. 296.
d *Lib. vocat. Dalton*, p. 128.

Church to be kept holy, and the *Vigils* thereof, as also to the *Divine Service*, ordained to be celebrated thereon, that this *Feast* of St. *George*, was by King *Henry* the Fifth's *Statutes* expresly prohibited to be held, if through the Prorogations aforesaid, it should chance to fall out upon the [e] 24. and 25. days of *April*. But in all other Rolls and Copies of these *Statutes*, that have come to our view, we find the 26. day of *April* added to this place, (and so afterwards in King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*) which was very requisite, because otherwise the second *Vespers* of St. *Mark*, might from the first *Vespers* of St. *George* receive interruption.

e Lib. N. p. 66.

With these, the like Prohibition was enjoined, if the *Feast* fell upon the [f] last of *April*, the first, second, third, and fourth of *May*, in honor of the double Feast of St. *Philip* and *Jacob*, and of the Feast of the *Invention* of the *Cross* of our Lord *Jesus Christ*; for which cause in the 9. and 10. years of King *Henry* the Eighth, the celebration of the *Grand Feast* was prorogued to the 10. and 16. days of *May* at *Windesor*, which were the Sundays [g] next following the Feast of the *Invention* of the *holy Cross*, in those two years. So likewise if it fell on the Feasts of the [h] *Ascension*, and *Penticost*.

f H. 5. Stat. Art. 9.

g Lib. N. p. 205. & 207.

h H. 5. Stat. Art. 9.

Thus far in reference to these enumerated *Festivals*, did the *Statutes* of the *Order* provide; as also where the case might fall within the compass of any [i] other solemn Feast ordained by the Church, when the first or second *Vespers* thereof might (through such *Prorogations*) be hindred or disturbed; which were for ought we find, until the time of our Reformation of Religion (begun by King *Edward* the Sixth) duly observed: But since upon passing the *Act* of *Parliament* before mentioned, for singling some few days, out of those many, that were before kept holy, there hath been no due observation given to these *Injunctions*, but that the *Grand Feast* of St. *George*, hath by *Prorogation*, been celebrated upon any of them indifferently, the Feast of *Easter* only excepted. And in this case of *Easter*, after such time as the *Statutes* were new modelled by King *Henry* the Eighth, the time for Prorogation of the *Grand Feast* was left more arbitrary (so also when it fell out upon any *Fish* or *Fasting-day*) [k] even at the *Soveraign*'s pleasure; and therefore since then (when the said two *Feasts* hapned to concur) the adjournments have pass'd but for some few days.

i Idem, vide etiam H. 8. Stat. Art. 8.

k Ibid.

As for instance, St. *George*'s day, *an.* 18. *Eliz.* fell upon *Easter-Monday*, and thereupon the *Soveraign* appointed a *Chapter* to be held in the *Privy Chamber* at *Whitehall*, on [l] *Easter Eve*, wherein it was Ordered: That the *Feast* of St. *George* should be adjourned, until Tuesday the [m] 24. of *April* (being Tuesday in *Easter* week) and by this appointment, the very day celebrated by the Church, for that of St. *George*, became the *Eve* to the *Grand Feast*, and was so observed by the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*.

l, m MS. penes G. O. Y. p. 123.

Of later times, *viz.* [o] *an.* 12. *Jac. R.* when St. *George*'s day fell upon [p] *Easter-Eve*, the celebration thereof was deferred until [q] Thursday then next following.

o, p, q MS. penes E. W. G. f. 151. b.

Lastly, his late Majesty of ever sacred memory, being a great restorer of the ancient Solemnities and Discipline of this *Order*, punctual even in circumstances of Honor, and extraordinary tender of infringing any of the *Statutes*, having prorogued the *Feast* of St. *George* from the [r] 8. 9. and 10. days of *February*, in the 18. year of his Reign, to the [s] 18. 19. and 20. days of *April* following, at the City of *York*; and the time falling out to be within 15 days of *Easter*, although he might (by the power of King *Henry* the Eighth's [u] *Statutes*, and those *Precedents* before recited) have kept the same upon the days designed: Nevertheless without a particular *Dispensation* drawn and made authentick, by the Great Seal of the *Order*, and his own Royal Signature, would not proceed to the Ceremonies of that celebration.

r, s Palmer's Journ. p. 32. & 33.

u Art. 8.

We come now to the second sort of *Prorogations*, which are meerly arbitrary, and wholly dependent upon the *Soveraign*'s pleasure, yet warranted sufficiently from the words [*Causâ postulante*] set down in the beginning of the Fourth Article of King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*; as also by the great latitude given unto the *Soveraigns* of this most Noble *Order*, out of compliance with their urgent Affairs, in the 8. Article following, *quo Supremus volet prorogabitur*. But we observe, that long before the making this *Statute*, something of like nature had

Prorogations at pleasure.

had been practised, and the *Grand Feast* prorogued at the pleasure of the *Soveraign* (the day of St. *George* being nevertheless observed) albeit the *Registers* render not the cause: To manifest which, we shall instance in a few Examples. The first thing memorable in this kind (of which any Record is extant) is that *an.* 5. *H.* 5. when about the [w] 18. of *August* (neer 4 Months after St. *George*'s day) the *Soveraign* (then ingaged in War with *France*) having reduced to his obedience the not inconsiderable Town of [x] *Caen*, and made the Duke of *Clarence* Governour thereof; [y] took order as far as the present exigency of Affairs would permit, to have the *Feast* of St. *George* there celebrated, and with great solemnity created 15 *Knights* into the *Order*.

w x y *Lib. N. pag.* 57.

So [a] *an.* 22. *E.* 4. the *Soveraign* with the rest of the *Knights-Companions*, kept all the Solemnities of the *Order* in [b] St. *Paul*'s Church *London*, and dined in the Bishop of *London*'s [c] Palace (at which time he received from the *Pope* a [d] Sword and Cap of Maintenance) and albeit the mention of St. *George*'s day occur not expresly in the place, whence we have this account, nevertheless, observing both out of the [e] *Black Book*, and the [f] *Registrum Chartaceum*, that the *Grand Feast* it self, was by the Lord *Matrevers* held at *Windesor*, within few days after St. *George*'s day, that very year, *viz.* the 29. of *April*. Therefore these Solemnities at St. *Paul*'s, may most probably be thought to have been observed upon the very day of St. *George*; for they could not be celebrated in any part of the year following the aforesaid 29. of *April*, because the *Grand Feast* it self was then already past.

a b c d *Ex lib. vocat. Dalton.*

e *Pag.* 148. f *Fol.* 49.

In like manner King *Henry* the Seventh, in the 20. year of his Reign, went on [g] St. *George*'s day in solemn Procession and very great State, to the forementioned *Cathedral*, yet notwithstanding on the 4. of *May* following, the *Grand Feast* was observed at [h] *Windesor*, by the Earl of [i] *Arundel* (deputed by the *Soveraign*) and four other of the *Knights-Companions* appointed for his Assistants.

g h i *Lib. N. pag.* 177.

Again, *an.* [k] 8. *H.* 8. the *Soveraign* being at *Eltham* on St. [l] *George*'s day, it was in a *Chapter* there held, Decreed, That the accustomed celebration of the *Feast* of St. *George*, should be observed at [m] *Windesor*, upon *Sunday* next after *Trinity Sunday*, being the [n] 25. of *May* ensuing; and the Marquess *Dorset* was then also appointed Lieutenant to the *Soveraign* for holding thereof, and the Earl of *Essex* (in whose room the Lord [o] *Poynings* was afterwards substituted) with the Lords *La Ware*, *Mountegle*, and *Lovell* his Assistants.

k l m n o *Regist. Chart. f.* 53. *b.* & *Lib. N. p.* 204.

And from this time it became annually customary, especially all the subsequent years of King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign, Queen *Mary*'s, and unto the 9. of Queen *Elizabeth*, to keep the day of St. *George*, wherefoever the *Soveraign* at that time abode, which for the most part was at *Greenewich*, or *Whitehall*, on which day (as also on the Eve and morning after the day) the usual Solemnities were observed, and a noble *Feast* provided, as hath been said: But as to the celebration of the *Grand Festival* it self, that was in one of the *Chapters*, held during the foresaid celebrations, and most commonly on St. *George*'s day, adjourned unto some further time, and then solemnized at *Windesor* by *Prorogation*, not by the *Soveraigns* themselves, but by their *Lieutenants* and their *Assistants*, especially deputed and appointed for that purpose.

But to proceed with the causes of *Prorogation*, which were either for some considerable reasons, or upon emergent occasions. *An.* 1. *Mariæ*, the *Soveraign* celebrating the day of St. *George*, at her Mannor of St. [p] *James*'s, *Philip* then Prince of *Spain*, and *Henry* Earl of *Sussex*, were on the [q] morrow after elected into the *Order*; whereupon it was also decreed, [r] That the inauguration of these two *Knights-Elect*, should be prorogued until the *Prince* came over into *England*, which happning upon the 21. day of *July* following, the *Grand Feast*, together with that of the *Elect-Knights Installations*, were appointed to be celebrated together; to which purpose a [s] Letter was afterwards sent unto the *Knights-Companions* for their repair thither, against the 5. of *August* then next following.

p *Lib. C. p.* 7. q r *Ibid. p.* 9. s *Appendix, Num.* CLX.

Again, *an* [t] 3. & 4. *Ph.* & *Mar.* at a *Chapter* held at *Westminster* upon the 22. of *April*, the [u] Feast of St. *George* (together with the Installation of three *Knights* at that time Elected) was appointed to be held at *Windesor*, on the [w] 9. day of *May*

t *Lib. C. p.* 19. u w *Ibid. p.* 20.

May following, and by a *Chapter* summoned at the same place, the [x] 3. of *May* before the appointed day for keeping the *Feast*, the same was prorogued unto the [y] 5. of *December* following, [z] *because of the manifold and urgent affairs of the King and Queen.* But before that designed time, another *Chapter* was held at Saint *James's*, upon the [a] last day of *October* in the 4. and 5 years of their Reigns, wherein it was again prorogued unto the [b] first *Sunday* after *Twelfth-day, viz.* the 9. of *January* then following, [c] *if by that time the King* (who it seems was gone out of *Flanders*) *should return into* England; but there appearing afterwards no hopes of his coming over against that prefixed time, another *Chapter* was summoned and held at *Greenewich* the [d] 5. of *January*, wherein it was Decreed, [e] *urgent Affairs requiring*, that the said *Feast* should be further prorogued, unto the [f] 20. of *February* next coming, and then the *Lieutenant* and *Assistants* appointed to the first *Prorogation*, should celebrate this solemn *Feast* at *Windesor*, in manner as it was Decreed, the 22. of *April* preceding. Nevertheless, the [g] sixth day of *February* after, in another *Chapter*, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* Decreed, to prorogue the last mentioned *Prorogation* unto [h] St. *George's* day, then next following, [i] *Because both in respect of the meeting of the* Parliament, *and other Affairs of great importance, as also by reason of the* War *that was begun, the said* Feast *could not conveniently be before observed.*

x Ib. p. 21. y z

a b c d e f Ibid. pag. 22.

g h i Ibid. p. 23.

In like manner, *an.* 2. *Eliz.* upon the [k] 24. of *April*, it was Decreed, that on *Sunday* the [l] 5. of *May* the *Feast* of St. *George* should be observed with the accustomed celebrations; but that morning in a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall*, [m] *for very high and important causes*, was it prorogued until *Sunday* the 12. day of *May* immediately following, on which day it was solemnized at *Windesor*.

k l Ibid. pag. 33.

m Ibid. p. 34.

Again, King *James* having designed his Journey into *Scotland* (to begin the [n] 20. of *March*, *an.* 14. *regni sui*) he assembles a *Chapter* at *Whitehall*, the second day of that Month, and therein, by reason that for the cause aforesaid, [o] Saint *George's Feast* for the year ensuing, could not conveniently be kept on the accustomed day and place, decreed to celebrate the same at *Windesor* the [p] 13. day of *September* next following, where it was accordingly observed.

n o p Ib. p. 189.

So also for causes of another, but sadder nature, *an.* 17. *Jac. R. viz.* Queen *Anne's* [q] death, and the *Soveraign's* dangerous [r] sickness, which had brought him also neer to the gates of death, was the *Grand Feast* prorogued from St. *George's* day, to the [s] 26. of *May* in the same year, and then celebrated at *Greenewich*.

q r s Ib. p. 192.

And *an.* 1. *Car.* 1. the *Soveraign* not thinking fit [t] for several causes, at that time to keep the *Grand Feast*, prorogued it from the [u] 22. 23. and 24. days of *April*, unto the 16. 17. and 18. of *August* following, thence again until the [w] 4. 5. and 6. of *October*, and lastly to the 23. 24. and 25. of *November* in the same year, and then observed it at [x] *Windesor*.

t u Lib. K. p. 26.

w x Ibid. pag. 28.

Sometimes this *Feast* hath been put off, out of a respect unto the day, whereon it fell, as [y] *an.* 22. *Jac. R.* St. *George's* day then hapning upon a *Friday*, the Soveraign therefore prorogued it until the 26. 27. and 28. days of *April*, at which time it was celebrated at *Windesor*: And the authority unto which regard was had in this place, was that Clause in the 8. Article of King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, wherein the keeping of St. *George's Feast* was prohibited, if it fell upon any [z] *Fish* or *Fasting days*.

y Ibid. p. 17.

z Lib. N. pag. 218.

So also [a] *an.* 22. *Car.* 2. it falling upon a *Saturday*, was prorogued to the 27. 28. and 29. days of *April* following.

a Lib. Carol. p. 82.

And albeit in times past this *Feast* hath been, for the most part upon Prorogations, observed upon a *Sunday*, yet of late in veneration to this day, it hath been likewise prohibited, as *an.* 2. *Car.* 1. St. *George's* day falling upon a [b] *Sunday*, thereupon the Solemnity was put off until [c] *Wednesday*, *Thursday*, and *Friday* following, being the 26. 27. and 28. of *April*, upon which days it was observed at [d] *Whitehall*. But where the [e] Eve hapned upon a *Sunday* (as it did the [f] next year after) there the *Feast* received no [g] *Prorogation*.

b c d e f g MS. penes Ed Faucon-bridge, gen.

In the year of our Lord 1636. the *Soveraign* was moved, by reason of the [h] Contagion and Sickness, dispersed into several places of the *Kingdom*, and to avoid the danger of the concourse of much People, during the Infection aswell

h Row's Journal, p. 4.

for

for other great and important Affairs, to give several *Prorogations* to this *Feast*, from the 22. 23. and 24. days of *April* (being the usual days of this Solemnity) first to the [i] 8. 9. and 10. days of *July* following, then again to the 26. 27. and 28. of *September*, and from that time unto the 13. 14. and 15. of *December*, and lastly to the 17. 18. and 19. of *April* in the 13. year of his Reign; upon which last appointed days it was solemnized at [k] *Whitehall*. Where on the [l] morrow after the *Feast*, it being considered in a *Chapter*, that the day of St. *George* was neer at hand, and for other special reasons, the *Soveraign* was there pleased to defer the Celebration of the approaching *Feast*, unto the [m] 25. 26. and 27. days of *September* ensuing: And on the 13. day of the said *September*, prorogued the Prorogation unto the [n] 2. 3. and 4. of *October* next following, to *Windesor*, where it was accordingly observed.

i } *Ibid.*
k }
l } *Lib. R.*
m } *p.* 125.
n *Row's Journal, p.* 22.

Within few Months after, the *Soveraign* having determined to create the then *Prince* (now most happily the present *Soveraign*) a *Knight*, and to propose him in Election, as a *Companion* of this most Noble *Society*, did for the more conveniency of his Installation (the [o] 25. of *February*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 1.) defer the celebration of the *Grand Feast* from the 22. 23. and 24. days of *April* then coming on, to the 21. 22. and 23. days of *May*, when the same was observed with high Solemnity. This being the third *Grand Festival*, which had been celebrated personally by the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, within the Revolution of one year, and something more, and to keep up the honor of *Windesor Castle*, two of them were solemnized within its Walls. And before the return of the next *Anniversary* of St. *George*, the *Soveraign* upon consultation had (in [q] *February*, *an.* 14. *Car.* 1.) with divers of the *Knights-Companions*, about the Prorogation of the *Feast*, which was supposed could not (by reason of his important occasions to repair into the *North*) be celebrated at the usual time in the next ensuing *April*; thereupon he thought fit to adjourn the same, (which was done the [r] 26. of *February* aforesaid) unto the [s] 2. 3. and 4. of *July* next coming (*York* being the place the *Soveraign* thought most convenient to hold the *Feast* at) but afterwards being in his Camp neer *Barwick*, and taking into consideration, the impossibility of keeping the *Feast* at *York* upon the before designed days, and conferring with some of the *Knights-Companions*, that then attended on his person, he the [t] 22. of *June*, *an.* 15. *Car.* 1. adjourned the same until the [u] 8. 9. and 10. of *October* following to *Windesor*, at which time it was [w] there celebrated.

o *Ibid. p.* 38.
q *Palmer's Journal pro an.* 1639. *p.* 2.
r } *Ibid.*
s } *pag.* 3.
t } *Ibid.*
u } *pag.* 7.
w *Pag.* 16.

After this, the troubles and tempest of War approaching, the *Prorogations* became more frequent, and such places appointed to hold the Feast in, as the *Soveraign* thought most convenient, or had occasion to reside at. Nevertheless the adjournments passed always regularly under the Great Seal of the Order, and the *Soveraign*'s Sign Manual.

SECT. IX.

Of Commissions *for* Prorogation.

WE have not met with any Precedent of *Commissions* for *Prorogation* of the *Grand Feast* of St. *George*, more ancient than that of the * 11. of *December*, *an.* 12. *Car.* 1. left us by Sir *Thomas Rowe*, wherein is notice taken of all the former adjournments of the *Grand Feast*, from St. *George*'s day preceding until that time, with the reasons thereof, and chiefly upon consideration had of the then spreading Sickness, together with a command to the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the *Order*, to attend upon the *Soveraign* on the new assigned days, *viz.* the 17. 18. and 19. of *April* following, for the celebration of the said *Feast*.

* *Append. Num.* CLVIII.

As

As to the substance hereof, the succeeding *Commissions* do very neer agree, yet with some small difference; as first, the *Preambles* are general and run thus: *Whereas upon special Reasons, and other important Affairs, &c.* except only that *Commission* issued the 25. of *February* [a] 1637. whose Preamble being fitted to the particular occasion, was this, [b] *Whereas we have determined to create the* Prince *our eldest Son a* Knight, *and to propose him in Election, as a* Companion *of our most Noble* Order, *for the more conveniency of his Installation, we have thought fit to defer the celebration of the* Feast *of St.* George, *&c.*

a *An.* 13. *Car.* 1.
b *Row's Journal, p.* 38.

But in the *Commissions* of *Prorogation* of the *Grand Feasts*, dated the [c] 19. of *April*, and the [d] 25. of *February*, *an.* 19. *Car.* 1. the place appointed for Celebration is omitted, which defect we find in the above mentioned Precedent also. Nevertheless, afterwards that material part came to be inserted, and first of all in that *Commission* of the 26. of *February*, *an.* 14. *Car.* 1. where the place (being the City of *York*) is put into the body of the *Commission*. And when the late War drew on, and consequently the *Soveraign* could not so well ascertain the place beforehand, because of his continual and uncertain motion, according as occasion and advantages offered themselves: Then we observe, that the *Grand Feast* was appointed to be kept at any such place, as (when the time appointed by *Prorogation* was neer expired) should seem to the *Soveraign* most convenient. But from the body of the *Commissions*, the nomination of Place, afterwards slided downwards into the close, and shewed it self in that part, where the Injunction was given, for the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* to attend upon the days before appointed, being expressed either thus, [e] *Wheresoever we shall then be, &c.* or else thus, [f] *at such Places as we shall timely appoint, &c.* which later way of signification was first used in *Commissions* issued forth, after the *Soveraign* came to setle at *Oxford*.

c *Ibid.p.*16.
d *Pag* 38.
e *Com.* 20. *Apr. an.* 18. *Car.* 1.
f 13 *Feb.* 18. 2. *Apr.* 19. & 20. *Jan.* 20. *Car.* 1.

Now the most ordinary course, preparatory to the issuing forth such *Commissions* of *Prorogation*, hath been by the *Soveraign's Declaration* in *Chapter*, or otherwise the signification of his pleasure, to the *Chancellor* of the *Order* at any other time, who thereupon drew up the *Commission*, and presented it to the *Soveraign*, for his Sign Manual, and then affixed thereunto the Great Seal of the *Order*. Nevertheless, where the *Chancellor* was not at hand, to receive the commands for adjournment, immediately from the *Soveraign*, we find his pleasure in this particular, was then signified to him by some other hand, with command to summon the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* accordingly. For so was it done by Sir [g] *Francis Windebanke*, Knight, one of the Principal Secretaries of State, by his Letters from *Oatlands*, directed to Sir *Thomas Row*, dated the 11. of *September*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 1. for *Prorogation* of the *Grand Feast*, from the 25. of *September* then neer at hand, unto the 2, 3. and 4. of *October* following.

g *Row's Journal, p.* 22.

And as all the preceding *Adjournments* of the *Grand Feast*, have been either Decreed in *Chapter*, or directed immediately from the *Soveraign*: So have we also seen a Precedent that hath impowered a *Lieutenant*, to prorogue the same, nevertheless to the time and place before appointed by the *Soveraign*, and mentioned in the *Commission* of *Lieutenancy*. And this was a *Commission* directed to *Charles* Earl of *Nottingham*, *an.* [h] 1. *Jac. R.* wherein, after the *Soveraign* had premised the impediments, which hindred him from his personal observation of the said *Feast*, upon the prefixed day then neer approaching, he thereby made choice of the said Earl to be his *Lieutenant*, and impowered him to assemble in *Chapter*, upon the *Vigil* of St. *George*, such of the *Knights-Companions*, as might be conveniently gotten together, and then and there to intimate unto them the great causes that withheld him from keeping the *Feast* at the set time, and by virtue of the said *Commission* to defer the same until the 3. of *July* following. Furthermore charging and requiring all the *Knights-Companions* not to fail to be present at that day, wheresoever the same should happen to be, to perform and celebrate with him the said *Feast*, according to the laudable Orders and Institutions of the *Order*. And lastly, he required the said *Lieutenant* to give warning of his pleasure to all other *Knights-Companions*, who should not be present at the *Chapter* by him assembled.

h *MS.quart.penes W.le N. Cl.*

SECT. X.

That the Grand Feast *ought to be celebrated once every Year.*

AND though *Prorogations* of the *Grand Feast* have been occasionally made use of, upon the several and important reasons above discoursed of, and sometimes a necessity hath fallen out to appoint two, three, or four of them in a year, by proroguing the *Prorogations*; yet is no such Adjournment legally to be enlarged beyond the next St. *George's day* ensuing, because that every year, *that is*, once before the revolution of the year determine (the year in this case entring upon St. *George's* day) the *Grand Feast* ought to be solemnized. For so we see it was not only ordained at the [i] *Institution* of the *Order*, but confirmed by the succeeding [k] *Statutes*. And where our *Historians* take notice of the *Grand Feast*, they speak the same thing, to wit, That it ought [l] annually to be observed; Hence it is frequently called in the Registers, *Annua Festivitas*, *Solennitas annua*, *Celebritas annua*, *Epulum quotannis*, *Convivium quotannis*, and the like.

i *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 9.
k *H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 9. *H.* 8. *Stat. Art* 3.
l *Froisard. t.* 1. *c.*100. *& Polid. Virg. Ang. Hist. lib.* 10. *p.*378.

Of late times an occasion hapned, which brought this Clause of the *Statutes* into a solemn debate in *Chapter*, which for the result thereof became very remarkable: And the *Order* thereupon drawn up, being full and positive, not only as to the occasion, but also as to the circumstances, and determination, may not unfitly come in here.

m *Ex ipso Autogr. pen. Jac. Palmer nuper Cancell.*

m *At a* Chapter *held in* Whitehall *the* 26. *day of* February 1640.

Present.

The Soveraign.
The Earl of Penbroke *and* Montgomery.
The Earl of Salisbury.
The Earl of Holland.
The Earl of Lindesey.
The Prince.
The Earl of Arundel *and* Surrey.
The Earl of Dorset.
The Earl of Berkshire.
The Lord Marquess Hamilton.
The Duke of Lenox.
The Chancellor.
Garter.

The Soveraign *proposed unto the* Knights *of the* Order, *that having prorogued the Celebration of the* Feast *of St.* George *from time to time, unto the first, second, and third of* March, *so near unto Lent, that if the* Feast *were not held on those days, it could not be held within the year, because the* 23. *of* April *for the next year did fall upon* Good-Friday, *and so consequently must have been kept in* Lent *for this Year, or not at all: And considering the great and important Affairs of the* Parliament, *he moved this Question, Whether if there were no* Feast *kept this year, it would be any blemish unto the Honor of the* Order *or not? And whether he might not dispence with the* Statute, *and defer it until the next Year? requiring the* Knights *and* Companions *to consult and to give their opinions therein: The result whereof was, that though they did all confess an absolute power to dispence in the* Soveraign, *yet some of the* Knights *proposed unto him, that seeing from the Institution until this day, there was not found any year wherein the* Feast *was wholly omitted, but that some of his Ancestors, though engaged in War beyond the Seas, either solemnized the* Feast *in their own presence, or by* Commission *in* England, *which was averr'd by the* Chancellor *to*

to be both the fundamental Statute and constant practice. They humbly besought the Soveraign, *not to begin to make a breach in that constant order, which hath been so long and uninterruptedly continued; whereupon it was resolved by general Vote, that the* Feast *should be celebrated upon those afore appointed days in the last* Prorogation.

By which determination it sufficiently appears, of what concernment the then *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, conceived it to the Honor of the *Order*, and observation of the *Statutes*, for the *Grand Feast* to be celebrated once within the year. Besides we may observe, that it was not thought expedient to be dispensed with, albeit the weight of important Affairs were justly alledged to ballance the *Law*, and ground a further *Prorogation*. Nay, rather than the *Statutes* should suffer violation, the said *Feast* was [n] accordingly solemnized on the said first, second, and third days of *March*, although so straitned in time, that there was not above two days space, to make preparation and provision for the doing of it.

[n] *Palmer's Journ. p. 29.*

But within a few years after, the unhappy distractions had prevailed so far, that the *Soveraign* was necessitated to assume his power of dispensation in this particular, and by continued annual *Prorogations* from the 22. 23. and 24. days of *April*, *an.* 18. of his Reign (being then at *York*) to defer the Solemnity from year to year; so that during the remainder of his Reign, this Grand Celebration had never the fortune to be again observed.

And here the glory of this solemn *Feast* began first to set with us, unto which succeeded a long night: But blessed be God we have lived to behold it rise again, and seen the Royal *Soveraign* and most Illustrious *Knights-Companions* fill those too long vacant Stalls, and late languishing Fabrick with wonted lustre.

CHAP. XIX.

OF Preparations FOR THE Grand Feaſt OF THE ORDER.

SECT. I.

Of Letters *giving notice of the* Time *and* Place.

TOwards the ſetting forth and celebration of this *Grand Feſtival*, there are ſeveral things to be prepared beforehand, chiefly ſuch as are uſual and of courſe; nevertheleſs among theſe we ſhall have opportunity, now and then, to touch upon ſome things extraordinary, where the occaſion hath invited the *Soveraign*, to give any additional luſtre to the ſtate and glory of the *Feaſt*.

The things therefore to be prepared of courſe, are (1.) *Letters* directed to all the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the *Order*, reſident within the *Kingdom*; to give them notice of the time and place, when and where the Feaſt is to be celebrated. (2.) *Letters* of *Diſpenſation* to ſuch *Knights-Companions* as the *Soveraign* ſhall pleaſe to excuſe, from their attendance at the *Feaſt*. (3.) *Commiſſions* of *Lieutenancy* (and ſometimes of *Aſſiſtance*) when the *Soveraign* cannot perſonally ſolemnize the ſame. (4.) *Warrants* for the *Removal* of *Atchievments*, if at this time there be any ſuch occaſion. (5.) *Scutcheons* and *Stiles* to be ſet upon the back of each *Knight-Companion's Stall*, if the *Feaſt* be held elſewhere than at *Windeſor*. (6.) The *Chappel* to be decently adorned. (7.) the Great Hall (or other place where the *Grand Dinner* is to be prepared) to be likewiſe very nobly furniſhed. And (8.) laſtly, *Officers* to be appointed (beſides thoſe of the *Order* and of *Arms*) who are to give peculiar attendance upon the *Soveraign* at this Grand Solemnity.

As touching the firſt of theſe particulars, the *Chancellor* of the *Order* is to attend the *Soveraign*, in convenient time before the approach of St. *George*'s day, to

to know his pleasure, whether he will hold the *Grand Feast* on that day, or otherwise prorogue the Solemnities to some further time, and whether it shall be celebrated at *Windesor*, *Whitehall*, or what other place.

If the *Soveraign* shall be induced to *Prorogue* the *Feast* from St. *George*'s day to some further time, then is the *Chancellor* to draw up a *Commission* to that purpose, of which we have discourst in the preceding [a] *Chapter*. After this, *Letters* issued out, anciently under the *Soveraign*'s Sign Manual, both to his *Lieutenant* (when he held not the Feast in Person) as also to each of the *Knights-Companions*, giving them notice of the time and place; some of which are placed to the [b] *Appendix*; but of late, the *Chancellor* hath been appointed to dispatch these *Letters* of notice in his [c] own name.

a *Sect.* 9.

b *Num.* CLIX. & CLX.
c *Num.* CLXI. & CLXII.

But whether the *Feast* be held upon the day of St. *George*, or on any other day by *Prorogation*, the *Soveraign*'s pleasure was usually known so long before the appointed time, that these circular Letters sent from the *Chancellor*, issued out, sometimes [d] six, [e] five, [f] four, [g] three, two or [h] one Month at least, before the assigned day. And in cases where *Prorogations* have been yet further adjourned, care hath been taken to issue out new *Commissions* in like convenient time before the old were expired; as may be observed in the cases of adjournaments mentioned in the last *Chapter*, that so those *Knights-Companions*, who are most remote from *Court*, may have sufficient time to prepare, either for attendance at the day assigned, or upon just occasion procure the favour of *Letters* of *Dispensation* for absence: And further, that the absent *Knights* may thereby take notice of the day set, because such are obliged to hold the *Feast* in their own Houses at the same time.

d *Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
e *Rowe's Journal*, p. 16.
f *Ib.* p. 5. & 20.
g *Ib.* p. 39.
h *Autogr. penes præf. Jac. Palmer.*

Besides, the *Letters* directed to the *Knights-Companions*, the *Chancellor* is likewise to write his *Letters* to each of the [i] *Officers* of the *Order*, to give them the like notice.

i *Append. Num.* CLXIII.

SECT. II.

Of Dispensations *for not attending at the* Grand Feast.

IT having been complained of, by the *Chancellor* of the Order, and taken notice of by the *Soveraign*, and *Knights-Companions*, in a *Chapter* held at the Celebration of the *Grand Feast*, at *Whitehall* the 18. of *April*, *an.* 13. *Car.* I. [k] *That of late years, divers* Knights-Companions *of this most Noble* Order, *had neglected both their attendance upon the Soveraign at the Feast of St.* George, *or to send under their Seals of Arms, their probable Excuses, and Petitions, for License and Dispensation, contrary to the most ancient Statutes and their duty:* It was therefore then among many other things Ordered and Decreed, [l] *That from thenceforth every* Knight *of the* Order, *should be bound to attend upon the usual days, or such as should be assigned by Prorogation. But in case of Sickness, or other important business, by reason whereof they might have cause to be excused, they should send under their Seals of Arms to the* Chancellor, *the reasons of their desire for leave of absence, twenty days at least before the usual or assigned time, to be presented by him to the* Soveraign; *and whosoever should neglect so to do, except in sudden accidents, should not be dispensed with, but incur the penalty of the Statutes.*

k *Rowe's Journ.* p. 10. *vide etiam Lib. R.* p. 119.
l

And it is evident, that this way of enjoining the *Knights-Companions*, to send the cause of that impediment, which should hinder their said attendance, under their Seals of Arms, hath been very ancient; for the *Black Book* records an Order in *Chapter*, held at the *Grand Feast*, *an.* 1. *H.* 6. [m] to this very purpose; it further enjoining, that [n] when such absent *Knights* were present at the next *Feast*, *they should be obliged then to render the reason, why they should not undergo the penalty of their former absence, since the Statutes enjoin it.*

m *Lib. N.* pag. 75.
n

In

In pursuance of the before mentioned Decree of the 18. of *April*, Sir *Thomas Rowe*, then *Chancellor*, added to those his *Letters*, dated the 18. day of *May* 1637. and directed to the *Knights-Companions* under the Seal of the Order (which signified, that for special reasons and other important Affairs (in a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall*, on the 19. of *April* in the foresaid year) the *Soveraign* had prorogued the *Grand Feast*, from the 22. 23. and 24. days of *April*, *an.* 14. *Car.* 1. to the 25. 26. and 27. of *September* then next ensuing) this following *Postscript*.

o *Row's Journ. pag.* 20.

o *According to two* Acts *made in* Chapter, *in the presence of the* Soveraign, *the* 18. *of* April 1637. *concerning the neglect of the* Knights *and* Companions *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *in their attendance upon his* Majesty *at the Feast of St.* George, *and a command expressly received, to signifie so much to your* Lordship: *I have sent to your* Lordship, *the true Copy of the* p Acts *themselves*; *it being resolved in case of omission of your lawful and timely excuse, under your Seal of Arms, and in occasion of absence, of keeping the Solemnity in your own house, that no dispensation shall be given, but your* Lordship *shall incur the penalties of the ancient* Statutes, *which are*; *You* q *shall not be admitted to the* Chapter, *nor to your* Seat *the next year*; *but shall stand before it as do the* Choristers: *In* Procession *you shall march before, and not in your place among the* Knights, *and shall* Offer *last*; *and that this Penance being done, you shall come before the Seat of the* Soveraign, *and ask absolution*; *but if two years successively your* Lordship *shall omit your attendance and timely suit for Dispensation, you shall pay* Twenty Marks, *and that sum be doubled for every year of such omission, until you be reconciled, and pardoned by the* Soveraign; *whereof I beseech your* Lordship *to take knowledge.*

p *See Chap.* 22. *Sect.* 4.

q *Videsis* E. 3. Stat. H. 5. Art. 10. H. 8. Stat. Art. 9.

It afterwards appears, by an r *Order* past in *Chapter*, of the 9. of *October*, *an.* 15. *Car.* 1. that this early notice to be given, from such of the *Knights-Companions*, as upon the causes before mentioned should be absent, was appointed in favour chiefly of the s *Officers* of the *Soveraign's Houshold*, who (by knowing in due time, who should be absent and who not) t might make timely and certain provision for the said *Feast*.

r (*Palmer's* s *Journ. pro* t *an* 1639. *p.* 61.

Upon notice sent by the *Chancellor* to the *Knights-Companions* as aforesaid, if any of them should happen to be sick, weak, infirm, or have any other lawful impediment or occasion, which might justly hinder or excuse their repair to the *Court*, and attendance at the *Feast*; they may acquaint the *Chancellor* therewith; whose duty it is to represent the same to the *Soveraign*, and thereupon to procure his *Letters* of *Dispensation* for their absence, if the *Soveraign* be so pleased.

Which *Letters* are to be conveyed by *Garter*, or carried by whomsoever he shall appoint; for which there was a Fee by the Mile allowed him, by the following Order, past at a meeting held by the *Knights-Commissioners*, for regulating things relating to the *Order*, the first of *October an.* 13. *Car.* 1.

u *Row's Journ. pag.* 37.

u *Whereas it having anciently been the Office of* Garter *King of* Arms, *to disperse and send* Letters *for* Prorogation, Dispensation, *and other* Commands *of the* Soveraign, *unto the* Knights *absent from the Court, which in many cases must be chargeable, it was this day Ordered, That if he should send any* Act *of* favour *or* Dispensation *to any* Knight *absent from his* Majesty's Court, *or four Miles from the City of* London; *he to whom such Dispensation should be sent, should pay to his Servant or Messenger, for every days Travel, as much as is allowed and paid to any other* Messenger *of his* Majesty's *House or Chamber.*

w *Numb.* CLXIV. CLXV. CLXVI. & CLXVII.

Variety of occasions and accidents, as grounds to move the *Soveraign*, and inducements to obtain his *Dispensation*, we have seen in several *Letters* sent to Sir *Tho. Row*, when *Chancellor*, upon the before mentioned Injunction, Decreed *an.* 13. *Car.* 1. and always the causes have been inserted in the Preambles of the *Dispensations*, some of which are to be seen in the w *Appendix*. SECT.

SECT. III.

Of Commissions *of* Lieutenancy *and* Assistance.

TOuching the third particular, namely, the preparing *Commissions* of *Lieutenancy*, in such cases where the *Soveraign* cannot personally celebrate the Feast; as also *Commissions* for those, whom he thinks fit to appoint for his *Assistants*; we shall transfer the Discourse thereof from hence to that head in the [x] next *Chapter*, under which we shall speak of the constituting a *Lieutenant*; and only note here, that the *Chancellor* is to draw up these *Commissions*, and attend the *Soveraign* for his hand, and afterwards to pass them under the [y] Great Seal of the Order.

x *Sect.* 5.

y *Lib.R.p.*122.

SECT. IV.

Watrant *for the removal of* Atchievements.

IF there be occasion for the removal of any of the *Knights-Companions Atchievements*, at the *Grand Feast* (which hath seldom hapned, unless an *Installation* were at the same time celebrated) then doth the *Chancellor* obtain the *Soveraign's Warrant*, directed to *Garter*, for the doing thereof: Concerning which (as also the cause and reason of such removal) we have already, and at large discoursed, among the [z] *Preparations* to be made for the Personal Installation of a *Knight-Companion*; that place being most proper, in regard the removal of them doth chiefly concern that Ceremony.

z *Chap.* 11. *Sect.* 6.

SECT. V.

Scutcheons *of* Arms *and* Stiles.

HEretofore when the Celebrations of St. *George*'s day were kept at any other place besides *Windesor-Castle*, it was thought most necessary to provide large Paper *Scutcheons*; wherein were marshalled the *Arms* and *Quarterings* of the *Soveraign* and each *Knight-Companion*, in Metal and Colour, encompassed with a *Garter*; and thereon *Crowns*, *Caps*, or *Coronets* peculiar to each Dignity, with their *Stiles* and *Titles* fairly printed underneath (but without *Crests* or *Supporters*) to be set on the back side of their *Stalls*, on the *Eve* of the *Feast*: But the *Soveraign's Arms* were impaled with those of St. *George*, over which an *Imperial Crown* was placed, and these (in defect of the *Plates* and *Banners*, set over their *Stalls* in the *Choire* of St. *George*'s *Chappel* at *Windesor*) did serve for directions to the *Knights-Companions*, that by the view of them, they might the more readily and certainly know their proper *Stalls*.

We have not met with any memorial of this usage, that reacheth higher than *an.* 21. *H.* 7. when the *Soveraign* holding the day of St. *George* at *Cambridge*, [a] *Kings Colledge Chappel* was furnished with *Scutcheons* of the *Knights-Companions* Arms; but to shew the use was ancient, there is this note put into the memorial,

a *Ex ipso Autogr.*

as

[*as was yearly accustomed.*] *An.* 22. *H.* 8. the *Soveraign* being at *Windesor* on the *Eve* of St. *George*, [b] appointed the Service of the Church to be celebrated in his [c] *Chappel*, in the upper Quadrangle of *Windesor Castle*; and there being present with him 13 *Knights-Companions*, [d] each of them had set over their heads a *Scutcheon* of their *Arms*.

b, c, d *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [H. 17.] p. 32.

This manner of adorning the *Stalls* was afterwards solemnly established, and enlarged to absent *Knights*, by an Order of *Chapter* held at *Greenewich*, *an.* 3. *E.* 6. wherein by the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* it was agreed, [f] *That from thenceforth, every* Stall *upon St.* George's *Eve, should have an* Escotcheon *of the* Arms *of them which were absent, as well as those that were present, at their several costs and charges.*

e, f *Lib. N.* p. 302.

But this cannot be understood of the *Stalls* situate in the Chappel of St. *George* at *Windesor*; for besides, that we have met with no ancient account of any such custom in that place, we find a memorial rather implying the contrary, when Queen *Elizabeth*, in the 6. year of her Reign, held the *Feast* of St. *George* upon its proper day at *Windesor Castle*; namely, [g] *That there was no Scutcheons* of the *Knights-Companions* Arms set up there, *but only the Plates:* And without all doubt, had it been the usage to fix *Scutcheons* in the Choire of that *Chappel*, as at other places, they would not at that time especially have been omitted, because then the *Soveraign* appeared upon an extraordinary occasion, and where many things were added to heighten the glory of that *Grand Feast*, by reason the [h] Peace between *England* and *France* was to be proclaimed at this Festival, in the presence of the *French Ambassador*; and was accordingly done with great Solemnity on St. *George*'s day in the morning, at the East entrance into the lower Ward of the *Castle*, at the top of the Hill towards St. *George*'s Chappel; and to which place the *Soveraign* [i] in her whole *Habit* of the *Order* (the *French Ambassador* being neer her) with the five *Officers* of the *Order*, and *Knights-Companions* before her, and before them the *Officers* of *Arms* and *Trumpets*, proceeded in a stately and well ordered *Cavalcade*; and after *Clarenceux* King of Arms had [k] ended the *Proclamation*, they continued the *Proceeding* thence to the *Chappel*, in the same state and order.

g *MS. fol penes W. D. N.* f. 14.

h, i, k *Ib.* f. 15. b.

As to the practice and constant usage of setting up *Scutcheons* of *Arms*, since *an.* 3. *E.* 6. and at such time as St. *George*'s day was held elsewhere than at *Windesor*, we have seen variety of Testimonies.

The care of ordering and providing of which belonged to *Garter*, but the *Soveraign* of the *Order* was at the charge (notwithstanding the said Order, *an.* 3. *E.* 6.) which heretofore [l] we see was paid out of the *Treasury* in the *Exchequer*; and since the establishment of 1200 *l. per an.* (setled by the late *Soveraign* King *Charles* the First, to discharge the ordinary and extraordinary expences of the *Order*) the allowance issued [m] thence, and was paid by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*. But now the charge is placed upon *Garter*, he having an allowance therefore included in the augmentation of his Pension, *an.* 15. *Car.* 2.

l *Append Num.* CLXVIII. CLXIX & CLXX.

m *See Sir James Palmer's Accounts.*

We find *Privy-Seals* to have issued as high as the [n] 15. of Queen *Elizabeth*, for the annual allowance of 7 *l.* for *Scutcheons*, employed for the use aforesaid, and that the price sometime before, was much about that rate; for the three and twenty *Scutcheons*, provided against St. *George*'s *Feast*, *an.* 1. & 2. *Ph.* & *Mar.* came to [o] 6 *l.* 1 *s.* 8 *d.* and those five and twenty set up the following year, to [p] 6 *l.* 11 *s.* 8 *d.* some difference then also being in the work, which inhaneed the price, *viz.* those provided for Princes at [q] 6 *s.* 8 *d.* a piece, and each of the rest at [r] 5 *s.*

n *Ex Collect. præf. W. le N. Cl.*

o, p, q, r *Apend. Numb.* CLXVIII.

The *Soveraign*, the *Prince* of *Wales*, and *Stranger Kings* and *Princes*, have accustomably had, at these times, *Majesty Scutcheons* set up over each of their *Stalls*, but the rest of the *Knights-Companions Lodging Scutcheons* only; and we have seen an account of [t] four *Majesty Scutcheons*, prepared for every St. *George*'s *Feast*, from 1613. to 1619. to wit, one for the *Soveraign*, another for the King of *Denmark*, a third for the *Prince* of *Wales*, and a fourth for *Frederick* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, at 6 *s.* 8 *d.* a piece; but so many *Knights-Companions* as attended the *Soveraign* at those Feasts, had each a [t] *Lodging Scutcheon* at 2 *s.* 6 *d.*

t *Collect. præf. W. le N. Cl.*

From

From the marshalling of *Arms*, quartered in the *Knights-Companions Scutcheons*, and ordering their *Stiles* (printed always in *French*) there are several things, no less useful than worthy observation: for,

First, though the *Plates* of *Arms* and *Quarterings*, fixed in each *Knights-Companions* Stall at *Windesor*, continue there without alteration, or very seldom changed from that order, wherein they were marshalled at the time of their Installation; yet these *Scutcheons* and *Stiles* annually set up, do admit of frequent alteration, as there is occasion; either by adding more *Quarterings*, altering the *Stiles*, or amending any thing that is amiss. For instance,

Whereas the Duke of *Savoy* before 5. *Eliz.* bore[u] *Gules* a Cross *Argent*, it was then altered into[w] 5 Coats, that is to say, in the first quarter *Westphalie*, *Saxe moderne*, and *Angrie*, in the second *Chablais*, in the third *Aoustie*, the fourth as the first, and over all, in the middle, the foresaid Scutcheon of *Savoy*. u MS. fol. w penes W. D. N. f. 9. a.

When the Lord *Hunsdon* was installed, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* he had[x] 12 Coats of Arms, thus marshalled in his Plate, 4, 4, and 4, the first *Carey*, the second *Spencer*, the third *Somerset*, the fourth *Bullen*, the fifth *Ormond*, the sixth *Hoo*, the seventh *Rochford*, the eighth *Seyntomer*, the ninth *Malmains*, the tenth *Wichingham*, the eleventh St. *Leger*, and the twelfth *Hangford*: But *an.* 7. *Eliz.* his *Scutcheon* received an addition of[y] four other Coats, viz. *Beauchamp*, *Warwick*, *Berkley*, and *Gerard*, and these were inserted next to *Somerset*, the third Coat in his said *Plate*. x Ibid. f. 6. a. y Ib. f. 19. a.

But on the contrary, where *Ambrose* Earl of *Warwick* had[z] 21 Coats put into his *Plate*, *an.* 5. *Eliz.* and they marshalled in this order, 5. 5. 5. and 6. namely, 1. *Sutton*. 2. *Paganell*. 3. *Grey* of *Ruthin*. 4. *Hastings*. 5 *Quincy*. 6. *Malpas*. 7. *Somery*. 8. *Valence*. 9. *Talbott*. 10. *Warwick*. 11. *Beauchamp*. 12. *Berkley*. 13. *Lisle*. 14. *Gerard*. 15. *Guilford*. 16. *Houlden*. 17. *West*. 18. and 19. quarterly *de la Ware* and *Cantilupe*. 20. *Mortimere* of *Wigmore*. and 21. *Greely*: at the Feast of St. *George* held at *Whitehall*, *an.* 9. *Eliz.* his *Scutcheon* contained but[a] 16. *viz.* 4. 4. 4. and 4. namely, 1. *Sutton*. 2. *Paganell*. 3. *Somery*. 4. *Malpas*. 5. *Grey* of *Ruthin*. 6. *Hastings*. 7. *Valence*. 8. *Ferrers*. 9. *Quincy*. 10. *Chester*. 11. *Talbot*. 12 *Beauchamp*. 13. *Warwick*. 14. *Berkley*. 15. *Gerard*. and 16. *Lisle*. So that here was seven Coats taken out of the former, namely, *Guilford*, *Holden*, *West de la Ware* and *Cantilupe* quarterly, *Mortimere* and *Greely*, and two added, viz. *Ferrars* and *Chester*. z Ib. f. 13. b. a Ib. f. 27. a.

But the greatest and most frequent variations are in the *Stiles* and *Titles* of Honor, set under the *Scutcheons*, and these relate unto, and are occasioned principally from their attaining or resigning of Offices or Dignities.

We find that the *Stile* set under the *Scutcheon* of *Ferdinand* the Emperor, at St. *George*'s Feast, *an.* 1. & 2. *Ph.* & *Mar.* was as followeth,

> [b] *Du tres-hault très-excellent & tres-puissant Prince, Ferdinand par la grace de Dieu Roy des Romaines, de Hungarie, & Bohemie, Archiduc d' Austrie, Duc de Bourgoigne, &c. Chevalier du tresnoble Ordre de la Jarretiere.* b Autogr. penes præf. W. le N. Cl.

But *an.* 5. *Eliz.* in the said Emperors Stile, the Titles of[c] King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* were left out, because *Maximilian* his Son, had a little before obtained (and at that time enjoyed) both those Kingdoms. c MS. fol. penes præf. W. D. N. fol. 9.

In the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, the Stiles of *Philip* King of *Spain* (who while Queen *Mary* lived was Co-*Soveraign* of this most Noble *Order*) run thus,

> [d] *Du tres-hault tres-excellent & tres-puissant Prince, Philip par la grace de Dieu, Roy d' Espaigne, des Deux Cicels, & Jerusalem, Arch-Duc d' Austriæ, Duc de Bourgoigne, Millan, & Brabant, Comte de Hapsburge, Flanders, and Tyroll; Chevalier du tres-noble Ordre de la Jarretiere.* d Autogr. penes præf. W. le N. Cl.

But at the Feasts of St. *George*, *an.* 28. 29. and 30. *Eliz.* the Title of *Catholick Prince* was also given him, *viz.*[e] *Du tres-hault tres-excellent tres-puissant & Catholique Prince Philip, &c.* e Sir Will. f Neves MS. g of Stiles.

And till *an.* 26. *Eliz.* we observe the Title[f] *des Deux Cicils* were continued to him; but[g] *an.* 28. *Eliz.* and so forward, the word *Deux* was omitted,

 nevertheless

h } *Ibid.*
i }

neverthcless [h] *an.* 36. *Eliz.* that word is again added; but withall we find this marginal note entred over against the said Stile, [i] *This was forbidden to be set up at* Greenwich, *the* 22. *of* April, *an.* 1594.

If we proceed with a few instances, relating to *Knights-Subjects*, we shall find that among them, there hath hapned the most frequent alterations, and almost every year some additions or omissions.

k } *MS. fol.*
l } *penes præf.*
WD.N.f.2.

In the Duke of *Norfolk*'s Stile, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* the [k] *Lieutenantship of the North* was omitted. In the Earl of *Rutlands*, at the same Feast, [l] *President of the Council in the North*, was added. The Marquess of *Winchester*, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* caused the Title of [m] *Baron of St. John* to be omitted, because his eldest Son, then bore that honor. In like manner was the Title of [n] *Lord Strange* left out of the Earl of *Derby*'s Stile, *an.* 4. *Eliz.* in regard his Son was then so called, and a *Baron* of *Parliament*. As to these and such like particulars, a multitude of Examples might be cited, but let these suffice.

m } *Ib. fol.*
n } *2. b.*

We shall close this point, with this further observation; That where a *Stranger-Elect*, hath received the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order* (though not installed) he hath been allowed the honor, of having a *Scutcheon* of his *Arms* set on the back of that *Stall* designed for him, on the Eve of St. *George*, next after such his Investiture: an instance whereof we have in the *French* King [o] *Charles* the Ninth, *an.* 7. *Eliz.* the Lord *Hunsdon* having took his journey into *France*, in *May* before, with the *Habit* of the *Order*, and therewith invested the said *King*. But on the contrary it is observed to our hand, that the Emperor *Maximilian*, having been [p] Elected the 24. of *April*, *an.* 8. *Eliz.* had not any *Scutcheon* placed in his Stall the next St. *George*'s Feast; and the reason is there given, [q] *because he had not as then received the* Habit *and* Ensigns *of the* Order.

o *Ib. f.19.a.*

p } *Ibid. fol.*
q } *26. b.*

SECT. VI.

Of adorning the Chappel.

THE *Chappel* where the *Divine Services* are to be celebrated at this *Grand Feast*, whether it be that of St. *George*'s at *Windesor*, or the *Soveraign*'s at *Whitehall*, or elsewhere, in what place soever the *Soveraign* is pleased to keep the day of St. *George*, is usually set forth and adorned with peculiar and most rich Furniture; the care and oversight whereof at *Windesor*, is committed to the *Dean* of the *Colledge*, but at other places, to the *Dean* of the *Chappel* at *Whitehall*.

The *Altar*, as the principal place in the House of *God*, hath been thought worthy (in all times and Churches, where decency and reverence have been retained) of the richest and most costly furniture; and in particular, this in St. *George*'s Chappel at *Windesor*, from time to time, by the addition of pious *Benefactors* hath been adorned with *Vessels*, sumptuous both for materials and workmanship: How plentifully it was stored *an.* 8. *R.* 2. (which was within 36 years after the *Institution* of this most Noble *Order*) with *Plate*, *Jewels*, and other Church *Ornaments*, is evident from an *Inventory*, of all the rich Furniture of the *Chappel*, then taken by *Walter Almaly*, the second *Custos* (or *Dean*) there.

But a great part of these, and other succeeding Contributions towards the Furniture, both of the high *Altar* and this sacred *Chappel*, were in the [a] 2. 3. and 5. years of King *Edward* the Sixth, sold by the mutual consent of the *Dean* and *Canons*, for the sum of [b] 1489 *l.* 8 *s.* 0 *d.* (besides *Copes*, *Vestments*, *Cloths* of *Arras*, *Altar-Cloaths*, *Albes*, *Frontlets*, and other *Ornaments*, which they distributed among themselves) alledging a necessity so to do, for [c] defraying the building of some part of the *Castle Wall*, taking down the high *Altar*, paying the *Tenths* and

a } *MS. penes*
b } *Peregr. Hoby de Bisham in Com.*
c } *Berks ar.*

and *Subsidies* of the inferiour Officers of the *Colledge*, bringing *Water* to their Houses, the charges of *Visitations*, and loss by the fall of *Money*: taking themselves only to be owners and dispofers thereof, by virtue of the first Article in the *Statutes* of *Foundation* of the *Colledge*.

What was left (being but a small portion in comparison of what was there, when one [d] Mr. *Henley* took an Inventory of them *an.* 36. *H.* 8.) appears from an *Inventory* taken the [e] 16. of *July* 1552. by Sir *Philip Hoby*, Sir *Maurice Berkley*, Mr. *Tho. Welden*, and Mr. *John Norrys*, *Commissioners* impowered by the *King* to survey the *Jewels*, *Plate*, and *Ornaments* of all kinds, within the *Colledge* of *Windesor*; as also to take an [f] account from the *Dean* and *Canons* of what things had been sold, alienated, distributed, or made away since their first coming to the said *Colledge*. d e f *Ibid.*

We find very little of Plate or other Ornaments, since this time, bestowed upon this Chappel, until King *James* of blessed memory became *Soveraign* of this most Noble *Order*. But he taking into his pious thoughts the nakedness of this *Altar*, and considering how decently sacred *Utensils* would become the Service of *God*, made some convenient provision for the adorning thereof, which at length was best resolved on and effected, by the free Contributions of the *Knights-Companions* themselves.

For at a *Chapter* held at *Whitehall*, *April* 23. *an.* 16. *Jac. R.* it was Decreed, That every of the *Knights-Companions* (as well those already of the *Order*, as such afterwards admitted into it) should give to the use of the *Altar*, in the said *Chappel*, a [g] piece of *Plate*, of the value of 20 *l.* at the least. And it is evident that whatever had been done in former times, for the greater Ornament of this *Chappel*, was by a general contribution, of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, whose Benevolences were always correspondent to their several Degrees: For thus were the contributions ordered, for the erection of the [h] *Statue* of Saint *George* on Horseback, *an.* 36. *H.* 6. and for finishing the [i] *Rood-loft*, and *Lanthorn* of the Chappel, *an.* 8. *H.* 8. g *Lib.C.p.*191. h *Lib.N.p.*118. i *Ibid.p.*204.

[k] This was again proposed by the late pious *Soveraign*, at another *Chapter* held at *Windesor* the [l] 24. of *November*, *an.* 1. *Car.* 1. *and agreed unto by all the* Knights-Companions *present*, the reverend [m] Doctor *Laud*, then Bishop of *London* (who at that *Feast* officiated in the absence of the *Prelate*, and a zealous promoter of all pious designs) freely and liberally undertaking to bestow a piece of Plate of the like value. k *Lib.R.p.*30. l *Ibid.p.*29. m Episcopus *Londinensis* liberrimè suscepit se similiter tantundem daturum. *Ib.* p. 30.

But it seems, notwithstanding all this ready concurrence, the work went on but slowly; for in a *Chapter* held at *Windesor*, the [n] 24. of *September an.* 4. *Car.* 1. the Feast of St. *George* being then celebrated there, the want of the designed *Plate* being signified, it was therein further Decreed, [o] *That all the present installed* Knights, *should take care before the following Feast of St.* George (*and all other within a year after their Election*) *to send every one of them* 20 *l. at the least to the* Dean *of* Windesor, *to be bestowed in Plate, for the use of the Altar.* And the [p] *Soveraign* being humbly intreated by the *Knights-Companions*, that *He himself (in way of example to all) would bestow some gift, most readily and willingly condescended.* n *Ibid.p.*41. o p *Lib. R. p.*43.

This pious Decree was again confirmed at a *Chapter* held at *Windesor* the [q] 6. of *October an.* 6. *Car.* 1. and [r] *Commissionary Letters* therewithall ordered to issue out forthwith, under the Seal of the Order; whereby the *Dean* and *Canons* of *Windesor* were not only impowered, but commanded, either by themselves or their Deputy, to demand and receive the sums of Money, so decreed to be paid to the use aforesaid; not only from the *Knights-Companions* then living, but also from those who died after the 24. of *November an. Dom.* 1625. q *Lib.R.p.*63. r *Numb.* CLXXI.

And that we may observe, the zeal towards this religious design slept not with the *Soveraign*, on the [s] 13. of *February* following, he gave the said *Dean* order to demand [t] 100 *l.* out of the Privy-Purse, as his own free gift; which was paid the next morning, being [u] an eternal monument of his Kingly piety and devotion. s *Lib.R.p.*70. t u w *Ib.p.*72.

And that it might appear what was given, by whom, and how bestowed, towards the furnishing of the *Altar*, it was also appointed, that a short [w] Historical account

account of these sacred *Offrings* and *Gifts*, should be made and preserved in the *Chapter-house* at *Windesor*.

The *Book* designed for this purpose is now with his Majesty, being a large thin Folio in Vellom, wearing this Title.

ΣΥΝ ΘΕΩ

Memoriæ Veritati, Virtuti

Sacrum,

Altare liberæ Capellæ Regiæ Sancti Georgii Martyris, infra Castrum Regale Windesoriense,

Amplissimis donariis, Deo Opt. Max. per Augustissimum Supremum, & Honoratissimos Commilitones Nobilissimi Ordinis (à Periscelide dicatis) recentèr adauctum.

Describit humilimus Ordinis illius Servus Scriba C. Wren *Decanus Windesoriensis, An. Dom.* 1637.

It contains the Orders made in *Chapter* the 24. of *November* 1625. the 24. of *Septemb.* 1628. the 6. of *Octob.* 1630. with the *Commissionary Letters* which thereupon issued, and the Order of the 13. of *February* following, together with the Names of all the *Knights-Companions* present at each Chapter.

After these follow the *Arms* and *Quarterings*, very fairly limn'd in Metal and Colour, within a *Garter*, over each a *Coronet* suitable to the dignity of the person, and underneath are entred the Stiles of all the *Knights-Companions*, who were of the *Order an.* 1625. or admitted after, to the time of making the Book; as also the sum which each *Knight* paid to the *Register*. But as to any account of *Plate* provided upon the *Soveraign* and succeeding *Knights-Companions* Contributions, there is none, though probably intended, to fill up the many blank leaves that followed.

x *Ib. p.* 68. The x first that presented his Offring, was *Thomas* Earl of *Arundel* and *Surrey*, Earl Marshal of *England, therein giving the rest a noble example, by a delivery of his* 20 l. *into the hands of the* Dean *of* Windesor: So that a competent sum being afterwards collected, and the money decreed by King *Henry* the Eighth to y pious uses, instead of celebrating the *Obits* of deceased *Knights* z added thereunto by Order of *Chapter*, all was wholly employed towards Plate for the foresaid *Altar*.

y *An.* 32. *H.* 8. *Lib. N. p.* 284. z *Ex Collect. D. Chr Wren. paper Ordinis Regist.*

To hasten the payment of these Contributions, the *Dean* and *Canons* deputed *William Ryley*, then Blue Mantle Pursuivant, afterward *Lancaster* Herald at Arms, to collect the Moneys to be raised, both upon the Order of the 6. of *October an.* 6. *Car.* 1. and also upon the *Obits*; and for his pains therein he was allowed * 2 *s.* in the Pound.

* *See Sir James Palmer's accounts for Obit Money.*

But notwithstanding all his diligence and sollicitation, it appeared to the *Chapter* held at *Windesor*, the ‖ 6. of *November an.* 9. *Car.* 1. that there were several of the *Knights-Companions*, and the *Executors* of others yet in arrear, and to the end the same might be speedily collected, there was set (in the said *Chapter*) a penalty in the nature of a *nomine pœnæ*, of * twenty shillings a Month, to be levied upon those, who should longer delay the payment thereof.

‖ 5 *Lib. R.* * 1 *p.* 86.

And now at length (a considerable sum having been collected) the work began to be set on foot, and the Workman made choice of, was one *Christian Van Vianan* of *Utrect*, a man excellently skill'd in chasing of Plate: and to give him due praise in this undertaking, he discovered a rare ingenuity and happy fancy, as the skilful did judge while the Plate was in being, and the designs of each piece yet to be seen (among the present *Soveraign*'s rare collection of Draughts and Sketches) can sufficiently manifest.

The

The agreement with him, made by the forementioned ‖ Earl *Marshal*, Sir *Francis Windebanke*, and Sir *Francis Crane*, then *Chancellor* of this most Noble *Order*, was at 12 *s.* the Ounce; Whereupon (24. *Apr. an.* 10. *Car.* 1.) the *Soveraign* gave command under the Signet of the *Order*, to pay unto him [a] 600 *l.* by way of impress, towards making the Plate, after the receipt of which, he forthwith disposed himself to the work.

‖ *Row's Journ. p.* 21.

a *Lib.R p.*97.

And before the Month of *June* 1637. he had finished and made ready for the use of the *Altar*, nine pieces of Plate, which the [b] 3. of *July* following, were delivered into the *Chapter house* at *Windesor*, Sir *Thomas Rowe* then *Chancellor*, Doctor *Stokes* Lieutenant for the *Dean*, Doctor *Some*, Doctor *Elly*, and Doctor *Collens* then Canons of the said *Colledge*, being present; the particulars whereof with their weight here follows.

b *Ex Autogr. penes præf. Jac. Palmer Cancell. vide porro Row's Journ.p.*21.

	ounce.	*d. weight*
[c] *Two little* Candlesticks, *chased and gilt, for Wax Candles*	92	06
Two Chalices, *with four* Patens	113	1
Two great Candlesticks *neat, for Tapers*	553	15
* *Two little* Basons	251	15
One great Bason	210	00
	1220	17

c *Two little* Candlesticks, *chased and gilt, for Wax Candles* — 92 ounce, 06 d. weight

* *These three Basons contained the whole History of Christ, in chased work.*

	l.	*s.*
The value at 12 *s.* the Ounce came to	732	10
Besides nine Cases	9	10
	742	00
Of which he received by way of [d] impress	600	00
The rest, being	142	00

d *Lib R p.*97.

was paid unto him by Doctor *Stokes*, the foresaid 3. of *July*.

But notwithstanding all the foresaid care taken by the then *Soveraign*, to promote the work; and a subsequent Order passed in *Chapter* the [f] 18. of *April an.* 13. *Car.* 1. commanding the *Chancellor* to signifie the *Soveraign*'s commands, for due payment of the *Obits*, and other sums due according to the *Statutes*, yet were some of the *Knights* so visibly backward in their payments, That, at a *Chapter* held the [g] 14. of *June* following, when the first parcel of Plate before mentioned was finished (an account being given by the *Chancellor* to the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* of [h] 784 *l.* received upon the two Orders aforesaid, and that 774 *l.* thereof had been disbursed) there appeared to be [i] 389 *l.* not undemanded, but unpaid; and which the [k] *Dean* of *Windesor* could not receive, some of the *Knights-Companions* [l] deferring, and others refusing, *&c.* [m] *although there had not wanted diligence both in taking several journies, and giving many sollicitous attendances at* London.

f *Row's Journ. p.* 13.

g, h, i, k *Lib. R. p* 133.

l *Row's Journ. p.*27.

m *Litera ad Cancell. May* 24. 1637.

This Affair being thus represented to the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* present in *Chapter*, their names being also read over who were in arrear, it was thereupon Ordered, [n] *That the* Chancellor *should write in the* Soveraign's *name a peremptory* Letter *to every* Knight-Companion, *so behind in payment, to command present satisfaction, and signifie in case of omission the* Soveraign's *displeasure*, which very much hastned the bringing in of the Arrears; a Copy of which *Letter* here follows.

n *Lib.R.p.*133.

My Lord,

I *Am commanded to put your Lordship in mind of two* Statutes *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *whereof you are a* Knight *and* Companion, *the first being one of the Foundation, that every* Earl *should pay* 50 *s. to the Treasury in* Windesor, *for*

*Row's Journ. p.*31.

for pious uses, upon the death of any Knight, *and* Brother *of the* Order; *and that the money being unpaid one whole year, should be increased one third part, as a Fine, or mulct; the other made in a* Chapter *the sixteenth year of King* James *of blessed memory, and confirmed by three several Acts, of the first, fourth, and sixth years of his Majesty now happily reigning, That as well all the* Knights *of the* Order *then living, as all that should be chosen and admitted then after, should give and pay* 20*l. to the use and ornament of the* Altar, *and* Chappel *of Saint* George *in* Windesor; *according to which* Constitutions, *there having lately been made divers pieces of rich Plate, presented, and consecrated in that* Chappel, *to the neer value of* 800*l. the* Dean *of* Windesor, *and* Register *of the* Order, *being by* Statute Collector *of such moneys received and disbursed, did bring in his full account unto his Majesty, the* Soveraign *and the* Knights *of the* Order, *at the Solemnity of the* Feast *of Saint* George *for this year, held by prorogation upon the* 2. 3. *and* 4. *of* October; *upon the view whereof your Lordship being found behind, and not having paid the sums expressed in the inclosed paper, with the Reasons how they did grow due, taken out of his accompt in writing, it was resolved in full* Chapter, *and registred among the Acts of the* Order, *that those several sums should be called for, and collected before the next* Feast. *In pursuance whereof, I then received command from his* Majesty, *with the approbation and consent of all the* Knights *then assembled, to signifie to your Lordship, under the Signet of the Order the* Soveraign *Will, That you make present payment of your arrearages, and to deliver it unto the bearer hereof, who is appointed* Collector *for this service; which if your Lordship shall delay, or refuse to do, being only the observance of the* Statutes, *to which you are obliged, both in honor and by your Oath; I have also express order to return your answer, and to signifie to you the displeasure of his Majesty, of all which respects I am confident your Lordship will be most tender. And so I humbly take my leave.*

St. Martyns-Lane
9. Nov. 1637.

Your Lordships in all due observance

Tho. Rowe.

And yet notwithstanding all these Injunctions, in the List of the *Knights-Companions*, who ought to have paid, the [o] Earls of *Somerset*, *Sussex*, and *Marr*, were at last returned insolvent.

[o] *See Sir James Palmer's account.*

All this Plate was [p] treble gilt, and thereon were the *Scripture Histories* rarely well designed and chased; and especially the great *Bason*, and the Covers of two *Books* hereafter mentioned; for I find the said *Van Vianan* [q] complaining, that he was a great loser, at the rate agreed upon; so much and so good work had he bestowed on them above the rest.

[p] Vasa argentea tertium deaurata, Operis vere Dædalei.

[q] *See his Accompts.*

Upon the [r] 22. day of *July*, after the delivery of this Plate into the *Chapter-house*, order was given by the *Soveraign* to the *Chancellor*, to remove and carry the afore recited parcels, to *Croyden* or *Lambeth* (whither the *Dean* of *Windesor*, or some of the *Prebends* should also go) there to be consecrated by his Grace Doctor *Laud*, the then *Archbishop* of *Canterbury*; and from thence, they to see it returned, and safely delivered into the Treasury of the *Dean* and *Chapter* of *Windesor*. But they went not thither according to the appointment; for this solemn and sacred action was deferred till the next *Feast* of St. *George*, celebrated at *Windesor*; wherein at a *Chapter* held the 2. of *October* in the year aforesaid, the said Plate was ordered to be [t] offered the next morning at the *Altar*, and there to be consecrated to *God* and his *Service* for ever, by the *Prelate* of the *Order*.

[r] *Row's Journ. p.* 22.

[t] *Ibid. p.* 24.

And because the whole Ceremony was performed with great veneration, and all due reverence, his late *Majesty* being a high promoter of Ecclesiastical decency and holy discipline; we think fit to present it here at large.

On the 3. day of the said Month of *October*, being the *Feast* day (held by *Prorogation* at *Windesor-Castle*) in the time of the [t] *second Service*, at the *Versicle*, *Let your light so shine before men, &c. Walter* Bishop of *Winchester*, then *Prelate*, standing before the middle of the *Altar*, read certain select *Verses* out of the Old *Testament*, concerning the dedication of *Solomons* Temple, and the Riches thereof, the

[t] *Row's Journ. p.* 24. *vide R. p.* 128.

the first of which was taken from the 35. *Chapter* of *Exodus ver.* 4. the second being the 21. *verse* of the same *Chapter*; and the third taken out of the second *Chapter* of St. *Matthew's Gospel verse* 11. and afterwards fitted himself for the *Offring*.

At which time, the *Soveraign* descended from his Throne, as in the manner of *Offring*, and thrice bowed down towards the *Altar*, [u] worshiping and adoring *God* in the middle of the *Choire*, and so past to the Degrees of the *Altar*; where humbly kneeling, did present and offer to *God*, the before mentioned great *Bason*, devoutly saying, [w] *Part of thy bounty to us, O Lord Almighty, I offer to thee and to thy Service.* u w *Ibid.*

The *Offring* was forthwith received by the *Prelate*, and set upon the *Altar*; which done, every one of the *Knights-Companions* present (after the example of this holy King) in their due ranks and single, did offer his piece of dedicated Plate, [x] with the same words, and in like manner. x y *Ibid.*

And that their ordinary *Offring* of *Gold* and *Silver* might not be interrupted or omitted; all the *Knights-Companions* at the time of offring the Plate, [y] made the same in another *Bason*, held by one of the *Prebends*.

Every of these holy *Vessels* being thus offred, and decently placed upon the *Altar*, the *Prelate* with his hand touched every piece severally, [z] as on *God's* part receiving them; and after made the following Prayers of Consecration and Benediction. z *Lib. R. p.* 129.

> O Lord God, heavenly Father, we thy most humble servants do earnestly entreat thee, that thou wilt graciously vouchsafe to accept these sacred Offrings, by the hands of our most gracious Soveraign Lord King Charles, and the most honorable Companions, which are here present dedicated to thee. Grant we beseech thee, and cause, that whatsoever is this day offered unto thee, may be preserved from all profane use, and may for ever abide consecrated to thy service, through Jesus Christ our Lord. Amen.
>
> Let us bless thee our most glorious Lord God, for that it hath pleased thee to put into the heart of our most gracious Lord Charles, and of these Princes, to dedicate these oblations to thy service. Regard we beseech thee, from the Highest Heavens, and power out thy blessings upon the head of his most gracious Majesty: Bless him in his Royal Person, in his most gracious Queen Mary, in the most illustrious Prince Charles, and in all the rest of the Branches of the Royal Stock. Bless we pray thee, all those whose donations offered to thee, we have here this day received: Let thy blessing fall down (as the dew of Heaven) upon them, and upon their posterities, and upon all things which they have from thee; and grant that by the holy and devout use of these things which are here offered, the glory of thy name may ever be proclaimed, and thy Majesty may by these our due observances be exalted, through Jesus Christ our Lord, Amen.

These sacred Ceremonies being * compleated, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* marched to the great Hall to *Dinner*. * *Ib. p.* 130.

But to make some further addition to the Glory of this *Altar*, his *Majesty* that now is, at the time of his *Installation* into this most Noble *Order* (being the 22. of *May* 1638.) [a] offred two large gilt *Water-pots*, chaced with Histories also, weighing 387 Ounces 10 penny weight, wrought all by the hand of that ingenious Artist, the before mentioned *Christian Van Vianan*, which amounting (at 12 *s.* the Ounce) to the sum of 232 *l.* 10 *s.* besides 2 *l.* 16 *s.* for the Cases, and his journey to *Windsor*, *in toto* 235 *l.* 6 *s.* 0 *d.* was paid by [b] Warrant from the *Soveraign*, dated the 20. of *November*, 1638. a *Palmer's Journ. p.* 17. b *Sir Thos Row's Accounts.*

These sacred *Vessels* were afterwards delivered by [c] *Indenture*, one part remaining with the *Chancellor*, and the other with the *Dean* and *Chapter* of *Windsor*, to be kept for the service of the *Altar*. c *Palmer's Journ. p.* 17.

And

And yet the bounty of this pious *Soveraign*, King *Charles* the *Martyr*, rested not here; he thought the *Altar* was not with all these sufficiently furnished, and therefore finding, by an [d] Account rendered by the *Chancellor* in *Chapter*, the 23. of *May* 1638. that there had been collected (upon the afore-mentioned *Letter* of the 9. of *November* 1637. sent from the *Chancellor*) 137 *l.* 4 *s.* more, to the end it might be also employed, in further addition towards this so pious a work, and so religious a design; the said [e] Money was by Sir *Philip Palmer*, then *Deputy Chancellor*, immediately given to the said *Christian Van Vianan*, by way of impress, for the providing of more Plate for the use also of the said *Altar*; and the 25. of *March* following, a [f] *Warrant* issued under the *Soveraign*'s hand, and Signet of the *Order*, for the advancing 200 *l.* more to the said *Van Vianan*, for finishing this additional Plate, bespoken by the *Soveraign*, as aforesaid; which sum was paid unto him, the [g] 27. of *March* following.

d *Ib. p.* 22.

e *Ex Autogr. penes præf. Jac. Palmer*

f *Penes præf. Jac Palmer.*

g *See Vianans Acquit.*

The Plate made upon the last advance, was two great *Candlesticks*, weighing together [h] 471 Ounces; on the foot of the one, was excellently chaced, the Histories of *Christ*'s preaching in the Mount; and on the other, those of the lost *Groat* and *Sheep*. Two Covers for *Books*, both weighing 233 Ounces; the one for a *Bible*, contained the Histories of *Moses* and the *Tables*, *David* and the *Ark* on the one side, and on the other, *Christs* preaching on the Mount, the sending of the *Holy Ghost*, and St. *Paul* falling from his Horse. The other Cover was for the *Common-Prayer*; having the *Angel* of *Incense* on the one side, and the *King* healing the *Evil*, the manner of our *Preaching* and *Christning* on the other: and two great *Flaggons*, whereon were the Histories of *Christ*'s *Agony* and *Passion*, weighing 268 Ounces; all being Silver gilt.

h *See Vianans Accounts.*

And now if we sum up the number, weight, and value of all the before mentioned parcels of Plate, wrought by the said *Van Vianan*, for the service of the *Altar*, we shall find them to be 17. pieces, weighing 3580 Ounces, 7 Penny weight, and amounting (with some other small Charges) to the sum of 1564 *l.* 6 *s.*

These last mentioned Parcels, were finished against the *Feast* of St. *George* held at *Windesor*, the [i] 8. 9. and 10. days of *October* 1639. upon the last day of which *Feast*, in the time of the *second Service*, the *Knights-Companions* descended from their Stalls, and [k] *Offred* the same at the *Altar*; and thereupon, after the usual manner, and with the accustomed words, were they consecrated by the *Prelate* of the *Order*: and the [l] 19. of *November* following, delivered to the custody of the *Dean* and *Canons* of *Windesor*.

i *Palm. Journ. pro an.* 1639. *p.* 16.

k *Ibid. p.* 63.

l *Ex Autogr. penes præf. Jac. Palmer.*

And doubtless, this pious *King* would have bestowed much more in honor of this sacred place, had not the late unhappy times drawn on; an Age indeed so wicked, that the most solemn dedication to *God*, could not protect these holy *Vessels* from prophane hands; for a Generation rose up, who would have us think, they did *God* good service, when they stript his *Church*, of all that the piety of our Ancestors, for his sake, had endowed it with: and among other sacred places, this *Chappel* of St. *George* received not the least share of misfortune.

For on the 23. of *October* 1642. (Sir *John Seyton* having that day seized on *Windesor Castle*, for the *Parliament*) one [m] Captain *Fog* came immediately to the *Colledge*, and demanded the Keys of the *Treasury*; but not finding the three Key-Keepers, he caused a Smith to make strong Bars of Iron, who with them brake down the stone jaums, forced open two doors, and [n] carried thence all the aforesaid rich chased and other *Plate*, made sacred and set apart for the service of *God*; (except two double gilt *Chalices* weighing 62 Ounces, and two double gilt *Flagons*, weighing 98 Ounces one half) an action to be stigmatized with an indelible Brand!

m } *Ex Autog.* n } *penes D. Chr. Wren nuper Ord. Regist.*

[o] About the end of *May* following (not long before the Recess of the *Colledge*) Collonel *Ven*, then Governor of *Windesor Castle* for the *Parliament*, was instant with the *Dean* of *Windesor*, and the *Officers* there, that he might see, what Goods were in the *Chapter-house* and *Vestiaries*; which having viewed, he within a few days after demanded all the Keys, and kept them; saying, [p] *The Charge of them, as well as of the* Castle, *lay on him, and he would keep them.* How he afterwards disposed of the Ornaments and rich Goods, hitherto safely deposited there, for holy

o } *Ex alio* p } *Autogr. penes præf. D. Chr. Wren.*

holy uses, and service of the *Chappel*, I cannot tell; but this I can assure, that the *Inventory* following, is a perfect transcript, from the Copy thereof made by the hand of Doctor *Chr. Wren*, the late reverend and worthy *Dean*, out of the *Colledge Book*, and by him delivered to me, of all the particulars, Collonel *Ven* so possest himself of.

A Memorial of the *Goods* and *Monuments* belonging to the King's Majesty's Free *Chappel* and *Treasury* at *Windesor*.

Imprimis, 6 *Long* Cushens *of Cloth of (wire) Gold, fringed and tasselled suitably.*
Item, 2 *other long* Cushens *of Cloth of Gold, interwoven with tufted Flowers of Crimson Velvet fringed, and tasselled suitably.*
Item, *One other long* Cushen *of Cloth of Gold, backt with Blue wrought Velvet, fringed and tasselled, Gold and Blue.*
Item, 4 *Long* Cushens *of rich wrought Velvet, Blue, fringed and tasselled suitably.*
Item, 8 Cushens *of wrought Velvet Azure, upon a yellow ground bottomed suitably.*
Item, *The* Hangings *of the head of the* Choire, 12 *foot deep, of Crimson Velvet and Gold.*
Item, *The great* Bible *ruled, covered with Purple Velvet, with thick Silver bosses double gilt, strung with Blue Ribband, fringed with Gold.*
Item, *Another large* Bible *imbossed.*
Item, 13 *Rich* Copes, *embroidered and wrought in Gold.*
Item, 2 *Rich* Copes *of Wire-Gold.*
Item, *A* Pulpet-Cloth *and long* Cushen *of Crimson tufted Velvet, interwoven with Gold.*
Item, *Another larger* Pulpet-Cloth, *Crimson Damask, interwoven thick with Flowers de Lis, Portcullices, Roses, and Crowns of Gold.*
Item, *The Blue Velvet* Robe *of* Gustavus Adolphus *King of* Sweden, *embroidered with the* Garter, *Pearl and Gold, with the Strings and Tassels suitable, Blue and Gold.*
Item, 4 *Other rich* Robes *of Purple Velvet, with like Embroideries, Strings, and Tassels.*
Item, 2 *Large Pieces of* Cloth *of* Gold, *never used (designed for State Cloths) given out of the Wardrobe to the Colledge.*
Item, *A large* Carpet *of Wire-Gold, for the Communion Table.*
Item, *A large* Cushen *of the same suit.*
Item, *The* Cloth *of* State *of rich Baudekin, over the Kings Seat, and at the back.*
Item, *Another of Crimson and Gold Velvet, checquered.*
Item, *A great Brass pendant* Candlestick, *with* 12 *Branches.*
Item, *One lesser, with 6 Branches.*
Item, *6 Great Brass Spouts, to quench Fires.*
Item, 12 Leather-Buckets.
Item, *The great Brass* Bason, *given by the* Founder, *with a foot to it for Christnings.*
Item, 2 *Fair standing Brass* Candlesticks, *double gilt.*
Item, *One Brass* Lamp, *to hang in the body of the Church.*
Item, *The great Brass* Desk *in the middle of the Chappel, with the Bible in two Volumes, on each side fairly bound and embossed.*
Item, 13 Seats *of the* Poor-Knights, *lined with Scarlet, &c.*
Besides all the long Wainscot Pews *moveable, serving at the Sermons and Divinity Lectures, thrice in the week.*
Item, 19 Wainscot Seats, *with Ballisters, &c.*

But no less pious than his Predecessors, hath the present *Soveraign* manifested himself, who finding (shortly after his happy Restauration) that through the licentious barbarism of the late times, the sacred *Utensils* formerly dedicated to

the use of the *Altar*, had been sacrilegiously plundred, and being religiously earnest to set again on foot, so laudable a way of provision, for supply of all things necessary to its service and ornament, upon the [q] Petition of the *Dean* and *Canons* of *Windesor*, exhibited in *Chapter* held at *Whitehall* the 20. of *June*, did with the cheerful and ready consent of the *Knights-Companions*, revive the foresaid *Decrees*, for raising the like sums of money, both from *Himself*, and the present and future *Knights-Companions*, which by virtue of the foresaid Decrees had been formerly collected.

q } *Lib. Carol.* r } *pag.* 32, & s } 33.

Hereupon, his [r] Highness *James* Duke of *York*, bestowed a fair piece of Plate of 100 *l.* value, and the [s] Earl of *Southampton* gave not only what the *Statutes* required, but half as much more, towards the Plate designed to be bought with the rest of the *Knights-Companions* Money. And to enable Dr. *Brune Ryves* the now *Dean* of *Windesor*, to collect and receive, not only from the rest of the present *Knights-Companions*, but all other, within one year after their Election, the sum of 20 *l.* a piece, and thereof to give an account at the following *Chapter*, and so successively of slackness or failer if any should be, the *Soveraign* in *November* following, issued out his *Warrant* unto him, under the Sign Manual and the Signet of the Order.

How the money hereby collected was bestowed, as also what other *Plate* was added to the Furniture of the said *Altar*, by some other piously disposed persons, will appear by the following *Inventory*, taken by Dr. *Browne* Chanter, and Dr. *Evans* Steward of the *Colledge*, the 20. of *July* 1667. and from them transmitted to my hand.

A pair of plain gilt Flaggons, *bought with the money collected from the* Knights-Companions, *weighing* 150 *Ounces.*

A pair of wrought Flaggons, *with great Bellies, having the Figure of St.* George *on Horseback on their Covers, the rest all* Feather-work, *bought with the* Knights *money, weighing* 414 *Ounces.*

One plain small Bason, *wrought and gilt only in the middle of it, weighing* 25 *Ounces and one half.*

A pair of plain gilt Chalices *and Covers, bought also with the* Knights *money, both weighing* 163 *Ounces and one quarter.*

A large embost Bason, *with the Figure of* Mary Magdalen, *washing our* Saviours *Feet, weighing* 198 *Ounces.*

A pair of large Taper Candlesticks *embost, with Nozles to them, weighing* 264 *Ounces.*

These Candlesticks *and* Bason *were obtained of her Highness Princess* Mary *about* November 1660. *by Dr.* Brown, *but she dying before the following* Christmas, *the charge (being* 233 *l. odd money) lay upon the* Colledge.

A pair of large Basons *gilt and embossed with the History of* Christ, *at his last Supper upon one; and on the other, of* Christ *blessing the young Children coming to him, being obtained by Dr.* Brown *of her Highness the Dutchess of* York 1661. *both weighing* 305 *Ounces.*

A plain gilt Corporas, *the gift of Sir* Richard Fanshaw, *weighing* 24 *Ounces.*

A double gilt Chalice *and Cover, with a broad Foot, having a Cross on the Cover, and another on the foot; the gift of the Lady* Mary Heveningham, *weighing* 33 *Ounces.*

We see in the foregoing *Inventory*, taken 1643. that formerly there was belonging to the *Altar* a large *Carpet* of Wyre-Gold, this we find mentioned in the *Inventories* taken the 4. of *February, an.* 43. *Eliz.* the 9. of *November, an.* 17. *Jac. R.* and the 12. of *December* 1638. *an.* 14. *Car.* 1. and being seized on by Collonel *Ven*, as aforesaid, is now supplied in a Covering, given by the present *Soveraign*, consisting of seven panes of Cloth of Gold, and purple Velvet, with a fair broad Gold Fringe towards the Front, and a narrow Gold Fringe on the two sides. There is now also two Diaper *Table-Cloths*, Diamond work, made to

to lye upon the *Altar*, and two fine Holland *Cloths*, with great Buttons and red Crosses in the middle, to cover the consecrated *Elements*, in the time of the Communion.

If we should pass hence to the ancient Ornaments of the *Chappel*, we shall find them many and rich, even so early as [t] *an.* 8. *R.* 2. but because their particular mention will better suit with the larger Discourse, we intend upon the *Chappel* it self, we shall refer it to that work, and here remember only these two, namely the *Image* of our *Lady*, and *Equestrian Statue* of St. *George*.

[t] *See the Inventory of them taken by Walter Almaly.*

There is notice taken of an [u] *Image* of the blessed Virgin *Mary*, given to this *Chappel* by King *Henry* the Fifth, in the first year of his Reign, which weighed 117 pound Troy weight. He liking the workmanship, caused [w] *John Cause* a skilful *Dutch* Goldsmith, to give some additional ornament thereto; after which, it then weighed *Troy* weight 165 pound and one quarter; and this *Image*, in the [x] 9. year of his Reign, he commanded to be set up in St. *George*'s *Chappel*, there to remain for ever.

[u] *MS. vet.* [w] *penes Sil.* [x] *Taylor gen. fol.* 159.

As to the other, there is an Order of *Chapter*, *an.* 36. *H.* 8. entred in the [y] *Black-Book*, by which it appears, that the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* (to increase the honor of their *Patron*) agreed to raise money and employ it towards making his [z] *Statue* sitting on Horseback; the *Soveraign*'s proportion of this contribution was 5 *l.* every *Duke* gave 2 *l.* an *Earl* 1 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.* a *Baron* 1 *l.* and a *Batchellor Knight* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* These two being thus mentioned, we need insert no more here, seeing that *Inventory* taken *an.* 8. *R.* 2. and the others since, will afford plenty of such like rich and excellent pieces of work, which heretofore belonged to this sacred place.

[y] [z] *Pag.* 118.

The *East wall* of the *Chappel* is now adorned with 22 panes of Cloth of Gold and Purple Damask, the gift of the present *Soveraign*: But those in the late *Soveraign*'s Reign were of Crimson Velvet and Gold. In the middle of these Hangings over the *Altar*, have been heretofore placed very rich *Altar-Cloths*, concerning some of which, we have met with a Memorial, which informs us, that it pleased the late *Soveraign*, in a *Chapter* held at *Windesor* the [a] 6. of *November an.* 9. *Car.* 1. to give command, that two little pieces of *Arras* Hangings, then hanging over the *Altar* (in one of which was wrought the [b] Picture of St. *George* on Horseback, and on the other, of the *Assumption* of the [c] blessed *Virgin*) should be preserved in such places where the *Dean* and his *Lieutenant* should think best, for the use of the said *Altar* at the *Grand Feast*, and other *Festivals* of the *Order*: Hereupon they were [d] fetched from *Windesor*, to set over the *Altar* in the *Chappel* at *Whitehall*, *an.* 11. *Car.* 1. the *Feast* of St. *George* being then celebrated there.

[a] [b] [c] *Lib. R. p.* 88.

[d] *Lord Chamberlains Book of Warrants, ab an.* 1634. *ad an.* 1641. *p.* 56.

There are now two other pieces of *Arras*, which are appointed to that use; the one hath the Pictures of *Christ* and his *Disciples* at Supper; given by the late Right Reverend Father in God *Bryan* Lord Bishop of *Winchester*, *Prelate* of the *Order*; the other, of *Christ* and the two *Disciples* at *Emmaus*, wrought after *Titian*'s Original, given by the right Honorable, the Lady *Mordant*, Wife to the Lord *Mordant*, late Constable of *Windesor*.

As to the *Soveraign*'s *Royal Stall*, it hath in all times had over it a rich *Canopy*, the back and foreparts adorned with materials of the same sute, with a long Velvet *Cushen* before, to lay his Books on, another shorter for his Seat, and a third to kneel on. The *Canopy* prepared against the *Grand Feast*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 2. and which now adorns it, is made of two panes of Purple Velvet, and one of Cloth of Gold, having a broad Gold Fringe at the bottom, a narrow one at the top, and an inner Valance of the same, with a Purple Silk Fringe; the back and fore piece is of three panes also, one of Gold, the other two of Purple Velvet, with a narrow Gold Fringe about it. The three *Cushens* are of Purple Velvet, garnished with Gold Fringe, and Tassels of Silk and Gold.

Each of the *Knights-Companions* Stalls, are also furnished with the like number of *Cushens*.

Lastly, The *Pulpit* is hung with Crimson Damask, inwrought with small Flowers of Gold, Portculliees, Flowers de Lis and Roses, all crowned; this

Pulpet-Cloth was preserved from the ravenous hands of Collonel *Fen*, and now restored to its former use.

It may be judged how other of the *Soveraign's Chappels*, wherein the solemn Services at the *Grand Feast* were celebrated, besides this of St. *George* at *Windesor*, have been set forth and adorned, by one or two Examples in that kind; for [c] *an.* 22. *H.* 8. though the *Soveraign* held the *Feast* of St. *George* at *Windesor*, yet on the *Evening*, he went not to St *George's Chappel*, but heard Divine Service in the *Chappel* above in the upper Quadrangle (at the West end of St. *George's Hall*) which [f] *Chappel* was hanged on both sides, a rich Cloth of State set up, and a haut pas of a foot high for the *Soveraign*, as also a little foot pace, 13 inches broad, and 7 inches high for him to kneel at. The [g] *High Altar* and that set before the *Soveraign*, were richly garnished with Images and other Ornaments of Gold and Silver gilt, *&c.*

c { *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [*M* 17 *fol.* 32.

We also find, that at the *Feast* of St. *George* held at *Whitehall*, [h] *an.* 5. *Eliz.* the [i] *Chappel* was hung with Cloth of Gold, and the Stalls both before and behind with Cloth of Tissue, set with Scutcheons at their back. The *Soveraign's* Royal Stall was adorned with a Cloth of State, and furnished with Cushens, as were the *Emperor's*, the *French* King's, and the *Soveraign's* Lieutenant's. But [k] *an.* 7. *Eliz.* all the Stalls of the same *Choire* were hung with Carpets, both before and behind.

h { *MS. penes* i { *W.D.N. f.* 9. *b. vide etiam MS. f.* 20.

k *Ibid. f.* 20.

At the *Feast* held there *an.* 19. *Car.* 2. the *Chappel* was hung with the rich Hangings of Silk and Gold, wherein the twelve Months were with excellent skill described. The *Altar* was furnished with chased gilt Plate, *viz.* one large *Bason* in the middle, and two less on either side, two fair *Candlesticks* with unlighted Tapers, and two large *Water-Pots*; on the lower rank was set another *Bason*, four *Flaggons* and two *Service-Books*, covered with like gilt Plate; and lastly, the *Soveraign's Stall* had the rich Furniture of Cloth of Gold and Purple Velvet fetcht from *Windesor* to adorn it.

SECT. VII.

The furnishing of St. George's Hall.

THE care of making ready and furnishing St. *George's Hall* (or other *Room*, either there or elsewhere, set apart for the *Grand Dinner*) is committed partly to the *Gentleman-Usher* of the *Black-Rod*, and partly to the *Soveraign's Surveyor General* of his Works.

The *Surveyor-General*, upon directions given him by *Warrant* from the Lord *Chamberlain* of the *Houshold*, causeth a Floor to be raised at the upper end of the *Hall*, whereunto is an ascent of three steps, and thereon he raiseth a *Table* 12 Foot long, and 3 foot and a half broad for the *Soveraign* to dine at. On the left hand of this Table, is set a *Cupboard* for Plate, and a *side Table* for Glasses, *&c.* to serve the *Soveraign's* Table, as occasion shall require. Upon the uppermost step of the raised Floor, is set a strong Rail with Banisters cross the Hall, to keep off the Croud from the *Soveraign's* Table, that so the *Officers* appointed to attend thereat, may with more liberty perform their several Duties and Services.

On the right hand of the *Soveraign's State*, and below the Rails, are *Tables* placed for the *Knights-Companions* to dine at, which sometimes hath been but [l] one Table, continued to the lower end of the Hall, with a long Form on the back side; but of late the same space hath been taken up, and furnished with several small Tables; those set up *an.* 23. *Car.* 2. were 6 foot long, and 4 and a half broad, and set at two Foot distance, each from the other. At the *Grand Feast* held

l. *MS. in Offic. Armor.* [*M.* 17] *f.* 28.

held at *Whitehall*, [m] *an. 8. Car.* 1. the *Tables* for the *Knights-Companions* were (like the *Soveraign*'s) fenced in with Rails; within which the Waiters only being admitted, the Dishes of Meat and the Banquet, were thereby handsomly freed from the troublesome (yet usual) croud and rapine of the people; the like hath been done at all times since, with Bars to open and shut against every Table.

Opposite to these, between the Hall Windows, are set so many side Tables, each 5 foot long, and 2 and a half broad, all railed in with Bars, as are the Tables provided for the *Knights-Companions*; so that each of theirs hath a side Table, furnished with Plate, Glasses, Wine, Beer, *&c.* to serve it.

The *Hall* being thus far prepared, the *Black-Rod* receives the Lord *Chamberlain*'s *Warrant*, for taking into his Custody such rich and costly Furniture, both for the *Soveraign*'s *State*, and hanging the *Hall*, as is thought worthy to contribute to the honor of this Festival. The *State*, placed at the upper end of the *Hall* before the *Soveraign*'s *Table*, is usually the richest; the *Hangings* of the best sort: and such were the four pieces of *Arras*, wherein were wrought the History of St. *George*, bought by [n] King *Henry* the Sixth. The Story of *Abraham* and *Lot* (most curious for design and workmanship, most costly for Silk and Gold) with the rich [o] State, Chair, Cushens, and Stools belonging to the *Queen*'s Privy Chamber, did adorn the *Presence-Chamber* at the *Feast* held at *Whitehall*, *an.* 11. *Car.* 1. And the same Hangings were made use of in the *Banqueting* House there, *an.* 19. *Car.* 2.

And in case the appearance at *Windesor*, of the Nobility and great Personages, with their Trains, be extraordinary, then doth the *Soveraign*, upon such an occasion, direct his *Letters* to the *Dean* and *Prebends*, desiring them to give way, that the *Black-Rod* may survey their Houses, and therein appoint Lodgings for so many as may be entertained there; and thus was it done, upon the coming hither of the Emperor *Sigismond*, [p] *an.* 7. *H.* 5. for the *Soveraign* being desirous that their Servants and Attendants, as well as others of his own Retinue, might be in all respects handsomly accommodated, and because the Priviledge was granted to the *Dean* and *Canons*, in the *Charter* of 27. *E.* 3. That no person, of what state or condition soever, might upon any colour lodge or tarry in their Houses without their consent; he thereupon wrote his [q] *Letter* to them, thereby desiring liberty and allowance, for the *Black-Rod* to take up Lodgings in their Houses, in such an extraordinary case; yet withal signified, it was not his intention, that under colour of this they should be so charged for the future.

In [r] *May an.* 23. *Car.* 2. a little before the *Grand Feast* was held at *Windesor*, there fell out some dispute between the *Gentlemen-Ushers* daily Waiters, and the *Knight-Harbenger*, who should appoint Lodgings in the *Dean* and *Prebends* Houses, for any of the *Knights-Companions*, or other persons of quality of the Court. The [t] *Knight Harbenger*, alledged that by his *Patent* he ought to assign Lodgings for all persons, that are not lodged in the *King*'s *Palace*, and that the *Gentlemen-Ushers* have nothing to do either without the *King*'s *House*, or with those who are not the *King*'s *Houshold-Servants*, as some of the *Knights-Companions* are not. But after much discourse on both sides, before the Lord *Chamberlain* of the *Houshold*, which occasioned a further enquiry into the matter, the only person for this Affair, appeared to be the [u] *Gentleman-Usher* of the *Black-Rod*, who is an *Officer* of the *Order* within the *Colledge*, and whose Predecessor carried the before mentioned Letter from King *Henry* the Fifth, to the *Dean* and *Canons*; besides he is one, whom they have since willingly admitted of in such occasions, and consequently not been invaded by a strange *Officer*, and thereupon were the [u] pretensions of the *Knight-Harbinger* set aside.

m. *Lib. R. p.* 78.

n *Lib. Vnc. Cotton. in Offic. Mag. Garrob. f.* 96. *b.*

o *Lord Chamberlain's Book of Warrants from* 1634. *to* 1641. *p.* 56.

p *Lib. N pag.* 57.

q *Appendix N.* CLXXII.

r, t, u *A Book entituled St. George's Feast, in the Lord Chamberlains Office.*

SECT.

SECT. VIII.

Officers *and* Servants *appointed to attend at the* Grand Feast.

THE Names of those *Noblemen*, which the *Soveraign* appoints to the principal Offices of this *Grand Feast*, are put into a List, signed by the Lord *Chamberlain* of the Houshold, and delivered to the *Black-Rod*, who is to give them notice some convenient time before the *Feast* begin, that thereupon they may fit themselves to perform the duty of their several places.

[w] *Lord Chamberlains Book of Warrants, from 1634, to 1641 pag. 256.*

[w] A List of those *Lords* that gave attendance at the *Grand-Feast*, *an.* 14. *Car.* 2. when the present *Soveraign* was Installed.

For the Sword.
Earl of Northampton.
The Great Bason.
Earl of Bedford.
Earl of Hertford.
Earl of Clare.
Earl of St. Albons.
Lord Herbert *of* Ragland.
The Cupbearer.
Earl of Essex.
The Carver.
Earl of Carlisle.
The Sewer.
Earl of Dover.
The Surnap.
Earl of Elgin.
The Ewer.
Earl of Devonshire.
The Train.
Lord Russel.
Lord Herbert.
Lord Cranborne.

A List of those *Lords* that attended the *Soveraign*, at St. *George's Feast* held at *Windesor* the 8. of *October*, *an.* 15. *Car.* 1.

For the Sword.
Earl of Denbigh.
The Great Bason.
Earl of Denbigh.
Earl of Monmouth.
Lord Edward Howard.
Lord Herbert *of* Cardiff.
The Cupbearer.
Lord Herbert *of* Cardiff.
The Carver.
Lord Wharton.
The Sewer.
Lord Grandison.
The Surnap.
Lord Edward Howard.
The Ewer.
Lord Slego.
The Train.
Duke of Buckingham.
Earl of Oxford.
Lord Buckhurst.

The *Gentlemen* of the *Soveraign's Privy-Chamber*, who bear the *Canopy*, are those that are at the time of the *Feast* in waiting; and these that follow performed that service at the *Feast* held in *October*, *an.* 15. *Car.* 1.

[x] *Ibid. p.* 340.

[x] *Mr.* Gilbert North.
Mr. John Carey.
Mr. John Frecheville.
Captain John Tyringham.
Mr. Edward Tyringham.
Sir Peter Kellegrew.
Mr. Henry Wentworth.
Sir William Berkeley.
Sir Henry Bruce.
Sir Richard Young.
Sir Robert Winde.
Sir John Weldram.

Besides

Besides these, several other of the *Soveraign's Officers* and *Servants* have notice from the Lord *Chamberlain*, to give their particular attendance at the *Grand Feast*, and of what quality they usually are, will appear by the List of those appointed to attend at *Windesor* the 29. of *May*, *an.* 23. *Car.* 2.

y Lord *Chamberlain*, and Servants.
Mr. *Vice-Chamberlain.*
Groom of the *Stool.*
Gentlemen of the *Bedchamber.*
Bedchamber-men.
Privy-Purse.
Secretaries of *State.*
Secretaries of *Scotland.*
Gentlemen-Ushers of the *Privy-Chamber.*
12 *Gentlemen* of the *Privy-Chamber* in waiting.
4 *Gentlemen-Ushers daily Waiters.*
2 *Carvers.*
2 *Cupbearers.*
2 *Sewers.*
8 *Quarter-Waiters, Gentlemen-Ushers.*
2 *Pages* of the *Presence.*
2 *Chaplains.*
2 *Esquires* of the *Body.*
2 *Physicians.*
2 *Apothecaries.*
2 *Chyrurgeons.*
4 *Serjeants* at *Arms.*
Mrs. *Sempstress* and *Landress* to his *Majesty.*
8 *Sewers* of the *Chamber.*
4 *Grooms* of the *Chamber.*
Pages of the *Back-stairs.*
14 *Lords* to attend his Majesty.
Captain of the *Guards.*
Officers of the *Guard.*
Officers of the *Robes.*
Yeomen of the *Guard.*
2 *Grooms* of the *Privy-Chamber.*
3 *Masters* of the *Tents.*
Groom-Porter.
Master of the *Ceremonies.*
Marshal of the *Ceremonies.*
Aid of the *Ceremonies.*
Removing Wardrobe.
Jewel-house.
Gentlemen of the *Chappel.*
Musicians.
5 *Messengers.*
Yeomen of the *Bows* and *Guns.*
16 *Trumpeters.*
Captain Cook, and the *Children* of the *Chappel.*
Serjeant-Trumpeter.
Drum-Major, 4 *Drummers* and a *Fife.*

St. Alban.

y *A Book intituled St. George's Feast in the Lord Chamberlains Office.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

THE ORDER OF THE Ceremonies ON THE Eve OF THE Grand Feast.

SECT. I.

Of the beginning of the Grand Feast.

HAving in the precedent *Chapter* spoken somewhat of the *Institution* of the *Grand Festival*, which the *Statutes* of this most Noble *Order* have fixed to the day of St. *George*; we come now to treat of its *Celebration*, with the Ceremonies performed throughout this great Solemnity, devised to set forth and illustrate the glory thereof: In the observation of which, both the first *Institutor*, and all succeeding *Soveraigns* have shewn the utmost of their provision and care: well knowing, that what is once slightly observed, will soon fall into disesteem, if not contempt. And here, what first occurs to our consideration, are the *Day*, the *Hour*, and the *Place*, when and where the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* are to meet, in order to the beginning of the *Feast*.

As to the first, although St. *George*'s *day* (or such other day as the *Soveraign* shall please to nominate and appoint, by *Prorogation* in lieu thereof) be indeed the principal and *Grand day* of the *Feast*, yet does the *Feast* take commencement upon the *Eve*, and determines not until the third day following; and so the whole Solemnity takes up, inclusively, three days.

And this is clear from several *Articles* of the *Statutes*, wherein the course of the Ceremonies, to be observed at this *Grand Solemnity*, are set down; whether performed on the *Eve*, the *Feast-day*, or the *Morrow* after: And these three days together did the *Soveraigns* hold the *Grand Feast*, whether they personally celebrated

celebrated the same, or deputed other of the *Knights-Companions* to that Employment, the Clause in the *Commissions* of *Deputation*, limiting their power, either in general, *during the time of the Feast*; or in particular, *upon the day of St.* George, *the day going before, and that following, viz.* the last day of the *Feast*. In like manner, when in succeeding times, *Commissions* of *Prorogation* of the *Grand Feast* were made use of, we find the three days continuance of the *Feast* to be particularly mentioned in the body of those *Commissions*, namely, the day wherein (by such appointment) the *Feast* was to begin, the *Grand day* it self, and the day whereon it ended.

The directions given in the *Statutes*, for the order and course of this Solemnity, to begin with the *Eve*, run thus, [a] *Every year, upon St.* George's Eve, *shall be an assembly or meeting of all the* Knights-Companions *of the* Order, *at* Windesor *Castle, &c.* and the same is positively enjoined by all other [b] Bodies of the *Statutes*.

And as the *Grand Feast* is generally, and for the most part, said to take commencement, [c] *in Vigilia Sancti Georgii*, or, as it is otherwise exprest in the [d] *Black-Book*, *in Vigilia future celebritatis*, or, [e] *Vigiliis Divi Georgii*, or, [f] *in Vigilia Festi*: So hath the *time* of this preceding day several other denominations given unto it in the same *Register*, as [g] *Vesperi ante diem Sancti Georgii*, [h] *in Vesperiis Georgianis*, [i] *in Vesperiis Festi*, [k] *in Vesperiis Commitionum*, and other whiles [l] *Pridie Divi Georgii*, [m] *Pridie Georgianæ Solemnitatis*, [n] *Pridie Festi*, [o] *Pridie feriarum Divi Georgii*, and sometimes [p] *Pervigilia*, and lastly in plain English, [q] *St. George's Even*. All which signifie one and the same thing, and are but various names given to the Evening of the day foregoing, either that of St. *George*, or that whereon the *Grand Feast* is appointed to be held by *Prorogation*.

Thus we see, the *Founder* began his Solemnity upon the *Eve* of the *Feast-day*; which doubtless was in conformity to the Custom of the *Church*, who made the *Vigils* and *Eves* part of the ensuing *Festivals*, and as Ushers to the Grand Solemnities. And because the meaning of the word, and first occasion of observing also the *Eves* of Solemn Days, or great Feasts, by the *Church*, may haply be to many unknown; it will be here proper enough, to give a touch upon the original of this Custom.

Hospinian handling this particular, in his Book *De origine Festorum Christianorum*, draweth the antiquity of *Vigils* out of the Epistle of *Plinius secundus*, and the authority of Ecclesiastical Writers, from the *Apostles* times, and the next succeeding Age; for saith he, [r] *In the* Apostles *days, and sometime after, when the* Christians *durst not appear in publick, because of the continual snares, Treacheries, and persecution of Tyrants, and Enemies of their Religion; they were forced to meet in the night time, and early before day, for the exercise of their devotion. And in the first* Church *after the times of the* Apostles, *when they stood not in fear of any persecution, they* [s] watched *and* fasted *in their* Churches *all the week before* Easter, *or* Passion-week; *but especially on the* Eve *of the* Resurrection; *whence grew the Custom, both for Christian men and Women, to* [t] watch *and* fast *on the* Eves *of great* Solemnities, *in their* Churches; *and at the* Sepulchres *of* Saints *and* Martyrs.

And *Durand* gives a reason, why these meetings were called *Vigils*, [u] *because anciently in the principal* Feasts *two Nocturnal Offices were performed* [probably Watching and Praying] *for the People which came to the* Feasts, *watcht all night in the* Churches, *spending their time in the praises of God.*

But as the best things may be abused, even *Virtue* and *Religion* it self, so it hapned in this religious duty, as *Hospinian* thus further relates, [w] *That forasmuch as in process of time, these* Nocturnal Watchings *occasioned much wickedness, therefore were the* Women *forbidden access thereto*; [x] *because under pretence of Prayer, great abuses were oftentimes committed.*

Whence it came, that these kinds of *Vigils*, as [a] *Durand* affirms, were also at length prohibited; which prohibition received confirmation from [b] Pope *Innocent* the Third, in the year of our Lord 1215. and in the room thereof *Jejunia*, or *Fasts*, were appointed. [c] Nevertheless those sorts of *Fasts* still retained the name of *Vigils*, as most properly implying the Duty originally enjoined. And

a *E. 3. Stat. Art. 9.*
b *H. 5. Stat. Art 9. H. 8. Stat. Art. 3.*
c *An. 1, 2, 4, 5, 7, 9, 10, 22, 25, & 26. H. 6. & 1. Mar. & 9, 11, 13, 20, 29, 30, 31, 33, & 34. Eliz.*
d *An. 23 H 6.*
e *An 14, & 15. Eliz.*
f *An. 2, & 4. Jac. R.*
g *An. 17, 18, & 19. Eliz.*
h *An 43. Eliz.*
i *An. 42 Eliz. & 3, 14, & 15. Jac. R.*
k *An. 38. Eliz.*
l *An 3, 8, 12, 32. Eliz.*
m *An. 27. H 6.*
n *An. 38, & 39. Eliz.*
o *An. 6. Eliz.*
p *An. 18. & 20. Jac R.*
q *An. 5. E. 6.*
r, s, t *Cap. 7. fol. 25. b.*
u *Rationale div. Offic. lib. 6. cap. 7. Nu. 8; Edit. Lugd. 1612.*
w *Loco supra citato.*
x *Can. 35. Elibertine Concilii.*
a *Loco supra citato.*
b, c *Hospin. de Orig. Fest. Christ. Cap. 7. pag. 26. a.*

Durand further informs us, that this Institution was also called *Dispensatio*, [d] *because the* Fast *was put in the place of the* Vigil.

And yet to shew the antiquity of *Vigils*, it appears that, before *Christianity*, the ancient *Greeks* and *Romans* had the same kind of preparations, to some of their grand or solemn *Feasts*; and particularly at the [e] θεσμοφόρια, or Feasts of *Ceres*. [f] For, three days before this Feast, the Women were to abstain from all manner of Venery, to which end they strewed *Agnus castus*, and such Herbs, under their Beds, as [g] *Dioscorides*, speaking of that Herb, testifieth. [h] *Pliny* also saith the same; and much to that purpose, the *Scholiast* of *Nicander*, [i] and on the third day they fasted; and this kind of *professum*, [k] *Plautus* plainly calls *Vigiliæ* where he saith,

[l] *Is adolescentis illius est avunculus*
Qui illam stupravit noctu Cereris vigiliis.

And this the Uncle is of that young man
Who her by night at *Ceres Vigils* ravisht.

In the [m] Temples of *Isis* and *Æsculapius*, the like nocturnal *Vigils* were also celebrated: Analogous to which were those [n] Nocturnal Rites of *Cotytto*, kept by the *Corinthians*, mentioned by *Suidas*, *Hesychius*, and [o] *Juvenal*.

Talia secreta coluerunt Orgia tæda,
Cecropiam soliti Baptæ lassare Cotytto.

[p] At *Athens* such the *Baptists Orgies* were,
When they their publick Torches did advance,
And tir'd out their *Cotytto* in a Dance.

Which likewise for the same kind of abuses above mentioned, were condemned by several, chiefly by *Eupolis*, an ancient Comœdian in his *Baptæ*, as the nocturnal [q] *Bacchus* by [q] *Euripides*.

Τοῦτ' οὐ γυναῖκας δόλιόν ἐστι καὶ σαθρόν.
To Womens honors dangerous and unsafe.

And for this cause were the *Vigils* many times [r] prohibited by the wisest of the Ancients, though Heathens, among whom *Romulus* was one, who made a Law, that no night *Vigils* should be kept in any Temple at *Rome*. An account of their wicked and beastly Ceremonies used in the Nights, and why they were likewise afterwards banished out of *Rome* and *Italy*, may be seen at large in [t] *Livy*.

But to proceed to the second Point, the *Hour*; as the *Eve* was appointed by the *Founder*, for the commencement of the Anniversary of this *Grand Feast*, so to make the time yet more certain, the *Statutes* express the exact *Hour* of meeting, for beginning the Solemnities, to be at the *Hour* of *Tierce*, which in many other places is called [u] *Hora tertiarum*. But this seemed not sufficient, to express clear enough, the meaning of a Law, wherein the punishment for late coming was enjoined, and by the strength of which, the penalty might be levied; and therefore in a *Chapter* held at *Windesor*, upon the [w] 10. day of *May*, *an.* 17. *E.* 4. A scruple being raised among the *Knights-Companions* then assembled, concerning the Exposition of these words [x] *Hora tertiarum*, the day before the *Feast*; whether it were intended at three a Clock in the Afternoon, or at the Hour of the Church, accustomably used after Prime, before Noon. [y] *Because it seemed most agreeable to the* Statute, *and to the reason of the* Statute, *and to the penalty there enjoined, that it should be taken for the* Hour after Prime before Noon; *it was determined, that thenceforth it should inviolably be so observed.*

The [z] *Registrum Chartaceum* recordeth the same interpretation of the words; and to let us see that this was immediately put in practice, in it there is entred down

d *Loco sup. cit.*
e *Discor. lib.* 1. *cap.* 136.
f *J. Jonston de Fest. Hebr. & Grec. pag.* 93. *Vratislawe excus. an.* 1650.
g *Loco sup. cit.*
h *Nat. Hist. lib.* 24. *cap.* 6.
i *J. Jonst. loc. sup. citato.*
k *Prolog. Aulul.*
l
m *Hospin. de Orig. Fest. Christ. f.* 26. *a.*
n *Hosp. de Festis Jud. & Ethnic. fol.* 158. *b.*
o *Lib.* 1. *Satyr* 2.
p *Sir Rob. Stapleton's Translation.*
q *In Bacchis.*
r *Hospin. de Orig. Fest. Christ. p.* 26 *a.*
t *Lib.* 39 *sub finem.*
u *Lib. N. p.* 74, 82, 142, & 218. *Regr. Chartac. fol.* 9. *b.*
w
x *Lib. N. pag.* 142.
y
z *Fol.* 45.

down the Names of those *Knights-Companions*, present in the *Chapterhouse* with the *Soveraign*, both in the Morning and Evening of the said 10. day of *May* (being the *Eve* of the *Feast* of St. *George*) that is to say [b] before Noon, *Thomas* Marquess *Dorset*, *William* Earl of *Arundel*, *Henry* Earl of *Essex*, *Anthony* Earl *Rivers*, *John* Lord *Scrope*, *Thomas* Lord *Mantravers*, *John* Lord *Dudley*, and Sir *John Astley*; and in the [c] Afternoon, the *Prince*, *George* Duke of *Clarence*, *Richard* Duke of *York*, *James* Earl *Douglas*, *John* Lord *Howard*, Sir *William Parre*, *Walter* Lord *Ferrars*, and Sir *Thomas Montgomery*.

b } c } *Ibid.*

Another instance of which Practice, we again meet with, *an.* [d] 3. *H.* 7. on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, held by Prorogation at *Windesor*; where the *Soveraign* (in regard of the arrival of several *Ambassadors* there, and treating about the Affairs concerning which they came) [e] *put off the usual* Chapter *until* Noon. Whence it evidently appears, that the custom at this time also, was to begin the Solemnity in the *Morning*, and then to hold a *Chapter* as the first thing; which although (for the reasons before mentioned) the *Soveraign* thought fit to defer until *Noon*; nevertheless, he commanded in the mean time, that the [f] Earl of *Shrewsbury* should be installed, which was accordingly performed at the *Mass* of the *Virgin Mary*.

d } e } f } *Lib. N. pag.* 166.

As to the express acception therefore of the *Hora tertia*, so far as it relates to the entrance upon our *Grand Festival*, and how neer the same, expounded and practised as above, agrees with that hour of *Tierce*, celebrated by the *Church*, and reckoned as one of the Canonical Hours, set apart for Divine Worship; may best be deduced from what is discoursed at large by [g] *Durant*, *de Ritibus Ecclesiæ Catholicæ*, and by [h] *Durand* in his aforesaid *Rationale*, speaking both of them concerning the *Canonical hours* of the *Church*, which though agreed on by both to be the same in effect, are by *Durant* most positively delivered, to be seven in Number, *viz. Matutinæ laudes*, or Mattins, the *Prima Hora*, or Prime, the *Hora tertia*, the *Hora sexta*, the *Hora nona*, *Vespers*, and the *Completorium*, besides the *Nocturnum Officium*, the Office for Nights; which is also divided into four *Vigils*, the *Conticinium*, *Gallicinium*, *Intempestum*, and *Antelucinium*; which several hours, after what manner they divided the day, it is pertinent to our purpose to enquire, since from thence may be collected, what time of the day was their hour of *Tierce*, seeming to be the same (determined by King *Edward* the Fourth, as aforesaid) in some respect.

g *Lib.* 3. *cap* 3, 4, 5, *&c.* h *Lib.* 5. *Cap.* 2, 3, 4, *&c.*

And though these *Authors* do not very punctually determine the course of these *Hours*, yet it may well enough be implied, that since their *Mattins* was performed about break of day, and their *Prime*, by consequence, at 6 a Clock in the morning, the hour of *Tierce* was most probably 9 a Clock in the Morning, and so the rest at 3 hours distance one after the other; and this determination is clearly confirmed by my late worthy friend Mr. *Somner*, in his *Saxon Dictionary*, from an old [i] *Saxon Author*, whose words, he having cited in that Language, thus renders; *Sacram horam diei (veterum) tertiam (nostram) autem Nonam ante meridiem, Archiepiscopi cum Clero festiva celebrant hilaritate:* The *Archbishop* with the *Clergie*, celebrate with feasting and mirth, the sacred hour of the day, which among the Ancients was the *Third*, but with us the *Ninth* hour, before *Noon*. This *Hora tertia*, or hour of *Tierce*, was by our Ancestors the *English-Saxons*, called Undepn, as we find in venerable *Bedes* History of the Church of *England*, [k] ꝑam undepn ᵹiðe þonne mon mæſſe oꝼᵹoſᵹ ſingeð, i.e. *à Tertia Hora quando Missæ fieri solebant*; and so is it rendred by the said Mr. *Somner*, [l] Undepn, *Tempus ante meridianum*, *hora diei veterum tertia*, *nostra nona*, the Forenoon, the third hour of the day, that is nine of the Clock with us. So in like manner is it used in an old *Manuscript* of the holy *Festivals* of the *Church*, composed in meeter about the Reign of King *Edward* the First, in the life of St. *Brandon*.

i *Birthfrithus Ramesiensis MS. verbo* Kyppiole.

k *Lib.* 4. *c.* 22.

l *Dict. Sax. Lat. Anglicum, verbo* Undepn.

[m] This Fowles sung ek her Matyns; wel right tho it was time,
And of the Sauter sede vers; and seithe also Prime,
And Undarne seithe, and Midday; and afterward seith non.
And ech tyde of the day songe as cristenemen scholde don.

m *Penes Sil. Taylour gen. fol.* 72.

Of the *Third*, *Sixth*, and *Ninth* Hours, [n] *Tertullian* takes notice, as the most remarkable in humane Affairs, for the division of the day, the distinction of business, and more peculiarly to be solemnized by Prayers and Divine Service; but especially of all the rest the [o] *Hora Tertia*, is by preheminence called the *Golden hour*, and in the Canon Law [p] *Hora sacra*, doubtless, as being most peculiarly dedicated to some celebration of Divine Service.

But notwithstanding the foresaid declared and decreed Exposition made by King *Edward* the Fourth, we find it *an.* 11. *H.* 8. declared to be meant and intended for the hour of three in the [q] *Afternoon*; and when King *Henry* the Eighth came to model the *Statutes* of the *Order*, he in two several *Articles*, declares and expounds this *Hora tertia* (which the *English* Version of those *Statutes*, renders the *Hour* of *Tierce*) to be [r] *Hora tertia post meridiem*, three a Clock in the Afternoon; and in another *Article* of the same *Statutes*, [s] *Hora tertiarum, id est Hora tertia post meridiem*; and elsewhere [t] *Hora tertia Vespertina vel Pomeridiana*, which *Hour* as it was then setled to be the punctual time for the *Knights-Companions* meeting, to enter upon the Solemnity of the *Feast*, so hath it ever since continued unaltered, and usually observed.

Thirdly, the *Place* of *Assembly*, which, for the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* hath been in such of the *Soveraign's Privy Lodgings*, both at *Windesor* or elsewhere, as he hath appointed, and for the most part, either in the [x] *Privy*, [y] *Withdrawing*, or [z] *Bedchambers*. To this appointed Room do the *Knights-Companions* repair, to give their attendance on the *Soveraign*, first having invested themselves in full *Robes*, either in their [a] own Lodgings, or some other convenient Room at *Court*, where [b] *Garter* is to attend them, with notice of the approaching hour.

The *Knights-Companions* being come to the *Soveraign*, so also the *Officers* of the *Order*, habited in their *Mantles*, and bearing in their hands the *Symbols* of their several *Offices*, they wait the *Soveraign's* being vested in his *Robes*, and until he pass into the [c] *Presence-Chamber*, or [d] give beginning to the *Feast*, by opening the *Chapter* at this their meeting, before he go thither.

About the same time, the Provincial *Kings*, *Heralds*, and *Pursuivants*, wearing their Coats of the *Soveraign*'s Arms, so also the *Band* of *Pensioners*, armed with their Pole-Axes, assemble in the *Presence-Chamber*; but the *Prebends* of the *Colledge*, vested in their Taffaty Mantles over their Surplices, and *Alms-Knights* in their Mantles and Surcoats, come no nearer than the *Guard-Chamber*. Lastly, the *Servants* and *Attendants* of the *Knights-Companions* meet without the *Guard-Chamber* door, whence spreading themselves down the Stairs, through the Stone Gallery, into the upper Ward of the *Castle*, or as far as their number will reach, all wait the *Soveraign*'s coming forth into the *Presence*.

And here we think it needful (once for all) to inform our *Reader*, in regard not only the *Feast-day* of St. *George*, but the *Grand Feast* held in honor of the *Order*, hath been kept in several other places besides *Windesor Castle*, more especially *Whitehall*, St. *James's*, *Greenwich*, and *York*; that there are many Ceremonies and other particulars (hereafter falling under our discourse) which alter not with the *Place*, but appertain to the *Festival*, and are therefore to be observed every where alike; as for instance, the form of *Proceeding*, the manner of holding *Chapters*, the Ceremony of *Offring* Gold and Silver, the order of *Electing Knights-Companions*, *Swearing* of *Officers*, and such like: But others there are precisely local and particular, as the *Prebends* and *Alms-Knights*, going in the *Proceedings*, the *Offring* up of *Atchievements*, *&c.* to *Windesor* only; when therefore we speak of any of the former sort, which properly belong to the *Feast*, and not to the *Place*; it is to be understood, that as heretofore they have been, so now ought they to be performed in the celebrations thereof, wheresoever solemnized.

For since the withdrawing of the *Grand Feast* from *Windesor*, some of the *Officers* of *Arms*, curious in the observation of these Solemnities, performed in other places, have afforded us greater plenty of Memorials, relating to the ceremonious part thereof, than any in former Ages did, while the same was continued

n *Lib. de Jejun. adversus Psychic. c.* 10.
o *Durantus de Rit. Eccl. Cathol. pag.* 909.
p *Canon fin. ii. distinct.* 44. *& concilio Mart. Papæ, Can.* 61. *&* 65.
q Ab horâ primarum Vesperarum post meridiem. *Lib. N. pag.* 209.
r *Lib. N. pag.* 216. *Art.* 3.
s *Ex eod. Lib. p.* 218. *Art.* 7.
t *Lib R. p.* 107.
x *Lib. R. p.* 5. 94. 107. *&* 117.
y *Ib. pag* 38 *Rowes Journal, p.* 8. *Palmers Journal pro an.* 1639. *p.* 16. *See his large Journal, p.* 2. *&* 29.
z *Lib. C. pag.* 194.
a *Collect. W. le N Cl.*
b *Lib. R. p.* 5.
c *Rowes Journal, p* 23 *Lib. R. pag.* 126. *Palmers Journal pro anno* 1639. *pag.* 16. *and his large Journal, p.* 36.
d *Lib. R. p.* 5. *&* 39.

continued at *Windesor*, and therefore, when the true place where the instance lies, shall be also cited by us, we would not have our *Reader* mistakingly conclude, that the Precedent urged, doth not full enough answer our purpose, unless it had been also fetched from *Windesor*. But that in these cases, the Ceremony or Example is such as is peculiar to the *Feast*, not the *Place*, where it is held; and ought to serve, and be used without alteration at any Place, where it shall please the *Soveraign* to keep the *Grand Feast*. And for those things appertaining to each other place, where the *Feast* hath been observed, aswell as at *Windesor Castle*, we shall at all times note them with sufficient difference of place, as oft as we have occasion to draw them into Example.

SECT. II.

Of setting the Proceeding *in order.*

IN setting forth the order of *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house* on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, We are to consider the *Persons*, who constitute and make up the same, together with the course observed in putting them in their due place and rank: In order to which, we shall pursue our wonted method, and as a fore-hand satisfaction, note down and make observation of what materially relates thereunto, as we first meet with the *Persons* and *Degrees*; that so they may afterwards become applicable (if need be) when the same thing returns again into our discourse.

The particulars whereof we shall handle in the order and series as they proceed, whether it be in Bodies or Single, beginning with those of inferiour rank and so upwards; and therein consider, first the *Persons*, who peculiarly and more immediately relate to this most Noble *Order*, and who customarily and of duty do, and are obliged to attend, to make up the ordinary and constant *Proceedings*; and secondly, such who have now and then been occasionally or accidentally received thereinto *ad augendam pompam*, or otherwise, in regard their employments entitle them to a neer attendance upon the *Soveraign* at other times; both which sorts, we shall (as occasion is offered) again consider, either as among themselves, or in relation to the other Degrees who go in the *Proceeding*, next before or after them. And all this, to the end that the pretensions to precedency, among and between all Persons and Degrees herein concerned, may be the better made known and understood, and consequently without much difficulty be decided.

First then, we think fit for methods sake, to begin with those of the lowest rank and quality, namely the *Servants* and *Attendants* of the *Knights-Companions*; and thence rise upwards with the next higher Degree, according to the rule and right of precedency.

We are to consider therefore, that in times past the *Knights-Companions* appeared at the *Grand Feast*, attended with a goodly and numerous Train; but that having been removed from *Windesor* to other places, (as hath been before remembred) much of this glory was laid aside: Nevertheless, within a few years after that King *James* became *Soveraign* of this most Noble *Order*, the lustre of Attendants began to revive; for we find it entred upon the *Register*, in the 4. year of his Reign, [c] *That the ancient Custom, which for some years had been intermitted, wherein, at the Solemnity of this* Feast, *all the* Knights-Companions *were wont to go attended, each with a large Train; was recalled and brought back again into use.* [c] *Lib.C.p.163*

Which height of gallantry, made splendid in the number of Attendants, and richness of their Apparel, within ten years after grew up to such excess, or rather exorbitancy, that it stood in need of a restraint, wherefore The *Soveraign* by

by the unanimous advice of the *Knights-Companions*, Ordained, Decreed, and Commanded, [f] *That every one of the* Knights-Companions *of the* Order, *should have to attend upon his person, at the yearly solemnization of the* Feast *of the* Order, 50 *persons, and no more:* The reason whereof we find elsewhere noted to be, [g] *for saving of charge, and avoiding of emulation.* But in the beginning of his late Majesty's Reign of ever blessed memory, the gallantry of Attendants, began again to encrease and augment, insomuch that at the *Grand Feast* held at *Whitehall* the 22, 23. and 24. of *April an.* 8. *Car.* 1. we find it observed, [h] *That the* Knights-Companions *came forth attended, each with a Train of Servants very richly clad.*

f *Ibid. p.* 189.

g *MS. pen. E. W. G. fol.* 153.

h *Lib. R. p.* 77.

But to return, and enter upon the *Proceeding*; to the end the *Servants* and *Attendants* of the *Knights-Companions* may be exactly marshalled, the *Usher* of the *Hall* (whose [i] duty it is to rank them) ought to call for a List from *Garter*, of such *Knight-Companions* as are to be present at the *Grand Feast*, noted with their several places in the *Proceeding*, for his better directions, in assigning the *Attendants* their due places, the order whereof is thus: First, the [k] junior *Knights* Attendants, proceed one before another, on the left hand; upon whose right hands the second eldest *Knight's* Attendants go in equal rank with them; for this we observe to have been the general rule; where the *Knights-Companions* proceed in pairs, their Attendants go together; those belonging to the senior *Knight* of the two, on the right hand, and to the junior upon their left. But the order is otherwise, where any of the *Knights-Companions* proceed single and alone (which often falls out, as shall be noted in its due place) for then the Attendants belonging to that single *Knight*, go two and two, on both sides the way, opposite one against another.

i *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

k *Ibidem.*

But when the *Grand Feast* is celebrated at *Whitehall*, there the [l] *Knights-Companions* Attendants are marshalled by the said *Usher*, on both sides the passage, from the outward door of the *Guard-Chamber* down into the *Hall*, taking up all the room as far as the old *Chappel*; and because here they do not proceed in regard of the shortness of the processional way, but only make a stand for the *Proceeding* to pass through them, they are ranked in a way different from that used at *Windesor*; nevertheless relating more especially to the order observed by their Masters: which method, in the *Soveraign*'s Proceeding to the *Chappel*, at the before mentioned Feast, held at *Whitehall an.* 8. *Car.* 1. we find thus described, [m] The eldest *Knights-Companions* Servants, were ranked on the right hand of the passage, the chiefest of them neerest unto the old *Chappel* door; and the second *Knight* (being Companion to the eldest) his Attendants stood on the left side, the chiefest of them also next to the said old *Chappel* door. And in case the eldest *Knights* Fellow or Companion be not present in this *Proceeding*, then the eldest *Knights* Servants ought to be placed opposite one against another, upon each side of the said old *Chappel* door: The like order is to be taken in marshalling the Servants of the other *Knights* of this most Noble *Order*, whose *Companions* are then absent.

l *Ibidem.*

m *Ibid.*

Secondly, the order of *Proceeding* amongst the *Alms-Knights* (who *an.* 1. *Car.* 1. had [n] two Waiters of the *Soveraign*'s Hall, in their-Livery Coats, bearing white Rods in their hands, to proceed before them) is in general two and two together; the junior in place formost on the left hand, and his next senior on his right. And if sickness, or other lawful impediment, chance to hinder one or more of them, from going in the *Proceeding*, his junior is advanced into his place, and consequently all the other juniors do in like manner alter their places, and advance, to the end the superior place be still supplied, according to the right rule of marshalling the singles that compose a gross Body; but in this case, if their Number that attend happen to be odd, the *Governor* of the *Alms-Knights* goeth last of all, and alone.

n *MS. pen. Edw. Faucon-bridge gen.*

Thirdly, the *Verger* of the *Colledge* hath his place next [o] after the *Alms-Knights*, and immediately before the *Prebends* of the *Colledge*; who being habited in a Gown, beareth a Silver Verge, the Ensign of his Office. Nevertheless, heretofore when the *Prebends* went not in the *Proceeding*, on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, the *Verger* proceeded first of all, [p] before the *Alms-Knights*, for so was it observed

o *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

p *MS. pen. W. D. N. f.* 15. *a.*

observed on the Eve of St. *George* at *Windesor*, *an.* [q] 6. *Eliz.* and in this manner we see it expreſt, in the *Proceeding* ſet forth by *Marcus Gerchard*.

[q] *Ibid.*

Fourthly, under the general Rule, relating to the *Alms-Knights*, are comprehended the *Prebends* of the *Colledge*, the *Purſuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings*; inſomuch, that where either of the ſaid *Kings* are abſent, the [r] ſenior *Herald* is advanced, and goeth in breaſt on the left hand of him who is then preſent: So alſo where any of the *Heralds* are wanting, his next junior aſcendeth into his place, whereby it ſometimes falls out, that the ſenior *Purſuivant* is joined to the left hand of the junior *Herald*. And if through theſe defects and abſence, the number of the *Officers* of *Arms* be odd, then (with this difference in the foreſaid rule obſerved among the *Alms-Knights*) the youngeſt *Purſuivant* goeth ſingle by himſelf.

[r] *Ex Collect. praefat. W. le N. Cl.*

Touching the right of precedency, between the *Officers* of *Arms* and *Prebends* of the *Colledge*, in proceeding before the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, we find there hath been heretofore not only ſome queſtion ſtarted, but the place contended for; inſomuch that at the Inſtallation of the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, *an.* 34. *Eliz.* the [f] *Prebends* took place, and upon the 24. of *May*, *an.* 39. *Eliz.* at the Inſtallation of *Thomas* Lord *Howard* of *Walden*, and others, the *Prebends* again endeavoured to paſs [t] between the *Officers* of *Arms*, and *Officers* of the *Order*; but *Charles* Lord *Howard* of *Effingham* then *Lieutenant* to the *Soveraign*, delivered his opinion on the [u] behalf of the *Officers* of *Arms*, againſt the *Prebends*.

[f] *MS. penes G.O.T. p. 206.*
[t] *Ex Collect. Rob. C. Cl. fol.* 33.
[u] *Ibid.* 34. *fol.*

Yet did not this ſo ſettle the order of *Precedency*, or quiet the *Prebends*, but that the contention again broke out, *an.* 1. *Jac. R.* at the Inſtallation of the Earls of *Penbroke*, *Marr*, *Southampton*, and Duke of *Lenox* (which happened on the [w] ninth, not [x] ſecond of *July*, in the foreſaid year) even to ſuch a height, that the *Prebends*, *Purſuivants*, and *Heralds* contended in the *Proceeding*; but the controverſie was on the next morning compoſed, by the Lord *Admiral* (then the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*) the Lord *Treaſurer*, and the Earl of *Worceſter*, and the order in proceeding thus ſetled; firſt, that the [y] *Alms-Knights* ſhould go foremoſt, the *Purſuivants* next, then the *Prebends*, and then the *Heralds* and *Kings* of *Arms*. And this Order in Proceeding, was afterwards obſerved on the [z] 21. of *May an.* 4. *Jac. R.* at the Inſtallation of the Earl of *Salisbury*, and Viſcount *Bindon*, as alſo the * 19. of *May an.* 6. of the ſame King, at the Inſtallation of the Earls of *Dunbar*, and *Montgomery*.

[w] *Lib. C. pag.* 151.
[x] [y] [z] [*] *MS. penes E. W. G. fol.* 151. *a.*

Howbeit *an.* 9. *Jac. R.* and ſo afterwards, we do not find the *Purſuivants* mentioned in the *Proceeding* by particular name, nor otherwiſe, than in this following order, *viz. Alms-Knights*, *Prebends*, *Heralds*, *&c.* but it may be preſumed that the *Purſuivants* then joined again in Body with the *Heralds*, (though for ſome years before divided from them, by the interpoſition of the *Prebends*) aſwel as the *Provincial Kings*, and all of them under the Title of [a] *Heralds*, and ſometimes [b] *Officers* of *Arms*.

[a] *An.* 9. *Jac. R.*
[b] 14. & 15. *Jac. R.*

And though at the *Grand Feaſt* held by *Prorogation*, on *Sunday* the [c] 14. of *September*, in the ſaid 15. year of King *James*, it is noted, that the *Prince* (being then the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*) proceeded to Morning Service on the Feaſt day, with the [d] *Alms-Knights*, *Heralds*, *Prebends*, and *Officers* of the *Order* before him; from which manner of expreſſion, it may perchance be ſuppoſed, that the *Heralds* went at that time next after the *Alms-Knights*, and before the *Prebends*; nevertheleſs, [e] elſewhere we find them on the *Eve* of the foreſaid *Feaſt* ranked in this following order.

[c] [d] *Lib. C. pag.* 190.
[e] *MS. penes E. W. G. fol.* 154. *b.*

The *Alms-Knights*.
The *Prebends*.
The *Officers* of *Arms*.
The *Knights* of the *Order*, *&c.*

And doubtleſs, they proceeded in the ſame order to the *Chappel* on the next morning, notwithſtanding what is before ſaid to the contrary, thoſe expreſſions being

being interwoven with the general account given of the Ceremonies of the whole *Festival*, and more subject to mistake, where the Relation of the *Proceeding* is carried on in a continued Discourse, than where ranked (as is before exhibited) in particular lines, and in the order and form of a Proceeding: Besides, we no where meet with any Order or Decree, nulling the foresaid determination, made *an.* 1. *Jac. R.* which placeth the *Prebends* before the *Heralds*. Finally, to give an end to the disputes in this point, we find, that upon the *Eve* of the *Feast*, held at *Windesor* the 23. 24. and 25. of *November an.* 1. *Car.* 1. the [f] *Prebends* proceeded next before the *Pursuivants*, and the *Pursuivants* immediately before the *Heralds* and Provincial *Kings*; that is to say, all the *Officers* of *Arms* (except *Garter*, whose place is elsewhere) proceeded in one entire Body together; which order we find to be the same in all *Proceedings* after, that we have met with, and was so observed at the *Grand Feast* held at *Windesor* [g] *an.* 13. *Car.* 2. and ever since. But to proceed,

f *MS. penes Edw. Faucon-bridge.*

g *Lib Carol. pag* 39.

All the before mentioned *Attendants* wait in their several stations, till the hour of *Tierce*, when the *Soveraign* (having the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the *Order* before him, and his *Train* carried up) passeth towards the *Presence Chamber*; notice of whose coming being given, the *Band* of *Pensioners* make the accustomed Guard and Passage, along the *Presence-Chamber*, the seniors standing towards the Lobby door; within which Guard, on either side, do the *Officers* of *Arms* place themselves: Upon the same warning, the *Yeomen* of the *Guard* clear a like passage from the *Presence-Chamber* door, along the *Guard-Chamber*, unto its outward door, for the *Proceeding* to pass through.

At the *Soveraign*'s approach, one of the *Gentlemen-Ushers* attending with the *Sword* of *State* (the point resting upon the ground) delivereth it to such one of the *Nobility* (not being a *Knight* of the *Order*) whom the *Soveraign*, as an honorary favour, hath before nominated, to bear it from thence before him in all the *Proceedings* of the *Feast*; during which action the *Knights-Companions* proceed forward, and being entred the *Presence-Chamber*, [h] flank on each side the *State*, with some small distance between them, and there make a stand. The *Soveraign* being also entred, passeth to the step before the *State* (the [i] *Nobleman* who beareth the *Sword*, and the five *Officers* of the *Order*, retiring a little on his right hand) and then turning himself towards the *Knights-Companions*, standeth there a while, until they have made their [k] Reverences unto him; which being performed, he re-saluteth the *Knights-Companions* by [l] putting off his Cap. This done, the *Soveraign* putteth his Cap on again, whereupon every of the *Knights-Companions* put on theirs, and immediately rank themselves, according to their due place, on both sides the State.

h } *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

i } *Ibid.*

k } *Sir Tho. Rowes Journ. pag* 23. *See also Sir James Palmers Large Journ. pag.* 11. *& his Journ. pro an.* 1639. *pag.* 16.

l } *Ibid.*

For the right understanding whereof, we are in the fifth place to note, that the order and method wherein the *Knights-Companions* are ranked (if they be all present) is two and two together, the [m] junior formost on the left hand, for that is his place in all *Proceedings*. But where any of them be absent, the Rule is different from that appropriate to the before mentioned Degrees; for although it be recorded, that upon the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast* held at *Windesor*, *an.* 7. *H.* 5. The *Knights-Companions*, [n] *went together in order into the Chapter-house and Choire.* Yet this being exprest but in general terms, how it ought to be understood, will more fully appear, from the particular directions given for the order of the *Knights-Companions* proceeding in King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*; where the * Law directs each *Knight-Companion* to proceed alone, at such time as his *Fellow* (who possesseth the Stall opposite unto him) is absent; but the order of such Proceeding will by a *Scheme* be made more evident.

m *Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

n *Lib. N. p.* 58.

* *Art.* 2.

The *Proceeding* of the *Knights-Companions*, present on the *Eve* of St. *George*, to the Closet at *Whitehall*, *an.* 3. *Eliz.*

[o] *Ibid. pro an. V.D.N.*	[o] The Lord *Hunsdon*.	Void.
	The Lord *Robert Dudley*.	The Viscount *Mountague*.
	The Lord *Loughborow*.	The Earl of *Shrewsbury*.

The

The Earl of *Sussex*.	The Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*.
Void.	The Earl of *Westmerland*.
The Marquess of *Northampton*.	Void.
The Lord *Clynton*.	The Duke of *Norfolk*.
Void.	The Earl of *Penbroke*.

In this Proceeding there are four *Knights-Companions* who proceeded alone, first the Lord *Hunsdon*, then being the junior *Knight*, because the Lord *Grey* his Fellow on the right hand, was in this Proceeding absent, and consequently his Stall became Void. Secondly, the Earl of *Westmerland*, in regard the Earl of *Rutland*, his left hand Companion, was then also wanting. Thirdly, the Marquess of *Northampton*, whose right hand Fellow, the Lord *Pagit*, was likewise absent: and lastly, the Earl of *Penbroke*, because the Stall opposite unto him was then void by the death of the Earl of *Huntington*.

And to avoid all questions and disputes, touching precedency of the *Knights-Companions* among themselves, at *Feasts*, *Installations*, *Chapters*, or other occasional meetings, relating to the Affairs of the *Order*, and to settle an indisputable rule for them to observe, it was in the 16. year of the said King *Henry* the Eighth Decreed, in affirmation and explanation of the foresaid *Article* of the *Statutes*, that [p] *Each* Knight-Companion *should take place in* Procession, Station, *or sitting at the* Table, *thenceforward*, *as he had his* Seat *or* Stall *in the* Choire, *and not according to the degree of his birth or condition, unless the* Soveraign *were pleased that any should be made choice of, according to the Nobility of his Family, to sit at the end of his own Table, and perform any other thing by the by.* And this is the Law, which settled the precedency among the *Knights-Companions*. p *Lib. N. p. 318.*

Sixthly, the manner of Proceeding among the *Officers* of the *Order*, differeth from all before spoken of; for, being five in number, the three inferiour Officers (when they are all present) march in breast, and (of later times) in this following order: The *Register* in the middle, *Garter* on his right hand, and the *Usher* of the *Black-Rod* on his left.

But we find the form and course of Proceeding among these three Officers, hath anciently been observed otherwise, and therein we meet with much diversity, as for instance; in the Proceeding of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, fairly limned and inserted in the *Black-Book* of the *Order*, at the beginning of the Acts of King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign, there *Garter* is placed in the middle, having the *Register* on his right hand, and the *Black-Rod* on his left, (so also at the Installation of the [q] Lord *Cromwell*, *an.* 29. *H.* 8.) Nevertheless, in another *Proceeding* of the *Soveraign*, the *Knights-Companions*, the *Officers* of the *Order*, and the *Alms-Knights*, designed and etched by *Marcus Gerehard* [r] hereafter inserted; there the *Register* is put in the middle, *Garter* upon his right hand, and *Black-Rod* on his left, as is the order at this day. And in truth, all Relations described in writing, of the manner of *Proceeding* since (which hath come to our view) are in this point delivered very imperfect and promiscuous; having neither distinction of the right hand man, or which of the foresaid three *Officers* went in the middle, to guide us with any certainty. For sometimes, when they come to speak of this very point (and here we take in what we find of proceeding upon other occasions, besides those used at the *Grand Feast*, in regard they ought to be alike in all) they thus deliver themselves. ------Then followed the *Usher*, *Garter*, and the *Register*, as it is set down in the [a] 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. and 7. years of Queen *Elizabeth*: At other times thus, ------then went *Garter*, the *Register*, and *Gentleman-Usher*, [b] *an.* 31. *H.* 8. [c] 1. *E.* 6. and 1. *Car.* 1. and again thus, ----then the *Register*, *Garter*, and *Black-Rod*, as in the [d] 5. and [e] 34. of Queen *Elizabeth*, and the [f] 6. and [g] 15. of King *James*: And lastly thus, ----then *Garter*, *Black-Rod*, and the *Register*, as *an.* [h] 16. *Eliz.* and [i] 4. *Jac. R.* Other Examples there are, which may be reduced to one or more of these heads, or the like uncertain manner of placing these three *Officers*; but these are the most obvious, and we need not be more particular. And seeing the errour, or at least inadvertency of the Relators, have left the matter so confused, we cannot confidently enough say

q *Ex lib. vocat. Dalton. pag. 119. b.*
r *See Ch. 22. Sect. 3. sub finem.*
a *MS. fol. penes W. D. N.*
b *MS. in Offic. Arm. [L. 1. fol. 19. b.]*
c *MS. pen. G. O. Y fol. 87.*
d *Collect. A. V. W.*
e *MS pen. præf. G. O. Y f. 203.*
f *MS penes E. W. G.*
g *Collect. A. V. W*
h *MS. præf. pen. E. W. G. f. 147.*
i

say to what method such contrariety in ranking them heretofore can refer; in regard they agree not in position of place, nor doth that clear enough set forth where, how, or in what particular, the right appears due to the priority of their several Offices.

After these 3 Officers the two superior proceed together, the *Prelate* on the right hand and the *Chancellor* on the left; yet *an.* 11. *H.* 8. we find that *Garter* and *Black-Rod* proceeded || between the *Prelate* and the *Sword*, but the very same morning at the *Grand Procession*, the *Prelate* proceeded * next before the *Soveraign*, affirming that was his room and place, and the other *Officers* of the *Order* went before him.

|| MS.
* MS. in Offic. Armor. [M.17] pag. 26. b.

After the *Officers* of the *Order* follows the *Sword*, which is carried immediately before the *Soveraign*. In the beginning of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, it was born on the *Eves* of St. *George*, solemnized at *Whitehall* by some of the *Baronage*, for instance, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* by the [k] Lord *Wentworth*, *an.* 5. *Eliz.* by the [l] Lord *Scroop*, *an.* 7. *Eliz.* by the [m] Lord *Shandos*, *an.* 9. by the Lord [n] *Cobham*, and *an.* 10. by the Lord [o] *Herbert*. But of later times, the employment hath been conferr'd upon persons of higher rank, as *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. upon the Earl of [p] *Dover*, *an.* 8. *Car.* 1. upon the Earl of [q] *Stanford*, *an.* 9. *Car.* 1. upon the Earl of [r] *Danby*, and *an.* 13. *Car.* 2. upon the Lord Viscount *Mordant*, then Constable of the *Castle* of *Windesor*.

k, l, m, n } MS. penes W. D. N.
o, p, q, r } Collect. W. le N. Cl.

We are now arrived at the *Soveraign*'s place in the *Proceeding*, [s] *Et notandum quod superior Ordinis tempore Processionis in dicta Capella transibit retro totam sociorum Comitivam*; which though the *Statute* mentions here to be performed at the *Grand Procession*, yet doth it refer to all those times the *Soveraign* shall proceed to or from, no less than within the *Chappel*. And indeed this is the chief place in all Proceedings, [t] being retained by King *Henry* the Fifth, as *Soveraign* of the *Order*, when *Sigismond* the *Emperor* was in person with him at the celebration of the Feast of St. *George* at *Windesor*, *an.* 4. *H.* 5. In ancient time, the *Soveraign* (if he were at *Windesor* to celebrate the Grand Feast) proceeded to the *Chappel* in person, as well on the *Eve* as on the *Feast-day*: But Queen *Elizabeth* was the first, who went not to the *Chappel* on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, held in the [u] 6. year of her Reign (though present in *Windesor-Castle*) but deputed the Earl of [w] *Arundel* for that purpose; unless we shall here except King *Henry* the Sixth, who by [x] reason of sickness on the *Eve* of the Feast, celebrated *an.* 32. of his Reign, was necessitated to make a *Deputy* in his stead, and thereupon appointed the Duke of [y] *Buckingham*, *President* of that *Feast*. The aforesaid omission of Queen *Elizabeth* at *Windesor*, and sometimes afterward, when the *Grand Feast* was observed at *Whitehall*, or *Greenwich* (first occasioned through her indisposition of health) as in the [z] 18. * 25. 29. and 31. years of her Reign, gave afterwards the occasion to King *James*, who at those three *Grand Feasts* he celebrated at *Windesor*, in the 1. 15. and 21 years of his Reign, went not to the *Chappel* on the *Eve*, but deputed for the first [a] *Charles* Earl of *Nottingham*, at the second the [b] Prince, and at the third the [c] Earl of *Worcester*. The like deputation did his late Majesty of ever blessed memory, King *Charles* the First, give unto the [d] Earl of *Worcester* on the 23. of *November*, being the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, held by *Prorogation an. primo regni sui*, who proceeded to the *Chappel* in his stead. But on the [e] *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, celebrated by *Prorogation* upon the 23. 24. and 25. days of *September*, *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. the ancient custom (for many years intermitted) was restored, and the [f] *Soveraign* (making no *Lieutenant*) proceeded to the *Chappel*, not only on that *Eve*, but duely observed the same Ceremony upon all *Eves* of the *Grand Feast* thence forward, in his own person. So did the present *Soveraign* in all the *Grand Feasts* held since his happy return. In those celebrations of the day of St. *George*, observed by Queen *Elizabeth* at *Whitehal* and *Greenwich*, before the 9. year of her Reign (wherein the *Grand Feast* was removed from *Windesor*) as also after that year, she went not on the *Eves* into the *Choire* to *Vespers*, but only to the *Closet* of the *Chappel*; whither she proceeded from the *Chamber* of *Presence*, with all usual state, though in her [g] ordinary Apparel, and without the *Robes* of the *Order*, and where she celebrated the first *Chapter*, accustomably held on the *Eve*, and there deputed her *Lieutenant*, who supplied her place in the *Proceeding* thence, and in the *Choire*, whilst she remained

k, l, m, n } MS. penes W. D. N.
o, p, q, r } Collect. W. le N. Cl.
s E. 3. Stat. Art. 3.
t Lib. N. p. 57. & lib. vocat. Dalton, p. 36.
u, w MS. fol. pen. præf. W. D. N. f. 15.
x, y Lib. N. p. 111.
z MS. pen. G. O. T. pag. 114.
* Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.
a MS. pen. præfat. E. W. G. fol. 151. a.
b Lib. C. pag. 189.
c Lib. R. p. 5.
d Ibid. p. 29.
e, f Ex Collect. præf. W. le N. Cl.
g MS. fol. pen. præf. W. D. N.

Pag 878. A Proceeding of the Soveraigne and Knights Companions, at the Feast of S. George, designed by Marci

ard. and set forth in the 20 yeare of Queene Elizabeth, by Thomas Dawes sometime Rougecroix Pursuiant Armi.

remained in the *Closet* until Evening Prayers were finished; at which time the *Lieutenant* returning to the *Closet*, the whole Proceeding passed again before her, unto the *Presence-Chamber*. But throughout King *James* his Reign, we cannot collect, that the *Soveraign* went at all, either to the *Closet*, or into the *Chappel*, upon the *Eves* of St. *George*, (when the *Feast* was celebrated at either of the foresaid places) but rather held the first *Chapter* before *Vespers*, in some of the *Privy-Lodgings*, where he constituted his *Lieutenant*, who immediately went into the *Presence-Chamber*, and from thence proceeded to the *Chappel*, to Evening Prayers.

Before we pass further, it will be necessary to observe, that from the *Presence-Chamber*, called in the Statutes the * Great Chamber, and elsewhere, the [h] *Chamber* of *Estate*, or the *Kings Dyning-Chamber*, this first *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house*, and all that follow during the *Feast* begin, and there take ending.

* E. 3. } Stat. H. 5. } Art. 3
h Lib. in Offic. Armor. [M. 17] fol. 26. b.

And now to close up the *Ordinary Proceeding*, the *Band* of *Pensioners* having stood in the *Presence-Chamber*, and made a spacious Lane for the *Proceeding* to pass through, so soon as the *Soveraign* and the Attendants upon his *Train*, are passed by, they (with the *Captain* of their *Band* or his *Lieutenant* before them) immediately fall in, two and two, from each side of the way, after the *Proceeding*, the seniors first, and so accordingly in order; and follow thence the *Soveraign* to the *Chapter-house* door: but at the *Feast* held [i] *an.* 8. *Car.* 1. they went in guard, on [k] each side the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, the Lord *Goring* their *Lieutenant* (for the Earl of *Suffolk* their *Captain* was absent) going in the head of them.

i } Ex Collect.
k } præfat. W. le N. Cl.

Having under these precedent heads spoken as much as we conceive needful, to usher in the ordinary and usual *Proceeding*, upon the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*; we think fit to exhibit a *Scheme* thereof here.

The *Attendants* on the *Knights-Companions*.
Alms-Knights.
Verger of the *Chappel*.
Prebends of *Windesor*.
Officers of *Arms*.
Knights-Companions.
Black-Rod. *Register*. *Garter*.
Chancellor. *Prelate*.
The *Sword*.
The *Soveraign*.
Train-bearers.
Captain of the *Pensioners*.
Pensioners.

To the foregoing *Proceeding*, we shall touch upon those persons of quality, who to encrease the pomp and state of it, have occasionally been received thereinto; as also such other eminent in place and degree, as (though their Offices do not particularly relate to this most Noble *Order*) have nevertheless been taken into the *Proceeding*, meerly by reason of their requisite attendance upon the *Soveraign*, in his Proceedings upon all other occasions.

On St. *George*'s *Eve an.* 3. *Eliz.* the [l] old *Ambassador* of *Sweden* was present, and being accompanied by the Earl of *Hertford*, went in the *Proceeding* to the *Closet* at *Whitehall*. He had place assigned him next after the *Train-bearers*, and immediately before the *Ladies Attendants* upon the *Soveraign*; and the next morning, when the *Soveraign* proceeded to the *Chappel*, the [m] new *Ambassador* of *Sweden* went in the same place. So also the *French* Ambassador *an.* 6. *Eliz.* had place [o] near the *Soveraign*, at her proceeding to Morning Service on the *Feast-day* at *Windesor*.

l } MS. penes m } W. D. N. fol. 2.
o Ibid. fol. 17. b.

As to those admitted upon the account of their *Offices*, we observed *Henry* Earl of St. *Albans*, the present Lord Chamberlain of the Houshold (being not hitherto a *Knight* of the *Order*) was allowed place on the right hand of the *Soveraign*, somewhat behind, in the *Proceeding* to the *Chappel*, at the *Grand Feast an.* 23. *Car.* 2. and the Vice-Chamberlain on his left hand.

The *Vice-Chamberlain* (who in the beginning of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign was taken in to assist at the bearing up the *Soveraign*'s Train) went on the [n] left hand the *Sword* of *State*, on the *Eves* of St. *George* at *Whitehall*, *an.* [o] 3. & [p] 8. *Car.* 1. and 19. *Car.* 2.

n Collect. W. le N. Cl. o p

The *Dean* of the *Soveraign*'s *Chappel* at *Whitehall*, attends the *Soveraign* in the *Proceedings* thither, and the place he goes in is a [q] little behind the *Soveraign* towards his left hand. Next the *Dean* goes the [r] *Clerk* of the *Closet*; and then the [s] *Master* of the *Robes*; so also of late one of the *Masters* of *Requests*, and then the [t] *Gentleman* of the *Robes*.

q r Collect. W. le N. Cl. s t

SECT. III.

Of Proceeding *to the* Chapter-house.

HAving treated at large under the precedent head, concerning the due rank and place of all those persons, that ordinarily or occasionally have gone in the *Proceeding*; wherein all saving the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* pass bareheaded, we now pass to the *Place* whither the *Proceeding* is directed.

The first solemn action, that the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* are obliged to perform, at the entrance upon the *Grand Feast*, is to celebrate a *Chapter*; and therefore it hath been most usual for them, to proceed from the *Presence-Chamber*. [w] *Every one in their due place and order*; first to the *Chapter-house*, to consult of things of course, and next into the *Choire*, to hear Divine Service. And though it be not positively set down in the Statutes, which of these two shall precede, yet that the *Chapter* ought to be held before the first *Vespers*, is naturally enough to be deduced out of that branch of the *Statutes*, where the penances and penalties to be inflicted on such *Knights-Companions*, as come late to the *Feast*, are laid down. For there we find it provided, [x] that in case any of the *Knights-Companions* appear not on the *Eve*, precisely at the hour of *Tierce*, they shall not be permitted for that time, either to enter into the *Chapter*, or to have voice in any thing done therein; and then (the *Article* proceeding with other penalties upon other defaults) it immediately follows; That if any of them come not before the beginning of *Vespers*, they shall not be allowed to enter into their *Stalls*. So that hence it is evident, that the course and order intended was, that the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* should first celebrate a *Chapter*, therein to dispatch the business of the time; and after that broke up, then next proceed into the *Choire* to *Vespers*. Moreover, the genetal practice in all succeeding times (beginning with King *Henry* the Fifth's Reign) doth most fully demonstrate, that a *Chapter* was of custom held before the first *Vespers*; whereof we shall urge these following Examples in the point, as being recorded in the *Registers* of the *Order*.

w Lib. R. p. 23, & 126. Romes Journal. p. 23. See also Palmers Journ. pro an. 1639. pag. 16.

x E. 3 Stat. H. 5. Art. 10. H. 8. Stat. Art. 9.

When *John* Duke of *Bedford*, Deputy to the *Soveraign*, celebrated the Solemnities of St. *George* at *Windesor*, *an.* 7. *H.* 5. he and the *Knights-Companions* present, *at the designed hour, on the Eve, entred together into the* [a] Chapter-house *and* Choire. Again *an.* 5. *E.* 4. the Lord *Berners*, the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant*, and other *Knights-Companions*, [b] *met at* Windesor, *in an honorable equipage, for the accustomed holding of* Chapters, *and the solemn celebration of Divine Service.* *An.* 7. *Car.* 1. *Oct.* 4. (after the celebrations of the *Grand Feast* began to be restored to *Windesor*) we find it recorded more fully to our purpose, *viz.* that [c] *before Vespers, the* Soveraign *and* Knights-Companions *went first to the* Chapter-house; *but business being put off till the morrow, they all proceeded to the* Choire. So *an.* 9. *Car.* 1. the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* are said [d] *first to go to the* Chapter-house, and by and by it follows, *as soon as they came to the* Choire, *&c.*

a Lib. N. p. 58. b Ibid. p. 129. c Lib. R. p. 74. d Lib. R. p. 84.

Lastly, we find there are recorded by Sir *Thomas Wriothesley*, sometime *Garter* King of *Arms*, in an [e] old Velom Manuscript of his, the *Chapters* accustomably held, during the celebration of the *Grand Feast*, in the following order.

e Pen. G. O. Y.

1. Upon

1. Upon the *Even* of St. *George*, before *Evensong*.
2. The next day, either before Matins or before the *Grand Procession*.
3. The same day also before *Evensong*.
4. And lastly on the next morning before the *Mass* of *Requiem*.

At all which times, *Chapters* have (for the most part since) been held by the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions:* and herein the *Chancellor* of the *Order* is not only to know the *Soveraign*'s pleasure, but also whether he will hold any of them publickly in the *Chapter-house*, or privately in any Room of his *Privy-Lodgings*, or in the *Closet*, before the *Proceeding* pass to the *Chappel*.

As this ancient Custom of holding a *Chapter* on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, was constantly observed, when celebrated without prorogation; so also hath a *Chapter* been in like manner held before *Vespers* on the *Eve*, at such time as the *Feast-day* of St. *George* only hath been observed, when (for any cause) the *Anniversary* of the *Grand Feast* received Prorogation; as for instance, *an.* 1. *Mar.* a *Chapter* was held at the Mannor of St. *James*'s, on the [f] *Vigil* of St. *George*, *before the first Vespers*; whereunto is fixed this note, [g] *Ut moris est*; and the *Grand Feast* for that year received [h] adjournment, until the coming of *Philip* then *Prince* (after King) of *Spain*. So *an.* 8. *Eliz.* the day of St. *George* being celebrated at *Greenewich*, it appears that a *Chapter* was holden there [i] on the *Eve* before *Evening-Prayer*; and the *Grand Feast* for that year prorogued to the first [k] *Sunday* after *Trinity Sunday*, to be kept at *Windesor*.

f, g *Lib. C. pag.* 7.
h *Ibid. pag.* 9.
i *Pag.* 50.
k *Pag.* 52.

In like manner, though the celebrations of the *Grand Feast* were by Queen *Elizabeth* removed from *Windesor*, and observed at other places (as hath been before discoursed) yet this usual Custom of holding a *Chapter* on the *Eve*, was in such cases constantly practised; after which the *Proceeding* to Evening Prayer succeeded, as is manifest by these following Testimonies. *An.* 29. *Eliz.* After a relation entred in the [l] *Blew-Book* of the *Order*, of what had past in *Chapter*, held on the *Eve* of the *Feast* at *Greenwich*, it [m] there follows, that the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant and* Knights-Companions *proceeded to Evening Prayer*. So also *an.* 39. *Eliz.* [n] on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, the Lord *Charles Howard*, was by the *Soveraign* (in *Chapter*) constituted *Lieutenant*; which done, *they in a solemn manner streight way went to Prayers*. And the [o] next year, when in a *Chapter* called on the *Eve* of the *Feast* at *Whitehall*, after the Earl of [p] *Shrewsbury* had been made *Lieutenant* for the holding of that Feast, and other customary things dispatched therein, the *Register* notes, that [q] *Vespers were solemnly celebrated*.

l, m *Ibid. pag.* 105.
n *Ib. pag.* 133.
o, p, q *Pag.* 136.

And because the *Processional-way* to the *Chapter-house*, as also to the *Chappel*, both publick and private, as well at *Windesor*, as elsewhere, are fit to be known and remembred; we shall in the next place trace them out.

The publick *Processional-way* to the *Chapter-house* at *Windesor*, used time out of mind, led from the *Presence-Chamber*, down through the *Cloister*, and the great Gate of the Kings Lodging, into the upper Ward of the *Castle*, thence through the middle Ward, and part of the lower, to and through the passage, between the East-end of the Chappel, and Tomb-house, and thence into the *Chapter-house*, situate at the North-East Corner of St. *George*'s Chappel.

The Processional way.

But sometimes the *Soveraign* hath thought fit, to wave this publick Processional way, and pass along the private way, which leads from the King's *Privy-Chamber*, down the Stairs into the *Terrace*, *viz.* through [r] that most stately *Walk* lying on the North side the *Castle*, and entring again at a door, heretofore made through a part of the Castle Wall, into one of the Canons Lodgings adjoining to *Winchester Tower* (now made up) went thence through the Cloisters, into the *Chapter-house*; nevertheless proceeding in the order before shewed, as it was on the *Eve* of the *Feasts*, held in the [s] 4. [t] 7. and [u] 9. years of King *Charles* the First.

r *Lib. R. p.* 39, & 61.
s *Collect. W. le N. Cl. MS.*
t *Ex Collect: præfat.*
u *MS. fol pen. W. D. N. fol.* 7. *b.* 20, 26, & 27. *b.* & *intra Collect. W. le N. Cl. de an.* 2. *Elix. vid. etiam MS. f. pen. G. D. T. pag.* 123.

But when the *Grand Feast* was (heretofore) celebrated at *Whitehall*, the *Chapter* was usually held in the *Soveraign*'s [w] *Closet*, built over the entrance into the *Chappel*; and then the Processional way thither, lay from the *Presence-Chamber* into the Guard-Chamber, and through the Gallery, thence into the outward Closet, or *Ante-camera*, and so to the *Soveraign*'s *Closet*.

w *MS. fol pen. W. D. N. fol.* 7. *b.* 20, 26, & 27. *b.* & *intra Collect. W. le N. Cl. de an.* 2. *Elix. vid. etiam MS. f. pen. G. D. T. pag.* 123.

But the *Soveraigns* of this most Noble *Order*, or their *Lieutenants*, have not always

always (though generally) proceeded upon the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, first to the *Chapter-house*, and thence into the *Chappel*; but sometimes gone immediately into the *Chappel*, to Evening Prayer, without entring the *Chapter-house* at all: and at these times, the Processional way at *Windesor*, differed from the former only in this, that when the *Procession* arrived neer unto the forementioned passage, at the East end of the Chappel, instead of entring thereat, it went on to the South door of the Chappel, and thence into the *Choire*. In like case, when the *Soveraign* went not to the great Closet at *Whitehall*, to hold the usual *Chapter* before Vespers, the publick processional way then led from the *Presence-Chamber* into the Guard-Chamber, and so down the great Stairs into the Hall, thence into the old Chappel, and lastly, in at the door of the new *Chappel*. And at *Greenwich*, from the [x] *Presence-Chamber* down into the Hall, and thence into the *Chappel*. But these ways we take to be used at such time only, when the *Soveraign* hath held a *Chapter* in some of the Privy Lodgings, before the *Proceeding* set forward; which *Chapter* being ended, there was then no need of going to the *Chapter-house* or *Closet*, but immediately into the *Choire*.

x MS. fol. pen. W. Dugdale Norr.

And thus we find it to have been observed at *Windesor*, upon the [x] 22. day of *April an.* 6. *Eliz.* where after the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the *Order*, were assembled in the Queen's *Privy-Chamber*, a *Chapter* was there called, and the Earl of *Arundel* constituted her *Lieutenant* for holding the *Feast*; at the breaking up whereof, the *Proceeding* began (the said *Lieutenant* supplying the place of the *Soveraign*) which passed along the publick processional way, directly unto the [y] South door of the *Chappel*, where they entred, and went thence into the *Choire*, [z] without going to the *Chapter-house* at all.

x, y, z Ibid. fol. 15. a.

So was it *an.* 20. *Jac. R.* at *Whitehall*, where after the *Prince* had been constituted the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* in *Chapter*, [a] *He* and the *Knights-Companions* proceeded to the *Chappel* to Evening Prayers, according to the Custom. So also upon the [b] 23. of *November*, *an.* 1. *Car.* 1. being the Eve of the *Grand Feast*, celebrated at *Windesor* by *Prorogation*, before the *Proceeding* began, a *Chapter* was held, wherein the Earl of *Worcester* was [c] constituted *Lieutenant*, and the *Soveraign* dispensed with the non-appearance of the absent *Knights-Companions*; after which, the said *Lieutenant*, and the rest of the *Knights-Companions*, together with all the *Officers* of the *Order*, proceeded from the *Presence-Chamber*, immediately into the [d] *Chappel*, to hear Divine Service.

a Lib. R. p. 1.

b, c, d Lib. R. p. 29.

In like manner on the [e] 23. day of *September* (the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*) *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. a *Chapter* was called [f] in the *Soveraign's Bedchamber* at *Windesor*, where the new Officers were sworn; and when that was ended, the *Proceeding* began to the [g] *Chappel*, and so into the *Choire*.

e, f Lib. R. pag. 38.

g Lib. R. p. 39. vide etiam Collect. W. le N. Cl. & Autogr. pen. Edw. Fauconbridge.

And lastly, 17. *Apr. an.* 13. *Car.* 1. at the Hour of [h] *Tierce* in the Afternoon, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* opened the *Chapter* in the [i] *Privy-Chamber*, and thence proceeded to the *Chappel*; this day being the *Eve* of the Feast, held by Prorogation for the 12. year of his Reign.

h Palmers Journ. p. 8.
i Lib. R p. 117.

And although upon the Eve of the *Grand Feast an.* [k] 21. *Jac. R.* after the *Soveraign* had held a *Chapter* in the [l] *Privy-Chamber* at *Windesor*, and thereat sworn Sir *George Moor* into the Office of *Chancellor* to this most Noble *Order*; the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* (the [m] Earl of *Worcester*) together with the *Knights-Companions*, proceeded to the *Chapter-house*, and there held another *Chapter*; yet was not this second Chapter called for Affairs appertaining to the *Grand Feast* (they being dispatched in the *Privy-Chamber* before) but only in reference to the calling in, and investiture with the Surcoat, of [n] *James* Marquess of *Hamilton*, who was that evening installed.

k, l, m Lib. R. p. 5.

n Ibid. p. 6.

We shall close this head, with acquainting our *Reader*, that though the *Proceedings* to the *Chapter-house* or *Chappel* on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, have most commonly been on *foot*; nevertheless, now and then, upon an extraordinary occasion, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* have proceeded on *Horseback*; as *an.* 3. *H.* 7. the *Grand Feast* being then held by prorogation at *Windesor*, on [o] *Sunday* following the Feastday of St. *George*, at which time several [p] *Ambassadors* being arrived here from Foreign *Kings* and *Princes*, they, and many of the *Nobility* of this Kingdom,

o MS. penes Arth. Cam. Anglesey, fol. 167. a.
p Ibid.

Kingdom, with the King's *Council*, the two *Archbishops*, the Bishops of *Lincolne* and *Exceter*, and the *Chief Justice* of the *Kings Bench* repaired also thither.

On the *Eve* the *Soveraign* accompanied with the *Knights-Companions* in their *Mantles*, and the *Gowns* or *Surcoats* of the *Livery* of the [q] preceding year, rode from the upper Quadrangle down to the *Colledge*. The *Queen* and the Kings *Mother*, in like [r] *Gowns* of that *Livery*, rode in a Chair covered with a rich Cloth of Gold, drawn by six Coursers, harnised with the same Cloth of Gold, and 21 Ladies habited in Crimson Velvet, rode upon white Palfreys, their Sadles of Cloth of Gold, the Harness Goldsmiths work, with white Roses demy-trapper-wise. Sir *Roger Cotton* Master of the Queens Horse, riding upon a Courser trapped with Goldsmiths work, led her Horse of State in his hand, being furnished with a Saddle of Cloth of Gold, and thereon three Crowns of Silver gilt, with Fimbres of the same Cloth hanging down to the Knees on both sides, and harnised with Goldsmiths work demy-trapper-wise: as soon as they alighted, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* proceeded to the *Chapter-house*, and thence to *Evensong*; which ended, they returned in the order they came.

[q] *Ibid.*
[r]

King *Henry* the Eighth on the 28. of *May* in the 11. year of his Reign, [f] at 3 a Clock in the Afternoon, with all the *Knights-Companions* in the *Habit* of the *Order*, proceeded from the *Presence-Chamber* in *Windesor Castle*, till they came to the Quadrangle, where they took their Horses, and rode according to their Stalls, not after their Estates, next before the King; [t] the reverend Father in God the Bishop of *Winchester Prelate* of the *Order*, wearing on him a Mantle of Morrey, with a Scutcheon of the Arms of St. *George* on the left shoulder, following all other the *Knights* of the *Garter*, the *Sword* was born by the Earl of *Westmerland* next before the King, and *Garter* King of Arms, and Sir *William Compton Usher* of the *Black-Rod*, went betwixt the *Prelate* and the *Sword*, and all *Gentlemen* and *Knights*, *Barons* and *Earls* before the *Knights* of the *Garter*, and thence rode to the [u] middle door of the *Chappel*, and there alighted, and so proceeded without the Choire unto the *Chapter-house*.

[f] *MS. in Offic. Arm. [M. 17.] fol. 26. b.*
[t] *MS.*
[u] *Ex Lib. prad. M. loco cit.*

Lastly, The *Grand Feast* being held at [w] *Windesor*, *an. 6. Eliz.* and the Earl of *Arundel* chosen the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant*, [x] he and the *Knights-Companions* proceeded on the *Eve* on *Horseback*, from the *Soveraign*'s Lodgings in the *Castle*, to the South door of the *Chappel*, and after *Evening Service* returned in the same order.

[w] *MS. fol.*
[x] *penes W. D. N. f. 15. a.*

SECT. IV.

Of the opening *of the* Chapter.

THE *Proceeding* being arrived at the entrance into the *Chappel*, first the Attendants upon the *Knights-Companions* divide themselves as they enter, beginning at the outward door, and flank on each side the North Isle of the *Chappel*, and so forward towards the West door of the *Choire*, making a stand along the Isle for the *Alms-Knights*, *Verger*, *Prebends*, and *Officers* of *Arms* to pass through them, who go on towards the said West door; and when the junior *Knights-Companions* are entred into the *Chappel*, the *Proceeding* makes a stand, while all the *Knights-Companions* following turn aside on the right hand into the *Chapter-house*, next the *Officers* of the *Order*, and lastly the *Soveraign*; but the *Nobleman* that carries the *Sword*, the *Train-bearers*, *Pensioners*, *&c.* stay without the *Chapter-house* door in the North Isle, none being admitted in but the *Soveraign*, the *Knights-Companions*, and the *Officers* of the *Order*; who being all entred, the door is shut by the *Gentleman-Usher* of the *Black-Rod*, and every person severally takes his due place and station, whereupon the *Chapter* immediately opens.

As

As the *Chapter-house* is a place of publick Convention, wherein all the Affairs of the *Order* are transacted, having been made the more famous for those many *Laws*, *Acts*, and *Decrees* of *Honor* and *Nobless*, which have received life and confirmation therein: So doth it seem to challenge as great a regard in the order and method of setting out the Places of those Persons, who not only assemble to consult, but such as are admitted to give attendance, as doth the *Proceeding* thither. In what manner and order the *Soveraign*, *Knights-Companions*, and *Officers* of the *Order* are ranked at the holding of a *Chapter*, and during its continuance, we shall find most fully and particularly described, in the order observed upon the 28. day of *May*, *an.* 11. *H.* 8. when the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* most solemnly assembled in the *Chapter-house* at *Windesor*, to consult upon Reformation and Explanation of the *Statutes* of the *Order*.

d Lib. M. 17. e in Offic. Arm. pag. 26. First, the *Soveraign* upon his entrance, immediately [d] proceeded to the midst of the North end of the Table (here called the [e] Vestments board) whereat his Chair, Cushens, and Cloth of State had been prepared; next the *Knights-Companions*, whose Stalls in the Choire were on the *Soveraign*'s side, took the right hand of the Table, and those of the *Prince*'s side the left; then the *Prelate* of the *Order* came and stood at the corner of the Table, upon the *Soveraign*'s right hand, the *Register* and *Garter* went down to the lower end, and stood there, whilst the *Black-Rod* kept the *Chapter-house* door on the inside.

And albeit the *Chancellor* of the *Order* be not here mentioned (as being not present at that time) yet his place in *Chapter* is on the *Soveraign*'s left hand of the Table, at the upper end, in regard the nature of his Employment requires that he be neer the *Soveraign*.

It hath seldom hapned, but that upon opening of the *Chapter*, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, fell immediately upon debates relating to the business of the time: Nevertheless, upon some peculiar and greater emergencies, all such Affairs have been adjourned until the following Chapter, as it was *an.* [a] 7. *Car.* 1. the Feast for that year having been prorogued unto the Month of *October*, and it falling out to be very late, before the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* arrived at the *Chapter-house*; after the *Chapter* was opened they proceeded no further, than to [f] adjourn the discussion of Affairs, relating to the *Order*, until the next morning, which otherwise would have put off the celebration of *Vespers* beyond the canonical hour.

a Lib. R. p. 73. f Ibid. R. p. 74.

The like was done upon the Eve of the *Grand Feast*, *an.* [g] 14. *Car.* 1. for after the *Soveraign* had entred the *Chapter-house*, and was set down under the State, the *Chancellor* offring to the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* the business of the time, the *Soveraign* moved, [h] in regard it was then late (besides the Ceremonies of the *Princes* Installation were to be performed at the ensuing *Vespers*) that the matters depending should be [i] adjourned until the next *Chapter*; which being agreed upon, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* advanced to the *Chappel* in their accustomed order.

g h i Palmers large Journ. pag. 12.

SECT. V.

Transactions *in the* Chapter *held before the first* Vespers.

BUT now to proceed to the Affairs treated of and transacted in the *Chapter*, held before *Vespers*, on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*; which being opened as before is shewed, and no adjournment given thereunto: All things are then to be debated, consulted of, and provided for, which concern the [a] *Honor* and *Dignity* of this most Noble *Order*, and necessary conservation of the *interest* thereof; and among these, some particulars are *ordinary*, and of *course*, others *extraordinary* and *occasional*.

a Lib. C. p. 93.

The

The matters of *course* (and indeed the proper business of the time) are first, swearing and admitting *Officers*; secondly, debating about the *Knights-Companions* then absent, and either dispensing with, or inflicting penalties upon them; and thirdly, constituting or appointing an *Officer*, to carry on the state and solemnity of the *Feast* in the *Soveraign*'s absence. But the other particulars, *viz.* those of extraordinary nature and occasional, cannot so well be brought within Rule, seeing they are things wholly accidental, whose contingency only begets a necessity of proposal or discussion, and besides are usually adjourned to the next days *Chapter*: therefore we have already touched upon them in their proper places, as we had occasion offered.

As to the first, we shall chiefly consider such *Officers* of the *Order* as happen to be nominated since the *Chapter*, immediately preceding the *Grand Feast*. And touching these, it hath been thought most proper, to introduce them soon after the *Chapter* is opened, that so (their respective *Oaths* having been administred unto them) they might be ready to perform the duty of their several places, during the session of the *Chapter*, and thence forward. 1. Swearing of Officers.

Thus on the [b] *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, solemnized at *Wind sor an.* 21. *Jac. R.* the *Soveraign* appointed a *Chapter* to be held in the *Privy-Chamber* (before the *Lieutenant*'s proceeding to the *Chappel*) whereat [c] Sir *George Moor* was sworn *Chancellor* of the *Order*. In the same *Chamber*, *an.* [d] 4. *Car.* 1. upon the 23. of *September*, being the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast* held by *Prorogation* (and before the *Soveraign* proceeded to *Vespers*) was Doctor [e] *Nele* Bishop of *Winchester* sworn *Prelate*, Sir [f] *Francis Crane* Chancellor, and Doctor [g] *Matthew Wren* (late Bishop of *Ely*) *Register*. Moreover, in the *Chapter* held on the [h] *Eve* of the *Feast*, celebrated at *Whitehall an.* [i] 23. *Eliz.* did Doctor *Watson* Bishop of *Winchester* make *Oath*, for his faithful Execution of the *Prelates Office*, as also Doctor [k] *Thomas Cooper* (his Successor in that See) who was admitted *an.* 26. *Eliz.* The like did [l] *William Wickham*, *an.* 37. of the same *Queen*: and in the same place, *an.* 40. *Eliz.* [m] Doctor *Bilson* also Bishop of *Winchester*, was sworn into this *Office*, at which time was *Richard Conisby* admitted *Gentleman-Usher* of the *Black-Rod*. In like manner [n] *an.* 11. *Car.* 1. did Doctor *Christopher Wren*, (Brother and Successor in the *Registers* place, to the afore-mentioned Bishop of *Ely*) take his *Oath*, at a *Chapter* held in the *Privy-Chamber* at *Whitehall*, on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast* there celebrated. Again Sir *Francis Walsingham*, and Sir *Amias Paulet*, were both sworn *Chancellors*, on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, kept at *Greenwich*, the one [o] *an.* 20. and the other [p] *an.* 30. of Queen *Eliz.* And lastly [q] *an.* 18. *Jac. R.* at the same place was the Bishop of *Winchester* sworn *Prelate*, the Bishop of *Spalato Register*, and *James Maxwell* Esq; *Black-Rod*.

b Lib. R. c Pag. 5. d Ibid. p. 38. e f g Ibid. p. 39. h i Lib. C. p. 85. k Ibid. pag. 38. l Pag. 127. m Pag. 136. n Lib. R. pag. 107. o Lib. C. p. 75. p Pag. 107. q Pag. 194.

Yet hath it happened now and then, that some of the *Officers* of this *Order*, have been sworn at other times, to wit, at *Chapters* next ensuing their Nomination or Choice, whether such have been held on the *Eve* of St. *George*, or on the *Grand Feast-day*, or otherwise called upon particular occasions; at which time nevertheless, the administration of the *Oath* hath been one of the first things done therein, for the reason before mentioned.

Those *Officers*, whom we have observed to have taken their *Oaths* on the *Eve* of St. *George*, that is to say, when only the day of St. *George* hath been solemnized, and the *Grand Feast* prorogued, were, first *Owen Oglethorpe* admitted [r] *an.* 1. *Mariæ*, in a *Chapter* called at the Mannor-house of St. *James*. Secondly, *George Carew* at *Whitehall*, [s] *an.* 2. *Eliz.* who immediately succeeded *John Boxhall*, Successor to the said *Oglethorpe*, in that Office. Next Doctor *Horne*, Bishop of *Winchester*, called [t] *an.* 3. *Eliz.* into the *Chapter*, then sitting in the Queens great Closet at *Whitehall*, and there took the Prelates Oath.

r Lib. C. p. 7. s Pag. 32. t MS. penes W. D. N. fol. 2. b.

Such *Officers* of the *Order*, as were sworn into their places, on the *Grand Feast-day*, are Sir *John Wooley Chancellor*, *an.* 31. *Eliz.* [u] before Morning Prayers; so [w] *an.* 38. *Eliz.* Sir *Edward Dyer*, and Doctor *Robert Benet*, who were admitted, the one *Chancellor*, and the other *Register*, [x] at a *Chapter* held before the first Morning Service, because they were not nominated before the beginning of the Celebrations on the *Eve*; but either the night following, or in the morning immediately before their admittance.

u Lib. C. p. 112. w x Ibid. pag. 130.

Lastly, those who have taken their *Oaths* at *Chapters*, called for peculiar purposes, in the intervals of *Feasts*, were [y] Sir *William Peters*, and Sir *Thomas Rowe*, both *Chancellors* of the *Order*; the one at the first *Chapter* that Queen *Mary* called, being the [z] 27. of *Sept. an.* 1. *Mar.* and the other at a *Chapter* celebrated at *Windsor*, upon the [a] 5. day of *December*, *an.* 12. *Car.* 1. As also Sir *James Palmer*, who, after the Execution of the Office of *Deputy Chancellor*, for the space of six years and an half, was upon the [b] 17. day of *January*, *an.* 20. *Car.* 1. sworn *Chancellor*, in a *Chapter* held at *Oxford*, at which time Sir *Edward Walker* Successor to Sir *Henry* St. *George*, in the place of *Garter*, was also sworn thereinto.

y *Ibid. p.* 7.
z *Ibid. pag.* 5.
a *Lib. R. pag.* 114, & 115.
b *Palmers Journ. pag.* 58.

2. Dispencing with or inflicting of Punishments.

Touching the second Particular, debated in the foresaid *Chapter*, *viz.* the dispensing with, or punishing of absent *Knights*; we are herein to consider, that the *Statutes* of the *Order* injoyn, [c] all the *Knights-Companions* to be present at the Celebration of the *Grand Feast*; that is to say, [d] *those who are then within the Kingdom, or elsewhere*, [e] although the Service of St. *George*, according to the Rites of the *Church*, be not at all celebrated: as in some cases we have already instanced, where the [f] Service of the day, whereon that of St. *George* hath fallen, as *Good-Friday*, &c. and not that of St. *George* hath been preferred. But with this limitation; [g] *So that they be in a capacity, or may conveniently repair thither*, and in particular at the beginning of the *Feast*, *viz.* the hour of *Tierce* on the *Eve*, as hath been before observed.

c } *E* 3. *Stat.*
d } *Art.* 9.
e *Hen.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 3.
f *Chap.* 18. *Sect.* 8.
g *E.* 3. } *Stat.*
H. 5. } *Art.* 9.
H. 8. *Stat. Art.* 8.

And therefore the next thing usually entred upon in the said *Chapter*, is for the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* to take notice, whether any of the Fellowship make default of coming at the hour assigned for their meeting, as aforesaid: If so, then are such to be considered, under one of the three general heads following. First, *Stranger Princes*: secondly, *Late Comers*, who are by this time arrived at the *Castle*, or every minute expected; and thirdly, such as have given notice, that they cannot be present during the continuation of of the *Feast*: and in relation to Offenders of these three natures, Excuses of Course, verbal Apologies, or Letters of Excuse, are or may be offered, or presented on their behalf; and in case they be approved and admitted, then the Penance, which by the *Statutes* ought otherwise to be inflicted, is remitted; all which ought to be recorded.

Stranger Princes.

As to *Stranger Princes*, their default of appearance is excused, upon their necessary residence in their own Territories, and the management of their Affairs there: And of their *Excuses* of Course, and accustomed *Dispensations*, we have divers instances in the *Registers* of the *Order*, as *an.* 7. *H.* 5. where it is said, [h] *That* Strangers *indeed who are not obliged to leave their own Dominions, but with their own consent, as the Kings of the* Romans, Portugal, *and* Denmark, *were (according to the custom) for that reason excused.*

h *Lib. N. p.* 58.

So the following year, the [i] same persons *were out of affection and respect excused, as busied in their own Affairs*; [k] and, as afterwards, *because they could not be spared from their own* Kingdoms. In the first year of King *Edward* the Fourth, in reference to the Kings of *Portugal* and *Denmark*, and the Earl of *Longueville*, it is said, [l] *They were excused (as always before in the same case) upon the account of being* Strangers. And lastly to the same effect of the King of the *Romans*, and Duke of *Ferrara*, *an.* 19. *H.* 7. [m] *They (because* Strangers*) were excused, as at all other times in the like case.* The like expressions are entred almost annually in the Reigns of King *Henry* the Eighth, King *Edward* the Sixth, and downwards still upon the like occasions.

i *Ibid. pag.* 61. & 68.
k *Ibid. pag.* 78.
l *Ibid. p.* 125.
m *Ibid. p.* 176.

Late-Comers.

As to *Knights-Companions* comprised under the second general Heads, *viz.* those who are tardy in their journey, or being come to the *Castle*, fall short of the hour, or of attending the *Soveraign* to the *Chapter-house*, either through negligence, or want of timely notice, or other accident; the *Penance* set on them by the *Statutes* of *Institution*, is, [n] That they shall so far incur punishment from the *Soveraign* and *Chapter* for their offence, as not to be permitted, for that time, to enter into the *Chapter*, but shall tarry without at the door, and not have voice in any thing that shall happen to be done there, unless they can alledge

n *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 9.

alledge a just excuse, or render [o] such a sufficient cause, as the *Soveraign* or his *Deputy* shall approve of.

o *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 9.

But we have observed few Defaulters in this kind, beside the Lord *Bourchier*, [p] *an.* 35. *H.* 6. who being noted to come thither before *Vespers*, it seems to imply, that his appearance was short of the *Hour* enjoyned as aforesaid.

p *Lib. N. pag.* 116.

Concerning the third sort of Delinquents, being those *Knights-Companions*, who are not only absent at the *Hour* of *Tierce*, but likely to be so during the whole *Feast*; the Proceedings in the *Chapter* relating to them are either upon what is presented and offered, in excuse of their absence; or determined upon their neglect or default, of making Apology for it.

Absent, during the whole Feast.

Where *Excuses* for absence are offered, they are either by *Letters*, or word of *mouth*; if by *Letters*, then are they sent either from the absent *Knights* themselves, and directed to the [q] *Chancellor* of the *Order*, or else from the *Soveraign* to his *Lieutenant* on their behalf, and both produced by the *Chancellor*. But if *Excuses* be made by word of *mouth*, then they are delivered, either by the *Soveraign* himself; or upon motion made, by some of the *Knights-Companions* present in *Chapter*.

q *See before Chap.* 19. *Sect.* 2.

In order to the first of these ways, of presenting the absent *Knights-Companions* excuses, we find the Custom of sending *Letters* to that purpose, to have been very ancient: For at the *Grand Feast* held at *Windesor*, by *Humfry* Duke of *Gloucester*, the *Soveraign's Deputy*, *an.* 8. *H.* 5. it appears that the Lord *Powis* his [r] *Letter* under his Hand and Seal (wherein he certified his present infirmity and indisposition of Body) was produced in *Chapter*. And the following year the Dukes of *York*, *Norfolk*, and *Buckingham*, with the Earls of *Salisbury*, *Shrewsbury*, and *Penbroke*, Viscount *Bourchier*, the Lord *Rivers*, and Sir *John Fastolf*, being all absent from St. *George's Feast*, [s] *they declared the reason of their absence, by their Messengers*. So *an.* 5. *E.* 4. we find that the Lord *Beauchamp* sent his [t] Excusatory *Letters*, which were received. Again *an.* 19. of the same King, it is noted, [u] *That all that were absent from this Solemnity, excused their absence by* Letters *to that purpose, signed and sealed with their Arms.* And this hath been the use in following times, whereunto several Memorials entred in the late *Soveraign's* Reign concur; and among others, that *an.* 13. *Car.* 1. when on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, held by *Prorogation* upon the 17. 18. and 19. days of *April*, the Earls of *Moulgrave*, *Lindesey*, *Suffolk*, and *Exceter*, having [w] signified by Letters under their Seals of Arms, their several excuses of sickness and disability to attend, the *Chancellor* producing them in *Chapter*, they were dispensed with by the *Soveraign*. The like *Excuses* made by [x] *Letters* were accepted from the Earls of *Suffolk*, *Danby*, and *Lindesey*, *an.* 15. of the same King.

Excuse by Letters.

r *Lib. N. p.* 61.

s *Ib. pag.* 119.

t *Pag.* 129.

u *Pag.* 144.

w *Rowes Journal, pag.* 9.

x *Palmers Journal pro an.* 1630 *pag.* 17.

There are entred in the *Registers* several Memorials of *Letters*, sent from the *Soveraign* to his *Deputy*, when himself hath not been present in *Chapter*; wherein his excusing and pardoning the defaults of absent *Knights-Companions* hath been signified. As *an.* 22. *H.* 6. the Duke of *Buckingham* being Lieutenant, the Dukes of *Gloucester* and *Exceter*, with the Lord *Hungerford*, [y] were excused by the *Soveraign's Letters*. So *an.* 36. of the same King, Viscount *Mountague* being reckoned up amongst the absent *Knights-Companions*, the *Register* saith, [z] *he was excused by the* Soveraign's *Letters*. The [a] like is noted of the Dukes of *York* and *Gloucester*, and six other *Knights-Companions*, absent from the *Feast* held *an.* 18. *E.* 4. the Lord *Dudley* being then the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*. And so *an.* [b] 21. *E.* 4. concerning other absent *Knights-Companions*. Moreover *an.* 18. *H.* 7. the [c] *Soveraign* (it being his pleasure to be absent) sent his *Letters* thereupon to the Earl of *Darby* his *Deputy*, to excuse also some others that were absent: So also in the [d] 21. [e] 22. and [f] 23. of the same King. But *an.* 20. *H.* 8. we find no less than [g] 17 *Knights-Companions* at one time, excused and pardoned for their absence, by the *Soveraign's Letters* sent unto the *Marquess* of *Exceter*, his *Lieutenant* for the *Grand Feast* kept at *Windesor* the 27. of *May* in the foresaid year, *viz.* three Dukes, six Earls, two Viscounts, five Barons, and one Knight Baneret.

Letters from the Soveraign.

y *Lib. N. p.* 94.

z *Pag.* 118.

a *Ibid. p.* 142.

b *Pag.* 148.

c *Pag.* 174.

d *Pag.* 179.

e *Pag.* 180.

f *Pag.* 186.

g *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [*M.* 17.] *fol.* 30. *b.*

And hitherto may be referr'd, what is spoken of the Dukes of *Clarence* and *Gloucester*, and six other *Knights-Companions an.* 14. *E.* 4. that their absence was

excused [h] by the *Soveraign*'s authority; the like expression is used in the case of the Earl of [i] *Northumberland*, and others *an.* 19. of his Reign.

h *Lib.N.pag.* 134.
i *Ibid.p.*143.

And from many Precedents, which we have seen, of *Letters* sent from the *Soveraign*, and directed to his *Lieutenant* to accept of *Knights-Companions* excuses, whose absence he had beforehand dispensed with; we observe those *Dispensations* excused not the sending of their own particular Excuses; for it is evident they were also expected, and that such allowance of absence was not absolute, but in a manner conditional, the clause running thus. [k] *That you* [the *Soveraign*'s *Deputy*] *allow these excuses, so far as they are consonant to reason.* And in all other *Letters* of the same nature, a Clause to this effect hath been inserted, [l] *That as the* Soveraign *thought good to advertise his* Deputy, *that for certain causes he had dispenced with their attendance for that time; so he willed him to accept their* reasonable excuses *in that behalf accordingly.*

k *Appendix. Num.* CLXXIII.
l *Num.* CLXXIV. & CLXXV.

The Soveraigns verbal Excuses in Chapter.

Secondly, The absent *Knights-Companions* have had their *Excuses* frequently made by word of *mouth*, either of the *Soveraign*, or some other of the *Knights-Companions* present in *Chapter*. This favour of the *Soveraign* is either done by himself, when present in *Chapter*, or by giving order to his *Lieutenant* before the *Feast* begin.

In relation to what he hath personally done in this case, we have many Examples; as *an.* 6. *H.* 6. the [m] *Soveraign* declared the reason of the Duke of *Norfolks* absence. So on the *Eve* of the *Feast* kept at *Windesor an.* 26. *H.*6. the Duke of *York*, the Earl of *Salisbury*, Viscount *Beaumont*, the Lords *Hungerford*, *Willoughby*, and Sir *John Fastolf* were absent, [n] *but excused by the* Soveraign. Again, in a *Chapter* held on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, celebrated at *Windesor an.* 36. *H.* 6. the Duke of *York*, Earl of *Salisbury*, and Viscount *Bourchier*, being absent, [o] *were excused by the Soveraign's own mouth:* the [p] like is said on the behalf of the absent *Knights*, *an.* 3. *H.* 7. So *an.* 17. *E.* 4. on the *Eve* of the *Feast* held by *Prorogation*, the Dukes of *Gloucester*, *Buckingham*, and *Suffolk*, with the Earl of *Northumberland* at that time absent, [q] *were excused by the* Soveraign.

m *Lib.N.p.*84.
n *Pag.* 101.
o *Pag.* 117.
p *Pag.* 158.
q *Pag.*141.

And to his Deputy before.

At other times, the *Soveraign* (not being present in *Chapter*) hath before hand verbally, (instead of Letters) given his *Deputy* or *Lieutenant* direction to excuse the absence of several of the *Knights-Companions*. Thus it was in the case of the *Prince*, the Earls of *Surrey* and *Shrewsbury*, and Lord *Dauben*, who *an.*19.*H.*7. [r] *were excused by the* Soveraign, *by word of mouth* (to the Marquess of *Dorset* his *Lieutenant*) *because they were then employed in his service.* And as touching the Eals of *Arundel*, and *Devonshire* at the same time, the *Register* saith, *the* [t] Soveraign *with his own mouth excused them to his* Dputy. Whereto we may add what is recorded, *an.* 26. *H.*8. [t] *All others absent were by the* Soveraign *at that time excused* (to the Duke of *Richmond* his *Lieutenant*) *by word of mouth*, *and afterwards by his Letters.*

r *Lib. N. p.* 176.
t *Pag.*265.

Excuses made by Knight Companions.

Of the latter sort, to wit, such as have been excused, upon the motion made by some of the other *Knights-Companions* present in *Chapter*, we find that on the *Vigil* of St. *George an.* 1. *H.* 6. *Humfrey* Duke of *Gloucester* being then the *Soveraign's Deputy*, Sir *William Harington*'s absence [u] *was excused by the Chancellor*, at that time Sir [w] *John Robessart*, one of the *Knights-Companions*. So *an.* 2. *H.* 6. [x] *The* Deputy *took upon him the Earl of* Warwick's *excuse.*

u *Lib. N.* w *pag.* 74.
x *Pag.* 76.

But ere we proceed any further, it will not be amiss here to observe, what effect the *Excuses*, presented on the behalf of absent *Knights*, have usually produced; in reference whereunto we find the just and reasonable, favourably admitted, some suspended, and divers disallowed.

Excuses allowed, and in what cases.

Excuses easily allowed, were first *Sickness* (for those of the *Knights-Companions* who have either been sick, far spent with age, or intent upon publick Affairs; have readily obtained excuse) which we meet with in the Examples of the [a] Lord *Powis an.* 8. *H.* 5. the [b] Duke of *Exceter*, *an.* 2. *H.* 6. [c] Sir *Thomas Erpingham an.*6. *H.*6. as also the [d] Lord *Dudley an.* 15. *E.* 4. And of later times the [e] Earl of *Bedford*, *an.* 26. *Eliz.* [f] Viscount *Mountague*, and the Earl of *Warwick* in the 30. of the same *Queen*, with many others.

a *Lib.N.p.* 61.
b *Pag.* 76.
c *Pag.* 85.
d *Pag.* 136.
e *Lib. C.p.*97.
f *Ibid.* p. 107.

Secondly, *The not recovery of Wounds received in the Soveraigns Service*; for such

such was the condition of Sir *William Harington, an.* 7. *H.* 5. whom we see excused [g] *for his illness, occasioned from the* Wounds, *then Lately received at the Siege of* Roan *and elsewhere.* [g] *Lib. N. p.* 58.

Thirdly, *Impotency and old age*; for which cause the [h] Lord *Burnell, an.* 7. *H.* 5. at the last mentioned *Chapter*, the Earls of [i] *Shrewsbury* and *Warwick*, and Lord *Burghley an.* 31. *Eliz.* and the [k] Earl of *Moulgrave, an.* 13. *Car.* 1. So also the Earl of [l] *Westmerland, an.* 2. *&* 3. *H.* 6. and the Earl of [m] *Suffolk an.* 13. *Car.* 1. for the [n] *weakness of his Limbs*; were all of them excused for absence at those several Feasts. [h] *Lib. C. p.* 112. [i] *Lib. R. pag.* 126. [k] *Ex præf. lib. N. p.* 79, *&* 78. [l] *Lib. R. p.* 126. [m] *Rowes Journ. pag.* 24. [n] *Lib. N. p.* 58.

Fourthly, *imployment in the Soveraigns service*; either abroad or at home: Of the first sort was the case of Sir *Robert Umfrevile*, excused *an.* 7. *H.* 5. [o] because he had been sent towards *Scotland*, to defend the Borders. So the Lord *Scroop* engaged in the like Service, [p] *an.* 30. *Eliz.* his absence was immediately excused. As was that of the Duke of *Bedford* and the Lord *Talbot, an.* 6. *H.* 6. [q] both being employed in the Wars of *France*, whilst the *Grand Feast* was celebrated at *Windesor*. Again, the Earl of [r] *Salisbury* and Lord *Fauconbridge* had such another Apology, *an.* 28. *H.* 6. And lastly, the Earl of *Essex an.* 41. *Eliz.* [s] *who according to his Commission, was endeavouring to subdue by Arms the* Irish *Rebels*; and therefore deservedly excused. [o] *Lib. N. p.* 58. [p] *Lib. C. pag.* 107. [q] *Lib. N. pag.* 84, *&* 85. [r] *Ibid. p.* 103. [s] *Lib. C. p.* 137.

Of the second sort of employment, to wit, at home, was that of the Earls of *Shrewsbury*, and *Huntington, an.* [t] 22. *&* [u] 26. *Eliz.* the first of whom was taken up in the managery of certain *Affairs* enjoined him by the *Soveraign*; but the other being [w] *President* of the *Council* in the *North*, his absence was for that, and several years following, favourably admitted. And a like case was that of the Earl of *Danby, an.* 13. *Car.* 1. who [x] for his necessary attendance at the Seat of *Justice in Eyre*, was excused of his waiting on the *Soveraign*, at the *Grand Feast* held by *Prorogation* on the 2. 3. and 4. days of *October* in the foresaid year. [t] *Ibid. pag.* 81. [u] *Pag.* 97. [w] *Ib. pag.* 81. [x] *Lib. R. p.* 126

Fifthly, *When the Grand Feast hath received Prorogation, and any of the Knights-Companions have not had notice of the day whereunto it was prorogued*; and for non-attendance for want of such notice, Sir *Simon Febbridge an.* 8. *H.* 6. (the Feast for that year, having been prorogued unto the [y] 22. of *May*) was excused by *Humfry* Duke of *Gloucester*, then the *Soveraign's Deputy*. [y] *Lib. N. p.* 86.

Sixthly, *When any of the Knights-Companions have been employed upon Embassie or other Civil Affairs*; as Sir *Here Tanke Clux*, who *an.* 3. *H.* 6. [a] was by the *Soveraign* sent in Legation to the Emperor of *Germany*, and also for that *an.* 5. *&* 6. *H.* 6. [b] he yet remained in the *Emperor's Court* by the *Soveraign's* command. In like manner the Indulgence of the *Soveraign* excused the Earl of *Derby* and Lord *Cobham an.* 30. *Eliz.* [d] they being sent Ambassadors into the *Low-Countries*, to treat with *Philip* King of *Spain* about a Peace. To like purpose is that Entry made in excuse of the Earl of *Marr's* absence in *Scotland*, and Earl of *Carlisle's* Embassy abroad, [e] *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. [a] *Ibid. p.* 78. [b] *Pag.* 83. [d] *Lib. C. p.* 107 [e] *Lib. R. p.* 137.

Seventhly, *When any of them have been in Captivity*; as was [f] *Thomas* Earl of *Salisbury*, and the Earl of *Huntington*, both Prisoners in *France an.* 2. *H.* 6. So also the Earl of [g] *Suffolk*, the Lord *Talbot*, and Lord *Scales an.* 7. *H.* 6. the [h] Lord *Fauconbridge an.* 30. *&* 36. *H.* 6. and Earl of [i] *Kendal an.* 32. *H.* 6. and lastly, in the 4. 5. and 6. years of *Edward* the Fourth, [k] Sir *John Astley* who was Prisoner there also. [f] *Lib. N. p.* 77. [g] *Ibid. p.* 85. [h] *Pag.* 107. [i] *Pag.* 111. [k] *Pag.* 129, *&* 130.

Eighthly, *When any of them have obtained the Soveraign's Letters of Dispensation*, of which sufficient is spoken before.

Lastly, *Some other just and lawful occasion*, as well as accident, having fallen out (not relating to those under the former heads) the *Soveraign* upon information given in *Chapter*, hath been pleased to allow of, as sufficient to excuse the non-appearance and non-attendance of the *Knights-Companions* at the *Grand Feasts*; in which rank, the foresaid Lord *Fauconbridge's* care of his domestick Affairs, *an.* 32. *H.* 6. was readily admitted, [l] *because having been lately in* Prison, *he had obtained leave to go to see his* House *and* Lands *in the* Country. And the Earl of *Arundel's* absence *an.* 15. *Car.* 1. was pardoned, by reason of the Dutchess of *Richmond's* [m] *Death*, who died on the Eve of the *Grand Feast*, that so (he [l] *Pag.* 111. [m] *Palmers Journ. pro an.* 1639. *pag.* 17.

(he being the chief of her Family) might be at hand to advise and assist, in all things conducing to the honor of the deceased Dutchess.

And as the *Knights-Companions* have been often excused, for not appearing at the *Grand-Feast*, upon lawful and sufficient grounds, so hath the *Soveraign*, for like reasons, been pleased to license and dispence with their departure from the same. Of this we have met with an Example *an. 6. Eliz.* in the Lord *Hastings* of *Loughborough*, [n] who falling ill a [o] little before the Offring on St. *George*'s day, obtained license from the *Soveraign*, to depart out of the Choire; and came no more abroad that day, nor during that Feast. As also another in the Duke of *Lenox an.* 15. *Car.* 1. who being forced to go back to *London*, by reason of the aforesaid Dutchess of *Richmond*'s [p] death, had his excuse made in *Chapter* held the morning of the *Feast* day, by the *Deputy Chancellor*; whereupon he obtained the *Soveraign*'s [q] allowance for such his departure.

n *Lib.C. p.* 46.
o *MS. fol. pen. W.D.N. f.*16.*a.*

p *Palmers*
q *Journ. pro an.*1639. *p.*20.

We are next to consider *Excuses*, which though sent in due time, yet upon debate and consultation in *Chapter* were suspended, rather than allowed; to this head may be referred that case of several of the [r] *Knights-Companions*, who were members of the *Lords house* in the Long *Parliament*. For *an.* 18. *Car.* 1. the *Deputy Chancellor*, having by command of the *Soveraign*, and in discharge of the duty of his Office, sent unto each of them a several Summons, for their attendance at the celebration of the *Grand Feast*, to be held for the preceding year at *York*, upon the 18. 19. and 20. days of *April*; and notice thereof being given to the House of Lords, they immediately made the ensuing Order.

r *Pembr. & Montg. Salsbury, Dorset, Holland, Berks, Northumberland.*

Die Martis, 22. *Maii* 1641.

WHereas the Lord Chamberlain *of his Majesties houshold, and some other Lords of* Parliament, Knights *of the* Garter, *have been summoned to give their attendance, and repair unto the City of* York, *for the celebration of St.* George's Feast; *who acquainting this* House *with the Summons aforesaid, it is this day* Ordered *by the Lords in* Parliament, *that they attend the weighty Affairs of the* Kingdom, *discussed in* Parliament, *whereunto they are obliged by his Majesties Writ, and the Law of the Land.*

Jo. Browne Cleric. Parliament.

Whereupon, every one of the said *Knights-Companions*, before the days appointed by Prorogation for holding the *Feast*, sent their *Petitionary Letters* of *excuse* to the *Deputy Chancellor*, wherein they professed their desire and readiness to attend, in obedience of the said Summons; nevertheless, pleaded the foresaid Order for the ground of their stay at *London*, and therefore desired him to obtain for them the *Soveraign*'s gracious Letters of *Dispensation*: But when the said *Letters* were severally presented in *Chapter*, [s] held before *Vespers* on the *Eve* of the said *Feast*, the *Soveraign* would not at present either admit or disallow of their Excuses; but [t] deferred the consideration thereupon until the next *Chapter*, to be held by Prorogation.

s *Palmers Journal*, *p.*36.
t *Pag.*38.

Of excuses which have not been allowed, the most remarkable is that of the Duke of *Norfolk*, and the Lord *Scales*, *an.* 36. *H.* 6. who, in regard the causes alledged to excuse their absence at the *Feast*, [u] were not approved in a *Chapter* held on the *Eve*, were adjudged to the penalty of the *Statute*; the latter being particularly fined by the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, in a [w] *Jewel* to the value of 20 Marks, to be offered in the *Colledge*: whereby the rigour of the *Statute* appears to have been more strictly executed upon him, than on the Duke (whose contempt might be of a less nature, though it seems great enough to shut out his excuse) probably because the Lord *Scales*, having been absent the year before, and no cause thereof being then shewed in *Chapter*, [x] was therefore *to suffer penalty for his absence*, *according to the* Statute; so that this it seems was the second fault.

u, w *Lib N. p.* 118.
x *Pag.*117.

But

But now to enter upon the second Branch of the third general head, which relates to the proceedings upon the absent *Knights-Companions* neglect, or default of sending their *Excuses:* We shall therein observe, that some of them have with difficulty been remitted, some left in suspence, and others sentenced, and referred, either to the *Soveraign*'s pleasure, or the punishment assigned by Law.

Defaulters pardoned.

Of the first kind are those, who having such a plea for their absence, as might induce the *Chapter* to dispence therewith; yet were with much ado excused, because they neglected giving due intimation thereof, according to the *Statutes*. Such was that of the Earl of *Westmerland an.* 10. *H.* 5. who [y] though not very well, yet had much ado to be excused; because he signified not the cause of his absence, as the *Statutes* required.

[y] *Lib. N. p.* 69.

So *an.* 12. *Car.* 1. The Earls of [z] *Derby* and *Kelly*, having made no Excuse nor Petition for Dispensation, were for that omission blameable; but by the grace of the *Soveraign* for that time pardoned.

[z] *Rowes Journal, pag.* 9.

Suspended.

Of the second sort are such, who through the indulgence of the *Soveraign*, or his *Lieutenant* (where probable cause hath induced it) have not had sentence passed on them at that present, but were deferred, in expectation of some satisfactory cause to be shewed: As in the case of the *Prince*, the Duke of *Buckingham*, and five other of the *Knights-Companions*, absent from the *Feast* held *an.* 18. *H.* 7. concerning whom, * *no cause of* Excuse *was shewed, but there was an expectation of one to be alledged.*

* *Lib. N. pag.* 175.

Sentenced and left to mercy.

But as for those of the third sort, upon whom sentence hath passed, for default of sending their *Excuses*, they have been left either to the pleasure of the *Soveraign*, or to those *penalties* and *penances* which the *Law* of this *Order* doth inflict: And first of such Offenders as are left by the *Chapter* to the mercy of the *Soveraign*, we have several Examples. Of the Earl of *Essex*, *an.* 18. *H.* 7. it is recorded, [a] *That his absence was referred to the* Soveraign's *indulgence.* So *an.* 21. of the same King, upon occasion of the absence of the Earls of *Northumberland*, *Oxford*, *Devonshire*, *Kent*, together with the Lord *Stafford*, and no cause thereof assigned, [b] *they were left to the* Soveraign's *indulgence.* To the [c] like effect is the entry made of the Earls of *Essex*, and *Kent*, absent the following year, without cause shewn to the *Chapter*.

[a] *Lib. N. pag.* 175.
[b] *Ibid. p.* 179.
[c] *Pag.* 180.

Punished.

Lastly, touching those on whom *Judgment* hath passed, divers instances may be given, among which are these that follow. *An.* 10. *H.* 5. the Lord *Willoughby*, Sir *Robert Umfrevill*, Sir *John Cornewall*, and Sir *William Harington*, were in no wise excused for their absence, [d] *because being within the Kingdom, they sent not the cause of their absence.* And *an.* 2. *H.* 6. the said Sir *Robert Umfreville*, was also found culpable, [e] in regard *no cause of his absence had been shewed.* Moreover, seeing the reasons of the Duke of *Norfolk*'s, the Lord *Scales*, and *Fastolfs* absence *an.* 33. *H.* 6. were not made known to the *Chapter*, [f] *they were left to the Judgment of the* Statutes. And of the same Lord *Scales*, *an.* 35. *H.* 6. it is recorded, [g] *that he gave no reason of his absence, therefore underwent the punishment thereof.*

[d] *Lib. N. p.* 69.
[e] *Pag.* 77.
[f] *Pag.* 113.
[g] *Pag.* 117.

Lastly, The Duke of *York*, the Earl of *Salisbury*, the foresaid Lord *Scales*, and Lord *Willoughby*, for presuming to be absent from the *Grand Feast*, *an.* 30. *H.* 6. [h] *without shewing any allowable cause, they were adjudged to the certain and deserved penalties (of the* Statutes) *against the next Feast.* And the said Duke being again absent the very next year (and also the Lord *Hastings*) [i] *They were both adjudged to certain* Penalties, *as daring to be absent without sufficient cause shewn.*

[h] *Ibid. p.* 107.
[i] *Pag.* 108.

Penances where Knights are absent at other times of the Feast.

Besides these grounds for assigning *Penances* already mentioned, there are (upon a few other causes, set down in the before recited ninth *Article* of the *Statutes* of *Institution*) other *Penances* appointed, that is to say, if the *Knights-Companions* be absent at other times beside the hour of *Tierce*; which (if we were strictly tied to pursue the series and order of time) would fall out to be spoke of, a little hence. Nevertheless, having had occasion to discourse so much already of this subject, it will become further beneficial to the concerned *Reader*, to bring all the *Injunctions* which are included in the said *Article*, and muster

muster up the *Penalties* for breach thereof, in view together: nor will this anticipation at all interrupt our method, or become improper for this place, if well considered, and therefore we shall proceed with them here.

The *Knights-Companions* are further punishable, if they are absent at any of the times here spoken of, *viz.* First, at the beginning of the *first Vespers.* Secondly, at the beginning of the *Morning Service*, on the *Feast* day. Thirdly, at the beginning of the *second Vespers.* Fourthly, during the *whole Feast.* And fifthly, at the Grand *Feast* next following.

For the first, admitting any *Knight-Companion* hath failed of meeting and attending on the *Soveraign* at the hour of *Tierce*, and thereupon suffered the punishment of non-admittance into the *Chapter-house*, and deprivation of *Vote*, nevertheless if at the rising of the said *Chapter*, he be not ready to proceed with the *Soveraign*, and other the *Knights-Companions* into the Choire, to the beginning of the first Vespers; he ought not only to suffer the former, but this additional penalty, [k] *That he shall not presume to enter into his* Stall *at that time, but tarry in that part of the* Choire, *where the* Taper-bearers *are wont to stand, nevertheless before his own Stall, until the holy Offices be ended.* And the Law of the *Order* is the same in King *Henry* the Fifth's and King *Henry* the Eighth's[l] *Statutes*, only they render the place for the delinquent *Knight* to stand in, to be before their *Stalls* in the *Choristers* places. And now how the penalty hath been inflicted, upon breach of the Law in this particular, we shall see by the following instances.

k *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 10.

l *H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 10. *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 9.

At the *Grand Feast* celebrated at *Windesor*, *an.* 21. *H.* 7. when it seems the Lord *Kildare*, Sir *Gilbert Talbot*, and Sir *Richard Goulford* came late to the *Chappel*, we find this Memorandum fixed to their names, [m] *They stood without* (before their Stalls) *by the* Soveraign's *permission, or rather command.* But yet this is not all the punishment which hath been inflicted upon the *Knights-Companions* for this offence (though it be all that is set down in the foresaid *Article*) for *an.* 25. *H.* 6. upon the *Eve* of St. *George*, the *Marquess* of *Dorset* not coming to the first *Vespers*, and being convicted of his late coming, [n] *was prohibited joining in the* Nomination *then made, for the* Election *of the* [o] *King of* Portugal, *into the room of the Duke of* Gloucester.

m *Lib. N pag.* 179.

n *Ibid. p.* 99.

o *Pag.* 100.

Offendors in the second and third case, being such as neglect to come [p] before the beginning of the high *Mass*, or the [q] second *Vespers*, called also the [r] *Vespers* on St. *George's* day, have the like punishment with the former assigned them, throughout all the Bodies of the *Statutes*; *viz.* Exclusion from their *Stalls*, and station in the *Choristers* range.

p } *E.* 3. *Stat.* q } *Art.* 10.

r *Hen.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 9.

An. 1. *H.* 6. we observe the Lord *Willoughby* noted to be absent upon the [s] *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, but present on the day; and consequently he incurred no further penance, than what his absence on the *Eve* drew on him. The [t] Earl of *Derby an.* 18. *Eliz.* coming too late to the first morning Service, on the *Feast* day, did for some short time undergo the aforesaid penance, but soon after upon [u] Dispensation from the *Lieutenant*, went up to his Stall.

s *Lib.N. p.* 74.

t } *MS. penes* u } *G. O. T. pag.* 123.

In like manner *an.* 11. *Car.* 1. the Earl of [w] *Exceter* came not to the *Chappel*, in the morning of the *Feast* day, till after the *Grand Procession*; and so the Penance for his tardiness, should have been according to the *Statutes*, *stare Paviamento*; but, upon consideration of his age, and the foul weather, whereby it was occasioned, the *Soveraign* permitted him to enter into his Stall.

w *Lib R. pag.* 107, 108.

And though absence at these times also be occasioned by *Sickness*, or some unexpected accident, yet notice is to be given thereof to the *Soveraign* or his *Lieutenant.* For instance, the Lord *Burghley* falling ill was absent [x] from the first Morning Service on the *Feast* day, *an.* 37. *Eliz. but upon notice given thereof, with the consent of the* Lieutenant *and* Knights-Companions, *he obtained leave of absence.* The Earl of *Dorset an.* 15. *Car.* 1. (the *Grand Feast* being then celebrated at *Windesor*) [y] suddenly falling ill, before Evening Prayer, on the *Feast* day, besought the *Soveraign* to excuse his attendance for the present; but the [z] next morning being recovered, he attended the *Soveraign*, with the rest of the *Knights-Companions* to the *Chapter-house*.

x *Lib. C. pag.* 227.

y *Palmers Journal pro an* 1639 *p.* 22.

z *Ibid. pag* 33.

The

The *Penances* inflicted upon any *Knight* (for the foresaid defaults) he is in like manner to undergo, if he happen to offend in the like kind, when the *Grand Feast* is prorogued [a] from St. *George*'s day, in what place soever it be celebrated. [a, b, c] *H. 8. Stat. Art. 4.*

But if he offend in all, and have neither license, nor reasonable or allowable excuse for his absence, he is then [b] prohibited entring his Stall, at the next St. *George*'s *Feast*, where ever it be kept; and moreover to pay, as a pecuniary mulct [c] 10 *l.* to be employed towards the Ornaments of the *Colledge*. And we find the former kind of Penance, to have been inflicted, upon Late Comers to Divine Service, as well upon the *Morrow* after the *Feast* day, as on the *Eve* or *Feast* day it self. For the Earl of *Lindsey* coming into the *Chappel* on the morrow after the Feast [d] held at *Whitehall an.* 8. *Car.* 1. after the *Soveraign* was entred, he suffred the punishment of [e] standing before his *Stall* a while, until the *Soveraign* signified his license, that he might ascend thereinto. In like Manner, the Earl of *Northumberland* coming somewhat late unto morning Service, on the last day of the *Feast*, held by prorogation at *Whitehall* the 17. 18. and 19. days of *April an.* 13. *Car.* 1. did undergo the assigned Penance, [f] of standing beneath his *Stall* in the middle of the *Choire*, but [g] upon the graeious permission of the *Soveraign* he was soon admitted thereunto. [d, e] *Collect. Wille N. Cl.* [f, g] *Lib. R. p. 125. Rows Journal, p. 16.*

But touching the fourth degree of offence, as it is far greater than any yet named, so are there variety of Penances appointed to expiate the fault; and therefore, if any *Knight-Companion* shall be so negligent, as not to come [h] to the celebrations of the *Grand Feast*, and yet have no justifiable reason of his absence, such as may be allowed by the *Soveraign* or his [i] *Deputy*, he shall not (at the *Feast* to be held the ensuing year) enter into his own *Stall*, but stand below before it, in the place above mentioned: (2.) he shall walk alone by himself, before the three *Crosses*, which in ancient times were born in the *Grand Procession*. (3.) When the *Grand Procession* returns to the Choire, he shall stand in the place before mentioned, the following part of the *Miss*, until the time of the *Offertory*. (4.) He shall *Offer* last of all by himself alone. And after the humble sufferance of all these Penances, he shall forthwith approach the Stall of the *Soveraign*, or his *Deputy*, and there humbly desire absolution for his Offence: Whereupon the *Soveraign*, or his *Deputy*, shall restore him to his Stall and first estate. But we have not hitherto met with any Record or Memorial, where the particulars of this punishment were executed upon any of the *Knights* Offenders, albeit we too often find, where many have neither appeared all the time of the *Feast*, nor sent *Letters* of excuse, nor obtained license for their absence. As for instance *an.* 9. *H.* 6. [k] Sir *Robert Umfrevile*, Sir *Simon Felbrigg*, and Sir *William Harington*, signified not the cause of their absence: neither did the Duke of [l] *Buckingham*, nor Earl of *Northumberland*, give any reason at all of their absence. The like hath been observed of many others, but without further memorial of what the *Chapter* did thereupon. [h] *E. 3. Stat. Art. 10.* [i] *H. 5. Stat. Art. 10. H. 8. Stat. Art. 9.* [k] *Lib. N. p. 88.* [l] *Pag. 177.*

Fifthly, and lastly, the *Statutes* ordain, That [m] if any *Knight-Companion* remain within the Kingdom, and not having a sufficient excuse, to be allowed upon humble suit as aforesaid, shall presume to absent himself the [n] next following year, and thereby become culpable of an omission of two years successively, from the Solemnity before mentioned, he ought thereupon to be so long [o] interdicted his own Stall, until, in the said *Chappel*, he shall have offered at Saint *George*'s *Altar*, a [p] *Jewel* to the value of 20 Marks, of lawful money of *England*; and thence forward every year, so long as he shall continue guilty in that nature, the mulct must be doubled until he be reconciled and pardoned. [m, n, o, p] *E. 3. H. 5. Stat. Art. 10. H. 8. Stat. Art. 9.*

By vertue of this last Clause of the foregoing *Article*, was the Lord *Maltravers an.* 15. *E.* 4. [q] for such his absence, fined at 20 Marks. And the Lord *Scales*, *an.* 36. *H.* 6. in a Jewel of [r] 20 Marks value, which, as probably may be collected, was the following year endeavoured, either to be mitigated or taken off; nevertheless we find the sentence confirmed, and he [s] left to pay the Fine imposed. [q] *Lib. N. pag. 137.* [r] *Ibid. p. 118.* [s] *Pag. 119.*

Of later times the greatest Offender, that we observe, against this *Statute*, was

Ferdinand Earl of *Derby*; who having made no excuse, nor Petition for his absence in two years, was at a [t] *Chapter*, held on the Eve of the *Grand Feast*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 1. accordingly fined, and that with some further [u] note of negligence, but at the mediation of the Earl of *Penbroke* and *Montgomery*, he was for that time [w] remitted. Yet was he not guilty of any future neglect; for, the following year, upon his humble *Petition* setting forth his [w] age, weakness, and inability to Travel, he obtained a *Dispensation* for attendance on the *Soveraign* at the Feasts of St. *George* during his life.

But the most memorable ease in the proseeution of a contempt, was that against the Earl of *Arundel*, who in a *Chapter* held [x] *an.* 14. *E.* 4. was fined [y] 40 Marks, to be paid to the *Colledge* of *Windesor*, for being absent from the Solemnity of the *Grand Feast*, for two years together without any approved cause: and the following year still continuing his Contempt, the mulct (by virtue of the aforesaid *Statute*) was doubled, and he fined in the sum of [z] 80 Marks.

3. Of constituting an Officer to hold the Grand Feast.

Touching the third particular, amongst those things done of course, in the *Chapter* held before the first *Vespers*, to wit, the nominating and constituting an *Officer* for holding the same (if the *Soveraign* be not present) we are beforehand to note the occasion and cause thereof, which was briefly this.

At the time of *Instituting* this *Order*, the *Soveraign* being engaged in Wars with *France* and *Scotland*, which he then, and for some time after, personally managed, thought fit to make provision for supply of his room, no less than in case of sickness or other urgent occasion, where he should be hindered from affording his personal presence, at such time of the year, whereon the *Grand Feast* should happen; and hereupon allowance was given by the * *Statutes* to depute another in his stead.

When therefore such occasion afterwards hapned, a Commission was made out to one of the *Knights-Companions*, some reasonable time before the approach of the *Feast*; to the end, that by such a representation of his Person, none of the ancient Ceremonies might be omitted, or any defect happen through his absence. For till the beginning of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, we meet not with any *Commissions* that stayed for the *Soveraign*'s *fiat* so long as until the sitting of the *Chapter*, held before the first *Vespers*. Nevertheless, seeing from thence it hath been for the most part thus practised, we think it not improper to give our account thereof here, amongst those things of course, which (if at this day the appointing such an *Officer* shall be thought requisite) are usually dispatcht at the foresaid *Chapter*. And herein we shall speak, (1.) Of the *Person* Nominated to this *Office*, (2.) his *Title*, (3.) the *Ceremonies* used at his *Constitution*, (4.) the nature of his *Employment*, (5.) and the *Dignity* of his *Office*.

1. Of his Nomination.

As to the *Person Nominated*, we observe, That (most usually) he hath been one, if not the chief of the *Knights-Companions* (we mean in Authority, Eminence, or Birth) next to the *Soveraign* himself. Such were [a] *John* Duke of *Bedford*, Regent of *France*, and [b] *Humfrey* Duke of *Gloucester*, [c] stiled also Earl of *Henalt*, *Zeland* and *Penbroke*, Lord of *Frizland*, *Protector* and Governor of *England*; both, Sons to King *Henry* the Fourth, Brothers to King *Henry* the Fifth, and Uncles to King *Henry* the Sixth. [d] *Humfry Stafford* Duke of *Buckingham* (Son and Heir of *Edmund Stafford*, by *Anne Plantaginet*, Daughter of *Thomas* of *Woodstock*) made [e] Primer Duke of *England* 22. *Maii*, *an.* 25. *H.* 6. [f] *Thomas* Earl of *Derby*, Father-in-Law to King *Henry* the Seventh, the Dukes of [g] *Suffolk* and [h] *Richmond*, with [i] Marquesses of *Dorset* and [k] *Exceter*, in King *Henry* the Eighth's time. The [l] Duke of *Norfolk*, [m] Marquess of *Northampton*, [n] Earl of *Leicester*, and [o] Lord Treasurers *Burghley*, and [p] *Buckhurst*, under Queen *Elizabeth*. And in King *James* his Reign, the *Soveraign*'s eldest Sons the Princes of *Wales*, first Prince *Henry*, and after his death Prince *Charles*, the late *Soveraign* of blessed memory.

Next we shall consider the *Time*, and *Place*, when, and where he hath been appointed to this *Employment*: Concerning the *Time*, we observe it anciently

t *Lib. R. pag.* 126.
u *Rowes Journal, pag.* 24.
w *Ibid. p.* 39.
x *Lib. N. p.*
y 134.
z *Ibid. p.* 136.
* *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 8. *vide H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 8. *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 7.
a *Lib. N. p.* 58. 68. & 80.
b *Ex eod. lib. pag.* 61. 86. 87. 92. & 93.
c *Ibid. p.* 74.
d *Ibid. p.* 103.
e *Chart.* 25. *H.* 6. *m.* 31.
f *Lib. N. pag.* 174. 175.
g *Ibid. p.* 253. 268. & 292.
h *Pag.* 265.
i *Pag* 245, 246.
k *Pag.* 274.
l *Lib. G. p.* 44.
m *Ibid. p.* 50.
n *Pag.* 68.
o *Pag.* 119.
p *Pag.* 140.

anciently to have been uncertain, but so long before the Feast day, as that this Officer might make preparation, suitable to the state and grandeur this great Solemnity required: For so when *Henry* the Sixth had deputed his Uncle (the aforesaid *John* Duke of *Bedford*) to hold the *Grand Feast* at *Windesor*, on St. *George*'s day, in the fourth year of his Reign, we see the *Commission* bears date at *Leicester*, [f] the first day of *April* preceding. In like manner the same *Soveraign*, having appointed *John* Earl of *Shrewsbury* to the same employment, the 14. of *May an.* 35. *regni sui*, his *Commission* bears date at *Hereford*, the [t] 18. day of *April* preceding. Again, that *Commission* given to the Marquess of *Exceter*, for holding the *Feast* at *Windesor*, upon the 17. day of *May*, *an.* 20. *H.* 8. is dated at *Richmond* the [u] 24. of *April*, which was above three weeks before.

f *Lib. N. p.* 80.
t *Pag.* 116.
u *MS. in Offic. Armor.* [*M* 17] *fol.* 30, & 31.

But in the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, the most accustomed time for this Nomination, was in the Afternoon of St. *George*'s day; the day for holding the *Anniversary* of the *Grand Feast*, being in those days always appointed together with this great Officer: Nevertheless in the [w] 13. [x] 24. [y] 31. and [z] 36. years of his Reign, the appointment of the *Feast*, and Nomination of this *Officer* may be observed to happen on the morrow after the day of St. *George*; as also [a] *an.* 1. & 2. *Ph.* & *Mar.* and *an.* [b] 4. & 5. of the same King and Queen; and for the most part it was so ordered, until the 9. of Queen *Elizabeth*, in which year the *Grand Feast* was removed from *Windesor* unto other places, as hath been before noted. Afterwards it became customary to nominate him immediately before the first *Vespers*, which hath continued in use ever since.

w *Lib. N. pag.* 212.
x *Pag.* 251.
y *Pag.* 279.
z *Pag.* 294.
a *Lib. C. p.* 18.
b *Pag.* 23.

Now the reason why so many days passed heretofore, between the date of the *Commission*, and the time appointed for celebrating of the *Feast*, was because this Officer (in those times) held the *Feast* at his own charge; and therefore was it thought fit and reasonable, that he should have notice of the day assigned early enough, to the end he might provide all things suitable to his own honor, and the dignity of the person he was to represent. But afterwards when he was not named, till he entred upon the Execution of his Office, to wit, immediately before the first Vespers, there needed no warning, the *Soveraign* being at the charge of the *Feast*.

As to the place, where this Officer received the honor of Nomination, that we always find to have been in *Chapter*, held at any the times aforesaid, and wheresoever called.

Secondly, the person designed to this employment, is in the [c] *Statutes* of *Institution*, and those that [d] follow, called *Deputy*: The first we find to have been made so, was *John* Duke of *Bedford an.* 7. *H.* 5. and the reason thereof given in the *Registrum Chartaceum* is [e] *Because the* Soveraign *being then in* Normandy, *was employed in the recovery of his right to that Dukedom.*

2. His Title.
c *Art.* 8.
d *H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 8. *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 7.
e *Fol.* 6.

And albeit the Title given by the *Statutes* to this Officer, be not particularly mentioned in the [f] *Black-Book*, where it speaks of the said Dukes holding the *Feast* of St. *George* at *Windesor*, for the aforesaid year, but rather implied in the words *Regiæ sublimitatis locum implevit*; yet in the *Registrum Chartaceum* among other memorials of that same year, it is expressly set down, and the said Duke there stiled [g] *Depute del Ordre de Jaritier*: wherein also the very same [h] Title is given to *Humphry* Duke of *Gloucester*, he being appointed to celebrate the *Anniversary* of the *Feast* at *Windesor*, the year following. And when the foresaid *Black-Book* comes to inform us (*an.* 1. *H.* 6.) that the said Duke of *Gloucester* did execute his Office, and hold that *Feast*, we find him therein called [i] *Deputatus Ordinis*; which Title is given him also at other times, upon the like occasion, as also to the [k] Duke of *Buckingham an.* 28. *H.* 6. to the [l] Earl of *Exceter* the year following, to [m] *John* Earl of *Shrewsbury*, the 35. year of the same King, and to many others in the Reigns of King *Edward* the Fourth and King *Henry* the Seventh.

f *Pag.* 58.
g *Loco citat.*
h *Ibid. fol.* 7.
i *Pag.* 74.
k *Ibid. p.* 103.
l *Ibid. p.* 106.
m *Pag.* 115.

Sometimes also, we find other Titles given to this Representative of the *Soveraign*, as *an.* 10. *H.* 5. *John* Duke of *Bedford* (the second time of his being such) is stiled [n] *Præses Clarissimi Ordinis*. Equivalent to this, is that expression

n *Ibid. p.* 88.

of the *Black-Book*, where it says, that at the *Chapter* begun at *Windesor*, *an.* 15. *H.* 6. [o] *Præsidebat Nobilis Dux Gloucestriæ.* And in another place of it, that the *Grand Feast* was observed at *Windesor an.* 8. *H.* 7. *per Johannem Denham Angliæ Thesaurarium* [p] *ibi Presidem*; the like is said of the [q] Earl of *Worcester*, *an.* 10. *H.* 8. In the Exemplar of the *Statutes* registred in the *Black-Book*, the Title of *Vicegerent* is first mentioned, and indifferently used with that of *Deputy*; this great Officer being in some of those Articles called *Deputy*, and in others *Vicegerent*. But from that time to the 8. year of King *Henry* the Eighth we find no further remembrance thereof.

o *Pag.* 92.
p *Ibid.* p. 170.
q *Ibid.* p. 207.

And then the *Commission* granted to the Marquess of *Dorset*, for holding the *Grand Feast* at *Windesor* that very year, invests him with such authority, [t] *as the* Soveraign's Vicegerent *ever used to have, and might claim by right*; whence it may be inferred, that some of the *Knights-Companions* had before that time held the said *Feast*, under the Title of *Vicegerent*, though we have not met with any of their *Commissions*. Afterwards, *an.* 24. *H.* 8. the *Feastival* was appointed to be held at *Windesor*, upon the 12. day of *May*, [u] *in qua Comes Arundeliæ Supremi vicem gereret*, or as it is exprest *an.* 28. *H.* 8. [w] *Northumbriæ Comes Supremi vicem gerens.* And that this Title was at other times placed upon this Officer, may be implied from some other places of the foresaid *Register*, where he is said, [x] *Supremi vices tenere*, [y] *administrare*, [z] *supplere*, *&c.*

t *Pag.* 246.
u *Pag.* 261.
w *Pag.* 272.
x *Pag.* 274.
y *Pag.* 279.
z *Pag.* 283.

About the beginning of the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, the Title of *Locum tenens*, or *Lieutenant*, began to be taken up; for at a *Chapter* held at *Eltham*, the [a] 23. day of *April an.* 8. *H.* 8. it was determined, that the celebration of St. *George*'s day should be held at *Windesor*, upon the 25. of *May* following, [b] *Et quod potens vir, Marchio de Dorset, erit ad tunc regiæ Majestatis* Locum tenens. And a little after; the same old *Register*, speaking of the *Chapter* held on the [c] 25. and 26. days of the said Month of *May*, saith they were celebrated [d] *per prædictum Nobilem Marchionem*, Locum Regis tenentem, *sub Sigillo Garterii legitimè deputatum:* Which Title of *Locum tenens*, this Book also gives to the Earl of *Arundel*, the ensuing year; and frequently to others, afterwards nominated to this Office. But the first time we find this Title expresly mentioned in the *Black-Book* of the *Order*, is *an.* 36. *H.* 8. where the *Soveraign* [f] constituted the Earl of *Essex Locum tenentem*, during St. *George*'s *Feast*; albeit it is before in the same Book, many times used, in a way somewhat different; as for Example, such a one of the *Knights-Companions* (naming him who is appointed to this Office) *Regiæ Majestatis locum* [g] *impleret*, or [i] *adimpleret*, [k] *occuparet*, [l] *suppleret*, [m] *obtineret*, and the like. Lastly, this Office hath been for the most part conferred, under the Title of *Lieutenant* in all succeeding times, and the other Titles of *Deputy*, *President*, and *Vicegerent* laid aside, as is manifest from the *Blue* and *Red Books*, and sundry original *Commissions* which we have seen under the Seal of the *Order*.

a } *Regist.*
b } *Chart. fol.* 53.
c } *Fol.* 54.
d }
e } *Pag.* 294.
f }
g *Pag.* 204.
i *Pag.* 253.
k *Pag.* 258.
l *Pag.* 267.
m *Lib. C. p.* 23.

But besides the usage of these Titles of *Deputy* and *Lieutenant* severally, we have met with them sometimes joined together in one person, as in the Stile of *Henry* Earl of *Essex*, proclaimed at the holding of the *Grand Feast an.* 25. *H.* 8. as followeth; [f] *Du noble & puissant Seigneur, le Conte d' Essex & de Eu, Seigneur de Bourgchir, & de Loveyn*, Lieutenant & Depute *de la Feste de Sancte George, Chevalier, Frere, & Compaignon, de le tresnoble* Ordre *de la* Jarretier. As also in another of like nature, when *Henry Courtney* Marquess of *Exceter* and Earl of *Devonshire* held the *Feast an.* --- *H.* 8. wherein he amongst his other Titles, is also stiled [g] Lieutenant & Depute *de la Feste de Saint George.* And in the *Blue Book* also, there is taken notice of the like conjunction of these two Titles, for *an.* 1. & 2. *Ph. & Mar.* the *Grand Feast* having been prorogued unto the 25. day of *May*, it is there recorded, [h] that then the *Soveraign* appointed the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, *Deputy* and *Lieutenant*.

f *Autogr.*
g *Autogr.*
h *Lib. C. p.* 18.
i *Lib. N. p.* 103.
k *Pag.* 111.
l *Pag.* 142.
m *Pag.* 148.
n *Pag.* 155.
o *Lib. C. p.* 19.
p *Pag.* 93.
q *Pag.* 99.
s *Pag.* 132.
t *Pag.* 108.

To conclude, the Titles of this great Officer are sometimes exprest not so much positively, as by way of Periphrasis, and than in several manners; as [i] *Deputatus à Rege præsuit.* [k] *Assignatus ore Regio præsedit.* [l] *Virtute Regiæ Commissionis Assignatus.* [m] *Cui Supremus eam potestatem commiserit.* [n] *Regiæ sublimitatis commissione ac authoritate communitus.* [o] *Regias vices subiret*, [p] *gerebat*, [q] *præstabat*, [r] *suscepit*, [s] *cui vices*

vices ejus demandatæ sunt. Also [t] *Supremæ absentis vice sufficitur.* [u] *Supremæ absentis potestatem referebat.* [w] *Supremus surrogatur.* [x] *Ejus* (viz. *Supremi*) *absentis Officio fungeretur*, with several other variations, much of the same nature.

t *Pag.* 88.
u *Pag.* 102.
w *Pag.* 112.
x *Pag.* 143.

3. The Ceremonies of his Constitution.

As to the third particular, the *Ceremonies* used at the constituting the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*, they were these three; (1.) The reading of the *Commission*. (2.) Delivery of it to the *Lieutenant*. And (3.) his taking an *Oath*. For the *Commission* being ingrossed in Parchment, and prepared ready by the *Chancellor*, it is brought into the *Chapter* by him, and there read in the presence of the *Lieutenant* and *Knights-Companions*, before it be delivered; for thus we find it recorded *an.* 19. *H.* 7. [y] *The illustrious Lord* Thomas *Marquess* Dorset, *was impowered* (to hold the *Feast*) *by the* Soveraign's Letters *of* Commission *which were read in Chapter.* And at the meeting in *Chapter*, on the day prefixt, for celebrating of the *Grand Feast an.* 17. *H.* 8. by the Duke of *Norfolk*, it is said, that [z] *in the presence of the said* Duke (*the rest of the* Knights-Companions *attending him on either side*) *the* Kings Letter *was read, wherein the power committed to the* Duke *was declared.* So also, when the Earl of *Penbroke* (*Lieutenant* for the *Grand Feast*, held the 3. day of *June an.* 1. *Eliz.*) was arrived at *Windesor* with his *Assistants*, [a] and *a Chapter being held, the* Soveraign's Letters *were read, wherein she conferred the* Lieutenancy *on the said* Earl. So *an.* 3. of the same *Queen*, the Earl of *Arundel* being *Lieutenant*, and the *Grand Feast* kept at *Windesor*, [b] *The* Letters *of* Legation (for so the *Commission* of *Lieutenancy*, and *Letters* of Notice to the *Lieutenants Assistants* are here called) *were openly read in Chapter.* And sometimes we find the Officer taken notice of, who reads these *Commissions*; as when the Earl of *Shrewsbury* was constituted *Lieutenant*, at a *Chapter* held in the *Privy-Chamber* at *Greenwich*, on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, *an.* 27. *Eliz.* his *Commission* was read by the *Dean* of *Windesor*. But *an.* 37. *Eliz.* the Lord *Cobham's* [c] Commission of Lieutenancy, and the [d] *Prince's an.* 19. *Jac. R.* were both read in *Chapter* by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*; which being finished, in the next place the [e] *Soveraign* (if present in *Chapter*) delivereth it [f] *propriâ manu*, to the *Lieutenant*, who receives it upon his [g] Knees; as did the said Lord *Cobham* in the great *Closet* at *Whitehall*, *an.* 37. *Eliz.*

y *Lib. N. pag.* 176.
z *Ibid. p.* 249.
a *Lib. C. p.* 31.
b *Ibid. pag.* 40.
c *MS. pen. G. O. T. fol.* 20.
d *Lib. C. pag.* 192.
e *Ex pref. MS. pen. G. O. T. & vide Coll. R. G. Cl. fol.* 9.
f *Lib. C. p.* 41.
g h i k l m n *MS. pen: G O. T. fol.* 20.

Thirdly, the *Lieutenant* is to take an [h] *Oath*, for the due Execution of his Office (but the form thereof we have not hitherto met with) before the Ceremonies of his Constitution are fully dispatcht. This *Oath* the *Lieutenant* takes in *Chapter* upon his [i] Knees, when sometimes the [k] *Prelate* and sometimes the [l] *Register* have read the words, whilst the [m] *Black-Rod* held the *Book*; in attestation of which the *Lieutenant* [n] kisseth the same, and then ariseth. And we find that in the aforesaid 27. year of Queen *Elizabeth*, the *Lieutenant* when he proceeded to *Chappel* (after the Ceremonies of his Constitution were over) gave his *Commission* to [o] *Clarenceux* (who then waited in the [p] place of *Garter*) to bear it before him thither.

o p *Collect. R. G. Cl. f.* 9.

And albeit, it hath been the most usual way, for the *Soveraign* to constitute his *Deputy* or *Lieutenant* for holding of the *Grand Feast*, or any part thereof, by *Commission*, and to add thereunto the foresaid Ceremonies of Creation; yet sometimes in great exigencies and sudden occasions, he hath appointed this great Officer by word of mouth; whereunto no other Ceremony hath been adjoined, than that of taking the usual *Oath*: as for instance, *an.* [q] 32. *H.* 6. the *Soveraign* being then at *Windesor*, and falling sick a little before the *Feast*, the Duke of *Buckingham* was assigned his *Deputy*, [r] *Ore Regio*, by word of mouth.

q r *Lib. N. p.* 111.

But before we take leave of this head, we shall observe, that, in the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, though in some one of the *Chapters*, held during the observation of the day of St. *George*, both the *Grand Feast* hath been prorogued to a further time, and the *Lieutenant* nominated for holding the same: yet upon just cause, or for some reasons urged, or excuse made, which the *Soveraign* hath approved of; some other of the *Knights-Companions* hath been appointed to the execution of this Office, instead of him who had been first nominated: Thus it chanced *an.* 9. *H.* 8. when at the Celebrations of the day of St. *George* at *Greenwich*, the [s] Earl of *Arundel* was chosen the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* for holding the

s *Pag.* 206.

the *Anniversary* of the *Grand Feast* at *Windesor*, upon the 10. of *May* following, *but he* [t] *not thinking himself able to perform the Duty, humbly objected his infirmity of body, and disability otherways*, and the *Soveraign* graciously admitting of his alledged excuse, substituted in his stead the Marquess of *Dorset*. So also when St. *George*'s day was observed at the same place, in the 20. year of the same King, at which time *Charles* Duke of *Suffolk*, was [u] nominated to keep the *Grand Feast* at *Windesor*, upon the [w] 17. day of *May* ensuing, the *Black-Book* saith, [x] *That afterwards for certain causes, moving the* Soveraign *thereunto, that Office was transferr'd from the aforesaid Duke, to the Marquess of* Exceter, *who executed it consonantly to the dignity thereof.* Again *an.* 32. *H.* 8. the *Grand Feast* being prorogued unto the 9. of *May*, at a *Chapter* held on St. *George*'s day preceding, the Earl of *Cumberland* was appointed to celebrate the same. [y] *But in regard the said* Earl *could not be present by reason of some urgent Affairs; his excuse was accepted, and the Earl of* Southampton *supplied his room.*

But what hapned [z] *an.* 28. *H.* 8. was more remarkable; for the Earl of *Northumberland* (then the *Soveraign's Deputy*) was in the time of the first *Vespers* suddenly taken with the *Vertigo*, or dizinesse in his head, and that accompanied with a distemper over his whole body. [a] From hence arose a great scruple, what was hereupon to be done; it being conceived, that they could not conveniently proceed, without the presence of the *Deputy*, and that another could not rightly be substituted in his room, without new authority from the *Soveraign*: [b] But whilst they were in the midst of this controversie, he recovered, and came again among them, and performed all that was to be done, both on the Vigil, and on the day it self.

But this may clearly be inferred, from this procedure of theirs, that if the *Deputy* had not recovered, the Ceremonies of the *Feast* had been adjourned till the *Soveraign* had nominated a new *Officer*. And not unlike, but upon reflection had on this accident, and prevention of the like afterwards, occasioned what was done, *An.* 3. *&* 4. *Ph. & Mar.* to wit, the nomination of [c] two *Knights-Companions* to be *Deputies*, namely, the Earls of *Derby*, and *Huntingdon*; the second being designed to supply the place, in case the former should be obstructed by [d] indisposition, or weighty affairs.

4. The nature of his Imployment.

The Authority and Obligations annexed to this Office of *Deputy* (or *Lieutenant*) are deducible from the *Statutes* of the *Order*, which give him power [e] *to hold a Chapter at the hour of Tierce, on the Eve of the Feast: as also on the day it self, and punish Offenders against the Statutes.* And though he be thereby expressly prohibited, *the* [h] *making of any new Decrees or Ordinances*, nevertheless he may [i] correct and reform all points of the *Chapter* as shall seem necessary.

And now to shew that the powers granted by the *Commissions*, are, as derivative from, so pursuant to the *Statutes*, we shall insert in the [k] *Appendix* first, the most ancient *Commission* of *Deputation* that Record hath preserved, being that which King *Henry* the Sixth gave to his Uncle *John* Duke of *Bedford*, in the fourth year of his Reign, to supply his place, when by reason of his abode at [l] *Leicester*, in expectation of the *Parliaments* sitting there, he could not personally hold the *Grand Feast* at *Windsor* that year.

First then, in the Preamble, the reason and cause of making such a *Commission*, is set down in general words. Next the *Soveraign* takes notice of the allowance given him by the *Statutes* to constitute a *Deputy*, and thereupon sets down the particulars wherewith he impowers him, namely, to hold *Chapters*, to *reform* what is amiss, to make *Elections*, and by a general Clause, to perform all other things which should be any way pertinent to the necessary observation of the *Statutes*: to the end his *Deputy*, in one and the same Instrument, might both understand the duty of his place, and be impowred to put the same in execution. Such like particulars are also inserted in the *Commission* made to [m] *John* Earl of *Shrewsbury*, *an.* 35. *H.* 6. But in later *Commissions* they are omitted, and supplied by a general Clause, which gives this Officer the same authority as had been allowed him, or such as he of right might claim. Then follows the words of Constitution (which in succeeding Commissions are expreſt

t *Pag.* 206.
u *Reg. Char. tac fol.* 66. *b.*
w
x *Lib. N. pag.* 257. & 258.
y *Ibid. p.* 283.
z *Ibid p* 272.
a
b
c *Lib. C. p.* 21.
d
e *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 8.
h *Ibid.*
i *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 7.
k *Num.* CLXXVI.
l *Lib. N. p.* 79.
m *Ibid. p.* 116.

preſt with ſome variety *) and laſtly a Clauſe commanding obedience from the *Knights-Companions* preſent.

In the *Commiſſions* of *Lieutenancy*, (though not at all in the *Deputational Commiſſions*) we find the *Title* of this great Officer, inſerted immediately after the words of Conſtitution, in this following manner. *We therefore by theſe preſents name, conſtitute, appoint, and ordain you to be our* Lieutenant, *at the ſaid* Feaſt: *Giving you full Power and Authority, to do and accompliſh every thing in the ſame, which to our* Lieutenant *there, in ſuch caſes belongeth, and hath been accuſtomed*, as it is expreſt in that *Commiſſion* of *Lieutenancy*, given to the Marqueſs of * *Exceter*, dated at *Richmond* the 24. of *April*, *an.* 20. *H.* 8. and that other to the [a] Marqueſs of *Wincheſter*, and dated at St. *James's* the 14. of *May*, *an.* 2. *&* 3. *Ph. & Mar.* for celebrating the *Grand Feaſt* at *Windſor*, the 26. of the ſame month: and not only in this, but in all other ſince, that have come to our view.

In the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth* and King *James*, when the *Grand Feaſt* was held, either at *Whitehall*, or *Greenwich*, and the *Soveraign* preſent only at ſome part of the Solemnity (as in the *Chapters*, or at the *Chappel* in the morning of the Feaſt-day, and ſometimes proceeded publickly to the *Cloſet* (not down into the *Chappel*) to the firſt and ſecond *Veſpers*) but by reaſon of ſome weighty affairs, could not conveniently be preſent in perſon, at all parts of Divine Service, and other Ceremonies and things to be done and executed at the *Feaſt*, neither on the Eve, nor on the day of St. *George*, nor the next day following; in ſuch caſe the Clauſe in the *Commiſſion*, which conſtituted the *Lieutenant*, was put after this manner, [b] *We do therefore name*, &c. *you* in our abſence, *to be our* Lieutenant *for that purpoſe*, &c. Or, as it is in that *Commiſſion* made unto Prince *Henry*, *an* 4. *Jac. R.* [c] *We have made choice of you to ſupply Our Peace, whenſoever we ſhall have cauſe to be* abſent, *at any time of the ſaid Eve, Day, or Morrow: And do give unto you full power and authority, to do and accompliſh all things in Our* abſence, *incident and meet to be performed, for the honoring and celebration of this* Feaſt, *as by the* Statutes, *and* laudable uſage, *and* Cuſtoms *of Our ſaid Order doth appertain.*

Now how the *Soveraign* is to conſtitute ſuch an Officer, appears from the directions given in the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution*, to wit, *by his* [d] *Letters*; and that theſe *Letters* ſince, do carry the ſtyle of *Commiſſions*, and ought to paſs under the Seal of the *Order*, and the *Soveraigns* ſign manual, is evident from divers paſſages in the *Regiſters*, and from the *Commiſſions* themſelves: For inſtance, The before recited *Deputations*, made to *John* Duke of *Bedford*, *an.* 4. *H.* 6. is ſaid to be done, [e] *by a ſufficient* Commiſſion *delivered unto him, under the Common Seal of the* Order. So *an.* 8. *H.* 6. Humfry *Duke of* Glouceſter, *&c. was* deputed [f] *by a certain* Commiſſion, *ſigned by the* Soveraign *under the* Common Seal. And for holding the *Feaſt*, *an.* 1. *E.* 4. Viſcount *Bourghier* was alſo Deputed by the *Soveraign*, [g] *By a fit and ſufficient* Commiſſion. So alſo the Earl of *Eſſex*, *an.* 14. *E.* 4. [h] *by the authority of the* Soveraigns Commiſſion. In like manner *an.* 18. *E.* 4. [i] *The Lord* Dudley *was aſſigned by vertue of the* Soveraigns Commiſſion, *to obſerve the yearly* Feaſt *of* St. George, *and to perform all things according to cuſtom.*

It may be further obſerved, that the *Commiſſions* of *Lieutenancy* (as ancient as the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth) are ſaid in the cloſe to iſſue forth [k] *under the* Seal *of this moſt Noble Order.* So was that to the Duke of *Norfolk*, *an.* 17. *H.* 8. And alſo that other to the Marqueſs of *Exceter*, *an.* 20. *H.* 8. which runneth thus, *Teoven under the* Seal *of Our* Garter, *&c.* and according to the Modern expreſſion, *Given under the* Seal, *&c.*

Theſe *Commiſſions* of *Lieutenancy*, [m] *an.* 14. *Eliz.* and the ſix following years run under the title of *Letters Patent*, and are ſo called in the *Blue Book*; but how juſtly, is to be queſtioned. For in one of theſe *Commiſſions*, made to the Earl of *Lincoln*, *an.* 15. of the ſaid *Queen*, the concluſion is the ſame with thoſe other *Commiſſions* of like nature, of former years, *viz. Teoven under the* Seal *of Our Order*, at, *&c.* and wanteth that Clauſe, or concluſive period, from which ſuch

* As *Eligimus, Aſſignavimus, Nominavimus, Conſtituimus, Inſtituimus*, and the like.

* *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [*M.* 17.] *fol.* 30. *b.*

a *Collect. A. V. W.*

b *Rowes Journal, fol.* 209.

c *Autogr. penes W. D. N.*

d *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 8.

e *Lib. N. p.* 79.

f *Ibid. pag.* 86.

g *Ibid. p.* 125.

h *Pag.* 134.

i *Pag.* 142.

k *Pag.* 250.

m *Lib. C. p.* 64.

n Corkes second Part Instit. p. 78.

such instruments (as we are informed) derive the [n] name of *Letters Patent*, to wit, *In cujus rei testimonium has literas nostras fieri fecimus Patentes.* Again, *an.* 12. *Eliz.* and for seven years after, we observe from the said *Blue Book*, that this Officer was made [o] *with the consent of all the* Knights-Companions, a Phrase much like that used elswhere, touching the *Election* of *Knights*, as hath been before taken notice of. But, if duely examined, we shall find this expression of no more strength to entitle the *Knights-Companions* to a joynt power with the *Soveraign*, for the constituting of a *Lieutenant*, than the other is to make them *Coelectors*; where though something requisite to the obtaining of their consent, may seem to be implied in the aforesaid words, yet we conceive those expressions were used by the *Register*, as of his own choice, rather than such as the Law of the *Order* will allow of.

o Pag. 60.

5 The Dignity of his Office.

p Lib. N. pag. 245.

The Dignity of this Officer, as he [p] represents the *Soveraign's* person, and supplies his place, is very great. Which, that we may the better set forth, we shall distinguish the Honors annexed to this eminent Place, as they are essential, and necessarily consequent thereto; or personal, that is, such as may additionally be conferred upon him, at the pleasure of the *Soveraign.*

That this Officer, as an essential Honor to his Place, hath from ancient time, had some of the *Knights-Companions* assigned him for his *Assistants*, during the whole *Feast*, is evident enough throughout the *Registers*; yet the first mention of *Assistants*, as to the Title particularly given unto such persons, we find in the [q] *Registrum Chartaceum*, in the Decree made at a *Chapter*, called at *Elsham*, on St. *George*'s day, *an.* 8. *H.* 8. (wherein after the *Anniversary* of the *Grand Feast*, had been appointed to be observed at *Windsor*, upon the 25. of *May*, then next ensuing, and the Marquess of *Dorset* nominated the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*) the [r] Earl of *Essex*, the Lord *de la Ware*, the Lord *Monteagle*, and Sir *Thomas Lovell*, were appointed *Assistants* to the said Marquess. Another instance in the same *Register* concerning the celebration of the *Grand Feast* at *Windesor*, the following year, upon the 10. day of *May* (the Earl of *Arundel* being appointed *Lieutenant*) affirms that the [t] Lords *de la Ware*, and *Monteagle*, and Sir *Thomas Lovell*, and Sir *Henry Marney* were also appointed *Assistants* to the said Earl.

q Fol. 53. b.

r

The number of *Assistants* were in those times uncertain, here above we see they were four; *Anno* 21. *H.* 8. we find but [t] three: and afterwards, *an.* 32. *H.* 8. they were reduced unto [w] two: which number, following times exceeded not, except once, and that was the last year of the aforesaid King; when there were [x] three appointed.

t Ibid. f. 66. b.

w Lib. N. pag. 283.

x Pag. 298.

These *Assistants* were always appointed in *Chapter*, when the *Lieutenant* himself was Nominated; and afterwards had *Letters* of notice sent, to each of them, from the *Soveraign*, requiring their repair to *Windesor*, a Transcript whereof see in the [y] *Appendix*; of which form have we seen several other *Letters*, sent upon the same occasion, to each of the *Assistants*, after they had been appointed to the said Service.

y Num. CLXXIX.

And as before we have noted in the case of *Lieutenants* themselves, it hath sometimes chanced, that others were afterwards upon occasion, put in the places of those first named; so here amongst the *Assistants*, it hath in like manner hapned: for the [a] Lord *Poynings an.* 8. *H.* 8. [b] by the *Soveraign's Commission* was appointed *Assistant* to the *Lieutenant*, in the room of the Earl of *Essex*, who had been before nominated. And the Earl of *Rutland* being named one of the *Assistants an.* 22. *H.* 8. was afterwards excused by the *Kings Letters*, [c] whose place the Lord *Montjoy* executed. So *an.* 29. *H.* 8. the aforesaid Earl of *Rutland* falling sick, after the time of his nomination, and before the approach of the Feast day, the [d] Earl of *Sussex* was substituted *Assistant* in his place.

a Lib. N. pag. 204.

b Registr. Chartac fol. 53. b.

c Ibid. f. 66. b.

d Lib. N. pag. 274.

And sometimes a Quorum of *Assistants* have been nominated, as *an.* [e] 3. & 4. *Ph.* & *Mar.* in case some of them should be absent: for the Lord *Pagit*, the Lord *Clynton*, the Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*, and Sir *Edward Haslings*, having been appointed *Assistants* to attend the *Lieutenant* at the following *Feast*, it is added, [f] *that at least any two of them, who at that time were nearest to the Kings Court, should be there present, to assist the* Soveraign's Deputy, *according to his Majesties pleasure, as the Custom and their duty obliged.* Another

e Lib. C. pag. 2.

f

Another Honor, essential to the Dignity of the *Lieutenant* is, that the *Soveraign* layes an Injunction upon the rest of the *Knights-Companions* then present, to yield *Assistance* and *Obedience* to him in all things, as if himself were personally present: For so is it enjoyned by the *Commission* to the aforesaid [k] *John* Duke of *Bedford*. And generally all Forms of *Commissions* since, close with such like *Injunctions* of Obedience, in the execution of the *Soveraign*'s Authority.

[k] *Lib. N. p.* 80.

To these Honors before spoken of, we might add some other of the like nature, *viz.* that this great Officer possesseth the *Soveraigns Place*, in all *Proceedings*, and at the *Table*, that he hath his *Train* carried up, that a *Reverence* is given him by the *Knights-Companions*, an essay taken for him of the *Offering*, and offereth with *Carpet* and *Cusheon*; but these we reserve to speak of at large by and by.

In reference to personal Honors (though generally all *Lieutenants* sit in their own *Seats* in the *Chappel*) we find the Marquess of *Northampton* had assigned to him a higher Stall than his own, during the whole Festivity of St. *George*: For in the *Chapter* held on the Eve, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* the Celebration of the day of St. *George*, being that year observed at *Whitehall*, the *Soveraign* decreed, [k] that the foresaid Marquess, during only the time of his *Deputation*, should take the *Stall* of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, then lately deceased. Now the Marquesses own *Stall* was at that time the [l] eight Stall on the Princes side, but that which the Earl of *Shrewsbury* then lately possest, was the [m] fourth on the same side, and next below the Duke of *Holstein*, whose Seat was the [n] lowest among the *Stranger Princes* then alive.

[k] *Lib. C. pag.* 38.

[l] [m] [n] *MS. fol. penes W. D. N. fol.* 2. *a.*

To conclude; it seems in time, the Duty incumbent on both the *Lieutenant* and his *Assistants*, grew so burthensom, that the *Soveraign* took their attendance and charge into consideration, and therefore in their favour decreed (at a *Chapter* held on [o] St. *Georges* day at *Greenwich*, *an.* 19. *H.* 8.) [p] *That the* Knights-Companions *Appointed or Deputed* [Lieutenants or Assistants] *to be present or to keep the* Feast *of St.* George *in the Colledge of* Windsor *one year, should not be Appointed or Deputed to be present, or to keep it the year next following, unless the* Soveraign *should please to be present at the day or Feast.* And to the same effect, though briefly, is this Decree recorded in the [q] *Black Book*. But more large and particular is it thus entred in one of the *MS.* now remaining in the *Office* of *Arms*.

[o] *Registr. Chartac. fol.* 65. *b.*

[p]

[q] *Pag.* 255.

[r] **Memorandum, That the** Soveraign **of the** Order **King** Henry **the Eighth our Soveraign Lord, by the advice of the** Knights **of the said** Order, **the** 19. **year of his most noble Reign, by vertue of a Chapitre holden at his Manor of** Greenewich **the** 23. **day of** April, **Ordained and enacted by Act of Chapitre, that all such** Knights **of the** Order **from thenceforth, which should be appointed by his Highness to be his** Lieutenant **or** Deputy **at the Feast of St.** George **kept at his Castle of** Windesor, **and all such other** Knights **as was to the said** Lieutenant, Attendant, **and** Assistant **at that time, should, for the next year ensuing, be clearly discharged and excused for their attendance at the said** Castle; **unless any** Knight **of the** Order **upon his own devotion would be at the said Feast of St.** George **at** Wyndesor, **then he to be there at pleasure.**

[r] *Lib. M.* 17. *fol.* 33. *b.*

Nor was that yet thought a sufficient indulgence to the [q] *Lieutenant* and *Assistants*, to be absent from the next *Grand Feast*, and therefore the said Ordinance was afterwards *an.* 23. & 24. *H.* 8. extended to the space of [r] three years, from and after the said *Feast*.

[q] [r] *Ibid.*

And herewith we are to note, That this Officer always held the *Feast*, at his peculiar charge and cost; and gave liberal Rewards to [t] *Garter*, and for his *Scutcheons*, as also to the *Officers* of *Arms*, the *Gentlemen-Ushers*, the *Alms-Knights*, the *Ushers* and *Grooms* of the *Chamber*, the *Clerks* of the *Kitchin*, the *Harbinger*, and *Groom-Porters*, with the rest of the *Soveraign*'s *Servants*, Waiters of several *Offices* in the *House*, to the *Choristers*, the *Vergers*, &c. that kept the *Robes*, and the *Sexton*, even to those who made clean the *Seats*, and laid the Cusheons.

[t] *Collect. A. V. W. vide etiam MS. penes G. O. Y. fol.* 155. & 190.

And because all things relating to the *Feast*, were set forth with exceeding State and Nobleness (which was commonly every year augmented, each *Lieutenant* striving to outvie his Predecessor in magnificence and liberality) his Expences became very great: In consideration whereof, the aforesaid Priviledge was granted, that so by a Licence of Non-attendance, for the three following years, the Persons who had undergone the charge and trouble of these Offices, might be in some measure eased. Nevertheless the generous Lord *Fitz Williams* was so far from taking advantage of this indulgence, that he was one of the *Assistants* to the *Soveraigns Lieutenant*, for the [t] six years next ensuing the Decree past, *an.* 19. *H.* 8.

[t] *Regist. Chartac. fol.* 66. & 67. *vide etiam Lib. N. sub an.* 20, 21, 22, 23. 24, & 25. *H.* 8.

SECT. VI.

The Ceremonies *relating to the first* Vespers.

WE have now finished our Discourse upon the Particulars managed in the first *Chapter*, held on the *Eve* of St. *George*; which being broke up, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, do immediately proceed from the *Chapter-house* into the *Choire*, to hear *Vespers*. In handling and describing the Ceremonies relating thereunto, we shall consider, first, those performed before the *Vespers* begin; secondly, the Course of *Divine Service*; and lastly, those used after it is ended. Wherein we shall be particular and exact, not only in regard the State thereof is both *solemn* and *sacred*; but because the same Order of Ceremony is to be repeated, so often as the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* enter the *Chappel*, or depart thence, or go up into, or come down from their *Stalls*.

Proceeding to the Choire.

First then we are to presuppose, that the *Officers* of *Arms*, *Prebends* of the *Colledge*, and *Alms-Knights*, having attended in the *North Isle* of the *Chappel*, during the sitting of the *Chapter*, do now upon the rising and coming forth of the *Soveraign*, *Knights-Companions*, and *Officers* of the *Order* put themselves into Rank, and continue the *Proceeding* (through the passage and Guard made by the *Knights-Companions Attendants*, and the *Soveraigns* Band of *Pensioners*) from the Chapter-house door, along the said North Isle, and so to the West door of the *Choire*, in like manner and order as they did proceed from the *Chamber* of *Presence* to the *Chapter-house*. The *Organs* then beginning to play, and continuing on, till *Vespers* begin.

Entry thereinto.

When the [a] *Alms-Knights* be arrived at the *West Door*, they first enter in a whole Body, (while the rest of the Proceeding makes a short stand) and pass forwards near to the [b] middle of the *Choire*, where they make a joynt and low obeisance, first towards the *Altar*, next (all [c] turning about by the left hand) to the Soveraign's Royal Seat; then still turning from the right to the left hand, they [d] ascend the *Haut Pas's* even to the Rails set before the *Altar*, and forthwith divide themselves, flanking on each side, (the Juniors standing neareſt to the Rails) and [e] at such a spacious distance, that the Altar may be discerned by all that follow in the *Proceeding*, when they draw near to make their Reverences.

[a] [b] [c] [d] [e] *Collect. W. de N. Cl.*

Assoon as the *Alms-Knights* have made their obeisance, the *Prebends* of the *Colledge* enter in a whole body also, and having turned on the left hand, and made the like double obeisances in the middle of the *Choire*, they divide themselves, and take their Seats, every one in their Order. The Seats appointed for them at this Solemnity (and at other times when any of the *Knights-Companions* are present in the *Chappel*) is in the lower range of Seats, and so ordered by [f] King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*; albeit in their absence, the *Prebends* are permitted to sit in the higher Seats, between (but not in) the Stalls of the *Knights-Companions*.

[f] *Art.* 14.

While

While the *Prebends* are entring their Seats, the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings* of *Arms* (in a Body) enter also the *Choire*; and after their double Reverences made, pass up towards the *Altar*, and joyn to the *Alms-Knights*.

But sometimes heretofore, to enlarge the Ceremony, as [g] *an.* 3. & 8. *Car.* I. the *Pursuivants* have by themselves advanced into the *Choire*, and proceeding into the middle, there [i] made their Reverences, first towards the Altar, and then turning about by the left hand, did the like to the Soveraign's Stall, then, they ascended unto the second *Haut Pas* before the *Altar*, where also [k] dividing themselves on each side, (the Junior *Pursuivants* joyning near to the Senior *Alms-Knights*) [l] kept the like spacious Lane between them, as the *Alms-Knights* did, to the end also, that the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* might have the *Altar* in full view, as they made their several Reverences towards it. g h i k l *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

Next, the [m] *Heralds* proceeded in a Body by themselves, up to the middle of the *Choire*, and there having likewise made the like double Reverences, ascended the first *Haut Pas* before the *Altar*, and divided themselves, flanking even with the *Pursuivants*. m n o p q r *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

In like manner the two *Provincial Kings* made their Entry, (doing their Reverences) and placed themselves on each side upon the [n] edge of the lowest *Haut Pas*, towards the Stalls. Thus they divided themselves, not only here at their first entrance, but at all other times when they passed up and down, or in, or out of the Choire, during the foresaid Feasts. But for shortning of the Ceremony, (as of late hath been the usual course) the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings* joyn all in a Body, and perform this part of the Ceremony together.

Afterwards, the two [o] Junior *Knights-Companions* enter, and passing on till they come near their own Stalls, there make their [p] double Reverences together, first towards the *Altar*, next the *Soveraigns* Royal Stall; then they divide themselves, and take their stand [q] directly before their Stalls. Thus also do the rest of the *Knights* present, at their entry into the Choire, and in the same order as they past in the *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house*; taking their several stations under their proper Stalls, until the *Soveraign* shall have ascended his Seat. But where any of the *Knights* want his [r] opposite *Companion*, in such case he enters the Choire alone.

Manner of doing Reverence, and when introduced.

And this manner of doing *Reverence* and *Obeisance*, was introduced in the Reign of *Henry* the Fifth, and hath continued in use ever since. For whereas from ancient time, the *Knights-Companions* at their entrance into the Choire, and taking of their Stalls, gave Reverence to *God*, and towards the high *Altar*, *John* Duke of *Bedford*, *an.* 6. *H.* 5. holding the Feast of St. *George* at *Windsor* in absence of the *Soveraign*: It was then in Chapter decreed, [s] *That all the* Companions *of the* Order, *whensoever they entred into the* Choire, *and at their going forth, as likewise at their descent from their* Stalls, *should do* Reverence *to the* Soveraign, *if present*; *or if absent*, *to his* Stall: [t] *by which Ceremony they should owne him as their* Soveraign, *and acknowledge all manner of subjection and obedience to be due unto him.* But when the *Soveraign* returned out of *France*, he signified to the *Knights-Companions*, as, much more reasonable and convenient, [u] *That at the Entrance and Departure aforesaid*, *the devout* Obeisance *due to* Gods honor, *should be first paid to* God, *and towards his* Altar, *after the manner of* Ecclesiasticks; *and then*, *what of Honor was due to him*, *to pay it next to* Himself, *or in his absence*, *to his* Stall. s t *Lib. N. pag.* 65. u *Ibid.*

Next to the *Knights-Companions* doth the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register* [w] enter in Breast, who proceeding also to the [x] middle of the Choire, do their double Reverences together, and then pass to their Form, placed on the South side of the Choire [y] before the *Soveraigns Stall*, and stand before it. w x *Collect. W. le N. Cl.* y *MS. penes W. D. N. f.* 7. *b.* & 15. *a.*

After them come in the *Chancellor* and *Prelate*, who having made their double Reverences also, go from the middle of the Choire, and stand before their Form, set between the *Soveraigns* Royal Seat, and that other but now mentioned. As touching these two *Forms* whereon the *Officers* of the *Order* sit in the *Chappel*, there is a special Decree for the allowance of them, entred at the

end of the *Constitutions* of their *Offices*, which is this; [z] *Within the Choire of the Chappel, during the Celebration of Divine Service, there shall be placed before the* Soveraigns *Seat two other* Seats *or* Forms, *one before another; upon one of which shall sit the* Prelate *and* Chancellor *of the* Order, *on the other the* Register, Garter, *and Usher of the* Black-Rod.

z Lib. N. pag. 238.

f C. B. B. W. g le N. Cl. h

Last of all, the [f] *Soveraign* entreth, (having the *Sword* born before him, but his Band of *Pensioners* stay at the Choire door, to keep off the press) who coming to the [g] steps which ascend to his Royal Seat, makes there a Reverence towards the *Altar*, and then ascending thereinto, makes a [h] second Reverence and seats himself.

And when (in the *Soveraigns* absence) his *Lieutenant* proceeds to the first *Vespers*, he goes in the *Soveraigns* place, and assoon as he hath entred the Choire, and is come near the *Soveraigns Stall*, he stands, and makes a little pause there; then [i] doing his Reverences, first towards the *Altar*, next towards the *Soveraigns Stall*, after he hath again stood a while before it, he [k] ascends his own (which like unto the the *Stall* of the *Soveraign* (*Emperors*, *Stranger Kings* and *Princes* when present) is garnished with a [l] *Carpet* and *Cushion* laid before it) where being arrived, he makes the double Reverence a second time, and then sits down.

i MS. penes W. D. N. k f. 3. a. & 7. b. vide MS. penes G. O. T. l pag. 123.

And now, in order to placing the *Knights-Companions* in their Stalls, *Garter* (so soon as the *Soveraign* (or his *Lieutenant*) is set down) maketh again his usual Reverences, in the middle of the Choire, then turneth to the two Senior *Knights*, and doth his Reverence to each of them; whereupon, at one instant, they make their double Reverences [m] below, where they stood, and forthwith ascend at the [n] first or Western entrance, that goeth to the side Stalls; where being [o] arrive, they make again the double Reverence, and seat themselves.

m Colle. B. W. n le N. Cl. o

But when the *Soveraigns Lieutenant* is present, each *Knight* adds a [p] third Reverence to him, both when they ascend to, and descend from their Stalls. And this third Reverence, not only they, but all the persons who pass in the *Proceeding* add to their double Reverences, so often as there is occasion to make it, after such time as the *Soveraigns Lieutenant* is entred his Stall, and so long as he continues therein, both on the Eve, the Feast day, and the Morrow after.

p MS. penes W. D. N. f. 7. b. & 20. a.

In like order, and with like Reverences do all the rest of the *Knights-Companions* (having each waited the seating of his senior fellow) ascend their Stalls, where they proceed by pairs; otherwise they take their Stalls singly. But the place appointed for all but the two senior *Knights-Companions* to enter into, and come out of their Stalls, is the [q] middle entrance, or that at the [r] East end of the Stalls, which of them fall out to be next below each *Knight's* respective Stall, to avoid the trouble and inconvenience of passing before any of their senior *Companions*.

q Colle. B. W. r le N. Cl. s

The *Knights-Companions* being all seated, the [s] *Prelate* and *Chancellor* of the *Order* pass into the middle of the Choire, and having made double Reverences, return to their Form and sit down. After them doth the *Register*, *Garter*, and *Black-Rod*, pass thither, there make their Reverences, and then sit down on their Form, in the order as they proceeded.

As touching the *Soveraign's* other Attendants, we have observed, that the *Nobleman* who carries the *Sword* retires before the *Soveraign's Stall* a little on the right hand, and the *Lord Chamberlain* of the Houshold (if not a *Knight* of the *Order*) and the *Vice-Chamberlain* on his left, until the *Soveraign* give them leave to sit down; the Clerk of the Closet stands at the *Soveraign's* right haud; but the young *Noblemen* that carry up the *Soveraign's Train*, and the *Gentleman* of the *Robes*, sometimes repose themselves upon the Steps going up to the *Soveraign's Stall*.

This great Ceremony of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* entry into the *Choire*, and taking their *Stalls* being finished, preparation for the *Vespers* begin; in reference to which the *Prelate* ascends to the *Altar*; it being appointed among other things relating to the duty of his Office, That [c] *Whensoever the* Soveraign *should think fit to keep the Solemnity of St.* George *at* Windesor, *he should be obliged to be present to celebrate divine Service*; which if he purposely omitted, it

c Lib. N. p. 233.

is

is there provided, that [d] for such omission he should be fined 20 Marks to the *Colledge*, to be laid out upon the Reparations that are there to be made, [e] unless he alledge to the *Soveraign* and the *Knights-Companions* some reasonable and just cause of his being absent. And therefore, in case of Vacancy of the See of *Winchester*, Sickness, or other lawful occasion for absence, the *Soveraign* hath dispensed with this penally, and appointed some other Bishop to officiate for him. The Proceeding to the *Altar* on this occasion is in manner following.

d Lib. N. p. 233.
e 233.

First the [x] *Serjeant* of the *Vestry* makes a double Reverence, then comes before the *Prelate* and makes a single one to him, who thereupon ariseth from his Seat, and the *Serjeant* [y] proceedeth before him into the middle of the Choire; where [z] standing a little on the one side, the *Prelate* [a] there makes a double Reverence, and from thence passing forward after the *Serjeant*, and having ascended the uppermost Haut-pas before the *Altar*, he makes [b] one single Reverence towards the same, and so goes to the [b] North side of it.

Prelates going up to the Altar.

x y z a b Collect. W. le N. Cl.

In his ascent to the *Altar*, he hath sometimes made [c] three double Reverences, *viz.* one before his Seat, a second in the middle of the Choire, and the third on the first Haut-pas, and after these, the single one above the Haut-pas's; all in a direct line before the *Altar*.

c Collect. W. le N. Cl. an. 11. Car. 1.

After the *Prelate* hath arrived at the *Altar*, the two [d] *Provincial Kings*, *Heralds* and *Pursuivants*, leaving their forementioned Station, join together, and pass along the Choire, until the Kings come neer to the Form, whereon the *Register*, *Garter*, and *Black-Rod* sit, where all making their double Reverences together, they divide themselves again on each side, and there stand.

d Collect. W. le N. Cl.

Lastly, the *Alms-Knights* come down into the Choire in a Body, and there make their joint double Reverences, and then take their Chairs.

The like in every thing is performed in the *Chappel* at *Whitehall*, and other places, where the Solemnity of the *Feast* is observed; where because the *Alms-Knights* are absent, the *Pursuivants* at *Arms* ascend neerer the high Altar than when they are at *Windesor*, that there may be room enough for the rest of the *Officers* of *Arms* to stand in rank, yet so that the *Provincial Kings* stand not further from it than the lowermost *Haut Pas*, to avoid pressing upon the Junior *Knights*.

All these Ceremonies being finished, and the several Degrees in the *Proceeding* duly placed, the Choire, resembling the cœlestial Spheres, where the *Soveraign* of this most Illustrious *Order* sits as *Sun*, among the *Planets* and *Stars*, the *Divine Office* is begun by the *Prelate* in a most solemn manner; which is now celebrated according to the Order of the Book of *Common Prayer*, established by the Acts of *Parliament* made *an.* 1. *Eliz.* & 14. *Car.* 2. being the same appointed in the *Rubrick* for the Evening of the 22. day of *April*, or for the Evening of such other day, whereon the *Feast* by *Prorogation* hath been celebrated: Where sometimes to shorten the Ceremony, the *Prelate* hath omitted the *Confession* and *Absolution*, and began with the *Pater Noster*; and frequently instead of the *Magnificat*, or *Nunc dimittis*, or one of them, some choice-composed *Anthems* are sung to the *Organ*: and after proceeding on with the *Creed*, and the rest of the Prayers in the accustomed order, to that of St. *Chrysostom*, before which in the Reign of King *James*, was the following Prayer used throughout the Feast.

The Course of Divine Service

O Lord, save our King,
And mercifully hear us, &c.

Almighty and most merciful Father, we humbly beseech thee in the Name of thy Son Christ Jesus our Lord and Saviour, to direct and endue King James our most worthy Governour, with the continual and plentiful grace of thine holy Spirit, that as he is antiently and rightly descended from the valiant and prudent Princes of this Realme, the first Founders and Erectors of this most noble Order of the Garter, So he may abound and excell in all things acceptable to thee, namely in the maintenance of piety, peace, justice, and unity, to the support of good Learning, relief of the poor and oppressed; and grant most gracious Lord, that all the Noble-men of this Realm, especially such as be Companions

panions of this most honorable Order, may be truly devoted to godliness, valour, and vertue, in such sort, that God may be thereby the better honored their Soveraigne served, the Common-wealth secured, and the memorial of their well-doing remain to their posterity. And that we all may live and dye in thy faith and fear, and walk in these good works, which thou hast appointed us through Jesus Christ our Lord, Amen.

O Lord, long preserve James our King, and all the Companions of this most noble Order of the Garter, Amen.

Next follows the Prayer of St. *Chrysostom*, and last of all the *Blessing*. After the pronouncing of which, at the Feast of St. *George* celebrated at *Windsor*, in the 15. year of the present *Soveraign*, there was an *Anthem* composed for the present Solemnity, sung to the *Organ* and other *Instrumental Musick*, placed in the *Organ loft*: and this was the first time, that *Instrumental Musick* was introduced into the said *Chappel*.

a b c *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

When the *Vespers* are ended, the [a] *Prelate* goes to the middle of the *Altar*, and there before it (with great reverence) makes an obeisance; and thence ([b] taking the *Serjeant* before him) descends to the middle of the Choire, where he makes his double Reverences, and so [c] returns to his Seat; whereupon all make ready to pass out of the Choire in the following manner. And first,

Proceeding out of the Choire.

The *Alms-Knights* come from their Seats, and draw together into the middle of the Choire, and having made their double Reverences, in manner first above described, they ascend in a body upon the highest *Haut Pas* before the *Altar* (the Junior near to the Rails) and there dividing themselves again, make a Lane, and stand in the same places they did before.

Next them, the *Pursuivants-Heralds*, and *Kings* make their double Reverences, & ascend to the *Altar*, where dividing themselves, they stand where they did before. All which is done, to the end the body of the Choire may be wholly cleared, for the *Knights-Companions* to descend into, and stand over against their Stalls.

d e f g *Ex ead. Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

After this, *Garter* riseth from his Seat, and passing into the middle of the Choire, makes there a double Reverence, then going forward till he [d] come over against the Junior *Knights Stall*: (for when they descend from the Stalls, he is the first) he there bows towards him, and ([e] if his *Companion* be present) then turns himself towards the opposite side of the Choire, and immediately bows to him also, and then gives the [f] usual Signal or Summons for the *Knights-Companions* to descend, by the waving or bending of his Scepter towards them; which done, he draws back to his Seat without any other Obeisances. And the Reason given is, [g] for that at this time while *Garter* is retiring, the Junior *Knights* are making their Reverences, and therefore it were not proper for him to be also doing his.

h i k l *Ibid.*

Assoon therefore as *Garter* hath given the aforesaid Signal, the two [h] Junior *Knights-Companions* (if both be present, otherwise the Junior alone) rise from their Seats, and standing above before their Stalls, make their double Reverence [i] both at one time, and then descend into the Choire by the way they went up; where making a second double Reverence, they forthwith place themselves directly over against their own Stalls, and [k] stand there.

Then the [l] next Junior *Knights* (or *Knight*, if he be not paired with his *Companion*) arise, and descend with like Reverences; and in like order, do all the rest that are present at the Ceremony, each with his opposite *Companion*; but if he be wanting, then he performs the Ceremony alone.

When all the *Knights-Companions* are come down, and placed before their Stalls, the *Black-rod*, *Garter*, and *Register* step forth, make their double Reverence all at once, then retire before their Forms, and stand there. After whom, the *Chancellor* and *Prelate* do the like.

Assoon as they have done, the *Alms-Knights* descend into the middle of the Choire (the Prelates going formost) and there, turning about by the left hand, as before, make their double Reverences together, and so pass out through the West door of the Choire, and at some convenient distance thence, stand, till the

the *Prebends* be also come out and joyned to them, and moving a little further, when the *Officers* of *Arms* are come forth, all then attend the coming out of the *Knights-Companions*, and they, that of the *Soveraign*.

Whilst the *Alms-Knights* are passing out, as aforesaid, the *Prebends* of the *Colledge* came forth of their Seats into the Choire, and in the middle thereof make likewise their double Reverence, and then pass out (the *Verger* of the *Chappel* going before them) and joyn themselves to the *Alms-Knights*.

Next the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Kings* descend into the middle of the Choire, and there making a double Reverence, pass likewise forward

Then the two Junior *Knights* (or *Knight*, if his *Companion* be absent) make their double Reverence in the middle of the Choire, over against their proper Stalls, and proceed forth, and so do all the rest in order, the Seniors last. And here (and all other times when the *Knights-Companions* pass out of the *Choire*, except in the *Grand Procession*) do the [m] *Choristers* step in, and bear up their *Trains* to the *Presence-Chamber*, which piece of Service, was so at first permitted, to intitle each of them to the favour of a half-piece gratuity, which the *Knights-Companions* have usually bestowed upon them, in recompence of their officious Attendance.

[m] *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

After the *Knights-Companions*, the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register* make their double Reverences, and pass forward. The like do the *Chancellor* and *Prelate*, and follow them.

Then doth the *Soveraign* rise out of his Royal Seat, and having made his obeisance towards the *Altar* above in his Stall, he descends, and doth the like again being descended.

But when the *Soveraign* is absent, his *Lieutenant* descends from his Stall [n] with usual Reverences; and when he comes to the *Soveraigns* Royal Stall, he [o] stands a while before the entrance into it, and then making his accustomed Reverence, proceeds out of the Choire.

[n] *MS 4. pen.* [o] *E. W. G.*

The *Soveraign* having made his Reverences, proceedeth forthwith out of the Choire, (the *Sword* being born before him) thence he passeth through the South door of the *Chappel*, into the lower Ward of the *Castle*, and presently enters into the same way, by which he came to the *Chapter-house*; and as the *Statutes* do ordain, [p] *returns in the very same order*, viz. *per modum Processionis* back to the *Presence-Chamber*.

[p] *E. 3. Stat. Art. 3.*

When the *Servants* and *Attendants* of the *Knights-Companions* are arrived at the great Gate, in the upper Ward of the *Castle*, entring into the *Soveraigns* Lodgings; (or to the same place, as far as their number reached, to make the Lane for the *Proceeding* to pass thorow, when the *Soveraign* proceeded to the *Chapter-house*) then do they begin to divide, and rank themselves on either side the passage, through the *Stone-Gallery*, up the Stairs to the *Guard-Chamber* door, in the same order, as they were marshalled at the beginning of the *Proceeding*; that so the whole Proceeding may again pass through them.

The *Alms-Knights* having entred the *Guard-Chamber*, and being come near to the middle, the Juniors begin to fall off on both sides the Room; the next Seniors, (and so forward to their Governor) following in due order, do place themselves up further in the Room.

Whereupon the *Prebends* pass through the Lane so made, and assoon as they are past the *Alms-Knights*, fall off on either side the Room, to the Presence-Chamber door. Then the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings* proceeding through the Lane made by the *Alms-Knights* and *Prebends*, do forthwith enter into the *Presence-Chamber*, and immediately fall off on either side, towards the State, the Kings of *Arms* standing uppermost.

Then enter the *Knights-Companions*, and place themselves [q] on each side of the State, in such order [r] as they sat in their Stalls, the eldest neerest the State; but such whose *Companions* are absent, stand alone. After whom follow the [t] *Officers* of the *Order*, disposing themselves conveniently neer the State.

[q] [r] [t] [u] *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

Lastly, the *Soveraign* (attended as before) passeth to the step before the State; where being arrived, he [u] turns his Face towards the *Knights-Companions*, who immediately make their Reverences [u] jointly to him, and he thereupon puts off

his

his Cap, and re-salutes them, which done, the *Soveraign* and they withdraw into the *Privy Lodgings*, until Supper time.

But in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, when the *Feast* of St. *George* was kept at *Whitehall*, or at *Greenwich*, and the *Soveraign* (as was usual for the said Queen) proceeded no further on the *Eve* to *Vespers*, than to the great *Closet*, the ordinary way, and thence sent her *Lieutenant* into the Choire: Then in such case, when *Vespers* were ended, the *Lieutenant* returned from the *Choire* orderly through the great [w] *Hall*, and so back to the said [x] *Closet*, and stood at the Door thereof attending the *Soveraigns* coming forth, from whence they all proceeded before her into the [y] *Presence-Chamber*, and there the Ceremony (for that time) ended.

w MS. penes W.D. N. f. 3. a. 7. b. 9. b. & 26. a.
x Vide etiam MS. penes præfat. Geo. O. Y. 123. & MS. 4. penes E. W. G.
y MS. penes E. W. G.

But in King *James* his Reign, when the Supper on the *Eve*, as also the following Meals, were prepared in the *Banqueting-House*, the *Soveraigns Lieutenant* frequently returned from the *Closet* by the *Lobby* over the *Terrace* (since pulled down) to the said [z] *Banqueting-House*, (the Noblemens *Servants* standing on either side the way) instead of going to the *Presence*; and passing up to the State, gave an end to the Ceremony till Supper time: and so do we find it observed in the 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, and 16. of the said *Soveraigns* Reign.

z MS. penes E. W. G.

When the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* are retired, they are not to put off any part of their *Robes* till after *Supper*; for that is prohibited by the *Statutes*, * not only to those that do not sup, no less than those which do. And hereupon the 22. of *April*, *An.* 19. *Car.* 2. the *Grand Feast* being held at *Whitehall*. The *Soveraign* having a desire to take the Air, after he had taken leave of the *Knights* in the *Presence-Chamber*, took Coach, and went into *Hide-Park*, taking the Duke of *Monmouth* and Earl of *Oxford* with him, and all three in their whole *Habit* of the *Order*. The Duke of *York* also at the same time, went in another Coach, his *Dutchess* accompanying him, but habited in full *Robes* likewise; and so returned to *Supper*.

* E. 3. Stat: Art. 3.

SECT. VII.

The Supper *on the* Eve.

When the *Soveraign* is pleased to Sup publickly, on the *Eve* of the *Feast* at *Windsor*, the *Supper* hath been always prepared in St. *George*'s *Hall*; and was accordingly done *an.* [b] 14. & [c] 15 *Car.* 1. & 13. 15. & 23. years of the present *Soveraign*.

b Palmers large Journal. pag. 14.
c Palmers Journal, pro an. 1639. pag. 19.

The usual place at *Whitehall* for this first Meal, was heretofore the *Presence Chamber*, [d] of latter times the *Banqueting-House*; and at *Greenwich* either the [e] *Presence* or [f] *Council-Chamber*; where the *Soveraign* or his *Lieutenant* were always present. But when the *Feast* of St. *George* was celebrated at *York*, *an.* [g] 17 *Car.* 1. The *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* marched after the first *Vespers* ended, to an [h] House prepared for that purpose, and Supped there; and thence returned to his own *Palace* to Bed.

d MS. penes W. D. N. f. 3. a. 7. b. 20. a.
e MS. penes G. O. Y. pag. 114.
f MS. præf. W. D. N. penes f. 26. b.
g Palmers
h large Journal, pag. 38.

But if the *Eve* of the *Feast* fell out to be on a Fasting Day, as it did *an.* 22. *H.* 8. upon [i] a *Saturday*, and *an.* 11. *Jac. R.* upon a [k] *Friday*; the *Supper* was always omitted, and the *Soveraign* or his *Lieutenant* and *Knights-Companions* were served of the Void only; concerning which Term, more shall be spoken immediately.

i MS. in Offic. Arm. M. 17. fol. 32.
k MS. penes E. W. G. f. 151. a.

Nor doth the *Soveraign* when he suppeth publickly, pass privately to the place: but as soon as notice is given that the first Mess is set upon the Table, he forthwith entreth the *Presence-Chamber*, whence the *Officers* of the *Order* and of *Arms*, the *Knights-Companions* in their full Robes (for so the [l] *Statutes* of the *Order* direct in particular) having put themselves into their usual and due Order, proceed before him into St. *George*'s *Hall*. Where being entred, the *Pursuivants*,

l E. 3. Stat. H. 5. H. 8. Art. 3.

suivants, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings*, fall off all upon the right hand, [m] opposite to the *Knights-Companions* Table, the *Junior Pursuivant* standing towards the lower end of the *Hall*.

Then the *Knights-Companions* passing up beyond them, formerly [n] divided themselves on either side, according to the Decree * *an.* 16. *H.* 8. and made a stand, each taking place, [o] according to the order of their *Stalls*. But at the *Feast* held at *Whitehall an.* 19. *Car.* 2. the *Soveraign* directed, that they should stand all on the right hand side, facing their Table.

Next the five *Officers* of the *Order* follow, who ascending [p] beyond the *Senior Knight*, retire on the right hand; After them the *Soveraign*, who coming up last (all the *Officers* of *Arms* [q] doing him reverence as he passeth by) goes directly to the Haut-pas, before his own Table, where turning himself towards the *Knights-Companions*, and [r] putting off his Cap, they return their Reverences jointly to him.

After this, in order to the *Soveraigns* sitting down to *Supper*, he is first served with Water by some Noblemen appointed for that Service. Next Grace is said by the *Prelate*, and then doth the *Soveraign* place himself in his Chair, set in the middle of the Table. After whom the Senior *Knight*, conducted to his Table by two *Officers* of *Arms*, sits down, and so do all the rest in due order, at the Tables appointed for them. Whereupon the *Officers* of the *Order* and of *Arms*, retire out of the *Hall* to Supper.

Now in regard all these last mentioned particulars are ordered alike, and in the same manner, at the other Meals of this *Grand Feast*, as here at this: We chuse rather to transfer the further enlargement upon them, to our Discourse of the *Dinner* on the *Feast day*, where these, and such things and services as are also common to every Meal, are once for all brought to view, and handled at large.

If a *Lieutenant* be constituted, he [s] proceeds to *Supper* in full Robes, and in the same order as doth the *Soveraign*, whether it be to St. *George's Hall*, or elsewhere, and sits [t] alone at the *Soveraign's Table*, yet on the [u] left hand of the Cloth of State; being served in all points with [w] *Water*, and by a [x] *Cupbearer*, *Carver*, and *Sewer*, as is the *Soveraign* himself.

This, and the other Meals were usually heretofore closed with Comfits, Spices, and Wine, and of late times with a costly Banquet: which, after the *Soveraign* hath washed, is brought in and placed upon the Table.

This *Banquet* after Supper, is that which in some places is called the *Voyd*, as *an.* 31. *H.* 8. it is observed, that *Supper* being ended, the *President* and *Knights-Companions* had a [y] *Voyde* of *Comfits* and *Hypocras*, and *an.* 4. *Eliz.* a [z] *Voyde* of *Spices* and *Wine*. So * *an.* 6. & 7. of the same Queen, it is said, they were served of the *Voyde* and departed, and *an.* 20. *Eliz.* it is likewise said, *Supper* being ended, and ‖ *Voydance* brought, they departed for that night. So also is it phrased in King *Henry* the Eighth's Statutes, *Art.* 3.

The Voyd, what?

But somewhat more fully *an.* 5. *Eliz.* when St. *George's* day falling upon a *Friday*, at the return from the second *Vespers*, instead of a *Supper* (it being a fasting night) the *Lieutenant* [a] standing in the middle before the Cloth of State, and the *Knights* along on either hand, the Comfits, Spices, Sugar, and Wine were brought in, and in several Bowls (or Chargers) presented; first [b] a Bowl to the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*, and then a Bowl to each two of the *Knights-Companions*; and the Relator, at the close, noting also the posture they took the *Banquet* in, calls it a *Voyde*; for he says, they had the [c] *Voyde* standing. And lastly, the *Feast* hapning on a *Friday*, *an.* 27. of the same Queen, celebrated at *Greenwich*, it is noted by [d] *Robert Cook*, then *Clarenceux*, that when the *Banquet* was brought in, the *Lieutenant* and all the *Knights-Companions* standing in order, were served of the [e] *Voyde*, because they had no *Supper*.

When *Supper* is ended, and the *Banquet* taken away, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* [f] proceed back (in the same order as they came) into the *Presence-Chamber*; where the *Soveraign* (or his *Lieutenant*) standing on the step before the State, saluteth them as before, and then [g] appoints the hour and

[m] [n] [o] [p] [q] [r] *Colleth. W. le N. Cl.*

* *Lib. N. p. 31.*

[s] [t] [u] [w] [x] *MS. f. pen. pref. W. D. N. f. 3. a. vide etiam MS. penes G. O. Y. p. 114.*

[y] *Lib. L. 1. in Offic. Arm. p. 19.*
[z] *MS. pen. W. D. N. fol. 7. b.*
* *Ibid. f. 15. a. & 20. a.*
‖ *MS. pen. G. O. Y. pag. 114.*

[a] [b] [c] *MS. pen. W. D. N. fol. 10. a.*

[d] [e] [f] *MS. quart. penes E. W. G. fol. 9.*

[f] *Palmers large Journ. pag. 14.*

[g] *MS. 4. penes E. W. G. fol. 2.*

place for the *Knights-Companions* to attend him the next morning; which commonly is about [h] 8 a Clock, after which they make their Reverences, and all depart to their several Lodgings.

h *MS. in Offic. Arm lib. M. 17. fol. 32. b.*

The like if *Supper* be prepared in any other place besides the *Presence-Chamber*; for from thence (when it is ended) doth the *Soveraign* (or his *Lieutenant*) and the *Knights-Companions* proceed to the *Presence*, because the Ceremony ought to end there. So we find it observed *an.* 17. *Car.* 1. when the *Feast* was solemnized at *York*, where, though the [i] House appointed to sup at, was somewhat remote from the *Soveraign*'s Palace, yet the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the *Order* attended the *Soveraign* thence, after Supper, to the [k] *Presence-Chamber* in the foresaid *Palace*; and there, he taking leave of them, they immediately retired to disrobe themselves. In like case *an.* 27. *Eliz.* the *Feast* being then held at *Greenwich*, and the *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant* and *Companions* supping in the [l] *Great Chamber*, (at the neither end of the Guard-Chamber) they thence attended the *Lieutenant* to the [m] *Presence* after *Supper*; where the *Lieutenant* taking his place at the upper end, and the *Knights-Companions* their places in due order, they stayed a while there, and then departed.

i } *Palmers*
k } *large Journal, pag.* 38.

l } *Collect. R.*
m } *C. Cl.*
n }

The like did they the next day, both after the *Grand* [n] *Dinner*, and at night after *Supper*, because the *Lieutenant* dined and supped in the said *Great Chamber*.

But when *Supper* was prepared in the *Presence-Chamber*, at any of the *Soveraign*'s *Courts*, the *Soveraign* (or his *Lieutenant*) and *Knights-Companions* did take their leave one of another in the same Room, there being no occasion for any formal *Proceeding* further. Nevertheless, if any of the *Knights-Companions* accompanied the *Soveraign* (or his *Lieutenant*) to his Lodgings, they then went [o] after, not before him, in regard the [p] state of that nights Service ended in the *Chamber* of *Presence*; and after they are retired to their several Lodgings, they have permission to put off their Robes.

o } *Collect. E.*
p } *W. G.*

When the *Soveraign* or his *Lieutenant* do not sup in St. *George*'s *Hall* on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, or the following night, the *Officers* of *Arms* have formerly had the liberty to eat their Suppers there; and this priviledge and assignment of a Table, was given them by a Decree in *Chapter* held the 16. of *June*, *an.* 8. *Eliz.* as followeth.

q *Lib. C. p.* 53. *videsis lib Parrit. in Offic. Arm.* [1. *fol.* 275.] *& MS. penes G. O. T. fol.* 93.

[q] *That forasmuch, as the* Officers *of* Arms *had formerly no certain place assigned them, wherein they might eat their meat, the* night *next preceding the day of St.* George, *and also on the* Evening *of the* Feast day, *they should from thenceforth hold, within the* Hall *at* Windesor, *that* Table, *which was before that time appointed for the* Chancellor *and* Register, *and other* Officers *of the* Garter, *to sit at, on the day of the said* Festival. But how they came to lose the priviledge, hereby granted, we cannot learn; for now instead of sitting in the *Great Hall*, they are necessitated to eat their Meat in such Rooms of the *Castle*, as upon the score of friendship they can obtain; and among others, at the *Grand Feasts* held at *Windesor an.* 13. *&* 15. *Car.* 2. Captain *Burgh*, one of the *Alms-Knights*, very courteously befriended them with the use of his lower Room, to dine and sup in; and in the 23. year of the same King, Captain *Hull*, another of the *Alms-Knights*, did them the like kindness.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

THE ORDER OF THE Ceremonies ON THE Feast Day.

SECT. I.

The Proceeding *to the* Chappel *in the* Morning.

ALbeit the Celebrations of the *Feast* of St. *George* take up three days inclusively, that is to say, part of the 22. all the 23. and part of the 24. days of *April*; yet the 23. day [the day of St. *George*] is the *Grand day*, wherein the chiefest and most solemn Ceremonies are celebrated; all things being set forth after the noblest order that can be devised, for the greater honor and lustre of this Princely and Ancient *Order* of the *Garter*.

The Ceremonies of this *Grand day* may be divided, into *Sacred* and *Civil*; the former solemnized in the *Chappel*, the latter in St. *George's Hall*. The *Sacred* (as is most requisite) are first celebrated; in reference to which, the *Knights-Companions* then present at *Windesor*, repair to the *Soveraign* in his Privy Lodgings, about the hour he had appointed them the night before, vested in the whole *Habit* of the *Order*; and thither also repair all the *Officers* of the *Order*.

In the mean time, the rest of the Degrees and Persons, which compleated the *Proceeding* to the *Chappel*, on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast* (and before remembred) do repair to the several stations that were then appointed for them, and there attend the *Soveraign*'s coming forth into the Chamber of Presence, *viz.*

The *Attendants* on the *Knights-Companions*	To the Passage from the *Guard-Chamber* door, down into the *Cloister* and upper Ward.
Alms-Knights and *Prebends*	Into the *Guard-Chamber*.
Officers of *Arms*	Into the *Presence*.

And in these several places, do they all rank themselves, in the very same Order, as is before set down, and directed to be observed on the *Eve*.

Here it will be proper to note, that though the *Serjeant Trumpeter*, and the *Trumpets*, do not pass in this Proceeding, nor in that on the *Eve*; yet at the Feast held *an.* 23 *Car.* 2. they stood ranked one by one, when the Proceeding came forth of the great Gate, in the Upper Court to Morning Service, on the right hand against the Wall, but sounded not.

When the *Soveraign* (having the *Knights-Companions*, and *Officers* of the *Order* before him) hath entred the *Presence*, the *Sword* is delivered to the *Nobleman* appointed to bear it; and after the *Soveraigns* usual Salutation, and *Knights-Companions* Reverences returned, the whole *Proceeding* sets forward towards the *Chappel* in the same Order, as on the *Eve*; the *Knights-Companions* having their Trains born by some of their own Gentlemen.

a (Palmers b (large Journ. c (p. 14. & 15.

At the [a] foot of the Stairs, entring the *Cloyster* or *Stone-Gallery*, do [b] twelve *Gentlemen* of the *Privy-Chamber* attend, with a rich *Canopy* of Cloth of Gold; who, when the *Soveraign* approacheth receive him under it, and bear it over his head, [c] until he arrive at the Choire Door of St. *George's Chappel*; and this *Canopy* is carried over the *Soveraign* only in the Morning of the Feast Day, not in the Afternoon, nor on the *Eve*, nor the Day after the Feast.

d Ex Vetust. MS. jen. G.O.T. e MS f. p. 12. an. 1. & 2. Ph. & Mar. f Lib C. p. 94. g Ibid. p. 111. h Pag. 130. i Lib. R. p. 48. k Ibid. p. 140. See Palmers large Journal, pag. 14. l Palmers Journal, pro an. 1639. pag. 20.

The *Processional way* to the *Chappel*, is the same they traversed on the *Eve*, if the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* march to the *Chapter-House* first; for [d] anciently it was the Custom to hold a *Chapter* in the Morning of the *Feast Day*, either before *Mattins*, and sometimes when [e] *Mattins* was finished before the *Grand Procession* set forward. This course received interruption in Queen *Elizabeths* time; during which no *Chapter* was held in the Morning, but in the [f] 26. [g] 31. & [h] 38. years of her Reign, and then only for admitting of some of the *Officers* of the *Order*. But the time of holding this *Chapter*, was restored by King *Charls* the First, who several times held it before the first Service began, as in the [i] 5. [k] 14. & [l] 15. Years of his Reign.

But if no *Chapter* be at this time held, then as soon as the *Proceeding* comes near to the *Chappel*, instead of entring the passage between the East end of the Chappel, and King *Henry* the Eighth's Tomb-House, (as it doth on the *Eve*, because the *Soveraign* goes first to the *Chapter-House*) it proceedeth straight on to the *South Door* of the *Chappel*, and thence into the *Choire*. Yet the present *Soveraign An.* 15. of his Reign, appointed the whole *Proceeding* to pass by the said *South Door*, along the Southside of the Chappel, and then to enter in at the *West Door*, which was then, and since, so observed.

When the *Alms-Knights* are come to the West Door of the *Choire*, they enter, and pass up above the steps to the *Altar*, in the very same manner and Order, as is at large described and mentioned to be observed, upon the entry of the *Proceeding* into the *Choire*, on the *Eve* of the *Feast*.

Then do the *Prebends* take their Seats, and

The *Officers* of *Arms* pass to the Haut Pas's of the *Altar*.

After this, the *Knights-Companions* proceed, and stand before their Stalls.

The *Officers* of the *Order* before their Forms, and

The *Soveraign* ascends his Royal Seat, as also

The *Knights-Companions* their Stalls.

Then the *Prelate*, conducted by the Serjeant of the Vestry, goes up to the Altar,

The *Officers* of *Arms* descend into the Choire, and lastly

The *Alms-Knights* retire to their Seats.

All which being done, the *Prelate* begins the *Morning Service*; wherein he proceeds according to the order prescribed in the *Book* of *Common Prayer*, save only that the *first Lesson*, being made proper to the *Festival*, is taken out of the 44 *Chapter* of *Ecclesiasticus*.

This solemn *Proceeding* to the *Chappel* in the Morning of the *Feast* day, is, and hath been most usually performed on Foot; nevertheless sometimes heretofore, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* have proceeded on Horseback, to enlarge the state and gallantry of the show.

For

For it is remembred, that *an.*[m] 16. *E.* 4. the Feast of St. *George* being then celebrated at *Windesor*, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*[n] rode to the *Chappel* on Horseback, to hear Mass that morning: and with them also rode the [o]*Queen*, the Lady *Elizabeth* the King's Daughter, and the Dutchess of *Suffolk*, the King's Sister, the Lady Marchioness *Mountague*, the Marchioness *Dorset*, and divers other Ladies, in [p] *Gowns* embroidered with *Garters*; concerning which Habit we have [q] already spoken.

[m] *Vide Lib. vocat. Dal[ton.]*
[n] [o] [p]
[q] *Chap. 7. Sect. 5.*

So also [r] *an.* 3. *H.* 7. on the Morning of the *Feast-day*, did the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* proceed on Horseback to Matins, with equal splendor, or rather more glorious, than on the *Eve* to the first *Vespers*: For the *Knights-Companions* were vested in *Surcoats* of * White Cloth, embroidered with *Garters*, (the *Livery* of the new year) the Kings Courser was trapped with a Trapper of St. *George*, of white Cloth of Gold; and the Lord *Berners* bare the King's *Sword*, his Courser being trapped with St. *Edward's* Arms. This Proceeding was augmented by the presence of the [s] *Queen*, and the Kings *Mother*, attended with a splendid Train of *Ladies*, and others that waited on them, themselves being attired in the *Livery* of the *Order*, and their Horses most richly accoutred with Foot-Cloths, Trappings, and all other Furniture correspondant, in like State as on the *Eve*. Again, in the 20 year of the same *Soveraign*, who then held the *Feast* of St. *George* at [t] *Baynards Castle* in *London*, he proceeded on Horseback to St. *Paul's* Church (in like order as on the *Evening* before) where he heard *Matins*. And King *Henry* the Eighth, at the *Feast* held at *Windesor* in the [u] 11. year of his Reign, rode with the *Knights-Companions*, about eight a Clock in the morning, down to the *Colledge* to hear *Mattins*, in like manner as on the *Eve*, and alighted at the South door of the *Chappel*. The like did [w] King *Philip an.* 1. & 2. *Ph.* & *Mar.* And Queen * *Elizabeth* in the sixth year of her Reign, proceeded also on Horseback to the *Morning Service*, in her whole *Habit* of the *Order*.

[r] *Lib. N. p.* 166.
* *MS. penes Arth. Com. Anglesey, fol.* 167.
[s] *Lib. N. p.* 166.
[t] *MS.*
[u] *MS. in Offic. Armor. [M.* 17.] *fol.* 27.
[w] *MS. pag.* 12.
* *MS. f. penes W.D.N. f.* 15. *b.*

Lastly, *an.* 6. *Eliz.* the [x] *Soveraign* in the whole *Habit* of the *Order* (the *French* Ambassador riding neer her) and all the *Knights-Companions* with the *Officers* of the *Order*, and *Officers* of *Arms*, proceeded on [y] Horseback to the *Chappel* on the *Morning* of the *Feast-day*. And in like manner did the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*, at the same Feast, ride to the [z] first and second *Vespers*, and to the Morning *Service* the day after the *Feast*.

[x] *Lib. C. p.* 46.
[y] *vide MS f. pen. W.D.N. p.* 17. *b.* & *getiam MS. in Offic. Arm. [H.* 12.] *fol.* 142.
[z]

It was a Custom begun by Queen *Elizabeth*, and used when she celebrated the Feast of St. *George*, either at *Whitehall* or *Greenwich*, for the [a] *Soveraign's Lieutenant* and the *Knights-Companions* in full Robes, attended with the *Officers* of the *Order* and of *Arms*, to [b] meet in the *Presence-Chamber*, (about 9 a Clock in the Morning of the *Feast* day) and thence to [c] proceed as they did the Evening before, through the *Guard-Chamber* down into the Great *Hall*, and thence into the *Chappel*, where they took their Stalls as on the *Eve*; after which, [d] Morning *Prayer*, according to the *order* established in the Church of *England*, was begun and continued so far as the *Letany*; and this was called the [e] *first Service*; which done, they all descended from their Stalls, in the accustomed order, and [f] proceeded back to the *Presence*, in the same manner, and by the same way as they went to the *Chappel*, and there waited the coming of the *Soveraign*; before whom they proceeded a second time to the *Choire*, where the *Letany* and *Grand Procession* begun, (called the [g] *second Service*) at which the *Soveraign* was usually present, but never at the first *Service*.

[a] *Ex eod. MS. pen. W. D. N. vide etiam MS. f. penes G. O. T. p.* 113. & 123. & *Collect. R. C. Cl.*
[b]
[c]
[d]
[e]
[f]
[g]

And the first memorial that we have met with, of this double proceeding to the *Chappel* in the Morning of the *Feast-day*, is recorded in the [h] *Blue Book* of the *Order*, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* And this double *Proceeding* and dividing of the *Service*, continued throughout the Reigns of Queen *Elizabeth* and King *James*, not only when the *Feast* of St. *George* was celebrated at *Whitehall* or *Greenwich*, *an.* [i] 7. 8. 10. 12. 13. 14. and 16. *Jac. R.* but also *an.* [k] 15. [l] 20. [m] 21. and [n] 22. of the same *Soveraign*, when solemnized at *Windesor*, and also the [o] first year of King *Charles* the First. But from that time, the *Soveraign* will

[h] *Pag.* 32. Illustrissimus Comes *Arundel* (*constituted the* Soveraign's Lieutenant *for that* Feast) cum reliquo Ordinis comitatu stipatus, Matutinis Precibus interfuit. Postea verò omnes celeberrimi Ordinis Commilitones, illustrissimæ Reginæ dederunt operam sedulò; quæ Sacellum est ingressa, inibique Regis sedili recepta, quod reliquum erat celebritatis gratiosè peregit.
[i] *MS. pen E. W. G.* [k] *Eod. MS.* [l] *Lib. C. p.* 17.
[m] *Ibid. pag.* 6. [n] *Pag.* 19. [o] *Pag.* 30.

went

p *Lib. G. pag.* 41 62.74. 85. 107. 117. & 127.

went to the *Chappel* to the [p] beginning of *Divine Service*, and the celebration thereof continued on, without any interruption, to the end; and this latter Custom hath been ever since duly observed by the present *Soveraign*.

But when it was known (before the *Lieutenant* proceeded to the *first Service*) that the *Soveraign* did not go the *Grand Procession*, (as, when either through indisposition of Body, or some other occasion, she could not come abroad) there the *Service* being begun, continued; and at the usual time the *Grand Procession* began, wherein the *Soveraigns* place was supplied by the *Lieutenant*.

q *Lib. R. p.* 1. r & 2. *an.* 20. *Jac. R.*

Nevertheless once we observe, that the *Soveraigns Lieutenant*, at the [q] finishing of the *first service*, proceeded back to the *Soveraign*'s Lodgings (the *Feast* being then kept at *Windesor*) not knowing of the *Soveraigns* indisposition, which understanding to be such, as permitted him not to go in the *Grand Proceeding*, he with the rest of the *Knights-Companions*, [r] returned to the *Chappel* a second time, to celebrate the rest of that Mornings Ceremonies.

SECT. II.

The Proceeding *to the second* Service.

a b c d *MS. fol. pen. W. D. N.*

BUT when the *Feast* hath been celebrated elsewhere than at *Windesor*, as soon as the *Prelate* was come down from the *Altar*, upon finishing the first *Service*, the *Knights-Companions* [a] descended from their Stalls in usual order, and then the [b] *Soveraign*'s *Lieutenant*, with the *Officers* of the *Order*, and of *Arms*, proceeded before him to the [c] *Presence*, to conduct the *Soveraign* to the second *service*. This second *Proceeding* to the *Chappel* was disposed in the [d] same order, as was that in the Morning to the first Service; only, in the latter, because the *Soveraign* proceeded, the *Sword* also was carried. Here follows a *Scheme* of one of these *Proceedings*, *viz. an.* 19. *Eliz.*

e *MS. pen. G. O. Y pag* 113.

[e] *Pursuivants.*
Heralds.
Provincial Kings.

f *This Lord and the three following Knights wanted their opposite Companions, therefore went single.*

[f] Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*.	----------
----------	Earl of *Penbroke*.
----------	Earl of *Worcester*.
----------	Earl of *Bedford*.
Lord Viscount *Mountague*.	Earl of *Leicester*.
Lord *Clynton*.	Earl of *Sussex*.

The *Usher*.	Mr. *Dean* of *Windesor*, in place of the *Register*.	*Garter*.
One *Gent. Usher*.	The Bishop of *Winchester*. *Sword*, born by the Earl of *Southampton*.	One *Gent. Usher*.

The *Soveraign*.

g *The year preceding the* Soveraign *had her* Mantle *born up in like manner from her shoulders by the Earl of* Northumberland *on the right hand, and the Lord* Russel *on the left.* Ex cod. MS. pag. 123.

[g] The Earl of *Ormond* (on the left hand) assisted the Robe on her shoulder.	The Earl of *Rutland* (on the right hand) assisted the Robe on her shoulder.

The Train of the Robe
born by the Earl of *Oxford*,
The Train of her Kirtle
by the Countess of *Derby*.

The

The *Processional way* from the *Presence* to the *Chappel* at *Whitehall*, is at this time, the same as it was in the Morning to the first Service, *viz.* through the *Guard-Chamber* and Great *Hall*. And as soon as the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* had ascended their Stalls, after the usual manner, in the [g] 3. [h] 4. and [i] 5. years of Queen *Eliz.* a *Psalm* was sung (the *Feast* being celebrated those years at *Whitehall*, at the ending of which) the *Knights-Companions* descended, and stood before their Stalls, and then the *Grand Procession* began.

g *MS. penes W. D. N. f. 3. b.*
h *Ibid. f. 8. a.*
i *Fol. 10. a.*

Sometime afterwards, as *an.* 18. *&* 19. *Eliz.* instead of a *Psalm* an [k] *Anthem* was sung by the *Choire*, in praise of the *Soveraign*'s presence there, with her *Knights-Companions*; which custom of singing an *Anthem* immediately before the *Grand Procession*, was observed *an.* [l] 9. [m] 14. *&* [n] 16. *Jac. R.* and probably theuse continued long after.

k *MS. fol. penes G. O. T. p. 123.*
l m n *MS. penes E. W. G.*

But *an.* 4. *Eliz.* by reason that the *Soveraign* was not well, she somewhat altered the usual processional way to the *Chappel*, proceeding from the *Presence*, [o] first to the great *Closet*, where she reposed her self, while the *Choire* was making ready to advance in the *Grand Procession*; and when the *Soveraign* was gone into the *Closet*, the *Lieutenant* and *Knights-Companions* leaving her there, [p] proceeded through the great *Hall* into the *Chappel*, where they took their Stalls in due and solemn order, while the Choire sung a *Psalm*. After which the *Letany* begun, and then the *Knights-Companions* descended from their Stalls in usual order, and [q] went the next way up to the *Closet*, having the *Officers* of the *Order* and of *Arms* before them; where waiting the *Soveraign*'s coming forth, they returned before her again to the *Chappel* (the *Choire* having by that time advanced forward in the *Grand Procession*) and proceeded through the body thereof.

o p q *MS. fol. pen. præf. W. D. N. fol. 8. b.*

SECT. III.

Of the Grand Procession.

WE are now arrived at the *Grand Procession* of this Noble *Order*, which is indeed the most solemn and most illustrious part of the whole *Ceremony*; to usher in the state and magnificence whereof, it seems here both proper and necessary, to premise somewhat concerning *Procession* in general, and by reason of their correspondency, to say something of *Triumphs*, *Cavalcades*, and *Ecclesiastical Proceedings*; those glorious and pompous Solemnities, which the wisdom of all Ages, and custom in most parts of the World for all, or in all parts for some, have thought most necessary to exhibit upon particular and remarkable Occasions.

Procession is so called as it were * *progressio à procedendo in publicam.* The original of *Processions* some deduce from the ancient *Jews* in the Old Testament; and well may we do so too, since we observe the *Israelites* removal from *Sinai* to *Paran*, was [a] *according to the commandment of God*, and the order and manner of their *Proceeding* thus recorded.

* *Durant. de Ritibus Eccl. Cath. p. 427.*
a *Numb. c. 10. v. 13.*

[b] First went the Standard of the Camp of the Children of *Judah*, where *Nahshon* the Son of *Aminadab* commanded in Chief.

b *Cap. 10. v. 14. usq; ad vers. 28.*

Next that of *Issachar*.

Thirdly, that of *Zebulon*: and after these

The *Tabernacle* born by the Sons of *Gershon* and *Merari*.

Then followed the Standards of *Ruben*, *Simeon*, and *Gad*: and after them,

The *Kohathites* bearing the *Sanctuary*.

Afterwards the Standards of the Camps of *Ephraim*, *Manasseh*, and *Benjamin*: And lastly in the Rere came

The Standards of *Dan*, *Asher*, and *Naphtali*.

[c] *Cap. 6.* [d] *Ver. 8. & 9.* A second and most solemn *Proceeding* we have in the Book of [c] *Joshua*, at the famous encompassing the Walls of *Jericho*; where [d] first the *Army* proceeded on before the seven *Priests*, who sounded the seven Trumpets of Rams horns, then the *Ark* of the *Covenant* of the Lord followed them, and lastly the Rere came after the *Ark*.

[e] *2 Sam cap 6.* *1 Chron. c. 13.* Again, when the [e] *Ark* was fetched from *Kiriath Jearim* by *David*, unto the House of *Obed Edom*, it was brought thither with great Ceremony, the *King*, and all *Israel* joining with him in the *Procession*: And to be more particular as to the order thereof, *David* himself informs us out of the 67 *Psalm* (which most Interpreters agree to be penn'd upon this solemn occasion) that in this Proceeding, [f] *The* Singers *went before, the* Minstrels *followed after, and in the midst were the* Damsels *playing with the Timbrels.* Moreover, for the setting forth of this Solemnity and celebration of the glory of *God*, not only vocal Musick [*Psalms*] namely the 47. and 67. *Psalms*, as the *Rabins* are of opinion, were composed and sung; but *Musical Instruments* to the honor of God, were also introduced, [g] *2 Sam. c. 6. ver. 5.* [h] *1 Chron. cap. 13. ver. 8.* *even all* Instruments *made of Fir Wood.* [h] *And* David *and all* Israel *played before* God, *with all their might, and with singing, and with Harps, and with Psalteries, and with Timbrels, and with Cymbals, and with Trumpets.* All which is not only our Warrant but Precedent.

[f] *Ver. 25.*

Now in respect of the correspondence and alliance between the State of *Processions* and *Triumphs*, and that a *Triumph* seems but to be a Military *Procession*, We think it not amiss in speaking of *Processions* to divide them into *Military*, *Civil*, and *Ecclesiastical*: Under the *Military* may best be comprehended *Triumphs*, and the *Transvection* of the *Roman Knights*; under the *Civil*, the pompous *Entries* or *Cavalcades* of *Princes*, into or through any great *City*; and the *Ecclesiastical* are those generally so called, wherein the *Church* proceeds upon a solemn account of *Supplication* or *Thanksgiving*: To all which, in the last place, shall follow the order of the *Grand Procession* of this most Noble *Order*; which in reference to the Degrees of the Persons appearing therein, is composed of a mixture of such as are to be seen in each of the three former.

Triumphs. It is evident enough out of the sacred Story, that *Triumphs* were of ancient time celebrated after the obtaining Victory over Enemies; and the *Triumphal* [i] *Exod. cap. 15.* [k] *Judg. cap. 5.* *Songs* of [i] *Moses*, made upon the destruction of *Pharaoh* and his Armies in the Red Sea, and of [k] *Deborah* and *Barak*, after the discomfiture of *Sisera* and *Jabin*, seem to inform us so much. But a more particular account of a *Triumph*, with [l] *Cap. 20.* the order of *Proceeding*, is recorded in the second Book of the [l] *Chronicles*, where *Jehosaphat* having taken the spoil of the Children of *Ammon* and *Moab*, it is [m] *Ver. 27.* said, that [m] *every man of* Judah *and* Jerusalem *returned, and* Jehosaphat *in the forefront of them, to go again to* Jerusalem *with joy; and they came to* Jerusalem *with Psalteries, and Harps, and Trumpets, unto the House of the Lord.*

Besides the ancient *Jews*, the *Grecians* and *Romans* did oftentimes, upon the gaining of signal Victories, ordain and celebrate *Triumphs*; which led to their *Temples*, where Sacrifices were made, and there the Solemnity terminated.

[n] *Pancir. li. rerum deperd. Cap. de Triumphis.* It is a received opinion, that [n] *Bacchus* first triumphed after his Victory over the *Indians*; and that at *Rome*, *Romulus* was the first, who, at his return to the City, after a Victory, sending his captived Enemies before, himself followed on foot, and after him marched the whole Army in due order.

[o] *Mart. de Guichard de antiq. triumph. Pell. pag. 72.* [p] *Lib. de Vir. illustr. p. 385.* [q] *Mart. de Guichard. pag. 73.* [r] *Lib. 1. cap. 5.* [s] *Lib. 5. de lingua Latina.* [o] But it is thought by some, that there was never any absolute *Triumph* celebrated at *Rome*, till the time of *Tarquinius Priscus*, who triumpht over the *Sabins*, and ancient *Latines*, as [p] *Plinius secundus* relates, and subdued 12 several Nations of the *Tuscii*. And thence first came the [q] *Fasces*, the *Trabeæ*, the *Sellæ curules*, the *Annuli*, the *Phaleræ*, the *Paludamenta*, the *Prætexta*, the *Currus Triumphalis*, drawn with four Horses, the *Togæ pictæ*, the *Tunicæ palmatæ*, and all other Ensigns of Triumph, mentioned by [r] *Lucius Florus*.

As concerning the word, [s] *Varro* affirms that *Triumphare* hath its appellation, for that such of the *Souldiers* as returned with the *Emperor*, all the way as they marched from their very entrance into the *City*, unto the *Capital*, used to cry out unto him in his passage, with a loud voice, *Iò triumphe, Iò.*

This

This [u] *Triumph* was the highest honor the *Roman City* could bestow, and given to a *General* when he had gain'd a Victory, with little loss to his own Army, and great loss to the Enemy: And among the *Roman* Writers [w] *Valerius Maximus* observes, that it was provided by Law, that none should have a *Triumph* granted, but upon the slaughter of 5000 of the Enemy in Battel.

u *Mart. de Guichardo de antiq. triump. Spectaculis, pag.* 21.
w *Lib.* 2. *c.* 3.

These *Triumphs* were either [x] *Triumphi minores*, termed also *Ovations*, or *Majores*, which were perfect and entire *Triumphs*. In *Ovations* (granted upon putting an Enemy to flight without effusion of blood, or obtaining a Victory against an Enemy of mean quality, as Slaves, Pirates, or the like) [y] the *General* either went on foot, or was drawn through the *City* with one Horse only, and conducted to the *Capital* by *Plebeians*, or at most by *Roman Knights*; the *Sacrifice* was only of *Sheep*, and thence called *Ovation*; whereas in a just and compleat *Triumph*, the *General* was drawn in a *Triumphal Chariot* by four White Horses, and conducted into the *Capital* by the whole *Senate* going before him, and the *Sacrifice* was of *Oxen*. Moreover in an *Ovation* the *General* wore a plain [z] purple *Gown* without any Gold or embroidery, and a Garland of *Myrtle*; but in the greater *Triumph* (called properly *Triumphus*) he wore the *Trabea*, or Garment of State, and had his Temples adorned with a Wreath of *Laurel*.

x *M. Guich. de antiq. Triumph. spect. pag.* 24.
y *Perot. in Cornucopiæ. fol.* 74. *col.* 1.
z *Salmuth. in Pancir. lib Rerum deperd. Cap. de Triumph.*

What the order and state of these *Triumphs* were, will partly appear by the description at large of that famous Triumph of *Scipio* the elder, out of *Appianus Alexandrinus*: But for a general description of a *Roman Triumph*, it is best seen from *Onuphrius Panvinius*, who hath most accurately collected it out of [a] *Dionisius Halicarnassæus*, [b] *Valerius Maximus*, [c] *Josephus de bello Judaico*, [d] *Plutarch*, the aforesaid [e] *Appianus Alexandrinus* and others.

a *Lib.* 2. *&* 5.
b *Lib.* 2. *cap.* 8.
c *Lib.* 7. *c.* 24.
d *In vita Pauli Æmilii.*
e *De Bello Lybico.*

And to perpetuate the memory of these glorious shows to posterity, and cause them not only to outlive the triumphal day, but also that Age; The *Romans* in publick places of the City erected *Statues*, *Columes*, and *Arches*; and caused the memorials thereof to be inscribed on *Marbles*, *&c.* We also meet with great variety of emblematical Devices referring hereunto, in the *Roman Coyns*, both of Gold, Silver, and Brass, as will appear out of *Hubertus Goltzius*, *Antonius Augustinus*, *Franciscus Angelonus*, *Octavianus Strado*, *Adolphus Occo*, and divers others, who have illustrated that Subject. Which Custom being revived, hath been often used (especially in this and the last Century) among the *European Princes*; in the former of which [f] *Johannes Jacobus Luckius* affords us variety of Examples, among those which he calls the *Nummi Triumphales*.

f *Sylloge Numismatum, elegantiorum Edit. Argent.* 1620.

And for a description in painting, there is now to be seen in the *Soveraign*'s Gallery at *Hampton Court* in large pieces, the *Triumphs* of *Cæsar*, done with great Art by the famous and admirable Painter *Andrea Montegna*, which are also extant of [g] his own Engraving.

g *Evelins Sculptura, pag.* 52.

But to remember somewhat else, which more particularly sutes with those *Proceedings* of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* of the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, especially when celebrated on *Horseback*; we shall bring hither a prospect of the stately *Transvection* or *Cavalcade* of the *Equestrian Order* among the *Romans*, annually celebrated in *Rome*, on the *Quintilian Ides*, which answers to our 15. day of *July*, concerning which, *Dionysius Halicarnassens* affords this commendation, that [h] *certainly it was a gallant sight, and worthy the greatness of the Empire.*

Transvection of the Roman Knights:
h *Lib* 6 *p.* 351.

This solemn show was first instituted by [i] *Q. Fabius*, that the pomp and glory of the *Equestrian Order*, might thereby be the more fully observed; not for mustering the *Knights* before the *Censors*, who were thereupon to note their defects or neglects; for that was done at another time of the year, namely, on the 18. *Calends* of *October*, and the 18. *Calends* of *December*, as may be seen among *Gruters Inscriptions* in a Marble Table of the [m] *Kalendar* of the *Roman Fasts* published by *Cn. Flavius*, and mentioned by [n] *Pliny*; which Table was, at the time that *Gruter* published his work, in the House of *Cardinal Mapheus*.

i *Liv. Dec.* 1. *lib* 1. *extremo, vide etiam Val. Maxim.*
m *Inscript. Jani Gruteri, p.* 133.
n *Lib.* 33. *c.* 1.

The occasion of its Institution, the foresaid [o] *Dionysius Halicarnasseus* doth refer to the honor of *Castor* and *Pollux*, in memory of a Victory, which the *Romans* had obtained over the *Latines*, neer the Lake *Regilius*, in the 357. year after the

o *Loc. citat.*

the Foundation of the *City*; where those two *Gods* seemed to lead on and assist the *Roman* Army against the *Latines*, and when the Victory was gained vanished out of sight; but immediately appeared to the *Roman Citizens* in the *Forum* at *Rome*, in that very place thereof, where afterwards the *Temple* (dedicated to their Names) was erected, and in the Habit of *Knights* on *Horseback*; who having told the News of the foresaid Victory, forthwith disappeared, and were no more seen.

Now the manner and order of this gallant *Transvection*, is likewise thus related by the said learned Author, the [p] Sacrifice was first performed *by the chief of the Equestrian Order*, which being finished, all the *Knights* who had Horses bestowed on them at the publick charge, (distinguished by *Tribes* and *Centuries* rode in order, as returning from Battel) crowned with *Olive Leaves*, and apparelleled in Purple *Mantles*, embroidered with branches of *Palms*, the Symbol of Victory. The beginning of this solemn show being made from the Temple of *Mars*, erected without the City (others say, from the Temple of *Honor*) and thence (leaving the other parts of the City) they rode through the *Forum*, and passing by the before mentioned Temple of *Castor* and *Pollux*; proceeded to the *Capitol*. They were sometimes not less than 5000 *Knights* in this *Proceeding*; and as an augmentation of their honor, they carried and exhibited to view, whatsoever had been bestowed on them by their Commanders, as the reward of Valour in fight.

p *Dion. Halicar loco cit.*

Turnebus explicating a piece of *Julius Capitolinus in* [q] *Antonini Philosophi vita*, is of opinion, [r] That this gallant *Cavalcade* was led on by an eminent Commander, who was called *Sevir*, whom he there interprets to be the chief of the six *Classes* of *Knights*, in such manner that every *Classis* had his *Sevir*; they relating as we suppose to the six ancient *Decuriæ* of *Knights*, instituted by *Romulus*, *viz.* the *Rhamnenses*, *Tatienses*, and *Luceres*, all three being a little after doubled, and so became six: For the said *Author* having ([t] in another place) mentioned these very six *Decuriæ*, he also saith, *They who commanded them were called Seviri*. Now *Mar. Aur. Antoninus*, whom *Capitolinus* saith, was then created, [t] *Sevir of the Troops of the Roman Knights*, had been before by *Antoninus Pius*, designed *Consul* with himself; whence it is very apparent, that the dignity of *Sevir* was most honorable and eminent, since it was placed upon a *Consul*, and had the command of all the *Roman Cavalry*.

q *Vid. Hist. Aug. Veteres, pag.* 163.
r *Adverf. lib.* 25. *cap.* 18.
t *Lib.* 11. *cap.* 9.
t *Hist. Aug. Scriptores, pag.* 163.

In the year after *Christ* 1578. there was a Marble digg'd up in Saint *Peters Church* at *Rome*, whose Inscription (taken by *Jos. Castalio*) doth relate to such a Commander, and was this.

u *Vide Gruter Inscr. ant. Rom. p.* 456. *Inscr.* 4.
w *Stlitibus judicandis, id est, super lites judicandis.*

[u] C. POMPVSIDIO
FABIO
FRATERNO
X. VIR [w] STL. IVD.
VI. VIR.
EQVITVM. ROMANOR.

Ursinus hath also transmitted to posterity an *Inscription* of one of the *Equestrian Order*, yet but a very young *Knight*; who having received the honor of a publick Horse, he also rode in this famous *Cavalcade* before he was a man; for he lived not beyond the age of 16 years. The Inscribed stone is noted by [x] *Janus Gruterus* to be in a private House at *Montefiasco*.

x { *Inscr. ant. Rom. pag.* 1026. *Inscr.* 4.

[y] DIIS MANIBVS
SEX. GAVI. SEX. F.
PROCVLI.
VIX. AN. XVI.
EQVO PVBLICO
TRANSVECTVS EST.

To

To conclude, this grand Ceremony is mentioned also by *Pliny*, who speaking of the *Olive*, saith, [z] *The* Roman Majesty *did afford great honor to the* Olive, *crowning therewith the* Troops *of the* Knights *in the* Ides *of* July. As also by *Suetonius*, who writing of *Augustus* saith, that * *He frequently reviewed the* Troops *of the* Knights, *reviving the custom of* Transvection *on Horseback*, *after a long interruption.*

[z] *Lib.* 15. *c.* 4.

* *In vita Aug. Cap.* 38.

The *Civil Processions* or *Cavalcades*, are the solemn Entries of Princes, into, or riding through any great *City*, which in all Ages have been set forth, with exceeding state and Pomp; being for the most part solemnized (especially in these latter Ages) at Inaugurations, Interviews, and Marriages of *Emperors*, *Kings*, and great *Estates*: as also at the Entries of *Ambassadours*, and upon such like extraordinary occasions, of which a few Instances.

Cavalcades.

[a] *Alexander* the Great after the taking of *Arbella*, proceeded on towards *Babylon*, and upon his approach to the City, had it surrendred to him in a supplicant manner by *Mazæus*, a person of very great Fame and Eminency among the *Babylonians*; by whose Example many went forth to meet him, amongst whom [b] *Bagaphanes* the Kings Treasurer and Governour of the *Castle*, that he might not come short of *Mazæus* in his respect to *Alexander*, strewed all the way with Flowers and Garlands, and on each side thereof were placed Altars of Silver, which fumed with Frankinsence and all manner of Odors. After him followed divers great *Presents*, droves of Cattel and of Horses, Lyons also and Leopards were brought forth in Coops, after these came the *Chaldeans*, and both the Poets and Artificers of the *Babylonians*, with a sort of Musical Instruments, wherewith they were wont to sing forth the praises of their Kings; the *Chaldeans*, describing the motions of the Stars and the vicissitudes of times; next the *Babylonian* Troops, so richly adorned both Men and Horses, that it inclined rather to Luxury, then Magnificence. Lastly the *King* himself came attended with his Life-Guard, and ordered the multitude of Cittizens to follow after in the Rear of his Foot, entring the City in his Charriot.

[a] *Quinr.* [b] *Curt. Amsterl.* 1650. *lib.* 5. *pag.* 95.

We might here extend our observation to the Entrance of our *Saviour* into *Jerusalem*: at which, [c] the multitude spread their Garments in the way for him to ride on, (a Rite ordinary among the *Jews*, at the Inauguration of a King, as we find the [d] Captains did when *Jehu* was proclaimed King) and they [e] that went before, and that followed after cryed *Hosanna*, that being the solemn form of Acclamations, used by this people, especially [f] in the Feast of *Tabernacles*.

[c] *Matth. c.* 21. *v.* 8.
[d] 2 *Kings c.* 9. *v.* 13.
[e] *Matth.* 21. 1 *vers.* 9.
[f] *Godw. Moses & Aaron, pag.* 134.

How sumptuous and stately the Ceremonies used in this last Age are, to set forth and adorn the *Cavalcades* and *Grand Proceedings* among the *Asiatick Princes* (who very much exceed in this kind of Pomp and Magnificence) may be conceived from that which *Jo. Albert Mandesio* relates, in his [g] Travels into the *Indies*, concerning the King of *Siam*'s annual *Procession* in *October*, both by Land and Water, through his principal City (seated in an *Island* on the River *Menam*) to one of his Chief *Mosqueys*; the greatness whereof deserves particular relation, and is thus set down by him.

[g] *Pag.* 122. [h] *See also Jost Schanten's Descript. thereof*, *an.* 1636.

[h] *In the head of this* Procession *march about* 200. Elephants, *each of them carrying three Armed Men; then come the Musick, consisting of Hoboyes, Tabours and Cimbals; next come about a thousand men compleatly Armed, divided into several Companies that have their Colours and Banners. Next to these follow the* Noblemen *of the Kingdom on Horseback, and amongst them, many with Crowns of Gold upon their heads, each attended with a Train of fourscore or a hundred persons on foot. Betwixt these* Noblemen *and the* Life-Guard, *march two hundred Souldiers,* Japoneses, *all very well appointed, who go immediately before the Horses and Elephants, which are for the Kings* Life-Guard, *their Harness is adorned with Buckles and studs of Gold, set with Diamonds and other precious stones. The* Servants *who bear the Fruits, and other things for the Sacrifice, march before certain* Grandees *of the Kingdom, whereof one bears the* Kings Standard, *the other the* Sword *of* Justice. *These walk on foot immediately before the* King, *who sits mounted on an Elephant in a Chair of Gold. The* Prince *his Son, or some other Prince of the bloud, followeth next after him, and then comes the* Queen *and the*

Kings *other* Women *on Elephants, but not to be seen, as being in certain wooden Closets guilt. The rest of the* Houshold *and six hundred of the* Guard, *follow in the Rear, which by this means consisteth of fifteen or sixteen thousand persons.*

As to their Procession *upon the* River, *the Order following is observed. First, in the head of this Fleet passeth about two hundred* Noblemen, *each in his several Barge, where they sit in a gilt Cabin, and each Barge is rowed by three or fourscore slaves. Then follow four Barges assigned for the* Musick; *and next follow about fifty Barks of State, each having fourscore, or fourscore and ten Rowers, and after these come ten other gilt Barges, in one of which the* King *is seated in a Throne of Gold, attended by divers* Noblemen, *all upon their knees before him, and amongst them, one of the chiefest Grandees who bears his* Standard. *The* Prince *followeth after him in another Barge with his Train, and after him comes the* Queen *and the* Concubines *each in their Barges apart; and lastly, in a great number of other Barges follow the Houshold* Servants *and the* Guards, *so as this* Procession *consists of twenty five or thirty thousand persons.*

Together with this great Ceremony, the ordinary Proceeding of the King of *Japan*, either on Horseback or on Mens shoulders, in a *Palanquin* (related by the said *Mandesto*, as also by *Fr. Caron* in his [i] description of *Japan*) may be fitly remembred. Whether we regard the numerous Train and Attendants, or the manner or order thereof: [k] all of them marching with such gravity and so orderly, that there is not only any one man to be seen out of his Rank, but a man hears not so much as a word spoken; which may well deserve our wonder and admiration.

i *Pag.* 18.

k *Idem, p.*182.

There is in the *Soveraigns* Privy Lodgings at *Whitehall*, the order of the King of *Gulcandale* his Ordinary *Proceeding*, when he goes abroad, set forth in Figures about a foot long, it is of that Countries manner of Painting, and an extraordinary piece of Oriental Rarity, being sent thence to Sir *Martin Noell* Knight, and by him presented to his now Majesty.

But we may not yet take leave of the Grandeur of these *Oriental Princes*, in relation to these pompous shows, before we have referred our Reader to *Conrad Krammer's* description of the magnificent and unparralleld *Proceeding* of the *Deyro*, (who indeed is the true Prince of *Japan*) when he past from his own Court in the City of *Meaco*, to the Emperor of *Japans Palace* in the same City, on the 25. of *Oct.* 1626. which is to be seen at large, [l] Printed in *English* at the end of the foresaid Description of *Japan*; nor may we omit this; That the preparation for the said Emperors usual progress from *Jedo* his present Imperial City, to *Meaco*, (the former Metropolis and as yet the Court of the *Deyro*, (being 125. Dutch Miles) to visit the said *Deyro*, (which happens once in 5. or 7. Years) takes up a [m] whole Year, before the Orders are given out, on what Day, and with what Train every man shall go.

l *Pag.* 109.

m *Ibid. p.*20.

And to draw somewhat nearer *Europe*, the State and Pomp among the *Turks*, however barbarous enough in other things, yet in these Ceremonies are exceeding regular and stately; as may be seen in the *Grand Seigniors Cavalcade* to *Sancta Sophia*, cut in Copper Plates by [n] *Peter van Aelst*, as also in the order of his Ordinary [o] *Cavalcade*, etched by *Anthony Tempest*.

But enough of these. We now come to give some Account of the Gallantry of our *Christian Princes*, in this particular. Among whom the Triumphal [p] Entry of *Maximilian* the First, Emperour of *Germany*, into *Noremburg*, is excellently well design'd, and cut in Wood by *Hans Brosseheamer*.

n *Evelyn's Sculptura, pag.* 84.

o *Penes eund. J. Evelyn.*

p *Evelins Sculptura, pag.* 70.

The Entry of the Emperour *Charles* the Fifth, and Pope *Clement* the Seventh into *Bononia* in *Italy*, *an.* 1530. in Order to his being Crowned King of *Lombardy* there, is [q] graved in 40. Copper Plates with large Figures, excellently well designed, by *Nicholaus Hogenbergus*.

q *In Musæo nostro.*

Jo. August. Pastorius in his [r] *Acta Publica*, hath exactly described the solemn *Cavalcade*, of the present Emperor *Leopold* his Entry into the City of *Francfort* upon the *Mayn*, the 19. of *March* 1658, where the 18. of *July* in the same Year ([s] *non sine difficultate & invidiâ tandem unanimi Octoviratus consensu*) he was Elected Emperor of *Germany*; and the first of *August* following had his

r *Pag.* 271.

s *Jo. Justi Winkelmani Cæsareologia, p.*119.

his Inauguration solemnized there also. The Order of this Gallant show is to be seen cut in brass by *Gasper Merian*, in a thin [t] Folio, Printed at *Francfort* the same Year. [t] *Plate* 14.

In the same *Acta Publica*, are also described at large, the several Entrances into that City, of the Electors of [u] *Mentz*, [w] *Tryers*, [x] *Collen*, the Duke of [y] *Saxony*, Count Palatine of the [z] *Rheyne*, as also the Deputies or Substitutes of the two other Electors [a] *Bavaria* and [b] *Brandenburgh*: and the order of each *Cavalcade* is likewise particularly set forth in Copper Plates, cut by the said *Gasper Merian*, and collected together in the foresaid Book.

[u] *Pag.* 257. [w] *Pag.* 278. [x] *Pag.* 284. [y] *Pag.* 280. [z] *Pag.* 286. [a] *Pag.* 262. [b] *Pag.* 282.

We could here insert the particulars of divers other solemn *Cavalcades*, exhibited upon like occasions, but we are unwilling to dwell longer upon them, since many of them are to be met with.

Here in *England* it hath been the ancient usage for our *Kings* and *Queens*, the day before their Coronation, to ride from the *Tower* through the City of *London*, in a most noble and magnificent Equipage, they being at those times attended on by all the Nobility, Officers of the Houshold, and a gallant and splendid Train.

Among these, *Proceedings*, the order and pomp of that magnificent and numerous *Cavalcade* of the present *Soveraign*, from the *Tower* to *Whitehall*, the day before his most happy Inauguration is worthy observing, in that his *Majesties Entertainments* described by Mr. *Ogilby*, together with the sumptuous Arches which then adorned the Streets; and how well that ingenious Artist Mr. *Wenceslaus Hollar* hath merited both in designing and etching the same, is obvious to every ingenious Eye.

Besides these, relating to the Inauguration of Princes, many other solemn and particular occasions have been honored with sumptuous *Cavalcades*; such was that of our King *Henry* the Eighth, when he entred *Boulogne*, and is to be seen in the *Soveraign's Gallery* in *Whitehall*, being painted by a Disciple of *Hans Holben*.

Such was that brave *Cavalcade* of the late Duke of *Florence*, celebrated at his Nuptials; which, together with the Scenes and other Representations, were etched by the most excellent *James Callot*, an Artist of incomparable skill and fancy in things of that kind.

So also that of *Lewis* the Fourteenth, the *French* King, with his Queen *Maria Theresa* of *Austria*, into *Paris*, the 26. of *August* 1660. shortly after their marriage, which was as full of splendor and magnificence as could be devised. But among these, and indeed above all, none ought more deservedly to be celebrated, than that which passed through *London* upon the 29. of *May* 1660. a day since made venerable amongst us to posterity, upon the safe and most happy return of the present *Soveraign*, to his Crown and Kingdom, to the unconceivable joy of all his loyal Subjects.

In the last place, touching those *Cavalcades* made at the reception of *Ambassadors*, we have met with two (and those very solemn ones) described at large in the foresaid [c] *Acta publica* of *J. A. Pastorius*, namely the entrance of the *French* and *Spanish Ambassadors* into *Francfort*, that, upon the 19. of *August* 1657. this, upon the 24. of *March* 1658. when the Election was to be made of the present Emperor; both which are likewise cut in Copper Plates, by the before mentioned *Gasper Merian*. [c] *Pag.* 260. & 263.

Adam Olearius in his Voyages and Travels of the *Ambassadors* from the Duke of *Holstein* to the great Duke of *Muscovy*, as also to the King of *Persia*, makes mention of such *Cavalcades*, they being ordered according to the manner of those Countries with very great Ceremony; Namely that of the [d] *Turkish Ambassadors* entrance into *Musco* 17. *Sept. an.* 1634. he being met with 16000 Horse, besides the persons who made up the *Cavalcade*. Likewise that of the Duke of [e] *Holstein's Ambassadors* entry into the same City 14. *Aug.* immediately before-going. As also the entrance of the same Duke's *Ambassador* into [f] *Ispahan* in *Persia*, the 2. of *Aug.* 1637. [d] *Pag.* 21. [e] *Ibid. p.* 13. [f] *Pag.* 270.

To conclude, the *Cavalcade* of the *Polish Ambassador* upon his Reception into *Rome an.* 1633. was a most magnificent Ceremony; it being made publick in *Aqua Fortis*, by the incomparable hand of *Stephen della Bella* a *Florentine*. And

And now to come within the Verge of the *Order* of the *Garter*, we shall here present to the *Readers* view, some few, yet stately *Cavalcades*, made upon the *Soveraigns* entrances, not only into *Windesor Castle*, but other places upon account of its Grand Solemnities, and of which we have happily met with these following Memorials.

The 20. Year of King *Henry* the Seventh, the Feast of St. *George* was celebrated at *Baynards Castle* in *London*; and the *Soveraign* (being at the *Tower* on the *Eve*) Proceeded thence on Horseback to St. *Paul's* Church to *Vespers*, in the following Order.

g *Ex ipso Autographo.*

g First, all the Noblemen aftir their Estates and Degrees, then the Officers of Armes next before the Knyghts of the Ordre, then the Knyghts of the Ordre, ryding in theyr Gownes of the Garter only, with their Collers without Mantells, wyrch Lyvery is of crymosin velvet lyned with whyte, next following them the Byshopp of Wincheestre Prelate of the Ordre, then the Ambassadors, then the Secretary and Aulmoner, then Gartier Kyng of Armes of the Ordre, the Maior of London beryng the Mace rode on the left hand of the Kyngs Cote, then the Sword borne by

then the Kyng, Soverain of the Ordre, then followed the Prince, and after certaine Nobles, and then the Garde all on foote, the Aldermen and all the Craftys of London standyng in theyr Lyveries in places accustomed. And when the Kyng came to the West Dore of Powles he did on his Mantell, and all the Knyghts did on theyrs, and so entryd the Church, where somewhat within the Church, there was ready the Byshopp which dyd the Divine Service, with the Deane and Chanons, &c. where they sensed and receyved the Kyng as accustomed; and from thens proceeded to the Queere, and entred their Stails, and there herd Evensonge; and aftir Evensonge, the Kyng with the odyr Knyghts rode to Baynards Castle his Logging, wher hys Hyghnes remayned that nyght.

h } *Ex alio* i } *Autogr.*

The h 16. of *April* in the following Year, the *Soveraign* began his Pilgrimage to the Shrine of the Blessed *Lady* of *Walsingham*, and took *Cambridge* in his way thither, where he arrived the i 22 of the same Month, and was in this manner received.

k *Ibid.*

k First, the Maior with hys Brederen rode to meet the Kyng, two or three myle out of the Towne; Also Mr. Molory then Shereff of the Shire bore his rodd, and gave hys attendance, and as he approached nere the Unyversyte, within a quarter of a mile, ther stode, first, all the four Ordres of Freres, and aftir odir Religious, and the King on horsbacke kyssed the Crosse of everyche of the Religious, and then ther stode all along, all the Graduatts, aftir their Degrees, in all their Habitts, and at the end of them was the Unyversyte Cross, wher was a Forme and a Cushin, &c. as accustomed, where the Kyng dyd alight, and there the Byshopp of Rochestre Doctor------ then beyng Chauncellor of the Unyversyte, accompanied with odir Doctors, sensyd &c. the Kyng, and aftir made a litle Proposition, and welcomed hym; and then the Kyng took hys horse agayn, and rood by the Blackfriers, thorowghe the Towne, to the Queens Colledge, wher hys Grace was at that tyme lodgged, and ther rested the space of a Houre, and then did on hys Gowne and Mantell of the Gartier, and all odir Knyghts of the Ordre there beyng present, gave their attendance in the Habit of the Ordre, as appertayneth, and roode from the Kyngs Logginge to the Chappell of the Kyngs Colledge, wyrch was for the same cause ready appointed with Scochins &c. as ys yerely accustomed. The Byshopp of Rochestre, beyng there Chauncellor, did the Divine Service, both the Even, the Day, both at Mattens, &c. and sang the Mass of Requiem on the Morrow.

With

With these, we shall remember the same *Soveraigns* noble reception of *Phillip* King of *Castile* at *Windesor*, on *Saturday* the 31. of *January*, next ensuing the foresaid *Feast*, where he was Installed *Knight* of this most noble *Order*, the 5. of *February* following; which we find thus reported.

[1] His Highnes (King *Henry* the Seventh) having notice of the King of Castile's approach, rode towards him a mile or two out of Windesor, and there in an Arable Field (where the King of Castile by the Kings pleasure tarried his comeing) met with him. And when the Kings Compaignie approched neer to the said King of Castyll, some stode on oon part, and summe on the odir part, and soo made a lanne, that the two Kyngs myght mete togeder; and when the King of Castyll perceyved the King, he toke of his hat, and in like manner the King toke off his, and with a loving and glad countenance, eberych salued and embraced odir. The King with many odir good wordys welcomed him to his realme, and the King of Castyll with humble and loving wordys smyling, thanked the King of the great honours that he did him, and alsoo for the grete pleesirs and kyndnes, that the King had shewed and doon unto him, sython his arrivall, and at divers tymes before; and the King toke the King of Castyll on his left hand, and in good ordonance Rode towards the said Castyl of Windsor, the Officers of Armes beryng theyr Cots of Armes, and the Kings Trumpetts blew at the metyng, and soo by the way, &c. the Earle of Derby barre the Sword right before the King. Hit is to be noted, that there was many Noble men berely well appointed, both in Cloth of Gold and Goldsmyth werke, as my Lord Marquis, therle of Kent, therll of Derby, the Lord Henry Stafford, with many and divers odir Noble and Gentlemen, which all for the most part, were in Velvet, and oder silkes, right honorably apparelled; and when the Kings entred the furst yate of the Castyll, the Wynstrells and Shackburth play'd, and when they approached neere the place where they alighted, the King of Castyll tarryed, and wold have alighted before the King, but the King would not suffer him, but tooke hym forth with him, and soo lighted booth at oons, the King of Castyll summwhat got before the King, and in like Order, the Lords and odir Noble men, went before the Kings through the Medar Galarie towards the Hall, and as the King perceyved that the King of Castyl's hatt was off, he toke of his hatt, and would not doe hit on againe, till the King of Castyl was almost ready to doo on his; and soo went up the Stayres, and passed through the upper Galarie to the Kings grete Chamber, which was richly hanged with Cloth of Arras, and a great riche Bed in the same Chamber, where remayned the Knights and Esquires, and from thence to the 2d. Chamber which was alsoo richly hanged, where remained Barons and * Baronetts and from thence to the 3d Chamber, which was hanged with a very rich Arras, in the which there was a Cloth of Estate, and as rich a Bed as I have seen, where remained the Bishopps, Erlls and Officers that attended upon him; and from thence would have conveyed the King of Castill to the 4th Chamber, which was all hangen with rich Cloth of Gold, the bordure abode of Cremosin Velvett, and brodered upon the Kings Armes, with other the Kings devyces, as Roses, Portecolys &c. but the King of Castill excused hym, and said, that the King should not take the paine to conboye him to his Logging, then the King shewed him, that all that he had passed through was and should be his Logging, and that the King thowght that place honoured by his comyng, and called hym Sonne, and sayd that he was as welcome unto him, as though he had been his owne Naturall Sonne, and that his comyng was not only agreeable and joyfull unto him, but also to all his Subjects, and that that Rome, and all his Servants should be at the Commandement of the said King of Castill, and that he should thinke that he were come to his own Faders House, and soo desired him to goo at his pleesir to Dyner, or to shift hym: but when the King of Castill perceyved, that that greate Logginge was for hym, he thanked the King bare headed, for he had taken off his Hood a little before, and sayd, that he was sorry that the King

[1] MS. penes W. le N. Cl. p. 288. vide Lib. N. p. 182.

* Sic.

King had taken too much labour and payne for him, and for any words or thing that the King might doe, he wold conboye the King to his Lodging, and soo he did; and after the King had showed hym his Chamber, and would he should take no further paine, the King would somewhat have reconboyed him, but the King of Castill would not suffer hitt, and soo they enter salued the one the odir and departed.

Another most magnificent *Cavalcade*, was that of King *Henry* the Eighth, and the *Knights-Companions* into *Windesor*, upon the 27. of *May*, in the 11. year of his Reign, being the day preceding the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast* (during which he begun his Reformation of the *Statutes* of the *Order*) which was ordered as followeth.

o *MS. in Offic. Armor.* [*M.17*] *fol.* 25.

o On the 27. day of May being Friday, the King removed from Richemont towards his Castle of Windesor, and appointed them about one a Clock at Afternoon the same Friday, that all Noblemen, and oder which should wayte upon his Grace, should be ready between Richemont and Honslowe to attend upon him, and in consideration of a scarcyte and straitnes of Lodgings, as well as in avoyding and eschewing of the corrupt air, every Nobleman was taxed and rated to a certain number of Horse, that is to say, every Duke at 60 Horses, a Marquess at 50 Horses, every Earl at 40 Horses, every Baron at 30 Horses, every Knight of the Garter Batchellor at 20 Horses, and no odre Knight or Nobleman to have above 16 Horses, with their Carriages and all. And the King, thus right nobly companyed, rode to Colebroke, and at the Sign of the Katherines Wheel the King took his Courser, and his Henchmen richly apparelled followed, and also the Kings Horse of State led, Gartier King of Arms wore his Coat of Arms, the Lord Richard Fox Bysshop of Winchester and Prelate of the Order, with many odre great Estates, gave their attendance upon his Highnes. The Queen and the Ladies, and their Compaignies stood in the feild at the Towns end, besides the high way towards Windesor, to see the Kings noble Compagnie pass by, and then the Queen rode to the Ferry next way to the Castle. The King rode by Slow, and so to Eton Colledge, where all they of the Colledge stood along, in manner of Procession, receiving his Grace after their custom.

p *MS.*

p The King entred Windesor with his great Horses, that is to say nine Coursers with nine Children of Honor upon them, and the Master of the Kings Horses upon another great Coursers back, following them, having and leading the Kings Horse of Estate in his hand, that is to say, a rich Courser with a rich Saddle, and trapped and garnished following the King, and so entred the Castle.

q *Ex Lib. prad. M. fol.* 26.

q At the Castle Gate, the Ministers of the Colledge receibed the King with Procession, and the King and Knights of the Ordre, at the Church Dore, took their Mantles, and entred the Quere, and stood before their Stalls, till the Soveraign had Offred and retorned to his Stall; then every Knight offered according to his, as by the Statute is ordained, and entred their Stallys, which was a long Ceremony or ever they had all offered, because of the great number of Knights that then was present, which were 19 in number besides the Soveraign.

r *MS.*

r The Offring Doon, the Soveraign and all the foresaid Knights of the Ordre, (putting of their Mantles at the Church Dore) with the Prelate and ore Officers of the Ordre, as the Register, King of Armes, and Huishier of the Ordre, called the Black Rodd, borne by Sir William Compton, according to his Office of Hueshier; all thes rode before the King from the Colledge, unto the Quadrate of the Castle, and so conbeyed his Highnes to his Lodging.

s *MS.*

s The King had attendant on him, all his Officers of Armes, wearing their Coats of Armes; and all his Trumpetts, which blew the Entry of the King, all the tyme of the said Entry. The Lord Mountague, Henry Poole, bare the Sword

Sword before the King, and Garter King of Armes rode next before the Sword, and Sir William Compton rode on his left hand, bearing the Black Rodd.

[t] Another Cavalcade offers it selfe here, namely that of King Philip and Queene Mary, who, after the Marriage solemnized betweene them at Winchester the 15. of July 1554. arrived at Windesor the 3. of Aug. following, where, at the nether end of Pescod-street, they were met by the Major of Windesor and his Brethren, and thence (the Trumpets sounding) they Proceeded with the Officers of Arms before them, into the Castle, till they arrived at the West door of the Chapell, where was prepared a Form with Carpets and Cushons, and at their entry, the Bishop of Winchester censed them. [t] *MS. p. 10. & 11.*

The Queene having received the Mantle of the Order, with a reverential kiss from the Earl of Derby and Penbroke (to whom it had bẽn presented by the Register of the Order) put it upon the King (assisted by the said Earles) the Earls of Arundell and Penbroke, receiving the Collar of the Order from Garter, presented it to the Queene (with the like Ceremony as was the Mantle) who put it about the Kings Neck.

Then all the Knights Companions put on their Mantles, within the Chapell Dore, and Proceeded into the Choire, and stood before their Stalls according to ancient Order. Then the Queene went into her Stall, taking the King by the Hand, and setting him in the same Stall with her, and after a little space, they both descended and Proceeded up to the high Altar (the Queene keeping the right hand) and there Offred; after which, they returned to their Stall, where they reposed themselves, while all the Knights Companions present did Offer, according to their Degree, and had taken their Stalls according to their ancient Custome. Then was Te Deum, and de Profundis sung, which being finished, they came all downe from their Stalls, and Proceeded to the Chapter House Dore, where the King, and all the Knights Companions put off their Mantles; and imediately going out of the Chapell, they tooke their Horses at the Chapell Dore, and Proceeded in Order, up to the Castle, where they reposed themselves that night.

In the last place, we may properly add the duty of the *Colledge* of the royal Chappel of St. *George*, touching their *Reception* of the *Soveraign*, upon special occasions; to wit, the manner to be observed by them in their *Proceeding*, to meet the *Soveraign* of the *Order*, at his first coming thither in his royal State, or in his return after some great Victory, or extraordinary Action performed, or some Foreign or unwonted Atchievement; according to the most decent manner there observed, by the most invincible Prince King *Henry* the Fifth, in the 9. year of his Reign: at which time he ordained, that this his *Ceremonial* should be firmly observed for ever, in the like cases. The same in [u] effect is also appointed by King *Henry* the Eighth, only the direction is put into other words, and where the title of *Custos* is in the former Precedent used, in the latter, that of the *Dean* is inserted instead thereof, and is as followeth. [u] *Lib. N. p. 307.*

[w] *In the first place, a Form or Bench decently adorned, being placed after the usual manner, in the midst between the Chappel of the* Colledge *and the uttermost gate of the* Castle, *the* Custos *and* Canons *are there to meet with all the* Officers *of the* Colledge, *each in their proper order and Habits, having a handsom* Cross *carried before them, with two* Torch-bearers, *and two* Censers. *The* Register *of the* Order *bearing the Kings* Mantle, *is to present it to his Majesty, who being therewith invested by the* Custos, *assisted by the senior* Canon, *the* King *is to be censed five times, and then taking the* Cross *to kiss, from the hand of the* Custos, *or some one of the more eminent* Prelates *then present, he is to be conducted, in way of* Procession, *to the* Chappel, *the* Knights-Companions *present vested with their* Mantles, *going orderly immediately before the* King, *until he hath arrived at the* Faldstool *before the high* Altar, *for that purpose adorned, and there kneeling, till the end of the* Responsory, *to be sung by the* Choire, *at his arrival, by appointment of the* Præcentor, *to wit,* Honor Virtus, *or some such like, answerable to the Affair in hand;* [w] Regist. Char. tac. fol. 9. b.

 with

with a Prayer *also correspondant. And then kissing the venerable part of the* Cross *of our* Lord, *and the* Heart *of St.* George, *he is to offer, and then to betake himself to his Stall, and there to sit, till the* Knights *of the* Order *have also offered, each in their turns, and placed themselves again in their Stalls, and until the* Anthem De Profundis *hath been sung by the* Canons, *with the accustomed* Prayers; *then the* Knights-Companions *are to descend from their Stalls into the* Choire, *each of them bowing himself towards the* Altar, *every time they so come down, and thence proceed through the middle of the* Choire,, *unto the place where the* Chapter *is to be celebrated, at the hour of* Tierce, *the* Soveraign *of the* Order *following in the last place, as in all other* Processions, *and consequently in his absence, his* Deputy *doing the same. These things thus performed, they are to get up on Horseback, and conduct the* Soveraign *into the place appointed by the* Statutes; *and the* Proceeding *being finished, the Bells are to ring at convenient seasons.*

Ecclesiastical Processions.

As touching *Ecclesiastical Processions*, they are of great antiquity in the Christian *Church*; some are ordinary and stative, other extraordinary or indictive.

x *Hom.* 28 & *Serm. ad Ascen. Dom.*
y *Serm* 172. & 173.
z *Lib.* 7. *Hist. Eccl. cap.* 10.
a *Ruffinus li* 2. *c.* 5. *Socrat. l.* 3. *c.* 19. *Theod. li.* 3. *cap* 9.

The *Ordinary*, are those celebrated on *Ascension-day*, mentioned by [x] St. *Chrisostom*, and on the *Purification*, by [y] St. *Austin*, *Rabanus*, St. *Bernard*, and divers others. The *Extraordinary* are commanded and appointed by authority on several occasions; such was that which [z] *Sozimus* makes mention of, at the translation of the Reliques of St. *Miletus*. So also that of [a] the *Christians* of *Antioch* (when *Julian* the *Apostate* commanded the Coffin of St. *Babilas* to be removed) who went a *Procession* with their Women and Children, rejoicing and singing *Davids Psalms*, and removed the Reliques of St. *Babylas*, from *Daphney* to *Antioch*.

b *Collect Tho.*
c *Wittbesley*
d *Mil Garter genes W. le Neve Cl.p.*3.

A like *Procession* do we find celebrated, within the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, on [b] *Wednesday* in *Easter* week, being the 27. of *March* 1504. at *Greenwich*, upon reception of that noble Relique the [c] *right Leg* of St. *George*, sent to King *Henry* the Seventh, then *Soveraign*, from the Cardinal of *Rowen* being *Legat*, by a Chaplain of his own, an *Augustine* and Abbot of ---------- by *Meaux*; which was most solemnly ordered in the following manner.

[d] "*First, as the* Oratour *of the* Legat *was landed, which landed before the* "*Fryers yat of* Greenwiche, *he did on a surplis and a cope, holding St.* George's "Leg *in his hand, which was goodly garnished in Silver, like a Knights Leg arm-*"*ed with a gilt Spor, &c. and immediately upon his arrival, there went to meet* "*the said Relique, first the* Kings Chappel, *all in Copis, with Cross &c. and on ove-*"*ry side of the* Chappel, *were divers* Yoemen *of the* Garde *in their beten Cotys of* "*Goldsmith work, beryng certain Torches brenning, then the Bishop of* Chestre *in* "Pontificalibus, *the* Dean *on his left hand, and on every side of them certain of* "*the Officers of* Arms, *then followed the* Kings *of Arms, and next them the* Knights "*of the* Order, *beryng their Mantle and Collers of the Ordre, that is to say, the* "*Marquiss of* Dorset, *the Erll of* Surrey, *the Erll of* Shrewysbyry, *the Erll of* Es-"sex, *the Lord* Dawbeny *the Kings Chamberlaine, the Lord* Herbert, *Sir* Thomas "Lovell *Treasurer, and Sir* Rich. Gilford *Controller of the Houshold, and next* "*the* Knights *of the* Order, *followed the odir* Lords *and* Noblemen, *after their* "*Estates and Degrees in gret nombre; and when the Bishop approched neer the Le-*"*gats* Oratour, *which was assisted by two Doctours, beyng Chappellyns to the* King. "*The Bishop censed the* Relique, *and then the Legats* Oratour, *beryng the said Saint* "George's Leg, *went between the* Bishop *and the* Dean, *and returned in licke or-*"*dre till they came to the Kings* Chappel, *where the* Leg *was set on the high Aul-*"*tre, and then the Quire sange* O George, *&c. that doon the* Knights *and* Officers "*went up into the Galery, and there did off their Mantles, and the* Officers *of* Arms "*their Cotys of Arms, and from thence all the* Noblemen *went into the Kings grete* "*Chambre, to attend upon his Grace, which immediately went to* Mass, *and at Of-*"*fering time his Highness kissed and offered the* Leg, *and so the second Relique re-*"*mained in the Kings* Chappel; *and after* Mass *the King returned to his gret Cham-*"*bre where he dyned,* &c. *with Gods blessing and Saint* George.

Fag. 4.

Again,

Again, of *Processions* some are called [e] *Lugubres*, *i. e.* mournful; which seems to us to be properly termed *Supplications*, being to implore some help, or to avert some evil impending, wherein *Letanies* were also used, as that of *Theodosius* the younger, who instituted a *Letany* to supplicate for fair weather, and a mild temper of the Air; wherein, as [f] *Nicephorus* saith, the Supplicants went in *Procession* with Hymns and Adorations, *Theodosius* himself going before them in a mean Habit, singing of *Psalms*; and thereupon the face of the Heavens changed, the troubled Air grew calm and serene, and plenty of all things ensued; and whilst the *Letany* in our *Book* of *Common-Prayer* was used, the *Grand Procession* of the *Order* might well be cast among the *Lugubres*, and in some places of the [g] *Blue Book* we see it is so called; being only upon this occasion sung walking; [h] a gesture more anciently used, than the posture of kneeling or standing.

e *Synod. August. cap.* 20. *&* *cap.* 23.

f *Lib.*14.*cap* 2.

g *An.*28 *&* 30. *Eliz. &* 14. *Jac. R.*

h *See Dr. Taylor's Preface to his Collection of Officer.*

Others are called *Letæ*, *i. e.* joyful; which are to give thanks for blessings received: And such is the nature of the *Hymn*, appointed (by the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* command) to be sung in the *Grand Procession* of the *Order*, *an.* 15. *Car.* 2. instead of the *Letany*, and since continued.

Having immediately before delivered somewhat of *Proceedings*, *Military*, *Civil*, and *Ecclesiastical*; we shall now pass on to the *Grand Procession* of this most Noble *Order* it self, which consists of persons *Military*, *Civil*, and *Ecclesiastical*: The *Military* are the *Soveraign*, the *Knights-Companions*, and *Alms-Knights*; the *Civil* are the *Officers* of the *Order*, *Officers* of *Arms*, and other *Attendants*; and lastly, the *Ecclesiastical* are the *Prebends* of the *Colledge*, the *Choire-men* and *Choristers*. And in reference to this magnificent Solemnity (whether it fell out to be celebrated at *Windesor*, or at any other place, where the *Soveraign* kept his Court) we are to consider, the (1.) *Time*, when this great Ceremony took its beginning; next, the proper (2.) *Place* or *Processional way*; then the (3.) *Order* and *Manner* of the Solemnity; and lastly, the (4.) *Pomp* and *State* thereof.

1. The time when the Grand Procession begins.

The *Grand Procession* hath been always celebrated, in the morning of the *Feast* day of St. *George*, or upon such other day, as the *Soveraign* hath appointed to hold the same by *Prorogation*; but as to the instant of time when it began, we find it divers and uncertain; but those variations make no very great difference, having been ordered and appointed with considerations had to conveniency, and at such a part of the *Church Service*, as was conceived most proper, and generally after the end of the last *Collect*, appointed for the morning, in our Book of *Common-Prayer*, immediately before the *Letany*. Nevertheless *an.* 6. *Eliz.* the *Feast* being then held at *Windesor*, we find it began [g] presently after the *Te Deum* was sung, and *an.* 20. of the said Queens Reign (at *Greenwich*) [h] after the reading of the second *Lesson*. Again *an.* 22. *Jac. R.* it is said to begin [i] when the *second Morning Service* was celebrating, and almost half done. And to come neerer our times, the Grand *Procession* set forward *an.* 8. *Car.* 1. when [k] the *first Service* was finished, and *an.* 17. *Car.* 1. [l] after the *Sermon*. But at the *Grand Feast* solemnized at *Windesor* in the 13. year of the present *Soveraign*, and since, it took beginning at the most usual and accustomed time, *viz.* when the *Prelate* (then officiating at the *Altar*) came to that part of the *Common Prayer* where the *Letany* was next to begin. Who there making a pause, was conducted from the *Altar* by the *Serjeant* of the *Vestry*, down to his Seat.

g *MS. fol. pen. W.D.N.f.*15.*a.*

h *MS.pen.G.O. T pag.* 114.

i *Lib. R. p.* 20.

k *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

l *Palmers Journ. p.* 40.

2. The Processional way.

We come next to the second consideration, which is the compass of the *Proceeding*, or the *Processional way*; and that we observe, not to have been always one and the same at *Windesor*; for sometimes we find it confin'd within the walls of St. *George's Chappel*, but at other times enlarged through the *lower Court* of the *Castle* (in divers places of the *Registers* called also the *Church-yard*) a few memorials in both cases are left unto us, though none of very ancient date: as *An.* 15. *Jac. R.* [o] *The* Soveraign *and whole assembly of the* Knights-Companions, *going out at the* West door (of the Chappel) *in remarkable pomp and order, proceeded about the bounds of the* Church-yard; that is, (as is elsewhere of the same *Procession* more particularly expreſt) [p] *from the* Choire *through the* middle Ile (or Nave of the Chappel) *out at the* West door, *down to the* Castle Gate, *so through*

o *Lib.C.p.*190.

p *MS. penes B. W. G.*

the passage into the Cloyster, *and by the* Chapter-house door *again into the* Choire. To which purpose, doth the [q] *Red Book* briefly describe the passage of the *Grand Procession an.* 4. *Car.* 1. and yet more particularly, the *Grand Procession* (celebrated at *Windesor* in the 15. year of the present *Soveraign's* Reign) passed down the *Middle Ile* of the *Chappel*, through the *West door*, and so along the Lower Ward of the *Castle*, neer unto the *Castle Gate*; from whence ascending towards the *Alms-Knights* old *Lodgings*, unto, and through the passage, between the East end of the *Chappel*, and the *Tomb-house*, into the *Cloyster*, it entred into the *Chappel*, by the door neer the *Chapter-house*, and from thence proceeding down the *North Isle* unto the *West door*, and up through the aforesaid *Middle Ile*, it re-entred the *Choire*.

q Pag. 41.

But when the *Soveraign* hath pleased to shorten this great Ceremony, which, either through his [r] indisposition of health (as *an.* 22. *Jac. R.* when being so extreamly taken with the Gout, that he was [s] carried, during the *Grand Procession*, in a Chair) or, upon other like occasion he has sometimes done, then the *Grand Proceeding* hath passed out at the *East door* of the *Chappel*, and going through part of the *Church-yard*, hath entred the *Chappel* again at the *South door*, and so into the *Choire*; or else [t] through the *South door*, and returning by the *Cloyster*, at the East end of the *Chappel*, hath passed thence to the *West door*, then up the *Nave*, and so ascended again into the *Choire*, as *an.* 6. of the same King.

r } Lib. R. p. 20.
t Lib R p.62.

Moreover, upon foulness of Weather, the *Grand Procession* hath been celebrated within the coverture of the *Chappel*, as [u] *an.* 1. *Car.* 1. But more fully for the same cause (abundance of Rain) doth the *Register* observe, that *an.* 9. *Car.* 1. it [w] pass'd from the *Choire* to the *West door* of the *Chappel*, whence turning to the left, it proceeded through the *South Ile*, and coming about by the *East door*, descended at length by the *North Ile* again to the *West door*, and thence through the *Nave* of the *Chappel* it returned into the *Choire*.

u MS penes Edw. Fauconbridge gen.
w Lib. R. pag. 85.

And this [x] *Processional way* was in like necessity made use of, both by the Duke of *Norfolk*, the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* for the *Feast* holden *an.* [y] 5. *Eliz.* as also by the present *Soveraign*, *an.* [z] 13. *Car.* 2.

x } Ex Collect.
y } Jo. Vincent. gen.
z Lib. Carol. pag. 29.

And because it is necessary to know, which is the way where the *Grand Procession* hath usually passed, in other places honored with the celebration of the *Feast* of St. *George*, aswell as the Castle of *Windesor*, it will be requisite here to describe the same, and set them down; and first we shall shew how it lies at *Whitehall*, the whole passage having been (both [a] formerly and of [b] late) strewed with Rushes upon this occasion.

a MS. penes G. O. T. p. 113. & 123.
b Collect. W. le N. Cl.

Here, the *Grand Procession* sets forth from the [c] middle of the *Choire* (as in all other places) and so on, to the outward *Chappel door*, thence through the *Hall*, and the left entrance of the *Skreen* towards the *Thames*, then to the *Hall Porch*, and so along on the right hand of the *great Court* (sometimes called the *Utter*, or *outwardmost Court* of the *Palace*, as *an.* [d] 2. 3. 5. 7. and 26. *Eliz.* and [e] 10. & 11. *Car.* 1.) towards, and beyond the *Signet Office*, then turning on the left hand towards the *Court Gate*, and yet on the left hand (on that side of the Court which formerly lay towards the *Terrace*, but now neer the *covered Walk*) it passeth in at the *Hall Porch*, and enters the *Hall* at the right entrance of the *Skreen*, and thence into the old *Chappel*, and so into the *New*.

c MS. penes W. D. N.
d MS. penes G. O. T. loco cit. vide etiam Collect. R. C. Cl.
e Lib. R. p 94. & 107.

Where note, that in all solemn *Processions*, where the return is to the same place, the regular turning is on the left, not right hand; and this the present *Soveraign* well understood, when at the *Grand Feast* held at *Whitehall*, *an.* 19. *Car* 2. the *Foot Guards* having made a Lane on the left hand of the great *Court*, along by the *covered walk*, for the *Proceeding* to pass through, and a great part of the *Proceeding* had gone that way, so soon as the *Soveraign* came to the steps descending into the *Court*, (for by reason the *Hall* was shut up, being imployed for Masks and Scenes, the *Proceeding* passed from the *Chappel* up Stairs into the *Guard-Chamber*, and so into the *Court*) He discovering the Error, caused all to come back, and proceed on the right hand of the *Court*, towards the *Hall Porch* and *Signet Office*, and make their return upon the left hand, according to the right rule of turnings in solemn *Proceedings*.

At

At *Greenwich* we find the *Grand Processional way an.* 20. *Eliz.* [f] led out of the *Chappel*, through the *Hall*, beneath the Skreen, and thence going round about the 2*d. Court*, came in at the *South Door*, in the upper end of the *Hall*, and so along the *Hall* again into the *Chappel*.

[f] *MS. penes W. D. N.*

And when the *Feast* was celebrated at the City of *York an.* 17 *Car.* 1. The [g] *Grand Proceeding* passed out of the *Choire*, and marched round the inside of the *Church* only, and then returned back into the *Choire*, as it is usually observed at *Windesor*, in rainy weather. Once, *viz. an.* 20 *H.* 7. the *Grand Procession* was solemnized in St. *Pauls Church London*, of which the *Black Book* of the *Order* gives but this short account. [h] The most Illustrious *Soveraign* of the *Garter* solemnly made his *Procession* in St. *Pauls Church London*. But [i] an old memorial calls this the *Grand Procession*, and notes it to pass about the *Church* as the Custom was, [k] to which solemnity there flockt as great a multitude of People, as had been seen in that *Church*, at any time before.

[g] *Palmers Journ. pag.* 40

[h] *Pag.* 177.

[i] [k] *Ex ipso Autogr.*

Lastly, The way through which the *Grand Procession* passeth, (wheresoever Celebrated) is fenced in by the *Yeomen* of the *Guard*, and the *Knights-Companions Attendants* and *Servants*, who standing on both sides, make a spatious Lane for it to pass through, and keep off the Crowd, from pressing upon it.

The third consideration relating to the *Grand Procession*, is the *Order* and *Manner* thereof; and herein (as to particulars) the more ancient times afford us very little light. Nevertheless, that the same hath been Celebrated (even from the *Institution* of the *Order*) as part of those Ceremonies used to set forth the solemnity of St. *Georges Feast*, we have collective Evidence enough; and that, not only at *Windesor*, but other places, where the *Anniversary* of St. *George* hath been kept and observed.

3. The Order in Proceeding.

To proceed then; What the *Order* of this *Ceremony* anciently was, may be collected from that which an old *Relator* saith (where he sets down the order of the solemn *Procession* made the [l] 29. of *May*, *an.* 5 *H.* 8.) namely, that it was Ordered [m] *as of old time accustomed*. Now the *Proceeding* he speaks of, was marshalled in this manner.

[l] [m] [n] *Ex Lib. M. 17. in Offic. Armor. pag.* 27.

[n] First went the *Alms-Knights*, two and two on either side the *Choire*, then the *Officers* of *Armes*, next after whom, came the *Knights-Companions*, after them the *Officers* of the *Order*, and then went the *Prelate* of the *Order*, bearing the *Heart* of St. *George*, under a Canopy honorably assisted, four *Noblemen* at the Corners bearing each a Torch, and last of all the *Soveraign*.

And though here is no mention made of any *Ecclesiasticks* that joined in this *Proceeding*, yet if we consider, that throughout this *Grand Ceremony*, some part of the Divine Office of the *Church* was Sung (which until of late was either the *Letany*, or *Te Deum*,) it cannot be supposed, that the *Chaplains* and *Priests* were left out.

And to cleer this doubt, we have happily met with another Old *Observator*, who informs us, That the [o] *Priests* not only went in the *Grand Procession*, but had a place assigned in it, where the *Gentlemen* of the *Soveraigns Chappel* and *Choire* of *Windesor*, now go.

[o] *Ex lib. D. 1. in Offic. Arm. pag.* 17.

But it must be confest, that the Records of the *Order*, are defective in this particular relating to the *Grand Procession*, and speak not otherwise of it, then in general, or at most, take notice but of some of those Degrees, that attended in it, and this, but of late time neither; amongst which *an.* 23 *Eliz.* it is said, that [p] *they all Proceeded in order, as the Custom was, the* Soveraign *following in the Rear of the* Procession.

[p] *Lib. C. p.* 85.

As to *Place* and *Precedency*, not only among them who *Proceed* here in Bodies, but also those that walk singly by themselves, it is the same, in all points, with the *Soveraigns Proceeding* to the *Chappel*, on the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*: (Concerning which we have [q] already spoken largely enough) only here are some Persons added, which go not in that, namely the *Gentlemen* and *Choristers* of the *Soveraigns Chappel* at *Whitehall*, and the *Petty Canons*, *Vicars*, and *Choristers* of *Windesor*; the whole Order is as followeth.

[q] *Chap.* 20. *Sect.* 2.

The

The Morning Service having proceeded to the end of the second *Lesson*, and the *Prelate* conducted by the *Serjeant* of the *Vestry* from the *Altar* to his Seat, with usual Reverences,

The *Alms-Knights* rise from their Seats and pass to the middle of the *Choire*, and after their accustomed Reverences, go up to the sides of the *Altar*.

Next, in like manner, do the *Officers* of *Arms* pass up.

Hereupon *Garter* riseth from his Seat, and makes his Reverences, then waving his Rod, summons the junior *Knights-Companions* to descend.

Whilst they and the rest of the *Knights* are leaving their Stalls, with usual Reverences, the *Gentlemen* of the *Chappel*, *Petty Canons* and *Vicars* of *Windesor* put on Copes, and make themselves ready to proceed.

Then the *Knights-Companions* being all come down, and having made their accustomed Reverences, stand each under his proper Stall.

Then the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register* rise, and after Reverences made, stand before their Forms.

So do the *Chancellor* and *Prelate*.

This done, the *Alms-Knights* came down from the *Altar*, and passing into the middle of the *Choire*, make again their double Reverences, and proceed out of the *Choire*.

After them, all the *Choristers* pass in a body to the middle of the *Choire*, and having made their double Reverences (so do all that follow) proceed forth, two and two.

So do the *Vicars* of *Windesor*.

Next four of the *Petty Canons* come from their Seats, into the middle of the *Choire*, and there begin to sing the *Hymn*.

Then followeth the *Serjeant* of the *Vestry*, bearing his gilt Rod.

After whom, the *Gentlemen* of the *Chappel* at *Whitehall*.

Next, the *Verger* of *Windesor Chappel*, bearing his Silver Rod.

Then the *Prebends* of *Windesor*.

After whom, the *Officers* of *Arms* come down from the *Altar*, and pass on.

Then the *Knights-Companions*, the juniors first.

Then the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register*.

The *Chancellor* and *Prelate*.

The *Nobleman* that bears the Sword of State.

Then the *Soveraign* above in his Stall, makes a Reverence towards the *Altar*, and being descended, another below, then passeth out and enters under the *Canopy*, which waits him at the *Choire door*, having his Train carried up; the Lord *Chamberlain* of the *Houshold*, if he be not a *Knight* of the *Order*, attending somewhat behind the side of the *Canopy*, on the *Soveraign*'s right hand, and the *Vice-Chamberlain* at the like distance on his left, for so they waited in the *Grand Procession an.* 23. *Car.* 2.

And lastly, the *Band* of *Pensioners*, who attend in Guard on each side the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, with their *Captain* in the head of them.

In this order (at this day) they proceed with great devotion, the whole *Choire* singing the Office appointed, which heretofore was the *Letany*; but that *Supplicational Procession*, is now converted into a *Hymn* of *Thanksgiving*, composed by the Reverend Doctor *Brune Ryves*, the present Dean of *Windesor*, and *Register* of the *Garter*, at the command of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* in *Chapter*, held the 17. of *April an.* 13. *Car.* 2. which follows here.

An Hymn *to be sung in the* Procession *at St.* George's Feast *instead of the* Letany.

Judg. 5. 3. HEar, *O ye Kings; give ear, O ye Princes: I, even I will sing unto the Lord; I will sing praises unto the God of* Israel.

Psal. 18. 2. *The Lord is my Rock, and my Fortress, and my Deliverer, my God, my Strength, in whom I trust: my Buckler, the Horn of my Salvation, and my high Tower.*

The

The Lord is my Strength, and my Song: and he is become my Salvation. Exod. 15. 2.
The Right hand of the Lord is become Glorious in Power: The Right hand of the Lord hath dashed in pieces the Enemy. 6.
In the greatness of thy Excellency thou hast overthrown them, that rose up against thee: who is like unto thee, O Lord, amongst the Gods: who is like unto thee, glorious in Holiness, fearful in praises, doing Wonders. 7.
Sing aloud therefore unto God, our Strength: make a Joyful Noise to the God of Jacob. Psal. 81. 1.

CHORUS. { I will sing unto the Lord: for he hath triumphed gloriously: *Exod.* 15. 1.
To day will we sing this Song, We have a strong City: Salvation will God appoint for Walls, and Bulwarks: *Isay* 26. 1.

The Princes of the People are gathered together, even the People of the God of Abraham: *for the Shields of the Earth belong unto God: he is greatly exalted.* Psal. 47. 9.
We will therefore rehearse the righteous Acts of the Lord: even his righteous Acts towards the Inhabitants of the Villages of Israel. Judg. 5. 11.
We will not hide them from our Children, shewing to the generations to come the praises of the Lord: and his Strength, and his wonderful Works, that he hath done. Psal. 78. 4.
That the generation to come might know them, even the Children, which should be born: who shall arise, and declare them to their Children. 6.
That they may set their Hope in God: and not forget the works of God, but keep his Commandments. 7.
Sing unto the Lord therefore, O ye Saints of his: and let us give thanks for a remembrance of his Holiness. Psal. 30. 3.
Sing aloud unto God, our Strength: make a Joyful Noise unto the God of Israel. Psal. 81. 1.

CHORUS. { The Lord is my Strength, and my Song: and he is become my Salvation: *Exod.* 15. 2.

We will be glad, and rejoyce in thy mercy, O Lord: for thou hast considered our trouble, and hast known our Soul in Adversities. Psal. 31. 7.
For our Sins thou didst cast our Crown to the Ground: thou powredst contempt upon our Princes, and causedst them to wander in the Wilderness, where there is no way. Psal. 107. 40.
Thou gavest us like Sheep appointed for slaughter: and didst scatter us among the Nations. Psal. 44. 11.
Thou madest us a reproach to our Neighbours: a Scorn, and a Derision to them, that are round about us. 13.
Thou madest us a By-word among the Heathen: a shaking of the Head among the People. 14.
Thou didst deliver thy Strength into Captivity, and thy Glory into the Enemies hand. Psal. 78. 61.
Thou gavest thy People over also unto the Sword: and wast wroth with thine Inheritance. 62.
Nevertheless, thou didst regard our Afflictions: and heardest our Cry, and didst repent, according to the Multitude of thy Mercies. Psal. 106. 44.
But, as the Lord was our hiding-place, and did preserve us in the midst of our trouble: so at last he hath compassed us about with Songs of Deliverance. Psal. 32. 7.
For the Lord did awake, as a man out of sleep: and like a Mighty man, that shouteth by reason of Wine. Psal. 78. 65.
His anger endureth, but a Moment; in his favour is life: Weeping may endure for a Night; but Joy cometh in the Morning. Psal. 30. 5.
God hath turned our Mourning into Dancing: he hath put off our Sack-cloth, and girded us with Gladness; 11.

To

12. *To the end, that our Tongues may sing praises unto thee, O Lord; and not be silent: O Lord our God, we will give thanks unto thee for Ever.*

CHORUS. The Salvation of *Israel* is come out of *Sion*, the Lord hath brought back the Captivity of his People: Therefore shall *Jacob* rejoyce, and *Israel* shall be glad: *Psal.* 14. 7.
O! that men would therefore praise the Lord for his goodness, and for his wondrous Works to the Children of Men: *Psal.* 107. 8.

Psal. 9. 4. *Thou, O God, hast maintained my Right, and my Cause: thou sitest in the Throne, judging right.*
5. *Thou hast rebuked the Rebellious: thou hast destroyed the Wicked; and hast put out their Name for Ever and Ever.*
Psal. 37. 35. *I have seen the Wicked in great power: and spreading himself like a green Bay-tree.*
36. *Yet he passed away, and, lo! he was not: I sought him, but he could not be found.*
37. *Mark the perfect man, and behold the upright: for the End of that Man is Peace.*
Psal. 85. 1. *Lord, thou hast been favourable unto thy Land: Thou hast brought back the Captivity of thy People.*
2. *Thou hast forgiven the Iniquity of thy People: Thou hast covered all their Sin.*
3. *Thou hast taken away all thy Wrath: Thou hast turned thy self from the fierceness of thine Anger.*
Psal. 18. 49. *Therefore will we give thanks unto thee, O Lord, among the People: and sing Praises unto thy Name in the great Congregation.*
Psal. 81. 1. *Sing aloud unto God, our Strength: make a Joyful Noise unto the God of* Israel.

CHORUS. O give thanks unto the Lord; for he is good: for his Mercy endureth for Ever.
Let the Redeemed of the Lord say so: whom he hath redeemed from the hand of the Enemy: *Psal.* 106. 1, 2.

Psal. 46. 8. *O come hither, and behold the Works of the Lord: what Desolations he hath made in the Earth.*
9. *He maketh Wars to cease unto the ends of the Earth: He breaketh the Bow, and cutteth the Spear in sunder, and burneth the Charriots in the fire.*
Psal. 65. 7. *He hath stilled the noise of the Seas: the noise of their Waves, and the Tumult of the People.*
Psal. 68. 30. *He rebuked the Company of the Spear-men, the Multitude of the Bulls with the Calves of the People: till every one submitteth himself with pieces of Silver: He hath scattered the People, that delight in War.*
Psal. 75. 3. *He hath broken the Arrows of the Bow: the Shield, the Sword, and the Battel.*
Psal. 98. 1. *O! come therefore, let us sing unto the Lord a new Song; for he hath done marvailous things; His right Hand, and his holy Arm hath gotten him the Victory.*
Psal. 60. 4. *For he hath given a Banner to them, that fear him: that it may be displayed because of the Truth.*

CHORUS. The Lord is a Man of War: the Lord is his Name: *Exod.* 15. 3.
The Lord of Hosts is with us, the God of *Jacob* is our refuge: *Psal.* 46. 11.
O! clap your Hands therefore, all ye People: shout unto God with the voice of Triumph: *Ps.* 47. 1.

Great

Great deliverance giveth he to the King: and shewed mercy to his Anointed, and to his Seed for evermore. Psal. 18. 50.

Then he made him, that remained, to have Dominion over the Nobles among the People: the Lord made him have Dominion over the Mighty. Judg. 5. 13.

And he shall be as the Light of the Morning, when the Sun riseth, even a Morning without Clouds: as the tender Grass springing out of the Earth, by clear shining after Rain. 2 Sam. 23. 4.

Thou, O Lord, that hast delivered him from the strivings of his People: Thou, that hast made him head of those, that rose up against him: Psal. 18. 43.

Let his Glory be still great in thy Salvation: increase daily that Honour, and Majesty, which thou hast laid upon him. Psal. 21. 5.

Fasten him as a Nail in a Sure place: and let him be for a Glorious Throne to his Father's house. Esay 22. 23.

And hang upon him all the Glory of his Father's house: the Off-spring, and the Issue. And let all the People say Amen. 24.

CHORUS. The Lord hear him in the day of his trouble; the Name of the God of *Jacob* defend him: *Psal.* 20. 1.
Send him help from the Sanctuary, and strengthen him out of *Sion.* 2.
Grant him according to his own Heart's desire: and fulfill all his Counsel. 3.
We will rejoyce in thy Salvation, O Lord, and in the name of our God will we set up our Banners: The Lord fulfill all his Petitions. 4.

The King shall joy in thy Strength, O Lord: and in thy Salvation how greatly shall he rejoyce? Psal. 21. 1.

Thou hast given him his heart's desire: and hast not withheld the request of his Lips. 2.

For thou preventest him with the Blessings of Goodness: Thou hast set a Crown of pure Gold upon his head. 3.

Thou hast made him most Blessed for ever: Thou hast made him exceeding glad with thy Countenance. 6.

For the King trusteth in the Lord: and, through the mercy of the most high, he shall not miscarry. 7.

Thou wilt prolong the King's life: and his Years, as many Generations. Psal. 61. 6.

CHORUS. O satisfie him with a long life: and shew him thy Salvation: *Psal.* 91. 16.
Keep thy mercy with him for evermore: and let thy Covenant stand fast with him: *Psal.* 89. 28.
Make his Seed also to endure for Ever: and his Throne as the days of Heaven. 29.
Cloath his Enemies with shame; but upon himself let his Crown flourish: *Psal.* 132. 18.

How excellent is thy loving kindness, O Lord: therefore the Children of men put their trust in the Shadow of thy Wings. Psal. 36. 7.

Whom have we in Heaven, but Thee, and there is none upon Earth, that we desire, besides Thee. Psal. 73. 25.

Many, O Lord our God, are thy wonderous Works, which thou hast done: and thy Thoughts, which are to usward, they cannot be reckoned up in order to Thee. If we should declare, and speak of them: they are more, then can be Numbered. Psal. 40. 5.

Psal. 68. 35. *O Lord our God, thou art terrible out of thy holy places: The God of* Israel *is he, that giveth strength and power unto his people. Blessed be God.*

CHORUS.

Rejoyce, rejoyce, O ye People: for the Lord will be merciful unto his Land, and to his People: *Deut.* 32. 43.

The Lord will give Strength unto his People: the Lord will bless his People with Peace: *Psal.* 29. 11.

For who is God, save the Lord? or who is a Rock, save our God? *Psal.* 18. 31.

Blessed be the Lord God of *Israel* from everlasting to everlasting: and let all the people say *Amen*, Praise ye the Lord: *Psal.* 106. 48.

Glory be to the Father, &c. *Amen.*

The *Grand Procession*, when it hath been celebrated at *Whitehall* (or elsewhere beside *Windesor*) is for the most and principal part, ordered after the foresaid manner, as may be seen by the following *Scheme.*

Serjeant of the *Vestry* with his gilt Rod.
Choristers, in Surplices.
Gentlemen of the *Chappel*, in Copes.
Sub-Dean, in a Cope.
Dean of the *Chappel*, in a Cope.
Officers of *Arms.*
Knights-Companions.
Officers of the *Order.*
The *Sword.*
Soveraign, under a *Canopy*,
with his Train carried up.
The *Pensioners*, as before.

But in what this *Grand Procession* differs from that celebrated at *Windesor*, we shall here note.

1. Here the *Serjeant* of the *Vestry* leads the *Proceeding*, and is followed by the *Choristers.*

2. The *Prebends* and *Choire* of *Windesor*, and the *Alms-Knights* are here wanting.

3. The *Sub-Dean*, and *Dean* of the *Chappel*, are [r] taken in, and proceed next to the *Gentlemen* of the *Chappel*, to whom sometimes the *Soveraign*'s [s] *Almoner* hath joined himself.

[r s t u] *Collect W. le N. Cl.*

4. Whilst the *Knights-Companions* are descending from their Stalls, the [t] *Gentlemen* of the *Chappel* go into the *Vestry*, to put on their Copes; but the [u] *Dean* of the *Chappel* hath his brought into the *Choire*, which he puts on below under his Seat.

5. Lastly, in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, the [w] *Ladies* Attendants went with the *Pensioners* on either side the *Soveraign.*

[w] *MS. fol. pen. praef. W. D. N. fol.* 20. *b.*

4. The State and Pomp thereof.

The State and Pomp of this *Grand Procession*, appears both solemn and magnificent to the Eyes of the beholders, since the glory thereof is much augmented, by the (1.) splendor of the *Soveraign*'s *Apparel*, *Canopy*, and *Train*; the (2.) Lustre in which the *Knights-Companions* shine; the (3.) various Habits of the rest of the *Proceeding*; the (4.) rich Apparel of the *Retinue* attending thereupon; and (5.) lastly, the solemnity of the vocal *Musick.*

Soveraign's Under-Habit.

We have already drawn into this [x] discourse, an account of the *Soveraign*'s whole *Habit* of the *Order*, and set forth the glory of his *Robes*, the richness of his *Garter*, *Collar*, and *George*; what falls to have place here, is only the *Apparel* or

[x] *Chap.* 7.

or *Under Habit*, provided for him against this high *Festival*, and this was heretofore made of Cloth of Gold, Cloth of Baudkin, and other the richest materials, which in their several times were most in fashion and use; the same being set out and adorned with costly Embroideries of Gold, Pearl, and precious Stones, and suitable thereunto were the ornamental Trimmings.

If we look so far back, as to the time of the *Institution* of the *Order*, we shall see, that the *Founder* caused to be made for him, against the first Feast of St. *George*, these Garments following. A [a] *Joump* containing 4 Ells of Blue *Taffaty* [b] powdred with *Garters*, the *Buckles* and *Pendants* Silver and gilt, and no less than [c] 72 *Buckles* were used about it, and as many *Pendants* to adorn it. As also another [d] *Joump* of Blue *Sattin*, containing 3 Ells, powdred with [e] Blue *Garters*, and fitted with as [f] many Silver and gilt *Buckles* and *Pendants* as the former. Besides these, there was also provided for him a [g] Sattin *Coat*, a *Cloak* and *Hood* with [h] 100 *Garters*, fitted with 100 Silver *Buckles*, as many Silver *Pendants*, and [i] 300 Bars of Silver.

a Ex Compot. b Jo. Coke c Cler. magne Gardrob. d à an. 21. ad e an. 23. E. 3. f m. 9. g h Mem. 11. i

But let this suffice; for in recounting things of this nature, the task would be endless, and the satisfaction but to a few: Nevertheless those who are curious to be informed, of the *Robes* and *Habits* of our *Kings*, throughout the last four Centuries, may meet with sufficient satisfaction (even in the qualities and particulars of all the Materials) among the Accompts of the Great *Wardrobe*, in the *Exchequer* at *Westminster*.

The *Registers* of the *Order* have in them but light touches of this concern, and not frequent neither; yet such as they afford shall here follow. Upon Saint *George*'s day *an.* 13. *Eliz.* it is noted, that the [k] *Soveraign* wearing the *Collar* of the *Order*, and the rest of the *Habit*, was pleased, to the great applause of the Spectators, and satisfaction of all Strangers that were there, to grace the *Grand Procession* it self with her own presence. In the 26. year of her Reign, she went the *Grand Procession*, wearing the whole *Habit* of the *Order*, and a [l] *Diadem* of Pearl on her head; and *an.* 28. *Eliz.* [m] being gorgeously attired, in the rich *Habit* of the *Order*, went about the *Palace* (at *Whitehall*) according to the custom, in Processional Pomp and Supplication.

k Lib. C. p. 62. l MS. pen. G. O. T. pag. 113. m Lib. C. p. 103.

But it must be confest, that this *Queen* (and only she, of all the *Soveraigns* of this most Noble *Order*) did sometimes publickly proceed to the *Chappel* (aswell as to the great *Closet*) and also passed in the *Grand Procession*, without wearing the whole *Habit* of the *Order*, as in the [n] 8. [o] 27. [p] 29. and [q] 30. years of her Reign, the Feast day of St. *George*, being then held at *Greenwich*, and so did she the [r] following year, when it was kept at *Whitehall*.

n MS. penes W. D. N. fol. 26. o Collect. R. C. Cl. pag. 9. p q Ex Collect. præf. W. le N. Cl. r MS. fol. penes W. D. N. fol. 27.

But this may admit of some excuse; first as a Woman, she thought her self not so strictly tyed, to the exact observation of the Rules of so martial an *Order*; next, notice is often taken of her indisposition of health, at such times, and the whole *Habit*, being thought a little too heavy and cumbersom, she only wore the [s] *Collar* of the *Order*. Howbeit her other Apparel, splendid attire, and the Lustre of her Jewels, (at these Solemnities) exceeded both in richness and glory, all that she wore at other times.

s An. 4. Eliz.

Among those things which contribute to the Pomp and State of this great Ceremony, the rich *Canopy* is not the least; which is born by *Knights* and *Gentlemen* of *Quality*, over the *Soveraign*'s head, while he passeth in the *Grand Procession*, and till he return to the *Choire door*. The Canopy. t

That which was carried *an.* 18. *Eliz.* while this solemn Ceremony was in motion, was a certain round *Canopy* of green *Taffaty*, and born on the sunny side, to shadow the *Soveraign* from the heat of the Sun: by which description it should rather seem to be an *Umbrella*, than a *Canopy*; for generally *Canopies* are of another Figure, *viz.* an oblong square, and made either of Silk and Gold, rich Cloth of Gold, or Cloth of Tissue; and to suite with both, it is sometimes called [u] *Umbrella aurea*, [w] *Umbraculum aureum*, [x] or *Canopium vel Cœlum portatile auri*, to which there are affixed [y] 6 Golden Staves, wherewith it is supported.

t Ex eod. MS. penes præfat. G. O. T. p. 122. u Lib. G. p. 178. 185. w Ibid. p. 190. x Ibid. p. 99. y Lib. R. p. 30. z MS.

The persons appointed to carry the *Canopy an.* 11. *H.* 8. were [z] 4 *Knights* of the *Body*, when 4 other *Knights* bore 4 Wax Tapers; but since, they are the

[a] *Collect. W. le N. Cl.* [g] *Lib. C. p. 94.* [a] *Gentlemen* of the *Soveraign's Privy Chamber* in Ordinary, who at the time of the *Feast* are in waiting. Concerning whom, there is this mention made in the *Blue Book*, *an.* 26. *Eliz. The* [g] Soveraign *was pleased to follow the* Grand Procession, *certain persons being placed already at the* Choire door, *who wear to bear the* Canopy (*woven of Gold and Silk*) *for her to walk under.* In her Reign, there were not above [b] 6 appointed for this [c] service, but of later times they have been increased to double that number; the first mention whereof, that we have met with, is *an.* [d] 8. *Car.* 1.

[b] *Lib. C. p. 92. & Lib. R. p. 30.* [c] *A sex Equitibus in altum extensa.* [d] *Ex præfat. Collect. W. le N. Cl.* [e] *MS. penes E. W. G. sub an.* 16. *Jac. R.*

The most usual place at *Windesor*, where the *Canopy* bearers attend, to receive the *Soveraign*, when he enters upon the *Grand Procession*, is at the *Choire door* (yet once we find they received him [e] without the outer door of the *Chappel*) and they who bear it make a stand, when the *Soveraign* returns to the same place, where they received him, while he passeth from under the same into the *Choire*, to his Royal Stall. At *Windesor* the *Canopy* is aswell used, when the *Soveraign* descends from the *Presence Chamber*, in the Proceeding to the *Chappel*, on the *Feast day* in the Morning, as during the time of *Procession*; but at *Whitehall*, it is carried over the *Soveraign's* head, during the time of the *Grand Procession* only.

The Train.

In this solemn *Proceeding* (and at all other times of Publick Proceeding, during the continuance of the *Feast*) the *Soveraign* hath the long *Train* of his *Mantle*, carried up by several of the young *Nobility*, appointed to this Service; concerning which we shall observe,

That this Custom, of holding up the *Train*, is a very ancient kind of honor; and derived (some think) from the [f] *Roman Emperors*, others from the *Popes*, *Cardinals*, and *Bishops*; who, as they used to kneel down to offer at the *Altar*, or perform any other part of Divine Service, had the end or hindermost part of their *Stoles*, or long *Robes*, held up behind from the ground, by their *Arch-Deacons*, in token of great veneration and honor. But what *Erhardus Cellius* affirms, as more peculiar to our purpose, is this; [g] *That as Kings have anciently been accounted Priests, so King* Edward, *the Founder of this most Noble* Order, *ordained this sacerdotal honor of the* Train, *to be added to the* Habit *of the* Order.

[f] *Erhard. Celli Aur. Equit. Angl. Wirtemb. Lib. 5. p. 145.* [g] *Ibid.*

Which Ceremony of carrying up the *Train*, as it hath been anciently afforded to Kings, both in *England*, *France*, and elsewhere, so at length, it was drawn down into use, by great Personages of both Sexes, at grand Solemnities, Assemblies, Marriages, *&c.* whereof the foresaid *Author* gives [h] sundry Examples.

[h] *Ibid. p. 146. & 147.*

A description of the *Train*, together with the manner of bearing it up, as of the Fashion and Figure, wherein it then shews it self, is also given us by him; for speaking of the Duke of *Wirtemberg's Train*, that was carried up (according to the *English* Fashion) at his solemn reception of the whole *Habit* of the *Order* of the *Garter*, he takes occasion to tell us, that this Appendix or Supplement, trailing from the hindermost part of his *Mantle*, is commonly called *Syrma*, as being [i] in the likeness of the Tail and Wings, which Nature hath given for ornament to the *Peacock*. The [k] Lady *Isabell*, Daughter to the French King *Henry* the Second, when she was married by Proxy to *Philip* the Second King of *Spain*, [l] *an.* 1559. had her Train carried up from the ground, by *Mary* Queen of *Scotland* (who had been lately married to the Dauphin of *France*) and two other young Ladies, Sisters of the Bride.

[i] *Ibid. pag. 145.* [k] *Pag. 147.* [l] *Retterbusius.*

This being premised, the Persons, together with their quality, who have had the honor to bear up the *Soveraign's Train*, at the *Grand Festival*, or other solemn Assemblies, relating to this most Noble *Order*, fall in now to be spoken of; they being appointed by the *Soveraign*, and notice thereof sent unto them, by the Lord *Chamberlain* of the *Houshold*, to the end they may give their attendance accordingly.

The ancientest Example we have met with, of performing this Service, in relation to the Solemnities of the *Order*, is that of [m] *an.* 21. *H.* 7. at the Installation of *Philip* King of *Castile*, when the *Soveraign's Train*, as he went to make his *Offring* at the high *Altar*, was [n] born up by one of the *Canons* of the *Colledge*.

[m] *Ex veteri* [n] *MS. penes W. le N. Cl. cujus faciei inscribitur*, The Entertainment of the King of *Castile fol.* 295. *b.*

Queen *Elizabeth* had (for the most part) her *Train* carried up by great *Ladies*, when

when she proceeded to the *Closet* at *Whitehall*, on the *Eve* of St. *George*; and in particular, by the [o] Lady Marchioness of *Northampton*, in the third year of her Reign, *an.* 4. by the [p] Dutchess of *Suffolk*, *an.* 5. by the [q] Dutchess of *Norfolk*, *an.* 6. by the [r] Lady *Margaret Clifford*, Wife to the Lord *Strange*, in the 7. and 9. years by the [s] Dutchess of *Somerset*, *an.* 8. by the Countess of *Rutland*, and *an.* 10. on the *Eve* of the Grand *Feast*, by the foresaid Dutchess of [t] *Suffolk*.

At other times, this service hath been performed by persons of honor, both men and women together, as on the Grand *Feast day an.* 19. *Eliz.* the [u] Earl of *Oxford* bore up the *Train* of the *Soveraign's Robe*, and the [w] Countess of *Derby* that of her *Kirtle*. But *an.* 5. *Eliz.* the Dutchess of *Norfolk* carried up the *Train* both of the [x] *Robe* and *Kirtle*.

Sometimes the said *Soveraign* had her *Train* carried up by the *Register* of the *Order*, as on St. *George's* day *an.* [y] 2. & [z] 3. *Eliz.* But of late times young *Noblemen* have performed this Office, the most honorable person, going on the right hand, as *an.* 3 *Car.* 1. * the Duke of *Lenox*, and Earl of *Caernarvon*, *an.* 8. *Car.* 1. || Visc. *Grandison*, the Lord *Wentworth*, and the Lord *Carew* of *Leppington*. So 8. *Oct. an.* * 15 *Car.* 1. the Duke of *Buckingham* and his Brother, with the Lord *Buckhurst*, and Lord *Cavendish*.

Assistants have been usually appointed, to those honourable personages, who carried up the *Soveraign Train*; and in this quality *an.* 18. *Eliz.* the [a] Earl of *Oxford*, Lord High Chamberlain of *England*, assisted the Countess of *Derby*, which service the *Vice-Chamberlain* had before discharged, for many years together, *viz.* in the [b] 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10*th* Years of Queen *Eliz.* and since the *Gentleman* of the *Robes*, for so did [c] Mr. *Kirke an.* 8, 9, & 11 *Car.* 1. The place of the *Assistant*, in the *Proceeding*, is upon the left hand of the *Train-Bearers*.

This honor of bearing up the *Train*, hath been in like manner afforded to Stranger *Kings*, at such times, as they have personally been present at *Windesor*, and in particular to *Philip* King of *Castile*, *an.* 21 *H.* 7. who in his approach towards the High *Altar*, to make his *Offering*, had his [d] *Train* carried up by his own *Chamberlain*.

In like manner the *Lieutenants* or *Deputies* to the *Soveraign*, constituted for holding the *Grand Feasts* of St. *George*, (and consequently his representatives) have had their *Train* carried up, in the *Proceedings*; For instance, the Earl of *Arundel*, being the *Soveraigns Lieutenant* for holding St. *Georges Feast*, *an.* 31. *H.* 8. after such times as he had offered for the *Soveraign*, his [e] *Train* was let down, when he came to offer for himself, in the quality of a *Knight-Companion*. And this hath been the usage in all times since.

And not only the *Train* of the *Soveraigns Lieutenant* or *Deputy*, but sometimes that of a *Stranger Kings Mantle*, hath been carried up, when his *Proxy* proceeded to *Installation*; as in the case of the *French* King [f] *Charles* the Ninth, *an.* 8. *Eliz.* when *Monsieur Rambouillet*, bearing the *Mantle* of his Principal upon his right Arm, had the *Train* thereof carried up, by [g] *Henry* Earl of *Southampton*, assisted by the [h] Lord *Herbert*.

Furthermore, this Ceremony of bearing up the *Train*, hath been also performed unto *Stranger Princes*, in their own Countries, (and that in reference to the Custom of *England*) at those solemnities relating to this most Noble *Order*, whereof [i] *Erhardus Cellius* gives us an instance, in *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg*, who as soon as he was invested with the *Surcoat* and *Mantle*, in the great *Hall* at *Studgardt*, proceeded thence to the great *Church* of St. *Ulrick*, to receive the rest of the *Habit* of the *Order*, having his [k] *Train* born from the ground, by the Noble and Illustrious Count *Lodowick Leosten*; [l] who likewise carried it after him, throughout the whole Ceremony.

And lastly the *Knights-Companions* have (in this *Proceeding*) their *Trains* carried up by their own *Gentlemen*.

Another piece of Ceremony, in the State of this *Grand Proceeding*, we find [m] once added, and that was the bearing of Queen *Elizabeth's* [n] *Cloak* and *Hat* along with her; the one by Sir *William Howard*, the other by Sir *Christopher Hatton*,

o *MS. penes W. D. N. f.* 2. *b.*
p *Idem f.* 7. *b.*
q *Fol.* 9. *b.*
r *MS. f.* 17. *b.*
s *Ibid. fol.* 20. & 30. *b.*
t *Ibid. fol.* 30.
u } *MS. f.* 1.
w } *penes G. O. T. p.* 113.
x *Ex præfat. MS. penes W. D. N. fol.* 10.
y *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
z *MS. penes W. D. N. fol.* 3. *b.*
* } *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
|| }
a *MS. penes G. O. T. pag.* 123.
b *Videsis MS. penes præf. W. D. N.*
c *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
d *Collect. Tho. Wriothesley Mil. Garter, fol.* 295. *b.*
e *MS in Offic. Arm.* [*L.* 1.] *fol.* 19.
f } *MS. fol.* 25. *b.*
g }
h }
i } *Aur. Equit.*
k } *Anglo-Wirtemb. Lib.* 5. *pag.* 145.
l *Ibid.*
m *An.* 18. *Eliz.*
n *MS. præfat. penes G. O. T. pag.* 113.

Hatton, then Captain of her Guard: but as this was the first, so was it the last time that either of these, are mentioned to be thus publickly carried.

2. Apparel of the Knights-Companions.

In the second place, the *Cloths* and *Apparel* (or *under Habit*) of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, have for many years past, been made of white *Sattin*, and in the fashion of the times; which the present *Soveraign* observing to be laid aside, and others introduced, He, to prevent profuseness in Apparel, and emulation among the *Knights-Companions*, as also to beget an uniformity and equality, among them in the under, no less than in the upper *Habit* of the *Order*, thought fit to appoint a set, and constant *Habit* of *Cloth* of *Silver*, made in the fashion of *Trunk Hose*, with white silk *Stockings*, to be worn by himself and them, upon all solemn occasions, relating to the *Order*; for the observation of which, an [o] *Order* past in *Chapter*, *an.* 13 *Car.* 2.

o *Appendix Num.* CLXXX.

As to other Ornaments the chiefest are the variety of rich Jewels, which surround or adorn their *Caps*, and where else they may appear most conspicuous.

But besides the glory and splendor, which shoot from the *Habits* and *Ornaments* of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, who are principal in this grand Ceremony, there are others, that make up the body of the *Proceeding*, and may fitly be compared to *Stars* of the middle and lesser magnitude, since we find them adorned in *Robes* particular to their *Offices*, to distinguish and set off the lustre of the show; among whom are, first,

3. The Officers of the Order

The five Officers of the *Order*, namely the *Prelate*, *Chancellor*, *Register*, *Garter* and *Black Rod*; of whose *Habits* we have sufficiently spoken [p] before.

p *Chap* 9.

4. Officers of Arms.

The *Provincial Kings*, *Heralds*, and *Pursuivants*, habited in their rich *Coats*, and going together in one Body, appear more conspicuous, from the Royal Arms of the *Soveraign* of this most Noble *Order*, richly imbroidered upon them with fine gold, purles, and twist; the ground of the *Provincial Kings Coats*, being at this day blew Velvet, the *Heralds* blew Sattin, and the *Pursuivants* blew Damask.

5. Canons.

The *Habit* in which the *Canons* of the *Colledge* proceed, is also peculiar, and more remarkable, because of their particular reference to this most Noble *Order*: for though as *Clergy-men*, they are vested in Linen Surplices, at all times of Divine Service, or the Celebration of Sacred Offices, yet at the Solemnities peculiar to the *Order*, they wear a *Mantle* over those Surplices, which is a *Habit* appointed for them, from the foundation of the *Order*.

q *E.* 3. } *Stat.* *H.* 5. } *Art.* 5
r *Ord. Stat. in Lib. N. Art.* 5.

These *Mantles* are of *Taffety* and of the ancient colour, to wit [q] *Murry*; upon the [r] right shoulder of which is a Scutcheon of St. *Georges* Arms within a Rundelet, imbroidered with Gold and Silk; and bought at their own charge, for we do not find them entred among the *Liveries* of the *Garter*, provided by the *Soveraign*.

6. Gentlemen of the Chappel, &c.

In *Habits* yet more glorious, do the *Gentlemen* of the *Soveraigns Chappel* at *Whitehall*, the *Petty-Canons*, and *Vicars* of *Windesor* appear; who at this time are also joined in one Body, to augment the Solemnity: for they are all (or the most part of them) Vested in Rich *Coaps* of Cloth of Gold, Cloth of Bodkin, or most costly Imbroideries: But the *Children* of the *Chappel*, and *Choristers* do always proceed habited, in *Surplices* of fine Linen.

By a memorial we have met with, *a.* 22 *H.* 8. we find how well stored this *Colledge* then was, with such sacred *Vestments*; when at one *Procession* appointed by the *Soveraign* in honor of St. *George*, there were [s] 35. *Copes* of rich Cloth of Gold made use off.

s *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [*M.* 17.] *fol.* 32. *b.*

These kind of *Vestments*, have been in all times worn in the *Grand Procession*, whether the *Grand Feast* was kept at *Windesor*, or at *Whitehall*, or *Hampton-Court*, or *Greenwich*, even to the beginning of the late Wars, in which the covetous barbarism of the then Reformers, sent most of them to the fire; Besides, they are sometimes taken notice of, in the *Registers* of the *Order*, to be used in the *Grand Procession*; as in particular, *an.* 15 *Jac. Reg.* it is noted, that the [t] whole *Choire*, being adorned in *Copes*, (for so we suppose the word *Orarium* may signify, as well as *Dalmatica Vestis*) descended from the *Altar*, and sung the *Letany*; and to like purpose is that recorded, *an.* [u] 21. of the same King.

t *Lib. C. p.* 190.

u *Lib. R. p.* 7. *vide etiam p.* 20.

7. Alms-Knights.

Lastly, the *Habits* of the *Alms-Knights* [a *Mantle* and *Kirtle*] are not unremarkable

markable; they being grave and civil, and both for colour and materials, appear futable to their Age and Degree. The *Mantles* are of Cloth, which the *Statutes* appoint to be of a [w] *Red Colour*, with a Shield of the Arms of St. *George*, but without any *Garter* to surround them. In conformity whereunto, when Queen *Elizabeth*'s Orders and Rules, for the establishment of good Government, among these *Alms-Knights* were [x] made; It was therein Ordained, that each of them should have yearly for their Livery, a [y] *Gown* of Red, and a *Mantle* of blew or purple Cloth, with a [z] *Crosi* of St. *George* embroidered in a Scutcheon, (without the *Garter*) but to be set upon the left shoulder.

w E.3. H. 5. H.8. Stat. Art. } Stat: Art 7 16.
x An. 1. Eliz.
y Antic. 4.
z Art. 5.

In this *Grand Proceeding*, we observe the *Habits* so ordered, that the more grave and civil, being placed between those that are rich and gallant, entertain the Beholders with a more delightful prospect. For such we see are the *Officers* of the *Order*, who proceed between the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*; the *Canons* of the *Colledge*, who pass between the *Heralds* and *Gentlemen* of both *Chappels*; and lastly, the *Alms-Knights* who go immediately before the *Choristers*.

The *Registers* of this Noble *Order* make frequent mention of divers persons of rank and quality, who at this Solemnity of St. *George*, put themselves upon the duty of attendance on the *Soveraign*, because, otherwise, related to his Service, although in reference to the *Order* not so concern'd, as to be taken into the *Proceeding*. Such are divers of the *Nobility*, sometimes great *Ladies*, many considerable *Officers* of the *Houshold*, and other *Courtiers*; all richly habited and attired, thereby adding to the Gallantry of this solemn Ceremony.

8. The Soveraign's and Knights Retinue.

Concerning these it is remembred, *an.* 35. *Eliz.* that the *Soveraign*'s Proceeding in publick to the *Chappel*, was not only attended in all points by the *Knights-Companions*, and [a] other of her *Nobles*, but accompanied also with a great Train of her *Ladies* of *Honor*, and a numerous concourse of *Foreiners* and *Domesticks*, looking on and wishing all happiness.

a Lib.C. p 122.

Nor may we here omit some other *Servants*, who attend upon the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* at the *Feast*, they deserving notice, both for their number and rich Liveries. Such were the *Henxmen* anciently (now called *Pages* of *Honor*) who waited on the *Soveraign*; Upon the *Knights-Companions* attended divers *Gentlemen*, wearing Blue Coats, and on their left Sleeves the Cognizances of those Lords whom they waited upon, adorned with valuable Gold Chains: to these we shall add, both *Pages* and *Footmen*, always clad in exceeding gallant and rich Liveries.

At the *Feast* of St. *George*, *an.* 11. *Car.* 1. there was Exceptions taken by the Earl *Marshal*, at the Earl of *Berkshires* Servants, for that their Cognizances were adorned with [b] Coronets set over them, and it was thereupon [c] Ordered, to be amended against the next occasion of wearing them, upon a publick account. And by special directions from the late *Soveraign* King *Charles* the First, in the beginning of his Reign, [d] the *Coats* of the *Footmen*, belonging to the *Knights* of the *Order*, were then, and for the future, forbid to have the *Garter* embroidered about their Badges, as being too great an abasement of that first and chiefest *Ensign* of the *Order*, to be worn by persons of so mean rank; which excess, for the same reason, deserves reformation, in the *Water-mens Badges*, too frequently worn within a *Garter*, in this Age.

b c d } MS.

The *Henxmen* followed, in the *Grand Procession*, neer to the person of the *Soveraign*, but the *Gentlemen*, *Pages*, and *Footmen* belonging to the *Knights-Companions*, did not go in this *Proceeding*, but were [e] marshalled before it set forward, from the *Choire door*, on both sides the *Processional way*, and here and there intermixt with the Yeomen of the *Guard*, to keep off the *Press*.

e Collect. W. le N. Cl.

The *Habit* wherein the *Henxmen* were usually dreft, was rich and gay, as could be devised, being oftentimes embroidered with ingenious and pretty Devises, such as best liked the fancy of the *Soveraign*: We have seen the [f] account for the Apparel of 12 *Henxmen*, who attended on the *Soveraign* at St. *George*'s *Feast*, *an.* 11. *H.* 6. the Sleeves of their Gowns being embroidered, each with three

f Ex Lib. vocat. Cotom, in Offic. mag Gardrob. Regis, fol. 74.

three sprigs of Broom, and three Peacoks Feathers bound together, wrought with Silks of divers Colours, and the *Soveraign*'s Motto [*Dieu & mon Droit*] embroidered thereupon.

9. The Musick. To compleat the pomp of this great Ceremony, we may (in the last place) fitly remember the *Musick* as a part thereof; it being particularly taken notice of, in most places of the *Register*, where the *Grand Procession* is recorded. The *Choires* both of the *Soveraign's Chappel* at *Whitehall*, and this at *Windesor*, being here (as before is noted) united; all singing the sacred *Hymn* together, while the *Grand Procession* devoutly passeth on.

This *Hymn* was composed and set with Verse and Chorus, by Captain *Cook*, Master of the *Children* of the *Soveraign's Chappel*; by whose direction some Instrumental loud Musick was at that time introduced, namely two *double Sackbots*, and two *double Courtals*; and placed at convenient distance, among the Classes of the *Gentlemen* of both *Choires*, to the end, that all might distinctly hear, and consequently keep together, in both time and tune. For one *Sackbot* and *Courtal* was placed before the four *Petty Canons*, who begun the *Hymn*, and the other two, immediately before the *Prebends* of the *Colledge*.

And now behold the *Sculp* of the *Grand Procession*, as it was ordered upon this solemn occasion, *an.* 23. *Car.* 2. designed and etchedy Mr. *Winesaus Hollar*; in which, the Postures and Habits are exprest with singular spirit and freedom.

Return of the Grand Procession into the Choire. Upon the return of the *Grand Procession* to the *Choire door*, the *Alms-Knights* first advance into it, and after double Reverences, ascend above the Haut Pas's to the *Altar*.

Next the *Choristers*, and in like manner the *Vicars*, *Petty Canons* of *Windesor*, *Gentlemen* of the *Chappel*, and *Prebends* go to their Seats.

Then the *Officers* of *Arms* pass up, and joyn to the *Alms-Knights*.

After this, the *Knights-Companions* enter and stand before their Stalls.

The like doth the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register*.

As also the *Chancellor* and *Prelate*.

Then doth the *Soveraign* take his Royal Stall.

The *Knights-Companions* ascend their Stalls.

The *Officers* of the *Order* sit down on their Forms: And all this is done in the same manner and order, and with like Reverences, as at their entrance into the *Choire* on the *Eve* of the *Feast*.

Then the *Prelate*, with two *Prebends* (appointed to read the *Epistle* and *Gospel*) are conducted, the one by the *Serjeants* of the *Vestry*, the other by the *Verger*, up to the *Altar* (which they approach with usual Reverences) the *Prelate* passing to the North side, and the *Prebends* to the South, to finish the remaining part of Divine Service.

Whereupon the *Officers* of *Arms* descend into the *Choire*, and,

The *Alms-Knights* go down to their Seats. Which, while they are so doing, the two *Prebends* put on their *Copes*, at the South side of the *Altar*.

This done, the Prelate begins the second Service.

SECT. IV.

The order of the Second Service.

THE order and course of the *Second Service*, since the time of Reformation in the Church of *England*, hath been celebrated according to the directions set down in the Book of *Common-Prayer*, established by Act of *Parliament*,


THE
GRAND PROCESSION
OF THE
Soveraigne
and
knights Companions
ANNO
23 CAROLI 2

Pag. 275.


W. Hollar delineavit et sculpsit Aqua forti 1652

Parliament, being the same commonly used on any other *Feast-day*; excepting that a peculiar *Epistle* and *Gospel*, made proper to this *Festival*, hath been appointed to be read in their due place of the *Service*. The *Epistle* being the 33. Chapter of *Deuteronomy*; next follows the *Gospel*, taken out of the 5. *Chapter* of the Gospel of St. *John*, beginning at the 24. *Verse*, and ending at the 30. which being read the *Creed* is sung.

The *Office* appointed to be used on this *Feast day* in the Chappel of St. *George*, in *Windesor Castle*, before the Reformation, may be seen in the *Breviarie* and *Missale ad usum ac consuetudinem Sarum*, which we have transcribed hither; for (in regard that the *Colledge* of *Windesor* was situate within the Diocess of *Salisbury*) the *Statutes* of the *Colledge* did appoint and ordain, [k] that the use and custom of singing, pronouncing, and celebrating *Divine Service*, of attending in the Choire and at the *Altar*, or of celebrating about it the *Masses* peculiar to the day, or of the *Virgin Mary*, as also for the dead, as well in celebrating as reading, singing, standing, sitting, both in the Choire and without it, and all things whatsoever, which were observed in the Church of *Salisbury*, should be observed in this Chappel of St. *George*, according to the conveniency of place and exigency of persons: To the observation of this *Statute*, they were also obliged by the [l] Injunctions of *John* Archbishop of *York*, Chancellor of *England*, under the penalty of paying 12 *d.* to the Treasury of the *Colledge*, by every one, that should be guilty of violating or infringing the same. What difference there is between the foresaid *Office*, and that appointed to the use of the Church of *York* (in regard it is but small) we shall also note, and then close this *Section* with the *Hymn* and *Prayer*, out of the *Primmer* of *Salisbury*.

If any be further curious to know, what alteration hath been made since our Reformation, in this Office in the *Roman Church* (for since then, they have seen cause to mend and refine divers things, in their publick *Liturgie*) they may have recourse to the *Breviarium Romanum* and *Missale Romanum*, *Ex decreto Concilii Tridentini restitutum*, wherein the *Service* is [m] noted to be very solemn, and (for the honor of St. *George*) scarce any Festival there, is celebrated, with more variety of proper and Divine Offices.

k *Cap.* 21.

l *Cap.* 6.

m *Heylins Hist. of St. George, Part.* 2 *Sect.* 8.

* *Nota*, Quod Breviarium hoc *Salisburiense Bedam* sequitur, qui in suo Martyrologio, ad diem 23 *Aprilis*, ait *Georgium* Martyrium fuisse passum sub *Daciano* Rege *Persarum*: Et *Usuardus* in Martyrologio suo ad diem etiam *Apr.* 23. ait, *Georgium Martyrio coronatum in Perside, civitate Diospoli.*

Officium *proprium Sancti* Georgii, *prout extat in* Portiforio (*seu* * Breviario) Salisburiensi Londini *excuso* 1555. *In proprio de* Sanctis. *Part.* Hiemali, *ad diem* April 23.

Rubrica.

Sancti Georgii *Martyris. Tres Lectiones, cum regimine Chori, duplex Festum.*

Capitulum.

Iste sanctus qui pro Lege Dei sui certavit usq; ad mortem: & à verbis impiorum non timuit: fundatus enim erat supra firmam petram.

Oratio.

Deus qui nos beati Georgii *Martyris tui meritis & intercessione lætificas; concede propitius, ut qui ejus beneficia poscimus, dono tuæ gratiæ consequamur, per dominum nostrum Jesum Christum.*

Lectio 1.

Sanctus & verus Dei Cultor Georgius Cappadociæ *regionis oriundus, cum videret multos Deum blasphemantes, & cum* Daciano *dæmones adorantes, spiritu sancto repletus in hanc vocem prorupit: Omnes dii Gentium dæmonia, Dominus autem cœlum fecit.* Dacianus *ait ei, qua temeritatis audaciâ, nobis*

In *Breviario* Sancti Dominici. *Parisiis* 1512 p. 44. In Officio Sancti *Georgii* occurrit eadem *Oratio*, quæ hic habetur in *Breviario Salisburiensi*, & tres Lectiones (*ex gesti Sancti Georgii secundum Ecclesiam Gallicanam*, ita enim habet Rubrica) quæ quoad sensum, ut penè quoad verba ipsa, eædem sunt cum his Lectionibus Ecclesiæ *Salisburiensis.*

Vide Nicephorum Callist. Hist. Lib. 7. *c.* 15. de Martyrio S. *Georgii* sub *Diocletiano.*

injuriam irrogans, Deos nostros dæmonia vocas? fatere tum ex qua Provinciâ huc advenisti, vel quo nomine vociferis.

Lectio 2.

Sanctus Georgius *dixit: Christianus & Dei servus sum,* Georgius *nuncupor, genere* Capadocus, *patriæ meæ comitatum gerens. Elegi verò temporali dignitate carere, & immortalis Dei imperio servire.* Dacianus *ait ei: erras* Georgi, *accede & immola Deo Appollini. Beatus* Georgius *respondet, Domino enim meo Jesu Christo exhibeo culturam, Regi omnium seculorum, non Apollini auctori Dæmonionum.*

Lectio 3.

Iratus Dacianus *jussit S.* Georgium *in Equuleo levari, & extensum membratim ungulis lacerari. Deinde lateribus ejus lampades ardentes applicari; salem verò in vulnera aspergi, & cilicio plagas ejus fricari; plumboq; bullienti* Georgium *immitti, extractumq; per vicos ut reum fecit trahi. Cumq; traheretur ad locum supplicii, flexis genibus gratias egit Deo; & sic capitalem pro Christo subiit sententiam.*

Rubrica.

Cætera de Communi unius Martyris de Pasc. temporis.

What is set down above, is proper to St. *George*, but the rest of the *Office* used on St. *George*'s day (being common to him with other Martyrs) is not set down, but referr'd to that part of the *Portiforium*, called *Commune*.

Secundum usum Sarum. Missa.

Sancti Georgii Martyris Officium.

Psal. 63. *Protexisti me Deus à conventu malignantium, Alleluia; à multitudine operantium iniquitatem. Alleluia, Alleluia.*

Psalmus.

Ibidem. *Exaudi Deus orationem meam cum deprecar: à timore inimici eripe animam meam.*

Oratio.

Deus qui nos beati Georgii *martyris tui, meritis & intercessione lætificas: concede propitius; ut, cujus beneficia poscimus, dono tuæ gratiæ consequamur. Per Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum.*

Lectio beati Jacobi Apostoli. 1.

Cap. 1. *Carissimi, omne gaudium existimate, cum in temptationes varias incideritis: scientes quòd probatio fidei vestræ, patientiam operatur: Patientia autem opus perfectum habeat: ut sitis perfecti & integri, in nullo deficientes. Si quis autem vestrum indiget sapientiâ, postulet à Deo qui dat omnibus affluenter, & non improperat: & dabitur ei. Postulet autem in fide nihil hæsitans. Qui enim hæsitat, similis est fluctui maris, qui à vento movetur & circumfertur. Non ergo existimet homo ille, quod accipiat aliquid à Domino. Vir duplex animo, inconstans est in omnibus viis suis. Glorietur autem frater humilis, in exaltatione suâ: dives autem in humilitate suâ, quoniam sicut flos fœni transibit: Exortus est enim sol cum ardore: & arefecit fœnum, & flos ejus decidit: & decor vultûs ejus deperiit: Ita & dives, in itineribus suis marcescit. Beatus vir qui suffert temptationem: quoniam cùm probatus fuerit, accipiet coronam vitæ, quam repromisit Deus diligentibus se.* Alleluia.

Lætabitur

Lætabitur justus in Domino, & sperabit in eo: & laudabuntur omnes recti corde. Psal. 63.

Sequentia.

Organicis canamus modulis Georgii *solennia. Omnigenis Domino vocibus reddentes odas debitas: Qui in suis sanctis mirabilis nimis, multiplici virtutum flore eosdem decorat, ac mirificè adornat. Nam & in ipsis quasi in quibusdam musicis instrumentis, digito proprio fides agitat, fides virtutum sonoras; his numerosè percurrens singulas. Permiscet singulis diatessaron mellifluam melodiam; quam generat virtutum mater illa, quæ aliis decenter composita reddit suavem symphoniam, qua sine cuncta fiunt dissona, necnon & frivola; qua cum omnia sunt consona, necnon utilia: qua justi benè morati, rite petentes excelsa poli sidera alacres decantant nova cantica, in Cithara Threicià: quorum agentes festa, consortia mereamur in cœlesti patria.*

Evangelium secundum Johannem.

In illo tempore, dixit Jesus Discipulis suis, Ego sum vitis vera, & pater meus agricola est; Omnem Palmitem in me non ferentem fructum tollet eum, & omnem qui fert fructum purgabit eum, ut fructum plus afferat. Jam vos mundi estis propter sermonem quem locutus sum vobis. Manete in me, & ego in vobis. Sicut Palmes non potest ferre fructum à semetipso nisi manserit in vite: sic nec vos nisi in me manseritis. Ego sum vitis; vos palmites. Qui manet in me, ego in eo, hic fert fructum multum, quia sine me nihil potestis facere. Si quis in me non manserit, mittetur foras sicut palmes & arescet: & colligent eum & in ignem mittent & ardet. Si manseritis in me, & verba mea in vobis manserint, quodcunq; volueritis petetis, & fiet vobis. Chap. 15.

Offertorium.

Confitebuntur cœli mirabilia tua Domine: & veritatem tuam in Ecclesia Sanctorum. Alleluia Alleluia. Psal. 88.

Secreta.

Offerimus tibi Domine solemne sacrificium pro venerandâ Sancti Georgii *martyris tui passione, deprecantes clementiam tuam: ut per hæc sacrosancta mysteria: antiqui hostis temptamenta, te triumphante, vincamus: & æternæ remunerationis primum, te largiente consequamur per Dom.*

Communio.

Lætabitur Justus in Domino, & sperabit in eo: & laudabuntur omnes recti corde. Psal. 33.

Postcommunio.

Mensæ cœlestis satiati dulcedine, humiliter te rogamus omnipotens pater: ut intercedente beato Georgio *martyre tuo: resurrectionis ejus simus participes cujus sumus morte redempti. Qui tecum,* &c.

Here note, that it belonged to the [n] Abbot of *Towerhill* to read the *Gospel*, and to the Prior of *Medemenham* in *Norfolk* to read the *Epistle*; for upon them was this duty imposed, until the Reformation; and in whose absence, a [o] *Canon*, and a *Vicar* of the Chappel, supplied their place ([p] He that read the *Gospel*, (after censing by the *Epistoler*) presented the *Heart* of St. *George*, bestowed upon King *Henry* the Fifth by [q] *Sigismund* the Emperor) to the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* to kiss.

n *Lib. N. p.* 109.
o *Ibid. p.* 112.
p *Ibid. p.* 113.
q *Ibid. p.* 26.

The difference between the *Office* appointed for St. *Georges* Day, *secundum Sarum, & Ebor.* is as followeth.

The *Office* of the Church of *York* hath the same *Officium, Psalmus, Oratio,* with *Salisbury*; but it hath another *Epistle, viz.* 2 *Cor.* 5. 1. beginning *scimus quoniam si terrestris*; and ends with the fourth verse.

And other verses follow the *Epistle, viz.*

Versus. *Confitebuntur cœli mirabilia tua Domine, etenim veritatem tuam in Ecclesiam Sanctorum.*

Versus. *Angelus Domini descendit de cœlo & accedens revolvit Lapidem & sedebat super eum.*

The *Sequentia*, is the same with *Salisbury*, But the *Gospel* is 16 *Math.* begining at the 24. verse. *Si quis vult post me venire*, &c. to the end of the *Chapter.*

The *Offertorium* and *Communio*, are the same also with *Salisbury.*

But the *Secreta* and *Post-Communio*, the same with the *Roman Missal* now in use.

The Office *secundum Sarum*, hath the same *Officium, Psalmus, Oratio, Offertorium, Communio* and *Gospel*, with the *Roman Missall.*

But it differs in the *Epistle*, the *Verse* following, the *Secreta*, and *Post-Communion.*

In the *Primmer* according to the usage of *Salisbury*, otherwise called *Horæ beatissimæ Mariæ Virginis secundum usum Sarum.* Printed in a small Volume by *Winandus de Worde, an.* 1529. there is this Hymn to St. *George* among the Suffrages.

Fol. 54. De Sancto Georgio. Antiphona.

Georgi *martyr inclyte decet laus & gloria, prædotatum militiâ: per quem Puella Regia exiguam in tristitiâ, coram dracone pessimo salvata est. Te animo rogamus & corde intimo, ut, cum cunctis fidelibus, cœli jungamur civibus, nostris ablutis sordibus ut simul cum letitiâ tecum simus in gloriâ, nostraq; reddant labia, laudes Christo cum gloriâ.*

Vers. Ora pro nobis beate *Georgi* Christi miles.

Resp. Ut hostes visibiles & invisibiles sint contra nos valdè debiles.

Oratio.

Omnipotens sempiterne Deus qui deprecantium voces benignus exaudis, majestatem tuam supplices exoramus: Ut sicut in honore beati ac gloriosissimi martyris tui Georgii Draconem à Puellâ superare voluisti: Ita ejusdem intercessione hostes nostros visibiles & invisibiles, ne nocere valeant, à nobis superari concedas, per Dominum nostrum. Pater noster. Ave Maria.

The same Prayer I find in the *Primmers* Printed in a Large Quarto at *Paris*, by *Francis Regnault* in the Years 1516, 1526, 1527, 1534. and in a small Vollume at *Roven, an.* 1538.

SECT. V.

The Offring *of* Gold *and* Silver.

Preparations for the Offering.

BEing now to speak of this solemn and sacred *Ceremony*, we shall premise; That, whether it be performed in the *Soveraign's Chappel* at *Windesor*, or in any

any other *Church* or *Chappel* whatsoever, the Ceremony is one and the same, having not any thing peculiarly local to *Windesor* (except the *Soveraign's Offring* of *Gold* and *Silver* instead of the *Bezant*) or otherwise varying with the place.

The accustomed time of Offring *Gold* and *Silver* on the *Feast day*, is mentioned *an.* 22. *H.* 8. to be after the [a] *Soveraign's* return to his Stall, from the *Grand Procession*, in the time of *high-Mass*; and at this day begins, immediately after this first Sentence of the *Offertory* is pronounced by the *Prelate*,

[a] *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [M 17.] *f. l.* 32. *b.*

Let your light so shine before men, &c.

This said, the *Organs* begin to play (continuing so throughout the whole Ceremony) and forthwith a *Groom* and *Page* of the removing *Wardrobe* (with Reverence first made) unroll a long *Carpet*, and spread it from before the *Altar*, downward, upon the Haut pas, ascending thereto, and then stand on each side thereof.

Which being done, the *Alms-Knights* first, next the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings* ascend in usual order, to their wonted Stations before the *Altar*, and dividing themselves, flank the *Carpet* on both sides.

Then *Garter* steps from his Seat, and, after his double Reverences, and the usual manner of waving his Rod, the *Knights-Companions* descend in their accustomed and regular order, and stand before their Stalls.

After this, the *Black Rod* goes from his Seat, makes his double Reverences in the middle of the *Choire*, and ascends neer to the *Altar*, towards which, making a single Reverence, he turns his back, and immediately the *Groom* of the removing *Wardrobe*, delivereth unto him a little *Carpet*, anciently of Silk, now of Cloth of Gold, which he (the said *Groom* assisting) spreads over that before mentioned, lying on the Haut Pas's to the *Altar*.

Moreover the said *Groom* holds upon his arms, a fair *Cushen* of Cloth of Gold, for the *Soveraign* to kneel upon, at the time of his Offring, which the *Black Rod* forthwith lays upon the upper Haut Pas, before the *Altar*. And note, that aswell in delivering as receiving the *Cushen*, each of them take the *Assay* thereof, by kissing it.

These preparations for the *Soveraign* to offer, being made, the *Prelate* of the *Order* takes a large gilt *Bason* into his hands, to receive the *Soveraign's Offring*, and placing himself in the middle of the *Altar*, stands before it with one of the *Prebends* to assist him.

The Order of the Soveraign's Offering.

The *Soveraign* at this instant arising from his Royal Seat, makes his Reverence towards the *Altar*, and then descending makes a like Reverence below, and ascends towards the *Altar*, attended as followeth.

Garter. *Register.*
Chancellor.
The *Nobleman* that bears the *Sword.*
The *Soveraign*,
having his *Train* born up.
The *Knight-Companion*, who is to give him his *Offring*,
goes a little behind on his left hand.

Being come into the middle of the *Choire*, he makes another Reverence, and at the first Haut Pas his last.

And albeit, in other matters of Ceremony, the *Soveraign* performs his part [b] last, yet at the *Offring*, first, and before all the *Knights-Companions*. And in this point, *Errhard Celius* discourseing of the Duke of *Wirtemberg*'s Offring, is mistaken, where he saith, the *Soveraign* or his *Deputy* Offer [c] after all the *Knights-Companions*, and in the last place.

[b] *E.* 3. } *Stat.* *H.* 5. } *Art.* 13
[c] *Eq. Aur. Anglo-Wirtemb. fol.* 183.

The *Officers* of *Arms* were anciently wont to lead on this *Proceeding*, and pass before the *Officers* of the *Order*, and so we find it remembred [d] *an.* 22. *H.* 7. *an.* [e] 1. *&* 2. *Ph. & Mar.* [f] 2. *&* [g] 19. *Eliz.* and the like attendance was in those times

[d] *Ex Veteri MS. pen. W. le N. Cl. f.* 295. *b.*
[e] *MS. pag.* 12.
[f] *Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
[g] *MS. G O. 7. pag.* 113.

h *MS. fol. pen. W. D. N. fol. 5. b. & fol. 12.*

times given to the *Soveraign*'s [h] *Lieutenant* by them; but this is now altered, and they directed to proceed up next towards the *Altar* after the *Alms-Knights*, as before, and together with them, stand in flank on both sides the Carpet, while the *Soveraign* approacheth the *Altar*.

He that bears the *Soveraign*'s *Offring*, is either the senior *Knight*, the *Prince*, or the greatest *Estate* among the *Knights-Companions* then present, and no other person (of what Degree soever) if he be not one of this most Noble Fraternity, doth perform this service. And once we find the senior *Knight* had an *Assistant* for this service, namely *an.* 18. *Eliz.* when the Earl of [i] *Arundell* went on the *Soveraign*'s right hand, and the Earl of *Sussex* on her left, to give her the *Offring*.

i *MS. penes G. O. Y. pag. 123.*

The *Soveraign* being come to the upper Haut Pas, kneels, at which instant, the *Black Rod* on his Knee delivers (with Assay) the *Soveraign*'s *Offring* to the senior *Knight*, and he, kneeling, presents it to the *Soveraign*, which he immediately offers into the *Bason*, held by the *Prelate*, assisted as before, who at this instant heretofore also kneeled; but at the *Feast* celebrated *an.* 15. *Car.* 2. the present *Soveraign* gave command, that the *Prelate* and *Canon* should * stand, while himself, in the humble posture of kneeling, should make his Offring.

* *Lib. Carol. pag.* 47.

Which having done, he ariseth and passeth down the Haut Pas's, where turning about he makes a Reverence towards the *Altar*, and thence conducted and attended, as when he came up to *Offer*, at the entrance into his Stall, he turns about and makes another Reverence, at both which times the *Attendants* bow towards the *Altar* also, and ascending into his Stall, doth the like again, and then reposeth himself in his Seat. In that interim the *Black Rod* takes up the rich *Carpet* and *Cushen*, and delivers them to the foresaid *Groom*, and so descends (with Reverence) to his Form, and stands before it.

In Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, it appears the *Bezant* was *Offered* by her, and redeemed of course (so also at sundry times since) and noted (*an.* 2. *Eliz.*) to be of * 7 *l.* value. But at the Installation of the Duke of *York* at *Windesor*, *an.* 11. *Jac. R.* there was a question proposed to the *Dean* and *Canons*, [k] whether if the *Soveraign* should offer his *Bezant*, it might be redeemed or not? Their answer then was, [l] that whatsoever was there offered, became the *Dean* and *Canons* without redemption, whereupon the *Soveraign* waved offring his *Bezant*, and offered [m] both *Gold* and *Silver*.

* *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
k *Collect. D.*
l *Chr. Wren*
m *nuper Ord. Regist.*

And besides, concerning this thing, there is an Entry made of a passage (upon the *Register* of the *Order*) which hapned *an.* 6. *Car.* 1. [n] *That whereas in other places* (besides *Windesor*) *the* Soveraign *is wont to offer a certain golden piece* (*vulgarly called a Bezant*) *to be redeemed afterwards, at a certain price*; [o] *The* Usher *of the* Black Rod *having sometime been admonished, that in these services there is no redemption to be made, never presents the* Bezant *at* Windesor *to the* Soveraign, *but* Gold *and* Silver *of English money*.

n *Lib. R. p.* o 62.

The Lieutenants Offering

When the *Soveraign* is absent, and his *Lieutenant* offers for him, he performs the Ceremony in manner and order following.

First (after the preparations made for the *Offring*, as aforesaid, and *Garters* double Reverence towards the *Altar* and the *Soveraign*'s Stall, with a third to the *Lieutenant*) he descends from his Stall with his usual Reverences, and goes to the steps ascending the *Soveraign*'s Stall, and there stands a while; then making his double obeisance, he proceeds towards the *Altar* (the *Officers* of the *Order* going before him) with one other Reverence in the middle of the *Choire*, and another at the first Haut Pas of the *Altar*, having his *Train* carried up. The [q] *Carpet* and *Cushen* is spread and laid for him, by the * *Black Rod*, and *Yeomen* of the *Wardrobe*, with *Assay*, and the *Offring* given also with *Assay*, by the [r] *Black Rod*, to the senior *Knight*, or one of the *Knights-Companions* of highest dignity, at that time present, who attending the *Lieutenant* up to the *Altar*, delivers it upon his Knee, and he having put it, kneeling also, into the *Bason* (held by the *Prelate*) returns back through the body of the *Choire* to the [t] *Soveraign*'s Stall, in the same order, and with like Reverences as he came, where standing a while again before it, he makes his single Reverence towards it, and then goes up into his own Stall, where (if it fall out that the *Lieutenant* is not the senior *Knight*) he stays to [t] receive the

q *MS. penes* r *praef. G. O. Y.* s *p. 114 vide MS. 4. pen. W. le N. Cl. f. 11.*
* *Coll. H. A. V. W.*
t *MS. in Bibl: Coton. Jub Effig. Julii, E. 11.*

Reverences

Reverences of all the *Knights-Companions* his seniors, as they go up to offer, and when his own turn and course comes to offer, he descends with a double Reverence, and proceeds up with his Fellow (if present) and [u] offers for himself in his own place, and as one of the *Knights-Companions*; but his [w] *Train* is now let down, the *Assay* not given, the *Carpet* and *Cushen* taken away, and only two *Officers* of *Arms* (but none of the *Order*) proceeds before him; and assoon as he hath thus offered for himself, he returns to his Stall, by the * East end through the Stalls.

[u] *Ibid.*
[w] *MS. in Offic. Armor.* [L. 1.] *p.* 19. *& MS. pen. W. D. N. fol* 12.
* *Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

But it seems *an.* 7. *Jac. R.* that [x] *Garter* alone on the *Feast day*, brought up the *Prince* (then the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*) when he came to offer for himself, which some of the *Knights-Companions* observing, alledged that the service ought to have been performed by [y] *Clarenceux* and *Norroy* (he being the senior *Knight*) yet [z] because *Garter* had so brought him up the day before, it was thought good he should so continue And this we look on as an oversight in *Garter*, if not ignorance, since at the same time we find him guilty of another, as great an Error; for he brought down the *Knights-Companions* out of their Stalls to offer, [z] before the *Epistle* and *Gospel* were read, which the *Relator* notes to be done, * contrary to the use of former times, and in truth very absurd and inconvenient; inasmuch as, besides their long time of standing below in the *Choire*, while the tedious Ceremonies of the *Offring* were preparing and performing, the *Knights-Companions* were now put to exercise their patience, by the inconvenience of a longer standing there, even while the *Epistle* and *Gospel* were read, and the *Creed* sung, and all this before the *Offring* did begin. But the foresaid mistake was *an.* 11. *Jac. R.* rectified, and when the *Prince* (being the [a] *Soveraign's Lieutenant*) came to offer for himself, he was then brought up by *Clarenceux* and *Norroy*, and not by *Garter*.

[x] (*MS. penes E. W. G. fol.* 148. *b.*
[y] [z] (
[a] *Ibid f.* 151. *b.*

When the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* hath offered for himself, he [b] returns to the lower end of the Stalls, and passeth thence towards his own, where having paid his usual Reverences, he enters it again, and is there ready to receive the Reverences of all the rest of the *Knights-Companions*, his juniors.

[b] *MS. in Offic. Armor. ut supra.*

This ceremonious course of the *Lieutenant's* returning up to his Stall, after he had offered for the *Soveraign*, and there remaining, until his own turn came to offer, and then to descend again, and offer for himself, and so return to his Stall, was first appointed to be observed by [c] Decree in *Chapter an.* 7. *Eliz.* though the entry thereof into the *Register* of the *Order*, was (we know not how) neglected; and this return hath been since duly observed, albeit the senior *Knight* (as very usual) was made the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*, and then (there being no other *Knight* that possessed a higher Stall than himself, to offer before him) he, resting a while there, arose, and with usual Reverences came forth a second time from his Seat, and went up to offer for himself, attended as is before mentioned.

[c] *Collect. A. V. W.*

The Knights Offering.

Assoon as the *Soveraign* (or his *Lieutenant*) is returned to his Stall, the two *Provincial Kings* pass down into the middle of the *Choire*, where making a Reverence jointly towards the *Altar*, and next to the *Soveraign*, *Clarenceux* turns himself to the senior *Knight*, and makes him a third Reverence, while *Norroy*, at the same instant, doth the like to the next junior *Knight*, and to both, as an intimation of their going up to *Offer*; then each *King* retires a little backward, towards the Stalls.

In the mean time, the two senior *Knights-Companions* draw neer together, and make their double Reverence, and upon the last turning of themselves, *Clarenceux* and *Norroy* step forth and pass up before them, until they arrive neer to the *Prelate* (but where the senior *Knight* wants his opposite *Companion*, the two *Kings* bring him up alone, and he Offers single) then making their Reverences, first towards the *Altar*, next to the two *Knights*, *Clarenceux* retires to the right side, and *Norroy* to the left, and make themselves ready for a present return, before the *Knights-Companions*; who in the interim are kneeling together, on the upper Haut Pas before the *Altar*, making their Offring.

This humble posture in *Offring*, was not (it seems) heretofore generally observed by the *Knights-Companions*, and therefore *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. it occasioned the passing

passing a Decree to this effect; That in all Offerings to be thenceforth made [d] *every one of the* Knights-Companions (*in honor of God, and in testimony of their obedience and Christian Piety*) *should most humbly bow their knees.*

d *Lib.R.p.* 44.

The *Knights-Companions Offrings* are both of *Silver* and *Gold*, which they put into the foresaid *Basin*, held to them by the [e] two *Prebends* before-mentioned, or by ‖ one *Prebend* and the *Chantor*, and anciently by the * *Chantor* only, when the *Offering* is made at *Windesor*; but by the [f] *Subdean* of the *Chappel*, when they Offer at *Whitehall*.

e *MS. penes E. W. G. sub an.* 1 *Jac. R. vide Lib.R. pag.* 52. *&* 85.
‖ *Collect.D.Ch Wren nuper Ord. Regist.*
* *Stat. Colleg. Art.* 37.
f *Ex Collect. Rob. C.Cl. f.*2.

The *Offering* being made, the *Knights-Companions* rise, and forthwith divide themselves, *Clarenceux* conducting the Senior *Knight* to the [g] lower end of the Stalls, on the *Soveraigns* side, and there at parting from him makes a Reverence to him; and *Norroy* conducting the next Junior *Knight* to the lower end of the Stalls, on the *Princes* side, with a Reverence also leaves him, and forthwith both *Kings* return to their Stations, before the *Altar*.

g } *MS. penes* h } *G. O. Y. pag.* 113.

As soon as the *Knights-Companions* are [h] entred in, at the nethermost end of the Stalls, they make their double Reverences together; and then pass along the Stalls, till they come to their own, where making the like Reverences, they take their seats.

But if any *Stranger King* be present at the *Offering*, he retires not to his Seat (after he hath offered) by the lower end of the Stalls, as is before observed, by other *Knights*, but along the *Choire* (like as doth the *Soveraign*) the same way that he proceeded up: for so did the [i] King of *Denmark*, *an.* 4. *Jac. Regis*, but the [k] *Prince* and all the other *Knights-Companions*, who Offered at the same time, went back to their Seats by the nether end of the Stalls: *viz.* at the end nearest the high *Altar*, which sometimes is called the [l] upper end, and sometimes the [m] East end, and often the lower end; for so did Prince [n] *Arthur an.* 15. *H.*7. and [o] *Francis* Duke of *Montmorancy*, *an.* 14 *Eliz.* the like did [p] *Prince Henry an.* 16 *Jac. Reg.* and the Duke of *York an.* 19 *&* 23 *Car.* 2.

i } *MS, fol.indorsed Patents. pen.eund. Geo. Owen. Y.*
l } *MS. penes* m } *E. W. G.*
n *Lib.N p.*174.
o *Ex Collect. R C.Cl. fol.*27.
p *MS. penes E. W. G. f.*155. b.

The Ceremonies of the two Senior *Knights Offering* being finished, the two Senior *Heralds*, observing the end of the said Knights last Reverences, pass down into the *Choire*, after the same manner as did *Clarenceux* and *Norroy*, to bring up the two next Senior *Knights-Companions* to Offer, (for all Offer [q] according to the Seniority of their Stalls) who ascend in the same manner, and with the same Reverences, as did the two Senior *Knights*, and after they have Offered, are conducted to the lower end of the Stalls, and with usual Reverences take their Seats.

q *MS. pag.* 12.

In like manner, do the next two Senior *Heralds* go down, and bring up the two next Senior *Knights* to Offer in the before-mentioned Order; which being done, they return to their Stalls as aforesaid. And after them the two Junior *Heralds* descend, and bring up the two next *Knights* to the Offering, who return as did their Seniors.

And if there be yet more *Knights-Companions* to Offer, then *Clarenceux* and *Norroy* begin again, and go down to bring them up to Offer also. After them the *Heralds*, again by turns, fetch up the rest of the *Knights*, who proceed up, paired or single, as they have or want their Fellows, until all have made their respective Offerings: for we find not, that the *Pursuivants* at *Arms* have at any time performed any part of this Service. But to make the Ceremony more apparent, we shall insert the Order in which the *Knights-Companions* were conducted up to the Offering, at the *Grand Feast*, celebrated at *Windesor*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 2. together with the *Officers* of *Arms* that proceeded before them.

Duke of *York*.	conducted to the Offering by	*Clarenceux* and *Norroy*.
Earls of *Salisbury* and *Berkshire*.		*York* and *Lancaster*.
Earl of *Northumberland*.		*Windesor* and *Richmond*.
Dukes of *Ormond* and *Buckingham*.		*Chester* and *Somerset*.
Earl of *Southampton*.		*Clarenceux* and *Norroy*.
Duke of *Albemarle*.		*York* and *Lancaster*.
Earls of *Sandwich* and *Oxford*.		*Windesor* and *Richmond*.
Duke of *Richm.* and Earl of *Lindsey*.		*Chester* and *Somerset*.
Earls of *Manchester* and *Strafford*.		*Clarenceux* and *Norroy*.

And

And it is to be noted, that where any *Knight* hath his opposite *Companion* absent, he goeth up to Offer singly and alone, and so returneth; nevertheless with two *Heralds* before him (as may also be seen by the precedent *Scheme*) who conduct him to the lower end of the Stalls, and there, with a joint Reverence take their leave.

In this solemn Ceremony, the order wherein the *Knights-Companions* Offer, is always according to the Dignity of their Stalls, wherein they sit; for they obtain the honor and title of Seniority, according as their Stalls stand in Order, nearer to the *Soveraigns* Stall.

As touching the *Offerings* themselves, which the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* do at any time make, in the *Chappel* at *Windesor*, they, of right, belong to the *Dean* and *Prebends* of that *Colledge*; having been conferred on them by the [f] *Statutes* of the *Colledge*. And it was also Ordained, *that* [t] *the* Chantor *should see, that all the Offerings there made should be received, collected, and faithfully kept, and at the end of every Month, or weekly if the Colledge required it, give a faithful account of what was so received.* By which it appears, that they were not only given to the *Dean* and *Prebends*, but care was also taken, by whom they should be received, and when an Account should be rendered. All which was confirmed by King *Edward* the Third, by the *Bishop*, and *Dean*, and *Chapter* of *Salisbury*, to whose Jurisdiction the *Colledge* of *Windesor* doth belong, and also by the *Bishop* of *Winchester*, *Prelate* of the *Garter*, the last Day of *November*, 1352.

The Offerings belong to the Dean and Prebends.
f *Ar.* 33.
t *Art.* 37.

Nor do we find but that in pursuance of these *Statutes*, the *Dean* and *Prebends* of the said *Colledge*, have constantly enjoyed them, until Dr. *Mountague* came to be Bishop of *Winchester* and *Prelate* of the *Order*; who, it seems, challenged a right to the *Offerings*, which he had received at the *Feast* of St. *George* celebrated at *Windesor an.* 21 *Jac. Reg.* Whereupon in a *Chapter* held on the last Day of the said *Feast*, the [w] *Dean* and *Canons* made their complaint against the said *Prelate*, for not only receiving the *Knights-Companions Offerings*, but for detaining them, as also the *Soveraigns* and *Princes Offerings*: Of which, the said *Prelate* being demanded, by the *Soveraigns Lieutenant* and *Knights-Companions* present in the said *Chapter*, he acknowledged, and further answered; that he had left them in the hands of the *Subdean* of the *Chappel*, *tanquam in deposito*. But the *Chapter* being ready to rise, the matter was not then further debated, but referred to the next *Feast*.

w *Lib. R. p.* 10.

[x] Bishop *Andrews* did also *de facto*, both receive and keep the *Offrings*, whensoever he, as *Prelate*, Officiated at *Windesor*; but his *Executors* to avoid Suit, [y] compounded for them.

x } *Autogr. in*
y } *Ærar. Coll. Windsf.*

It appears by the [a] *Red Book* of the *Order*, upon Complaint of the *Dean* and *Prebends* of *Windsor*, in a *Chapter* held the 24. of *Sept. an.* 4. *Car.* 1. that [b] power was given to the *Knights-Commissioners* of the *Order*, to determine this contention about the *Offering*, and withal it is there noted, that Bishop *Neyle* the [c] then *Prelate* himself also desired, that a *Chapter* might determine the matter.

a } *Pag.* 43.
b }
c }

But we have not met with any account of what these *Commissioners* (so impowred) did, though by an Expression in the [d] same Book, *an.* 5 *Car.* 1. one would guess, as though the thing had been determined against the *Prelate*. For an *Offering* having been then made in the *Chappel* at *Windesor*, and the *Soveraigns Offering* received by the [e] Bishop of *Norwich*, that Officiated for the *Prelate*, and the *Knights-Companions Offering* by the two *Prebends*, who assisted at the *Altar*, it is added: [f] *That what was Offered, fell according to Law of the place, to the share of the Dean and Prebends*: And yet it appears, that the controversy was not ended, since by a subsequent Order of *Chapter*, (6 *Oct. an.* 6 *Car.* 1.) [h] the matter was again referred to the nine *Knights-Commissioners* of the *Order*, or any four of them, who were to hear both Parties, and make their Report, that so the same might receive a determination. But here also it is immediately noted, That the [i] next Morning the *Prelate* (*nequid nimis deniq; suæ sententiæ tribuere videretur*) voluntarily delivered to the *Dean*, 9*l.* 4*s.* that sum being the moity of the *Offerings* he had received from the *Soveraign* and

d *Pag.* 52.
e *Pag.* 51.
f *Ibid. pag.* 52.
h *Lib. R. p.* 64. & 65.
i *Ibid.*

l Pag. 73. m Pag 74. n Pag. 75.

Knights-Companions. The next *Feast* after held at *Windsor*, *viz.* [l] 4. *Oct. an.* 7 *Car.* 1. the controversy was again [m] resumed, and after some arguments urged by the *Prelate*, and answered by the *Register*, it was [n] Decreed, *that the* Dean *should attend the* Knights-Commissioners, *at their next sitting, with the* Statutes, *and other* Grants *to the* Colledge, *and that from them the controverse should be determined.* After this, there is another *Memorandum* made in the same *Register*, which informs us, that the [o] *Prelate* by the hands of the *Chantor* delivered all the *Offerings* received at the *Feast* [p] *an.* 9 *Car.* 1. to the *Canons*, upon condition of restitution, if it chanced they [q] should be adjudged to him, and not to the *Canons*. And whether any final determination was afterwards made herein, we have not hitherto found. But since the return of the present *Soveraign*, the *Offerings* received at the *Feast* of St. *George* at *Windesor*, *an.* 13 *Car.* 2. were divided between the *Dean* and *Canons* resident, the *Prelate* not disputing the right.

o p q Pag. 91.

And now that we may see, what hath ordinarily been Offered in *Gold* and *Silver*, this following Account of the Offring received by the Bishop of *Winchester*, (attested under his hand, and delivered to the *Dean* and *Prebends* of *Windesor*) will give us some Information.

* *Ex ipso Autogr. in Ærar. prædict. Coll.*

* *Sept.* 24. 1628.

The Offring *at St.* Georges *Feast at* Windesor, *besides the* Kings Offring *of the* Bezant *not yet redeemed.*

	l.	s.	d.
The whole *Offring* of the eight *Knights*	04	15	00.

Viz.	in Gold. s.	in Silver. s.
The Lord *Steward*	10	01.
Lord *Chamberlain*	10	02.
Earl of *Kellie*	10	02.
Earl of *Salisbury*	10	02.
Earl of *Dorset*	10	02.
Earl of *Holland*	10	02.
Earl of *Suffolk*	10	02.
Earl of *Berkshire*	10	02.
	04 15 00.	

The Offrings *on* Thursday *the* 25th *Day.*

	s.	s.
His *Majesties Offrings*	20	10.
Lord *Steward*	10	01.
Lord *Chamberlain*	10	02.
Earl of *Kellie*	10	02.
Earl of *Salisbury*	10	02.
Earl of *Dorset*	10	02.
Earl of *Holland*	10	02.
Earl of *Suffolk*	10	02.
Earl of *Berkshire*	10	02.
	06 05 00.	

	l.	s.	d.
The sum of both, besides the *Kings Besant* unredeemed is---	11	00	00.

Of which, given to Mr. *Cotton* who waited at the Altar by me 5 *s.* for the rest I am answerable.

R. Winton.

When

When all the *Knights-Companions* have Offered, and are returned to their Stalls, then doth the *Chancellor* of the *Order* make his Reverences; and after him the *Register*, *Garter*, and *Black Rod*, theirs together, and take their Seats.

Upon this the afore-mentioned *Groom*, and *Page* of the removing *Wardrobe*, roll up the long *Carpet* (spread for the *Knights* to kneel on) close to the fore-side of the *Altar*; which done, the *Provincial Kings*, *Heralds*, and *Pursuivants* next, and last of all the *Alms-Knights*, make their Reverences, and pass down into the *Choire*, and take their stands before the Stalls, where they remain until the Prelate hath finished the *Second Service*: and then the *Prelate*, conducted by the Serjeant of the *Vestry*, comes down from the *Altar*, with his accustomed Reverences to his Seat. After whom, the two *Prebends* are brought down by the *Verger* of the *Chappel*, who make a Reverence towards the *Altar* before they descend, next a double Reverence below the first Haut Pas; and lastly another towards the lower end of the *Choire*, and so take their Seats.

SECT. VI.

The Return to the Presence.

IMmediately after, all prepare to pass out of the *Choire*, and to proceed back to the *Presence-Chamber*, which is done in every point and circumstance, as is set down to have been observed, in the *Soveraigns* return from the first *Vespers*.

That is to say,

The *Alms-Knights* ascend to the Rails before the *Altar*, and divide themselves on either side.

The *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings* pass up to their usual station, on the Haut Pas's before the *Altar*, and there divide themselves likewise.

Then *Garter* summons down the *Knights-Companions*, who orderly descend into the *Choire*.

Next, the *Officers* of the *Order* stand up before their Forms.

All this being done,

The *Alms-Knights* descend, and pass out of the *Choire*.

The *Prebends* follow.

Next, the *Officers* of *Arms*.

Then the *Knights-Companions*.

After them the *Black Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register*.

Next, the *Chancellor* and *Prelate*.

Then the *Sword*; and lastly

The *Soveraign* himself, being attended, as when he entred the *Choire*; at the *Choire* door he is received under the *Canopy*, by the *Gentlemen* that bear it, and from whence the *Band* of *Pensioners* follow his person.

The Proceeding passeth on through the *South door* of the *Chappel*, and here, the *Trumpets* are taken in, and placed before the *Alms-Knights*, who sound all the way up, till they arrive at the stairs foot, going up to the *Guard-Chamber*: and assoon as they cease, the *Drums* and *Fifes* begin to beat and play.

Thence the *Proceeding* passeth into the *Presence-Chamber*, whither it first ought to go, before the *Soveraign* pass into the *Great Hall* to *Dinner*, and being there arrived, the *Knights-Companions* take their stands as usually, and after the *Soveraign*'s salutation and their Reverences, the *Soveraign* retires into the *Privy-Chamber* for a little while, and the *Knights* likewise retire themselves, till notice be given that *Dinner* is ready.

When the *Feast* was heretofore held at *Whitehall*, the return of the *Soveraign* (or his *Lieutenant*) and *Knights-Companions*, from the [f] second Morning Service on

[f] *MS. pen. G. Gi 7. pag. 113.*

on the *Feast day*, was through the great *Hall* and *Guard-Chamber* into the *Presence*, and thence they retired into the *Privy Lodgings* till *Dinner* was ready. But since the *Grand Dinner* hath been prepared in the *Banquetting* house there, the *Proceeding* hath passed from the *Chappel*, through the said great *Hall*, over the *Terrace* (while it stood) and since, from the *Chappel*, up the Stairs into the *Guard-Chamber*, down into the *Great Court*, and so through the covered *Walk* into the said Room; where being entred, and the *Soveraign* arrived neer the State (after Salutation and Reverences made, as usually done in the *Presence-Chamber*) the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* retired till *Dinner* was ready; and hereupon in this Room now, as formerly in the *Presence*, doth the *Proceeding* from the *Chappel* take its termination.

SECT. VII.

Of the Dinner *on the Feast Day.*

THE *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* having for a while retired, after their return from *Morning Service* on the *Feast day*, they make ready to go into St. *George's Hall* to *Dinner*; where all things are prepared against their coming. But more particularly, the *Soveraign's Proceeding* to the *Hall* is; when he hath notice given him, that the [a] first *Mess* is set upon his *Table*: the *Dishes* being brought up in the following order; Wind Instruments, from the Gallery at the lower end of the Hall (where the rest of the *Soveraign's* Musick is placed) sounding all the while.

[a] *Colleth. W. le N. Cl MS. pen. eund. W. le N. fol. 20. & 27. & MS. penes G. O. Y. p. 113.*

4 *Serjeants* at *Arms*, two and two.
Controller. *Treasurer.*
Sewer.
The *Messes* carried up by the *Pensioners*.
Master of the *Houshold.* *Cofferer.*
A *Clerk Controller.* A *Clerk Controller.*
Second *Clerk* of the *Kitchin.* Chief *Clerk* of the *Kitchin.*

But in the *Plate* representing the *Soveraign's* sitting at Dinner, the *Serjeants* at *Arms*, and *Clerks* that usually follow the *Messes*, are omitted, for want of room.

This *Dinner* hath several Names given to it in the *Registers* of the *Order*, all describing and setting forth its magnificence, as [b] *Mensa splendida*, [c] *Regium Epulum*, [d] *Epulum solenne*, and the like: and for the Provisions made for it, they are said to be [e] most costly and delicate, [f] compleatly royal, and set forth with all befitting state and grandeur.

[b] *Lib. N. p. 166.*
[c] *Lib. C p. 108.*
[d] *Ibid. p. 194.*
[e] *Ibid. p. 184.*
[f] *Lib R. p. 108.*

Upon the foresaid notice, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* come forth of the *Privy-Lodgings* into the *Presence-Chamber*, with the *Officers* of the *Order* before him, and passeth to the [g] middle of the *State*; where turning about, he makes a stand, while the *Knights* place themselves on either side, in their [h] usual order, the *Officers* of the *Order* [i] retiring a little on the one side and on the other. And assoon as the *Knights-Companions* have put themselves into rank and order, they make their [k] Reverences to the *Soveraign*, according to the usual manner, who thereupon re-salutes them, as is accustomed.

[g, h, i, k] *Colleth. W. le N. Cl.*

It seems, the *Prebends* of the *Colledge* had, in King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign, discontinued the duty of their attendance on the *Soveraign*, aswell at the *Grand Dinner*, as at other the *Services* of the *day*, which caused an Order to pass for the performance of their accustomed services, particularly at such times; for at

at a *Chapter* holden at *Windesor*, the [l] 12. day of *May*, the 24. year of the said King, it was Ordained by the Earl of *Arundel*, then being the Kings *Lieutenant*, with the assent and advice of the *Knights* of the *Order* there present; [m] *That the* Canons *of the* Colledge *of Saint* George, *being present at the* Feast, *should have their* Mantles *according to the* Statutes *of the* Order, *and give their attendance the day of the* Feast, *aswell at* Dinner *and* Grace, *as at other the* Divine Service, *and as of old time hath been accustomed, in avoiding the displeasures of, &c.*

[l] } *Ex Lib. M.* 17 *f.* 35. *b.* [m] } *in Offic. Arm.*

Immediately after the *Knights-Companions* have made their Reverences, the *Alms-Knights*, *Prebends*, and *Officers* of *Arms* pass on before the *Knights-Companions*, through the *Guard-Chamber* into St. *George's Hall*, the *Officers* of the *Order* following; after whom comes the *Soveraign*, having his Train carried up as at other times. And being entred a little way therein, the *Alms-Knights* first, next the *Prebends*, and then the *Officers* of *Arms*, fall off one after another, on the side opposite to the *Knights-Companions Table*, *Clarenceux* neerest to the State.

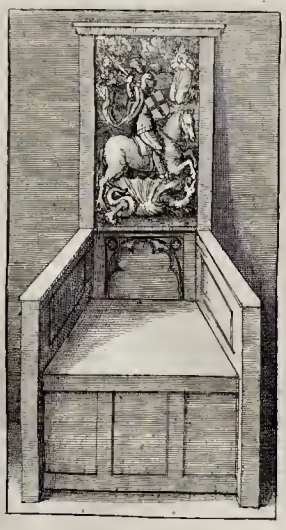
Then the two junior *Knights* pass a little above *Clarenceux*, and there facing their Table make a stand, and the rest of the *Knights-Companions* coming up after, do in like manner make a stand, according to their seniority, the senior neerest the State; through which Lane, the *Officers* of the *Order* proceed, conducting the *Soveraign* till he draws neer to the State, and then do the said *Officers* [n] retire, as did the former part of the *Proceeding* on the side opposite to the Table; the *Soveraign* in the mean time passeth on to the [o] State, and there turning himself about, receiveth the Reverences of the *Knights-Companions*, and re-salutes them as usually.

[n] [o] [p] } *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

After this the *Soveraign*, yet standing directly before the State, hath [p] *Water* brought him up with three Reverences, by the *Noblemen* assigned to that service: the Lord *Chamberlain*, if he be not a *Knight* of the *Order*, otherwise the *Vice-Chamberlain*, going before them; for so did the Earl of St. *Albans* at the *Grand Feast*, *an.* 23. *Car.* 2. so also did Sir *George Carteret an.* 19. *Car.* 2. But *an.* 3. *H.* 7. some of the [q] *Knights-Companions* served the *Soveraign* with *Water*. And to be more particular in the Ceremony of the *Soveraign's* washing, it is noted *an.* 2. *Eliz.* that the [r] Earl of *Arundel* held the *Towel*, the Earl of *Pembroke* the *Water*, the Earl of *Derby*, and *Marquess* of *Winchester Assistants*, the *Bason*, and the Earl of *Derby* gave the *Soveraign* the *Assay* of it. Again *an.* 7. of the same *Queen*, the [s] Duke of *Norfolk* held the *Towel*, the Earl of *Derby* received it, the Earl of *Sussex* brought the *Water*, and the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Shrewsbury Assisted*; all these being *Knights* of the *Order*.

[q] *MS. penes Arth. Com. Anglesey, fol.* 167. [r] *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

[s] *MS. penes W. D. N. fol.* 20. *b.*



In like manner also, is the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* served with *Water* before Dinner (but not by any of the *Nobility*) of which there are many Examples: among the rest, that *an.* 3. *Eliz.* when Sir [t] *Tho. Berenger* gave him the *Water* kneeling, and Sir ---------- *Radcliff* the *Towell*; as also *an.* 7. *Eliz.* when Sir [u] *Nicholas Poynes* brought him the *Towell*, and Sir *Tho. Berenger* the *Water*.

[t] *Ibid. fol.* 3. [u] *Et fol.* 20.

When the *Soveraign* hath washed, the [w] *Prelate* of the *Order* says *Grace*, being assisted with some of the *Soveraign's Chaplains*; *an.* 7. *Eliz.* the [x] *Register* of the *Order* assisted him, and *an.* 9. *Eliz.* the [y] *Bishop* of *Rochester*, then the *Soveraign's Almoner*.

[w] *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

[x] *MS. pen. W. D. N. fol.* 20. *b.* [y] *Ibid. f.* 27. *b.*

Grace being said, the *Soveraign* sits down in his *Chair*, placed in the middle of his Table under the State; for there is the most honorable Seat, and the place where the State is held: And here we have occasion to offer to the *Readers* view, a draught of the old *Wooden Chair*, said to be the *Founders*, yet remaining

remaining in St. *George*'s *Hall* at *Windesor*, in which the *Soveraigns* heretofore sat at *Dinner*.

Most usually the *Soveraign* sat alone, though sometimes heretofore, he hath been pleased to admit some of the *Knights-Companions* to sit at his *Table* with him: For instance in a few, *Sigismond* the Emperor, when he received a Personal Installation at *Windesor*, at the *Grand Feast* held there *an.* 4. *H.* 5. it is remembred, that the *Soveraign* out of great civility [a] offered the chief place at the *Table* to him (which hitherto the *King*, as *Soveraign*, had retained in the [b] *Chappel*, and [c] in all the Proceedings) which whether the Emperor accepted of it or not, is not clear enough expressed in the * *Black Book*, but we have met with an ancient memorial which is more particular, and saith, that at Dinner the Emperor [d] kept the State, that is, sat in the middle, and another that faith the * King sat on the Emperors right side, and the Duke of [e] *Bedford*, the Lord *Chancellor*, the Bishop of *Duresme* on the *Emperors* left hand; the Duke of *Brigu*, and [f] another *Duke* of the Emperors Train, sat both on the *Soveraign*'s side, and all of them on one side of the Table.

Moreover *an.* 11. *E.* 4. (the *Soveraign* then keeping the *Feast* at *Windesor*) the [g] *Prelate* of the *Order* sat on his right hand, and the Duke of *Gloucester* and Earl of *Essex* on his left. So *an.* 3. *H.* 7. the [h] *Prelate* sat alone on the *Soveraign*'s right hand, at the end of the Table. And in the 24. year of the same King (who then celebrated the *Feast* at *Greenwich*) there sat with him at the Boards end the Dukes of [i] *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*, the Marquess of *Exceter*, and the Lord *Stephen Gardiner Prelate* of the *Garter*.

It is also noted, that at the *Feast* held at *Windesor an.* 11. *H.* 8. only the Lord [k] *Richard Fox* then *Prelate*, sat on the right hand of the *Soveraign*, neer to the Boards end, being served with his * *Carver*, *Sewer*, and *Cupbearer*, *Mess*, *Course*, and *Service*, as the *Soveraign* had. In which || place sat also the Bishop of *Winchester*, *an.* 1. & 2. *Ph.* & *Mar.* And *an.* 22. *H.* 8. [l] four of the greatest States (being *Knights-Companions*) sat at the *Soveraign*'s *Table*, and the refidue of the *Knights* at their own.

An. 2. *Eliz.* the *Soveraign* admitted the Earls of [m] *Arundel* and *Derby*, together with the Marquess of *Winchester*, to her Table, who sat at the end thereof on the left hand; and the following year the Duke of [n] *Norfolk*, the Marquess of *Northampton*, and Earl of *Arundel*, sat also at the Tables end. So *an.* 7. *Eliz.* the Duke of [o] *Norfolk*, and Marquess of *Winchester*; and *an.* 9. the Earls of [p] *Arundel* and *Pembroke*, whilst the other *Knights-Companions* sat at their own Table.

But this favour and honor was not afforded to any of the *Knights-Companions*, since her Reign, no, not at the Installation of the present *Soveraign*, though a Ceremony carried on with designed indulgence and honor; but we find him then placed at the same Mess with the [q] senior *Knight*, at the upper end of the *Knights-Companions* Table.

Assoon as the *Soveraign* is sat down, the *Knights-Companions* [r] put on their Caps, and remaining so covered, forthwith retire against the Tables prepared for them; where standing a while, *Water* is brought to them, and they also [s] wash; there being to [t] each pair a *Bason* and *Ewer*, and a *Towel* allowed, which are brought in by *Gentlemen* of quality; and having washt, they all sit down.

The order of passing to their Seats at the Table *an.* 19. *Car.* 2. was on this manner (and appointed so to be observed for the future) first his Highness the Duke of *York* entred within the Rails at the upper end of the *Table*, and so passed down the hither side, to the lower end, and thence up along the Bench side to his place; in like manner followed all the other *Knights*, according to the seniority of their Stalls; for it is ordained, that they shall sit in [u] that order, not according to their Estates or Degrees (except the Sons or Brethren of *Stranger Kings*, *Princes*, and *Dukes*, who shall keep their places or rooms after their Estates) and all on the [w] right hand or further side of their Tables (not one over against another) two and two at a Table, to one Mess. But those whose *Companions* are wanting sit alone, and have a whole Mess allowed to each of them. Their

[a] [b] [c] *Lib. N. p.* 57.
* *Pag.* 57.
[d] *MS. in Offic. Armor.* [*F.* 9. *Interments*] *fol.* 12. *b.*
* *MS. in Bibl. Cott. sub effig. Vitell.* A. 16. *sub an.* 4. *H.* 5.
[e] *Collect.*
[f] *Tho. Rowe ruper Canc.*
[g] *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [*M.* 15.] *fol.* 12. *b.*
[h] *Lib. N. p.* 166.
[i] *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [*M.* 17.] *fol.* 35. *b.*
[k] *Ex eod. MS. fol.* 27. *b.*
* *MS.*
|| *MS. p.* 13.
[l] *Ibid. fol.* 32. *b.*
[m] *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
[n] *MS. fol. penes W. D. N. fol.* 3.
[o] *Ibid. f.* 20. *b.*
[p] *Et fol.* 27. *b.*
[q] *Palmer's large Journ. pag.* 14.
[r] *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
[s] *MS. pen. W. D. N fol.* 20. & *MS pen. G. O. J. pag.* 123.
[t] *MS. pen. W. D. N fol.* 20. & *MS pen. G. O. J. pag.* 123.
[u] *Hen.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 11.
[w] *Lib. N. pag.* 165 *Hen* 8. *Stat. Art.* 11. & *MS. p.* 13.

Their meat is usually brought up by the *Yeomen* of the [x] *Guard*, and are attended by some of the *Gentlemen Pensioners*, and others of the *Soveraign*'s Servants; two to each Table.

[x, y] *Colleh. W. le N. Cl.*

And now to descend to the *Officers* of the *Order*, who though they sit not at this day in the great *Hall* at *Dinner*, yet anciently it appears, they had a Table allowed them there. For first the [a] *Black Book* rendring an account of the magnificent *Feast* of St. *George*, held at *Windesor an.* [b] 3. *H.* 7. and having spoken somewhat of the *Soveraign*'s splendid and sumptuous Table, as also of that, of the *Knights-Companions*, placed on the right side of the *Hall*, it tells us, that a [c] little beneath the said *Knights-Companions*, there sat on both sides the Table, the [d] *Dean*, the *Register* of the *Order*, the *Prebends*, the *Choire* and *Alms-Knights*.

3. Officers of the Order had a Table in the great Hall.

[a, b] *Lib. N. p. 166.*

[c, d, e, f] *Lib. N. p. 167.*

The said *Register* informs us further, that at the Table set in the [e] middle of the *Hall*, sat the Lord *Bothville* Ambassador from the King of *Scots*, the Lords *Edmond* of *Suffolk*, *Grey*, *Morley*, *Latimer*, *La Ware*, and *Barness*; a little beneath whom sat the *Choire* of the *Soveraign*'s *Chappel*.

At another Table, on the [f] left hand side of the *Hall*, sat the President *Kussemburg*, with the Ambassadors of the King of the *Romans*, and the *Duke* his Son; over against whom on the other side sat the Lord *Malpart*, Ambassador from the Duke of *Britagne*, the Lord *Housey* and others, * *Knights*, *Esquires*, and *Officers* which had given their attendance at the *high Mass*.

* *MS. penes Arth. Com Anglesey, f. 167. a.*

Moreover at the *Feast* holden at *Windesor*, [g] *an.* 11 *H.* 8. we meet with an account of several other *Tables* set in St. *Georges Hall*, beside those of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*: For on the [h] Southside, opposite to the *Knights-Companions* Table, was a Table placed for the Lord *Steward*, at which then sat certain *French Gentlemen*, being *Hostages* of *France*, accompanied with *Earls* and *Lords*, and none at that Board under the Degree of a *Lord*. At [i] the second Table of the said Southside, sat the Dean of *Windesor*, Doctor *Vesey Register* of the *Order*, the Abbots of *Towerhill* and *Medemenham* (who that Morning read the *Epistle* and *Gospel*) and the *Choire* or *Chappel*. And at the [k] West end of the same Table (which was all joined together as far as to the *Choire*) sat the other *Officers* of the *Order*, as [l] *Register*, *Garter*, and *Usher* of the *Black Rod*, accompanied with the *Legats* Brother, and four other *Strangers*, and beneath the Strangers sat divers *Knights*, next to them sat the [m] *Officers* of *Arms*, then several other *Gentlemen* filled up the Table, unto the *Chappel* adjoining to the *Hall*; the residue of *Officers* sat in the [n] *Chappel* at divers Tables.

[g, h, i, k, l, m, n] *MS. in Offic. Armor. M. 17. fol. 28.*

In the eighth year of King *Charles* the First, the *Dinner* being then prepared in the *Banqueting-House* at *Whitehall*, we find a particular mention of a *Table* for the *Officers* of the *Order*, and in what part of the Room it was then set, namely on the [o] right hand side of the *Banqueting-house*, over against the Table of the *Knights-Companions*: who all sat after the manner of the *Knights-Companions* on the further side of the Table; having their Meat brought and served up to them by the *Yeomen* of the *Guard*, and some of the *Soveraigns Servants*. And at the *Soveraigns* command, signified by the *Treasurer* of the *Houshold*, they sat covered all Dinner while, the *Prelate* and *Register* in their four cornerd Caps, and the other three in their Hats. So also at the next Great *Feast viz. an.* * 9 *Car.* 1. at *Windesor*, these *Officers* (Dining in the *Great Hall*) sat covered, but not till such time as the *Soveraign* (by the *Treasurer* of the *Houshold*) had given command for it.

[o] *Lib. R. p. 78.*

* *Ibid. p. 85.*

And though it was by the *Soveraigns* command that they sat covered at this time also, yet the following Afternoon it was moved against in *Chapter*, as a thing unfit to be permitted; ‖ because some of the grand *Nobility* always served the *Soveraign* at this *Feast* uncovered, and therefore not fitting that the *Officers* (being all of far lower Degree excepting the *Prelate*) should sit with their Hats on. Whereupon it was Ordered, [p] *That it should be referred to the further consideration of the* Knights-Commissioners.

‖ *Ibid. pag. 98.*

[p] *Lib. R. p. 88.*

Afterwards we find it was Ordered in *Chapter* on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, *an.* 10 *Car.* 1. [q] *That these* Officers *should be at their choice, either to keep the Feast privately by themselves, or sit uncovered where the* Soveraign *Dined*. They thereupon

[q] *Ibid. pag. 94.*

upon thence forward, forbore sitting in the *Hall*, or where else the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* sat; and at the *Grand Feasts*, celebrated at *Windesor*, since the present *Soveraigns* Happy Return, they had their Messes served up into the *Chappel*, at the end of St. *Georges Hall*, and there Dined.

By what is before spoken, touching the order of sitting at *Dinner*, *an.* 11. *H.* 8. it appears, that the *Officers* of *Arms* did then also sit at a *Table* in St. *Georges Hall*, which joined to that, where the *Officers* of the *Order* also sat. And among the memorials of the *Feast* held *an.* 19 *Eliz.* it is noted that on the [r] *Eve* thereof, the *Heralds* had at *Supper*, their allowance as accustomed, *viz.* 16 Dishes of Meat at the first course, and 8. at the second.

r *MS. pen. præ. fat. G. O. T. pag.* 113.

A [s] little before the *Soveraigns* second course is sent for, all the press of People (which throng towards the *Knights-Companions* Tables, out of curiosity to behold them sitting at Dinner and observe their Services) are to be removed away towards the side Tables; whereby a place may be left spacious enough, for the *Soveraign* to take all the *Knights-Companions* in view; which being done, the *Soveraign* [t] stands up and drinks to them (and so is it remembred to be done by [u] King *Philip* and Queen *Mary*) they standing all the while uncovered, and which they do altogether, till they have pledged him.

s *Coll. St. W.* t *le N. Cl.*

u *MS pag.* 13.

The manner of proclaiming the Soveraigns Style

And [w] immediately before the said course is brought in, the Press is again removed, from the *Knights-Companions* Table, to make another spacious lane from the lower end of the *Hall* up to the *State*. At which [x] lower end the *Officers* of *Arms* assemble, and there make themselves ready to proceed up in the following Order.

w *Coll. St. W.* x *le N. Cl.*

Garter,
Clarenceux and *Norroy*.
Heralds, two and two.
Pursuivants, two and two.

Having put themselves in the foresaid Order, they [a] altogether make their Reverence to the *Soveraign*, and proceed near the side of the *Knights-Companions* Table, until they come to the [b] middle of the *Hall*, where after another Reverence made, they go still forward, and when *Garter* hath passed about [c] two yards beyond the *Knights* Table, and come near the Haut Pas ascending the *Soveraigns* State, they jointly make the like Reverence again.

a b c *Ibid.*

Then *Garter* with a loud and audible voice, crys *Largess* thrice, (though anciently but [d] twice.)

d *Coll. St. W. le N. Cl. & MS. fol. pen. G. O. T. pag.* 114

Upon *Garters* beginning to cry *Largess*, [e] all the *Knights-Companions* (except *Kings* and Great *Princes*, if any be present) stand up uncovered (so did the [f] *Officers* of the *Order* when they Dined in the *Hall*) until he hath made an end. Which Custom it seems had been, *an.* 7 *Car.* 1. for some years [g] discontinued. Then *Garter* proceeds, and proclaims the *Soveraigns Stiles* and *Titles* of *Honor*; first in *Latin*, as followeth.

e *Lib. C.* p 103. f *Lib. R.* p 85. g *Ibid pag.* 74.

h First Introduced at the Feast, *an.* 19. *Car.* 2. the word *Principis* being used before.

Serenissimi, Excellentissimi, & Potentissimi [h] Monarchæ *Caroli* Secundi Dei Gratia *Magnæ Britanniæ*, *Franciæ*, & *Hiberniæ* Regis, Fidei Defensoris, & Supremi Nobilissimi Ordinis *Garterii*.

Which done, He and all the *Officers* of *Arms*, make another Reverence, and *Garter* Proclaims the *Soveraigns* Stile in *French*.

Du Treshault, Tres-excellent & Tres-puissant Monarque Charles *le Second par le Grace de Dieu, Roy de la* Grande Britaigne, France, *&* d'Irelande, *Defenseur de la Foy, & Soveraign du Tres-noble Ordre de la Iartiere.*

Then *Garter* and the rest of his Fellows, make another Reverence, and lastly he Proclaims the *Soveraign Stiles* in *English*.

1. The Soveraign sitting at dinner. 2. Knights sitting at dinner. 3. Attendants. 4. Court-Cub
7. Treasurer of the Houshold. 8. Controller of the Houshold. 9. Sewer. 10. Pensioners car

Pag. 503.

that serve the knights Tables 5 Garter principall king of Armes 6 Officers of Armes
the second course, 11 Coferer 12 Master of the Houshold, 13 Yeomen of the Guard

Of the most High, most Excellent, and most mighty Monarch Charles **the Second, by the Grace of God King of** Great Britain, France, **and** Ireland, **Defendor of the Faith, and Soveraign of the most Noble Order of the Garter.**

At the end of which (but not before) *Garter* and the rest join together, in crying *Largess* thrice, and then they all make Reverence together.

Hereupon, sometimes the *Treasurer* of the *Houshold* puts the *Soveraign*'s *Largess*, (which is 10*l.* in Gold) into *Garter*'s *Hat*; and this is afterwards divided among the *Officers* of *Arms*, according to Custom. But *an.* 23. *Car.* 2. the Lord [i] *Chamberlain* sent his *Warrant* to Sir *Edward Griffin* Knight, Treasurer of the *Soveraign*'s *Chamber*, to deliver this *Largess Money* to the *Black Rod*, and he put it into *Garter*'s Hat, so soon as the last *Largess* was cryed.

[i] *Book intituled St. George's Feast, in the Lord Chamberlain's Office.*

The proclaiming the *Stile* being finished, all the *Officers* of *Arms* retire about [k] 3 yards backward, keeping their Faces towards the *Soveraign*, and there make another Reverence, and then retyring yet backward, about the same distance, they jointly make another Reverence, after which they retire out of the *Hall* and go to Dinner.

[k] *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

This Ceremony ended, the *Soveraign*'s second Course is brought up, in the following order, first the *Serjeants* at *Arms*, next the *Treasurer* and *Comptroller* of the *Soveraign*'s *Houshold*, next the *Sewer*, then the *Gentlemen Pensioners* bearing the Messes, then the *Cofferer* and *Master* of the *Houshold*, the two *Clearks* of the *Greencloth*, the two *Clearks Controllers*, and lastly the two *Clearks* of the *Kitchin* following all in the rear, habited in their Gowns, and holding their Caps in their hands; and after the *Soveraign*'s Table is compleatly furnished, then is the second Course served up to the *Knights-Companions* Tables, by the *Yeomen* of the *Guard*, in such order as was the first.

The order of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* sitting at *Dinner* on the *Grand Feast* day, *an.* 15. *Car.* 2. The order in proclaiming the *Stile*, and bringing up the second *Course*, with an exact prospect of the inside of St. *George*'s *Hall* at *Windesor*, we have here drawn together for the *Readers* better view.

But where any *Knight-Companion* happens to be Installed at this *Grand Feast*, and is present at Dinner, then *Garter*, and the *Officers* of *Arms*, proceed in order (after they have proclaimed the *Soveraign*'s *Stile* as before) from the lower end of the *Hall*, till they come before the new installed *Knights Mess*, and there he crys *Largess* once, and proclaims his *Stile* in *English* only, after which they retire backward, and go to *Dinner*. Concerning which, we had a full and remarkable instance in the 13. year of the present *Soveraign*, when the Duke of *York* and other Knights were Installed: For after *Garter* had proclaimed the *Soveraign*'s *Stile*, and he, together with the *Officers* of *Arms*, had retired to the lower end of the *Hall*, they all proceeded again, as at proclaiming the *Soveraign*'s *Stile*, to the upper end of the *Knights-Companions* Table, where his Highness the *Duke* sat, and there *Garter* cryed *Largess* twice, and proclaimed his Stile in *English*; then after a joint Reverence made, *Garter* and the *Heralds* now joining with him cryed *Largess* twice. This done, they went backward, as before, to the next senior Installed *Knight*, and proclaimed his *Stile*, and cryed *Largess* but once, the like to all the rest installed at that *Festival*, and so they departed out of the *Hall* to *Dinner*.

It seems to have anciently been the custom of other great *Feasts*, besides this of St. *George*, at the second Course, when the *Soveraign*'s Stile was to be proclaimed, for *Garter* and the *Officers* of *Arms*, to proceed in order up to the *Kings* Table, and there to cry *Largess*, and upon the receipt of the *Kings* Largess (in the name of all the *Officers* of *Arms*) first to make some short *Oration* to the *King*, and then to proclaim his *Stile*; for so [z] *an.* 20. *H.* 7. when the King kept his *Easter* in great State at *Greenwich*, have we met with the following Speech (among some Collections of Sir *Thomas Wryothesley* then *Garter*) made to the King in humble thankfulness, for the Largess at that time bestowed upon the *Officers* of *Arms*.

[z] *MS. intitul. King Hen. 7. Proceedings pen. eund. W. le Neve.*

Most high mighty and excellent Prince, most victorious and Christian King and also our most drede Soveraine and naturell Lord, by whom, through Gods provision, vertue ys greatly incressed and vice oppressed, juxta illud sapientis abhominabiles Regi agunt Impii qui Justitia formatur solium, *the which to your Highnesse is,* viz. *Incressing of vertue and honor perpetual, and to your subjects continuall Welth* teste Saiustio, quia diviciarum & forme gloria fluxa atq; fragilis est virtus clara perpetuaq; habetur *and as concerning us your Officers of Armes, and Servants of honour and of Noblesse, in as moche as in us ys, we humbly thanke your good grace of the greie and abundant Largess geven unto us, in the honour of God and of his most glorieuse Resurrection: and for as moche as wee suffice not to geve graces condigne unto your Highness,* Nam quod præstare tanto, &c. *Wee meekly beseech almighty God long to preserve maintaine and encresse your most noble and royall Estate, which ys the singuler Welthe and comfort of this your realme, and of all your trewe subjects; and to send you the perfict knowledge and victory over all your enemys.*

Prov. 16.

Nor was it unusual for *Poets*, in former times, to present the *Soveraign* with the issue of their Fancies, having a subject so noble as this of the *Grand Feast*; among whom, the following *Verses* were presented to King *Henry* the Seventh, at the *Feast* of St. *George* celebrated at *Windesor* in the 3. year of his Reign, probably by Mr. *John Skelton* (after made Poet *Laureat*) who about that time began to be of some esteem.

* *MS. penes Arth. Com. Anglesey, fol. 169.*

* O moste famous Noble King! thy Fame doth spring and spreade,
Henry the Seventh our Soberain in eiche Regeon,
All England hath cause thy grace to love and dread,
Seing Embassadors seche sore protecyon,
For Ayd, helpe, and succore, which lyeth in thie Elecyone.
England now Rejoyce for Joyous mayest thou bee,
To see thy Kyng so floreshe in dignetye.

This Realme a Seasone floode in greate Jupardie,
When that Noble Prince deceased King Edward;
Which in his Dayes gate honore full nobly,
After his decesse nighe hand all was marr'd,
Eich Regione this Land dispised mischefe when they hard:
Wherefore Rejoyse for joyous mayst thou be,
To see thy Kynge so floreth in high dignetye.

Fraunce, Spayne, Scoteland, and Britanny, Flanders also,
Thyee of them present keepinge thy Noble Feaste,
Of St. George in Windsor, Ambassadors comping more,
Iche of them in honore bothe the more and the lesse,
Seeking thie grace to habe thie Noble begeste;
Wherefore now Rejoise and joyous maiste thou be,
To see thy Kynge so florishing in dignetye.

O Knightly Ordere clothed in Robes with Gartere,
The Queen's grace and thy Mother clothed in the same;
The Nobles of thie Realme Riche in arape, Altere
Lords, Knights and Ladyes, unto thy greate fame,
Now shall all Embassadors know thie Noble Name,
By thy Feaste Royal; nowe joyeous mayest thou be,
To see thie King so florishinge in dignety.

Here this day St. George Patron of this Plate
Honored with the Gartere, cheefe of Chebalrye,
Chaplenes synging protecyon keeping the same,
With Archbushopes and Bushopes bescene nobly,

Such

Much people presente to see the King Henrye;
Wherefore now St. George all we pray to thee,
To keepe our Soberaine in his dignetye.

At the *Grand Feast* held at *Windesor*, [a] *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. the *Queen* (her *Ladies* attending) was conducted into St. *George's Hall*, a [b] little before the *Soveraign's Stiles* were proclaimed, to see the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* sit at *Dinner*.

a MS penes b Ed. Fauconb. gen.

At the *Feast* there celebrated by the present *Soveraign*, in the 15. year of his Reign, the *Soveraign's Stiles* were not proclaimed (as many times heretofore) until the second *Course* was set upon the Table, but it was by the *Soveraign's* special direction, because he expected the *Queens* coming into the *Hall*, to see the state and glory of the *Feast*; who staying something long, and the second *Course* being already brought to the lower end of the *Hall*, and the *Soveraign* seeing it stand there, gave command it should be set upon the Table, but that the proclaiming of his Stiles should be yet forborn. Immediately after, the *Queen* attended with her *Ladies*, entred St. *George's Hall*, and passing up the middle, came to the *Soveraign's* Table, where she was seated on his right hand. Hereupon *Garter*, accompanied by his Fellow *Officers* of *Arms*, proceeded up the *Hall*, and with usual Ceremonies proclaimed the *Soveraign's Stiles*, in *Latine*, *French*, and *English*.

The Queen's coming into the Hall, to observe the Order of the Feast.

In like manner, when the Duke of *York* was Installed at the *Grand Feast*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 2. his *Dutchess*, desirous to see the order and grandeur of it, was brought into the *Hall*, assoon as the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* were set, and passing to the upper end of the Table, where the *Duke* sat, she stood on his left hand all Dinner while.

And it appears to be no new thing, that the *Queens* of *England*, have been desirous to behold the magnificence of this solemn *Feast*; since we also find it recorded *an.* 11. *H.* 8. that a [c] little while before the second Course was carried in, Queen *Katherine* and her *Ladies* came to the [d] *Gallery*, at the end of the *Hall* (which was nobly prepared for her) to see the honorable Services and Ceremonies there performed.

c d MS. in Offic. Armor. [M. 17.] f. 28.

But besides the *Queens* of *England*, the *Ambassadors* of Foreign *Kings* and *States* have counted it an honor, to have view of this *Grand Feast*; and amongst others, we find the [e] *French* Ambassador was *an.* 15. *Jac. R.* conducted into the *Banquetting-house* at *Whitehall*, by Sir *John Fenet* (then Assistant Master of the Ceremonies) about the [f] middle of *Dinner*, where he placed himself at the left hand of the *Soveraign*; and having staid there about an hour, he descended to the *Knights-Companions* Table, and there saluted the *Prince*, and the rest of the *Knights* of the *Order*, as he passed along before them, and so departed.

e f Sir John Fenets Observ. touching foreign Ambassadors, p. 34.

At the *Grand Feast* kept at *Whitehall an.* 19. *Jac. R.* to the sight of which the [g] *Polonian* Ambassador *Osalinskie*, Count Palatine of *Sindomerskie*, having received an invitation, he went, about the middle of *Dinner*, to see and [h] salute the *Soveraign*, the *Prince*, and *Knights-Companions* as they sat at the *Table*; and thence retired into the *Council Chamber*, where he and the [i] *Arch Dukes Agent*, *Van Mab*, had been before treated.

g Ex eod. lib. h Observ. p. 79. i

The next following year, on the [k] 22. of *May*, which was the day assigned for holding the *Grand Feast* at *Whitehall*, the *Prince* (being the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*) supplied his place in the *Banquetting-house* at the Table, whither [l] *Don Carlos de Coloma* the *Spanish* Ambassador, and [m] *Philip* a second Son to the *Lantgrave* of *Hesse* (sent hither on a negotiation of his *Father*) were conducted: the *Spanish* Ambassador [n] standing at his Highness right hand, and the young *Lant-grave* at his left, most part of the Dinner.

k l Ibid. pag. 106. m Pag. 102. n Pag. 108.

An. 3. *Car.* 1. the [o] Ambassador of *Denmark*, *Paul Rosenkrantz*, and *Joachimi*, and *Monsieur Catz*, the Ambassadors and Deputies of the *States*, were conducted altogether, in the [p] time of the second Course, to the *Soveraign's* Table, and there presented themselves, at that side next the *Soveraign's* left hand; and after, passed down along before the *Knights-Companions* (with their respects bestowed personally on each *Knight* as they deemed fitting) and then returned by the way they entred.

o p Pag. 107.

But in this last instance, where there were more *Ambassadors* than one, and from several *Princes*, a Question arose, [q] whether they were to perform this Ceremony of seeing the *Feast*, and presenting themselves at the *Dinner*, singly and alone, or jointly and together; insomuch that the *Danish* Ambassador was of the mind to perform it by himself, [r] which course was approved by the Lord *Chamberlain*: But the States Ambassador *Joachimi*, telling him that he and the *French* Ambassador had been joint spectators, at a *Feast* two or three years before, at which time he was employed a Commissioner hither, the Ambassador of *Denmark* came in along with the others.

q Ibid.
r

Lastly (for we would not be over tedious with Instances) when the *Grand Feast* was held at *Whitehall an.* 19. *Car.* 2. the *Swedish* Ambassador had not only a place assigned him in the *Choire*, at the North side of the Altar, to behold the Solemnities on the *Feast day* in the *Chappel*, and when the *Grand Procession* passed into the *Court*, he also went out at the little door on the North side of the *Chappel*, up to the *Greencloth Chamber*, whence he had a fair prospect of it, and thence returned to behold the Ceremonies of the *Offring*. But when the *Soveraign* was at *Dinner*, he entred the *Banquetting-house* from the *Privy Gallery*, and passing to the *Soveraign's* Table, stood there on the left hand of the *Queen*, thence he went to salute the *Knights-Companions* at their Table. beginning with his *Highness* the Duke of *York*; and at all these places was attended by Sir *Charles Cotterell Master* of the *Ceremonies*.

In the last place comes in the *Banquet*, brought up to the *Soveraign's* Table by the *Pensioners*, in the same order, and with the same Attendants as are the *Soveraign's* Messes; only, in the place of the *Clerk* of the *Kitchin*, the chief *Clerk* of the *Spicery* waits, but the *Banquet* for the *Knights-Companions*, is brought up by the *Yeomen* of the *Guard*.

And now, that the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* have dined, the *Knights* [t] first rise, and having washed, place themselves a little below the State, in their usual order, and there make their Reverences to the *Soveraign*; and hereof we find particular mention made *an.* 24. *H.* 8. in these words, '*The* Knights-Companions *sat upon their Forms, notwithstanding their Boards were taken up, and until the Lords, which at that* Feast *sat at the* Soveraign's *Table, were also taken up, and then they immediately arose, and went together, and made their obeysances to the* Soveraign.

f Collect. W. le N. Cl.
t MS. in Offic. Arm. [M.17.] fol. 35.

After this, the *Soveraign* hears *Grace*, said by the *Prelate*, then is [u] Water brought up with the usual Ceremony, and the *Soveraign* washeth.

u Collect. W. le N. Cl.

The Soveraign's return to the Presence.

This being done, the *Knights-Companions* making again due Reverence to the *Soveraign*, he puts off his Cap, and salutes them as usually, and forthwith proceeds back to the *Presence-Chamber*, with the *Knights* and *Officers* of the *Order* before him, and being arrived at the step before the State, he again saluteth the *Knights-Companions*; who having made their Reverences to him, he appoints the [w] *Hour* for their attendance again, to go to the second *Vespers*, and forthwith passeth thence into his *Privy Lodgings*, taking the *Officers* of the *Order* before him, and the [x] *Knights-Companions* following after; thus they all retire till the time appointed, to go to the second *Vespers*.

w MS. pen. G. O. T. pag. 114.
x Collect. W. le N. Cl.

In like manner doth the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* proceed from the *Presence* to the *Hall*, or such other Room where the *Dinner* is prepared; only his place of Session at the *Table*, is [y] a little on the left hand the Cloth of *State*, or at the [z] end of the Table; and after Dinner he returns to the *Presence*, in the same order as doth the *Soveraign*.

y MS. pen. G. O. T. p. 114. & MS. pen. W. D. N. fol. 8. b.
z Col. Rob. C. Cl. fol. 7.

But what order was taken in King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign, for the entertainment of the *Soveraign's Deputy* at *Windesor*, during the continuance of the *Feast*, may be seen by these following directions, which, to this particular, are very observable.

* Memorandum, that the Saterday at Wyndesor, the Lords and Knights of the Garter keepe the Chamber, and in like case the Sonday at Souper. First the President, at the Board hys messe allone.

* MS. penes Rob. Com. Aylesbury.

Item

Item, the Lords or Knights at the said Boardesende 2. Messe or 3. as the case requireth, Wafers and Ipocras the said Nyghts.

Item, the sayd nyght ther ys oon halle kept for the Lords Servants, and so servede when the Lords be at Soupere.

Item, the Sunday following, the President, with all the Knyghts of the Garter, doo breke their fasts with the Dean of Wyndesor, at hys Costs, except 2. or 3. Chynes of Beif, which be sende from the Castle thythere.

Item, the sayd Sondaye, when the President with the Knyghts be at hyght messe, then there is a lyke halle kepte in the Castle for their Servants and othere.

Item, the sayd Sonday at Dinner, the President keepeth the hall, with the Knyghts at the Boardsend at Dynner; but the President sytteth not in the Chere of Estate, but by.

Item, the sayd Sonday, the Deane of the Colledge with thole Colledge, sytting in thall at the lattere dynere, and no more.

Item, the sayd day and dynner, the Lords and the Deane with the Colledge, the Heralds and the Marshall be served with Wafers and Ipocras.

Memorandum, that the President, and the Knyghts of the Garter, have both the Saterday at night and Sonday, boyde.

Memorandum, that there be sent the Monday following to the Colledge for the Knyghts brekefasts, Brede, Ale, Wyne, a certeyne. 3. Chynes of Beife, a Surloyne of Beif, 4. Capons good, 18. Rabbetts, 18. Pigions, 18. Chyks. And other suche, as the Stewarde of the Feaste thinks best. And all the rest, to be at the charge of the Deane.

SECT. VIII.

The Ceremonies *belonging to the second* Vespers.

SInce the Ceremonies relating to the second *Vespers* at *Windesor*, are but the Repetition of those, which have been performed on the *Eve* of the *Feast*; we shall pass them over with more brevity, being very unwilling to cloy the *Reader* with needless recitals.

The time for *Proceeding* to the *Chapter-house*, hath most usually been about four a Cloek in the Afternoon of St. *George's day*, but sometimes not before five; and so long did the services of the *Dinner* hold, when the *Feast* of St. *George* was celebrated at *Windesor*, the [a] 14. of *September*, *an.* 15. *Jac. R.* that the *Knights-Companions* proceeded by [b] Toreh light to the *Chapter-house*.

a MS. penes b E. W. G. fol. 154. b.

The place from whence the *Proceeding* begins is (as at other times) the *Chamber* of *Presence*; in reference to which the *Sword* is there laid in readiness, on the Chair under the *State*, and all other things put in order, as on the *Eve* of the *Feast*.

The *Persons* whereof the Proceeding is composed, the *manner* and *order* thereof, the publiek *Processional way* to the *Chapter-house*, is the very same as on the *Eve*; and when the *Soveraign* and *Knights* did at any time proceed to the *Chappel* on Horsebaek, on the *Eve* and *Morning* of the *Feast day*, [c] they have, in like manner, proceeded to the second *Vespers*.

c MS. penes Arth. Com. Anglesey, fol. 167. MS. in Offic. Armor. [M 17. b.] & MS. pen. W. D. N. fol. 16. b.

It hath been customary, for the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* to hold a *Chapter* before the second *Vespers*, and therein, for the most part, have been transacted all Affairs relating to this most Noble *Order*; as the making new *Constitutions*, regulating things amiss, reading *Petitions*, making *Orders* thereupon, determining Controversies and Disputes referring to the *Officers* of the *Order*, *Alms-Knights*, *&c.* and such like matters, either ordinary or extraordinary; for instance, *An.* 28 *H.* 8. we find it recorded, that the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* (having performed all the Ceremonies of the *Feast* (then held at *Greenwich*) *viz.*

viz. on the *Eve*, *Matins*, and solemn *Offring* on the *Feast Day*, in the Morning) [d] at the second *Vespers*, before they entred the *Choire*, they went aside to the *Soveraigns Closet*, and there debated the ordinary affairs relating to the Order: but besides this Instance, many other are scattered up and down the *Registers*.

[d] *Lib. N. pag.* 69.

And frequently, both at *Whitehall* and *Greenwich*, (this *Feast* being there celebrated) hath this *Chapter* been held in the *Soveraigns* [f] *Closet*, near the *Chappel*; from whence, at the breaking up thereof, the *Soveraign* hath now and then in [g] Person, proceeded into the *Chappel*, to the second *Vespers*. But generally [h] remained in the *Closet*, during the celebration of those Divine Offices: and in such case, the [i] *Lieutenant* supplying the place of the *Soveraign*, hath proceeded from the *Closet*, through the *Hall* into the *Chappell*. Where note, that the [k] *Proceeding* from the *Presence* to the *Closet* before the *Soveraign*, and thence into the *Chappel* [l] before the *Soveraigns Lieutenant* (as also the returns thereof) are ordered in all points, as on the *Eve* of the *Feast*.

[f] *MS. penes* [g] *W.D.N. vide etiam MS. penes G.O.Y. pag.* 113. *&* *Collect. præfat. R. C. Cl. fol.* 9.
[h] *Ex eod.* [i] *MS. penes* [k] *eund W.* [l] *D. N. fol.* [m] 8. *b.*

But, if the *Soveraign* do not proceed to the second *Vespers*, then is this *Chapter* held, in some convenient Room of the *Soveraigns Privy Lodgings*, before the *Proceeding* begin, for so it was *an.* [m] 6 *Eliz.* and *an.* [n] 13 *Car.* I. when (at the hour of *Tierce*) many things were Decreed in a *Chapter* there celebrated.

[n] *Palm. Journ. pag.* 25.

As soon as the *Chapter* riseth, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, proceed to the *West Door* of the *Choire*, where the *Alms-Knights* being arrived, first they, after them the whole Proceeding enters, in the usual order, and with the accustomed Reverences and Ceremonies; all placing themselves, as they arrive at the Stations and Seats formerly mentioned, and in that manner and Order, as they did at their Entry into the *Choire*, to the first *Vespers*.

Which Ceremony of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* entrance and Session in their Stalls, being finished, the *Prelate* ascends to the *Altar* as before, and begins the *Divine Service*, during which, the *Scruteny* for *Election* of *Knights* is most commonly taken; of which we *have spoken* at large in the *Chapter* of *Elections*.

When the second *Vespers* are finished, the *Proceeding* passeth out of the *Choire*, the *Knights-Companions* and the *Soveraign* following, and returns to the Presence Chamber, whence *He* and the *Knights-Companions* retire till *Supper* be ready; all things being done, as when they past out of the *Choire*, and *Proceeded* to the *Presence* at the finishing of the first *Vespers*.

But *an.* 15 *Car.* I. it hapning to be late, ere the second *Vespers* were ended, the *Soveraign* went [o] not to the *Presence Chamber* from the *Chappel*, but marched directly to the great *Hall* to *Supper*, by Torch light.

[o] *Palmers Journ. pro an.* 1639. *p.* 33.

When the *Feast* hath been kept at *Whitehall* or *Greenwich*, if the *Soveraign* went [p] into the *Chappel* to the second *Vespers*, the return of the *Proceeding* was immediately thence through the great *Hall*, and up into the *Presence*. But if the *Soveraign* proceeded no farther then the [q] *Closet*, and there staid, both holding the *Chapter* and during *Divine Service*; then the *Soveraigns Lieutenant* as he came from the *Chappel*, past also through the Great *Hall*, and up into the *Guard Chamber* and thence to the *Closet*, where receiving the *Soveraign*, they all proceeded thence before him into the *Presence* in the usual order; where the *Proceeding* ending, all retired till *Supper* was ready. Nevertheless if the *Supper* on the *Feast Day* at night was prepared in the *Banquetting-House*; then the *Soveraigns* return from the *Chappel* or *Closet*, was over the *Terrace*, into the said Room, and up to the *State* there.

[p] *MS. pen. W. D. N. fol.* 10. *&* 26. *b.*
[q] *Et fol.* 8. *b. vide etiam MS. penes G.O.Y. pag.* 113. *&* 114.

SECT. IX.

Of the Supper *on the* Evening *of the* Feast Day.

IT hath been very seldom seen, that the *Soveraign* hath supped publickly in St. *Georges Hall*, on the *Feast Day*; but when he doth (as [r] *an.* 14 *Car.* I.) the

[r] *Palm. Journ. pag.* 20.

the *Proceeding* thither, the *Ceremonies* and *attendance* there, and return thence, are in all respects performed, as at the *Supper* on the *Eve.*

But if the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* hath on this night supped publickly (as formerly it often hapned at *Whitehall*) then this Meal was made in the [r] *Presence Chamber*, where the *Lieutenant* sat alone at the *Soveraign's Table*, on the left hand of the Cloth of State, as was usual at other times, and the *Knights-Companions* at a *Table* set along the side of the Room; all being served after the accustomed manner.

[r] MS penes W. D. N. fol. 4. & 8. b. & MS pen. G. O. T. pag. 113.

Sometimes, at *Greenwich*, the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* and *Knights-Companions* have supped in the [t] *Council Chamber*, as *an.* 8. *Eliz.* (and also in the [u] *Great Chamber*, at the end of the Guard-Chamber on the *Eve*, as *an.* 27. of the same *Queen*) And when *Supper* was ended, they all proceeded back to the *Presence-Chamber*, and there (having appointed the Hour of meeting the next morning) took leave one of another, and departed to their several Lodgings, to put off their Robes.

[u] Collect. R. C. Cl. fol. 9.

CHAP. XXII.

THE Ceremonies OBSERVED ON THE Last Day OF THE FEAST.

SECT. I.

Of Proceeding *to the* Chapter-house *in the* Morning.

IT is observed by the Author of the *Rationale*, upon our Book of *Common-Prayer*, [a] That great Solemnities have some days after them, to continue their memory *in Prorogationem Festi*, which are [b] added as Attendants in honor of the *Feast*. And it may be well enough presumed, that upon this ground, the *Founder* lengthened out the *Feast* of St. *George* with part of the following day; one being too little to contain all the Ceremonies, designed by him to set forth the State of this high Festival.

[a] Pag. 128.
[b] Ibid. 174.

In

[a] *Joh* 7. *v.*39. Among the [a] *Jews*, the last day of the *Feast* of *Tabernacles* was taken for the greatest day; but though it be not so to be understood here, yet doth this last day share in a very great part of the Solemnity of the *Feast*; for in the distribution of the *Ceremonies*, there are appointed to it particulars, both *Civil* and *Solemn*. As first, the Affairs transacted in *Chapter*, chiefly concerning the *Election* of *Knights*, with their *Proceeding* to the *Chappel*; and secondly, the *Services* used in the *Chappel*, *viz.* the *Offring* of *Gold* and *Silver*, and *Hatchments* of deceased *Knights-Companions*.

[c] *Collect. W. le N. Cl.* The bringing of the [c] *Sword* into the *Presence*, the setting the *Proceeding* in order, and the manner of the *Soveraign* and *Knights* Proceeding to the *Chapter-house*, is performed in the same sort as it was on the *Eve* of the *Feast*; the Solemnity differing only in this, that then the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* are obliged by the *Statutes*, to proceed in full Robes; here, by the indulgence of King *Henry* the Eighths [d] *Statutes* all are dispensed with, saving the upper Robe or *Mantle*: and where then, the Image of St. *George* was worn pendent at the *Collar* of the *Order*, now a blew *Ribband* sufficeth; and in lieu of their *Caps* and *Feathers*, they now wear only their ordinary *Hats*.

[d] *Art.* 12.

[e] *Collect. W. le N. Cl.* First, therefore the [e] *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the *Order*, repair to the *Soveraigns* Privy Lodgings, and there attend his going into the *Presence Chamber*.

The *Officers* of *Arms*, *Prebends*, and *Alms-Knights*, as also the *Knights-Companions Servants*, (habited as the Day before) meet in the several places they then did, and there wait the *Soveraigns* coming forth.

The *Soveraign* attended with his Train-bearers, enters the *Presence*, and takes his Stand before the *State*.

The *Proceeding* advanceth towards the *Chapter-House*, in the accustomed Order.

Generally, and for the most part, the *Proceeding* passeth on foot (and sometimes on Horseback) the publiek way: yet the late *Soveraign* King *Charles* the First, used now and then, to pass the private way, [f] over the *Terrace*. But *an.* 15 *Jac. Reg.* there was no solemn proceeding at all, for the publiek way was so [g] pestered with *Carts*, that the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* were constrained to pass to the *Chapter-House* in their ordinary Apparel, and put on their *Mantles* there.

[f] *An.* 7. *Car.* 1. *MS. & an* 14. *Car.* 1. *Palm. Journ. pag.* 20.

[g] *MS penes E. W. G. f.* 154. *b.*

It was the ancient Custom, to celebrate a *Chapter* in the *Morning* of the last Day of the *Feast*, before the *Soveraign* proceeded to the *Chappel*, whereinto the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* entring and opening the same, have given dispatch to such affairs relating to the *Order*, as were, either not finished or treated of in the Precedent *Chapters*: but the chief business then is to make *Election* of *Knights*, where any Stall is void.

Which *Chapter*, hath sometimes (when the *Soveraign* did not go to the *Chappel*) been kept in the [h] *Privy Chamber*, and the present Affairs dispatcht in that Room; and then the *Soveraigns Lieutenant* waving the *Chapter-House*, hath proceeded straight on to the *Chappel*, and entred in at the South Door thereof.

[h] *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

SECT. II.

Of the Elect Knights Proceeding *into the* Choire.

WHere an *Election* hath been made of a Person then present at *Court*, he is called in to the *Chapter-House* by *Garter* according, to the usual manner. Where the *Garter* is buckled about his Leg, and the *George* put about his Neck; (of which particular Ceremony we have [i] already spoken) this being done, it hath been usual for the *Elect Knight* to receive the further honor of passing immediately

[i] *Chap.* 10.

immediately in the *Proceeding* to the *Chappel*, whether it were from the *Chapter-House*, or *Presence-Chamber*, which he doth in his [k] ordinary apparel, always bare-headed, as did the [l] Earl of *Northumberland*, *an.* 11 *Car.* 1. and without any other Ornaments of the *Order*, saving the foresaid *Garter* and *George*: and the *Place* allowed him in the *Proceeding*, is between the *Knights Companions* and the *Officers* of *Arms*, of which there are a multitude of Presidents.

In this place [m] Sir *Henry Sydney* rode, in the *Proceeding* to the *Chappel* at *Windesor*, *an.* 6 *Eliz.* and here went the Lord [n] *Hunsdon* immediately after he was elected, *an.* 3. *Eliz.* so also the [o] Earl of *Northumberland* the 5*th* of the same *Queen.*

But where two *Knights* have been Elected, they then proceed together before the *Knights-Companions*, (the Senior being taken on the right hand) as did the Earl of [p] *Arundel* and Visc. *Rochester*, *an.* 9 *Jac. Reg.* and the Earl of [q] *Rutland* and Sir *George Villars*, *an.* 14 *Jac. Reg.* Howbeit *Charles* Duke of *York*, being elected at the same time, went in the *Proceeding* [r] next before the *Prince* his Brother, then the *Soveraigns Lieutenant.*

When the *Proceeding* is arrived at the *Choire* Door, the *Alms-Knights*, *Prebends*, and *Officers* of *Arms*, the *Knights-Companions* and *Officers* of the *Order*, enter with usual Ceremony, and take their several Stations, as on the *Eve*; and lastly, the *Soveraign*, if present. The *Elect Knight* also enters in tourn as he proceeded, and is [s] placed by *Garter* next before the *lowest Stall*; or if there be two newly Elected, and both proceed to the *Chappel*, the one is placed under the lowest Stall on the *Princes* side, the other under the lowest Stall on the *Soveraigns*. But if any great State pass in the *Proceeding*, he then is placed before such Stalls as is designed for him; and so was [t] *Charles* Duke of *York*, *an.* 9 *Jac. Reg.* to wit, before the Stall next below the *Princes*.

Being thus placed, they are there to [u] stand all *Service* time; for so did the Earl of [w] *Suffolk*, *an.* 3 *Car.* 1. the Earl of [x] *Northampton*, *an.* 4 *Car.* 1. and the Earl of [y] *Northumberland*, *an.* 9 *Car.* 1. nor are they to make any more *Reverences* than at their [z] coming into the *Choire*, and passing out, unless a Stool be brought in and they permitted to sit down, and then are they obliged to make their *Reverences* [*] upon all occasions, when they either sit or rise.

Nevertheless, by reason of the length of the Ceremonies, and in case of Age or Infirmity, the *Knights Elect*, have obtained Licence from the *Soveraign*, or his *Lieutenant*, to sit down and be covered. So, for like cause, the Lord [a] *Burleigh* in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, and the Earl of *Southampton*, *an.* 13 *Car.* 2. were permitted to sit. The like indulgence had the Earls of [b] *Dunbar* and *Penbroke*, *an.* 6 *Jac.* from the *Prince*, (then the *Soveraigns Lieutenant*) and also the Earl of [c] *Rutland*, and Sir *George Villars* from the *Soveraign*, *an.* 14 *Jac. Reg.* and lastly *James* Duke of *York*, [d] *an.* 17 *Car.* 1. But, though the favour of reposing at this time is allowed, the [e] *Stool* may not to be brought into the *Choire*, before the *Soveraign* has been pleased, by some publick signal, to give him leave to sit down, and then to be called for and not before; though it ought to be in readiness, in some place near and unseen.

k *Ex Collect. R. C. Cl. fol. 3. vid. etiam MS. pen. E. W. G.*
l *MS.*
m *MS. fol. pen. W. D. N. fol. 56. b.*
n *Ibid. MS. fol. 3. b.*
o *Ibid. f. 10. b.*
p, q, r *MS. penes E. W. G.*
s *Ex Collect. A. V. W.*
t *MS. penes E. W. G. f. 149. b.*
u *Collect. A. V. W.*
w *Lib. R. p. 35.*
x *Ibid. p. 46.*
y *Ibid. pag. 90.*
z, * *MS.*
a *MS.*
b, c *MS. penes E. W. G. fol. 147. b.*
d *Palm. large Journ. pag. 422.*
e *MS.*

SECT. III.

Of the Ceremonies *performed at* Divine Service.

AND now to pass on: When the *Soveraign* hath ascended his Royal Seat, The *Knights-Companions* in due order take their Stalls.

The *Officers* of the *Order* their Seats; and then

The *Prelate* (with the *Serjeant* of the *Vestry* before him) goes up to the Northside of the *Altar*, and begins the *Morning Service.*

After him, the *Verger* of the *Colledge* proceeds up before two *Prebends*; who put on their Copes on the Southside of the *Altar*, and assist in the Divine Offices.

But whereas the late *Soveraign* King *Charles* the First, of ever Blessed Memory, had throughout all his Raign, a *Sermon* preached before him, on every *Tuesday* Morning, it sometimes fell out that this latter *Feast* day, hapned to be on a *Tuesday*, (as it did *an.* 8. of the same *Soveraign* at *Whitehall*) and then [f] at such time as the *Prelate* was otherwise to proceed up to the *Altar*, the *Pulpit* was brought into the *Choire*, and placed in the [g] middle of the lowermost Haut Pas, and immediately the *Sermon* began: which being ended, it was removed, and forthwith the [h] *Prelate* proceeded up to the *Altar* as usually, and began Service.

f *Collect. W. le N. Cl.* g h

Mass of Requiem.

In this Morning Service (before the Reformation of our *Church*) was the [i] *Mass* of *Requiem* solemnly sung by the *Abbot* of *Tower-hill*, for the *Souls* of the *Knights-Companions* and all faithful *Souls* departed; and this was taken care for by the [k] *Statutes*.

i *Lib. N. p* 109. k *E.3* l *H.5.* *Stat. Art.* 14. *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 12.

As also, that at the Celebration thereof, [l] all the *Knights* at the *Feast* should be present, unless any one were hindered by some reasonable cause, or in special manner Licenced by the *Soveraign*.

At this Celebration were the deceased *Knights-Companions Atchievements* also *Offered*, with solemn Ceremony; concerning which we shall discourse at large [m] anon.

m *Chap.* 25.

Offering of Gold and Silver.

Another Ceremony belonging to the service of this Morning, is the *Offring* of *Gold* and *Silver*, which when the first *Sentence* of the *Offertory* hath been pronounced, is again performed by the *Soveraign* (or his *Lieutenant*) and *Knights-Companions* present.

The Ceremonies and Circumstances appertaining thereunto at this time, are the same throughout in all particulars, as are set down to be observed at the like *Offering* on the *Feast Day*; and therefore for avoiding Repetition, we shall refer the *Reader* to the place where that is treated on [n] before.

n *Chap.* 21. *Sect.* 5.

Proceeding out of the Choire.

After all the before-mentioned Ceremonies in the *Chappel*, and Divine Service are ended, the *Prelate* descends from the *Altar* to his Form; Whereupon all prepare to go out of the *Choire* (which is exactly performed in the usual order, as on the *Eve* of the *Feast*) from whence, the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* most commonly proceed to the *Chapter-House*, where being entred, they immediately [p] put off their *Mantles*, and therewith the Ceremonies of this *Grand Feast* take ending.

p *MS. pen. W. D. N. fol.* 16.*b.* *& MS. penes E. W. G de an.* 15. *Jac. R vide porro Lib. R. pag.* 20. *&* 30. *MS. pag.* 14.

Heretofore, when the *Feast* was held at *Whitehall*, the *Soveraigns Lieutenant* and *Knights-Companions* were accustomed, to put off their *Mantles* [q] without the *Chappel-Door*, assoon as they returned from *Morning Service*. But *an.* 13 *Car.* 1. at the finishing of this *Morning Service*, the [r] *Proceeding* went back before the *Soveraign* to the *Presence-Chamber*, so also *an.* 19 *Car.* 2. and in like manner *an.* 17 *Car.* 1. [s] it marched before the *Soveraign* in order, from the *Cathedral Church* in *York*, to the *Soveraign Palace*, before they put off their *Mantles*.

q *Ex eod. MS. penes W. D. N. f.* 3.*b.* *&* 26.*b.* *vide etiam Collect. W. le N. Cl. de an.* 10. *Eliz. Et MS. penes G. O. Y. pag.* 113.
r *Lib. R. pag.* 126.
s *Palm. Journ. pag.* 45.

SECT. IV.

The Diets *at some of the* Grand Feasts.

WE were unwilling to interrupt the Course of the Ceremonies relative to this *Grand Feast*, with what some will esteem perhaps improper, if not trivial: nevertheless since others judge it may contribute to the setting forth the Grandeur and Magnificence of it, if the particulars of the *Diets* be made known, we shall add for *Corolary*, an account of some of them here.

An

An Ordinance for the *King*, the *Queen*, and the *Knights* of the *Garter* at *Windesor*, for *Saturday Supper* and *Sunday Dinner*, the 28. and 29. days of *May*, *an.* 11. *Reg. Henrici octavi.* *Lib. MS penes Rob. Com. Aylesbury, fol. 1.*

Saturday Supper
first Course.

Canell. Soppus to Potage.
Organs of *Ling* Standerd.
Salmon Calver.
Pyke in Erblade.
Plece.
Bremes mar.
Cunger gr.
Solles in solemsauce.
Moletts in grave.
Tenches in Gresell. sawce.
Carpe in sharpe sawce.
Creves mar.
Dowsetts desire.
Tart covered.

Sunday Dinner
first Course.

A *George* on Horseback.
Chikins in brewel.
Pestel of *Hert* for gr. sh.
Capons in Erblade.
Cignets.
Carpes of Venison.
Capons of halt gr.
Herons.
Pyke in Latum sawce.
Salman Calver.
A made *Dish.*
Pies of Paries.
Custard planted with Garters.
A *Tart* closed with Arms.
Fritor Lion.
Prewne Orangs.
Uno eq. per pero
Leche.

Second Course.

Mainemy Royal.
Halebut in engrailed.
Fresh *Sturgion.*
Base.
Sowre *Moletts.*
Bremes aque dulc.
Perches in soyle.
Eliis gr. rost.
Chines of *Salmon* r.
Porpos in Armor.
Creves-----dozen.
Orangs bak.
Tart mélior.
Leche Cumforte.

Second Course.

A *Sotelte.*
Jely Ypocras.
Kind *Kid.*
Fesants.
Brewes, or *Mewes.*
Godwits.
Birds of the Nest.
Chikens.
Peions.
Rabets.
Peres made.
Sturgion r.
Creves dd.
Quales.
Venison in past.
Tart party.
Orangs bak.
Leche.

For the *Knights* Dinner on *Sunday.* *Ibid. fol. 2.*

First Course.

Chikins in brewel.
Pestels or gr. schare.
Capon in Erblade.
Cignets or *Green-Geese.*
Carpes of *Venison* or *Veal.*
Herons or *Cullys.*

Second Course.

Jely Yppocras.
Kyd or *Lambe* peru.
Fesaunts.
Quales.
Chikins.
Pigeons.

Pyke or *Lampre* p.
Salmon Calver.
Pies of Paris.
Custard Planeyd.
Fryttors.
Rabets.
Sturgion r.
Creves dd.
Venison in past.
Tart party.
Bawdrets or Orangs bak.
Leche.

This Fare followeth the *Knights* at the *second Table.*

First Course.	*Second Course.*
Potage.	A *Viande.*
Gr. *Schare.*	*Lambe.*
Capon boiled.	*Chikins* or *Pigions.*
Green *Geese.*	*Venison* bak. or *Tart.*
Veal rosted.	*Creves* dd.
Pies or *Custard.*	*Leche* or *Frittor.*
Lampre pr.	
Frittor or *Leche.*	

This *Fare* is for the *first Hall.*

First Course.	*Second Course.*
Potage.	A *Viand.*
Gr. *Schare.*	*Lamb.*
Capon boiled.	*Chikins* or *Pigeons.*
Green *Geese* for 12 or 16 Mess.	*Venison* bak.
Veal.	*Leche* or *Frittor.*
Pies or *Custard* paru.	
Frittor.	

Ibid. fol. 3. *Waste* to be given by the great *Officers* Cxx. Mess.
Beef, Veal, Geese, and *Capon.*
Waste to be dealt at *Gate, viz.* CCCC. Mess.
Beef, Veal, and *Bakemeats, Venison* or other.

This course for giving *Waste,* was continued until *an.* 12. *Car.* 2. that the *Purveyances* and *Provisions* for the *Kings Houshold,* were taken away by *Act* of *Parliament.*

Ibid. fol. 4. A *Proportion* made for the foresaid *Feast* of St. *George.*

Beef	24	*Kyds*	14
Moulton	92	*Lambs Sukkers*	14
Veales.	74	*Lambs* gr.	96
Pykes	24	*Young Cranes*	3 doz.
Lampre pr.	240	*Dottrells*	5 dd.
Cygnets	3 doz.	*Quails*	15 dd.
Green Geese	18 dd.	*Creme*	16 gall.
Herons	8 dd.	*Crude*	60 g.
Fesants	4 dd.	*Milk*	60 g.
Brewz or *Gullys*	6 dd.	*Butter* and *Eggs* plenty.	
Goddwitts	5 dd.	*Peacocks* with their Tails	16
Birds of the Nest	200.	*Pastry.*	
Pigeons	50 dd.	*Creme*	24 g.
Chikins	52 dd.	*Crude*	80 g.
Rabits	36 dd.	*Milk*	76 g.

Capon

Capon of gr.	12.	*Aples*	200.
Capon k.	8. dd.	*Oranges*.	300.
Capon cos.	16. dd.	*Butter* } to serve the said *Feast*.	
Hens.	40. dd.	*Eggs* }	

	l.	s.	d.
The charge of the whole came to	431	03	09.

For the *Feast* of St. *George*, held at *Whitehall*, on *Munday* the 22. and *Tuesday* the 23. days of *April*, in the 19. year of the Reign of our Soveraign Lord King *Charles* the Second, *An. Dom.* 1667.

The *Supper* for the *Soveraign* on the *Eve* (being *Munday* night) was prepared and set upon the Table in the *Banqueting-House*, two by two, beginning at the East end of it, and the rest of the Dishes were set upon the other Dishes, as Riders in the middle.

First Course.

1. *Ducklings* boyled xij.
3. *Salmon* boyled j. case.
5. Green *Geese* xij.
7. *Pike* with *Prawns*, *Cockles*, and *Oysters*.
9. *Venison* Pye.
11. *Chickens* boyled xij.
13. *Carps* Great iij.
15. *Tongues* and *Udders* iiij.
17. *Kid* j. case.
19. *Beatilia* Pye.
21. Petty *Paties*.
22. *Rabbits* fryed xij.
23. *Sallet*.
24. *Capon* good *per Sallets* iiij.
25. *Rabbits* marrionated
26. Hashed *Sallet*.
27. Cold *Sparagrass*.
28. Pickled *Sallets*.
29. *Sweet breads* Arago.
2. *Veal* Arago.
4. *Pidgeon* Pye.
6. Gammon *Bacon* with iiij *Pullets* greatcourse.
8. Bisk *Pigeons* xij.
10. Chines *Mutton* and *Veal* iij.
12. *Hens* with Eggs hasht vj.
14. *Oyster* Pye.
16. *Capons* boyled ij.
18. *Pullet* a Granow iiij.
20. *Capons* fat. v.

Second Course.

1. *Veal* Sousst ij.
3. *Pullets* Great vj.
5. *Ducklings* xij.
7. *Lobsters* vj.
9. *Pheasants* with Eggs vj.
11. *Partridges* xij.
13. *Crabs* buttered vj.
15. Gammons *Bacon* ij.
17. *Chickens* marrionated xij.
19. *Pullets* Sousst vj.
21. *Tongues* iiij.
22. *Leich*.
23. *Anchovis*, *Caveare*, and pickled *Oysters*.
24. *Eggs* of Portugal.
25. *Blamange*.
26. *Creame* Pistache.
27. *Sparragrass*.
28. *Jelly*.
29. *Prawnes*.
2. *Salmon* col.
4. *Tongue* Pye.
6. *Leverets* vj.
8. *Chickens* fat xij.
10. *Skerret* Pye.
12. Turky *Chicks* xij.
14. *Tarts* sorts.
16. *Pigeons* tame xij.
18. *Lamprey* Pye.
20. *Sallet*.

Four Mess of *Fare* served to *Supper* on the *Eve* to the *Knights-Companions* Tables, *viz.* one to the Duke of *Yorks* Table, and three to the other six *Knights* then present, and one Mess of the same fare to the *Prelate* and the other *Officers* of the *Order*.

First Course.

Capons boyled ij.
Wildboar Pye.
Kid j. case.
Carpes great iij.

Second Course.

Pullets great vj.
Gammon *Bacon* ij.
Ducklings xij.
Carpes Sousst ij.

Chicken

Chicken Pye frosted.
Gammon *Bacon* with 4. *Pullets* great.
Bisk of *Shelfish.*
Venison Pye.
Bisk *Pigeons* xij.
Tongue and *Udders* iiij.
Pike great.
Capons fat iiij.
Turkey Pye.
Jegot *Mutton* ferst.
Veal Arago.
Green *Geese* x.
Beatilia Pye.
Chickens boyled xij.
Sweet Breads Arago.
Sallets.
Partridges viij.
Lamprey Pye.
Oyster Pye.
Turkey Chicks xij.
Prawnes.
Pidgeons tame xij.
Tongues iiij.
Chickens fat xij.
Tongue Pye.
Rabbets xij.
Anchovis Caveare and pickled *Oysters.*
Leich.
Lobsters vj.
Sparagrass.
Tarts Sorts.
Jelly.
Sallets.
Blamange.

The *Soveraigns* Dyet on St. *Georges* Day *Dinner.*

First Course.

1. *Wild-Boar* Pye.
3. *Chine* of Beef.
5. *Beatilia* Pye.
7. *Ducklings* boyled xij.
9. Chines *Mutton* and *Veal* iij.
11. *Venison* boyled.
13. *Carpes* great iij.
15. *Venison* Pye.
17. *Turbut.*
19. *Turkey* Pye.
21. Line *Veal* larded and col. iij.
22. Cold *Sparagrass.*
23. Hasht *Sallets.*
24. Almond *Pudding.*
25. *Sweet Breads.*
26. *Sallet.*
27. Petty *Pattyes.*
28. *Puddings* white and Black.
29. *Rabbets* fryed xij.
2. *Veal* Arago.
4. Haggest *Puddings.*
6. *Capons* fat v.
8. Gammon *Bacon and Pigeons.*
10. *Capons* boyled ij.
12. *Pikes* rosted ij.
14. *Pigs* rosted ij.
16. Green *Geese* xij.
18. *Chicken* Pye.
19. *Chickens* marrionated xij.

Second Course.

1. *Pullets* Sousst vj.
3. *Salmon* col.
5. *Rabbets* rosted xij.
7. *Phesants* with Eggs vj.
9. *Chickens* rosted xij.
11. *Oysters, Skerets,* and *Sweet-Breads.*
13. *Tart* sorts.
15. Gammon *Bacon.*
17. *Lamprey* Pye.
19. *Salmon* boyled j. case.
21. Pickle *Sallet.*
22. *Tongues* iiij.
23. *Eggs* Portugal.
24. *Shardoones.*
25. *Leach.*
26. Luke *Olives.*
27. *Sparagrass.*
28. Pickeld *Oysters.*
29. *Prawnes.*
2. *Tongue* Pye.
4. *Blamange.*
6. *Crabs* butter'd vj.
8. *Pidgeons* tame xij.
10. Bisk shell *fish.*
12. *Ducklings* rosted xij.
14. *Lobsters* rosted vj.
16. *Piggs* sousst.
18. *Veal* hasht.
20. *Peacock* Pye.

Four Mess of *Fare* served to the *Knights-Companions,* and one Mess to the *Prelate,* &c. on St. *Georges* Day *Dinner.*

First Course.

1. *Sallet.*
3. Loin of *Veal* larded with coll.
17. Green *Geese* x.
18. *Carpes* great iij.
19. Haggest *Pudding.*
2. *Chickens* boyled xij.
4. *Turkey* Pye.
6. *Salmon* j. case.

5. *Piggs*

5. *Piggs* ij.
7. Chine *Beef.*
9. Gammon *Bacon* and iiij. *Pullets* great.
11. Bisk *Pidgeons* xij.
13. *Chicken* Pye frosted.
15. *Wild Boar* Pye.
20. *Beatilia* Pye.
21. *Pullets* great vj.
22. *Sallett.*
8. *Venison* Pye.
10. Shoulder *Multon* in blood with *Steakes.*
12. *Capons* fat iiij.
14. *Kid* j. case.
16. *Veal* Sousst.

Second Course.

1. *Sallet.*
3. Gammons *Bacon* ij.
5. *Ducklings* xij.
7. *Oysters, Skerrets,* and *Sweet-bread.*
9. *Pidgeons* tame xij.
11 *Rabits* xij.
13. *Peacock* Pye in Pride.
15. Dried *Tongues* iiij.
17. *Leach.*
18. *Sparagrass.*
19. *Crabs* butter'd vj.
20. *Lamprey* Pye.
21. *Jelly.*
22. *Blamange.*
23. *Sallet.*
2. *Piggs* Sousst.
4. *Salmon* col.
6. *Chickens* fat xij.
8. Bisk *Shelfish.*
10. *Lobsters* vj.
12. *Tarts* sorts.
14. *Pullets* sousst.
16. *Anchovis*, *Caveare,* and *Pickled Oysters.*

The *Banquet* served at the *Feast* of St. *George*, the 22. and 23. of *April an.* 19 *Car.* 2.

Supper on the *Eve.*

For the *Soveraigns Table*, 8 *Basons*, 20 Boxes in each Bason, one pound in each Box. *Preserves* 4 Dishes, two pound in a Dish. *Creams* 2 Dishes, and one pound of *Eringoes*, and one pound of *Rocks* to garnish each Bason.

For 4 Mess of the *Knights-Companions*, and one Mess for the *Prelate*, &c. to each Mess 2 *Basons*, 16 Boxes in a Bason, 3 quarters of a pound in a Box. 2 Dishes of *Preserves*, 2 pound in a Dish, and 2 Dishes of *Creams*, and half a pound of *Eringoes*, and half a pound of *Rocks* to garnish each Bason.

The like for *Dinner* on St. *Georges* Day.

After Dinner and Supper, when the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* wash, 6 *Bouls*, one for the *Soveraign* of 6 pound of Comfits, and 5 other Bouls for the *Knights-Companions* and *Prelate*, &c. 4 pounds in each Boul, garnished with *Eringoes*, and *Rocks* and *Violet Cakes*, half a pound of each to each Boul.

We have seen several *Bills* wherein the *Diets* belonging to the *Officers* of *Arms* are set down, both for their *Supper* on the *Eve*, and *Dinner* on the *Feast* Day, which were not less than 20 Dishes, and sometimes 24 Dishes besides the *Banquet*: These *Bills* were usually given to the Junior *Pursuivants*, by the *Clearks* of the *Kitchin*, by which they called for the Dishes.

Among the memorialls of the *Grand Feast* held *an.* 19 *Eliz.* it is noted, that on the * *Eve*, the *Heralds* had at *Supper* the Diet as was accustomed, *viz.* ‖ 16 Dishes at the first Course and 8 at the second: but see here their *Diets* at the *Grand Feast* at *Whitehall*, *an.* 19 *Car.* 2.

* ‖ { *MS. penes G. O. T. pag.* 113.

Monday Supper 22 *April.*

First Course.

Sallets.
Veal and *Capon* boyled.
Chickens boyled viij.
Multon rosted.
Veal Rosted.

Second Course.

Pullets great iij.
Chickens fine viij.
Pidgeons fat. xij.
Rabbits vj.
Lobsters iiij.

Turkey.

Turkey.
Capons good ii.
Lamb, side.
Pigeon-Pye.
Stump-Pye.
Green *Geese* vi.

Prawns CCC.
Turkey-Pye.
Tart Sorts.
Sparagrass CC.
Gamon *Bacon.*
Tongues ii.
Jelly.

Manchets fine	x.
Cheate fine	vi.
Course	x.
Beer	viij Gallons.
French Wine	ii. Gallons.
Sack	ii. Quarts.
Ale	iiij. Bottles.

The same served the next day *Dinner*, only the roast *Veal* was exchanged for boiled *Beef.*

For *Supper* on *Sunday* night, at *Windesor*, the 28. of *May* 1671. being the *Eve* of the *Grand Feast*, there was prepared for the *Soveraign*, the Dyet hereafter mentioned, and set upon his *Table* in St. *George*'s *Hall*, in the order following, two by two, beginning at the South end of the Table; which being fill'd, the rest of the *Dishes* were set upon *stands* in the midst.

First Course.

1. *Chickens* boiled xii.
2. *Salmon* boiled.
3. *Veal* Arago.
4. *Lamb* stewed.
5. *Umble* Pye.
6. Bisk *Pigeons* xii.
7. Green *Geese* vi.
8. *Pikes* with *Pawnes*, *Oysters*, and *Cockles.*
9. *Chine* Multon *& Veal* iv.
10. *Venison* Pye.
11. *Ducklings* boiled xii.
12. *Carpes* great iii.
13. *Hens* hasht vi.
14. *Turkies* aladob vi.
15. *Venison* boiled q.
16. Bisk *Shelfish.*
17. *Capons* boiled ii.
18. *Pullets* a granoul vi.
19. *Beatilia* Pye with *Patties.*
20. *Capons* fat v.
21. Petty *Patties.*
22. *Rabits* fryed viii.
23. *Sallet* of *Herbs.*
24. *Mullets* fouft vi.
25. *Rabits* marrionated viii.
26. Hasht *Sallet*, with iv *Capons.*
27. *Soales* marrionated two pair.
28. *Sallet* of Pickles.
29. *Sweet breads* arogo.

Second Course.

1. *Pullets* fat rosted vi.
2. *Veal* and *Pigs* fouft.
3. Cold *Salmon.*
4. *Ducklings* x.
5. *Tongue* Pye.
6. *Leverets* vi.
7. *Chicks* fat xii.
8. *Lobsters* rost vi.
9. *Pheasants* with Egs vi.
10. *Turkey* Chicks xii.
11. *Gandwitts* x.
12. *Crabs* buttered vi.
13. *Quails* xxiv.
14. *Pigeons* tame xii.
15. *Tarts* sorts.
16. Gamons *Bacon* ii.
17. *Crawfish* butter'd.
18. *Egg Pies.*
19. *Ruffs* xii.
20. *Pullets* fouft vi.
21. *Tongues* iv.
22. *Pease.*
23. *Anchovis Caveare* & pickled *Oysters.*
24. *Egs* of Portugal.
25. *Blamang.*
26. *Creame* Pistaches.
27. *Scollops.*
28. *Jelly.*
29. *Prawnes.*

Seven

Seven Mess, or several Services of *Fare*, served on the *Eve* of the *Feast* to the *Knights-Companions*; each *Knight* having a several Mess to *Supper*, and one Mess of the same fare to the *Prelate*, *&c.*

First Course.

Capons boiled ij.
Pikes great ij.
Buck baked q.
Crabs vi. *Sallets* Pickles.
Jegget *Multon* ferst.
Rabbets fryed viij. *Pullets* hasht iv.
Capons fat iv.
Chickens boiled xij.
Chicken Pye.
Salmon.

Second Course.

Quails xviij.
Tongue Pye.
Chicks fat xij.
Tarts sorts. *Jelley.*
Carpes large iij.
Anchovies, *Caveare* and pickled *Oysters.* *Blamang.*
Lobsters vi.
Turkey Pye.
Rabets xij.
Pullets great vi.

The *Soveraign's* Diet on the *Feast* day, when the *Table* being made less, the *Diet* was reduced as followeth.

First Course.

1. *Wild Boar* Pye.
3. Chine of *Beef.*
5. *Beatilia* Pie with *Patties.*
7. *Ducklings* boiled xij.
9. Chine *Multon* and *Veal* iv.
11. *Buck* baked q.
13. *Carpes* great iij.
15. *Sallet.*
16. *Sweet-breads.*
17. Almond *Pudding.*
18. Petty *Patties.*
19. Hasht *Sallet* with 4 *Capons.*
20. *Chicks* marrionated.
2. *Salmon.*
4. Haggest *Puddings.*
6. Gamon *Bacon* with xij tame *Pigeons.*
8. *Chickens* boiled xij.
10. *Pikes* rosted ij.
12. Green *Geese* vi.
14. *Chicken* Pye frosted.

Second Course.

1. *Pullets* sousst vi.
3. *Rabbets* rosted xij.
5. *Pheasants* with Egs vi.
7. *Quails* xxiv.
9. *Lobsters* vi.
11. Gamon *Bacon* with ij *Tongues.*
13. *Tarts* sorts.
15. *Sallets* of Pickles.
16. *Eggs* of Portugal.
17. *Jelly.*
18. Luke *Olives.*
19. *Pease.*
20. *Prawnes.*
2. *Tongue* Pye.
4. *Cream* Tarts.
6. *Crabs* buttered vi.
8. *Pigeons* tame xij.
10. *Chicks* fat xij.
12. *Ruffs* xij.
14. *Ducklings* xij.

Seven Mess, or several Services of *Fare* served to the *Knights-Companions*, and one Mess to the *Prelate, &c.*

First Course.

Ducklings boiled xii. *Chicks* boiled xii.
Ribbets fry'd viij. *Carpes* great iij.
Chine of *Beef.* Gamon of *Bacon* with iiij *Pullets* great. *Buck* baked q.
Stump Pye. *Sallets* of Pickle.
Wild Bore Pye. Shoulder of *Multon* in blood with *Steaks.* *Capons* fat iiij.

Second Course.

Pheasants iiij. *Quails* xviii.
Artichokes. *Anchovis Caviare* and pickled *Oysters.*
Chicks fat xii. *Tarts* sorts. *Ducklings* vi. and Green *Geese* vi.
Lamprey Pye. *Jelly.*
Gamon *Bacon* with ii *Tongues.* *Pigeons* tame xii. *Red Dear* Pye.

A *Diet* served to the *Lords*, that attended the *Soveraign* at *Supper*, on the *Eve* of the said *Feast.*

First Course.

Capons boiled ij.
Chicks boiled xij.
Crabs buttered vi.
Sallets of Pickle.
Pikes Great ij.
Jegget Multon ferst.
Chicken Pye.
Rabbets fryed viij.
Pullets Hasht iv.
Buck baked q.
Capons fat iv.
Salmon.
Veal.
Soals large ij pair.

Second Course.

Quails xviij.
Turkey Chicks x.
Tarts sorts.
Jelly.
Tongue Pye.
Carpes large iv.
Rabbets xij.
Anchovies Caviare, and pickled *Oysters.*
Blamang.
Chickens fry'd xij.
Lobsters vi.
Pullets greese vi.
Ducklings xij.
Pigeons tame xij.

For the same *Lords Dinner* on the *Feast* day.

First Course.

Ducklings boiled xij.
Chicks boiled xij.
Rabbets fryed viij.
Carpes great ij.
Chine *Beef.*
Gamon *Bacon* with iv *Pullets.*
Buck baked q.
Stump Pye.

Second Course.

Pheasants iv.
Quails xviij.
Artichokes.
Anchovies Caveare and Pickled *Oysters.*
Chickins fat xij.
Tarts sorts.
Ducklings vi. and Green *Geese* vi.
Lamprey Pye.

Sallets

Salletts of Pickles.
Wild Boare Pye.
Shoulder of *Multon* in blood with *Veal.*
Capons fat iv.
Veal.
Pullets of Greese iv.
Jelly.
Gamon *Bacon.*
Tongues ii.
Pigeons tame xii.
Red *Deer* Pye.
Crabs buttered vi.
Blamang.

The *Banquet* served at the said *Feast.*

The *Soveraign's Table* on the *Eve.*

One Charger of *China Oranges*, containing 50.
Seven Chargers of *Confections*, in each Charger 20 Boxes; in each Box one pound of dried Confections.
Two Plates of *Duke Cherries*, 4 pound in each Plate.
One Plate of *Red Strawberries*, containing one Gallon.
One Plate of *White Strawberries*, containing two Gallons.
One Plate of *Ice Cream.*
Three Plates of *liquid Sweetmeats*, in each Plate 3 pound.

The same for the *Feast day* at *Dinner.*

To each of the 7 *Tables* for the *Knights-Companions*, on the *Eve.*

Two Chargers of *Confections*, in each Charger 14 Boxes.
One pound of dried Confections in each Box.
One Plate of *Duke Cherries*, containing 2 pound.
One Plate of *Red Strawberries*, containing 1 Gallon.
One Plate of *liquid Sweetmeats*, containing 3 pound.

The same for the *Feast day.*

For the *Prelate* of the *Garter*, *&c.* on the *Eve.*

Two Chargers, 14 Boxes in each Charger.
One Plate of *Duke Cherries*, containing 2 pound.
One Plate of *Red Strawberries*, containing 1 Gallon.
One Plate of *liquid Sweetmeats*, containing 3 pound.

The same Service to the *Lords* who attended the *Soveraign*, And so the same to the *Prelate* and *Lords* the next day.

One Charger of *Confections* for the *Heralds*, containing 10 Boxes each Meal.

The *Dyets* provided for the *Officers* of *Arms* at *Supper* and *Dinner*, were at each Meal 20 Dishes:

The same *Diet* served in the same manner.

To the *Prebends* xx Dishes.
To the *Petty Canons* xx Dishes.
To the *Alms-Knights* xx Dishes.
To the *Choristers* xx Dishes.

The *Diet* served to the *Officers* of his Majesty's Board of *Greencloth* was xiv Dishes.

To the Chief *Clerk* of the *Kitchin*	vii	Dishes	To the *Officers* of the *Jewel-house*	iij	Dishes.
To the *Gentlemen* of the *Chappel*	xiv		To the *Yeomen Ushers*	x	
To the second *Clerk* of the *Kitchin*	vii		To the *Children* of the *Chappel*	vi	
To the *Vestry*	iij		To the *Officers* of the *Confectionary*	iii	

The Total of the *Proportions* of Provisions for the foresaid *Feast*.

Beef xx Mess.
Chines Beef ix.
Multon xvij. Cases.
Veal x. Cases.
Tongues and *Udders* xxxij.
Piggs xlv.
Lambs xx.
Capons fat lxxx.
Capons good ix doz.
Pullets fat xx doz.
Hens and *Pullets* course vj. doz.
Chickens fat xx. doz.
Chickens fine Lviij. doz.
Pidgeons tame xxiiij. doz.
Green *Geese* xv. doz.
Ducklings xxxv. doz.
Turkey Chickens ix. doz.
Gaudwits ij. doz.
Quails xxx. doz.
Ruffs xxiiij.
Pheasants iiij. doz.
Leverets vj.
Rabbets xxxv. doz.
Kids xvij. cases.
Cocks-Combs and *Stones* ij. doz.
Peas xx Bushel.
Sparagrass vj. M.
Artichoaks CC.

Salmons xiiij.
Soals large xxiiij. pair.
Lobsters large Cxxxvj.
Crabs large Cxviij.
Mullets Lx.
Prawnes xij. M.
Cockles viij. Quarts.
Scollops iiij. C.
Lampry Pies xij.
Sturgeon xxij. Mess.
Whelks vj. Quarts.
Pikes great xiiij.
Carpes great Lxxx.
Trouts large xxiiij.
Crawfish MD.
Oysters xij. Quarts.
Westphalia Gammons Lxx.
Dried *Tongues* C.
Pickled *Oysters* xvj. Barrels.
Anchovis xij *l.*
Caveare viij *l.*
Butter CCCLxx *l.*
Eggs MM.
Barberies ij. Gallons.
Onions xij. Ropes.
Cream ij. Gallons.
Milk vj. Gallons.

Beef for Gravy, CCxlix *l.*
Multon ij. Cases.
Veals iiij.
Pork j. case.
Bacon Lxxiiij *l.*
Lard Cxxiiij *l.*
Sweet Breads xviij. doz.
Lambstones xx. doz.
Pallats x. doz.
Marrow-bones vij. doz.
Sheeps Tongues ix. doz.
Veal Cauls xiiij.
Haggest bags xij.
Calves Caldrons xviij.
Ox Suet Lxviij *l.*
Sheeps-feet vj. Gang.
The small *Guts* of an *Ox*.
Neats-feet vj. Gang.
Caules and *blood* vj.

Bake-meats for the said *Feasts* both hot and cold.

Hot.
- *Steak* Pyes xiij.
- *Stump* Pyes xxj.
- *Umble* Pye j.
- *Beatillia* Pyes with *Patties* vj.
- *Venison* Pyes xviij.
- *Petty Patties* ij. Dishes.
- *Tarts* sorts xxxviij.
- Single *Tarts* xx.
- *Egg* Pies ix.
- *Chicken* Pies frosted ix.
- *Cream* Tarts j.

Cold
- *Tongue* Pyes xxvij.
- *Capon* Pyes xxvij.
- *Lamprey* Pyes xij.
- *Wild Boar* Pyes xij.
- *Red-Deer* Pyes xij.

	l.	s.	d.
The whole charge of this *Grand Feast* amounted to ----	2394	17	08½.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

THE OBSERVATION OF THE Grand Feast BY Absent Knights.

SECT. I.

Absent Knights *enjoined to observe the* Grand Feast.

WIth what state and magnificence, and in what solemn order, the *Grand Feast* of St. *George* hath been, and ought to be observed, by the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, either at *Windesor Castle*, or any other place, where the *Soveraign* then happens to keep his Court, hath been already laid down at large; yet were not all the honors due to this high Festival, paid to those places alone, but communicated sometimes (though in a less measure) to such other, where any of the absent *Knights* resided at that time, and had obtained the *Soveraign's Letters* of *Dispensation*, for non-attendance with the rest of the *Knights-Companions*.

We have also shewn how strictly the *Statutes* oblige the *Knights-Companions* to appear annually at the *Grand Feast*, and what severe penalties they inflict upon such as are absent: Yet lest the honor of the *Order* might receive diminution, from too small an appearance at its publick Solemnities, when perhaps some of the *Knights* might then be employed in the *Soveraign's* service, both in remote parts of the Kingdom and beyond Sea, or others sick, or not without a reasonable excuse: it was further at the *Institution* of the *Order* Decreed, [a] *That none of them should depart out of the Kingdom, without first acquainting the* Soveraign, *and obtaining his special leave and license.* Nevertheless such as disposed themselves to undertake any military Expedition, or other honorable design in the service of Foreign Princes, whence any glory of *Knighthood* might be

[a] E. 3. *Stat. Art.* 28. *H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 29.

b *Ibid.* be hoped for, upon such renowned undertakings, the [b] *Soveraign* of his special grace, and for his favour towards and confidence in the *Knights-Companions*, was wont to give them preference before the rest of his Subjects, and grant them *License* to go beyond Sea.

But whatsoever the occasion of absence might be, it was then also ordained,

c *Art.* 11. [c] *That wheresoever any of the* Knights-Companions *resided, during the said* Feast, *they should wear their* Mantles *of the* Order, *from the hour of the first* Vespers, *on the* Eve *of St.* George, *till the second* Vespers *on the* Feast *day were finished: as they should have done, had they been present in person with the* Soveraign *or his* Deputy, *during the whole celebration of the* Feast (*in case they were not deprived of their Liberty*) *the*[d] Prorogation *of the* Feast *notwithstanding.*

d *H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 11.

SECT. II.

More particular directions *for their* observation *of it.*

BUT perchance, because the custom of these Celebrations at home began to be neglected, at least seemed indifferent to the absent *Knights-Companions*, either to observe or not to observe them, it was thought needful by King *Henry* the Eighth to revive, as also to enlarge the Law in this particular, and therefore in the 11. year of his Reign, first in explanation of the said 11. *Article* of the *Statutes* of *Institution*, He declared, and enjoined the wearing of the whole *Habit* upon the *Eve* of St. *George*, *viz.* the 22. day of *April*, whether it should happen to fall within the *Feast* of *Easter*, or without, if the *Knight-Companion* were at liberty, and not under restraint. Then he enumerated the times for wearing it, to wit, on the *Eve*, at all times of *Divine Service*, *Dinner*, and *Supper*; and all this to be observed, unless in case of *War*, *Sickness*, *Journey*, or other just impediment, when if the absent *Knight* did wear the *Garter* and *George*, either in a Gold Chain, or Silk Ribband, it should be accounted sufficient.

About three years after, when the same *Soveraign* made a general reformation and explanation of the *Statutes*, he enjoined some other particulars to be done and observed by the absent *Knights-Companions* (whether, by [e] License or otherwise, any of them were in his own House, or any other place, and not under restraint) that is to say, he should be bound to prepare a *Capital Stall* in the *Church* or *Chappel*, where he designed to hear Service, to the honor of the *Soveraign*: In which *Capital Stall* should be set up the Arms of the *Order* within a *Garter*.

e *Hen.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 5.

He should be likewise bound to erect another [f] *Stall*, that should be as far in distance (according to the proportion and length of the said *Church* or *Chappel*) from the *Stall* of the *Soveraign*, and on the same side, as was the said absent *Knights Stall* in the Castle of *Windesor*, and therein should place his own *Arms*. Moreover he should wear the [g] whole *Habit* of the *Order*, and should hear [h] *Divine Service*, such as by the Church is ordained for the said time; aswell the *Even*, the *Morning*, as the *Afternoon* on the *Feast day*. Then, that he should first do [i] *Reverence* towards the *Altar*, in the honor of *God*, and after towards the *Stall*, wherein was fixed and set up the Arms of the *Soveraign*, aswell and as often at his coming in, as at his going out of the said *Church* or *Chappel*, as also as often as he should pass before the said *Arms*. But [k] *Emperors*, *Kings*, *Princes*, or *Electors*, are excepted, who may in this case so place their *Seats*, and *Stalls*, as it shall seem most convenient to them.

f, g, h, i, k *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

In which Decree (being still in full force) we may observe, first the Injunction upon an absent *Knight*, that doth oblige him to celebrate the *Feast* of Saint *George*, wherever he shall be, even then when the *Soveraign* and the rest of the *Knights-Companions* hold the same; and next, the manner and order thereof, that

that being at large set down, both in reference to the preparations made in the *Church*, and his own deportment during the whole Ceremony. In relation to which, it is to be understood, that much of the ordering and adding to the glory of the *Festival*, and the absent *Knights* peculiar *Honor*, is left to his own pleasure and disposal; as namely,

1. The [l] adorning the *Church* or *Chappel* with Arras, or other rich Hangings, and furnishing the *Soveraign's Stall*; nevertheless with this caution, that it be always prepared on the right hand the entrance into the *Choire*, but if there be no Choire, then ought a partition of Hangings to be made, reserving an entrance in the middle, and on the right hand a *Cloth* of *State*, whereon to be fixed the *Soveraign's Arms* (impaled with those of St. *George*) and *Stile*, the Seat furnished with Cushens, and a Carpet and long Cushen, to lye on the Desk before it.

[l] *Collect. A. V. W. vide MS. pen. Arth. Com. Anglesey, fol. 237. a.*

2. In placing his own *Stall* (with his *Arms* over it) at its just distance from the *Soveraign's*; to which purpose it is necessary, that *Garter* send him a *Scheme* of the *Stalls* on both sides the *Choire*.

3. In proceeding to the *Church*, both at 3 a Clock on the *Eve* of the *Feast* (where, habited in full *Robes*, he must behave himself in all things, as if he were at *Windesor*) and all other times while the Solemnity continues. That he be attended by a convenient number of *Gentlemen* before him, well habited, with the *Officers* of his *Houshold*, and also his inferior Servants in Liveries; two and two together, according to their Qualities and Degrees, bare-headed; who are to return in the same order as they go; the *Gentlemen-Ushers* also are to go bare-headed, and the *Herald*, if present, to take place next before the *Knights* person.

4. In his *Dinner* on the *Feast day*, that it be noble, and his Attendance at the Table suitable; and that he dine and sup alone at all times, unless there happen to be a *Knight-Companion* with him.

5. In his *Offering* of money, that he make it not only on the Feast day in the morning, but the next morning also, assoon as the first sentence of the Offertory is pronounced.

6. That at *Evening Prayer* on the *Feast day*, and also at the *Supper* following, he observe all things, as on the *Eve*.

7. In wearing his *Habit* of the *Order*, until after Supper on the *Eve*, and all the *Feast* day, until supper be ended at night.

8. That on the *Morrow* after the *Feast*, he proceed to the *Church* in his *Mantle* only, and when Divine Service is finished, then to put it off at the Church door.

And if any thing else, in the before recited *Article* seem short or obscure, the large account in the *Preparations* for the *Grand Feast*, and course to be observed in the celebrations thereof (before laid down and handled) will sufficiently clear and explain, without the assistance of any further Comment.

But here we must note, that though the *Statutes* seem not to oblige the absent *Knights-Companions*, to hold the Ceremonies of the *Feast*, longer than the *Evening* on the *Feast day*, yet by the practice of ensuing years, they were extended to the *Morrow* after, and consequently observed by the absent *Knights*, so long as the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* performed them at *Windesor*, or elsewhere.

If the absent *Knight* be a person of eminent Degree, he is to be attended by a *Herald*, or *Pursuivant* at *Arms*, or both, during the Solemnity of the *Feast*; to adde the greater lustre thereto. Thus was [m] Prince *Arthur an.* 15. *H.* 7. attended at *Hereford*; and the like honor was designed to the Earl of [n] *Leicester*, when he kept the Solemnity of the *Feast* in the *Low Countries*, and had been performed, but that the *Herald* dyed before St. *George's* day.

[m] *Lib. N. pag. 173*
[n] *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

The nature of this Officers Employment on such an occasion, will partly appear out of the *Instructions*, given by [o] Sir *Gilbert Dethick* Garter (pursuant to the directions of the *Statute*) to *Henry Rees* alias *Berwick*, Pursuivant at Arms, the 3. of *April an.* 1565. which were to this effect.

[o] [p] *Ex Autogr. pen. Rob. Com. Aylesbur.*

1. That he should see a *Capital Stall* provided for the *Soveraign* (though not there) with a *Cloth* of *State*, and before it a Carpet and Cushen, with

with a Scutcheon of the *Soveraign's Arms*, impaled with those of St. *George* fixed thereon.

2. That the *Knight's* Stall should be decently trimmed, with a Scutcheon of his own *Arms*, fixed at the back of it, and that this Stall should be placed a good distance from the *Soveraign's* Stall, according to the largeness of the *Chappel*.

3. That he should go before the *Knight-Companion*, to and from the *Church*, both on the *Even* of the *Feast*, and *Feast* day, in his *Coat* of *Arms*; using such Reverence as is meet and convenient, and sit on a Form before the *Soveraign's* Stall.

4. That on the *Feast* day at *Dinner*, after the second Mess shall be served up (having on his Coat of Arms) he shall proclaim the said *Knight's* Stile in *French*.

5. And lastly, when the *Knight* puts off his *Mantle*, either in the *Church*, or where Service is said, then he to put off his Coat also, and return home (in his ordinary Apparel) with him.

SECT. III.

How to be observed in case of Sickness.

BUT in case of *Sickness*, and such as hath confined the absent *Knight* to his Bed, or would not permit him with safety to go out of his Chamber; the custom was to prepare a *Capital Stall* for the *Soveraign* of the *Order*, with a Cloth of State, Carpet, Cushens, and a Scutcheon of the Arms of the *Order*, impaled with the Arms of the *Soveraign*, and his *Stile* underneath, in the [q] Chamber where he lay; as also another Stall for himself, placed according to the before mentioned directions, which were there to remain during the *Feast*. In which Room also were the *Divine Offices* celebrated, both on the *Eve*, the *Feast day*, and the *Morrow* after. And if the [r] absent *Knight* were so sick that he kept his Bed, then was his whole *Habit* of the *Order* laid thereon, during the time the rest of the *Knights-Companions* are enjoined to wear theirs, [s] according to the ancient *Custom* and *Statutes*; and upon this account, *Ambrose* Earl of *Warwick* falling ill at *Greenwich*, when St. *George's* day was there celebrated *an.* 30. *Eliz.* retired to his Chamber, and there [t] sat in his Robes.

q *Ex MS. pergam. penes Johannem Vincent gen.*

r *Ib. see also Rowes Journ. pag.* 10

s *More Majorum, Lib. C. pag.* 119.

t *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

SECT. IV.

In what manner the Feast *hath been observed by absent Knights.*

IN relation to the Celebrations performed by absent *Knights*, the *Black Book* gives us a punctual account in a considerable Precedent; namely, of the *Feast* of St. *George* holden in the Palace of *Hereford*, by [h] Prince *Arthur*, *an.* 15. *H.* 7. he being then in the Government of his Principality of *Wales*, and had with him Sir *Richard Pool*, one of the *Companions* of the *Order*, then his Highness *Chamberlain*; this worthy *Knight* took care, that all those things, which the Solemnity of the *Feast* required, and the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* did observe, according to the form of the *Statutes* and accustomed manner, should be most exactly performed; and indeed [i] there was nothing intermited in the *Mass*, in the first and second *Vespers*, which solemn custom required should be done,

h *Lib. N. p.* 153.

i

done, in Censing, Fuming, Proceeding and Offering, aswell the *Prince* as the said Sir *Richard*, but it was undertook and performed with much exactness.

Besides, the Princes *Sword* was born and held before his Stall, and his *Herald* performed his Service with all diligence; also the *Soveraigns Herald* stood all the while before the *Soveraigns* Stall, which was adorned with accustomed Ornaments: and lastly, the [k] *Bishop*, who celebrated Divine Service, had his Seat erected near to the high *Altar*.

[k] *Ibid. p.* 174.

But the publick memorials of Sir *Henry Sydneys* holding two several *Feasts* of St. *George*, the one at *Shrewsbury*, and the other at *Ludlow*, is worthy of a place here; since these two Corporations, have caused them to be conspicuously recorded in their *Town Hall*; and from whence I made Transcripts, when I accompanied *William Dugdale* Esq; *Norroy* King of Arms, in his Visitation of *Shropshire*, *An. Dom.* 1663.

That at *Shrewsbury*, being written in large Letters, upon a pain of Wainscot over the Chimney, in the Chamber of *Concord*, in the *Town-Hall*, is as followeth.

Be it remembred, that in the Year of our Lord 1581. *and in the* 23*d. Year of the Reign of our most dread Soveraign Lady Queen* Elizabeth, *the* Feast *of the most noble* Order *of the* Garter, *was right honourably kept, in the good and right renowned Town of* Salop, *by the Right Honourable Sir* Henry Sidney, *then* Lord President *of the* Council, *established in the* Principallity *of* Wales *and* Marches *of the same, one of the* Companions *of the same* Order: *the Arms of the* Soveraign *and others*, Kings, Princes, *and* Nobles, *then Installed, in the said Noble* Order, *were fixed in the* Church *of the same* Town, *during the Service and Ceremonies, belonging to the same* Order.

Be it further remembred, that at that time then was Elected but not Installed, these Princes following, Rudolphus *the* 2d. *of that name Emperor of the* Romans, *King of* Hungary *and* Bohemia, *Arch-Duke of* Austria, Henry *the* 3d. French *King*, Christian *King of* Denmark, *and the most Noble Prince* John Casimire *Duke of* Bavaria *and Palatine of the* Rhien; *then being Bailiffs*, William Jones, *and* William Hering, *who together with the Chieftains of the several Companies of that good* Town, *did in most decent sort attend upon the said* Lord President, *during the said* Feast, *together with the* Aldermen *and* Bailiffs, Peers, *in their Scarlet Robes, and other Chieftains.*

In the *Gallery* of the *New-House* at *Ludlow* are yet remaining, the several Scutcheons of those *Knights-Companions*, which were set up in the Chancel of St. *Lawrence* Church in *Ludlow*, in the 24. Year of Queen *Elizabeth*, when the *Feast* of St. *George* was solemnized there; before which the following memorial is also fairly written.

Be it remembred, that in the Year of our Lord God ------ *and in the* 24th *Year of the Reign of the most Excellent and Famous Princess*, Elizabeth *by the Grace of God, Queen of* England, France, *and* Ireland; *The* Feast *of the most antient and most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *was honourably kept in the Town of* Ludlow, *at the usual days for keeping of the said* Feast, *by the Right Honourable Sir* Henry Sydney *Knight, Lord President of the Council established in the Principallity of* Wales *and* Marches *of the same, and one of the* Companions *of the same* Order. *The Arms of the* Soveraign, *and all the* Princes *and* Nobles, *being* Companions *of the same Noble* Order, *and Enstalled, were fixed in the* Church *of the said* Town; *and there remained during the Ceremonies. And be it further remembred, that before the same* Feast *there were Elected and not Enstalled, these Princes whose names follow*, Rudolphus *the Second Emperour of the* Romans, *King of* Hungaria *and* Bohemia, *Arch-Duke of* Austria, Henry *the Third the* French *King*, Christian *King of* Denmark, *and the most Noble Prince* John Casimire *Duke of* Bavaria,

and Palatine of the Rhien, --------- *manifestly fixed in the* Church ---- ---------- *then Bailiffs in their own persons did honour the* Feast, *with their attendance.*

Moreover the Town of *Ludlow*, to shew their due respects to Sir *Henry Sidney*, and readiness to contribute to the Triumphs of this Solemnity, met and drew up the following Order, which we found entred in the Town Register.

10*th* day of *March* 1581. *an.* 24 *Eliz.*

IT is agreed upon by this Assembly, that Mr. Bayliffs *shall call before them, the six persons undernamed of their Brethren, as soon as conveniently may, and they all to confer and lay down a place, how my* Lord President *shall be gratified by the* Town, *towards the keeping of St.* George's Feast, *if it be kept here, and the said* Bayliffs *and their* Associates, *have Commission upon their meeting, to call afore them at convenient time, two out of every Occupation in the* Town, *and confer with them how the charges may be levied, and the same two to be of this Company, or other of the best sort of every occupation.*

Thomas Blashfield.
Richard Farr.
Thomas Cauland.
William Poughnell.
Richard Rascoll.
Thomas Langford.
Richard Bayly.

In pursuance of which we also found, there was delivered out of the Treasury to Mr. *Bayliffs*, the very same day, 10*l.* and the 18 of *April fol.* 10*l.* 19*s.* 2*d.* more, towards defraying the charges of such Preparations, as the said *Town* made, upon that solemn occasion.

As to the manner used at the observation of the *Feast* by a *Knight* beyond Sea, we have an instance in *Robert* Earl of *Leicester*, [l] Lieutenant for Queen *Elizabeth*, Governour and Captain General of the *United Provinces*, who kept the Celebration of St. *Georges Feast* in the *Netherlands An. Dom.* 1586. of which we have met with these broken Memorials.

[l] *Grimston's History of the Netherlands, pag.* 982.

He had a [m] *Scutcheon* of the *Order* impailed with the *Soveraigns Arms*, fixt to the front of his House, so also upon the back of her *Stall* in the *Church*; and his own *Arms* at the back of his *Stall*.

[m, n] *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

He Proceeded on Horseback to the *Church*, *William Seager*, then *Portcullis* Pursuivant at Arms, (by his appointment) riding before him wearing a [n] King of Arms Coat, which *John Cocke Lancaster* Herald, (both of them [o] imployed to attend the said Earl) had brought over thither, for that days service, but it seems he dyed a little before St. *Georges Day*.

[o] *See Wevers funeral Monuments, p.* 676. *&* 682. *& MS. fol. penes E.W. G. fol.* 144.

After Sermon, *Portcullis* proceeded before him to the [p] *Offering*, which the Earl made for the *Soveraign* and returned, and stood a little while before the *Soveraign's Stall*, and then *Offered* for himself; which done, he returned by the lower end of the Desk to his own *Stall*, with his due obeysances.

[p, q, r] *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*

Service being ended, he returned to his own Lodgings, and there dined.

At the [q] second Course, *Portcullis* went up before it, between the *Gentleman Usher*, and proclaimed only the *Soveraign's Stile* and retired; during which Proclamation, the *Earl* (sitting at a Table alone, on the left hand of the *State*) and divers eminent persons (who sat at a side Table) stood up and were bare.

The [r] *Soveraign's* Trencher was laid under the State, and the whole *Service* performed to that, with due Reverence, by divers of her Servants there present, and the *Earl* took his meat thereafrom, as by the by.

Lastly, a learned [s] *Scotch* Historian takes notice, that King *James* the Fifth, having

[s] *J. Leslæus de rebus gestis Scotorum, Lib.* 9. *p.* 439. *Romæ* 1578. *quarto, vide J. Cannem Jac. Chesset. in suis luminibus novis prærogativis ad Vindicias Hispanicas. lumin.* 13. *p.* 439.

having been honored, not only with the *Order* of the *Garter* by King *Henry* the Eighth, but next with that other *Order* of the *Golden Fleece* (by the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth) and not long after of St. *Michael* (by the *French* King *Francis* the First) kept the several *Feasts* of the *Patrons* of those *Orders*, with great Solemnity *an.* 1534. And to signifie to the several *Soveraign*'s, as also to proclaim to the world, the great account he made of those Honors, he not only adorned himself on those solemn Festivals, with the *Ensigns* of each *Order*, but fixed on the Gates of his Palace at *Lithgoe* his Royal Arms, encompassed with the *Collars* of each of them, together with that of St. *Andrew*, Patron of the Kingdom of *Scotland*.

SECT. V.

Dispensation for Absence *granted during life.*

SOmetimes upon special favour of the *Soveraign*, and where Age or Infirmity of any of the *Knights-Companions* hath been made known to him by *Petition*, they have obtained *Letters* of *Dispensation* for absence, not only from the *Feast* approaching (of which we have [t] before discoursed) but also during life. Such indulgence was granted to the Lord [u] *Dacres an.* 26. *H.* 8. and to the Earl of *Derby an.* 14. *Car.* 1. both which Precedents we have thought fit to insert in the [w] *Appendix*. The like with that to the said Earl of *Derby*, was likewise granted to the Earl of *Monlgrave*, and under the same date, but both upon the following conditions, as they are contained in a Decree passed in *Chapter*, the 18. of *April an.* 13. *Car.* 1. which was this,

[t] *Chap.* 19. *Sect.* 2.
[u] *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [*H.* 12.]
[w] *Num.* CLXXXI. & CLXXXII.

> [x] *That no* Dispensation *shall be granted, but with condition, that the absent* Knight *shall send to* Garter *King of Arms, for his* Scutcheons, *at the same time that he sends his excuse, and Petition for Dispensation. And shall solemnly keep in his own House or abiding, the* Feast, *with all the sacred* Rites *and* Ceremonies, *in his* Robes *and other* Ornaments, *if health permit; and in case of* Sickness, *upon his* Bed, *according to the ancient* Statutes.

[x] *Rowes Journal, pag.* 10. *vide Lib. R. pag.* 119.

This Act was thought of so great importance to be observed, that the then *Chancellor* was commanded to transcribe and [y] send it (with the *Soveraign*'s pleasure) to each of the *Knights-Companions* within the Realm, not only to remind those, who were present at making the Decree, but also to inform the rest of the *Fellowship*, who were absent, of what had been done.

[y] *Rowes Journal, pag.* 10.

The execution of which command was accompanied with a [z] *Postscript* of a *Letter*, whereby he acquainted them with the *Penalties* they should be liable to, for their neglect and omission of due observation.

[z] *See before pag.* 486.

And we find, that in the following year, when the *Soveraign* (being at *Berwick*) had prorogued the *Feast* to *Windesor*, the *Letters* of *Notice*, which Sir *James Palmer* (then Deputy Chancellor) issued out, to the *Knights-Companions*, contained a Clause to the foresaid purpose; * *That those* Knights-Companions, *who could not then come to* Windesor, *should take notice of the prorogation, and solemnize the* said Feast *at their own* Houses.

* *Palm. Journ. pro an.* 1639. *pag.* 8.

CHAP. XXIV.

THE Degradation OF A Knight-Companion.

SECT. I.

Of the Degradation *of a* Knight-Batchellor.

SO hainous an Offence as that of *High Treason*, hath been thought deserving the loss, not only of *Life* and *Estate*, but *Honor* also: and thereupon when Sentence hath been to be given against a *Knight*, for so great a Crime, sometimes *Degradation* from his Degree hath preceded: and this as our Learned *Selden* saith, is done [a] *as a respect of Honor to* Knighthood *in general; lest so much ignominy as accompanied the Judgment for such an Offence, should lye on any that were a* Knight, *when he suffered it.*

In the Example of Sir *Andrew Harclay*, created Earl of *Carlisle* by King *Edward* the Second, whose Degradation is reported in the [b] *Titles* of *Honor*, it may be observed, that the principal part of the Ceremony was, a solemn taking from him his *Sword*, and chopping off his *Spurs*, the chief *Ensigns* of his *Honor*. And in that of Sir *Ralph Grey*, *an.* 4. *E.* 4. (one of whose Crimes was for [c] betraying Sir *John Astley*, a *Knight* of this *Order*, into the hands of the Kings Enemies, where he remained Prisoner for many years) besides the striking off his *Spurs*, the tearing his *Coat* of *Arms* from his Body, and putting on another Coat, whereon his Arms were reverst, was appointed to be done; but by the Kings favour, the *Judgment* was not pronounced: To these, Sir *William Segar* adds the [d] bruising every piece of the *Knights Armor*, and casting it aside: beside which, some [e] other *Ceremonies* of Degradation are mentioned by him, to have been more anciently used.

a *Titles of Honor*, pag. 787.

b *Pag.* 788.

c *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [L. 15.] *fol.* 33.

d *Honor Milit. & Civil Lib.* 2. *cap.* 13.

e *Lib.* 2. *C.* 4.

SECT.

SECT. II.

The manner of Degrading *a* Knight-Companion *of the* Garter.

THE *Enſigns* of this Noble *Order*, are not to be withdrawn from a *Knight-Companion* ſo long as he lives, unleſs he be found guilty of ſome of thoſe points of *Reproach*, ſet down in King *Henry* the Eighth's [f] *Statutes*, to wit, *Hereſie*, *Treaſon*, or *flying from Battel*: We alſo find, that *Prodigality* was made a fourth Point, where a *Knight* had ſo waſted his *Eſtate*, that he was not able to ſupport his *Honor*. And the not being a *Gentleman* of *Blood*, both by Father and Mother, was the pretence, for deveſting *William* Lord *Paget*, *an.* 6. *E.* 6. But *Fellony* comes not within the compaſs of this *Statute*, as not being particularly ſpecified among the *Reproaches* there reckoned up, and ſo it was adjudged in a *Chapter* held the 6. of *July an.* 14. *Jac. R.* in the caſe of [g] *Robert* Earl of *Somerſet*, then lately condemned for that Fact; whereupon his *Hatchments* were not removed.

[f] *Art.* 2.

[g] *MS. penes E. W. G. fol.* 153.

When a *Knight-Companion* is found guilty of any the Offences mentioned in King *Henry* the Eighth's *Statutes*, he is uſually *degraded* at the next *Chapter* after; and therefore, where the *Soveraign* intends to have this Ceremony put in Execution, after he hath acquainted the *Knights-Companions* therewith, he commands *Garter* to attend ſuch of them, as are appointed to go to the convict *Knight*, who in a ſolemn manner, firſt takes from him his *George* and *Ribband*, and then his *Garter*. And at the following *Feaſt* of St. *George* (or ſooner if the *Soveraign* appoint) *Publication* of his Crimes and degradation is made by *Garter* (a * *Warrant* in the mean time iſſuing out to him, for taking down the *Atchievements* of the *Knight*) in the enſuing order.

* *Appendix, Num.* CLXXXIII.

Firſt *Garter*, in his [h] *Coat* of *Arms*, (uſually before *Morning Prayer*, if the *Grand Feaſt*, or *Feaſt* of *Inſtallation* be then held) ſtanding on the higheſt ſtep aſcending to the *Brazen Deſk*, placed in the middle of the *Choire* in St. *George*'s *Chappel* at *Windeſor*, the *Officers* of *Arms* ſtanding about him, and the [i] *Black Rod* alſo preſent, reads aloud the *Inſtrument* for Publication of the *Knights Degradation*; a Precedent whereof we have placed in the [k] *Appendix*.

[h] *Lib. N. pag.* 316. *vide Collect. A. V. W.*

[i] *MS. vet. pen. G. O. F. f.* 71. *b.*

[k] *Num.* CLXXXIV.

In which form, run all other *Inſtruments* in this kind, that have come to our view, and only varied in the Preamble, where the nature of the Offence is particularly ſet down for which he hath deſerved Degradation.

This being read, [l] one of the *Heralds* deputed thereunto (a Ladder being raiſed to the backſide of the convict *Knights Stall*, and he, in his Coat of Arms, placed there before hand) when *Garter* pronounceth the words, *Expelled and put from among the Arms*, &c. [m] takes his *Creſt*, and violently caſts it down into the *Choire*, and after that his *Banner* and *Sword*, and when the Publication is read out, all the *Officers* of *Arms* ſpurn the *Atchievements* out of the *Choire* into the Body of the *Church*, firſt the *Sword*, then the *Banner*, and laſt of all the *Creſt*, ſo out of the *Weſt-Door*, thence to the *Bridge*, and over into the *Ditch*, and thus was it done at the degradation of [n] *Edward* Duke of *Buckingham* the 8 of *June*, *an.* 13 *H.* 8.

[l] *Lib. N. loco citat.*

[m] *Collect. A. V. W.*

[n] *Ibid.*

In reference to the degradation of *Thomas Percy* Earl of *Northumberland*, he was firſt [o] Proclaimed *Traitor* (the 26 of *November an.* 12 *Eliz.*) at *Windeſor Caſtle*: which *Proclamation* was directed to the *Conſtable* of the *Caſtle*, and made by ſound of a *Trumpet* and the voice of an *Herald*, other of his *Fellows* aſſiſting: and on the day following, the *Sentence* of his degradation was publiſhed, and *Cheſter Herald* (after *Rouge Croix* Purſuivant had read the Sentence) threw down the *Atchievements*, [p] firſt his *Banner*, next his *Sword*, then his *Creſt*, and laſtly his *Helm* and *Mantlets*, which *Garter*, aſſiſted by the *Officers* of *Arms*, ſpurned out of the *Weſt-Door* of the *Chappel* into the *Caſtle Ditch*.

[o] *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [*M.* 6.] *fol.* 85.

[p] *Ibid.*

But in the caſe of [q] *Robert* Earl of *Eſſex* (25 of *May*, *an.* 43 *Eliz.*) his *Atchievements*

[q] *Lib. C. p.* 145.

chievements were only thrown down; and those of [r] *Henry* Lord *Cobham* (12 *Febr. an.* 1 *Jac. Reg.*) only spurned out of the *Church Door*, but by the Kings Clemency not into the [r] *Ditch*.

[r] *Ibid. pag.* 153.

But *Degradation* was not alone thought sufficient, and therefore *an.* 32 *H.* 8. it was considered in *Chapter*, [t] what course should be taken with the *Names* of such of the *Order*, as were convicted of *High Treason*, and whether they should remain in the *Registers*, or be razed out; for it seemed just, that *Traitors*, who had deserved to have their *Atchievements* disgracefully thrown down, should also have their *Actions* and *Names* extinguished, and the *Books* wherein they were entred, to be esteemed as polluted.

[t] *Lib. N. p.* 283.

This being debated before the *Soveraign*: He, keeping a mean between both extreams, determined, [u] That wheresoever the *Actions* and *Names* of such *Offenders* should be found, these words [*vah Proditor*] should be written in the *Margent*; by which means the *Registers* would be preserved fair, and not defaced with razures and blots.

[u] *Ibid.*

SECT. III.

Of Restauration *into the* Order *after* Degradation.

SOme of the *Knights-Companions*, who have injuriously suffred *Deprivation* of the *Ensigns*, and *Degradation* from the *Order*, have lived to enjoy the Honor of *Restauration*, and both re-elected and re-invested, and their *Atchievements* again set up, as were the Lord *Pagits*, *an.* 1 *Mar.* and the Marquess of *Northampton's*, *an.* 1 *Eliz.* whose Cases we have [w] before Reported.

[w] *Pag.* 285. & 287.

Another Instance there is of *Thomas Howard* Duke of *Norfolk*, who being Degraded by King *Edward* the Sixth, was, upon Queen *Maries's* coming to the Crown, restored into this Noble *Fellowship*, as will fully appear by the Order for his *Restauration*, which was this,

By the Queen.

Trusty and wellbeloved we greet you well; And whereas our Right Trusty and right entirely beloved Cousin and Councellour the Duke of Norfolk, *for the good and valiant service by him of long time done to the King our Father, of most famous memory King* Henry *the* Eight, *as well here within the Realm as abroad with Foreign Princes, both in Peace and in War, and in respect of other his good qualities and vertues, was by our said Father elected into the Company of the most Honourable* Order *of the* Garter, *and duly invested in the same, from which nevertheless afterward, in the time of our late Brother King* Edward *the Sixth, whom* God *assoil, the said Duke was by our said late Brether and other the Companions of our said* Order *of the* Garter, *through wrong information and accusation cleerly expelled and removed, and his Hatchments to his no small slaunder and dishonour openly cast down, and taken from the* Stall *appointed for him in our Chappel at* Windesor. *We let you wet, that we, minding to do Justice to all men, have sythence our coming to the Government of the Realm, called a Chapter for the redress of the Injuries aforesaid, and such like, and at the same holden at our* Mannor *of St.* James *the* 27. *day of* Sept. *last, by the advice and consent of the Companions of our said Order, have restored the said Duke of* Norfolk *to his former room and place, among other the Companions of our said Order, as one that was injuriously put from the same, wherefore like as we have willed him to use and wear the* Garter, Collar, George, Robes, *and other the* Apparel *of our said* Order, *in such sort as he was wont to do before his said wrongful deprivation. So have we also thought*

thought good to will and require both you the Regiſter *of our ſaid Order, to cancel and utterly to put out of your* Regiſter *all Writings, Records, or other mynyments making mention of the ſaid deviation: And you alſo* Garter *King of* Arms *for our ſaid Order, to ſee his* Hatchments *honourably ſet up in the place appointed for them, and his* Banner *to be of ſuch Arms as his Father bare and had ſet up aforetime, being late* Knight *of the ſaid* Order, *there to remain and continue among the* Hatchments *of other our* Companions *of our ſaid* Order, *according to the ancient Ordinances and laudable uſages heretofore accuſtomed, at the ſeting up whereof, our Pleaſure is theſe our* Letters *ſhall be openly read, for a more plain Declaration of our pleaſure in the premiſes. And theſe our* Letters *ſhall be to you and either of you, for the doing of the premiſes, and every part thereof a ſufficient Warrant and diſcharge. Given under our Signet of our ſaid Order, at our Palace of* Weſtminſter *the* 7. *of* March, *the firſt year of our Reign.*

To our Truſty and Well-beloved the *Dean* of our *Chappel* at *Windeſor*, *Regiſter* of our *Order* of the *Garter*, and Sir *Gilbert Dethick* alias *Garter* Knight King at Arms for our ſaid *Order*, and to either of them.

CHAP. XXV.

Honors

PAID TO DECEASED

Knights-Companions.

SECT. I.

Of the celebration heretofore of Maſſes, for the defunct Knights-Companions.

WE obſerve it to have been the Cuſtom in all Religious, and moſt Military *Orders*, that, [a] when any of the *Knights* departed this life, the ſeveral Members of them ſhould contribute their devotions, for the benefit of their departed Souls, according to their different qualifications; ſome in celebrating *Maſſes*, or cauſing them to be celebrated; and others in the recitation of *Divine Offices*, and

a *A. Mendo Diſq.* 16. *n.* 8. 9, *&c.*

and *Alms-giving*; as it were to satisfie the World of the honor they had, from their being enrolled in their several *Fraternities* and *Societies*.

But the *Order* of the *Garter* hath outvy'd all others in this particular; for as the reputation which the *Knights-Companions*, while living, derived from their admission into so renowned and illustrious a Body, specially *Knights-Subjects*, who were thereby advanced to a Fellowship with their *King* and *supreme Lord*, and made Companions to *Emperors*, *Kings*, and *Princes*, was very great; so were the several Honors paid to their memory after their decease, particularly in the Royal Chappel of St. *George* at *Windesor*, very remarkable; not including the Solemnities at their publick *Funerals*, many times happning elsewhere; and these we find reducible to five heads. (1.) The number of *Masses* celebrated for their Souls departed. (2.) The fastning *Plates* of their Arms, at the back of their Stalls. (3.) Offering up their *Atchievements* at the Altar, and (4.) Depositing *Mantles* in the Chapter-house at *Windesor*.

As to the celebrating of *Masses* for the deceased *Knights-Companions*, though it might suffice to say, that it was done consonantly to the perswasion of those times, yet we shall not think it much to give the reasons thereof, as we find them laid down in the *Preface* to the *Black-Book* of the *Order*, in direct relation to this solemn Ceremony performed for them.

[b] It was the general opinion then, That *Monasteries*, *Convents*, and *Colledges*, were founded out of this motive, that, among devout, charitable, and well disposed *Christians*, there should be a continual harmony of Prayer, as well for the living as the dead. For the *Living*, that, in Peace and War, they might manage all their Affairs with piety, prudence, and good success: For the *Dead*, that having obtained remission, they might reign together in eternal bliss. [c] And not knowing what dangers might surround them, the living thought themselves obliged the more fervently to assist them with their Prayers; supposing it uncertain, whether they were in glory or torment. [d] That by pious *Prayers*, they might endeavour to turn Gods vengeance, due for the many sins committed in this life, into clemency; inasmuch as continual supplication was indeed very prevalent, and might reach the ears of the Almighty. That this kind of commemoration moved the greatest *Princes*, to be so expensive in sumptuous Structures, for the assembling such as should continually pray therein, as also inferiour persons, according to their abilities, to promote their own and others salvation. And that the *Princes* reflecting on the uncertainty of their own lives, and considering, that many were in their Services cut off, amidst the hazards of War, and how doubtful such a departure was, endeavoured to assist them in the next World, since they could no longer do it in this; which, if by any thing, was to be performed by *Prayer*. Out of these perswasions, that this was available, they had their recourse thereto, and so began to institute persons and places, for the making of *Prayers* to that end.

b *Lib. N. p.* 8.

c *Ibid. pag.* 9.

d *Pag.* 11.

With what hath been delivered concerning the motive of this *Office* for the dead, it may be also observed, that the *Founder* of the *Order* admitted into its *Institution*, the commemoration of the departed Souls of the *Knights-Companions*; and thereupon it came to be ordained, [e] *That assoon as the* Soveraign *should have true and certain intelligence brought him of the Death of any of the* Knights-Companions, *he should cause to be celebrated for the Soul of a Defunct* Knight *a thousand* Masses.

e 3. H. 5. Stat. Art. 17 *Lib. N pag.* 223.

And that all the rest of the *Knights-Companions* might (upon like notice) contribute to the relief of the Soul of their deceased *Fellow* and *Companion*, the Proportions were in like manner stated in the same Article of the *Statutes*, thus.

A *Stranger King*	800.	*Masses.*
The *Prince*	700.	
Every *Duke*	600.	
Each *Earl*	300.	
Every *Baron*	200.	
And a *Knight Batchelour*	100.	

Afterwards

Afterwards, when the Titles of *Marquess* and *Viscount* were introduced among us, the proportion of *Masses* imposed upon the former was 450. as being a Degree of Dignity between those of a *Duke* and an *Earl*, on the latter 250. And the numbers of all these *Masses* were [f] rated proportionable to the *Fees*, enjoined to be paid, for setting up the *Knights-Companions Atchievements* over their *Stalls*. f *Lib.N. p.97.*

Now to prevent the neglect in performance of this duty incumbent upon the *Soveraign*, and surviving *Knights-Companions*, by this Article of the *Statutes*; it was thought fit to set down for penalty, a compleat [g] doubling of the number of those *Masses*, to which at first they were enjoined (according to their qualities and Degrees) if they were not celebrated within three Months, after notice given of the deceased *Knights* Death, as aforesaid. And if the neglect extended to half a year together, they were obliged, to [h] quadruple their number, and [i] so from time to time, until the years end. But if after all this, they should not within the whole year perform what they were so enjoined; the *Statute* further bound them, to [k] double the *Masses* from year to year, after the foresaid manner. g (h) (i) (k) *E. 3. Stat. Art. 17. H. 5. Stat. Art. 17. & Lib. N. p. 223.*

But to provide against any omission of the *Soveraigns* part, it was added to the *Registers* Duty, *an.* 31 *H.* 8. to [l] put the *Soveraign* in mind, of giving *Order* herein, if at any time it should happen, to be forgotten by him; to the end he might forthwith take care to have the *Masses* celebrated, according to the said Injunction. l *Lib. N. pag. 109.*

And because it was at length thought convenient, to withdraw this burthen from *Stranger Kings* and *Princes*, that branch of the *Statute* relating to them, was made *null*, and in a *Chapter* held at *Windesor*, the 8. of *May*, *an.* 13 *H.* 6. the same was by the [m] *Soveraign* placed upon himself and his Successours, *Soveraigns* of this most Noble *Order*. m *Lib.N.p.91.*

But because all the surviving *Knights-Companions*, might the better perform this Injunction, and cause the full number of *Masses* to be celebrated, care was taken by the *Soveraign* to send *Letters* to every one of them, (at first, as well to *Knights-Strangers* as *Subjects*) immediately after the decease of any *Knight*, to signify the time of his Death, and put them in mind of the Injunction, which the *Statutes* laid upon them. Of which *Letters*, some Precedents may be seen in the [n] *Appendix*. n *Numb.* CLXXXV. CLXXXVI. & CLXXXVII.

The difference between those *Letters* sent to the *Knights-Companions* beyond Sea, and these at home, was only this, that in these directed to the latter, (in regard of their nearness to the Court, and consequently in greater readiness to appear at an Election.) The *Letters* contained a summons also, to come to the *Election* of a new *Knight*, on such a day as the *Soveraign* had therein appointed.

And it seems it was the custom for those *Religious Houses*, whether the *Soveraign* sent directions, to celebrate either part or all the *Masses* due to each deceased *Knight*, to make a formal [o] return in writing, under their [p] Common Seal, of what they had done therein: which *Certificates*, were, also by the *Register*, reported in *Chapter* to the *Soveraign* or his *Lieutenant*. For *an.* 18 *H.* 8. we find [q] him acquaint the *Soveraigns Lieutenant*, with several such *Certificates*, signifying the Celebration of 1000. *Masses* (upon the *Soveraigns* account) for each of these *Knights* defunct; namely the Earls of [r] *Arundel*, *Shrewsbury*, *Essex*, and *Rutland*, the Viscount *Fitz-walter*, and Lord *Abergaveny*, and at other times, (sitting the *Chapter*) there were brought in [s] such like authentick *Letters*, certifying the celebration of the *Masses*, for the Souls of other defunct *Knights*. o *Numb.* CLXXXVIII. p *Lib. N. pag.* 254. q § *Lib. N p.* r § 254. & *Regist. Charac. fol.* 65. s *Ibid. p.* 171. 268. & 272.

This course of celebrating these *Masses* for defunct *Knights*, was constantly observed and so continued, until the 32*d.* year of King *Henry* the Eighth; at which time, upon a motion made concerning those suffrages for the Dead, in a *Chapter* held in his Palace at *Westminster*, on the 24*th* of *May*, in the aforesaid year this *Decree* passed. [t] *That every one of the* Knights-Companions, *in lieu of the said* Masses, *should for the future, after the Death of any of their* Brethren, *according to the rates of their Degrees hereafter mentioned, and immediately upon demand* t § *Lib. N. p.* u § 283. *See also H.* 8. *Stat in English, Art.* 18.

demand made for the same, by the Register *and Dean of* Windesor, *or one of them, pay the several sums of money here specified.*

	l.	s.	d.
[u] The *Soveraign*,	08	06	08.
A *Stranger King*,	06	08	04.
The *Prince*,	05	16	08.
A *Duke*,	05	00	00.
A *Marquess*,	03	16	00.
An *Earl*,	02	10	00.
A *Viscount*,	01	01	08.
A *Baron*,	01	13	04.
A *Batchellor Knight*,	00	16	08.

The monies collected upon this Account (called *Obit* monies) were by the aforesaid *Decree*, appointed [w] to be distributed and imployed in *Alms Deeds*; of which sort, (as they are there mentioned) are *the* [x] *reparation of High-ways, the relief of the Poor, and other things of like nature, as the* Soveraign *should from time to time limit and appoint.*

w Lib. N. p. 283. x Lib. N. p. 283.

And of the [y] receipt of these sums, and their disbursements, it was also decreed, *That the* Dean *and* Register, *or either of them, should yearly in* Chapter, *present his Account to the* Soveraign *under the penalty of Ten pounds, to be imployed, for such like use, for every such default. And,* [z] *that* Knight-Companion *whose portion did appear to be then unpaid, should by way of penalty or fine, add unto his former duty, another third part of the same; and so for every year that he should be behind, to pay a third part more, than he was at first enjoyned to pay, according to the rate before set down.*

y Ibid. z Ibid. p. 284.

This charitable distribution, in a *Chapter* held at *Greenwich*, the 24. of *April, an.* 5. *E.* 6. was enlarged *to the* [a] *relief and succour of the* Poor, *where most need was, in the Town of* Windesor, *and other Towns, Villages, and Places, at and by the discretion of the* Dean *of* Windesor, [b] *he advising with some honest men, who could best give an account of such as were truly poor and indigent.*

a Lib. N. p. b 306.

To the bringing in of these Collections, the *Soveraigns* have sometimes vouchsafed to cast their eyes, and *an.* 1. *&* 2. *Ph. & Mar.* by an Order in *Chapter*, a [c] *Scedule* was appointed to be made, of all the monies due and in arrear, upon the decease of *Knights-Companions*, to the end they might be imployed to publick and pious uses.

c Lib.C. p. 14.

But though the foresaid *Decree* was confirmed by [d] King *Edward* the Sixth, Queen *Mary*, and Queen *Elizabeth*, yet for many years, had the Collection of these *Obit* monies been neglected, even till the 9. of King *Charles* the First; and then the noble Earl of [e] *Portland*, inflamed with zeal, for the restoring of so pious a work, did in full *Chapter* held at *Windesor*, on the [f] 5. of *Nov.* in the aforesaid year, put the *Soveraign* in mind of the *Decrees*, anciently made in this case. Whereupon it was ordained by the *Soveraign*, with the consent of all the *Knights-Companions* present, [g] *That the said Constitution, so honorable and charitable in it self, and to which they were all sworn, at their entrance into the* Order, *should be revived, and put in practice, and for ever hereafter observed, under the penalty contained in the Statutes, both towards the* Knights *that were to pay the same, and towards the* Dean *of* Windesor, *who was to collect it*: And further, [h] *That the same should begin for the five* Knights, *whose Atchievements were at that Feast offered*: that is to say, for the King of *Sweden*, the Prince Elector *Palatine*, the Earls of *Northumberland*, *Banbury*, and *Rutland*. And concerning [i] *Stranger Princes*, it pleased the *Soveraign* to express himself, *That, as by the Statutes they are left to perform these payments by themselves, if they would, so, if the same were not done by them, that then, and thenceforwards the same should be paid by the* Soveraign *himself.*

d Lib.R. p. 87. e Ibid. pag. 86. f Ibid. pag. 83. g h i Ibid. p. 87.

The *Soveraign*, whose total for these five deceased *Knights*, amounted to 129 *l.* 3 *s.* 4 *d.* caused the same to be paid to Doctor *Christopher Wren*, the then *Register*

Register of the *Order*: so did the Earls of *Arundel* and *Surry*, *Salisbury*, *Dorset*, *Holland*, *Berks*, *Portland*, and *Lindsey*, the Total of each of theirs amounting to 12 *l.* 10. *s.* But from the rest, (as the said *Register* himself complained in his [k] *Letters* to Sir *Tho. Rowe*, the then Chancellor of the *Order*) all his endeavours could not obtain their proportions.

[k] *Dated 24. May 1637.*

Afterwards, [l] all the Sums of money, to be collected by vertue of this *Decree*, (together with the *Knights-Companions* duties, at their first entrance into this *Order*) were imployed, towards the providing *Plate* for the *Altar*, within St. *George's Chappel* in *Windesor Castle*; of which we have [m] already treated.

[l] *Ex Collect. Doct. Chr. Wren nuper Ord. Regist.*

[m] *Chap. 19. Sect. 6.*

SECT. II.

Of fixing on the Stalls, Plates *of their* Arms, *and* Stiles.

THE next thing, provided for by the *Statutes* of *Institution*, was the deceased *Knights Honor*; in commemoration whereof, among other things conducing thereunto, it was ordained, * *That when any one of the first* Founders *should dye, there should be made in metal a* Scutcheon *of his Arms, with his Helm or Crest, and fastned at the back of his Stall, for a* [a] *mark of Honor to him that bore them.* [b] And in like manner, *that their* Successors, *should have a like* Scutcheon *fixed on the backs of their Stalls*; and to difference them, from those of the first *Founders*, they were appointed to be made in bigness, [c] less than theirs, and to be placed somewhat underneath them.

*E. 3. H. 5. } *Stat. Art.* 23

[a] *Ord. Stat. in Bibl. Hatton. Art.* 23.

[b] *E.* 3. [c] *H.* 5 } *Stat. Art.* 23.

But this *Article* relates only to the *Knights-Companions*, not to the *Soveraigns* of this most Noble *Order*; nor do we find, that any of them had *Plates* of their Arms and Stiles set upon the back of their Stalls, in manner as is before prescribed, to the rest of the *Knights-Companions*.

King *Henry* the Eighth in his Body of *Statutes*, alters this *Article* in three particulars; first, as to the time of setting up their *Plates*, he appoints it to be (not after their death, but) [d] within a year after the Installation of every *Knight-Companion*: Secondly, as to the nature of the *Metal*, that it may be such [e] as the *Knight* shall please himself: And lastly, as to the *size*, though he also restrains the *Knights Subjects* to a lesser, than those of the first *Founders*, yet gives he liberty to *Knights Strangers*, to [f] use their Plates and fashions at pleasure.

[d] [e] [f] *Art.* 25.

As to the first of these, we find not, but that it hath been duly observed. But the last (the *size* of the *Plates*) as will appear upon sight, hath been little regarded: For the very *Plates* of those *Knights*, who were installed soon after the confirmation of these *Statutes*, and thence downwards, are bigger than those of the first *Founders*. As to the other, relating to the *Metal* they are off, it is to be acknowledged, that the succeeding *Knights-Companions*, did prudently follow the example of their Predecessors, who appointed their *Plates* to be of *Copper*, and thereby unexpectedly defeated the design of Avarice and Rapine. Of which we have an instance in the Duke of *Wirtemberg's* Plate, for that being of Silver and large withal, gave so great a temptation, that in the late Wars it was forced from the back of the Stall whereto it was fixed, with some difficulty sure, since they could not get it thence, without carrying away some part of the Wainscot along with it.

But if the Metal of these *Plates*, were of small value, the workmanship about them, was extraordinary, especially of late; the *Plate* it self being gilt over, and the colours of the Armory and Supporters richly enamelled: all which, though it added much lustre to the Shield, yet did it nothing contribute to the advantage of the Thief.

In tract of time, many of these noble and remarkable Memorials were by sacrilegious hands torn off and imbezelled; which the late *Soveraign* of ever

pious memory having taken notice of, and desirous to put a stop to a mischief, not in his power to prevent, as also to preserve the remembrance of the precedent *Knights-Companions*, commanded the Dean of *Windesor* to describe the Stiles of those that remained in a *Book*, which he accordingly did, and laid it up in the *Colledge*. But what became of this *Book*, our most diligent enquiry, could never find out. So that in *May*, *An. Dom.* 1659. by the civil permission of Colonel *Whichcott*, then Governour of *Windesor Castle*, all we could do, was, to draw the *Arms* and coppy out the *Stiles*, engraven on the *Plates*, then remaining (whilst Mr. *Winesluus Holler* was imployed by us to take several *Prospects* of the *Castle* and *Chappel*) from which, we have drawn these following observations.

First, That for many years after the *Institution* of the *Order*, the *Plate* whereon the *Shield* was engraved, bore no other Inscription, but the deceased *Knights* name set at the foot thereof, under the Scutcheon of his Arms. Afterwards his Chief *Title* of *Honour* began to be added, though now and then in these first and elder times, both were omitted, as also their Crests. But about the beginning of King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign, not only the *Knights* chief *Title*, but all other his *Titles* of *Dignity*, whether Honorary, or Officiary, (and every thing in that kind due) were drawn together in one Inscription, concluding with that of *Knight* of this most Noble *Order*, and which, about the same time, the *Knights-Companions* used to insert into both publick and private Instruments of writing, wherein any of them were concerned, a custom observed by the *Knights* of other *Soveraign Orders* abroad. For in an [g] Instrument, dated at *Bulloign*, the 20*th* of *Febr. an.* 1549. by the Noblemen and others that were appointed to treat of a Peace, between King *Edward* the Sixth, and the French King *Henry* the Second, we find, that such of them, as were *Knights* of the *Orders* of either *Kingdom*, had the additions of their *Orders*, (as also the *Register* of the *Order* of St. *Michael*, that title of his Office) joyned to their other *Titles*, in this manner.

John Earl of *Bedford*, *Knight* of the *Order*.

William Pagit, *Knight* also of the *Order*.

Francis de Mountmorency Seignior de *Rochepot*, *Knight* of the *Order* of *France*.

Gaspard de Colligny Seignior de *Chastillon*, *Knight* also of the *Order*.

Guilliame Rochetell Seignior de *Saffy*, one also of the *French* Kings Council, chief Secretary, and *Register* of the *Order*.

At first, the *Knights-Companions* gave their Paternal Coats of *Arms*, singly and without any *Quarterings*, but towards the beginning of King *Henry* the Fifths Reign, they began to add their *Quarterings*, as may appear from the Scutcheons of *Hugh* Lord *Burnell*, who died [h] *an.* 9 *H.* 5. Sir *Lewis Robessart* Lord *Bourchier*, *Robert* Lord *Willoughby*, and others.

Yet was not the same generally used, but left to the pleasure of the *Knights-Companions*: But of latter times, this very thing was thought of such concernment, and honour, that where a *Knight* hath been elected, who wanted *Quarterings*, the *Soveraign* hath been pleased to grant him another *Coat* of *Arms*, to quarter with his Paternal Coat, lest otherwise his *Banner* (which ought to hang over his Stall) shall seem too naked: as in the Case of *Robert* Viscount *Rochester*, and *Thomas* Earl of *Kelley*, in the Reign of King *James*.

Shortly after the beginning of the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, the *Knights* compassed their Shields, with the Royal *Garter*; and thereon (if Noblemen) placed the *Coronet* belonging to their Dignity, continuing the use ever since. Thus adorned do we find the Scutcheon of *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, elected in the Reign of King *Edward* the Fourth, and yet we do not observe it used in all the Reign of King *Henry* the Seventh. For though a *Plate* for *Franke van Hall*, (a *Knight* elected by the *Founder*) is hitherto standing in his Stall at *Windesor*, surrounded with a *Garter*, yet is not this *Plate* the workmanship of that Age, but engraved and set up of late times; as may easily be observed, from the work it self.

As touching *Supporters*; tis true, we observe two *Plates* to which *Supporters* are

[g] *MS. in Offic. Arm. M.* 14. *fol.* 49. *b.*

[h] *Lib. N. p.* 67.

are added, the one of *John Beaufort* the first Duke of *Somerset* of that name, elected *an.* 20 *H.* 6. the other of *Anthony Woodvill* Earl *Rivers*, elected *an.* 5. *E.* 4. and besides these, until the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, there is not one other example. But then it grew into a common usage; as also the ingraving their peculiar *Mottoes* or *Devises* upon the Plates.

SECT. III.

The Offering *of* Atchievements.

A Third honour done to the defunct *Knight*, is a most solemn *Offering* up of his *Atchievements* at the High *Altar*, according to the magnificence of so great an *Order*; namely the *Banner* of his Arms, his *Sword*, his *Helmet*, and *Crest*, with its *Mantlings*: all which had been set up over his *Stall*, when he was Installed.

The Ceremony of *Offering* these *Ensigns*, does not appear to have been so Ordained at the *Institution* of the *Order*, but rather an additional honor, instituted by King *Henry* the Fifth, and the manner and order thereof, set down in the 14*th Article* of his body of *Statutes*.

This solemn Ceremony is local to the *Chappel* of St. *George*, within the *Castle* of *Windesor*, and not to be celebrated, until certain notice be given to the *Soveraign* of the *Knights-Companions* Death, or that he shall receive a *Certificate* thereof. This appears in the ease of the Duke of *Ferrara*; where at the Feast of St. *George*, *an.* 20 *H.* 7. the vulgar report run for currant, that he was dead, *nevertheless* [a] *because the* Soveraign *had not then received any* Certificate *of the same, his* Atchievements *were not* Offered *up at that Feast.*

There fell out a question, at the Feast of St. *George* held at *Windesor*, the 23*d.* of *May*, *an.* 1 *E.* 6. which held some debate, *viz.* [b] whether the *Atchievements* of King *Henry* the Eighth, which yet hung over the *Soveraigns Stall*, should be taken down and *Offered* at the *Mass* of *Requiem* ensuing, or not? in regard his *Banner*, *Sword*, *Helm*, and *Crest*, with *Mantles*, had been offered up the 16*th* of *Febr.* before, at his Interment within that *Chappel*: whereupon it was determined, [c] *That the said* Atchievements *should not again be Offered, but remain over the* Soveraigns Stall *for his Son King* Edward *the Sixth.*

The *Relator* for justifying the legality of this determination, saith, there was found a like Precedent, in the case of King *Henry* the Sixth, who lyeth buried in that *Chappel*; but we suppose him mistaken, and that instance (being in truth much different from that of King *Henry* the Eighth,) not well considered by him: For the case was this; When King *Edward* the Fourth came to the Crown, he thought it unfit, that the *Atchievements* of King *Henry* the Sixth (who could not be accounted *Soveraign* of this most Noble *Order*, because no longer King of *England*) should be continued over his Stall, They therefore by the express command of King *Edward* the Fourth, signified by [d] Letters sent to his *Deputy* and the *Knights-Companions*, were by *Garter* taken down and carried out of the *Choire* into the *Vestry*, and, in their place were set up the new *Atchievements* of King *Edward* the Fourth, and this was done at the *Feast* of St. *George* held at *Windesor* [e] *an.* 1. *E.* 4. and long before the Death of King *Henry* the Sixth, which when it hapned, he was first buried at *Chertsey Abbey* in *Surrey*, and by King [f] *Richard* the Thirds Command Reinterred on the Southside of the High *Altar*, in St. *Georges Chappel* at *Windesor*, and therefore this cannot sute with King *Henry* the Eighths Case, whose *Atchievements* were not taken down at all.

But when the *Soveraigns* of this most Noble *Order* are not interred at *Windesor*, then are their *Atchievements* offered up at the next ensuing *Feast*, according to the usual manner, as were those of Queen *Elizabeth*, which the *Blew Book*

a *Lib.N.p.*178. *See also Tho. Wriothesleys's old MS. penes W. le N. Cl.*

b } *Collect pag.* 7.
c } *præfat. W. le N. Cl. Vide etiam MS.* 4. *penes E. W. C. fol.* 12.

d } *Lib.N.pag.*
e } 126.

f *Concilia Britann. Vol.* 2. *p.* 712. *&* 713.

Book notes to be done at * Morning Prayer, the 11. of *July*, *an.* 1. *Jac. R.* The *Banner* being offered by the Earl of *Nottingham* Lord Admiral (then the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*) and the Lord *Buckhurst*, Lord Treasurer; the *Sword* by the Earls of *Shrewsbury*, and *Cumberland*; and the *Helm* and *Crest*, by the Earls of *Northumberland*, and *Worcester*; and also of King *James* her Successor, *an.* § 1 *Car.* 1. both these *Soveraigns* being buried at *Westminster*.

As to the time for performing this Ceremony, it was ordained to be on the [h] *Morrow* after the *Feast*, when the [i] *Mass* was sung, for the soul of the *Knights-Companions*, and of all the Faithful deceased; and [k] before the Offering of Money. Thus was it ordered even, in the [l] first precedent we have of this solemn Ceremony, and so was it duly and constantly performed in succeeding times, till that of the Reformation, at which the *Mass* of *Requiem* being abolished, this Solemnity was nevertheless performed in the Morning Service on the *Morrow*, immediately after the *Offertory*. But after Queen *Elizabeth* had removed the *Feasts* of St. *George* from *Windesor*, and left those of *Installation* only to be held there, that Solemnity was commonly dispatcht in one day, and the *Atchievements* of the defunct *Knights* offered, before they went out of the *Choire*, as in the 16. year of her Reign, at the Installation of the [m] Earls of *Derby* and *Penbroke*, when assoon as the Morning Service was ended, in which the Ceremony of *Installation* was performed, the *Commissioners*, appointed for that Solemnity, came down from their Stalls, and offered the *Atchievments* of the Earl of *Derby*, Lord *William Howard* of *Effingham*, and Lord *Chandos*.

And this was the first time, we observe this Ceremony to have been translated from the *Morrow* after the *Feast* of St. *George*, to any other time; and the ancient rule (as to the time) being thus broken, was never after restored, but [o] generally thence forward, the *Offring* of the defunct *Knights Atchievments* was performed the very same *Morning*, wherein the *Elect-Knights* were *Installed*. For [p] the Installation being fully compleated, towards the end of the second Service, *viz.* at the time of the *Offertory*, the *Atchievments* were offered, after which, succeeded the *Offring* of *Money*.

And yet once, when the Solemnity of *Installation* was celebrated at *Evening Prayer*, being that of *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*, and *John Casimire* Prince Palatine of the *Rhyne*, the 13. of *January an.* 25. *Eliz.* [q] immediately after their *Proctors* had taken possession of their Stalls, and an *Anthem* been sung, the *Atchievments* of [r] *Maximilian* the Emperor, *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, *Francis* Duke of *Montmorency*, *Henry* Earl of *Arundel*, and *Walter* Earl of *Essex*, were with wonted honor, as the *Statutes* of the *Order* required, severally Offered; but not without the sad and sorrowful view of all the standers by.

Sometime before the day was thus changed, an intermixture of both the *Offerings* together, *viz.* of *Money* and *Atchievments* began to be introduced; when after the *Offertory* was read, the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* descended from his Stall, and proceeded to the *Altar*, and there Offered both *Gold* and *Silver* for the *Soveraign*, and so returned to his Seat; after which, the *Offering* of the defunct *Knights Atchievements* began, and that Ceremony being ended, the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* proceeded again to the *Altar*, and there offered *Money* for himself; and lastly, all the rest of the *Knights-Companions* present offered *Money* in order. Thus we find these Ceremonies managed [t] *an.* 5. *Eliz.* at the *Offering* of the *Atchievements* of the Lord *Grey*, and *an.* [t] 6. *Eliz.* when the *Atchievements* of the Earls of *Westmerland* and *Rutland*, and the Lord *Paget*, were offered; the Earl of *Arundel* being the *Soveraign's Lieutenant* at both these *Feasts*. But not long after, this course was altered in part, and the [u] *Lieutenant* Offered not for the *Soveraign*, till after such time as the *Atchievements* of the defunct had been compleatly offered.

And albeit the day was thus changed, for performance of this Ceremony, yet was not the Ceremony it self begun till after the *Installation* was finished, that Solemnity having at all times the precedency; until *an.* [w] 9. *Jac. R.* when he, observing a kind of incongruity in the order of the Ceremony, namely to Install a new

* *Lib. C. p.* 152 *vide etiam MS. f. l. penes E. W. G. fol.* 155.

g *MS. pen. Ed. Fauconbridge gen.*

h } *Lib. N. p.* 66. *vide*
i } *H.* 8. *Stat. Art.* 12.

k *H.* 5 *Stat. Art.* 14. *vide porro Collect. W. le N. Cl. & MS. in Offic. Armor.* [*H.* 2. *fol.* 3. *b.*]

l *Lib. N. p.* 67.

m } *Ex Collect.*
n } *R. C. Cl. fol.* 29.

o } *Ib. pag.* 33.
p } *vide etiam lib. C. p.* 111. 121. 124. 135. 140. 164.

q } *Lib. C. p.*
r } 90.

s *MS. fol. penes præf. W. le N. Cl. fol.* 13.

t *MS. f.* 18. *b.*

u *Ex Collect. præf. R. C. Cl. f.* 25. *sub. an.* 14. *Eliz.*

w *MS. f. l. pen. E. W. G. Et Lib. C. p.* 173. 178.

a new *Knight* (and who, being thus installed, frequently became one of those *Knights*, that offered part of the defunct *Knights Atchievments*, as may be seen in divers and sundry Examples) before his Predecessor had been fully discharged of his Stall, gave order for Offering the *Atchievments* of [x] Sir *Henry Lea*, the Lord *Scroop*, Viscount *Bindon*, and the Earl of *Dunbar*, first, and before the Instalment of the Elect *Knights*, *Charles* Duke of *York*, *Tho.* Earl of *Arundel*, and *Robert* Viscount *Rochester*, which was accordingly performed; as also at the Installation of [y] *Frederick* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, and *Henry* Prince of *Orange*, *an.* 10. *Jac. R.* x, y Ibid.

And two years after, at the [a] Installation of the Earl of *Rutland*, Sir *George Villars* (afterwards created Duke of *Buckingham*) and Viscount *Lisle*, the Lord Admiral [b] going out of the Choire, to fetch in the said Earl of *Rutland*, to his Installation (according to the old manner, before the Offering of the *Atchievments*, and as had been done the [c] year before) the *Soveraign* remanded him, and again [d] ordered, That the *Atchievments* of the Earl of *Shrewsbury* should be first Offered, before any of the Elect *Knights* should be Installed. a, b Ibid. c Lib.C.p 18 d MS.

Not long after, it was thought convenient, to perform this Ceremony on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, presently after the first *Vespers* begun, and next to proceed on with the *Installation* of the *Elect Knight*, whereby as much as possible, the Stalls of the *Knights-Companions* might be supplyed, and consequently the places among them filled up, in all the rest of the Solemnities of the *Feast*: Thus was it ordered, at the Installation of [e] Marquess *Hamilton*, *an.* 21. *Jac. R.* when the *Atchievments* of the Earl of *Exceter* were Offered. In like manner, the following year, were the *Atchievments* of the [f] Duke of *Lenox* first offered, and *an.* 4. *Car.* 1. those of the [g] Duke of *Brunswick*, and the Earls of *Suffolk* and *Leicester*, before the King of *Sweden*, Prince of *Orange*, and Earl of *Suffolk* were installed; and at [h] all times afterwards during that pious Kings Reign, the *Offering* of *Atchievments* was the first Ceremony performed on the *Eve* of the *Feast*, next after the decease of a *Knight*, though no Installation followed; as were those of the Earl of *Carlisle*, *an.* 13. *Car.* 1. and of the Earl of *Kelly*, in the 15. year of the same *Soveraign*. e Lib. 3. f Ibid. pag. 18 g Ibid. pag. 40 h Ibid. pag. 61. 84. 127. vide etiam Palmers Journ. pro an. 1639. pag. 19.

But if at that time any of the *Elect-Knights* were introduced into the Choire, before the *Offering* of *Atchievments* began, they were appointed to [i] stand there, under the Stalls designed for them, till that Ceremony was finished. i Lib. R. p. 90. sub finem.

Thus the practice continued, of *Offering* the defunct *Knights Atchievments*, before the Ceremony of *Installation* began; from the 9. year of King *James* until *an.* 15. of the present *Soveraign*, when it was performed, at the time anciently accustomed; for the Prince of *Denmark* (by his Proctor Sir *George Carteret*) and the Duke of *Monmouth* were both Installed, before the first *Vespers* began, and the *Atchievments* of *Bernard de Foix* Duke of *Espernon*, and *Edward* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, were not Offered till the *Morrow* after the *Feast* day, immediately before Divine Service began; so also was it observed at the *Feast* held *an.* 23. *Car.* 2.

As to the manner and order of this Ceremony, among other *Institutions* of King *Henry* the Fifth, it is thus appointed, [m] *That, as often as through the vacancy of any Stall, the Swords, Helms, with the rest of the* Atchievements *ought to be Offered, the Sword of the deceased* Knight *shall be first Offered, being carried up to the high Altar, by two of the* Knights-Companions, *whom the* Soveraign *or his* Deputy *shall assign to that purpose, and afterwards the Helm, with the Crest and Mantlings* (for which we sometimes find one general word [n] *Insignia*] used) *by two other* Knights-Companions, *named also by the* Soveraign *or his* Deputy; and this *Offering* is to be made for them, [o] *in the order as they were Installed, not as they dyed.* m H. 5. Stat. Art. 14. vide porro Lib. N. pag. 66. n Lib. N. pag. 101. & C. pag. 111. 140. & 163. o Lib. R. p. 84.

But of the *Offering* of a defunct Knights *Banner*, we find no express mention, till the 18. year of King *Henry* the Seventh, at which time the [p] Banner of the Lord *Brook* was Offered, by Sir *Edward Poynings*, and Sir *Richard Pool*; his *Sword* by the Earl of *Surrey* and Lord *Strange*; and in the last place his *Helm*, with its Appendices, by the before named Sir *Edward Poynings*, and Sir *Richard Pool*: p Lib. N. p. 175.

Tool: But afterwards the direction for Offering this *Enſign* of the deſunct Knights honor, was taken into King *Henry* the Eighth's [q] body of *Statutes.*

q *Art.* 12.

And note, that ſince the *Offering* of the *Banner* was introduced, it was (in the order of Ceremony, and according to the before mentioned Precedent) to be offered [r] firſt, and ſo hath it been obſerved; only once we find this courſe inverted, *viz. an.* [t] 22. *Jac. R.* (but upon what account there is no mention) where, at the *Offering* of the Duke of *Lenox* his *Atchievements*, the Helm and Creſt were offered in the firſt place, the Sword in the ſecond, and the [u] Banner in the third.

r *Ibid.*

t } *Lib. R. p.*
u } 18.

Immediately after the entrance of the before mentioned Conſtitution of King *Henry* the Fifth, in the *Black Book*, a Precedent for the order of this Ceremony doth alſo follow, which extended it ſelf to future times, and was thus, [w] *On the Morrow after the Feaſt of St.* George (*an.* 9. *H.* 5.) *the* Soveraign *and* Knights-Companions *aſſembled according to cuſtom, to celebrate the* Maſs pro deſunctis, *at which time the* Sword *of* Thomas *Duke of* Clarence (who was ſlain at *Bouzy-bridge*, in his return out of *Anjou*, on [y] *Eaſter Eve* preceding) *was born to the Altar and offered up, by* John *Duke of* Bedford, *and* Humfrey *Duke of* Glouceſter (Brothers to the deſunct Duke) *but his* Helm *with its Appendices, were offered by the hands of the* Soveraign, *and the ſaid Duke of* Bedford.

w *Lib.N.p.*67.

x *Tuſſels Hiſt. pag.* 92.

y *Ibid. p.* 122.

Beſides this honor, thus paid to the deceaſed Duke of *Clarence*, there paſt the like at that time, upon ſeveral other deſunct *Knights-Companions*, namely on [z] Sir *John Grey*, whoſe *Sword* was offered up by Sir *Thomas Erpingham*, and Sir *Walter Hungerford*, and his *Helm* and *Creſt* by *Richard* Earl of *Warwick*, and the Lord *Fitz Hugh*; and next on the [a] Lord *Burnell*, whoſe *Sword* was offered by Sir *Lewis Robeſſart*, and Sir *Simon Felbrig*; and his *Helm*, *&c.* by Sir *John Cornwall*, and Sir *John Robeſſart.* In the fourth place, the *Sword* of the [b] Lord *Cameux*, was offered up by Sir *Lewis Robeſſart*, and [c] Sir *Here Tank Clux*, and his *Helm* by Sir *John Cornwall*, and Sir *John Robeſſart.*

z } *Lib.N.p.*67.
a }
b }

This ſolemn Ceremony being finiſhed, in the order as is ſet down; the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* preſently after decreed; [d] *That the Rites to be obſerved at the* Offring *of* Atchievements, *ſhould for the future be in the foreſaid manner performed.*

d *Ibid.*

The appointment of the *Statute* is before noted to be, [e] that the *Soveraign* ſhall nominate and aſſign the *Knights-Companions*, who are ſeverally to perform this Ceremony; and ſo is the direction ſet down in [f] King *Henry* the Eighth's Statutes. But generally heretofore, ſo few of the *Knights-Companions* have uſed to attend the *Feaſts* of *Inſtallation* (at which time moſt commonly were the *Atchievements* of the deſunct *Knights* offered) that there hath not been much choice, nay, for the moſt part not enough for the enterchange of all the *Atchievements*, but that thoſe who have offered the *Banner*, have been conſtrained to aſſiſt at the *Offering*, if not of the *Sword*, yet of the *Helm* and *Creſt.*

e H.5. *Art.*14. *Lib.N. pag.*66.

f *Art.* 12.

Nay, yet leſs, for the *Feaſt* of St. *George an.* 1. *E.* 4. was ſolemnized at *Windeſor*, by two *Knights-Companions* only, *viz.* Viſcount *Bourchier*, the *Soveraign's Deputy*, and the Lord *Berners*, at which time there being the *Atchievements* of ſix deceaſed *Knights* to be offered; namely the Dukes of *York* and *Buckingham*, the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Shrewsbury*, of Viſcount *Beaumont* and the Lord *Scales*, theſe [g] two *Knights-Companions* performed the whole Ceremony, according to the ancient Cuſtom.

g *Lib. N. pag.* 126.

Moreover, *an.* 32. *H.* 6. there were but [h] three *Knights-Companions* that then held the *Feaſt*, namely the Duke of *Buckingham* Deputy to the *Soveraign*, the Lord *Sudely*, and Viſcount *Bourchier*; the [i] two latter of which offered both the *Sword* and *Helm* of the Earl of *Salisbury*, the Duke of *Buckingham* not enterchanging.

h *Ibid. p.* 111.

i *Ibid. p.* 112.

But notwithſtanding theſe Examples, at another time, *viz. an.* 8. *H.* 7. [k] becauſe the number of the *Knights Companions*, preſent at the *Feaſt*, were fewer than the [l] Statute required; therefore the *Offering* of *Atchievements* was then prorogued; *John* Lord *Denham*, then Lord Treaſurer of *England*, being *Preſident*, and only the Lord *Scroop* joined with him.

k *Ibid. p.* 171.

l *H* 8 *Stat. Art* 14. *& Lib. N. pag* 171.

Again,

Again, when the number of *Knights-Companions* present, have been sufficient to perform all the Ceremony severally, yet do we not observe the same anciently executed by *Knights-Companions*, according to the series of their Stalls, which is an argument, that the Rule of the *Statute* took place, and that the *Soveraign*'s choice and nomination, rather than the *Knights* seniority in the *Order*, was observed. But since the beginning of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, the *Knights* have generally proceeded to this *Offering*, according to their [m] seniority, and where the course ended, then the Seniors began again: Besides, there is variety of Examples, where the *Soveraign*'s *Deputy* or *Lieutenant* have joined in the Ceremony (though the instances where they have not, are more numerous) so that thence it appears to be no diminution to their Honor, to assist the other *Knights*, if it be also considered, that they are *Companions* and *Fellows*, in all the concerns of the *Order*; nor was it anciently thought otherwise, as is manifest from the Example which King [n] *Henry* the Fifth gave, at the performance of this Ceremony, to the memory of the Duke of *Clarence*, by himself and the Duke of *Bedford*, who then bore his *Helm* and *Crest* up to the high *Altar*, and there offered it.

m *Lib. R. p.* 18. *vide Coll. W. le N. Cl. & A. V. W.*

n *Lib. N. p.* 67.

There is a memorial entred in the [o] *Red Book* of the *Order*, *an.* 9. *Car.* 1. which chargeth it as an error, that the Earl of *Holland* was more than once joined with the Earl of *Berkshire* (who then wanted his opposite Companion) in *Offering* the then defunct *Knights Atchievements*; and withal, implies, that it had been more rightly done, if the Earl of *Berkshire* had gone alone (in the last place) to offer the remaining *Ensign*. But, with submission, this direction was not only contrary to the [p] *Article* of the *Statute*, which positively enjoins, *That every part of the* Atchievements *should be offered by two* Knights-Companions (not by any one singly or alone) but also to constant practice: For there is not one Example throughout all the *Registers* of the *Order* (exeepting this now mentioned) or any other authority we have ever met with, where a *Knight* proceeded singly to the *Offering* of *Atchievements*. On the contrary, when a *Knight-Companion* happened to want his opposite Fellow, commonly the next junior *Knight* present (how much lower soever his Stall was placed) was joined with him, in assisting at this solemn Ceremony, and of this there are many Examples; though we acknowledge it to be otherwise, both in the direction and practice at the *Offering* of *Gold* and *Silver*.

o *Ibid. pag.* 84.

p *H.* 5. *Stat. Art.* 14. *& Lib. N. pag.* 66.

By what hath been delivered, we see the principal persons concerned in this solemn action, are the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions* of the *Order*: Nor may a *Proxie* or *Deputy* be admitted, to perform any part of the Ceremony (though in the *Offering* of [q] *Money* he ought) as is clear from the Examples [r] of *John Thomas l' Angust*, Proctor for *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, *an.* 1. & 2. *Ph. & Mar.* and of the *Deputies* to [s] *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*, and *John* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, *an.* 25. *Eliz.* who descended not from the Stalls of their *Principals*, with the rest of the *Knights-Companions* into the *Choire*, at the time of *Offering* the *Atchievements*; but [t] remained therein during that Ceremony. Sir [u] *Thomas Scroop*, Deputy also for the Installation of his Father the Lord *Scroop*, *an.* 26. *Eliz.* intermedled not in this *Offering*, though he came down and [w] stood below in the *Choire*, before the Stall of his *Principal*, till the Ceremony was finished; and then returned up again into it, in his due order.

q *MS. in Offic. Arm.* [*H.* 2. *f.* 8. *b.*]

r *Collect. A. V. W.*

s *Collect. R.*

t *C. Cl. f.* 31.

u *Ibid. fol.*

w 33.

We shall now proceed to the duties of the *Prelate* of the *Order*, the *Prebends* of the *Colledge*, and the *Officers* of *Arms*; as their services severally or jointly relate to this Ceremony.

First then the [x] *Prelate*, and two of the *Prebends*, ought to proceed up to the *Altar*, immediately before *Garter* summons down the *Knights-Companions* to the *Offering*, and there stand ready to receive the *Atchievements*, as they are severally offered up.

x *Lib. R. p.* 40. *& 84. vide etiam MS. penes E. W. G. & Collect. A. V. W.*

It is next the duty of the Provincial *Kings* and *Heralds*, to conduct the *Knights-Companions*, when they proceed up to the *Altar*, bearing any part of the defunct *Knights Atchievements*, the whole of the Ceremony is briefly thus: (y the *Sexton* having beforehand taken down the *Atchievements*, and made them

y *MS. fol.* 18. *b.*

clean, and (before service begin) placed them in readiness on a Form or Stool, set directly under each defunct *Knights* Stall)

z Collect. W. le N. Cl.

[z] First, *Garter* riseth from his seat, and proceeds into the middle of the *Choire*, where after his usual obeysances, he summons the *Knights-Companions* to descend; who forthwith in their accustomed order, and with the usual Reverences, come down and place themselves before their Stalls; whereupon *Clarenceux* and *Norroy* (or in the absence of either, the senior *Herald*, or of both, the two eldest *Heralds*) pass down from the Steps of the *Altar*, into the body of the *Choire*; in the interim, *Garter* takes the *Banner* of the eldest defunct *Knight* into his hands, (for its a general rule, that all the *Knights Atchievements* be offered, according to the seniority of their Instalment) and presents it [a] half rolled up to the two senior *Knights-Companions*; the two Provincial *Kings*, being by this time come neer to the two senior *Knights*, there make their double obeysances, and afterwards another to the *Knights-Companions*, and then step a little aside: in the mean time, the *Knights* having took the *Banner* between them, make their double Reverence, and (preceded by the Kings) pass up to the *Altar*, bearing it with the lower end of the Staff foremost, and at the first Haut Pas make another double Reverence. The *Provincial Kings* being arrived at the uppermost Haut Pas before the *Altar*, after an humble obeysance, divide themselves to make way for the *Knights-Companions* to offer, and bowing to the said *Knights* as they pass by, the *Knights* forthwith raise the point of the *Banner* upwards, and (after a single Reverence towards the *Altar*) present it upon their knees, to the *Prelate* of the *Order*, who forthwith receives it from them, and delivers it to the two *Canons* (standing on each side him) and they deposite it upon Cushens laid before the *Altar*.

a Collect. R. C. Cl. fol. 29. & Collect. A. VW.

This done, the two Provincial *Kings*, conduct the foresaid *Knights-Companions* back into the *Choire*, who with usual Reverences retire to their Stations, under ([b] not to) their Stalls, and the Provincial *Kings* to their places, on either side the *Altar*.

b MS. fol. pen. E. W. G.

Next, the two senior *Heralds* pass down into the *Choire*, as did the Provincial *Kings*, while *Garter*, taking up the *Sword*, presents it also to the two next senior *Knights*, who proceed up to the *Altar* with the said two *Heralds* before them, in the same order as did the former *Knights-Companions*, and bearing the *Sword* between them, offer the same with the Pomel or Hilt upward, and then return to their Srations below in the *Choire*, conducted as before.

In the third place, the two next senior *Heralds* go down as before, *Garter* in the mean time presenting the *Helm* and *Crest*, to the two next senior *Knights*, who likewise proceed to the *Altar*, and there offer it in the same manner, and with like Ceremony, as had been the *Banner* and *Sword*. And if there be more *Atchievements* of defunct *Knights* to be offered than one, the *Knights-Companions* present, by course, two and two, perform the rest, in manner before described; but the *Pursuivants* at *Arms* do no part of this duty, only the Provincial *Kings* and *Heralds*, each in their turns and by couples. When there are the *Atchievements* of several *Knights* to be offered, and that the junior *Heralds* have done their duty, the Provincial *Kings* begin again, and so continue the course, till all the *Atchievements* be offered; the *Organs* playing while the *Offering* lasteth.

In the before mentioned order, were the *Atchievements* of the Duke of *Espernon*, and Prince *Edward* offered, at the *Grand Feast* of St. *George*, celebrated at *Windesor an.* 15. *Car.* 2. and the Provincial *Kings* and *Heralds*, as their turns came to officiate, took each of the *Atchievements* and presented them to the *Knights-Companions*.

The Duke of *Espernon*'s *Banner*, was offered by the Duke of *York* and Prince *Rupert*, being conducted to the *Altar* by *Clarenceux* and *Norroy*.

His *Sword*, by the Dukes of *Buckingham* and *Albemarle*, attended by *York* and *Lancaster*.

And his *Healm* and *Crest*, by the Earl of *Oxford* and Duke of *Richmond*, brought up by *Windesor* and *Richmond*.

Prince *Edward*'s *Banner*, *Sword*, and *Helm* were likewise severally offered, by

by the very same *Knights* who offered the Duke of *Espernons Atchievements*, each pair being conducted to the *Altar*, by the foresaid *Officers* of *Arms*.

Heretofore we find, that *Garter* hath not only begun this Solemnity, and presented the *Banner* to the first pair of *Knights-Companions*, but also conducted them up to the *Offering*; for so was the *Banner* of the [c] Lord *Grey*, delivered by *Garter* to the Lord *Loughborow*, and Viscount *Mountague an.* 5. *Eliz.* and by him were they brought up to the *Altar*.

He also performed the like service to the Earl of *Penbroke* and Lord *Clinton*, when they offered the *Banner* of the [d] Earl of *Westmerland*, the following year; and to the Lord *Admiral* and Earl of *Ormond*, *an.* 34. *Eliz.* at the Offering of the *Banner* of [e] *John* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*. And at the Solemnity celebrated for the Earl of *Derby*, to the Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*, and Lord *Chandos an.* 16. *Eliz.* [f] *Garter* himself, and no other *Officer* of *Arms*, conducted the *Knights-Companions* to the *Altar*; the like did he *an.* 30. *Eliz.* at the Offering of the *Hatchments* of the [g] Duke of *Holstien*, Earl of *Bedford*, Sir *Henry Sidney*, and the Earl of *Rutland*.

It was also the usage heretofore, for the *Prelate* to deliver the offered *Atchievements*; to some of the *Heralds*, before appointed to receive them, which they immediately deposited upon (and sometimes near) the *Altar*.

In this manner [h] *Clarenceux* and *Norroy*, *an.* 5 *Eliz.* (who stood on either side the *Prebend*) received the Lord *Greys Atchievements*, and placed them near the *Altar*.

Clarenceux, and *Somerset*, received likewise the *Atchievements* of the [i] Earls of *Westmerland*, *Rutland*, and the Lord *Pagit*, from the hands of the *Prelate*, and laid them on a Form, set beside the *Altar* for that purpose.

And *an.* 34 *Eliz.* *Norroy*, and *Windesor*, assisted to receive all the *Atchievements*, of [k] *John* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, the Earls of *Shrewsbury*, and *Warwick*, and Sir *Christopher Hatton*; which they deposited upon the *Altar*. But the present *Soveraign*, ([l] *an.* 15 *Car.* 2.) gave command, that the *Atchievements* should then and after be laid below before the *Altar*; judging it indecent to place them, where the sacred Mysteries of the Body and Blood of our *Saviour* are with great reverence Consecrated. He also commanded at the *Feast* held *an.* 23 *Car.* 2. that when the Ceremonies of *Offring* were ended, the *Atchievements* should be disposed, part on the South, and other part on the North-side of the *Altar*, till *Service* was finished.

Besides these things already noted, there is nothing further observable, but what relates to the *Atchievements* themselves, as they are become by this Ceremony of *Offering* them in so solemn a manner, parcel of the goods of the *Chappel*, and included within the words of the [m] *Statutes* of the *Colledge*, whereby the *Soveraign* granted to the *Dean* and *Canons*, all *Oblations*; concerning which, we have already spoken, when we [n] treated of the *Offering* of *Gold* and *Silver*.

Hereupon, because they could not be alienated or sold, they were commonly deposited, by the *Dean* and *Canons*, in the *Chapter-house*: and there [o] *an.* 8 *R.* 2. upon the taking of an Inventory, of all the *Vestments*, *Ornaments*, &c. of the *Chappel*; we find among them three *Swords*, one of the *Founder's* King *Edward* the Third, another of the Earl of *Suffolke's*, and the third of Sir *Thomas Banister's*, as also six *Helms*. We also find more afterwards added, *viz.* the *Swords* of King *Richard* the Second, of King *Henry* the Fourth, when he was Earl of *Derby*, of *John a Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*, and the Earl of *Salisbury*.

But the *Helms* and *Swords*, [p] because they were at first forged, (for this very purpose) of an extraordinary greatness and size, therefore have they been commonly redeemed, that they might serve again afterwards.

And because it belongs to *Garter*, to provide the *Atchievements* for the new installed *Knights*; he usually hath compounded with the *Dean* and *Canons*, for the defunct *Knights-Atchievements*: To which purpose, (among other compositions) there was an *Agreement* drawn up in writing, dated the 20*th* of *May*, 1606. [q] between *William Segar Garter*, and *Giles Thompson* then *Dean* of *Windsor*,

c *MS. fol. penes W. le N. Cl. fol.* 13.
d *MS fol.* 18. *b.*
e *MS. fol. penes G. O. T. p.* 206.
f *Collect. R. C. Cl. f.* 29.
g *Collect. W. le N. Cl.*
h *MS. fol. penes W. le N Cl. fol.* 13.
i *MS. fol.* 18. *b.*
k *MS. fol. penes G. O. T.* 206.
l *Lib. Carol. p.* 47.
m *Art.* 33. *vide etiam Lib. N. pag.* 126.
n *Chap.* 21. *Sect.* 5.
o *Ex Rot. Pergam.*
p *Autogr. in Ærar. Coll. Windesor.*
q *Ex alio Autogr. in eodem Ærar.*

for, *William Wilson*, *Erasmus Webb* and *Henry Beaumont*, three of the then *Canons*, to this effect, [r] That *Garter* should pay to them or their Successors, when it should happen, for the *Helmets*, *Crests*, *Swords*, *Mantles*, and *Banners*, of the deceased *Knights*, the sums following; *viz.* for those of all *Batchellor-Knights*, *Barons*, *Earls*, and *Dukes*, the sum of twenty Shillings; but of *Kings*, and absolute *Princes*, being imbroidered, the sum of three pounds.

r *Ibid.*

We shall conclude this *Section*, with another kind of *Offering*, ordained also to be made in honor of the deceased *Knights-Companions*, and Registred in King *Henry* the Eighth's Body of *Statutes*; which as it begun not many years before our Reformation in Religion, so was it of no long continuance, but then took ending, the words of the *Statute* are these. [f] *That if any* Knight-Companion *shall decease, the year before* (the Celebration of St. *George*'s Feast) *then every* Knight *being in the Castle of* Windesor, *at the* Mass *of* Requiem, *shall offer a* Taper, *armed with a little Escutcheon of the Arms of the* Knight *deceased; and if there be more than one deceased, that there be made for every of them, an Escutcheon of Arms, and a Grout, set nigh to the light of the Taper; which Escutcheon and Taper, shall be made at the cost and charges of the* Knights *of the said* Order.

f *Hen. Stat. Art.* 12.

SECT. IV.

Of depositing the deceased Knights Mantles, *in the* Chapter-house.

THere past a Decree, *an.* 9 *Eliz.* [a] *That the* Knights-Companions *should be bound by their Oath, to take care by their last Will, that after their decease, all their* Ornaments, *which they had received, should be restored, the* Robes *to the* Colledge, *the* Jewells *to the* King *that gave them.* Hereupon [b] Sir *Christopher Hatton* sometime before his Death, commanded that his *Mantle* should be delivered to the *Dean* and *Canons*, and accordingly it was sent to *Windesor* after his decease. But the [c] *Mantle* of Sir *Henry Lea*, being left to the disposal of others, and not sent to the *Colledge*, hapned at length, to come into the hands of *Brokers*, and openly exposed to sale in *Long-lane*, to the great dishonor of the *Order*.

a *Ex autogr. Sacramento D. Ch. Wren nuper Ord. Regist. attestatur*, 12. *Mar.* 1651.
b *Collect.*
c *pref. D. Chr. Wren.*

This Decree was in after-times but slackly observed; and therefore, (in a *Chapter* held at *Windesor* the 24. of *September*, *an.* 4. *Car.* 1.) the *Knights* were admonished, [d] *That where the* Soveraign *should vouchsafe to bestow upon a* Knight *the* Mantle *of the* Order, *the said* Knight *should take care at his death to have it sent to the* Chappel [*at* Windesor] *according as the Statutes do provide.*

d *Lib. R p.* 43.

But this taking little effect, the same *Soveraign* thought fit to restore to life and vigour the *Law* in this particular, by a *Decree* made in *Chapter* held also at *Windesor* the 18. of *April* in the 13. year of his Reign, which obliged all the *Knights-Companions* receiving the *Ensigns* of the *Order* from the *Soveraign*, [e] *to take care (according to the obligation of their Oath) that these (together with the* Book *of* Statutes) *should be restored into the hands of the* Soveraign, *after their Death.* And a command was therewithal given, *That certain* Books, Mantles, *and* Surcoats *then lying at* Whitehall, *should be delivered to the* Register *of the* Order, *to be laid up at* Windesor, *in honorable memory of them to whom they belonged.*

e *Ibid. p.* 120.

In observation of these *Decrees*, where the *Habit* or *Ensigns* of the *Order*, were either wholly or in part bestowed by the *Soveraign*, order was taken (in either case) to send for them in, after such *Knights* decease. Accordingly at a *Chapter* held the 10. day of *October*, *an.* 15 *Car.* 1. the [f] *Garter* and *George* of the Lord Treasurer *Weston*, being sent back, was then presented to the *Soveraign*

f *Palmer's Journ. pro an.* 1635. *p.* 36.

raign (by [g] whom it had been accustomed) and affirmed to be all that the *Soveraign* had given the said *Earl*, whereupon the same was accepted, and delivered to the *Dean* and *Chapter* of *Windesor* to be preserved. And at the same *Chapter* it was [h] ordered that the Earl of *Kelley's Robes* and *Ornaments* of the *Order*, should be sent for by the *Chancellor*: as having been given him by the *Soveraign*; to wit, the *Garter* and *George* immediately after his *Election*, and the *Mantle* and *Surcoat*, against the *Installation* of the present *Soveraign*.

g *Lib. R. pag.* 57. & 58.

h *Ib. p.* 62.

These former *Decrees* were yet thought needfull to be confirmed by the present *Soveraign*, and therefore in a *Chapter* held in the *Yellow-Chamber* at *Whitehall*, the 4. of *Febr.* 1669. it was decreed, [i] *That the* Mantle *of each* Knight-Companion (*so also the* Book *of* Statutes) *should be sent to* Windesor *immediately after their Death*; *and that the* Chancellor *of the* Order, *should be obliged by Letters to their Heirs and Executors, to put them in mind of sending them thither.*

i *Lib. Carol.* p. 79.

Nevertheless it is to be understood, that where the *Mantle* hath been provided at the *Knights* own charge, there lyes no obligation for sending it to *Windesor* after his decease. And it appears upon the Death of *Philip* Earl of *Penbroke* and *Montgomery*, that the Trustees for sail of the late *Kings* Goods, having sent and made demand of his *Mantle*, and *Surcoat*, his Executors making it appear, that they were bought with his own money, of Sir *Peter Richaut*, by the then *Soveraign's* command, signified (not only to him but the rest of the *Knights-Companions*) *an.* 14 *Car.* 1. they desisted, from further prosecution.

There is a memorable Instance in the return of the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, being sent back in a solemn Embassy from [k] *Christina* Queen of *Sweden*, his Daughter and Successor to that Crown.

k *Lib. R. pag.* 105.

The Reception of which, having been ordered with considerable State and Ceremony, will most fitly be here remembred.

Saturday the 18. of *April*, *an.* 11 *Car.* 1. was the day appointed, for the resigning them up into the *Soveraigns* hands; on the Afternoon of which day, *John* Baron *Skiite*, *Ambassador* from the said Queen, came to *Whitehall*, and was conducted to the Council Chamber, to retire himself, till he was sent for into the *Chapter*.

The [l] *Chapter* was upon this occasion held in the *Presence-Chamber*, where as soon as they were set, the *Soveraign* assigned the Earls of *Penbroke*, and *Arundel*, (attended by *Garter* and *Black Rod*) to go for the said *Ambassador*, who was conducted to the *Chapter*, in the order following.

l *Ex Autogr. penes E. W. G.*

First, the *Ambassadors Followers*, two and two.
The *Officers* of *Arms* in their Coats, two and two.
Garter, carrying on a Velvet Cushion, the deceased Kings *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Hood*, *Garter*, *Collar*, and great *George*, and the wearing *George*.
Earl of *Arundel*. The *Ambassador*. Earl of *Penbroke*.

The *Ambassadors Followers*, and the *Officers* of *Arms*, having proceeded in this order as far as the *Presence-Chamber* door, there divided themselves on each side, and made a stand, *Garter* going before, and the *Ambassador* between the said two *Knights-Companions* entred the *Chapter*, making the usual Congies in coming up to the Soveraign. Then *Garter* kneeling down, held the *Ornaments* and *Jewells* of the *Order* on the Cushion, whilst the *Ambassador* made the following *Oration* in *Latin*.

Serenissime, Potentissimeq; Rex, Domine clementissime.

NEmini potest esse obscurum, quod ab omni ævo, omnibus omninò Populis & Nationibus in more & usu positum fuerit, homines ob præclara facta, variis premiis atq; honoribus afficere; tum ut fortitudinem acuerent, & virtutem conservarent, tum ut robur & disciplinam tuerentur; Quâ quidem re procuratum videmus, ut Equestris *etiam dignitas inde, & ex hâc occasione originem ceperit, & postmodum per omnes ferè ætates validissimo roboris incremento aucta, & amplificata fuerit,*

rit, ac licèt in tantâ ejusdem copiâ & varietate difficile videatur judicare, quæ species alteri prævalere debeat, & quasi palmam præripere. Siquis tamen paulò altiùs hoc ipsum ponderaverit, deprehendet veterum illorum honores dignitates, ac privilegia cum Garterio *Ordine non esse comparanda. Permitte mihi Serenissime Rex, ut in* Augustâ *& Nobili hâc* coronâ *Ordinis* Periscelidis *decora accuratiùs contempler, & quid mihi insuper in mandatis sit datum humilimè referam.*

Edwardi *tertii incredibilem virtutem atq; fortitudinem omnis posteritas in hunc usq; diem est admirata semper, qui cum à vetustissimis* Angliæ *Regibus Originem traxerit, nulli veterum tum rerum gestarum gloria, tum invictissimi animi magnitudine tum summæ fælicitatis admiratione videtur esse postponendus; ab hoc inquam* Heroë *laudatissimo & fortissimo cum* Ordo *hic* Garterius *excogitatus sit, & inventus, quid tanto Instituto potest esse Nobilius? quid præclarius? Summa quoq; dignitas huic* Ordini *ex eo aboritur, quod non modò præcipuæ Nobilitatis viri, Potentissimi* Duces, *ac* Principes, *verùm etiam* Imperatores, Reges *eorumq; liberi pulcherimo hôc honore semper fuerint cumulati Magnificentiam dicti* Ordinis *commendavit tum quod candidatus egregiis & admirandis* Ornamentis *investiatur, installetur, & amiciatur, tum quod ipso die* Georgii *honorificentissimo, Superiorum & inferiorum concursu mirificè condecoretur, illustretur. Quemadmodum verò sacra vestra* Regia Majestas, *evidentibus rationibus commota, clementissimæ meæ* Reginæ *parentem, Invictissimum* Heroem *hoc ipso* Periscelidis *splendore cumulandum judicârit ita exhibitio illa vel hôc nomine longè fuit clarissima, quod spectante universo penè exercitu, inter vehementissimam bellicorum tormentorum displosionem per vestros deputatos, & quidem in ipsius* Doruſſiæ *visceribus facta sit, ad omnem itaq; posteritatis memoriam commendatissimum erit quod licet exiguum tum temporis extiterit intervallum, inter nostrum & hostilem exercitum adeo ut convenientiùs tanto* Heroi *fuisse nonnullis visum fuerit de corporis defensione, quam de honoris alicujus accessione cogitare, rejectis tamen omnibus periculis passus sit, sibi, & tribui honorem condignum & in* Ordinis *hujus Clarissimi* Societatem *se cooptari. Nec facile dixerim utrum huic accessioni plus dignitatis illatum, ex eundem* Ordinem *offerente, an verò recipiente. Ita enim utrarumq; vestrâm Majestatum* dignitas *hic elucet, ita æquabili lanci innititur, ut discrimen non facilè attendatur ac licet immensus mihi jam porrigatur Campus, in laudes utriusq;* Serenissimæ vestræ Regiæ Majestatis *expatiandi, cùm tamen ita comparatum sit, ut quò quisq; laude dignior est, eò minus patiatur laudes suas celebrari, non velificabor impræsentiarùm tantis Majestatum vestrarum virtutibus, sed ea tantùm referam, quæ sine summâ ingrati animi notâ non possunt præteriri. Successit Sacra vestra* Regia Majestas *parenti suo gloriosissimæ recordationis, in tot regnorum administrationem, & quidem ita successit, ut non solùm paternis vestigiis laudabilitèr inhæreat, verùm etiam paternarum virtutum dignissimum se ostendat hæredem; pacem, rem beatissimam, omni studio complectatur, subditis suis & quietem & omnium rerum affluentiam benignissimè procuret, & quid sit quod* Serenissimam vestram Regiam Majestatem *infinitis hominibus amabilem magis reddere possit, quam omnium bonorum de eâdem singulare judicium? Etenim cum omnibus pateat, eandem naturali & prope divinâ quâdam propensione in eas virtutes & ornamenta quibus vita hæc humana fulcitur ferri: & ab omnibus iis vitiis quibus contaminetur, seriò abhorrere; cumq; vita vestra omnis sit candoris, integritatis, castitatis & honestatis plenissima, nòn potest mihi vitio verti, si oblatâ hâc occasione illud ipsum jam commemorare aporteq; dicam nullum præter* Serenissimam vestram Regiam Majestatem *tum extitisse excellentiorem* Regem, *& digniorem qui ista amplissimorum & à proavis fortissimis acceptorum honorum ornamenta tanto* Regi *tribuere & conferre potuerit.* Regis *deinde hujus incomparabilis qualitates si accuratiùs contemplati fuerimus, nemo inficiabitur quin omni honorum genere fuerit dignissimus. Habuit is* Patrem *&* Avum *qui indefesso studio ea semper consilia tractârunt quæ non solum ad pacis tranquillitatem, togæq; fœlicitatem in antiquissimis* Suecorum *&* Gothorum *Regnis conservandam, verum etiam ad armorum benè gerendorum gloriam, bellicarumq; rationum & militaris disciplinæ administrationem fovendam pertinent. His cum* Progenitoribus *certus esset, industria & labore incredibili, atq; adeò brevi temporis spatio eò pervenit, ut nòn solum illis pax verum etiam longè clarior & celebrior fuerit,*

fuerit. Cumq; horrendæ cujusdam virtutis amore, inter omnes mortales teneretur, talem se in vita suâ exhibuit, ut omnes virtutes numeros quoad ejus ab homine fieri potuit, explere conatus sit, & tanta quidem constantia iis sudoribus & vigiliis ut eum à tàm laudabili proposito, nec rei magnitudo deterrere, nec ulla voluptas avocare potuerit ab incunabulis, præclarissimarum artium & linguarum studio, ità vehementèr invigilavit, ut postquam ad adultiorem ætatem pervenisset, ad miraculum usq; se iis oblectârit, nec bonorum & optimorum authorum lectione, in ipsis Castris *atq; adeò in hostium suorum quasi conspectu abstinuerit. Tantus prætereà in hòc* Heröe *fuit amor, & sollicitudo conservandæ* Religionis *& libertatis in* Germaniâ; *ut cum ejusdem Principes in tolerando quodam servitutis jugo præmerentur, eos non solum adversus* hostium *ferociam tutatus est, verum etiam in avitos ducatus, unde expulsi fuerant, magnâ suâ gloriâ, magnâ ipsorum lætitiâ, magno cum* hostium *dedecore, per vim fortissimè reduxerit, pristinamq; dignitatem reddiderit, quam si iidem jam voluerint deserere sibi suæq; socordiæ inposterum imputabunt, ac licet præter ipsum Dei benignitatem aliæ etiam possint exhiberi rationes quibus Heros hic innixus tam arduum opus aggredi voluit, nulla tamen accommodatior & certior constitueretur quam scientia* rei Militaris *& fortitudo quædam invicta. Etenim cum post mortem laudatissimi* Parentis *triplici bello putà* Danico, Polonico *&* Muscovitico *distineretur, ita se bellicis artibus totum consecravit, ita mancipavit ut cum summis* Imperatoribus *non immerito fuerit comparandus. Ad hanc rem promptius expediendum ita eum* Deus *& natura finierant, ut visis hostibus vel in summo vitæ periculo constitutus, nunquam trepidarit, nunquam expalluerit, nunquam aufugerit, quin potius exigua Militum manu sæpe* hostibus *se objecerit, eos sustinuerit, iisdem maximas* Clades *intulerit, &* Strages *horrendas confecerit, atq; adeo nobilissimas provincias, incredibili robore extortus, Regno* Suecorum *(per se longe amplissimo) gloriosissime adjecerit. Eximiâ hâc* Militaris Disciplinæ *administratione, ita orbi terrarum innotuit, ut &* Reges Principesq; *complures, infiniti prætereà homines ad eum amandum & colendum sint inflammati. Non inficiaberis, Serenissime* Rex, *quin cum ob alias rationes, tum potissimum ob rei bellicæ gloriam* Ordinis Garterii *decora illi tribueris. Serenissimo* Daniæ *Regi placuit filium suum* Uldaricum Gustavo *huic Magno de meliori notâ commendare, quo sub illius ductu in* Doruffiâ *tyrocinia militaria addisceret. Serenissimo item Regi* Bohemiæ *commodum valdè fuit in castra hujus Herois pervenisse, ut eo citiùs provincias sibi ereptas recuperaret.* Uladislaus *Rex* Poloniæ, *licet hostis, eam de agnato suo* fortitudinis Militaris *conceperat opinionem, ut nisi humanis rebus ereptus fuisset Magnus hic* Gustavus, *operâ illius uti voluerit, in sopiendis dissidiis inter se, & Magnum* Muschoviæ Ducem. *Idem verò* Muschoviæ *Dux, cum patre* Patriarchâ, *quem* Muschovitæ *Sanctissimum appellant, tanti æstimavit* Regis *nostri bellicas rationes, ut eos haud puduerit, eodem uti Ductore. Quorum quidem* Principum *benevolentia in Regem* Gustavum *tam vehementèr apparuit, ut cum iidem accepto nuncio de* Lipsensi *pugnâ immensos triumphos in ejus honorem per Imperium* Muschoviticum *instituissent, ab omni ævo tale quid in ejusdem visceribus contigisse, vix, ac ne vix quidem, sit animadversum. Et quæ res alia Christianissimum* Galliæ *Regem* Ludovicum XIII. *commovit, ut huic Heroi arctissimo fœderis, & amicitiæ vinculo copularetur, quo* Austriacæ *Domus, omnibus* Regibus *ac* Principibus *potentiam reformidandam comprimeret, & afflictæ* Germaniæ *succurreret, nisi quod eum fortissimum, & ad tantam Provinciam obeundam accommodatissimum esse, suo etiam suffragio comprobaret, totiq; terrarum Orbi declararet? Fœdera quæ* Rex *noster inierat cum præpotentibus* Ordinibus Belgii, *cum Principibus & Rebus publicis* Germaniæ, *quid aliud testantur? quam summam in eo extitisse animi magnitudinem, & robur convictum ut interim silentio involvam* Bethlemi Gaboris, Transylvaniæ Helvetiorum, *& quorundam* Italiæ *Principum in eundem propensionem singularem; Magnus ille* Præcopiensium Tartarorum Chamus, *triginta hominum millia in usum Regis nostri, se ex finibus suis eductum obtulerat, si iis uti voluisset. Fando deniq; exprimi non potest quomodo incomparabilis hujus Regis fama, per* Othomancum *Imperium fuerit pervagata. Acquisivit* Suecis *ac* Gothis, *hâc ipsâ, ut eos & à contemptu aliorum Populorum vindicaverit & effecerit simul, ut pro fortissimis militibus ab ipsis hostibus agniti, & celebrati fuerint. Tot itaq;*

&

& tanta cum fuerint Magni Gustavi *Regis ornamenta, cum nomen ejusdem per infinita terrarum spatia inclaruerit, cum deniq; facta illius tot hostibus debellatis ac prostratis,* Suethici *nominis gloriam ubiq; circumtulerint, nonne dignissimus judicabitur, cui hic honos, hic splendor conferri debuerit? Verum enimvero cum Deo visum sit, invictissimum hunc* Regem, *& cujus parem septentrio nunquam vidit, bellatorem, Triumphatorem, perpetuum rebus humanis eripere, cumq; Ordinis* Garterii *Statuta jubeant, ut post excessum unius cujusq; signa & ornamenta remittantur, in mandatis idcirco mihi dedit* Serenissima *mea* Regina, *ut non solum* Legibus *præscriptis satisfacerem, verum etiam moram excusarem. Agnovit abundè* Serenissima *sua* Regia Majestas *cum gente Suecorum universâ* Serenissimæ vestræ Regiæ Majestatis, *in deferendis hisce honoribus, affectionem inusitatam, & benevolentiam singularem nunquam intermittet, & procurare, quæ ad vestrum &* Britannicæ *gentis splendorem amplificandum conducent. Inter alia sacra sua* Regia Majestas *exoptat à* Deo *immortali, ut quemadmodum hic Ordo, ab exiguis initiis, in maximum dignitatis culmen ascendit, ita etiam per longissima annorum spacia, fœlicissimo & duraturo incremento ad omnem posteritatem, roboretur, conservetur, propagetur.*

When the *Ambassador* had done speaking, *Garter* delivered each particular *Ornament* to him, which he forthwith presented to the *Soveraign*, who put them into the *Chancellors* hands, and he having received them, in answer to the *Ambassadors Oration*, made this other in *French*.

Le Roy mon Maistre (Soverain *de l'* Ordre *de la* Jartiere) *m'a commandé de vous dire, qu'il recoit de vostre main, avec fort grand regret, ces* Enseignes *de l'* Ordre. *Elles renouuellent à sa Majesté, & luy font resouuenir la grand perte qu'il a faicte, en la personne du Roy de* Suede, *son bon frere. Il estoit Prince dont l'amitié estoit fort chere à sa Majesté comme celuy qui pour la rendre plus estroicte, avoit monstré un desir affectioné d'estre receu au nombre des confreres de cet* Ordre. *Durant la vie de ce grand Roy, vostre Majesté, sa Majesté a fait une grand, & digne estime de sa personne. à l'égal de son merite, & de ces vertues, qui furent vrayement Royales, & depuis sa mort, sa Majesté a fait le mesme de sa memoire. Et a fin que la posterité peut aussi prendre cognoissance de l'amitié & affection qui a esté entre sa Majesté, & ce grand Prince, le Roy a donné un commandement expres, qu'aux* Archives *de l'* Ordre *sa memoire fust conservée au rang des plus grands, & des plus valereux Princes, qui l'ont devancez, & qui ont rendu par tant de Siecles cet* Ordre *si Auguste.*

C'est (Monsieur) le Sommaire *de ce que j'avois a vous dire de la parte du Roy mon Maistre le* Soverain *de l'* Ordre *pour ce qui est des aultres confreres, & principalement de Messeigneurs les Chevaliers icy presents, sa Majeste m'a donné permission de vous dire de leur part, qu'ils regrettent avec le Roy leur Maistre, la perte d'un si grand Prince comme a esté le vostre, & tascheront pour le dernier debvoir qu'ilz doibvent à sa vertu, de rendre à sa memoire autant de respect, & d'honneur qu'ils eussent volontiers rendu à sa personne. Et pour mon particulier, la coustume qui est observée en telles occasions, me commandoit de dire quelque chose à la louange de ce grand Roy, qui estant confrere de l'* Ordre *est mort victorieux entre les armes. Mais quand je considere que vous l'avez desja si bien faicte, par vostre belle oraison (qui a esté par tout remplie d'autant de verité que d'eloquence) qu'il me seroit impossible d'en parler apres sans faire tort à moy mesme, & sans grand prejudice à une si haulte vertu j'ay pensé doncques qu'il seroit convenable tant pour le Subject, que pour mon devoir, de laisser entierement à la renommée, ce qui m'est tellement impossible d'exprimer en paroles.*

This Speech being ended the *Chapter* broke up, and the *Soveraign* departed in the order he came thither, having first * Knighted Sir *James Skijtte* the Ambassadors Son, Sir *John Krue*, Sir *Gustavus Banir*, and Sir *Gabriel Oxensterne*, who were of his followers. But the *Ambassador* and the two *Earls* Conductors returned in the same order as they came to the *Council-Chamber*, and there took leave.

*Lib.R.p.106.

leave. And in *May* following, the said Sir *John Skytte* junior (whom I find stiled Baron of *Buderof*, and Colonel of a Regiment of *Scots* in *Sweden*) was sworn a [m] *Gentleman* of the *Soveraign*'s *Privy-Chamber* extraordinary.

After the *Chapter* was ended, the *Soveraign* * commanded the *Jewels* to be delivered to the *Master* of his *Jewel-house*, and the *Robes* to be sent to the *Dean* of *Windesor*, to be deposited there.

Notwithstanding which Command, yet was not the * *Mantle* brought thither, till the Instalment of the present *Soveraign*, at which time, by order in *Chapter*, and the *Soveraign*'s liberal donation, not only the *Mantle*, but the *Garter*, *Collar*, and Great *George* of the foresaid King, (the value whereof we have [n] before noted) were [o] ordered to be committed to the custody of the *Dean* and *Chapter* of *Windesor*, and accordingly then brought down from the Court (in the *Castle*) by [p] Mr. *Josee*, Mr. *Maxwell*, and some others belonging to the *Soveraign*'s Bed-Chamber, and delivered to them to be laid up in their Treasury, for a perpetual memory of that renowned King, who died in the field, wearing some of those *Jewels*; to the great renown of the *Order*, and as a true martial Prince and *Companion* thereof.

The Diamonds, set in the *Garter* and *George*, at the humble request of Doctor *Christopher Wren*, the then *Register*, were [q] Ordered to be viewed and numbred, by Sir *James Palmer* Deputy *Chancellor*; which being done, an [r] *Inventory* was made, the 24. of *May* following, and a *Duplicate* thereof being drawn, the one part was signed by the *Dean* and *Prebends*, which remained with the *Deputy Chancellor*; the other by the *Deputy Chancellor*, and left in the *Treasury* with the Jewels; the number upon the great *Garter* and *George*, amounting to 498 Diamonds.

And in the [s] Floor of the said *Treasury* did these *Jewels* remain (hid there by the said *Register*) till about the beginning of *March*, *an.* 1645. that Colonel [t] *Ven*, the then *Governor* of that *Castle*, took them thence, and it should seem, they were afterwards delivered unto Colonel *Whitchcott*, who succeeded him in that Government; for I find, that Mr. *John Hunt* Treasurer to the *Trustees* (appointed by the Long *Parliament*, for Sale of the late *Kings Goods*) did receive them from the hands of the said Colonel *Whitchcott*.

m *Lord Chamberl. Book of Warrants ab an.* 1634. *ad annum* 1641. *pag.* 58.
* *Lib. R. pag.* 106.
* *Collect. Chr. Wren nuper Ord. Regist.*
n *Chap.* 7. *Sect.* 1. *&* 7.
o *Palm. large Journ pag.* 21. *&* 22.
p *Ex Collect. prad.*
q *Ex eod. Journ. loco cit.*
r, s, t *Ex Collect. præfat. D. Chr. Wren.*

CHAP. XXVI.

OF THE Founder, THE FIRST Knights-Companions, AND THEIR Successors.

SECT. I.

Of what Number *the Institution consisted.*

THE main part of our design, relating to the *Institution*, *Laws*, and *Ceremonies* of the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*, is now brought to a period; what else we intend, with the end of our journey, lies now within our prospect, and concerns the *Founder* the first *Knights-Companions* and their Successors. For King *Edward* the Third having Instituted the said *Order*, and set down *Rules* and *Statutes* for the government and regulation thereof, he [a] next resolved to Elect from among the flower of his own Chevalry, 25 noble and valiant *Knights*, who, together with himself should make up the number of 26. (for of so [b] many doth the *Order*, by his appointment, consist) and indeed that Age furnished him with large choice of gallant men, made famous by martial Exploits, performed in the Battels of *Sluce*, *Crescy*, and *Durham*.

a *Lib. N. p.* 38.

b *E.* 3. *Stat. Art.* 3.

The first that he Elected into this Noble *Order*, was *Edward*, his eldest Son, who had already in part deserved, and afterwards obtained the title of a valiant and renowned Prince; and the rest of those accomplished Collegues were these that follow, and thus placed in their Stalls.

On

The
PORTRAICTVRES
of King EDWARD the 3d
with the first 25
KNIGHTS COMPANIOS
in the HABIT of the
ORDER
and SVRCOATS of their
ARMES,


la boche
Sir John
Sir John
Sir John
Sir John
Sir Otes
Sir Thomas
Sir Walter

On the Soveraign's *side.*
2. [c] *Henry*, Duke of *Lancaster.*
3. *Piers*, Capitow *de la Bouch.*
4. *William*, Earl of *Salisbury.*
5. Sir *John Lisle.*
6. Sir *John Beauchamp.*
7. Sir *Hugh Courtney.*
8. Sir *John Grey.*
9. Sir *Miles Stapleton.*
10. Sir *Hugh Wrottesley.*
11. Sir *John Chandos.*
12. Sir *Otes Holland.*
13. Sir *Sanchet Dabrichcourt.*

On the Prince's *side.*
2. *Thomas*, Earl of *Warwick.*
3. *Ralph*, Earl of *Stafford.*
4. *Roger*, Earl of *March.*
5. Sir *Bartholomew Burghersh.*
6. Sir *John Mohun.*
7. Sir *Thomas Holland.*
8. Sir *Richard Fitz-Simon.*
9. Sir *Thomas Wale.*
10. Sir *Nele Loring.*
11. Sir *James Audeley.*
12. Sir *Henry Eam.*
13. Sir *Walter Paveley.*

c *Lib. N. p.* 38.

We once intended a full and entire History of the *Lives* of these Noble *Founders*, and to that purpose made a large and chargeable Collection out of the *Records* in the *Tower* of *London*, and elsewhere, of all that we could find worthy to be remembered of them: in which we spent most part of the years 1657. 1658. and 1659. But this our design being [d] afterwards represented to the present *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions*, by the late *Chancellor* of the *Order*, through the wrong end of the Perspective, we thereby received so great discouragemement, as caused us to wave it, and indeed resolved wholly to lay it aside. Nevertheless, upon other thoughts (here being a proper occasion) we are content to let in a glimpse, of what may be improved to a far greater light; and, from that stock of *Collections*, drawn out some few things relating to the *Founder* and first 25 *Knights-Companions*, particularly their Honors, Marrial Employments, famous Exploits, Matches, Issues, and Death; therein laying down only matter of Fact, and Materials for *History*, without deductions or observations. All which we shall deliver with the plainness there found, being unwilling to add other Rhetorical flourishes, lest we might withal cast some blemish upon the native beauty of Truth.

d 20. *Febr. an.* 14. *Car.* 2.

And in this undertaking, the *Reader* may see what Furniture (though it lye disperst) our *Publick Records* will afford for *History*; and how plentifully our own may be supplied and improved, if pains were taken therein: for what is hitherto made publick, hath been collected, chiefly out of old *Annals*, and they filled with few things but such as were very obvious, nay the *Annalists* themselves (for the most part residing in *Monasteries*) too often byass'd with Interest, and Affection, to Times and Persons: But on the contrary, in our publick *Records* lye matter of Fact, in full truth, and therewith the Chronological part, carried on, even to days of the Month. So that an industrious Searcher may thence collect considerable matter for new *History*, rectifie many mistakes in our old, and in both gratifie the world with unshadowed verity.

SECT. II.

A short view of the Founder's Wars.

TO begin then with the *Founder*, the most Noble King *Edward* the Third; He was eldest Son of King *Edward* the Second, and *Isabel* Daughter to *Philip* the Fourth, King of *France*, whose Sons *Lewis*, *Philip*, and *Charles*, (all Kings of *France* one after another) dying without Issue Male, this Prince challenged the Crown of *France*, as the next Heir male to it.

[c] *Clauſ. 6. E. 2. m. 22. Dorſo.*

He was born in *Windeſor* Caſtle, the 13. day of *November*, being [c] *Monday* next after the Feaſt of St. *Martin*, the Biſhop in Winter, (and the day of St. *Brice*, Biſhop, and Diſciple of St. *Martin*) in the year of our Lord God 1312. an *Aſtrological Scheme* of whoſe Nativity, hath been long ſince painted in Glaſs, in one of the Windows of the Prebends Lodgings at *Windeſor*, belonging to the Reverend and Worthy Divine, Doctor *Hever*, late one of the Canons of that *Colledge*. Whence it appears, that he was born at 40 minutes after five in the morning of the ſaid day, the 6. Degree of the Sign *Scorpio* Aſcending, and the 18. Degree of *Leo* Culminating. The places of the Planets, as there poſited, followeth.

		gr.				gr.	
♄	in	5	♍	☿	in	18	♏
☿		27	♂	☽		8	
♂		21	♏	⊕		8	♂
☉		28				26	

The *Thurſday* after his birth, he was Chriſtned in the Chappel, then of St. *Edward*, in *Windeſor* Caſtle, by *A.* Prieſt Cardinal, by the Title of *Sancta Priſca*, and his Godfathers were [f] *Richard* Biſhop of *Poictiers*, *John* Biſhop of *Bath* and *Wells*, *William* Biſhop of *Worceſter*, *Lewis* Earl of *Eureux*, the [g] Queens Brother, *John de Britannia* Earl of *Richmond*, *Aymer de Valence* Earl of *Penbroke*, and *Hugh le Deſpenſer*.

[f] *Ibid.*

[g] *Tho: Walſingh. ſub an.* 1312.

Within a few days after, the King his Father granted him the [h] County of *Cheſter*, except the Mannors of *Mekklesfield*, and *Shotwyke*, to hold to him and his Heirs Kings of *England* for ever. And likewiſe the County of *Flint*, and Cantred of *Engleſield*, with the Caſtles of *Flint* and *Rothelan*, to hold as before, except the Mannor of *Overton*, the Lands of *Mailor*, *Seyſnoke*, and the Caſtle and Mannor of *Holt*; after which he was thus ſtiled by the King, [i] *Edwardus Comes Ceſtriæ filius noſter Chariſſimus*.

[h] 24. *Nov. Chart. 6. E. 2. n. 21. & n. 44.*

[i] *Clauſ. 7. E. 2. m. 1. Chart. 8. E. 3. m. 2.*

So pleaſing to his Father was the birth of this Prince, that the 16. of *December* following, he gave to [k] *John Launge* Valet to the Queen, and to *Iſabel* his Wife, and the longer liver of them, for bringing to him ſo deſirable News, 24*l. per annum*, to be paid out of the Farm of *London*. But leaving his Infancy, we will now proceed to his youth, and the occurrences that attended his riper years.

[k] *Pat. 6. E. 2. par. 2. m. 5.*

King *Edward* his Father, having been often ſummoned to the Court of *France*, to do homage for the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*, and other his Lands held in that Kingdom, and ſtill delaying, till the *French* King had ſeized thereon, it was at length concluded, that he ſhould give to this Prince that Dukedom, who then ſhould do the Homage, and enjoy the Lands. Hereupon preparation was made for his paſſing into *France*, and a little before at *Langedon Abbey*, near *Dover*, the King on the 2. of *September* in the 19. year of his Reign, firſt gave to him, his Heirs, and Succeſſors Kings of *England*, *jure hæreditario imperpetuum*, the [l] Counties of *Ponthieu*, and *Monſtroile*; and on the 10. of the ſame month (at *Dover*) granted to him the [m] Dukedom of *Aquitaine*, and all the Lands he had, or ought to hold, in the Kingdom of *France*, *Habendum* as before; [n] two days after, this new Duke took ſhipping at *Dover*, thence paſſed into *France*, and made his Homage: in which Journey it was likewiſe thought fit, that the Queen ſhould accompany him, in regard her Lands in that Kingdom had alſo been ſeized on.

[l] *Pat. 19. E. 2 p. 1. m. 25.*

[m] *Pat. 19. E. 2 p. 1. m. 25.*

[n] *Clauſ. de eod. an. m. 28. Dorſo.*

Shortly after his return into *England*, he was unanimouſly choſen [o] *Cuſtos* of the Kingdom in his Fathers abſence (then fled into *Wales*, with *Hugh le Deſpencer* the Son, *Robert Baldock* and others) by divers of the Biſhops, Nobility, Barons, and Knights, *de aſſenſu totius Comitatûs dicti Regni ibidem exiſtentis*, and at *Martley*, the [p] Great Seal (ſent from the King) was delivered to him.

[o] *Clauſ. 20. E. 2. m. 3. Dorſ. 20. Oct.*

[p] *Ib. 26. Nov.*

[q] *Clauſ. 1. E. 3 pars prima membr. 25. die Kalendas Febr. Hen. Knighton in Hiſt. Anglic. Script. Col. 2550.*

Not long after, his Father reſſigned his Crown, upon which, great preparations were made for this young Prince's Coronation, which was ſolemnly performed at *Weſtminſter*, by *William* Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, on [q] *Sunday* after the Converſion of St. *Paul*, being the 1. of *Feb. an.* 1327.

His

His first Martial Attempt, but unsuccessful, (for more then what appertains to his Wars we shall not here discourse off) was the [r] raising an Army to march against the *Scots:* For *Robert Bruce* King of *Scotland*, having sent him a defiance about *Easter* next following his Coronation, shortly after invaded *England*, [s] notwithstanding the Truce between the said King *Robert*, and King *Edward* the Second, was yet on foot, and an agreement for further Treaty of Peace (to be held in the *Marches*) on *Sunday* next before *Ascension* day then next comming.

r *Chronic. Jo. Froissard mil. L. 1. c. 15.*

s *Claus. 1. E. 3. p. 1. m. 2. dorso.*

The Kings Army was appointed to Rendevouz at [t] *Newcastle* upon *Tyne*, on *Munday* next before the *Ascension* of our Lord, though [u] Sir *John Froissard* saith it was at *York*, upon *Ascension* day, whence about three weeks after *Trinity Sunday*, he marched towards the Enemy: but the [w] *Scots* (having exceedingly wasted the Northern parts, and declined to fight) slipt from him at *Stanhop* Park in the Bishoprick of *Durham*, and withdrew towards their own Country: nor could the King engage them, though he endeavoured it for 24. days together.

t *Rot. Scotiæ 1. E. 3. m. 9.*

u *Loco supra cit.*

w *Claus 1 E. 3. par. 2. m. 16. dorso.*

I confess the first Actions of Princes are looked upon by all Eyes, and not seldom, with many Observators, taken as the Radix, whence to calculate their future, either Successes or Miscarriages. If, at these undertakings, a full Age entitle them to the sole management of Affairs, we are inclined to think a judicious Eye may partly discern the strength of their Fortune: But while they reside within Tutorage, and their designs are carried on under the conduct of others, the Event of things will manifest a dependency upon the strength or weakness of the Genius of those persons, who are the chief managers of their Concerns. And this was fully made good in this Prince, whose Martial undertakings were very unsuccessful, specially while the Government of the Kingdom was committed to others (and sometimes afterwards, when he was tyed up and hampered by his Allies in *Flanders*) but he no sooner arrived at full Age, but his Affairs shewed themselves as if disposed by his own Genius; and the first remarkable experiment was verified even upon the *Scots* themselves, from whom before, he had received some affronts and indignities.

For having sent Ambassadors to the [x] *Custos*, and chief Nobility of *Scotland*, He demanded the Homage of *David Brus* their King (and these were probably *Ralph* Lord *Basset* of *Drayton*, and *William de Denum*, for it appears [y] they were employed thither the 14. of *Decemb. an.* 6 *E.* 3. [z] *touching the Affairs of the King and Kingdom*) and the doing of Homage denyed. He forthwith raised an Army, in assistance of *John Balioll*, Son of *John Balioll*, sometime King of *Scotland*, against *David Brus* the then King: which being appointed to meet at [a] *Newcastle* upon *Tine*, on *Trinity Sunday*, *an.* 7 *E.* 3. King *Edward* entred *Scotland*, and wasted the Country as far as *Scone*, for six months together: Insomuch that the *Scots* were forced to fly to their Fastnesses in the Forest of *Gedworth*, where they abode for many years, and as the King returned, he encountred an Army of theirs at *Hallidown Hill*, which he defeated, and killed about [b] 32000. common *Souldiers*, 7. *Earls*, 90. *Knights* and *Bannerets*, and 400. *Esquires*.

x *Froiss. Chronic. L. 1. C. 26.*

y } z } *Rot. Pat. 6 E. 3. p. 3. m. 3.*

a *Claus. 7 E. 3. m. 19. dorso.*

b *Hollinsh. Chron. pag. 350. a.*

In memory of this great Victory (hapning on the [c] Eve of St. *Margaret* the Virgin, being the 13. of *July*) he repaired the Church and Convent of *Nuns*, near the place where the Battel was fought, (upon that occasion destroyed and burnt) and caused an Altar to be therein erected, and dedicated to that *Virgin*. He further granted to those *Nuns*, and their Successors, 20*l. per annum*, out of the Issues of the Town and County of *Berwick*, until Lands to that value should be conferred upon them; to the end, that annually on the Eve and day of St. *Margaret* for ever, they should commemorate the goodness of God for his so prosperous success.

c *Rot. Scot. 7. E. 3. m. 2.*

On the [d] Morrow after this great Victory, the King had the Town and Castle of *Berwick* surrendred to him, and on the [e] 19. of *June*, in the following year, did *Edward Baliol*, King of *Scots*, make Homage and Fealty to him at *Newcastle*, as to his Superior and Chief Lord of the Realm of *Scotland*, who then granted to the King, and annexed to the Crown of *England*, for ever, the Counties next adjoining to *England*, namely, *Berwick*, *Roxbourgh*, *Peples*, and *Dunfres*, the

d *Holinsh. Chron. pag. 350. a.*

e *Ib. a. 8. E. 3.*

the Towns of *Hadington* and *Gedworth*, with the Castle and Fortress of *Silkirke*, *Etherick*, and *Gedworth*.

f *Ib. p.* 351. By the assistance, which King *Edward* afforded to *Edward Baliol*, [f] he gained the most part of *Scotland:* nevertheless divers Castles refused to surrender, which occasioned the King to make another expedition thither, and about *All-hallontide*, he arrived at *Newcastle* upon *Tyne*, and thence marched into *Scotland*, towards the end of *November*, and at *Christmass* entred *Ethrick Forest:* but the *Scots* were fled, whereupon having prosecuted his design as far as he thought good, he returned into *England*.

g *Ib. an.* 9 *E.* 3. The next year, [g] he raised new Forces, and himself from *Carlisle*, and *Edward* King of *Scots* from *Berwick*, both entred *Scotland* on the 12. of *July*, burning and wasting the Country on both sides, beyond the *Scottish* Sea. This Expedition brought the Earl of *Atholl*, and divers of the *Scotch* Nobility, to a Submission; upon which the King came back into the Northern parts, where he wintered, and kept his *Christmass* at *Newcastle*.

h *Ib. an.* 10 *E.* 3. About [h] *Twelfth-tide*, he was provided to pass again into *Scotland*, when Ambassadors from the *Pope* and King of *France*, found him at *Berwick*, ready to enter that Kingdom, and by their earnest sollicitation (about *Candlemas*) obtained of both Kings a Truce till *Midlent* following: but no Peace ensuing, *Edward* King of *Scotland*, and divers of the *English* Nobility (at *Whitsontide*) entred *Scotland* again: and finding St. *Johns Town* slighted by the *Scots*, they fortified it. Shortly after this, King *Edward* followed them thither, and thence passed with his Army unto *Elgen* in *Murrey*, and *Innernes*. In his return, he took *Aberdeen*, and burnt divers Towns, and destroyed the Country. About which time the Earl of *Cornwal* entred *Scotland* also, and destroyed the Western parts, and met the King his Brother at St. *Johns Town*, where the King stayed not long, but marched to *Striveling*, built the Fortress called the *Pile*, and returned home. About the Feast of St. *Luke*, he marcht again with a fresh Army into *Scotland*, and repaired *Bothuill-Castle*, and returned into *England* before *Christmas*, leaving *Edward* King of *Scots*, at St. *Johns Town*, setled in the Government of that Kingdom.

The Affairs of *Scotland* being thus quieted for some years, gave King *Edward* the leisure to look towards *France*; which Kingdom afterwards became the Scene of all his Martial Glory. For *Robert d' Artois*, Earl of *Beaumont* in *France*, being discontented at the Sentence wherein *Philip* King of *France* had given the Earldom of *Artois* from him, to *Maud* Countess of *Burgundy*, let fall some dangerous words, and they being laid hold on, forced him to fly into *England*, where he was kindly received by King *Edward*; who after he had been here sometime, [i] afforded him the use of the Castles of *Guilford*, *Wallingford*, and *Somerton*, whensoever he pleased to retire thither for his recreation, and afterwards assigned him [k] 800*l. per annum* for his support; the one moiety to be received out of the Revenues of certain *Priories* Alien, seised into the Kings hands, and the other moiety, out of his *Exchequer*.

i 23 *April. Pat.* 11 *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 5.
k 26 *Mar. Pat.* 12 *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 18.

l *Freiss. Chron. l.* 1. *c.* 28. Soon after his coming over, he advised the King to [l] set on foot his claim to the Crown of *France*; whereto the King was willing enough to hearken, and to be perswaded by him; but the Affair being of so great concern, his Council advised him, to take the opinion of his Father-in-Law, the Earl of *Henault*, before he attempted any thing therein: Hereupon (a [m] Comet with long and terrible streams, ushering in this grand Affair) he employed thither, with all privacy, [n] *Henry Burgherssh*, Bishop of *Lincolne*, with two Banerets, and two Doctors, to gain him to his party (with all other persons of note, as they should find inclinable to assist the King) who laying before the Earl, King *Edward*'s pretensions to the Crown of *France*; he not only approved of his design, but advised the King to contract other Alliances, and gain to his party some of his neighbouring Princes thereabouts.

m *Holinsh. Chron. p.* 353.

n *Freiss. ut supra.*

Encouraged by this advice, and the assurance of his assistance, he by a Commission [o] constituted the said Earl (therein stiled, *Guilielmus Comes Hanoniæ, Hollandiæ & Selandiæ, ac Dominus Frisiæ socer noster*) his Proctor, to treat and agree

o 16 *Dec. Pat.* 10 *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 6.

agree with such Noblemen, persons of note, and others, as he should think best, touching both Alliances and Retainers. With this, Commissions with like power, and under the same date, were likewise sent to [p] *William* Earl of *Juliers*, the Kings Brother-in-Law, to Sir *John de Montgomery*, Knight, and to Mr. *John Waweyn*, Canon of *Derlington*.

[p] *Ibid.*

In *April* following, a like Commission was issued to [q] *Henry* Bishop of *Lincolne*, *William* Earl of *Salisbury*, and *William* Earl of *Huntingdon*, and they immediately dispatcht into *Flanders*, where they found business so well prepared by the Commissioners before named, that by the 24. of *May* ensuing, [r] they had fully engaged divers of the Nobility and others in *Henault*, *Geldres*, and the Marquisate of *Juliers*, to appear in the Kings assistance against the *French*, and withall setled the proportion of Men and Arms, each of them were to furnish the King with in that Service, together with the stipends and wages to be paid them in lieu thereof. This done, the said [s] Bishop went to *Gaunt*, and there won so much upon the humour of *Jaques Dartuell*, that he gained him also to the Kings party.

[q] 19. *April Pat.* 11. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 11.
[r] *Rot. Alman.* 11. *E.* 3. *m.* 9. 10. 11.
[s] *Froiss. Chron. Lib.* 1. *cap.* 29.

Within a few days after [t] *Renaut* the Second Earl of *Guildres*, and *Zuitphen* (who had married *Leonora*, the Kings Sister) and *William* Marquess of *Juliers* ([u] Husband to *Joane* Sister to Queen *Philippa*) entred into the Association, and next [w] *Rupert*, Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, Duke of *Bavaria*, signed an Agreement at *Frankeford*, whereby he obliged himself to assist the King, for the recovery and maintenance of his Inheritance, against all persons whatsoever, except *Lewis* the Emperor, his Uncle (which several Contracts, made by the foresaid Ambassadors with these Princes, were [x] confirmed by the King under the Great Seal of *England*, the 26. of *August* following.)

[t] *Rot. Alman.* 11. *E.* 3. *m.* 10.
[u] *Rittershusius in Tab. Com. Hollandiæ & Seland.*
[w] *Ult. Junii Rot. Alman.* 11. *E.* 3. *m.* 9.
[x] *Ibid.*

Between this [y] Emperor and the King, and their Heirs, past also an Union and Confederacy, which obliged them to use all their power particularly against *Philip de Valois* (who carried himself as King of *France*) and his Successors in that Kingdom, for the recovery and defence of their Honors, Inheritances, and Possessions.

[y] *Ibid. m.* 11.

The 13. of *July* was [z] *John* Duke of *Loraine*, *Brabant*, and *Lemburgh* retained for the King, and with the assent of the Emperor, was the Confederation made with [a] *Lewis* his eldest Son, there stiled Marquess of *Brandenburgh* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, Duke of *Bavaria*, and Arch-Chamberlain to the Emperor.

[z] *Ibid. m.* 8.
[a] 2. *Sept. Ib. m.* 6.

With these, the King retained, for his intended Expedition into *France*, several other Noblemen of those Countries, as namely [b] *Adolph* Earl of *Monte* (who having made Fealty and Homage to the King, he in reward thereof, setled on him a Pension for life, of 1200 Florens of Gold *per annum*, out of his Exchequer) [c] *Everhard*, eldest Son to *Thideric* Earl of *Lymborg*; [d] *Adolph*, Earl of *Marlia*; [e] *Robert de Touburgh*, Lord of *Warnich*; [f] *Theodorick*, Earl of *Lossen* and *Heuseberg*, and Lord of *Blatikenburgh*; and *Theodorick de Montjoy*, Lord of *Valkenborgh*: besides divers valiant Knights, and Commanders of eminent note.

[b] *Ibid. m.* 9.
[c] [d] [e] *Ibid. m.* 6.
[f] *Ibid. m.* 5.

But *Philip de Valois* was so alarm'd at the report of these Alliances, that he used all endeavours to interrupt the foresaid Ambassadors, in their passage home, both by [g] placing a Garrison in the Isle of *Cogaunt*, and setting out several men of War to Sea: Of which the King having intelligene, directed his Writ to [h] *John de Ros*, Admiral of the Fleet, from the River of *Thames* Northward, to fit up a Convoy of 40 stout Ships well mann'd, to be at *Dort* in *Holland*, on *Monday* after *Midsommer-day*, to secure their return, where they lay ready for their coming.

[g] *Froiss. Chron. lib.* 1. *cap.* 30.
[h] 20. *Junii Rot. Vasc.* 11. *E.* 3. *m.* 30. & 22. *vide Rot. Franc.* 11. *E.* 3. *m.* 30.

And whereas these Ambassadors, in making these Alliances and Retainers, upon the Kings account, had obliged themselves to pay sundry great sums of money; the King [i] indempnified them, their Heirs, and Executors, of all those sums, and other things whereto they were so engaged.

[i] *Rot. Alman.* 11. *E.* 3. *m.* 4.

This great Affair, of strengthening the King with Alliances and Friends in *Germany* and *Flanders*, was again set on foot, and to that purpose, another [k] Commission was issued to the said Bishop of *Lincoln*, and Earl of *Salisbury*, to whom was added *Robert de Vfford* Earl of *Suffolk*, and *John Darcy* Steward of the

[k] 3. *Oct. Rot. Alman.* 11. *E.* 3. *m.* 10.

the Kings Houshould, with power to any three of them, to treat thereupon with *Lewis* the Emperor. Another [l] Commission of the same date, was made out to them, and to *Richard de Winkele*, *John de Offord*, *Paul de Montefloruin*, *John de Montgomery*, and *John Wauwyn*, impowering them to treat with, and retain all persons, aswell Nobles as others, for the Kings Service.

l *Ibid. n* 11.

And as the King did endeavour by these means to gain assistance, for the recovery of his right to the Crown of *France*, so did he not neglect all methods of Peace: among which he thought fit to [m] constitute the foresaid Bishop of *Lincolne*, the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Suffolk*, and *John Darcy*, his Agents, to treat *cum magnifico Principe Domino Philippo Rege Franciæ illustri*, or his Deputies, touching his right to the said Crown; to wit, whether it ought to remain to him, or King *Edward*: And by another Commission, they were impowered to treat upon all Controversies and Demands whatsoever, relating to the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*, or other parts beyond Sea, and also of a happy and perpetual peace.

m *Ibid. Ib. n* 13.

The same day, he [n] constituted *John* Duke of *Brabant* and *Loraine*, his Lieutenant, Captain, and Vicar General in the Kingdom of *France*: where it is worthy note, that the King in this Commission (challenging the Crown of *France*, as devolved to him by right of succession, and consequently become his lawful Inheritance) did assume the Title of that Kingdom, and stiled himself, *Edwardus Dei gratiâ Rex Angliæ & Franciæ, Dominus Hiberniæ, & Dux Aquitaniæ*: And by another Commission bearing even date, made of these Officiary Dignities to the said Duke, he put *France* in the first place, thus, *Edwardus Dei gratiâ Rex Franciæ & Angliæ, &c.* but it was not long e're he voluntarily laid this Title of *France* aside, nor did he solemnly assume it again, till the 14. year of his Reign over *England*.

n *Ibid. m.* 1.

By several other [o] Commissions of the same date (wherein the Titles of *England* and *France* were so transposed) did the King constitute into the same Dignities, *William* Marquess of *Juliers*, *William* Earl of *Henault*, his Father-in-Law, and *William Bohun* Earl of *Northampton*; and by another then dated and directed to the Archbishops, Bishops, Dukes, Marquesses, Earls, Barons, and all other persons in the Kingdom of *France* (having therein the Titles of *England* and *France* transposed as before) they are commanded to receive the said Duke, as if it were the King in his own person, as also the Marquesses and Earls. And further, the said Marquesses and the Earls were by other Commissions severally constituted the Kings special Ambassadors, to make known his said Title to all whom it should concern, to challenge and prosecute his right, to require every unjust detainor, to render to the King whatsoever he so withheld from him, to displace and punish such as they should think meet; and lastly to do and execute all other things, which should be most necessary for the recovery and preservation of his right.

o *Ibid.*

The King of *France* had in the beginning of this year sent Forces into [p] *Gascoigne*, and seised upon many of the Kings Castles and Fortresses; upon notice hereof the *King* gave [q] command to arrest 20 Ships in the Port of *Southampton*, and thereabouts, and to press men to be ready at *Portsmouth*, to set forward for *Gascoigne* on *Whitson-Eve* following; for he had raised a great Army to send thither. (It may not here be forgotten, what is recorded of [r] *Reymond Cornely* Lord of *Abertha* a *Gascoigner*, who made an offer to the *King* of *France*, to fight in defence of *King Edward*'s right to those Countries; for which [s] *he sent him very great and particular thanks.*) But withall made several applications, by his Ambassadors, to the Court of *France*, for restitution of what had been seized on, and prevention of a War. His Offers were these.

p *Claus.* 11. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 29. *Dorso, vide Hist. Anglic. Script. Coll.* 2569.
q *Rot. Vasc.* 11. *E.* 3. *m.* 40.
r *Rot. Vasc.* 11. *E.* 3. *m.* 4.
s 6. *Jan. ibid.*

1. "[t] To marry his eldest Son the Duke of *Cornwall* to the *King* of *France*'s "Daughter, without Dowry.

t *Claus.* 11. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m* 28. *Dorso.*

2. "The marriage of his Sister, the Countess of *Geldres* to his Son, with a "great sum of money.

3. "The marriage of his Brother the Earl of *Cornwall*, with any of the Blood "Royal.

4. To

4. "To make restitution for any dammage, he tendered him as much money "as he could in reason demand.

5. "He also proferr'd to take a Voyage to the *Holy Land* with the King of "*France*, if he would restore his Lands to him.

6. "To go the Voyage, if he would restore but half, or some of those Lands.

7. "To take the Voyage with him, if he would make restitution after his re-"turn; or lastly,

8. "To take the Voyage singly himself, so that at his return, he would re-"store him his right.

These Overtures with many others, which the King or his Council could think off, were offered to the King of *France*, in order to a Peace, with this general proposal beside; That if any one could think of any other way tending thereunto, he would be ready to accept thereof. But all in vain; for, on the contrary, King *Philip* excited and maintained the *Scots* against him, and his Navy also did great mischiefs at Sea.

Whereupon the *Pope* perceiving that the War was likely to proceed, sent into *England* P. Priest Cardinal of St. *Praxid*, and B. Deacon *Cardinal* of St. *Mary* in *Aquiro*, to use their best endeavours, to compose the differences now growing high between the two Kings. Upon whose mediation with King *Edward*, though Peace could not be obtained, yet that things relating to Peace might the better be effected, a [u] Truce was agreed on, to the Morrow after *Candlemas* day, *an.* 12. *E.* 3. and thence prorogued to the [w] first of *March*, and lastly, a further enlargement of it to [x] *Midsummer* following, in case the King of *France* should consent to it, and give Security that it should be observed; but he it seems refusing, the *King* was advised to revoke this later cessation (which he did the [y] 6. of *May*) and to take a Journey into *Flanders*, personally to confer with his Allies, in pursuance of his design against *France*, and thereupon he took shipping at the Port of *Orewell* the 16. of *July*, and went to *Antwerp*: But before he went, upon the Cardinals further importunity, a [z] Commission issued to *J.* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, *R.* Bishop of *Durham*, *R. de Vfford* Earl of *Suffolk*, Sir *Geoffry le Scrop* Knight, and Mr. *John Vfford* Archdeacon of *Ely*, with power to treat and agree, touching all things in difference between them, in reference to a full and final Peace. And by another [a] Commission, bearing the same date, the Duke of *Brabant*, Earl of *Hanow* and *Gueldres*, the Marquess of *Juliers*, and Sir *William Dunort* Lord of *Oustrehout*, Knight, are added to them. These Commissions were double, and of two several Stiles; in the one, the King calls *Philip de Valoys Consanguineus noster Franciæ*, only; and in the other, *Excellentissimus Princeps, Dominus Philippus, Rex Franciæ, illustris Consanguineus noster charissimus.*

At *Antwerp* the confederate Princes gave the King a meeting, and here he [b] expresly revoked all the powers he had given the forementioned Commissioners, to treat with *Philip de Valois*, as King of *France*. At length it was resolved, that the [c] Duke of *Juliers* should be sent Ambassador, from the King to the Emperor; which Embassy obtained a promise to the King, of the Vicar-generalship of the Empire; whereupon, about the beginning of *September* he took a Journey to [d] *Colen*, where the Emperor publickly defied the King of *France*, and constituted *King Edward* his Vicar-General, who at his return into *Flanders*, [e] entred upon the execution of that Office.

In the 13. year of this *Kings* Reign, at the instance of the foresaid Cardinals, [f] *John* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, *Richard* Bishop of *Durham*, *Henry* Bishop of *Lincolne*, the Earls of *Derby*, *Salisbury*, and *Suffolk*, and some others, were impowered to treat with *Philip de Valois*, or his Deputies, upon the Dignities, Honors, Lands, and Rights, belonging to *King Edward*, and all other controversies whatsoever. The Deputies on the other part, were the [g] Archbishop of *Rouen*, the Bishops of *Langres* and *Beauvais*, and the place for treaty, *Arras*; but nothing of Peace being thereby effected, the *King* prepared effectually for War; having [h] some time before, made an alliance with *Albert* and *Otho*, Dukes of *Austria*, *Stiria*, and *Karinthia*; and received Homage as *King* of *France*, from

u *Rot. Franc.* 11. *E.* 3. *m.* 2. *Dorso.*
w *Rot. Alman.* 12. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 36. *vide Pat. de eod. an. p.* 1. *m.* 24.
x
y *Ibid. m.* 16.
z 21. *June Rot. Alman.* 12. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 5.
a *Ibid.*
b 22. *July Rot. fœd. apud Antuerp.* 12. *E.* 3. *m.* 7. *&* 3.
c *Froiss. Chron. lib.* 1. *cap.* 32.
d *Walsingh. sub an.* 12. *E.* 2.
e *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 34.
f *Primo Julii Pat. concess. hominib. Angl. & Vasc.* 13. *E.* 3. *m.* 17.
g *Hollinsh. Chron. p.* 355.
h 16. *Febr. Patentes inter Regem Angl. & diversos Magnates German. de an.* 13. *E.* 3. *m.* 2.

from *Reiginald*, Duke of *Gueldres* and Earl of *Zutphen*, for which he afterwards granted him [i] 1000*l.* sterling *per Annum*, for his life. He likewise made alliances with other Princes, who were to furnish him with men, to be imployed in his intended expedition into *France:* as also with [k] *Lewis* the Emperour: after which, he sent a Letter from *Antwerp* to the *Pope*, asserting his claim to the Crown of *France*, which is to be seen in [l] *Thomas Walsingham*'s History of *England*.

i { *Ib. m.* 4
k
l *Sub an.* 13. *E.* 3.

All things being now in readiness, the King (with the assistance of his Allies) first besieged *Cambray* (an Imperial City, and then in the hands of the *French*) but it being too well fortified and provided, to be suddenly taken, he raised his Siege, and passed into *France*, first [m] sending his defiance to *Philip de Valois* (then at *Paris*) by the Bishop of *Lincoln*. Sir *Walter Many* was the first, who, after the defiance made, [n] entred *France* with 40. Horse, burnt *Mortaigne*, took the Castle of *Thyne*, garrisoned it, and returned to the King at *Mechlin*.

m *Froiss. Chron. l.* 1. *c.* 34.
n *Ibid. c.* 35.

The King having passed the River *Skell*, entred *France* upon [o] St. *Matthews* Day, and burnt the Country before him. And not long after, at the request of the Duke of *Brabant*, to admit of a Treaty of Peace, the King, at *Markoyne*, [p] grants the said Duke power, in his name, to give safe conduct to such persons as he should think fit, to meet at any place within two or three Leagues from his Camp, to treat of Peace, the same to continue till *Friday* following, and all that day; but nothing was effected.

o *Knighton in Hist. Angl. Script. Coll.* 2574.
p 4. *Ott. Pat. concess. hominib. Angl. & Vasc.* 13 *E.* 3. *m.* 12.

The [q] *Saturday* before St. *Lukes* Day, the King with his Army passed the River *Oyze*, and marching forward till he came between *Vyronfoss*, and *Flamengery*, the two Armies drew near each other, where the Day of Battel was agreed on to be the *Friday* after. But in the interim a [r] Letter of advice was brought to the *French* King, from *Robert* King of *Sicily* a famous Astrologer, to dissuade him from fighting, since he had by his Science found, that if he fought with the King of *England*, he should be vanquished, and loose the day. This Letter so prevailed with the King of *France*, that though he had the greater power, and that both Armies stood ranged for Battel, yet was there not a blow struck on the appointed Day. The *Munday* following, intelligence was brought to the King, [s] that the French were dispersed, and returning homewards, whereupon he withdrew his Army, and marched back into *Brabant*.

q *Knighton loco cit.*
r *Froiss. Chron. l.* 1. *c.* 42.
s *Knighton Hist. Angl. Coll.* 2575.

At his return to *Antwerp*, he [t] issued out another Commission, to *John* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, *R.* Bishop of *Durham*, *H.* Bishop of *Lincoln*, *W.* Earl of *Salisbury*, Sir *Bartholomew Burgherssh*, and Sir *Geoffry le Scrop*, Knights, and *John de Offord* Archdeacon of *Ely*, to treat of Peace with *Philip de Valois*, or with Commissioners from him, and a [u] month after this Commission was renued, upon adding *Robert de Vfford*, Earl of *Suffolk*, to the before-named Commissioners.

t 15. *Nov. Pat. inter Regem & diversos Magnat. German.* 13. *E.* 3: *m.* 3.
u 16. *Dec. Ib. m.* 2.

Here also, the King was advised to ingage the [w] *Flemmings* to his further Assistance, who were willing enough (for, by the means of *Jaques D'artuell*, he had gained a great influence upon them) but considering they stood ingaged in the *Pope*'s Chamber in two Millions of Florens, not to make War against the King of *France*, they proposed, that the King would quarter the Arms of *France* with those of *England*, and call himself King of *France*, as he ought of right to do, and then they would take him to be the rightful King of *France*, and receive from him a discharge of that Obligation, and afford him their assistance. To this proposal the King agreed, and solemnly assumed both the Arms of the Kingdom, and Title of King of *France*. He also caused his Great Seal to be changed, and brought it with him at his return to *England* (landing at [x] *Orewell* the 21. of *Febr.* at 9. a Clock in the Morning) and the first of *March* delivered it to Sir *John de St. Paul*, in a Chamber called the *Cage Chamber* at *Westminster*. The old Great Seal, was then delivered up to him by the said Sir *John*, which he gave to *William de Kildesby* to be kept in his Wardrobe: But, that the New Seal might be made more publick, he caused [y] Impressions thereof, and of his Privy Seal, to be made and sent to all the Sheriffs in

w *Froiss. l.* 1. *c.* 43.
x *Claus.* 14. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 42. *dorso.*
y 21. *Febr. Ib. m.* 33 *dorso.*

in *England*, to be publiſhed in the ſeveral Countries, in regard he intended at the meeting of the Parliament on the *Wedneſday* next after *Midlent Sunday*; to [z] acquaint them with the cauſe, wherefore he had added to his Stile, the title of King of *France*.

z *Vide Rot. Parl.* 14. *E.* 3. *n.* 10.

That day being come, he under his New Great Seal, as King of *France*, [a] vacated all Papal Proceſſes made at the inſtance of the *French* King, againſt the Inhabitants of *Flanders*; and granted to the Earl of *Flanders*, his Heirs and Succeſſors for ever, the Towns of *Lyſle*, *Doway*, *Bethune*, and *Orchies*, with the County of *Artois*, and City of *Tournay*, and to their Inhabitants, divers Priviledges. And by another Inſtrument of the ſame date under the ſaid Seal, with the conſent of the Parliament, he granted, [b] that the ſtaple of Wools ſhould be ſetled at *Bruges*.

a *Pat.* 14. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 36.

b *Ib. m.* 33. & 37.

A little before his return into *England*, he wrote a [c] Letter from *Gaunt* (which bore Teſte the 8. of *Febr.* in the firſt year of his Reign over *France*, and 14. over *England*) to the Prelates, Peers, and Commons of *France*, thereby ſignifying, that *Charles*, late King of *France*, his Mothers Brother, being dead, that Kingdom was fallen to him by manifeſt Law; and that *Philip de Valois*, Son to the Uncle of the ſaid King, had by force intruded into it in his Minority, and yet detained it. Leſt therefore he ſhould ſeem to neglect his own right, he thought good to own the Title of *France*, and take on him the defence and Government thereof, and having offered the ſaid *Philip* divers friendly conditions of Peace, to which he refuſed all condiſcention, he was therefore neceſſitated to defend himſelf, and recover his right by force of Arms; and therefore all ſuch Subjects as would ſubmit to him as true King of *France*, by *Eaſter* then next enſuing, ſhould be received into his grace and protection.

c *Rot. Franc.* 14. *E.* 3. *m.* 1.

Having diſpatcht his Affairs with the Parliament, which had given him a [d] great Supply, to go on with this War, and wherein an Act paſſed [e] that he might, with the aſſent of his Allies, condeſcend to any reaſonable terms of Peace: And having created the Marqueſs of *Juliers*, [f] Earl of *Cambridge*, and given him 1000*l. per annum* until he were provided for of ſo much Land of Inheritance, He got in readineſs an Army to go beyond Sea, and prepared his Navy to tranſport it, and on the 22. of *June* (*horâ diei quaſi primâ*) ſet ſail from *Orewell*.

d *Rot. Parl.* 14. *E.* 3. *n.* 7.
e *Ib. n.* 34.
f *n.* 35.

The *French* King had laid [g] 120. great Ships, beſide *Genoeſes*, *Normans*, and *Picards*, Manned with 40000. Men, to intercept his paſſage; But after a fierce and bloody fight on *Midſummer Eve*, the [h] King got the Victory, before *Sluce*, deſtroying moſt of the Enemy, and taking the greateſt part of their Fleet: and on *Midſummer* day landed at *Sluce*, and went forthwith to *Gaunt*. Of this Signal Victory an account, by [i] Letter was ſent from the King to the Biſhops and Prelates, by the Earl of *Arundel*, and Sir *William Truſſell*.

g *Froiſs. l.* 1. *c.* 50.
h *Clauſ.* 14. *E.* 3. *p.* 3. *m.* 6. *dorſo.*
i *Rot. Parl.* 14. *E.* 3. *n.* 6.

Not long after the [k] King held a Council with his Allies at *Villenort*, where it was reſolved, that the King ſhould beſiege *Tournay*, before which he brought 120000. Men. [l] Thence, he ſent a Letter ſealed with his Great Seal, to *Philip de Valois*, ſignifying, that he had fairly requeſted him to render him his lawful right to the Crown of *France*, but perceiving he meant to perſiſt in detaining it, without returning him any anſwer, He was therefore entred *Flanders*, as Soveraign Lord thereof, to paſs through that Country, for recovery of his Inheritance ſo detained; yet to avoid the effuſion of Chriſtian blood, and determine the right, he challenged him to fight body to body, or elſe 100. choſen Souldiers on each ſide, or if both were refuſed, then to pitch upon a day for both Armies to fight neer *Tournay*; But the *French* King returned no anſwer to this Letter.

k *Froiſs. l.* 1. *c.* 52.
l 27. *July.*

The Siege continued eleven weeks, wanting three days, in which time, by the mediation and effectual endeavour of *Jane de Valois*, the *French* Kings Siſter, a Treaty was ſet on foot, [m] *John*, King of *Bohemia*, *Adolph*, Biſhop of *Leige*, *Reynel* Duke of *Loraine*, *Am* Earl of *Savoy*, and *John* Earl of *Arminiack*, being Commiſſioners for the *French* King, the Dukes of *Brabant*, and *Gueldres*, the Marqueſs of *Juliers*, and *John* of *Henault* Lord *Beaumont* for King *Edward*;

m *Clauſ.* 14. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 32. *dorſo.*

who on the [n] 25. of *September* agreed upon a Truce, between both Kings, to endure till *Midsummer* following (of which publication was made in *England* the 6. of *October*) and thus both Armies retired. But this was much against the Kings Will, though not against those of his Allies, who were very desirous to return home. The Siege being raised, the King went to *Gaunt*, and thence returned into *England*, where he arrived (at the Tower Wharf) on the [o] Feast of St. *Andrew* about Midnight.

At this Treaty before *Tournay*, it was among other things agreed, that another Treaty should be held at *Arras*, within that year, whither both *Kings* and the *Pope* should send Commissioners; but that meeting produced only another year to be added to the Truce. The *Kings* Commissioners were the [p] Bishops of *Lincolne* and *Durham*, the Earl of *Warwick*, Sir *Robert d' Artois*, Sir *John Henault*, and Sir *Henry* of *Flanders*. This year produced some other Overtures for the amicable composure of all Controversies, and concluding a Peace between the two *Kings*; to which purpose a [q] Commission issued to *R.* Bishop of *Durham*, *Hugh* Earl of *Gloucester*, *William Fitz Warren*, *Nicholas de Flisco*, and *William Truffell*. Another [r] Commission issued to *John* Duke of *Brabant*, *Reignold* Duke of *Gueldres* and *Zuthphen*, *William* Marquess of *Juliers*, and Earl of *Cambridge*, and *William* Earl of *Hanaw*, and *John de Hanaw* Lord *Beaumont*, to treat and agree with *Philip de Valois*, upon a Truce, to the Feast of the decollation of St. *John Baptist* then coming on, which it seems became so far hopeful, as to [s] produce a prorogation till the Feast of the [*] *Exaltation of the Holy Cross*, and thence till [t] *Midsummer* in the following year. Another Commission was made forth to [u] *William* Earl of *Huntingdon*, *Bernard Dominus de le Brett*, *Bartholomew de Burghersh*, *John de Offord*, Archdeacon of *Ely*, and *Michael de Flisco*, to treat with the said *Philip de Valois*, aswell touching the Kingdom and Crown of *France*, as divers other questions and controversies between them, and to compose the differences by a full Peace, or otherwise a Truce; and one of these Commissions was to treat, by the advice of *John* Duke of *Brabant*, and other the *Kings* Allies in *Flanders*.

While the *King* lay at the Siege of *Tournay*, the [w] *Scots* (exeited by the *French* King) invaded *England*, and passing by *Berwick* marched into *Northumberland*, and thence to *Durham*, foraging the Country still as they went, and after returned home. In this incursion they recovered all the Castles formerly lost, except those of *Edenburgh*, *Strivling*, and *Roxborough*, the first of which, within a short time after, was taken by stratagem. But in the Truce made at *Tournay*, the *Scotch* were by a particular Article included, and so all hostility ceased during that Truce; yet after the expiration thereof, and some new provocations given the *King*, he raised an Army to enter *Scotland*, but being engaged in the War with *France*, could not go with it himself, and therefore [x] constituted *Edward*, *King* of *Scotland*, his Captain and Lieutenant of his Army: and in another [y] Commission of the same date, gave him power nevertheless to treat with the *Scots*, and to admit them to Peace, and pardon their offences. In these Commissions the *King* stiles him, *Magnificus Princeps, Edwardus Rex Scotiæ, fidelis & consanguineus noster charissimus.*

The [z] following year he was again constituted the *King*'s Captain and Commander in chief, of the Army designed against *Scotland*, for defence of the Kingdom of *England*, and destruction of his *Scotch* Enemies; and further commissionated to [a] raise men in all the Counties beyond *Trent*, aswell within Liberties as without, for that Expedition. Upon which preparation, a [b] Truce was made for one year; before the ending of which, the Truce concluded at *Vannes* in *Britagne*, between the *King* and his Adversary of *France*, took commencement, being to hold from *Michaelmas* 17. *E.* 3. for three years: And in the mean time the Bishop of *Durham*, and others, were appointed by the *King* to [c] treat and conclude with the *Scots*, touching the manner, form, and conditions appointed by the said Truce, and the mutual commerce of the Subjects of both Kingdoms, as also to reform and punish the breakers of the Truce.

The Truce made with the *French* at *Tournay*, and enlarged at *Arras*, gave the *King*

n *Walsingh.* pag. 136.
o *Claus.* 14. *E.* 3. *pag.* 2. *m.* 12. *dorso.*
p *Froif. lib* 1. *cap.* 63.
q 9. *April Rot. Alman.* 15. *E* 3. *m.* 27.
r 24. *May Ib. m.* 20.
s 21. *Aug. Ib. m.* 19. *vide Claus.* 15. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 38. *dorso.*
* 14. *Sept. Ib. m.* 12.
t *Ibid. m.* 7.
u *Rot. Alman.* 15. *E.* 3. *m.* 13.
w *Froif. lib.* 1. *cap.* 54. *Knighton Hist. Angl. Script. Coll.* 258.
x *Primo Aug. Rot. Scot.* 15. *E.* 3. *m.* 9.
y *Ibid.*
z *Rot. Scot.* 16. *E.* 3. *m.* 12.
a *Ibid. m.* 9.
b *Knighton Hist. Ang. Scrip. Coll.* 2581.
c *Rot. Scot.* 17. *E.* 3. *m.* 4.

King time to see his Allies in *Flanders*, aimed chiefly at the accomplishment of their own designs by his hands, rather than the advancement of his interest in *France* by their assistance; and the two fruitless Expeditions, in attempting to enter that Kingdom through *Flanders*, shewed they would do little for him; besides, he now judged it a more easie and advantagious passage thither through *Britagne*, which he hoped to gain, by laying hold of the occasion offered him, to protect and assist *John* Earl of *Montfort*, Duke of *Britagne*; whose Title to that Dukedom, and the occasion of the War between him and *Charles de Bloys*, are set down at large by [d] Sir *John Froissard*.

This [e] *John Montfort* being taken Prisoner at *Nants*, by *Charles de Bloys* (whom the *French King* had assisted with an Army to enter *Britagne*) was sent to *Paris*, and there died in Prison, his Widow ([f] *Joane* of *Flanders* being of a manlike courage) nevertheless maintained the War, and, to gain further aid and supplies from *King Edward*, proposed (by [g] Sir *Emere de Clisson*, a Nobleman of *Britagne*) to marry her Son to one of his Daughters, which taking effect, the *King* sent [h] Sir *Walter Many* (in *November*) with 3000 Archers into *Britagne*, who though they wandred 40 days at Sea, by distress of weather, [i] yet came timely to her assistance.

The *King* in the 16. year of his Reign raised a great Army, and, by [k] Proclamation made, appointed his Souldiers in all Counties of *England*, except *Yorkshire*, *Northumberland*, *Cumberland*, and *Westmerland*, to be in readiness by *Midsummer* following, to go along with him, and [l] after directed his Letters to the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and the Bishops, for publick Prayers to be made, and the divine goodness sought to, for a blessing upon his Armies, which now he designed both against *France* and *Scotland*.

The [m] 4. of *October* following he took shipping at *Sandwich*, in a Ship called the *George*, and sailing towards *France* met with the *French* Fleet, where after a fierce Encounter, they were separated by Tempest; at length he [n] landed neer *Vannes* in *Britagne*, and laid Siege thereto; and here, leaving the Lord *Stafford*, he marched to *Remes* and *Nantes*, laying Siege to both Towns, as also to [o] *Dynan* and took it; after which he returned to *Vannes*, and then [p] drew off his Forces from *Nantes* thither: and there the [q] Bishop Cardinals of *Penestrina* and *Tusculan*, sent from Pope *Clement* the Sixth, obtained of him (19. *Jan.* 1343.) a Truce for [r] 3 years, which the *King* gave way to, in hope of an honorable Peace. This done, the *King* returned into *England*, and [s] set forth a *Proclamation*, to give publick notice of this Truce.

But the Truce expiring, the [t] War was again renewed, between *Charles de Bloys* and the Countess of *Montfort*, to whose assistance the King sent Sir *Thomas Dagworth*, from the Siege of *Calais*, with a supply of men; and the *English* having *Rochedaren* surrendred to them, *Charles de Bloys* laid Siege to it, to relief of which, the Countess sent Sir [u] *Thomas Dangorne*, and Sir *John Artwell* who ([w] 20. *June* 1347.) took *Charles de Bloys* with the *Britagne* and *Norman* Lords, that were on his part, Prisoners, and raised the Siege; which [x] *Charles* was sent into *England*, where he remained in custody a long time.

The [y] 24. of *February*, *an.* 17. *E.* 3. the *King* summoned a Parliament to be held *die Lunæ proximò post Quindena Paschæ*, wherein Sir *Bartholomew Burgherssh*, present at the making of the Truce neer *Vannes*, declared that the *King* consented thereto, [z] provided it might be honorable and advantageous for his Allies, and was content to have the Peace made before the *Pope*, as before a Friend, but not as a Judge; otherwise he would pursue his Quarrel. And that as the *King* did not undertake this War without the assent of Parliament, so without it he would conclude no Peace, and therefore it rested, whether it were best for the *King* to take this Offer, and send Ambassadors to the *Pope* instructed for this Affair, before *Midsummer*, or not? Hereupon both Lords and Commons answered, That it was good to pursue the Peace, and to send Ambassadors, as was proposed.

Those who were first sent to the Popes Court upon this Affair, were [a] *Hugh le Despenser* Lord of *Glamorgan*, *Ralph* Lord *Stafford*, *William de Norwich*, Dean

d *Lib.* 1. *c.*64.
e *Froiss. Chron. lib.*1. *cap.*72.
f *Par.* 16. *E.*3. *p.* 1. *m.* 25.
g *Hollinsh. Chron. p.*362.
h *Rot. Alman.* 15. *E.* 3. *m.*4. *& 7. vide Froissard, li.* 1. *cap.* 79.
i *Froiss. lib.*1. *cap.*81.
k *May* 20. *Claus.* 16. *E.*3. *m.*20. *dorso.*
l *Ibid. p.*3. *m.* 28. *dorso.*
m *Ib.p.*2. *m.*23. *dorso.*
n 29.*Nov. Hollensh. Chron. pag.*364.
o *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 96.
p *Ibid. cap.* 97.
q *Rot. Parl.*17. *E.*3. *n.* 8. *vide etiam Claus. de eod. an. p.*1. *m.* 25. *dorso.*
r *Kighton Col.* 2583.
s *Claus.* 16. *E.*3. *p.*1. *m.*31.
t *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 142.
u *Ibid. c.* 143.
w *Hollinsh. Chron. p* 376.
x *Froiss. c.*147.
y *Claus.*17.*E.*3 *p.*1.*m.*25 *dorso.*
z *Rot. Parl. de eod. an. n.* 8.
a 20. *May Rot. Franc.*17. *E.*3. *m.* 12.

Dean of *Lincoln*, Sir *William Trussel*, and *Andrew de Offord*, a Civilian. The Authority given them was to Treat in presence of the Pope, not as a Judge, but private Person and Friend to both parties, with the Agents of his Cosin the Lord *Philip de Valois*, upon the Kings Right to the Crown of *France*, as also upon whatsoever Dominions, Dignities, Honors, Lands, Possessions, Places, and Rights appertained to him, concerning which any controversy had risen between them, or was like to arise. After this another [b] Commission issued containing the same powers, to *Henry* of *Lancaster* Earl of *Derby*, *Thomas de Beauchampe* Earl of *Warwick*, *Robert de Vfford* Earl of *Suffolke*, *Hugh le Despenser* Lord of *Glamorgon*, *Ralph de Nevill*, *Bartholomew de Burghersh*, *John le Grey de Ruffyn*, *Reginald de Cobham*, and *Thomas de Brodiston*, Batons, *William de Norwich* Dean of *Lincoln*, *John de Offord* Archdeacon of *Ely*, *Robert Herward* Archdeacon of *Taunton*, and *Andrew de Offord* Professor of the Civil Law, or to any 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, or 3. of them. But this Treaty had only the effect of continuing the Truce, yet that so ill kept on the *French* side, that the following year it occasioned a [c] solemn complaint, sent from the King to the Pope, by *John Offord*, Dean of *Lincoln*, *Hugh de Nevill*, and *Nicholas de Flisco*, to require reformation, and security for the observance of the said Truce, until the time it was to end, and in case that were not done, then they to surrender it into the Popes hands, and defy *Philip de Valois*, as the Kings Enemy.

b 19. *Aug. Ib.*

c 4 *Aug. Rot. Franc.* 18. *E.* 3. *m.* 3.

It seems, the desires of the King met with a dilatory answer, for the [d] 20 of *October* following, *William* Bishop of *Norwich*, *John de Offord* Dean, and *John Thoresby* Canon of *Lincoln*, Sir *Hugh Nevil*, and Sir *Ralph Spigurnell* Knights, and *Nicholas de Flisco* were commissionated to declare before the Pope, in what particulars the Truce had been broken, and to demand reparations: but after all this, no satisfaction being given to the King, and the Truce manifestly and notoriously violated, the King gave [e] Commission to *William de Bohun*, Earl of *Northampton* to defy *Philip de Valois*, as a Violator of the Truce, an unjust Usurper of his inheritance in *France*, and his Capital Enemy. And [f] shortly after, he set forth a Manifesto touching the dissolution of the Truce, wherein the causes were declared at large: being the same with the [g] Letters sent from him to the Pope and four Cardinals, the 26. of *May* preceeding.

d *Ib. m.* 2.

e 24. *April Rot. Franc.* 19. *E.* 4. *p.* 1. *m.* 24.

f 14. *June. Ib. m.* 10.

g *Rot. Rom.* 19. *E.* 3. *m.* 2. *n.* 4.

This being done, the King with all diligence [h] provides an Army to enter *France* the following year, and the [i] 5. of *July* in the 20. year of his Reign, took Shipping at *Southampton*; but instead of sailing towards *Goscoigne*, whether he at first intended, (upon the advice of Sir *Geoffry de Harecourt*) he diverted his course, and made towards *Normandy*, and landed at *Hoges saynt Wast*, in the Isle of *Constantine* not far from St. *Saviours le Vycount*, the [k] 12. of *July* after.

h *Froissard Chron. l.* 1. *c.* 121.

i *Stows Chron. p.* 241. *b.*

k *Cart. & Pat. facta in Franc.* 20. *E.* 3. *m.* 1.

Upon his arrival he ordered his Army in [l] three Battels, the one marched on his right hand along the Sea-side, the second on his left; both which exceedingly inriched themselves with the spoils of the Country: and himself with the third in the middle. This Battel consisted of 3000. men at Arms, 6000. Archers, and 10000. Common Souldiers.

l *Froissard Chron. l.* 1. *c.* 122.

The first Town he took was [m] St. *Lo*, in *Constantine*, rich in Drapery, and next [n] *Caen*; the plunder of it, and other places, consisting [o] of Cloth, Vessels of Silver and Gold, Jewels, and more than 60. Knights and 300. Burgesses, made Prisoners, were sent to the Ships, and transported into *England*. After this the King marched on, wasting and burning the Country and entred *Lisieux*, the Chief City of *Normandy*, for Wealth and Merchandize, and plundered it. And hence, he gave [p] Letters of Protection and safe conduct to the Cardinals of *Tusculan*, and St. *John*, and St. *Paul*, sent from the Pope to mediate a Peace. From thence he marched into the Country of *Eureux*, and spoiled it, and leaving *Roan*, he passed to *Gaillon*, and burnt it, with *Vernon*, *Pont de Lache*, and all the Country thereabouts, and went over the River *Seyne* to *Poissy*. Hence (having thus overrun and wasted *Britagne* and *Normandy*) the *English* Marshalls rode towards *Paris*, and burnt St. *Germain en Laye*, *Mountjoy*, St. *Clou*, *Pety Bolayne* near

m *Ib. c.* 123.

n *Ib. c.* 124.

o *Ib. c.* 125.

p *Rot: Norman.* 20. *E.* 3. *m.* 21.

neer *Paris* and the *Bourg la Reyne*, which caused the *French King* to retire to St. *Denys*. Sir *Godfrey de Harecourt* encountred a considerable party of the Burgesses of *Amiens*, going to the assistance of the *French King*, of whom he kill'd 1200, and defeated the rest, and took their Carriages and Baggage.

About this time the [q] *French King* had sent notice to *King Edward*, that he would give him Battel, the *Thursday*, *Saturday*, *Sunday*, or *Monday* after, betwixt St. *Germains de Preez*, and *Valgirart de là Paris*, or between *Franconville* and *Pontoise*; in answer to which, (from *Antes* 15. *Aug.*) the *King* sent him word, that he was come thither, to put an end to the War by Battel, but that the said *French King* had broken down all the Bridges, so that they could not come at each other. That he had come to *Poissy*, and repaired that Bridge, and there stayed three days expecting him, and that the *French* Forces might have come on, either on the one side or the other, at his pleasure. But forasmuch as they did not, he could not then give him Battel, and therefore now resolved to pass further into the Kingdom, and there stay till he had ended the War, or advantaged himself, and disabled his Adversaries: Nevertheless if he would combat him, to save those which he challenged for his Subjects, upon notice of the Hour, he should find him ready for the Encounter, and this he principally desired for the benefit of Christianity, since he had refused to accept of, or propose any reasonable way for effecting Peace.

[q] *Rot. Norman. 20. E. 3. m. 21. Dorso.*

This answer was not liked by the *French King*; therefore the *King* having stayed at [r] *Poissy*, and there kept the Feast of our Lady in *August*, marched thence into the Country of *Beauvosyn*, burning and destroying all before him. One night having lodged in an Abbey, and next morning after his departure, looking behind him, he saw it on fire, but he hanged 20 of his Souldiers, that had done the mischief; because at his first entrance into *France*, he had caused Proclamation to be made throughout his Army, that no man, upon pain of death, should violate a Church, or burn a Religious House.

[r] *Froiss. Chron. loco cit.*

As he passed by *Beauvois*, he fired the Suburbs, and went thence to *Granvillers*. He also took and fired the Castle of *Angers*, and the Town of *Pork*, and the two Castles; and drawing neer to [s] *Abbeville*, he endeavoured to pass the River of *Somme*, but sounding several places found no Ford; at length one *Gobyn a Grace* (a Prisoner) brought him to *Blanch-taque*. This Ford was guarded on the other side by 12000 men, commanded by Sir *Godmar du Foy*; [t] here the *King* forced his passage, and defeated Sir *Godmar*, and after he had passed his whole Army over, he marched to *Cresey* in *Ponthieu*, where he formed his Army into three Battels, the [u] first of which was led by the Prince of *Wales*, accompanied with divers of the *English* Nobility, the second by the Earl of *Northampton*, and the third by the *King* himself.

[s] *Froiss. lib. 1. cap. 126.*
[t] *Ibid. cap. 127.*
[u] *Ibid. c. 128.*

And here, before the Battels joined, he created 50 Knights, among whom were [w] *Robert de Maule*, *Guy de Brian*, *John de Ravensholm*, *Peter de Brewes*, *Thomas de Lancastre*, *Henry Dengayne*, and *John* the Son of *Guy de Beauchamp*; to whom the *King* gave annual Pensions for their lives, to support these Honors.

[w] *Cart. Pat. Rege existente in Fra. 20. E. 3. m. 21.*

The Battel was sought [x] between *Bray* and *Cressy*, on *Saturday* the [y] 7. of the Calends of *September*, *viz.* the 26. of *August an. Dom.* 1346. and the Victory fell to *King Edward*. There were kill'd on the *French* part, the *King* of *Bohemia*, the Duke of *Lorraine*, the Earls of *Alanson*, *Flanders*, *Harcourt*, *Almor*, *Bloys*, *Auser*, and St. *Paul*; but the *French King* fled to *Bray* Castle with 5 Barons only, and thence to *Amiens*. On the day after the Battel, there were [z] four times as many slain (coming to the assistance of the *French King*, but knew nothing of his defeat) as on the day on which the Battel was fought.

[x] *Froiss. lib. 1. cap. 130.*
[y] *Ex Lib. Monast. de Lacock in Com. Wilts.*
[z] *Froiss. c. 131.*

After this Battel, the [a] *King* forthwith carried his Army towards *Calais*, and sat down before it the [b] 7. day of *September*, continuing his Siege all the Winter ensuing. The next Summer the *French King* came down with an Army of 200000 men to raise the Siege, and on [c] *Monday* after St. *James*'s day, drawing neer to the Castle of *Guisnes*, and finding the King so strongly intrenched, that he could not attempt him, he, on the 2. of *August*, returned; whereupon the

[a] *Ibid. c. 132.*
[b] *Knighton Hist. Angl. Script. Coll. 2595.*
[c] *Stowes Chron. pag. 244.*

Town

Town was surrendred to the *King*'s mercy, the [d] 4. of *August* following; and the *King* having setled his Affairs there, returned into *England* the [e] 14. of *October*.

The [f] 7. of *October an.* 20. *E.* 3. which was within a Month after *King Edward* had laid Siege to *Calais*, *David King* of *Scots* invaded *England*, with [g] 50000 men. The [h] Queen being then at *York* raised an Army to oppose him, and marched towards *Newcastle*, neer which, on [i] St. *Luke*'s Eve she encountred the *Scots*, slew 15000 of them, and vanquished the rest. Their *King* was taken Prisoner at [k] *Merynngton*, by *John Copland*, an Esquire of *Northumberland*, and (according to the *Kings* command signified to [l] *Thomas Rokely*, high Sheriff of *Yorkshire*, who had received him by Indenture from Monsieur *Ralph Nevill*) was delivered by Indenture, dated the [m] 2. of *January* after, unto *John Darcy* Constable of the Tower of *London*, there to be kept in safe custody. After this Victory, the *English* entred *Scotland*, and took the Castles of [n] *Roxburgh* and *Hermitage*, and subdued the Counties of *Anandale*, *Galloway*, *Mers*, *Tividale* and *Ethrick Forest*, extending their March as far as *Cockburns Peth*, and *Sowtray hedge*, *Tralnilips*, and *Cross Cave*.

Shortly after the defeating of the *King* of *Scots*, upon the mediation of the Cardinal of *Naples* and *Clermont*, a [o] Commission was made out to *William* Marquess of *Juliers*, *William de Bohun* Earl of *Northampton*, Constable of *England*, *Thomas Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*, Marshal of *England*, *Bartholomew de Burghersh*, *Richard Talbot* Steward of the *King*'s House, *Thomas Bradewardyn* Chancellor of *London*, *John de Thoresby*, Canon of *Lincolne*, and *Andrew Offord* Canon of *York*, or any 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, or 3 of them, to treat of, and conclude with the said Cardinals, upon all Quarrels and Controversies depending between the *King* and Sir *Philip de Valois*, and their Allies; but this meeting came to nothing.

Nevertheless, after *Calais* was taken, the Earls of *Lancaster* and *Huntingdon* were [p] commissionated to treat of a Peace, with the said Sir *Philip de Valois*, which upon the interposition and mediation of the foresaid Cardinals, produced a Truce, to endure from *Michaelmas* Eve *an.* 21. *E.* 3. to the *Quinzeme* of St. *John Baptist* next ensuing.

Lewis of *Bavaria* the Emperor being dead, about this time *Henry* Archbishop of *Mentz*, Arch-Chancellor of the Empire in *Germany*, *Rudolph* and *Rupert* Counts Palatine of the *Rhyne*, and Dukes of *Bavaria*, *Lewis* Marquess of *Brandenburgh* and *Lusatia*, and the Dukes of *Saxony* assembled at *Collen*, whence they sent Ambassadors to *King Edward*, with the offer of Electing him Emperor of *Germany*; in return of which he [q] sent to them Sir *Hugh Nevil*, and *Ivo de Glynton* Canon of St. *Pauls London*, with full information of the *Kings* intention, which contained a refusal of that Imperial Dignity, but with [r] great thanks for the honor they designed him.

The Truce made at *Calais* as aforesaid, now growing towards an end; the *King* was prevailed with, upon the Popes Letters, to [s] depute *Thomas Fastolf*, Arch Deacon of *Wells*, *John Carleton* Canon of *Wells*, both Doctors of Law, and Fryer *John de Reppes* of the Order of *Mount Carmell*, who had Commission to prorogue the Truce, and to treat of a final Peace, the former of which was concluded on for [t] 6 weeks in *Picardy*, *Normandy*, *Artois*, *Boloigne*, and *Flanders*, and to commence the 13. of *September an.* 22. *E.* 3. But the *King* well seeing the delay, and unwillingness of the *French* to close with him, either for Truce or Peace, drew down his Forces in *October* to [u] *Sandwich*, intending to pass the Sea; which quickned the *French* to [w] agree to the prorogation of the Truce, from the 18. of *November* till the first of *September*, *an.* 23. *E.* 3. upon which he returned to *London*.

No sooner was this Truce concluded, but the [x] Lord *Geoffry Charney* attempted to corrupt Sir *Amery de Pavy*, an *Italian*, then Governor of *Calais*, to betray the Town to him for 20000 Crowns, of which the *King* having notice, came privately the night before the delivery was agreed on. The Lord *Geoffry* had paid his money, and expected the surrender of the Town, [y] when the *King* issued out, disguised under the Banner of Sir *Walter Many*, and fought on foot among

d *Knighton loco cit.*
e *Stowe loco cit.*
f *Ibid. p.* 242.
g *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 137.
h *Ibid. c.* 138.
i *Knighton Hist. Angl. Script. Coll.* 2590.
k *Ib. Coll.* 2591
l 20 *Dec. Rot. Scot.* 20. *E.* 3. *m.* 2.
m *Claus.* 20. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 1. *Dorso.*
n *Hollenish. pag.* 376.
o 22. *Oct. Rot. Norman.* 20. *E.* 3. *m.* 18.
p 25 *Sept. Rot. Calesii* 21 *E.* 3. *m.* 4.
q 10. *May Claus.* 22. *E* 3. *m.* 20. *Dorso.*
r *Hollinsh. pag.* 412.
s 15. *May Rot. Franc.* 22. *E.* 3. *m.* 13.
t *Ibid. m.* 19.
u *Claus.* 22. *E.* 3 *p.* 2. *m.* 8. *Dorso.*
w 18. *Nov. Rot. Franc.* 23. *E* 3. *m.* 10. *Dorso.*
x *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 150.
y 31. *Dec.* 1348

among the Common Souldiers; and within a while he encountred the Lord *Eustace* of *Rybemont*, a Valiant Knight, who having struck him twice on his Knees, was at last Mastered by the King, and made his Prisoner.

The encounter being over, and the [a] King desirous to view the Prisoners, caused a great Supper to be prepared for them, at which time he came in, wearing a Chaplet of Pearls, and passing to Sir *Eustace* of *Rybemont*, took the Chaplet off his own head and placed it upon the head of Sir *Eustace*, with the commendation of a valiant Knight, and one that had performed best in the late Action, and with all forgave him his ransom.

a *Froissard c.* 1. 52.

Thomas of *Walsingham* placeth this famous exploit to the year 1349. and consequently to be done in the 23*d* year of King *Edward* the Third. But we rather judge Sir *John Froissard* to be in the right, since we find Sir *John Beauchamp* made Captain of *Calais*, the [z] first of *January an.* 22. *E.* 3. which according to *Froissard's* Account, was the next day after this defeat of Sir *Geoffry Charney*: And though the *French* Writers affirm, that Sir *Aymery de Pavy*, discovered the design to the King, yet *Froissard* saith not, tell the King had otherwise first heard of it; and therefore not unlike, but there might rest so much suspicion upon Sir *Aymery*, as induced the King to appoint a new Governor of the Town, before he went thence.

z *Rot. Franc.* 22 *E.* 3. *m.* 5.

It having been agreed on at the last Truce, that Commissioners on both sides should meet at *Boloigne* on *Sunday, in medio Quadragesimæ* following, the King [b] appointed *William* Bishop of *Norwich*, *William Bohun* Earl of *Northampton*, *William Clynton* Earl of *Huntingdon*, *Regnold de Cobham*, *Robert de Bourgcher*, and *John de Carleton*, Doctor of Laws, his Commissioners to Treat of and conclude a Peace (or prorogation of the Truce) and League of perpetual friendship, between him and his Adversary of *France*. But no final Peace could be agreed on, while *Philip de Valois* lived, nor after, till King *John*, his Son and Successor, was taken Prisoner at the Battel of *Poictiers*, only several [c] Truces were made from time to time, and the last consented to in *February an.* 28. *E.* 3. to hold till *Midsummer* following.

b 10 *Mar. Rot. Franc.* 23 *E.* 3. *m.* 7.

c *Froissard Chron. l.* 1. *c.* 154.

While these Truces were on foot, endeavours were made for the Release of *David* King of *Scots*, the Kings Prisoner, and at length it was agreed, that upon the coming into *England* of [d] *John*, the Son and Heir of the Steward of *Scotland*, and several other young Noblemen Hostages for the said King (who when they came, were disposed into the Castles of *York* and *Notingham*) King *David* should be permitted to go into *Scotland*, and upon his return back, the Hostages should be delivered. The Kings * Letters as well of safe conduct to the Hostages, as of power to receive them, and to take King *Davids* Oath for his return, and the Command for his safe Custody at *Newcastle* till the Hostages were come, bear Teste the 5. of *September*, *an.* 25. *E.* 3. to continue unto the *Quindena* of the *Purification* next following, and the 3. of *November* after, were they renued to the Feast of St. *Philip* and *Jacob* ensuing.

d *Rot. Scotiæ* 25 *E.* 3. *m.* 3.

* *Ibid.*

It seems King *David* returned back into *England* about half a year after; for the 28. of *March*, *an.* 26 *E.* 3. a [e] Command was sent to the Sheriff of *Yorkshire* to conduct the Hostages to *Berwick*, to be there *in Quindena Paschæ*, it being the day set for King *David's* return to that Town.

e *Rot. Scotiæ* 26 *E.* 3. *m.* 3.

On the same 5. of *October*, [i] command was sent to *John Coupeland*, Sheriff of *Northumberland*, who had then the Custody of the said King, to deliver him to the Bishops of *Duresm* and *Carlisle*, *William* Earl of *Northampton*, *Henry* de *Percy*, and *Ralph Nevil*, or to any 4, 3, or 2. of them: and likewise another command issued to them, to deliver him upon the conditions, and under the form agreed on.

i *Rot. Scot.* 25 *E.* 3. *m.* 3.

Whilst the foresaid Truce, agreed on in *February an.* 28 *E.* 3. was on foot, the Pope undertook to do what he could, to further the effecting of a Peace, and to that purpose he sent again to both Kings, to obtain their Authority to bring it about; but it doth not appear, that any thing was done before *Midsummer* while it was in being. Nevertheless, we find, that [k] whereas in the Treaty between them held at *Guynes*, among other things, it was agreed, that Ambas-

k 28 *Aug. Rot. Franc.* 28 *E.* 3. *m.* 2.

ſadors from King *Edward* ſhould be ſent to Pope *Innocent* in *Kal. Octob.* following; the King did accordingly impower *William*, Biſhop of *Norwich*, *Henry* Duke of *Lancaſter*, and ſome others, his ſpecial Ambaſſadors, to treat with his Adverſary of *France*, or his Deputies, touching a final Peace betweeu them; but they returned without effecting any thing, all, but the [l] Biſhop of *Norwich*, who died at *Avignion*, and was there buried.

l *Stow*, p. 254.

Towards the latter end of the following Summer, the King having intelligence, that *John* the *French* King was drawing down with an Army towards St. *Omars*, [m] in the beginning of *November* paſſed over to *Calais* with *Lyonel* of *Ulſter*, and *John* of *Gaunt* his two Sons, and a conſiderable Army, where he arrived the 2. day of *November*, and immediately marched againſt him; but upon notice of his approach, *King John* retired, ([n] breaking down all the Bridges behind him) whom King *Edward* followed as far as *Heyden*, and the Country being waſted by the *French*, he, for want of Proviſion for his Army, returned to *Calais*, and thence into *England*.

m *Walſing. ſub an.* 29. *E.* 3.

n *Knighton Hiſt. Angl. Script. Coll.* 2610.

And whilſt in his abſence, the *Scots* had broke out and taken the [o] Town (but not the Caſtle) of *Berwick*, he immediately marched thither, and (13. *January*) recovered the Town, paſſing further into *Scotland*, and on the 25. of the ſame Month, being then at *Roxbrough*, King *Edward Baliol* there made a ſolemn reſignation of his Crown and Kingdom to him by his Letters Patent; after which, he marched with his Army to *Hadington*, burning and waſting the Country on each ſide as he went; and having laid it waſte, returned into *England*, and took *Edward Baliol* along with him.

o *Ibid.*

The King having notice in the precedent year, that *John* the *French* King had given to *Charles* Dauphin of *Vienvois* the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*, [p] conſtituted the Prince of *Wales* his Lieutenant in that Dukedom, and ſent him with an Army thither, where he [q] fought that memorable Battel at *Poictiers*, and took *John* the *French* King Priſoner, whom he brought into *England* in *May* following.

p 10. *July. Rot. Vaſc.* 29. *E.* 3. *m.* 16.

q 19. *Sep.. Claus.* 30. *E.* 3. *m* 3. *Dorſo.*

King *John* was lodged at the *Savoy*, and there continued all the Winter, and in the Spring after was removed, from thence to [w] *Windeſor* Caſtle, where he and his youngeſt Son ſpent their time in Hawking and Hunting, and towards Winter returned to the *Savoy*. And it appears, that the 12. of *December*, [x] *an.* 32. *E.* 3. He was (again ſetled at this Houſe) under the Cuſtody of *Roger Beauchamp*, and ſeveral Knights, Eſquires, and other Attendants, appointed for his Guard.

w *Hollinſh. p.* 390.

x *Rot. Liberatæ* 32. *E.* 3. *m.* 1.

The *French King* had not been long in *England*, ere the Pope ſent hither [y] *Talairand*, Biſhop of *Alba* (commonly called the Cardinal of *Pyergort*) and *Nicholas Prieſt Cardinal*, by the Title of St. *Vital*, to aſſiſt at the Treaty of Peace to be held about *Midſummer*, *an.* 31. *E.* 3. the *Kings* Letters of ſafe conduct for them, and their Train, conſiſting of 200 Horſe, were dated the 3. of *June* that year. The Biſhop of St. *Gean de Maurienne* in *Savoy* came alſo hither to the Treaty, having like Letters for himſelf, and a Train of 30 Horſe, dated the 26. of *May* preceding; and though a final Peace was not concluded, yet ſeveral Trucos were made one upon another, in hopes of it, till *Midſummer an.* 33. *E.* 3.

y *Pat.* 31. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 25.

Before this, there had been [z] great endeavours uſed for the Releaſe of *David* King of *Scots*, the Kings Priſoner, and ſeveral addreſſes made to the King from King [a] *David* himſelf, as alſo the Prelates, Peers, and Commons of *Scotland*, ſeconded by the zealous ſollicitations of [b] *Joan* his Queen, Siſter to King *Edward*. But this affair (though often treated of) came not to an iſſue, till the [c] 3. of *Octob. an.* 31. *E.* 3. when, at a meeting of Commiſſioners on both ſides at *Berwick*, namely [d] *John* Archbiſhop of *York*, *Thomas* Biſhop of *Dureſme*, *Gilbert* Biſhop of *Carliſle*, *Henry de Percy*, *Ranf de Nevile*, *Henry le Scrope*, and *Thomas Muſgrave* deputed by King *Edward* on the one part, and *William* Biſhop of St. *Andrews*, *Thomas* Biſhop of *Catneſs*, *Patrick* Biſhop of *Brethin*, Chancellor of *Scotland*, *Patrick* Earl of *March*, *Robert de Irskin*, and *William de Levington* Knights, Deputies of *Robert Steward* Guardian of *Scotland*, the Prelates, Lords, and Commons of *Scotland* on the other party, it was agreed, * that King *David* ſhould be delivered out of Priſon, and ranſomed for the

z *Rot. Scot.* 25. *E.* 3. *m.* 3. *&* *Rot. Sooc.* 26. *E* 3. *m.* 3.

a *Rot. Scot.* 28. *E.* 3. *m.* 6.

b *Hollinſh. pag.* 391.

c } *Rot. Scot.*
d } 31. *E.* 3. *m.* 2. *dorſo.*

* *Ibid.*

the sum of 100000 Marks Sterling, to be paid by 10000 Marks annually at *Midsummer*, the first payment to begin at *Midsummer* following. It was also agreed, that the Truce should be kept and observed in *England*, *Scotland*, and the Isle of *Man*, until the money was paid, and that *Edward de Baliol*, and all the Kings Allies should be comprised in the said Truce. That for payment of the said sum, King *David* should leave 20 Hostages (who are named in the conditions set down for their delivery) that King *David*, the Peers, Bishops, and Prelates of *Scotland*, should be obliged by writing and oath, for payment of the said Ransom, and observing the Truces: That if there were a failer of payment, they should be also obliged after the foresaid manner, to render the Body of King *David* within three Months after failer, of any term, and he to remain Prisoner till the sum due at the said term were paid; and for the true payment thereof 20 Hostages were to be left in *England*; besides which there were several other conditions agreed upon, that made up the consideration of his Release.

The Truces between *England* and *France* being expired, as aforesaid, without obtaining Peace, and all endeavours of others becoming ineffectual, the [c] two Kings themselves began to confer, and fell at length upon such terms, as it was hoped would produce a Peace; of which an account was sent into *France*, but the *French* determined rather to let their King lye in Prison, than to agree to them: upon notice of which refusal, the King resolved upon a War, and the following Winter to enter *France*, and either make an end of the War, or obtain Peace and honor at his pleasure. And having designed his Expedition, he next provided for the security of the Kingdom in his absence, and [f] issued out Writs to the Sheriffs of the several Counties, to summon both Knights and Burgesses to treat with his Council at *London*, as also with certain Bishops and Earls in other parts of the Kingdom, how that might best be done.

[c] *Froiss. lib. 1. cap. 201.*

[f] *10. & 12. Febr. Rot. Clauf. 34. E. 3. m. 40. dorso.*

He next caused all the [g] *French Prisoners* to be disposed into several safe places: and the *French* King having been secured in the Castle of *Hereford*, under the custody of [h] *Roger de Beauchamp*, was afterwards by the advice of his Council, sent to the Castle of *Somerton* in *Lincolnshire*, on [i] *Monday* the 29. of *July*, and conducted thither by *William Deyncourt*, *William Colvill*, *John Kirketon*, *John Deyncourt*, and *Saier de Rocheford*, with a strong Guard of Horse and Foot. Nevertheless upon the [k] first of *March* following, upon a spreading rumor that the *French* were at Sea, with a design to deliver their *King* from Imprisonment, command was given that *King John* and all the *French* Prisoners should be removed thence to *Berkhampsted*, and *John de Buckingham* Keeper of the Privy-Seal to *Thomas* the *King*'s Son, Custos of *England*, and *Ralph Spigurnell* were appointed to conduct them thither. But it seems *John de Buckingham* went not as was designed, for it appears by a [l] Writ of assistance, directed to all Mayors, &c. That *Thomas de Baddely* was put in his room; nor afterwards was either of them employed in this Service, nor *Berkhampsted*, but *London*, the place whither *King John* was brought, for we have met with a [m] later Writ, whereby *William de Ayremynne*, *John de Busey*, and *Thomas de Meaux* were commanded to be at *Somerton*, on *Friday* the 20. of *March*, to bring the said *King* to *Grantham*, and the like Writs were sent to others, to conduct him from place to place, till he was brought to *London*, to wit, the 21. of *March* to *Stanford*, the 22. to *Higham Ferrars*, the 23. to *Wooburn Abby*, the 24. to *St. Albans*, and the 25. to *London*.

[g] *Froiss. c. 206.*

[h] *Clauf. 33. E. 3. m. 21. dorso.*

[i] *Ib.*

[k] *Pat. 34. E. 3. p. 1. m. 28. & 38.*

[l] *18. Mar. Ib. m. 22. dorso.*

[m] *14. Mar. Clauf. 34. E. 3. m. 38. dorso.*

The King, having raised his Army, [n] first sent over to *Calais Henry* Duke of *Lancaster*, and himself presently followed, taking Shipping at *Sandwich*, in the [o] *Dertmouth* the 28. day of *October*, *inter auroram diei & ortum solis*; with him went the Prince of *Wales*, and his other Sons *Lyonel* and *Edmund*, and many of the Nobility, and landed that Evening at *Calais*, *circa horam Vesperarum*. This Army (then which never before departed from *England*, one greater or more gallant) marched through the very heart of *France*, and laid all waste before it: for the *French*, not daring to encounter the King in all his March, kept themselves within their fortified Towns, and relinquished the Country to the spoil of this Army: and to the end, the Reader may observe the course of this Expedition, we will here set down from *Froissard* the most notable places it passed through.

[n] *Froiss. lib. 1. cap. 205.*

[o] *Clauf. 33. E. 3. m. 9. dorso.*

From *Calais* (on the [p] 4. of *November*) he marched through the Country of *Artois*, by *Arras*, and so to *Beauvois* thence into *Thierach*, and so to *Reims*, to which he laid Seige for 7. weeks, but provision growing scarce thereabouts, he departed towards *Chaalons* in *Champaigne*, and thence towards *Troyes*, *Tonnerre*, *Noirs*, *Mont-royal* and so to *Avallon*, [q] where he stayed from *Ash-Wednesday* to *Midlent*. During this time the young Duke of *Burgoigne* sent some Noblemen to the King, who made a Composition with him to preserve his Country from plundering, for 3. years: after which the King dislodged his Army, and marched towards *Paris*, and sat down within two Leagues of it at *Bourg la Reyne*.

[p] *Hollinsh. p. 392. Froiss. l. 1. c. 209.*

[q] *Ib. c. 210.*

The King of *Sicily* was not the only Astrologer that prognosticated of King *Edward*'s success; but one [r] Fryer *John de Rochtaylade* (as *Froissard* calls him) whom Pope *Innocent* the Sixth kept Prisoner, had foretold many notable things, which about that time came to pass, among others (being demanded an account of the War) he affirmed, that all the misery that had been seen, was not like that to come, and for the wasting of *France*, assigned the years 1356, 1357, 1358, and 1359. which hapned right enough: for so great desolation and devastation was made by the Sword and Famine in those years, that when King *Edward* entred *France an.* 1359. he met with exceeding great scarcity of provision of all kinds, and in all places where he passed.

[r] *Ib. c. 211.*

While the King lay at *Bourg la Reyne*, he sent his Heralds to *Paris*, to demand Battel of the Duke of *Normandy* (eldest Son to King *John*, and then Regent of *France*) to which he would not consent; whereupon the King dislodged, and went to *Munto le herry* (where he arrived on [s] *Tuesday* before *Easter*, being the last of *March*) intending to enter the Country of *Beausse*, and stay part of that Summer in *Britagne*, and about *August* to return, and besiege *Paris*: but the Pope sending into *France*, the Abbot of *Cluygny*, and *Simon de Lengres*, Provincial of the Friars Preachers, with *Hugh de Geneve* Knight, *Seigneur d'Auton*, the Duke of *Normandy* dispatcht them to King *Edward*, to propose a Treaty of Peace, who required things so great, they could not be yielded to. Howbeit they still followed the King to *Chartres*, where a meeting for Commissioners, on both sides, was consented to, and they brought demands to such moderation, that, (with the Duke of *Lancasters* effectual perswasion) the King was content to accept of Peace. But what inclined the King to hearken thereto (as [t] *Froissard* tells the story) was this; That while the Commissioners on both sides were upon Treaty, and the King wholly untractable, there fell in the Kings Army so great a Tempest of Thunder, Lightning, Rain, Hail, and Stones of such bigness, that kill'd both Men and Horses; at which time the King, beholding the Church of our Lady of *Chartres*, vowed devoutly to condescend to Peace. This prodigious storm hapned on *Easter Munday*, which falling that year on the [u] 14. of *April*, neer a Month before the conclusion of the Treaty, was from its dismal effects, called [w] *Black Munday*, which name it retains to this day.

[s] *Holinsh. pag. 393.*

[t] *Ib. l. c. 211.*

[u] *Stow pag. 264.*

[w] *Stow pag. 264.*

The Treaty was managed between [x] *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, and *Charles* Regent of *France*, their Proctors and Agents, in the [y] name of both Kings, these two [z] Princes, and all the Subjects of *France*. Those deputed on the English part, were Sir *Reginald de Cobham*, Sir *Bartholomew Burgherish*, Sir *Francis Hale*, Bannerets, Sir *Miles Stapleton*, Sir *Richard la Vache*, and Sir *Neel Loring*, Knights, and others of the Council of the King of *England*. Those other on the *French* side were the Ellect of *Beauues*, his Chancellor *Charles* Lord *Momorency*, Monsieur *John le Meingre* Marshal of *France*, Monsieur *Aynart de la Tour* Lord of *Vivoy*, Monsieur *Ralph de Ravenal*, Monsieur *Simon de Bucy*, Knights, Monsieur *Stephen de Paris*, and *Peter de la Charite*, his Councillors, with many others of his Council deputed by King *John* and Himself.

[x] *Rot. Cales de Negotiis communibus an. 34 E. 3. m. 6.*

[y] *Rot. Cales de Negotiis communibus an. 34 E. 3. m. 6.*

[z] *Rot. Franc. 34 E. 3. pars unica m. 11. dorf.*

At first a Truce was agreed on (the [a] 7. of *May*, *An. Dom.* 1360. in the 34. year of King *Edward* over *England*) to continue till *Michaelmas* following, and thence till *Michaelmas an.* 35 *E.* 3. which upon the return of the *King* into *England*, was, by Writs bearing Teste the 24. of the same Month, commanded to be

[a] *Rot. Cales de Negot. com. an. præd. m. 6.*

be publiſhed throughout all the Sea-Ports in *England*; and by a like Writ, notice was given to the Duke of *Lancaſter*, to proclaim it in *Gaſcoigne*. And the next day (*viz.* 8. of *May*) were the Articles referring to a final Peace, agreed to on the behalf of both *Kings*.

This was that Famous Treaty of *Renunciation*, of both *Kings*, ſo much ſpoken of by Writers (to which their eldeſt Sons were parties) in regard the *King* of *France* renounced the Soveraignty of ſeveral Territories to King *Edward*; and he in like manner renounced his Title to *France*, and ſome other Places, all which we ſhall here briefly mention.

Firſt it was agreed, [b] that King *Edward* with what he held in *Aquitaine*, and *Gaſcoigne*, ſhould hold perpetually to him and his Heirs, in the ſame manner as the *King* of *France* or his Son, or any of his Anceſtors held the ſame, (to wit, that in Soveraignty, in Soveraignty, and that in Demain, in Demain) the City, Caſtle, and County of [c] *Poytiers*, with the Fees of *Thouars*, and Land of *Belleville*, the Cities and Caſtles of *Xaintes*, *Agen*, *Pierregort*, *Lymoges*, *Caours*, *Tarbe*, *Angoleſme*, and *Rodeis*, and the Land and Countries of *Poyton*, *Xaintonge*, on this and the furtheſt ſide of the River of *Charente*, with the Town and Fortreſs of *Rochell*, *Agenoys*, *Pierreguis*, *Lymoſyn*, *Caorſyn*, *Tarbe*, *Bigorre*, *Gaure*, *Angoleſmoys*, *Rovergue*, the Counties of *Pierregort*, *Bigorre*, *Gaure*, and *Angoleſmoys*. And that ſuch Earls or Lords, as had Lands within the forementioned places, ſhould do their Homages and Services to him.

b *Rot. de Tractatu Pacis Franciæ, an.* 34 *E.* 3. *m.*10.

c The Names of Towns and Countries are here written as in the Record.

That King *Edward* ſhould have in Demain, all that any of his Predeceſſors anciently held in the Town of *Monſtrereul*, on the Sea; As alſo all the County of *Ponthieu* (with ſome few exceptions) the Town and Caſtles of *Calais*, the Towns, Caſtles, and Lordſhips of *Merk*, *Sangate*, *Coloigne*, *Hames*, *Wale*, and *Oye*, with their appurtenances, as likewiſe all the places lying within the Juriſdictions and bounds following; that is to ſay, from *Calais* to the border of the River before *Gravelinges*, and ſo by the ſame River round about *Langle*, and by the River that runneth beyond the *Poil*, and by the ſame River that falleth into the great Lake of *Guynes* to *Freton*, and thence by the valley about *Calculy* Hill, incloſing that Hill, and ſo to the Sea: with *Sangate*, and all the appurtenances, that the King ſhould have the County of *Guynes*, with all the Lands, Towns, Fortreſſes, Places, Men, Homages, Lordſhips, Woods, Foreſts, and Rights thereunto belonging, in as ample manner as the then late Earl of *Guynes*, or his Predeceſſors held the ſame; and likewiſe all the Iſles adjoining to the Lands aforeſaid, and all other Iſles he then held.

That the King of *France*, and his eldeſt Son the Regent, ſhould before *Michaelmas* 1361. give and deliver to the King of *England* his Heirs and Succeſſors, all the Honors, Obediences, Homages, Liegeances, Subjections, Fees, Services, Recognizances, Rights, and all manner of Juriſdictions high and low, Reſorts and Saveguards, Advowſons and Patronages of Churches, and all Lordſhips and Soveraignties, with all the right they had and belonging to them, by any Cauſe, Right, Title, or Colour, or to the Crown of *France*, in the ſaid Cities, Counties, Caſtles, Towns, Lands, Countries, Iſles and Places, and of their appurtenances and appendencies, without holding any thing to them, their Heirs or Succeſſors, or Crown of *France*. And alſo to give notice to all Archbiſhops, Biſhops, and Prelates, and all Earls and other Noblemen, and Citizens, by Letters-Patent in all the ſaid places, to yield obedience to the *King* of *England*, his Heirs and Succeſſors, in the ſame manner as they had obeyed the Kings and Crown of *France*, and thereby alſo to quit and abſolve them of all their Homages, Fealties, Oaths, Obligations, Subjections, and Promiſes made to the Kings and Crown of *France*. And that the *King* of *England*, his Heirs, and Succeſſors, ſhould have and hold all the forementioned Cities, Counties, Caſtles, Lands, Places, and Perſons, perpetually and freely in their Lordſhip, Soveraignty, Obedience, and Subjection, as the Kings of *France* had or did hold them in times paſt, and all the Countries with their appurtenances in all Freedoms and Liberties perpetually, as Lords and Soveraigns, and as Neighbors to the King and Kingdom of *France*, without any acknowledgment of *Soveraign*,

or making any Obedience, Homage, Resort, or Subjection, Service, or Recognisance in time to come, to the Kings or Crowns of *France*, of the Places or Persons aforenamed, or any of them.

The Renunciation on the *King* of *England*'s part, was as to the Name and Right to the Crown and Kingdom of *France*, to the Homage, Soveraignty, and Demain of the Dutchies of *Normandy* and *Thoursine*, of the Earldoms of *Anjou* and *Maine*, to the Soveraignty and Homage of the Dutchy of *Britagne*, and Earldom and Country of *Flanders*, and all other demands that *King Edward* made, or might make to the *King* of *France*, for what cause soever, except such things as by the said Treaty ought to be delivered to him and his Heirs.

It was also agreed, that the *King* of *France* should be brought to *Calais*, within three weeks after *Midsummer* following, and should pay for his Ransom three Millions of Escuts of Gold; two of which should be worth one Noble *English*. And that there should be paid to *King Edward* 600000 Escuts of Gold, within four Months, accounting from the time of the *King* of *France*'s arrival at *Calais*, and within one year ensuing 400000 Escuts more; and from that year, every year following, 400000 Escuts, till the said three Millions were paid. And it after appears in the same Roll, that *King Edward* had received 400000 Escuts (part of the first 600000) the 24. of *October* 1360. and for payment of the other 200000, he gave time till *Christmas* and *Lady-day* following.

Furthermore, that certain of the Nobility of *France* (aswel of those who were made Prisoners at *Poictiers* as others) should remain Hostages in *England* for the *King* of *France*, namely, *Lewis* Earl of *Anjou*, *John* Earl of *Poictiers*, both Sons to *King John*, the Duke of *Orliens* his Brother, the Duke of *Burbon*, the Earl of *Bloys*, or his Brother the Earl of *Alanson*, or the Lord *Peter* of *Alanson* his Brother, the Earls of St. *Pol*, *Harecourt*, *Pontieu*, *Valentynois*, *Brene*, *Vaudemont* and *Forest*, the Viscount *Beaumont*, the Lords of *Coussy*, *Fienles*, *Preaux*, St. *Venaunt*, and *Carenciers*, the Dauphin of *Auvergne*, the Lords of *Hangest* and *Montmorency*, Sir *William* of *Craon*, Sir *Lewis* of *Harecourt*, and Sir *John Ligny*. And the Names of the Prisoners were these, Lord *Philip* of *France*, the Earls of *Eu*, *Longuevil*, *Pontieu*, *Tankarvile*, *Jeigny*, *Sanseurre*, *Dampmartin*, *Ventadour*, *Salebruche*, *D'aucourre*, and *Vendosme*, the Lords of *Craon* and *Derouale*, the Marshal *Dodenham*, and the Lord *Daubyny*.

Besides these, the *King* of *France* was obliged to deliver at *Calais*, within three Months after he departed thence, in further pledge for the accomplishment of this Treaty, four Persons of *Paris*, two of each of the Towns here named, to wit, St. *Omer*, *Aras*, *Amyens*, *Beauves*, *Lisle*, *Douay*, *Tournay*, *Reyms*, *Chaalons*, *Troies*, *Chartres*, *Thoulouse*, *Lyons*, *Orliens*, *Compeigne*, *Rouen*, *Caen*, *Tours*, and *Bourges*, and these to be of the most sufficient and best Burgesses of these Towns.

d *Rot. de Tract. Pacis Fr.* 34. *E.* 3. *m.* 9.

It was moreover agreed, [d] That the *King* of *France*, and his Heirs *Kings* of *France*, should quit the Allianees they had with the *Scots*, and never give to that *King*, Kingdom, or Subjects, present or to come, any aid or assistance against the *King* of *England*, his Heirs or Successors, his Realm or Subjects, nor make any allianee with the *Scots*, in time to come, against the King and Realm of *England*. And the like Artiele was agreed to by the *King* of *England*, in reference to his Allianee with the *Flemmings*.

There were divers other particulars agreed to, on the behalf of both *Kings*, and set down in this Treaty of Peace, which we (designing brevity) do omit; but these are the main and prineipal to our present purpose.

e *Rot. Claus.* 34. *E.* 3. *m.* 30. *dorsi.*

All things thus finished, King *Edward* immediately left *France*, and [e] landed at *Rye* the 18. of *May* following in the Evening, and thence the next day eame to *Westminster*. And shortly a Writ [f] issued to Sir *John Beauchamp* then Constable of *Dover*, forthwith to arrest and fit up a sufficient number of Ships, to carry over *King John* and his Family to *Calais* within the time agreed on, and whither he was conducted the [g] 8. of *July* after.

f 17. *Junii Rot. Franc.* 34. *E.* 3. *m.* 6.

g *Hollinshed, pag.* 394.

The [h] 9. of *October* King *Edward* followed, where the foresaid Treaty, with some few alterations, was there ratified and confirmed by Oath of both *Kings*, and

h

and several Instruments relating to the full accomplishment of the several Articles thereof, were drawn up and sealed, with the Great Seals of both Kings; all bearing date at *Calais* the 24. day of *October*, *an. Dom.* 1360.

Here also were the *Renunciations*, on either side both [i] absolute and [k] conditional, to all the Towns, Castles, Countries, *&c.* to the Resort and Soveraignty, *&c.* comprehended in the Articles of Peace, drawn up, sworn to, and sealed, at the same time, but not exchanged; because the King of *France* was as yet in *Calais*, and Prisoner to King *Edward*, and the Towns, *&c.* not as yet delivered. But it was then nevertheless agreed and promised, that they should be surrendred to the special Deputies on both sides, by *Midsummer* following, if it might be; and the *Renunciations* sent at the *Assumption of our Lady* next ensuing, to the Church of the *Augustine* Fryars at *Bruges*, to be delivered to those Deputed to receive them. Or if they were not surrendred till *Alhollantide* after, then the *Renunciations* were to be delivered in the said Church, on St. *Andrews* day following, at which time and place, both Kings engaged to send thither, and cause to be delivered to the Deputies on both sides, theirs, and their eldest Sons *Renunciations* likewise; but if they were not accordingly mutually delivered, then not any thing agreed on was to take effect.

i *Rot. de Tract. Pacis Fran.* 34. *E.* 3. *m.* 8.
k *Ibid. m.* 7.

But it seems, things were not made ready against *Midsummer*, the first of the appointed times for compleating these matters, for the 15. of *November* following, King *Edward* [l] constituted Sir *Thomas Vnedale* Knight, and *Thomas de Dunclent*, Licenciate in the Laws, his Agents (whom he sent to *Bruges*) with power to make request to the King of *France*, for the effectual accomplishment of all things concluded on as aforesaid, and to require that He and his Son should make the *Renunciations* and *Transports*, according to all the foresaid Agreements made at *Calais*, and upon receeption of which, he was thereby enabled to give Acquittance in King *Edwards* name. But there was another Instrument dated at *Calais* the said 24. of *Oct.* 1360. whereby

l *Rot. Franc.* 35. *E.* 3. *m.* 3.

[m] King *Edward* was obliged to deliver up to the *French* King on this side *Candlemas*, *an.* 35. *E.* 3. the Castles and Fortresses, which he held in other parts of *France*, than in those, surrendred to him by the *French* King, *viz.* (as they are written in the Record.)

In *Champaigne*, and in *Brie*.

Bursint and *Joinville* upon the *Marn*, *Bourt* in *Champaigne*, *Ochie*, *Sye* upon the *Seine*, the *Mote de Triesfreine*, *Brugelemens*, and all other Fortresses taken in these Countries.

In *Nivernois*.

Cornallour, *Gueillons*, *Anlesy*, *Villers*, and *Mont Epny*.

In *Anceurrois*, and *Burgoigne*.

Regennes, *Legny*, *Malecorne*, and the *Mote de Chauloye*.

In *Aurelenoys* and *Gastinoys*.

The New Castle upon *Loire* and *Moreau au Boys*, and all other Fortresses in *Orlenois*, in *Gastinois*, in *Messien*, in *Beause*, and in *Wenguesin le Francois*.

m *Rot. præd. de Tract. Pacis Franc. m.* 5.

Within a month following, the County of *Ponthieu* was to be surrendred to King *Edward*, or else Hostages.

King *Edward* was also to deliver up the New Castle in *Tynerois*, *Beaumont*, *le Choistlif*, *Nogent*, *le Rotron*, and the *Ferte de Ville Nevill*, and all other Fortresses in *France*, and in the Country of *Perche*, and of *Chartain*, and of *Drouais*.

And then all the County of *Montfort* to be surrendred to *King Edward*, within a Month after. Or otherwise Hostages.

In *Berry* and *Bourbonoys*.

The Fortresses of *Brisansoys*, of St. *Torote le Priague*, also *Chabries*, *Espunell*, *Beamen*,

Beamein, Briance Masbres, the Abbey of *Diverlaks, Thos, Eruyll, Ameron, Vierson, Mausey, Bourseront*, the *Roche Tnay, Blotueres, Villers, Montempny, Beaunoirs, Beau, Jen, Voderon.*

In *Tourrayne.*

Liste, Bouchart, the *Roche* of *Fowsey, Piry, Milieres, Roulet, Viergu. Veres de Desrubay* the *Pleyssers Dinone, Langere, Osem, Palnau*, and all other Fortresses in the party of *Auvergne*, of *Bourbonoys, d'Amascon*, of *Lyon*, of *Berry*, and of *Touraine.*

And within a Month after, the *French King* was to deliver up the Country of *Angoulesmois*; or Hostages.

In *Normandy, Anjou*, and *Mayne.*

The Fortresses *de Donesfront* in *Passis, Neuim, Mirebel* upon the *Loyre*, the *Toures de Villers, Saintwast*, the *Brois Demaine, Conde* upon *Noire*, and another Fortress thereby called *Messe, Tynchebray Annillers*, the new *Boure*, the *Ferte fresnel*, the *Roche Doryvall*, the *Morle Racul*, the Tower of St. *Christopher, Villerais Husron, Honnesfleth, Trisenay*, the Vicount of *Flessoys, Turet la Rouche, dire le Port, Joulein, la Flesche, Willie, Viez, Passavant, Roussailes.*

And within one Month, the *French King* was to surrender *Santes*, and the County of *Santoigne*; or Hostages.

And all the Fortresses in *Pierregort, Coursin*, and *Agenoys.*

For the surrender of all which, the King made forth Commissions to several persons, bearing date as aforesaid at *Calais.*

n *Ibid. m. 6.* The two Kings then also made a [n] League for them, their Heirs, and Successors, of perpetual friendship, and alliance, to become faithful friends, to assist each other, against all persons whatsoever, except the Pope and the Emperor; and moreover made a solemn Renunciation to all Wars against each other, their Heirs, and Successors, Realms, and Subjects; to both which League and Renunciation, their eldest, and other Sons signed, and divers of the Nobility on both sides were sworn.

A *Proclamation* then also issued from King *Edward*, directed to *Thomas Holland*, Earl of *Kent*, and all other Captains of Towns, *&c.* held for the King in *France*, to give notice (to all places within their Command) of this Peace and final accord made as aforesaid.

All things relating to this Peace being thus concluded, and the *French* Hostages arrived at *Calais*, King *Edward* entertained King *John* at a great Supper in the Castle, where the Kings Sons, the Duke of *Lancaster*, and other of the chief Nobility of *England*, served the Kings bare-headed; and when Supper was ended, both Kings took leave of each other. The [o] next morning King *John*, and his Attendants, went a foot on pilgrimage to our Lady of *Bouloigne*, the Prince of *Wales* and his Brothers accompanied him thither, where, in the Church of our Lady, they all made their Offerings, and thence went to the Abby, and having taken leave of King *John*, they returned to *Calais* the next day: Soon after, King *Edward*, the Prince, and *French* Hostages took shipping for *England*, where they arrived on the Eve of the Feast of *All-Saints.*

o *Ibid. m. 3.*

The Peace thus setled, endured all the life of King *John*, who took all possible care to have it entirely preserved, and himself ever after kept good correspondence with King *Edward*, to whom he gave all evidence of affection and love; insomuch, that about the end of the year 1363. he came into *England* [p] only upon a visit to King *Edward.* After his landing, he rode first to *Eltham*, and there dined with the *King* ([q] 24. *Jan.* 37. *E.* 3.) and thence that afternoon to the *Savoy* in the *Strand*, where he lodged, and was entertained with all possible kindness; but about the [r] beginning of *March* following he fell sick, and dyed the 8. of *April*,

p *Bakers Chro.*

q *Hollinshed.*

r *Ibid. pag. 396.*

April, *an*. 38. *E*. 3. for whose death the *King* [f] appointed solemn obsequies in divers places, and conducted his Body out of *England* with a Royal magnificence.

About these times, the Reputation of the *King* grew so great, that several foreign *Kings* and *Princes* came hither to his Court, either to visit him, or congratulate his Victories, or to obtain his assistance and relief: and these were the foresaid *King John*, *Peter King* of *Cyprus*, and *David King* of *Scots*, [t] *an*. 37. *E*. 3. as also [u] *Wuldemer King* of *Denmark*, and *Albert* Duke of *Bavaria*, his Letters of safe Conduct being dated the [w] 6. of *Dec*. and to continue in force till *Midsummer* after.

But *Charles* King *Johns* Son, and Successor (who had sworn to, and sealed the Treaty at *Chartres*) was soon perswaded to violate the Peace, though with great artifice he dissembled his intentions for some time. For though he readily gave ear to the Complaints of some of the discontented [x] Nobility of *Gascoigne*, who, quitting their Homage to the Prince, fled to *Paris*, and complained to him as their Supreme Lord of the *Fouage* imposed on that Country by the *Prince*, pretending that King *John* had not power to release them of their Homage to the Crown of *France*, or deliver over their Country to the *King* of *England*: Yet he forbore laying hold on this occasion, at least for one year after their complaint. But then, all of a sudden, King *Edward*, not suspecting any fraud, but thinking himself sufficiently secured by the Treaty of Peace made at *Britagne*, the *French* King sent him a defiance, and by the time it was thought to be delivered, [y] *Guy* Earl of St. *Paul*, one of the *French* Hostages (who [z] had slipt out of the Kingdom, without taking leave, as had also the Duke of *Anjou*, and some others of them) and Sir *Hugh de Castilion*, entred *Ponthieu* with an Army, and were received into *Abeville*, afterwards took St. *Valery* and *Crotoy*, and immediately all *Ponthieu* revolted.

Hereupon the *King* assembled a [a] Parliament at *Westminster*, and about the [b] end of *May*, the Lords and Commons declared, [c] That whereas the *French* King had broke the foresaid Peace (in not delivering the Countries, nor paying the monies agreed on there) and had usurped the Resort and Superiority, which ought to appertain to the King of *England* and his Heirs, in the Lands surrendred to him by the foresaid agreement, by summoning the Prince and some of the Nobility of the *Kings* Allies, to answer certain Appeals at *Paris*, and surprised and taken divers Castles, *&c*. in *Ponthieu* and *Gascoigne*, and was setting forth a Fleet to invade *England*, contrary to his Oath and the form of the Peace; therefore with their whole consent it was agreed, That the *King* should resume the name of *King* of *England* and *France*, as he had done before the Peace, and for the future so call himself in his Letters, and under his Seals. Hereupon on *Monday* (being St. *Barnaby*'s day) there were several new Seals provided, in one of which was inscribed *Edwardus Rex Angliæ & Franciæ*, &c. and in another *Edwardus Rex Franciæ & Angliæ*, &c.

Shortly after, he [d] sent an Army under the Command of the Earls of *Cambridge* and *Penbroke* into *Aquitain*, who landing in *Bretagne*, past through that Country to *Angoulesme*, where the *Prince* lay with 3000 men, and entred the Country of *Piergort*, and over-ran it. He sent also a Letter to the [e] Nobility of *Gascoigne*, wherein he acquainted them with the reasons why he re-assumed the Name and Title to the Kingdom of *France*, as he used it before the Treaty of Peace to which he condescended, not without a manifest diminution of his right.

[f] *John*, Duke of *Lancaster*, and several others of the *English* Nobility, were sent with another Army into *France* about *Midsummer*, who landed at *Calais*, of which the *French* King receiving advertisement, called back his Forces designed for the Sea to invade *England* (to meet with whom, as also to secure [g] *Southampton*, the Isle of *Wight*, and *Garnsey*, King *Edward* had set forth a considerable Fleet) and sent them under the Command of the Duke of *Burgoigne*, to oppose the Duke of *Lancaster*: but upon report of the [h] Earl of *Warwick*'s coming by Sea, to the Duke of *Lancaster*'s assistance, the *French* withdrew.

The following year, the [i] *French* King raised two Armies, and sent them into *Aquitaine*, one under the Command of the Duke of *Anjou*, to enter *Guyen*, by

f *Ex vetusto Cod. de Episc. & Priorib. Dunelm. Ecclesiæ.*
t *Hollinsh. loco cit.*
u *Pat.* 38. *E*. 3. *p*. 1. *m*. 37.
w *Pat.* 39. *E*. 3. *p*. 2. *m*. 7.
x Earls of Armaignaco and Comminges and Visc. Cormain. *Baker.*
y *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 247.
z *Hollinshed, pag.* 401.
a *Claus.* 43. *E*. 3. *m*. 18. *dorso.*
b *Walsingham.*
c *Rot. Parl. de eod. an. n.* 2.
d *An.* 43. *E*. 3. *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 249.
e *Rot. Vasc.* 43. *E*. 3. *m*. 2.
f *Walsingh. sub an.* 43. *E*. 3.
g *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 247.
h *Hollinsh. pag.* 404.
i *Ib. cap.* 275.

Reol and *Bergerac*, and the other under the Duke of *Berry*, to enter that Country by *Lymoges* and *Quercy*, and both Armies to meet at *Angoulisme*, to besiege the *Prince*, then in those parts.

k *Ib. c.* 277. k King *Edward*, considering the unsetledness of these Countries, raised likewise two Armies; That for *Aquitaine* was Commanded by the Duke of *Lancaster*, of which we shall make further mention, when we speak of the *Prince* and the other designed for *Picardie*, by Sir *Robert Knowles*. In relation to which latter expedition, l Proclamation was sent forth, That all Souldiers designed for *Normandy* and other parts of *France*, under Sir *Robert*'s Command (being m constituted the Kings Lieutenant in those parts of *France*) should be at *Southampton*, in the Octaves of St. *John Baptist* following, ready fitted to take Shipping there with him.

l 6. *May, Claus.* 44 *E.* 3. *m.* 15. *dorso.*
m *Rot. Franc.* 44 *E.* 3. *m.* 14.

Nor was the King slack in strengthning himself by Allies from abroad, and therefore n Sir *John atte Wode*, and Mr. *Robert de Wykford* Archdeacon of *Winchester*, and Doctor of Laws, were sent beyond Sea, having power to treat with *Wenceslaus* Duke *Brabant* and *Lorraine*, Marquess of the Empire, about furnishing the King with Men and Arms, to serve him in these Wars. He also secured the back Door, to wit, *Scotland*, by a o Treaty of Peace for 9. years, in which nevertheless the *Scots* were at liberty to serve either *English* or *French*, without breaking the Peace, and lastly p confirmed the Treaty with the Earl of *Flanders* and the Towns of *Gaunt*, *Bruges*, and *Ipres*.

n 18. *May. Pat.* 44 *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 8.
o *Froiss. l.* 1. *c.* 278.
p 4. *Aug. Pat.* 44 *E.* 3. *p.* 3. *m.* 1.

Sir *Robert Knowles* with q 12000. Men being landed at *Calais*, and resting there 7. days, forthwith took the Field, and, marching through the Country of r *Guynes*, and *Fauconbridge*, came to *Turwin*, and thence into *Artois*, drawing near *Arras*, and so to *Vermandois*, wasting the Country all the way he went. He thence marched to the City of s *Noyen*, and into *Champaigne*, and turned to *Bry* and so on the t 24. of *September*, to *Paris*; before which he stayed a day and two Nights. After this, u (Sir *Bertrand de Guesclin*, having defeated a stragling party of his) he marched to *Dorvel Castle* in *Bretagne*: This Army, w so long as it submitted to their General prospered, but towards Winter, some of them growing disobedient, and slighting his Commands, became a prey to the *French*, whilst his policy and prudence preserved those safe who stuck to him, in his march into *Bretagne*.

q *Holinshed p.* 405.
r *Froiss. l.* 1. *c.* 278.
s *Ib. c.* 281.
t *Holinshed. p.* 405.
u *Froiss. c.* 285.
w *Walsingham sub an.* 44 *E.* 3.

This year the x *Flemmings* set upon part of the Kings Navy, under the Command of Sir *Guy de Bryen* at *la Bay* in *Bretagne*, but he got the Victory, and took 25. of their Ships with their Captain Sir *John Peterson*, and many other Prisoners, whom he brought with him into *England*; which caused the *King* y to set forth a Navy against the *Flemmings*, but the Towns of *Bruges*, *Ipres*, and *Gaunt*, hearing of his preparations made such applications to the *King*, that they obtained Peace.

x *Froiss. l.* 1. *c.* 292. but *Walsingham* placeth this Action to *an.* 46. *E.* 3.
y *Ib. c.* 293.

The Fortune of the War in *Aquitaine* at this time standing fair on the *English* side, the following Winter the *King* designed z two fresh Armies to enter *France*, yet indeavoured before (upon the *Popes* request, both by Letters and Messages) to lay hold of an honourable Peace, to which end a power was given, to treat thereon, to *Simon* Bishop of *London*, *Guy de Bryene*, *Roger de Beauchamp*, Bannerets, Sir *Arnold Savage* Knight, *John Appleby* Dean of *London*, and *John de Branketre* Treasurer of *York*; and the b next day he granted Letters of safe conduct for the Ambassadors of *France* to come and treat about that Affair. One of the foresaid Armies were designed for the defence of c *Aquitaine*, and the other to land at *Calais*, whence the Duke of *Lancaster* and Earl of *Cambridge* were appointed to enter *France* by the Plains of *Picardy*. But *John* Earl of *Penbroke* (d constituted the *Kings* Lieutenant in *Aquitaine*) was ordered to go into *Poictou*, and, in pursuance of that design, took Sea and arrived at *Rochell*, the 22. of *June*, 1372. where he found the e *Spanish* Fleet, who fought him two days, and at last took him Prisoner, the f *Rochellers* having refused to assist him: and in that ingagement the Ship, which carried a g great Treasure to pay the *English* Army, was unfortunately sunk.

z *Ib. c.* 296.
a 19 *Febr. Rot. Franc.* 46 *E.* 3. *m.* 47.
b *Ib. m.* 48.
c *Froiss. loco cit.*
d *Rot. Vasc.* 46 *E.* 3. *m.* 4.
e *Froiss. c.* 297.
f *Ib. c.* 298.
g *Ib. c.* 299.

The *King* designing also the relief of *Thonars*, raised an Army of 3000. Men of

of Arms, and 1000. Archers, and with the *Prince* took Shipping at *Sandwich*, on [h] *Monday* the 30. of *August*, about nine a Clock, in a Ship called the *Grace de Dieu*, directions having been given for making publick Prayers in all Churches for good success in this Voyage; and so sailing towards *Rochell*, the [i] Winds and Tempests kept him at Sea 9. Weeks, and when he saw he could not arrive in *France* by *Michaelmas*, being the time limitted for relief, or otherwise surrender of the Town (he returned to *England*, and had the Wind at will. The consequence of this improsperous Voyage (with the miscarriage of the Earl of *Penbroke*) was the loss of all the Country of *Poictou*, *Xantoigne*, and *Rochell*.

After these misfortunes, a Treaty of Peace was again set on foot, and [k] *Simon* Bishop of *London*, *Edmond* Earl of *March*, *Richard de Stafford*, *Roger de Beauchamp*, *Rauf de Ferrieres* Bannerets, *Simon de Molton* Doctor of Law, and *John de Branketre* Treasurer of *York*, were constituted the *Kings* Commissioners for the management of this Affair; and [l] Letters of safe conduct granted (the same day) to the Cardinal of *Beauvez* (and other Agents from *France*) who with the Cardinal of *Canterbury* were by the *Pope* commissionated to be the chief managers of this Treaty.

The Duke of *Lancaster* ([m] publick Prayers having been made also for his good success) arrived at *Calais* (in [n] *July an.* 47. *E.* 3.) with 3000 men of Arms, and 10000 Archers, which he divided into three Battels, and marched by Land through *France* to *Bourdeux*, and there he arrived about *Christmas*; in which Voyage, though the *French* durst not fight him, and all the way avoided the hazard of a Battel, yet through the scarcity of Victuals many dyed, not to mention the loss of [o] 30000 Horse. About the beginning of the following Summer, at the [p] *Pope*'s instance, a Truce was made by this Duke and the Duke of *Anjou*, to continue till the last of *August*; wherein it was agreed, that in the beginning of [q] *september* there should meet in *Picardy*, on the *English* part, the Duke of *Lancaster* and other Commissioners, to treat of Peace with the Duke of *Anjou*, and others on the *French* part, where also the Popes Legate should appear as Mediatour; and in pursuance thereof the Duke of *Lancaster* took Shipping the 8. of *July*, *an.* 48 *E.* 3. after whose departure [r] all *Poictou* and *Aquitaine* fell from their Allegiance, except *Bourdeux* and *Bajon*.

In this year the Earl of *Cambridge*, and the Duke of *Bretagne* were [s] constituted the Kings Lieutenants in *France*, after which, [t] Commands were sent forth to arrest Ships for their passage thither, to be at *Dertmouth* and *Plimouth* with all speed. But notwithstanding these preparations, yet they went not till the following [u] Spring, having then in their retinue many of the *English* Nobility, and for whose good success [w] publick Prayers were appointed to be made. In this Expedition the [x] Duke recovered many of his Towns; but being [y] included in the Truce made by the Duke of *Lancaster*, he was thereby obliged to lay down his Arms.

For upon the mediation of the Bishops of *Roan* and *Carpentras*, the *Pope*'s Nuncios, there had been a [z] Treaty set on Foot at *Bruges* in *Flanders* this Year, managed chiefly by *John* Duke of *Lancaster*, who, with [a] *Simon* Bishop of *London*, *William* Earl of *Salisbury*, Sir *John Cobham*, Sir *Franke de Halé*, Sir *Arnold Savage*, Mr. *John de Shepeye*, and Mr. *Simon de Molton*, were [b] commissionated to carry on that Affair on King *Edwards* part; and by *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*, on the behalf of his Brother *Charles* the *French King*: which though it brought not forth a compleat Peace, yet in effect it put an end to the present War, for [c] it produced a Truce, to hold for a year, *viz.* to the last of *June*, *an.* 50 *E.* 3. to give notice of which to the English Subjects, a Proclamation was [d] set forth. And [e] a quarter of a year before its expiration, at another meeting at the same place, this Truce was inlarged to the first of *April*, *an.* 51 *E.* 3. and thereupon another [f] Proclamation issued to make it known. But it appears that the *French* were gotten to Sea, [g] sometime before the expiration of this latter Truce, and had done much hurt upon the Sea-Coasts.

Of this design of their's the King had timely intelligence, and therefore he

h *Claus.* 46 *E.* 3. *m.* 12. *dorso.*
i *Froiss. c.* 305. *Walsing. p.* 183.
k 8. *of Jan. Rot. Franc.* 46 *E.* 3. *m.* 2.
l *Ibid. m.* 5.
m 16. *June Claus.* 47 *E.* 3. *m.* 25. *dorso.*
n *Holinsh. pag.* 408.
o *Walsingh. p.* 183.
p *Holinsh. loco cit.*
q *Ibid. p.* 409.
r *Walsingh. sub an.* 48 *E.* 3.
s *Rot. Franc.* 48 *E.* 3. *m.* 6.
t 18 *Nov. m.* 7.
u *Claus.* 49 *E.* 3. *m.* 46.
w 8. *May Ibid. m.* 36. *dorso.*
x *Froiss. l.* 1. *c.* 313.
y *Walsingham sub eod. an.*
z *Rot. Franc.* 49 *E.* 3. *m.* 2. *&* 16.
a *Ibid. m.* 24.
b 20 *Feb. Ib.*
c 27. *June Ib. m.* 16.
d 15. *July. Claus.* 49. *E.* 3. *m.* 20. *dorso.*
e 12. *March Rot. Franc.* 50 *E.* 3. *m.* 16. *&* 21.
f 7. *Aug. Claus.* 50 *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 3. *dorso. Vide Rot. Vasc. de eod. an. m.* 8. *& Rot. Franc. m.* 10.
g *Claus.* 51 *E.* 3. *m.* 16.

h 20. *Febr. Rot. Franc.* 51 *E.* 3. *m.* 7.

endeavoured to enlarge the Truce, to which end he [h] empowred *John* Bishop of *Hereford*, Sir *John de Cobham* of *Kent*, *John Monteacute* Bannerets, and *John Shepeye* Doctor of the Laws, to Treat with the Earl of *Salebruch*, Monsieur *Chatillon*, and *Philebert le Spoit*, where the *Pope*'s Legats were also present as Mediators. But nothing was done thereupon; only the [i] Legate proposed a Marriage between *Richard* Prince of *Wales*, and the Lady *Mary* Daughter to the *French King*; which begot a private meeting shortly after at *Montrevile* by the Sea, and there Sir *Richard Dangle*, Sir *Richard Stan*, and Sir *Geoffry Chaucer*, Commissioners for King *Edward*, with the Lord *Coucy*, and other Commissioners for the *French* King, spent the time chiefly to sound one anothers intentions, and so departed without any other effect, saving that of Proroguing the Truce to *May* day following.

i *Holinsh. pag.* 411.

k *Rot. Franc.* 51 *E.* 3. *m.* 3.

The [k] 26. of *April*, another Commission was made for the same purpose, to *Adam* Bishop of St. *Davids*, *John* Bishop of *Hereford*, *William* Earl of *Salisbury*, *Robert de Ashton* the Kings Chamberlain, *Guichard Dangle* Banneret, *Aubrey de Vere*, *Hugh de Segrave* Knights, *Walter Skirlow* Dean of St. *Martins le Grand*, and the foresaid *John Shepeye*, which gave them power to treat and compose all differences, Wars, and contentions. They thereupon came to *Calais*, and the Lord *Coucy*, and Sir *William Dormer* Chancellor of *France* came to *Montrevile*; but by reason of the suspicion the Commissioners had of each other, they could not agree of an indifferent place to meet at, and so the time limitted by the Truce spinning on, absolutely expired. And in this posture the Affairs relating to *France* stood (to wit in open hostility) till the Death of King *Edward*.

l *Holinshed Isco cit.*

Thus we see, that from the breach of the Treaty, and Entry upon King *Edwards* Territories, to the time of his Death, he all along steered against the Tide of adverse Fortune, and what with Invasions, Revolts, and disastrous accidents (though no pitch'd Battel was fought) nothing of his great Conquests remained to him, but only *Calais*, and the small Territory adjoining.

But of the strange unsuccessfulness of these subsequent years, there might be three main causes: First, the loss of so many stout and well disciplin'd Souldiers, as, upon their disbanding after the Peace made near *Chartres*, joyned themselves to the [m] *Companions*, and marcht into *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Germany* (to which number may be added those who perished in the Princes expedition into *Spain*, of whom scaree the [n] fifth man returned) a sort of people so inur'd to War, and such as had gained so great experience therein, that the very Common Souldiers among them were men of good conduct. The *French* King knew well enough, how much King *Edwards* power was weakned, through the want of those men, and that, as to such as might be raised a-new (few of them having been trained up in the former Wars) he thought he might the better deal with them, in regard that many of his own disbanded Souldiers, were still within his Kingdom, and lay ready at his service.

m *Le grand Compaignie.*

n *Knighton Hist. Angl. Script. Coll.* 2629.

A second cause might be, that the *King* declining in years, and the Prince of *Wales* growing daily worse and worse of a lingering sickness, without hope of Recovery, the *French* King took the more heart, and began now not to fear, either them or their Fortunes, which before had proved so terrible to *France*. And therefore he supposed if he could make a shift but to keep his Forces on Foot, against their declining power, he might deal well enough with those who should succeed them: none of King *Edwards* other Sons, having given such proof of their success in martial affairs as to be feared by him, and much less was any such thing to be expected, when an Infant *King* was likely to succeed.

Lastly, His supplies of Money from his *Subjects*, who before had freely enough opened their Purses to carry on the War, began to fail him: For being tyred out, with the prosecution of it, they complained of Poverty; and thence it came, that the Forces raised to recover what was lost, were inconsiderable, in comparison of the former Royal Armies levied for his own and the Princes expeditions.

During

During the Minority of this *King*, there were several Matches proposed for him, though none took, but the last: and first, his Father designed to marry him to the Lady [o] *Margaret*, Daughter of *William* Earl of *Hanow*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, and Lord of *Frisia*; who, being in the third degree of Consanguinity, a Letter was dispatched to the *Pope*, dated the 10. of *December*, in the 12. year of his Fathers Reign, for obtaining his Dispensation, because of their nearness of blood. His Wife.

o *Rot. Romæ* 12. 13. & 14. *E.* 2. *m.* 10.

Secondly, with the Lady [p] *Sibilla*, Daughter to *Robert* Earl of *Hanow* and *Zeland*, Lord of *Frisia*, as appears from a like Letter to the *Pope*, dated the 2. of *November* in the following year.

p *Ibid. m.* 7.

Thirdly, with the [q] Daughter of *James*, King of *Arragon*, for which affair were commissionated *Alexander* Archbishop of *Dublin*, *Edmund* Earl of *Kent*, King *Edward* the Second's Brother, and *William de Weston* Canon of *Lincoln*, Doctor of Laws: the Commission bore Teste the 30. of *March*, *an.* 17. *E.* 2. It appears by the *Kings* [r] Letters of the 16. of *February* following, that her name was *Jolant*, and King *James* her Father stiled, [s] *Rex Aragoniæ*, *Valenciæ*, *Corsicæ*, *Comes Barch. & Sanctæ Rom. Ecclesiæ Vexillarius*, *Admirallus & Capitaneus Generalis*, to whom the *King* then also sent Sir *Edmund Bacon*, Sir *Robert Thorpe*, Mr. *John Heldesley* Canon of *Chester*, to proceed further in this matter.

q *Rot. Vasc.* 17. *E* 2. *m.* 5. *n.* 9.

r *Pat.* 18. *E.* 2. *p.* 1. *m.* 19.

s *Claus.* 18. *E.* 2. *m.* 12. *dorso.*

Fourthly, with the Lady *Alonar*, Sister to *Alphonsus* King of *Spain*, to which purpose, [t] *John Stoner*, *William de Berne*, Lord of *Lescunne*, *William de Weston*, Canon of *Lincolne*, and *Peter de Galicano*, Canon of *Roan*, were impowered by a Commission dated the 6. of *April an.* 18. *E.* 2. as also to treat and conclude a marriage between the said *King Alphonsus*, and *Elianor* King *Edward*'s Sister.

t *Pat.* 18. *E.* 2. *p.* 2. *m.* 22.

Besides these, the *King* of *Portugal* sent Ambassadors over hither, to propose a marriage between this Prince and his Daughter, to whom the *King* by Letter, dated the [u] 15. of *April an.* 19. *E.* 2. directed thus, *Magnifico Principi, Domino Alfonso Dei gratiâ Portugaliæ & Algarbiæ Regi illustri, amico suo charissimo*, acquainting him with the Treaty of marriage begun, between his Son and the *King* of *Spain*'s Sister, and that because of neerness of blood, he had dispatcht a Letter to the *Pope* for his Dispensation; that he had received no account as then, of the issue of that Affair; that his Son was gone into *France*, to do Homage for the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*, during all which, it was not fit for him to begin any new Treaty: but if that succeeded not, he would then confer with his Ambassador in this particular.

u *Claus.* 19. *E.* 2. *m.* 9. *dorso.*

But last of all, in the following year, the Queen and Duke having left *France*, went to the Earl of *Henault*'s Court, where a Contract past between him, and one of the Earls Daughters, and, not long after his Coronation, the marriage was consummate; in reference to which, *R.* Bishop of *Coventry* and *Lichfield*, was [w] constituted the *King*'s Ambassador, to contract either espousals or marriage in the *King*'s Name, with *Philippa* that Earls Daughter, who forthwith took his Journey to *Valenciens*, and (the Popes Dispensation being gained) she was there married to King *Edward* by *Proxie*.

w 8. *Ob. Pat.* 1. *E.* 3. *p.* 3. *m.* 15.

By this Lady he was Father to 7 Sons, all (except two that dyed young) men of great renown in that Age; namely, *Edward* Prince of *Wales* and *Guyenne*, signally famous all over *Europe*, and commonly called the *Black Prince*; *William* of *Hatfield*, *Lyonell* of *Antwerp*, Duke of *Clarence* and Earl of *Ulster*, *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster* and *Aquitaine*, King of *Castile* and *Leon*, *Edmund* of *Langley*, Earl of *Cambridge*, and Duke of *York*, *William* of *Windesor*, and *Thomas* of *Woodstock*, Earl of *Buckingham* and Duke of *Gloucester*. His Daughters were five, *Isabell* Wife to *Ingelram de Coucy*, Earl of *Bedford*; *Joan* married by Proxie to *Peter*, eldest Son to *Alphonsus* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, but died in her journey thither; *Blanch* died young, *Mary* Wife to *John Montford*, Duke of *Britagne*, and *Margaret* Wife to *John de Hastings*, Earl of *Penbroke*. Besides these, he had a natural Son named [x] *Nicholas*, who was Abbot of *Westminster*, and lies buried in *Westminster*, before the Altar of St. *Blase*. Children.

x *Cod. MS. Miscel. R. Glover. Somerset. fol* 134.

His [y] Queen fell sick at *Windesor* Castle, and there dyed before him, *viz.* [z] on the day of the *Assumption of our blessed Lady*, *an.* 43. *E.* 3. whose Exequies and Interment

y *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 267.

z *Walsingham*, *pag.* 179.

Interment he caused to be solemnized with great magnificence.

and Death. * *Ib. pag.* 189.

He himself dyed the * 21. of *June*, at his Mannor of *Shene* in *Surrey*, after he had reigned 50 years 4 Months and 28 days, and lies interred on the South side of St. *Edward's* Chappel in *Westminster* Abbey, under a stately Monument, having thereon his Portraicture at full length.

SECT. III.

Some account of the first 25 Knights-Companions.

(1.)

Edward Prince of *Wales*.

a *Ex Chron. Tho. de la Mare.*

THis Noble and Valiant Prince, was born at [a] *Woodstock*, the 15. of *June*, *An. Dom.* 1330. at ten a Clock in the Morning, in the *Scheme* of whose *Nativity* (found among the Collections of that famous Mathematician Mr. *Thomas Allen* of *Gloucester-Hall* in *Oxford*) the 9. degree of *Virgo* ascends, the 3. of *Gemini* culminates, and the Planets are thus posited.

		gr.				gr.	
♄	in	16	♌	☿	in	18	♓ R.
♃		12	♏	☽		10	♓
♂		11	♑	☊		22	♋
☉		1	♋	☋		22	♑
♀		19	♓	⊕		19	♌

b 4. *Febr. Pat.* 5. E. 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 33.
c 16. *Apr. Pat.* 10. *E* 3. *p.* 1. *m* 30.
d *Ibid.*

So welcome to his Father was the News of his *Birth*, that he [b] granted to *Tho. Priour* who brought it 40 Marks *per annum*, out of his Exchequer for life, until he should setle on him Lands to that annual value. Afterwards, he [c] gave to *Joane de Oxenford*, this Prince's Nurse, 10 *l. per annum* out of his Exchequer during her life, until he or his Heirs should setle that yearly value in Lands or Rents upon her. And the [d] next day a yearly Pension of 10 Marks out of his Exchequer also for life, on *Matilda Plumpton Bersatrix*, or Rocker, to this young Prince, till Lands of that value were in like manner provided for her.

e *Pat.* 4. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 42. *Rot. Liberat.* 5. *E* 3. *m.* 8. *Claus.* 10. *E.* 3. *m.* 26. & 12.
f *Cart.* 7. *E.* 3. *m.* 4.

Before he was three years old, the King intending to make some considerable provision for him (though he had [e] before made him an annual allowance for the expences of his House, and several Gifts, did by his Charter dated 18. *May*, in the 7. year of his Reign, [f] grant to him by the Title of *Edward* his most dear and eldest Son, the County of *Chester*, the Castles of *Chester*, *Beston*, *Rothelan*, and *Flynt*, and all his Lands there, as also the Cantred and Land of *Englefield* with their appurtenances, to him and his Heirs *Kings* of *England*, together with all Knights Fees, Advowsons, Liberties, Royalties, and all other things belonging to the said County, Castles, Lands, and Cantreds, aswell in *England* as in *Wales*, and the Marches thereof, as fully and under the same conditions, as himself received them before he was King: And thence forward he had the Title of Earl of *Chester* added to his Stile.

g *Pat.* 7. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 13.

But intending to provide yet better for him, the next day he [g] gave him all the Corn, as well in *Granges*, as growing on the Ground, as also the *Arms*, *Victuals*, *Cattel*, *Goods* and *Chattels* in all the said *Castles*, *Lands*, and other places to him before granted, together with the Debts, Arrerages of Accounts, and other Services due to himself.

h *Chart.* 11. *E.* 3. *n.* 55.

In the *Parliament* held at *Westminster*, *an.* 11. *E.* 3. he was created Duke of *Cornwall*, as appears by his [h] *Charter* of Creation, bearing date the 17. of *March*

March the same year, and invested by the Sword only; and this is the first Precedent for the Creation of the Title of *Duke* with us in *England*. Herewith also, the King setled on him divers *Manors* and *Franchises*, expresly set down in the said *Charter*, for the better support of the State and Honor of Duke; all which, though some lay in other *Counties*, were thereby made part of the Dutchy of *Cornwall*. And further, by Letters Patent dated the same day, he granted to him the [i] *Stannaries* in *Cornwall*, together with the Coinage of *Tin*, and all the issues and profits thence arising; as also the profits and perquisites of the Courts of the *Stannaries*, except only 1000 Marks formerly granted to *William Mountague* Earl of *Salisbury*, and his Heirs, out of the Issues thereof, till Lands were provided for the said Earl, of that yearly value; and afterwards * granted, That all the Castles, Honors, Mannors, Lands, and Tenements, belonging to the Dukedom or Earldom of *Cornwall*, which were held in Dower or for term of life or years, whose Reversions belonged to the King, should remain to this Prince as Duke, still as they fell, and to the eldest Sons of him and his Heirs, as Dukes of the foresaid Dukedom.

i *Pat.* 11. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 19.

* 29. *Sept. Pat.* 17. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 24.

In the Parliament held *an.* 17. *E.* 3. the King [k] created him Prince of *Wales*, and invested him with a Coronet, a Gold Ring, and a Silver Rod: and the better to support his State as Prince of *Wales*, gave him several Lands, which are all particularly enumerated, in a [l] Writ directed to *William de Emeldon*, to deliver them unto this Prince or his Attorney, with this *Dignity*: The King also [m] gave him all Debts and Arrears of Foreign Rents due to himself, for what cause soever, in *North Wales* and *South Wales*, to the time of his being created Prince of *Wales*, as also all Victuals, Arms, Horses, Oxen, Cows and other things in all the *Castles* and *Lands* which he held by the King's Grant.

k 12. *May Chart.* 17. *E.* 3. *m.* 24. *n.* 27.

l *Pat.* 17. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 8.

m 20. *Sept. Extract. donat.* 17. *E.* 3. *m.* 4.

He was constituted [n] *Custos Angliæ* divers times, when the King had occasion to be absent out of the Kingdom, to which the Title of *Locum tenens Regis* was sometimes added; and in his younger years, the King appointed the [o] Archbishop of *Canterbury* to be the chief of his Council, to direct him in all Affairs; the powers belonging to this Great *Officer* being recorded in *Rot. Pat. de an.* 14. *E.* 3. *pars* 2. *m.* 28.

n *Pat.* 12. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 12. 14. *E.* 3 *p.* 2. *m.* 28. 16. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 6. & 46. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 25.

o *Pat. concess. hominib. Angl. & Vasc.* 13. *E.* 3. *m.* 13.

The first time this *Prince* entred upon the Stage of War, was at the beginning of his 16. year of age, at which time he accompanied his Father into *France*; where at his landing at [p] *Hoges* in *Normandy*, he received the honor of [q] *Knighthood*, from that martial Kings hands. Thence he marched in the body of the Army with the King toward *Cressy*, at which Battel (fought *an.* 20. *E.* 3.) he led the [r] *Van*, and after a fierce encounter with the *French*, was somewhat distrest from the Enemies breaking in among his Archers, but the rest of his men timely advanced to their Assistance; nevertheless notice of his condition being sent to the King (who commanded the Reer) he asked if the *Prince* were dead or wounded, the Messenger said no, but stood in need of his Assistance; well said the King, [s] *return, and bid them send no more to me, so long as my Son lives, for I will have him this day win his Spurs, since I design him the honor of this Expedition*: and it cannot be denyed, but the compleatness of the Victory then gained, fully conferred it on him, so also did his Fathers acknowledgment; for after the Battel was ended, he embraced the *Prince* and kist him, and said [t] *fair Son, God give you resolution to pursue Honor, you are my dear Son, and have acquitted your self nobly, you are worthy to govern a Kingdom.*

p *Rot. Parl.* 20. *E.* 3. *n.* 45. *m.* 4.

q *Stows Chron. pag.* 241. *b.*

r *Froiss. cap.* 130.

t *Ibid. cap.* 131.

The following year, a *Truce* being agreed on at *Calais*, was spun on by several Prorogations, but without effecting any thing of Peace, till *an.* 29. *E.* 3. in which year both Kings provided for War. Hereupon the King [u] constituted this *Prince* his Lieutenant in the Dukedom of *Aquitaine* and other places in *France*, whither he should happen to march, both for Reformation of the State of that *Dukedom*, and other places in *France*, and the recovery of his Lands and Right possest by the Rebels. And by another *Commission* of the same date, he [w] gave him power to make Alliances with all persons, of what *Nation*, *Dignity*, or *Condition* soever, to retain men, and pay them Wages and Rewards. A third *Commission* [x] gave him Power (in the King's stead and name) to receive

u 10. *July Rot. Vasc.* 29. *E.* 3. *m.* 6.

w *Ibid.*

x *Ibid. m.* 4.

Homage

Homage and *Fidelity*, from the Nobility and others within this *Dukedom*, and the Kingdom of *France*.

Armed with their Powers and accompanied by the Earls of [y] *Warwick*, *Oxford*, *Salisbury*, and *Suffolk*, and a good Army attending him, he took Shipping and safely arrived in *Gascoigne*: for whose passage thither the King had before assigned [z] *Richard de Cortenhale*, and *Robert de Baildon* Serjeants at Arms, to arrest, array, and equip all the Ships of 20. Tun and Upwards, in all Ports and Places from the River of *Thames* unto *Lynn*, as well within Liberties as without, to furnish them with men and other necessaries, and to bring them to *Southampton* by St. *Barnby*'s Day at the furthest; as also to Press Mariners for the Voyage at the Kings Wages; and had given Commission to * *Thomas de Hoggeshaw* Lieutenant, to *John de Beauchamp* Admiral of the Sea Westward, to carry him over: with power to hear and determine all Crimes and Transgressions committed on Shipboard, and to punish them according to *Maritime* Law, and to do all other things appertaining to the Office of *Admiral*.

y *Ex Lib. Miscellan. R. Glover, Somerset, fol.* 29.

z *Rot. Franc.* 29 *E.* 3. *m.*12.

* 27. *May. Ib.*

Having entred the River [a] *Garronne*, he marcht into the South-part of *Languedock*, and burnt the Great Town of *Carcassone*, situate near the *Mediterranean* Sea, thence passed to *Narbon*, burning and wasting the Country; after which, he returned to encounter the *French* Forces which marcht out of *Tolouse*, under the Command of the Marshall *Cleremont*, and Earl of *Armaignac*; but upon his approach they retyred, and so in *November* after 8. Weeks he returned to *Bourdeaux* with great store of Pillage and Prisoners.

a *Froissard c.* 155. See the Names of all the places they marched through in *Stows Chron.* 256. *&c.*

A more particular account of which Voyage, with the Towns and Castles taken and destroyed, and several other actions done after the *Prince*'s Return to *Bourdeaux*, to the 21. of *January* following, are reported in Sir *John Wingfield*'s Letters, Printed in [b] *Hollinshead*'s Chronicle.

b *Ib. p.* 384. 385.

Intelligence of the *Prince*'s taking the Field the [c] following Summer, being brought to King *John*, he resolved to fight him, for now the *Prince* (with about [d] 8000. Men) had entred the Country of *Berry*, as far as *Issoudun*, *Bourges*, *Vierzon*, and [e] *Remorentin*, which two last Towns and their Castles the *Prince* took by Assault: and passing into [f] *Anjou*, and *Touraine*, (having wasted all the Country where he past) intended to return for *Bourdeux*.

c *An.* 30 *E.* 3. *Froiss. c.* 157.

d *Hollinsh. p.* 387.

e *Froissard c.* 158.

f *Ib. c.* 159.

But after this long and wearisom Voyage, drawing near to *Poictiers*, he was informed, that the [g] *French* Army was not far from him, (and here the Cardinal of *Pirergort* used means to have brought both sides to some composition, but the *French* being high in their demands, his endeavours took no effect.) The *Prince* thereupon fitted himself for fight, and the Battels joining (in the Fields of [i] *Beaumont* and *Malpertens*) after some space, they broke the *Van* of the *French* Army, when the main Body, led by the Duke of *Normandy* coming on, and finding the other routed, fell into disorder also. This incouraged the *Prince* to fall in upon the *Rear* led by the *King*, at whose approach, the main Body of the *French* Army left the Field, as their Leader himself did, with *Charles*, *Lewis*, and *John*, the *Kings* Sons, the Earls of *Poictiers* and *Tourayne*. King *John* behaved himself very valiantly, and maintained the fight for some time, but was at length taken Prisoner by [k] Sir *Denys Morbeck* a Knight of *Arthois* (to whom the *Prince* gave afterwards [l] 2000. Nobles to support his Estate) whilst the chace continued to the Gates of *Poictiers*, and a compleat Victory obtained, the particulars whereof are related by *Froissard*.

g *Ibid. c.* 62.

i *Ib. c.* 64. *Beauvoir* and *Malpertuse* two Leagues from *Poictiers. Hollinsh.*

k *Froiss. c.* 64.

l *Ibid. c.* 169.

The *French* Kings Army consisted of [m] 60000. fighting men, whereof there were above 3000. Knights. The *Prince* had but [n] 8000. whereof 3000. were Archers, though *Froissard* in one place saith 6000. in another 4000.

m { *Hollinshed* n { *Chron. p.* 389.

The names of some of the Prisoners of Note, and those that were slain, are mentioned by [o] *Knighton*: in a word, the Flower of *France* fell here, and so many *Noblemen* were there slain, or made Prisoners, that there were but few left to manage the Affairs of *France*; the Souldiers had [p] twice as many Prisoners as themselves were in number, nay divers of them 4. or 5. Prisoners a piece, all which they put to ransom in the Field, upon promise to return before *Christmas* with their Ransoms to *Bourdeaux*. The spoil was exceeding rich, so were also

o *In Hist. Angl. Script. Coll.* 2613. *&* 2614. *Vide Stow p.* 263. *& Hollinsh. loco cit.*

p *Froiss. c.* 166.

also the Arms they took, and whatsoever the Booty was, it remained to him that took it. The [q] *Prince* bought of the *Gascoigners* for ready money those of the *French Nobility*, whom they had taken: And of these, namely *Philip* Son to King *John*, the Earl of *Sancerr*, and the Lord *Craon*, he sold to the King [r] afterwards for 20000 *l.*

q *Ibid. c.* 169.

r 22. *Oct. Pat.* 33. *E.* 3. *p.* 3. *m.* 14.

This Battel was fought the [f] 19. day of *September*, *an. Dom.* 1356. it beginning in the Morning and ending at Noon; but it was night e're they returned from the Chase.

f *Rot. de Tract. Pacis Franc.* 34. *E.* 3. *m* 9. *vide Claus.* 36. *E.* 3. *m.* 3. *dorso.*

When it was ended, the *Prince* (who saith *Froisard*, was therein couragious and cruel as a Lyon, and took great delight in the Fight and Chase) commanded his *Standard* to be pitched on a high Bush, as a signal to the dispersed Forces to retire to him thither; and then sent out the Earl of *Warwick*, and Sir *Reynold Cobham*, to make enquiry after the *French* King, who in a short time brought him Prisoner to the *Prince*. The [t] *Prince* entertained this Noble Prisoner at a Supper, at which himself, with all respect, served him; nor could be prevailed upon to sit down at the Table.

t *Froiss. c.* 168.

The next day the *Prince* dislodged his Army, and marched through *Poictou*, *Santonge*, and at *Blaye* passed the River *Garronne*, and so to *Bordeaux*, where in one part of the Abby of St. *Andrew* he lodged his Royal Prisoner, and in the other himself; and upon the News of this great Victory and Success, the King appointed [u] publick thanks to be given to God throughout *England*.

u 10. *Octob. Claus.* 30. *E.* 3. *m.* 3. *dorso.*

In [w] *April* following, the *Prince* took shipping for *England*, and brought along with him the *French* King (and divers other Prisoners of quality) the [x] 5. of *May* he arrived at *Plymouth*, for whose reception there, *John Dabernoun* Sheriff of *Devonshire*, was [y] commanded to make provision of Victuals, and Carriages, and Horses, and attend him in all parts through that County. The [z] 24. of *May*, the *Prince*, in a stately Cavalcade, rode through *London*, his Royal Prisoner by his side, on a White Courser, and himself on a Black Hobby, and so proceeded to [a] *Westminster-Hall*, where he presented King *John* to his Father, and from whence King *John* was conducted to his Lodging; but within a short time, the *Savoy* was furnished for his entertainment.

w *Hollinsh. pag.* 390.
x *Walsingh. pag.* 164.
y 20. *March Pat.* 31. *E.* 3. *m.* 3. *dorso.*
z *Walsingh. loco cit.*
a *Hollinsh. loco cit.*

After some few years, the King (*an.* 33. *E.* 3.) preparing for another Expedition into *France*, this [b] *Prince* went along with him (so also his three Brethren) and commanded the Rear of that Army, which making its way through the Bowels of *France*, at *Bretigny*, neer *Chartres*, a Peace was concluded, in which this *Prince* (and some other of the Kings Council) on the Kings part, having treated with the *French* Lords, on the part of the Dauphin of *Viennois* Governor of *France*, brought all controversies, touching that Realm, to a happy composure. The King (desirous to proceed to the effect and accomplishment of that Treaty) gave him another [c] *Commission*, with authority to treat further upon any thing that concerned or was comprised therein, either in general or special; to demand and receive the Hostages, Money, Castles, Cities, and Fortresses, and what ever else was to be delivered to the King, by virtue thereof; with a general Clause, to add and supply the power granted, if any solemn or substantial thing should be omitted, through much business or otherwise, or were expedient or advantagious, as to the premises.

b *Froiss. c.* 207.

c *Rot. Calef. de Negotiis communibus* 34. *E.* 3. *m.* 6.

After the confirmation of this Peace, and King *Edward* in possession of a considerable part of the Territories, both of his own inheritance, or invested in him by the said Peace (which he was to enjoy without resort or Soveraignty to the Crown of *France*) The *Nobility* of these Provinces desiring to be governed by a *Prince* of their own, rather than by the Kings *Lieutenants* as before; they addressed themselves to the *King*, to confer the Government thereof on this *Prince*, and send him thither, where he had so great Possessions and Revenues to maintain his State and Dignity. Hereupon the *King* [d] Created him *Prince* of *Guyenne*, and gave him *Guyenne* and *Gascoigne* by the name of a *Principality* during his life: and also granted to him those other *Countries*, *Towns*, and *Castles* near adjoyning (delivered into the *Kings* possession, by vertue of the foresaid Treaty) together with the *Government* of them also, retaining nevertheless the

d 19. *July Rot. Vasc.* 36. *E.* 3. *m.* 16.

Resott and Soveraignty over all, thereby given and granted to himself.

This done, he forthwith prepared for his Voyage thither, taking along with him his [e] Lady the *Princess*, with whom, being arrived at *Rochel*, they were both joyfully received. Thence he went to *Poictiers*, whither the [f] Barons and Knights of *Poiction* and *Santonge* repaired, doing him Fealty and Homage; then he departed for *Bordeaux*, thither the Nobility and Knights of *Gascoigne* came to wait on him: after which he setled English Officers in all places of his Principality, and there kept his Court with great state and magnificence.

Immediately after the Election of Pope *Urban* the Fifth, [g] *Peter* of *Lusignan* King of *Cyprus* and *Jerusalem*, came to *Avignon*, and there engaged *John* King of *France* in a *Cruside*; he thence went to the Emperor at *Prague*, and afterwards into *Flanders* and *England*, whence after he had been nobly entertained, he returned to King *John* then at *Amiens*, and [h] thinking he had not yet seen any thing, till he had seen the *Prince* of *Wales*, took a Journey to *Poictiers*, and so to *Angoulesme*, where the *Prince* held a Royal Justs of 40 Knights, and as many Esquires, in honor of the birth of his Son *Edward*; and here the King of *Cyprus* was received with great honor, and nobly feasted while he stayed.

Not long after, this Noble *Prince* was induced to re-establish [i] Don *Peter* King of *Castile*, who had [k] made a personal application to him in so great distress, being driven out of his Kingdom by his Bastard Brother *Henry*, with the assistance of some part of the late disbanded Army, called the *late Comers*, or *Companions*, under the command of Sir *Bertrand* de *Guesclin*, and some *English* and *Bretagn* Forces that went along with them, commanded by Sir *Eustace Dabrichecourt*, and other Knights: Hereupon the *Prince* first sent his Letters to remand them back, and after (which strengthened his undertaking) [l] he received aid from the King his Father, commanded by *John* of *Gaunt* his Brother.

James Son of *Ferdinand*, King of *Mojorca* (whom the King of *Aragon* had imprisoned at *Barcelona*, and there put to death) made also address to the *Prince* for assistance in the recovery of his Realm; which the *Prince* promised after his return out of *Spain* (whither he was then engaged) and towards which he began his Voyage the [m] *Sunday* after *Epiphany*, *an. Dom.* 1366.

Upon his [n] entry into *Castile* (with 30000 Horse and Foot) Don *Henry* prepared to give him Battel with 86000, the Armies joined between [o] *Navarr* and *Naveret*, on *Saturday* the 3. of *April*, [p] *an.* 40. *E.* 3. and here the *Prince* got a Victory, which re-established Don *Pedro* in his Kingdom: thereupon Don *Pedro* went to *Sevill*, and promised to return the *Prince* money to pay his Army, but after four Months stay and expectation, the *Prince* was constrained to return into *Aquitane* without any; so forgetful was Don *Pedro* of the courtesies he had received from him. This Victory got the *Prince* great renown throughout the Empire, and the repute of being the valiantest Prince in that Age, even worthy to govern all the World; but in this Voyage he contracted a sicknes he never recovered, which his *Physicians* and *Surgeons* judged to be an incurable Dropsie; others, that he was poysoned.

In an Instrument dated about this time, to wit 8. *October* 1366. (whereby he granted to his Brother *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*, the Village and Castellaine of *Roche sur Ion*, to him and his Heirs males) I find him thus stiled: [s] *Edward ainsne filz du Roy de France & d' Engleterre, Prince d'Aquitaine & de Gales, Duke de Cornwall, Conte de Cestre, Seigneur de Biscaie, & de Castre de Dordiales*, but after he had resigned the Principality of *Aquitaine*, his Titles were these only, [t] *Edwardus Regis Angliæ & Franciæ primogenitus Princeps Walliæ, Dux Cornubiæ, & Comes Cestriæ* 6. *Feb.* 49. *E.* 3. so *an.* 47. *E.* 3. *vide Lib. Miscell. R. Glover Somerset*, *p.* 111.

Some time after his return into *Aquitaine*, the discontented *Gascoigners* and *French* (taking occasion to rebel upon raising a Subsidy, called [w] *Fouage*, for 5 years, consented to by most of his Subjects, *viz.* the *Poictouins*, and they of *Xanctonge Limosin*, *Rouergue*, and *Rochell*, but other parts of *Guine* refused) entred (in a hostile manner) the Princes Territories, whereupon Sir *Hugh Caurel* coming out of *Aragon* to the *Prince*, was made Captain of the *Companions*, whom he had

e *Froiss. c.* 216.
f *Ibid. c.* 217.
g *Ibid.*
h *Ibid. c.* 218.
i *Ibid. cap.* 231.
k 39. *E.* 3. *Hollinsh. Chron. p.* 397.
l *Froiss. c.* 233.
m *Ibid. c.* 234.
n *Ibid. c.* 237.
o *Ibid. c.* 238.
p *Walsingh pag.* 176.
q *Froiss. c.* 239.
r *Ibid. c.* 245.
s *Cod. MS. in Offic. Ducat. Lancastr. sub titulo de partibus transmarinis.*
t *Ex alio Cod. MS sub Tit. Com. Cestr. cap.* 24.
w *Froiss: c.* 141.

had ſent for out of *Normandy*, and ordered to [x] march with them into the Country of the Earl of *Armaignac*, and the Lord *d'Albret* (two of the great Ring-Leaders of the Rebellion new begun) to waſt thoſe parts. He alſo had ſent before a body Commanded [y] by Sir *John Chandos* to *Montauban*, and a third under the Command of the [z] Earl of *Cambridge*, and *Penbroke*, into *Perigort*, and which took *Bourdeilles* after 11. Weeks Siege.

x *Ibid. c.* 249.
y *Ibid. c.* 245.
z *Ibid. c.* 250.

After this, the *Prince* [a] receiving Intelligence that two Armies under the conduct of the Dukes of *Anjou* and *Berry*, were deſign'd to enter *Aquitaine*, and beſiege him in *Angouleſme*, reſolved his Enemies ſhould not find him there; and therefore ſummond in the Nobility, and appointed a Rendevouz at *Cognac*, leaving his Princeſs at *Angouleſme*, but taking his young Son *Richard* with him.

a *Ibid. c.* 277.

The *King* of *England* (having upon this great rupture of the Peace concluded at *Bretigny*, reſumed his Name and Title to the Crown of *France*) [b] ſent forthwith to the *Prince*, to give him notice that the *Parliament* at *Weſtminſter* had Ordained, that all his Subjects of what Nation or condition ſoever, ſhould maintain his Intereſt againſt his Enemies in the Realm of *France*, to recover and conquer the ſame. And likewiſe directed his Letters to the [c] Nobility of *Gaſcoigne*, deſiring their aſſiſtance herein. The year following, he ſent over *John* Duke of *Lancaſter* his third Son, to the aſſiſtance of this *Prince*, and gave him [d] Commiſſion to receive into favour, and wholly pardon, ſuch of his Cities, Caſtles, Towns, and Inhabitants, aſwell in *Aquitaine* as other parts of *France*, as ſhould return to his Obedience, and to do and exerciſe all powers given in his ſaid Commiſſion, with the conſent of the *Prince*, if preſent, and in his abſence, what the *King* could do in his aſſiſtance, if perſonally there. And that care might be taken in Civil Affairs, the *King* (having reſerved to himſelf the Soveraignty and reſort in thoſe Territories) ſent a blank [e] Commiſſion for the *Prince* to inſert the names of ſuch as he ſhould think fit to appoint for Judges or Delegate, to hear all Cauſes as well Criminal as Civil, upon Appeals from the *Princes Courts*.

b 19. *Jun. Rot. Vaſc.* 43. *E.* 3. *m.* 3.
c *Ibid. m.* 2.
d 1. *July Rot. Vaſc.* 44. *E.* 3. *m.* 5.
e 10. *June preceding Ibid.*

[f] The Duke of *Lancaſter* ſhortly after arrived at *Bordeaux*, and came to the Prince at *Cognac*, but the Duke of *Anjou* thought better to withdraw his Forces into Garriſons, than to fall into action. The Duke of *Berry* took [g] *Limoges*, which the Prince [h] retaking, put the Inhabitants to the Sword, and burnt the Town. But the *Prince*'s diſeaſe growing daily upon him, he was [i] adviſed by his Phyſicians and Chirurgeons, to return into *England*, for the recovery of his health; which cauſed him to aſſemble the Nobility of *Aquitaine*, *Gaſcoigne*, *Poictou*, and *Santonge*, at *Bordeux*, to whom he communicated his intentions, and withal that he would leave the Duke of *Lancaſter* in Chief Command behind him, to whom they did fealty and Homage in the *Princes* preſence, and kiſt his mouth. The Affairs of theſe Countries being thus Ordered, the *Prince* and *Princeſs*, their young Son *Richard*, the Earls of *Cambridge*, and *Penbroke*, took Shipping for *England*, and arrived at [k] *Plimouth* about the beginning of *January*, whence they rode to the King at *Windeſor*, where after ſome ſtay he took his leave and retired to his own Houſe, and about two years after [l] ſurrendred the Dignity of *Prince* of *Guynne*, and his whole right therein, to his Father King *Edward*.

f *Froiſſ. c.* 279.
g *Ibid. c.* 280.
h *c.* 283, 284.
i *Ibid. c.* 287.
k *Walſingh. ſub an.* 44. *E.* 3. *pag.* 181.
l *Rot. Vaſc.* 45. *E.* 3. *m.* 2.

While he was yet in Minority, there were ſeveral matches deſigned for him, as firſt, being but a year old, [m] a Commiſſion was given to *John Darcy*, and *William Truſſell* Knights, to treat and agree with *Philip* King of *France*, or his Deputies, upon eſpouſals and Matrimony between this young Prince and King *Philips* Daughter; but the quarrel breaking out afterwards with that King, there was no further progreſs made in his Affair.

Of his Wife and Children.
m 15. *July Par.* 5. *E.* 3. *par.* 2. *m.* 28.

The next propoſal was for *Margaret*, one of the Daughters of *John* Duke of *Brabant* and *Lorraine*, to which purpoſe a [n] Commiſſion was made out to *Henry* Biſhop of *Lincoln*, and *William de Bohun* Earl of *Northampton*, to treat with the ſaid Duke or his Deputies upon this matter, and for which, in regard they were both within the third Degree of Conſanguinity, the Popes Diſpenſations was

n 12. *May Rot. Alman.* 12. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 17.

several times endeavoured to be obtained by [o] Letters sent from the King; but he could not be induced to do any thing therein.

Another match was proposed with a Daughter of the *King* of *Portugal*, and thereupon the King [p] Commissionated Mr. *Andrew Offord*, *Richard de Soham*, and *Philip de Barton*, to treat of a Marriage, not only between the *Prince*, but any other of his *Sons*, and any one of the *Daughters* of the said *King*; That also taking no effect, there was [q] another Commission issued to *Robert de Stratton* Canon of *Chichester*, and *Richard de Soham*, to treat with the said King concerning a marriage between the *Prince* and his Daughter *Leonora*.

But none of these which were of others providing took effect, but at length [r] *an.* 35. *E.* 3. he married with a Lady of his own choice, namely *Joan* Countess of *Kent*, Sister and Heir to *John Plantagenet* Earl of *Kent*, and the Relict of Sir *Thomas Holland* (one of the first Founders of this most Noble *Order*) commonly called (for her Excellent Beauty) the fair Maid of *Kent*. And because the *Prince* had married her, notwithstanding nearness of Kindred between them, and of his Christning her eldest Son, it was thought requisite to have a Papal Absolution from Excommunication, and Dispensation for Marriage; [s] both which were obtained from Pope *Innocent* the Sixth, in the 9. year of his Popedom.

By her he had two Sons, namely *Edward* the Eldest, born at *Angoulesme*, in [t] *Feb.* 1365. ([u] *Leland* saith 1364.) who dyed in *Gascoigne*, at 7. years of Age; and *Richard* the second Son born at *Bordeaux*, on *Twelfth-Day* being *Wednesday*, at three a Clock in the Afternoon, [x] 1366. and had three Kings to his Godfathers, *viz.* [y] of *Spain*, *Navarre*, and *Portugal*.

Besides these he had two Natural Sons, [z] *John Sounder*, and Sir *Roger de Clarendon*, to the latter of these he gave by his Will a Silk Bed, with all thereunto belonging; This *Roger* was after made one of the Knights of the Chamber to King *Richard* the Second, to whom the said King * the first of *October*, 13. *R.* 2. gave for life 100*l.* *per annum*, out of the Issues of his Subsidies in the Counties of *Bristol*, *Gloucester*, *Somerset*, *Dorset*, and *Cornwall*.

His Disease contracted in *Spain* grown now uncurable, and he drawing near to his end, made his *Will* in the Kings great Chamber at *Westminster*, the [a] 7. of *June*, *an.* 50. *E.* 3. and disposed of his Body to be buried in the Cathedral Church of the *Trinity* in *Canterbury*. And such was his care of those who had done him service, that he charged his Son *Richard* by his Will, [b] to continue the payment of those Pensions which he had given them. The *Executors* nominated therein were his [c] Brother of *Spain* the Duke of *Lancaster*, *William* Bishop of *Winchester*, *John* Bishop of *Bath*, *William* Bishop of St. *Asaph*, *Robert de Walsham* his Confessor, *Hugh de Segrave* Steward of his Lands, *Aleyn de Stokes*, and *John de Fordham*.

The next day after his Will was made (being [d] *Trinity Sunday*) this Noble *Prince* (the Flower of Chevalry and delight of the *English* Nation) departed the World; his body being imbalmed, was wrapt in Lead and kept till *Michaelmas* (the Parliament being then to meet) to be interred with greater Solemnity, which was performed at *Canterbury*, near the Shrine of *Thomas Becket*, over whose Grave a stately Monument was erected for him, which yet remains undefaced.

o *Rot. Rom.* 14 *E* 3. *m.* 2. & 18. *E* 2. *m.* 2. & 19. *E.* 3. *m.* 3 & 4.
p 8. *Nov. Pat.* 19. *E.* 3. *part* 3. *m.* 11.
q 6 *July. Pat.* 21. *E.* 3. *part* 2. *m.* 13.
r *Walsingham p.* 171.
s 7. *Id. Sept. Ex Lib. in Offic. Principi. Cantuar. vocat.* Ilip. *fol.* 177. *b.* & 178. *a.*
t *Holinsh. pag.* 392. *a.*
u *In Collect. suo.*
x *Walsingh. p.* 175.
y *Ex Chron W. Toorn, Hist. Angl. Script. Coll.* 2142.
z *Bakers Chro. p.* 143.
* *Clauf.* 14. *R.* 2. *m.* 13.

His Death.

a, b, c *Lib. in Offic. principal. Cantuar. vocat.* Sudbury *f.* 90. *b.*

d *Walsingh. p.* 186.

(3)

Henry *Earl of* Lancaster.

THE second Stall on the *Soveraign's* side, was assigned to *Henry* then Earl of *Lancaster* and *Derby*, Son to *Henry* Earl of *Lancaster* (Brother and Heir of *Thomas* Earl of *Lancaster* Beheaded at *Pontefract*, on [e] *Monday* before our *Lady-Day*, *an.* 15. *E.* 2.) and *Maude* Daughter and Heir to Sir *Patrick Cadurces* (or *Chaworth*) Knight, Lord of *Kidwelly* and *Ogmore* in *Wales*.

e *Pat.* 15. *E.* 2. *part.* 1. *m.* 25.

The

The first considerable Military Honor conferred on him, was that of [f] Commander in Chief of all the King's Forces sent into *Scotland an.* 10. *E.* 3. for the [g] Truce with the *Scots* having been upon the request both of the *Pope* and King of *France*, and earnest sollicitation of their *Ambassadors*, several times prorogued, between the 23. of *Nov. an.* 9. *E.* 3. and the Sunday next after *Ascension* day following, it then expired; before which, the King had intelligence of their confederacies abroad, and great preparations for War, and being engaged to assist and defend *Edward Baliol* King of *Scots*, who had done him Homage for that Kingdom, he thereupon raised an Army for that purpose, and gave this noble Knight command thereof, by the name of *Henry de Lancaster* only, though I find him in [h] another place relative to this employment, called *Henry de Lancastre* Banneret. And by another Commission he [i] gave him power to receive to Faith and Peace, the *Scots* or their adherents, and to grant them pardon.

f 7. *April Rot. Scot.* 10. *E.* 3. *m* 28.
g *Ibid. m.* 30.
h *Claus.* 11. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 22.
i 10. *Apr. Rot. Scot.* 10. *E.* 3. *m.* 28.

Shortly after, [k] he and *Tho. Beauchamp Earl of Warwick*, *Henry de Bellomont Earl of Bogham, and William de Bohun* had Commission given them, to treat with Sir *Andrew Murrefe* a Scoteh Knight, about a Truce between the King and his Subjects in *Scotland*, and the said Sir *Andrew* and other the *Scots*, to hold till *Midsummer* following.

k 4. *May Rot. Scot.* 10. *E.* 3. *m.* 26.

Towards the latter end of this year, [l] *David Bruys* (then in *France*) had obtained that Kings assistance, and gotten together a great Navy, with which he did much mischief to the Merchants about the Isle of *Wight*; besides, he had entred the Isles of *Gernsey* and *Jarsey*, and killed divers of the Inhabitants. The King therefore [m] gave Commission to the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and others, of whom this *Henry* was one (himself being then at *Bothenill* in *Scotland*, so busied in the War, that he could not be at the meeting appointed) to treat on his behalf, with certain Prelates and others, whom he had commanded to meet at *London*, on Wednesday after *Newyears* day following, upon the defence and safety of the Kingdom, repulsion of the Enemies, and other things relating to the State of the King and Kingdom; as also seriously and fully to acquaint them with the King's intensions, to ordain and do all things referring thereunto, and to his honor, as if he were there personally present.

l *Rot. Scot.* 10. *E.* 3. *m.* 3.
m 11. *Dec. Ib.*

The following year he was [n] created Earl of *Derby*, and invested by girding him with the Sword, his Father yet living; by the Charter of his Creation did the King grant to him and his Heirs, an Annuity of Honor of 20 *l.* out of the Farm of the County of *Derby*; and to the end he might better maintain the State of an *Earl*, he also [o] granted him an annual Pension of 1000 Marks during his Fathers life, out of the Customs in *London*, *St. Butolphs*, and *Kingston upon Hull*, until the King should provide for him 1000 Marks *per annum* in *Lands* or *Rents*; and in ease the issues of the said *Customs* fell short of that annual sum, then was it provided, that it should be made up out of the Exchequer, and for more surety out of the Custody of his *Wards*.

n 16. *Mar. Chart.* 11. *E.* 3. *m.* 25. *n.* 50.
o 18. *Mar. Pat.* 11. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 27.

The [p] third of *October* following, the King granted to him the Manor of *Wyghton* and Hundred of *Northgreneho*, with their appurtenances, in the County of *Norfolk*, as also the Mannor of *Laghton* in *Morthynges*, with its appurtenances, in the County of *York*, which *Ralph* Earl of *Eu* had lately held, and were then seised into the Kings hands, to hold also during the life of his Father, at the annual value of 72 *l.* 7 *s.* 6 *d. q.* (at which rate they were extended) in part of satisfaction of the said annual Pension of 1000 Marks.

p *Pat.* 11. *E.* 3. *p.* 3. *m.* 26.

But the Letters Patents of the 18. of *March*, were resigned up to be cancelled the 24. of *October an.* 13. *E.* 3. and the King thereupon, by other Letters Patent, dated the * 20. of *September* preceeding, granted him (during his said Fathers life) all the *Issues* of the small *Customs* in *London*, for the payment of 891 Marks 5 *s.* 9 *d.* ½ *q.* above the extent of the Mannors and Hundred aforesaid (both which sums made up the foresaid annual Pension of 1000 Marks) and in case the small *Customs* fell short of 891 Marks 5 *s.* 9 *d.* ½ *q.* then, what they wanted was to be paid him out of the great *Customs* of the said City; but if they exceeded that sum, then the surplusage to be paid into the *Exchequer*: which Lands and Pension out of the small *Customs*, reverting to the King upon the death of this Earls Father,

* *Pat.* 13. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 20.

Father, were [q] then granted to the Queen, for the support and maintenance of her Children, until the King should otherwise provide for them.

In the 11. year of King *Edward* the Third, the King having sent over the Bishop of *Lincolne*, and others, into *Flanders* to make Alliances for him with *Flemings*, the [r] *French* King had laid a Garrison in the Isle of *Cagaunt*, with design to take these Commissioners in their return home; but they having notice thereof, and the friendship and assistance of *Jacques Dartuel*, took their way to *Dort* in *Holland*, and so escaped that snare. And the King resolving to clear that Island of this Garrison, designed for this Service the Earl of *Derby*, who raised part of his men in *Staffordshire*, a Country where he was exceedingly beloved, in which his Father had then great Possessions, that after his death descended to him, and of which for the better conservation of the Peace there, the King made him high [s] Sheriff during life. These men, levied by the King's Writ, he was [t] commanded to have in readiness with himself at *London*, on the Feast of St. *Margaret* the Virgin next ensuing.

At the [u] arrival of the *English* in the *Haven*, they found the Town of *Cagaunt* well garrison'd, and therein divers stout Commanders chosen by the Earl of *Flanders* for its defence, well arm'd, and ready to forbid their Landing, so that with great difficulty and some loss they got ashore; and here our Earl pressing on, and fighting for his passage, was struck down to the ground, but relieved by the Lord *Manny*.

In fine, the Town (on [w] *Sunday* before the *Feast* of St. *Martin*) was taken by the *English*, and above 3000 *Flemmings* slain; after which, they plundered and burnt it, and brought their Prisoners to their Ships, among whom was Sir *Guy* the Bastard of *Flanders*, who after made Fealty to the King, and sided with him in the War.

The [x] 16. of *February an.* 13. *E.* 3. he was put in Commission with others, to array men in the County of *Leicester*, against the *Invasion* of Enemies; and the [y] 3. of *July* after made one of the 8 Commissioners to treat with *Philip de Valois*, upon all Controversies between the King and him: and also one of the [z] 5 Commissioners constituted the second of *January* following, to treat with the said *Philip*, as also with the Cardinals of St. *Traxide*, and St. *Mary in Aquiro* upon the same Affair.

The [a] 6. of *March an.* 14. *E.* 3. he had Commission given him, to raise men in the Counties of *Derby*, *Leicester*, *Staffordshire*, and *Lancashire*, to pass over Sea with the King or himself, at the Kings next Voyage beyond Sea.

This *Earl* attended the King in his first *Expedition* into *France*, and had [b] Command, in the *Battel* ready pitcht, to fight the *French* neer *Vyronfoss*, as also at the [c] *Battel* of *Sluce an.* 14. *E.* 3. and the [d] 10. of *August* the same year, command issued to *Robert de Morley*, Admiral of the Fleet from the *Thames* towards the North, to send forth 10 Ships to *Orewell*, to take in his Troops of Horse, that were to pass over into *Flanders* after him.

In the [e] following year *He*, and *Henry de Percy*, *Ralph de Nevil*, and *Robert de Dalton* had Commission given them to treat with the Bishops, Earls, and all other persons, as well *Ecclesiastick* as *Secular*, in the Northern parts, touching the defence of the Kingdom against the *Scots*; and to sollicite them, who had Lands in those parts, to dwell there, or otherwise to assign other persons there to remain in their stead.

He was again made the Kings [f] *Lieutenant* in the North parts of *England* and in *Scotland*, as also *General* of the Army sent against the *Scots*, who had invaded *England*; having power given him to defend the *Marches*, to march into *Scotland*, to create *Stewards*, *Constables*, *Marshals*, and other Officers necessary for the Government of the *Army*, and [g] three days after had a *Commission* given him, and power to treat and agree with the *Scots* about a Cessation of *Arms*, to admit such of them as were willing, to the Kings Peace, to receive their Fealty, to grant them pardon, and restore their Lands.

The [h] 3. of *April* in the following year, he and [i] 6 other, whereof he was to be one, were commissionated to treat with *David Brus*, and other *Scotchmen* his

q 26 *Sept. Rot. Pat.* 19. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 12.

r *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 30.

s *Extract. Donat.* 19. *E.* 3. *m* 3

t 28. *June Rot. Vasc.* 11. *E.* 3. *m.* 23.

u *Froiss. c.* 31.

w *Hollinsh: Chron. p.* 354.

x *Rot. Alman.* 13 *E.* 3. *m.* 16. *Dorso.*

y *Pat. Concess. h minib. Angl. & Vasc.* 13. *E.* 3. *m.* 17.

z *H. Bishop of Linc. H. Earl of Derb. W. Earl of Salisb. W. de Exon. & Alex. de Oneby.*

a *Rot. Alman.* 14 *E.* 3. *m.* 29. *Dorso.*

b *Froiss cap.* 41.

c *Ibid. cap.* 50.

d *Rot. Alman.* 14 *E.* 3. *m.* 8.

e 27 *July Pat.* 15. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 29.

f 7. *Oct. Rot. Scot.* 15. *E.* 3. *m.* 4.

g *Ibid. m.* 5.

h *Rot. Scot.* 16. *E.* 3. *m.* 14.

i *R. Bishop of Durham, Hen. Earl of Derby, Ralph de Nevil, John de Strivelin, Will. de Careswell Governor of Berwick, Walt. de Creyk, Rob. de Mavers.*

his Adherents upon a final *Peace* or *Truce*, as also upon all *debates* and *differences* whatsoever between the King and them, and amicably to compose them. And the same day he had power likewise given him to grant to *Adam Bishop of *Brechin*, to *Patrick* Earl of *March*, Sir *William de Douglas*, and Sir *Thomas de Carnato*, Knights, and *William Bullock*, and other *Scotch* Men, as he should see cause, the the King's special Letters of safe Conduct and Protection for so long time, as this *Earl* thought fit, to come into *England*, with as many *Horse* as he should appoint, to treat either of a *Truce* or *Peace* with this *Earl*, and others deputed thereto by the King.

* Rot. Scot. 16. E. 3. m. 14.

Having in this expedition undertaken upon certain conditions, the Custody of the Marches of *Scotland*, the King [k] gave him in reward, the 1000. Marks which *Jo. de Wesenham* stood engaged to pay the King for Wooll.

k 10. Oblob. Extract. de. nat. 16. E. 3. m 10.

He went over with the King in his Voyage into [l] *Bretagne*, having under his Command 5. *Bannerets*, 50. *Knights*, 144. *Esquires*, and 200. *Archers* on Horseback. The daily Wages allowed him for himself was 8 *s.* for each *Banneret* 4 *s.* each *Knight* 2 *s.* each *Esquire* 1 *s.* and each *Archer* 6 *d.* At the Siege of *Vannes* he was [m] constituted one of the Kings Commissioners (the other being the Earls of *Northampton*, and *Salisbury*, the Lord *Stafford*, *Burghershe*, *Cantelowe*, *Cobham*, *Manneys*, and *Berkley*, and Mr. *John Vfford* Archdeacon of *Ely*) where a Truce was concluded for three years.

l Rot. Franc. 16. E. 3. m. 20. & 23. Claus. de eod. an. p. 2. m. 31.
m Hollinshed Chron. pag. 3. 264.

The [n] 24. of *March*, *an.* 18. *E.* 3. The King by his Letters Patent constituted this Noble *Earl*, and *Richard* Earl of *Arundel*, his Lieutenants in the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*, and the Countries adjoining, to govern and defend those *Territories*, to demand and receive the *possession* of the *Castles*, *Places*, and *Rights*, unjustly detained from him, to recover and retain the same by force of *Arms*, if need should be, and to receive such as should return to their *Obedience*, to the grace and favour of the King, as also the Homage and Fidelity from whomsoever in those parts due; and generally to do all things for defence and recovery of the Kings *Rights*, and good Government of those Countries and his *Subjects*, with Command to the *Archbishops*, *&c.* to yield Obedience to them.

n Rot. Vasc. 18. E. 3. m. 9.

And whereas the King upon false suggestions, had been deceived in many of his *Grants* and *Donations* in that *Dukedom*; He by other [o] Letters Patents of the same date, gave him power to seize into his hands all the *Castles*, *Lands*, *Liberties*, and *Profits*, formerly granted by him, and those that should appear to have been obtained upon untrue suggestions, to retain without Restitution, but upon true, to restore entirely. A like [p] *Commission* was given them which extended to the grants made by his Father King *Edward* the Second, upon like pretences, as well as by himself.

o Ibid.
p Ibid.

They also had a General *Commission* [q] to treat and conclude with all persons of whatsoever state or condition, Kingdom or Nation, for the setling of *Alliances*, and mutual *Assistance* between the King and them, to retain men for the Kings Service, and to agree about Fees, Wages, and Rewards to be paid unto them.

q Ibid.

By other [r] *Commissions* of the same date, these two *Earls* had power to treat and conclude with *Alphonsus* King of *Castile*, (there stiled *Alphonsus Rex Castiliæ, & Legionis, Toleti, Galiciæ, Siviliæ, Cordubiæ, Murciæ, Gyennii, & Algarbiæ, & Comes Molmæ*) or his *Deputies* upon all differences arising between their *Subjects*, especially *Mariners*, and amicably to compose them, as also of a perpetual *League* of *Friendship* between them, *&c.* their *Subjects*, and to afford each other their mutual assistance, with *Power* to *make Substitutes* in their *stead*.

r Ibid.

The said *Earls* had like [s] *Commissions*, with the same *Power*, to treat with the King of *Portugal*, therein stiled, *Alphonsus Rex Portugaliæ & Algarbiæ*. And with the King of *Aragon*, stiled therein, *Petrus Rex Aragoniæ, Valenciæ, Majorcæ, Sardinii, & Corsicæ, Comes Barthon.*

s Ibid.

Sir [t] *John Froissard* tells us, that some of the *Gascoigne* Lords came hither about this time, to acquaint the King, with the weak condition of that Country and City of *Bordeaux*, and to desire relief, and that in this Earls company went also the Earls of

t Cap. 102.

of *Penbroke* and *Oxford*, the Lord *Stafford*, Sir *Walter Manney*, the Lord *Frank de la Hall*, and divers others of note, being about 500 Knights and Esquires, and 2000 Archers, and having landed at *Bayon* the 6. of *June* * 1344. went thence to *Bordeaux*.

* 18. E 3.

His first attempt was upon the [u] Town of *Bergerac*, which surrendred to him, and next [w] *Longo Castle* and *le Lake*, *Mandurant* he took by assault, so also the Castle of *Mountgyse*, *Punache*, and the Castle *de la Lewe*, *Forsathe*, and *Pondayre*, he won with little opposition, and the great Town of * *Laylloyes* after three days, the chief Town appertaining to the Earl of *Laylle* (who lived as King in those parts of *Gascoigne*) was delivered to him after some dispute.

u *Froiss.* c. 103.
w *Ibid.* c. 104.
* Beaumont in Layllois. *Hollinsh.*

After this success he marched to [x] *Bonn*, this he assaulted and took, he also took the Castle of *Auberoche*, and the Town of *Libourne* yielded themselves to him. *Auberoche* being presently after besieged by 12000 *French*, this Earl on St. *Laurence* Eve assaulted the Enemy in their Tents with 300 Spears and 600 Archers, and took the Earl of *Laylle*, and 8 other Earls and Viscounts, and 200 Knights, and so many Esquires, and other Soldiers, that each *Englishman* had 2 or 3 Prisoners, many of whom they let go upon their paroll to return to *Bergerac* or to *Bordeaux* on a certain day, and others they carried with them to *Bourdeaux*; and by this valiant Exploit having relieved the Castle, he afterwards disposed of his Army into Winter Quarters, and returned into *England*.

x *Froiss.* c. 105.

Upon these great successes, the King [y] made him his sole *Lieutenant* and *Captain* in the Dutchy of *Aquitaine*, and the parts adjacent, with power to do and execute all things that belonged to that Command: and gave command to all Archbishops, Earls, Barons, Viscounts, Castellans, and other persons throughout that Dukedom, and adjacent Countries, to yield obedience to him as the Kings Lieutenant.

y 15. *May Rot. Vasc.* 19. E. 3. *m.* 6. & *Rot. Fr.* E. 3. *m.* 6.

[z] Five days before, the King gave him Commission with power to treat and conclude with all persons of whatsoever state or condition, Kingdom or Nation, for setling firm alliances and mutual assistance between the King and them, as also to retain men for the *King's* Service, and to agree about their Fees, Wages, and other Rewards.

z *Ibid.*

The [a] 11 of *June* following, Command was sent to the Sheriff of *London*, that forasmuch as the Earl had shipt most of his Horse at *Southampton*, and was ready to depart, to make proclamation, that all the men at Arms, Archers, and others who were to go with him, should march to *Southampton* with all possible speed.

a *Claus.* 19. E. 3. p. 1. *m.* 12.

[b] Immediately after his arrival in *Gascoigne* he took the Field, and laid Siege to *Bosyll* which surrendred to him. The Castle of *Rochemyllone* being well fortified, he took by assault, and slew all but those that fled into the Church: the next day he laid Siege to the Town of *Mountsegur*, and battered it with great Engines for 15 days together, and at length it was [c] yielded to him upon Composition. After this the strong Castle of [d] *Aguillon* was yielded up to him, and then he laid Siege to [e] *Reole*, which surrendred on mercy, but the Castle stood out 11 weeks, and then also [f] surrendred.

b *Froiss.* c. 108.
c *Ibid.* c. 109.
d c. 108.
e c. 109.
f c. 111.

After his taking of *Reole*, he marched to [g] *Mountpesance* Castle which he took by Storm, and then he sat down before *Mauleon*, and took it by the stratagem of an Ambush: He took also the *Ville Franche* in *Agenois*, with its Castle by assault, after which he marched through the Country, and took many other Towns and Castles, with little difficulty.

g c. 112.

At the end of three days Siege [h] *Myremont* yielded to him, and some of his Forces took * *Thomynes* on the River *Garonne*, and the strong Castle *Damasin*. Last of all [i] *Augoulesme* yielded to him after a Months Siege, and thence he retired to his Winter Quarter at *Bordeaux*.

h c. 113.
* Tonneins.
i c. 114.

This Winter the Duke of *Normandy* entred [k] *Gascoigne*, with 100000 men, and shortly after *Christmas* took the Field; in this Expedition he regained several places from the *English*, and sat down before *Aiguillon*; but after the [l] Battel at *Cressy*, being sent for back by the *French* King, he was constrained to raise his Siege.

k c. 118.
l 20. E. 3.

Shortly

[m] Shortly after the *retreat* of the Duke of *Normandy*, this *Earl* (the King having sent to the [n] *Prior* of the *Order* of the *Friers Preachers* in *London*, to offer up *Prayers*, that God would please to protect and defend him, and give his Forces Victory over his Enemies) with 1200 men at *Arms*, 2000 *Archers*, and 3000 *Foot* passed the River *Garonne* towards *Xantonge* and took * *Myrabel* by *Storm*, as also the *Town* and *Castle* of * *Alaay*, and *Snrgeres* and *Benon*. He likewise took *Mortagne* on the Sea side in *Poiction* by assault, and burnt *Lusignen*, and took the Town and Castle of *Taillebourge*; at length he lay Siege to St. *Jean d'Angely*, which surrendred to him upon Conditions, after which he took *Maxinent* by assault, and won the [o] Town of *Monstrevil Bonnin*; he thence marched to *Poictiers*, and that he took by *Assault*, where 700 of the *Inhabitants* were slain, and some *Churches* spoiled, and more had been, but that this pious *Earl* commanded the contrary on pain of death: Nevertheless they plundred the Town, and left it desolate, and here the Soldiers got so great *Wealth*, that nothing was of value but *Gold*, *Silver*, and *Feathers* for the *Troops*. From hence he returned to St. *Jean d'Angely*, and thence to *Bordeaux*, and in this *Expedition*, he gained so great esteem, that he was reported to be the Noblest *Prince* that ever rode on Horseback.

m *Froiss. c.* 136.
n 6. *May Claus.* 20. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 11. *dorso.* *vide Rot. Franc.* 20. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 2.
* Myrembeau.
* Aunay *Hollinsh.*
o *Hollinsh. pag.* 375.

Having behaved himself so gallantly and faithfully in prosecuting and recovering of the King's right in these parts, the first of *Febr. an.* 21. *E.* 3. the King sent for him, back to be near unto himself for the future, upon all occasions, and to direct and assist in his Martial and other Affairs, whereupon he returned into *England*; and because King *Edward* understood: that the *French* King was making great preparations to draw down to *Calais* about *Whitsontide*, he [p] enjoyned him speedily to repair to his assistance, in reference to whose passage, [q] *Command* was sent to *Jo. de Montgomery* Admiral of the *Fleet* Westward, to provide Ships in readiness at *Sandwich* and *Dover*, for the Transportation of the Army he had raised, with all speed; and immediately upon his coming thither, and consideration had of his victorious *Successes* and good *Services*, done the *King* in the Dukedom of *Aquitain* and parts adjoining, the King [r] granted to him and his Heir Males by Charter, the *Castle*, *Town*, and *Place* of *Brageriac* (*in Dioceff. Petragoriensis*) with the whole *Castellany* and all *Jurisdiction* high and low, Royal Authority, absolute and mixt, as also the Coinage of Money there. To which he afterward added a [s] grant of the Examination of the Assay, with both the Criminal and Civil punishment of all Offenders for coyning Money.

p 14. *May Rot. Fr.* 21. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 10.
q 19. *May Ibid. m.* 6.
r *Primo Junii Rot. fact. apud Calais* 21. *E.* 3. *m.* 13.
s 14. *Mar. Rot. Vasc.* 23. *E.* 3. *m.* 8.

And because this *Town* and *Castle* stood upon the Frontiers of the Enemy, the King [t] granted, that during the War, there should remain in that Garrison 100 men of Arms, and 200 Foot at the *King*'s pay, subject nevertheless to the Command of the *Steward* of *Gascoigne*, to be drawn out upon occasion by him, leaving sufficient strength to defend the same.

t 17. *Junii Rot. Calesy* 21. *E.* 3. *m.* 16.

This *Earl* having taken divers Prisoners at the Town of St. *John d'Angely*, and reduced it to the obedience of the King, he therefore [u] granted to him all the Lands, Tenements, Vines, and other Goods of those Prisoners, until their Ransoms were fully paid. And a [w] little after granted unto him and his Heirs for ever, the Houses, Lands, *&c.* of *Bernard Barram* Burgess of that Town, to hold by the Service, of rendring to the King and his Heirs one Rose annually at *Midsummer*.

u 3. *Oct. Ibid. m.* 4.
w 8. *Oct. Ibid. m.* 1.

Moreover, on the 10. of *November* following, he had further [x] granted the *Castle* of *Horston* with the appurtenances in the County of *Derby*, and 40 *l. per an.* out of the Farm of the Town of *Derby*, to him and his Heirs Males, then the same to revert to the King and his Heirs. All these Grants were made to him upon the account of his good and grateful services formerly performed.

x *Extract. Donat.* 21. *E.* 3. *m.* 10.

Upon the [y] *French* King's coming towards *Calais* (in *July* before) with design to relieve it, the King appointed him to keep *Newland bridge*, for by securing that passage, the *French* could not pass on that side, unless through the *Marches*, which were not to be attempted without danger. [z] His order in keeping this place was much commended by the four *French* Commissioners, who passed

y *Froiss. c.* 144.
z *Ibid. c.* 145.

by it when they came from their King to King *Edward*, to demand a place to fight in.

[a] *Hollinsh pag.* 377. At this time the [a] *Pope* having sent two *Cardinals* to the King, they obtained his condescention to treat with King *Philip*, whose Commissioners were the Dukes of *Burgoigne* and *Burbone*, the Lord *Lewis de Savoy*, and the Lord *John* of *Henalt*, otherwise called Lord *Beaumont*; and on King *Edwards* part were the Noble Earls of *Derby* and *Northampton*, the Lords *Cobham* and *Mannie*: but three days being spent without coming to any conclusion, the *Treaty* broke up, and the *Cardinal* Mediators departed.

[b] 5. *Sept. Rot. Franc* 22.E.3. *m.* 11. *dorso.* [b] He was after made choice of by the King, and *Ralph* Earl of *Eu* and *Guynes*, Constable of *France* by the *French* King, to agree upon a *Truce*, in hopes of a Peace to hold for 6. Weeks, throughout *Picardy*, *Normandy*, *Artois*, *Boulogne*, and *Flanders*, to commence the 13. of the same *September*.

[c] *Rot. Franc.* 22. E. 3. *m.* 1. *Vide Claus.* 22. E. 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 8. *dorso.* The [c] 25. day of *September* following, he was constituted the Kings *Lieutenant*, as well in the parts of *Flanders* and *Calais*, as elsewhere in the Kingdom of *France*, and therein power was given him to treat and agree with any of the Kings Adversaries, or their Adherents, or other persons whatsoever. And after, by a particu-

[d] 11. *Oct. Ibid. m.* 4. lar [d] Commission, he and *William* Bishop of *Norwich*, the Earls of *Suffolk* and *Huntington* and others, were impowred to Treat and agree with the Earl of *Flanders* and his Allies, touching any difference between the King and them; and it seems their Endeavours took so good effect, that an Agreement was

[e] *Ib. m.* 3. *dorso.* made with that *Earl* the [e] 10. of *December* following: whereupon he was sent to *Denemere*, and there received the said Earls *Fealty* and *Homage*.

[f] 18. *Nov. Rot. Franc.* 23 *E.* 3. *m.* 10. *dorso.* As to his transactions relating to *France*, [f] He with the Bishop of *Norwich*, the Earl of *Suffolk*, and Sir *Walter Many* agreed to the Prorogation of the *Truce* from the 18. of *November*, to the first of *September* following.

[g] *Pat. de eod. an p.* 2. *m* 12 & *Escaet* 20. E. 3. Upon the Death of his Father, which fell out [g] *an.* 19. *E.* 3. he succeeded him in the Titles of the Earldoms of *Lancaster* and *Leicester*; and, for that a great part of the Lands, sometimes the Earl of *Lincolns*, were come to his possession, the King

[h] 20. *Aug. Chart.* 23. E 3. *m.* 3. [h] Created him also Earl of *Lincoln*. He had by his Charter of Creation granted unto him the Creation annuity of 20 *l.* to be paid him by the Sheriff of *Lincolnshire* for the time being, in lieu of the third penny of that *County* for ever, as *Thomas* late Earl of *Lincoln* his Uncle had, to enjoy whilst he lived.

[i] *Rot. Vasc.* 23. E. 3. *m.* 3. About 8. days after, the King renued his Commission for being his [i] *Captain* and *Lieutenant* in *Aquitain*, and the parts adjacent, with all Powers requisite

[k] *Pat.* 23. E 3. *part* 2. *m.* 6. *dy* 7. for the better Government of those Dominions, [k] whether he shortly after pass'd.

[l] *Ibid.* 18. *Oct.* And by other Letters Patent he [l] constituted him his Captain and Lieutenant in *Poictiers*, with full power to exercise all things which appertained to that Command.

[m] 6. *Mar. Pat.* 25. E 3. *Part* 1. *m.* 18. But for further increase of Honor, the King [m] Created him Duke of *Lancaster*, and granted, that during life he should have within that County his *Chancellor* and *Justice*, as well to the Pleas of the Crown as other Pleas whatsoever, to be held according to Law, and the Executions of them; and likewise all other Liberties and Royal Jurisdiction to a *County Palatine* appertaining, as freely and wholly as the Earl of *Chester* was known to enjoy in the County of *Chester*; the tenths and fifteenths, and all other payments granted by the *Clergy* or *Canons*, and pardons for life and members to the King, excepted.

[n] *Rot. Franc.* 25. E. 3. *m.* 15. The [n] 8. of *March* ensuing, he was constituted *Admiral* of the *Fleet* from the mouth of the River *Thames* Westward, and two days after the King Assigned him several *Lieutenants*; namely, *Reginald de Ferers* on the River *Thames* and *Medway*, *Robert Ledred* Serjeant at *Arms* within the *Cinque-Ports*, *Philip de Wetton*, and *Walter de Harewell* Serjeants at Arms in the Port of *Seford*, and in every part and place thence by the Sea-Coast to *Fowy*, *Richard Lengles* in the Port of *Fowy*, and thence to *Bristol*, and there, and in the Port of *Chepstow*, and River of *Severn*, and *Ralph de Lullebrock* in all places and Ports, from *Chepstow* to *Chester*, and there; and in all Parts and Maritime places in *Wales*.

Upon a Rumor that the *French* had provided an Army and Navy to invade *England*, among the Maritime Counties on the South of *England*, *Hants*, *Wilts*, *Somerset*,

Somerset, and *Dorset*, were [o] committed to this Duke to secure and to resist the Enemy. So also was the [p] Maritime parts of *Lancashire*. And because the King had occasion to raise men for Land Service, he [q] gave him Commission to array 300. Archers within that *Dutchy*, before the *Quindena* of the Holy *Trinity* then next following, to be ready to march in the Kings Service.

o 14. *June Rot. Franc* 26. *E.* 3. *m* 5.
p *Ibid.*
q 24. *May Ib. m.* 8.

The *Scots* also designing to invade *England* the following year, this Duke had [r] Commission to array all able men in *Lancashire*, between the Age of 16 and 60 to march against them, in case they should presume to enter the Kingdom. The like [s] *Commission* was given him the 26. of *February an.* 29. *E.* 3.

r 30. *Oct. Rot. Scot.* 27. *E.* 3. *m* 1.
s *Rot. Scot.* 29. *E* 3. *m* 13.

The [t] 14. of *September an.* 29. *E.* 3. this noble Duke was constituted *Lieutenant* for the *King*, and *John* Duke of *Bretagne*, then under age. And by other [u] Letters Patent of the same date, Command was given to Sir *Thomas Holland*, the Kings late Lieutenant, to deliver up to him all the Castles, Forts, Cities, Towns, and other Places, Lands, Tenements, and Rents in the said *Dukedom* under his custody, with all the Corn, Victuals, Money, and Issues of the said Dukedom, as also all Victuals, Engines, Arms, and other Ammunition in the said Castles, *&c.* which belonged to the King in *Bretagne*. The [w] 8. of *August*, *an.* 30. *E.* 6. he was by the Kings Letters Patent constituted *Lieutenant* and *Captain* in the Dukedom of *Bretagne* and parts adjacent, for the good Government thereof, both for the *King* and the said *John de Montford* Duke of *Bretagne* then under age, and in the *King*'s custody, from *Michaelmas* following for one year.

t *Rot. Franc.* 29. *E* 3 *m.* 6.
u *Ibid.*
w *Ibid.* 30. *E.* 3. *m* 1.

[x] *Froissard* saith, this Duke was in *Normandy*, and with him the Lord *Philip* of *Navarre*, and the Lord *Godfrey* of *Harecourt*, carrying on the War in that Country, under the Title of the King of *Navar*, at such time as the *Prince* was foraging of *Berry*, and used all endeavour to have joined his Forces with the *Prince* at *Poictiers*; but the passages being so well kept on the River *Loire*, he could not pass, and having heard that the *Prince* had got the Victory there, he returned into *England*.

x *Cap.* 170.

In [y] this Voyage, being 4000 strong, they marched to *Lisieux*, to *Orbec*, to *Ponteau*, and relieved that Castle, besieged above two Months; but the Enemy hearing of the approach of the *English*, raised their Siege in such haste, that they left behind them their Ensigns and Artillery.

y *Hollinsh pag.* 386.

This Duke then marched to *Breteuil* which he relieved, next to *Verneuil* in *Perche*, took both Castle and Town, and burnt a great part of it. Upon the information of which, the *French* King raised a mighty Army, with design to fight him, but he withdrawing to *Laigle*, and the King being come within two Leagues of it, found the Forest so thick and hazardous, that he thought it not safe to pass further; and in his return took from the *Navarrois* the Castles of *Tilliers* and *Breteuil*, and so marched forward towards the *Prince*, then harrasing *Berry*.

About the [z] middle of *May an.* 31. *E.* 3. he took the Field in *Bretagne* with 1000 men at Arms and 500 Archers, and laid Siege to *Rennes*, * which though well defended, was at length surrendred; and the [a] 25. of *July* his Commission of *Lieutenancy*, both for the *King* and *Duke* of *Bretagne*, was renued for another year, to commence at *Michaelmas* following; but the [b] 8. of *August* before the expiration thereof, Sir *Robert Herle* and *John de Buckenham* Clerk, were appointed to succeed him, being jointly and severally constituted *Captains* and *Lieutenants* both to the *King* and *Duke* for the following year, from *Michaelmas* then next ensuing. [c] At that time *Tho. Douvedale* was the Dukes *Lieutenant* in that Dukedom, to whom command was given, dated the [d] 5. of *August* preceding, to deliver up all things in his custody there, and belonging to the King, to such as the King had appointed to receive them; in like manner as they were formerly delivered up to the Earl by Sir *Thomas Holland*, late Captain there.

z *Froiss. c.* 175.
* *Hollinsh Chron. p* 391.
a *Rot. Franc.* 31. *E.* 3. *m* 10.
b *Rot. Franc.* 32. *E.* 3. *m.* 8.
c *Ibid.*
d *Ibid.*

In the Expedition made by the King into *France*, in the 33. year of his Reign, this *Duke* [e] was sent before to *Calais*, with 400 Spears and 2000 Archers, where being arrived, he took with him those Lords of the Empire, and other Commanders, who there waited the Kings coming to *Calais*, and marched to St. *Omars*, *Cambray*, and other places; wasting all the Country as he passed, until he heard of the arrival of the King, and then returned to *Calais*.

e *Hollinsh. pag.* 392.

This Voyage with the King into *France*, was the last Martial Employment this Great *Duke* undertook; and as he had manifested to the World, the wisdom and valour of a great Commander, and succeeded happily in Martial Affairs, so was he no Enemy to Peace, but as ready to lay hold of it on fair and honorable terms, as he was forward to draw his Sword in defence of the Kings honor and right: And this was most evident at the Treaty of *Bretagne* neer *Chartres*, where [f] though the King was very unwilling to accept of a Peace, upon terms offered by the *French*, yet moved by the perswasive Arguments of this worthy *Duke*, he condescended thereunto. It was also upon his [g] motion, both to the King and King *John* of *France*, that the Truce made at *Rennes* between *Charles de Eloys*, and the Earl of *Montfort*, which was to expire the first of *May*, was enlarged to *Midsummer* following, in hopes of a final Peace to be by that time made between them.

f *Froiss. c* 211.
g *Ibid. c.* 213.

He married [h] *Isabel* Daughter of *Henry* Lord *Beaumont*, Cousin-german to Queen *Isabel*, Wife to King *Edward* the Second, and by her had two Daughters and Heirs; *Maud* his eldest Daughter, was Wife * first to *Ralph*, Son of *Ralph* Earl of *Stafford*, and next to [i] *William* Duke of *Bavaria*, Earl of *Henault*, *Holand*, and *Zeland*, Lord of *Frisland*, stiled also Earl of [k] *Leicester*; and *Blanch* the youngest, to *John* of *Gaunt* created Duke of *Lancaster*, *an.* 36. *E.* 3.

His Wife.
h *Brooke in Lancaster.*
* *Claus.* 21. *E.*3. *p.*2. *m.* 6.
i *Esc.*35. *E.* 3. *n.*122.
k *Pat. de eod. an. p.* 3. *m* 19.

His Death.
l *Lib. in Offic. principal. Cancellar. vocat. Islip. fol.* 172.

His [l] Will was made in his Castle at *Leicester* the 15. of *March* 1360. in which he is stiled Duke of *Lancaster*, Earl of *Derby*, *Lincolne*, and *Leicester*, *Steward* of *England*, *Lord* of *Bergerac* and *Beaufort*: and by which he appoints his Body to be interred in the Collegiate Church of our Lady at *Leicester*, where his Father was buried.

m *Esc.*35. *E.*3. *n.* 122.

He dyed within few days after, *viz.* on [m] *Tuesday* next before *Easter an.* 35. *E.* 3. and was buried at *Leicester*, according to the appointment of his Will.

(4.)
Thomas Beauchamp Earl of *Warwick*.

THis noble Earl was eldest Son to *Guy* Earl of *Warwick*, and *Alice* Sister and [a] Heir of *Robert Toney*. He was born in [b] *Warwick* Castle, and had to his Godfathers [c] *Thomas* Earl of *Lancaster*, *Henry* his Brother, and *Thomas de Warington* Prior of *Kenilworth*.

a *Rot. Fin.* 3. *E.* 2 *m.* 7.
b { *Rot. Jub.*
c { *Rows.*

On [d] *New-years* day, in the second year of King *Edward* the Third, he was made *Knight*, though then within age; and the [e] 20. of *February* following, having made his Homage, had *Livery* of his Fathers Lands. In the fifth year of the same King, the Government of the Isles of [f] *Gernsey*, *Sark*, and *Aureney* was conferred on him. About two years after, he attended [g] King *Edward* the Third, in that famous and successful Expedition against the *Scots*; and in [h] *Christmas* Holy-days, *an.* 8. *E.* 3. he and the Earl of *Oxford* were sent with *Edward* King of *Scots*, to secure *Carlisle*, and defend the *West Marches* of *England*: who, with some Forces raised in *Lancashire*, *Westmerland*, and *Cumberland*, entred *Scotland* about *Twelvetide*, wasted *Gallaway*, and returned to *Carlisle*. He attended the King again into *Scotland*, [i] *an.* 9. *E.* 3. when King *Edward*, by *Carlisle*, and *Edward* King of *Scots*, from *Berwick*, entred again that Kingdom: after which he was one of those Noblemen to whose trust the King committed the [k] *Guardianship* of the *Marches*. The following year [l] he and other of the Nobility of *England*, entred *Scotland* about *Whitsontide*, and passed as far as St. *Johns Town*, which they fortified; and in this Kingdom he [m] remained all the year.

d { *Claus.* 3
e { *E.*3 *m.*35.
f *Pat.* 5. *E.*3. *p.* 2. *m.* 2.
g *Claus.*7.*E.*3. *m.*16. *dorso.*
h *Hollinsh. Chron p.*351 *a.*
i *Rot. Scot.* 9. *E.*3. *m.* 27.
k *Walsing. pag.* 118.
l *Hollinsh. pag.* 352.
m *Rot. Scot.*10. *E.* 3. *m.* 27.
n *Hollinsh. pag.* 353.

About the beginning of [n] *Sept. an.* 11. *E.*3. he again entred *Scotland* with an Army by *Berwick*, whilst the Lords *Wake* and *Clifford* entred by *Carlisle*; and within two days both their Forces united, whereupon they wasted *Tividale*, *Mofateidale*, and *Nidesdale*, whilst *Anthony* Lord *Lucy* wasted *Gallaway*; but not being able to prosecute their Voyage, by reason of the great Rains, they returned within twelve days to *Carlisle*: and so much to the satisfaction of the King did he behave himself in this Expedition, that the [o] 19. of *March* following, he made Letters obligatory to him for [p] 500 Marks as a gift, to be paid him at *Michelmas* following.

o { *Pat.*11. *E.*
p { 3. *m.* 9.

When

When the King undertook his first Expedition into *France*, *an.* 13. *E.* 3. (by the way of *Flanders*) he likewise attended him thither, and had [q] Command of a Wing in the field pitch'd between *Vyronfos* and *Flumengery*, in which, among others were the Earl of *Penbroke*, the Lords *Berkley*, and *Moulton*.

He went over with the [r] King into *Flanders*, when by the way, that memorable Naval fight hapned before *Sluce*, where the King obtained a signal Victory against the *French*: and was [s] one of the *Commissioners* nominated at the Treaty agreed on at the Siege of *Tournay*, to be sent to *Arras*, in order to a further Treaty; where after 15 days debate, nothing was agreed on, but the Surrender of the County of *Poiction* (seized on by the *French* King the preceding year) and a prolongation of the Truce for two years.

An. 16. *E.* 3. he was one of the [t] *Commissioners* nominated to treat with the Kings Allies in *Brabant* and *Flanders*, about his designed Expedition into *France*: in which, he after attended the King with [u] 80 men at Arms, 1 Banneret, 18 Knights, 60 Esquires, and 100 Archers on Horse-back; for whose passage a Writ issued to [w] *John de Montgomery*, Admiral of the Fleet Westward to provide Ships. At [x] *Nantes* in *Bretagne* (to which the King had laid Siege) he behaved himself so gallantly upon a Sally made by the Town, that they were forced to retreat with great loss.

Not long after his return into *England*, he marcht into [y] *Scotland*, with *Henry* of *Lancaster* Earl of *Derby*, to raise the Siege laid against *Louhmaban* Castle, whereof the Earl of *Northampton* was Governor; and when he came back, was imployed with [z] the said Earl of *Derby*, and some others to the Pope, to treat about King *Edwards* right to the Crown of *France*, which produced nothing but an enlargement of the Truce. The following year he was constituted [a] *Marshal* of *England* during pleasure.

In that great Expedition [b] first designed for *Gascoigne*, *an.* 20. *E.* 3. he was made *Admiral* of the Fleet; but the [c] King altering his course upon the advice of Sir *Godfry de Harecourt*, took into his own Ship the Admirals Colours, and sailed towards *Normandy*. Where landing at *Hoges*, this Earl made the first attempt with [d] one Esquire and six Archers, against 100 *Normans*, whereof 60 were slain upon the place, and, by this valiant action, made way for the Kings Army to land. Upon this he was constituted one of the [e] *Marshals* of the Kings Army, and Sir *Godfry de Harecourt* the other. And upon the Kings advance to *Cressy*, he was one of the [f] Commanders under the *Prince* of *Wales*, who led the *Van* of his Army in that famous battel. He attended the King at the Siege of *Calais*, with [g] 3 Bannerets, 61 Knights, 160 Esquires, 154 Archers on Horse-back: and upon its surrender, [h] he with the Earl of *Stafford* and Sir *Walter Manny* had the Keys of the Town delivered them by the King, and were appointed to take possession of it for him. And for his great services in this Voyage into *France*, the King [i] gave him 1366 *l.* 11 *s.* 8 *d.* and after assigned him [k] 1000 Marks *per annum* for life, out of the Customs of *London*, *Lynn*, and St. *Botolphs*; and these, partly in recompence for his great services, and partly for wages due for attendance on his person with 100 men at Arms, according to certain Indentures of Covenants made betwixt them. He was also in that [l] Naval fight against the *Spanish* Fleet near *Winchelsey quarto Calendas Septembris*, *an.* 24. *E.* 3. where the *English* [m] took 26 of their best Ships, the rest fled or were sunk.

King *Edward* having received intelligence, that the *French* King threatned an Invasion, this Earl was constituted *Admiral* of the Sea, from the River *Thames*, Westward, and [n] *Philip de Witton* made his *Lieutenant*. The same year he was [o] constituted one of the *Commissioners* assigned for the Arraying all able men, as well Knights and Esquires, as others within the Counties of *Warwick*, *Leicester*, and *Worcester*, for defence of the Realm.

The *Prince* being constituted the King's *Lieutenant* in *Aquitaine*, he [p] attended him thither: and there [q] staid with him that year, and the year [r] after. And that the Town of *Vattes* in *Bretagne* might be made defensible, he had [s] command to take care of the fortifying it, and to furnish the Magazin with stores.

In

q *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 41.
r *Rot. Alman.* 14. *E.* 3. *m.* 25.
s *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 63.
t *Rot. Franc.* 16. *E.* 3. *m.* 39.
u *Claus.* 16. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 32.
w 30. *Aug Rot. Franc.* 16. *E.* 3. *m.* 30. *dorso.*
x *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 95.
y *Tho. Walsing. pag.* 150.
z 19. *Aug. Rot. Franc.* 17. *E.* 3. *m.* 12.
a 10. *Feb. Pat.* 18. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 18.
b *Froiss. lib.* 1.
c *cap.* 121.
d *Ypodig. Neustr. p.* 118. *n.* 30.
e *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 122.
f *Ibid. c.* 128.
g *MS.*
h *Froiss. c.* 128.
i 15. *Dec. Pat.* 21. *E.* 3. *p.* 3. *m.* 13.
k *Pat.* 22. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 5.
l *Stow p.* 250.
m *Walsing. pag.* 160.
n 23. *Feb. Rot. Franc.* 26. *E.* 3. *m.* 13.
o *Ibid. m.* 5.
p *Rot. Vasc.* 29. *E.* 3. *m.* 7.
q *Ibid.* 30. *E.* 3. *m.* 4.
r *Ibid.* 31. *E.* 3. *m.* 16.
s *Rot. Franc.* 32. *E.* 3. *m.* 13.

In the Battel at *Poictiers*, the [t] *French* King and his eldest Son encountred the Battel of the *English* Marshals, led by the Earls of *Warwick* and *Suffolk*: And after the Victory, the *Prince* sent this [u] Earl and Sir *Reignold Cobham*, to discover what was become of the *French* King, who after some time espied a Company of Souldiers together, and riding towards them, found the *French* King on foot in great danger, between the *English* and *Gascoigners* (for they had taken him from Sir *Denis Morbeck*, to whom the King first yielded himself, and in token thereof had given him his right *Gauntlet*) there being above 10 Knights and Esquires among them, who challenged him for their Prisoner; but this Earl entring the throng, commanded the Souldiers to fall back, and brought King *John* to the Prince.

In this Battel, the Earl himself took *William de Melleun* Archbishop of *Seinz* Prisoner (for whose Ransom he after received [w] 8000*l.*) and therein behaved himself most valiantly, and got great renown; having fought so long, that his [x] hand was galled with the management of his Sword and Poleax.

This Earl was in the [y] *Gascoigne* War, *an.* 31. *E.* 3. he also attended the King in his Expedition into *France*, *an.* 33. *E.* 3. And after the Peace was agreed upon at *Bretigny* near *Chartres*, and the King returned to *England*, he gave this Earl the [z] Command of all the Forces he left behind him in *Guyenne*, or any other place on that side the Sea.

[a] *An.* 36. *E.* 3. he marched in the Retinue of [b] *John* Duke of *Bretagne*: The following year he attended the [c] Prince of *Wales* into *Gascoigne*, and had an allowance of [d] 452 *l.* in recompence of his expences and loss sustained, by stay of himself and Men at Arms at *Southampton*. After he had been a while in *Gascoigne* he began his [e] Travels into other Countries, having a Train of 300 Horse, consisting of Knights, Esquires, Archers, and Servants. In this Journey he spent [f] 3 years, having made great proof of his Valour in the East Countries against the Pagans; and in his return for *England*, brought along with him the King of *Lituania*'s Son, to whom, being [g] christened in *London*, this Earl was Godfather, and named him *Thomas*.

His Commission for [h] *Marshal* of *England* was renewed to him *an.* 40. *E.* 3. and the following year [i] he and the Bishop of *Durham*, and some others, were impowered to supervise the Marches of *Scotland*, and to treat with *David de Bruys* about the rupture of the Truce formerly made at *Berwick*, and several injuries done by the *Scots*.

His Wife and Children.

He married [k] *Katherine*, one of the Daughters of *Roger Mortimer* Earl of *March*, who dyed some few weeks before him. He had by her these [l] Children; *Guy* his eldest Son, who died in *France*; *Thomas*, who succeeded him in his Earldom; [m] *Reynburn*; *William* Lord *Bergaveny*; and *Roger*. His Daughters were *Maud*, the Wife of *Roger* Lord *Clifford*; *Philippa*, of *Hugh* Earl of *Stafford*; *Alice*, of *John Beauchamp* of *Hach*; *Joane*, of *Ralph* Lord *Basset* of *Drayton*; *Isabel* of *John* Lord *Strange* of *Blacknere*; *Margaret*, of *Guy de Montfort*; *Agnes*, of------ *Cokesey*; *Julian*, and *Katherine*.

His Death.

This noble Earls last action was in the Isle of *Caux*, *an.* 43. *E.* 3. for [n] passing over to *Calais* in assistance of the Duke of *Lancaster* (as is mentioned) the *French* having intelligence of his coming, presently withdrew in great confusion from *Chalke-hill* where they had pitcht their Tents, and upon his arrival, understanding that the *English* had only faced the *French*, and not fought them, he could not forbear to condemn their slackness, and out of a high sence and indignation thereof, said, *I will go on and fight, before the English bread which we have eaten be digested*; and forthwith past into the Isle of *Caux* in *Normandy*, which he entred with Fire and Sword: but returning to *Calais*, he fell sick of the Pestilence (then vulgarly called the Third Mortality) and died on the [o] 13. of *November*. His Body was brought over into *England*, and interred in the middle of the Choire of the Collegiate Church at *Warwick*; the Sculp of whose Monument is to be seen in the [p] *Antiquities of Warwickshire*.

t *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 162.
u *Ibid. c.* 164.
w *Pat.* 37. *E* 3. *p.* 1. *m* 25.
x *MS. in Bibl. Bodl.* [*Cantuar.*] *K.* 84. 123.
y *Rot. Vasc.* 31. *E.* 3. *m.* 16.
z *Hollinsh. pag.* 394.
a *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 207.
b *Rot. Franc.* 35. *E.* 3. *m* 5.
c *Ibid.* 37. *E.* 3. *m.* 4.
d *Liberate* 37. *E.* 3. *m.* 3.
e *Autogr. pene Rob. Com. Aylesbur.*
f } *Hist. MS.*
g } *Joh. Rows, pag* 253.
h 16. *Ost. Pat.* 40. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 16.
i *Rot. Scot.* 41. *E.* 3. *m.* 5.
k *Dudgales Antiq. of Warwickshire, pag.* 319. *a.*
l } *Ib.* 321. *a.*
m }
n *Walsingh. p.* 178. *n.* 20.
o *Esc.* 43. *E* 3. *p.* 1. *n.* 19.
p *Pag.* 318.

5. *Piers*

(5)
Piers Capitow de la Bouch.

We are yet to seek who this person was, notwithstanding there hath wanted no pains in the search. That his name was *Peter* is most evident from the Inscription under his Plate, yet remaining in *Windesor* Chappel, in these very Syllables, *Le Capitow de la Bouch Monsieur Piers :* But whether *Peter de Greilly* Viscount *Benanges*, mentioned in the following Pedigree be the same person is some question.

For first, in all those Records, where he is remembred, the Title of *Capitow de la Bouch* is not given him.

Secondly, we cannot trace him beyond the 22. year of the Reign of King *Edward* the Third; and the *Order* of the *Garter* was not Instituted till the following year.

Thirdly, *John* his Son is called *Capitan de Bouch*, q *an.* 5. *E.* 3. and so till he died. And if he should prove the person (as some do take him to be) it is a strange mistake committed in the Engravement of the Plate, which seems to be as ancient as any of the rest, set up in the Chappel at *Windesor*.

q *Rot. Vasc.* 5. *E.* 3. *m.* 24.

Of this *John Capitan de Buch*, there are many things noted by Sir *John Froissard*, relating to both his taking King *Edward*'s side against the *French*, and his valiant actions in those Wars: But in regard we doubt of his being one of the first *Knights-Companions* of the *Garter*, we have thought fit (for the present) to wave the Historical account of him, and intreat the Reader in lieu of it, to content himself with that of some part of the descent, whereby he may guess at the greatness, yet unsuccessfulness of our pains, in endeavouring to ascertain the person.

Johannes de Greilly dominus Benanges, Senescallus totius Aquitaniæ. Rot. Vasc. 6. & 7. E. 1. m. 9.

Claramonda filia & hæres Galliardi de Mota domini de Laudirons. Rot. Vasc. 6. & 7. E. 1. m. 9.

Petrus de Greilly miles. Rot. Vasc. 14. E. 3. m. 2.

(r) *Katherina de Greilly Domina Locorum St Blasii & de Laudiron.* Rot. Vasc. 14. E. 3. m. 2.

Petrus de Greilly Vicecom. Benangiarum & Castellionis. Rot. Vasc. 14. E. 3. m. 2. & 16. E. 3. m. 13. & 22. E. 3. m. 25.

Assalita soror & hæres Petri de Burdegal. Rot. Vasc. 5. E. 3. m. 24.

Petrus de Burdegal. dominus de Puypaulini.

(r) She by her Will, made her Brother *Peter*, and *John* his Son her Nepheu, the Capitain de Buch her *Heirs. Rot. Vasc.* 14. E. 3. *m.* 2. & 17. E. 3. *m.* 11. *dorso.*

(s) *Johannes de Greilly ac Capitaneus de Buch.* Rot. Vasc. 5. E. 3. m. 24. 14. E. 3. m. 2. 16. E. 3. m. 13. & 29. E. 3. m. 6.

Blanch de Loup.

(s) *Petrus de Burdegal. dominus de puypaulini* and *Petrus Amanenus Captain de Bugh*, were Uncles to this *John. Rot. Vasc.* 5. E. m. 7. he was heir to them both, and Executor of their Testaments. *Rot Vasc.* 2. E. 3. *m.* 4. this *Johns* Will is dated the 6. of *March.* 1368. *Rot. Vasc.* 7. R. 2. *m.* 10.

Archambaud de Greilly Capitalis de Bogio ac Vicecomes Benangiarum & Castillionis, (t) *ac dominus de Podiopaulini, & Castri novi, in Meduleo.* Rot. Vasc. 7. R. 2. m. 10.

(t) It appears in this Roll that *John* his Father used these Titles also.

6. *Ralph*

(6.)

Ralph Earl of *Stafford*.

THis Noble Earl was Son unto *Edmund* Lord *Stafford*, first summoned to Parliament, [a] *an.* 27. *E.* 1. and [b] *Margaret*, [c] Daughter to *Ralph* Lord *Basset* of *Draiton*: His Father dyed [d] *an.* 2. *E.* 2. and [e] *an.* 17. *E.* 2. being of full age he did his Homage, and had Livery of his Fathers Lands.

The first military imployment that he undertook, was *an.* 1. *E.* 3. being [f] summoned to be at *Newcastle* upon *Tine* on *Monday* next before *Ascension day*, to go against the *Scots*.

The [g] 12. of *February*, *an.* 10. *E.* 3. the King sent his Writ directed to him, *Philip Chetwynde*, and *Philip Somervill*, to raise in *Staffordshire* (*Lichfield* excepted) 60 Hobelars, and 200 Archers, and to bring them to *Berwick* upon *Tweed*, before the following Octaves of *Easter*.

In his absence it seems there was some attempts made, to seize upon his *Lady*, and carry her away; but making his complaint to the King, he received her under his protection, and [h] directed his Writ to the *Sheriff* to protect her, so long as her Lord remained in his service.

I find this noble Lord was *an.* 15. *E.* 3. [i] *Steward* of the Kings House, and one of those who went over [k] into *Bretagne* [l] *an.* 16. *E.* 3. with *Robert d'Artous*, to the assistance of the Countess of *Montfort*. He behaved himself bravely in the Sea-fight near the Isle of *Gernsey* with the *French* and *Genoeses*, who endeavoured to interrupt their passage thither: but after they had been a while engaged, a violent storm parted the two Navies, and the *English* landed safely; the first Town taken by them being *Vannes*, and that by [m] assault.

Soon after, this Town was [n] re-taken by Sir *Henry de Leon*, and the Lord *Clisson*; but [o] the latter end of the Summer, King *Edward* landed with an Army, and laid a new Siege to it, and perceiving the Country was much wasted, he left the Earl of *Arundel*, with this Lord, before it, and went to *Rennes*. [p] It happed that one day upon an assault, this Lord ventured so far, that he was got between the City Gate and the Bars, and there taken Prisoner, but at another side of the Town. Sir *Henry de Leon* and the Lord *Clisson*, were both taken Prisoners by the *English*, and so [q] he was afterwards exchanged for the Lord *Clisson*. In this Expedition he had Wages allowed him for [r] 50 men at Arms; *viz.* himself, two Bannerets, 16 Knights, 31 Esquires, and 50 Archers on Horseback.

An. 17. *E.* 3. was a year of much action, for first, this Earl with the Earl of *Lancaster*, and other Noblemen, went into [s] *Scotland*, to raise the Siege laid by the *Scots* to the Castle of *Louthmaban*; and being returned, was joined in [t] Commission with *Hugh le Despenser*, Lord of *Glamorgan*, *William de Norwich* Dean of *Lincolne*, Sir *William Trussell*, and *Andrew de Offord*, to treat in the Pope's presence with the Agents of *Philip de Valois*, concerning the Kings right to the Crown of *France*; but we suppose he went not on that Embassy, for the [u] 19. of *August* there was another Commission for that Affair, made out to *Henry* of *Lancaster*, Earl of *Derby* and others, wherein he and Sir *William Trussell* were omitted, and they the [w] first of *July* preceeding, with *Philip de Weston* Canon of *York*, and *John Wawayn*, were sent to treat with the Noblemen, Burgomasters, *&c.* in *Flanders*, about the setlement of the Staple of Wool there, and touching the Coyning of Gold and Silver, such as might be current both in *England* and *Flanders*; and whatsoever by any 3 or 2 of them should be agreed on, this *Ralph* Earl of *Stafford* being one, the *King* promised to ratifie. [x] They had another Commission, wherein power was granted them, to treat with the Princes, Nobles, and People of *Almaine*, upon Allianees between the *King* and them, and to gain their assistance for him.

The following year he went in the Expedition into [y] *Gascoigne*, with the Earl of *Derby*; and [z] commanded the Party that assaulted *Bergerac* by Water, who behaved themselves so valiantly, that through their Valour the Town was forced

a *Claus. de eod. an. Dorso.*
b *Fin. levat. Oxon. Mich.* 27. *E.* 1. *War.*
c *Esc.* 14. *R.* 2. *n.* 9.
d *Esc.* 2. *E.* 2. *n.* 63
e *Claus.* 17. *E.* 2 *m.* 25.
f *Claus.* 1. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 2. *dorso.*
g *Rot. Scot.* 10. *E.* 3. *m.* 31.
h 28. *Oct. Ibid. m.* 6.
i *Extract. Dom.* 15. *E.* 3. *m.* 6.
k *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 91.
l *Rot. Franc.* 16. *E.* 3. *m.* 36.
m *Ibid. cap.* 92.
n *Ibid. cap.* 93.
o *Ibid. cap.* 94.
p *c.* 95.
q *c.* 99.
r *Claus.* 16. *E.* 3 *p.* 2. *m.* 32.
s *T. Walsingh. pag.* 150.
t 20. *May Rot. Franc.* 17. *E.* 3. *m.* 12.
u } *Ibid. m.* 12.
w }
x *Ibid.*
y *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 102.
z *Ibid. c.* 103.

forced to surrender to the *Earl*. [a] He was very active in this *Gascoigne* War, and almost in continual Service: and in [b] scaling the Walls of *Mountpesat* Castle, *Richard Pennenort* an *English* Gentleman that bare his Banner was slain.

a *Ib. c.* 104. 107. 109. & 111.
b *c.* 112.

For his Great Services in this War (after his return into *England*) he was made *Senescbal* of *Gascoigne*, and had the [c] Kings Letter sent to the Prelates and Nobility of that Country, to obey and submit to his Authority, while he continued in that Office. Within a [d] few days after, the King directed his Writ to *Richard* Earl of *Arundel*, Admiral of the West-parts, to arrest 13. stout Ships, each of 80. Tun Burthen at least, to bring them to *Bristol*, before the Octaves of *Easter*, for the passage of this Lord, his men at Arms, and Archers, into that Country.

c 25. *Feb. Rot. Vasc.* 19. *E.* 3. *m.* 8.
d 1. *Mar. Rot. Franc. de eod. an. p.* 1. *m.* 33.

After a years enjoyment of this great Office, he became desirous to resign it, and to that purpose made an address to the King, who [e] sent directions to the Earl of *Derby*, to confer with him about his continuance in it, to which, if he could not be perswaded to consent, then he gave the Earl power to take his resignation, and substitute some other fit person in his room to hold it, during the Kings pleasure.

e 15. *May. Rot. Vasc.* 20. *E.* 3. *m.* 2.

This Spring [f] *John de Valois* Duke of *Normandy*; laid Siege to *Aiguillon*, of which Town this Lord was Governor, and then within it; and though the Earl of *Derby* relieved him, yet had the Duke so strongly intrenched himself, that he could not raise the Siege, so that it was continued by the Duke, to the Decollation of St. *John Baptist* in *August*; at which time, being called away to assist King *Philip* his Father against King *Edward*, who had entred *France* with a puissant Army, he raised his Siege. Upon which, the Lord *Stafford* sallying out of the Town, fell upon his Rear, cut off a great part of it, and having joined his to the Kings Forces, he had given him a Command in the [g] *Van* of the Army under the *Prince*, at the Battel of *Cressy*. And after the Victory [h] was sent with Sir *Reignold Cobham*, and 3. Heralds, to view the slain, who made report of 11. great Princes, 80. Baunerets, 1200. Knights, and above 30000. Common Souldiers.

f *Stow's Chron. p.* 240.
g *Froiss. l.* 1. *c.* 128.
h *Ib. c.* 132.

When *Calais* was surrender'd, he was one of those appointed to take possession of it for the King: and had [i] many fair Houses given him in that Town, to place Inhabitants in. Shortly after the rendition, the Cardinals of *Naples* and *Cleremont*, mediated a Peace between both Kings, whereupon this Lord, with *Reignold de Cobham*, *Jo. Darcy*, and *Robert de Bourghcher*, were [k] nominated by the King to treat of a Peace, or Truce, between them, their Subjects, Allies, and Adherents.

i *Ib. c.* 147.
k 25. *Sept. Rot. Cales.* 21. *E.* 3. *m.* 4.

And for his good Services done to the King in *France*, He [l] gave him a Pension of 600. Marks for life, out of the Customs of *London* and St. *Butolphs*. The King also bestowed on him as a gift [m] 573 *l.* towards his expences in his service beyond Sea.

l 16. *Sept. Rot. Pat.* 22. *E.* 3. *p.* 3. *m.* 37.
m *Ib. p.* 2. *m.* 25.

He was with the [n] King, in the Encounter with Sir *Geoffry Charney* at *Calais*. And went into [o] *Goscoigne* with the Earl of *Lancaster*, and other Lords, to stop the Progress of the Duke of *Normandy* made there with his Army.

n *Froiss. c.* 151.
o *Stow p.* 247.

And growing more and more in the Kings favour, by his meritorious Services, he advanced him to the Dignity of an [p] *Earl*; and for the better support of that Honor, and towards the defraying of his charge, in attending the King with certain men at Arms, both in Peace and War, he granted him [q] a Pension of 1000. Marks *per Annum*, during life, out of his Customs in *London*, till he could settle on him the said annual sum in Lands or Rents.

p 5. *Mar.*
q *Chart.* 25. *E.* 3. *m.* 31.

The next day he was [r] constituted the Kings *Lieutenant* and *Captain* in the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*, and parts adjacent; and the [t] 3*d.* of *April* following, the King gave him power to appoint a *Senescbal* of *Gascoigne*, and a Constable of *Bordeaux*; and these to be such persons as he should think fit, to enjoy those Offices, during the Kings pleasure.

r 6. *Mar. Rot. Vasc.* 25. *E.* 3. *m.* 7.
t *Ib. m.* 5.

The next year, the King empower'd [u] him by a Commission to treat and agree with all persons of what *Kingdom*, *Nation*, or *Degree* soever, upon a firm friendship and mutual assistance between the King and them, and to retain them

u 8. *Mar. Rot. Vasc.* 26. *E.* 3. *m.* 6.

against all men, to agree with them, upon Fees, Wages, and rewards, to receive security from them, and give the like to them, and what he did herein, the King obliged himself and his Heirs to observe and perform.

w 14. *May. Rot. Franc.* 26. *E.* 3. *m.* 11.

Being ready to take another Journey into *Gascoigne*, a Writ [w] issued to *Thomas Beauchamp* (Earl of *Warwick*) Admiral towards the West, to arrest all Ships of 50. Tuns and upwards, for this Earls passage thither, and to bring them to *Sandwich*, by *Quindena Trinitatis* following; and upon his Entry into that Country he [x] defeated the *French* that sallied out of the Fortress of *Gagent*: and among them was taken seven *Knights of the Star*.

x *Stow p.* 253. *b.*

z *Rot. Franc.* 29 *E.* 3. *m.* 5.

An. [z] 29. *E.* 3. he went over with the King to *Calais*, at the latter end of Summer, and marched along with him in pursuit of King *John* as far as *Heyden*.

a *Rot. Franc.* 33. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 2.

And [a] *an.* 33. *E.* 3. he attended him in his Voyage into *France*, which terminated with the Peace agreed on at *Bretigny* near *Chartres*.

b *Rot. Pat.* 35. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 7.

Two years after he was designed for [b] *Ireland*, in the Company of several other persons of Quality upon the Kings Service. But after this Voyage being much broken with Age, and wasted with Sickness, he became uncapable of publick Employments.

c *Esc.* 16. *E.* 3. *n.* 36. *& Esc.* 21. *E.* 3. *n.* 59.
* *Claus.* 21. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 6.
d *Esc.* 46. *E.* 3. *n.* 62.
e, f, g, h *Brooke in Stafford.*

This Noble Lord Married [c] *Margaret* Daughter and Heir of *Hugh de Audeley*, Earl of *Gloucester*, and *Margaret* his Wife, who died the 7. of *September*, *an.* 21. *E.* 3. and by whom he had Issue, * *Ralph* his eldest Son, who married ‖ *Maud* Daughter of *Henry de Lancaster* Earl of *Derby*, but died about 21. *E.* 3. [d] *Hugh*, who succeeded him in his Earldom; and [e] Sir *Richard Stafford* Knight; [f] *Beatrix*, the Wife of *Maurice fitz Maurice* Earl of *Desmond*; [g] *Joan*, of *John Charleton* Lord *Powes*, and [h] *Margaret*, of *John Stafford*, Patron of the Church of *Bromhall* in *Staffordshire*.

i *Esc.* 46. *E.* 3. *n* 62.

He died the [i] last of *August*, *an.* 46. *E.* 3. and lies buried at *Turnbridge* in *Kent*.

(7.)

William Montacute *Earl of* Salisbury.

k, l *Brooke in Salisbury.*

THis Earl was Son unto [k] *William Montacute*, first Earl of *Salisbury*, of that Family, and [l] *Katherine*, one of the Coheirs of *William* Lord *Grantson*.

m *Esc. an.* 18. n *E.* 3. *n.* 51. o

He was born the [m] Morrow after *Midsummer* day, *an.* 2. *E.* 3. for at the Death of his Father (found to be the [n] 30. of *January*, *an.* 18. *E.* 3.) he was [o] 15. years old the *Midsummer* before.

p *Rot. Franc.* 20. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 6.
q *Ib. p.* 2. *m.* 4.
r *Ib. p.* 1. *m.* 11.

The [p] 24. of *May*, *an.* 20. *E.* 3. the Wardship of his body was committed to *John de Somerton*, and *Thomas Waryn*, until *Christmass* following, and then [q] renued till *Whitsontide*, and thence till *Michaelmas* ensuing: and being within Age, he [r] attended the King in that memorable expedition into *France*, *an.* 20. *E.* 3. So also did his younger Brother [s] *John*.

s *Ib. m.* 6.
t *Stows Chron. p.* 250.
u *Rot. Vasc.* 29. *E.* 3. *m.* 11.
w 8. *July. Ib. m.* 5.

He was in the [t] Sea Fight against the *Spaniards*, near *Winchelsey*, *an.* 24. *E.* 3. and going into *Gascoigne*, in the [u] retinue of the Prince of *Wales*, *an.* 29. *E.* 3. he obtained [w] Letters directed to the *Senescbal* there, with Command, that he should not be sued or molested, for any of his own or Ancestors debts, during the space of two years.

x *Froiss. c.* 207.
y *Holinsh. pag.* 404.
z *Froiss. l.* 1. *c.* 268.

[x] *An.* 33. *E.* 3. he attended the King in his Royal expedition into *France*, and from that time to the 43. of *Edward* the Third, we find little mention of his Martial employments; but that year, he went over with [y] *John* Duke of *Lancaster*, in his Voyage into *France*, against whom the Duke of *Burgoigne* was sent with so great an Army, that the [z] *English* were but as a handful to them, and having pitched his Tents near *Calais*, within a Mile of the *English* Army, after 19. days stay he dislodged and went to St. *Omars*, not with much honor as some observe. After whose departure the Duke of *Lancaster* returned to *Calais*, and having re-

a *Froiss. l.* 1. *c.* 269.

freshed his Army for three days, and marched thence to [a] St. *Omars*, and the County of St. *Paul*, then passed the River *Some*, and entred the Countries of

of *Ve xin* and *Ewe*, within the Archbishoprick of *Roan*, thence to *Deepe* and *Harflew*, with design to burn the *French* Fleet which lay there, but the Earl of St. *Paul* was entred the Town before, and so secured the Haven. Whereupon he returned through *Ponthieu*, where, before *Abeville*, Sir *Hugh de Chastelon* Master of the Crossbows in *France*, was taken, who with the Earl of St. *Paul* had before entred *Ponthieu*, and took it from the King of *England*; and having wasted the Country with Fire and Sword as they past along to *Calais*, staid there a while, and then took shipping for *England*, where he arrived about the Feast of St. *Martin* the Bishop in Winter.

This Earl [b] attended the King, when he took his Voyage to relieve *Thouars*, *an.* 46. *E.* 3. who directing his course towards *Rochel*, was not able to land by reason of contrary Winds and Tempests, but forced to return after nine weeks being tossed upon the Sea.

b *Froiss. l. i. c.* 305.

The year following, [c] he, with *William Nevil*, and Sir *Philip Courtney*, was sent to Sea, upon a rumour that *Jevan*, Prince of *Wales*, Son of Prince *Aymon*, was upon the English Coast with 6000 men, designing to land. The Earl had 40 Sail of Ships besides Barges, and 2000 men of Arms, besides Archers, and departing from *Cornwall* sailed to *Bretagne*, and coming to St. *Malo*, burnt seven great *Spanish* Ships in that Haven. Thence they sailed to *Brest*, and there relieved the Garrison (where Sir *Robert Knolls* was besieged by the Constable, Sir *Bertrand de Guesclin*) with men and provisions; which having done, they took shipping, with design to keep the Frontiers of *Bretagne* and *Normandy*, about which time the *King* had recruited them with 1000 men of Arms, and 2000 Archers. Hereupon he again went to *Brest*, with a resolution to fight the *French* that lay before it; but before he got thither, the Constable had withdrawn most of his men, to other Sieges, upon a Composition made with the Garrison, to surrender in case they were not relieved within 40 days, for performance of which they had taken Hostages. Upon the [d] Earls arrival, he sent to the Constable either to fight, or to return the Hostages, but he refused both; so the Earl having Victualled the Castle departed to Sea, and kept the Marches and Frontiers as before.

c *Ibid. c.* 308.

d *Ibid. c.* 309.

In the 50. year of King *Edward*'s Reign, he was [e] constituted Admiral of his Fleet, from the River *Thames*, towards the Western parts. And the following year, a [f] Commission issued to him and some others, to Array all able men from 16 to 60 years of Age in the County of *Dorset*, to be ready on occasion, to withstand an Invasion, and defend the Kingdom, there being apprehensions that the *French* would land.

e 16 *July Rot. Franc.* 50. *E.* 3. *m.* 14.
f 2 *Jan. Rot. Franc.* 51. *E.* 3. *m.* 8.

The first year of King *Richard* the Second, the *French* being on the Sea, this Earl was assigned to secure the Sea Coasts in the Counties of *Southampton* and *Dorset*; to which purpose, [g] Command was sent to the Knights and Gentry of those Counties, to be assistant to him. It appears also, that he was this year employed in [h] Sea service, and *an.* 2. *R.* 2. [i] constituted Governour of *Calais*. *An.* 8. *R.* 2. he, with divers others of the Nobility, had [k] Summons to appear at *New-Castle* upon *Tyne*, the 14. of *July* with Horse and Arms, thence to march against the *Scots*.

g 2 *July Pat.* 1. *R.* 2. *p.* 1. *m.* 29.
h *Rot Franc.* 1. *R.* 2. *m.* 17. 19. *&* 21.
i 2 *Febr. Rot. Franc.* 2. *R.* 2. *m.* 9.
k 13 *June Claus.* 8. *R.* 2. *m.* 3. *dorso.*

The [l] custody of the Isle of *Wight* and Castle of *Carbroke*, with the whole Demesne thereunto belonging was granted to him during his life, with all the profits, liberties, and advantages, as the King enjoyed them, without rendring any thing therefore; only, that he should maintain the Castle, and undergo all Charges of the Isle and Castle, as the Governors thereof usually had done.

l 19. *Aug. Pat.* 9. *R.* 2. *m.* 36.

He designe dto marry *Joane* Daughter to *Edmund Plantagenet*, Earl of *Kent*, and gained a Contract from her; but Sir *Thomas Holland*, in his [m] Petition to Pope *Clement* the Sixth, alledging a precontract from her with him, upon which carnal copulation followed, and being after in Foreign parts, this Earl contracted with her again, and unjustly withheld her from him, thereupon the Pope gave judgment against the Earl, who complying therewith, married another noble Lady, namely, [n] *Elizabeth* eldest Daughter, and after one of the three

His Wife and Children.
m *Lib. in Offic. Princip. Cantuar. vocat.* Islip. *f.* 178.
n *Brook in Salisbury.*

Co-heirs of *John* Lord *Mohun* (another of the Founders of this most Noble Order) who outlived her Lord, and had her Dower [o] assigned *an.* 21. *R.* 2.

By this Lady he had *William*, his only Son and Heir, unfortunately [p] slain at *Windesor*, *an.* 6. *R.* 2. by his own hand, in a Tilting; a place fatal also to his Father, who at the [q] Justs held there, *an.* 18. *E.* 3. was so sorely bruised, that he dyed soon after; so that [r] *John Mountacute*, his Cousin and Heir, Son and Heir of his Brother *John*, succeeded him in his Earldom.

This Earl dyed the [s] 3. of *June an.* 20. *R.* 2. having survived all the first Founders of this most Noble Order.

o 9 Dec. Claus. 21. R. 2. m. 3.
p Brook. loco cit.
q Hollinsh. p 366.
r Esc. 21. R. 2. n. 35. Claus. 21. R. 2. m. 8. & 16.
And Death.
s Esc. 21. R. 2. n. 35. Wilts.

(8.)

Roger Mortimer Earl of March.

HE was the Son of [t] *Edmund Mortimer* (Son and Heir of *Roger Mortimer*, first Earl of *March*) and [u] *Elizabeth* his Wife, Daughter of *Bartholomew de Badlesmere*, Baron of *Leeds*, (who after her Husbands death was married to *William Bohun* Earl of *Northampton*) born [w] towards the latter end of the first years Reign of King *Edward* the Third.

In the Voyage which this King made into *France*, in the 20. year of his Reign, he attended him, being yet under age; but before he went, the *King* [x] admitted Sir *Peter de Grandison*, and *William de Newenham* Clerk, to be his Guardians, and to prosecute and defend his Suits in any of the *King*'s Courts.

Upon his [y] Petition in Parliament, *an.* 28. E. 3. he obtained a revocation of the Judgment against his Grandfather (attainted of and executed for Treason, *an.* 4. E. 3.) and thereupon was restored in Blood, and to the Earldom of *March*, and to all his said Grandfathers Lands, Honors, and Possessions.

The next year he was made [z] *Custos* of the *Castle* of *Dover* and the *Cinque-Ports*, for life; and afterwards went beyond Sea in the *Kings* Service, in the Voyage which *John* of *Gaunt* made into *France*, upon the *French* Kings drawing down an Army towards *Calais*.

And in the Kings Expedition into *France*, (*an.* 33. *E.* 3.) upon which a Peace ensued, he [a] attended him with 500 men at Arms, and 1000 Archers.

He married [b] *Philippa* Daughter of *William Mountacute*, first Earl of *Salisbury*, and Sister to *William* Earl of *Salisbury*, one of the first Founders of the *Garter*, whose Will bears date the first day of *November*, *an. Dom.* 1378. in which she appoints her body to be buried, in the Conventual Church of the Holy Trinity, in the Priory of *Bistleham*, vulgarly called *Bysham Mountagu* in *Berkshire*; [c] where *an.* 1381. she was accordingly interred.

He dyed at [d] *Rovery* in *Burgundy* the 26. of *February* [e] *an.* 34. *E.* 3. as the King was upon his march in those Countries; and his [f] body, afterwards brought into *England*, was buried at *Wigmore* with his Ancestors.

t Brook. in March.
u Esc. 30. E. 3. Buck.
w Esc. 5. E. 3. n. 79.
x 20 June Rot. Franc. 20. E. 3. p. 1. m. 3.
y Rot. Parl. 28. E. 3.
z 8 Aug. Fines 29. E. 3.
a Froiss. l. 1. c. 207.
b Brook. loco supra citato.
c } Ex Codice
d } M. S. Miscell. Rob. Glover. Somerset. f. 150. b.
e Esc. 34. E. 3. n. 86.
f Ex Codice prad.

(9)

Sir John Lisle.

SIR *John Lisle*, was the [g] Son of *Robert* Lord *Lisle* (first summond to Parliament *an.* 5. *E.* 2. by the Title of *Robert de Lisle de Rubemont*) and of [h] *Margaret*, the Daughter of ------- *Feverell.*

His Father *Robert* being disposed to give to him 400 Marks *per annum* of Land, to serve the *King* with 6 men at Arms in his War, the *King* to gratifie the said *Robert*, and the better to support his Son, [i] granted that the said *Robert* might give him his Mannor of *Harwood*, with its appurtenances in *Yorkshire*, with other Lands to the annual value of 400 Marks, during his life, but afterwards to return to the said *Robert* and his Heirs: and some years after, his Brother *Robert* [k] released to him and his Heirs, all his right in the said Mannor, and in the Advowson of the Church there.

Being

g } God. M. S.
h } R. Glover. super Somerset. fol. 111. b.
i Pat. 10. E. 3. p. 2. m. 9.
k Claus. 18. E. 3. p. 1. m. 16.

Being thus provided for, he attended the King in his first Voyage into *France*, by the way of *Elanders*, *an.* 13. *E.* 3. and as [l] Sir *John Froissard* observes, was in the Battel designed to be fought near *Vironfosse*. Two years after he went into [m] *Aquitaine* in the *King*'s Service. And the [n] year ensuing, he attended the King in *Bretagne*, where he was one of the [o] Commanders left at the Siege of *Nants* in *Bretagne*, while the *King* foraged the Country, and laid Siege to *Dinant*.

For his good services done the *King*, he granted him a Pension of [p] 200 *l. per annum* for his life, to support his Degree of *Banneret*. This Pension was first appointed to be paid him out of the [q] *Exchequer*, until a Provision of Lands or Rents, to that yearly value, were made for him: but after there was assigned to him out of the Priory of [r] St. *Neats*, then of [s] *Stoke* nigh *Clare*, and of *Eye*, to wit, 120 *l. per annum* out of the Priory of *Stoke*, and 80 *l. per annum* out of that of *Eye*. Then 100 Marks was taken out of the Rent charge upon the Priory of *Eye*, and laid upon the Issues of the Counties of *Cambridge* and *Huntingdon*. And lastly, it came to be thus fetled, *viz.* [t] That he should receive out of the Issues of these two Counties 200 Marks *per annum*, and out of the issues of the Counties of *Bedford* and *Bucks*, the remaining sum of 100 Marks *per annum*. And having given him besides, for like services, another Pension for life of 40 *l.* a year out of his *Exchequer* also, he [u] appointed the payment of it out of the Farm of the Priory of St. *Neats*, during the War.

An. 25. *E.* 3. the *King* made him [w] *Sheriff* of the Counties of *Cambridge* and *Huntingdon*, and granted him the [x] Custody of the Castle of *Cambridge* for life.

He had by *Maud* his Wife two Sons, Sir [y] *Robert Lisle* Lord of *Rougemont* and *Wilbraham* (whose Heir male hath now his dwelling (as I am informed) at *Wilbraham* in *Cambridgshire*) and [z] Sir *William Lisle* Lord of *Cameldon* and *Shefford*, who died without Issue.

In the Prince's Expedition into *Gascoigne*, *an.* 29. E. 3. he [a] attended him, and had Command given him in the [b] main Body of the Army: But in the three days march into the Enemies Country, he was unfortunately hurt with a [c] *Quarrel* or *Bolt* shot out of a *Crosi-bow*, of which he dyed the [d] 14. of *October* in the same year, his Son *Robert* being then about [e] 22 years of age.

l *Hist. l.* 1. *c.* 41.
m *Rot. Vasc.* 15 *E.* 3. *m.* 15.
n *Rot. Franc.* 16. *E.* 3. *m.* 27.
o *Froiss. l.* 1. *c.* 94.
p 26. *Aug. Rot. Pat.* 20. *E.* 3. *p.* 3. *m.* 29.
q *Ibid.*
r *Pat.* 20. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 21.
s *Pat.* 29. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 29.
t 4 *Feb. Ibid.*
u *Extract. donat.* 20. *E.* 3. *m.* 6.
w *Extract. donat.* 25. *E.* 3. *m.* 2.
x *Extract.*
y *Collect.*
z *A. V. W.*
a *Rot. Vasc.* 29. *E.* 3. *m.* 8.
b *Stow. p.* 256.
c *Holinsh. p.* 384
d *Esc.* 30.
e *E.* 3. *n.* 40.

(10.)

Sir *Bartholomew Burghersh.*

SIR *Bartholomew Burghersh* was Son to *Bartholomew* Lord *Burghersh* (frequently distinguished by the Title of *Senior*) and *Elizabeth* one of the Daughters and Co-heirs of *Theobald de Verdon*. His Father was first summoned to Parliament, *an.* 1. *E.* 3. a person of great Council, and Valour, which laid a strong foundation for his Sons Honor, having been several times constituted [f] *Constable* of *Dover*, and the *Cinque-Ports*, he was also made [g] *Seneschal* and *Custos* of *Ponthieu* and *Monstriell*, [h] *Admiral* towards the *West*, [i] *Chamberlain* to the King, [k] *Lieutenant* of the *Tower* of *London*, [l] one of the *Custos*'s of *England*, and frequently employed in *Embassies*, and by [m] some (through mistake) made one of the first *Founders* of the *Garter*. But among these, enumerated in the preamble to the *Statutes*, both of *Institution*, (with their Exemplars) and those of King *Henry* the Fifth, he is called *Bartholomeus de Burghersh filius*, and *Bartholomew de Burghersh le filz.* (and so in divers places of our publick Records) though we have seen some transcripts of these *Statutes*, wherein the point hath been at the end of the Surname, and *filius* (so also *le filz*) joined to *Dom. Johannes de Beauchamp*. But this was a plain mistake of the Transcriber, since this *John* was never married.

His first martial Service was, when the [n] King went into *Bretagne*, *an.* 16. *E.* 3. Next he went with the [o] Prince in the Kings Expedition into *France*, *an.* 20. *E.* 3. where he [p] staid with him at the Siege of *Calais*. And for recompence of his Expences, in this Voyage, the King granted him the [q] Custody of all the Lands and

f *Rot. Fin.* 20. *E.* 2. *m.* 3. *Pat.* 1. *E.* 3. *p.* 3. *m.* 20. *Pat.* 19. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. 22. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 32. 23. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 17. 25. *E.* 3. *p.* 3 *m.* 1.
g *Pat.* 5. *E.* 3. *m.* 7.
h *Rot. Vasc.* 11. *E.* 3. & *Rot. Vasc.* 12. *E.* 3. *m.* 15.
i *Pat.* 21. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *dorso. m.* 24.
k *Pat.* 28. *E.* 3. *p.* 3.
l *Pat.* 29. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 11.
m *Camb. Brit.* 227.
n *Rot. Franc.* 16. *E.* 3. *m.* 26.
o *Rot. Franc.* 20. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 6.
p *Rot. Franc.* 21. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 6.
q *Rot. Pat.* 22. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 33.

and Tenements, which had belonged to *John de Loueyne* deceased, till his Heir should come of Age, without rendring any thing therefore.

The 23. year of King *Edward*, he went along with him into [r] *Gascoigne*. And again [s] thither with the Prince of *Wales*, *an.* 29. *E.* 3. and had [t] command in the main body of the Princes Army. The following year, as the [u] Prince retired from forraging the Country of *Berry*, and was got near *Romerentyne*, this Knight (whom *Froissard* in several places calls the Lord *Bartholomew Breches*, Sir *Bartholomew* [w] *de Bounes*, *de* [x] *Brennes*, and *de* [y] *Brunes*, but such mistakes are too frequent in that Author in this and other mens names, as also in the names of Places) was set upon by a *French* Ambushment, but he and his Troops so gallantly behaved themselves, that they kept the *French* in play, till the Prince drew near, upon the sight of whom they fled to *Romerentyne* (pursued by the *English*) and got into the Castle, which the Prince commanded Sir *John Chandos* to Summon; but they refusing to yield, after two desperate but fruitless assaults, the *English* set it on fire, which caused them speedily to surrender.

He [z] attended the King in his expedition into *France*, *an.* 33. *E.* 3. and towards the end of the year, *an.* 37. *E.* 3. [a] He and divers other Knights of the Court were sent to *Dover*, to wait upon *John* King of *France*, who, coming over to Visit King *Edward*, landed there the 4. of *January*, and was conducted by them to *Canterbury*, where having offered a rich Jewel at the Shrine of *Thomas Becket*, he after rode to *Eltham* to the King, and thence to the *Savoy*, where he was honorably entertained.

Half a year before this, we find the [b] King appointed the *Treasurer* of his *Chamber* to give him 200 *l.* upon the Debt due to him from the King, for the Count *de Vendedour* his Prisoner.

He had two Wives, the first was [c] *Cecily* Daughter and Heir to *Richard Weyland*, by whom he had divers Lands in the [d] Counties of *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Cambridge*, *Huntingdon*, *Essex*, and *Hertford*; by her he had [e] *Elizabeth* his Daughter and Heir, married to [f] *Edward le Despenser*.

His second Wife was [g] *Margaret*, Sister to Sir *Bartholomew Badlismere*, whom he left a Widow; but she afterwards married [h] *William de Burcester*, and dyed about the 18. year of King *Richard* the Second.

The [i] 5. of *April*, *an.* 43. *E.* 3. he dyed, leaving *Elizabeth* his Daughter and Heir, then about 24 years of age.

r *Rot. Vasc.* 23. *E.* 3. *m.* 1.
s *Rot. Vasc.* 29. *E.* 3. *m.* 8.
t *Stow p.* 256.
u *Froiss. l.* 1. *c.* 157.
w *Ib. c.* 208.
x *Ib. c.* 209.
y *Ib. c.* 219.
z *Ib. c.* 207.
a *Froiss. c.* 219.
b 22. *Junii. Liberate* 37. *E.* 3. *m.* 3.
c } *Clauf.* 9. *E.*
d } 3 *m.* 27.
e } *Clauf.* 43.
f } *E.* 3. *m.* 1. *Vide Esc.* 2. *R.* 2. *n.* 12.
g *Ex Collect. pref. R. Glov. S.*
h *Clauf.* 18. *R.* 2. *m.* 21.
i *Esc.* 43. *E.* 9. *p.* 1. *n.* 14.

(11.)

Sir *John Beauchamp*.

HE was a [k] younger Son to *Guy* Earl of *Warwick*, by *Alice* his Wife, and Brother to *Thomas* Earl of *Warwick*, one of the Founders of this most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*. He attended King *Edward* the Third into [l] *Flanders* in the 12. year of his Reign, and was in the [m] Battel pitcht between *Vyronfosse* and *Flamengery*, *an.* 13. *E.* 3. So also the following year in the [n] Naval fight at *Sluce*.

An. 15. *E.* 3. I find him stiled [o] *Banneret*; towards the support of which Dignity, he had a considerable Pension given him.

He attended the King in his Voyage into [p] *France*, *an.* 20. *E.* 3. and, at the Battel of *Cressy*, [q] carried the Kings Standard Royal. The following year, he [r] continued with the King at the Siege of *Calais*, till it was taken: And *an.* 22. *E.* 3. he was [t] constituted *Captain* of that Town. The next year made [u] *Admiral* of the Kings Fleet, from the River of *Thames* Westward. And having his Commission again [w] renewed for the custody of *Calais* to commence the first of *April*, *an.* 25. *E.* 3. he marched out of the Town with a Party of [x] 200 Archers, and 300 Men at Arms, and forraged the Country for 10 miles round: where meeting with 2000 Men at Arms, commanded by the Lord *Bealren*, encountred them, and slew the said Lord. But fresh Supplies coming in to the assistance of the *French*, they overpowr'd the *English*, and took this noble Knight Prisoner, who was exchanged within a short time after.

This

k *Rot. Js. Rot. dorso.*
l *Rot. Alman.* 12. E. 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 7.
m *Froiss Chron. l.* 1. *c.* 41.
n *Ibid. c.* 50:
o *Clauf.* 15. E. 2. *p.* 1. *m.* 39.
p *Rot. Franc.* 20. E. 3. *m.* 5.
q *Pat.* 25. E. 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 2.
r *Rot. Franc.* 21. E. 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 29.
t *Primo Jun. Rot. Franc.* 22. E. 3. *m.* 1.
u *Rot. Franc.* 23. E. 3. *m.* 1.
w 24 *Mar. Rot. Franc.* 25. E. 3. *m.* 11.
x *Knighton, in Hist. Angl. Script. Coll.* 2602.

This year the [y] Constableship of the *Tower* of *London* being resigned to him by *John Darcy*, who had a former Grant of it for life, the King confirmed the resignation to him, and for the Custody thereof, allowed him [z] 100 *l. per annum.*

y *Pat.* 34. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 45.

z *Liberate* 26. *E.* 3. *m.* 2.

He was again [a] constituted *Captain* of *Calais*, *an.* 29. *E.* 3. and of the Castle of *Guynes*, the Forts of *Merk*, *Colne*, *Fye*, and *Sandgate*; as also [b] *Admiral* from the River *Thames* Westward.

a *Rot. Franc.* 29. *E.* 3. *m.* 2.

b 5 *Mar. Ibid. m.* 14.

An. 31. *E.* 3. he had his Commission again [c] renewed for Custody of *Calais*, *Guynes*, and those before mentioned Forts.

c *Rot. Franc.* 31. *E.* 3. *m.* 18.

Two years after, he [d] attended the King in his Voyage Royal into *France*, and, upon the death of *Roger* Earl of *March*, was [e] constituted *Constable* of *Dover* Castle and the *Cinque-Ports*, the Kings Letters Patent bearing Teste [f] *primo Martii apud Goillioun in Burgundia.* This year he was made [g] *Constable* of the Tower of *London*, and also [h] *Admiral* of the Seas, for the South, North, and West Coast of *England*

d *Rot. Vasc.* 33. *E.* 3. *m.* 8.

e } *Rot. Franc.*
f } 34. *E.* 3. *m.* 45.

g *Pat.* 34. *E.* 3. *m.* 6. *p.* 1. *m.* 35.

h *Rot. Franc. de ead. an. m.* 6.

He was a man of eminent esteem with the King, and by his services deserved so well, that he confer'd on him both considerable Pensions, and several gifts, and from *an.* 24. *E.* 3. so long as he lived, received [i] Summons to Parliament.

i *Claus. de iisdem an. dorso.*

The first donation we have met with, was [k] *an.* 10. *E.* 3. when the King bestowed on him the Marriage of *Margaret*, the Relict of *John de Bohun* Earl of *Hereford.*

k 21 *Mar. Pat.* 10. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 31.

An. 19. *E.* 3. the King granted him a Pension of [l] 30 *l. per annum* out of his Exchequer, towards his expences in his service, (over and above 20 *l. per annum* formerly given him) till he should have Lands setled on him to that yearly value.

l 26 *Oct. Pat.* 19. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 12.

The [m] following year, the King gave him the Mannor of *Oddingle*, which *Thomas de Haukeston* held for life, after whose death it was to remain to this Sir *John*, and his Heirs for ever.

m 18 *Oct. Pat.* 20. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 31.

An. 22. *E.* 3. he had the [n] custody of the Lands of *Allan la Zouche* granted him, till his Heir came to full age, without rendring any thing theretofore.

n 18 *Mar. Pat.* 21. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 19.

The King had also given him out of the Exchequer a Pension of [o] 180 *l. per annum*, to support his Degree of *Banneret*, beside 20 *l. per annum* out of the *Customs*, until he should have 200 *l. per annum* in Lands, or Rents provided of that yearly value for his life. And upon his resignation of several Letters Patent of Pensions amounting to 280 *l. per annum*, he had the same annual sum [p] granted to him out of the Customs of *London* and St. *Botolphs* for his life also.

o *Pat.* 22. *E.* 3. *m.* 12.

p 17 *Mar. Pat.* 25. *E.* 3. *p.* 3. *m.* 24.

The next year, the King [q] granted to him the *Bailyweek* of *Cors* in *Gloucestershire*, till the full age of the Heir of *Edward le Dispenser* Knight, Cousin and Heir of *Hugh le Dispenser* then deceased.

q *Pat.* 23. *E.* 3. *m.* 24.

And lastly there being an Arrear of 50 *l.* at *Michaelmas* before he dyed, of the said 280 *l. per annum* formerly granted to him out of the Customs, as aforesaid, a Writ [r] issued to the *Collectors* of the Customs of St. *Botolphs*, to pay the same to *John*, the Son of *Giles Beauchamp* his Executor.

r *Claus.* 35. *E.* 3. *m.* 7.

He lived a Batchellor, and dyed the [t] 2. of *Dec. an.* 34. *E.* 3. and was buried on the South side of the Body of the Cathedral of St. *Paul London*; a Sculp of whose Monument is yet preserved in the [u] History of St. *Pauls*, by *William Dugdale* Esq; now *Norroy* King of Arms; which vulgarly (but falsely) was called Duke *Humfry*'s Tomb.

t *Esc. a.* 35. *E.* 3. *n.* 34.

u *Pag.* 52.

(12)

Sir *John Mohun.*

HE was Son to *John Mohun* and [w] *Sibyll*, the Daughter of *John de Segrave*, which *John* his Father dyed before his Grandfather, in *Scotland*, *an.* 4. *E.* 3. and lies buried at *York.* Shortly after his Grandfather, *John* Lord *Mohun* [x] died, at which time he was about [y] 10 years old; the custody of all his said Grandfathers Lands (he being by Inquisition found to be his Cousin and Heir) as

w *Claus.* 4. *E.* 3. *m.* 9.

x } *Esc.* 4. *E.* 3.
y } *n.* 34.

as also of his Marriage, was granted to [a] *Henry Burgherſh*, Biſhop of *Lincolne*, till he came of full age; the [b] 28. of *May an.* 18. *E.* 3. he did homage to the King, whereupon he had Livery of the ſaid Lands.

In the 16. year of King *Edward* the Third, he went over in the Kings Service into *Bretagne*, with Sir [c] *Bartholomew de Burgherſh*; as he did alſo with the ſaid Sir [d] *Bartholomew*, *an.* 19. *E.* 3.

The following year he attended the [e] Prince of *Wales*, when King *Edward* entred *France* by *Normandy*, and [f] continued in ſervice at the Siege of *Calais*; and the [g] following year was again ſent into *France*.

The laſt Martial ſervice we find him employed in, was [h] *an.* 29. *E.* 3. when he attended the Prince of *Wales* into *Gaſcoigne*.

An. 16. *E.* 3. which was ſoon after he came of age, he was ſummoned to Parliament, from whence the ſummons were [k] continued till *an.* 47. *E.* 3.

He married *Joane*, Daughter to Sir *Bartholomew Burgherſh* the elder, Siſter to Sir *Bartholomew Burgherſh*, one of the Founders of this moſt Noble Order (who died on * *Saturday* next after the Feaſt of St. *Michael an.* 6. *H.* 4.) and had by her three Daughters and Co-heirs, namely *Elizabeth*, Wife to *William Mountague* Earl of *Salisbury*, another of the Founders of the Order; *Philippa*, Wife to *Edmond* Duke of *York* and *Albemarle*; and *Maude*, Wife of *John* Lord *Strange* of *Knocking*; whoſe Son *Richard* came to inherit a large Eſtate after the death of his Aunts, *Elizabeth* and *Philippa*, they dying without Iſſue.

a *Pat. de eod. an p.* 1. *m.* 4.
b *Clauſ.* 18. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 2.
c *Rot. Fr.* 16. *E.* 3. *m.* 24.
d *Rot. Fr.* 19. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 13.
e *Rot. Fr.* 20. *E* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 14.
f *Rot. Franc. de eod. an. p.* 2. *m.* 11. *& Rot. Franc.* 21. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 13.
g *Rot. Fr.* 22. *E* 3. *m* 19.
h *Rot. Vaſc.* 29. *E.* 3. *m.* 3.
k *Clauſ. de iiſdem an. dorſ.*
* *Eſc.* 6. *H.* 4. *n.* 33.

(13)

Sir *Hugh Courtney*.

THIS *Hugh Courtney*, was eldeſt Son of *Hugh Courtney*, ſecond Son of *Hugh Courtney*, firſt Earl of *Devonſhire* of that name (his eldeſt Son [l] *John* having taken on him a religious life, was made [m] Abbot of *Taveſtock*) and [n] *Margaret* ([o] Daughter of *Henry Bohun*, Earl of *Hereford*) his Wife. He was born 11. *Cal. Apr an.* 1. *E.* 3. and commonly called [p] *Hugh Courtney junior*, in regard his Father was living.

He [q] attended the Kingin his Expedition into *France*, *an.* 20. *E.* 3. and in the following year, being among other brave Martialiſts in the Tornament at *Eltham*, he had [r] given him by the King a Hood of White Cloth, embroidered with men in the poſtures of dancing, button'd with large Pearls.

He had a Son named [s] *Hugh*, who married *Maud*, Daughter to *Thomas Holland* Earl of *Kent*, one of the Founders of the *Garter*, but had no Iſſue by her; and ſhe after his death became Wife to [t] *Waleran* Earl of St. *Paul*.

He died [u] *an.* 40. *E.* 3. and his Son alſo died; *Hugh Courtney* ſecond Earl of *Devonſhire*, Father to the former, and Grandfather to the later, ſurviving both; after whoſe death, [w] *Edward*, Son to his Brother *Edward*, Nephew and Heir to his Father, ſucceeded him in the Earldom.

l { *Monaſt.* m { *Angl. vol.* 1. *pag.* 789. *a.*
n *Eſc.* 51. *E.* 3. *n.* 6. *& Eſc.* 15. *R.* 2. *n.* 10.
o *Monaſt. Angl. loco cit.*
p *Rot. Fin.* 20. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 13.
q *Rot. Fr.* 20. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 13.
r *Compot. Joh. Coke Cler. mag. Gardrob. R. in Scacc. penes Remem. Regis.*
s *Eſc.* 51. *E.* 3. *n* 6.
t *MS. in Bibl. Bodl. K.* 84. (*inter Cod. Cant.*) *p.* 147. *b*
u *Eſc.* 48. *E.* 3. *n.* 7.
w *Eſc.* 51. *E.* 3. *n.* 6.

(14)

Sir *Thomas Holland*.

HIS Father was *Robert* Lord *Holland* of [a] *Holland* in *Lancaſhire*, firſt ſummoned to Parliament [b] *an.* 8. *E.* 2. and he his ſecond Son by [c] *Maud*, Daughter and Heir of *Alan la Zouche*.

An. 16. *E.* 3. he, with [d] Sir *John Dartuell* were ſent to *Bayon*, with 200 men at Arms, and 400 Archers, to keep the Frontiers; the [e] following year he went again into *France*. The King having granted to him 40*l. per annum*, for his good ſervice, till Lands of that yearly value were provided for him, [f] appointed it to be paid him out of the Farm Priory of *Haylyng*, during the War with his Adverſary of *France*.

a *Collect. A.V.W*
b *Clauſ. de eod. an.*
c *Cod. MS. Miſcel. R. Glover Somerſ.*
d *Froiſſ. lib.* 1. *cap.* 90.
e *Rot. Fr.* 17. *E.* 3. *m.* 13.
f 21. *Oct. Clauſ.* 19. *E* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 10.

The

The next year he gave his Mother *Maud* [g] license to infeoffe him of the Manors of *Hals*, *Brackeley*, and *Kyngsutton*, to hold to him and his Heirs for ever. And shortly after [h] he attended the King into *Normandy*, where he had a command under the [i] Earl of *Warwick*: At the taking of *Caen* (in this Expedition) the [k] Earl of *Eu* and *Guynes*, Constable of *France*, and the Earl of *Tankervile* (who defended it for the *French*) seeing this Knight (whom *Froissard* notes to have but one Eye) as having formerly known him in *Prussia*, *Granada*, and other places, called to him, and yielded themselves and 25 Knights his Prisoners. After he had secured them, he again took Horse and rode into the Streets, where he preserved the lives of many Ladies, Maidens, and Religious Women. [l] Afterwards the King bought of him the said Earl of *Eu*, for [m] 80000 Florens *de Scuto*, six of which went to a Pound *English* money.

Not long after, when the [n] Army lefr *Poyssy*, he with Sir *Reginald Cobham* having command of the Rear, upon the Townsmens revolt, and killing some few of the *English* Souldiers that stayed behind, returned, and burnt the Town, razed the two Castles, and slew most of the Inhabitants. At the Battel of [o] *Cressy* he had command in the *Van*, under the Prince of *Wales*; and was at the [p] Siege of *Calais*.

The [q] 24. of *August*, *an.* 26. *E.* 3. the King granted to him and *Joane* his Wife na annual Pension of 100 Marks out of his *Exchequer*, towards her support during her life; but in case her Brother *John* Earl of *Kent* died without Issue, and she enjoyed his Estate, then the payment of the said Pension to cease.

An. 27. *E.* 3. he was summoned to *Parliament*: and the next year [r] constituted the Kings *Lieutenant* and *Captain* in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, and in the parts of *Poiction* adjoining to that Dukedom, and of all other places belonging to *John* Duke of *Bretagne* then a minor, and under the Guardianship of the King; and [s] towards his expences and the maintenance of his Army while he stayed there, he had allowed him all the profits and issues of the said Dukedom, without rendring any account or profit to the King. The 11. of *November* following, this *Commission* was renewed, and thereupon he [t] continued in *Bretagne* all that Winter; and the [u] 8. of *February* following it was again renewed to him, to hold from the [w] 13. of *April* then next coming for one whole year; but before half that time was expired, *Henry* Duke of *Lancaster* was constituted the Kings *Lieutenant* there, and the said [x] *Thomas* command to surrender to him or to his Deputy, all that was within his command.

It appears, [y] that his servants, making provision at *Totnes* in *Devonshire*, for his, and his Ladies passage for *Bretagne*, were robbed of as many of his Goods as were valued at 200 *l.* which accident retarding his passage, the King upon his complaint, [z] sent forth his Writ to *John de Stonford*, *John de Ferers*, Knights, and *Roger Pyperell*, to enquire into the matter.

Afterwards, he had [a] granted to him the custody of the Fort and Place of *Cruyck* in *Normandy*, part of the Kings late Conquests, with all the Revenues and Profits thereto belonging, to hold during pleasure: and a command was given to *Donald Aselrig*, *Lewis Clifford*, and *Walter Mewe*, to deliver them up to him or his Lieutenant.

[b] *An.* 32. *E.* 3. he and his Lady went into *Normandy*, and the ensuing year the [c] custody of the Castle and Fort of St. *Saviours le Viscount*, and of all the [d] Castles, *&c.* that were Sir *Geoffry de Harecourts* was committed to him; as also that of [e] *Barflu* in *Normandy*. And shortly after, *Philip* of *Navarre* Earl of *Longueville*, Lord of *Castell*, and this Noble Lord were [f] constituted the Kings *Lieutenants* and *Captains* in *Normandy*, *conjunctim & divisim* during pleasure: But the * following year these Dignities were committed to him alone.

He married *Joane*, Daughter of *Edmund* of *Woodstock* Earl of *Kent*, Sister and [g] Heir of *John* Earl of *Kent*, in whose right he sate in [h] Parliament *an.* 34. *E.* 3. as Earl of that County; after whose death *Edward* Prince of *Wales* married her, whose Widow she remained till *an.* 9. *R.* 2. and then [i] died.

By this Lady he had Issue, two Sons; * *Thomas Holland* Earl of *Kent*, and *John Holland* Earl of *Huntingdon* and Duke of *Exceter*; as also two Daughters,

g 28. *June Pat.* 20. *E.* 3. *p* 2. *m.* 28.
h *Rot. Fr.* 20. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 3.
i *Froiss. c.* 122.
k *Ibid. c.* 123. *& cap.* 124.
l } *Rot. factu*
m } *apud Calef.* 21. *E.* 3. *m.* 8.
n *Ibid. c.* 125.
o *Ibid. c.* 128.
p *Rot. Fr.* 21. *E.* 3 *p.* 1. *m.* 1.
q *Pat.* 26. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 13.
r } 18. *Mar.*
s } *Rot. Franc.* 28. *E.* 3. *m.* 8.
t *Ibid. m.* 3.
u } *Rot. Fr.*
w } 29. *E.* 3. *m.* 14.
x *Ibid. m.* 6.
y *Rot. Fr.* 29. *E.* 3. *m.* 14.
z 26. *Mar. Pat.* 28. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 18. *dorso.*
a 18. *Nov. Rot. Franc.* 31. *E.* 3. *m.* 5.
b *Rot. Fr.* 32. *E.* 3. *m.* 7.
c 7. *Febr. Rot. Fr.* 33. *E.* 3. *m.* 19.
d 6. *Oct. Ib. m.* 7
e 28. *Oct. Rot. Franc.* 33. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 6.
* *Rot. Fr.* 34. *E.* 3. *m.* 5.
g *Esc.* 26. *E.* 3. *n.* 54.
h *Claus.* 34. *E.* 3. *m.* 4. *dorso.*
i *Esc.* 9. *R.* 2. *n.* 54.
* *Boork in Kent & Huntingdon*

Joane and[k] *Maude*, the later was Wife to *Hugh Courtney*, eldeſtSon to Sir *Hugh Courtney*, one of the *Founders* of this *Order*, *an.* 39. *E.* 3.

This noble Earl, after the performance of many brave acts in the Kings Service, died the [l] 26. of *December*, *an.* 34. *E.* 3. *Thomas* his Son and Heir being then much about the tenth year of his age.

k *Pat.* 39. *E.* 3. p. 1. *Esc.* 48. *E.* 3. n. 14. & *Esc.* 51. *E.* n. 6.

l *Esc.* 35. *E.* 3. n. 104.

(15)

Sir *John Grey* of *Codnore*.

HE was[m] eldeſt Son of *Richard* Lord *Grey* of *Codnore* in *Derbyſhire* (by [n] *Jane* his Wife) who had been [o] Seneſchal of *Gaſcoigne*, in the Reign of King *Edward* the Second.

In that notable and famous Expedition made into *Scotland*, [p] *an.* 7. *E.* 3. he had Command, where his valour was ſo far taken notice of, that not long after, the King in [q] part of recompence thereof, and of his [r] great expences in thoſe Wars, acquitted him of all ſuch debts as he then owed unto his Exchequer.

Towards the end of the [s] 9. year of *E.* 3. he went again to the Wars of *Scotland* (being of the Retinue of *Hugh Audley*) and [t] two years after, in another Expedition then made thither.

An. 12. *E.* 3. he [u] attended the King into *Flanders*, and [w] *an.* 14. *E.* 3. went over thither, when by the way, that famous Naval Fight hapned neer *Sluce*. The following year he undertook employment in the [x] *Scotiſh* Wars. *An.* 18. *E.* 3. he with *Nicholas de Langford* and *Edward de Chandos* were [y] aſſigned to Array all able men in *Derbyſhire*, from 16 to 60 years of age, and to have them in readineſs to march with them, or others whom the King ſhould appoint, within three days warning againſt the *Scots*, then ready to invade this Kingdom.

The following year, he went in the [z] Retinue of *Henry* Earl of *Derby* into *Gaſcoigne*; and in regard he ſtayed there the next year in the Kings Service, his [a] Lands in *Kent* were exempted from finding men for guarding the Sea-Coaſts. With this Earl he returned to *England*, and went to *Calais* in his Retinue, [b] *an.* 21. *E.* 3. and ſtayed there the [c] following year.

There being an Invaſion threatned by the *French an.* 26. *E.* 3. he was [d] joined in Commiſſion with the Lord *Deyncourt*, to Array all able perſons in *Derbyſhire* and *Nottinghamſhire*, and to conduct them to ſuch places, as might ſtand in need of them, for defence of the Realm.

He went in the Expedition which the foreſaid [e] Earl made into *Bretagne*, *an.* 29. *E.* 3. And after attended the [f] King in his Voyage royal into *France*, *an.* 33. *E.* 3. and the ſame year was [g] conſtituted *Governour* of the Town and Caſtle of *Rocheſter* for life.

More of his Military Services we find not, before he obtained the Kings Licenſe [h] *an.* 39. *E.* 3. to go on Pilgrimage. And *an.* 45. *E.* 3. being grown [i] very aged and not able to endure Travel, he obtained a ſpecial [k] Diſpenſation (wherein his many and great Services performed with much fidelity and valour, are by the King acknowledged) to exempt him from coming to *Parliaments* (to which he had received Summons, from the time of his Fathers death, which hapned [l] *an.* 9. *E.* 3.) and Councils; and charging him with ſetting forth of Soldiers in the Wars for the future.

He married [m] *Alice de Inſula*, by whom he had [n] *Henry* his eldeſt Son, who married [o] *Joane* Daughter of *Reginald Cobham* of *Sterborough*, but died before his Father, and *John* his ſecond Son, who both went in the [p] Retinue of *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*, in his Expedition into *France*, *an.* 43. *E.* 3. and *Alice*, a Daughter, Wife of [q] *William*, Son of Sir *Adam de Everingham*, of *Laxton* in the County of *Nottingham*.

m { *Clauſ.* 11. n { *E.* 3. p. 1. m. 21. *dorſo.*

o *Rot. Vaſc.* 6. *E* 3 m. 1.

p *Rot. Scot.* 7. *E.* 3. m. 31.

q { *Clauſ.* 9. *E.* r { 3. m. 8. *Dorſo.*

s *Rot. Scot.* 9. *E.* 3. m. 33.

t *Rot. Scot.* 11. *E.* 3. m 4.

u *Rot. Alman.* 12. *E.* 3. m. 6.

w *Rot. Alman.* 14. *E.* 3. m. 6.

x *Rot. Scot.* 15. *E* 3. m. 2.

y *Rot. Scot.* 18. *E.* 3. m. 9.

z *Rot. Fr.* 19. *E.* 3 p. 1. m. 15.

a *Rot. Fr.* 20. *E.* 3. m. 10. *Dorſo.*

b *Rot. Fr.* 21. *E.* 3 m. 8.

c *Rot. Fr.* 22. *E.* 3. m. 4.

d *Rot. Fr.* 26. *E.* 3. m. 5.

e *Rot. Fr.* 29. *E* 3. m. 5.

f *Rot. Fr.* 33. *E.* 3. m. 6.

g *Rot. Fin.* 33. *E.* 3. m. 9.

h *Pat.* 39. *E.* 3. p. 1. m. 7.

i { *Pat.* 45. *E.* k { 3. p. 1. m. 16.

l *Eſc.* 9. *E.* 3. n. 45.

m { *Collect. W.* n { *D. N.* o

p *Rot. Fr.* 45. *E.* 3. m. 13. & 15.

q *Collect. R. Glov. Somerſ.*

16. Sir

(16.)
Sir *Richard Fitz Simon.*

WE have met with little concerning this Noble Knight; but that he had command under [r] *Henry* of *Lancaster* Earl of *Derby*, in *Gascoigne*, *an.* 19. *E.* 3. The following year he went with [s] *Robert Ufford* Earl of *Suffolk*, when he attended the King in his Expedition into *France*, [t] *An.* 21. *E.* 3. he was imployed in the Kings Service beyond Sea; and lastly, he was in command under the [u] Prince of *Wales*, *an.* 22. *E.* 3. and in these Expeditions he performed so great Services, that he was thought worthy to be Elected one of the first *Founders* of this most Noble *Order*.

r *Rot. Franc.* 19. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 15.
s *Rot. Franc.* 20. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 11.
t *Rot. Franc.* 21. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 14.
u *Rot. Franc.* 22. *E.* 3. *m.* 4.

(17.)
Sir *Miles Stapleton.*

THis Sir *Miles Stapleton* was Son and Heir to Sir *Miles Stapleton*, of *Bedall* in the County of *York* Knight.

His first employment in the Wars, was, when King *Edward* the Third made his Expedition into [w] *Bretagne*. He also [x] attended the King in his Voyage Royal into *France*, *an.* 20. *E.* 3. and lay at the Seige before *Calais*. [z] *An.* 23. *F.* 3. about the Month of *July* he was employed in the Kings Service beyond Sea; and the like [a] *an.* 29. *E.* 3.

In the 30. year of King *Edward* the Third, [b] *Philip*, Brother to the King of *Navarre* (taken Prisoner by the *French* King the year before) came over into *England*, and obtained assistance for recovery of his Lands in *Normandy*: whereupon the King joyned to him this Sir *Miles Stapleton*, a man of great integrity and in martial affairs very skillful, as *Froissard* Characterizeth him. These two, with 2000. men passed through *Normandy*, and, as they marched, took and burnt several Towns and Fortresses, till they came within 9. Leagues of *Paris*, and did not retreat, till they had forced the *French* to enter into Truce for a Year. For this Expedition the said *Philip* of *Navarre*, was [c] constituted the Kings *Captain* and *Lieutenant* in the Dutchy of *Normandy*.

In consideration of the [d] constant fidelity and eminent valour of this Noble Knight, as also his great service in the Wars, the King [e] granted to him a Pension of 100*l.* *per annum* out of his Exchequer for life, until he had that annual value in Lands or Rents provided for him. And shortly after, Upon information that several injuries and damages had been done to the *French* by the *English*, after and against the Truce taken near *Chartres*, the King, desirous that it should be kept without violation, and the infringers thereof punished: [f] constituted him with Sir *Nele Loring*, and Sir *Richard Stafford*, his Commissioners, [g] to inform themselves of the way and manner how these injuries might be discovered and repaired, and gave them power to arrest and imprison, to seize and confiscate their Estates, and to punish them according as they deserved.

He married [h] *Joane* the Daughter and Heir of *Oliver de Ingham*, and [i] Relict of *Roger le Strange*; and dyed on [k] *Wednesday* next before the Feast of St. *Nicholas*, *an.* 38. *E.* 3. leaving his Son *Miles*, then about 20 years of age. The Custody of his Lands was [l] granted to the *Queen*, who [m] granted it to *Bryan Stapleton* Knight, *John de Boys*, and *Roger de Boys*, till his said Son came of age; which Grant the King confirmed the same day by his Letters Patent. He and his Wife were both buried at the House of [n] *Ingham* founded by his Mothers Ancestors.

w *Rot. Franc.* 16. *E.* 3. *m.* 20.
x *Rot. Franc.* 20. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 14.
y *Rot. Franc.* 21. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 15.
z *Rot. Franc.* 23. *E.* 3. *m.* 6.
a *Rot. Franc.* 29. *E.* 3. *m.* 8.
b *Froissard l.* 1. *c.* 258.
c 16. *Jan. Rot. Franc.* 31. *E.* 3. *m.* 2.
d 21. *June.*
e *Pat.* 34. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 30.
f 3. *July.*
g *Rot. Franc.* 34. *E.* 3. *m.* 5.
h *Pat.* 25. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 22.
i *Ib. m.* 21.
k *Esc.* 1. *R.* 2. *n.* 32.
l 21. *Feb.* 39. *E.* 3.
m 12. *May following.*
n *Collect. Fr. Thynn Lancast. penes Will. Peirpoint Ar.*

(18.)
Sir *Thomas Wale.*

HE was the Son of [o] Sir *Thomas Wale*, and [p] *Lucy* his Wife; which *Lucy* held the Mannor of *Wedon-Pinkney*, in the County of *Northampton*, with its appurtenances, in her Demesne as of Fee of the King *in Capite*, as of the Fee *Pinkney*,

o *Esc.* 17. *E.* 3. *n.* 40.
p

ney, by the service of one Knights Fee: and long before her death she setled the said Mannor on this Sir *Thomas* and his Heirs, as appears by the * Inquisition taken after her death, wherein the said Sir *Thomas* is found to be her next Heir, and then about 40 years of age.

* *Ibid.*

He attended the King into [q] *Flanders*, *an.* 12. *E.* 3. and had command under *William de Bohun* Earl of *Northampton*, in the Expedition which the King made into *Bretagne*, [r] *an.* 16. *E.* 3. so also beyond Sea in the Kings service, with *Richard* Earl of *Arundel*, [s] *an.* 18. *E.* 3.

q *Rot. Alman.* 12. E. 3. p. 1. m. 3.
r *Rot. Fr.* 16. E. 3 m. 36.
s *Rot. Fr.* 18. E. 3. m. 23.

We find not that he had any issue by his Wife [t] *Nichola*, who out-lived him; but that his three [u] Sisters were his Heirs, namely, [w] *Margaret*, the Wife of------ *Malorre*; *Alice*, of *Thomas Chamberlain*; and *Julian*.

t, u { *Esc.* 26. *E.* 3. n. 21. w { *North.*

He dyed in *Gascoigne*, on [x] *Tuesday* next after the Feast of St. *Michael* the Archangel, *an.* 26. *E.* 3. being a [y] Knight of great vertue and worthiness: so that, of all the Stalls of the first *Founders*, his first became void; into which succeeded *Reginald* Lord *Cobham*, of *Sterborough*.

x *Ibid.*
y *Hist. Tho de la Mare, vide Stow. Chron. p.* 253.

(19.)

Sir *Hugh Wrottesley*

SIR *Hugh Wrottesley* was Son to [a] Sir *William Wrottesley* of *Wrottesley* in the County of *Stafford* Knight.

a *Ex Autogr. penes Walt. Wrottesley de Wrottesley in Com. Staff. Baronet.* 9. *Apr.* 1663.

It appears, that [b] *an.* 8. *E.* 3. he designed a Voyage to the *Holy-Land*, and to that end had obtained the [c] Kings Letters for appointing *Peter de Hoe* and *Thomas de Cheney* his Attornies, during his absence, to prosecute his Suits in any Court of *England*.

b, c { *Pat.* 8. *E.* 3. p. 1. m. 22.

An. 12. *E.* 3. he went in the Kings Service into [d] *Flanders*, when the King went over thither to confer with his Allies. And at the [e] Siege of *Calais*, he had the Kings Licence to inclose his Wood at *Wrottesley*, and make a Park. [f] Two years after, for his good service, he granted to him the Custody of the Lands and Tenements which were *William de Vilatenhall* deceased, till his Heirs came of age, with the marriages of them, without rendring any thing theretofore.

d *Rot. Alman.* 12. E. 3. m 3. p. 1.
e *Rot. Chart. & Pat. apud Calef.* 21. E. 3. m. 5.
f *Rot. Pat.* 23. E. 3. p. 3. m. 33.

An. 24. *E.* 3. the King [g] granted him a Pension of 40 *l. per annum* out of his *Exchequer*, for his life; upon the surrender of which Letters Patent, he [h] granted him 40 *l. per annum* to be thus received, *viz.* 16 *l.* 4 *s.* 4 *d.* out of the Farm of the Villages of *Mere* and *Clent*, 11 *l.* 10 *s.* out of the Farm of the Village of *Swinford*, 11 *l.* out of the Farm of the Village of *Kinefare* and *Tetenhale*, and 1 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.* out of the Farm of the Foresters Fee of *Tedesley*, to hold for life, or till he had 40 *l. per annum* in Lands or Rents, setled on him for life; yet to be answerable for the overplus being 1 *s.* 8 *d.* These last Letters Patent were confirmed to him by King *Richard* the Second, in the first year of his Reign. [i]

g 16. *Oct. Pat.* 24. E. 3. p. 3. m. 17.
h 20. *May Pat.* 25. E. 3. p. 2. m. 21.
i 27. *Jan. Pat.* 1. R. 2. m. 31.

He married [k] *Mabill*, the Daughter of Sir *Philip ap Rees*, and *Joane* his Wife, by whom he had issue [l] *John*, whose heir male in a direct line is Sir *Walter Wrottesley* of *Wrottesley*, in the County of *Stafford*, Baronet, now living. He also had to his second Wife [m] *Isabel*, Daughter of [n] *John Arderne* of *Aldeford*, *Aderlegh*, and *Edds*. And dyed the [o] *Monday* after the Feast of St. *Vincent*, *an.* 4. *R.* 2.

k *Esc.* 43. E. 3.
l *S. Eardswicke's view of Staffordshire.*
m *Ex ipso Autogr. penes præf. Walt. Wrottesley.*
n *MS. in Offic. Arm* [*C.* 10.] *fol.* 126.
o *Esc.* 4. *R.* 2. *n.* 61. *Heref.*

(20.)

Sir *Nele Loring.*

AT the Naval Fight before *Sluce*, his Valour was so remarkable, that it gained him the Honor of Knighthood, to which the King immediately added a [q] Donation of 20 *l. per annum*, to him and his Heirs males, for the better support of that Dignity, till Lands of the like annual value were provided for him and them: These Letters Patent bear *Teste* at *Sluce*, [r] 26. of *June*, in the 14. year of the Kings Reign over *England*, and his first of *France*.

q, r { *Vide Comun. de Ter. Trin.* 15. E. 3 m. 3. *dorso*, & *Pat.* 31. E. 3. p. 3. m. 6.

In

In the Kings Expedition into [f] *Bretagne*, he attended him thither, and *an.* 18. E. 3. went beyond Sea in his Service. In the beginning of the following year, [t] he and *Michael Northburgh*, Canon of *Lichfeild* and *Hereford*, were sent to the *Pope*'s Court, with the *Kings Letter* (dated 23. *Feb. an.* 19. *E.* 3.) to obtain a Dispensation for the marriage of the Prince of *Wales*, with the Daughter of the Duke of *Brabant*. At his return he went with [u] *Henry de Lancaster* Earl of *Derby*, into *Gascoigne*, where he [w] stayed the following year: After which coming over into *England*, he within a short time [x] returned to his Commands in *Gascoigne*.

An. 29. *E.* 3. he [y] attended the *Prince* of *Wales* in his Expedition into *Gascoigne*, and being [z] specially assigned to attend his person in the Battel at *Poictiers*, he performed his duty so well, that he received both * acknowledgments and rewards from the Prince, for that days service. He was afterwards [a] appointed by King *Edward*, to be one of his Commissioners, for receiving the possession of all Countries, Cities, Forts, &c. that by the Treaty of Peace near *Chartres* were to be delivered to him.

When the *Prince* of *Wales* was created Prince of *Guyenne*, he [b] attended him thither again, and there [c] continued four years; whence returning into *England* he stayed not long, but [d] went back again, and remained there three years. After which, coming into *England*, and being again sent into *Aquitaine*, [e] Writs were directed to *Robert de Ashton*, Admiral towards the West, for the passage of him and Sir *John de la Haye*, their Soldiers and Retinue; and this year he was one of those *Knights* of the Prince's Retinue, sent to meet [f] Sir *Robert Knolls*, at his coming out of *Bretagne*, whom they met at *Quercy*, and assisted at the Sieges of [g] *Durmel* and *Domme*, both which, though they thought fit to break up, yet marching further into the Country, they took *Gauaches*, *Freins*, *Rochmador*, and *Ville Franche*, upon the marches of *Tholouze*.

He was an active man, and did King *Edward* great services, which induced him to confer many favours on him, in recompence thereof; as first, he [h] granted him a Pension of 5 *l.* a year, during his life, to be paid him by the Abbess of *Burnham*, out of the 15 *l. per annum* she was to pay into the Exchequer, for the Fee Farm of the Mannor of *Bollestrade*. Next, he [i] granted him a Pension of 20 Marks *per annum* for his life, out of his Exchequer, until Lands of the yearly value of 10 *l.* should be setled on him. The following year he [k] granted him all the Lands and Tenements belonging to *John*, the Son of *Henry de Morff*, in *Alnetheley* in *Shropshire*, which, by forfeiture of the said *John* Escheated to the King, to hold to him and his Heirs for ever. Besides these, the *Prince* having retained him in his service, as well in Peace as for War, granted to him for life a Pension of 50 *l. per annum*, and that it might be more certainly paid, he after granted to him his Mannors of *Neuyn* and *Purchely* in *North Wales* for life, which the King [l] confirmed.

Afterwards, *Henry* Earl of *Lancaster*, the Kings Lieutenant in *Aquitaine*, for the good service this Knight had formerly done the King in *England*, *Scotland*, and elsewhere, and also to himself in *Gascoigne*, by Letters Patent dated the 12. of *November an. Dom.* 1346. gave him for his life *Pedalium Sancti Macharii*, with all the profits thereto belonging; which grant the King [m] confirmed to him, *an.* 22. *E.* 3.

This noble Knight was Son and Heir of [n] *Roger Loring* and [o] *Cassandra*, Daughter of *Reginald Perot*. He married [p] *Margaret*, Daughter and Heir of Sir *Ralph Beauple* of *Cnubeston*, in *Devonshire*, by [q] *Elizabeth* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Alan Bloyho* (the relict of *Stephen Tinterne* Esq;) by whom he had Issue, two Daughters and Heirs, namely [r] *Isabel* Wife to *Robert* Lord *Harington*; and [s] *Margaret* Wife to [t] *John Peyvre* of *Tuddington*, in the County of *Bedford*.

He died [u] *an.* 9. *R.* 2. and was buried in the [w] Priory of *Dunstable*, to which he had been a great Benefactor.

[f] *Rot. Fr.* 16. E. 3. *m.* 24.
[t] *Rot. Rom.* 19. E. 3. *m.* 4.
[u] *Rot. Fr.* 19. E. 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 15.
[w] *Rot. Fr.* 20. E. 3 *p.* 1. *m.* 6.
[x] *Rot. Fr.* 21. E 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 20.
[y] *Rot. Vasc.* 29. E. 3. *m.* 8.
[z] * *Pat* 33. E. 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 20.
[a] *Prim. Jul.*, *Rot. Vasc.* 35. E. 3. *m.* 8.
[b] *Rot. Vasc.* 36. E. 3. *m.* 4. & 6.
[c] *Rot. Vasc.* 39. E. 3. *m.* 5.
[d] *Rot. Vasc.* 40. E. 3. *m.* 14.
[e] *Rot. Vasc.* 43. E. 3. *m.* 4.
[f] *Hollinsh. pag.* 402.
[g] *Ibid.* 403.
[h] 6. *Oct. Pat.* 9. E. 3. *m.* 19.
[i] 24. *Sept. apud Antwerp. Pat.* 12. E. 3.
[k] *Pat. concess. hominib. Angl. & Vasc.* 13. E. 3. *m.* 10.
[l] 30. *Apr. Pat.* 23. E. 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 3.
[m] 26. *Apr. Rot. Vasc.* 22. E. 3. *m.* 34.
[n] *Rot. Vasc.* 43. E. 3. *m.* 3.
[o] *Coll. A.V. W.*
[p] *Coll. W. D. N.*
[q] *Coll. A.V. W.*
[r] } *Esc.* 9. *R.* 2. *n.* 20.
[s] }
[t] *Inscript. Tumuli apud Tuddington.*
[u] *Esc.* 9. *R.* 2. *n.* 20.
[w] *Itiner. Joh. Leland part* 6. *fol.* 76.

21. Sir

(21.)

Sir *John Chandos.*

THE first Martial Action of his, was at St. *Quintins*; for while King *Edward* (in the 13. year of his Reign) lay at siege before *Cambray* (being the first Town he sate down before, upon his first entrance into *France*) the Earl of *Henault* made an assault upon St. [a] *Quintins*, where this Esquire (so then called by Sir *John Froissard*) fought valiantly with *John de St. Dager* an Esquire of *Vermandois*, between the Bars and the Gate, both manifesting great Courage and Gallantry. And in this Expedition, he was ranged in the [b] third Battel, led by the King, which was pitch'd between *Vironfosse* and *Flumengery*, to encounter the *French*.

For his Valour shewn in this Expedition, the King bestowed on him the honor of Knighthood, and at his return to *Antwerpe*, [c] granted him 20 Marks *per annum* out of his Exchequer, to support that Dignity, till he should settle on him Lands to that yearly value for his life.

When the King led another Army into *Flanders*, designed also against the *French*, he attended him, and fought valiantly in the Naval Engagement before [d] *Sluce*.

He was in the Voyage Royal made into [e] *Normandy*, *an.* 20. *E.* 3. and in its march at [f] *Poisy*, he and Sir------ *Basset*, preserved two of the Lord of *Poisy*'s Daughters from violation, and brought them to the King; who caused them to be safely conducted to *Corbe*, whither they desired to go.

At the Battel of [g] *Cressy* he commanded in the *Van*, led by the Prince of *Wales*; and when this *Prince* was [h] constituted the Kings Lieutenant in *Aquitaine*, he attended him in that Expedition; and by his command, summon'd the Castle of [i] *Romorentine*, which held out a while, but was at length forced to surrender.

Marching on with the Prince, the Battel of *Poictiers* approached, and on the [k] day before, (a Truce for that day being obtained by the endeavours of the Cardinal of *Piergort*) this valiant Knight coasted about to make discovery of the *French* Army, as did also the Lord *Cleremont*, one of the *French* Marshals; and as they returned, they met, and observed that both of them bore the same device, to wit, a Lady in blue, irradiated with the Sun-beams. *Cleremont* demanded how long he had born his device, *Chandos* answered, you bear mine; I deny that, replied *Cleremont*; and did not the Truce hinder, I would make it good. To morrow, said *Chandos*, you shall find me ready to justifie it to be mine as well as yours, and so they parted.

The next day the Fight begun, during which St. *John* [l] never parted from the Princes side; and when he perceived that the *French* Marshals was discomfited, he advised the Prince to advance towards the Kings Battel, telling him there was all the hazard and the glory; which he accordingly did. At the end of this famous Battel, when no more *French* Banners were left in the field, he prevailed with the Prince to set up his Standard in a Bush near him, to give a signal to his dispersed Army to rally, while he took some refreshment.

An. 33. *E.* 3. he [m] attended the King in his Expedition into *France*, and being at the siege of [n] *Rheyms*, he and Sir *James Audeley*, and the Lord *Mucident*, a *Gascoigne*, with their Troops, rode near to *Chalons* in *Champaigne*, and drawing near to *Chargny*, in *Dormois*, where was a strong Castle, they gave an assault to it, at which the Lord *Mucident* being slain, they in revenge made a resolution to take it ere they went away, which they did, putting all to the Sword, and demolishing the Castle. He was constituted *Captain* and the Kings *Lieutenant* in the Dukedom of *Normandy*, and the parts of *France*, and had [o] power given him to grant Pardons for Treason, Murder, *&c.* and whatsoever he did in this case, the King promised to ratifie under his Great Seal.

After the Peace near *Chartres*, Sir *John Chandos* was [p] constituted one of King *Edward's*

a *Froiss. Chron. lib.* 1. *cap.* 38.
b *Ibid. cap.* 41.
c 15. *Nov. Patentes conceff. hominib. Angl. & Vasc.* 13. *E.* 3. *m.* 10.
d *Froiss. cap.* 5.
e *Ibid. c.* 121.
f *Ibid. c.* 125.
g *Ibid. c.* 128.
h *An.* 29. *E.* 3.
i *Froiss. c.* 158.
k *Ibid. c.* 161.
l *Ibid. c.* 162.
m *Ibid. c.* 207.
n *Ibid. c.* 208.
o 5. *Feb. Rot. Franc* 35. *E.* 3. *m.* 18.
p *Primo July Rot. Vasc.* 35. *E.* 3. *m.* 8.

Edward's Commissioners to take possession of the Dutchy of *Aquitaine*, where Sir *James de Bourbon*[q] delivered him the possession of divers Lands, Towns, Cities, Castles, and Fortresses, whereupon he received the Fealty and Homage of all the Nobility and others.

Shortly after he was[r] made *Captain* and Commander in chief of the Castle and Town of *Rochel*, and all the Country of *Xintonge*, and a command was therewithall sent to[s] *John de Monte Ferandi*, Custos of the said Castle and Town, to deliver them up to him, with all the Arms, Provisions, and other the King's Stores in his possession. And the following year, when the Prince of *Wales* (now created Prince of *Guyenne*) took a Voyage thither, he was made[t] Constable of *Aquitaine*, and Sir *Guischard d' Angle* Marshal.

When the King of *Cyprus* came into *Aquitaine*, upon a visit to the Prince, he was[u] sent to receive and conduct him to *Angolesme*, where the Prince kept his Court: He also waited on him through[w] *Xantonge* and *Poictou*, to *Rochell*, to view the Country, whence he returned to *Angolesme*; where having taken leave of the Prince, he yet attended him to the confines of the Principality.

[x] *Charles de Bloys*, having gained new strength from the King of *France*, and entred *Bretagne*, this Sir *John* with some few Forces left *Aquitaine*, and came to the assistance of *John* Earl of *Montford*, who received him with great joy, having so great an opinion of his Valour and Conduct, that he conceived no misfortune could fall upon him while he stayed with him. By his advice and valour (as all acknowledged) the *French* were defeated, Sir[y] *Bertrand de Guesclin*, taken Prisoner by an *English* Esquire under Sir *John*'s Standard, *Charles de Bloys* there slain, and the Enemy pursued 8 Leagues, even to the Gates of *Rennes*. This Battel was fought on[z] *Michaelmas* day *an.* 38. *E.* 3. where were taken two Earls, 27 Lords, and 1500 men at Arms. The news of the Victory being brought to the King (then at *Dover*) by a[a] *Pursuivant* of *Arms*, who had been in the Battel, the King for his good service, created him a *Herald* by the name of *Windesor* (there was also an *Herald* who had the addition of[b] *Chandos* given him in honor of this noble Knight, whom he employed in *Aquitaine*, upon several occasions.) This good success begat a Treaty, which setled the[c] Earl of *Montfort* in the Dukedom of *Bretagne* by the King of *France*, to whom he did Homage, as the Dukes before had done.

In the *Prince*'s Voyage to *Spain* he had command in the *Van*, led by the Duke of *Lancaster*, and immediately before the joining of the Battel, this noble Knight was created[d] *Banneret*; which honor was not only well bestowed, but by his valiant carriage in the Fight, as well deserved; for[e] he and his men hapning to encounter Sir *Bertrand de Guesclin* (who had been ransomed from his former imprisonment at 100000 Franks) and the Marshal Sir *Arnold Dandrehen*, they took them[f] both Prisoners, and defeated their Battel.

After his return out of *Spain*, he obtained leave to reside at St. *Saviour le Viscount*; but when the *French* invaded *Gascoigne*, the *Prince* sent for him back, and employed him in the conduct of that War, wherein he behaved himself most valiantly, and in a word[g] recovered and kept *Aquitaine*, the particulars of whose famous actions from hence to his death may be seen in[h] Sir *John Froissard*, out of whom we are loth to cloy our Reader with too much of transcription, and shall therefore only note, that in this time he was made[i] *Constable* of *Poictou* and[k] *Marshal* of *Aquitaine*.

He had the[l] Barony of St. *Saviours le Viscount*, of *Domvers* and *Dongeville*, and the Lands and Tenements of St. *Mary de Monte de Farsellis*, and *de Romelly*, and all the Lands which were formerly Sir *Godfry de Harecourts* in *Normandy*, given him and his heirs for ever, by King *Edward* (to whom the said Sir *Godfry* had sold them, to be possessed after his death) which being not comprised in the[m] Treaty of Peace near *Chartres*, the Homage for them became due to the King of *France*; but there having passed so great Testimonies of affection and respect, between King *Edward* and King *John*, the latter, at the request of King *Edward*, before he went from *Calais*,[n] sealed to Sir *John Chandos*, a confirmation of King *Edward*'s grant to possess them as his inheritance for ever. Whereupon command was sent to

q *Froiss.* c.21[illegible]
r 30. *July* Rot. *Vasc.* 35. E. 3. *m.* 5.
t *Froiss.* c.217.
u *Ibid.* c.218.
w *Ibid.* c.219.
x *Froiss.* c.224.
y *Ibid.* c.226.
z *Walsingh.* p. 174.
a *Froiss.* c.227.
b *Ibid.* c. 257. 260. & 264.
c *Ibid.* c. 229.
d *See before pag.* 42.
e *Froiss.* c.237.
f *Ibid.* c.238.
g *Ibid.* 270.
h *Lib.* 1. *c.* 245. 251. 256. 258. 264. 265. 268. & 270.
i *Froiss. lib.* 1. *cap.* 262.
k *Vide Pat.* 48. E. 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 7.
l 12. *May Pat.* 34. E. 3. *m.* 35.
m *Froiss cap.* 213.
n

to [o] Sir *Thomas Holland*, then *Captain* and *Custos* thereof, forthwith to deliver the Castles, Baronies, and all the Lands and Tenements to the said *John*. And hereupon he was sometimes stiled [p] *Baro Sancti Salvatoris le Viscount*, and at other, [q] *Vicecomes Sancti Salvatoris in Normania*.

The last martial action of this most famous Knight, and which proved fatal to him, was [r] near to St. *Salvin*, an Abbey in *Poictou*, which having been betrayed to the *French* by a Monk who hated the Abbot, he endeavoured to recover it the [s] last of *December* in the night, [t] *an.* 44. E. 3. but missing of his design, and intending to return to *Poictou*, he encountred a party of the *French* at *Lusich-bridge*, where the way being slippery, he fell down, and as he was rising one *Jaques de St. Martyn* an Esquire, struck him under his Eye into the brain with a Glave; for having * lost the sight of that Eye five years before, as he was hunting a Hart neer *Bordeaux*, he saw not the blow come. The *French* knew him by his Surcoat of Arms, and endeavoured to get his body, but his Uncle *Edward Clyfford* bestrid him, and defended it; and other relief coming in, the *French* men were taken Prisoners. He was thence carried to *Mortymer* Fortress, where he lay a day and night speechless, and then died, and lies there buried.

His death was exceedingly lamented by all, and when the *French* King heard of it he was very much troubled, saying, [u] there was now no Knight left alive, that was able to make Peace between the Kings and Kingdoms of *France* and *England*; so much was he feared, so highly esteemed, and so generally beloved.

He was never married, but we find he had three Sisters; [w] *Elizabeth*, who died 9. *R.* 2. *Alionora*, the Wife of *Roger Colinge*; and *Margaret*.

o *Pat.* 34. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 35.
p *Pat.* 35. *E.* 3. *m.* 3.
q *Pat.* 48. *E.* 3. *par.* 1.
r *Froiss. c.* 270.
s *Ibid.*
t *Walsingham p.* 181.
* *Froiss loc. cit.*
u *Walsing. loco cit.*
w *Communia Ter. Mich. an.* 3. *H.* 5.

(22.)

Sir *James Audeley.*

THis noble Knight was Son and Heir of *Nicholas* Lord *Audeley*, and of *Jane*, Sister and Heir of *William* the Son of *William Martyn*, and was born *an.* [x] 7. E. 2.

He was no sooner come of age, but he entred upon Martial Employments, wherein for several years he became engaged in the Wars against the *Scots*, and there did the King so great service, that in recompence thereof, and the great charge he had been at in supporting himself in those Wars, he forgave him the sum of [y] 1000 Marks, which he was engaged to pay *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, by whose attainder it became forfeited to the King.

An. 16. E. 3. he was made [z] *Custos* of the Town of *Berwick* upon *Twede* during pleasure; and by other Letters Patent of the same date, constituted the Kings * *Justice* of the said Town, and of all other the Kings Lands in the parts of *Scotland*, to execute all things appertaining to that Office, according to the Law and Custom of *Scotland*.

Not long after, he was engaged to go beyond Sea, in the Kings Service, with *Nicholas Audeley* Earl of *Gloucester*, and thereupon the Kings Letters of Protection were [a] obtained for him, to hold till *Easter* following.

The [b] 20. of *December* after, the Kings special Letter was directed to him, to provide 20. Men at Arms, and 20. Archers, to be sent to *Portsmouth* by the first of *March* ensuing, and thence to pass in the Kings Service with the Earls of *Arundel* and *Huntingdon*.

An. 18. *E.* 3. he went into [c] *Gascoigne* with the Earl of *Derby*, in his Expedition thither. The following year he received Command, personally [d] to attend the King, and to serve him with his Retinue, for defence of this Kingdom against the *French*, at the Kings charge.

And when the King made his Royal Voyage into *France*, *an.* 20. *E.* 3. he [e] attended him thither. He was sent over from the Seige of *Calais*, with [f] Command to raise what Forces he could, and to bring them to *Sandwich*, by *Ascension-Day*,

x *Collect. W. D. N.*
y *Pat* 9. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 13.
z § 4. *Ang. Rot.* * ¶ *Scot.* 16. *E.* 3. *m.* 10.
a 4. *Sept. Rot. Franc.* 16. *E.* 3. *m* 25.
b *Ibid. m.* 11.
c *Rot Fr.* 18. *E.* 3. *m.* 19.
d *Rot. Fr.* 19. *E* 3. *m.* 4.
e *Froiss. Chron. l.* 1 *c.* 121.
f 2 *Apr. Rot. Franc.* 21. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 17.

ſion-Day, well arm'd, to paſs over to *Calais*, in regard the *French* King was drawing together a vaſt Army, with intention to raiſe the Seige.

In the Prince of *Wales's* Expedition into *Gaſcoigne*, *an.* 29. *E.* 3. He [g] attended him thither, and at the Battel of *Poctiers*, gained everlaſting Fame. For immediately before the Battels joined, [h] he acquainted the *Prince*, that he had ſerved his Father and him faithfully, and had made a vow, to give the onſet, or dye in the attempt, at the firſt Battel that the King or any of his Sons ſhould perſonally be engaged in, and therefore beg'd his Licenſe, to place himſelf there, where he might be in the beſt capacity to accompliſh his Vow; which the Prince giving way to, he put himſelf into the Front of the *Engliſh* Army (accompanied with his 4. Eſquires, (*viz.* [i] *Dutton* of *Dutton*, *Delves* of *Doddington*, *Fowlehurſt* of *Crew*, and *Hawkeſton* of *Wrinehill*) who had obliged themſelves to ſtick cloſe to him) and encountred with Sir *Arnold Dundrehen*, who commanded in the French Marſhalls Battel, and was ſorely wounded by him, but taken Priſoner by others; for this valiant Knight and his Eſquires refuſed to take Priſoners, but ſpent their time in execution: In this Battel he was moſt dangerouſly wounded, in the Body and Face; and at the end of it his 4. Eſquires brought him out of the Field, and laid him under a Hedg, to refreſh him, where they took off his Arms and bound up his Wounds.

g *Rot. Vaſc.* 29 *E.* 3. *m.* 11.
h *Froiſſard l.* 1. *c.* 162.
i *Lib. MS. penes W. Flower nuper Norroy R. Armor.*

His [k] valour and ſtout performances were greatly wondred at by the *French* Commanders, as they acknowledged the following night, when they ſate at Supper in *Poictiers*, and it is reported by *Walſingham*, [l] that by his extraordinary courage he brake through the Enemies Battel, and made great ſlaughter among them.

k *Holinſhed p.* 263.
l *p.* 164.

[m] As ſoon as the Prince had ſent to find out the *French* King, he enquired after this Knight, and being told where he lay wounded, he ſent to know if he could be brought to him, otherwiſe he would come to viſit him: this being told Sir *James*, he cauſed 8. of his Servants to carry him in his Litter to the Prince, who took him in his Arms and kiſt him, acknowledging he ought to honor him, for by his valour he had gain'd great renown; and to enable him to purſue martial affairs, he retained him to be his Knight, with 500. marks Land of Inheritance.

m *Ib. c.* 165.

Sir *James* being departed from the Prince, ſent for his Brother Sir *Peter Audeley*, with ſome other of his neareſt Relations, and called before them his 4. Eſquires, to whom he declared, that ſeeing the honor he had that day gain'd was by his Eſquires valour, he gave them the ſaid 500. marks *per annum* as freely as the Prince had beſtowed them on him.

This generous action the [n] Prince being acquainted with, ſent for Sir *James*, who being brought to him in his Litter, the Prince told him, that he had been inform'd of his Gift to his Eſquires, and would therefore know, whether he liked his kindneſs? or why he gave it away? To whom he gave a particular account of their fidelity and ſervices, which he thought himſelf obliged to reward, affirming it was by their aſſiſtance he accompliſhed his Vow, and had his life preſerv'd, and therefore humbly deſir'd pardon for doing it without his knowledge. Herewith the Prince was ſo well ſatisfied, that he [o] afterwards gave him 600. Marks *per annum* more, in like manner as he had done the former; this grant was [p] confirm'd to him by the King, during life, and for a twelve Month after, to be received out of the Coynage of the Stanneries in *Cornwall*, and the Kings Lands in that County.

n *Ibid. c.* 169.
o 3. *May Pat.* 33. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 14.
p 6. *Aug. Ibid.*

This valiant Knight did afterwards [q] attend the King in his Royal expedition into *France*, *an.* 33. *E.* 3. And was in the action with [r] Sir *John Chandos*, and the Lord *Mucident*, when the ſtrong Caſtle of *Dormoys* was taken by aſſault.

q *Rot. Vaſc.* 33. *E.* 3. *p.* 2. *m.* 8.
r *Froiſſ. c.* 207.

When the Prince undertook a voyage into *Spain*, to reſtore *Don Pedro*, he conſtituted him [s] *Governor* of *Aquitaine* in his abſence, and afterwards made him [t] great *Seneſchal* of *Poictou* about this time he raiſed a great Army there, and marched to *Berry*, and waſted that Country, and thence paſſed to *Touraine*, keeping the Field; and then to the Lord of *Chauuigny's*

s *Froiſſard c.* 239
t *Ibid. c.* 254.

Country (he being lately revolted to the *French*) and destroy'd it; afterwards he took the Town of *Breuse* by assault, and burnt it, and so returned to *Poictiers*. He was with Sir *John Chandos* at the Siege of [u] *Dome*, and of the strong Castle of [w] *Roche sur Ion* in *Anjou*, which at length was surrendred, and thence he retired to fresh Quarters in the County of *Fontney*.

[t] *Ib. c.* 258.
[w] *Ib. c.* 252.

And here Sir *John Froissard* puts a period to his life, and saith he was buried at *Poictiers*: but he mistakes *James* the Father for *James* the Son, who in truth died in *Gascoigne*, *an.* [x] 43. *E.* 3. which was near about *Froissards* time, after whom his Father lived many years; having received Summons of Parliament, *an.* 4. *E.* 3. and thence to all ensuing Parliaments, to the time of his Death.

[x] *Esc. an.* 45. *E.* 3. *n.* 1.

This Noble Lord married to his first Wife, [y] *Joan*, Daughter to *Roger Mortimer* Earl of *March*, by whom he had [z] *Nicholas*, his Son and Heir, * *Roger*, and *Rowland*, who died without Issue, and two Daughters, *Joan* the Wife of *John Tochet*, and *Margaret* Wife of *Roger Hillary*, who upon their elder Brothers Decease also without Issue, became Heirs to a fair Patrimony, but the Barony came to *John Tochet*, Son to the eldest Daughter.

[y] *Monasticon Angl. Vol.* 2. 224. *b. Vide Pat.* 4 *E.* 3.
[z] { *Collect. W.*
[*] { *D. N.*

By his second Wife, [a] *Isabel*, he had [b] *James*, and *Thomas*, who died without Issue, and *Margaret* the Wife of *Fulk Fitz-Waren*. And having lived to a very great Age, he died [c] the first of *April*, *an.* 9. *R.* 2. leaving *Nicholas* his Son and Heir, then 50. years of Age, having a little before made his Will at *Heligh* Castle, by which he [d] appointed his Body to be buried in the Choire of his Abbey of *Hilton*, before the high Altar in case he should dye in the *Marches*, but if in *Devonshire*, or *Somersetshire*, then in the Choir of the Friers Preachers, at *Exceter*, before the high Altar.

[a] { *Esc.* 20. *E.*
[b] { 3. *n.* 58. *Vide Pat.* 27. *E.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 1.
[c] *Esc. an.* 9. *R.* 2. *n.* 1. *Staff.*
[d] *Ex Lib. in Offic. principal. Cantuar. vocat. Courtney. f.* 121. *b.*

(23)

Sir *Otho Holland.*

HE was one of the younger Sons of *Robert* Lord *Holland*, and Brother of Sir *Thomas Holland*, one of the first Founders of this Noble *Order*.

The [e] Earl of *Eire*, Constable of *France*, being Prisoner of War to the said *Thomas*, the King bought him of him for a certain sum of Money, and afterwards by Indenture deliver'd the said Earl to the Custody of the said Sir *Otho Holland*, under condition, that the Earl should not go out of *England*, nor wear Arms publickly, until he had paid his full Ransom to the King. But it seems Sir *Otho* took the Earl with him to *Calais*, where he went up and down armed; upon which, information being given to the King, Sir *Otho* was brought to the Kings Bench Bar, before the Chancellor, Treasurer, the Earls of *Arundel*, and *Huntingdon*, Sir *Bartholomew Burgherssh*, Mr. *Nicholas Northburgh*, Clark of the Privy Seal, *William Basset*, and other the Kings Justices, and being not able to deny the premises, he put himself upon the Kings favour, and was thereupon committed to the Custody of *John de Long* Marshal of the Kings Bench.

[e] *Term. Trin.* 24. *E.* 3. *rot.* 32. *Angl.*

We have met with little else concerning this Knight, save that he went over into [f] *Bretagne*, with his said Brother *Thomas*, *an.* 29. *E.* 3. and had been [g] Governor of *Gernsey*, *Jersey*, *Sark*, and *Aurney*. We also find, that a [h] Fine was acknowledged at *Westminster* on the morrow after the *Purification of our Lady*, *an.* 33. *E.* 3. between him and the said *Otho* Querent, and *Robert de Holland* the elder, Knight, and *Robert de Holland* the younger, Deforcients, of the Mannor of *Yokeshale*, and the Advowson of the Church there, to the use of the said *Otho* for life, and after his death to return to the said Sir *Robert* the elder, and *Robert* the younger, and the Heirs of the said Sir *Robert*. But he lived not to enjoy the benefit of it long, for he dyed in *Normandy* the [i] 3. day of *September* following, being seized also for life of the Mannors of [k] *Kersey* in *Suffolk*, *Taleworth* in *Surrey*, and *Chesterfield* in *Derbyshire*, and these of the gift of his Brother *Thomas*, and the Lady *Joane* his Wife; as also of the Mannor of [l] *Dalbery* in the said County of *Derby* for life, by the Grant of *Robert de Holland*.

[f] *Rot. Fr.* 29. *E.* 3. *m.* 7.
[g] *Claus.* 33. *E* 3 *m.* 19 *dorso*
[h] *Term. Trin.* 24 *E* 3. *Rot.* 32. *Angl.*
[i] { *Esc.* 34. *E.* 3
[k] { *n.* 37.
[l] {

Sir

(24.)

Sir *Henry Eam.*

ALL we have met with relating to this noble Knight, is only what the following Instrument (made to him by the Prince of *Wales*, of an Annuity of 100 marks, and confirmed by the King) doth inform us of: whereby it appears, that he was a Native of *Brabant*, and received the Honor of Knighthood from the said Prince's hands.

[m] *Rex omnibus ad quos, &c.* Salutem. *Inspeximus Literas Patentes dilecti & fidelis nostri* Ewdardi, *Principis* Walliæ, *Ducis* Cornubiæ, *& Comitis* Cestriæ, *filii nostri Charissimi in hæc verba.* Edward *eisné filz au Noble Roy d'*Engleterre *& de* France, *Prince de* Gales, *Duc de* Cornwaill, *& Counte de* Cestre. *A tous ceux qui cestes Lettres verront ou orront,* Saluz. *Sachez que come nostre trescher & bien ame Monsir* Henri Eam *au temps qil avoit pris de noz meins l'*Ordre *de Chivaler, se offrist & premist de sa fraunche volunté, destre entendant à noz services à terme de sa vie, & qeu temps qe nous luy ferrions sufficialment garnir, d'aler ovesqe nous queu part que nous vourrions, auessi bien pur la pees, come pur la guerre, & destre armes od nous à noz volontez countre toute gent forpris le Ducs de* Brabant *son Seigneur lige en la defense de ses terres propres: Nous acceptantz celles* offre *&* premesse *& voillantz pour son dit service avoir, & qil soit le plus tenuz à nous servir devant nul autre, tiel regard faire à luy dont il se purra le mieltz contenir à l'avenance de son estat, lui avons doné un annuele rent de Cent marcz à terme de sa vie, à receiure de nostre Manoir de* Bradenash *en Counte de* Devenesshire *chescun an à les termes de* Pasques *& de Seint* Michel *per ouele porcions per les meyns des gardeins de mesmes le Manoir qi pur les temps serront les offre & premesse dussusditz en toutz pointz tenuz & gardez, & volons que à quele heure, & à quant des soitz son dit paiement soit aderrier en partie, ou en tout à nul terme assigné, il lise au dit Monsir* Henri *destreindre en le dit Manoir, & les destresses tenir tanqil soit pleinement paiez de quanqe lui serra à derriere, come dessus est dit. En* Tesmoignance *de quel chose, nous avons fait faire cestes noz* Lettres overtez. Donné *souz nostre* Seal *à* Westm. *le xviij. jour de* Jeneuer, *l'an du Regne nostre trescher Seigneur & Piere le Roy d'*Engleterre *vintisme primer, & de* France *octisme. Nos autem concessionem prædictam ratem habentes & gratam, eam pro nobis & hæredibus nostris quantum in nobis est præfato* Henrico *ad totam vitam suam, tenere præsentium concedimus, & confirmamus, sicut* Literæ *prædictæ rationabiliter testantur. In* cujus, *&c. Teste Rege apud* Westmonasterium *xxviij. die Junii.*

Per ipsum Regem.

[m] *Pat. an. 23. Edw. 3. par. 2. m. 24.*

(25)

Sir *Sanchet Dabrichcourt.*

[n] SIR *John Froissard* takes notice, that Queen *Isabel*, Wife to King *Edward* the Second, being driven out of *France*, was courteously entertained at the Castle of *Amberticourt*, in *Henault*, by a Knight of that name, whose then it was, and that thereupon the Queen and the Prince brought him, his Lady and Children, over with them, where they all received advancement in the Court of *England.* 'Tis very probable then, that this Sir *Sanchet* might be Son to that Knight; and yet *Ralph Brooke, York* Herald, makes him to be the Son of *Eustace Dabrichcourt*, and *Elizabeth*, Daughter of the Duke of *Julers*, the Relict of the *John Plantagenet*, Earl of *Kent.* But this is a great mistake, and overseen by *Augustine Vincent, Windesor* Herald, in his correction of *Brooke.* For it is clear, [o] that, after the death of that Earl, his Widow vowed chastity in the Monastery of *Waverly*, where she continued some years, and that on *Michaelmas* day

[n] *Lib. 1. c. 9.*

[o] *Ex Lib. in Offic. principal. Cantuar. vocat. Islip. f. 166. b.*

day *an. Dom.* 1360. which was above 11. years after the Institution of this Order of the *Garter*, she was clandestinely married to *Eustace de Abricheſcourt*, by one *John de Ireland*, and therefore he could not be Son of these two persons, whose marriage was so long after the Institution of that *Order*, whereof he was one of the first *Founders*.

p *Pat.* 19. *E.* 3. p. 2. *m.* 10. We find mention of a [p] gift, which King *Edward* the Third made to this Knight, of all the Chattels belonging to *John Wardedien*, who had fled for killing of *Robert Poteman*, but nothing else.

(26)

Sir *Walter Paveley*.

q-f *Collect. A. V. W.*
t *Rot. Fin m.* 4.

THIS Sir *Walter* was Son and Heir of [q] *Walter Paveley*, and [r] *Maud*, Daughter and Heir of *Stephen Burgherſh*: His said Father died, *an.* 1. *E.* 3. at which time he was about [f] 8 years old. He was also [t] Cousin and next Heir to *Henry Burgherſh* Bishop of *Lincolne*.

u *Rot. Fr* 16. *E.* 3. *m.* 24. w *Rot. Fr.* 17. *E* 3 *m* 3. & 15 x *Rot. Fr.* 19. *F.* 3. *p.* 1. *m.* 8. y *Rot. Fr.* 20. *E* 3 *p.* 1. *m.* 3. z *Wil. m.* 16. * *Dorſ.* a *Rot. Fr.* 21. *E* 3 *p.* 1 *m.* 10. b *Rot Fr.* 23. *E* 3 *m* 2. c *Rot. Fr.* 25. *E.* 3. *m.* 4. d *Rot. Vasc.* 29. *E.* 3. *m.* 8. e *Rot. Fr.* 32. *E.* 3. *m.* 4. f *Esc. an.* 49. *E.* 3. *n.* 21.

He went into *Bretagne* in the [u] Kings Service, with Sir *Bartholomew Burgherſh senior*, *an.* 16. *E.* 3. so also the [w] following year; and again [x] *an.* 19. *E.* 3.

The [y] 20. of King *Edward* the Third, he went with him in the Expedition the King made into *France*, and therefore had his Lands in [z] *Northamptonſhire* and [*] *Wiltſhire* discharged from finding men at Arms, *&c.* to serve the King in that Expedition. And the next year it seems he had command abroad under [a] Sir *Bartholomew Burgherſh le ſitz*: So also [b] *an.* 23. *E.* 3.

Two years after, the Duke of *Lancaſter* being made Admiral, he [c] went to Sea in the Fleet: Afterwards he went with the [d] *Prince* of *Wales* into *Gaſcoigne*; and *an.* 32. *E.* 3. into *Bretagne*.

These were the Expeditions this noble Knight made, which sufficiently denote his being continually employed abroad in the Kings service.

He died [f] 28. of *June an.* 49. *E.* 3. leaving *Edward Pavely* his Son and Heir.

SECT. IV.

A Catalogue *of their* Succeſſors, *with Scutcheons of their* Arms.

KNights elected in the following part of the Reign of King *Edward* the Third, as the Stalls became void.

27. *Richard* of *Bordeaux*, afterwards King of *England*, of that name the Second.
28. *Lyonel* of *Antwerp* Earl of *Ulſter*, and Duke of *Clarence*.
29. *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaſter*, after created Duke of *Aquitaine*.
30. *Edmund* of *Langley* Earl of *Cambridge*, after Duke of *York*.
31. *John de Montford* Duke of *Bretagne*, and Earl of *Richmond*.
32. *Humfry Bohun* Earl of *Hereford*, and Conſtable of *England*.
33. *William Bohun* Earl of *Northampton*.
34. *John Haſtings* Earl of *Penbroke*.
35. *Thomas Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*.
36. *Richard Fitz Alan* Earl of *Arundel* and *Surrey*.
37. *Robert Ufford*, Earl of *Suffolk*.
38. *Hugh Stafford*, Earl of *Stafford*.
39. *Ingleram de Coucy*, Earl of *Bedford*.
40. *Guiſcard d' Angoleſme*, Earl of *Huntingdon*.
41. *Edward Spencer*, Lord *Spencer*.
42. *William Latimer*, Lord *Latimer*.
43. *Reynold Cobham*, Lord *Cobham* of *Sterborough*.
44. *John Nevil*, Lord *Nevil* of *Raby*.

45. *Ralph*

King Edward the 3d Soveraigne 1

Edward Prince of Wales, 2

Henry Duke of Lancaster, 3

Piers Capitow de la Bouch, 5

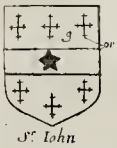
William Earle of Salisbury, 7

Thomas Earle of Warwick, 4

Ralph Earle of Stafford 6

Roger Earle of March 8

Sr John Lyvele, 9



Sr John Beauchamp 11

Sr Hugh Courtney, 13

Sr Bartholomew Burgherst. 10

Sr John Mohun, 12

Sr Thomas Holland, 14.

Sr John Grey 15

Sr Miles Stapleton, 17

Sr Hugh Wrotesley. 19

Sr Richard Fitz-Simon 16

Sr Thomas Wale, 18

Sr Neele Loringe, 20.

Sr John Chandos 21

Sr Otto Holland. 23

Sr Sanchio Dabrichcourt

Sr James Audeley, 22

Sr Henry Eam, 24

Sr Walter Paveley, 26

Richard of Burdeux 27

Lionell Duke of Clarence 28

Iohn Duke of Lancaster 29.

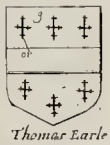
Edmund Earle of Cambridge 30.

Iohn Duke of Britaine, 31

Humfrey Earle of Hereford 32.

William Earle of Northampton, 33

Iohn Earle of Pembroke, 34



Thomas Earle of Warwick 35.

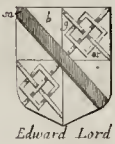
Richard Earle of Arundell, 36

Robert Earle of Suffolke, 37.

Hugh Earle of Stafford, 38

Iualemini Earle of Bedford 39

Guisard Earle of Huntingdon. 40



Edward Lord Spencer. 41

William Lord Latimer. 42

Reynold Lord Cobham, 43

Iohn Lord Nevill, 44


Ralph Lord Basset 45


Sr Walter Manny 46


Sr William Fitz Waren 47


Sr Thomas Ufford. 48


Sr Thomas Felton. 49


Sr Franc van Hall 50.


Sr Fulk. Fitz Waren 51


Sr Allan Boxhall 52


Sr Richard Pemburge 53


Sr Thomas Vtreight 54


Sr Thomas Bauester 55


Sr Richard de la Parhe 56


Sr Guy de Brian 57


Thomas Earle of Buckingham. 58


Henry Earle of Derby, 59


William Duke of Gelderland. 60


William Earle of Ostrevant 61


Thomas Earle of Kent. 62


John Earle of Huntingdon 63


Thomas Earle of Nottingham 64


Edward Earle of Rutland. 65


Michael Earle of Suffolk 66


William Lord Scroop 67


William Lord Bergavenny 68


John Lord Beaumont. 69


William Lord Willoughby 70


Richard Lord Grey 71


Sr Nicholas Sarnesfeeld 72


Sr Philip de la Vache 73.


Sr Robert Knolls 74


Sr Simon Burley 75


Sr John d'Eureux, 76


Sr Brian Stapleton 77


Sr Richard Burley 78


Sr Peter Courtney 79


Sr John Burley 80


Sr John Bourchier 81.

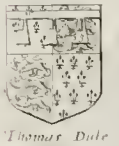

Sr Thomas Granson 82


Sr Lewis Chifford 83


Sr Robert Dunstavill. 84


Sr Robert Namur 85


Henry Prince of Wales 86


Thomas Duke Clarence 87


John Duke of Bedford 88


Humfry Duke of Glo[illegible] 89


Thomas Earle of Dorset 90


Robert Duke of Bavaria 91


John Earle of Somerset 92

Pag. 29.

45. *Ralph Basset*, Lord *Basset* of *Drayton*.
46. Sir *Walter Manny*, Bannert
47. Sir *William Fitz Waren*, Knight.
48. Sir *Thomas Vfford*, Knight.
49. Sir *Thomas Felton*, Knight.
50. Sir *Franc Van Hull*, Knight.
51. Sir *Fulk Fitz Waren*, Knight.
52. Sir *Allan Boxhull*, Knight.
53. Sir *Richard Pemburge*, Knight.
54. Sir *Thomas Vtreight*, Knight.
55. Sir *Thomas Banester*, Knight.
56. Sir *Richard de la Vache*, Knight.
57. Sir *Guy de Bryan*, Knight.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King *Richard* the Second.

58. *Thomas* of *Woodstock*, Earl of *Buckingham*, after Duke of *Gloucester*.
59. *Henry* of *Lancaster* Earl of *Derby*, afterward King of *England*, of that Name the Fourth.
60. *William* Duke of *Gelderland*.
61. *William* of *Bavaria*, Earl of *Ostrevant*, after Earl of *Holland*, *Henault*, and *Zeland*.
62. *Thomas Holland* Earl of *Kent*, after Duke of *Surrey*.
63. *John Holland*, Earl of *Huntingdon*, after Duke of *Exceter*.
64. *Thomas Mowbray*, Earl of *Nottingham*, after Duke of *Norfolk*.
65. *Edward* Earl of *Rutland*, after Duke of *Albemarle*.
66. *Michael de la Poole*, Earl of *Suffolk*.
67. *William Scrope*, Lord *Scrope*, after Earl of *Wiltshire*, and Lord Treasurer of *England*.
68. *William Beauchamp* Lord *Bergaveny*.
69. *John Beaumont*, Lord *Beaumont*.
70. *William Willoughby*, Lord *Willoughby*.
71. *Richard Grey*, Lord *Grey*.
72. Sir *Nicholas Sarnesfield*, Knight.
73. Sir *Philip de la Vache*, Knight.
74. Sir *Robert Knolls*, Knight.
75. Sir *Simon Burley*, Knight.
76. Sir *John de Evereux*, Banneret.
77. Sir *Bryan Stapleton*, Knight.
78. Sir *Richard Burley*, Knight.
79. Sir *Peter Courtney*, Knight.
80. Sir *John Burley*, Knight.
81. Sir *John Bourchier*, Knight.
82. Sir *Thomas Granston*, Knight.
83. Sir *Lewis Clifford*, Knight.
84. Sir *Robert Dunstavill*, Knight.
85. Sir *Robert de Namur*, Knight.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King *Henry* the Fourth.

86. *Henry* Prince of *Wales*, after King of *England*, of that Name the Fifth.
87. *Thomas* of *Lancaster*, Earl of *Albemarle*, and Duke of *Clarence*.
88. *John* Earl of *Kendal* and Duke of *Bedford*, after Regent of *France*.
89. *Humfry*, Earl of *Penbroke* and Duke of *Gloucester*.
90. *Thomas Beauford*, Earl of *Dorset*, and after Duke of *Exceter*.
91. *Robert* Count *Palatine*, Duke of *Bavaria*, after Emperor of *Germany*.
92. *John Beauford*, Earl of *Somerset*, and Marquess of *Dorset*.

93. *Thomas*

93. *Thomas Fitz Alan*, Earl of *Arundel*.
94. *Edmund Stafford*, Earl of *Stafford*.
95. *Edmund Holland*, Earl of *Kent*.
96. *Ralph Nevil*, Earl of *Westmerland*.
97. *Gilbert Roos*, Lord *Roos*.
98. *Gilbert Talbot*, Lord *Talbot*.
99. *John Lovell*, Lord *Lovell*.
100. *Hugh Burnell*, Lord *Burnell*.
101. *Thomas Morley*, Lord *Morley*.
102. *Edward Charleton*, Lord *Powis*.
103. Sir *John Cornwall*, Knight, after Lord *Fanhope*.
104. Sir *William Arundel*, Knight.
105. Sir *John Stanly*, Knight.
106. Sir *Robert de Umfrevill*, Knight.
107. Sir *Thomas Rampston*, Knight.
108. Sir *Thomas Erpingham*, Knight.
109. Sir *John Sulbie*, Knight.
110. Sir *Sandich de Trane*, Knight.

Hitherto we have ranked the *Knights* of this most Noble *Order*, as they are placed in other *Catalogues*, and according to their greatest *Dignities*, because the certain years of their *Elections* cannot be found: but these that follow, are marshalled in an exact series of their *Elections*.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King *Henry* the Fifth.

111. Sir *John Dabrichcourt*, Knight.
112. *Richard Vere*, Earl of *Oxford*.
113. *Thomas Camoys*, Lord *Camoys*.
114. Sir *Symon Felbryge*, Knight.
115. Sir *William Harington*, Knight.
116. *John Holland*, Earl of *Huntingdon*.
117. *Sigismund* Emperor of *Germany*.
118. --------- Duke of *Briga*.
119. Sir *John Blount*, Knight.
120. Sir *John Robessart*, Knight.
121. Sir *William Philip*, Knight, after Lord *Bardolf*.
122. *John* King of *Portugal*.
123. *Ericus* King of *Denmark*.
124. *Richard Beauchamp*, Earl of *Warwick*; after Lieutenant General and Governor in *France* and *Normandy*.
125. *Thomas Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*.
126. *Robert Willoughby*, Lord *Willoughby*.
127. *Henry Fitz-Hugh*, Lord *Fitz-Hugh*.
128. Sir *John Grey*, Knight, Earl of *Tankervile*.
129. *Hugh Stafford*, Lord *Bourchier*.
130. *John Mowbray*, Lord *Mowbray*, Earl Marshal.
131. *William de la Poole*, Earl of *Suffolk*; after Marquess and Duke of *Suffolk*.
132. *John Clifford*, Lord *Clifford*.
133. Sir *Lewis Robessart* Knight, after Lord *Bourchier*.
134. Sir *Heer Tank Clux*, Knight.
135. Sir *Walter Hungerford* Knight, after Lord *Hungerford*, and Lord Treasurer of *England*.
136. *Philip*, Duke of *Burgundy*.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King *Henry* the Sixth.

137. *John Talbot*, Lord *Talbot*, after Earl of *Shrewsbury*.
138. *Thomas Scales*, Lord *Scales*.
139. Sir *John Fastolf*, Knight.
140. *Peter*, Duke of *Conimbero*, third Son of *John* the First, King of *Portugal*.

141. *Humfrey*

Thomas Earle of Arundell, 93. | Edmund Earle of Stafford 94 | Edmond Earle of kent. 95 | Ralph Earle of Westmerland 96 | Gilbert Lord Roos. 97. | Gilbert Lord Talbot 98.

Iohn Lord Lovell. 99. | Hugh Lord Burnell, 100 | Thomas Lord Morley, 101 | Edward Lord Powis 102 | Sr Iohn Cornwall, 103 | Sr William Arundell. 104

Sr Iohn Stanley. 105. | Sr Robert Vnfrevile 106. | Sr Thomas Ramperton 107. | Sr Thomas Erpynghaw 108. | Sr Iohn Sulby 109. | Sr Sandich de Traue 110.

Sr Iohn Dabrich Court. 111 | Richard Earle of Oxford. 112 | Thomas Lord Camoys 113 | Sr Symon Felbryge. 114. | Sr William Harington 115. | Iohn Earle of Huntingdon. 116.

Sigismond Emp of Germany. 117. | Duke of Briga 118 | Sr Iohn Blount 119 | Sr Iohn Robesart 120 | Sr William Philipp 121. | Iohn king of Portugall, 122.

Ericus king of Denmark. 123 | Richard Earle of Warwick, 124. | Thomas Earle of Salisbury. 125. | Robert Lord Willoughby 126. | Henry Lord Fitz Hugh, 127. | Sr Iohn Grey 128.

Hugh Lord Bourgchier 129 | Iohn Earle Marshall 130. | William Earle of Suffolke, 131. | Iohn Lord Clifford 132. | Sr Lewis Robesart. 133. | Heer Iauke Clux. 134.

Walter Lord Hungerford, 135. | Philip Duke of Burgundy 136. | Iohn Lord Talbot 137. | Thomas Lord Scales, 138 | Sr Iohn Fastolf. 139. | Peter Duke of Coimbere. 140


Humfrey Earle of Stafford. 141.
S John Ratcliff 142
John Earle of Arundell. 143
Richard Duke of Yorke 144
Edward king of Portugall 145
Edmond Earle of Worrton 146
John Lord Grey of Ruthin 147.
Richard Earle of Salisbury 148
William Lord Fauconbridge. 149
Albert Emperor of Germany 150
John Earle of Somerset 151.
Ralph Lord Sudeley 152
Henry Duke of Exeter 153
John Viscount Beaumont 154.
Gaston Earle of Longevile. 155
John Earle of Kendall 156.
John Lord Beauchamp 157
Alphonsus king of Portugall. 158
Albro Earle of Averenes 159
Thomas Lord Hoo 160
S Francis Surien. 161
Alphonsus king of Arragon 162
Casimire king of Poland 163
William Duke of Brunswick 164
Richard Lord Rivers 165
John Duke of Norfolk 166
Henry Viscount Bourchier 167
S Philip Wentworth. 168
S Edward Hall. 169
Frederick the 3d Emperor 170.
John Earle of Shrewsbury 171
Lyonell Lord Welles 172
Thomas Lord Stanley 173
Edward Prince of Wales 174.
Jasper Earle of Penbroke 175
James Earle of Wiltshire. 176
John Lord Dudley 177
John Lord Berners 178
Richard Earle of Warwick 179
William Lord Bonvell 180.
John Lord Wenlock 181.
S Thomas Kiriell 182.
William Chamberlain
John Earle of Worcester
William Lord Herbert
William Lord Hastings

Pag

141. *Humfrey Stafford*, Earl of *Stafford*, after Created Duke of *Buckingham*.
142. Sir *John Ratclyff*, Knight.
143. *John Fitz-Alan*, Earl of *Arundell*.
144. *Richard*, Duke of *Tork*, the Kings Lieutenant in *France* and *Normandy*.
145. *Edward*, King of *Portugall*.
146. *Edmund Beaufort*, Earl of *Moriton*, after Earl of *Dorset*, and Duke of *Somerset*.
147. Sir *John Grey*, Knight.
148. *Richard Nevil* Earl of *Salisbury*, after Lord Chancellor of *England*.
149. *William Nevil*, Lord *Fauconbridge*, after Earl of *Kent*.
150. *Albert*, Emperor of *Germany*.
151. *John Beaufort*, Earl of *Somerset*, after Duke of *Somerset*, and Earl of *Kendall*.
152. *Ralph Butler* Lord *Sudeley*, after Lord Treasurer of *England*.
153. *Henry* Duke of *Viseo*, fourth Son of *John* the First King of *Portugal*.
154. *John Beaumont*, Viscount *Beaumont*, after High Constable of *England*.
155. *Gaston de Foix*, Earl of *Longevile*, and *Benanges*, Captan de *Buch*.
156. *John de Foix*, Earl of *Kendall*.
157. *John Beauchamp*, Lord *Beauchamp* of *Powik*, and after Lord Treasurer of *England*.
158. *Alphonsus*, the Fifth King of *Portugal*.
159. *Albro Vasques d'Almada*, Earl of *Averence* in *Normandy*.
160. *Thomas Hoo*, Lord *Hoo*.
161. Sir *Francis Surien*, Knight.
162. *Alphonsus*, King of *Aragon*.
163. *Casimire* the Fourth, King of *Poland*.
164. *William*, Duke of *Brunswick*.
165. *Richard Widvile* Lord *Rivers*, after Created Earl *Rivers*.
166. *John Mowbray*, Duke of *Norfolk*.
167. *Henry Bourchier* Viscount *Bourchier*, after Lord Treasurer of *England*, and Earl of *Essex*.
168. Sir *Philip Wentworth*, Knight.
169. Sir *Edward Hall*, Knight.
170. *Frederick* the Third, Emperor of *Germany*.
171. *John Talbot*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*.
172. *Lionell Wells*, Lord *Wells*.
173. *Thomas Stanley*, Lord *Stanley*.
174. *Edward*, Prince of *Wales*.
175. *Jaspar* Earl of *Penbroke*, after Duke of *Bedford*.
176. *James Butler*, Earl of *Wiltshire*.
177. *John Sutton*, Lord *Dudley*.
178. *John Bourchier*, Lord *Berners*.
179. *Richard Nevil*, Earl of *Warwick*.
180. *William Bonvill*, Lord *Bonvill*.
181. *John Wenlock*, Lord *Wenlock*.
182. Sir *Thomas Kyriell*, Knight.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King *Edward* the Fourth.

183. *George*, Duke of *Clarence*.
184. Sir *William Chamberlayne*, Knight.
185. *John Typtoft* Earl of *Worcester*, after High Constable of *England*.
186. *John Nevel* Lord *Montague*, after Earl of *Northumberland*, and Marquess *Montague*.
187. *William Herbert*, Lord *Herbert*, after Earl of *Penbroke*.
188. *William Hastings*, Lord *Hastings*.

189. *John*

189. *John Scrope*, Lord *Scrope*.
190. Sir *John Astley*, Knight.
191. *Ferdinand* King of *Naples*, Son of *Alphonsus* King of *Aragon*.
192. *Francis Sfortia*, Duke of *Milan*.
193. *James Douglas*, Earl of *Douglas*.
194. *Galeard*, Lord *Duras*.
195. Sir *Robert Harcourt*, Knight.
196. *Anthony Widvile*, Lord *Scales* and *Nucelles*, after Earl *Rivers*.
197. *Richard* Duke of *Gloucester*, after King of *England*, of that name the Third.
198. ------ Lord *Mountgryson* of *Apulia*.
199. *John Mowbray*, Duke of *Norfolk*.
200. *John de la Poole*, Duke of *Suffolk*.
201. *William Fitz-Alan*, Earl of *Arundell*.
202. *John Stafford*, Earl of *Wiltshire*.
203. *John Howard*, Lord *Howard*, after Duke of *Norfolk*.
204. *Walter Ferrars*, Lord *Ferrars* of *Chartley*.
205. *Walter Blount*, Lord *Mountjoy*.
206. *Charles*, Duke of *Burgundy*.
207. *Henry Stafford*, Duke of *Buckingham*, after Constable of *England*.
208. *Thomas Fitz-Alan*, Lord *Matrevers*, after Earl of *Arundel*.
209. Sir *William Parr*.
210. *Frederick*, Duke of *Urbin*.
211. *Henry Percy*, Earl of *Northumberland*.
212. *Edward* Prince of *Wales*.
213. *Richard* Duke of *York*, second Son to King *Edward* the Fourth.
214. *Thomas Grey*, Earl of *Huntingdon* and Marquess *Dorset*.
215. Sir *Thomas Montgomery*, Knight.
216. *Ferdinand*, King of *Castile*.
217. *Hercules*, Duke of *Ferara*.
218. *John*, King of *Portugal*, Son to *Alphonsus* the Fifth.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King *Richard* the Third.

219. Sir *John Coniers*, Knight.
220. *Thomas Howard*, Earl of *Surrey*, after Lord Treasurer of *England*, and Duke of *Norfolk*.
221. *Francis* Viscount *Lovell*.
222. Sir *Richard Ratcliff*, Knight.
223. Sir *Thomas Burgh*, Knight, after Lord *Burgh*.
224. *Thomas Stanley*, Lord *Stanley*, after Earl of *Derby*.
225. Sir *Richard Tunstall*, Knight.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King *Henry* the Seventh.

226. *John Vere*, Earl of *Oxford*.
227. Sir *Giles d' Aubeny*, Knight, after Lord *d' Aubeny*.
228. *Thomas Fitz-Alan*, Earl of *Arundel*.
229. *George Talbot*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*.
230. *John Wells*, Viscount *Wells*.
231. *George Stanley*, Lord *Strange*.
232. Sir *Edward Wydevile*, Knight Banneret.
233. *John Dynham*, Lord *Dynham*, Lord Treasurer of *England*.
234. *Maximilian* the First, Emperor of *Germany*.
235. Sir *John Savage*, Knight.
236. Sir *William Stanley*, Knight, Lord *Chamberlain*.


John Lord Scrope. 189.
Sr John Astley 190.
Ferdinand king of Naples 191.
Francis Sforzia Duke of Milan. 192.
James Earle Douglas. 193.
Galeard Lord Duras 194.
Sr Robert Harcourt. 198.
Anthony Lord Scales 196.
Richard Duke of Gloucester. 197
Lord Mountgryson. 198.
John Duke of Norfolke 199
John Duke of Suffolke. 200
William Earle of Arundell 201
John Earle of Wiltshire. 202.
John Lord Howard 203.
Walter Lord Ferrars. 204.
Walter Lord Montjoy 205
Charles Duke of Burgundy 206
Henry Duke of Buckingham. 207
Thomas Lord Matreevers. 108
Sr William Parr. 209
Frederick Duke of Prhin. 210
Henry Earle of Northumberland 211
Edward Prince of Wales. 212.
Richard Duke of Yorke 115.
Thomas Marquess Dorset. 214.
Sr Thomas Montgomery. 215
Ferdinand king of Castile. 216.
Hercules Duke of Ferrara. 217.
John King of Portugal. 218.
Sr John Conyers 219.
Thomas Earle of Surrey 220.
Francis Viscount Lovell 221
Sr Richard Ratcliff. 222
Sr Thomas Burgh. 223.
Thomas Lord Stanley 224
Sr Richard Tunstall. 225.
John Earle of Oxford. 226.
Sr Giles d'Aubeney 227.
Thomas Earle of Arundell. 228.
George Earle of Shrewsbury. 229
John Viscount Wells. 230.
George Lord Strange. 231.
Sr Edward Wydevile 232.
John Lord Dynham. 233.
Maximilian the 1st Emperor. 234
Sr John Savage. 235.
Sr William Stanley 236.

Pag. 712.


S. Iohn Cheney 237.
Alphonsus Duke of Calabria. 238
Prince Arthur 239
Thomas Marques Dorset 240
Henry Earle of Northumberland 241
Henry Earle of Essex 242
S. Charles Somerset 243.
Robert Lord Brook. 244
S. Edward Poynings. 245.
S. Gilbert Talbot. 246.
S. Richard Poole. 247.
Edward Duke of Buckingham 248
Henry Duke of Yorke 249.
Edward Earle of Devonshire 250
S. Richard Guildford 251
Edmund Earle of Suffolke. 252
S. Thomas Lovell. 253.
S. Reginald Bray. 254
Iohn King of Denmarke 255
S. Vbaldo Duke of Vrbin. 256
Gerald Earle of Kildare 257
Henry Earle of Wiltshire 258
Richard Earle of Kent. 259
S. Rys ap Thomas 260
Philip King of Castile 261
S. Thomas Brandon 262
Charles Prince of Spaines 263.
Thomas Lord Darcy 264.
Edward Lord Dudley. 265
Emanuel king of Portugal 266.
Thomas Lord Howard 267
Thomas Lord la Ware. 268
S. Henry Marney 269.
George Lord Abergavenny. 270.
S. Edward Howard 271
S. Charles Brandon. 272.
Iulian de Medicis 273.
Edward Lord Monteagle 274
Thomas Lord Dacres 275
S. William Sandys. 276.
Henry Earle of Devonshire 277
Ferdinand Prince of Spaine 278.
S. Richard Wingfield 279
Sr. Thomas Bullen 280.
Walter Lord Ferrars 281
Arthur Viscount Lisle 282
Robert Viscount Fitz Walter 283
William Earle of Arundell 284

Pag. 715

237. Sir *John Cheney*, Knight Baneret.
238. *Alphonsus*, Duke of *Calabria*.
239. *Arthur*, Prince of *Wales*.
240. *Thomas Grey*, Marquess *Dorset*.
241. *Henry Percy*, Earl of *Northumberland*.
242. *Henry Bourchier*, Earl of *Essex*.
243. Sir *Charles Somerset*, Knight Baneret, after Earl of *Worcester*.
244. *Robert Willoughby*, Lord *Brook*.
245. Sir *Edward Poynings*, Knight.
246. Sir *Gilbert Talbot*, Knight Baneret.
247. Sir *Richard Poole*, Knight.
248. *Edward Stafford*, Duke of *Buckingham*.
249. *Henry* Duke of *York*, second Son to King *Henry* the Seventh, after King of *England*, of that name the Eighth.
250. *Edward Courtney*, Earl of *Devonshire*.
251. Sir *Richard Guildford*, Knight Baneret.
252. *Edmund de la Poole*, Earl of *Suffolke*.
253. Sir *Thomas Lovel*, Knight Baneret.
254. Sir *Reginald Bray*, Knight Baneret.
255. *John*, King of *Denmark*.
256. *Guido Ubaldo*, Duke of *Urbin*.
257. *Gerald Fitz Gerald*, Earl of *Kildare*.
258. *Henry Stafford* Lord *Stafford*, after Earl of *Wiltshire*.
259. *Richard Grey*, Earl of *Kent*.
260. Sir *Rys ap Thomas*, Knight Baneret.
261. *Philip*, King of *Castile*.
262. Sir *Thomas Brandon*, Knight Baneret.
263. *Charles*, Arch-Duke of *Austria*, Prince of *Spaines*, after Emperor of *Germany*.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth.

264. *Thomas Darcy*, Lord *Darcy*.
265. *Edward Sutton*, Lord *Dudley*.
266. *Emanuel*, King of *Portugal*.
267. *Thomas Howard*, Lord *Howard*, eldest Son to *Thomas* Duke of *Norfolk*.
268. *Thomas West*, Lord *la Ware*.
269. Sir *Henry Marney* Knight, after Lord *Marney*.
270. *George Nevil*, Lord *Abergaveny*.
271. Sir *Edward Howard* Knight, second Son to *Thomas* Duke of *Norfolk*.
272. Sir *Charles Brandon*, after Duke of *Suffolk*.
273. *Julian de Medices*, Brother to Pope *Leo* the Tenth.
274. *Edward Stanley*, Lord *Mounteagle*.
275. *Thomas Dacres*, Lord *Dacres* of *Gyllesland*.
276. Sir *William Sandes* Knight, after Lord *Sandes*.
277. *Henry Courtney*, Earl of *Devonshire*, and after Marquess of *Exceter*.
278. *Ferdinand*, Prince and Infant of *Spain*, Arch-Duke of *Austria*, after Emperor of *Germany*.
279. Sir *Richard Wingfield*, Knight.
280. Sir *Thomas Bullen* Knight, after Viscount *Rochford*, and Earl of *Wiltshire* and *Ormond*.
281. *Walter d' Eureux*, Lord *Ferrars* of *Chartley*, after Viscount *Hereford*.
282. *Arthur Plantaginet*, Viscount *Lisle*.
283. *Robert Radcliff*, Viscount *Fitz Walter*, after Earl of *Sussex*.
284. *William Fitz-Alan*, Earl of *Arundel*.

285. *Thomas Mannors*, Lord *Roos*, after Earl of *Rutland*.
286. *Henry Fitz Roy*, after Earl of *Nottingham*, and Duke of *Richmond* and *Somerset*.
287. *Ralph Nevil*, Earl of *Westmerland*.
288. *William Blount*, Lord *Montjoy*.
289. Sir *William Fitz Williams* Knight, after Earl of *Southampton*.
290. Sir *Henry Guildford*, Knight.
291. *Francis* the *French* King.
292. *John Vere*, Earl of *Oxford*.
293. *Henry Percy*, Earl of *Northumberland*.
294. *Anne*, Duke of *Montmorency*.
295. *Philip Chabot*, Earl of *Newblanche*.
296. *James*, the Fifth King of *Scotland*.
297. Sir *Nicholas Carew*, Knight.
298. *Henry Clifford*, Earl of *Cumberland*.
299. *Thomas Cromwell*, Lord *Cromwell*, after Earl of *Essex*.
300. *John Russell*, Lord *Russell*, after Earl of *Bedford*.
301. Sir *Thomas Cheney*, Knight.
302. Sir *William Kingston*, Knight.
303. *Thomas Audley*, Lord *Audley* of *Walden*, Lord Chancellor of *England*.
304. Sir *Anthony Browne*, Knight.
305. *Edward Seymour*, Earl of *Hertford*, after Duke of *Somerset*.
306. *Henry Howard*, Earl of *Surrey*.
307. Sir *John Gage*, Knight.
308. Sir *Anthony Wingfield*, Knight.
309. *John Sutton* Viscount *Lisle*, after Earl of *Warwick*, and Duke of *Northumberland*.
310. *William Paulet*, Lord *St. John* of *Basing*, after Earl of *Wiltshire*, and Marquess of *Winchester*.
311. *William Parr*, Lord *Parr* of *Kendall*, after Earl of *Essex*, and Marquess of *Northampton*.
312. Sir *John Wallop*, Knight.
313. *Henry Fitz-Alen*, Earl of *Arundell*.
314. Sir *Anthony St. Leger*, Knight.
315. *Francis Talbot*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*.
316. *Thomas Wriothesley*, Lord *Wriothesley*, after Earl of *Southampton*.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King *Edward* the Sixth.

317. *Henry Grey*, Marquess *Dorset*, after Duke of *Suffolk*.
318. *Edward Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
319. *Thomas Seymour*, Lord *Seymour* of *Sudely*.
320. Sir *William Paget*, Knight, after Lord *Paget* of *Beaudesart*.
321. *Francis Hastings*, Earl of *Huntingdon*.
322. *George Brook*, Lord *Cobham*.
323. *Thomas West*, Lord *La Ware*.
324. Sir *William Herbert*, Knight, after Lord *Herbert* of *Cardiff*, and Earl of *Penbroke*.
325. *Henry*, 2. the *French* King.
326. *Edward Fynes*, Lord *Clynton*, after Earl of *Lincolne*.
327. *Thomas Darcy*, Lord *Darcy* of *Chiche*.
328. *Henry Nevil*, Earl of *Westmerland*.
329. Sir *Andrew Dudley*, Knight.

Knights Elected in the Reign of Queen *Mary*.

330. *Philip*, Prince of *Spain*, after King of *England*.
331. *Henry Radclyff*, Earl of *Sussex*.
332. *Emanuel Philibert*, Duke of *Savoy*.

333. *William*


Thomas Lord Roos. 285.
Henry Fitz Roy. 286.
Ralph Earle of Westmerland. 287
William Lord Mountjoy. 288.
S. William Fitz Williams 289.
S. Henry Guildford 290
Francis the first French king. 291.
Iohn Earle of Oxford. 292.
Henry Earle of Northumberland. 293
Anne Duke of Montmorency. 294
Philip Earle of Newblanke. 295
Iames the 5. king of Scotland. 296.
S. Nicholas Carew 297.
Henry Earle of Cumberland. 298.
Thomas Lord Cromwell. 299.
Iohn Lord Russell. 300.
S. Thomas Cheney 301
S. William Kingston. 302
Thomas Lord Audeley 303
S. Anthony Browne. 304.
Edward Earle of Hertford 305
Henry Earle of Surrey. 306.
S. Iohn Gage. 307.
S. Anthony Wing Feild 308.
Iohn Viscount Lisle 309.
Will. Paulet Lord S. Iohn of Basing. 310
William Lord Parr. 311.
S. Iohn Wallop. 312.
Henry Earle of Arundell. 313.
S. Anthony S. Leger. 314.
Francis Earle of Shrewsbury. 315.
Thomas Lord Wriothesley. 316.
Henry Marques Dorset. 317.
Edward Earle of Derby 318.
Thomas Lord Seymour. 319.
S. William Paget. 320
Francis Earle of Huntingdon. 321.
Geoye Lord Cobham. 322.
Thomas Lord la Ware 323.
S. William Herbert. 324.
Henry the 2.d French king. 325
Edward Lord Clynton 326.
Thomas Lord Darcy 327.
Henry Earle of Westmerland. 328.
S. Andrew Dudley. 329.
Philip Prince of Spaine. 330.
Henry Earle of Sussex. 331
Emanuell Duke of Savoy. 332.


William Lord Howard 333
Anthony Viscount Mountague 334
Sr Edward Hastings 335
Thomas Earle of Sussex 336
William Lord Grey 337
Sr Robert Rochester 338
Thomas Duke of Norfolke 339
Henry Earle of Rutland 340
Sr Robert Dudley 341
Adolph Duke of Holstein 342
George Earle of Shrewsbury 343
Henry Lord Hunsdon 344
Thomas Earle of Northumberland 345
Ambrose Earle of Warwick 346
Charles the 9th French King 347
Francis Earle of Bedford 348
Sr Henry Sidney 349
Maximilian the 2d Emperour 350
Henry Earle of Huntingdon 351
William Earle of Worcester 352
Francis Duke of Montmorency 353
Walter Viscount Hereford 354
William Lord Burghley 355
Arthur Lord Grey 356
Edmond Lord Chandos 357
Henry Earle of Derby 358
Henry Earle of Pembroke 359
Henry the third French king 360
Charles Lord Howard 361
Rodolph Empr of Germany 362
Frederick the 2d king of Denmarke 363
Iohn Count Palatine 364
Edward Earle of Rutland 365
William Lord Cobham 366
Henry Lord Scroope 367
Robert Earle of Essex 368
Thomas Earle of Ormond 369
Sr Christopher Hatton 370
Henry Earle of Sussex 371
Thomas Lord Buckhurst 372
Henry the 4th French king 373
Iames the 6th king of Scotland 374
Gilbert Earle of Shrewsbury 375
George Earle of Cumberland 376
Henry Earle of Northumberland 377
Edward Earle of Worcester 378
Thomas Lord Burgh 379
Edmond Lord Sheffield 380

Pag 515.

333. *William Howard*, Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*.
334. *Anthony Browne*, Viſcount *Mountague*.
335. Sir *Edward Haſtings*, Knight, after Lord *Haſtings* of *Loughborow*.
336. *Thomas Radcliff*, Earl of *Suſſex*.
337. *William Grey*, Lord *Grey* of *Wilton*.
338. Sir *Robert Rocheſter*, Knight.

Knights Elected in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*.

339. *Thomas Howard* Duke of *Norfolk*.
340. *Henry Mannors*, Earl of *Rutland*.
341. Sir *Robert Dudley*, Knight, after Earl of *Leiceſter*.
342. *Adolph*, Duke of *Holſtein*.
343. *George Talbot*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*.
344. *Henry Carey*, Lord *Hunſdon*.
345. *Thomas Percy*, Earl of *Northumberland*.
346. *Ambroſe Dudley*, Earl of *Warwick*.
347. *Charles* 9. the *French* King.
348. *Francis Ruſſell*, Earl of *Bedford*.
349. Sir *Henry Sidney*, Knight.
350. *Maximilian*, the ſecond Emperor of *Germany*.
351. *Henry Haſtings*, Earl of *Huntingdon*.
352. *William Somerſet*, Earl of *Worceſter*.
353. *Francis*, Duke of *Montmorency*.
354. *Walter d'Euereux*, Viſcount *Hereford*, after Earl of *Eſſex*.
355. *William Cecill*, Lord *Burghley*, after Lord Treaſurer of *England*.
356. *Arthur Grey*, Lord *Grey* of *Wilton*.
357. *Edmund Bruges*, Lord *Chandos*.
358. *Henry Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
359. *Henry Herbert*, Earl of *Penbroke*.
360. *Henry* 3. the *French* King.
361. *Charles Howard*, Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*, after Earl of *Nottingham*.
362. *Rodolph*, Emperor of *Germany*.
363. *Frederick*, the Second King of *Denmark*.
364. *John Caſimire*, Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, Duke of *Bavaria*.
365. *Edward Mannors*, Earl of *Rutland*.
366. *William Brook*, Lord *Cobham*.
367. *Henry Scroop*, Lord *Scroop* of *Bolton*.
368. *Robert d'Euereux*, Earl of *Eſſex*.
369. *Thomas Butler*, Earl of *Ormond*.
370. Sir *Chriſtopher Hatton*, Knight, after Lord Chancellor of *England*.
371. *Henry Radcliff*, Earl of *Suſſex*.
372. *Thomas Sackvile*, Lord *Buckhurſt*, after Lord Treaſurer of *England*, and Earl of *Dorſet*.
373. *Henry* 4. the *French* King.
374. *James*, the Sixth King of *Scotland*, after King of *England*, *France*, and *Ireland*.
375. *Gilbert Talbot*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*.
376. *George Clifford*, Earl of *Cumberland*.
377. *Henry Percy*, Earl of *Northumberland*.
378. *Edward Somerſet*, Earl of *Worceſter*.
379. *Thomas Burogh*, Lord *Burogh* of *Gainesborough*.
380. *Edward Sheffield*, Lord *Sheffield*, after Earl of *Mulgrave*.

381. Sir *Francis Knolles*, Knight.
382. *Frederick*, Duke of *Wirtemberg*.
383. *Thomas Howard*, Lord *Howard* of *Walden*, after Earl of *Suffolk*, and Lord Treasurer of *England*.
384. *George Carey*, Lord *Hunsdon*.
385. *Charles Blount*, Lord *Montjoy*, after Earl of *Devonshire*.
386. Sir *Henry Lea*, Knight.
387. *Robert Radcliff*, Earl of *Sussex*.
388. *Henry Brooke*, Lord *Cobham*.
389. *Thomas Scroop*, Lord *Scroop* of *Bolton*.
390. *William Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
391. *Thomas Cecill*, Lord *Burghley*.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King *James*.

392. *Henry*, Prince of *Wales*.
393. *Christiern*, the Fourth King of *Denmark*.
394. *Lodowick Stewart*, Duke of *Lenox*, and after Duke of *Richmond*.
395. *Henry Wriothesley*, Earl of *Southampton*.
396. *John Erskin*, Earl of *Mar*.
397. *William Herbert*, Earl of *Penbroke*.
398. *Ulrick*, Duke of *Holstein*.
399. *Henry Howard*, Earl of *Northampton*.
400. *Robert Cecill*, Earl of *Salisbury*.
401. *Thomas Howard*, Viscount *Bindon*.
402. *George Hume*, Earl of *Dunbarr*.
403. *Philip Herbert*, Earl of *Montgomery*.
404. *Charles Stewart* Duke of *York*, after Prince of *Wales*, and King of *England*, by the Title of *Charles* the First.
405. *Thomas Howard*, Earl of *Arundell* and *Surrey*, after Earl of *Norfolk*.
406. *Robert Carre*, Viscount *Rochester*, after Earl of *Somerset*.
407. *Frederick* [illegible] Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, Prince Elector of the *Empire*, and after King of *Bohemia*.
408. *Maurice*, van *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*.
409. *Thomas Ereskin*, Viscount *Fenton*.
410. *William Knolles*, Lord *Knolles* of *Grayes*, after Viscount *Walingford*, and Earl of *Banbury*.
411. *Francis Mannors*, Earl of *Rutland*.
412. Sir *George Villers* Knight, after Baron of *Whaddon*, then Earl and Marquess of *Buckingham*, and lastly Earl of *Coventry*, and Duke of *Buckingham*.
413. *Robert Sidney*, Viscount *Lisle*, after Earl of *Leicester*.
414. *James Hamilton*, Marquess *Hamilton*, and Earl of *Cambridge*.
415. *Esme Stewart*, Duke of *Lenox*.
416. *Christian*, Duke of *Brunswick*.
417. *William Cecill*, Earl of *Salisbury*.
418. *James Hay*, Earl of *Carlisle*.
419. *Edward Sackvile*, Earl of *Dorset*.
420. *Henry Rich*, Earl of *Holland*.
421. *Thomas Howard*, Viscount *Andover*, after Earl of *Berkshire*.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King *Charles* the First.

422. *Claude de Lorraine*, Duke of *Cheuereuse*.
423. *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*.
424. *Henry Frederick* van *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*.
425. *Theophilus Howard*, Earl of *Suffolk*.
426. *William Compton*, Earl of *Northampton*.
427. *Richard Weston*, Lord *Weston* of *Neyland*, Lord Treasurer of *England*, and after Earl of *Portland*.
428. *Robert Barty*, Earl of *Lindsey*.

429. *William*


S. Francis Knolles 381
Frederick Duke of Wurtemberg. 382.
Thomas Lord Howard. 383
George Lord Hunsdon. 384.
Charles Lord Mountjoy. 385.
S. Henry Lee
Robert Earle of Sussex. 387.
Henry Lord Cobham. 388.
Thomas Lord Scrope. 389.
William Earle of Derby. 390
Thomas Lord Burghley. 391
Henry Prince of Wales. 392
Christern the 4th King of Denmarke. 393
Lodowick Duke of Lenox 394
Henry Earle of Southampton 395
John Earle of Marr. 396.
William Earle of Pembroke 397
Ulrick Duke of Holstein 398.
Henry Earle of Northampton 399
Robert Earle of Salisbury 400
Thomas Viscount Buadon. 401
George Earle of Dunbarr. 402.
Philip Earle of Montgomery. 403
Charles Duke of Yorke. 404
Thomas Earle of Arundell. 405.
Robert Viscount Rocherter 406.
Frederick Count Palatine 407
Maurice Prince of Orange 408
Thomas Viscount Fenton 409
William Lord Knolles 410
Francis Earle of Rutland 411.
S. George Villars 412.
Robert Viscount Lisle 413.
James Marquis Hamilton 414
Esme Duke of Lenox 415
Christian Duke of Brunswick. 416
William Earle of Salisbury. 417
James Earle of Carlisle 418
Edward Earle of Dorset. 419
Henry Earle of Holland 420
Thomas Viscount Andover. 421.
Claude Duke of Chevereux. 422
Gustavus King of Sweden 423
Henry Prince of Orange 424.
Theophilus Earle of Suffolke 425
William Earle of Northampton 426
Richard Lord Weston. 427.
Robert Earle of Lindsey 428


John Earle of Leicester 420
James Marquess Hamilton 430
Charles Count Palatine 431
James Duke of Lennox 432
Henry Earle of Derby 433
William Earle of Marlan 434
Algernon Earle of Northumberland 435
Charles Prince of Wales 436
Thomas Earle of Strafford 437
James Duke of Yorke 438
Rupert Count Palatine 439
William Prince of Orange 440
Bernard Duke of Lennon 441
Maurice Count Palatine 442
James Marquess Ormond 443
Edward Count Palatine 444
George Duke of Buckingham 445
William Duke Hamilton 446
Thomas Earle of Southampton 447
William Marquis of Newcastle 448
James Marquess of Montross 449
James Earle of Derby 450
George Earle of Bristoll 451
Henry Duke of Gloucester 452
Charles Prince of Tarent 453
William Prince of Orange 454
Frederick Elector of Brandenburgh 455
John Gasper Count Mavrhin 456
Sr George Monke 457
Sr Edward Mountague 458
William Marquess of Hartford 459
Aubrey Earle of Oxford 460
Charles Duke of Richmond 461
Montagu Earle of Lindsey 462
Edward Earle of Manchester 463
William Earle of Strafford 464
Christierne Prince of Denmarke 465
James Duke of Monmouth 466
James Duke of Cambridge 467
Charles King of Sweden 468
John Duke of Saxonie 469
Christopher Duke of Albemarle 470
John Duke of Lauderdale 471
Marquess Worcester 472
Henry Earle of St Albans 473
William Earle of Bedford 474
Henry Earle of Arlington 475
Thomas Earle of Ossory 476

429. *William Cecill*, Earl of *Exceter*.
430. *James Hamilton*, Marquess *Hamilton*, Earl of *Cambridge* and *Arran*.
431. *Charles Lodowick*, Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, Prince Elector of the *Empire*, and Duke of *Bavaria*.
432. *James Stewart*, Duke of *Lenox*, after Earl of *March*.
433. *Henry Danvers*, Earl of *Danby*.
434. *William Douglas*, Earl of *Morton*.
435. *Algernon Percy*, Earl of *Northumberland*.
436. *Charles*, Prince of *Wales*, now King of *England*, *Scotland*, *France*, and *Ireland*, of that name the Second, and present *Soveraign* of the most Noble *Order* of the *Garter*.
437. *Thomas Wentworth*, Earl of *Strafford*.
438. *James Stewart* Duke of *York* and *Albanie*, second Son to King *Charles* the First.
439. *Rupert*, Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, after Earl of *Holdernesse*, and Duke of *Cumberland*.
440. *William* van *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*.
441. *Bernard de Foix*, Duke *d'Espernon*.

Knights Elected in the Reign of King *Charles* the Second.

442. *Maurice*, Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, and Duke of *Bavaria*.
443. *James Boteler*, Marquess of *Ormond*, since Earl of *Brecknock*, and Duke of *Ormond*.
444. *Edward*, Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, and Duke of *Bavaria*.
445. *George Villers*, Duke of *Buckingham*.
446. *William Hamilton*, Duke of *Hamilton*.
447. *Thomas Wriothesley*, Earl of *Southampton*, after Lord Treasurer of *England*.
448. *William Cavendish*, Marquess of *New-Castle*, since Duke of *New-Castle*.
449. *James Graham*, Marquess of *Montross*.
450. *James Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
451. *George Digby*, Earl of *Bristoll*.
452. *Henry Stewart* Duke of *Gloucester*, third Son to King *Charles* the First.
453. *Henry Charles de la Tremoille*, Prince de *Tarente*.
454. *William Henry* van *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*.
455. *Frederick William*, Prince Elector of the *Empire*, Marquess of *Brandenburg*.
456. *John Gaspar Ferdinand* de *Marchin*, Count de *Gravil*.
457. Sir *George Monck*, Knight, after Duke of *Albemarle*.
458. Sir *Edward Mountague*, Knight, after Earl of *Sandwich*.
459. *William Seymour*, Marquess of *Hertford*, after Duke of *Somerset*.
460. *Aubrie de Vere*, Earl of *Oxford*.
461. *Charles Stewart*, Duke of *Richmond* and *Lenox*.
462. *Mountague Barty*, Earl of *Lindsey*.
463. *Edward Mountague*, Earl of *Manchester*.
464. *William Wentworth*, Earl of *Strafford*.
465. *Christierne*, Prince of *Denmark*, since King of *Denmark*.
466. *James Scot*, Duke of *Monmouth* and *Buccleugh*.
467. *James Stewart*, Duke of *Cambridge*.
468. *Charles* the Eleventh, King of *Sweden*, *Goths*, and *Vandals*.
469. *John George* the Second, Duke of *Saxony*, *Juliers*, *Cleves*, and *Monts*, and Prince Elector of the *Empire*.
470. *Christopher Monck*, Duke of *Albemarle*.
471. *John Maitland*, Duke of *Lauderdale*.
472. *Henry Somerset*, Marquess of *Worcester*.
473. *Henry Jermyn*, Earl of St. *Albans*.
474. *William Russell*, Earl of *Bedford*.
475. *Henry Bennet*, Earl of *Arlington*.
476. Thomas Butler Earle of Ossary.

Remarques

Remarques upon some of the preceding *Scutcheons* of *Arms*.

IN divers of the Plates, *set up at the back of the Stalls in the Choire of St.* George's Chappel *at* Windsor, *the Quarterings appertaining to the* Knights-Companions *are also added; in some of which, so many are taken thereinto, they could not well be comprehended in the size of the* Scutcheons *here allowed, and therefore we chose to represent only the first Coat in each Plate: but because those were not always their* Paternal Arms, *lest our* Reader *should think us guilty of mistake, we add, That now and then the* Knights-Companions *liked to have their* Wives Arms, *such as were* Heirs, *marshalled before their own, whereupon it falls out that these (not their* Paternal Arms) *appear in some few of the preceding* Scutcheons, *nevertheless in such case the whole Quarterings in the Plate follow. For instance;* Richard Nevil, *who married* Elinor *Daughter and Heir of* Thomas Montacute *Earl of* Salisbury, *being created Earl of* Salisbury *after his Father-in-Law's decease, bore* [a] Montacute *and* Monthermer *quarterly in the first Quarter, and* Nevil *in the second. And his eldest Son having married* Anne, *Sister and sole Heir of* Henry *Duke of* Warwick, *marshall'd first* [b] *her Arms, next his Mother's, and both before his own. In like manner* William Nevil, *that married* Joane *Daughter and Heir of* Thomas *Lord* Fauconbridge, *placed* [c] *her Arms in the first Quarter, and his own in the second. And upon the same account in* [d] *Sir* John Blount's *Plate, is* Sanchet *set before* Blount; *and in* [e] *another,* Ayela *first,* Sanchet *in the second, and* Blount *in the third Quarter. So also in* [f] Thomas *Lord* Stanley's *Plate, we find* Latham *placed in the first, and* Stanley *in the second Quarter: and so some others.*

Sometimes the Knights-Companions *have born their* Wives Arms (*when* Heirs) *upon a* Scutcheon *of* Pretence, *for so did* [g] John *Lord* Montacute, [h] George *Lord* Strange, *and others. And lastly, it appears that* [i] *Sir* Charles Somerset *impaled his Wife's Arms with his own.*

But now and then, the Knights *have forborn to make use of their* Paternal Coats, *and used those of* Heiresses, *from whom they were descended; as appears in the Plate of* [k] John Mowbray *Earl Marshal, where only the Arms of* Thomas *of* Brotherton *appear, and was so born by his* [l] Son *and* [m] Grandchild. *And we see, that Sir* Thomas Bullen, *who at his Installation set up a Plate whereon were the Arms of* [n] Bullen *quartered with* Ormond, Hoo, Rochford, *and* Seintomer, *when afterwards he was created Earl of* Wiltshire *and* Ormond (*being Son and Heir to Sir* Thomas Bullen, *and* Margaret *his Wife, Daughter and one of the Heirs of* Thomas Butler *Earl of* Ormond) *changed his Plate, and placed therein, the* [o] *single Coat of* Ormond, *with this Motto* Nolu Mbus. *So also the paternal Coat of* William *Lord* Willoughby *is omitted in his Plate, and those of* [p] Ufford *and* Beak *born quarterly. The like is done by some of his* [q] *Descendants.*

Add to these, the Arms on the Plates of some Stranger-Princes: *and among them,* [r] Emanuel Philibert *Duke of* Savoy, *in his first Quarter marshals* Westphalie *in the first part,* Saxony-modern *in the second, and in point* Angrie. *The* [s] *Prince of* Tarente *placeth* Aragon-Sicile *in his first Quarter, and bears* Tremoille [Or a Cheveron Gules, between three Eaglets Azure, beaked and membred of the second] *in a* Scutcheon *of* Pretence. *Lastly, the Duke of* [t] Saxony *bears* Thuring *in the first, and* Saxony-modern *in the second quarter. In these, and others of like nature, and for like reason, we have taken the first Coat in each Plate, and placed them in the Scutcheons relating to the precedent* Catalogue.

a *Numb.* 148.
b *Numb.* 179.
c *Numb.* 140.
d *Numb.* 119.
e *Numb.* 205.
f *Numb.* 173.
g *Numb.* 186.
h *Numb.* 231.
i *Numb.* 243.
k *Numb.* 130.
l *Numb.* 166.
m *Numb.* 199.
n *Collection of Plates and Stiles taken in the beginning of King* Henry *the Eighth's Reign.*
o *Numb.* 280.
p *Numb.* 70.
q *Numb.* 126. & 244.
r *Numb.* 332.
s *Numb.* 453.
t *Numb.* 469.

To close up all, here follows a *Catalogue* of the *Officers* of this most Noble *Order.*

Prelates *of the* Order.

William de Edyngton, Bishop of *Winchester*, Lord Treasurer, and after Lord Chancellor of *England.*
William de Wykham, Bishop of *Winchester*, Lord Chancellor of *England.*
Henry Beaufort, Bishop of *Winchester*, Priest Cardinal of St. *Eusebius*, and Lord Chancellor of *England.*
William de Waynfleet, Bishop of *Winchester*, and Lord Chancellor of *England.*
Peter Courtney, Bishop of *Winchester.*
Thomas Langton, Bishop of *Winchester.*
Richard Fox, Bishop of *Winchester*, and Lord Privy Seal.
Thomas Wolsey, Bishop of *Winchester*, Priest Cardinal of St. *Cecily*, and Lord Chancellor of *England.*
Stephen Gardiner, Bishop of *Winchester.*
John Poynet, Bishop of *Winchester.*
Stephen Gardiner restored, and made Lord Chancellor of *England.*
John White, Bishop of *Winchester.*

Robert

Robert Horne, Bishop of *Winchester*.
John Watson, Bishop of *Winchester*.
Thomas Cooper, Bishop of *Winchester*.
William Wykham, Bishop of *Winchester*.
William Day, Bishop of *Winchester*.
Thomas Bilson, Bishop of *Winchester*.
James Mountague, Bishop of *Winchester*.
Lancelot Andrews, Bishop of *Winchester*.
Richard Neyle, Bishop of *Winchester*.
Walter Curle, Bishop of *Winchester*.
Brian Duppa, Bishop of *Winchester*.
George Morley, Bishop of *Winchester*.

Chancellors *of the* Order.

Richard Beauchamp, Bishop of *Salisbury*, and Dean of *Windesor*.
Lionel Woodevelle, Bishop of *Salisbury*.
Thomas Langton, Bishop of *Salisbury*.
John Blyth, Bishop of *Salisbury*.
Henry Dean, Bishop of *Salisbury*.
Edmund Audely, Bishop of *Salisbury*.
Sir *William Cecil*, Knight, Principal Secretary of State.
Sir *William Peters*, Knight, Principal Secretary of State.
Sir *Thomas Smith*, Knight, Principal Secretary of State.
Sir *Francis Walsingham*, Principal Secretary of State.
Sir *Amyas Paulet*, Knight, Privy Counsellor.
Sir *John Woollee*, Knight, Secretary for the Latine Tongue.
Sir *Edward Dyer*, Knight.
Sir *John Herbert*, Knight, Principal Secretary of State.
Sir *George More*, Knight.
Sir *Francis Crane*, Knight.
Sir *Thomas Rowe*, Knight.
Sir *James Palmer*, Knight and Baronet.
Sir *Henry de Vic*, Baronet.
Seth Ward, Bishop of *Salisbury*.

Registers *of the* Order.

John Coringham, Canon of *Windesor*.
John Deepden, Canon of *Windesor*.
James Goldwell, Canon of *Windesor*, and Secretary of State.
Oliver King, Canon of *Windesor*, Secretary to Prince *Henry* Son of King *Henry* the Sixth, to King *Edward* the Fourth, to King *Edward* the Fifth, and King *Henry* the Seventh.
Richard Nix, Canon of *Windesor*.
Christopher Urswick, Dean of *Windesor*.
Thomas Wolsey, the Kings Almoner.
William Atwater, Canon of *Windesor*, after Bishop of *Lincolne*.
Nicholas West, Dean of *Windesor*.
John Vescy, Dean of *Windesor*.
Richard Sydnor, Canon of *Windesor*.
Robert Aldridge, Canon of *Windesor*.
Owen Oglethorp, Dean of *Windesor*.
John Boxall, Dean of *Windesor*, and Principal Secretary of State.
George Carew, Dean of *Windesor*.
William Day, Dean of *Windesor*.
Robert Benet, Dean of *Windesor*.
Giles Tomson, Dean of *Windesor*, and Bishop of *Gloucester*.

Anthony

Anthony Maxey, Dean of *Windesor*.
Marc Antonio de Dominis, Archbishop of *Spalato*, Dean of *Windesor*.
Henry Beaumont, Dean of *Windesor*.
Matthew Wren, Dean of *Windesor*.
Christopher Wren, Dean of *Windesor*.
Bruno Ryves, Dean of *Windesor*.

Garters, Kings of *Arms*.

Sir *William Brugges*, Knight.
John Smert.
Sir *John Writh*, Knight.
Sir *Thomas Wriothesley*, Knight.
Sir *Thomas Wall*, Knight.
Sir *Christopher Barker*, Knight.
Sir *Gilbert Dethick*, Knight.
Sir *William Dethick*, Knight.
Sir *William Segar*, Knight.
Sir *John Borough*, Knight.
Sir *Henry St. George*, Knight.
Sir *Edward Walker*, Knight.

Ushers *of the* Black-Rod.

William Whitehorse.
John Cray.
Thomas Sye.
John Athelbrig.
William Evington, and *Edward Hardgyll*.
Robert Marleton.
Ralph Ashton, and *Hugh Dennys*.
Sir *William Compton*, Knight.
Henry Norresse, Esquire.
Anthony Knyvet, Esquire.
Sir *Philip Hobby*, Knight.
John Norres and *William Norres*, Esquires.
Anthony Wingfield, Esquire.
Richard Coningsbye and *George Pollard*, Esquires.
James Maxwell, Esquire.
Peter Newton, Esquire.
Sir *John Ayton*, Knight.
Sir *Edward Carteret*, Knight.

APPENDIX.

APPENDIX.

The Statutes *of* Institution *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter.

AD *honorem omnipotentis Dei, Sanctæ* Mariæ *Virginis gloriosæ & Sancti* Georgii *Martyris, Dominus noster Supremus* Edwardus *tertius Rex* Angliæ, *anno regni sui post conquestum xxiii. Ordinavit, stabilivit, & fundavit quandam* Societatem *sive* Ordinem militarem, *infra Castrum suum de* Wyndesore, *in hunc modum. Primo seipsum statuit dictæ Societatis sive Ordinis* Superiorem, *filium suum seniorem* Principem Walliæ, Ducem Lancastriæ, Comitem Warwici, Capitaneum de Buche, Comitem Staffordiæ, Comitem Sarum. Dominum de Mortimer, Dominum Johannem Lisle, Dominum Bartholomeum Burghersh filium, Dominum Johannem de Beauchamp, Dominum de Bohun, Dominum Hugonem de Courtenay, Dominum Thomam de Hollande, Dominum Johannem de Grey, Dominum Richardum de fitz Symond, Dominum Milonem de Stapulton, Dominum Thomam Wale, Dominum Hugonem de Wirtesslay, Dominum Nelelatum Loryng, Dominum Johannem Chandos, Dominum Jacobum Daudele, Dominum Otonem de Hollande, Dominum Henricum de Em, Dominum Sanchetum Dabrichecourt, & Dominum Walterum Pavelay.

I. *Concordatum est quod Rex* Angliæ, *qui pro tempore fuerit, inperpetuum erit* Superior *hujus Ordinis Sancti* Georgii, *sive Societatis* Garterii.

II. *Item, concordatum est, quod nullus eligatur in socium dicti Ordinis nisi generosæ propaginis existat, & miles, carens opprobrio, quoniam ignobiles aut reprobos Ordinis institutio non admittit.*

III. *Et xxvi.* Commilitones & Consocii *hujus Ordinis prænominati deferent mantella & garteria apud dictum castrum ordinata quociens ibidem præsentes fuerint, videlicet quâlibet vice quâ capellam intrant Sancti* Georgii *aut domum Capitularem, pro capitulo celebrando, aut aliquid statuendo quod ad Ordinem pertinebit. Et simili modo incedent in vigiliâ Sancti* Georgii, *per modum processionis, proficiscentes cum Superiori Ordinis, aut suo* Deputato, *de magnâ camerâ regiâ usq; ad Capellam, vel domum capitularem, & eâdem serie revertentur. Sedebunt itaq; cum Mantellis & Garteriis in dictâ vigiliâ tempore cœnæ tam illi qui cœnare volunt, quam etiam alii non cœnantes, quousque de magnâ camerâ prædictâ confuctum tempus fuerit separandi. Sic eciam induti incedere debent in crastino versus dictam Capellam, & abinde revertentes, ac etiam tempore prandii & postea, quousq;* Superior, *aut suus* Deputatus *sua Ordinis Insignia deposuerit. Sic etiam proficiscentes ad secundas vesperas & revertentes* (a) *nec nec tempore cœnæ & posteâ, sicut in vigiliâ induentur; quoad usq;* Superior *Ordinis tempus esse decreverit separandi.*

IV. *Et ordinati sunt xiii.* Canonici *seculares, qui tempore Institutionis suæ aut infra annum proximum teneantur ad sacerdotium promoveri; sic eciam xiii.* Vicarii, *qui tempore admissionis suæ erunt Sacerdotes, aut saltem tempore proximæ collationis Ordinum extunc sequentis, celebraturi continuè pro animabus omnium fidelium defunctorum. Isti autem prænominati* Canonici *præsentabuntur per fundatores Ordinis supra dictos,* viz. *quilibet fundatorum modernorum Custodi Collegii suum Canonicum præsentabit. Ita tamen quod si quis Canonicorum moriatur, nec ipse qui eum ultimo præsentabat nec quispiam alius Sociorum Garterii postea præsentabunt, sed solus* Superior *Ordinis ad eundem Canonicatum extunc in ante pro perpetuo præsentabit. Et sic est unanimiter concordatum de præsentationibus omnium aliorum Canonicorum* (b) *solo Superior Ordinis reservandis.*

V. *Item concordatum est, quod prædicti* Canonici *habeant suam mantellam de panno coloris purpurii, cum unâ circumferenciâ Armorum Sancti* Georgii.

VI. *Item Ordinatum est quod xxvi.* Milites veterani, *non habentes unde vivant, ibidem ad honorem* (c) *do & beati* Georgii *competentem habebunt exhibitionem, continuè Deo in orationibus servituri. Et de electionibus eorum* veteranorum *ordinatum est modo simili sicut & de præsentationibus* Canonicorum *prædictorum, sic quod* veteranorum *electiones quemadmodum* Canonicorum *præsentationes soli* Superiori *Ordinis reservabuntur.*

VII. *Item concordatum est, quod dicti* Milites veterani *habebunt sua mantella de rubeo cum uno Scuto Armorum Sancti* Georgii *carente tantum tamen Garterio.*

VIII. *Item concordatum est quod si* Superior *hujus Ordinis, sive Societatis, fortassis esse non poterit apud solemnizationem festivitatis Sancti* Georgii, *Capitulum tenebitur, horâ terciarum ad solemnizandum festivitatem in Crastino, sumptibus* Superioris *Ordinis. Sed novas observancias aut Ordinationes non faciet* deputatus *hujusmodi: Corrigere tamen & reformare sibi licebit transgressores Statutorum Ordinis quæ sequuntur.*

IX. *Item singulis annis in vigiliâ Sancti* Georgii *fit una congregatio omnium consociorum*

(a) forte *nec non.* (b) f. *soli superiori.* (c) f. *Dei.*

Ordinis Sancti Georgii *apud dictum castrum de* Wyndesore, *sive sint infra Regnum* Angliæ, *sive extra, dum tamen illic commodè venire valeant, & ibidem debent apud servicium ecclesiasticum interesse, & sua mantella tempore celebrationis divinorum deferent seriatim in suis stallis existentes. Et quilibet eorum habebit in capella supra Stallum suam galeam & ensem quæ in sui memoriam & ecclesiæ tuitionem ibidem pro tempore vitæ suæ remanebunt, quemadmodum militaris Ordo nobilis hoc exposcit. Sed in casu quo festivitas Sancti* Georgii *contigerit infra quindecim dies proximos post diem* Paschæ, *sit dicta festivitas Sancti* Georgii *prorogata usq; ad illam diem dominicam quæ semper erit dies quintadecima post diem* Paschæ, *ad finem quod quilibet sociorum Ordinis illic valeat apud dictam festivitatem rationabiliter convenire, non equitando per aliquem trium dierum proximò sequentium diem* Paschæ.

X. *Item quod conveniat in dicium locum in vigiliâ Sancti* Georgii *horâ tertiâ, & si qui non veniant hujusmodi tempore assignato* (d) *ne habeant excusationem* Superiori *Ordinis aut suo* Deputato *acceptabilem, per* Superiorem *Ordinis & Capitulum taliter puniri debent, quòd propter hujusmodi neligentiam, non intrabunt ad* Capitulum *illâ vice, sed foris ad hostium expectabunt, nec vocem habebunt in aliquo quod in dicto* Capitulo *fieri* (e) *contigere illâ vice. Et siqui ad vesperas ante Principium non veniant, sua Stalla nullatenus tunc intrabunt, sed in basso, ante Stalla sua, in consueto Loco* Ceroferariorum *se constituent, durantibus vesperis supradictis, ad quas non venerant tempestivè. Et pœna similis statuitur contrà non venientes ante inchoationem Missæ solempnis aut vesperarum in crastino. Et quisquis est qui ad celebrationem festivitatis non veniat, non habens excusationem* Superiori *Ordinis acceptabilem, sibi præcipiatur nomine pœnæ quod stallum suum non intrabit festivitate proximâ tunc sequente, sed se tenebit ante & extra stallum, in loco quo supra tempore primarum vesperarum, & tempore processionis in crastino perante tres cruces processionales transibit, & redeundo in chorum stabit in loco basso quo supra toto tempore Missæ usq; ad* Offertorium, *novissimè oblaturus. Et hujusmodi panitentiis sic peractis, incontinenti veniet ante stallum* Superioris *aut sui* Deputati *superindè veniam petiturus. Et deindè dictus* Superior *aut suus* Deputatus *eum ad Stallum suum & primævum statum restituet. Quod si à secundo festo Sancti* Georgii *anno proximo tunc sequente absq; excusatione* Superiori *acceptabili, aut ejus* Deputato, *denuo se absentet existens infra regnum* Angliæ, *extunc Stallum suum non intrabit, quoadusq; infra dictam capellam apud Altare Sancti* Georgii *unum Jocale optulerit valoris* xx. *marcarum Monetæ* Anglicanæ; *Et extunc singulis annis inantea ipsam mulctam, donec reconciliatus fuerit, duplicabit.*

XI. *Item quod omnes* Confocii *Ordinis, ubicunq; locorum constituti, deferent Mantella sua de blodio singulis annis, ab horâ primarum vesperarum in vigiliâ Sancti* Georgii, *usq; ad secundas vesperas in crastino inclusivè, quemadmodum facturi essent, si cum* Superiori *Ordinis aut suo* Deputato *personaliter interessent, toto tempore hujus festivitatis celebrandæ, dum tamen sint in loco ubi gaudeant propriâ libertate.*

XII. *Item, concordatum est quod siquis dictæ societatis incedat publicè sine* Garterio, *quantocius fuerit exinde ammonitus aut notatus, custodi & Collegio solvet dimidiam marcam, sicut alii antè solverunt qui in eâdem culpâ fuere constituti.*

XIII. *Item, concordatum est, quòd, tempore* Offertorii *apud altam Missam, semper duo ex sociis qui sunt in suis stallis oppositi simul ad offerendum incedant. Et si ex eis quenquam contigerit absentari, socius suus, qui sibi deberet esse oppositus, solus & per se ad offerendum transibit. Et notandum quod* Superior *Ordinis tempore* Processionis *in dictâ capellâ transibit retro totam sociorum committivam,*

XIV. *Item, concordatum est, quod, in quolibet crastino Sancti* Georgii, *antequam socii mutuò separentur aut recedant, celebretur una missa* de Requie, *pro animabus omnium fidelium defunctorum, & quod tota societas sit tunc ibidem integraliter, si non fuerit eorum aliquis rationabiliter præpeditus, vel si non habeat licentiam* Superioris *Ordinis aut sui* Deputati, *antequam ab illic recedat.*

XV. *Item, concordatum est, quod quilibet sociorum dimittet ibidem suam clamidem, pro accessibus hujusmodi repentinis, & pro observandis præceptis & monitis salutaribus* Superioris *prædicti.*

XVI. *Item, conventum est, quod si quenquam ex dictâ societate sive Ordine per dictum Castrum de* Wyndesore *itinerare contigerit, pro honore loci intret, si commode poterit, nec sit ex justâ & rationabili causâ præpeditus. Et quod antequam capellam ingrediatur, omnino clamide se induat, ita quod non nisi clamide indutus intret, &* Canonici *per tunc ibidem præsentes sibi venient in obviam, & ipsum in capellam devotè conducent. Et si fortassis ipsum contigerit illic accedere horâ Missæ, expectet ad honorem Dei & Sancti* Georgii, *& audiat ipsam Missam. Quod si post meridiem veniat, intret modo & forma expressatis, & tunc expectet donec* Canonici *semel dixerint Psalmum* de Profundis, *pro animabus omnium fidelium defunctorum, & ibidem offerat, Psalmo dicto. Siquis autem ex dictâ societate per medium villæ equitaverit & Capellam non intret & offerat veluti concordatum existit, quilibet vice quâ hoc non faciat pedester transeat, virtute Obedientiæ, unum miliare versus dictam capellam, & offeret unum denarium, ob honorem Sancti* Georgii.

XVII. *Item, concordatum est, quod* Superior *Ordinis, incontinenti postquam mors alicujus* Socii *ei sit sibi cognita, faciat celebrari pro animâ ipsius mortui Mille Missas, & quilibet* Rex *forancus pro animâ illius mortui faciet celebrari* DCCC. Princeps Walliæ DCC. *quilibet* Dux DC. *quilibet* comes CCC. *quilibet* Baro CC. *& quilibet* Miles Bacallarius C. *Missas. Et si* Superior *Ordinis aut alius quispiam hoc fieri non faciat, infra unum quarterium anni postquam sit certificatus de morte, numerum missarum in toto*

(d) *Nec.* (e) *Contigerit.*

ad

ad quas ab initio juxta status sui conditionem tenebatur, duplicare, & si medietas anni sic a retro sit, etiam eodem modo duplicare debet, & ita de tempore in tempus usque in finem anni, & si infra annum fieri non faciat, annos eodem modo duplicabit.

XVIII. *Item, concordatum est, quod quoties aliquis* consociorum *Ordinis fuerit sublatus de medio,* Superior *Ordinis aut suus* Deputatus *certificato sibi de merito faciat omnes* consocios *existentes infra regnum suum* Angliæ *qui accedere poterunt, per suas literas admoneri, quod pro eligendo novo* Consocio, *coram eo conveniant, infra sex ebdomadas postquam certificati fuerint de morte in loco ydoneo quem* Superior *ad hoc duxerit assignando. Quibus omnibus sic congregatis, aut sex eorum ad minus præter* Superiorem *aut suum* Deputatum, *quilibet eorum qui præsens in electione fuerit novem de sufficientioribus, quos omni ignominiâ & opprobrio crediderit expertes, sivè sint de subditis* Superioris *Ordinis aut alii foranei, sibi non subjecti, Dum tamen partem dicto* Superiori *adversantem non foveant aut defendant, nominabit,* viz. *tres* Comites *aut de statu sublimiori, tres* Barones, *& tres* Milites Bacallarios, *& istas denominationes scribet Principalis* Prælatus *Ordinis, scilicet Episcopus* Vintoniensis *qui pro tempore fuerit, & in suâ absenciâ* Decanus *Collegii, vel* Registrator, *& in* (i) *eos absentibus antiquior* Recidenciarius *Collegii supradicti, & denominationes sic factæ per omnes* Consocios *aut sex eorum ad minus ut præfertur, per eum qui eas scripsit,* Superiori *Ordinis aut suo* Deputato *monstrabunt, qui de nominatis hujusmodi eum præeleget & admittet cui major vocum pluralitas suffragatur, & quem sibi ad honorem Ordinis & utilitatem regni & Regis magis videbitur expedire. Et in casu quo nullus sociorum ad electionem veniat modo sequenti, veniet puniendus saltem si non justâ de causâ fuerit impeditus. Si tamen causam absentiæ justam & probabilem allegaverit, per* Superiorem, *aut suum* Deputatum *debet approbari. Quod si causa absentiæ reperta forsan fuerit minus justa, & accitus ad electionem non venerit, ut præfertur, concordatum est, quod custodi & Collegio, nomine pœnæ solvat unam marcam, & cum proximò fuerit in Capitulo sedebit ante* Superiorem *Ordinis aut suum* Deputatum, *& totam societatem, in medio Capituli super terram, quousq; per* Superiorem *aut suum* Deputatum *& societatem fuerit reconciliatus.*

XIX. *Item, concordatum est, quod in casu quo aliquis Militum dictæ societatis* Garterii *moriatur, & in ejus locum alius eligatur, quantocius post electionem electus habebit* Garterium, *in signum quod est unus sociorum* Garterii, *& habebit* Mantellum *sibi pro suo habitu liberatum, quando in stallum suum inducetur, & non antè; Et in casu quo moriatur priusquam fuerit installatus, non nominabitur unus fundatorum ex quo non habet plenariam possessionem sui status, ymmo habebit medietatem Missarum prædictarum, pro eo quod habuit liberatam* Garterii, *& penitus nichil magis. Et si talis electus non veniat ad dictum locum cum omni celeritate accommodâ post receptionem* Garterii, *ut installetur, & signanter infra annum post ejus electionem, si sit habitans infra regnum* Angliæ, *& non habeat excusationem* Superiori *aut suo* Deputato *& societati* Garterii *acceptabilem, electio de eo facta sit prorsus irrita & inanis, & exinde* Superior *Ordinis aut suus* Deputatus, *unà cum societate, ad novam electionem procedat. Et nec ensis nec galea alicujus electi quousq; veniat infra Castrum supra stallum suum figentur, sed exteriùs ante suum stallum; ad finem, quod si ipse electus ad Castrum non veniat, ut præfertur, ensis suus & galea non indecenter erunt deposita de sublimi, sed ut Militaris honor servet* (g) *illibatus, removebuntur extra chorum curialiter & honestè, & remanebunt extunc ad opus publicum & usum Collegii supradicti.*

XX. *Item, concordatum est, quod omnes foranei qui in societatem dicti Ordinis* Garterii *eligentur* (h) *per* Superiorem *Ordinis de suâ electione certificentur, &* Garterium *atq;* Mantellum *&* Statuta *Ordinis, sub communi Sigillo, cum omni celeritate accommodâ sumptibus tamen* Superioris *Ordinis, transmittantur; Et omnia* (i) *certificentur foranei infra quatuor menses continuos à tempore electionis de se factæ; Ad finem quod deliberare valeant ex tenore Statutorum, si electioni hujusmodi voluerint consentire. Et etiam quod omnes hujusmodi foranei, sic electi, cujuscumq; conditionis status aut dignitatis existant, infra spacium octo mensium post certificatam sibi electionem per* Superiorem *Ordinis aut suum* Deputatum *& receptionem* Garterii, *mittant unum* Procuratorem *sufficientem, secundum quod statui electi hujusmodi videbitur convenire; proviso tamen quod* Procurator *hujusmodi, installandus in locum suum, sit* Miles, *expers omnis opprobrii, qui tempore sui adventus ex causa hujusmodi secum deferet ex parte mittentis unum* Mantellum *Ordinis, de serico blodio, & etiam ensem & galeam, penes Collegium ipsum remansura, Quod quidem* Mantellum *ponetur super brachium dextrum* Procuratoris *hujusmodi, per* Superiorem *Ordinis aut suum* Deputatum, *tempore installationis suæ supradictæ, et illud tenebit super dictum brachium suum ad horas Canonicas proximas post installationem accipiendam, nomine Domini sive Magistri sui supradicti. Dictus autem* Procurator *installatus* Mantellum *hujusmodi postea non portabit, nec debet* Capitulum *intrare, nec ibidem vocem habere, virtute cujuscumq; potestatis sibi attributæ. Et sciendum est quod hujusmodi favor Installationis per* Procuratorem *solis foraneis exhibetur, qui quidem non poterunt hac de causâ personaliter advenire, ad finem quod sint participes Missarum & devotarum Orationum Ordinis, quarum mediate* (k) *carerent, si installati non essent antequam morerentur.*

XXI. *Item, concordatum est, Quod si aliquis* Comes, Baro, *aut* Miles Bacallarius *dicti Ordinis decedat; Ipse qui successurus est in locum suum, sive sit* Comes, *sive* Baro, *aut* Miles Bacallarius, *tenebit idem stallum quod tenuit suus*

(f) *Eorum absentia.* (g) *Servetur.* (h) *Elegentur.* (i) *Omnino.* (k) *Medietate.*

Præ-

Prædecessor, cujuscunque fuerit dignitatis, nec ullus eligendus hanc seriem mutabit, præter Principem Valliæ, *qui semper tenebit stallum ex opposito* Superiori *Ordinis, postquam fuerit electus, Ita quod ex casu* Comes *occupare potest stallum* Militis, *& è contrà. Et istud est Ordinatum, ut sciatur qui fuerint* Primævi Fundatores Ordinis.

XXII. *Item, concordatum est, quod quilibet* Sociorum *Ordinis, primo tempore sui ingressus, dabit aliquid certum, secundum eminentiam sui statûs, in sustentationem* Canonicorum *& pauperum* Veteranorum Militum, *ibidem commorantium, ac etiam in augmentum elimosinarum, quæ inibi perpetuò Ordinantur; scilicet* Superior *Ordinis* xl *marcas.* Rex foraneus xx *libras*; Princeps Walliæ xx *marcas*; *quilibet* Dux x *lib. quilibet* Comes x *marcas*; *quilibet* Baro, *centum solidos, & quilibet* Miles Bacallarius v. *marcas. Et ista donaria pia sunt ideo constituta, ut ingrediens hunc Ordinem Militarem per hoc dignius optineat nomen, titulum, & privilegium unius Fundatorum. Dignum enim & conveniens arbitratur, ut qui aggregatur numero Fundatorum* (l) *aliquid hujus rei se nominis in tutu largiatur. Et quousque summæ hujusmodi pecuniarum per quemlibet juxta divisionem istam in primo ejus* (m) *intractatu sint solutæ, nec galea nec ensis ingredientis hujusmodi supra stallum figentur. Et est sciendum quod* Superior *Ordinis tenebitur solvere pro sumptibus introitus cujuslibet* Extranei *qui eligetur, tempore installationis suorum* Procuratorum.

XXIII. *Item, Concordatum est, quod quamtocius quo aliquis societatis sive Ordinis hujus, ex primævis Fundatoribus moriatur, Scutum unum Armorum suorum factum de Metallo, & galea sua, sint fixa retro tergum in stallo suo. Et alii Fundatores qui postèà succedunt habebunt scuta sua & galeas modo conformi situata; subtus tamen aliqualiter primævos Fundatores. Sua etiam Scuta & galeæ non erunt* (n) *precie ita magno, sicut primorum Fundatorum.*

XXIV. *Item quod quilibet ingrediens promittat & juret personaliter, vel per* Procuratorem *ydoneum & sufficientem, nomine suo installandum, de bene & fideliter observando pro viribus statuta Ordinis. Et advertendum est, quod nullus, per* Procuratorem *installationem recipiet nisi duntaxat* Foranei, *qui ob hanc causam commodè accedere non poterint in personis.*

XXV. *Item, concordatum est, quod in casu quo* Superior *Ordinis sit extra regnum suum Angliæ tempore Installationis alicujus sociorum* Garterii, *vel forsan peragere non poterit personaliter, quæ tunc sibi ex officio incumbunt, committere possit uni* Sociorum *ejusdem Ordinis suas vices* (o) *ad plenariam in hac parte potestatem, ea perficiendi & exequendi, quæ, si presens esset, suo proprio ministerio pertinerent.*

XXVI. *Item, concordatum est, quod fiat commune* Sigillum, *quod erit in custodia illius quem* Superior *Ordinis ad hoc voluerit assignare.*

XXVII. *Item quod quilibet* Consociorum *prædicti Ordinis de cætero habeant* Statuta *Ordinis, sub communi* Sigillo *supra dicto. Et quod Originale Statutorum sit cum eodem consignatum, quod infra* (p) *thesaurcum dicti Collegii imperpetuum remanebit, & post mortem cujuscunq;* Consocii *Ordinis supradicti teneantur siti executores ipsa* Statuta *Ordinis Collegio remittere, &* Gardiano *Collegii liberare.*

XXVIII. *Item, concordatum est, quod nullus Militum Ordinis Sancti* Georgii *& de societate* Garterii *exeat Regnum* Angliæ, *absque* (q) *situ & licencia dicti* Superioris. *Et est ideò concordatum, quod si aut aliqua expeditio Militaris contingat, aut aliquid aliud quod ad honorem Militarem cedere conspicitur,* Superior *Ordinis, de suâ gratiâ,* Consocios *Ordinis hujuscemodi actibus Militaribus ceteris quibuscumq; tenebitur anteferre.*

XXIX. *Item quod nullus* Sociorum *Ordinis contra alium* Consocium *levet arma, nisi in guerra Domini sui legei, vel in propriâ justâ querelâ. Et si contingat quod aliquis* Sociorum *Ordinis retineatur cum aliquo domino, aut alicujus domini partem teneat vel querelam, & pars adversa postèà fortè desideret aliquem alium sociorum Ordinis ad defensionem suæ causæ contrariæ secum retinere: nullus talis* Socius *secundariè desideratus ad hoc consenciat, sed semetipsum teneatur excusare pro eo quòd* Consocius *suus primitus ex parte adversâ retentus fuerit velarmatus; & tenebitur propterea quilibet* Sociorum *Ordinis, quando cum aliquo retinetur, excipere & pacisci, quod de omni servicio guerræ movendæ aut exercendæ absolutus sit penitus & quietus si & quatenus aliquis* Consociorum *suorum societatis* Garterii *sit peranteà cum adversâ parte retentus & ibidem armatus. Et si ipse secundariè retentus non cognovit,* (r) *aliquis* Sociorum *suorum* Garterii *fuerat primitus ex parte adversâ retentus, vel armatus, quantocius hoc ad ejus noticiam devenerit, teneatur omne hujusmodi Servicium penitus relinquere, & seipsum tot aliter excusare.*

XXX. *Item, omnes licenciæ Commilitonibus dictæ Societatis concedendæ terras circuire volentibus, honoris adipiscendi gratiâ, per exercitium actuum militarium, & etiam omnia alia scripta tam Certificatoria quam præceptiva, quæ Ordinem* (s) *cofernere videbuntur, per* Superiorem *Ordinis emanare debent, sub communi* Sigillo, *quod remanebit in custodiâ unius* Sociorum *Ordinis ad voluntatem* Superioris *prædicti. Et si ille qui* Sigillum *custodit de presenciâ* Superioris *ex causâ rationabili se transferat, dimittet ipsum* Sigillum *in custodiâ alterius* Sociorum *ejusdem Ordinis, præsentis tamen cum* Superiore, *quem idem* Superior *ad ipsius* Sigilli *custodiam duxerit assignandum. Ita quod* Sigillum *commune nullo unquam tempore sit de præsenciâ* Superioris *ablatum, quamdiu ipse* Superior *fuerit infra Regnum suum* Angliæ. *Et simili modo in absenciâ* Superioris *Ordinis cum prædicto* Sigillo *fieri faciet suus* Deputatus.

XXXI. *Item, concordatum est, si aliquis alius Miles dictæ Societatis sive Ordinis, ductus devo-*

(l) *Aliquid hujus rei seu nominis intuitu.* (m) *Introitu.* (n) *Precii ita magni.* (o) *Ac.* (p) *Thesaurum.* (q) *Scitu.* (r) *Quod aliquis.* (s) *Concernere.*

tionis

tionis spiritu desideret apud dictum Castrum de Wyndesore *continuè trahere suum moram, pro necessariis vitæ suæ & suâ habitatione de proprio peculio faciat ordinari.*

XXXII. *Item, concordatum est, quod in casu quo aliquis* Miles *qui non est dictæ societatis* Garterii, *aut persona alia quævis donare velit aliquod annuum* x l. *aut amplius, dicto Collegio, ad participandum orationum suffragia ibidem fiendarum nomen Datoris hujusmodi intitulabitur in Kalendari Benefactorum (ut* Canonici *&* Milites veterani *pro eo valeant in perpetuum) deprecari.*

XXXIII. *Item, concordatum est, quod si aliquis* Canonicorum *moriatur, &* Superior *Ordinis sit extra Regnum suum* Angliæ, Gardianus *sive* Custos *Collegii, qui pro tempore fuerit, exinde mittet literas suas ad* Superiorem *Ordinis, & Superior quem velit ad eundem Canonicatum valeat præsentare.*

XXXIV. *Item sit unus* Registrator *Ordinatus per* Superiorem *& societatem Ordinis, qui inter cæteros de Collegio sit scientior, & interesse debet in quolibet* Capitulo *Ordinis celebrando, ad registrandum & inactitandum Electiones singulas, & nomina Electorum, punitiones inflictas, & punitionum causas, ad dictum Ordinem pertinentia, de Capitulo in Capitulum annuatim. Et sit dictus* Registrator *juratus in receptione sui officii de fideliter registrando, Et quæ in Principio cujuslibet Capituli in Vigiliâ Sancti* Georgii *annuatim celebrandi, sint omnia Registrata anni præcedentis ibidem publicè lecta, coram* Superiore *& societate Ordinis; Ad finem quod siquid sit malè conceptum & correctione dignum, valeat in formam debitam reformari.*

An Exemplar *of the* Statutes *of* Institution *remaining in the Lord* Hattons Library.

AD honorem Dei, Sanctæ Mariæ *Virginis gloriosæ, & Sancti* Georgii; *Rex* Angliæ, *Dominus noster* Edwardus *tertius post conquestum anno regni sui* 23. *Ordinavit, stabilivit & fundavit unam* Societatem *in Castro suo de* Windsore *sub formâ quæ sequitur.*

Imprimis, ipsemet constituitur Superior *Comitivæ, deinde senior ejus filius princeps* Walliæ, *Dux* Lancastriæ, *Comes* Warwici, Piers *Capital* de la Bouch, *Comes* Staffordiæ, *Comes* Sarisburiæ, *Dominus* de Mari-mortuo, *Dominus* Johannes Lisle, *Dominus* Bartholomeus de Bourghier *Filius, Dominus* Johannes de Beauchampe, *Dominus* de Mahunc, *Dominus* Hugo de Courtny, *Dominus* Thomas de Holande, *Dominus* Johannes de Gray, *Dominus* Ricardus Fitz Simond, *Dominus* Milo de Stapilton, *Dominus* Thomas de Wale, *Dominus* Hugo de Wrottesly, *Dominus* Neel de Loring, *Dominus* Johannes Chandoyse, *Dominus* Jacobus Audley, *Dominus* Otho de Holand, *Dominus* Henricus Eme, *Dominus* Sanchett D'abrigecourt, *Dominus* Walterus de Pavely.

I. *Imprimis, est Statutum & pro perpetuo ordinatum, quod Dominus noster Rex* Angliæ *prædictus, & hæredes sui Reges* Angliæ *superioritate perfruentur Comitivæ prædictæ.*

II. *Item, est decretum quod in prædictum* Ordinem *& consortium nullus admittetur, nisi qui præcinctus fuerit irreprobato cingulo militiæ, sanguinisq; generositate dotatus ex origine.*

III. *Et* xxvi. Milites *prænominati, quotiens præsentes fuerint in castro prædicto, portabunt pro habitu* Mantellos *&* Garteros *ordinatos ad hoc ibidem, scilicet quotiesunque contigerit eos Capellam intrare Sancti* Georgii, *seu domum Capituli pro Capitulo celebrando, vel quicquid aliud faciendo ibidem, quod Ordini pertinebit. Et consimiliter illi induentur insigniis vigiliâ Sancti* Georgii, *egrediendo cum* Superiore, *vel cum suo* Deputato, *de Magnâ Camerâ per modum processionis usq; ad Capellam prædictam, seu domum Capitularem, Et ex post facto eodem ordine revertentes continuè sic induti, tam videlicet in Cœnâ, hi qui cœnare decreverunt, quam ceteri non cœnantes, usque dum* Superior, *seu ejus* Deputatus, *sumptis speciebus & vino, cunctis decreverit valefacere, consimilem modum in omnibus observantes, de mane veniendo ad Capitulum, & revertendo ad prandium, & continuè usque dum* Superior, *seu suus* Deputatus, *singula compleverit, quæ suo statui, pro tunc ex congruo pertinent observari. Ac etiam iterum veniendo ad secundas vesperas, & revertendo ad cœnam, & usque dum completa fuerit &* le voyde *finita.*

IV. *Item ordinati sunt ibidem tredecim* Canonici, *qui in suis receptionibus, vel saltem infra annum posteriùs sacerdotes erunt. Tredecim, erunt etiam ibidem* Vicarii, *qui in introitu illorum Sacerdotes fore obligantur, vel ut in ordinibus proximis ad Sacerdotii gradum valeant promoveri, qui divina celebrabunt ibidem pro animabus omnium fidelium defunctorum. Qui quidem* Canonici *per prædictos fundatores erunt præsentati. Ita* viz. *quòd unusquisq; eorundem suum præsentabit Canonicum Custodi Collegii, Sic quod postquam aliqua vacaverit posteriùs præbenda, neq; ille qui prius præsentaverat, nec aliquis alius ex tunc alium ad illam presentabit, sed solus* Superior *ex post facto jus habebit quemcunque præsentandi quæ ad hoc decreverit limitandum, & sic de singulis vacaturis earumdem unanimiter est decretum.*

V. *Item, concordatum est, quod* Canonici *præfati habebunt Mantellos murrii coloris, cum unâ*

unâ figurâ rotundâ, viz. *una roundletta de Armis Sancti* Georgii.

VI. *Item, Ordinati sunt ibidem* XXVI. Milites *adversitate fortunæ ad tantum vexati, quod de propriis minimè valeant sustentari, qui in collegio prædicto conveniens percipient emolumentum pro suis devotis effundendis precibus, ad Laudem Dei, & honorem Sancti* Georgii, *& quod ad eorum electionem eodem modo ordinatum est per omnia, quo prius refertur de admissionibus* Canonicorum, *sic quod omnis posterior electio perpetuò remanebit penes Ordinis* Superiorem.

VII. *Item, Statutum est, quod singuli* Pauperes Milites *præfati suos portabunt Mantellos de colore rubro, cum uno Scuto de Armis Sancti* Georgii *absq; aliquo Gartero in ejus circuitu.*

VIII. *Item, concordatum est, quod si* Superior *in solemnitate Sancti* Georgii *præsens esse non poterit, per suas Literas, suum faciat* Deputatum, *qui Capitulum horâ tertiâ teneat in vigiliâ, ac in die singulâ studeat adimplere quæ ad festum pertinent, pro tempore, sumptibus Superioris; Ita quod interim nulla nova præsumat affirmare Statuta, immò potestatem plenariam habeat corrigendi & reformandi singula puncta Capituli quæ sequuntur.*

IX. *Item, quolibet anno, in vigiliâ Sancti* Georgii, *convenire habent ex Statuto, apud Castrum de* Windsore *omnes Milites prædicti Sancti* Georgii, *qui* viz. *infra regnum fuerint, vel alibi accedere valentes, ad effectum quod ibidem Divina insimul solemnizent, portando Mantellos durante servicio interim ordinatim singuli in suis stallis, super quæ unusquisq; posita habebit suam galeam, cum Crestâ, & gladium directè subpendentem, quæ ibidem statuitur permanere ad tempus suorum possessorum, unumquodq;* viz. *in signum & honorem ipsa deferentium, & etiam in signum defensionis Ecclesiæ, secundum quod vota deposcunt Ordinis Militaris. Verumtamen in casu quo festum Sancti* Georgii *infra quindecim* Paschæ *contingit evenire, prorogari debet usq; in illam diem dominicam quæ continuè dies* XV. *paschæ fore computabitur, ut sic unusquisq; Ordinis consocius opportunitatem accedendi habeat ad festum prælibatum, absque hoc quod equitare arceatur aliquo dierum illorum triam solemnitati* Paschæ *festivæ annexorum.*

X. *Item, quod singuli & uniti simul in vigiliâ prædictâ ac horâ & loco prius deputatis convenire minimè postponant. Quod si tempus neglexerint veniendi & horam, pœnam subibunt ex concordiâ Capituli inferius limitatam, super quo extat decretum, quod illâ vice capitulum non intrabunt, immò expectabunt foras ad hostium, nullam habituri vocem in Capitulo, cuiq; valituram, in re expediendâ ibidem, illâ scilicet vice tantùm. Et si ad initium primarum vesperarum quis illorum negligat accedere, de facto ad tunc Stallum suum intrare non præsumat, sed expectabit in loco illo Chori, quo Choristæ residere solebant; scilicet coram Stallo proprio, usq; ad finem illarum. Et idem Ordinatum est de negligentibus venire, ante principium altæ Missæ, & vesperarum in dei Sancti* Georgii. *Et siquis non veniat ad festum prædictum, absq; hoc, quod causam suæ absentiæ allegaverit, à* Superiore *acceptandam, pœnam subibit hanc,* viz. *Quod proximo festo celebrando stallum suum non intrabit, sed totaliter tenebit se in imo, quò prius dictum est, de negligentibus præventre principium vesperarum & Missæ in die. Quod si ita fuerit negligens, quòd ad proximum festum celebrandum minimè accesserit, nullam interim causam suæ tardationis* Superiori *significans acceptabilem, pœna fuerit, quod stallum suum non intrabit in proximo festo celebrando, immo residebit in basso modo quo prius statuitur, &, ultra hoc, in processione tunc fiendâ, tenebit se totaliter ante tres Cruces ibidem deportandas. Et in regressu se reponet in loco basso priori usque ad tempus Offertorii, & offeret solus postremò per se. Ac post has sic peractas pœnitentias, se convertet ad stallum* Superioris, *seu sui* Deputati, *ibidem de Commissis humiliter sibi petens pardonari. Quo facto, quisquis illorum interfuerit ipsum commendabit ad stallum, Statum pristinum sibi restituendo & gradum. Quod si ad secundum festum Sancti* Georgii, *minimè accesserit, dummodò in regno permanserit, nullam interim significans causam sui impedimenti, à* Superiore, *vel suo* Deputato, *meritò allocandam, eo facto posteriùs stallum suum nunquam intrabit, quoad usq; obtulerit altari Sancti* Georgii, *in Capellâ prædictâ, jocale aliquod valoris* XX. *Marcarum seu verum valorem ejusdem. Quod si de anno in annum permanserit sic culpabilis, secundum lapsum temporis, multiplicabit & sumptus, usq; dùm de commissis fuerit reconciliatus.*

XI. *Item, cadit sub Statuto, quod singuli* Milites *societatis prædictæ Mantellis portabunt ordinis prædicti de colore blodio, omni anno, scilicet à primis vesperis usq; post secundas in festo Sancti* Georgii, *ubicunq; pro tempore illo contingat ipsos residere, ac si præsentes forent pro tunc cum* Superiori *Ordinis in loco ad hoc specialiter deputato, dummodò sibi unà occurrerint temporis opportunitas & Libertas votiva.*

XII. *Item, Statuitur, quod siquis de Comitivâ prædictâ invenietur in aperto absq; usu* Garterii *debito, & consueto, quàm citò de hoc sibi veraciter fuerit objectum, noverit se firmitèr astrictum per Statuta, ad persolvendum, hac de causâ, Custodi & Collegio, dimidiam marcam, modo quo consimiliter defectivi solvere consueverunt.*

XIII. *Interim, est decretum, quod singuli de Comitivâ in altâ Missâ Sancti* Georgii *se disponant ad offerendum, unusquisq;* viz. *cum suo socio sibi directè opposito, & hoc ordinatum secundum quod in suis stallis reponi dinoscuntur, ita quod si cujuscunq; consors absens ab hoc actu fuerit, consocius ex opposito offeret per se, Ita quod in omni processione fiendâ ibidem in Capellâ prædicti Ordinis,* Superior *postremus incedat, cunctos subsequendo per se Ordinis consocios.*

XIV. *Item, concordatum est, quod in Crastino solemnitatis Sancti* Georgii, *priusquam Societas prædicta decreverit inter se mutuò valefacere,*

Decan-

Decantari facient unum Missam de Requie, *pro animabus suorum Consodalium, qui de hoc seculo decesserunt, & omnium fidelium defunctorum, in cujus celebratione singuli qui præsentes pridiè extiterint, tenentur interesse, nisi forte quis causâ ad hoc movente rationabili fuerit per* Superiorem *in speciali licentiatus, seu excusabiliter aliundè turbatus.*

XV. *Item, decretum est, quod unusquisq; Sodalium Ordinis sæpedicti, relinquet ibidem unum mantellum, ad effectum quod in singulis subitaneis accessibus & insperatis, illum paratum inveniat, pro observandis statutis in hac parte, singulisq;* Superioris *Jussis & decretis.*

XVI. *Item concordatum est, quod si quis de societate prædictâ itinerando equitaverit per Castrum prædictum, ob reverentiam Loci se debet disponere ad intrandum Capellam præfatam, sumendo sibi primitùs suum Mantellum, sine quo illam nusquam intrare præsumat. Cui ad obviandum se disponere habent* Canonici *residentes, ad ipsum conducendum devotiùs quo noverint, in capellam prædictam. Et si intraverit pro tempore altæ Missæ, expectare tenetur ad finem ejusdem, ob honorem Dei, & Sancti* Georgii. *Et si post nonam ipsum contingat introire, expectabit usq; dum* Canonici *præsentes dixerint* de profundis, *pro animabus omnium fidelium defunctorum, & obtulerit ibidem. Quod si quis de Sociis prædictis per medium equitaverit villæ, & recusaverit capellam intrare præfatam, ad offerendum, modo quo præfertur per Statuta, Noverit se sub pœnâ suæ obedientiæ firmiter astrictum, ad proficiscendum peregrè & pedester totiens quotiens, de Castro, unum miliare, usq; ad Capellam prædictam, ob honorem Sancti* Georgii, *& pro quâlibet vice quâ sic fecerit & fuerit defectivus, offerre tenetur unum denarium.*

XVII. *Item, diffinitum est, quod quam citò ad veram & indubiam* Superioris *pervenerit notitiam, de decessu cujuscunq; Consortis Comitivæ prædictæ, ipse faciet celebrari, pro animâ sic defuncti, mille missas; unus* Rex extraneus *celebrari faciet octingentas Missas;* Princeps *septingentas; quilibet* Dux, *sexcentas; quilibet Comes trecentas, quilibet* Baro, *Ducentas; quilibet* Miles, *Centum. Et si istas non compleverit intra quarterium anni, seu compleri fecerit, post notitiam mortis habitam, ut præfertur, duplicabit quarterium integri totius. Et si per dimidium anni à retrò permanserit, de eisdem tenetur ad duplum, ut præfertur. Et sic de tempore in tempus usq; ad finem anni. Et consimiliter de anno, si ad tantum permanserit defectivus, & de anno in annum ipsas duplicabit.*

XVIII. *Item concordatum est, quod siquis decesserit de præfatâ comitivâ,* Superior, *seu ejus* Deputatus, *habitâ de hoc verâ notitiâ, cunctis sociis Comitivæ in regno existentibus, per suas Literas eisdem super eo directas, facti veritatem significare tenetur, singulos interim accedere valentes præmuniendo, quatenus infra sex septimanas post hujusmodi citationem præhabitam in loco idoneo quocunq; quem ad hoc duxerit limitandum, se disponant convenire. Qui quidem omnes & singuli sic uniti, ita* viz. *quod ad minus ultra* Superiorem, *vel suum* Deputatum, *sint ibi sex alii Ordinis Consocii, novem Militaris Ordinis personas nominabunt, & quilibet eorum nominabit pro se, juxta videre proprium, qui præsens pro tunc fuerit, honorabiliores ac sufficientiores quos noverit* Milites, *in suis famis minimè violatos, irreprobatos undiq; & subjectos* Superiori, *seu alios, dummodo partem ejus adversam nascantur non favere,* viz. *tres* Comites, *seu tres alios majoris dignitatis, tres* Barones, *& tres* Milites. *Quas quidem denominationes unà cum votis singulorum reportabit, & scribet* Prælatus *Ordinis,* viz. *Episcopus* Wintoniensis *existens pro tempore, seu in absentiâ suâ,* Custos *Collegii, seu* Registrarius *deputatus ad hoc, vel senior* Residentiarius *Collegii prædicti, in absentiis eorundem; Ac denominationes prædictæ & vota per omnes, sed ad minus per sex illorum facta, ut præfertur, postquam reportaverit & scripserit incontinenter ostendere tenetur* Superiori *ordinis, qui ipsum eligere debet* Militem, *seu denunciare pro electo, quem pluribus viderit Eligentium vocibus abundare, & honorabiliorem judicaverit, sibiq; ac coronæ suæ, ac regno ex verisimili in posterum decreverit magis profuturum. Et siquis de Comitivâ prædictâ voluntariè se subtraxerit ab electione hujusmodi, absq; hoc, quod causam habuerit justiorem, punitatur sub formâ quæ subsequitur, causam insuper suæ tardationis justam, si quam allegaverit, debitè allocando. Quod si nullam valeat ostendere justam sui impedimenti, seu quòd non venerit citationi parendo priùs exhibitæ, decretum est, quod tunc solvet Custodi & Collegio unam marcam, ad effectum, quod ipsi orent pro animâ socii defuncti, & in proximo suo adventu ad Capitulum prædictum, ipse expectabit super terram in medio Capituli, coram* Superiore, *& totâ præsente Comitivâ, usq; dum per ipsos fuerit reconciliatus.*

XIX. *Item, decretum est, quod cum contigerit aliquem* Militem *præfatæ Societatis in fata decedere, ac deinde alium per electionem succedere in locum suum, sic electo transmittetur* Garterus, *in signum quod ipse est unus de prædicto consortio Ordinis* Garteri; *Et quàm citiùs decreverit possessionem recipere sui Stalli, tunc primò & non ante recipiet Mantellum Ordinis pro suo habitu. Et in casu quo decesserit priusquàm suo habitu indui videatur, nequaquam tunc nominabitur ut unus fundatorum, eò quòd sibi deficiat plenitudo possessionis suæ & statûs, veruntamen medietatem percipiet missarum prænominatarum, causâ liberati* Garteri, *sibi sic transmissi, ut statuitur, absque pluribus. Quod si sic electus post ipsius* Garterii *susceptionem, omnem congruam non adhibuerit diligentiam, quatenus installari valeat, ita specialiter quòd installetur infrà annum suæ electionis, si fuerit Miles expectans infra Regnum, si de hoc minime causam assignare voluerit, à* Superiore, *& totâ Comitivâ meritò allocandam, eo facto cassa judicabitur electio illa & vana, in tantum quòd liceat eis, ex tunc, ad novam celebrandam procedere electionem; Et medio tempore, sua galea cum Crestâ & gladio nequaquam figi debent super*

per stallum sibi limitatum, sed ambo reponi debent, usque adventum cujusvis sic electi, ad Castellum prædictum, ne si ipsum, ut præfertur, infra tempus limitatum accedere non contingat, novâ factâ electione ipsa insignia militaria devellari judicabitur meritò, seu deponi, sed potiùs sic in loco posita honestiùs & secretiùs de choro exportari, deinde ad opus Collegii perpetuò permansura.

XX. *Item, concordatum est, quòd omnes* Extranei *in hanc electi Comitivam, de suis electionibus certificari debent per* Superiorem, *quibus interim transmitti debent, sumptibus* Superioris, *Garterus cum Mantello, & Statutis Ordinis, signatis Sigillo ipsius communi, & hoc omni celeritate congruâ, ita quòd, ad ultimum, notitiam inde habeant infra quatuor menses post electionem, ad finem, quòd visis statutis Ordinis, se avisare valeant, antequàm ipsum recipere decreverint seu refutare. Quam si receperint* Extranei *prædicti, cujuscunq; dignitatis fuerint, conditionis, seu status, tenentur ad transmittendum, infra octo menses proximè tunc sequentes, unum sufficientem* Procuratorem, *unusquisq; juxta statum suæ dignitatis, sic ad minùs quòd sit Miles irreprobatus, qui nomine suo valeat installari, qui secum adducere tenetur unum Mantellum sericum de blodio colore Ordinis, ex parte ipsum transmittentis, interim galeam cum crestâ, & uno gladio, quæ continuò posteriùs morabuntur in Collegio. Qui quidem Mantellus, tempore installationis ipsius* Procuratoris, *nomine Domini seu Magistri sui, per* Superiorem *reponi debet super brachium suum dextrum, quem retinere tenetur ibidem usq; finem horæ divinæ, ex tunc ibidem proximè celebrandæ, postquam sic, nomine Domini, seu Magistri sui, fuerit installatus, ita quòd posteriùs ipsum non portabit, neque vocem aliquam habebit in Capitulo, neq; illuc intrare præsumet, in absentiâ transmittentis ipsum. Et est sciendum, quòd tantus favor* Extraneis *sic electis ab hoc præstari jubetur, qui in suis personis minimè valeant installari, quo facere valeant per suos* Procuratores *quatenus ipsi participes effici mereantur Missarum & Orationum integrarum Ordinis prælibati, quarum medietate privarentur, si, priusquam ipsos installari contingat, viam ingrederentur universæ carnis.*

XXI. *Item, statuitur, quod siquis* Comes, Baro, *seu quivis* Miles *in fata decesserit, ipse qui post ipsum venturus est, cujuscunque conditionis fuerit, seu Status, ipse tenebit eundem Stallum quem tenuit suus Prædecessor, absq; mutatione aliquâ, nisi solummodo ratione* Principis, *qui Comitivæ obtinebit stallum primum ex opposito* Superioris, *quàm citò electus fuerit ipse. Et sic in casu contingat, quod unus* Comes *succedet uni* Militi *in stallum suum, & etiam è converso. Et hoc idò permittitur sic fieri, quatenus per hoc, primi Ordinis Fundatores ab aliis valeant discerni.*

XXII. *Interim Statutum est, quod unusquisq; prædictæ Societatis, in introitu suo primo, aliquid administrabit de bonis suis, unusquisq; viz. juxta substantiam suæ dignitatis, in relevamen Canonicorum, pauperum Militum, & eleemosinarum ibidem pro perpetuo ordinatarum,* viz. Superior *Ordinis* 40. *Marcas,* unus Rex extraneus 20 *l.* Princeps 20 *Marcas, quilibet* Dux 10 *l. quilibet* Comes 10 *Marcas, quilibet* Baro 100 *solidos, & quilibet* Miles, *quinq; Marcas solvere statuitur. Et quousq; unusquisq; illorum juxta statum suum has persolverit summas, galeæ suæ cum gladiis nequaquam erigi permittentur supra stalla sua; pro quo sciendum, quòd* Superior *Ordinis tenetur ad satisfaciendum in his, pro quolibet* Extraneo *sic electo,* viz. *tempore installationis suæ per* Procuratorem *suum; Et ista Dona pro tanto ordinantur, ut omnes hunc intrantes Ordinem, digniores reddantur ad habendum sua nomina intitulata ac privilegiata, velut Fundatores Ordinis prædicti.*

XXIII. *Interim est statutum quòd quàm citò aliquis primorum Fundatorum debitum solverit naturæ, fieri debet de Metallo Scutum Armorum suorum, & galeæ cum Crestâ ejusdem, quæ sigi statuuntur in dorso sui stalli, in signum geminis ipsa. Et consimiliter eorum Successores, Scuta Armorum suorum cum galeis & crestis fixa habebunt, in dorso stallorum suorum subtus prima tamen, quæ etiam de Metallo erunt, verumtamen ad differentiam primorum fundatorum, minora erunt.*

XXIV. *Item unusquisq; præfatum Ordinem ingressurus promittere habet personaliter ac jurare, seu per* Procuratorem *quem suo nomine, ut præfertur, continget installari, se observaturum juxta posse fideliùs quo valebit, statuta omnia & singula Ordinis prælibati, Et de cætero nullus installari permittetur per* Procuratorem, *nisi fuerit* extraneus, *qui, ut in propriâ personâ installetur, accedere non valet tempore limitato.*

XXV. *Item, in casu quo* Superior *de regno fuerit absens seu alibi, ita quod commodè in personâ propriâ accedere non valeat, ad perimplendum ea quæ ad installationem Militis sic electi dignoscuntur ex congruo pertinere, sibi licebit vices tunc suas in hâc parte committere cuicunq; duxerit socio prædictæ Comitivæ, qui cuncta suo nomine huic actui pertinentia valebit authoritatiq; peragere.*

XXVI. *Item concordatum est, quod ad hunc* Ordinem *pertinere debeat unum commune* Sigillum, *in præsentiâ* Superioris *continuè permansurum, vel in custodiâ illius quemcunq; ad hoc duxerit limitandum.*

XXVII. *Item, unusquisq; de cætero Ordinis prædicti habere tenetur penes se* Statuta *præsentia, signata* Sigillo *præfato, quorum Originale pro perpetuo remanere statuitur infra Thesaurariam Collegii sæpedicti, prædicto Sigillo priùs debitè consignatum.*

XXVIII. *Item, post decessum cujusq;* Militis *Ordinis* Garterii *Executores ejus firmiter astringuntur ad remittendum Collegio prædicto Statuta præfata suis Dominis & Magistris tradita, priùs ut præfertur, Custodi tradenda Collegii pro tempore existenti.*

XXIX. *Item concordatum est, quod nullus de cætero Miles Ordinis Sancti* Georgii *regnum exire præsumat, absq;* Superioris *licentia speciali*

ciali petitâ super hoc pariter & obtentâ, super quo communiter est decretum quod si aliquod Militare viagium seu aliud quoddam honorificum, per Superiorem *fieri disponatur, quod Ordinis militarem famam possit promovere,* Superior, *ex suâ gratiâ speciali, ad peragendum dicti Ordinis Commilitones præ cæteris subditis dignabitur anteferre.*

XXX. *Item, Statutum est, quod nullus Militum prædictorum contra alium præsumat militare, nisi solùm in casu quo à suis & superioribus Dominis idem & ex jussu legis facere arceatur, seu in propriâ causâ justâ. Quod si sic eveniat quod aliquis eorundem cum quocunque Domino, seu cum favente suam partem stipendiis retineatur, ad Arma militaribus, & ejus pars adversa alium Ordinis* Garterii *militem optaverit retinere; in isto casu ipse qui sic secundò fuerit requisitus, eò quòd noverit sui Ordinis Commilitonem præviè præarmari cum adversâ parte, de requisitione hâc ultimatè tenetur excusari; Ac insuper in quibuscunq; suis hujusmodi retentionibus ad Arma obligari satis arctè ad specialiter præexcipiendum, cùm ad hoc primò fuerint inclinati. Quod si quem de Ordine suo* Garteri *cum adversâ parte ipsius retinentis ipsum præviè contingat retineri, quod tunc ille secundò sic retentus, habitâ hujus rei perfectâ notitiâ, isto non obstante, suas liberè valeat habenas exercere, ac de hujusmodi retentione ad guerram penitùs absolvi eo facto. Quod si in hujusmodi ut præfertur, retentione ipsum secundariè sic retentum non constiterit, de aliquo sui Ordinis consocio cum parte retento adversâ, sed posteriùs si devenerit ad notitiam, incontinenti se noscat firmiter obligatum ad se excusandum erga dominum seu Magistrum suum, Et ad querelam suam & quamlibet hujusmodi penitùs relinquendum.*

XXXI. *Item quod omnes & singulæ Licentiæ literales consortii* Militibus *de cætero concedendæ per* Superiorem, *ad finem quod mare pertranseant, ut fines visitent alienos, & exteras nationes, pro honoribus militiæ quoquo modo perquirendis, ac insuper & Literæ mandatoriæ, seu aliàs certificatoriæ, quovis modo Ordini pertinentes cuique transmittendæ, priùs debitè consignentur prædicti Ordinis communi Sigillo, quod manere statuitur penes aliquem de Ordine, quem ad hoc* Superior *viderit assignandum. Quem si ex rationabili causâ de præsentiâ Superioris recedere contingat, tunc Sigillum post se relinquet, cum illo quem ad hoc* Superior *decreverit limitare, ita quod Sigillum prædictum, extra suam præsentiam, dummodò infra regnum expectaverit, minimè relinquatur. Quod etiam omninò observandum fore statuitur, ab intento pro* Superioris *in absentiâ ejus* Deputato, *quoad Sigillum prælibatum.*

XXXII. *Item statuitur, quòd siquis Miles Ordinis prædicti, ob devotionem propositum receperit infra Collegium prædictum continuè permanendi, quòd ipse de suis propriis & non Collegii se disponat interim sustentari.*

XXXIII. *Item siquis Miles alius extraneus ab ordine ob devotionem etiam ibidem optaverit residere, juxta decretum* Superioris *Ordinis & ipsius Comitivæ, pro ejusdem morâ poterit provideri.*

XXXIV. *Item conceditur ex decreto, quod siquis Miles, vel quævis alia persona, ab hoc Ordine, ex devotione tribuere decreverit* x l. *annui reditus, seu terrarum, vel magis, ad effectum quòd participes valeat fieri omnium precum devotarum ibidem fundendarum, pro benefactoribus præcipuis Collegii sæpedicti, nomen suum eo facto inscribi statuitur inter nomina ibidem benefactorum ejusdem, quatenus pro ipso inter cæteros ab ipsius ministris continuè in speciali valeat deprecari.*

XXXV. *Interim est decretum, quòd si aliquis de* Canonicis *prædicti Collegii in absentiâ* Superioris *decesserit in fata, custos tunc Collegii ejus decessum* Superiori *significare tenetur ex statuto, per suas literas, ad effectum, quòd ipse alium, quem ad hoc decreverit limitandum, in locum ipsius valeat subrogare.*

XXXVI. *Item, deputandus est interim, per Ordinis* Superiorem *& ejus Comitivam, unus* Registrarius, *qui* viz. *scientiæ ad hoc fore existimatur* Canonicorum *ibidem in Collegio residentium, qui præsens esse poterit in omni Capitulo Ordinis celebrando, ad fidelitèr reportandum, insuper & registrandum, electiones fiendas ac nomina electorum, pœnas infligendas, & causas pœnarum, reconciliationes punitorum præviè delinquentium, cum singulis actibus aliis & causis eorundem Ordini pertinentibus, & hoc de Capitulo in Capitulum, & de anno in annum; super quo præfatus* Registrarius, *in sua primâ receptione ad officium suum, Juramentum tenetur præstare, ad fideliter registrandum materias ibidem ministrandas, modo quo præfertur. Quæ omnia, ut inaditantur, in principio Capituli proximò sequentis, in vigiliâ Sancti* Georgii, *coram* Superiore *& totâ Comitivâ integrè debeat recitare, ad effectum, quòd, si quæ occurrant corrigenda, pro tunc, juxta rei exigentiam, dignè valeant emendari.*

Another

Another *Exemplar* of the said *Statutes*, entred in the *Black Book* of the *Order*.

I. *Quisquis in* Angliâ *Regni solio potietur, is ipse perpetuis ab hinc temporibus hujus illustrissimi Ordinis* Supremus *& erit, & appellabitur.*

II. *Nullus in hanc clarissimam societatem ascribetur nisi qui generis ac militiæ nomine dignus fuerit, ut qui moribus ac famâ splendidus, & Eques antè ut minimùm auratus; ignobiles autem & improbi repulsam hic omninò patientur. Improbitates etenim & probra hæc probitatis & honorificæ virtutis Ordo minùs admittet, aut sustinebit.*

III. Commilitones *egregii hujus Ordinis & ornatissimi* Collegæ *viginti sex eunt: qui Trabeas ac Subligaria apud* Windesorum *habeant, in usum & splendorem Ordinis aptè parata, ut quoties utendum sit, his illic utantur. Utendum autem quotiescunq; Divi sui* Georgii *Sacellum ingrediuntur, seu domum sue suorumq; Sacerdotum consultationi dedicatam, vel ad conventum ibi celebrandum vel quid aliud agitandum, vel constituendum, quod Societatis hujus interesse poterit; eodem habitu celebriq; ornatu, sub vesperis vigiliæ Divi* Georgii, *ante meridiano Crastinæ dici solemni, & secundis deinde vesperis, cum* Supremo, *vel in locum ejus assignato de magno Regis Cubiculo, ad Sacellum & domum, quam de rebus consulturi subintrat, ibunt ac redibunt. Trabeis itidem ac subligaribus illic suis induti considebunt, tam in prandio diei Divi* Georgii, *quàm in Cœna vigiliæ ejus, pariter & dici, comedentes simul ac abstemii, nuq; se illis exuent, donec ipse Supremus ejusve loco constitutus exuerit, exuendive tempus esse decreverit.*

IV. *Et quia Militiæ decus honore Divino nititur, & quæ geruntur, oratione pia fulciuntur: illis viginti sex Equitibus, totidem* intra *Deo dedicandi respondebunt* Canonici *seculares tredecim,* Vicarii *totidem; jam jam Sacerdotes, vel brevi post futuri.* Canonici *nimirum intra annum subsequentem,* Vicarii *vero proximò deinceps Ordinationis tempore. Horum intererit pro Regis ac Regni ac singulorum in eo conviventium, præsertim hujus Ordinis fœlici Statu, proq; defunctorum animabus jugiter ac supplicitèr exorare. Præsentabuntur autem* Canonici, *per* Fundatores *Ordinis, ut suum cuisque* Canonicum Custodi *jam Collegii præsentet. Quod siquis eorum moritur, nec ipse qui proximè præsentavit, nec alius quisquam Sociorum Ordinis ultrà præsentabit: sed convenit omnibus unanimitèr, ut imposterum omnium præsentatio Canonicatuum uni Supremo reservetur.*

V. *Omnes* Canonici *suum purpurei subrubrive coloris pallium habere debent, insignium Divi* Georgii, *hoc est Sanguineæ Crucis circulo, dexteris subindè brachiis superinducto.*

VI. *Si forte* Supremus *non potuerit interesse solemnitati Divi* Georgii, Deputatus *ab eo locum ejus supplebit, & consilium nihilo minùs horâ tertiarum ineibitur, Crastinaq; festivitas de more servabitur, idq; sumptibus ipsius* Supremi. *Verum ab eo designatus ille, novas interim observationes aut institutiones haud faciet. Statutorum autem transgressores corrigere, & malè sarcta resarcire licebit.*

VII. *Annis singulis vigiliâ Divi* Georgii *fiet una congregatio* Sociorum *omnium hujus Ordinis in Castro* Windesoriensi, *sivè tum sint in* Anglia *ipsi, sivè foris: modò commodè valeant advenire; ubi tum divinis intererunt, seriatim coassidentes, in Sedili quisq; suo, Trabeis & cæteris insignibus ornati. Supra unuscujusq; Sedile,* Galea *atq;* Ensis *cum appendicibus, ad ornatum* Ecclesiæ, *nobilisq; viri condignam memoriam, quoad Superstes erit, propendebunt; prout Ordo Militaris efflagitat. Si verò festivitas illa Divi* Georgii *intra quindecim à* Paschate *dies obtigerit, deferetur ad quintam decimam post diem & quæ circiter erit Dominicam; Ut nullus Sociorum justè causam absentiæ prætendere debeat, nec equitare cogatur sub aliquo trium dierum, solemne* Pascha *proximè subsequentium.*

VIII. *Prefatæ vigiliæ horâ tertiarum simul ibidem aderunt, si qui verò designato tempore non venerint, nec, quod* Supremo *vel ejus* Vicemgerenti *justè ac probabilitèr excusent, habeant, pro tempore illo prohibebuntur ab introitu Consilii, neq; suffragii conferendi facultatem habebunt in ullis rebus, quæ tum fient, aut statuentur in Consilio. Sin ad utrarumq; vesperarum & solemnis Missæ principium non accesserint, à suis exclusi sedibus, infra stabunt, ubi* Ceroferarii *solent: donec illa sacra de more finita fuerint. Quisquis autem ad eam celebritatem non veniet, nec habet quod jure causari possit, quod &* Supremus *approbabit, eâdem anni sequentis festivitate Sedili suo deprivatus tempore primarum vesperarum ut suprà, ante id Sedile substabit, dum solemnitèr in Crastino Chorus procedet, tres processionarias Cruces antecedet: & reversus in eodem infimo loco perstabit, usq; ad eam, Missæ partem, quâ ritè offerunt, tumq; ipse novissimus offerre debet. Post humilem istiusmodi pene tolerantiam è vestigio veniet ad clarum Sedile* Supremi *sui, vel in ejus loco constituti, veniam oraturus. A quibus Statui priori restitutus, remittetur ad Sedile proprium. Si verò remanens intra Regnum, altero nihilominùs anno supra memorate celebritati citra excusationem hujuscemodi laudabilem, abesse non formidârit, à Sedili proprio eousque prohibebitur, donec intra Sacellum ante Altare Divi* Georgii *unum* Donarium *viginti* Marcis *probatæ in* Angliâ Monetæ, *valens obtulerit. Et singulis deinceps annis quoadusq; reconciliatus ipse fuerit ea mulcta geminabitur.*

IX. *Omnes* Socii, *ubicunq; locorum extiterint, quotannis in illa Divi* Georgii *festivitate cæruleas*

cæruleas suas trabeas ab exordio primarum vigiliæ vesperarum usq; ad secundarum diei terminum cum res *poscat induentur, perinde ac si cum ipso* Supremo *vel ejus* Vicemgerente, *quoad ea festivitas agitur, præsentes essent; nisi forsitan libertate tunc suâ destituti fuerint.*

X. *Si quis* Socius *absq; nobilitato* Subligaculo *publicitùs incedat, inde notam incurret, & ammonitus* Custodi *ac* Collegio *dimidium* Marcæ *persolvet, sicut persolvendi mos semper ante fuit.*

XI. *In supremo* Sacrificio, *quum sit solemniter offerendum,* Socii, *quemadmodum in sedibus suis è regione consistunt, ita bini procedent ad offerendum, si vero quenquam abesse contigerit, Socius ejus qui sedet ex opposito, solus ad offerendum ibit.*

XII. *Quando solemni more* Processio *fiet in Sacello, postremus omnium* Supremus *incedet.*

XIII. *Postridiè Divi* Georgii, *priusquam Socii vale sibi dicant invicem, una solemnis Missa celebrabitur pro defunctis: à qua nemo Sociorum aberit, nisi, necessarium impedimentum ostendens,* Supremo *vel ejus* Vicemgerente *recedendi copiam impetrârit.*

XIV. *Trabeam suam seu* Clamidem *Socius unusquisq;* Windesori *relinquet: ut ibi paratam semper inveniat, si repentè forsan accesserit, aut aliquid ex salutari monitu præceptoq;* Principis *adimplendum acciderit.*

XV. *Si quisquam è* Sociis, *iter ingressus,* Windesoriense *Castrum fortè pretervehatur, ob honorem loci, (nisi legitima causa præpedierit)* divertat illuc. *Prius autem quàm ædem introeat, Clamidem induat. Indutum Canonici, qui tunc affuerint obviàm venientes, in Chorum reverenter addicent. Si Missæ celebratio tunc instet, ad honorem Dei, Sanctiq;* Georgii, *venerabundus illam audiat. Sin alias accesserit, tantisper immoratus, dum Canonici cum reliquis sacrificiis Psalmum* De profundis, *pro defunctis absolverint, ibidem offerat. Quod si quis mediam urbem transiens haud diverterit in ædem oblaturus, quoties id ita præterniserit, ut obedientem se demonstret, unum milliare pedes illuc accedet, vel unum denarium offeret.*

XVI. Supremus *Ordinis, ubi primum significata sibi fuerit mors alicujus è* Sociis, *pro salute animæ ejus mille Missas celebrari faciet,* Rex externus, *qui de numero fuerit,* Octingentas; Princeps Walliæ, *Septingentas;* Dux *unusquisq; sexcentas;* Marchio, *quadringentas quinquaginta;* Comes, *Trecentas;* Vicecomes, *Ducentas quinquaginta;* Baro, *Ducentas;* Eques *alius quisq; Centum. Quod si* Supremus, *aut* Eques *alius id, intra tres menses postquam certior fuerit factus, non perfecerit, numerum Missarum ad quas ante tenebatur conduplicabit. Sin medium annum id ipsum omiserit, rursum congeminari debet. Et pari formâ de tempore in tempus usq; ad anni finem. Quod si intra annum integrum, quod debet, non impleverit, annos eodem modo duplicabit.*

XVII. *Quoties* Sociorum *aliquis ab hâc vitâ excesserit,* Supremus, *aut ab eo* designatus, *certior inde factus, alios omnes qui tum fuerint intra Regnum accedere valentes, literis actum commonebit; ut intra sex hebdomadas post, in locum ab his sibi statuendum conveniant, ad electionem novi* Socii. *Quibus omnibus ita congregatis, vel (ad minimum) sex eorum, ultra* Supremum *aut ab eo* Deputatum, *præsentium quisque novem de magis idoneis, ut quos ignominiâ probroq; vacare crediderit; seu sint de Supremo subditis, seu quivis exteri (dummodo non sint ipsius adversarii, vel adversariorum ejus fautores, aut ultronei defensores) nominabit, tres viz.* Comites, *aut excelsioris Conditionis homines, tres* Barones, *&* totidem Bachalaureos Equites. *Ipsa hæc autem nomina conscribet Ordinis* Prelatus, *scilicet* Wintoniensis *tum* Episcopus, *sin absfuerit ipse, Collegii* Decanus, *vel* Scriba *Ordinis. Quin immò si nullus horum interfuerit, è residentibus antiquissimus id effectum ibi dabit. Ut hunc modum conscriptos qui scripsit ad* Supremum, *aut ab eo* Designatum *afferens ostendet; Is vero de nominatis cum preeliget, cui plura suffragia consenserint, & quem sibi Regnoq; sciet aptiorem atq; utiliorem fore. Si quis (ut oportuit) præmonitus, ad electionem tamen non advenerit, punietur: nisi justam absentiæ causam, &* Supremo *vel ejus* locum implenti *probatam preostenderit. Si causam minùs approbandam attulerit, nec vocatus tamen adesse curavit, mulctabitur, ut unam Collegio marcam persolvat, & inito proximè Consilio super tercam ante* Supremum *seu* Designatum *ab ipso, totamq; societatem in medio sedebit, quousq; cum eis redens in gratiam restitutus fuerit.*

XVIII. *A morte cujusvis* Equitum, *electus in eam societatem illicò prænobilis* Subfibuli *usu donabitur: quo fiet ut* Sociorum *unus habeatur. Trabeâ vero sibi necessariâ non priùs ornabitur, quàm in Sedile suum fuerit introducendus. Siquis is ante moriatur quam fuerit in sede propriâ collocatus, haud fundatorum unus appellabitur, eò quòd plenam status sui possessionem non habuerit. Attamen Missarum de quibus diximus, medietas illi debebitur, quod ornamentum* Subligaris *obtinuerat. Sin autem* Electus *non celeriter accedat ut Sedile suum occupet, vel saltem intra Annum non iter arripiat ut illud ipsum adimpleat, modò manserit in Regno, nisi* Supremo, *seu* gerenti vicem *ejus, totiq; societati, gratam ac sufficientem excusationem apposuerit, inanis erit illa prior electio, nec quid erit impedimento, quo minus inde* Supremus *aut ab eo* designatus, *cum cæterâ* Societate *liberè procedat ad novam electionem.* Ensis *ejus atq;* Galea *non antè supra* Sedile *suum affigentur quàm venerit ad* Arcem; *sed ante Sedile foris, ob id nimirum ut dedecori nulla detur occasio, quæ sic utiq; vitari non possit, si de locis editioribus subito tollerentur. Verùm ut Equestris honor servetur illibatus,* extra Chorum, *modo, quo poterunt, honestiori removebuntur, ad opus publicum & utilitatem Collegii remansura.*

XIX. Socii *de finibus remotis atq; externis eligendi de sui electione per* Supremum *certiores fieri debent, celerrimè missis ad eos sub* Sigillo communi, *illustri* Subligaculo, *& cæruleâ* Trabeâ, *cum* Statutis *Ordinis ipsius, certè* Supremi

sumptibus

sumptibus. Intra quatuor autem menses ab electione factâ, de hâc sunto certiores : ut perpendere possint è Statutis electionem illam gratam ac ratam, necne velint habere. Tum hujusce modi omnes, qualiscunq; conditionis & honoris electii, postquam certò id intellexerint, & gratanter acceperint, prout honor conditionis exigit, idoneum remittant Procuratorem, *qui sibi sedem occupet. Id neum interpretamur qui vitâ famâq; sit incorruptus, nec antea notatus, sed irreprehensus. Is cæruleam è serico* Trabeam, Ensem *atq;* Galeam, Windeforum *secum afferat, ut ibidem ea permaneant. Adducta vero* Trabea *ponetur à* Supremo *vel* Vicem *ejus* gerente, *super dexterum* Procuratoris *humerum, quando sub nomine Domini sui in sedem introducetur ; nec inde dimovebit post clari sedilis ingressum, usq; dum Canonicarum horarum celebratio terminetur. Ultrà vero non gestabit eam, neq; Consilium introibit, aut suffragium ullum ibi conferet, ullius authoritatis aut potestatis argumento. Ea sanè facultas per* Vicarium *occupandæ sedis, solis est* exteris *concedenda : quod illuc bii commodè satis haud possent advenire. Fit autem hæc potestas illis eâ præsertim de causâ quo Missarum orationumq; piarum, quarum aliqui dimidio privarentur, jam mortui plenè participes essent.*

XX. *Si* Comes, Baro, *vel* Eques Bacchalaureus *obierit ; qui succedet, sive* Comes, Baro, *vel* Eques *intuitum extiterit ; eandem omnino sedem quam & prædecessor obtinebit. Nec eligendus quisquam seriem istam interrumpet, aut demutabit, præter unum* Walliæ *Principem, qui sedile* Supremi *semper è Regione situm vendicabit. Itaq; fieri potest ut* Comitis *sedem* Eques, *& hujus è diversò* Comes *occupet juréq; teneat. Sic nimirum est* institutum, *ut qui fuerint primarii* Fundatores Ordinis *intelligamus.*

XXI. *Unusquisq;* Sociorum *in ingressu Ordinis, dabit in Eleemosynas imperpetuum illic institutas, & in sustentationem* Canonicorum, pauperumq; Militum, Supremus *scil. Quadraginta Marcas,* Extraneus Rex, *viginti libras,* Princeps Walliæ, *viginti Marcas, quisq;* Dux, *decem libras,* Comes *totidem Marcas,* Baro *centum solidos, &* Eques Bacchalaureus *quinque Marcas. Jussa sunt hæc ideo donari, ut qui donat, unius è fundatoribus meritò nomen accipiat. Rem dignam etenim & justam arbitrabantur, ut fundationi huic commodi tantillum adderet, quisquis privilegii nomen obtinens, numero fundatorum accederet. Nec alicujus* Ensis *aut* Galea *supra sedile suum ante desigetur, quàm ista pecunia fuerit rite persoluta.* Externi *reverà quod debent ob introitum, pendetur id à* Supremo.

XXII. *Ut primùm è primevis* Fundatoribus *ullus expiraret,* Scutum *è metallo in quo notæ compingentur* Armorum, *cum* Galea, *fixum extabit, in sedili proprio, post tergum sedentis. Et qui succedent,* Scuta *cum* Galeis *atq; armis simili modo collocabunt : tamen sub illis primariorum Fundatorum. Neq; etiam ipsorum hæc omnino tam magna fient, quam erunt illa* primorum Fundatorum.

XXIII. *Ingressurus jam dignitatem hujus insignissimi Ordinis, vel ipsemet pollicebitur, vel ejus nomine* Procurator, *& jurabit, quòd hæc* Statuta *fideliter atq; integre pro viribus observare vellet.* Procuratores *autem loco suo statuendi facultas, solorum (uti diximus)* exterorum *erit.*

XXIV. *Si quando* Supremus *Regnum peregrè vel aliter exiens abfuerit, quo tempore* Socius *aliquis in sedem suam est solemniter introducendus, ut (quæ suæ partes sunt) perficere non possit, unicuilibet è* Sociis *potestatem suam ex arbitrio committat, qui, quidvis exequi perficereq; debeat, quod &* Supremus *ipse, si jamjam præsens esset.*

XXV. *Fiet unum* Commune Sigillum *Ordinis, quod illius, quem* Supremus *assignârit, custodiæ commendabitur.*

XXVI. *Ordinis* Statuta *sibi descripta* Sigilloq; communi *consignata, quisq;* Sociorum *habeat. Originale verò* Statutorum *eodem Sigillo munitum permanebit in erario Collegii, diligentissimè reconditum. Defuncti nimirum* Socii *hæredes ex asse,* Statuta *quæ vivens apud se retinuit, remittent ad Collegium, &* Præsidi *seu* Decano *reddenda curabunt.*

XXVII. *Nullus istorum* Equitum *Regnum exibit, nisi premonito* Supremo, *qui exeundi potestatem faciet. Si qua vero Militaris expeditio contingat, vel quid ejusce modi, sub quo gloria sperantur Equestris, suis hic istius Ordinis Equitibus clementissimus Rex* Supremus *beneficus & gratiosus erit ; ut quos in actis istiusmodi decoris, quibusvis aliis anteferre debeat.*

XXVIII. *Nullus* Equitum *hujus Ordinis contra* Sociorum *ullum Arma movebit, nisi vel* Supremi *sui, vel propria causa juste compulerit. Siq;* Sociorum *aliquis in alicujus Domini familitium acciderit, ejusq; partes sibi defendendas assumpserit ; Et postmodum adversarius alium ex eisdem* Sociis *lateri suo conjungere cupiat, qui posterior expetitur haud ullo pacto consentiet. Quisquis itaq;* Sociorum *ab ullo petitur ut sibi militet : initio pacisci debet, quòd eatenus sua conventio non stabit. Si* Sociorum *aliquis antea cum adversâ parte militare ceperit, sique jam retentus ad militiam ignoravit, quòd alter* Sociorum *sub adversâ parte prius ad arma descenderit : Ubi* primum *id resciverit, servicium abdicans, illud excuset.*

XXIX. *Omnes* Equites *hujus Ordinis, qui terras circumcursare volent, honoris inveniendi gratiâ per facinora Militaria,* Literas *in id scriptas habere curabunt : quæ quidem & omnes aliæ spectantes ad hunc Ordinem* Sigillo Communi *consignari debent, quod custodiet unus* Sociorum, *quem ex arbitratu* Supremus *assignabit. Eum quem si causa fecerit absentem à* Supremo, Sigillum *illud interea* Sociorum *alteri relictum ibit, quem viz. &* Supremus *ipse nominabit ; ita quidem, ut* Sigillum *id* commune *nullo unquam tempore de* Supremi *præsentiâ tollatur, quamdiu* Supremus *intra Regnum* Angliæ *remanserit. In ejus autem absentiâ, faciet illud ipsum cum* Sigillo, designatus *à* Supremo.

XXX. *Si cuis* Equitum *hujus Societatis, pietatis instinctu [illegible] apud Arcem* Windeforiensem *com[illegible]delis, suis illic impendiis vivere debet.*

XXXI.

XXXI. *Si quis etiam alius præter hujus Societatis Equites aliquid annuum, decem viz. libras aut eo amplius, Collegio donare voluerit, ut orationum ibi dicendarum particeps esse, queat; nomen ejus numero benefactorum ascribatur, ut perpetuò cum eis memoriæ commendetur.*

XXXII. *Quando* Canonicorum *aliquis moritur, si* Supremus *intra Regnum non sit, Collegii* Custos *ad eum Literas emittet, ut quem voluerit, ad Canonicatum illum nominet.*

XXXIII. E Canonicis, *unus, moribus & scientiâ maximè conveniens, per* Supremum *ac* Societatem *eligetur, qui Consiliis inter eos celebrandis interesse debet; ut electiones, & electorum nomina, petitiones & causas earum, cæteraq; in Consiliis illis administranda, probè, ac fidelitèr annotet, & tanquam in indicem redigat. Cumq; sit admittendus, jurabit quod officium in hisce rebus suum fideliter exequetur; Principio sanè cujusq; Consilii vigiliâ Divi* Georgii *quotannis ineundi, cuncta superioris Anni gesta fidelitèr annotata coram* Supremo Societateq; *recitabuntur. Quòd si quid haud benè sit conceptum, & correctionis egeat, revocabitur ad incudem, & suæ reddetur perfectioni.*

In consummatum.

XXXIV. *Et quoniam Eleemosyna Orationi conjuncta multum juvat ad salutem Animæ, clarissimis illis* Equitibus *totidem* veterani Milites *egeni substituentur, ad orandum, habituri quidem illic, cum de suo nequeant, unde vivere potuerint. Horum autem Electio, sicut & anteposita Canonicorum spectabit ad* Supremum. *Habebunt item isti* Milites *sua palliola rubra, Scuto Divi* Georgii *similiter assuto.*

The Statutes *established by King* Henry *the Fifth.*

A *L'honneur de* Dieu, *Sainte* Marie *la glorieuse Vierge, & Saint* George. *Si a le Roy d'*Angleterre *nostre Seigneur* Edouard *trosieme apres la Conqueste d'*Angleterre, *l'an de son regne vingt & trois, ordonné & estably & fondé une Compagnie en son Chasteau de* Windesore, *en la maniere qui s'ensuit.*

Premierement luy mesme Souverain, son aisné filz le Prince de Galles, *le Duc de* Lancastre, *le Comte de* Warwyk, *le Capitaine* de Bouche, *le Comte de* Stafford, *le Comte de* Salesbury, *le Sire de* Mortimer, *Monsieur* Jehan Lisle, *Monseigneur* Bartholomeu de Bourghersh *le filz, Monsieur* Jehan de Beauchamp, *le Sire de* Mahun, *Monsieur* Hugh de Courtenay, *Monsieur* Thomas de Holand, *Monsieur* Jehan de Grey, *Monsieur* Richard le Filz Simon, *Monsieur* Miles Stapelton, *Monsieur* Thomas Wale, *Monsieur* Hugh de Wriottesley, *Monsieur* Neele Loring, *Monsieur* Jehan Chandos, *Monsieur* James d'Audelay, *Monsieur de* Holland, *Monsieur* Henry Eme, *Monsieur* Sanchet de Prichecourt, *Monsieur* Walter de Pauely.

I. *Il est accordé, que le Roy, & ses heirs, Rois d'*Angleterre *seront pour tousiours* Souerains *de la dite Compagnie.*

II. *Item est accordé, que nul ne soit eleu Compagnon du dit Ordre, s'il n'est Gentilhomme de Sang, & Chevalier sans reproche.*

III. *Item que les xxvi. dessus nommez porteront les Manteaux & les Gartiers ordonnés au dit lieu, quand ils seront presens audit Chastel, c'est assavoir à toutes les fois qu'ils entreront dans la Chapelle de Saint* George, *ou au Chapitre, pour tenir Chapitre, ou illec faire aucun acte appartenant à l'Ordre. Et semblablement porteront leur manteaux dés la veille Saint* George, *auec le* Souverain *ou son* Deputé *en maniere de procession, de la grande Chambre, jusqu'a la Chapelle, ou au Chapitre, en retournant en semblable maniere, & aussi les porteront au souper de la dite Veille, ceux qui souper voudront, & les autres aussi jusques apres laver. Et le lendemain en venant en ladite Chapelle & retournant au disner, & apres, tant que le* Souerain, *ou son* Deputé, *aura tenu son estat; Et en venant aux secondes vespres, & en retournant, & au souper, tant que la* Vulde *soit faicte. Et que chacun des xxvi. Compagnons dessus-nommez, chacun à leur entrer dedans le Chaur, ils devotement obeiront, premierement à l'autel, en l'honneur & maniere des gens de Sainte Eglise; & apres au Souverain, ou à son Estat, en son absence, devant qu'ils entreront en leur Estats, & pareillement en leur departir d'icelle.*

IV. *Et seront ordonnez xiii.* Chanoines *Seculiers, qui seront Prestres en leur entrée, ou dedans l'an prochain ensuivant; Et xiii.* Vicaires, *aussi Prestres à leur entrée, ou aux prochains Ordres, chantant pour toutes ames Chrestiennes, lesquels Chanoines seront presentez par les Fondeurs dessus dicts; C'est assavoir, chacun des Fondeurs, qui à present est, presentera son Chanoine au Guardien du College; ainsi que si aucun de Chanoines meurt, celuy qui le presenta ni nul autre presentera, mais le Souverain du dit Ordre pour tousiours apres. Et en telle maniere est accordé pour tous autres Chanoines.*

V. *Item est accordé, que les Chanoines auront leurs Manteaux de Murrey, avec un Rondelet des armes de Saint* George.

VI. *Et sont ordonnez xxvi.* pauures Chevaliers *qui n'ont dequoy viure, pour avoir en celle maison leur soustenance convenable pour leur bonne priere, à l'honneur de Dieu & de Saint* George; *Et de l'election est ordonné des presentemens des Chanoines dessus-nommez, ainsi que l'election remaindra toujours par devers le dit Souverain.*

VII. *Item est accordé, que les pouvres* Chevaliers *auront leurs Manteaux de Rouge, & un Escusson des armes de Saint* George, *sans Gartier.*

VIII. *Item est accordé, que si le* Souuerain *ne peut estre à la Feste, qu'il fasse son* Deputé *par ses Lettres, pour tenir, en la veille de Saint* George, *le Chapitre, à l'heure de Tierce, & le iour de Saint* George, *pour tenir, aux coustages du Souuerain, ladite Feste, pour le temps dessusdit, sans autres nouvelles ordonnances, aiant pouvoir de corriger & redresser les points de Chapitre qui enseivent; par ainsi que le* Souuerain *aura ainsi que le nombre des Compagnons de l'Ordre avecques luy requis par les Estatuts, affin que telle election soit vaillable. Et si en celuy temps y a aucune vuidance des Compagnons, qu'adonques l'election appartiendra audit* Souuerain, *& d'icelle sera le dit* Deputé *suffisamment certifié par celuy* Souuerain. *Et pareillement que le dit* Deputé *signifie au* Souuerain *des vuidances si aucunes soient en* Angleterre *: affin que si pour le temps de la dite vuidance en la presence du* Souuerain *n'est trouvé le nombre desdits Compagnons comme dessus est dit, que ledit* Deputé *en soit certifié par le dit* Souuerain, *& des merites & noms des gens d'armes & d'honneur, qui selon l'advis du dit* Souuerain *seront aucunement dignes, à cause de leur vaillances, d'estre nommez pour estre de ladite Compagnie; & adonques l'election appartiendra audit* Deputé *selon la forme des Estatutz.*

IX. *Item, que chacun an, la veille de Saint* George *soit faite une assemblée de tous les Compagnons de Saint* George *dessus nommez, au dit Chastel de* Windesore *qui sont dedans la terre, qui venir y pourront, & icelle auront leur service de Saint* George, *& auront leurs Manteaux durant le service, estant ordonnement en leurs Estalz, & chacun aura son Heaulme & son Espée par dessus son Estal, qui à tout leur vivant demeureront à la Chapelle illeeque en signifiance de celuy qui les porte, & defense de Sainte Eglise, comme l'Ordre de Chevalerie le veut. Mais en cas que la Feste Saint* George *vienne dedans xv. iours prochains apres Pasques, soit prorogûée jusques au Dimenche, qui à toutesfois sera le quinziesme iour apres le iour de Pasques; affin que chacun Compagnon dudit Ordre puisse estre à la dite Feste sans Chevauchier trois iours prochains ensuivant le iour de Pasques; par ainsi que le iour de la Feste dessus dite ne soit ordonné ni assigné les xxiv, xxv, xxvime ni le derrain iour d'*Avril, *ni sur les iiii. premiers iours de* May, *à cause de l'impediment du Service divin ordonné par Sainte Eglise, pour doubles Festes de Saint* Marc, Philippe, *&* Jacob, *& de Sainte* Croix *nostre Seigneur* Jesu Christ, *ni à nulz tels iours que peuvent venir les Festes de l'Ascension ou* Penthecoste, *ou aucune autre Feste solemnelle ordonnée par Sainte Eglise, dont les premieres ou secondes vespres par telles prorogations pourroient estre destourbées.*

X. *Item, que ledit lieu, la veille de Saint* George, *à l'heure de* Tierce; *& s'ils ne viennent au temps assigné, ils auront leur penance selon l'accord du Chapitre. Et accordé est, qu'ils n'entreront point au Chapitre à celle fois, mais se tiendront par dehors à l'huis, & n'auront point de voix en rien qui sera fait audit Chapitre, à celle fois tant seulement. Et s'ils ne viennent aux vespres deuement au commencement, ils n'entreront point en leurs Estalz, mais se tiendront au bas desdits Estalz, aux lieux des Choristes durant les dites Vespres. Et semblable penance est accordée pour les non-venants par temps devant la haute Messe & Vespres le iour de Saint* George. *Et s'ils ne viennent à la dite feste, sans excusation acceptable par ledit* Souuerain, *ou son* Deputé, *sa peine sera qu'il n'entrera en son Estal la prochaine feste apres, mais se tiendra tout en bas, comme dessus, les premieres vespres, & ira à la Procession tout devant les trois Croix, & se tiendra tout en bas, comme dessus, toute la Messe, jusqu'à l'offrande, & offrira le derrenier. Et apres ces penances ainsi faites, il viendra incontinent devant l'Estal du* Souuerain, *ou son* Deputé, *& demandera pardon. Et apres, ledit* Souuerain, *ou son* Deputé *luy commandera d'aller en son Estal, à son premier estat. Et s'il ne vient à la seconde feste, & soit demeurant au Royaume, sans excusation aloiable au* Souuerain, *ou a son* Deputé, *il n'entrera en son dit Estal desfors en avant, jusques qu'il aura offert un joyau à l'Autel de Saint* George *dedans ladite Chapelle, de la value de xx. Marcs; & desfors en avant il doublera la peine chacun an, tant qu'il soit reconcilié.*

XI. *Item, que tous les Compagnons dudit Ordre porteront leurs Manteaux du Bleu dudit Ordre à l'heure des premieres vespres jusques apres les secondes, en la feste de Saint* George *chacun an, quelque part qu'ils soient, en telle maniere comme ils feroient, s'ils estoient presens en la feste avec ledit* Souuerain *ou son* Deputé, *par ainsi qu'ils soient en lieu à leur liberté, non obstant la prorogation de la feste.*

XII. *Item est accordé, que si aucun de ladite Compagnie soit trouvé en appert sans Gartier, qu'il paye, tantost apres la chalange, au Gardien & College, demy Marc; excepté quand il est housé pour Chevauchier, que adonques il sera tenu porter, soubz son housseau, en signifiance du Jartier, un fil bleu de soye; & pourveu aussi que nul Chevalier dudit Ordre doresnavant entre au Chapitre sans Jartier.*

XIII. *Item est accordé, que les Compagnons de Saint* George *voisent pour offrir à la haute Messe chacun avec son Compagnon à l'opposite de luy, ordonnement comme ils sont mis en leurs Estals; Et s'il advient que l'un ne soit à la journée, son Compagnon, qui est à l'opposite de luy, ira par soy à l'offrande; Et que le* Souuerain, *ou son* Deputé *voise derriere toute la Compagnie, tant que Procession soit faite en allant à ladite Chappelle.*

XIV. *Item est ordonné, que chacun an, lendemain de la feste Saint* George, *devant le departement de la Compagnie, avant dite, une Messe de* Requiem *sera là chantée pour les ames des Compagnons, qui sont morts, & tous Chrestiens; Et que toute la Compagnie soit illeeque, sinon que aucun soit destourbé raisonnablement, ou qu'il ait congié*

congié du Souuerain ou de son Deputé, devant son departir. Et quand il advient qu'a cause des vuidances des Compagnons soient aucuns Heaulmes, Tymbres, & Espées qui doivent estre offerts, que devant l'offrande des Monnoyes, les Espées soient offertes premierement, par deux Compagnons, que le Souuerain ou son Deputé voudra nommer; & depuis, le Heaulme, avecques le Tymbre, pareillement, par deux autres de l'Ordre, par ledit Souuerain, ou son Deputé, assignez.

XV. Item est accordé, que chacun de ladite Compagnie laissera son Manteau illecques pour telles soudaines vennes, & pour les point tenir du commandement du Souuerain.

XVI. Item est accordé, que si aucun de ladite Compagnie vienne en cheminant prés le dit Chastel, qu'il voise dedans, pour l'honneur de ladite place, s'il pourra honnement, & s'il ne soit destourbé à juste cause, & qu'il prenne son Manteau avant qu'il entre en ladite Chapelle, par ainsi qu'il n'y entre point sinon qu'il ait son Manteau sur luy. Et illecques les Chanoines, qui y sont, viendront à luy, pour l'encontrer, & le mener en ladite Chapelle devotement; Et s'il soit à l'heure de Messe, qu'il demeure là pour ouir ladite Messe, en honneur de Dieu, & de Monsieur Saint George, Et si c'est apres Nonne, d'entrer en la maniere dessus dite, & ouir vng De profundis des Chanoines, pour les ames de tous Chrestiens, & offrir illec. Et si aucun des dits Compagnons, chevauche parmy la ville, & ne veulle offrir comme accordé est, que sur son obedience, par chacunes fois qu'il fauldra, qu'il voise à ladite Chapelle, en l'honneur de Saint George, vne lieue à pied, & aussi chacunes fois qu'il faut donner à l'offrande,

XVII. Item est accordé, que au plutost que la mort soit cognue de qui que soit de la Compagnie dessus dite, que le Souuerain fera chanter, pour l'ame de celuy qui est mort, mille Messes, vng Roy estranger, huict cens Messes; le Prince, sept cens Messes; chacun Duc, six cens; chacun Comte, trois cens; chacun Banneret, deux cens; & chacun Bachelier, cent Messes. Et s'il ne face iceulx dedans vn quartier d'an apres la mort certifiée, qu'il double le quartier de l'entier; Et si demy-an soit au derriere, soit doublé, comme dit est. Et ainsi de temps en temps jusques à la fin de l'an, & s'il n'est accomply en l'an durant, soient les ans doublez.

XVIII. Item est accordé, que si aucun de ladite Compagnie meure, que ledit Souuerain, ou son Deputé face, apres sa mort à luy certifiée, garnir tous les Compagnons estans en Angleterre, par ses Lettres, qui pourront venir, qu'ils soient devant luy, ou que s'il luy plaira assigner lieu convenable dedans six sémaines apres la certification de la mort dessus dite. Lesquels tous ainsi assemblez, ou au moins six, outre le Souuerain, ou son Deputé dessus dit, chacun d'iceulx, qui sont venus à l'election, nommera neuf des plus suffisans Chevaliers sans reproche qu'il connoist, subjectz du dit Souuerain, ou aultres, pourveu qu'ils ne tiennent son adverse partie; c'est assavoir, trois Contes, ou de greigneur estat, trois Bannerets, & trois Bacheliers. Lesquelles nominations escrira le chief Prelate du dit Ordre, c'est assavoir, l'Evesque de Winchestre pour le temps estant, où en son absence le Dean, ou Registreur, ou le plus avant Residencier, en leur absence du dit Colliege; Et la nomination ainsi faite par tous, ou six au moins, sera, par luy, qui l'aura escrite, monstrée au Souuerain, ou à son Deputé, lequel eslira celuy des nommez qui aura le plus de voix, & qui luy semblera le plus honourable au dit Ordre, & profitable à sa Couronne, & au Royaume. Et en cas que aucuns de ladite Compagnie ne vienne à l'election, s'ils ne sont destourbez par juste cause, & ladite cause signifiée dessous leurs seaux d'armes, acceptée par le Souuerain, ou son Deputé; si ladite cause ne soit juste, ou ne vienne aux semonces dessus dits, est accordé qu'il paye au Gardien & Colliege, pour chanter pour celuy qui est mort, vng Marc; & à sa prochaine venue au Chapitre, sera devant le Souuerain, ou son Deputé, & la Compagnie sur la terre, au milieu du Chapitre, tant qu'il soit reconcilié par le Souuerain, ou son Deputé & la Compagnie.

XIX. Item est accordé, que en cas si aucun des Chevaliers de ladite Compagnie meure, & vng aultre est eleu, il aura tantost apres l'Election le Jartier, en signifiance qu'il est vng des Compagnons du Jartier, & le Manteau luy sera deliuré pour son habit, quand il sera mis en son Estat, & non devant. Et en cas qu'il meure devant qu'il ait receu son habit, il ne sera mie nommé pour vng des Fondeurs, puisqu'il default avoir pleniere possession de son estat. Mais il aura la moitié des Messes dessus nommez pour la liurée de son Gartier, & rien oultre cela. Et si iceluy eleu ne vient en toute bonne haste, apres la reception du Gartier, au dit lieu pour estre estallé, & par especiall dedans l'an de son election, s'il soit Chevalier demourant dedans le Royaume, s'il n'a excusation acceptable au Souuerain, ou à son Deputé & la Compagnie, soit l'election vuidée de celuy, & voise le Souuerain, ou son Deputé, & la Compagnie à nouuelle election; Et ne seront l'Espée ni le Heaulme, mis sur son Estal, devant la venue de l'esleu dedans le dit Chastel, affin que s'il ne vient comme dessus, que ses dits Espée & Heaulme ne soient abatus ny devallez, mais honnestement mis hors du Chœur, & remaindront à l'usage du dit Colliege.

XX. Item est accordé, que tous Estrangiers, qui seront esleuz Compagnons du dit Ordre, seront certifiez par le Souuerain de leur election, & que leur Gartier, leur Manteau, & les Estatutz de l'Ordre, soubs le commun Seel, leur seront envoyez au coustages du dit Souuerain, en toute bonne haste, & au plus tard soient ils certifiez dedans quatre mois apres l'election, affin qu'ils se peuuent par les dits Estatutz aviser, s'ils veulent recevoir le dit Jartier, ou non, & que tous tels Estrangiers de quelque dignité, estat, ou condition qu'ils soient, envoyent, dedans sept mois apres ladite certification à eulz faite par le Souuerain, & la reception de la Jarretiere, un Procureur suffisant, selon l'estat de son Seigneur & Maistre, pourveu qu'il soit Chevalier, & sans reproche, pour estre estallé en son lieu, qui apportera avecque luy vng Manteau de soye bleuë de l'Ordre, de par celuy qui

qui l'envoyera, & son Heaume, son Tymbre, & son Espée, pour demourer au College pour toujours; lequel Manteau par le Souuerain, *ou son* Deputé, *au temps que ledit Procureur sera estallé, luy sera mis sur son bras dextre, à le tenir sur son dit bras, à l'heure divine prochaine, apres qu'il sera estallé au nom de son dit Seigneur & Maistre, sans plus le porter en aucun temps, & sans avoir voix en Chapitre, ou y entrer, en l'absence de celuy qui l'envoyera. Et est asscavoir, que cette faveur est faite aux* Estrangiers, *qui ne peuuent bonnement venir en leurs propres personnes, qu'ils peuuent estre estallez par Procureur, affin qu'ils soient participans ez Messes & Prieres entieres du dit Ordre, car ilz failleroient de la moitié, s'ils n'estoient estallez devant la mort. Et pareillement est ordonné des gens du dit Ordre esleuz de nouueau estants en la guerre du Roy, ou ailleurs, de son commandement, de recevoir le benefice du dit estat en ce qui appartiendra seulement à leur Estallation.*

XXI. *Item est accordé, que si aucun des Contes, Bannerets, ou Bacheliers, meurt, celuy qui viendra en son lieu, soit il Conte, Banneret, ou Bachelier, tiendra le mesme Estal que son Predecesseur tenoit, & ne changera point, forsprins le Prince, qui tiendra le premier Estal, à l'opposite du Souuerain, si tost comme il sera esleu; ainsi que par ce cas, vng Conte tiendra l'Estal d'un Bachelier, & le Bachelier d'vng Conte: & c'est pour cause de sçavoir qui furent les premiers Fondeurs.*

XXII. *Item est accordé, que tous les Compagnons du dit Ordre, à leur premiere entrée, donneront chascun vng certain prix selon son estat, en maintenance des Chanoines & poures Chevaliers demourants au dit lieu, & des aumosnes qui y sont perpetuellement ordonnées illec; C'est ascavoir, le Souuerain, quarante Marcs; vng Roy estranger, vingt Liures; le Prince, vingt Marcs; chascun Duc, dix Liures; chascun Conte, dix Marcs; chascun Banneret, cent Solz; & chascun Bachelier, cincq Marcs. Et ne seront leurs Heaulmes ny leurs Espées mises sur leurs Estalz, jusques qu'ils auront payé à leurs entrées les sommes dessus dites, selon l'estat de celuy à qui il appartient. Et est ascavoir, que le* Souuerain *sera tenu de payer pour l'entrée de chascun* Estrangier *esleu à l'estallement de son Procureur. Et ces dons pour ce sont ordonnez, affin que chascun qui entre en cet Ordre soit le plus digne d'avoir le nom, titre, & privilege d'un des Fondeurs du mesme Ordre.*

XXIII. *Item est ordonné, que si tost que l'vng de la Compagnie soit mort, que son Escu fait de metal de ses Armes, & son Heaulme soient fichez au dos de son Estal; & les aultres Fondeurs qui viendront apres auront leurs Escus & leurs Heaulmes en la mesme maniere dessoubs les premiers Fondeurs. Mais leurs Escus ny leurs Heaulmes ne seront pas si grands comme ceulz des premiers Fondeurs.*

XXIV. *Item est accordé, que chacun entrant au dit Ordre promette par luy, & jure par son suffisant Procureur, qui sera estallé au nom de luy, de loyaument garder & observer les Estatutz du dit Ordre, à son loyal pouuoir; Et ne sera nul estallé par Procureur s'il n'est* Estrangier, *qui bonnement ne peut venir en sa propre personne pour estre estallé.*

XXV. *Item est accordé, qu'en cas que le* Souuerain *soit hors du pais, ou qu'il ne pourra en propre personne faire ce qui appartient à l'estallation, qu'il pourra donner pouuoir à l'vng des Compagnons, pour faire la mesme chose en son nom.*

XXVI. *Item est accordé, que vng commun Seel soit fait, lequel demourra en la garde de celuy que le* Souuerain *vouldra nommer & assigner.*

XXVII. *Item, que chascun des Compagnons du dit Ordre doresnavant ait les dessusdits Estatutz soubs le commun Seel avant dit; & que l'Original soit seellée auec le dit Seel, & demeure en la Tresorerie du dit Colliege á tousiours.*

XXVIII. *Item, & apres la mort de chascun Compagnon du dit Ordre, ses Executeurs seront tenus de renvoyer les Estatutz du dit Ordre au dit Colliege; & les delivrer au Gardien d'iceluy pour le temps estant.*

XXIX. *Item est accordé, que nul des Chevaliers de Saint* George, *de la Compagnie du* Gartier, *ne voise hors de la terre, sans le sceu & congié du* Souuerain. *Et pour ce est aussi accordé, que si aucun voyage se fait, ou autre chose quelconque, qui appartient à l'honneur de Chevalerie, le* Souuerain *du dit Ordre, de sa grace, preferera les* Compagnons *du dit Ordre devant tous aultres.*

XXX. *Item, que nul du dit Ordre ne soit armé l'vng contre l'aultre, si ce n'est en la guerre de son Souuerain Seigneur, ou en son droict & juste querelle. Et s'il advient que aucun du dit Ordre soit retenu auec son Seigneur, ou tenant sa partie & querele, & la partie adverse desire avoir aucun aultre Compagnon du dit Ordre aveeque luy; En ce cas ne sera tel Compagnon retenu, mais sera tenu de soy excuser tout oultrement, à cause de ce que son Compagnon est armé de l'autre costé, & fut retenu devant luy. Et sera chascun Compagnon du dit Ordre tenu d'excepter quant il sera sa retenue qu'il soit deschargé tout entierement de son service de guerre, si aucuns des Compagnons sont paravant retenus ou tenants la partie adverse; Et si celuy qui est secondement retenu aucunement ne cognoist que aucun de ses Compagnons soit devant luy retenu, ou armé avec sa partie adverse; soit tenu l'avant dit Compagnon à la premiere cognoissance qu'il en pourra avoir, de soy excuser envers son Maistre, & laisser celle querele.*

XXXI. *Item, que toutes les Licences des Chevaliers de l'Ordre qui iront hors pour acquerir honneur, & toutes Certifications, ou Mandements, a faire touchant le dit Ordre doresenavant par le* Souuerain, *seront faits soubs le commun Seel, lequel remaindra en la garde d'un des Compagnons du dit Ordre, à la volonté du dit* Souuerain. *Et si celuy qui l'aura en garde depart pour cause raisonnable, hors de la presence du dit* Souuerain, *qu'adonques il laissera le dit Seel en la garde d'un aultre Compagnon du dit Ordre, estant present auec le* Souuerain, *& par son assignement. Ainsi que le dit Seel ne soit nulle fois hors de la presence du dit* Souuerain, *tant qu'il sera dedans le*

le Royaume: Et pareillement en son absence sera son Deputé *auec le dit Seel. Et si ainsi est que le dit* Souuerain *pourpose de soy absenter, & aller hors du Royaume pour cause raisonable, il est ordonné par assent de la dite Compagnie, qu'il aura vng Signet conuenable a l' Ordre du Gartier pour mettre au dos du commun Seel de l'Ordre, qui sera auecque luy ou qu'il soit, & sera mis en tous les Actes qui seront faits dehors par le dit* Souuerain, *en difference de ceulx qui seront faits en* Angleterre.

XXXII. *Item est accordé, qui si aucun Chevalier de la dite Compagnie par devotion veult demourrer en la dite maison continuellement, qu'il ordonne pour son viure, & pour sa demeure, du sien propre.*

XXXIII. *Item, si aucun aultre Chevalier qui ne soit mie dela dite Compagnie y veult demourrer par devotion, soit ordonné pour sa demeure selon l' accord du dit* Souuerain *& dela dite Compagnie.*

XXXIV. *Item est accordé, que si aucun Chevalier, ou aultre personne veult donner aucunes terres ou rentes, pour estre participans de toutes les bonnes Oroisons & prieres qui seront faites en la dite maison, son nom sera entré, & les* Chanoines *&* poures Chevaliers *prieront pour luy perpetuellement: parainsi que le dit Gardien & les* Chanoines *du dit Colliege dorefenavant ne prendront sur iceluy Colliege aucune charge, sans l' advisement du dit* Souuerain, *ou son* Deputé, *& les Compagnons de l' Ordre presens auecques en l' absence du* Souuerain.

XXXV. *Item est accordé, qui si aucun des* Chanoines *meure, & le dit* Souuerain *soit hors du pais, que le Gardien, qui pour le temps sera, envoyera ses Lettres au dit* Souuerain *pour vng aultre, que le* Souuerain *vouldra nommer & y ordonner.*

XXXVI. *Item sera fait vng Registre, de par le* Souuerain *& la Compagnie, qui soit le plus scachant du dit Colliege, pour estre present en chacun Chapitre de l' Ordre, & en registrer loyaument les Elections, & les noms des esleux, les peines, & causes des peines, les reconciliations des punis, & tous aultres actes & leurs causes, appurtinants au dit Ordre, de Chapitre en Chapitre, & d' an en an. Et soit le dit Registre loyaument fermenté de loyaument registrer a la reception de son office, & que au commencement de chacun Chapitre la vigille de Saint* George, *soit le Registre de l' an precedent leu devant le* Souuerain, *ou son* Deputé, *& ladite Compagnie, affin qu'il puisse estre corrigié, si besoin en estoit.*

The Statutes *established by King* Henry *the Eighth, recorded in the* Black Book *of the Order.*

UBI *clarissimus, invictissimus, & inter fortunatissimos hujus Mundi Principes meritissimè numeratus,* Edoardus *Tertius,* Angliæ *Rex &* Franciæ, *Dominus* Hiberniæ, *&c. Ad honorem Omnipotentis Dei, beatissimæ virginis* Mariæ, *præclari Martyris Divi* Georgii, *nobilissimi Regni Anglorum insignissimi Patroni, & Sancti* Edoardi *Confessoris, ob stabilitatem atque incrementum Catholicæ fidei, bonorum morum augmentum, & omnigenæ virtutis exercitium, intra Castrum* Windesori, *viginti sex nobilium ac fortium Equitum societatem atq; ordinem instituit, quem, à præclustri* Subligaculo *cognominatum, Divo quoque* Georgio *nuncupavit, & ad tutamen decus, atq; complementum ejusdem laudabiles Ordinationes ac Statuta condidit, à Collegiis & coordinatis illis inviolabiliter observanda, in quibus obscura quædam, ambigua, & lucidæ explanationis atq; interpretationis egena extiterunt, quædam verò addenda atq; amplificanda visa sunt; potentissimus, invictissimus, atque excellentissimus Princeps* Henricus *Octavus, auspice Deo, Rex* Angliæ *&* Franciæ, *Defensor fidei, Dominus* Hiberniæ, *&c. hujus Ordinis optimo jure* Supremus, *per eum amorem, quem erga Militiæ statum & nunc habet, & semper habebat, cujus splendorem indies auctum iri ardentissimè desiderat, & ob frequens Sociorum ejusdem Ordinis desiderium, consilium, & assensum; vicesimo quarto die* Aprilis, *Anno gratiæ Millesimo quingentesimo vicesimo secundo, Regni verò sui quarto decimo, obscuritates istas quorundam in quibusdam è Statutis illis Articulorum atq; ambiguitates interpretatus est, & elucidavit, quædam insuper (ut res ferebat) adjiciens atq; amplificans. Quæ profectò statuta, Ordinationes, interpretationes, declarationes, reformationes, & explanationes, cum additamentis, secundum verum ac germanum sensum à* Supremo *cum Collegis omnibus ejusdem Ordinis imposterum observari debent, juxta modum qui subsequitur.*

I. *Decretum inprimis est, quod Rex, heredes, & Successores ejus,* Angliæ, *post eum,* Reges, *erunt imperpetuum præfati Ordinis & amicissimæ Societatis* Supremi. *Ad quos deinceps pro suo cujusq; tempore declaratio, interpretatio, decisio, correctio, solutio, & dispensatio Statutorum, sicubi nodus extiterit, aut ambiguitas animos indiversum traxerit, omnino spectabunt.*

II. *Nemo deligetur in* Socium *hujus* Ordinis, *nisi qui nomine, Armis, ac sanguine generosus, & eques irreprehensus existat, nec aliquis collega hujus Ordinis abhinc eum (dum electio suscipitur) nominabit, quem ex animo notâ non vacare judicat. Generosus autem nomine, Armis, & Sanguine, is intelligitur, qui, preter Patrem ac Matrem, avos & proavos quoque generosi sanguinis habuerit. Irreprehensus & sine notâ judicatur qui nullum ex tribus hiis sequentibus incurrisse probatur. Prima nempe species est, si quis Eques condemnatus hereticâ pravitate fuerit,*

 minus

minùs Catholicè senserit, aut publicam eo nomine poenam dederit. Altera, si lese Majestatis convictus fuerit. Tertia, si de bello fugiat, quod Supremus, *vel ab eo designatus, & authoritatem ejus habens, gerit, postea quàm vexilla protensa sunt & pugna occepit iniri. Qui tam turpiter illinc aufugerit, meritò reprehendendus existimari debet, nec in presentem Ordinem eligendus. Et si contingat (quod absit) aliquem antea electum rem posthàc tam ignominiosam committere, is, ut commeretur, ab hoc Ordine deponetur, in proximi Consilii celebratione, si ita* Supremo *ac Societati visum fuerit.*

III. *Quotannis vigiliâ divi* Georgii, *hoc est, vicesimo secundo Aprilis, & si juxta ritum Ecclesiæ divina tàm* Georgio *minimè celebrentur, omnes equites hujus Ordinis, ubi fuerint, modo sicè libertate gaudeant, Trabeâ, Tunicâ, Humerale & Torque, debito scilicet hujus Ordinis habitu, ritè induentur horâ tertiâ post meridiem, donec officia vespertina cum cena & Missa post cenam perfoluta fuerint. Et matutinis itaque diei sequentis solenni processu, summo sacrificio, secundisque vesperis, immo diem totum usque dum Cena cum Missâ post cenam finiantur, simili modo incedent.*

IV. *Si vero (causâ postulante) prefata solemnitas prorogari debeat, vel* Supremus *eam prorogandam esse censeat, ibi Commilitones omnes qui fuerint intra Regnum, vigiliâ paritèr ac die Sancti* Georgii, *aderunt in obsequium* Supremi, *quocunque Regni sui loco manserit. Ubi tum inservientes eidem Officia Sancti* Georgii *solemniter observabunt modò ritus Ecclesiæ Sanctæ id ita permittat. Quod si mos Ecclesiæ aliud judicat nihilominus eodem tempore Supremo inservituri aderunt, biis cum eo divinis interfuturi, quæ tum celebranda statuuntur, Ceremonias item alias ad unam impleturi, tam ut consilium incant prædictâ vigiliâ post meridiem, ante vesperas, die sequente post matutinas ante Missam, & eodem meridie ante secundas vesperas, quam ut habitu suo toto solemniter induti in suâ quisque sede se componant, primas vesperas in vigiliâ, & in die Matutinas, ac Missam cum secundis reverenter audituri, & postridiè Missam solennem pro defunctis; ad quam venientes trabeis ex more supertegentur, sed togis subtus ut libebit, ante cujus initium si qua Electio vel res alioquin ardua peragenda tum instet, ad Consilium se recipient, illic omnia de more facturi, ac si* Windesori *forent. Quod si* Supremus *ad Consilium ingressus fuerit, & Commilitonum aliquis cum eo minus affuerit, ob eam negligentiam omne id temporis quo tum* Supremus *cum aliis intus erit, foris ipse manebit. Si verò quis eorum ad vesperas in vigiliâ, matutinas, Missam, aut vesperas in die tardior accesserit, is, quoad illud divini Officii peractum fuerit; vel stabit vel genua flectet in eo loco quo Choristæ soleant. Sin prædictâ vigiliâ cum die sequente quivis eorum non advenerit, ut* Supremo *serviat, nec potestatem præobtentam aut justam alioquin absentiæ causam* Supremoque *placentem obtendere queat, illi proximo* Georgianæ *solemnitatis observandæ, sedile suum in præsentiâ* Supremi *non intrabit, nec id etiam* Windesori, *& decem præterea libras in Ornamenta Collegii dependet.*

V. *Quicunq; Commilitonum ipsorum prædictâ vigiliâ ac die potestatem adeptus, aut alioquin abfuerit domi suæ, vel alibi commoratus intra Ecclesiam aut Sacellum illic ubi tunc divinis aderit, præcipuum unum sedile ad honorem* Supremi *faciet adornari, in quo quidem Ordinis hujus insignia intra prælustre sublligaculum illocabit: Deindè sedem aliam apparabit ab illâ* Supremi *(quoad conjecturâ pro modo ac formâ Templi colligere potest) ita distantem, ut &* Windesori *cernitur, ubi propriis insignibus appensis se pro tempore constituet. Integro tum ex more contegetur habitu, divinis (ut prius ostensum) interfuturus, quæ ritus Ecclesiæ servanda signabit. Ingrediens atq; egrediens, & quoties alioqui pretergredietur, tàm summum Altare, in honorem Dei, quàm Sedile Regium, ad honorem* Supremi, *debitâ genuflectione reverentiâq; consultabit: nisi hic* Imperator, Rex, Princeps, *aut* Elector *extiterit, quibus, ut cordi erit, sedes erigere ceteráq; ritè peragere licebit.*

VI. *Si verò annua* Georgii *solennitas haud prorogetur, sed ipsa vigilia diesq; divi* Georgii, *prout moris est, observata fuerit* Windesori, *neq;* Supremo *liceat aut saltem collibeat illic adesse, tum ubi locorum intra Regnum suum fuerit; horum Equitum quoslibet assignare poterit ad obsequium sibi prestandum, & quicquid est Ceremoniarum oportunè perimplendum, ac si* Windesori *presentes essent; id quod qui ritè perfecerint, ab eâ festivitate, quæ servanda est* Windesori, *veniunt excusandi.*

VII. *Siq;* Supremus Georgianâ *solennitate haud queat interesse, loco sui deputabit alterum Literis suis ad id destinatis, qui cum sibi consistentibus vigiliâ Concilium inibit, horâ tertiarum, hoc est, horâ tertiâ post meridiem, & reliquam postridiè solennitatem adimplebit,* Regiis *duntaxat impensis, pro tempore supra nominato. Novas autem Ordinationes haud instituet, sed delicta corriget, & quicquid arbitrio Concilii necessarium factu visum fuerit, ipse faciet.*

VIII. *Quotannis vigiliâ Divi* Georgii, *hoc est, vicesimo secundo die Aprilis, convenient omnes Equites* Georgiani *intra Castrum* Windesori, *sive in regno seu foris extiterint, modò commodè possint, divinis* Georgianis *illic interfuturi, & pleno habitu Ordinis induentur, quamdiu divina celebrantur seriatim in locis considente. Habebit autem ipsorum quisque vexillum & Ensem cum Galeâ atq; appendicibus supra sedile suum confixa, quæ permanebunt illic quoad vixerit, ad honorem ejus, & in argumentum quod Catholicæ fidei & Sanctæ Ecclesiæ certus propugnator ipse sit futurus, uti Equestris Ordo deposcit. Quod si festivitas illa intra quindecem dies à Paschate, vel die quo abstinetur à Carnibus, evenerit, quo* Supremus *ipse volet, prorogabitur, dummodo dies assignandus quartus, quintus, aut sextus & vicesimus nec ultimus Aprilis fuerit, neq; ullus è primis quatuor Maii, ne fieret impedimento celebrationi Divinorum ab Ecclesia constitutæ, in honore Divi* Marci, Philippi, & Jacobi, & Inventionis Sanctæ Crucis: *nec*

nec talis item dies quo Festum Ascensionis, Pentecostes, *aut alioqui solenniter institutum primis aut secundis suis vesperis posset destitui vel interturbari.*

IX. *Quod si qui tempestivè (quomodo præsignatum est) non advenerit, neque satis idoneam absentiæ causam habeant, quam* Supremus *aut deputatus ab eo probabilem esse judicabit, vel nisi* Supremus *absentiam ejus temporis illis condonavet, literis suis ob id ipsum eo destinatis, in quibus eorum nomina cum causis absentiæ continentur: penas ea de re luent arbitrio presidis & Concilii tum collecti. Formula Supplicii talis erit. Non ingredietur quisquis ita dereliquerit concilii suscepti locum, sed in hostio foris expectabit, neque suffragii in vltâ reconferendi facultatem habebit eo tempore. Sin ad Principium vesperarum non affuerint, ad sedes suas ingredi non licebit, sed subtus ante sedes suas in locis Choristarum stabunt, donec illæ vesperæ sint finitæ par pœna manebit iis qui ad solennem dici Missam & posteriores vesperas tempore non accesserint. Siquis autem sine probabili causâ à toto festo abesse præsumpserit, is anno sequente, dum festivitas agetur, à sede suâ prohibebitur, & stabit interim, vt præfatum est, dumq; procedens chorus supplicabit, tres cruces, quæ feruntur, antecedet, & subtus deinceps, ut antea, perstabit, vsq; dum ad offerendum Ordo conscendat, vbi hic postremus offeret. Quâ peractâ penitentiâ, veniet è vestigio ad* Supremi *sedem aut ab eo designati, veniam rogaturus. Tumq;* Supremus, *aut ab eo Deputatus, remittet eum ad sedem suam, vt antiquum jus ibi retineat. Si verò deinceps altero festo abesse non formidârit, manens intra regium, nec legitimam alioquin excusationem habens, per* Supremum *aut ab eo designatum approbandam (vti prænotatum est) ad sedem illam suam haud introibit, donec apud Supremum Altare Sancto* Georgio *dicatum, monumentum vnum argenteum viginti marcarum obtulerit, & deinceps annuatim idem adgeminabit, vsq; dum reconciliari procurârit.*

X. *Quisquis Equitum istorum palàm foris incedens subligar suum tybiæ non circumligarit, vbi primùm deprehensus fuerit per quemvis quinque Officialium Ordinis, aut Rectorum Collegii, duos aureos illicò monitori dependet; nisi cùm ad Equum ocreis indutus se accinxerit. Tunc enim sat erit si filum cærulei coloris è sericeo subter ocream ad subligaris indicium habeat: par omnino supplicium infligetur ci qui citra subligar objunctum tibiæ Concilii domum introibit. Quisquis autem Officialium aut Decanus delictum istiusmodi compererit, ad eum ipsum pecunia penè pertinebit.*

XI. *Quoties Equites isti de more trabeis induentur,* Supremum *bini precedent, eo ipso ordine quo è regione consident. Si quis illinc abfuerit, Socius qui è Regione sedet, solus incedet. Id quod observari oportet tàm in processu ad supplicandum, quàm temporibus & locis aliis. At quum sit offerendum,* Supremus *aut ab eo designatus, primus omnium ascendet, & ceteri deinceps, Officiales autem eundo Ordinem suum usualem observabunt in omni processu, tàm intra Sacellum & Concilium, quàm in quibusvis locis aliis. Nimirum Equites cum sit epulandum, omnes insimul ex vna parte mensæ recumbent, eo Ordine quem & in Templo sedentes aut stantes habent, & non secundum natalitiæ dignitatis gradum aut honoris, nisi filii Regum sint, Regum fratres, Principes, aut Duces externi, qui loca sortientur ex dignitate sui præclari Status. Et consurgentes eodem Ordine constabunt, quo & antè sedebant.*

XII. *Postridiè festivitatis, ad honorem Divi* Georgii, Windesori *servatæ, Commilitones, antequam in discessu valedicant, in hostio Concilii Trabeas quibus volent indumentis aliis superinduent, & deinde Missam pro defunctis solenniter in sacello percantandam audient, pro defunctis inquam omnibus Christianis, sed præsertim illis, qui anteà fuerant hujus Ordinis, simul omnes interesse debent, nisi forsan aliquis probabilem absentiæ causam habeat, vel à* Supremo *aut ejus* Deputato *potestatem abeundi præobtinuerit. Et cum contingat per mortem alicujus ipsorum, ut vexillum, gladius, & Galea cum appendicibus veniant offerenda, ante pecuniam offerri debent. Ordo nimirum offerendi talis erit, vt vexillum inprimis à duobus Commilitonibus per* Supremum, *aut ab eo designatum, assignandis offeratur, mox Ensis similiter à duobus aliis. Postremò Galea, cum annexis similiter, à duobus. Siquis autem anno præcedente obierat, quotquot Equitum Windesori aderunt, in eâ Missâ pro defunctis singulatim cereum unum offerent, cum Scutello, in quo pingentur insignia defuncti. Si plures uno mortui fuerint suum cuiq; Scutellum affigetur, habens argenteam laminam quatuor denariorum prope lumen appositum. Qui quidem cerei cum Scutellis sumptu ipsorum Equitum conficientur.*

XIII. *Decretum est insuper ut in hoc* Windesoriensi *Collegio sit inperpetuum* Decanus *unus, cum duodecim* Canonicis Secularibus, *quos Sacerdotes oportebit esse cum ingrediuntur, vel (ut multum) intra annum sequentem. Erunt preterea tredecim* Sacerdotes *alii, quorum pars una* Canonici minores, *altera* Vicarii *vocabuntur. Qui si Sacerdotes in ingressu non fuerint, citra omnem excusationem, intra annum erunt. Erunt ititdem* Clerici *tredecim totidemq;* Choristæ, *qui cum* Canonicis minoribus & Vicariis, *de quibus antè diximus, quotidiè in choro ministrabunt, canentes & orantes, ut tempus & res ipsa postulabunt. Nimirum omnes tam Majores quam minores* Canonici, Vicarii, Clerici, & Choristæ, *precari tenebuntur, ut* Supremus *cum cunctis* Commilitonibus *hujus Ordinis vivat, valeat, & omnia fœlicitèr agat, utque defunctorum* Equitum *animæ in pace requiescant. Præsentatio verò* Canonicorum *ubi contigerit, ad* Supremum *solummodo spectabit. Cùmq;* Commilitonum *aliquis* Windesorum *veniens intra chorum ad sedem suam ex more se receperit,* Canonici *reliquisq; Chorus stabunt in suis infrà sedibus, ubi in festis Divi* Georgii *solent. Dum absint* Equites, *benè licebit* Canonicis *& ceteris è choro Sacerdotibus, superiores sedes occupare.*

XIV. *Vnus-*

XIV. *Unusquisque Socius hujus Ordinis Trabeam unam relinquet intra Collegium* Windesori, *ob diversas occasiones quæ possent obvenire, viz. ut observare queant atque adimplere si quas Ordinationes præcepta & mandata* Supremus *excogitârit, & excogitata proposuerit in Concilio: qui consensu sex Commilitonum præsentium poterit, quando & ubi libebit, concilium instituere in causas singulas quæ sibi visæ fuerint.*

XV. *Quinque Ministri Officiales ad hunc Ordinem specialiùs attinentes erunt;* Prælatus, *viz.* Cancellarius, Scriba, Rex Armorum, *cui est à* Subligari *cognomen additum, &* Hostiarius, *qui à* Nigella virga, *quam gestabit, agnomen habebit; qui cum recipiendi sint Sacramento obvincientur, quod, velut à secretis, fideles ac tacituri erunt, in omnibus quæ spectabunt ad hunc Ordinem negotiis. Horum Juramenta requirentur expressiùs in Libello, qui Ordinationum inscribitur.*

XVI. *Stabilientur ibidem* Pauperculi tredecim Equites, *qui minus alioquin habent undè vivant, habituri victum competentem & vestitum. Qui solùm ad hoc obligabuntur ut in honorem Dei, beatæ* Mariæ, *Divi* Georgii, *omniumque Sanctorum, & pro salute animarum, quotidianas ibi preces fundant. Horum impensæ necessariæ cum privilegiis eorum infrà describentur, post prædictas Ordinationes. Sanè Electio ipsorum, ut & præfata Canonicorum, omninò referetur ad* Supremum. *Habebunt Equites ipsi pauperculi Colobea coccinea rubrive coloris cum Scutello Divi* Georgii *super humerum, sed sine subligari quocunque.*

XVII. *Si quis Sociorum hujus Ordinis intra duo passuum Millia Castello appropinquet, illud ipsum introibit, ad honorem loci, modò possit, nec alium justum habeat impedimentum. Introiturus autem sacellum induetur antecà Trabeâ, sine quâ non licebit ullo pacto introire. Introeuntem Canonici præsentes accipient, & reverentèr in Sacellum adducent. Quod si celebrandæ Missæ tempus extiterit, eandem ipse audiet, ad honorem Dei, Sanctique* Georgii; *sin post meridiem, aut aliàs advenerit, chorum (ut præfatum est) introibit, ubi Canonici, cum ceteris, Psalmum pro defunctis absolvent, dum ipse offeret & ad sedem sese suam recipit. Quòd si quisquis illorum pertransiat oppidum, nec ingrediatur, ut offerat, uti præfixum est, tùm sub obedientiæ vinculo, quoties ita deliquerit, à Sacello ad eum locum pedester ibit, & Statherem offeret. Distantia certè non amplior intelligitur quàm duorum duntaxat milliarium, ut ostensum antea.*

XVIII. *Ubi primùm mors alicujus horum* Equitum *certò significata fuerit, mox* Supremus *unum Missarum mille animæ defuncti celebrari efficiet.* Rex externus, *octies centum;* Princeps, *septies centum;* Dux *unusquisque, sexcentas;* Marchio, *quadringentas & quinquaginta;* Comes, *trecentas;* Vicecomes, *Ducentas quinquaginta; seu* Baro, *seu* Baronettus, *Ducentas;* Bacchalaureus Eques, *Centum. Siquis autem, post mortem eandem Regiis Literis indicatam, ante tres menses exactos non id ipsum perfici curâvit; quartam partem prædictæ summæ geminabit; si non ante medium anni præteritum, missas adduplicabit; sicque deinceps in finem anni. Quod si intra annum minus absolverit, in hanc formam annos adgeminabit.*

XIX. *Ubi primùm* Supremus, *aut ab eo designatus, certior factus fuerit de morte istiusmodi, illicò literas emittet ad* Commilitones *omnes hujus Ordinis, qui fuerint intra regnum* Angliæ, *ut omninò secum assint in loco congruo sibique viso, ante sex hebdomadas post significationem hanc ad se factam. Qui quidem omnes ita congregati, vel (ut minimum) sex eorum, cum* Supremo, *aut ipsius* Deputato, *Ordine quisque suo, nominabunt novem è dignissimis atque electissimis Equitibus, qui* Supremo *fuerint subditi, vel ei nullatenus adversarii; tres viz. primos,* Duces, Marchiones, *aut* Comites, *vel hiis Conditione Superiores; tres alios* Barones *aut* Baneretos; *tres sanè postremos* Bachalaureos Equites. *Nomenclaturas hasce summus Prælatus, Episcopus scilicet* Wintoniensis, *si præsens fuerit; sin abfuerit,* Cancellarius, Decanus, Scriba, *vel maximè Senex è residentibus conscribet: & conscriptas* Supremo, *vel ejus* Gerenti vices, *quâ oportet reverentiâ commonstrabit. Is verò deinceps illum pronuntiabit electum qui pluribus suffragiis adnitatur, seu quem* Supremus *ipse digniorem, honorabiliorem, utiliorem, Regnique suo & Coronæ magis idoneum esse judicabit. Si quis autem Equitum hujus Ordinis admonitus haud affuerit, nisi justam absentiæ causam habeat, quam & sub Sigillo insignium suorum significatum iverit, adeò justam inquam & rationabilem, ut* Supremus *eam, vel ab eo designatus, approbârit, & talem esse judicârit, ut approbari debeat, pœnas dabit. Nam si minùs justam aut idoneam esse causam,* Supremus *aut* Deputatus *exiliimabit,* Decano *ac Collegio persolvat viginti solidos legalis monetæ, quos in celebrationes pro defuncto oportebit impendi. Itaque cùm proximè venerit ad Concilium, ibidem in medio cœtu coram* Supremo *procumbet, donec per* Supremum *aut* Deputatum, *& reliquum omne* Sodalitium *reconciliatus fuerit.*

XX. *Quando post mortem alicujus istorum* Equitum *alter in defuncti locum surrogatur, è vestigio qui eligitur ornatu* Subfibuli *decorabitur, in planum argumentum quòd debinc illius* Ordinis Equestris *sit unus habendus. Deindè cùm ad id facta Commissio in Concilio* Windesori *lecta fuerit, coram* Supremo, *vel ipsius* vicem gerente, *cæterisque eâ de causâ congregatis,* Trabea *cum* Humerali *inferetur. Mox ipse deducetur medius duobus* Equitibus *aliis ejusdem Ordinis, quos* Officiales *antecedent, & alii Nobiles atque obsequiosi stipabunt,* Trabeam *autem gestabit ante eum* Commilitonum *unus, vel* Garterus Rex Armorum, *donec veniat ad locum sedis occupandæ. Infra quam accepto Juramento, indutus Trabeâ revertetur ad Concilium, ubi de manu* Supremi, *vel ejus* Deputati, Torque *coornabitur. Sicque pleno insignitus habitu cum cæteris incedet, sedebit, stabit.*

Ceterùm magni Principes externi *benè poterunt (uti jam ante consueverunt compendii causâ) amicum*

amictum integrum intra concilium indui. Quod si quis ante moriatur quàm habitum hunc acceperit, minimè fundatorum unus denominabitur, eo quod plenam status sui possessionem haud obtinuerat. Habebit autem Missarum *medietatem, quia* Subligaris *ornamentum ante susceperat, & nihil suprà. Electus verò,* Subligaculoq; *donatus (quod in se est) festinabit ad locum, ut in sedem sibi debitam introducatur. Si intra annum minùs advenerit, & in Regno manserit, nec excusationem aliquam condignam, & à* Supremo *vel ejus* Deputato, *probandam habuerit: ejus electio prædicta non valebit, sed irrita manebit; &* Supremus *aut ab eo* designatus *cum reliquo* Commilitonum *cœtu novam electionem inchoabit. Quapropter vexillum, ensis, & Galea, cum appendicibus ejus, ut priùs electi, non appendentur Sedili suo intra Castellum, usq; dum eò venerit, ea propter quòd si non advenerit, Ornamenta prædicta tanquam non citra dedecus haud deponantur, sed extra chorum honestè deponantur, ad utilitatem & emolumentum Ordinis & Collegii remansura.*

XXI. Exteri *quiq;, ad præclaram hanc* Societatem *admissi, certiores inde fieri debent per* Supremi *literas, quæ festinanter ad eos dirigentur, cum statutis sub Sigillo communi Ordinis,* Supremi *nimirum impensis, ut multùm intra quatuor menses ab electione certi fiant, ut iidem* Principes *perlectis illisce literis deliberare queant, Ordinem illum nec ne suscipere libeat, aut expediat, nisi forsan idem* Supremus, *intereà temporis, per res alioqui graves atq; arduas impedimentum habeat. Tunc enim poterit istam electionis hujus significationem in aliud tempus ex sententiâ prorogare. At ubi significatio certa facta, & ei ad quem missa fuerit grata atq; accepta intelligitur; ibi* Supremus, *per* Oratores *suos, amictum integrum cum* Subligari *&* Torque *destinabit ad eundem. Ipsi verò sic electi & donati, cujuscunq; Conditionis status aut honoris extiterint, intra septem menses postquàm præfata susceperint insignia, & illud ipsum quod agitur sibi perquàm gratum fore significatum iverint,* Procuratorem *remittent idoneum, Majestati sive honori sui Domini benè respondentem, ut debitam eidem suo Domino sedem præoccupet, eiq; possidere incipiat. Præfixum est sanè ut Eques omninò sit irreprehensus, nec illaudatus, qui* Trabeam *secum afferet ostream cerulei Coloris, à Domino suo cum* Vexillo, Ense, Galeâ, *& appendicibus, ut suis in locis intra Collegium quamdiu Dominus ille suus superstes fuerit, honorifice remaneant.* Trabea *vero sic allata quando vice Domini sui in sedem illius est introducendus, per* Supremum, *aut ab eo designatum, in brachium illi dexterum imponetur: Inde per duos Equites ejusdem Ordinis ab hostio Concilii deducetur, ad sedile Domini, infra quod persistens, nomine præfati sui Domini, Sacramento vinciatur & paulo mox in sedem illam introducetur, in qua sedens, stans, aut procumbens quanto tempore divina celebrantur,* Trabeam *illam super eâdem dexterâ gestabit. Quam nunquam gestare debet, nec ullum in concilio suffragium conferet, aut absente Domino suo illùc introibit. Sin autem intra septem hos menses* Procuratorem *suum non miserit (ut præfinitum est) neque sufficientem excusationem* Supremo, *illiusve* Deputato, *satis acceptabilem habeat: tunc illius electio præmissa evacuabitur; nisi forsan Eques ille præ magnis arduisq; rebus aliis irretitus esse comprobetur. In hoc enim articulo, intra unum adhuc mensem post, ad* Supremum, *aut ab eo* designatum, *excusationem emittere licebit. Sin itaque talia causari posset impedimenta quæ* Supremus *aut ab eo* Deputatus *honesta, laudabilia, necessariâve judicabit, quatuor ultra Mensium mora concedi poterit. Intra quos si minùs advenerit, ejus vicis electio omninò vacabit. Cæterùm hic est animadvertendum quòd iste favor est* Extraneis *exhibendus, qui non possunt ipsi adventare, sed necesse habent* Procuratores *suos mittere, ut sedes ipsorum vice possideant. Idque inprimis est eâ de causâ constitutum, ut* Missarum *&* Orationum *aliarum, quæ defunctis Ordinantur, plenè participes evadant. Mediâ nàmq; parte privarentur, si non ante mortem suam in suas sedes introducti forent. Sed nec extranei solùm eo privilegio congaudebunt, verum illi etiam qui dùm eliguntur extra Regnum sunt Regis jussu belligerantes, aliisve negotiis intenti: Hii quantum ad sedis suæ possessionem captandam, simile cum extraneis privilegium vendicabunt.*

XXII. *Si quis* Ducum, Marchionum, Comitum, Vicecomitum, Baronum, (a) Barenetorum, *aut* Bacchalaureorum *hujus Ordinis, obierit, qui succedet ei, cujusvis harum Conditionum extiterit, eam duntaxat sedem obtinebit, quam Prædecessor suus antè possederat, nec demutabit illam citra peculiarem* Supremi *concessionem, nisi forsan* Imperatorum *aut* Regum *aliquis, vel* Princeps Regni *fuerit, quorum unusquisq; juxta sublimitatem suam, sedem* Supremo *proximam accipiet. Quo pacto* Dux *aut Comes interim in sedem* Bacchalaurei *reponi poterit, atq; è diverso; ad Argumentum manifestum formæ per primores ibi fundatores inchoatæ sinceritèr observatæ.*

XXIII. *Et si quando sedes ulla vacârit,* Supremus *benè poterit ad eam quemlibet horum Equitum ex arbitrio promovere, superior autem esse debet eâ sede, quàm ante tenuerat. Nimirum semel in vitâ suâ poterit* Supremus *generalem omnium sedium translationem ex sententiâ perficere, solis* Cæsarum, Regum, Principum, *&* Ducum *sedibus exceptis, quæ permanebunt immutabiles; nisi fortasiè superius ulli sedile contingat. In eâ profectò translatione generali, longitudo durationis in hoc Ordine, decus ac claritudo gestorum, laus Equitum, & præstantia meritorum perpendi ac considerari debet, ut bonos virtuti respondeat. Omnes autem* Equites *isti quoties* Trabeis *ornati sedebunt, stabunt, aut simul incedent, ordinem illum observabunt, quem per sedes suas in choro tenent, neq; tamen generis aut nobilitatis rationem ullam habebunt, nisi quatenus ante monstratum est.*

XXIV. Equites *singuli, quando ad ordinem hunc illustrem admittentur, certam pecuniæ summam Collegio numerabunt, in usum* Canonicorum *Deo servientium &* pauperculorum Mi-

(a) Bannerettorum.

litum, *ibi commorantium*; Supremus *certè quadraginta Marcas legalis monetæ* Angliæ, Rex externus, *viginti Libras*; Princeps, *viginti marcas*; Dux, *decem libras*; Marchio, *octo libras, sex solidos, & octo denarios*; Comes, *decem Marcas*; Vicecomes, *quinq; Libras, sedecim solidos, & octo denarios*, Baro *seu* b) Baronettus, *quinq; Libras*, Bachalaureus Eques, *quinque marcas. Eleemosynæ verò hujus Statutum esto perpetuum.* Vexilla *sinè*, Ensis, & Galeæ, *cum annexis non antè propendebunt in locis suis, quàm præfixas, suam quisque pro status honore summas persolverint. Quod ad Externos attinet, pro hiis* Supremus *respondere constituit. Et hæc munera atq; Eleemosynæ propter id ita conceduntur, ut* Eques *unusquisq; qui deveniet in hunc Ordinem tantò dignior inveniatur, ut qui titulo, nomine, ac privilegio* Fundatorum *hujus Ordinis exornetur.*

XXV. Eques *unusquisq; istius Ordinis, intra annum primum sedis acceptæ, faciet post tergum ubi sedem habet, laminam cujus voluerit metalli, in quâ cum scuto ac ceteris annexis sua compingentur insignia: Et omnes deinceps successori similiter efficient, nisi quòd sua lamina curtior & minutior esse debet, quàm quæ primorum* Fundatorum; *exterorum laminis cum rebus aliis istiusmodi duntaxat exceptis, quæ, quales ac quantæ voluerint, fieri poterunt.*

XXVI. *Nullus horum* Sodalium *per* Procuratorem *est admittendus atq; in sedem introducendus, nisi duntaxat* Extraneus, *qui nequit ipse interesse, vel qui negotiis Regiis occupatus ac retentus fuerit, aut cui deniq;* Supremus *id vel perceperit vel permiserit, uti prætactum est.*

XXVII. *Unusquisq; in ingressu suo fidelitèr & sub juramento promittet se velle conservare hos Articulos qui sequuntur.*

Primùm, jurabit quòd quamdiù vixerit, & istius Ordinis unus esse perduraverit, pro viribus adjuvabit Supremi *& sustentabit honorem, jurabitur, & querelas ejus omninò defendet & prosequetur.*

Deindè quòd omni conatu hunc Ordinem, in quem ascitus est, juvare, augere, atque ornare parabit. Si; aliquid contra tentatum, aut excogitatum iri senserit, pro virili resistet & defendet.

Preterea singula Statuta, & Statutorum Articulos fidelitèr adimplebit. Pro hiis inquam omnibus sinceritèr explendis generale juramentum in admissione suâ præstabit, per sacrosancta Evangelia, Supremo *vel ejus* gerenti vicem, *quod etiam tàm benè sit observaturus quòd si punctim atq; articulatim tàm sibi perlegerentur, & juramento quidem tanget atq; exosculabitur oblatam sibi crucem.*

Quo facto in hunc modum electus Eques *prænobile subligar perquam reverenter accipiet, quod in sinistram ejus Tybiam* Supremus, *aut ab eo designatus inducet, ista verba dicens,* Domine, amicissimi Socii hujus Ordinis a Subligaculo nominati te nunc in amicum sibi fratrem, ac collegam, admiserunt. In cujus rei fidele signaculum, hoc & tibi Subligar impartiunt ac condonant, quod det Deus ut meritò suscipiens, ritè conteras, ad Dei gloriam, ad honorem præclari hujus Ordinis & tui.

XXVIII. *Quod si* Supremus *Regnum exierit, aut aliâ de causâ nequeat interesse, quatenus hoc ipsum ipse perficiat, duos aut eo plures hujus Ordinis Equites sufficere benè poterit: quibus plenam in istiusmodi introductione sui potestatem atq; authoritatem committat, ut eam suo nomine exercerent.*

XXIX. *Commune Sigillum paritèr ac signaculum Ordinis insignibus exornata fieri debent, & in custodiâ Cancellarii Ordinis, vel ejus Equitis ac Commilitonis, quem* Supremus *nominare voluerit remanebunt. Si verò qui Custos est assignatus viginti Milliaria vel eo ampliùs abierit à* Supremo *quâcunq; de causâ, Sigilla* Supremo *tradet, ante recessum, vel ejusmodi Commilitoni aliive personæ, quam* Supremus *ad id eodem tempore designabit; eam ob rem certe, quo Sigilla prædicta minùs absint à* Supremo, *quamdiù manet intra Regnum. Sin foris esse contigerit, signaculum solum sufficiet interim ad acta quæq; consignanda, & degerenda, quæ spectabunt ad hunc Ordinem.*

XXX. Commilitones *hujus Ordinis semper imposterum apud se* Statuta *retinebunt, collata priùs cum Originali per* Scribam *Ordinis, & Communi Sigillo signata. Si verò quis eorum insignia quævis appingi disponiq; voluerit in eo Libello,* Regi Armorum *reddetur, ut is quod suâ interest aptè ritèq; perficiat. Originale quoq; in Ærario Collegii perpetuò remansurum Sigillo communi consignabitur.*

XXXI. *Post obitum cujusq; Sociorum hujus Ordinis, hæredes ex asse (quos & Executores appellant) obligabuntur ad reportanda intra tres menses Statuta præsentis Ordinis, quæ donata sunt ei per* Supremum *aut ipsius impendio. Reportabuntur autem ad* Decanum *Collegii vel* Scribam, *aut alioqui præcipuum ejus loci Officialem.*

XXXII. *Nullus* Eques *hujus Ordinis Divo* Georgio *dedicati* Supremi *sui Regnum, terram, aut Dominium exibit, nisi priùs exeundi impetratâ copiâ. Quapropter unanimi consensu decretum est, quòd si gerendarum rerum illustrium iter ullum appetat, unde Militaris honor & Equestris gloria sperari possit,* Supremus, *ex suâ gratiâ singulariq; favore, quem erga* Commilitones *hujus Ordinis in pectore semper habebit, illos istiusmodi stratagemmatis, honorificisq; negotiis aliis viris omnibus anteponet.*

XXXIII. *Horum* Equitum *nemo contra ullum suum* Commilitonem *Arma induet, nisi fortasse propugnandum* Supremi *jus impendeat, aut ipsius alioqui justam causam defendi oporteat. Sin autem acciderit aliquem hujus Ordinis à quoquo Principe, seu Duce, teneri, & Adversarius illius alium ejusdem Ordinis ad parem sui defensionem habere postea desideret: is qui posterior exoptatur, omninò sic retineri detrectabit, nec aliam excusationem obtendet, quàm quòd collega suus antèà retentus in adversâ parte depugnet. Horum etiam unusquisq; quando incipit ab aliquo teneri, hâc solummodò conditione*

(b) Bannerettus.

ditione se teneri velle promittet, si nullus Commilitonum *anteà retentus in adversariâ parte fuerit, aliaqui se in eo vinculo minimè permansurum. Sin anteà retentus fuerit quàm impedimentum hujusmodi resciverit, posteà tamen ubi primùm intellexerit, unum aut alterum è Sociis suis in adversâ parte militare, & ad militandum ibi priùs obvinctum, proponet excusationem suam apud eum Dominum qui se conduxerat quòd ultrà ipsi militare non potuerit, ejusve causam defendere.*

XXXIV. *Omnes facultates* Equitibus *concessæ & Regnum exeant, ad inquirendum honorem, & gloriam procurandam, omnes Literæ, mandata, cæteraq; scripta ad hunc Ordinem attinentia, altero Sigillorum imperpetuum consignari debent.*

XXXV. *Si quis horum* Commilitonum, *pietate ac Religione permotus, sedem sibi deligere volet intra Castellum* Windesori, *Domus in quâ poterit immorari signabitur à* Supremo; *victus autem illius suis sumptibus atq; impensis propriis providebitur.*

XXXVI. *Si quisquam* Eques *alius quàm sit hujus Ordinis causâ Devotionis animum habuerit ibi commorandi, sedes ex arbitrio* Supremi *eidem assignabitur, consensu Commilitonum antecedente.*

XXXVII. *Si quis horum* Equitum, *aut alius quisquam, terras, hæreditates, redditus, aut proventus impartire, donarêve volet, ut precum illarum quæ dicuntur ibidem particeps habeatur: ejus nomen in* Registrum *ascribetur, & Canonici cæteriq;* Ministri *cum* Militibus pauperculis, *semper in futurum pro eo deprecabuntur.* Decanus *autem aut* Custos *&* Canonici *nunquam Collegio novum pondus aut curam imponent, citra* Supremi *consensum, aut ab ipso designati, & ceterorum* Commilitonum *in susceptio tentóq; manifesto Concilio.*

XXXVIII. *Denique, quò Discrimen* Equitum *hujus Ordinis, à cæteris qui non sunt ejusdem, tantò clariùs eluceat:* Supremus, *ex consensu* Commilitonum *omnium, vult, Ordinat, & instituit, ut abhinc imperpetuum, quicunq; fuerit* Eques *istius Ordinis circum cervicem ut atur aureo Torque triginta unciarum Trojani Ponderis, nihil suprà. Conficietur autem ille* Torques *è laminis in formam* Subligaris, *una laminarum duas intùs rosas habebit, alteram rubram, superiorem album, altera inferiorem album, & superiorem rubram. In fine verò* Torquis *illius pendebit Imago Divi* Georgii. *Quo* Supremus *& omnes Ordinis hujus* Equites *uti tenebuntur, præsertim in maximis & præcipuis Anni solennitatibus. Aliis autem diebus* Cathenula *utantur* Aurea, *quæ Divi* Georgii *gestabit imaginem in fine: nisi geratur bellum, aut gerendum ingruat, ægritudo urgeat, aut longum iter ineundum sit. Tunc etenim sufficiat uti* Fibulâ sericâ, *quæ Divi* Georgii *duntaxat imaginem in fine pendulam habebit. Si vero* Torques *resarciendus sit, tradi poterit aurifici, ut emendetur. Nec debet ille* Torques *stipari gemmis aut ditari, nisi forsan id Imagini fiat, quæ benè poterit, ex arbitratu illius Equitis, gemmis aut aliter exornari. Cavendum autem ne Torques hujusmodi vendatur, mutuò tradatur, aut alienetur ullo modo, seu donetur, ex ullâ causâ vel necessitudine, sed ad cohonestamentum* Ordinis *&* Equitis *Ordinati conservari debet.*

Here follow the same Statutes as they were put into English shortly after their Establishment; wherein some of the Articles are transposed, and the 18. Article wholly changed. But in all the Copies of them given forth since the beginning of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, King *Henry*'s Title of *Supream head of the Church of* England *in Earth under Christ*, is omitted, and some few words (noted with an Asterisk) altered to those inserted at the foot of the Page, whither the Asterisk directs.

The Statutes and Ordinances of the most Noble Ordre of Saint *George*, named the *Gartier*, Reformed, explained, declared, and renewed by the moost High, moste excellent, and moofte puissant Prince *Henry* the viii. by the Grace of God Kyng of *England* and of *Fraunce*, Defensor of the Faith, Lorde of *Irland*, *&c.*

Whereas the moost famous, moost happiest, and victorious Prynce, Edwarde, the thirde of that name, his Noble Progenitour sometyme Kyng of England and of Fraunce, and Lorde of Irland &c. To th' onnoure of almighti God, and of the blessed and immaculate Virgyn Marie, and the blessid Martir Sainte George, Patron of the right noble Roialme of England; and of Saynt Edwarde, Kyng and Confessour; To the exaltation of the holy Faith Catholique Ordeyned, Established, created, and founded, within the Castel of Wyndesore, a company of xxvi. Noble and Worthi Knyghtes, for to be of the said moost Noble Ordre of Saynt George, named the Gartier, and for the honorable continuance, augmentation, and intertenyng of the same;

The

The said moost victorious Kyng did devyse and institute divers honorable Estatuts, and laudable Ordinances for to be observed and kept by the coverethern and confreres Knightes and Companyons of the said moost Noble Order; amonge the which Estatutis been certeyne doubtis and ambiguities, which to be more playnly declared, interpreted, and extended, it is thought right necessary and expedient. And that certeyne other new Ordinances and Articles be to the said Statutes added and adjoyned. Wherefore the said moost excellent and victorious Prynce Henry the viii. Kynge of England and of France Defensor of the Faith and Lord of Irland, and Soveraigne of the said moost Noble Order, and for the right singular love, good zeal, *ardent and intier affection, that his royall Majestie hath and bearith to the said moost Noble Order, and to the estate of Chivalrie and Knyghthod: And for the honorable contynuance and encreasing of the same: And also at the humble requeste and instante desire of the Knyghts and Companyons of the said Noble Order, And by their advyse, councell, and assent, the xxiii. day of April, in the yeer of grace M.D.XXII. and of his moost noble reign the viii. yere, made interpretacion and declaracion of the Obscurities, doubtis, and ambiguities of the said Estatutes, Ordinances, Interpretacions, declaracions, reformacions, with their additions aforesaid, after the trew intencion of them, shall be from hensforth observed, kept, and ensued, by the Soverayne and the Knyghtes Confreres and Companyons of the said Noble Order, in manner and fourme followyng.

I. Firste, It is Ordeined and accorded, that the Kyng, and his Heires and Successors Kyngs of England, shall be for evermore Soverayne of the saide moost Noble Order, and amiable Companye of Saynt George, named the Gartier, to the which Soverayn, and to his Heires and Successours shall appertaine the declaracion, solucion, determinacion, interpretacion, Reformacion, and disposicion of all causes concernyng and towchyng any thyng of obscuritie or dowbte conteyned in the Statutes of the said moost Noble Order.

II. Item, it is accorded that none shall be elected and chosen for to be Felow or Companion of the said moost Noble Order, excepte that he be a Gentilman of blood, and that he be a Knyghte, and without reproche. And that the Knyghtes of the said Noble Order from hensforth shall not name any person in their Election to be Felow or Companyon of the said Noble Order, in whome thei shall thynke or extiem in their conscience to have spotte of Reproche. And as towchyng the declaration of a Gentilman of blode, it is declared and determined, that he shall be descended of three decentis of Noblesse, that is to say, of name and of armes, bothe of his Father's side, and also of his Mother's side, and as towchyng or concernyng any maner of reproche, forasmoche as there be divers and many sundri poynts of reproche, there shall be here declared but three poynts of them only, as is declared in manner and fourme folowyng.

The first poynt of Reproche ys, that if any Knyght, (as God defende) be convayncuned, or attaynted of errour against the Cristen Faith Catholique, or had for any suche Offence suffred any payne or punicion publique.

The second poynt of Reproche is, that if any Knyght (as God defende) had bene arrayned, convicted, or attainted of High Treason.

The third poynt of Reproache is, that if any Knyght departe, or flee away from bataple, or jeuznei, beyng with his Soverayne Lord, his Lieutenant or Deputie, or other Capetayne, habyng the Kyng's power Royal and auctorities; and whereas Banners, Estandats, or Pennons habe bene displaied, and that thei preceded to fight, he that then reniously and cowardly flieth or departith away from thens, ought to be estiemed and judged to habe reproche, and neber worthi to be electe Knyght, or Felow of the said Company. And if it fortune, that any Knyght of the said Company (as God forbidde) do commytte any suche reproche, that then he shall be departed and disgraded of the said Order, at the nexte Chapiter ensuyng, if it soo shall please the Soverayne and the Company.

III. Item that every yere, upon the bigill of Saynt George, that is to say, the xxii. day of the moneth of April, on what day soeber it fall on, and though no serbice of Saint George be celebrate or done, all the Knyghtis of the said Company, beyng in any place or places of their liberties, in what places soeber it be, shall be bounde for to were the hole habit of the said Order. That is to wit, Robe, Mantell, Hudde, and Coller, from the owre of the first Ebensonge at the owre of tierce, that is, at three of the Cloche at afternone, untill the said Ebensonge and other debyne serbice, souper, and boydance, be done and accomplished; And lykewyse on the morrow, on Saynt George's day at mattens, procession, * mass, and the seconde Ebensonge, and all the said day, untyll that souper and boydance be done, as ys aforesaid.

IV. Item, that if for any causes, it shoulde please the said Soverayn to prorroge the said Feast and solemnytie of Saynt George, or that the said Feast shuld be prolonged and prorroged, to another day, that all the Knightis of the said Order, that shall be within the Realme of Englande, shall gybe their attendance the eben and the day of Saynt George, on the parson of of the said Soverayne, and shall synde themselfes in his company, in what place soeber he be within

* Morning Service.

the

the said Realme of England; and they so gyveyng their attendance upon his said parsone, the saide even and day, shall observe and keye the serbyce of Saynte George, if the Ordenance and commaundement of holye Church doth suffre and permit it. And if th' ordenaunce of the Church doth not permitt it, in thio behalfe, they be bounde to tary with the Soverayne, and heare such serbyce as shall be than limited and ordened bi the holy Churche to be done and celebrated the said even and day of Saynt George, in obserbyng and keepyng, durying the said daies, of all other ceremonies, aswell in goyng to the Chapter upon the said even, before Evensong at afternone, and the said day of Saynt George at afternone, before the laste Evensong; As also in wereyng their hole habit, and every Knyght keyng in his owne Stall, in keepyng the Devine Serbyce from the tyme of the first Evensonge of the said even, matens, and * Masse, unto the last Evensong of the said day, and the morow after ensuyng, before the * Masse of Requiem, thei shall take their Mantells, upon suche Gownes as shall please them, and shall enter into the Chapter, if there be eny election or other great affaires, before the said * Mass of Requiem in usyng such Ceremonyes to this accustomed, as though they were present in the said Castell of Wyndesore. And in case that the said Soverayne be come and entred into the said Chapiter, and that some of the seid Felows of the said Order be not entred, or come with hym and shulde tary behynde, in case they that habe not gyben and done dew attendance upon hym, shall abide withoute the dores of the said Chapiter, withoute entryng in to it, durying all the tyme that the said Soverayne and other Knyghtes shall be in the said Chapiter for that tyme. And if so be that eny of the abobenamed Knyghtes come to late to the first Evensong of the said even, or Mattens, * Masse, or laste Evensong, the saide day of Saynt George, he shall habe for penance, that durying the tyme and space of suche devyne serbyce, he shall kneele or stande before his Stall, in the Place of the Aueresters; and if he come not to gyve attendance upon the parson of the said Soverayne, the sayd Even and day of Saynt George, as is aforesaid; And that he habe no lycence or other Reasonable excuse, and that it be acceptable to the said Soverayne for his absence in this case; the said Knyght, that soo shall habe done, for his penance, shall not come in his Stall at the next Feast ensuyng in the presence of the Soverayne, nor in his said Stall in the said College of Wyndesore. And farthermore shall pay xl. for to be conberted and bestowed to the use of the Ornamentes of the said Collage.

V. Item if it chaunsed that any of the Knyghtes of the said Order, by leabe or licens or otherwise, were in his howse or in any other place, at his libertie and fraunchise, the said even and day of Saynt George, he shall be bound to cause to be prepared a Capitall Stall, in the Church or Chappel, in the which he shall heare devine Serbice. In the Capitall Stall shall be sett and elebated the Order of Saint George, named the Garter, beyng within a Garter; and his propre arms within the Garter, also shall be set at a Stall, that shall be asmoche in distance, after the proportion and quantite of the said Church or Chapell, from the Stall of the said Soverayn, as is his Stall in the Castell of Wyndesore, and shall were his said habit hole, and shall heare the devyne serbice, suche as by the holy Church is ordened and limited for the said day, aswell the first evensong, Mattens, * Mass, as the latter evensonge. In doyng by hym first Reberence to the Aulter in the honor of God, and after to the Stall where is fixed or sett up the Armes of the said Order, as well and as often at his comyng in as at his goyng owte of the said Church or Chapell; And also as often as he shall passe before the said Armes, allway excepte the Emperours, Kynges, Princes, Electors, The which may in this case for ordeyne their Seates and Stalles as yt shall seme them beast, and at their pleasure.

VI. Item if yt were so that withoute any prorogacion the said Feast and Solemnyte of Saynt George were kept and celebrated the said day and Even of Saynt George, in the said Castell of Wyndesore, and if it were not the pleasure of the seid Soverayne for to be present, or that conveniently he may not be there in parson, the said day and Feast, at his said Castell of Wyndesore, That in this case, in what place that his pleasure shall be keyng within this his Realme of England, his Majestie may appoynte and commaunde suche Knyghtes of the seid Order, as best shall seme hym, there for to keye Company and geve attendance upon the parson, and to keye all and lyke Ceremonyes as though they were at the said Castell of Wyndesore; And they doyng the thynges abobesaid shall be excused for their absence of the Feast of Saynt George holden at the said Castell of Wyndesore for that yere.

VII. Item, it is agreed, that if the Soverayne cannot be at Saynt George's Feast, that he shall make his Deputy, by his Letters, for to keye the Chapter upon Saynt George's Even, at the owre of tierce, the which is at thyee of the Clocke at after none, and on Saynt George's day for to keye the said Feast, at the costes of the said Soverayne, for the space abobesaid, withoute any new Ordenance to be made, havyng power to correcte and redresse all poyntes of the said Chapter, as for then shall seme necessary.

VIII. Item, that every one on Saynt Georges Even, that is to wit, the xxii. day of April, a gatherynge together shall be made of all the Knightes of Saynt George within the Castell of Wyndesore, That is to wit, of all

* Divine Service, * Divine Service, * Divine Service.

* Divine Service.

all them that shall be within this Realme, of Englande, or withoute, that conveniently may come. And there they shall have the serbice of Sayne George, and also shall were their hole habit of the said Order, during the seid serbyce, being ordinarily in theyre Stalls; And every of them shall have his Banner, Sworde, with his Helme, and Creste above his Stall, the whiche during his lyfe shall abyde in the said Chappel, for his honor, and in signe and knowledge, that he beres them in defence of holy Churche, as the Order of knyghthood requireth. But in case that the seid Feast of Sayne George happen to fall within xv. dayes after the Feast of Easter, or upon any Fyshe-daye, or Fastyng day, then it shall be prorogeed and prolonged at the Soverayne's pleasure, as above is seid, if so be that the day of the seid Feast be not assigned ne ordeynd to be kepte the xxiv. xxv. xxvi. nor the last day of April, nor upon the sowre firste dayes of May, for by cause of the impediment or let of devyne serbyce ordeyned by holy Churche for the double Feastes of Sayne Marke, Philipp and Jacob, and the Invention of the Holy Crosse of our Lord Jesu Chryste, nor at suche dayes as shall fall the Assencion, or the Feast of Penthecoste, or any other Feaste of Solempnite, as is ordeyned in holy Churche, whereby the syrst or seconde Ebensonge by suche Prorogacions myght be letted and disturbed.

IX. Item that all the Knyghtis of the said Order shall come yerely in the said place of the said Castell of Wyndesore on Sayne George's Even at th'owre of tierce, the whiche is at thyee of the Clocke at afternoone, as it is abovesaid. And if thei come not at the tyme assigned without habyng a juste and reasonable excuse, that may be acceptable to the said Soverayne or to his Deputie, or otherwyse pardoned by the seid Soverayne of their absence by special Letters of excuse, in the whiche Letters theyr names and causes shall be wrytten, or otherwyse shall have their pennance after th'ordenance and agreement of the said Chaptre. And the said Ordenance is suche that they shall not entre into the Chaptre for that tyme, but shall byde without the dore. And shall have no voyce in any thynge that is done in the said Chaptre, at that tyme alonly. And if they come not to Ebensonge, before the begynnyng of the said Ebensonge, they shall not enter into their Stalles but shall byde belowe afore the said Stallis in the Queristers places during the said Ebensonge. And like pennance is ordeyned for them that come not to the high * masse tetyme and at Ebensonge on Sayne George's daye. And if there be any that come not to the Feaste, and have not a reasonable excuse towarde the Soverayne or his Deputye, as it is above declared, his pennance shall bee that he shall not enter within his Stall the next Feast after, but shall byde below as it is said at the first Ebensong, and shall goo in the procession before all the * three Crosses. And shall sit below as afore is said all the * mass tyme untyl the Offryng. And he shall offre laste. And after his penance so done, incontinent he shall come before the Soverayne's Stall or his Deputie, and there he shall aske pardon. And after that the Soverayne or his Deputie shall commaunde hym to goe unto his Stall in his syrst estate, and if he come not at the seconde Feaste, and be dwellyng within the Realm, without habing any excusation alowable to the Soverayne or to his Deputie, as is abovesaid, he shall not entre in his Stall from thensforth, until the tyme that he have yeven and offered a Jewell unto Sayne George's Aultar within the said Chappell of the valew of xx markes of Syluer of Troye, and fro thens forward he shall double every yere the Penaltie, unto the tyme he be reconciled.

X. Item it is agreed, that if any Knyght of the said Companye be found in apperte withoute his Garter, That he pay anon after that the chalenge bee made to hym by any of the five Officers of th' Order or of the Warden of the seid College, a marke of Money. Excepte he be voted for to ryde, that then it shall suffice to were under his bote a blew Ribande of Syluer, in signyfying of the Garter, and also previded that no Knyght of the said Order from henceforthe do entre into the Chaptre without his Garter upon the payne abovesaid. And whosoever of the said Officers or Warden shall make the first chalenge shall have the penaltye for his labor.

XI. Item it is agreed, that the Knyghtis of the Order of St. George, alwey and as often as they shall were theyr mantels, they shall goo before there Soverayne every of them with his Felow, that is for aneynst him, ordinarily as they be sett in their Stalles: And if it shoulde happen that any of them were not there present, his felow for aneynst hym shall goo alone. The whiche Order shall be kepte and observed as well in goyng in procession as ellis where in other places. But at the Offryng the Soverayn or his Deputie shall goo before all the Company, and the ordinarie Officers of the said Order shall goo as thei have bene accustomed, when any procession shall be done in the Chapter, Chappel, or ellis where. And for the ordre of the said Knightis for to sitt at the Table, for to take their refection by it, at Diner at or Souper, they shall sit all along on one side after ther Stalls, and not after their state, except Children and Bretherne of Kinges, Princes, and Dukes that be Strangers, the which shell kepe their places and rowes after their estate; and at their voiding and going out shall abide and goo in order so as ther sat at the Table.

XII. Item it is agreed, that every one of them, at the Castell of Windesore on the morow after the Feast of Sayne George,

* Morning Service.

* Queristers. * Service.

before

before the departyng of the Companyp, that the said Knyghtes, upon suche Gownes as shall please them at the Chapter dore, shall take their Mantels and shall goo into the said Chaptre, and after that shall goo and here a * mass of Requiem, the which shall be solempnely songe for the souls of all the Felowes of the said Order, which be departed and deceassed, and for all Christen soulles, and that all the Companyp be there present, without eny of them be lett bi a reasonable cause, or habe lysence of the Soberayne or his Deputie before the departyng. And when it happens that for any cause of the bodyng of eny of the said Felowship, there shall bee certayne Banners, Swordis, Helmets, and Crestes, the whiche ought to be offered up before the offeryng of eny Syber; the sayd Hachements ought to be offered, syrst the Banner, by two of the said Felowship suche as the Soberayne or his Deputie shall appoynte or name, and after that the Swoorde shall be offered by two other, and likewise his Helmet and Crest by two other Knyghtes of the said Order, assigned by the Soberayne or his Deputie, and if any Knyght of the said Order shuld decease the yere afore, then every Knyght beyng in the said Castell of Wyndesore, at the said * mass of Requiem, shall offer a Taper armed with a litte Scuchion of the arms of the Knyght departed. And if there were more then one deceassed, that then be made for every of them a Scuchion of Arms and a grote sett nye to the light of the tapre, the which Scuchions and tapers shall be made at the coste and charge of the Knyghtes of the said Order.

XIII. Item, it is agreed, that all straungers, that shall be electe Felows of the said Order, shall be certifyed by Letters of the Soberayne of their election. The which letters of Certification, with the Statutes of the said Order, under the common Seal shall be sente unto them at the coste and charges of the said Soberayne, in all diligence, and at the sardest thei shall bee certifyed of this within foure moneths after the sayd Election, to th'ende that the said Electe may advyse them by the said Statutis, if they will receyve the sayd Order, or no. But if the said Soberayne habe greate and high lettes and busynes, that then he may deferre the certification of the said Election at his good pleasure, unto tyme of opportunite and convenient. After that the Certification habe byn delibered, and that the Soberayn shall be certefied, that the said Electe will receyve the said Order; Then the Soberayne shall sende unto the said Electe, by his Ambassadours, his hole habit, with the Garter and Coller. And that all suche straungers, of what estate, dignytie, or condicion that thei be of, shall sende within vii. monethes after the reception of the said Gartier, Coller and Habit, and that he habe certified the Soberayn to habe resayed those thyngs, a sufficient Deputie or attorney after th'estate of his Lorde and Maister, so be that he be a Knyght without Reproche, to be stalled in his place, the whiche shall bryng with hym a Mantell of blew Velbett of the order of that which he shall send hym, and also his Banner, Swoorde, Helme, and Crest, for to be and abide within the said College duryng his lyff. And that the Mantell in the tyme that the said Deputie or Attorney shall be stalled, by the said Soberayn or his Deputie, put upon his right arme for to holde the said mantyll upon his arme, and shall bee accompanyed and ledde by two of the Knyghtes of the said Order, from the dore of the Chaptre unto the stall, and there bopeng shall make his othe, and shall bee stalled for and in the name of his said Lorde and Maister, and the said Mantell abobesaid, the sayd Attorney or Deputie shall bere it upon his right arme duryng the dobyne service, beyng sett in the stall of his said Maister and Lorde, without beryng of it at any tyme after. And to habe no manner of voyce in the Chaptre, or to come in it, in th'absence of hym that hath sent hym. And if he send not his said Attorney within vii. monethes abobesaid, without habyng a reasonable excuse which shall bee acceptable to the Soberayne or his Deputie, the election shall be bopde of hym. Except so be that the said Knyght be lett and destorbed bi great affaires. Then he may send his excuse to the said Soberayne, or to his Deputie, within a moneth after, and after his excuse is, as the Soberayne or his Deputie will allowe it or accepte it, that then the sayd Soberayn or his Deputie may gebe on to hym foure moneths more of respite, and if he came not or sent not his Attorney before that the tyme of the foure monethes be synished, that then in this case the election shall be hole bopde from hym for that tyme. And it is to be knowen, that this laboure is done and shewed to the straungers, the which may not well come in their proper parsons, that they myght be stalled by Attourneys. To th'ende that they may be parte takers of the * masses, and all the prayers of the said Order, for they shulde saple of the half if they were not stalled before their deathe. And likewise it is ordened for them that be new chosen and electe of the said Order, beyng in the Kyngs Warres by his commaundement, for to enjoye of the benefytes of the said statutes, to that that shall appertayne allonly to their stallacion.

XIV. Item there is also ordened a Dean and Warden with xii. Canons seculers, the which shall be prists at their entryng in, or ells within a yere nexte folosyng; and also viii. Peticanons, and xiii. Vicars, also prestes at their entryng in, or ells at the gobyng of the next Orders, or at the sardest within a yere after their presentacion. Also xiii. Clerkes, and xiii. Queristers, for to syng

* Divine Service.

* Divine Service.

and

and pray unto God for the prosperity of the Soberayne and all the Knyghtes of the said Order lyvyng, and also for the soules of all the Knyghts of the said Order departed, and for all Crysten soules, and the presentacion of the sayd Cannons shall belonge alwey to the Soberayne of the said Order. And the sayd Canons when any Knyght of the said Order is there present, within the quyer of the seid Chappell, shall sitt in the lowermost seates, where they be wonte to sitt at the Feastes of St. George. And in th' absence of the said Knyghtes the said Canons may sitt in the high seates nexte unto the stalles of the said Knyghtes.

XV. Item there bee ordeynd v. Officers appertaynyng to the said Order, That is to witt, Prelate, Chaunceler, Register, and Kyng of Armes, named Gartier, and an huysher at Armes, named the Blacke Rod. The which shall bee receyved and sworne to be of the Councell of the said Order, the secretes with also their chargies and privileges shall expressely be declared in the Booke of the Ordenaunces of the sayd Officers.

XVI. Item it is also ordeined, that xiii. poore Knightes, that habe not wher witball to lyve, for to habe in that place their lyvyng and sustentation conveniently, for their good prayers in the honor of God and Saynt George, of the whiche the charges and privileges hereafter shall be declared folowyng the Ordynances of the Officers, and of their election is ordeined as of the presentacion of the Canons, so that alwey the Election shall abyde to the said Soberayne. And it is agreed, that the poor Knyghtes shall habe their Mantells of Scarlett, and a scuchion of th' armes of Saynt George withoute a Garter.

XVII. Item it is agreed, that every Knyght of the sayd Company shall leave his Mantyll within the said College, for any sodayne chaunces that myght happen for to kepe, holde, and observe all suche Ordinances, Preceptes, and commaundements, whiche may be advysed in Chaptre by the sayd Soberayne. The whiche Soberayne by the consent and agrement of vi. Knightes of the said Order may, at all tymes and places, at his pleasure, common and make to be kepte Chaptre, for all suche causes, as it shall please to the said Soberayne to name touching the said Order.

XVIII. Item, it is agreed, that if it fortune, that any of the said Company shulde come within ii. myle of the Castell, that he shall goo in, if he may, for the honor of the place, if he be nott hurtyd or lett by some juste cause, and that he take his Mantell before he entre within the said Chappell. And also that he entre not in, but he habe his Mantyll upon hym. And the Canons there beyng present for that tyme shall come to receyve hym, and deberly shall bryng hym into the said Chappell; and if it be in tyme of * Masse, he shall tary and heere * Masse in the honor of God and of St. George; and if it be at alternone, he shall cone in in maner abovesaid: And there shall be said by the Canons De profundis, for all Cristen soules, and there shall offer and retourne unto his stall. And if any of the said Company ride thorowgh the Towne, and wyll not offre as it is agreed, that, upon his obedience for every tyme that he faileth, he shall goo one myle on fote from the said Chappel, unto the said place, in honor of Saynt George; And also for every tyme that he shall so fayle, he shall gyve a grote for his Offrynge. The whiche distaunce, for to com nygh unto the seid Castell, is two myles allonly and no more.

XIX. Item it is accorded, the xxxii. yere of our Soberaign Lorde Kyng Henry the Eight, by the grace of God Kyng of England and of Fraunce, Defenor of the Faith, Lord of Irland, &c. upon Seynt George's day, the xxiii. day of Aprill, at a Chapter holden at the Paleys of Westminster, by the Soberaign and the Companyons of the said Noble Order then there assembled; That as sone as the deth of any of the Company of the faide Order shall be certeynly knowen, every of the rest, beyng no strangiers, shall accordyng to the rates of their Degrees hereafter specified, immediately upon a demaunde to be made for the same by the Register, and the Dean, or one of them, to be by one of them employed in Aulmes deede, as in mendyng of High wayes, or suche other works of charite, as the Kyngs Majestie from tyme to tyme shall lymite and appoynte, the severall somes of Money ensuyng: First the Souberaign viii l. vi s. viii d. A Kyng of another Realme, vi l. xiii s. iv d. The Prince, v l. xvi s. viii d. A Duke, v l. A Marquess, iii l. xv s. An Erle, l s. A Visconte, xli s. viii d. A Baron, xxxiii s. iv d. A Bacheler Knyght, xvi s. viii d. Of all which somes thus to be receyved, the said Dean and Regester, or eyther of them, shall yerely at the Chapiter present his accompte to the Kyngs Majestie with his true and just declaration of the dysbursyng agayne and defrayng of the same. In that cause the partie, whose Porcyon shall apere to be unpayde, shall in the name of a Payne adde unto his former duye another thirde parte of the same, and so for every yere that he shall be behynde, to pay a thredde parte more than he ought pay, if he ought satisfye his ordinary accordyng to the rate before expressed. And if the Dean or Register or any of them shall not at every suche Chapiter present the Certificate of the Receipts and Payments in feurme aforesaid, whereby the same may apere to the Souberayn and Companyons of the Order then present, or at the lest he in whome the default shall rest, shall in the name of a payne contente and pay immediately, to bee employed abowte like pur-

* Divine Service.

pose

pose as afore the some of x^l. for every suche defaulte.

XX. Item it is agreed, that if any of the said Companye die, that the Soberayne or his Deputie after that they shall have certification of his deth, shall be bounde for to send and gyve knowlege by ther Letters to all the Felowship of the said Order beyng within England, for to come and be with the said Soberayne or his Deputie in what place soever it be, where it shall please hym to assigne conveniently within vi. weeks after the certification of the death or decease of the said Knyght. The which alsoo assembled or at the lest vi. with the Soberayne or his Deputie abovesaid, every of them that there shall be present come to the election shall name ix. of the worthiest and sufficient Knyghtes withoute Reproche that he shall knowe subjectes to the said Soberayne or others, so be that they holde no contrary partie or be agaynst hym. That is to witt, three Dukes iii. Marquess, Erles, or of greater estate, iii. Barons, or banerettis, and iii. Bachelers. The whiche denominations the chieff prelate of the said Order shall wryte, That is to witt the Bysshop of Wynchester for the tyme beyng, or in his absence the Chauncelier, or the Dean or Register or the mooste auncient Residencer of the said College in their absence, and the denomination soo done by all, or vi. at the leest, by hym that have written shall bee shewed to the seid Soberayne, or to his Deputie, that then shall chose of them that be named, he that shall have the mooste voyces, and also he that the Soberayne shall extreme to be mooste honorable to the sayde Order, and mooste profitable to his Crowne and to his Realme. And if there be any Knyght of the said Order that doth sayle for to come to the said Election, if he be not lett by a juste cause; and that the said cause of his excuse shewed under his seal of armes be founde by the Soberayne or his Deputie to be juste and reasonable, then his excuse to be accepted and allowed, and that if his cause be not juste, and that he come not to the ceremonies above-named, it is agreed that he shall pay to the Warden of the College for to synge for hym that is departed xx s. sterling, and at his nexte comyng to the Chaptre, he shall be before the Soberayne or his Deputie and the company, and shall knele upon the grounde in the myddes of the Chaptre, untyll the tyme that he be reconciled by the Soberayne or his Deputie, and the said Companye.

XXI. Item it is agreed, that if any Knyght of the said Company shulde departe, and another is chosen and electe, he shall have sone after his election the Garter, in signyfyeng that he is one of the Knyghtes and Felowes of th' Order of the Garter, and his Robe and Hode shall be delivered hym in the Chapter-howse incontinently, after that his Commission hath bene red before the Soberayne or his Deputie and the Company; and after that shall be led by two Knyghtes of the said Order accompanied with the other noble-men, And the Officers of the Order shall also be present, and his Mantell shall be borne before hym by one of the Knyghtis of the said Order, or by the Kyng at Armes of the Order. The which Mantell shall be delyvered to hym for his habit, after that he shall have made his othe before his Stall and not before. And this done he shall retorne unto the Chapter howse, where he shall receyve by the Soberayne or his Deputie, The coler, and soo he shall have the full possession of his habit holely, except great Pryuces straungers, the which may receyve their habit holely within the Chapter howse, as it hath been used and accustomed in tymes past, for the shortenyng of tyme. And if he die before he have receyved hys habit, he shall not be named one of the Founders, seyng that he lacketh to have full possession of his estate. But he shall have the one halfe of the * Masses above-named, for the delyverance of the Garter, and none other thynge above it. And if he soo chosen come not in all good diligence after the recepcion of the said Garter in the said place for to be stalled, and in specyally within the yere of his Election, if he be a Knyght dwellyng within the Realme, and hathe none excuse reasonable, allowable, and acceptable to the said Soberayn or to his Deputie, and the Company, Then the Election shall bee voyde of hym, and the Soberayne or his Deputie and the Company shall goo and make another new election, and neyther the Banner, the Sworde, nor the Helmet, nor Crest of hym so chosen be put upon his Stall within the Castell before his comyng. To th'ende that if he come not, his said Hachementis, as Banner, Sworde, Helmet, be not taken down nor abated, but honestly put oute of the Ouyer, and the reast of other thyngs shall abyde to the profitt and use of the saide Order.

XXII. Item it is agreed, that if any of the Dukes, Marques, Erles, Vizcountes, Barons, Banerettis, or Bachelers die, That he that shall come after, and succede in his place and rome, be Duke, Marques, Erle, Vizcounte, Baron, Banerer, Bacheler, or any of the estates above-named, he shall have the selfe same stalle that his Predecessor had, and shall not chaunge it without he have especiall license or Warrant of the said Soberayne, allweyes all Emperours, Kyngs, and Pryuces be excepted, the which shall keye and holde their Stalles after their estate, and very nexte unto the Soberayne. And then by thys meane a Duke shall take the stall of a Bacheler, and a Bacheler the stall of a Duke, in signe and knowlege of the first Founders.

XXIII. Item, if there be any place or stall voyde, the Soberayn at his pleasure may

* Divine Service.

 advance

advance and translate, by his speciall licence, any Knyght of the said Company, in the said stall, so be it that it be more hyer then the stall that he was in afore. Also the Soberayne onys in his lyffe may, if it please hym, make a general translation of all the states at his pleasure, excepte of Emperours, Kyngs, Prynces, and Dukes. The which allway shall kepe ther places and stalles, if not that they be translated in more hyer rome and stall, in the whiche translacion the long continuance in th' Order, and the prayses, worthynes, and merites of the Knyghtes ought to be considered and remembyrd. The which Knyghtes from hensforth in going and sittyng at all tymes, that they shall were their Mantels, shall kepe their places after the Order of their stallis, and not after their astatis, as is aforesaid.

XXIV. Item it is agreed, that all the Felowis abodesaid at their first commyng in shall gyve eyery of them a certayne somme, after their astate, for the entertaynyng and maynteynance of the Canons and Poor Knyghtes dwellyng in the seid place, and for the almes dedes that is ryere perpetualli ordeynyd. That is to wytt, the Soberayne xl. markes, a straunger Kyng xx l: The Prince xx markes, eyery Duke x l. eyery Marques viii l. vi s. viii d. eyery Erle x. markes, eyery Vizcounte cxvi s. viii d. eyery Baron and Banneret c s. eyery Bacheler v. markes, and their Banners, Helmetts, Crestis, and Swordis shalle not be sett ober their stalles, untyll the tyme that they habe payed at their entryng the foresaid sommes, eyery one after his astate and degree whereof he is. And it ys to wytt that the Soberayne is bounde to pay for eyery straunger that shall be chosen and electe, whan he shall be stalled in his proper parson, or by procurement, or attornay, and these gyftes be gieben to th' entent that eyery one of them that shall entre into th' Order be more worthy to habe the name, title, and privilege, of one of the Founders of the said Order.

XXV. Item it ys agreed, that eyery Knyght within the yere of his stallation shall cause to be made a Scouchon of his armes, and bachementis in a plate of metall suche as shall please hym, and that it be sterly fett upon the backe of his stall. And the other that shall come after shall habe their Scouchons and Bachements in like maner; but their Plats of metall nor there bachements shall not be too large nor too greatre as they of the first Founders were, excepte strangers, which may use their plates and fashions at their pleasure.

XXVI. Item it ys aggreed, that no Knyght chosen and electe for to be Felow of of the said Noble Order shall nott be stalled by procurement or attorney, excepte he be a straunger, and may not well come hyther in his proper parson for to be stalled, or other that is busied withoute the Realme for the affaires of the Soberayn, or by his commaundement and lycence as it is abobe declared.

XXVII. Item that eyery Knyght, entryng in the said Order, shall pyomes and swere faithfully to obserbe ond kepe the poynts and articles that here followeth, That is to witt, that to his trew powre he shall helpe, durryng his lyffe, and durryng the tyme that he shall be Felow of the said Order, for to kepe, defende, and sustayne the honor, quarrelles, rightes, and lordshippes of the Soberayne of the said Order.

Item that with all his powre he shall enforce hymselffe, and take payne honorably to entertayne and augment the said Order. And if it happen hym for to knowe any thynge that were pmagined or procured to the contrarye of the defence and resistence of this, with all his trew power he shall put hymself in more greater endeyorment.

Item that well and trewly he shall accomplisshe and entertayne all the Statuts, poynts, and ordynances of the said Order, and of all this shall make a generall othe, all and so as though it were redde unto hym fro poynt to poynt, and article to article, and shall make the said othe to the Soberayne of the said Order or his Deputie, in swerynge and pyomisyng upon the holy Gospellis for to kepe them and entertayne them, withowte any fraude or delacion. And upon this he shall towche the Boke and kysse the Crosse.

Item this done the said Knyght soo chosen with dete reberence shall receybe the Garter, the whiche the Soberayne or his Deputie shall put it aboure his lyffe leg in saying these wordes, "Sir, the lobyng Company of "th' order of the Garter hathe receybed you "yeere Brother, lober, and Felow, and in "token and knowledge of this they gybe you "and present you this present Garter. The "whiche God wyll that you receybe and "were from hensforth to his praise and plea-"sure, and to th' exaltacion and honour of "the said Noble Order and of your self.

XXVIII. Item it is agreed, that in case that the Soberayne be out of the Countre, to the whiche he can not in proper parson do that shall appertayne to the stallation, he may gybe power and auctorite, by his Letters of Commission, to two of the Felowes, or to dyberse for to exercise it in his name.

XXIX. Item it is agreed that a common Seal, a signet of the armes of the Order, be made, the which shall rest in the custodi and kepyng of the Chanceler of th' order, or of suche a Knyght and Felow of the said Order, as shall please the Soberayne to name and assigne; and if he that shall habe the Seales in kepyng or custodi shulde departe or goo forth for any cause, xx miles farre from the Soberayne, then he shall deliber the said Seals to the Soberayne, or to suche Knyght of th' Order, or to any other parsone, that it shall please the said Soberayne for to ordeyne and appoynte. To th' entent that at no

no tyme the said Seals be oute of the presence of the said Soberayne, be beyng within his Realme. And if he be owte of his Realme, The signet shall suffice for to seal all suche actes and wrytynges, touchyng the said Order, that there may be concluded and made.

XXX. Item it is agreed, that every Felow of the said Order from hensforth shall have the Statutes of the said Order, first collected and oversene by the Register, and after that sealed with the common Seal afforesaid. And if the Knyght will have any armes devysed, or cognysance made within the Woke of the said Statuts, then the said Woke shall be delyvered to the Kyng at Armes of th' Order, for trewly to ordayne of it as it shall appertayne. And the originall to be ysseuyde signed and sealed, the whiche shall shall abyde in the Treasory of the said College for evermore.

XXXI. Item it is agreed, that after the death of eny of the Knyghtes of the said Company, his Executours shall be bounde for to sende agayne, and to delyver the Statutes of the said Order, within thyee monethes after, if so be that the Statutes hath been delivered unto hym by the Soberayne, or to his charge. The which Statutes shall be delivered agayn to the Warden or Register of the said College, or to one of the principall Officers for the tyme beyng.

XXXII. Item it is agreed, that none of the Knyghtes of Saynt George, of the said Companye of the Garter, shall not goo oute of the Contrey nor Dominion of the Soberayne, without havyng leave and lisence of the Soberayne: And therefore it is agreed, that if eny viage be made, or any other noble acte appertaynyng to the honor of Knyghthood, The said Soberayne, of his grace, for the great love, favor, and confidence that he beares towarde the Knyghtes of the said Order, will preferre, advance, and present the said Felowes and Knyghtes of th' Order of Saynt George before all other.

XXXIII. Item that none of the Knyghtes of the said Order shall not arme themselves the one against the other, but in the Warres of his Soberayne Lorde, in his right and juste quarell, and if it shulde happen, that any of the said Order were retayned with any Lorde, and holdyng his partie and quarell, and th' adversari partie desireth also to have another Felowe of the said Order with hym: In this case, suche a Knyght and Felow shall not be retayned, but may excuse hym from all suche thynges, because his Felowe is armed agaynst hym on the other syde, and was retayned before hym, and every Knyght of the said Order shall be bounde to excepte when he shall be retained, that he may be holely dyscharged from his service of Warre, if any of the Felowshipp before hym retayned or holdyng the contrary and adversari partye. And if he that is the second retayned know that any of his Felowes be retayned before hym, and armed with his adversari partye, Then he that is seconde retayned, at the yrste knowledge that he shall have thereof, shall be bounde to excuse hym toward his Maister, and leave that quarell.

XXXIV. Item that all the lycencis gyven to the Knyghtes of the said Order, that goo oute of the Realme for to seke and obtayne honor, and all certifications, or sendynge letters and wrytynges concernyng the said Order, from hensforth, shall be sealled with one of the Seales of the said Order.

XXXV. Item it is agreed that if eny Knyght of the said Order, for his devocion, wyll dwell within the said Castell continually, There shall be ordeyned for hym a dwellyng place convenient, by th' assignment of the Soberayne, and he of his proyre goods and at his costes and chargies shall provyde for hys syveyng.

XXXVI. Item if any other Knyght, not beyng of the said Order, hathe any wyll to dwelle there for his devocion, there shall be ordeyned for hym a dwellyng place, after the wyll and pleasure of the said Soberayne, and with the consentement of the said Company.

XXXVII. Item it is ordeyned, that if any Knyght, or other parson, wylle gyve any Landes, heritage, or rentes, for to be participant of all the good oraysons and prayers that shall be said in the sayde place, also his name shall be Registred, and the Canons and poore Knyghts shall pray perpetually unto God for hym, and also the said Deane, Warden, and Canons of the said College from hensforth shall not take any maner of charge upon the said College, withoute the advyse and consentment of the sayd Soberayne, or his Deputie, and the Felowship of the sayd Order, in presence, and by them concented and agreed in playne Chapter.

XXXVIII. Item for to have better knowledge of the Knyghts that shall be of the said Order, the Soberayne of it willyth and ordeneth by the Willes and consentment of all the hole Company, that from hensforth, that every Knyght of the said Order shall have and were apertly and openly a Coller of golde about his necke, wayng thyrty ounces of Troy weyght and not above, the whiche Coller shall be made by pieces in fashion of Garters, in the mydes of which Garters shall be a double Rose, the one Rose of Red, and the other within White, and the other Rose White, and the other Rose within rede, and at the ende of the said Coller shall be put and fastned the Ymage of Saynt George. The whiche Coller the said Soverayn, his Successours, and amiable Companye of the said Order shall be bounde to were, and in especiall, in principall and solempne Feastes of the yere, and in other dayes of the yere shall be holden to were a small Chayne of Gold with the

Ymage

Pmage of Sapnt George dependpng at the ende of the said Chapne, excepte in tpme of Warre, sickenes, longe biage; Then it shall suffice bpm to were alcnelp a lace of sylke with the said Image of Sapnt George. And if the said Coller habe anp need of reparacion, it map be put in the handes of the Goldesmyth and workeman unto the tpme that it be repared, the whiche Coller also map not be made more richer with stones or other thynges, reserbing the said Pmage: The which map be garnished and enrpched at the pleasure of the saide Knyghte: Also the said Coller map not be solde, engaged, aliened, nor gpben, for anp nede, cause, or necessity whatsoeber it be.

The Constitutions *relating to the* Officers *of the* Order. Lib. N. p. 232.

CAP. I.

Horum primus erat Prælatus *Ordines. Quisquis autem Præsul* Wintoniensis, *ac* Southamptoniæ *Comes* &c. *eo tempore fuerit, is &* Prælatus *esse debet. Qui cum præsens sit, denominationes electionum Equestrium appositè conscribet, Et quod reliquum fuerit, ibi defungetur Officio. Id quod illo absente* Cancellarius, Decanus, *aut* Scriba *(quemadmodum est præstensum) explebit.*

Quoties Supremo *ipsi visum fuerit solennitatem Divi* Georgii *servare* Windesori, *tenebitur &* Prælatus *simul adesse, ut Divina celebret. Quod si volens prætermiserit, viginti marcas eâ de causâ Collegio persolvet, nisi rationabilem & justam absentiam, &* Supremo *ac* Sodalitio *benè probabilem causari posset, quæ conferentur ad reparationes inibi faciendas.*

Item Prælatus *habitum superinduet, cujus exterior facies subrubri coloris è sericeo villoso, interior autem albi serici, quod* Taffeta *vocant, circumpositis (ut* Supremo *videbitur) sumptuosis insignibus & scuto super humerum, quod Ordinis intra præclustre subligar habebit insignia. Fibula vestimenti, quæ de pectore propendebit, partim aurei fili, partim cerulei serici debet esse.*

Eodem habitu tenebitur uti singulis vigiliis festivisque diebus Divi Georgii, *ubi modò liber extiterit. Aliàs item, ut dum celebre concilium, quod & Parliamentum, agitatur maxime, vel in aliis festivitatibus, ad libitum uti poterit. Qui propter honorem & Prælationem hujus Ordinis summum inter Episcopos nostros ubiquè locum vendicabit, Archiepiscopis duntaxat concedens, quibus sedium suarum præeminentia constabit, utq; tantò magis honoretur, poterit idem Prælatus illustre* Subligaculum *suis semper insignibus circumponere. Et quotiès proceditur, poterit habitu prædicto tectus* Supremum *antecedere,* Cancellarium *Ordinis sibi sinistrum habens. Habebit etiam intra Castrum nostrum* Windesori *sibi locum designatum ad manendum, quoties illuc accesserit. Cumque illuc advenerit vel ad alium quemcunq; locum ex jussu* Supremi, *ut Divi* Georgii *festivitatem observet, vel ut acta conscribat, aliavè quæcunq; peragat, quæ spectabunt ad hunc Ordinem, intra Atrium nostrum pro se sibiq; ministrantibus habebit ad victum, quæ per nostrum præceptum Comites in Aulâ residentes habere solent.*

CAP. II.

Officium Cancellarii, *quoniam præcobile est, ac permagnæ Curæ, exigitur in id administrandum vir præclari nominis, tantoq; dignus honore. Quamobrem* Supremus *vult & instituit, quod nemo provehatur ad id Officium, nisi vel Prælatus Ecclesiæ fuerit, velut Archiepiscopus, Antistes, aut notabilis alioqui dignitatis: vel si vir laicus, Eques omninò non ignoti sanguinis, expertus, doctus, & bonâ famâ notus. Ad hunc spectabit Concilii suscipiendi manifestatio, ac declaratio, sub eâ formâ quam* Supremus *&* Sodales *Ordinis præconceperint, omni tempore quo conveniet aut oportebit, ad honorem, utilitatem, atq; incrementum ejusdem Ordinis. Idem quotannis solennitate Divi* Georgii *in Concilio proponet, atq; enarrabit acta egregia laudéq; digna ipsorum* Equitum *hujus Ordinis, quotquot ita meriti sunt: qui verò contra commeruerunt & illorum quoq; probra, siqua fuerint, recensebit, ut* Scriba *tantò faciliùs ea sub scriptis redigat in memoriam nunquam desituram. Habebit hic itaq; scilicet cum* Prælato *intra Castrum nostrum* Windesori *mansionem, scilicet habitum, & omninò similem victûs assignationem.* Cancellarius *apud se commune Sigillum Ordinis, cum Signaculo, servabit, ad Statuta, Commissiones, facultates, certificationes, mandata, suffragiorum literas, aliasq; causas ad prædictum Ordinem attinentes, suo quasque tempore consignandas. Si verò, legitimam ac rationabilem causam habens, ultra decem milliaria recesserit à* Supremo, *relinquet interim ea Sigilla, prout* Supremus *assignabit in custodiâ unius è* Sodalibus, *qui commorabitur in Aulâ cum* Supremo. *Habebit hic ipse* Cancellarius *annuum stipendium, Officii sui nomine, Centum libras Legalis Monetæ* Angliæ, *vel in feodis, Officiis, aliisvè promotionibus tantundem, hiis de quibus ante diximus nihil hic obstantibus.*

CAP. III.

Erit insuper hujus Ordinis unus Scriba, *qui si vir Ecclesiasticus extiterit, Literatus erit, & Theologiæ*

Theologiæ vel alterius Juris, Canonici aut Civilis Professor, habens itaquè dignitatem aliquam in Ecclesia Cathedrali, quem Supremus *etiam ad Prebendam intra Sacellum suum* Windesori *curabit sublimandum, & veluti decebit eo nomine promovebit. Si verò Secularis aut Laicus ipse fuerit, vir honestus atque insignis erit, & Eques, experientiæ doctrinæq; nomine commendatus. Qui stipendium habebit annuum quinquaginta libras monetæ legalis* Angliæ, *vel in feodis, Officiis, aut emolumentis aliis tantundem. Quoties item* Eques *aliquis in hunc Ordinem ascitus ad sedem suam introducatur, ab eodem* Equite, Scriba *recipiet tredecem solidos cum quatuor denariis & habitum----------Oportebit autem hunc* Scribam *duos conficere Libellos, sive Indices, aut potiùs Annales, è Pargameno, in quibus Ordinationes & Statuta cæteræq; causæ spectantes ad Ordinem conscribentur. Quorum alter* Windesori *recondetur in Ærario, ubi perpetuò manebit: alter verò in custodiâ Scribæ, quem ubilibet* Supremo, *si quando poscat, sit ostensurus. Prior appellabitur* Index Windesoriensis, *posterior* Aulæ Registrum. *Hujus intererit Electiones factas, & Electorum nomina, stratagemmata, res gestas, & acta notatu fidêq; digna tàm* Supremi, *quàm* Commilitonum *Ordinis, prout per seipsum sudâq; scrutandi diligentiâ, vel per industriam* Regis Armorum *intelligere poterit, & habere comperta describere & redigere in memoriam. Primitùs, ut singulis annis accident, annotabit, & scriptis commendabit, quæ in eo quod proximè suscipietur concilio legentur* Equitibus *ibi congregatis, ut si quicquam correctionis aut emendationis indigeat, ibi corrigatur, similitèr iterum in altero concilio, & deindè venustè conscribenda curabit in prædictis libris aut annalibus ad perpetuam sui memoriam.*

CAP. IV.

Hiis accedet Rex Armorum *unus, qui* Garterus Rex Armorum Angliæ *vocitabitur, quem* Supremus *&* Commilitones, *ob dignitatem Ordinis, virum generosi sanguinis, honesti nominis insignia gerentem, intra regnum* Angliæ *natum, & cæteris Armorum Officialibus, qui nobili Coronæ Angliæ subjecti sunt, superiorem esse volunt. Habebit hic à* Supremo *stipendium annuum quadraginta libras monetæ legalis* Angliæ; *præterea unusquisq;* Sociorum *pro sui status honore singulis annis dabit eidem, Dux, quatuor libras; Marchio quinque marcas; Comes, quatuor marcas; Baro, quadraginta solidos; & Eques Bachalaureus, viginti sex solidos atque octo denarios, ut tantò honorificentiùs ad decus Ordinis vitam agat, & Officium administret. Quotiès autem Creatio* Principis, Ducis, Marchionis, Comitis, Vicecomitis, *aut* Baronis *obtinget, idem* Garterus *vestes ejus vendicabit quibus utetur priusquàm togam illius dignitatis & præclari status accipiat.*

Ad eundem spectabit correctio Armorum atque insignium quorumcunque, quæ usurpantur & gestantur injustè; authoritas insuper & potestas Arma hujusmodi atquè insignia concedendi talibus qui per Acta fortia ac laudabilia, virtutesq; & status, honores merebuntur juxta antiquam consuetudinem, Literisq; Patentes super eâ re faciendi. Is ubique quando Supremus *solenniter incedet, Ensem ejus proximus antecedet, nemine intercedente; nisi forsan* Constabularius *&* Mareschallus, *qui virgas illas ad Officium suum attinentes ipsi gestabunt. Per eum quoque vel ab eo designatum juramentum ministrabitur omnibus Armorum Officialibus,* Supremo *Subjectis, recepturum ob id quod consuetum est.*

Habebit itidem habitum Scribæ *similem, & Baronis Ferculum in Aulâ, cui post* Decanum *Sacelli nostri mensa ponetur, & ferculum inferetur, cæteraq; sui vicius, ut mos fuit, & domum cubandi* Windesori *intra Castrum nostrum accepturus. Cumque solennitas Divi* Georgii *celebretur, &* Supremus *assit, idem* Garterus *portabit* albam virgam, *cujus ambo fines deauratabuntur, & vexillum modicum insignium Ordinis supra.*

Quando Dominus etiam ingredietur Cubiculum nostri Parliamenti, ipse locum ei designabit juxta dignitatis & clari status honorem ex antiquo more recepturus, ob id uti Domino illi visum fuerit. Et quotienscunq; mittetur aut legabitur in Supremi *negotiis, quinque Equos habens recipiet pro laboribus accipiendis, singulis quibusque diebus decem solidos.*

Idem Garterus, Rex Armorum, *diligentèr ac sedulò perquiret acta fortia ac fortunata præclaraq; gesta tàm* Supremi, *quàm* Commilitonum *hujus Ordinis, quæ fidelitèr ac verè referet* Scribæ, *quatinus in scripta per eum æternumq; memoriam opportunè redigi possint.*

Hic Garterus *etiàm perferet, aut curabit perferendas omnes Literas, quæ spectabunt ad* Confratres *&* Sodales *hujus Ordinis: & significatum ibit* Supremo *vel* Scribæ *mortem cujuslibet* Equitis *istius Ordinis, ut literæ suffragiorum conficiantur ac deportentur, quemadmodum oportet, deferet & deferri faciet Electiones eorum qui nominati fuerint, & ipsorum responsa reportabit. Deniquè faciet, aut fieri procurabit, quicquid spectans ad hunc Ordinem* Supremus *vel* Prælatus, *aut* Cancellarius *(qui præcipui sunt Officiales) faciendum injunxerit.*

CAP. V.

Postremò debet esse unus Hostiarius, *quem* Supremus *ac* Commilitones *volunt esse generosum, Armis ac Sanguine clarum, & in ditione ipsius Supremi progenitum, is qui pro dignitate Ordinis atque honore omnium* Hostiariorum *ipsius Regni summus erit. Habebit itaq; curam & custodiam & custodiæ præeminentiam penetralium nostrorum, Domus ubi Concilium agitatur, & omnium hostiorum ubi concilium inibitur, tàm in sublimi Curiâ quæ Parliamentum appellitatur, quàm in quibusque locis aliis, Cujus Annuum stipendium erit Triginta Librarum. Quòd si jussu* Supremi *ac* Commilitonum, *quem hujus Ordinis* Equitem *nigrâ virgâ*

 tetigerit;

tetegerit, & reum egerit sceleris admissi, propter quod sit abdicandus ab hoc Ordine, quinque libras eo facto percipiet: si levioris offensæ causâ quem admonuerit, ex præcepto Regis & Concilii, vendicabit ab eodem câ de causâ viginti solidos. Et quandocunque quis Electus in sedem introducitur, decem solidos accipiet; intra Castrum nostrum Windesori *cubandi locum sibi selectum, ejusdem Castri & duorum saltuum coadjacentium custodiam habebit. Habebit etiam habitum* Scribæ & Garteri Regis Armorum, *scilicet ferculà Baronum & reliquum victum attinentem in Aulâ. Qui si non fuerit* Eques *in ingressu, tum fieri debet. Ubicunque verò singulis annis* Supremus *extiterit in Festo Divi* Georgii, *die vel festivitate sequente, ante eundem* Supremum *aut* Deputatum, virgam nigellam *aut ipse deferet, vel alias ab eo sufficienter assignatus. Et supra virgam* Leo *stabit,* Anglorum *insigne. Virga nimirum loco clavæ gestabitur, cujus & authoritatem habebit, hiis modò deserviens qui deliquerint & in Ordinationes ac Statuta peccârint.*

Hii tres hujus Ordinis Officiales, Scriba *videlicet,* Garterus Rex Armorum, & Hostiarius ab atrâ virgâ *nuncupatus, ipsi cum suis tam rebus quam ministris in suis Officiis permanentes, sub perpetuâ* Supremi *protectione ac propugnaculo securè durabunt. Unde si quævis injuria seu violentia ipsis inferatur, vel ab eis qui* Supremo *subjecti sunt, vel exteriùs, quotiès causas suas arbitrio* Supremi *submittent, ipse cum* Sodalibus *exhibebit eis justitiam, aut exhibendam ex æquo & congruo procurabit. Si verò pars adversa causam suam* Supremo *submittere detrectabit, ipse cum* Commilitonibus *eum ergà Officiales hos animum habebit, ut ipsorum causam quoad justum atq; æquum erit cum debito favore tueri velit.*

Intra Chorum *prædicti* Sacelli, *dum solennia peraguntur, ante* Sedem Regiam *præterea statuentur* Sedilia duo, *unum ante alterum, in quorum altero sedebunt* Prælatus & Cancellarius *Ordinis; in altero,* Scriba, Rex Armorum & Hostiarius.

The Names of the *first Founders*, and other *Knights-Companions*, who succeeded in their Stalls, after the ancient manner; as they are exemplified in two TABLES remaining in the Chapter-house at *Windesor.*

TAB. I.

1. *Le* tres noble Roy Edward *tiers, & premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint le Roy Richard, *filz,* Edwarde *le Prince de* Galles. *Apres luy vint le tres-noble Roy* Henry, *filz de* Johan *Duc de* Lancastre. *Apres luy vint le noble Prince & vaillant, le Roy* Henry 5. *Heritier & Regent de* France, *& Conquereur de* Normandie. *Apres luy vint son filz* Henry *de* Windesore *le 6. courronné à* Paris *Roy de* France. *Apres luy & en son temps, entra en son droit tiltre, le tres noble Roy* Edward 4. *la fleur de Chivallerie.* [* Apres luy vint le Roy *Richard* le 3. Apres luy vint le tres-noble Roy *Henry* le 7.]

* Note that all put within *Uncus's* at the end of each Stall, is added in the Tables by a later hand.

2. *Le Duc de* Lancastre, Henry, *& Premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint le Seigneur Despenser, Edward, *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Stafford, Hugh; *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Nichol Sarnesfeld; *Apres luy vint Monsieur* William D'arundell; *Apres luy vint le Roy de* Portugal, Jehan; *Apres luy vint le Roy de* Portugall Edward; *Apres luy vint le Duc de* Gloucestre, Humfrey; *Apres luy vint le Roy de* Portugall, Alfonsus [Apres luy vint son Filz le Roy de Portugall.]

3. *Le Captou de* Buch, Piere, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint le Conte de Derby, *qui apres fuit Roy* D'angleterre Henry *le* 4. *Apres luy vint Messire* Philipp la Vache. *Apres luy vint Messire* Gilbert *Sire le* Talbot. *Apres luy vint Messire* Jehan Grey. *Apres luy vint le Conte Mareschalle* Jehan. *Apres luy vint le Duk* D' York, Richard. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Warwick, *Richard.* [Apres luy vint le Noble Prince *Charlois* Duc de Burgoyne. Apres luy vint le Roy Don Ferdinando le la grant Cecile & de Naples, par l' ordonnance du Sovereign & la Compagnie.]

4. *Le Conte de Saresbury* William, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint le Conte d' Arundell, Thomas. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Huntington, *qui apres fut fait Duc* D' Excestre. *Apres luy vint le Duc de* Norfolk, Jehan. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Worcestre, Jehan, *Grant Conestable* D' Angleterre. *Apres luy vint le Duc de* Norfolk *Jehan.* [Après luy vint le Marquis *Dorset, Thomas,* filz de la Royne Elizabeth.]

5. *Monsieur*

5. *Monsieur* Jehan *de Lisle, & premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint Messire Richard la Vache; *Apres luy vint Messire* Edward, *Sire de* Powys. *Apres luy vint* Her Tangke Clux. *Apres luy vint Messire le Duc de* Gloucestre *Freire au Roy* Edward *quart.* [Apres luy vint le Count de Ox. Jehan.]

6. *Monsieur* Johan Beauchampe, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint le Duc le Clarence, *Leonel. Apres luy vint le Seire de* Basset, Rauf. *Apres luy vint le Duc de* Gheldren Will. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Stafford. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Kent, Edmund. *Apres luy Messire* Robert Doumfravile. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Sarisbury Richard. *Apres luy vint Monsieur de* Montague, Jehan, *apres Conte de Northumberland.* [Apres luy vint le Counte D'Arundell William.]

7. *Monsieur* Hugh Courtenay, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint le Conte de Northamton, William. *Apres luy le Duc de* Eborum, *Conte de* Cantebrigie, Edmund. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Jehan, *filz du Roy* Henry 4. *Duc de* Bethford, *Regent de* France. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Jehan Grey, *de* Ruthyn. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Somerset, Jehan, *apres Duc de* Somerset. *Apres luy vint Dom.* Alver Dalmadaa *Conte* D'everence, *Capitaine de* Portugal. *Apres luy vint le Viscount* Bourschier, Henry, *apres Conte* D'Essex. [Apres luy vint Count de Arundell Thomas.]

8. *Monsieur* Johan Grey, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint Monsieur Wautier Manny. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Guichard D'anguillem. *Apres luy vint le Duc de* Gloucestre, *Counte de* Buckingham, Thomas. *Apres luy vint le Conte Palatyn Duc de* Bavayre, Robert. *Apres luy vint le Roy* D'anmarch. *Apres luy vint Messire* Antony *de* Wideville, *Sieur de* Scales *& de* Neucelles, *freire de la Royne* Elizabeth. [Apres luy Messire Jehan Conyers Baneret. Apres luy le Conte de Surry Thomas.]

9. *Monsieur* Milès de Stapelton, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint le Conte de Hereford, Humfrey. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Warwick, le filz Thomas. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Thomas Erpengham. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Stafford, Humfray, *apres Duc de* Buckingham. *Apres luy vint Monsieur de* Scroup, Johan.

10. *Monsieur* Hugh de Wrotellegh, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint Monsieur Thomas de Felton. *Apres luy vint le Sire de* Willoughby, William. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* William Harington. *Apres luy vint Messire* Rauf Boteller, *Seigneur de* Sudley. [Apres luy vint Messire Thomas Seigneur Mautravers.]

11. *Monsieur* Jehan Chaundos, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint Monsieur Guy de Briene. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Ostervant, William, *qui apres fuit remué à l'autre part à lestal du Duc de* Bretaigne, Jehan. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Humfry, *filz du Roy*, Henry *Duc de Gloucestre, qui apres fut remué à l'estal du Roy de* Portugall, Edward Jehan. *Apres luy vint le Capitan* de la Bouche, *Conte de* Longeville. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Jehan *Sire de* Dudley. *Apres luy Seigneur* William Stanley. [Apres luy le Count de Northumberland Henry. Apres luy le Conte de Shrewesbury George.]

12. *Monsieur* Otes Holand, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint Frank van Halle. *Apres luy vint Messire* William Beauchamp. *Apres luy vint le Seigneur de* Morley, Thomas. *Apres luy vint le Sire de* Willoughby, Robert. [Apres luy vint Messire Walter Blount, Sire de Mountjoye. Apres luy vint le Conte de Urbyne.]

13. *Monsieur* Sanchete D'abrichecourt, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint Monsieur William Fitz Waryn. *Apres luy vint le Sire* Latimer, William. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Symond *de* Burley. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Jehan Devros. *Apres luy vint Monsieur de* Beaumont Jehan. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Somerset, Jehan. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Jehan de Cornvaile. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Thomas Hoo. *Apres luy vint le Sire de* Stanley, Thomas. *Apres luy vint Messire* Johan Asteley.

TAB. II.

1. *Le Prince* Edward, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint son filz Richard, *Prince de* Gales. *Apres luy vint* Jehan *Duc de* Lancastre, *par l'ordonnance du Soverain & la Compagnie. Apres luy vint Monsieur* Philipp la Vache, *qui apres fut remué à l'estal du Conte* Derby, *par le Soverain & la Compagnie. Apres luy vint le Prince* Henry, *filz du Roy* Henry. *Apres luy vint Messire* Jehan D'abrichecourt. *Apres luy vint* Sigismund, *Empereur. Apres luy vint le Prince* Edward, *filz du Roy* Edward *le quart.* [Apres luy vint le primier filz du tres-noble Roy Henry le 7.]

2. *Le*

2. *Le Conte de Warwick*, Thomas, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint le Conte de Pembroke, Jehan. *Apres luy vint le Duc de* Bretaign, Jehan. *Apres luy vint le Duc de* Holand. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Johan Robessart. *Apres luy vint* George *Duc de* Clarence, *freire puisné du Roy* Edward 4. [Apres luy le Duc de Bedford, Jasper. Apres luy le Roy de Grande Cecile, Alphons.]

3. *Le Conte de Stafford* Rauf, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint Monsieur Alain Bukeshull. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Brian de Stapelton. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* William Scroop. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Westmerland, Rauf. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Johan de Fastolf. *Apres luy vint le Roy Dom de* Fernando *de la grante* Cecile *& de* Naples, *qui apres fit remué à l'estal du noble Prince* Charlois *Duc de* Bourgonge. [Apres luy vint le Duc de Ferrare, Hercules.]

4. *Le Conte de March* Roger, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint Monsieur Thomas Ufford. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Richard Pembruge. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Suffolk, William. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Richard de Burle. *Apres luy Monsieur* Edward, *filz de Duc de* Yorke. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Oxentord, Richard. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Jehan Blount. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* William Philippe, *Seigneur de* Bardolf. *Apres luy vint Messire* Jehan Beauchamp. [Apres luy vint le Duc D' Yorke Richard, filz du Roy Edward le quart. Apres luy le Duc de Bokyngham.]

5. *Monsieur* Bartholomew Bourgherst, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint le Sire de Neufville, Jehan. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Pierre Courtenay. *Apres luy vint le Sire* Lovell Johan. *Apres luy vint le Sire* Fitzhugh Henry. *Apres luy vint le Sire de* Scalles, Thomas. *Apres luy vint Monsieur de* Hasting, William. [Apres luy le Conte de Derby Sire de Stanley Thomas.]

6. *Monsieur de* Mohun, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint le Conte de Kent, Thomas. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Dorset, Thomas, *Duc de* Excestre. *Apres luy vint Dom* Petre *filz du Roy de* Portugall, *Duc de* Quymbre. *Apres luy vint* Johan Bourscher. *Sire de* Berneres. [Apres luy vint Duc de Bukyngham Henry. Apres luy le Sire de Strange, George.]

7. *Monsieur* Thomas Hollande, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint le Duc de Lancastre, Jehan, *qui apres fut remué à l'estal du Prince* Richard, *par le Soverain & la Compagnie: Et en son lieu vint Messire* Johan de Burle. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Thomas Moubray, *Conte de* Notyngham. *Apres luy vint* Thomas de Lancastre *filz au Roy* Henry 4. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Suffolke William del Pool, *apres Marquis & Duc de* Suffolke. [Apres luy vint son filz Jehan Duc de Suffolke. Apres luy le Sire de Dynham, John.]

8. *Monsieur* Richard Fitz Symond, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint le Conte de Suffolk, Robert. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Robert Namurs. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Jehan Bourgscher. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Thomas Rammiston. *Apres luy vint Monsieur Sire* Burnell. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Lowes Robessart *Sire de* Bourgscher. *Apres luy vint le Conte* Jehan D'arundelle. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Morteigne, Edmund, *qui apres fut Marquis de* Dorset, *& Duc de* Somerset. *Apres luy vint Monsieur de* Herbert, William. [Apres luy vint Jehan de Buckyngham Conte de Wiltshire. Apres luy vint le Conte de Northumberland, Henry. Apres luy le Viscount Lovell Frauncois. Apres luy Messire Edward VVodevile. Apres luy le Viscount VVellis, Jehan.]

9. *Monsieur* Thomas Wale, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint Monsieur Reynard de Cobeham. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Jehan Sully. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Warrewyk Richard. *Apres luy vint le Sire de* Faucunberge, *apres Conte de* Kente. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Douglas. [Apres luy vint le Sire de Broke, Robert.]

10. *Monsieur* Neel Loringee *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint le Conte D'Arundell, Richard. *Apres luy vint Sire de* Grey. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Hugh Stafford, *Sire de* Bourgscher. *Apres luy vint le Sire de* Hungerford, Wauter. *Apres luy vint le Sire de* Riviers, Richard, *apres Conte de* Riviers, *& Pier de Roigne* Eliz. *Apres luy vint Messire* Jehan *le Seigneur* Howard. [Apres luy Messire Thomas de Borough. Apres luy Messire Charles Somerset Baneret.]

11. *Monsieur* James D'audele, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint Monsieur Thomas Grantson. *Apres luy vint Monsieur de* Roos. *Apres luy vint le Sire* Camus, Thomas. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Jehan *Sire de* Clifford. *Apres luy vint le Sire de* Talbot, Johan, *apres Conte de* Cherosbery. *Apres luy vint son filz*, Johan *Conte de* Cherovsbury. *Apres luy vint le Sire de* Wenloke. *Apres luy vint Messire*, William Parr. [Apres luy Messire Richard Dunstall. Apres luy Messire Edw. Poynings.]

12. *Monsieur*

12. *Monsieur* Henry Em, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint Monsieur Thomas Ughtrede. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Bethford. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Lewis Clifford. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Johan Stanley. *Apres luy vint le Conte de* Sarisbury, Thomas. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Johan *de* Radeliff. *Apres luy vint le Viscount de* Beaumont, Jehan. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Robert Harecourt. [Apres luy vint Monsieur Walter Deveros Sire de Ferres. Apres luy vint Monsieur Johan Cheny Baneret.]

13. *Monsieur* Walter Pavely, *& premier Fondeur.*

Apres luy vint Monsieur Thomas Banestre. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Sandich de Trane. *Apres luy vint Monsieur* Symund Felbrigger. *Apres luy vint* Henry *filz du Roy de* Portingall, *Duc de* Vison. *Apres luy vint le Sire de* Duras. *Apres luy vint Messire* Thomas Montgomery. [Apres luy vint Messire Gylbert Talbot Baneret.]

APPENDIX.

NUMBER I.

King *Edward* the Third's *Letters Patent* for founding St. *George's Chappel* in *Windesor Castle.*

Pat. an. 22. E. 3. par. 2. m. 6.

EDwardus, &c. *Universis præsentes Literas inspecturis, salutem. Magnificentiam decet Regiam in piis semper actibus delectari, ut cum ante tribunal steterit summi Regis, apud quem non est acceptio personarum, sed unusquisque prout gessit in corpore recipiet, sive bonum fuerit sive malum, inter bonos à dextris assistere valeat & non piger vel inutilis cum reprobis judicari. Nos quidem varia vitæ nostræ studia & exilia merita nostra cum amaritudine recolentes sollicitè, divinitq; nobis præstita beneficia, gratias & honores, quibus præ cæteris misericorditèr Altissimus nos prævenit, meritò contemplantes de bonis nobis à Deo collatis & suprà modum multociens inanitèr dispensatis gravitèr suspiramus, nec aliud nobis restat, nisi ad Christum & matrem ejus Virginem gloriosam, quæ nobis nunquam patrocinari desistit, sed in variis periculis constitutos suis beatis precibus protexit hactenus, & adjuvit felicitèr, convertere totalitèr mentem nostram, & sibi pro gratiis, gratias reddere & pro delictis veniam postulare. Et quia bona est negotiatio per quam transitoria declinantur & æterna fælici commercio subrogantur, Capellam quandam aptæ pulchritudinis ocio Canonicorum secularium in Castro nostro de* Wyndesore *in quâ Aquâ sacri Baptismatis abluti fuimus situatam, in honore Beati* Edwardi *Confessoris per progenitores nostros nobiliter inchoatam, quibus pro ipsorum sustentatione quandam summam pecuniæ pro eorum voluntate & de proprio thesauro in Elemosinam tribuerunt, in honorem Omnipotentis Dei, & suæ Genitricis* Mariæ *Virginis gloriosæ, Sanctorumq;* Georgii *Martyris &* Edwardi *Confessoris, nostris Regiis sumptibus fecimus consummari. Summis desideriis affectantes & efficacem operam adhibentes, ut prædicti Canonici inibi Domino servituri tam redditituum incremento, quam aliorum Canonicorum & Ministrorum ac servientium numero augeantur; Et ut in Capella prædicta cultu latiori Divini Nominis gloria exaltetur, prædictis octo Canonicis unum Custodem, præsidentem eisdem, & quindecim adhuc alios Canonicos, viginti & quatuor Milites pauperes, de se impotentes, seu vergentes ad inopiam, & de bonis dictæ Capellæ perpetuò sustentandos, & alios dictæ Capellæ Ministros sub ipsius Custodis imperio Christo perpetuò famulantes superaddere, & ibidem tam Canonicos & Milites quam alios dictæ Capellæ Ministros ut præmittitur recipi facere dignum ducimus, firmitèr statuimus, & inviolabilitèr ordinamus, & auctoritate nostrâ Regiâ, quantum in nobis est, perpetuò stabilimus. Volentes quod dicti Canonici & Ministri divina Officia celebrent pro nobis, & progenitoribus, & successoribus nostris, in partem satisfactionis eorum de quibus in extremo judicio rationem erimus reddituri, celebraturi imperpetuum secundum formam Ordinationis nostræ indè plenius faciendæ, quibus jura patronatus & advocationes Ecclesiarum de* Wyrardesbury *Lincolniæ,* Southtanton, *Exon, &* Uttoxhatre *Coventriæ & Lichfeldiæ Diocesis, quas nuper acquisivimus ex hac causâ, pro nobis & hæredibus nostris dedimus & concessimus, damus & concedimus.* Habend' *& tenend' ipsis & successoribus suis in liberam, puram, & perpetuam Elemosinam ab omni exactione seculari, liberos, penitus & quietos imperpetuum. Concessimus etiam eisdem, pro nobis, & hæredibus nostris, & licentiam dedimus, quod iidem Custos & Canonici dictas Ecclesias appropriare, & eas sic appropriatas in proprios usus tenere possint, sibi & successoribus suis imperpetuum. Statuto de terris & tenementis ad manum mortuam non ponendis, edito non obstante.* Volumus *etiam dictis Custodi, & Canonicis, Militibus & aliis dictæ Capellæ Ministris inibi servituris tantum de thesauro nostro Annis singulis elargiri, quod, cum Emolumento de prædictis Ecclesiis provenientes, ad eorum victum & supportationem onerum sibi incumbentium juxta condecentiam status sui interim videbitur sufficiens, & honestum quousq; de bonis immobilibus, terris, beneficiis seu redditibus ad sufficientiam congruam & honorem nostrum, usq; ad summam mille librarum annuatim per nos contigerit provideri. Quæ omnia promittimus & pollicemur pro nobis & hæredibus nostris nos efficacitèr impleturos. In cujus rei testimonium has Literas nostras fieri fecimus Patentes. Teste meipso apud* Westmonasterium *sexto die* Augusti, *Anno Regni nostri Angliæ vicesimo secundo, Regni verò nostri Franciæ nono.*

N. II.

A *Bull* impowring the Archbishop of *Canterbury* and Bishop of *Winchester* to *Institute* the *College* of *Windesor.*

Ex ipso Autogr. in Ærar. Colleg. Windesor.

CLemens *Episcopus Servus servorum Dei, venerabilibus fratribus Archiepiscopo* Cantuariensi *& Episcopo* Wintoniensi, *salutem & Apostolicam benedictionem. Eximiæ devotionis affectus, quem charissimus in Christo Filius noster* Edwardus *Rex* Angliæ *illustris, ad nos & Romanam Ecclesiam gerit, promeretur, ut petitionibus ejus, quantùm cum Deo possumus, in his præsertim quæ Divini cultûs augmentum & animarum salutem respiciunt, favorabilitèr annuimus. Petitio siquidem pro parte dicti Regis, nobis nuper exhibita continebat, quod ipse Rex Zelo piæ devotionis accensus, cupiens terrena in cælestia, & transitoria in æterna fælici commercio commutare, in Capellâ Castri de* Windesore *ejusdem Regis,* Sarisburiensis *diœcesis, fundata*

ad

ad laudem Beatæ Mariæ *Virginis & S.* Georgii *martyris ac* Edwardi *Regis & Confessoris honorem, & divini cultûs augmentum, ac pro suâ, & aliorum fidelium animarum salute, unum Collegium Canonicorum, Presbyterorum, Clericorum, nec non Militum Regni* Angliæ, *ad inopiam vergentium, ac Ministrorum qui in eâdem Capellâ perpetuò Domino famulentur; & certum numerum ipsorum ordinare & canonicè fundare, ac de bonis suis propriis sufficienter dotare proponit. Quare pro parte ipsius Regis, fuit nobis humiliter supplicatum, ut vobis ordinandi ac statuendi, Authoritate nostrâ hujusmodi Collegium, & alia ad hoc pertinentia, ac etiam opportunam facultatem de benignitate Apostolicâ concedere dignaremur.* Nos *itaq; ipsius Regis pium in hac parte propositum in Domino commendantes, ac plenam de vestrâ circumspectione in Domino fiduciam obtinentes, hujusmodi dicti Regis supplicationibus inclinati, ordinandi, ac statuendi, & deputandi, hac vice, authoritate Apostolicâ, in dictâ Capellâ, per dictum Regem, dote prædictâ priùs ut præmittitur assignatâ, prout vobis hoc secundum Deum expedire videbitur, super quo vestram conscientiam oneramus, certum numerum Canonicorum, Presbyterorum, Clericorum, Militum ac Ministrorum prædictorum inibi, ut præmittitur, Domino famulantium perpetuò observandum; De quibus quidem Canonicis seu Presbyteris unus per vos authoritate eâdem deputetur qui Custos eorum perpetuò nuncupetur, eisque inibi præsideat, alios etiam Canonicos, Presbyteros, ac Clericos, Milites, & Ministros ejusdem Collegii & Capellæ, ac singulos ipsorum, ac bona eorundem regat pariter & gubernet; statuendi & ordinandi authoritate eâdem Ordinationes congruas & honestas juxta quas Custos, Canonici, Presbyteri Clerici, Milites, & Ministri Collegii prædicti & ipsorum singuli vivere debeant, eaque teneantur perpetuò firmiter observare, Parochialis Ecclesiæ & cujusslibet alterius in præmissis omnibus, nec non patronatûs Canonicorum, Presbyterorum, Clericorum, Militum & Ministrorum, ac Capellæ prædictæ, postquam ipsi deputati & ordinati inibi fuerint ut præfertur, eidem Regi ejusq; hæredibus & successoribus, juribus semper salvis ac perpetuò reservatis quibuscunq; Apostolicis statutis, & consuetudinibus contrariis nequaquam obstantibus; vobis & cuilibet vestrûm authoritate prædictâ, de speciali gratiâ, plenam & liberam concedimus facultatem. Dat.* Avinionæ *pridie Kalendas* Decembris *Pontificatûs nostri anno nono.*

N. III.

A *Bull* exempting the *Colledge* of *Windesor* from the Jurisdiction of *Arch-Bishops, &c.*

Ex ipso Autogr. ibidem.

CLemens *Episcopus servus servorum Dei venerabilibus fratribus Archiepiscopo* Cantuariensi *& Episcopo* Wyntoniensi *salutem & Apostolicam benedictionem. Ad ea libenter intendimus per quæ personæ Ecclesiasticæ liberiùs in tranquillitate pacis valeant Domino famulari. Nuper siquidem vobis ad charissimi in Christo filii nostri* Edwardi *Regis* Angliæ *illustris, supplicationis instantiam ordinandi & statuendi authoritate Apostolicâ in Capellâ Regis ejusdem in Castro de* Wyndesore Sarum *Diocesios fundatâ Collegium & certum numerum Canonicorum, Presbyterorum, Clericorum, Militum, ad inopiam vergentium, & Ministrorum inibi Domino perpetuò famulantium, quorum unus eis præsideat, qui Custos perpetuò nuncupetur, nec non ordinationes congruas & honestas, juxta quas Collegium, Custos, Canonici, Presbyteri, Clerici, Milites & Ministri prædicti vivere debeant faciendi sufficienti dote per dictum Regem de bonis propriis eisdem Capellæ & Collegio ad vestrum seu vestrûm alterius arbitrium priùs assignatâ, plenam & liberam per nostras certi tenoris literas concessimus facultatem prout in ipsis Literis pleniùs continetur. Nos itaq; volentes Capellam ac Collegium hujusmodi uberiori gratiâ prosequi & favore ipsius Regis supplicationibus inclinati, eximendi perpetuò authoritate eâdem, juxta modificationem inferiùs annotatam, Capellam, Collegium, Canonicos, Presbyteros, Clericos, Milites & Ministros prædictos, postquam ipsi in eâdem Capellâ recepti & sufficienter dotati fuerint, ut præfertur, ab omni ordinariâ jurisdictione, Dominio, & superioritate quâlibet Archiepiscoporum,* Episcoporum, *Archidiaconorum & aliorum quorumlibet Judicum & Officialium ipsorum Ecclesiasticorum, illaq; omnia ad jus & proprietatem beati* Petri, *& sub protectione Sedis Apostolicæ & nostrâ suscipiendi & nihilominus concedendi hac vice authoritate prædictâ, ut Custos dictæ Capellæ qui pro tempore fuerit habeat perpetuo Jurisdictionem Ecclesiasticam in Capellam Collegium, Canonicos, Presbyteros, Clericos, Milites, & Ministros prædictos, & eorum Successores, & singulos ipsorum & curam animarum etiam eorundem constitutionibus Apostolicis & Statutis ac consuetudinibus Provincialibus & Synodalibus & aliis quibuscunq; contrariis nequaquam obstantibus, vobis & vestrûm cuilibet auctoritate eadem plenam & liberam concedimus facultatem. Volumus autem quòd Custos dictæ Capellæ qui pro tempore fuerit curam animarum prædictarum à loci Diocesano recipere teneatur, & in his quæ ad ipsam curam pertinent perpetuo ei subditus sit, ad judicium verò perceptarum exemptionis & libertatis prædictarum. Volumus quòd ipsi Custos & Collegium unam Marcam sterlingorum in Festo Sancti* Georgii, *in cujus honore dicta Capella fundata existit, Cameræ Apostolicæ annis singulis solvere teneantur. Nos enim irritum & inane decernimus, siquid contra præmissa à quoquam quâvis autoritate scienter vel ignoranter contigerit attemptari. Datæ* Avinionæ ii. *Idus* Februarii *Pontificatus nostri Anno nono.*

IV. A

N. IV.

A *Patent* for *Institution* of the *Chancellor's Office.*

Pat. de an. 15. *E.* 4. *par.* 3. *m.* 18.

Edward *per la grace de Dieu, Roy* D'angliterre *& de* Fraunce *& Signieur* Hirlande; *à touts ceulx qui ces presentes verront ou orront, Saluiz. Come entre le Offices de nostre Ordre de la* Gartier, *Il ny ait null Office de* Chauncelleir *per les primer Estatuts d' icelleux Ordre, le quell Office est bien licite & necessarie ou dit Ordre, Volons & Ordonnons, que pur l' axaltation & bien dudit Ordre en Icelleux aura ung Officer nommè* Chauncelleir. *Et pur tant, que l' Office est grande, & de grande charge, & requiert avoir ung notable personne, volons, que null ne soit in Icelleux Office, s'il n'est in dignite ecclesiastique, Come Evesque. Considerans en oultre que la Chappell de Saint* George *en nostre Castell Royall de* Windesore, *ou le Ordre est foundè & essise, & establie dedens le diocesse de* Salisbury, *Et nous aians regart aux vertux, prudence & diligence de Reverent Pere en dieu, nostre chier, & bien ame Cousyn* Rychart Beauchamp, *à present Evesque du dit diocese de* Salisbury, *qui pur l'amour du dit ordre s'emplere de jour en jour vaquier & attendre a l'avauncement & bone profection de la belle ouvre per nos commences au dit Castell de* Windesore, *sur la largeur de la dit Chappell avons Icelleux Reverent pere in Dieu, Ordonné & establie, Ordonnons & establissons pur la terme de sa vie* Chauncellier *de la dit nostre Ordre de la* Gartier. *Et apres sa vie, volons & ordonnons que ses Successours Evesques de* Salisbury *à touts jours aient & occupent le dit Office de* Chauncellier *tant ainsi que cest nostre concession per l'advis de Confreres Chivalers du dit Ordre sit mis in execution sans prejudice de L'evesque de* Winchester *ensi que touchant le dit Ordre per les primers Estatuts len en doibt appertenir. Et ausi, volons & ordonnons, que le dessusdit* Chauncelleir *& les Successours Evesques du dit* Salisbury *ourent en garde le Grand Seale de la dessusdit nostre Ordre de* Gartier, *du quell Seale, Ils ne pourent Seelere nulles Lettres, se non per le forme & la maniere, Come Il est Ordonné per les estatuts dut dit Ordre, ou per commaundement especiall de nous & nous Successours Souverains du dit Ordre. In testmoigne de quel chose cestes nostres Lettres avons nous faicles Patentes. Testmoigne nous mesmes à* Westminster, x. *jour* Octobre, *L'an de nostre Reigne quinsiesme.*

N. V.

The *Letters* for *Institution* of the Office of *Garter.*

Ex Autogr. in Biblioth. Hatton.

A *Tous ceulx qui ces presentes Lettrez verront ou orront, Nous* Humfrey *Duc de* Glocestre, Richard de Beauchamp, *Conte de* Warwick, Robert *Seigneur de* Willuby; Henry *Seigneur* fitz Hugh. Loys *de* Robessart, *Seigneur de* Bourchier; Johan Cornwaylle. Thomas Herpingham, Gualtier Hungerford, Johan de Robessart, Symon Felberg, Guillime Philippe, Hartoulx Clux, *Chivaliers, partie du nombre de la Compaignie des Confreres de la Noble Ordre du* Jartier, *fondee en l' onneur Dieu, nostre Dame, & de Monsieur Saint* George, *dedens la sainte Chapelle du glorieux Saint dessusdit assise ou Chastell Royal de* Windesore, *Salute. Comme ja pieca tres-excellent Prince de Noble memoyrie le Roy* Henry *le quint nostre Soveraigne Seigneur, qui Dieu absoille, en son vivant par bonne & meure deliberation contemplant à la Noble contemplacion de la dit Noble Ordre, come Soverain d'icelle, ou plaine Chapitre de la dite Compaigne & confraternité, per l'adays & consentement de tous les Confreres, & present Reverend Pere en dieu* Henry, *Evesque de* Wincestre, *Prelat de la dit Noble Ordre, voulut, ordonna, & constitua en accroyssant le nom de la dit Noble Ordre, & pour estre entendant au service de ladit Compaigne les confreres dicelle & de toute gentillesse ung servant d'armes. Lequel pour la dignitè de le dit Ordre voult q'uil feust Soverain dedans l' Office d'armes, sur toutes les autres Servans d'Armes du tres-noble Royaume d'* Angleterre. *Et en confirmant la dit Ordre fut nommé* Jartier, *Roy D'armes des Angloys. Apres le quel honorable propos fait & accomply, le dit Servant d'Armes nommé* Jartier, *Impose ou nom de la dit Ordre à pleu a nostre createur mettre hors de ceste mortelle vie, nostre Soveraign Seigneur, avant que ordonnance de sustenance feust ordonnè ad servitur* Jartier, *pour la supportation de son petit estate Quelles chosis considerees, & veu l'entente de nostre dit Soveraigne Seigneur en L'ordre tant fructieuse & glorieuse en vertu & honneur, desirans pour honneur & Reverence de la dit Noble Ordre au dit Serviteur estre pourveu de raisonable substance parentre nous, pour mulx maintenir son petit Estate, parquoy Il en puisse plus honorablement soy contenir à l' onneur du service de la dit Noble Ordre, Jusques au temps que nostre dit Soveraigne Seigneur le Roy* Henry *le* vi. *qui a present est Jeune, soit a parfait aage, & que par son noble advyt & Conseil à celuy temps soyt plus largement ordonne de presente d'ung commun assentement nous dessusdiz, present le dit Reverend Pere en Dieu & Prelat de la dit Ordre, l'Evesque de* Wincestre, *consyans es honneurs & gentillesses des compaignons confreres absens, en dedens le Chapitre de ladite confraternite, luy avons assigné & ordonné a avoir & percevoir de chescun de nous annuelment, à chescune Feste de Saint* George, *certaine pension selon la fourme & maniere que cy apres sensuyt. Cell assavoir, du dit Reverend Pere en Dieu & Prelat de la dit Ordre, la somme de* v. *marcz par ann; & de chescun Duc Compaignion & Confrere* vi. *Nobles par ann; & de chescun Baron ou Banneret Compaignon & Confrere quatre Nobles; & de chescun Bachellier, Chivailler, Compaignion & Confrere deux Nobles par ann; Desquells Pensions et Sommes*

Sommes dessusditz au commencement pour la premier annee à la faisans de cestes l'avons contente, & voulons, & luy accordons annuellement eus & par la fourme & maniere que dit est, jusques au temps que nostre dit Souveraign Seigneur comme dit est, soit aparfait aage, pryant & requerant tous & chescun les Compaignons Confreres de la dit Noble Ordre, absens au faicti de ceste ordonnance, que benignement & pour honneur de la dit Ordre à cese vueillent consentir, & Icelle Ordonnance à louer, Et pour ceste presente annee, chescune selon est at luy destribuer selon la fourme dessusdit. Et pour aprovance que selon nostre intencion ces presentes procederont selon la voye de honneur & gentillesse les avons faites sceller du seel de la dit Noble Ordre. Donne du lieu de Wyndesore *au Chapitre de la dit Confraternite, en la feste de Monsieur Saint* George, *Lan de Grace Mille* CCCC. XXII.

N. VI.

The *Oath* taken by the *Prelate* and *Chancellor* of the Order.

Juramentum Prælati & Cancellarii *Ordinis, quod Scriba eisdem exhibebit, in præsentiâ* Supremi, *aut ab eo* Deputati.

Ex Libro Nigro, p. 313.

JUrabis, quod sicubi sufficienter fueris præmonitus, ipsemet Conciliis celebrandis intereris; quod nullo duceris affectu, favore, vel odio, sed nec timore; quo minus in rebus omnibus quas tibi Supremus *injunget, quod verè habet, sinceriter enarres.*

Quod quoties præsens aderis, nominationes Equitum creandorum veracitèr accipies; & acceptas, Supremo *præsentabis.*

Jurabis itaq; quòd cùm ad consilium voceris, & à secretis ibi fueris, benè fidelis, ac tacituenus eris, nec ulla pèrflues, si quid secretè tenendum audias.

Quodque servabis ac sustentabis honores hujus Ordinis, atq; omnium qui in eo sunt, & si datum fuerit ut possis, pro viribus augmentabis.

Si verò quid excogitatum aut intentatum contra fuerit, si quâ resciscere potueris aut intelligere, pro viribus obstabis, & revelatum, ubi oporteat, è vestigio curabis, ut suppetie quantocius ferantur, &c.

Persimile Juramentum Decani, *quando admittitur, &* Scribæ *erit, quorum id alter exhibebit alteri. Sui alter absfuerit,* Caduciaor Regius *eo fungetur munere.*

N. VII.

The *Oath* taken by *Garter* Principal *King of Arms.*

Juramentum Garteri *præcipui* Regis Armorum, *Scriba id coram Supremo Sociisq; præsentibus exhibente.*

Ex lib. N. p. 314.

JUrabis quod obedies, Supremo *inprimis Deindè cæteris hujus eminentissimi Ordinis Equitibus, & Officia in eo gerentibus, in biis præsertim rebus quæ ad te spectabunt, nec rationi pugnabunt.*

Et quoniam ad Consilium admissus tanquam à Secretis eris Jurabis quod fidelis ac taciturnus eris, nihil illinc effutiens.

Jurabis itidem, quod si quis Equitum hujus illustrissimi Ordinis ab hac luce subtracius fuerit, Supremo *significatum id illico curabis, & mox aliis superviventibus.*

Quod omnia fidei tuæ curæq; credita, & quæcunq; mandata atq; interrunncia benè ac fidelitèr exequeris & perimplebis.

Jurabis item, quod diligenter inquires de præclaris ac nobilibus Actis uniuscujusq; Equitis hujus insignissimi Ordinis, & intellecta Scribæ veracitèr expones, ut ipse describens non minori diligentiâ reponat, dignæq; memoriæ commendet.

Denique, Jurabis in summâ, quod officium tuum fidelitèr exercebis in omnibus, quæ tuâ intererunt, sicut & tu Dei ac Sancti hujus Evangelium sperabis auxilium.

N. VIII.

The *Oath* taken by the *Gentleman-Usher,* named the *Black-Rod.*

Ex MS. A. penes Guil. le Neve. Eq. Aur. nuper Clarenc. R. Armor.

YOu being chosen and named by the King's Majesty to be Gentleman-Usher *of the* Black-Rod, *shall promise and swear by the holy Evangelists, by you bodily touched, truly and faithfully to observe and keep all the points of the Statutes of the said Order, and every Article in them contained, as to you belongeth and appertaineth, as God help you and this holy Evangely.*

N. IX.

A *Warrant* for providing and delivering the *Liveries* of the *Prelate* and *Chancellor.*

Ex ipso Autogr.

Charles R.

OUR Will and Pleasure is, that you provide and deliver to the right reverend Father in God, the Bishop of Winchester, *Prelate*

of our Order of the Garter, *and to Sir* Richard Fanshaw *Knight, our deputed* Chancellor *of our said Order, for their Livery for the same, and to each of them one Robe of Purple Velvet, containing* 18 *yards, and* 10 *yards of white Taffaty for lining thereof; as also two Scutcheons of St.* George, *within two Garters wrought with Letters and Purles of Damask, Gold, and Pearls, with Laces, Buttons, and Tassels of Purple Silk, and Venice Gold, together with a Purse of blue Velvet richly embroidered, according to the usual form, with Strings and Tassels to the later, for carrying the Seals of our said Order. And for so doing these our Letters shall be your sufficient discharge. Given under the Signet of our said Order at our Court at* Whitehall, *the* 19. *day of* February *in the* 13. *year of our Reign* 1660.

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Councellor Edward *Earl of* Sandwich, *Master of our Great Wardrobe, or in his absence to his Deputy.*

X.

A *Warrant* for providing and delivering the *Liveries* of the *Register, Garter,* and *Black Rod.*

Ex ipso Autogr.

Charles R.

OUR *Will and Pleasure is, that you forthwith prepare and deliver to our trusty and well-beloved Doctor* Bruyn Reeves, *Dean of* Windesor, *and Register of our Noble Order of the* Garter, *To our trusty and well-beloved Sir* Edward Walker *Knight,* Garter, *Principal* King of Arms, *And to our trusty and well-beloved Servant* John Eyton *Esquire, Usher of the* Black Rod, *for their Liveries, and to every of them eighteen yards of Scarlet Satten for one Robe, and ten yards of white Taffata for lining of the same, with an Escotcheon of St.* George, *placed on the left shoulder, as also Laces, Buttons, and Tassels of Scarlet Silk, and Venice Gold: and for so doing, these shall be your sufficient Warrant and Discharge. Given under our Signet of our said Order, at our Court at* Whitehall *the* 20. *day of* February *in the* 13. *Year of our Raign,* 1660.

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Councellor, Edward *Earl of* Sandwich *Master of our Great Wardrobe, or in his absence to his Deputy.*

XI.

Letters Patent for assigning 1200 *l. per annum* to the use of the *Order.*

Pat. 12. *Car.* 1. *pars* 25.

CAROLUS *Dei gratiâ* Angliæ, Scociæ, Franciæ, *&* Hiberniæ *Rex, Fidei Defensor,* &c. *Omnibus ad quos præsentes Literæ pervenerint, salutem. Cùm juxta Prædecessorum & Progenitorum nostrorum Regalium morem, Clarissimi & Nobilissimi Ordinis* Garterii *Fundatores & ad honorem ejusdem Ordinis magis augendum & ampliandum, Annuitatem sive annualem pensionem Mille & ducentarum librarum per annum, ad usum & servicium dicti Ordinis, per manus* Cancellarii *nostri hæredum & successorum nostrorum dicti Ordinis pro tempore existente recipiendam, & de tempore in tempus, ut inferius in hiis præsentibus mentionatur expendendam, stabilire & assignare decrevimus.* Sciatis, *quòd nos de gratiâ nostrâ speciali, ac ex certâ scientiâ & mero motu nostris, voluimus, ac per præsentes, pro nobis, hæredibus, & successoribus nostris declaramus, ordinamus, appunctuamus, & assignamus, quòd prædicta Annuitas, annualis pensio, vel summa Mille & ducentarum librarum legalis monetæ* Angliæ, *modo & formâ inferiùs limitatis, dilecto & fideli nostro* Thomæ Rowe *Militi, modo* Cancellario *dicti Ordinis* Garterii *nostri, nec non* Cancellario *ejusdem Ordinis pro tempore existente annuatim soluta fuerit de Custumis & Subsidiis aut monetis in loco Custumos, Subsidia & Impositiones recipi appunctuato vel appunctuando, de & pro omnibus & omnimodis vinis quibuscunq; ad Portum Civitatis* London *de tempore in tempus adducendis, per manus Firmariorum sive Collectorum nostrorum, hæredum & successorum nostrorum eorundem Custumorum, Subsidiorum, Monetarum, & Impositionum pro tempore existente ad festa Annunciacionis beatæ* Mariæ *Virginis, & Sancti* Michaelis *Archangeli, per equales portiones singulis annis imperpetuum solvenda: Primâ solutione inde incipiendâ, & fiendâ ad festa Annunciacionis beatæ* Mariæ *Virginis proximè sequentia post datum presentium.* Quare volumus, *ac pro nobis, hæredibus & successoribus nostris, firmiter præcipimus, & mandamus præfatis Firmariis, & Collectoribus nostris, hæredum & successorum nostrorum pro tempore existente, prædictorum Custumorum, & Subsidiorum, aut Monetæ in loco Custumos, Subsidia, & Impositiones recipi appunctuato vel appunctuando, de aut pro omnibus & omnimodis prædictis vinis quibuscunq; ad prædictum Portum Civitatis* London, *de tempore in tempus ut præfertur adducendis: Quod ipsi & eorum aliquis, vel aliqui de Redditibus, Reventionibus, Proficuis, & denariorum summis de eisdem Custumis & Subsidiis & cæteris præmissis infra Portum Civitatis* London *emergentibus & provenientibus ac in manibus suis de tempore in tempus remanere contingentibus, prædictam annuitatem, sive annualem pensionem,*

pensionem, vel summam Mille & ducentarum librarum bonæ & legalis Monetæ Angliæ *per annum præfato* Thomæ Rowe *Militi*, Cancellario *dicti Ordinis nostri* Garterii *modò existenti*: *nec non* Cancellario *ejusdem Ordinis qui pro tempore fuerit pro & durante termino quo in eodem Officio* Cancellarii *dicti Ordinis præmanserit, in formâ prædictâ, solvent, aut solvi facient, secundum veram intentionem harum literarum nostrarum patentium, absq; ulteriori warranto à nobis, hæredibus, vel successoribus nostris, in eâ parte procurando, aut obtinendo. Et hæ Literæ nostræ Patentes, vel Irrotulamentum earundem, erunt annuatim, & de tempore in tempus, tam præfatis Firmariis & Collectoribus quam omnibus aliis Officiariis, & Ministris nostris, hæredum vel successorum nostrorum, quibus pertinebit, sufficiens Warrantum & exoneratio in hâc parte.* Et ulterius *volumus, ac per præsentes, pro nobis, hæredibus & successoribus nostris, firmiter injungendo, præcipimus & mandamus tàm Thesaurario, Cancellario, Sub-Thesaurario & Baronibus Scaccarii nostri, hæredum & successorum nostrorum quàm omnibus aliis Officiariis & Ministris nostris hæredum & successorum nostrorum ejusdem Scaccarii pro tempore existente, Quod ipsi, & eorum quilibet, super solam demonstrationem harum literarum nostrarum patentium, vel Irrotulamenti earundem, plenam, Integram, debitàmq; allocationem, & exonerationem manifestam de omnibus & singulis denariorum summis, quæ prædicti* Firmarii *vel Collectores nostri hæredum vel successorum nostrorum prædictorum Custumorum & Subsidiorum ac cæterorum præmissorum, præfato* Thomæ Rowe *modo Cancellario dicti Ordinis* Garterii, *nec non* Cancellario *ejusdem Ordinis qui pro tempore fuerit, secundum veram intentionem præsentium aliquo tempore imposterum solvent, eisdem Firmariis, & Collectoribus & eorum cuilibet respective, pro tempore existente, super Compota sua in Scaccario nostro, hæredum, vel successorum nostrorum vel alibi reddenda facient, & de tempore in tempus fieri causabunt; Et hæ literæ nostræ patentes, vel irrotulamentum earundem erunt, tàm præfato Thesaurario, Cancellario, Sub-thesaurario & Baronibus Scaccarii nostri prædicti, quàm omnibus aliis Officiariis & Ministris nostris, hæredum & successorum nostrorum ejusdem Scaccarii pro tempore existente, sufficiens Warrantum & exoneratio in hâc parte. Ac insuper volumus, ac per præsentes, intentionem & beneplacitum nostrum, pro nobis, hæredibus, & successoribus nostris, declaramus: Quod præfatus* Thomas Rowe, *modò* Cancellarius *prædicti Ordinis* Garterii *nostri, nec non* Cancellarius *dicti Ordinis qui imposterum pro tempore fuerit, prædictam annuitatem sive annualem pensionem vel summam Mille & ducentarum librarum per annum impendet, & de tempore in tempus impendi faciet & causabit ad annualia & Ordinaria feoda, pensiones & solutiones quibusdam personis solubilia, & solvenda, juxta Constitutiones, per Supremum dicti Ordinis & Milites ejusdem in eorum pleno Capitulo, ordinandas, Magnoq; Sigillo ejusdem Ordinis firmandas. Ac in casibus extraordinariis, per Warrantum speciale* Supremi *Ordinis, manu signandum, & Sigillo dicti Ordinis sigillandum, Eademq; solutiones per prædictum Cancellarium Ordinis prædicti pro tempore existente faciendæ sine feodo aut vadiis in ea parte capiendis; Quodq; præfatus* Thomas Rowe, *modò* Cancellarius *dicti Ordinis, &* Cancellarius *ejusdem Ordinis qui pro tempore fuerit, de prædictâ annuitate, annuali pensione, vel summâ Mille & ducentarum librarum de tempore in tempus sic ut præfertur recipiendâ & expendendâ in festo Sancti* Georgii *vicesimo tertio die* Aprilis *annuatim existente, aut in die per prorogationem pro eodem Festo appunctuando verum ac debitum Compotum per dictum* Cancellarium *subscribendum annuatim faciet & reddet. Qui quidem Compotus annuatim sic reddendus infra quatuor dierum spacium postea, per totum Capitulum aut per tres vel plures Milites dicti Ordinis examinatus fuerit, ac post hujusmodi examinationem & approbationem ejusdem per subscriptionem nominum eorum eidem Compoto allocabitur, quorum prædicto* Cancellario *dicti Ordinis pro tempore existente hæredibus, Executoribus, & Administratoribus suis plenaria fuerit exoneratio in hâc parte.* Cum tamen *acciderit quod præfati* Firmarii *prædictorum Custumorum, Subsidiorum, ac cæterorum præmissorum, pro tempore existente, ad occasionem nostras necessarias accommodandas, Redditus sive firmarias suas pro præmissis, aut parte eorundem solubiles, pro quodam tempore adhuc venturo, præ manibus solverent: Ita quod prædicta annualis pensio Mille & ducentarum librarum totaliter per ipsos secundum veram intentionem præsentium solvi non poterit; Tunc volumus ac per præsentes pro nobis, hæredibus & successoribus nostris beneplacitum nostrum declaramus per præsentes: Quod interim, ac in hujusmodi casibus,* Thesaurarius Angliæ summus *nostri, hæredum vel successorum nostrorum, pro tempore existente, dictam pensionem, de aliquibus aliis Custumis, Subsidiis, & Impositionibus, nobis & hæredibus & successoribus nostris, pro bonis & Merchandizis in Regnum* Angliæ *importandis, & de eodem exportandis solubilibus, præfato* Cancellario *dicti Ordinis pro tempore existente, secundum tenorem & veram intentionem præsentium solvi ordinabit, faciet, & causabit. Et hæ Literæ nostræ Patentes vel Irrotulamentum earundem præfato* Thesaurario *nostro, hæredum vel successorum nostrorum, pro tempore existente, plena exoneratio & warrantum fuerit in ea parte:* Eo quod, *expressa mentio de vero valore annuo, aut de certitudine præmissorum, vel eorum alicujus, aut de aliis donis, sive Concessionibus per nos seu per aliquem Progenitorum sive Prædecessorum nostrorum præfato* Thomæ Rowe, *ante hæc tempora factis, in præsentibus minimè facta existit, aut aliquo Statuto, Actu, Ordinatione, Provisione, Proclamatione sive Restrictione in contrarium inde antehàc habito, facto, edita, ordinata sive provisa, aut aliquâ aliâ re causâ, vel materiâ quâcunq; in aliquo nòn obstante.* In cujus *rei testimonium, has Literas nostras fieri fecimus Patentes,* Teste *meipso apud* Westmonasterium *vicesimo tertio die* Januarii, *Anno regni nostri tertio decimo.*

XII.

N. XII.

A Commission for payment of *Fees, Pensions, Salaries, &c.* relating to the *Order.*

Sir *Tho. Rowe's Journal, p.* 40.

CHarles *by the Grace of God, King of* Great Britain, France, *and* Ireland, *Soveraign of the most Noble Order of the* Garter. *To our truly and well-beloved Servant* Sir Thomas Rowe *Knight, and* Chancellor *of our said most Noble Order. Whereas in augmentation of the honor of our Order, and for the expences thereunto belonging, we have of our own* Royal *bounty setled, given, and granted by our Letters Patents, bearing date at* Westminster, *on the* 23. *day of* January, *in the* 13. *year of our Raign, one yearly Pension and Revenue of* 1200 l. *unto and upon our Order, to be received and disbursed by you our present* Chancellour, *and your Successors in the same Office, according to such rules and limitations, as in our said* Letters Patents *more at large do and may appear: We do by this our Commission signifie our Will and Pleasure, and declare, and give unto you our Chancellor full power and authority to pay, or cause to be paid out of the said Revenue of* 1200 l. *in your receipt, all and every the annual and ordinary Fees, Pensions, Salaries, and other Payments, usually paid to any of our Officers, Alms-Knights, or others, who do their yearly duty and service any way unto our said Noble Order appertaining, either by Charter, Grant, or Assignation under our Privy Seal, or Signet, or by any other lawful way whatsoever, taking and receiving from them, and every one of them, an acquittance, and receipt under their hands for your discharge; which shall be good and available in Law, to be pleaded against us, our Heirs, and Successors for the same. And in particular, we do by this our Commission give you full power and order to pay, or cause to be paid unto your self, at our* Chancellor *for the time being, the sum of* 100 l. *yearly: and to the* Register *of our Order for the time being* 50 l. *yearly: and to* Garter, *our Principal* King at Arms, *for the time being* 50 l. *yearly; and to our* Usher *called the* Black Rod, *for the time being* 30 l. *yearly: and to every one of our Poor or* Alms-Knights, *being* 13. *at our Castle of* Windesore, *for the time being, yearly* 18 l. 5 s. *in manner and form following. That is to say, every of the said Pensions quarterly upon the Feasts of St.* John Baptist, *St.* Michael *the Archangel, the* Nativity *of our* Lord, *and the* Annuntiation *of our blessed Lady the Virgin* Mary, *by even and equal portions and payments. The first payment whereof to begin at and upon the Feast of St.* John Baptist, *next and immediately ensuing after the date hereof, in full discharge of any, and all the said Fees or Pensions to them formerly by us given or paid. As also to pay or cause to be paid any other annual and usual charge, to any other inferior Officer or Servant, for their service or attendance, And this our Commission shall be to you a sufficient Warrant, to pay any, and all the said annual and ordinary Fees, Pensions, Payments, and other Charges, whether named, or not named, having been usually due, and paid, whatsoever, upon account thereof to be made and given, and Acquittances produced as aforesaid for the Receipts, to be presented and shewn to us, or to so many of the Knights of our most Noble Order, as we have or shall depute in Chapiter to take, liquid and allow your said Disbursments according to the tenor hereof, under their hands in writing, and according to the directions, and limitations in our said Letters Patents, and order and provision therein made, and had for your discharge: which said allowances shall also be a sufficient discharge against us, our Heirs, and Successorss, to be pleaded in any of our Courts of Record within our Highness Dominions. Given under the Seal of our said most Noble Order, the* 3. *of* May *at our Court at* Whitehall, *in the* 14. *Year of our Reign,* 1638.

N. XIII.

A *Letter* of *Summons* for *Electing* a *Knight,* upon the death of the Lord *Fitz-Hugh.*

Registrum Chartaceum, f. 12.*b.*

De par le Roy, *Souverain* de Pordre du *Jarretier.*

T*Reseher & soiall &c. Pour ce que le Sire* Fitz-Hugh Henry, *n'agairs nt de nos Compaignons de lordre de* Jarter, *est, la* xi. *jour de* Januere *darreine passé a Dieu commaunde que Dieux assoile, nous vous certifions clerement selone la tenure de lez estatuz pour faire vostre devvir dex messez par la morte du quele en ycell est un place vacante, a le quel il coviente par lez ditz estatuz eslier un autre compaignon en son lieu, deins sys semaines appres la certification de la morte suisdite que nous au presente ne purrons honement parformer, au cause resonable que nous destourba; Et pour taunte nous volons & vous chargeons que sur lez peines de les estatuz suisditz saunz excusacion soies ou nous a* Wyndesore *en vostre propre persone la veille de Seinte* George *procheine venante, a le Chapitre a le oure de tierce, pur accomplere ceo q'appartindra a lez estatuz suisditz en cez casez, si non que vous nous signifiez le jour & lieu suisdit clerement de soubz vostre seal de vous armez cause jouste de vostre destourbier digne destre allowe, &c. Don, &c.*

Another

NUM. XIV.

Another upon the death of Sir *Robert Dumphreville.*
Ex eodem Registro.

De par le Roy, *Souverain* de l'ordre de *Jarretier.*

TRescher & bien ame. Pour ce que feu Sire Robert Dumphreville, *que Dieux absoille, en son vivant un de noz compaignons de l'ordre* Jarretier *a la de vie a trespas le darrain jour de* Januer *darrain passé, & que selon lez estatuz du dit Ordre sommes tenuz en advertir ung chescun dez Compaignons, vous certifions son dit trespas, ad fin que facies vostre devoir des messes, & prieres les quelles estes tenuz faire, dire, & celebrer, pour le salut de son ame. Par le mort du quel est un place vacant, & convient selon les ditz estatuz aultre eslier en son lieu, dedans fys sepmaines apres la certification du dit trespas, si bonnement faire se peut, vel que bonnement au present faire ne pourrons: Si voulons & vous mandons sur lez peines contenues es diz estatuz, qe soies ovec nous la vaigle Seint* George, *à l'eure de tierce prochein, venant pour faire & accomplir en ce que dit est come per les ditz estatuz appertendra. Et si estre ny poves, nous signifies soubz vostre seell la cause de vostre empechement, par quoy vostre excusation puissions congnoistre & l'avoir agreable, s'ainsi est quelle soit digne destre accepté, & ny faites faulte. Treschier & bien ame, &c.*

NUM. XV.

A *Dispensation* for *Installation* of the Duke of *York* and Prince *Rupert*; till *Windesor Castle* should return to the *Soverain's* possession.
Ex ipso Autogr. penes præf. Jac. Palmer.

Charles R.

CHARLES *by the grace of God King of* England, Scotland, Fancee, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith, &c. and Soveraign of the most Noble Ordre of the* Garter. *To all and singular unto whom these our Letters Patent shall come greeting.* Whereas *by the Statutes of our said most Noble Order, all Knights elected to be Companions of the same are (according to usual form and Ceremony) to be installed at the Stalls of the Order, in the Chappel of our Royal Castle of* Windesor, *before they can be admitted to have their Stalls, Places, and Votes amongst the rest of the Companions there. And whereas our dearly beloved Son* James *Duke of* York, *and our intirely beloved Nephew, Prince* Rupert, *Count* Palatine *of the* Rheyne, *Duke of* Bavaria *and* Cumberland, *and Earl of* Holdernesse, *were in a Chapter held at* York, *the twentieth day of* April *in the eighteenth year of our Reign, elected and chosen Companions of our said most Noble Order; but, by reason of the succeeding distractions and Rebellions in this our Kingdom, their Installations at our said Castle of* Windesor, *could not according to the Statutes aforesaid be celebrated and performed, by reason the same hath been ever sithence, and still is in the possession of the Rebels.* Know ye, *that we as Soveraign of the said most Noble Order (unto whom the power of dispensing with any of the said Statutes is reserved) have thought fit to dispence (in regard the not performance of the Statutes hath not been by the default of these elected Knights) and by these presents do accordingly dispence with the Installations of our aforesaid* Son *and* Nephew, *both for time and place, when and where those Installations are and ought to be made, willing and ordaining that they and either of them, shall by virtue of this our Dispensation, at all times hereafter, be held, reputed, and taken to be Companions of our said most Noble Order; And shall have, possess, and enjoy all manner of Titles, places, preheminences, Votes, Ornaments, and Priviledges of the same, as if they or either of them had been formally and actually installed at our said Castle of* Windesor; *any Law, Statute, or Ordinance made to the contrary in any wise notwithstanding.* Provided always, *and we do hereby declare, that our said most dear* Son, *and our entirely beloved* Nephew, *shall (notwithstanding these our Letters of* Dispensation*) first take the Oath usually taken by the Knights at their Installation, and hereafter act and perform all such Rights and Ceremonies as are accustomed at the Installations of the Companions of our said most Noble Order of the* Garter, *when it shall be thought fit, and possible for them to perform the same at our Castle of* Windesor *aforesaid. And that this our* Dispensation *made upon such most weighty and urgent necessities shall not be drawn into consequence or example in time to come. Given under the Great Seal of our Order, and our hand first superscribed thereunto, at our Palace at* Oxford, *this seventeenth of* January, *in the twentieth year of our Reign,* 1644.

NUM. XVI.

A *Dispensation* for want of a *full number* of *Knights* to constitute a *Chapter* of *Election*; and their entring the *Chapter* without *Mantles.*
Palmer's large Journal.

Charles R.

CHARLES *by the Grace of God, &c.* Soveraign *of the most Noble Order of the* Garter, *To all the Knights and Companions of our most Noble Order, Greeting: Whereas we have determined upon the death of divers of our Knights, and vacancy of their Stalls, to hold a Chapter of Election here in our City of*

York, *and because there are not now attending on our person a sufficient number of 6 Knights, and being now in our Army they have not their Mantles ready (in which case by the ancient Statutes of our Order there could be no Election, nor any Knight ought to enter into the Chapter so without our Royal Dispensation) We of our supream power and authority, as* Soveraign *of our Order, do by these our Letters dispence with both the said Statutes of want of Number, and entring the Chapter without Mantles; and do hereby give leave to all our Knights attending our presence, to hold a Chapter of Election, by giving their Votes according to Custom in other Scrutenies. Given under the Great Seal of our Order the* 12. *of* September *in the sixteenth year of our Reign* 1640.

NUM. XVII.

A *Dispensation* for the [illegible] appearing of the *Knights* with their *Robes* at the three *Chapters* held before the 15. of *April* 1661. and want of a competent and usual *Number* of *Knights*.

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

Charles R.

WHereas by the ancient and evermore observed Statutes of the most Noble Order of the Garter, *it is expressly provided, that no less than the Number of six Knights or Companions of the same, besides the* Soveraign *or his Lieutenant, should make up a compleat Chapter; and that none of the said Knights and Companions should enter into the said Chapter without having on their long Mantles, or upper Robes of the Order; We having designed the* 15. 16. *and* 17. *days of* April *next for the Installment of divers Elect Knights in the place of the deceased, and for the celebration of the Feast of St.* George, *at our Castle of* Windesor, *upon which occasion, and for the resolving upon sundry preparatories to the same, being to deliberate with the ancient Knights of the Order, who are neither in number sufficient to make up a Chapter, or all of them provided with Robes by reason of the late troubles; to supply both defects both in the present and other subsequent Chapters, which we may have occasion to assemble before the said Installment and Festival: We as* Soveraign *of the said Order, have and do dispence with the Statutes of it, as to those particulars, and are graciously pleased, that, those two defects notwithstanding, the aforesaid present and ensuing Chapters shall be as legal, and of as much force and validity as if the number of the Companions required by the Statutes were full and compleat, and the Companions that do or are to compose them, had their Mantles or upper Robes on them. Given under our Signet of the Order, at* Whitehall *the* 29. *day of* March 1661.

NUM. XVIII.

A *Letter* signifying *Election*, and a Summons to receive *Investiture* with the *Garter* and *George*.

MS. penes W. le N. Cl.

RIght trusty and well beloved, we greet you well: Ascertaining you, that in consideration as well of your approved truth, and fidelity, as also of your courageous and valiant acts of Knighthood, with other your probable merits experientially known in sundry parties and behalf: We with the Companions of the Noble Order of the Garter, *assembled at Election holden this day, within this our Mannor of* Greenwich, *have elected and chosen you amongst others to be one of the Companions of the said Order, as your said merits condignly require. And therefore we will that with convenient diligence upon the sight thereof, ye address you unto our presence, to receive such things as to the said Order appertaineth. Given under our Signet at the Mannor of* Greenwich *the* 24. *day of* April.

NUM. XIX.

A *Letter* signifying *Election*, sent with the *Garter* and *George*.

MS. 4. *penes Arthur. Com. Anglesey, p.* 131. *b.*

RIght trusty and well-beloved, we greet you well, giving you to understand, that in consideration as well of your approved fidelity, in the service of Us and our Realm at all times shewed, and for the increase of Honor and Virtue in you, We with the Companions of our Noble Order of the Garter *assembled at the Election holden the* 24. *day of* April *last past, within our Palace at* Westminster, *have Elected and Chosen you among others to be one of the Companions of our said Order, as your merits condignly do require; Wherefore we have sent unto you by our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir* Gilbert Dethick, *Knight,* Garter, King of Arms, *Our said Order of the* Garter, *the same to use as to this Election of you appertaineth: wishing that God may increase you in virtue and honour, as amply as any other that hath been Elected and placed in the same. Teoven under the Signet of our said Order at our Honor at* Greenwich, *the* 5. *of* May *in the* 26. *year of our Reign.*

To our right Trusty and Well-beloved, the Lord Cobham, *Lord Warden of the* Cinque-Ports, *Knight and Companion of our most Noble Order of the* Garter.

NUM. XX.

A *Letter* signifying *Election*, when the present *Soveraign* was beyond the Seas.

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

Charles R.

CHARLES *the Second by the grace of God King of* England, Scotland, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith, &c. and* Soveraign *of the most Noble Order of the* Garter. *To our right trusty and entirely beloved Cousin and Councellor* James *Marquess of* Ormond, *our Lieutenant in the Kingdom of* Ireland *Greeting.* Whereas *our Royal Progenitors, the Kings of* England, *have in all times since the institution of the most Noble Order of St.* George, *called the* Garter, *by our most noble and victorious Auncester King* Edward *the Third, elected and chosen into the Fellowship thereof such Princes and other eminent persons, as well Strangers, as of their own Subjects, as have for nobility and greatness of their births, accompanied with heroick virtues, especially in martial actions, been thought worthy of the same, We therefore considering that since the late horrid* Rebellion *in that our Kingdom, many of the Companions thereof are dead, and that some others, contrary to their honor and Oaths, have deserted their allegiance, and are no more worthy to be esteemed Companions of so noble an Order, and finding how necessary it is for our service, and the honor of the said Order, to elect others in their places vacant, who for their birth, courage, and fidelity, may be fit to be admitted thereunto. Know you therefore that we duly weighing the eminence of your birth and* Family, *and above all the great and most extraordinary services done by you for many years past, and still continued in the condition of our Lieutenant in that our Kingdom, together with your singular courage and fidelity, have thought it fit by our power, as* Soveraign *of the said Order (dispencing with the usual Ceremonies) to elect and chuse you our said right trusty and entirely beloved Cousin* James *Marquess of* Ormond, *to be Fellow and Companion of the said most Noble Order of the* Garter, *and do herewith send unto you the* George *and* Ribband, *part of the Ensigns thereof, by our trusty and well-beloved Servant* Henry Seymour *Esq; one of our Bed-Chamber (in regard Sir* Edward Walker *Knight* Garter, Principal King of Arms, *the proper Officer, is otherways employed in our service) the which we do hereby will and authorise you to wear. And because it is not possible at present to have all other Ceremonies and Additions incident to the same fully perfected, We do further will and authorize you to wear and use the* Garter *or* Ribband *on your left Leg, the* Glory *or* Star *of Silver with St.* George's *Cross embroidered within a* Garter, *upon your Cloak and upper Garments, as likewise the* Great Collar *of the Order upon such days as are accustomed to use the* Garter *about your arms, and to style your self Knight and Companion of the said most Noble Order of the* Garter, *in as ample manner as if you had been installed in our Castle of* Windesor; *where (when it shall please God to restore us to the possession thereof) you shall formally be invested, & receive the habit and all other the above recited Ornaments of the said most Noble Order. And We no way doubt, but as you have hitherto with singular courage, fidelity, and ability, served us, so you will still continue to do the same, as becomes a Knight and Companion of so Noble an Order. Given at the Castle of St.* Germans en laye, *this eighteenth day of* September, *in the first Year of our Reign.*

NUM. XXI.

A *Letter* signifying *Election*, sent to Sir *John Falstolf.*
Registrum Chart. fol. 14.

De par le Roy *Souverain* de l'Ordre de la *Jartier.*

NOstre ame & feal, nous vous saluons. Et come apres le trespassement de nostre treschier & feal Cousin le Conte de Westmerlande, dont dieux ait l'ame, que estoit un de noz Compaignons de l'Ordre de la Jartier, Nous eussions ordonné que novelle election fust fait pur avoire un autre Compaignon en son lieu, come la manere si est, & que le contenu dez estatuz du dit Ordre le porte, vous signifions que a la darrain feste de Scint George, en nostre Chapitre du dit Ordre, tenuz a Wyndesore le xxii. jour d' Avryll, darrain passé, veille de la dite feste, nostre Compaignie du dit Ordre esteauntz adonques au dit Chapitre; Considerant tant lez bons, leaux, & honourables services que avez de piecà faiz en service de nostre tres redouté Seigneur & Pier, que dieux assoille, & que faitez continuelement en nostre, come plusieurs autres desertes d'onnour, que dieux a souffert estre en vous, en tollerant tousjours, comme bon & feal subjet, lez paines & travaulx de guerre pour nostre bon droit, & juste querelle susteiner, vous a esleu un de noz Compaignons du dit Ordre en lieu de nostre dit Cosin, esperant, que dieux vous donne toujours grace & valeur de faire toudis de bien en meulx, vostre devoire; pourquoy a la delivrance de cestez nouz avons chargie par noz lettres noz treschiers & feaulx Cosins lez Countez de Salisbirs, de Warwyke, & de Soulfolk, qui sont noz Compaignons du dit Ordre, ou l'un d'eulx de qui vous serrez plus pres, quil vous monstrent, & delivrent lez estatuz du dit Ordre, Et yceulx par vouz receux preugnent vostre serement en tel cas acoustume a faire, que bien & lealment tendres & serez, si avaunte que Dieux vous donnera puissance, tout le contenu es diz estatuz, en vous baillant l'ordre de la Jartier. La quelle chose faite, volonz que vouz ordonnez en tout haste resonnablement possible vostre Heaulme & Espee, & un honourable Chivalier sanz reproche en lieu de

de vous, pour prendre vostre estalle come voz veirez que les ditz estatuz du dit Ordre le requirent. Et en cas que le dit Ordre ne voudrez acceptier pour aucun cause a vouz semblant raisonable, le nous certifiez dedeinz deux mois apres la doubte de cestez, & en ceo nuis point de faute. Donné a Leicestre, *soubz le Seall du dit Ordre le* viii. *jour de* May.

NUM XXII.

A *Commission* to take Sir *John Falstolfs Oath*, at his *Investiture* with the *Garter*. *Ibidem.*

De par le Roy *Souveraine* de l'Ordre de la *Jartier*.

TRescbiers & *feaulx Cosins, Nous vous saluons sovent, & pour ce que a la feste de* Seinte George *darraine, tenuz en nostre Chastell de* Wyndesore, *nostre Compaignie de l'Ordre de la* Jartier *faisant alorsque Chapitre la veille de la dit Feste, a estieu nostre chier & feall* John Falstolt *Chivalier un de nouz Compaignons du dit Ordre, en lieu de nostre trescbier Cosin le Counte de* Westmerland, *dont dieux ait l'ame, nous vous envoions lez estatuz de cellui Ordre enseallez du selle du dit Ordre, pour lez presenter, & bailler au dit Monsieur* John Falstolt. *Si voulons & vous mandons, que vous, ou l'un de vous, a qui primerement cez presentez ferront monstrez, ou exibees, presentez, & bailles audit* John Falstolf *lez ditz estatuz pour lez voier, & visiter, & savoir que sont tenuz de faire ceux qui sont de dit Ordre. Et en cas q'il accepta le dit Ordre Ressaivez son serement en tel cas accestumè à faire en luy baillant l'Ordre du* Jartier, *en le manere accustumé. Trescbiers & fealx Cosins, dieux soit garde de vous. Donne a* Leicestre *soubz le Seel du dit Ordre, le* viii. *jour de* May.

A nos trescbiers & feaulx Cousins, lez Countez de Warwyk, *de* Sarisbury, *& de* Sulfolk, *nouz Compaignons de la* Jartier, *& a un chescun d'eulx.*

NUM. XXIII.

A Warrant for allowance of *Garter's* Charges, when sent to signifie an Election.

MS. 4. penes W. le N. Cl. fol. 59.

THese *shall be to require you, of such her Majesties Treasure as remaineth in your hands, to pay or cause to be paid, to Sir* Gilbert Dethick *Knight,* King of Arms, *being sent by her Majesties Commandment, to our very good Lords the Earl of* Rutland *in the County of* Lincolne, *and to the Lord* Scroop *in the County of* Cumberland, *to signifie unto them the Election made of them into the Order of Knights of the* Garter, *for his pains and charges in that voyage expended, the sum of Twenty pounds, and this shall be your sufficient warrant and discharge in that behalf. At the Court at* Richmond *the* 10. *of* June 1584.

T. Bromley. W. Burghley. Ed. Clynton.
Ch. Howard. James Crofts.
Chr. Hatton. Fran. Walsingham.

To our very loving Friend, Sir Thomas Heneage *Knight, Treasurer of of her Majesties Chamber.*

NUM. XXIV.

A *Commission* to the Soveraigns Lieutenant, to *Install* an *Elect-Knight*. *Registr. Chartac. fol.* 64.

Henry R.

HEnry *the Eighth, by the Grace of God King of* England, *and of* France, *Defensor of the Faith, and Lord of* Irland, Souverain *of the most Noble Order of the* Gartier; *To our right trusty and right entirely well-beloved Cousin, the Duke of* Northfolk, *our Lieutenant at our Fest of the glorious Martir Sain:* George, *Patron of the said Noble Ordre, our right trusty and right well-beloved Cosins the Marquess* Dorset, *the Marquess of* Exeter, *The Erle of* Northumberland, *and our trusty and well-beloved the Vicounte* Lisle, *the Vicount* Fitz-water, *and the Vicount* Rochford, *the Lord* Ferrers, *Lord* Bergaveny, *and the Lord* Dakers, *Companions of the said Noble Order, Greeting. For as moche as we with you, and other Companions have elected our right trusty, and right entirely beloved Son* Henry, *Duke of* Richmont *and of* Somerset, *and Erle of* Nottingham, *our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousins, th' Erle of* Arundel, *th' Erle of* Westmerland, *and th' Erle of* Rutland, *Companions of the said Noble Ordre: We therefore will and auctorise you, by these presents, that ye the said Duke of* Norfolk, *with the assistance of such other as our said Noble Ordre be aforenamed, shall not only accept, and admit the said Duke and Erles into the said Ordre, and receve their Othes, and install them, but also further do therein, as to the laudable Statutes and Ordinances of the said Ordre apperteigneth. And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant, and discharge in this behalf, at all times hereafter. Yeven under the Seal of our said* Gartier, *at our Palais of* Brydewell, *the* xviii. *day of* June *in the* xvii. *year of our Reign.*

NUM.

NUM. XXV.

Another.

Ex Collect. Johannis Vincent, Gen.

Elizabeth R.

ELIZABETH *by the Grace of God Queen of* England, Fraunce, *and* Ireland, *Defendor of the Faith, and* Soveraign *of the most Noble Order of the* Garter, *To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor th' Erle of* Penbroke, *one of the Companions and Knights of the said Order, by us assigned and deputed to be our Lieutenant at the Feast of the glorious Martyr St.* George, *Patron of the said Order, to be kept within our said Castell of* Windesor, *the* 4. *of* June *next ensuing, and others the Companions of the said Order that then shall be present, Greeting:* Whereas *we with others the Companions of the said Noble Order assembled, at a Chapitre holden at our Palace of* Westminster *the* xxiv. *day of* Aprill *last, have elected and chosen, among others, our right trusty and right entirely beloved Cousen the Duke of* Norfolk, *our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousen and Councellor, the Marquess of* Northampton, *our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousen th' Erle of* Rutland, *and our trusty and right well-beloved the Lord* Robert Dudley, *Master of our Horse, to be Knights and Companions of the said Order: We will, and by these presents authorise you, not only to accepte and admit them into the said Order, and receive their Oaths, and install them accordingly, but also further to do therein as to the Statutes and laudable Custom and usage of the said Noble Order appertaineth. And these our Letters shall be your sufficient warrant and discharge in this behalf. Yeven under the Seal of our said* Garter, *the first of* June, *in the first year of our Reign.*

NUM. XXVI.

A *Commission* to other Knights-Companions, for the *Installation* of an *Elect-Knight.*

Regist. Chartac. fol. 61. *b.*

Henry R.

HENRY *the Eighth, by the Grace of God, King of* England *and of* France, *Defensor of the Faith, and Lord of* Irland, Soverain *of our Noble Ordre of the* Gartier. *To our right trusty, and right entirely beloved Cousin, the Marquess* Dorset; *And also to our right trusty, and right well-beloved Cosins, Th' Erle of* Devon, *and th' Erle of* Kent, *Companions of our said Noble Ordre, Greeting. Forasmoche as we with you, and other Knights and Companions of our said Noble Ordre assembled at the Chapitre holden at our Manoir of* Grenewich, *the* xiii. *day of* July *last passed, have elected, and chosen* Walter Devereux, *Lord* Ferrers, *to be Knight and Companion of the said Ordre: We therefore will, and, by vertue of these presents, auctorise you not only t' accepte and admit the said* Walter Devereux, *Lord* Ferrers, *into the said Ordre, and receive his Othe, and install him, but also further to do therein as to the Statutes and laudable usages of the said Noble Order it appertaineth: And these our Letters shall be your sufficient warrant and discharge in that behalf. Yeven undre our Seale of our said* Gartier, *at our Castell of* Windesore, *the* xxi. *day of* August, *the* xv. *year of our Reign.*

NUM. XXVII.

Another.

Ex Collect. J. V.

Elizabeth R.

ELIZABETH *by the Grace of God Queen of* England, France, *and* Ireland, *and* Soveraign *of the most Noble Order of the* Garter. *To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cozen and Counsellor,* Francis *Earl of* Bedford, *and to our right trusty and right well-beloved* Anthony *Viscount* Mountague, *Companions of our Noble Order of the* Garter: *Forasmuch as we for divers reasonable causes cannot be present at our Castell of Windesor on the* 19. *of* June *next ensuing, where we have determined to have installed our right trusty and right well-beloved Cozens* William *Earl of* Worcester, *and* Henry *Earl of* Huntingdon, *as Knights of our said Order of the* Garter: *We therefore, by these presents, name, constitute, appoint, and ordain you to be our Deputies, giving you full power and authority, to admit and install our said Cozens of* Worcester *and* Huntingdon, *and to do and accomplish every thing which thereunto belongeth, and hath been accustomed, for the due admittance and installing of the said Earls of* Worcester *and* Huntingdon; *willing and commanding, by the tenor hereof, all and every the Companions and Officers of the said Order, to be to you in the executing of this our authority obeying and attending, as shall appertain. Given under the Seal of our said Order, at our honor of* Hampton-Court *the* 12. *of* June 1570. *in the* 12. *year of our Reign.*

NUM. XXVIII.

Another.

Ex ipso Autogr. Ærar. Coll. Wind.

Charles R.

CHARLES *by the Grace of God King of* Great Britain, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith, and* Soveraign *of the most Noble Order of the* Garter. *To our right trusty*

and

and right well well-beloved Cosens and Councellors, William *Earl of* Salisbury, *and* Henry *Earl of* Holland, *Knights and Companions of our said Order, Greeting.* Whereas *we with you and others the Knights and Companions of our said Order assembled, in a Chapter holden at our Palace of* Westminster, *the* 24. *day of* April *(being the morrow after the day of St.* George *last past), did elect and chose our right trusty and right well beloved Cousen* Algernon *Earle of* Northumberland, *to be a Knight and Companion of our said Order*; And whereas *we have appointed the* 13. *day of this present Month of* May *for the time of his Installation at* Windesor, *We do therefore let you know, that we have named and assigned you the said Earls of* Salisbury *and* Holland, *and by these presents do name, assign, and appoint you two to be Commissioners for the Installation of our said Cousin the Earl of* Northumberland *as aforesaid, And accordingly we do hereby give unto you full power and authority, not only to accept and admit him into our said Order, and to take his Oath, but also to do and accomplish whatsoever else is needful to be done for his full Installation, according to the Statutes, Rules, and Customs of our said Order. For which purpose it is our pleasure, that you make your repair to our Castle of* Windesor, *so as you may be there on* Wednesday *at night, being the* 13. *of this present* May, *to the end that you may then proceed to the said Installation, according to this our Commission. Given under the Seal of our said Order at our Palace of* Westminster, *the* 11. *day of* May 1635. *and in the* 11. *year of our Raign.*

NUM. XXIX.

Another.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

PHilip *and* Mary, *&c. To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cosen the Earl of* Huntington, *and to our right trusty and well-beloved the Lord* Clynton, *Companions and Knights of the Noble Order of the* Garter, *Greeting, Forasmuch as we with other Companions of the said Noble Order assembled, at a Chapter holden at our Honour of* Hampton Court, *the* 24. *of* April *last past, have elected and chosen our right trusty and right well-beloved the Viscount* Mountague, *to be Knight and Companion of the said Noble Order; We therefore will, and, by these presents, authorise and license you, not only to accept and admit the said Viscount* Mountague *into the said Order, and to receive his Oath and install him accordingly, but also further to do thereon, as to the Statutes and laudable Customs of the said Noble Order appertaineth: And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under the Seal of our said Order, the* 12. *of* October, *the* 2. *and* 3. *year of our Raigns.*

NUM. XXX.

A *Letter* of *Summons* to the Commissioners appointed for *Installation.*

Ex Collect. J. V.

By the Queen.

R*ight trusty and well-beloved, we greet you well, and whereas we have appointed you, together with our right trusty and right well-beloved Cosen and Councellor the Earl of* Lincoln, *to be in Commission for the Installation, in our Castle of* Windesor, *of our right trusty and right well-beloved Cosens* Henry *Earl of* Derby, *and* Henry *Earl of* Penbroke, *being lately chosen Knights of our Order of the* Garter: *We have thought it good not only to give you knowledge hereof by these our Letters, but also to require you to make your repair to our said Castle of* Windesor, *so as you may be there on* Wednesday *the* 19. *day of this Month, to the end that upon* Thursday *the* 20. *day of this present Month of* May, *they may proceed to their Installations accordingly. Yeven under our Signet at our Palais of* Westminster, *the* 17. *day of* May *in the* 16. *year of our Reign.*

To our right trusty and well-beloved, the Viscount *Mountague*, one of the Companions of our Order.

[The like Letter *(mutatis mutandis)* was, under the same date, directed to the Earl of *Lincoln*, joined in Commission with him.]

NUM. XXXI.

A *Letter* of *Summons* to an *Elect-Knight* for his repair to *Windesor* to be Installed.

Ex ipso Autogr.

Charles R.

R*ight trusty and well-beloved Cousen, We greet you well.* Whereas *in consideration of your approved fidelity, and extraordinary services performed by you for us, We lately elected and chose you to be one of the Companions of our most Noble Order of the* Garter, *and in token thereof did send unto you the* George *and* Ribband, *part of the Ensigns of our said Order, and having at a Chapter held at* Whitehall *the* 14. *day of* January *last past, appointed to celebrate the Feast of St.* George *at our Castle of* Windesor, *upon the* 15. 16. *and* 17. *days of* April *next ensuing: We do hereby require you to make your repair to our Castle of* Windesor, *so as you be there on Monday the* 15. *of* April *next, by Noon, that in the Afternoon of the said day you may proceed to your Installation,*

lation, according to the Statutes of the said Order. Given under our Signet of our Order at Whitehall, *the 19. of* February 1660. *and in the thirteenth year of our Reign.*

To our right trusty and entirely beloved Cousin and Councellor the Marquess of *Ormond*, Steward of our Houshold.

NUM. XXXII.

A *Warrant* for the *Livery* of the *Order.*

Ex Lib. N. p. 317. sub finem.

Henry R.

HEnricus *Dei gratiâ* Rex Angliæ, *ac* Franciæ, *Dominus* Hiberniæ, *Defensor Fidei, & Supremus Ordinis Diui* Georgii, *fideli & benedilecto nobis à Conciliis Domino* N. *magni vestiarii nostri Custodi, salutem. Vbi nos cum aliis eiusdem Ordinis elegimus, benefidelem, ac prædilectum Consiliarium nostrum* N. *in Societatem hanc nostram præclarissimam: Nos ideo volumus & præcipimus, ut huic Tabellioni virgas octodecim subrubri ostri de more tradas, cum tanto albo serico, quanto vestimentum inde conficiendum insuleiri poterit, pro liveratâ (quam vocant) suâ, quando in sedem suam introducendus* Windesorum *adveniet, mense ac die constituntis, quemadmodum & Equites antè solebant habere. Et hæ nostræ Literæ tibi tutelares erunt semper impostetum* N. *sub Sigillo nostro, mense ac die, &c.*

NUM. XXXIII.

Another.

Ex MS. in Bibl. Cotton. [sub effigie Julii F. 11.]

By the King.

WE *will and command you to deliver, or cause to be delivered to our trusty and well-beloved Councellor Sir* John Wallop *Knight, which is now elect one of the Companions of the Noble Order of the* Garter, *for the Livery of the same Order* 18 *yards of Crimson Velvet, for one Gown, Hood, and Tippet, and* 10 *yards of white Sarcenet for lining the same: And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Teoven, &c.*

To our trusty and well-beloved Sir *Ralph Sadler* Knight, Master of our great Wardrobe.

NUM. XXXIV.

A *Warrant* for providing and delivering of Mantles.

Ex ipso Autographo.

Charles R.

WHereas *we have appointed the* 15. 16. *and* 17. *days of* April *next ensuing hereof, for the solemnization of the noble Feast of St.* George, *and Installment of Knights-Companions already elected at our Castle of* Windesor, *Our will and pleasure is, that you provide to be delivered for that Solemnity* xvii *upper Robes, and* xvii *under Robes of special good Velvets, That is to say, every upper Robe to contain the number of* xviii *yards of blew Velvet, and every under Robe the number of* x *yards of Crimson Velvet, and special good white Taffety, to the value of* CCLXXII *yards for lining of the same, allowing to every upper and under Robe* xvi *yards; as also* xvii *Garters of Velvet, wrought with Letters and Purles of* Venice *Gold and Pearls, to place on the left shoulder of every one of the said upper Robes, with* xvii *paire of large string Buttons, and Tassels of blew Silk and* Venice *Gold: And for so doing this shall be your Warrant, requiring you further to certifie us as soon as you may what number of the premisses we may depend upon to be ready by the time prefixt. Given, &c.*

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin, and Councellor *Edward* Earl of *Sandwich*, Master of our Great Wardrobe, or in his absence to his Deputy.

NUM. XXXV.

A *Warrant* for providing and delivering of Collars.

Ex ipso Autographo.

Charles R.

WHereas *we have appointed the* 15. 16. *and* 17. *days of* April *next ensuing the date hereof, for the solemnization of the Noble Feast of St.* George, *and Installment of Knights, at our Castle of* Windesor, *Our will and pleasure is, that you provide to be delivered for that Solemnity, as we shall hereafter direct, Collars of Gold to the number of* xvii. *every of them containing* xxvi *Garters with white and red Roses enamelled in the midst of every one of them, and* xxvi *Knots, each Collar weighing* xxx *Ounces* Troy *weight, as also for each a rich* George *on horseback, with a Dragon to be fastned and pendent thereto, and the same number of* Garters *of the Order to a proportionable value: And for so doing this shall be your sufficient*

cient Warrant, requiring you further to certifie us, as soon as you may, what number of the premisses we may depend upon to be ready by the time prefixt. Given under our Signet of the Order at our Court at Whitehall *the* 19. *of* February *in the* 13. *year of our* Reign.

To our trusty and well-beloved
Sir *Gilbert Talbot* Knight, Master
of our Jewel-house.

NUM. XXXVI.

The ancient Forms of Admonition used at the Investiture of Knights Subjects, with the Garter, Surcoat, Mantle, and Collar.

MS. penes G. O. Y. p. 44.

Al Soveraigne & L'amyable Compaignie dez Chivaliers de L'ordre de la Jarretiere, *vous ont receu & choysi pour leur Amy, frere, & Compaignon. Et en signe & cognoissance de ce vous presentent & donnent ceste* Jarretiere, *la quelle Dieu le veille que vous recevez & portez d'oresenavant, a louange & plaisir, & a l'exaltation & honneur du dit Noble Ordre & de vous.*

Prenez cest habillement a l'accroissement de vostre honneur & Ensigne que vouz avez receu c'st Ordre. Et par ce considerez que non seulement de vous valliantement & hardiment Combatre, mais aussi vouz pour despandre vostre sang a la defence de la foy Chrestienne, *la Liberte de la* Sainte Eglise, *de Justice, & de ceulx qui sont oppresses & en necessité.*

Prenez ce Manteau de ceste tres-noble Ordre, en augmentation de vostre honneur, lequel Manteau estant garni d'ung Escu, avec une Croix rouge, vous admoneste, que estant armé de beaux vertuz vous povez passer parmy voz Enemies & les Confoundre. Si que apres avoir valiantment guerroyé en ce monde, au regard de voz dignez & Nobles actes, vous povez parvenire a les Eternelles & Triumphantz joyes Cælestes.

Vous Porteres ce Collier avec L'image de St. George, *a l'accroissement de vostre honneur, & de ce tres-noble Ordre, Ensigne de passer toutes choses prosperes ou adverses, si que les ayant valliantment vaincuz, vous povez en ceste vie obtenir l'honneur & renom de Noble & preux Chivaliers. Et apres recevoir l'eternel guerdon de voz victorieulx travaulx.*

NUM. XXXVII.

The forms of Admonition used at the Investiture of Strangers.

Lib. N. p. 310.

AD laudem atq; honorem Omnipotentis Dei, *intemeratæ* Matris *ejus, & Sancti* Georgii *Martyris, cinge tibiam tuam hoc insigni* Subligaculo, *id circumferens in augmentum honoris tui, & in signum & memoriam illustrissimi Ordinis, nusquam oblivioni daturus, aut omissurus quod eo moneris; ut valeas, inquam, & velis in justo bello, quod solum inibis, stare firmitèr, agere fortitèr, & feliciter omnino vincere.*

Capito vestem *hanc* purpuream, *ad incrementum honoris, & in signaculum Ordinis accepti: quâ munitus non vereberis pro fide* Christi, *libertate* Ecclesiæ, *pro jure, & oppressorum atq; indigentium necessariâ tuitione, sanguinem etiam fundere, nedum fortiter ac strenuè dimicare.*

Accipe Clamidem *hanc cœlici coloris, in signum Clarissimi hujus Ordinis, & in augmentum etiam honoris tui, rubeo clypeo Dominicæ Crucis, uti cernis, insignitam: ut cujus virtute semper ac vigore protectus per hostes tutus abeas, eos ubiq; superare valeas, & pro clarissimis deniq; meritis, post egregiam hanc hujus temporis militiam, ad æterna veréq; triumphalia gaudia pertingas.*

Torquem *hunc in Collo deferes, ad augmentum honoris, & in signum quoq; Clarissimi Ordinis a te susceptî, cum imagine sanctissimi Martyris, &* Christi *Militis,* Georgii: *Cujus præsidio suffultus Mundi hujus tàm prospera quàm adversa sic pertranseas, ut animæ pariter ac corporis hostibus hoc strenuè devictis, non temporariæ modò militiæ gloriam, sed & perennis victoriæ palmam denique recipere valeas. Amen.*

NUM. XXXVIII.

The Oath taken by a Knight at his Installation, in the Reign of King *Edward* the Fourth.

Lib. N. pag. 312.

EGO N. *nominatus atq; Electus unus egregiorum Equitum illustrissimi Ordinis hujus Militaris, promitto, & per Sacro-sancta Evangelia Dei, quæ tango hic manifestè, juro, quòd omnia Ordinis istius Statuta & Articulos in his contentos, quatenus ad me spectabunt, inviolabilitèr observabo. Nec non Collegii Sanctissimæ* Virginis, *& Divi Martyris* Georgii, *in quo prænobilis Ordo fundatus est, pro virili libertates & jura propugnabo.*

The same Oath we find put into *English*, and entred at the end of the *Regist. Charticeum*, under the 2. year of *Hen.* 8.

I N. *chosen and named to be one of the honourable Company of the Order of the* Garter, *promise and swear by the holy Evangelists by me bodily touched, truly and faithfully to observe and keep all the points of the Statutes of the said Order, and every Article in them contained, as far as to me belongeth and appertaineth. And all the liberties and Franchises belonging of right to this Colledge of our* Lady *and S.* George *I shall defend to my power, as God help me and these holy Evangelists.*

XXXIX. The

NUM. XXXIX.

The same *Oath*, as it was pronounced by the the Register.

YOU being chosen to be one of the Companions of the most honourable Order of the Garter, *shall promise, and, by these holy Evangelists by you manifestly touched, swear, truly and faithfully to observe and keep all the Statutes of the said Order, and every Article in the same contained, for so much as to you belongeth and appertaineth: And further that you shall help to defend and maintain, so much as in you lieth, the rights and liberties of the Colledge of our blessed* Lady *and St.* George *the Martyr, wherein the honourable Order of the* Garter *is founded.*

NUM. XL.

The *Oath* formerly taken by the *Prince* of *Wales.*

Ex Lib. Nig. pag. 312.

EGO, N. *Princeps* Gualliæ, *Dux* Cornubiæ, *& Comes* Cestriæ, *primogenitus Excelentissimi atq; invictissimi Dei gratiâ Regis* Angliæ *&* Franciæ, *Domini* Hiberniæ, *& hujus Ordinis meritò* Supremi, *jam nominatus atq; electus ad eundem Ordinem venerandum, Promitto & do fidem, quòd verè & fidelitèr pro viribus observabo cuncta Ordinis illius Statuta, & Statutorum Articulos, quatenus ullo modo me contingent, juxta vim, formam, & effectum eorundem, nec non Collegii, in quo is Ordo fundatur, jura tuebor.*

NUM. XLI.

The *Oath* taken in King *Henry* the Eighth's Reign.

Ex veteri Codice MS. penes G.O.Y.f.70.b.

YEE shall swear, that to your power yee shall help, keep, defend, and sustain, during your lyfe, and during the tyme that you shall be Companion of the Order of the Garter, *the honor, quarels, rights, and Dominions of the King our Soveraign Lord,* Soveraign *of the said Order, you shall enforce you, and do all your diligence to entertain and augment the said Noble Order, and in case you shall have knowledge of any thing to be imagined or procured to the contrary, with all your true power you shall resist thereunto, Also you shall well and truly accomplish, and keep, and entertain all the Statutes, points, articles, and Ordinances of the said Order, as if they were read unto you from point to point; so help you God, and Hollydome, and by these Evangelists by you corporally touched.*

NUM. XLII.

The *Oath* used in the Reign of King *Edward* the Sixth.

*Ex Libro Nig. pag.*303.

YOU, being chosen to be one of the honourable Company of the Order of the Garter, *shall promise and swear by the holy Evangelists by you bodily touched, to be faithful and true to the Kings Majesty, and to observe and keep all the points of the Statutes of the said Order, and every Article in them contained, the same being agreeable, and not repugnant to the Kings Highness, & other goodly proceedings, as far as unto you belongeth and appertaineth, as God help you and the holy Evangelists.*

NUM. XLIII.

The Form of the *Oath* setled in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign.

QUum jam electus es in honoratissimam societatem nobilissimi ordinis Garteri, *tu promittes & jurabis, per sacrosancta dei Evangelia, per te nunc tacta, quod scienter & voluntariè non violabis aliquod prædicti ordinis statutum, aut aliquos articulos in eis contentos, præsertim si non scientes sint, & non repugnent Dei omnipotentis & hujus regni legibus, quatenus personam tuam concernunt, seu ad te pertinent, sicut te deus adjuvet, per* Jesum Christum, *hoc sacrosancto Dei Evangelio annuntiatum.*

The same in *English.*

YOU being chosen to be one of the honourable Company of this most Noble Order of the Garter, *shall promise and swear by the holy Evangelists, by you here touched, that wittingly or willingly you shall not break any Statute of the said Order, or any Articles in them contained; the same being agreeable and not repugnant to the Laws of Almighty God, and the Laws of this Realm, as far forth as to you belongeth and appertaineth: So God help you and his holy Word.*

NUM. XLIV.

Letter to obtain License for Installing a *Knight-Subject* by his *Proxy.*

Ex Lib. Nigro, p. 60.

JOannes *Dux* Bedfordiæ, *cum cæteris in celebritate* Georgianâ *jam proximè conjunctis, Regiæ Majestati vestræ salutem & obedientiam. Quoniam, invictissime princeps & metuendissime Domine, vestræ Celsitudinis ea magnanimitas est in suscipiendis Bellis, & in gerendis felicitas,*

ut ipsorum jam fama per orbem undique volitet, nos id vestræ Majestati gratulamur, Deo gratias nunc immensas agentes, qui quicquid est boni ac fœlicis eventûs, solus concedit. Ubi verò Regia Majestas vestra, quia bella durant, strenuos quosdam Equites ex iis qui vobiscum modo militant in socios Clarissimi vestri Ordinis assumere decrevit, ex consensu Commilitonum aliorum qui nunc isthic adsunt, idq; nobis significare non refugit; nos isthàc ipsâ voluntate vestrâ & Commilitonum assensu subnixi, & quia nolumus ut quisquam per nos aut in Curiâ nostrâ privetur eo fructu qui percipi possit, saltem dum spectet ad salutem Animæ, si subitò contingeret obire, (quod fere fit iis qui variis belli casibus agitantur) Dominum Joannem Gray, *Dominum* Johannem Robertsak, *& Dominum* Boucer *virtute Literarum in quibus procuratores sibi nominârunt, in sedes suas* Windesori *permisimus introduci: ne si per bellorum infortunia, quibus eos isthic quotidiè videmus objectos, ante plenam possessionem interirent,* Missarum suffragiis destituerentur, *sicut quosdam nuper (id quod dolemus) nimiâ morâ præventos intelleximus. Rursum quia de tali procurâtorio minus cautum in Statutis esse perpendimus, in eo facto non parùm hæsitavimus, verùm nimio favore potiùs quam arctè severèq; Statutorum observationi condonatum iri sperantes, libenter in partem pientiorem (uti est visa) concessimus. In quo tamen vestræ nos gratiæ correctioniq; submittimus, si quid in hâc ipsâ re delinquimus, modo (quo possimus) humilimo supplicantes, ut prudentissima Majestas vestra omnem abhinc scrupulum è Statutis auferat, & absolutè pronunciet, quid hîc posthàc fieri oporteat. Ut Equites videlicet vestri cum celsitudine vestrâ, vel in bellis vel alibi missi vestro commorati (meritis exigentibus) eodem privilegio, quod exteris in electione receptionèq; sui per Procuratores est concessum, congaudere possent, vestro tamen in omnibus Judicio semper salvo, serenitatem autem vestram cum insigni victoriâ celebriq; triumpho & plenâ conservatæ multitudinis & Commilitii gloriâ reducat in Regnum; & ibi diuturnæ pacis bono perfrui concedat ille Rex Regum* Christus Jhesus, *qui Capitales hostes nostros sub vexillo Crucis edomuit, & moriendo devicit.* Windesori *ab Arce vestrâ, Kalendis* Maii.

NUM. XLV.

A larger Letter to the same purpose.
Registrum Chartac. fol. 6. b.

Victoriosissime Princeps, & metuendissime Domine, Humilimâ Recommendatione præmissâ, de magnificis vestris Regalibus, guerrarum victoriosis eventibus gratiosis, eorundem auctori, qui suo sub munimine vobis totiens contulit feliciùs triumphare, obsequiosâ mente, gratiarum referimus actiones vestræ Regiæ celsitudini; insuper omnimodas reddentes odas debitas, & eò magis, quò valemus, quòd nostro minimo humilimoq; motivo de Militibus per vestram Regiam pietatem durantibus, vestris bellicis exercitiis creandis interim in Milites Societatis Ordinis Garterii, *& per Procuratores more exterorum installandis Aures vestræ magnificentiæ Regalis dirigere voluistis, ad tantam exauditionis gratiam, ut Regiam vestram benevolentiam ad hoc & unanimum assensum Commilitonum Ordinis vestro lateri Regio quàm strenuè assistentium, nobis, licèt indignis, significare decrevistis, Ad effectum quòd concors assensus ille nostro motivo mediante vim futuris temporibus statuti contineret, super cujus significationis gratiâ, & virtute assensûs, Dominum* Willielmum Philipp, *per procuratorem suum sufficientèr constitutum installavimus, Dominos verò* Johannem Grey, Johannem Robosarde, *virtute Literarum suarum missivarum, in quibus suos solummodo nominarunt Procuratores, Dominum* de Boucer, *virtute Literæ cujusdam deprecatoriæ per Dominam Comitissam* de Stafforde, *Deputato transmisso, promisimus installari, eò potiùs quòd de sufficientiâ procuratorii hujusmodi in Statutis expressè non cavetur, ac præcavere volentes, ne per dubiosa infortunia guerrarum, quibus ipsos in vestrâ Regali præsentiâ indies exponi perpendimus, de tam meritoriis suffragiis huic annexis, præ defectu plenitudinis sui juris, relicti, præ nostrâ vacillatione sub dubio, privari possent, seu veriùs eisdem carere, quod absit, prout jam tardè contigit, quod dolenter referimus, præ nimiâ morâ præpotentis viri ante plenitudinem morte præventi. Piè sperantes nobis potiùs de vestro favore nimio pardonari, quàm de severâ, & strictâ observatione Statutorum in hâc parte laudari ex condigno, pensatis circumstantiis ac animis præsumentium super quo tamen humiliùs inclinati quo minùs peritè egimus, veniam petimus, omnimodè vestræ Regiæ correctioni nos penitùs submittentes, supplicantes devotiùs quò valemus quatenus omnimodum incertitudinis scrupulum in præmissis Regia celsitudo dignetur de cetero cautiùs abolere, ac nostri prætextu motivi statuere, ut singuli subditi vestri Milites, activis suis meritis exigentibus, in hanc eligendi committivam, qui vel in vestrâ præsentiâ Regali seu alibi extra Regnum, dummodo ex mandato inibi militaverint Regali, pro perpetuo gaudere valeant privilegio nobili exterorum, Regali vestro judicio meliori in omnibus semper salvo. Et serenitatem Regiæ celsitudinis cum Coronâ victoriæ, servatâ strenuâ procerum multitudine, cum bono pacis fœliciter, reducat ad Regnum invictissimus Rex ille, qui in suo sanguine nostros dignatus est inimicos mortales sub vexillo Crucis moriendo devincere.*

NUM. XLVI.

Sir *John Grey*'s Letter Missive to Sir *John Lisle* his Proctor.
Registrum Chartac. fol. 6.

A mon trescher & bien ame Monsieur Jehan Lisle.

Wrychipful Sir, I grete you wele, desiryng to here, ac. And wete ye, that

that the Kyng of his gracious Lordchippe, God yelde him, hase chosen me, to be onne of his Wethzene, of the Knyghtes of the Gartier; And I hase chosen you, to be myne Attourney, to take my Stalle, in my name, what tyme that my Lorde of Bedforde, &c. And I pray you, that ye wille do so moche for me, at this tyme; as I may do thyng to your plesaun; in tyme comyng, &c. Writen before Roone, the xi. day of November.

John Grey.

NUM. XLVII.

The Countess of *Bristol's* Deprecatory Letter.

Ex ipso Autogr.

SIR,

PResuming from what I have been told of former times, that my Husband the Earl of Bristol, *with many others, being by his Majesties appointment to be installed Knights of the* Garter, *at* Windsor, *the next month, he may receive that honor by Proxie, at my request and nomination on his behalf, because himself is at present beyond the Seas, my desire to you hereby is, that, acquainting his Majesty herewith, you would be pleased, with his Soveraign permission and approbation, to appear and act at that Solemnity in quality of my Lord's Proxie, according to the accustomed forms in such cases, wherein I assure my self you will perform a very acceptable service to my Lord, and therein oblige very much,*

Your affectionate friend to command,

Queens-street,
March the 13.
1660.

A. Bristoll.

Superscribed,
For Sir *Richard Fanshawe*
Knight these. dd.

NUM. XLVIII.

The *Soveraign's* Nomination of a *Proxy* thereupon.

Ex ipso Autographo.

CHarles *the Second by the Grace of God King of* England, Scotland, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith, and Soveraign of the most Noble Order of the* Garter, *To our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir* Richard Fanshawe, *Knight, Greeting; Whereas we have appointed our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin* George *Earl of* Bristol, *lately elected into our said most Noble Order, to be installed (together with others) at the approaching solemnization of the Noble Feast of* Saint George, *in our Castle at* Windesor, *on the* 15. 16. *and* 17. *days of* April *next ensuing the date hereof. And whereas the said Earl cannot be there personally present, being detained in Foreign parts upon our special service (in which case he is priviledged alike with Foreigners by ancient Statute of our said Order, to receive his installation by Proxie) Know ye, that we of our particular grace and favour to you our said Servant, and finding in you all the statutable qualifications required for such a Deputation, have nominated and appointed, and by these presents (at the request and nomination of the Countess of* Bristol, *in the behalf of the Earl her Husband) do nominate, appoint, and authorize you the said* Richard Fanshawe, *for and in the name of the said Earl, to possess his Seat in our Colledge at* Windesor, *and to take the Oath in such case accustomed, and to do and perform all other things which the Statutes require, and we do further by these presents will, authorize, and require all persons whom it may concern, as well Knights as Officers, not only to admit this Proxie or Deputy of the said Earl, but also to do and perform in his regard all other things, which shall appear requisite according to the Statutes and laudable Customs of our said most Noble Order. For all which these our Letters shall be to you and them sufficient Warrant on that behalf. Given under the Seal of our Order, at our Court at* Whitehall, *the sixteenth day of* March 1661. *and in the* 13. *Year of our Reign.*

NUM. XLIX.

Sir *William Philipp's* Letters of Procuration, to Sir *Andrew Butrely* and Sir *John Henington.*

Ex Libro Nigro, pag. 62.

OMnibus præsentes Literas inspecturis aut audituris, Gulielmus Phyllipp *Eques insignitus, salutem.* Noveritis, *quod ubi supremo nostro Ordinisq; nostri* Galliæ *pariter atq;* Angliæ *Regi, complacuit ad id honoris ac gloriæ me provehere velle, ut in famigeratissimam Societatem illam me unum intromitteret, & insuper ex abundantiâ suæ gratiæ, secum reputans quemadmodum in his transmarinis & bellicis rebus suo secum jussu distineor, potestatem mihi fieret sedis occupandæ, cæterosq; ritus peragendi per idoneum procuratorem,* Equitem (*ut minus*) *auratum, insignibus donatum, & boni atq; irreprehensi nominis: Ob id ego prudentiâ ac virtute dilectissimorum mihi, Domini* Andreæ Butreley, *& Domini* Johannis Henington, *in quibus (ni fallor) quod ad strenuissimos Equites attineat nil desideres: eos vel eorum (ut res feret) alterum, in vicem meam statuo & deputo, & quicquid in me facultatis est, erga istam mei causam tribuo. Quibus tamquam mihimet ipsi impero, ut pro me, ac nomine meo Locum in Choro ac Concilio mihi prænotatum ingrediantur* Wyndesori, *intra regale Castrum, ubi Claritas Ordinis fundata relucet, Clamidem meam, Galeam atq; Ensem suscepturis, illic Offerant, ut ex more propendeant;*

pendeant; causas absentiæ commonstrent, omnem legitimum atqs honestum jusjurandum quod postulabitur ultrò prestent, & summatim omnia vice meâ sic exhibeant ac compleant, atqs si præsens ipse forem. In cujus rei testimonium Sigillum meum ab Armis hic affixi. In obsidione Rothomagi, *Novembris* xi.

NUM. L.

Sir *John Fastolfs* Deputation to Sir *Henry Inghouse*, and Sir *William Breton*.

Ex Regr. fol. 14. *b.*

A tous ceulx, *qui ces Lettres verront ou orront*, Johan Fastolf *Chivaler salut. Savoir venilles que come il ait pleu a nostre Soverain Seigneur le Roy de* Fraunce & D'engleterre, *come Soverain & primer de L'ordre Monsieur* Seint George, *de la Compaignie du* Jartier, *me faire tant de honnure que de me vueiller eslier & resseivier en nit dez Compaignons du dit Ordre du* Jartier, *& en oultre de sa treshabundante grace considerant que je suis ocupié, pour le present, en son tres-honourable service perdecà, m'a donné congé d'estre enstaillé, & d'avoire tonz aultres choses que en cas appertiennent setes & governés par procureur; mais toutevoies qe ce soit per Chivalier de nom & d'armes, & sanz reproche, pour ce est il, que singulierment confiant es sens & trusages discrecions & preudommie dez tresbonnourés Seigneurs, & mes treschiers & grauns amys messieur* Henry Inghouse & Guillaume Breton *Chivalers, esquelx a ce que je tiens riens ne faute que aux vaillans Chivalers doit appertenir, ay faite, ordeiné, constitué, & depmté, & par ces presentes face, ordonne, constitue, & depute lez ditz Messieurs* Henry & Guillaume, *& checun deux par luy mesmes, vrais, certains, & especiaulx procureurs, & a eux, ou L'un d' eux ay donné, & donne povoir general & especial mandement es meilleurs forme & maniere que je sey ou puis, pour & en nomme de moy demander, receveir, & obtenir L'estall en le chore, & lieu en le Chapitre, en la Chapelle ou Collage du Roy nostre dit Seigneur, dedeins son Chastell de* Wyndesore, *ou quel est le dit Ordre founde, & establez vacanis, & qui pour moy y sont ou serront assignez, & y offrir mon manteau, mon healme, & mon espee, & les y attacher selme la coustume & maniere du dit Ordre, les causes aussy de m'absence declarer, & tout serement licite & honneste, que de Coustume y serra requise, en lame de moy faire & donner, & generalment tout ce faire, excercer, & expedier, que es choses desuisditz serra aucunment necessaire & besoignable, & ma person de tout representier, si comme je y feusse mesmes en personne. En testimoigne de la quelle chose j'ay scellé ces presentz du Seel de mez armez, & signe de ma maine, Donne à* Lancone iii. *jour de* Feverier.

J. Fastolf.

NUM. LI.

A Commission for Installation of Sir *John Fastolf* by Sir *Henry Inghous* his Proctor.

Ex Regist. Chartac. fol. 14. *b.*

HEnry *par la grace de Dieu Roy* D'engleterre *& de* Fraunce, *Seigneur* D'yrlande *& Souverain de L'ordre du* Jartier, *a nostre bien ame* Johan Robessart *Chivaler, lun de noz Compaignons du dit Ordre, Salut. Come par le trespasié de sieu nostre tres-chier & ame cosyn, le Counte de* Westmerlaunde, *dount dieux ait l'ame, en son vivant l'un de noz Compaignons du dit Ordre, au Chapitre tenuz en nostre Collage & Chapelle de nostre Castel de* Wyndesore, *le* xxii. *jour d'*Aurel *derreine pasié veille de la Feste Monsieur* Seint George, *nostre ame* John Fastolf *Chivaler, pour consideration dez servicez q'il avoit faitz le temps pasié a sieu nostre tres-redonté Seigneur & Pere le Roy, que dieux assoile & depuis a nous comme encore fait de jour en aultre pour reduire & mettre en nous mains nostre Royaume de* Fraunce, *& aultres noz Seigneuries de par de là, en regarde aux grauns sens, vaillance, & preudommie darmez qui sont en sa personne par lez Compaignons du dit Ordre tenans lors le dit Chapitre, sanz quelque contradiction & dun commun accord ait estre choisy & esliez en lieu de sieu nostre dit Cosyn un dez Compaignons de dit Ordre, & de present soit tielment occupié en fait de noz guerres quil ne puist pardecà venir, ne repairer, pour en sa personne entrer en sa possession, ains par nostre congé & lycence ait faite & constituté son procureur nostre ame* Henry Inghous *Chivaler pour & en nomme de luy en resseivoir la possession, confians a plain de voz sens, preudommie, loyaulté, & bonne diligence, vous mandons en commettant par ces presentes que si tost que par le dit* Inghous, *serres devement requis, & vous apperra du povoir a luy donne par le dit* Fastolf, *vouz transportez en nostre dit Chastel de* Wyndesore, *& en noz College & Chapelle de iceluy & pour & en nom du dit* Fastolf *mettez illec de par nous en possession le dit* Henry Inghous *son procureur, en la maniere accustumee, avec dez beneficez, honneures, prerogatives, Franchisez, & libertez ad ce appartenantz, en luy assignant l'estal en cuer & lieu en Chapitre, tielz que nostre dit Cosin en son vivant lez soloient tenir & oeupier, Receyuez aussi son mantel & sez beaume & espee, mettez es lieux ou souloyent estre ceux de nostre dit Cousin en son vivant, Adjoustees en ce lez solempnitez de ce faire, vous donnons plain povoir, auctorite, & maundement especial, mandons a tous lez compaignons du dit Ordre que dez ditz estal, lieux, honneur, franchisez, prerogatives, & libertez, facent, suffrent, & laissent joier le dit* Fastolf *plainement & paisiblement, ainsi & par la maniere que lez ditz estatuz le contiennent & portent, sanz aucun contredit ou difficulté.*

Donné

Donné en nostre Chastell de Walingeforde, *soubz le seel du dit Ordre le* xxv. *jour de* Fevrier *L'an de grace mil quatre cens vingt & six, & de nostre Reigne le cinquiesme.*

NUM. LII.

Another Commission for *Installation* of the Earl of *Worcester*, and other *Knights-Subjects* by their Proctors.

Ex lib. vocat. Denton. fol. 100. *b.*

Edward *par la grace de Dieu Roy* D'engleterre *& de* France, *Signeur* d'Irlande, *& Soverayn de L'Ordre du* Gartier, *a nostre treschier & tresamey Cousin* Henry *Counte* D'Essex, *& a nous treschiers & bien aymes,* Johan *Sire de* Berners, *&* Johan *Sire de* Wenlok, *nous confreres de mesme L'ordre, ayons entre les aultres esten nostre treschier & tresayme Cousin* Johan *Counte de* Worcestre *& nos treschiers & chiers & bien aymes* William *Sire de* Hastinges, *nostre Chamberlayn,* John *Sire de* Montacu, William *Sire de* Herbert, *& Missieur* Johan Astley *Chevalier, & nous confreres de la dicti Ordre, & soit ainxi que en les estatus en cedit nostre Royaulme seront establis personelement dedeins certain temps apres la reception de la* Gartier, *coment plus au plain est declarez en icelles estatutz, sea-voer faisons, que pour aulcunes considerations nous a cé specialement moynantes, & mesmement que nostre dicti Cousyn de* Worcestre *& les aultres Signeurs & Chevaliers dessusdits sont de present, & seront encores, tellement occupez entour nostre personne & nostre service pour le bien de nous & de nostre dit Royaulme quils ne puissent estre enstallez personellement au temps que vouldrions a nous ordonnes & deputes, ordonnons & deputons par ces presentes vous jointement & severallement & ace donnons playn pouver & auctorité, de admitter, recevoir, & establir en toute bonne haste que faire ce pourra icelny nostre cousin de* Worcestre *& les Seigneurs & Chevaliers dessusdits, & chescun d' eulx, par leur procureur ou procureurs par eulx en ceste partie constitues & deputes en les estalles a chescun deulx en nostre College de* Seinct George, *dedens nostre Chasteau de* Windesore, *assignés ainsi & par telle maniere, que ung & chascun d'eulx y fussent adonequez presentéz en leur propres personnes; aulcunes ordenances ou estatus faitz ou ordonnés au contraire non obstantz. En tesmoing de la quelle chose nous avons fait faire cestes nous Lettres soubs le Seel de la dicti Ordre Patents, Donne a nostre Cyte de* Lincoln *le* 21. *Jour de* Mars, *L'an de nostre Reigne le secund.*

NUM LIII.

Another for the *Installation* of the Earl of *Warwick.*

Ex Collect. Johannis Vincent.

Elizabeth R.

ELIZABETH *by the Grace of God Queen of* England, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith, and Soveraign of the most Noble Order of the* Garter, *To our trusty and right entirely beloved Cousen and Counsellor the Duke of* Norfolk, *one of the Companions and Knights of the said Order, by us assigned and deputed to be our Lieutenant at the Feast of the glorious Martyr* Saint George, *Patron of the said Order, to be kept within our Castell of* Windesor, *the* xxii. *of* May *next coming, and others the Companions of the said Order that then shall be present, Greeting.* Whereas, *We with others the Companions of the said Noble Order assembled, at a Chapter holden at our Palleys of* Westminster *the* xxiv. *of* Apprell *last, have elected and chosen, among other, our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousen the Earl of* Warwike *to be Knight and Companyon of our said Order, and forasmuch as our said well-beloved Cousen, for divers services which by him is to be done for us in our affairs beyond the Seas, cannot conveniently repair unto our Castell of* Windesore *personally to be installed, in the Collegiate Chappel of that Order, and to perform other Ceremonies, whereunto by the Statutes of the said Order he is bounden, and for that cause hath by our special license appointed our trusty and well-beloved Sir* Henry Sidney *Knight sufficiently authorized, as his deputy and procurer, to be installed in his name, and to receive his Oath, and to perform all other such things and Ceremonies for him, as by the Statutes and Ordinances of the said Order be requisite, We therefore in consideration of the premisses will and by these presents give unto you full power, licence, and authority, not only to accept and admit the said Sir* Henry Sidney *to be Deputy and procurer for our said well-beloved Cousen the said Earl of* Warwick, *and to install him in the behalf of the said Earl, but also further to do therein as to the Statutes and laudable usages of the said Noble Order in this case appertaineth: And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Teven under the Seal of our said Order at our Palleys of* Westminster *the* 20. *day of* May *in the fifth Year of our Reign.*

NUM. LIV.

A Letter giving notice to the Soveraign's Commissioners of the day of *Installation* of a *Knight-Subject* by his *Proxy*.

Ibidem.

By the Queen.

Right trusty and right well-beloved Cousen, we greet you well, And whereas we have appointed you, together with our right trusty and well-beloved Counsellor the Lord Hastinges *of* Loughborow, *our Lord Chamberlen, to be in Commission for the stallment, in our Castell of* Windesore, *of our right trusty and well-beloved the Lord* Grey *of* Wilton, *being lately chosen to be of the Fellowship, and a Companion of our Noble Order of the* Garter. *And forasmuch as the same Lord* Grey *is presently Prisoner with the* French *King, and therefore cannot be installed in his own person, Our pleasure is, that he shall be installed by Sir* Humfry Radclyffe, *Knight, whom we have appointed to be his Deputy in that behalf. And therefore have thought good not only to give you knowledge thereof by these our Letters, but also to require you to make your repair to our said Castell of* Windesore, *so as you may be there by* Tuesday *at night being the 19. of this present moneth, to the end that upon* Wednesday *next, being the* xx. *of this same moneth, he may proceed to the said Installation accordingly. Teven under the Seal of our said Order at our Manor of* Greenwich, *the* xvi. *of* April, *the fourth and fifth years of our Reigns.*

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousen Th' Erle of *Huntington*, Compaignion and Knight of our Noble Order of the *Garter*.

NUM. LV.

The *Oath* given to Sir *John Robesart*'s Proxy.

Ex Regist. Chartac. fol. 5. a.

MOY Thomas Barr, *Chivaler, procureur a mon Maister, Sire* John Robesart, *esleux d'estre de l'honourable compaignie du* Garter, *promete & jure, en lalme, & en nonme de mon dite Maister, de loialment garder, & observer les pointes queconquez, de lez estatutz, du dite Ordre, en ceu, que a luy pertiendra, selonc le forme, & effecte dez estatuz susditz, & selonc son loial povir.*

NUM. LVI.

The *Oath* given to the Lord *Scroope*'s Proxy.

Ex Collect. J. V.

YOU being Deputy and Procurer for the Lord Scroope *of* Bolton, *named and chosen to be one of the Companions of the most honourable Order of the* Garter, *shall in the said Lords name promise and swear by the holy Evangelists by you here touched, that the said Lord, wittingly and willingly, shall not break any Statutes of the said Order, or any Article in them contained, the same being agreeable, and not repugnant to the Laws of Almighty God, and the Laws of this Realm, as far forth as unto him belongeth and appertaineth, As God you help and his holy Word.*

NUM. LVII.

The *Certificate* of Election to the *French* King *Henry* the Second.

MS. quart. penes W. le N. f. 109. b.

Treshault & trespuissant Prince, trescher & tresayme bon frere & Cousin, tant & si affectueusement que faire pouvons, a vous nous recommendons. Comme par la tresgrande noblesse, prouesse, & aultres grandes vertus & merites de vostre tresnoble personne tant approuvés, que justement la fame en est par tout cognue, & oultre ce pour tant plus augmenter & faire accroistre, la bonne & fraternelle amitié & confederation d'entre vous & nous, nos Royaumes & Subjects, avons assemblé en deué Collegialle & ancienne maniere avec les Chevaliers de nostre Ordre du Jarretiere, *au Chapitre tenu & celebré en nostre manoir de* Greenwich, *le* xxiv. *jour* D'avril *derniere passé, avons tous ensemble & d'un Commun & unanime consentiment & vouloir esleu, choisi, & nommé vostre tresnoble personne au nombre de nostre dit amiable Compagnie, & Ordre du* Jarretiere, *de la quelle Election il nous a semble bon, vous advertir par cestes, vous priant trescordiallement, treshault & trespuissant Prince, trescher & tresamé, bon frere & Cousin, de faire cest honeur a nous & toute la dite Compaignie, de consentir a la dite Election, en acceptant pour l'amour de nous, & comme par ce vous nous feres chose tres-agreable; ainsi nous estimerons nostre dit Ordre d'autant plus garni & decoré, come entendres plus amplement par nos Ambassadeurs, qui pour ceste cause sont prests a partir par devers vous. Parquoy nous ne vous tiendrons ny plus long propos, Ains prions le Createur (treshaut & trespuissant Prince, trescher & tresaime bon frere & Cousin) vous avoir en sa tressainte & digne garde. Escript a nostre Manoir de* Greenwich, *le----jour de* May 1551.

NUM. LVIII.

NUM. LVIII.

A *Credential Letter* sent to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order.

Ex MS. 4. penes W. le N. Cl. fol. 110.

TResbault & tresexcellent Prince, trescher & bien aimé Cousin, a vous bien affectueusement nous nous recommendons. Comme sur l'advertissement que nous vous feismes de vostre Election icy au nombre & amiable Compaignie de nos confreres Chevaliers, & Compaignons, de nostre Ordre de la Jarretiere; *vous avez signifié depuis vostre bonne & pronte acceptation, & singulier contentement de la dite Election, si desirant affectueusement, qu'elle pregne son deu effect, Nous avons prontement à ce despeché devers vous nostre tresfeal & bien aimé le Sieur de* Clinton & Say, *Chevalier & Compagnon du dit Ordre, & nostre feal & bien aimé* Gartiere, *Roy d'Armes de l'Ordre; avec ample pouvoir & Commission non seullement pour vous presenter, bailler, & donner de par nous la* Jarretiere, manteau *& aultres ensignes appartenantes au dit Ordre, mais aussi faire tout aultre chose en tel cas accoustumé & requise, come ferions si nous y fussions en personne, vous priant, trescher & bien aymé cousin, de les accepter d'aussi bonne vouloir que desirons l'accroissement, par ce, de vostre honneur & renom: Et oultre ce d'adjouster foy a tout ce que nos dits commissaires vous diront & feront, en nostre endroit, touchant leur Commission, ainsi que feries a nous mesmes: Que sera la fin de cestes pour la present, & ainsi treshault & excellent Prince, trescher & bien aymé cousin, Dieu vous ait en sa digne tuition. Escript a nostre Palaice de* Westminster *le* 17. *jour de* Octobre, 1554.

NUM. LIX.

Another to *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg*.

Ex Eq. aurat. Anglo-Wirtemb. p. 120.

QUandoquidem, mî Domine Consanguinee (intelligit serenissimus Rex Angliæ *Ducem illustrissimam* Wirtembergiæ, Fredericum) *liquidò nobis constat, quòd, ut optimam affectionem erga Regnum hoc à TE semper ostensam, demortua Regina p. m. dilecta nostra soror agnosceret, ac vicissim suam in te benevolentiam per amicam contestaretur: elegerat te ac nominârat, ut Equestris Ordinis* Garterii, *sive* Cruralis fasciæ *consors esses: quod tamen ob causas aliquas in actum deducere distulit ac procrastinata est: Nos autem obligationi promptæ tuæ voluntati successimus, & ejus per Legatum tuum, nuper adeò hinc profectum, certum testimonium & confirmationem accepimus; eam nobis conservare, ac prædictæ nostræ dilectæ sororis amicitiæ, laudabiliq; erga te proposito satisfacere desideramus. Quod ut effectum jam modò suum obtineret, hunc ipsum in finem præsentem Baronem* Spencerum *ad te Legatum elegimus, qui præter amicam nostram salutationem, nostrum quoq;* Garterium Ordinem *tibi adferat ac tradat. Quamobrem hisce rogamus, ut eum ab illo accipias, firmiterq; credas hunc ipsum Ordinem unum esse de præcipuis signis ac Testimoniis, quodcunq; nos externo* Principi, *ad nostram in ipsum amicissimam declarandam voluntatem, & de ipso existimationem, in quâ merita ipsius & virtutes habeamus, tribuere possimus: Ita ut hâc ratione re ipsâ & ipso facto quotiescunq; se offeret occasio, qua nobis tibi commodandi gratâq; faciendi facultas erit, benè nos affectos, promptos, ac paratos sis inventurus & experturus. Sicut idem sanè prænominato* Spencero *pluribus & latiùs tibi coràm significandi dedimus mandatum. Quâ de causa fidem huic ut habeas, oramus; certoq; de nobis tibi persuadeas id, quòd interim sumus & manebimus semper. Datæ* Wincestre, 18. Sept. 1603.

NUM. LX.

Another to *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*.

Ex Continuat. Thuani pag. 331. *Edit. Francof. an.* 1628.

MI cognate, virtutum tuarum fama, & egregia fortitudinis documenta, quæ tum in Provinciarum Unitarum Belgii, *jampridem firmo fœdere regnis nostris junctarum, tum in religionis, quæ nobis cum Provinciis illis communis est, defensione edidisti, jamdudum in nobis desiderium inveniendi occasionem quâ quanti te fecimus testaremur, excitarunt, convocatis igitur Equitibus & fratribus* Ordinis aureæ Periscelidis, *& in eorum numerum allecto cognato & futuro genero nostro,* Electore Palatino, *visum est ex consensu totius Collegii, ut te ipsi socium adjungeremus hac Electione ex voto nostro factâ, tibi more majorum nostrorum insignia Ordinis mittimus, &* Winwodo *Equiti ac Legato nostro mandavimus ut ea tibi exhibeat, iisq; te amiciat: Insuper* Gartero, *fœdialium nostrorum principi, negotium dedimus, ut, quod sui muneris est, exequatur. Habe hoc à nobis sinceri affectûs testimonium: quem deinceps, quotiescunq; occasio se dabit, pluribus aliis argumentis declarare parati sumus, Ex Arce nostrâ* Westmonasteriensi 9. *Kal.* Jan. 1612.

NUM. LXI.

Another to *Frederick William*, Elector of *Brandenburgh*, with the *Garter* and *George*.

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

MON Frere, l'asseurance, que j'ay de vostre Amitié par plusieurs tesmoignages, que vous m'en avez donnez m'oblige a rechercher tous les moyens qui seront capables de l'entretenir,

tenir, & de la conserver; Et pour ce sujet j'ay trouve à propos, comme Souverain du tresancien & tres-noble Ordre de la Jartiere, *de vous eslire l'un des Chevaliers, paers, & Compagnons du dit Ordre, estimant par là de faire une plus estroite Amitié avec vous, & d'augmenter le bien & la prosperité de cette tres-noble societé, laquelle par plusieurs siecles a eu non seulement les Roys* D'angleterre *nos predecesseurs pour Souverains, mais aussi l'honneur d'avoir plusieurs Empereurs, Roys, & Princes Estrangers pour Compagnons: Comme aussi de vous donner par là une marque evidente de mon affection, & de la haute estime que j'ay de vos merites, & de vostre personne, & pour confirmation de la dite Election je vous envoye par le Sieur Chevalier de* Walker *Jartiere, Roy d' Armes, la Medaille dite le* George, *la* Jartiere *&* l'Estoille, *pour les Porter a la maniere accoustumée: Assavoir la* Medaille *autour du Corps, la* Jartiere *à la Jambe gauche, &* l' Estoille *sur le Coste gauche de la Casaque ou du Manteau. Le dit Sieur de* Walker *vous asseurera de ma part, que je desire avec passion de vous tesmoigner, que je suis,*

Mon frere,

A Paris *le* 23. *de* Januier 1654.

Vostre bien affectionné frere & Cousin.

C. R.

A Mon frere Monsieur le Marquis de *Brandeburg* P. Electeur du Saint Empire.

NUM. LXII.

A *Commission* for delivery of the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the Order, to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*.

Ex amplo Codice MS. penes præf. Johannem Vincent, fol. 175.

EDward, *par la Grace de Dieu, Roy* D'angleterre *& de* France, *& Seigneur* d' Irlande, *Souverain de L'Ordre de la* Jarretiere, *A tous ceulx qui ces presentes lettres verront, salut: Comme treshault & puissant Prince, nostre tresame frere,* Charles, *Duc de* Bourgoigne, *pour les glorieuses merites de ses vertuz, haultesse, & Noblesse, dont la Renommee s'est par tout Respandue, a esté nadguaires par nous & noz confreres Chevaliers, & Compaignons du dit Ordre, en nostre Palais de* Westmonstier *assemblez, esleu Chevalier & Compaignon d'icelluy Ordre, en lieu lors vacant, si comme par nous aultres lettres a nostre dit frere adresses en signifiant la dite election est contenu plus a plain, voulans & desirans tresaffectueusement la dit election sortir son deu effect, & perfection, sçavoir faisons que nous confians es feaultez, discretions, & dilligences de nostre feal & bien amé Messir* Galliard, *Seigneur de* Daras, *Chevalier & Compaignon dudit Ordre, Et de noz feaulx & bien amez conseillers Messire* Jehan Scott, *Chevalier, controleur de nostre hostel,* Thomas Vahan, *Tresorier de nostre Chambre, Maistre* Jehan Russell *Docteur es Deserctz, archidiacre de* Barkshire, *&* Jarretiere, *Roy D'armes, les cinq, quatre, trois, ou deulx, dont le dit Seigneur de* Duras *soit tousjours l'un, avons ordonné commis & deputé, Ordonnons, Commettons, & Deputons, par ces presentes, noz Ambassadeurs Procureurs & Messagers especiaulx, & leur donnons povoir, auctorité & mandement especial, d'eulx transporter par devers nostre dit frere, & de luy presenter, bailler, & donner de par nous la Jarretiere, le mantell, & autres enseignes par nous presentement a luy envoyes, avec toutes les ceremonies & solempnitez deuës & acoustumées d'estre presentez, baillez, ou donnez en tel cas, Et oultre de Recevoir de nostre dit frere le serment, selon la forme & maniere des estatuz du dit Ordre, Et autres choses faire & exercer & expedier, que a eulx sembleront estre necessaires en ceste partie, tout ainsi que faire deurions & pourrions, si y estions en nostre personne, En tesmoign de ce, a ces presentes noz lettres nous avons fait mettre le Seau du dit Ordre du* Jatretier, *Donné en nostre Palais de* Westmonstier *le* x. *jour de* Januier *l'an* M. CCCC. LXIX.

NUM. LXIII.

Another for delivery of them to *Ferdinand* Arch-Duke of *Austria*.

Ex MS. fol. penes E.W. G. f. 18.

HEnry *le huitiesme, par la grace de Dieu, Roy* D'angleterre, *& de* Fraunce, *Defenseur de la Foy, Seigneur* D'irlande, *Souverain de la tres-noble Ordre de* Saint George, *nomme la* Jarretiere, *A tous ceulx, qui ces presentes Lettres verront, Salut. Comme treshault, excellent & puissant Prince, nostre tresamé Cousin & bon Nepueu, Dom.* Fernando, *Infante de* Castille, *Archidue* D'austrich, *Conte de* Tyrol, &c. *Lieutenant du Saint Empire, pour les grans merites de ses vertus, hautesse, & noblesse, dont la renommée, s'est par tout espandue, a esté naguerres par nous & noz Confreres Chevaliers & Compaignons du dit Noble Ordre, en nostre Manoir de* Richemont *assambles, esleu Chevalier & Compaignon d'icelluy Ordre de* Saint George, *en lieu vacant, voulans & desirans tresaffectieusement la dit esleccion sortir son deu effect & perfection; Savoir faisons, que nous confians es feaultés, deserecions, & diligence de nostre feal & bien ame Messire* Henry, *Seigneur de* Morley, *& aussi de noz feaulx & bien amez Maistre* Edward Lee, *Docteur en Theologie, Archidiacre de* Colchester, *nostre Aulmonier, Messire* Guillaume Husey, *Chevalier, & Messire* Thomas Wriothesley, Jarretiere, *nostre Principal Roy D'armes, nostres Conseillours, les quatre, troys, ou deux, dont le dit Seigneur de* Morley *soit tousjours l'ung, avons ordonné, commys, & Deputé, Ordonnons, commettons, & deputons, par ces presentes, noz Ambassadeurs, procureurs, & messaigers especiaulx, & leur donnons povoir, autorité*

&

& mandement especial, d'eulx transporter par devers nostre dit Cousin & bon Nepueu, & de luy presenter, bayller, & donner, de par nous, la Jarretiere, l'habit, & aultres Enseignes par nous presentement a luy envoyées, avec toutes les solempnitez & Ceremonyes deüez & accustumez d'estre presentées, baillées, ou données, en tel cas; Et oultre de recevoir, de nostre dit Cousin & bon Nepueu, le serment, selon la forme & maniere dez Estatuz du dit Noble Ordre, & aultres choses faire exercer & expedier, que a eux sembleront estre necessaires en cest partie, tout & ainsy que faire deurions ou pourrions, si y estions en nostre personne. En tesmoigne de ce, a ces presentes noz lettres, signees de nostre main, nous avons faict metre le Seau du dit Noble Ordre de Saint George *nommé la* Jarretiere. *Donné en nostre Chasteau de* Wyndesore, *le* xviii. *jour d'* Aoust, *L'an de Grace* M. D. XXIII. *Et le* xv. *An de nostre Regne.*

Pexsall.

NUM. LXIV.

Another for their delivery to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*.

Ex Collect. Gul. le N. Cl.

PHilippe *&* Marie *par la grace de Dieu Roy & Royne d'* Angleterre, France, Naples, Jerusalem, *&* Irlande, *Defenseurs de la Foy, Prince & Princesse d'* Espagne, *&* Sicille, *Archiduc & Archiduchesse d'* Austriche, *Duc & Duchesse de* Millain, Burgoigne, Brabant, *Conte & Contesse de* Flanders, Hasburg, *&* Tyroll, &c. *A tous ceulx qui ces presentes Lettres verront, Salut. Comme treshault & tresexcellent Prince* Emanuel Philibert, *Duc de* Savoy, Chablais, *&* Auguste, *Prince & Vicar perpetuel du* Saint Empire, *Marquis en* Italie, *Prince de* Piemont, *Conte de* Geneve, &c. *Lieutenant & Capitain Generall pour nostre trescher pere L'empereur, pour ses grandes merites & proueses, noblesse, & autres vertus, dont la renommee s'est divulgee & esparse, eut esté naguieres par nous & nos confreres Chevaliers & Compagnons, de nostre Ordre de la* Jarretiere, *en nostre Chasteau de* Windesor *assemblees, esleu Chevalier & Compagnon d'icelluy Ordre en lieu là vacant, comme par nos aultres lettres, a nostre dit Cousin addressées, en signifiant son Election est cont enu plus a plain, voulans & desirans affectueusement la Election sortir son deu effect & perfection, Scavoir faisons, que nous, confians es fialtie, discretion, & diligence de nostre trefeal & bien aimé le Seigneur de* Clinton *&* Saye, *Chevalier & Compagnon de nostre Ordre, & de nostre feal & bien aymé* Jarretiere, *Roy d'armes d'icelluy Ordre, avons Ordonné, Commis, & deputé, Ordonnons, Commettons, & deputons, par ces presentes, nos Ambassadeurs, procureurs, & Messagiers especiaulx, & leur donnons pouvoir authorité & mandement especial, d'eulx transporter au aimé nostre Cosin, & a luy presenter, bailler, & donner de par nous la Jarretiere, & le manteau, & aultres enseignes par nous presentement a luy envoyées, avecque toutes les Ceremonies & solempnities, deues, & accoustumés d'estre presentees, baillees & donnees en tel cas, & oultre de recevoir, de nostre Cosin, le Sacrement, selon la forme et maniere dez estatutz du dit Ordre, & toute aultre chose faire & expedier que a eulx sembleront necessaires en cest endroict, tout ainsi que faire deburions & pourrions, si y estions en nos personnes propres. En temoign de ce, avons souscript de nostre main propre ces presentes lettres, & y faict mettre le Seel du dit Ordre de la* Jarretiere; *Donné ou nostre Palais de* Westminster *le* xvii. *jour de* Octobre 1554.

NUM. LXV.

Another for their delivery to the *French* King, *Charles* the Ninth.

Ex ipso Autogr.

ELizabeth *par la grace de dieu, Royne d'*Angleterre, France, *&* Irlande, *Defenseur de la foy,* &c. *a tout ceulx, qui ces patentes Lettres verront, Salut. Come treshault, tresexcellent, trespuissant Prince, nostre trescher & tresamé frere, & Cousin, le Roy tresthrestien* Charles *de* France, *tant pour ses tresgrandes noblesse, dons, & vertus singuliers, dont Dieu l'a orné, & la renommee s'en est par tout divulguée, & esparse, & que pour tant plus augmenter, & establir la bonne amitie, & intelligence qui est entre nous, & nostre dit bon frere, ait esté naguieres par nous & nos confreres Chevaliers & Compagnons de nostre Ordre de* Jarretiere, *en nostre Chasteau de* Windsore *assemblés, eleu Chevalier & Compagnon d'icelluy Ordre, en lieu là vacant, voulant & desirant affectueusement la ditte election sortir son deu effect & perfection; scavoir faisons que nous confians es feaultés, discretions, & diligences de nostre trescher & bien aimé Cousin, le Sieur de* Hunsdon, *Chevalier, & Compagnon de nostre Ordre, & de nos feaulx & bien aimés Messieurs,* Thomas Smith, *Chevalier, nostre Ambassadeur resiant aupres nostre dit bon frere, & Messieur* Gilbert Dethick, *Chevalier, Roy D'armes d'icelluy Ordre, les avons ordonné, commis, & deputé, ordonnons, commettons, & deputons, par ces presentes nos ambassadeurs, procureurs, & messagiers expeciaulx, & leur donnons pouvoir, authorite, & mandement especial d'eulx trouver, devers nostre dit bon frere, & de luy presenter & donner, de par nous, la* Jarretiere, *& le manteau, & autres enseignes par nous presentement a luy envoyées, avecques toutes les Ceremonies, & solemnités deüés, & accoustumieres d'estre presentées, baillées, & données en tel cas, & oultre ce, faire, & expedier, toutes aultres choses, que a eulx sembleront necessaires en cest endroit, tout ainsi que faire deburions, & pourrions, si y estions en nostre propre personne. En tesmoing de ce, avons souscript de nostre main propre ces presentes, & y fait mettre le Seel du dit Ordre de la* Jarretiere; *Donné a nostre maison de* Richmond *le*

xxviii. *jour de* May, *l'an de grace*, *mil cinq cens*, *soixante & quatre*, *& de nostre regne le sixiesme.*

NUM. LXVI.

Another for their delivery to *Maximilian* the Emperor.

Ex Collect. Gul. le N. Cl.

ELizabetha, *Dei gratiâ*, Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ *Regina fidei Defensor*, &c. *Omnibus ad quos presentes Litteræ sint perventuræ, salutem. Cùm invictissimus & potentissimus Princeps, frater & consanguineus noster*, *Clarissimus* Maximilianus, *Romanorum Imperator*, &c. *non solum ob dignitatis suæ fastigium, dotésq; ac virtutes animi heroicas, quibus illum ita cumulatè ornavit ac illustravit Deus Optimus Maximus, ut earum per universum Orbem fama dimanaverit, verum etiam ut amicitiæ ac intelligentiæ arctioris vinculum inter nos firmetur ac stabiliatur, Ex nostro nostrorumq; Confratrum, Equitum ac Sociorum Ordinis* Garterii *assensu & consensu, nuper in dictum Ordinem nostrum* Garterii *electus & susceptus fuerit; Ut hanc electionem, prout par est, absolvamus, & ad effectum perducamus, notum facimus, quòd prudentiæ & dexteritati pernobilis & perdilecti consanguinei nostri* Thomæ, *Comitis* Suffexiæ, &c. *unius Equitum Sociorum dicti nostri Ordinis, ac dilecti nostri* Gilberti Dethick, *Militis, & Regis Armorum, plurimùm confidentes, illos Legatos, Procuratores, & nuncios nostros speciales ordinavimus, deputavimus, & constituimus, prout per præsentes Ordinamus, Deputamus, & Constituimus, iisq; potestatem, authoritatem, ac mandatum speciale damus, non solum sese versus dictum Imperatorem conferendi, & illi nostro nomine præsentandi Garterium, pallium, aliáq; insignia quæ in præsentiâ illi à nobis mittuntur, verùm etiam omnes Ceremonias ac Solennitates peragendi, quæ, in hâc parte, ex usu & consuetudine fieri & peragi solent, omniáq; reliqua expediendi, quæ ad hoc negotium spectant, quæq, illis videbuntur necessaria, haud minus ac si nos ipsi præsentes facere & expedire vellemus. In cujus rei testimonium has literas fieri fecimus patentes, nec non illas manu nostrâ subscriptas, Sigillo dicti Ordinis communiri jussimus. Datum in Regiâ nostrâ* Westmonasteriensi xx. *die* Maii *Anno Domini* 1567. *regnorum verò nostrorum nono.*

ELIZABETHA.

NUM. LXVII.

Another for *Delivery* of them to *Frederick* the Second, King of *Denmark.*

Ex Autogr. in Bibliot. Hatton.

ELizabetha *Dei gratiâ* Angliæ Franciæ & Hiberniæ *Regina, fidei Defensor*, &c. *universis & singulis præsentes has literas nostras visuris, inspectaturis, & audituris, salutem. Cùm serenissimus Princeps, frater & consanguineus noster charissimus* Fredericus, *Dei gratiâ* Daniæ, Norwegiæ, Gothorum, Vandalorumq, *Rex*, &c. *plurimarum Heroicarum Virtutum splendore & gratiâ nobilitatus, Orbem Christianum famâ nominis sui impleverit, eâq; jam ante annos aliquot animum nostrum accenderit, ut cum amicitiam in personâ ejus melioribus quibus potuimus officiis cultiorem redderemus, quam hæreditario quodam jure sanctissimæ memoriæ nobilissimi Majores & Antecessores nostri nobis commendârunt, nullis autem officiis erga tam charum Principem satisfacientes nobis, cum nuper elegerimus, conspirantibus omnibus omnium Commilitonum suffragiis, in illustrissimi Ordinis* Garterii *nobilissimam societatem, quo arctiori benevolentiæ vinculo, si fieri posset, cum in dies singulos nobis magis magisq; conjungeremus, utpote Principem verè Christianum, in cujus amicitiâ vel maximè cupimus conquiescere, summóq; desiderio aventes ut quod non nisi auspicatissimè incæpimus, ad optatum finem perducatur; Sciatis, quod nos, de fidelitate, prudentiâ & diligentiâ prænobilis viri plurimùm nobis chari, Domini* Peregrini, *Domini de* Willoughby, & Ersby, *& spectabilis Viri* Gilberti Dethick *Equitis, Regis Armorum Ordinis, plurimùm confidentes, ipsos nostros veros, & indubitatos Ambasciatores, Procuratores, & Oratores speciales, assignavimus, fecimus, & constituimus, assignamus, facimus, & constituimus, per præsentes, dantes eis potestatem, authoritatem & mandatum speciale ad præfatum Fratrem & Consanguineum nostrum charissimum proficiscendi, eiq; deferendi & donandi, nostro nomine, & pro nobis,* Subligaculum, & Trabeam, *& reliqua Insignia Illustrissimi Ordinis nostri* Garterii, *per nos ad præsens ad illum transmissa, cæteráq; peragendi quâm officiosissimè, & religiosissimè poterunt, quæ ad honoratissimi illius Ordinis decus & ornamentum quoquo modo putabunt pertinere, haud aliter atque ipsi faceremus, si præsentes essemus. In cujus rei testimonium has Literas nostras manu nostrâ subscriptas, Sigillo dicti Ordinis* Garterii *communiri fecimus. Datæ è Regiâ nostrâ* Grenewici 27. *die Mensis* Junii, *anno salutis Humanæ supra millesimum quingentesimum, octuagesimo secundo, regni verò nostri vicesimo quarto.*

ELIZABETHA.

NUM. LXVIII.

Another for delivery of them to *Henry* the Third of *France.*

MS. 4. penes Arthur. Com. Anglesey. p. 63. b.

ELizabeth, *by the grace of God, Queen of* England, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith*, &c. *To all those to whom these presents shall come, Greeting.* Forasmuch *as the*

the right high, right excellent, and right mighty Prince, our right dear and right well-beloved Brother, and Cozen, the most Christian King, Henry *of* France, *as well for his right great Nobility, gifts and virtues singular, wherewith God had endued him, the renown whereof is dispersed and divulged throughout, and that the more to augment and establish the good amity and intelligence which is between us and our said good Brother, he hath been not long since by us and our felow Bretbren the Knights and Companions of our Order of the* Garter, *in our Castell of* Windesore *assembled, chosen Knight and Companion of the same Order, in place there vacant; We willing and desiring affectiously the same Election to take its due effect and perfection, give to understand, that We, trusting in the fidelities, discretions, and diligence of our right dear and well-beloved Cozen, the Earl of* Darby, *Knight and Companion of our said Order, and of our faithful and well-beloved, Sir* Edward Stafford *Knight, our Embassador resident with our said good Brother, have ordained, committed, and deputed, and do ordain, commit, and depute them by these presents our Embassadors, Procurators, and Messengers especial. And we give them power, authority, and especial charge to go unto our said good Brother, and to present and give him from us the* Garter, *the* Mantle, *and other Ensigns by us presently sent unto him, with all the Ceremonies and Solemnities due and accustomed to be presented, given, and deliverd in such case: And furthermore to do and dispatch all other things, which unto them shall be thought necessary in that behalf, even so as we our selves ought and might do, if we were there in our own proper person; In witness whereof we have subscribed these presents with our own proper hand, and thereunto caused the Seal of our said Order of the* Garter *to be put. Dated at our Mannor of* Greenwich, *the* xx. *day of* January, *the year of our Lord* 1584. *and of our Reign the* 27.

ELIZABETH.

NUM. LXIX.

Another for *Delivery* of them to *Henry* the Fourth of *France*.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

ELizabeth, *par la grace de Dieu Royne d'*Angleterre, France, *&* Irlande, *Defenseur de la Foy,* &c. *A tous ceux qui ces presents verront, salut. Comme le treshault, tresexcellent, & trespuissant Prince, nostre trescher & tresamé frere, & Cousin, le Roy trescbrestien* Henry *de* France *& de* Navarre, *tant pour sa treshaulte noblesse, dons, & vertus singuliers, dont Dieu l'a orné & l'a renommé, s'en est par tout divulguée & esparse, que pour tant plus augmenter & establir la bonne amitié & intelligence, qui est entre nous, & nostre dit bon frere, ait este n'aguares par nous & nos Confreres & Compagnons de nostre Ordre de la* Jartiere, *en nostre Chasteau de* Windsore *assembles, esleu Chevalier, & Compagnon d'icelluy Ordre, en lieu là vacant, voulans & desirans affectueusement la dite Election sortir son deu effect & perfection, Scavoir faisons, que Nous confians es feautes, discretions & diligences de nostre trescher & bien aimé Cousin, le Comte de* Shrewsbury, *Chevalier & Compagnon de nostre dit Ordre, & de nostre feal & bien aimé* Guillaume Dethick *Jartier, nostre premier Roy d'Armes,* &c. *d'icelluy Ordre, les avons Ordonné Commis & Deputé, Ordonnons, Commettons, & Deputons par ces presentes, Nos Ambassadeurs, procureurs, & messagiers especials, & leur donnons pouvoir authorité & mandement especial, d'eux trouver vers nostre dit bon frere, & de luy presenter & donner, de par nous, la* Jarretiere, Robe, Manteau, *&* Collier, *& les autres enseignes par nous presentement a luy envoyées, avecques toutes les Ceremonies & Solennités deuës & accoustumées d'estre presentées, baillées, & données en tel cas. Et oultre ce, faire & expedier toutes autres choses que à iceux sembleront necessaires en cest endroit, tout ainsi que faire deburions & pourrions, si y estions en nostre propre personne; En tesmoign de ce, avons soubscerit de nostre propre main ces presentes, & y fait mettre le Seel du dit Ordre de la* Jartiere. *Donné a nostre maison de* Greenwich, *le 6. jour de* Septembre, *L'an de grace Mil cinq cens quatre vingts & seize, & de nostre Reigne, le trente huitiesme.*

ELIZABETH.

NUM. LXX.

Another for their *Delivery* to *Christian* the Fourth, King of *Denmark*.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

JAcobus, *Dei gratiâ,* Angliæ, Scotiæ, Franciæ, *&* Hiberniæ *Rex, Fidei Defensor,* &c. *Universis & singulis, Patentes hasce litteras nostras lecturis & inspecturis, salutem. Cum multæ justissimæ sint causæ, cur nos serenissimo Principi, fratri, & consanguineo nostro charissimo,* Christiano, *Dei gratiâ,* Daniæ, Norvegiæ, Gothorum, Vandalorumq; *Regi, Omnia benevolentiæ atq; amicitiæ Officia præstare, atq; honores (quantum in nobis est) maximos atq; amplissimos tribuere debeamus; & ob eas causas (more institutóq; Majorum qui maximis principibus & nobilissimis, atq; eximiâ virtute præditis hominibus, hunc honorem semper habuerunt) Regem illum propinquitate atq; amicitiâ nobis conjunctissimum in eorum numerum asciverimus, totinsq; societatis consensu elegerimus, qui celeberrimo atq; illustrissimo* Garterii *(ut appellatur) Ordine apud nos honorantur; ideirco notum atq; testatum omnibus esse volumus, nos pro fide, prudentiâ, & diligentiâ Nobilissimi viri, Cognati nostri,* Rogeri *Comitis* Rutlandiæ, *itemq; spectabilis viri* Gulielmi Segar, *armigeri, Regis Armorum Ordinis, nobis spectatâ atq; exploratâ, illos assignasse,*

assignasse, fecisse, & constituisse, perq; hasce litteras assignare, facere, & constituere, certos & indubitatos Ambasciatores, procuratores, & Oratores nostros, iisq; potestatem, authoritatem & speciale mandatum dedisse ad præfatum Regem, fratrem, & consanguineum nostrum proficiscendi, eiq; nostro nomine & pro nobis Subligaculum & Trabeam, *& reliqua illustrissimi Ordinis nostri* Garterii *insignia, hoc tempore à nobis ad illum transmissa, deferendi, tradendi, atq; donandi, ad omnia deniquè (quàm poterunt officiosissime ac religiosissime) præstanda & peragenda, quæ ad honoratissimi illius Ordinis decus & Ornamentum, spectare videbuntur, perinde atq, ipsi faceremus, si præsentes essemus. In cujus rei testimonium, hasce litteras nostras Patentes, propria manu nostrâ subscriptas, Sigillo prædicti Ordinis nostri communiri fecimus. Datæ è Regiâ nostrâ* Grenevicensi *die* 23. Junii, *Anno Christi* 1603.

JACOBUS.

NUM. LXXI.

Another for delivery of them to *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg*.

Ex Lib. Collect. Tho. Row Eq. Aur. Ord. Canc. f. 206.

JAcobus *Dei gratia*, Angliæ, Scotiæ, Franciæ, *&* Hiberniæ *Rex, fidei Defensor*, &c. *Universis & singulis præsentes has literas nostras visuris, inspecturis, vel audituris, salutem. Cùm illustrissimus Princeps, ac Dominus, Dominus* Fredericus *Dux* Wirtembergensis, *&* Tekensis, *Comes* Montis belegardi, *Dominus in* Haydenheim, *Consanguineus, & Affinis noster charissimus, plurimarum Heroicarum virtutum splendore, & gratiâ Nobilitatis, Orbem Christianum famâ nominis sui impleverit, eâq; jam ante aliquot annos animum nostrum accenderit, ut eam amicitiam in personâ ejus, melioribus quibus potuimus Officiis, cultiorem redderemus, quam hæreditario quodam jure Sanctissimæ memoriæ Nobilissimi Majores & antecessores nostri nobis commendârunt, Nullis autem Officiis erga tam charum Principem satisfacientes nobis, cùm nuper elegerimus (conspirantibus omnibus omnium suffragiis) in illustrissimi Ordinis nostri* Garterii *Nobilissimam Societatem quo arctiori benevolentiæ vinculo (si fieri posset) eum in dies singulos nobis magis magisq; conjungeremus, utpote Principem vere Christianum, in cujus amicitiæ vel maximè cupimus conquiescere, summoq; desiderio aventes, ut quod non nisi auspicatissimè incepimus ad optatum finem perducatur.* Sciatis, *quòd nos de fidelitate, prudentiâ & diligentiâ prænobilis viri, plurimum nobis chari, Domini* Roberti Spencer *de* Wormleiton, *& spectabilis viri* Gulielmi Dethick *Equitis*, Garteri, *Regis Armorum Ordinis, plurimùm confidentes, ipsos nostros veros & indubitatos Legatos, Procuratores, & Oratores speciales assignavimus, fecimus, & constituimus, assignamus, facimus, & constituimus per præsentes, dantes eis potestatem, authoritatem, & mandatum speciale, ad præfatum consanguineum nostrum charissimum proficiscendi, eiq; deferendi, & donandi, nostro nomine & pro nobis,* Subligaculum & Trabeam, *& reliqua vestimenta, insigniaq; illustrissimi Ordinis nostri* Garterii, *per nos ad præsens ad illum transmissa, cæteraq; peragendi, quam officiosissime religiosissimèq; poterunt, quæ ad honoratissimi illius Ordinis decus, & ornamentum quoquo modo putabunt pertinere, haud aliter ac si ipsi faceremus, si præsentes essemus. In cujus rei testimonium has litteras nostras, manu nostrâ subscriptas, Sigillo dicti Ordinis nostri* Garterii *communiri fecimus. Datæ Maneriо nostro de* Woodstock, *decimo octavo die Mensis* Septembris, *Anno regni nostri* Angliæ, Franciæ, *&* Hiberniæ *primo, &* Scotiæ 37. 1603.

JACOBUS.

NUM. LXXII.

Another for their delivery to *Maurice*, Prince of *Aurange*.

MS. in Bibl. Hatton. f. 227. *b.*

JAcobus &c, *Cum nihil magis Officium Regale deceat, quàm viris virtutes & fortitudinis famâ illustrissimis honores maximos & amplissimos tribuere; Quorum in numero, singulari virtute emicuit, hâc nostrâ ætate, illustrissimus consanguineus noster,* Mauritius, *Princeps* Auriaci, *Comes* Nassoviæ, &c. *Nos more institutoq; Majorum, qui tantis viris, quæ apud ipsos charissimæ sunt honoris Monumenta, communicare soliti sunt, prædictum principem* Mauritium *cùm amicitiâ nobis conjunctissimum, tùm propter meritæ sua dilectissimum, in eorum numerum ascripsimus, totiusq; societatis consensu elegimus, qui celeberimo atq; illustrissimo* Garterii *(ut appellatur) Ordine apud nos honorantur. Idcirco notum atq; testatum omnibus esse volumus, nos pro fide, prudentiâ, & diligentiâ nobilissimi* Radolphi Winwood, *Equitis Aurati, nostriq; apud* fœderatas Belgii Provincias *Legati; Itemq; spectabilis viri* Gulielmi Seagar, *Garterii, nomine, Principalis apud nos Armorum Regis, à nobis spectatâ, atq; exploratâ, illos assignasse, fecisse, & constituisse, perq; has literas assignare, facere, & constituere certos & indubitatos Ambasciatores, Procuratores, & Oratores nostros, iisq; potestatem, authoritatem, & speciale mandatum dedisse, ad præfatum principem Consanguineum nostrum proficiscendi, eiq; nostro nomine, & pro nobis, quædam* Garterii *insignia (cæteris suo tempore postea præstandis) hoc tempore à nobis ad illum transmissa deferendi atq; donandi, ad omnia deniq;, quàm poterunt officiosissimè, & religiosissime & peragenda, quæ ad honoratissimi illius Ordinis decus & Ornamentum spectare videbuntur, perinde atque ipsi faceremus, si*

si præsentes essemus. In cujus rei, &c. *Datæ è Palatio nostro* Westmonasteriensi, *vicesimo quarto die* Decembris, *Anno Domini* 1612.

NUM. LXXIII.

Another for their *Delivery* to *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*.

Ex Lib. Collect. præf. Tho. Row. fol. 207.

CArolus, *Dei gratiâ*, Magnæ Britanniæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ *Rex, fidei Defensor*, &c. *Universis & singulis hasce literas nostras Lecturis aut inspecturis, salutem. Cùm serenissimus ac potentissimus Princeps, frater, & consanguineus noster charissimus* Gustavus Adolphus, *Dei gratiâ*, Suecorum, Gottorum, Vandalorumq; *Rex, virtutis suæ, ac nobilitatis splendore, rerumq; gestarum gloriâ, ac nominis sui famâ Orbem Christianum impleverit: ad nostrum officium pertinere putavimus, illi non solùm omnia benevolentiæ, atque amicitiæ officia, tanquam principi nobis conjunctissimo, & amicissimo præstare, sed etiam honores (quantum in nobis est) maximos atq; amplissimos tribuere, eosq; inprimis quibus militaris in summo duce virtus solet decorari; pro more igitur & instituto Majorum nostrorum Regum* Angliæ, *qui maximis Principibus, & eximiâ virtute ac nobilitate præditis hominibus hunc honorem habuerunt, Nos Regem illum, communibus omnium Sociorum suffragiis, in celeberrimi Ordinis* Garterii (*ut vocatur*) *collegium elegimus. Et proinde notum & testatum omnibus esse volumus, Nos pro fidelitate, prudentiâ & diligentiâ nobilissimi viri de Conclavi nostro*, Jacobi Spenei *de* Wormston, *Equitis aurati, & spectabilium virorum* Petri Yong *armigeri, unius ex nobilibus nobis in cubiculo præsentiæ nostræ ministrantibus, &* Henrici Saint Georgii, *Armigeri, unius ex Heraldis nostris ad Arma, nobis spectatâ atq; exploratâ, illos assignasse, fecisse, & constituisse, perq; hasce Literas assignare, facere, & constituere, certos & indubitatos Legatos, Oratores, & Procuratores nostros, iisq; potestatem, auctoritatem, & speciale mandatum dedisse, ad præfatum Regem, fratrem, & consanguineum nostrum proficiscendi, eiq; nomine nostro, & pro nobis*, Subligaculum, & Trabeam, *& reliqua illustrissimi Ordinis nostri* Garterii *insignia, jam à nobis ad illum transmissa, deferendi, tradendi, atq; donandi, ad omnia deniq; (quam poterunt officiosissimè ac religiosissimè) præstanda & peragenda, quæ ad honoratissimi illius Ordinis decus, & Ornamentum pertinere videbuntur: perinde atq; ipsi facerenus, si præsentes essemus. In cujus rei testimonium hasce Literas nostras Patentes, propriâ manu nostrâ subscriptas, Sigillo dicti Ordinis nostri* Garterii *communiri fecimus. Datæ è Palatio nostro* Westmonasteriensi, *vicesimo quarto die* Junii, *Anno Domini* 1627. *Stilo* Angliæ.

NUM. LXXIV.

Another for *Delivery* of them to *Charles* Prince Elector.

Ibidem, fol. 213.

CArolus, *Dei gratiâ* Magnæ Britanniæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ *Rex, fidei Defensor*, Periscelidis *Ordinisq;* Georgiani *Supremus*, &c. *universis & singulis hasce literas nostras lecturis, aut inspecturis salutem. Cùm nos omnesq; & singuli, illustrissimi Ordinis* Garterii *Socii, Equites, decimo octavo die* Aprilis, *Anno regni nostri nono, apud Palatium nostrum* Albæ Aulæ Westmonasterii *Capitulariter congregati, charissimum nostrum Nepotem, unicæ, & dilectissimæ Sororis nostræ modo filium natu maximum*, Carolum *Principem Imperii* Electorem, *Comitem* Palatinumq; *non solùm propter Regii nostri Sanguinis communionem, & propinquitatem, sed etiam ad fovendas, & excitandas ineuntis ætatis virtutes, mirificè, cum admiratione, & spe totius Orbis Christiani pullulantes, tàm in sui Principatûs administratione, quàm in rei militaris scientiâ; more, & instituto majorum nostrorum Regum* Angliæ *(quibus solenne fuit nobilissimos quosque, & summa virtute præditos Principes, hoc honore decorare) communibus suffragiis, in celeberrimum nostri Ordinis* Garterii *Collegium & Societatem co-optavimus, & elegimus; Proinde notum esse volumus, Nos pro fidelitate, prudentiâ, & diligentiâ, spectatissimi viri* Gulielmi Boswell *armigeri, procuratoris nostri Regiorum in* Belgia *negotiorum, assidùè vigilantissimi; Nec non* Johannis Philipoti *Armigeri*, Sommerset, *unius ex Heraldis nostris, in hisce mysteriis eruditi (jàm vice & munere* Garterii *Armorum Regis, propter ejus debilitatem & invalitudinem fungentis) nobis cognitâ, & exploratâ, illos assignasse, fecisse, & constituisse, perque hasce literas assignare, facere, & constituere certos, & indubitatos Legatos, Oratores, & Procuratores nostros; iisq; potestatem, auctoritatem, & speciale mandatum dedisse, ad præfatum Principem, & Nepotem nostrum proficiscendi, eiq; nostro nomine, & pro nobis* Periscelidem, *& inauratam gemmisq; distinctam* Sancti Georgii *imaginem, & symbolum, duo præcipua illustrissimi Ordinis nostri* Garterii *insignia, jam à nobis ad illum transmissa deferendi, tradendi, donandi, & induendi, modo & formâ institutioni illius Ordinis maximè congruentibus, & ad omnia deniq; quàm poterunt officiosissimè, & religiosissimè præstanda, & peragena, quæ ad honoratissimi illius Ordinis decus & Ornamentum in hac parte pertinere videbuntur. In cujus rei testimonium hasce literas nostras Patentes, propriâ manu nostrâ subscriptas, Sigillo dicti Ordinis* Garterii *communiri fecimus. Datæ apud Palatium nostrum in Civitate nostrâ* Eboracensi, *vicesimo octavo die Mensis* Maii, *Anno regni nostri* Magnæ Britanniæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ *nono, Annoq; Domini* 1633.

NUM. LXXV.

Another for their *Delivery* to *Charles* King of *Sweden*.

Ex ipso Autogr.

CAroluſ Secundus, *Dei Gratiâ*, Angliæ, Scotiæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Rex, *fidei Defenſor*, atq; *Prænobilis* Georgiani *Ordinis*, vulgò à Periſcelide *Nuncupati*, *Supremus Magiſter*, *Omnibus ad quos præſentes hæ literæ pervenerint*, *Salutem*. *Cùm Sereniſſimus ac Potentiſſimus Princeps ac Dominus*, Caroluſ, *eadem gratiâ*, Suecorum, Gothorum, Vandalorumq; *Rex*, *& Princeps hæreditarius*, *Magnus Princeps* Finlandiæ. *Dux* Schoniæ, Eſthoniæ, Livoniæ, Careliæ, Bremæ, Verdæ, Stetini, Pomeraniæ, Caſſubiæ & Vandaliæ, *Princeps* Rugiæ, *Dominus* Ingriæ & Wismariæ, *nec non Comes* Palatinus Rheni, Bavariæ, Juliæ, Cliviæ, & Montium *Dux*, *Frater*, *Conſanguineus*, *ac Amicus noſter Chariſſimus*: *tam propter natalium ſplendorem & eximias illas*, *quæ in eo conſpicuntur ſupra ætatem*, *virtutes*, *quàm propter habita ad præclara Regnorum ſuorum Antecceſſorum facinora*, *ſpecialim quæ à ſereniſſimo & potentiſſimo Principe Domino* Guſtavo Adolpho *nuper* Succorum *Rege ſunt geſta*, *à quibus non parum honoris præfato Noſtro* Georgiano *Ordini acceſſit*, *utpote qui eius erat Commilito*, *ut denique ſanctiores illa amicitia quæ inter Regios utrinq; Noſtros Prædeceſſores fœliciter interceſſit*, *magis exoletur atque vetuſtate firmior reddatur*, *in præfatum Noſtrum Ordinem fuerit in pleno ejus Capitulo electus & cooptatus*. *Omnibus quæ illud impertiendum & notiſi in hac Noſtrarum duximus eſſe partium*. *Hæ de cauſâ*, *atq; ad magis honorificam ejuſdem rei declarationem*, *nec non ut quæ adhuc reſtant ad conſummandum hoc tam gratum opus perimpleantur*, *ejuſdem Ordinis integrum habitum*, *Ornatum*, & *Inſignia per manus perdilecti & perquam fidelis Conſanguinei & Conſiliarii Noſtri* Caroli *Comitis* Carliolenſis, *Vice-Comitis* Howard *de* Morpeth, *Baronis* Dacre *de* Gilleſland, *locum-tenentis Noſtri Generalis in Comitatibus* Weſtmorlandiæ & Cumbriæ, *Noſtrique jàm ad præfatum Sereniſſimum & Potentiſſimum Principem*, *Dominum* Carolum, Succorum, *&c. Regem Legati Extraordinarii*; *Ei ſpectabilis Viri*, *Domini* Henrici St. George, *è primariis officii armis Noſtris ad Armorum ius*, *vulgò* Richmond Herald *curavimus transferenda*; *Dantes & Concedentes eiſdem Noſtris in hac parte Plenipotentiariis*, *plenum & omnimodam facultatem & Mandatum ſpeciale*, *ut ad præfatum Sereniſſimum & Potentiſſimum Regem* Succorum, *&c. Fratrem Conſanguineum*, & *Amicum Noſtrum*, *ſe conferant eiſdem memorata Inſignia*, *Ornatum habitumq; Noſtri præfati Ordinis*, *à nobis & ex Noſtra parte*, *peramanter offerant*. *Iſis ipſum induant*, *juſjurandum in verba Statutorum dicti Ordinis ab eo accipiant*, *cæteráq; præſtent omnia quæ ad Noſtrum Ordiniſq; decus in ſimilibus inauguationis ſolemnibus fieri aſſolent*, & *adeo rite & honorificè exequenda magis inſerviré judicabunt*, *ac ſicuti atque noſmet ipſi mandare aut perficere poſſemus*, *dato quòd illic coràm adeſſemus*. *Dabantur in Palatio Noſtro* Albæ-Aulæ *apud* Weſtmonaſterium, *Viceſimo nono die Menſis* Novembris; *Annóq; Domini* 1668.

NUM. LXXVI.

A *Warrant* for delivery of the Duke of *Savoy's Habit* to *Garter*.

Ex Cod. MS. in Offic. mag. Guardrob. Reges voc. Warr. Dormant tempore Hen. 8. &c. p. 17.

WE *will and command you, to deliver to Sir* Gilbert Dethick, *Principal King at Arms, for the* Livery *of the* Order *of the* Garter, *to be carried by him to our dear and well-beloved Coſen the Duke of* Savoy, *newly elected and choſen to be one of the* Companions *of the ſaid* Order, *One* Mantle *of Blue Velvet, lined with white Taffita, and one* Kirtle, *lined with white Sarcenet, with one* Robe-lace *of Silk, and Gold, and Silk Riband for the ſaid* Robes, *and as much* Crymſon Velvet *as will cover one* Book *of the Order of the ſaid* Garter, *with Silk Lace to the ſaid Book, one Coſſet be made, covered with Crimſon Velvet, garniſhed with paſſamain Lace of Gold, lined with Crimſon Satten, and quilts of the ſame Satten, for the carriage of one rich* Collar *of Gold, of the Order of the* Garter, *one pair of truſſing Sheets, two great* Coffers *covered double with Hide Leather, double lined, and bound with Plates, with great Girths of Leather to them, on* Pack-Saddle, *with all things neceſſary to the ſame, for carriage of the ſaid Robes. And theſe our Letters, &c. Given at our Pallace at* Weſtminſter *the 19. day of* October *in the firſt and ſecond years of our Reign.*

To our truſty Sir *Edward Waldgrave* Maſter of our Great Wardrobe.

NUM. LXXVII.

A *Warrant* for the *Delivery* of the *Habit* of *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*.

Ex Codice MS. in Offic. Mag. Gardrob. Regis vocat. Lib. quart. Warr. particular. p. 446.

Elizabeth R.

WE *will and command you to deliver to the Lord* Willoughby, *for the Livery of the* Garter *for the King of* Denmark, 20 *yards of Purple Velvet for his* Robe, *and* 18 *yards of Crimſon Velvet for his* Kirtle, *and alſo* 26 *yards of White Sarcenet for lining of them.* Item, *a* Scutcheon *richly embroidered with Damask*

mask Gold and Purls, one Lace for the same Robe of Silk and Gold, with Buttons and Tassels of Silk and Gold.

NUM. LXXVIII.

A *Warrant* for *Delivery* of the *Habit* and *Hatchments* of the *French* King, *Henry* the Third.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

Elizabeth R.

WE *will and command you immediately upon the sight hereof, to deliver, or cause to be delivered, for the several uses hereafter ensuing, the parcels following; that is to say, first, for a Livery of the honorable* Order *of the* Garter, *for our dear Brother,* Henry *the* French *King, one* Kirtle, Hood, *and* Tippet, *containing* 18 *yards of Velvet Crimson, one* Mantle *containing* 20 *yards of Velvet Purple, and twenty six yards of Taffata White, to line them, one* Cushen *of Velvet Purple, with Fringes, Buttons, and Tassels of Gold, and Purple Silk, with a Pillow of Fustian stuffed with Down, one double* Banner *containing* 16 *yards of Velvet Crimson, and Blue, embroidered on both sides with the Arms of* France *and* Poland, *with Cloth of Gold, Cloth of Silver, Venice Gold, Silver and Silk, one Banner* Staff *painted in Oyle Colour, one* Helm *of Steel, all gilt, and* Mantles *to the same* Helm, *containing two yards and a half of Cloth of Gold, lined with one yard and an half of Satten, white, two knopps of Wood gilt with burnished Gold, for the same Mantle, with silk Tassels to them, a Crown of Wood, with the* Crest *carved, and gilt with burnished gold. A* Sword *having the Pomel, and Hilts all gilt; one* Scabbard *for the same with a gilt Chape, and a* Girdle, *both being covered with Cloth of Gold, containing one yard, one* Book *of the* Statutes *of the Order aforesaid illumined, covered with Velvet Crimson, and edged with gold* Lace, *three* great Escocheons, *whereof one of* our Arms, *another of the* French *Kings* Arms, *both within the* Garter, *under Crowns Imperial painted, and gilded with fine Gold in Oyl, upon fine Holland Cloth set in Frames of Wainscot, likewise painted and gilt, and the third of the* Arms *of our right trusty, and right well-beloved Cousin, and Counsellor the* Earl *of* Derby, *likewise painted and gilt in like Holland Cloth, and set in a like Frame, all placed in the Chappel, wherein the said* King *was installed, one* Plate *of the said Kings Arms, ingraven in Copper, gilt, and enameled, fixed within his Stall, within our Chappel, at* Windsor. *And that ye content, and pay, as well for the making, imbroidering and painting of the premises, as also for the carrying of the Hatchments of the said King, to our Castel at* Windsor, *and also that you deliver two* Trunks *for the Carriage of the Parcels aforesaid into* France, *&c. And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant, and discharge for delivery of all the premises. Given under our Signet, at our Mannor of* Greenwich *the* 22. *day of* April, *in the* 27. *year of our Reign, Anno* 1582.

To our trusty and well-beloved
Servant, *John Fortescue* Esquire,
Master of our great Wardrobe.

NUM. LXXIX.

A *Warrant* for *Delivery* of the *Habit* of *Christierne* the Fourth King of *Denmark.*

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

James R.

WE *will and command you to deliver, or cause to be delivered, to our most dear and well-beloved Brother the King of* Denmark *one* Robe *of Purple Velvet of our Noble Order of the* Garter, *and one* Kirtle, Hood, *and* Surcoat *of Crimson Velvet of our said Order lined with White Taffata, bordered with Fustian, and sewed with Silk, with a long String, Button, and Tassel to the same, in such manner and form as to the said Robes belongeth, and also one* Garter *to set upon the shoulder of the same Robe, richly embroidered upon Blue Velvet, with sundry sorts of Pearls, Purls, Plates, Venice Twists, and Silk; And these our Letters signed with our own hand, shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under our Signet at our Honor of* Hampton-Court, *the* xxviii. *day of* September *in the fourth year of our Reign, of* England, France, *and* Ireland, *and of* Scotland *the fortieth.*

To our trusty and well-beloved
Servant Sir *Roger Aston* Knight
Master of our Great Wardrobe.

NUM. LXXX.

A *Warrant* for *Delivery* of the *Ensigns* of the *Order* to be sent to the Emperor *Maximilian* the Second.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

Elizabeth R.

By the *Queen.*

RIght *trusty, and right well-beloved Cousin, we greet you well. And whereas we have now resolved to send forthwith our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin the Earl of* Sussex, *unto our good Brother and Cousin the* Emperor, *and have also appointed Sir* Gilbert Dethick *Knight, alias* Garter, *Principal King at Arms, to attend upon our said Cousin of* Sussex, *in the presenting unto the said* Emperor *the* Robes *of our* Order *of the* Garter, *and such other things as belong thereunto. We will and command you to deliver, or cause to be delivered, unto the said* Garter, *all such*

such things, as you have by our Order given heretofore unto you, caused to be prepared for this purpose, that is to say, the great Collar *of Gold, with the little* George, *the* Garter, *the great* George *with the little Chain, and all other things that you have made ready to be sent in this Journey. And these our Letters with a Bill of the said* Garter's, *testifying the receipt of the same, shall be your sufficient Warrant in this behalf. Given under our Signet at our Palace of* Westminster, *the* xx. *of* May, *the ninth year of our Reign* 1567.

To our right trusty, and right well-beloved Cousin and Councellor, the Marquess of *Winchester*, our high Treasurer of *England*.

NUM. LXXXI.

A *Warrant* for *Delivery* of the *Collar* and *George* to *Edward* Prince Palatine.

Ex lib. vocat. The Book of Warrants in the Jewel-house.

Charles R.

OUR will and pleasure is, that you deliver to the use of our entirely beloved Cousin Edward *Prince Palatine one of the* Companions *of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *one* Collar *of Gold, containing* 26 *Garters with Red Roses enamelled in the midst of them and* 26 *Knots, the Collar weighing* 30 *Ounces* Troy *weight; As also one rich* George *on horseback, with a Dragon to be fastned and pendant thereto, And for so doing this shall be your Warrant. Given under the Signet of our said Order at our Court at* Whitehall, *this* 17. *of* June, *in the* 13. *year of our Reign.*

By his Majesties the Soveraign's special command.

De Vic.

To our trusty and well-beloved Servant, Sir *Gilbert Talbot* Master of our Jewel-house.

NUM. LXXXII.

A *Warrant* for the *Delivery* of the *Collar*, *George*, and *Garter* for *Charles* King of *Sweden*.

Ex eod. Lib.

Charles R.

WHereas we have named and appointed our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor Charles *Earl of* Carlisle *our Ambassador extraordinary to our good Brother the King of* Sweden, *and our trusty and well-beloved* Henry St. George *Esq; one of our Officers at Arms, to invest our said good Brother, lately Elected* Knight *of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *with the whole Habit, Ensigns, and Ornaments of the same. These are to will and require you to deliver unto our said Cousin, and our said Officer at Arms, or to either of them the great* Collar, George, *and* Garter, *and what other things you may have provided on our former Warrant for that occasion, And this with a Note under their or either of their hands, mentioning the particulars to be delivered by you, and acknowledging the Receipt of them, shall be your sufficient discharge. Given under our Signet Manual the* 29. *of* November, 1668.

By the Soveraign's special command.

De Vic.

To our trusty and well-beloved Sir *Gilbert Talbot* Master of our Jewel-house, and our other Officers of the same.

NUM. LXXXIII.

A *Warrant* for *Delivery* of the *Collar*, *George*, and *Garter*, for *John George* Duke of *Saxony*.

Ex Libro præd.

Charles R.

WHereas we have named and appointed our trusty and well-beloved Sir Thomas Higgons *Knight, our Envoye extraordinary into* Germany *and* Tho. St. George *Esquire, one of our Officers at Arms, to carry to and invest our dear Cousin the Elector of* Saxony, *late Elected* Knight *of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *with the whole Habit, Ensigns, and Ornaments of the same, These are to will and require you to deliver unto the said Sir* Thomas Higgons, *and* Tho. St. George, *or to either of them, the great* Collar, George, *and* Garter, *and what ever other things you may have provided on our former Warrants for that occasion; And this with a Note under their or either of their hands, mentioning all the particulars so delivered by you, and acknowledging the Receipt of them, shall be your sufficient discharge. Given under our Signet manual this* 29. *of* November, 1668.

By the Soveraign's special command.

De Vic.

To our trusty and well-beloved Sir *Gilbert Talbot* Master of our Jewel-house, and our other Officers of the same.

NUM. LXXXIV.

NUM. LXXXIV.

A *Receipt* given to the *Jewel-house* upon delivery of the *Ensigns* of the *Order* for *Charles* King of *Sweden*.

Ex Lib. vocat. The Day-Book in the Jewel-house, p. 321.

DEcemb. 31. 1668. *Delivered unto* Henry St. George *Esqs one of his Majesties Officers at Arms, by virtue of his Majesties Sign Manual, bearing date the* 29. *of* November *last past*, viz.

Imprimis, 1 *Onix* George *of the* Order *set round with* 38 *large Rose Diamonds, & 4 smaller Rose Diamonds on a Loop to the said* George. *Also one* Garter *of the* Order *set with* 202 *Rose Diamonds in the Letters*, 6 *between the words, and* 24 *about* 4 *Hot holes. Also on the Buckle of the said Garter* 11 *great Rose Diamonds, and* 10 *small ones, and on the Tabb* 3 *large Rose Diamonds, and* 23 *smaller, Also one* Collar *and* George *of the* Order, *Gold enamelled, weight* 30 *ounces* 10 *penny weight* 6 *grains, with three Cases of Crimson Velvet, fringed with Gold Lace. All which is acknowledged to be received by me*

Hen. St. George.

NUM. LXXXV.

Another *Receipt* given for the *Ensigns* of the *Order* sent to *John George* Duke of *Saxony*.

Ex Lib. vocat. The Day-Book in the Jewel-house, p. 324.

FEbr. 26. 1668. *Delivered to Sir* Thomas Higgons *according to his Majesties Warrant, bearing date the* 29. *of* Novemb. 1668.

Imprimis, *One* Collar *of the* Order *of the* Garter, *consisting of* 21 *Roses, and* 21 *Knots, poize* 30 *ounces* 16 *penny weight, As also one rich Aggot* George *set about with* 32 *rich Diamonds, and three Sparks in the Ring, Also a rich Diamond* Garter, *all the Letters of Diamonds, and at the Buckles end* 9 *fair Faucet Diamonds, and at the Loop end* 9 *very fair Faucet Diamonds, and* 8 *smaller Diamonds. Also one enamelled* George, *poize one Ounce. All these I have received out of his Majesties Jewel-house, with Cases to them,*

Tho. Higgons.

NUM. LXXXVI.

A *Warrant* to provide *Necessaries* for Transportation of the King of *Sweden's* Robes.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

THese are to pray and require your Lordship, that you cause to be provided with all speed, these Necessaries *following for the Transportation of the King of* Swedens *Robes, and other things belonging to the* Order *of the* Garter; *namely, one pair of fine Holland* Sheets *of two breadths and a half, and three ells long; Two* Trunks *for the packing up, and transportation of the Robes, Collar, and Georges, and two* Sweet Bags *of Taffaty, to lay amongst the said Robes: for the doing whereof this shall be your Lordships Warrant.*

Whitehall *this* 27. *of* April, 1627.

To the Right Honorable the Earl of *Denbeigh*, Master of our Great Wardrobe.

NUM. LXXXVII.

A *Warrant* to provide several particulars for the Investiture of the Duke of *Saxony*.

Book of Warrants in the Great Wardrobe, commencing at Michaelmas 1667. *fol.* 25.

THese are to signifie unto your Lordship, That it is his Majesties express pleasure, That you do provide or cause to be provided in part of the Habit *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *which his Majesty is now sending unto the Elector of* Saxony *Knight Elect of the said* Order, *and towards the furnishing of the Officer of Arms, who is to go upon that Employment both with a* Robe *for himself, and such other necessaries as are to be used for his Majesties honor and service on that occasion, the following particulars.*

One Black Velvet Cap *and* Feather, *such and of the same fashion as the* Knights *of the* Order *do wear on St.* George's *day, when the* Feast *is kept and solemnized.*

One Girdle *and* Hangers *of Crimson Velvet.*

One large Cushen *of Blue and Purple Velvet, with Buttons,* Fringe, *and Tassels of the like coloured Silk and Gold.*

Fine Holland Sheets *to fold the* Habit *in.*

Two Trunks *to carry them.*

One Mantle *for Garter or the Officer of Arms that goes in his place, to officiate upon that occasion. The said* Mantle *to be made up of* 18 *yards of Scarlet Sattin, and* 10 *yards of White Deux Caps Taffaty to line the same, and to have an embroidered Scutcheon on the left*

shoulder,

shoulder, and Laces and Tassels of Silk and Gold, alike in every respect unto that Mantle *which* Garter *wears upon St.* George's *day, and at the Chapters of the* Order.

One Scutcheon *with the King's Arms in a quarter of the* Order, *and a handsome gilded Border or Frame.*

Two other Scutcheons *without arms, having only the* Garter *about them, to put in them the Elector of* Saxony's *arms, in a handsome gilded Frame. And these shall be your sufficient Warrant, dated at* Whitehall *this* 17. *of* July 1668.

E. Manchester.

To the Right Honorable *Edward* Earl of *Sandwich*, Master of his Majesties Great Wardrobe, and to the Officers of the same.

NUM. LXXXVIII.

A *Warrant* for the *Habit* of the *Order*, and other *Necessaries*, to be used at the Investiture of *Charles* King of *Sweden.*

Ibidem, fol. 29. *b.*

Charles R.

OUR will and pleasure is, That you prepare or cause to be prepared for the King of Sweden *now Knight Elect of our* Order *of the* Garter, *the whole* Habit *of our said* Order, *together with a* Mantle *for the Officer of Arms, whom we shall appoint to go therewith, and all other Necessaries as you had them specified in a Warrant lately directed unto you for the* Habit *to be sent to the Elector of* Saxony, *and besides one yard and half of skie colour Velvet, wherewith to cover two Statute* Books *of the* Order, *And for so doing this shall be your Warrant. Given under our Sign manual this* 30. *of* August, 1668.

By the Soveraign's special Command.

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cosen and Councellor, *Edward* Earl of *Sandwich*, Master of our Great Wardrobe, or in his absence to his Deputy:

De Vic Chancellor of the Garter.

NUM. LXXXIX.

A *Warrant* for allowance of *Dyet* and *Reward* to *Garter*, in a Legation with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order.*

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

By the King.

TRusty and well-beloved, we greet you well, willing and commanding you, that of such our Treasure, as remaineth in your custodie to our use, ye deliver to our trusty and well-beloved Servant, Sir Gilbert Dethick *Knight, aliàs* Garter, *Principal King at Arms, attending by our commandment upon our right trusty, and right well-beloved Cousin and Councellor, the Lord Marquess of* Northampton, *in his Embassage to our good Brother, the* French *King, ten shillings by the day for his* Dyet, *and also by way of our* Reward *ten shillings by the day, amounting in the whole to twenty shillings by the day, and to allow him for the Posting and Transportation both outward and homeward, as well of himself and his train, as also of certain Robes of our* Order, *and other things necessary for that Voyage, such sums of Money as by his Bill subscribed with his own hand, he shall signifie unto you to have employed in that behalf, as also further to allow him, for the Dyet of* Chester *Herald after the old rate, that is to say five shillings by the day, and five shillings in reward by the day, and for the Dyet of* Rougedragon *Pursuivant two shillings and six pence by the day, and two shillings six pence in reward also by the day, and also for their posting Moneys, according to the tenor aforesaid, beginning the* 28. *of* April *last past, until the return of our said right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Councellor. And these our Letters shall be your Warrant sufficient in that behalf. Given under our Signet, at our Manor of* Greenwich, *the eleventh of* May *in the fifth year of our Reign.*

To our trusty and well-beloved Councellor, Sir *William Cavendishe*, Knight, Treasurer of our Chamber.

E. Somerset.
W. North.
J. Bedford.
J. Warwick.
E. Clinton.
Jo. Gate.

NUM. XC.

Another.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

Elizabeth R.

ELizabeth, *by the Grace of God Queen of* England, &c. *To the Treasurer and Chamberlains of our Exchequer greeting. We will*

will and command you, of such Treasure as is or shall come into the Receipt of our said Exchequer, to deliver or cause to be delivered, to our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir Gilbert Dethick *Knight, alias* Garter, *Principal King of Arms, attending by our commandment upon our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin, the Earl of* Sussex *in his Embassy, now to our good Brother the* Emperor, *the sum of* 10 s. *by the day for his* Dyet, *and also by way of our* Reward *other* 10 s. *by the day, amounting in the whole to* 20 s. *by the day; the said allowance of* 20 s. *by the day to begin 7 days before his arrival at the Sea side, when he shall pass over the Seas in his Journey, and so to continue until his return unto our presence, upon the end of his Voyage. Willing you further, for his better furniture in this Journey, to advance unto him beforehand his said Dyets and Rewards after the rate of* 20 s. *by the day, for two Months. And also to allow unto him upon his return, for the posting and transportation both outward and homeward, of himself and his men, and for certain Robes of our Order, and other things necessary for his Voyage, such sums of Money as by his Bill subscribed with his own hand, he shall signifie unto you to have been by him disbursed in that behalf, And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in that behalf. Teven under our Privy Seal at our Mannor of* Richmond, *the* 14. *day of* June *in the ninth year of our Reign.*

To the *Treasurer* and *Chamberlains* of our Exchequer.

NUM. XCI.

Another for like Allowances to *Garter* and *Somerset.*

Ex Collect. A. V. W.

*Order is taken this present----------of ----------*Anno 1582. *that of such the Queens Majesties Treasure as remaineth in your custody, you shall make payment unto* Gilbert Dethick *Knight, alias* Garter, *Principal King of Arms, and to* Somerset *Herald of Arms, the sum of Clix* l. *in full payment of a Bill of CCiv* l. *signed by them for their* Dyets, Rewards, Transportations, *and* Posting Charges, *going with the Lord* Willughby *of* Eresby, *to* Frederick *the Second, King of* Denmark, *and in their return again, according to a Privy Seal granted unto them for the said Allowances. Dated at* Grenewich *the* 28. *day of* June, Anno 24. *of the the Queens Majesties Reign. And these shall be your sufficient Warrant for the payment thereof, Written the said day and year.*

To our loving Friends Mr. *Stoneley*, and the four Tellers of the Queens Majesties Receipt.

NUM. XCII.

A *Privy Seal* for like Allowances to *Clarenceux* and *Somerset.*

Ex Collect. A. V. W.

Elizabeth R.

ELizabeth, &c. *To the Treasurer and Chamberlains of our Exchequer greeting, Whereas we have appointed our well-beloved Servants* Robert Cook, *alias* Clarenceux, *one of the Kings at Arms, and* Robert Glover, *alias* Somerset, *one of our Heralds at Arms, to pass at this present into* France *with our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin the Earl of* Derby, *by us sent in special Ambassade to our good Brother and Cousin the* French *King, for certain our affairs of importance, and have been contented to allow unto the said* Clarenceux *for his* Dyets, *ten shillings by the day, and ten shillings more by the day in* Reward. *And to the said* Somerset *five shillings by the day for his Dyets, and five shillings more by the day in Reward. We will and command you of our Treasury at the Receipt of our said Exchequer, not only to pay or cause to be paid unto the said* Clarenceux *and* Somerset, *and to either of them, or their assigns, their said several Dyets and Rewards, from the* 17. *day of* January *in this present* 27. *year of our Reign, until they return to our presence, but also to advance unto them presently impreſt out of their said several Dyets and Rewards beforehand, the sum of one hundred pounds,* viz. *to* Clarenceux *one hundred Marks, and to* Somerset *xxxiii* l. *vi* s. *viii* d. *And further to pay unto them hereafter, all such sums of Money as they shall signifie unto you, by their several Bills subscribed with their several hands, to have been by them severally disbursed for the Charges of their posting and transportation in this their Journey, And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under our Privy Seal, at our Mannor of* Grenewiche, *the* 28. *day of* January, *in the seven and twentieth year of our Reign.*

NUM. XCIII.

A *Warrant* for like Allowances to *Garter.*

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

James R.

JAmes *by the Grace of God, &c. To our Commissioners for the Office of High Treasurer of* England, *Greeting, Whereas We do send over to Prince* Maurice *of* Nassau, *our Servant* William Segar *Esq;* Garter *King of Arms, to carry the* George *and* Garter *to the said Prince: We have assigned to him for his Charges, an allowance of* 30 s. *by the day, whereof we will and command*

command you of our Treasure in the Receipt of our Exchequer, to pay or cause to be paid to the said Garter *or his Assigns, the said allowance of* 30 s. *by the day, to begin from the* 24. *day of this Month of* December, *and to continue to the day of his return to our presence. And our further pleasure is, that you advance unto him by way of imprest, the sum of fifty pounds, to be defalked upon his said entertainment, And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under our Privy Seal at our Palace of* Westminster *the* 26. *day of* December, *in the* 10. *year of our Reign, of* England, France, *and* Ireland, *and of* Scotland *the six and fortieth.*

NUM. XCIV.

Another.

Ex Collect. Wale N. Cl.

Order is taken this 15. *of* May 1627. *by virtue of his Majesty's Letters of Privy Seal, dated the* 8. *of the same, that you deliver and pay of such his Majesty's Treasure, as remaineth in your charge, unto Sir* William Seagar *Knight,* alias *Garter, Principal King of Arms, employed by his Majesty's Commandment for the carrying over the Order of the* Garter *to his Majesty's entirely beloved Cousin,* Henry *Prince of* Orange, *the sum of threescore pounds by advance, upon his allowance of xv* s. per diem *for his* Dyet, *and xv* s. per diem *by way of* Reward, *to be afterwards defalked upon his said Dyet and Reward, And these together with his acquittance, shall be your discharge herein.*

Marlburgh.
Rich. Weston.

NUM. XCV.

A *Privy Seal* for Allowances of Entertainment and extraordinary expences to *Richmond* Herald.

Ex ipso Autographo.

CHarles *the Second by the Grace of God King of* England, Scotland, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith, &c. To the Commissioners of our Treasury now being, and to the Treasurer, under Treasurer, and Commissioners of our Treasury for the time being, Greeting. Whereas we have appointed our trusty, and well-beloved* Henry St. George *Esq;* Richmond *Herald, to attend our right trusty and right-well-beloved Cousin and Councellor* Charles *Earl of* Carlisle, *our Ambassador extraordinary into* Sweden, *there to perform the Ceremonies at the delivering of the* Garter *unto our good Brother the King of* Sweden. *And have also thought fit to allow unto him* 30 s. *by the day for his entertainment during the service, to commence from the day of the said Earl of* Carlisle's *departure from, and be continued till his return into our presence inclusive. Our will and pleasure therefore is, and we do hereby authorise and require you, out of such our Treasury as now is, or which hereafter shall be and remain in the Receipt of our Exchequer, to pay or cause to be paid unto the said* Henry St. George, *or his Assigns, the said allowance of* 30 s. *by the day, advancing unto him the sum of* 250 l. *to be accounted and adjusted at his return, according to the rate of* 30 s. *by the day. And you are also to pay unto him or his Assigns, such extraordinary expences in that service as one of our Principal Secretaries of State shall approve of, And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under our Privy Seal at our Palace of* Westminster *the* 30. *day of* November *in the xx. year of our Reign.*

NUM. XCVI.

A *Privy Seal* for Allowances of constant entertainment, and extraordinary expences to *Somerset* Herald.

Ex ipso Autogr.

CHarles *the Second by the Grace of God, King of* England, Scotland, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith, &c. To the Commissioners of our Treasury, Treasurer, and under-Treasurer of our Exchequer now and for the time being, Greeting. Whereas we have employed our trusty and well-beloved Sir* Thomas Higgons *Knight, to go in quality of our Envoy Extraordinary to the Elector of* Saxony, *and to carry with him the* Order *of the* Garter *to that Prince, Our will and pleasure therefore is, and we do hereby require and authorise you, out of such our Treasure as now is or hereafter shall be remaining in the Receipt of our Exchequer, to pay or cause to be paid unto the said Sir* Thomas Higgons *or his Assigns, the sum of three pounds by the day of lawful Money of* England, *for his entertainment in the service aforesaid, to commence from the day of his departure from our presence, and that you advance and pay unto him the said Sir* Thomas Higgons *or his Assigns, in part and upon account of the said Allowance, the sum of* 300 l. *of like lawful English Money. And our further will and pleasure is, and we do hereby likewise authorise and require you, out of such our Treasure as aforesaid, to pay or cause to be paid unto* Thomas St. George *Esq;* Somerset *Herald at Arms, whom we have also employed to attend the performance of the Ceremony to be used in this service, the sum of* 30 s. *by the day, for his constant entertainment in our said service, to commence from the day of his departure from our presence. And that you also advance and pay unto the said* Thomas St. George, *or his Assigns, in part of the said allowance of* 30 s. *by the day, the sum of* 150 l. *of lawful Money of* England, *which said several sums of* 3 l. *by the day, and* 30 s. *by the day, are to be*

be continued unto them unto the day of their return unto our presence respectively, and to be received without account, impress, or other charge, to be set upon the said Sir Thomas Higgons, *and* Thomas St. George, *or either of them their Executors, Administrators, or Assigns for the same. And we also direct, that such further allowance be made unto the said Sir* Thomas Higgons, *for his extraordinary expence in this our service, as you our Commissioners of our Treasury now being, or our Treasurer, under-Treasurer, and Commissioners of our Treasury for the time being shall think fit, and that such allowance be likewise made, for the extraordinary expence of the said* Thomas St. George *in our service, as shall be thought fit and approved by one of our Principal Secretaries of State, And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under our Privy Seal at our Palace of* Westminster *the fifteenth day of* August, *in the* 20. *year of our Reign.*

NUM. XCVII.

A *Warrant* for *Post-horses, &c.* for *Garter's* use.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

W*Hereas the Bearer hereof,* William Seagar, Garter, *Principal King at Arms, is upon some special occasions, concerning his Majesties service, to make his speedy repair into the* Low Countries, *and in his Journey to the Sea side, shall have need of* Post-horses, *for himself and others employed in that service. and when they come to the Port of their embarquing, shipping, for transportation; These are therefore in his Majesties name, to will and command you, and every of you, to whom it may appertain, to see the said* William Seagar, *furnished from place to place with six able and sufficient Post-horses, And likewise also to give your assistance for getting of convenient* shipping *for their transportation, and to suffer them quietly to imbarque together, with such Trunks, and other necessaries as they shall have use of, without lett, hindrance, or other molestation; hereof you may not fail, as you will answer the contrary; From the Court at* Whitehall *this* 30. *of* December 1612.

To all Mayors, Sheriffs, Justices of Peace, Vice-Admirals, Customers, Comptrollers, Searchers, Officers of the Ports, Post-masters, Bailiffs, Constables, Headboroughs, and all other his Majesties Officers and loving Subjects to whom it may appertain.

J. Northampton.
J. Suffolk.
E. Worcester.
E. Wotten.
Jul. Cæsar.
E. Zouch.
C. Edmonds.

NUM. XCVIII.

A *Warrant* for *Post-horses*, for *Somerset* Herald.

Ex Collect. A. V. W.

W*Hereas there is appointed to attend on the Earl of* Derby, *for her Majesties service into* France, Robert Glover, *alias* Somerset, *one of the Heralds of Arms, who is to repair with all diligence unto the Port of* Dover, *there to embarque with the said Earl of* Derby: *These are to will and require you, and in her Majesties name, strictly to charge and command you, and every of you, to whom it shall appertain, to see him provided of four good and able* Post-horses, *for himself, his Servants, and Carriages, with a Guid from place to place unto* Dover *aforesaid, and at his return likewise from thence to the Court, as also of all such other things necessary, as he shall require at your hands, for the better accomplishing of his Voyage, at prices reasonable, and accustomed in her Majesties like services. Whereof fail you not, as you will answer to the contrary at your perils. From the Court at* Greenewich *the* 20. *of* January, 1584.

To all Mayors, Sheriffs, Justices of Peace, Bailiffs, Constables, Headboroughs, and to all other her Majesties Officers and loving Subjects, to whom it may appertain, and to every of them.

NUM. CI.

Instructions given to the *Soveraign's Ambassadors*, sent with the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order* to *Julianus de Medicis*, Brother to Pope *Leo* the Tenth.

Ex Collect. Jac. Waræi Eq. Aur.

F*irst, the due recommendation and presentation of the* Kings Letters, *with a brief Oration to be made touching the land of the said* Order *of the King* Soveraign *of the same, and also of the virtues and notable deeds of* N. *that shall receive it.*

And after the proposition so said, to present their Commission and cause it openly to be read, where they shall require him to make his Oath, as followeth.

Ego Julianus *Dei gratia*, &c. *honorificentissimi ac approbatissimi* Ordinis Garterii *Miles, & Confrater electus, Juro ad hæc Sancta Dei Evangelia per me corporaliter tacta, quod omnia & singula Statuta, Leges, & Ordinationes ipsius dignissimi Ordinis bene, sincere, & inviolabiliter observabo, ita me Deus adjuvet & hæc Sancta Dei Evangelia.*

Which

Which Oath *given, Sir* E. P. *shall deliver the* Garter *unto him, and cause the same in good and honorable manner to be put about his Leg, the said Doctor so saying audibly these words following.*

Ad laudem & honorem summi atq; Omnipotentis Dei, intemeratæ Virginis & Matris suæ Mariæ ac gloriosissimi Martyris Georgii *hujus Ordinis Patroni, circumcinge tibiam tuam hoc* Garterio, *ut possis in isto bello firmiter stare & fortiter vincere in signum Ordinis, & augmentum tui honoris.*

Which thing so done, the said Sir E. P. *shall deliver unto the said* I. *the* Gown *of Purple Colour, and cause him to apparel himself with the same, the said Doctor so saying these words following, at the doing over of the same.*

Accipe vestem *hanc* purpuream, *quâ semper munitus non verearis pro fide Christianâ, libertate Ecclesiæ, & oppressorum tuitione fortiter dimicare & sanguinem effundere, in signum Ordinis, & augmentum tui honoris.*

And then following, the said Sir E. P. *shall cause the said* I *to do upon him the* Mantle *of Blue Velvet, garnished with the Scute and Cross of Saint* George, *and the Doctor so saying these words.*

Accipe Clamidem *cælestis coloris Clipeo Crucis* Christi *insignitam, cujus virtute atque vigore semper protectus hostes superare & præclarissimis tuis meritis gaudia tandem cælestia promereri valeas, in signum Ordinis, & augmentum tui honoris.*

And when the said I *shall be so apparelled with the Ornaments aforesaid, the said Sir* E.P. *shall put the* Image *of Saint* George *about his neck, the Doctor so saying these words.*

Imaginem *gloriosissimi Martyris* Georgii *hujus Ordinis Patroni, in collo tuo deferas, cujus fultus præsidio hujus Mundi prospera & adversa sic pertransieas, ut hostibus Corporis & animæ devictis non modo temporalis militiæ gloriam, sed perennis victoriæ palmam recipere valeas, in signum Ordinis, & augmentum tui honoris.*

NUM. CII.

Instructions to the *Soveraign's Ambassadors*, sent upon a like Embassy to *James* the Fifth King of *Scots*.

Ex Autogr. in Bibl. Hatton.

THE *said Lord* William *shall within five or six days next after he hath been with the said King of* Scots, *for his first Ambassade, and resort to Court there, and in most reverend fashion deliver unto the King of* Scots *the Letter missive of* Certification *of his* Election *into the* N.N. Order *of the* Garter, *from the King our Soveraign Lord his Highness, with due commendations from his Highness. The Letter read, and he consenting to the reception of the said* Order, *then incontinent the* Book *of* Statutes *to be delivered unto him, and a day appointed as well for to have his consentment on the Articles of the said Statutes, and in the mean time his* Oath *to be prepared by his consent and advice. On which day being at the least* Sunday, *and he agreeing to receive the same honorable* Order, *he must be in a place convenient.*

First they shall present their Commission *unto the said* King, *and cause the said audibly and distinctly to be read, and so followingly shall in good and reverent manner require him to make his corporal* Oath, *for the inviolable observing of the same, like as by the tenure of the Statutes every* Knight *of that* Order *is bound to do in form following.*

The Oath.

We James *by the grace of God King of* Scots, *promise and swear by our Faith, and Honor, and holy Evangelists by us presently touched, that we shall accomplish and keep truly unto our power, all the Statutes, Points, and Ordinances of the right Noble* Order *of Saint* George *named the* Garter, *from point to point, and from Article to Article, as is contained and declared in the Book thereof to us delivered; the which we have accepted and do accept, as if that we read them now presently* [Note, if he will make any exceptions they must be here rehearsed] *the which Articles we promise now again to keep, hold and entertain, without breaking: So God help us, and all the Saints.* Yeoven, *&c.*

Which Oath *given, the Lord* William *shall put the* Garter, *in due and reverent manner about his left Leg, and in this doing,* Garter *shall say.*

Sir, the Soveraign *and honorable* Company *of the* Order *of the* Garter *have received you as their Brother and Companion, and in knowledge and token thereof, they give and present you this* Garter, *the which God give you grace to wear to his laud and praise, to the honor of the blessed Virgin* Mary, *and the glorious Martyr Saint* George, *Patron of that Noble* Order, *and to the augmentation of your honor.*

Which thing so done, the said Lord William *shall deliver unto him the* Gown *of Crimson, and cause him to apparel himself with the same, the said* Garter *saying these words following, at the doing on the same.*

Ye take this Garment, *wherein God give you grace strongly to stand in the true Faith of* Christ, *and depressing the Enemies of Saints, in token of the said Order, and to the augmenting of this Order, and your honor.*

And then lovingly the said Lord William *shall cause the said* King *to put on the* Mantle *of Blue Velvet, garnished with the Arms of St.* George, *invironed with a* Garter, *the said* Garter *saying as followeth.*

[Note the *Hood* to be put on the right shoulder]

Take ye this Mantle *of heavenly colour, with the shield of the Cross of* Christ *garnished, by whose strength and virtue ye always be defended, and by virtue of it you may overcome all your Enemies, and so through your most noble desert, may worthily come to the joys everlasting, in token of the said* Order, *and increase of your honor.*

And

And when the said King *shall be so apparelled with the adornments aforesaid, the said Lord* William *shall put the* Coller *of the* Order, *with the Image of Saint* George *about his neck, the said* Garter *saying.*

Take ye and bear this Coller, *with the Image of the most glorious Martyr Saint* George, *Patron of this* Order, *about your neck, by the help whereof you may the better pass through both the prosperity and adversity of this world, so that your Enemies both of body and soul may be overcome, ye then may receive not only glory of temporal Chivalry, but also the rejoycing of everlasting victory, in sign and token of this* Order, *and increase of your honor.*

Which things thus fully ended, the King *to go to some solemn Church, and there to hear a solemn* Mass, *and so to return, and so to his Lodging, where if he dine abroad, to wear the said whole* Habit, *during the dinner time, and after to do his pleasure.*

Then Garter *to remember to purchase and sollicite a* Certification *of the* Reception *of the said* Order *by him, and also his* Oath, *both under the said* Kings *Seal. Also to advertise him the manner of the coming of his* Procurator *for his Installation within seven Months; he to bring with him a Procuration under the* Kings *Seal for his Installation, with all other things necessary, as the said* Garter *knoweth by his old Presidents in such case accustomed.*

All these things thus duly and in reverent order done, with other the Kings *Affairs there, the said Lord* William *and the said* Garter *to return to the* Kings *Highness.*

NUM. CIII.

A *Letter* signifying *Election*, to *Edward* Count Palatine of the *Rhine.*

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

Charles R.

CHarles *the Second, by the Grace of God, King of* England, Scotland, France, *and* Ireland *Defender of the Faith, &c. and* Soveraign *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter. *To our right dear and entirely beloved Cousin* Edward *Count Palatine of the* Rhyne, *Duke of* Bavaria, &c. *Greeting. Whereas our Royal Progenitors, the Kings of* England, *have in all times, since the Institution of the most Noble* Order *of Saint* George, *called the* Garter, *by our most Noble and Victorious Ancestor King* Edward *the Third, elected and chosen into the Fellowship thereof, such Princes and other eminent persons, as well Strangers as their own Subjects, as have for the greatness of their Births, and other Heroick virtues, especially in martial actions, been thought worthy of the same; We therefore considering, that since the late horrid Rebellion, in that our Kingdom, that many of the* Companions *thereof are dead, and that others contrary to their Honor and Oaths, have deserted their Allegiance, and are no more worthy to be esteemed* Companions *of so Noble an* Order; *and finding how necessary it is for our honor and service, to elect others in the places vacant, who for their birth, courage, fidelity, and affection to us, may be worthy to be admitted thereunto; have therefore thought fit by our power, as* Soveraign *of the said* Order *(dispensing with the usual Ceremonies) to elect and chuse you our said right dear and entirely beloved Cousin* Edward *Count Palatine of the* Rhyne *and Duke of* Bavaria, *to be Fellow and Companion of the said most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *and do herewith send unto you the* George *and Ribband, part of the Ensigns thereof, by our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir* Edward Walker *Knight,* Garter, *Principal King of Arms, which Ensigns we do hereby will and authorise you to wear, assuring you when it may conveniently be done, you shall have all other Ceremonies and additions incident to the same, fully perfected. And we no way doubt but that you by your Noble Virtues, Courage, and endeavours in military actions, and your affection and fidelity to us, will shew your self worthy thereof, and that you will faithfully, and with honor serve and assist us in all our just and warlike enterprises, as becomes a Companion of so Noble an Order. Given at the Castle of Saint* Germain's en lay, *this 19. day of* September, *in the first year of our Reign,* 1649.

NUM. CIV.

A *Letter* authorising *Edward* Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, to use the *Ensigns*, and stile himself *Knight* of the *Garter*, as if he had been installed.

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

Charles R.

CHarles *the Second by the grace of God,* &c. *and* Soveraign *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *To our right dear and entirely beloved Cousin*, Edward *Count Palatine of the* Rhyne, *Duke of* Bavaria, *Greeting; We having duly considered the eminence of your birth, your near relation to us in blood, and the great hopes and expectation that we have of your courage, affection, and inclination to serve and assist us, were pleased upon* Sunday *the 19. of* September *past, to send unto you the* George *and Ribband, part of the Ensigns of the said most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *by our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir* Edward Walker *Knight,* Garter, *Principal King of Arms, together with our Letters, declaring that we had chosen you Fellow and Companion of the said most Noble* Order, *and authorising you to wear the same. And having since duly considered, that it is not possible at present to have all other the additions and Ceremonies fully perfected; we have, as* Soveraign *of the said* Order, *thought it fit to dispense*

dispence with the same, and do therefore hereby further will and authorise you, to wear and use the Garter *or* Ribband *on your left Leg, the* Glory *or* Star *of Silver, embroidered with St.* George's *Cross within a* Garter, *upon your Cloak and upper Garments, as likewise the great* Coller *of the Order upon such days as are accustomed; to use the* Garter *about your Arms, and to stile your self* Knight *and* Companion *of the said most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *as fully as if you had been installed in our Castle of* Windesore, *where (when it shall please God to restore us to the possession thereof) you shall formally be invested and receive the* Habit, *and all other the above recited Ornaments of the said most Noble* Order. *Given at our Court in the Castle* Elizabeth, *in our Island of* Jersey, *this sixteenth of* October, *in the first year of our Reign* 1649.

NUM. CV.

A Letter signifying *Election, &c.* sent to Count *Marchin.*

Ex præf. Collect.

Charles R.

CHarles *by the grace of God King of* England, Scotland, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith, &c. and* Soveraign *of the most Noble* Order *of St.* George *called the* Garter. *To our right trusty and right well-beloved* John Gaspar Ferdinand de Marchin *Earl of* Graville, *Marquess of* Clairmont d'Antrague, *Baron of* Dunes, Marchin, Mezers *and* Modane, *Captain General for the service of his Catholick Majesty, and Lieutenant General of all our Forces both by Sea and Land in all our Dominions, Greeting. Whereas our Royal Progenitors and Predecessors Kings of* England, *have in all times since the Institution of the said most Noble* Order, *by our most victorious Ancestor King* Edward *the Third, elected and chosen into the Fellowship thereof many Emperors, Kings, and Soveraign Princes, and other eminent and illustrious persons, as well Strangers as their own Subjects, who for the nobleness of their Extraction, accompanied with heroick virtues (especially in Military Enterprises) have been held worthy and capable thereof. Whereupon we having duly considered the nobleness of your Birth and Extraction, with the eminent and famous actions performed by you, in the several Military Commands you have for many years been employed, together with your great zeal and affection to engage your self in our service and cause, for the recovery of our just rights, have thereupon held it fit and agreeable by some signal testimony of our favour, to evidence the great value and esteem that we have both of your person, merit, and affection. To which end, these are to certifie you, that we by our power, as* Soveraign *of the said most Noble* Order *(and by the consent of all the* Companions *thereof here present) have elected and chosen, and do elect and chuse you our said right trusty and right well-beloved* John Gasper Ferdinand *de* Marchin, *Earl of* Graville, &c. *Fellow, Peer, and Companion of the said most Noble Order, and do herewith invest you with the* Garter *and* George, *the most peculiar Ensigns of the same. And because at this time some other Additions and Ceremonies incident thereunto cannot be fully performed, we do hereby for the present, by our Soveraign power dispence therewith, and do will and authorise you at all times hence forward, to wear the* Garter *about your left Leg, the Image of St.* George *hanging about your Neck, the* Star *or* Glory *of Silver with St.* George's *Cross embroidered within a* Garter *upon your Cloak or upper Garment, as likewise to use the Garter about your Arms, and to stile your self* Knight *and* Companion *of the said most Noble* Order, *in as ample manner as if you had been formally installed in our Castle of* Windesor, *the proper place for that Solemnity; we no way doubting, but that by your future, as well as precedent, actions you will fully declare your self to be highly worthy of the honor of being Knight and Companion of so Noble an Order: And these our Letters of Election and dispensation shall be to you for the same your sufficient and full authority. Given under our Signet at our Court in the City of* Antwerp, *this twenty sixth day of* February 1658. *in the tenth year of our Reign.*

NUM. CVI.

A *Warrant* to *Garter*, for delivery of the *Garter* and *George* to *William* Prince of *Orange.*

Ex eod. Collect.

Charles R.

TRusty *and well-beloved, we greet you well, Whereas we have made choice of our most dear Nephew the Prince of* Orange, *to be a Companion of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter; *we do hereby authorise you, according to your Office, to deliver unto our said most dear Nephew the said* Order, *and our* Letters, *with such Ceremony as is usual, and as may be performed in the place where he is: And for so doing this shall be your Warrant. Given at the* Palace Royal *in* Paris *the* 25 *day of* April, 1653. *in the fifth year of our Reign.*

To our trusty and well-beloved Sir *Edward Walker*, Knight, *Garter* King of Arms.

NUM.

NUM. CVII.

The *Soveraign*'s Letter sent with the *Garter* and *George* to the Prince Elector of *Brandenburgh*.

Ex eod. Collect.

MON *Frere, L'asseurance que j'ay de vostre Amitié, par plusieurs tesmoignages que vous m'en avez donnez m'obligé a rechercher tous les moyens qui seront capables de l'entretenir & de la conserver. Et pour ce sujet j'ay trouvé à propos, comme* Souverains *du tresancien & tresnoble* Ordre *de la* Jartiere, *de vous eslire l'un des* Chevaliers, Paers, *&* Compagnons *du dit* Ordre, *estimant par la de faire une plus estroite Amitié avec vous, & d' augmenter le bien & la prosperité de cette tresnoble Societé, laquelle par plusieurs siecles a eu non seulement les Roys d'* Angleterre, *nos Predecesseurs pour* Souverains, *mais aussi l' honneur d'avoir plusieurs Empereurs, Roys & Princes Estrangers pour Compagnions, comme aussi de vous donner par la une Marque evidente de mon affection, & de la haute estime que j'ay de vos merites, & de vostre personne; Et pour confirmation de la dite* Election *je vous envoyé par le Sieur Chevalier de* Walker, Jartiere *Roy d' Armes, la* Medaile *dite le* George, *la* Jartiere *& l'* Estoille *pour les porter a la maniere accoustumée: assavoir la* Medaile *autour du Corps, la* Jartiere *à la Jambe gauche, & l'* Estoille *sur le coste gauche de la Casaque ou du Manteau. Le dit Sieur de* Walker *vous asseurera de ma part que je desire avec passion de vous tesmoigner que je suis,*

A Paris *le* 23. *de* Janvier 1654.

Mon frere

Vostre bien affectionné Frere & Cousin,

A mon Frere Monsieur le Marquis de *Brandenburg*, P. Electeur du Saint Empire.

Carolus R.

NUM. CVIII.

A *Warrant* to *Garter* to deliver the *Garter* and *George* to the Prince Elector of *Brandenburgh*.

Ex eod. Collect.

Charles R.

TRusty *and well-beloved we greet you well. Whereas we have made choice of our good Brother the Marquess of* Brandenburgh *to be one of the Knights, Peers, and Companions of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter; *These are to require you to repair with what convenient haste you can to the Court of the said Marquess, and there to deliver unto him our* Letters *signifying our said* Election *(which we herewith send you) together with the* Garter, *and other* Ensigns *of the said* Order. *And that you perform the same with such Ceremony as is usual, and as that place can afford: And for so doing this shall be your Warrant. Given at the Palace Royal in* Paris *the* 23. *day of* January 1654. *in the fifth year of our Reign.*

To our trusty and well-beloved Sir *Edward Walker* Knight, *Garter*, King at Arms.

NUM. CIX.

A *Warrant* for delivery of the *Collar* for the Prince Elector of *Brandenburgh*.

Ex Libro vocat. The Book of Warrants in the Jewel-house.

Charles R.

OUR *will and pleasure is, that you forthwith deliver unto our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir* Edward Walker *Knight,* Garter, *Principal King of Arms, one great* Collar *of our* Order *of the* Garter, *with a* George *appendant thereat, to be by him sent and delivered unto the Prince Elector of* Brandenburgh, *formerly elected a Companion of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter: *And for your so doing, this shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge. Given at our Court at* Whitehall *the* 25. *of* February 1662.

Ex mandato.

De Vic Cancell.

To our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir *Gilbert Talbot* Knight, Master of our Jewel-house, and to the Officers thereof.

NUM. CX.

A *Warrant* for *Garter* to send the *Habit* to the Elector of *Brandenburgh*.

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

Charles R.

TRusty, &c. *Whereas we have formerly elected our good Brother and Cousin the Elector of* Brandenburgh, *to be* Knight *and* Companion *of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter; *and have by you sent him our* Letters, *together with the* Garter *and Image of St.* George, *authorising you to deliver the same. And now seeing by our happy Restauration, we have had the opportunity together with the Companions of our said* Order, *to perform the Ceremonies of Installation, and to solemnize the Feast of St.* George *in our Castle of* Windesor, *the proper place for doing thereof, and have now two years past ordered you to place the Atchievements of the said Elector of* Brandenburgh, *over his Stall in the Chappel of our said Castle, and did then*

in respect of the shortness of our time, and other important affairs, dispence with the formal Installation of the said Elector and other Princes, with Declaration that it should not hereafter be brought into example, We therefore intending to complete our favour, have caused the full Habit *of our said* Order *to be delivered unto you, together with the great* Collar *of the* Order; *all which We do hereby will and authorise you, to send and convey, together with our* Letters *unto the said Elector of* Brandenburgh, *We at this time dispencing with the sending an Ambassador and your self* Garter *King of Arms, to deliver the same according to former Precedents. And for your so doing, this shall be your sufficient Warrant. Given,* &c. *the* 8. *of* April, 1663.

To our trusty and well-beloved
Sir *Edward Walker* Knight,
Garter, Principal King of
Arms.

NUM. CXI.

Sir *Edward Walker's* Letter to Prince *Maurice* of *Nassau*, sent with the *Habit* for the Prince Elector of *Brandenburgh*.

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

Monseigneur,

J'*AY receu avec les* Lettres *de sa Majestè le* Roy *mon Maistre tout l' habit du tresnoble* Ordre *de la* Jartiere, *pour son Altesse le Prince Electeur de* Brandenburgh, *avec* Ordre, *de les envoyer a vostre Altesse, que par vos moyens soient adresser a son Altesse Electoral a contient une just au corps de velour cramoisi, une manteau de velour bleu, le grand* Collier *du tresnoble* Ordre *d'or, avec l' image de St.* George *emmaillée pesante* 30 *onces, & un bonnet de velour noir. Comment on se doit porter le Papier donra plus de satisfaction a son Altesse Electoral, Quoy que l'* Habit *n'est jamais porté si non qu' a la Feste de St.*George, *mais le grand* Collier *s'est portè par le* Souverain *&* Compagnons, *pendant les Prieres du matin sur tous les jours mentionez dans le papier pour le liure des Statutes de l' Ordre, quand ils seront reformez. Je tascherai avec tout soin de les envoyer en attendant j'ay envoyé tout l'habit a mon cher amis le Chevalier* Guillaume Davidson *de les envoyer a vostre Altesse de qui vous receurez cela, & la lettre de sa Majestè & je n'en doubte point bien tost tout le reste & puis je prie humblement vostre Altesse de les adresser a son Altesse Electoral, avec les tresbumbles & obeissantes services de luy, qui sera toute sa vie, de son serenissime Altesse Electoral & de vostre*

Monseigneur

De *Londres* le x. jour *d'*Avril, 1663.

le tres-humble & tres-obeissant Serviteur,

Ed. Walker, Garter.

NUM. CXII.

Prince *Maurice* of *Nassau* his Letter to Sir *Edward Walker*, upon the Receipt of the *Habit* for the Prince Elector of *Brandenburgh*.

Ex eod. Collect.

Monsieur,

J'*AY receu la vostre du* $\frac{1}{10}$ *d'* Avril, *que m'avez fait l' honneur de m'escrire dans la quelle vous me donnez advertissement, que vous envoyeres tout l'* Habit *du tresnoble* Ordre *de la* Jartiere *a Monsieur Baronet* Davison, *lequel habit je viens de recevoir de luy a ce monment, Je suis assiz persuadè, qui n'a pas tenu à vous, de ne l'avoir pas envoyè plus tost j'ay ne pas manqué d'envoyer la vostre aussy bien, que celle de sa* Majeste *à son Altesse Electorale de* Brandenbourg, *& ne manqueray pas non plus, d'envoyer le subdit habit avec la premiere occasion a subdite son Altesse, je suis asseurè que tout cecy sera tresagreable a son Altesse Electorale, & qu'elle en sera fort rejouye de le tenir, d'autant qu'elle la desirè long temps, Quant a moy, je vous remercie de la peine prise, & vous asseure, que je seray à jamais,*

Monsieur,

A *la Hay* ce 10.
de Juin 1663.

Vostre tres-humble Serviteur,

Maurice P. de Nassau.

A Monsieur
Monsieur E. *Walker Jartiere*
Premier Roy d'Arms, à *Londres.*

NUM. CXIII.

A *Letter* to the *Soveraign* from the Prince Elector of *Brandenburgh*, acknowledging his Receipt of the *Habit* of the *Order*.

Ex ipso Autographo.

Monseigneur mon tres-honorè Cousin,

A*YANT tousjours estimè, comme je dois, l' honneur que vostre* Majestè *m'a fait autrefois de me recevoir dans la Societè de son* Ordre *de la* Jartiere, *Je ne scaurois reconnoistre, qu'avec un respect extreme, le present de l'habit tout entier de cet* Ordre, *qu'il luy a plû de faire addresser à mon Cousin Monsieur le Prince de* Nassau, *& par lequel Elle a voulu achever entierement les obligations infinies que je luy ay d'estre du nombre d'une si illustre compagnie. Je suis en impatience de recevoir cette chere marque d'affection & de bien veillance de vostre* Majeste *la suppliant de croire, que j'en conserveray eternellement la memoire, & que je n' auray de plus forte*

forte passion au monde, que de confirmer de plus en plus la confiance dont Elle me donne tousjours tant de nouveaux tesmoignages, & de faire voir en toutes sortes d' occasions combien je suis

Monsieigneur mon tres-honoré Cousin,

De *Konigsberg* ce 4. *Juin*, l'an 1663.

De vostre Majesté Le tres-humble & obeïssant Serviteur

Frederick-Guillaume Electeur de Brandenbourg.

A sa Majesté le *Roy* de la grande *Bretagne*.

NUM. CXIV.

A *Certificate* from *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, of his receiving the *Order* of the *Garter*.

Ex amplo Cod. penes Johannem Vincent, gen. fol. 175.

CHarles, *par la grace de Dieu, Duc de* Bourgoigne, *de* Lantrin, *de* Braban, *de* Lembrogh, *& de* Lucembourg, *Conte de* Flandres, *d'* Artois, *& de* Bourgoigne, *Palatine de* Henault, *de* Hollande, *de* Zellande, *& Namur, Marquis du* Sainct Empire, *Seigneur de* Frieze, *de* Sallins, *& de* Mallins, *Certifions & faisons sçavoir a tous, que par les mains de Messire* Galhard, *Seigneur de* Duras *Chevalier*, Thomas Vaghan, *Tresorier de la Chambre, Maistre* Jehan Russel, *Docteur en decret, Archediacre de* Berkeshire, *&* Jarretiere *Roy d' Arms, conseillers & Ambassadeurs de tres-haut, & tres-puissant Prince, nostre tres-honnouré frere le Roy* d' Angleterre, Souverain *de l'* Ordre *de la* Jarretiere, *pour ce envoyés devers nous, nous avons aujourdhuy receu son dit* Ordre *de la* Jarretiere, *ensemble le* Manteau, *& autres Ornements, & choses, au dit* Ordre *appartenans, & accoustumes. Et avec ce, avons en leurs mains fait le serment à ce requis, & pertinant, selon les estatuz d'icelluy* Ordre, *le tout soubz les conditions, & modifications sur ce advisées, & faictes, entre luy & nous, Donné en nostre ville de* Gand, *soubz nostre grant Seel, le 4. jour de* Fevrier, *l'an de grace, Mil cccc. lxix.*

Par Monsieigneur le Duc.

NUM. CXV.

Another from *Ferdinand* Prince of *Spain*.

MS. penes E. W. G. f. 16. *b.*

FErdinand, *par la grace de Dieu, Prince & Infante des* Espaignes, *Archiduc d'* Autrice, *Duc de* Bourgoingne, *d'* Estier, *de* Carnite, *de* Carmole, *&c. Certifions, & faisons sçavoir a tous, que par les mains de Messire* Henry *Seigneur* de Morley, *Maistre* Edoward Lee, *Docteur en Theologie, Archediacre de* Colchester, *Aulmosiner, Messire* Guillame Huysey *Chevalier, & de Messire* Thomas Wriothesley, *Chevalier, dit* Jarretier, *Principal Roy d' Armes des* Angloys, *Ambassadeurs, & Conseilliers de tres-haut, tres-excellent & tres-puissant Prince, nostre tres-honoreable Seigneur, & Oncle, le Roy d'* Angleterre, &c. *Defenseur de la Foy, Seigneur d'* Irlande, *&* Souverain *de le tresnoble* Ordre *de Sainct* George, *nommée la* Jarretiere, *pour ce envoyez devers nous; Avons ce jourdhuy viii. de* Decembre, *jour de nostre* Dame, *receu son dit* Ordre *de Sainct* George, *nommé la* Jarretiere, *ensemble les* Jarretiere, Manteau, Habit, Colier, *& aultres ornements, au dit* Ordre *appertenans, & accoustumez. Et avec ce, avons en leurs mains, faict le serment, a ce requis & partinent, selon les* Statutz *d' icelluy* Ordre *de Sainct* George, *le tout soubz les conditions, & modifications sur ce advisez, & faictes entre le dit Seigneur le Roy & nous; C'est assavoir, de porter les* Colier, *&* Jarretiere, *aucunes foys en l'an a nostre plaisir. Item, quant serons en quelque lieu, ou place, non convenable, Ou que n'aurons loysir d'ouyr matynes le jour de Saint* George, *les pourrons par ung Prestre faire dire, en nostre presence. Et si peur aucun bien grant affaire, ou empeschement, que nous pourroit survenir, nous estions occupé le dit jour Saint* George, *En ce cas, ne serons tenu porter le dit* habiz, *si non durant le service divin, Lequel ascheué, pourrons incontinent oster & devestir iceulx, sans attendre jusques apres le disner & souper. Toutesfoys, si pour les causes dissusdites, ne pourrons porter, le susdits habitz, le dit jour Saint* George *entier, Lors voulons & promettons les porter a ung aultre jour solempnel dedens l'an. Donné en la ville de* Newremberg, *soubz nostre Nom, & Seel, le dit viii. jour de* Decembre, *l'an de grace, Mil, Cinqs Cens, ving, troys.*

NUM. CXVI.

Another from the *French* King *Francis* the First.

Ex Orig. penes Camer. Scacchar.

FRancoys, *par la grace de Dieu, Roy de* France, *Seigneur de* Genues, Souverain *du tresdigne* Ordre *de Monsieigneur* Sainct Michel. *A tous ceulx qui ces presentes lettres verront, salut: Comme Messire* Arthur Plantaginet, *Viconte de* Lisle, *Chevalier du tresdigne* Ordre *Monsieigneur Sainct* George (*Maistre* Jean Taillour, *Docteur ez loix, Archediacre de* Boukingham, *Vice-chancellier d'* Angleterre, *Messire* Nicolas Carew *grant Escuyer d'* Angleterre, *Messire* Anthonie Browne *Chevalier, & Messire* Thomas Wriothesley *Jartier, Chevalier, Primier Roy d' Arms du dit* Ordre, *Ambassadeurs commis & delegueez de la part de tres-haut, & tres-puissant Prince,* Henry *par la mesme grace, Roy d'* Angleterre, *Seigneur d'* Hibernie, *& Defenseur de la Foy, nostre trescher, & tresame frere,*

frere, Cousin, perpetuel, allyé, confederé, & bon compere, Nous ayent exhibé & presenté certaines Lettres Patentes, dattées du xxii. jour d' Octobre *Mil, Cinq Cens, vingt & Sept, Signées* Sampson : *& scellées en cyre Rouge, du Seau du College d'icelluy tresdigne* Ordre *de Sainct* George, *dit de la* Jartiere, *par la teneur desquelles que avons fait lire pardeuant nous & les Chevaliers de nostre* Ordre *Sainct* Michel *estans les nous apparrissoit les dessusdits Ambassadeurs avoir plain pouvir, faculté & puissance de nous signifier, & presenter de la part de nostre dit tresscher frere & Cousin,* Souverain *d'icelluy tresdigne* Ordre *Sainct* George. *(Et aussi de l'amiable association d'icelluy l'ellection, uniquement faicte de nous, par iceulx* Souverain *&* Chevaliers *d'icelluy tresdigne* Ordre*) Et de nous prier & requerir icelle ellection accepter, & prendre le* Manteau, Collier, *& autres insignes de Chevalerie, du dit tresdigne* Ordre, *& faire le serement selon les Articles contenuz au livre des statuz du dit Ordre, & que ont acoustumé de jurer & promettre les* Chevaliers *d'icelluy. Et si la forme des dits sermens, ne nous estoit agreable, leur estoit donné povoir de nous dispenser de faire les dits sermens, ou partie d'iceulx, telz qu'il appartiendroit, soy contentant de nostre simple foy & parolle.* Savoir faisons, *que nous ayans esgarde & consideration a la tres-cordialle, & tres-entiere amour, alliance indissoluble, & confederation perpetuelle, qui est entre nostre dit tresscher & tresame Frere, Cousin, Allyé perpetuel, & bon compere & nous, Et que de sa part il a accepté l'election par nous, & noz freres faicte de sa personne au tresdigne* Ordre *Sainct* Michel, *du quel nous sommes* Souverain, *Avons pour ces causes, & autres a ce nous mouvans accepté, & acceptons Icelluy tresdigne* Ordre *de Sainct* George, *dit la* Jartiere *(& ce fait nous sommes revestuz, & affublez des* Manteau *& autres Insignes du dit* Ordre *a nouz presentez & livrez par les dessusdits Ambassadeurs) Et apres les remercyemens en telz cas requiz, avons fait le serement en la forme, & maniere qui ensuyt.*

" *Nous* Francoys *par la grace de Dieu Roy de*
" France, *Seigneur de* Gennes *&* Souverain *de*
" *l'* Ordre *Sainct* Michel, *promettons en parolle*
" *de Roy, de garder, observer, & a nostre povoir,*
" *entretenir les Statuz, & Ordonnances du tres-*
" *digne* Ordre *Sainct* George, *nommé de la* Jar-
" tiere ; *En ce qu'ilz sont compatibles non con-*
" *traires, ne derogans a ceulx de nostre dit tres-*
" *digne* Ordre *de Sainct* Michel, *& pareillement*
" *des Ordres, que par cy devant pourroions avoir*
" *prins des autres Princes. En tesmoing de ce nous avons fait mettre, le Seau du dit Ordre aux presentes signées de nostre main. Donné a* Paris *x. jour de* Novembre, *l'an de grace Mil, Cinq Cens vingt & sept, & de nostre Regne le treziesme.*

NUM. CXVII.

Another from *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy.*

Ex Collect. Ed. Bysshe Clarenceux.

JE Francois Roffier Savoysey, *Secretaire de treshault, puissant, & excellent Seigneur, & Prince, Monseigneur* Emanuel Philibert, *par la grace de Dieu, Duc de* Savoy *Re. general. & Lieutenant de l'Empereur, atteste, fait foy, & certifie, Comme Monsieur de* Clinton *&* Say, Chevalier *de l'* Ordre, *d'* Angleterre, *qu'on dist de la* Jarretiere, *& de Compaignie le Sieur* Jarretiere *Roy d'Arms du dit* Ordre, *Ambassadeurs, Commissioneurs, & Procureurs specialx du Roy, & de la Royne d'* Angleterre, *ont ce jourdhuy presenté, baillé, & donné, de par leurs Majestés, la* Jarretiere, *& le* Manteau, *& autres Enseignes & correspondants a mon dit Seigneur le Duc de* Savoy, *avec toutes les Ceremonies & Solempnités dées & accoustumés. Et de plus ont receu du dit Seigneur Duc, le serment, jouxte la forme, & maniere des* Statuts, *du dit* Ordre, *& des* Lettres *de pouvoir, qu'ils ont apporté, soubs-escriptes des mains propres d'iceulx Roy & Royne d'* Angleterre, *scellées du Seel du dit Ordre de la* Jarretiere, *Données en leur Palais de* Westminstre, *le dix septiesme d'* Octobre 1554. *lesquelles* Lettres *lues l'ay par Commandement de mon dit Seigneur, & Maistre a haulte voix, & a louange public, quant faicte s'est la susdite presentation, & le dit serment, presents a ce assistants & appelles haults & puissants Seigneurs le Prince d'* Oranges, *les Contes de* Lalaing, *& d'* Aremberg, *& le Seigneur de* Bossu, *eulx trois des Chevaliers de l'Ordre de la* Toyson, *les Seigneurs* Antoine Doria, *Marquis de Sainct* Estienne *de* Lavanto, *du Conseil de l'Empereur, & generall Capitaine des ses Galleres,* & Antoine de Drungua, *& plusieurs aultres tesmoinge, fait au Camp & au------d'auxy dans la Chambre de mon dit Seigneur le Duc, le sixiesme jour de* Novembre *l'an de grace prins a la nativité Mil, Cinq Cens, Cinquante quatre.*

Roffier.

NUM. CXVIII.

Another from the *French* King *Henry* the Third.

MS. penes Arthur. Com. Anglesey, p.4.

HEnry *by the grace of God, King of* France, *and* Poland, *to all those to whom these Presents shall come, Greeting. We give you to understand, that forasmuch as it hath seemed good to the Queen of* England, *our right dear and right well-beloved good Sister and Cousin, Chief and* Soveraign *of the* Order *of the* Garter, *and to the Fellow-Brethren, Knights, and Companions*

Companions of the same Order, *for the confirmation of the mutual and brotherly amity between us and our said good Sister, to chuse and associate us into the Company of* Knights *of the same* Order, *and for that effect hath deputed towards us our dear and well-beloved Cousin the Earl of* Derby, *Knight, and Companion of the same* Order, *to whom, and Sir* Edward Stafford *Knight her Ambassador resident with us, she hath given power by her Letters Patents of the* 20. *day of* January *last past, to present and give unto us, on her behalf, the* Garter, *the* Mantel, *and other* Enfigns *of the same* Order, *which she hath sent us, which they have done with the Ceremonies and Solemnities in such case requisite and accustomed: For these causes, liking the said Election and Association, We have accepted and do accept the said* Order *of the* Garter *with honor, and do promise to keep the* Statutes *thereof, which also have been given us in writing upon the same assurance, that the said Lady the* Queen *our good Sister hath them given Us, and the Declaration and Protestation which we have made, that we be not constrained and bound unto things contrary and derogatory to our Religion Catholick, Greatness, and Majesty Royal, and to the Statutes and Ordinances of our two* Orders *of the blessed* Holy Spirit *and of St.* Michael, *as it is contained in the Act of our Oath, which thereof we have made and given. In witness whereof, we have signed these presents with our hand, and thereunto caused to be put our Seal. Given at* Paris *the* 12. *day of* March *in the year of our Lord* 1585. *and of our Reign the* 11.

Henry.

NUM. CXIX.

Another from *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden.*

Sir Tho. Rowe's Journal, p. 208.

GUstavus Adolphus *Dei gratiâ* Succorum, Gothorum, *&* Vandalorum *Rex, Magnus Princeps* Finlandiæ, *Dux* Esthoniæ *&* Careliæ, Ingriæque *Dominus*, &c. *Omnibus hasce literas lecturis vel audituris, Salutem. Quandoquidem complacuit serenissimo, ac potentissimo Principi Domino* Carolo, *Dei gratiâ* Magnæ Britanniæ, Franciæ, *&* Hiberniæ *Regi, Fidei Defensori, fratri, consanguineo, & amico nostro charissimo, nobilissimi Ordinis* Aureæ Periscelidis Magistro, *reliquóq; inclyto cætui Equitum ac Commilitonum illustrissimi hujus Ordinis in expressissimam amoris tesseram, ac mutuam inter nos initam amicitiam arctioribus necessitudinis vinculis, devinciendam & confirmandam, Nos etiam eligere, & associare in Collegium Equitum hujus Ordinis, atque in hunc finem Oratores, Procuratores, & indubitatos Legatos suos constituere atque ablegare ad nos, Nobilissimum virum de conclavi suo Dominum* Jacobum Spens *de* Wormeston, *Equitem auratum & spectabiles viros* Petrum Young *Armigerum, ex Nobilibus in Cubiculo presentiæ suæ ministrantibus unum, &* Henricum Saintgeorgium *Armigerum, ex Heraldis suis ad Arma unum, plenariâ ipsis potestate concessâ ac diplomate suo abunde ipsis fide adiunctâ & munitâ publico Sigillo Ordinis, dato vigesimâ quartâ* Junii *jam elapsi, deferendi, donandi, atque tradendi nobis ipsam auream* Periscelidem, Torquem rosatum, *Sancti* Georgii *Imagunculas, reliquasq;* vestes trabeatas *in solenni harum Ceremoniarum, celebratione debitè requisitas, & a suâ serenitate ad nos transmissas. Idcircò hæc omnia ab ipsis ritè administrata & peracta agnoscimus & fatemur, ac præsentium Literarum tenore omnibus testatum volumus, nostri electionem & assumptionem in hujus Collegii sodalitium nobis gratissima fuisse, ac fore; Nosq;* Insignia Ordinis *decenti cum honore suscepisse, ac sancte in leges, ac Statuta ejus per procuratores nostros, loco ac tempore præstitutis, juraturos, ea ipsâ cautione, quæ à suæ serenitatis deputatis nobis scripto exhibita fuit, videlicet, Nos religiosè observaturos Articulos hujus Ordinis in omnibus quæ Religioni à nobis professæ, dignitati, ac Majestati nostræ Regiæ nullatenus derogarent, aut aliis Articulis, & ordinibus quos antehac suscepimus adversarentur; atque hanc ipsissimam juramenti nostri formulam esse cupimus, quando solennis contestatio per procuratores nostros nostro nomine futura est, & quando ejus exemplar in acta referri contigerit. In cujus rei testimonium præsentes propriâ nostrâ manu subscriptas Sigilli Regii appositione communiri jussimus. Actum in Castris nostris ad* Wormdit, *die sextâ Mensis* Octobris, *Anno supra Millesimum sexcentesimo vigesimo septimo.*

Gustavus Adolphus.

NUM. CXX.

Another from *Charles* King of *Sweden.*

Ex ipso Autographo.

CArolus *Dei Gratiâ* Succorum, Gothorum, Vandalorumq; *Rex & Princeps hæreditarius, Magnus Princeps* Finlandiæ, *Dux* Scaviæ, Esthoniæ, Livoniæ, Careliæ, Bremæ, Verdæ, Stetini Pomeraniæ, Cassubiæ, *&* Vandaliæ, *Princeps* Rugiæ, *Dominus* Ingriæ *&* Vismariæ *nec non Comes Palatinus* Rheni, Bavariæ, Juliaci, Cliviæ, *&* Montium *Dux;*

Omnibus hasce lecturis vel audituris salutem, Quandoquidem complacuit serenissimo ac potentissimo Principi, Consanguineo, Amico & Fœderato nostro charissimo Domino Carolo, *ejus nominis secundo, eâdem gratiâ* Magnæ Britanniæ, Franciæ, *&* Hiberniæ *Regi, Fidei Defensori, & Nobilissimi Ordinis* Aureæ Periscelidis Magistro, *reliquoq; inclyto cætui Equitum ac Commilitonum, illustrissimi hujus Ordinis in expressissimam Amoris Tesseram & mutuam inter nos initam amicitiam arctioribus necessitudinis vinculis devinciendam & confirmandam, Nos etiam eligere & associare in collegium Equitum hujus Ordinis;*

 atque

atque in hunc finem Oratores & indubitatos Procuratores suos constituere & oblegare Legatum suum extraordinarium Conciliarumq; suum Illustrem nobis sincerè dilectum Dominum Carolum *Comitem* Carliolensem, *Vice-Comitem* Howard de Morpeth, *Baronem* Dacre de Gilisland, *locum tenentem generalem in Comitatibus* Westmorlandiæ & Cumbriæ, & *spectabilem virum Dominum* Henricum St. George *è primariis officialibus suis ad* Arma *unum, vulgò* Richmond Herald, *plenariâ ipsis potestate concessâ ac fidè ipsis abunde astructâ, Diplomate publico Sigillo Ordinis, datoq; in Palatio* Alb-aulæ *apud* Westmonasterium *vicesimo nono die Mensis Novembris Anno Domini nuper præterito Millesimo, sexcentesimo, sexagesimo octavo deferendi, donandi ac tradendi Nobis ipsam auream* Periscelidem, torquem *rosatum Sancti* Georgii *imagunculas, reliquasque vestes trabeatas in solenni harum ceremoniarum celebratione debite requisitas & à Majestate suâ ad nos transmissas; Idcircò hæc omnia ab ipsis ritè ad ministrata & peracta agnoscimus & fatemur, ac præsentium literarum tenore omnibus testatum volumus nostri Electionem & Assumptionem in hujus Collegii sodalitium Nobis gratissimum fuisse ac fore; Nosq; insignia Ordinis decenti cum honore suscepisse, ac sancte in Leges & Statuta ejus per procuratores nostros loco ac tempore præstitutis juraturos eâ videlicet cautione, Nos religiosè observaturos articulos hujus Ordinis in omnibus quæ Religioni à nobis professæ dignitati, ac Majestati nostræ Regiæ nullatenus derogarent aut aliis Articulis & Ordinibus quos antehac suscepimus adversarentur: Quam ipsissimam juramenti nostri formulam esse cupimus, quando solennis contestatio per Procuratores Nostros Nostro Nomine futura, & quando ejus exemplar in acta referri contigerit. In cujus rei testimonium hasce honoratissimæ & charissimæ Matris nostræ, nec non cæterorum nostrorum Tutorum Regniq; Nostri Administratorum manibus subscriptas, Sigilloq; Nostro Regio communiri jussimus.* Dabantur *in* Arce *nostrâ* Holmensi *die* 17. Augusti, *Anno Millesimo sexcessimo sexagesimo nono.*

Hedeuig Ellenora R. S.

Petrus Brahe *Comes in* Wissingsborg *R. S.* Drotzetus.

Vander Linde *loco R.S. Mariscal.*

Gustaff Otto Steenbook *R. S.* Archithalass.

Magnus Gabriell de la Gardie *R. S.* Cancellar.

Johan Gabriell Steenbook, *loco R. S.* Thesaurarius.

NUM. CXXI.

Letters of *Procuration* to *Peregrine* Lord *Willoughby* of *Ersby*, from *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark.*

MS. quarto penes W. le N.Cl. f. 25. *b.*

NOS Fridericus *secundus, Dei gratiâ,* Daniæ, Norwegiæ, Vandalorum, Gothorumq; *Rex*; *Dux* Slesvici, Holtatiæ, Stormariæ, *ac* Dietmarsiæ; *Comes in* Oldenburg, & Delmenhorst; *Omnibus & singulis, ad quos hæ præsentes Literæ pervenerint, salutem: Cum placuerit serenissimæ Principi, ac Dominæ, Dominæ* Elizabethæ, *dei gratiâ* Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ *Reginæ, Fidei defensatrici,* &c. *Charissimæ consanguineæ, sorori, & confederatæ nostræ, supremæ Principi, nobilissimæ, & antiquissimæ Societatis Militaris, quam* Garterii *Ordinem appellant: unà cum cæteris omnibus, laudatissimi illius Collegii fratribus, & Commilitonibus, Nos in eundem numerum ascribere & cooptare, atque ad magis honorificam ejusdem rei declarationem, mittere ad nos plenum habitum, & ornatum prædicti Nobilissimi Ordinis, per Clarissimum Dominum,* Peregrinum, *Baronem de* Willoughby & Eresby, *& celeberrimum virum,* Gilbertum Dethick, *Equitem auratum, Regem Armorum hujus Ordinis, Serenitatis suæ Legatos, & vicarios in eâ parte: quorum de manibus, nos eundem Ordinem, non minus grato animo, quàm est nobis, à serenitate suâ delatus accepimus: Cumq; antiquissima ejusdem Ordinis Statuta ac Decreta, postulent, ut in propriâ personâ installemur, sive in aliquâ sede nobis destinatâ, collocemur in Collegiato Sacello ejusdem Ordinis, intra Castellum* Windesorianum: *quò quidem, cum commodè, proficisci non possimus, ratione Regalis Majestatis, ad quam summo beneficio divini numinis evecti sumus, elegimus & substituimus præfatum nobilissimum, & nobis imprimis dilectum virum, Dominum* Peregrinum, *Baronem de* Willoughby & Eresby, *Procuratorem nostrum, qui suppleret vices nostras in illâ parte, eaque peragret, quæ ad honoratissimi illius Ordinis, Decus, & Ornamentum, quoquo modo videbuntur pertinere, haud aliter, atque ipsi faceremus, si præsentes essemus. Et quodcunque idem nobilissimus vir, ibi in hoc genere, nostrâ causâ præstiterit, tenemus & approbamus, ut ratum & Legitimum per præsentes, non minus, ac si nos ipsi in propriâ personâ præstitissemus. Salvâ tamen declaratione nostrâ, quæ ejus Reginæ serenitatis Legatis, quorum supra mentio est facta, in illâ tractatione, sub manu, & Sigillo nostro tradita est. In cujus rei majorem fidem, & testimonium evidentius, Literas hasce nostras patentes, & subscriptione, & Sigillo nostro firmavimus. Datæ in Castro nostro* Croneburgâ, *die decimo nono Mensis* Augusti, *Anno ab incarnatione Domini, ac Redemptoris nostri* Jesu Christi, *supra Millesimum quingentesimum octuagesimo secundo.*

NUM.

NUM. CXXII.

John Count Palatine of the *Rhyne*, his *Letters* of *Procuration* to Sir *Philip Sidney*.

Ex eod. MS. f. 124.

JEan Casimire, *par la grace de Dieu*, *Conte Palatin de* Rhin; *Duc de* Baviere, *&c. A touts ceulx, qui ces presentes Lettres verront, Salut: Comme la tresbaulte, trespuissante, & tres-excellente Princesse*, Elizabeth, *Royne d'*Angleterre, France, *&* Irlande, *Souvereigne du tresnoble Ordre de la* Jarretiere, *de sa grace & faveur speciale, par l'advis, & consentement de Confreres Chevalliers, & Compagnons, du dit tresnoble Ordre, nous a esleu Chevalier, & Compagnon d'iceluy Ordre, en son Palais à* Westminster, *l'huitiesme jour de ce present mois de* Feburier; *Nous voulans, & desirans tresaffectueusement la dicte Election sortir son deu effect, & que tout ce soit faict, touchant les Ceremonies de nostre Installation à* Windesore, *à quoy nous sommes tenus, par les Ordennances, & Chapitres du dit Ordre. Et neantmoins, par les grandes occupations, & affaires, qu'avons presentment n'y puissions bonnement comparoitre en personne, Comme toutes fois, nous vouldrions, & desirons; pour ce est il, que nous confians en la feauté, discretion, diligence & grand preudhommie de nostre bien aimé, Messire*, Philippe Sidney Chevalier, *lequel avons aymé de long temps & aymons, avons ordonné, commis, & deputé, Ordonnons, Commettons, & Deputons, par ces presentes, nostre Procureur, & Deputé especial, pour de par Nous, & en nostre Nom comparoir à* Windsore, *à la prochaine assemblée des Chevaliers du dict Ordre, & à y estre installé, tenir lieu pour nous, faire des offrandes & solempnités deües, & accoustumées en tel cas. Et en oultre de faire à la dite Souvereigne, le Serment selon la forme, & maniere des Statuts du dit Ordre, & tous aultres choses accomplir, exercer, & expedier, que à luy semblera estre necessaires en cette partie, tout ainsi que faire deurions, & pourrions, si present y estions en nostre personne; Promettons tenir ferme, & agreable tout ce qu'il fera, ou dira, touchant nostre Installation. En Tesmoignage de quoy à ces presentes Lettres, avons faict mettre nostre Seau le xii. jour de* Feburier, *l'Année de Grace* 1579.

NUM. CXXIII.

Letters of Procuration *to* the Sieur de Chattes *from the* French *King* Henry *the Fourth*.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

HEnry, *par la grace de Dieu, Roy de* France, *& de* Navarre, *à nostre cher, & bien aimé, le Sieur* de Chattes, *Commander de* L'Ormetau, *Conseilleur en nostre Conseil d'Estat, Capitaine de Cinquante hommes d'Armes de nos Ordonnances; Gouverneur de nostre Ville de* Dieppe, *& l'un de nos Lieutenants Generalls au Gouvernement de* Normandie, *Salut: Comme par les Statuts de l'Ordre de la* Jartiere, *auquel de l'an mil, Cinque cens quatre vingt seize, nous avons esté associés par la Royne d'*Angleterre, *nostre treschere, & tresamie, bonne Soeur, & Cousin, Il soit porté que Estrangers Chevaliers du dit Ordre debuent envoyer, apres la reception de la dicte* Jartiere, *& du* Collier, *& Habit que leur est envoié, par la Souverain du dit Ordre, & qu'ils auront certifié avoir le dit* Jartiere, Collier, *&* Habit, *un sufficient Deputé & Procureur, selon l'estat de son Seigneur, & Maistre, moyennans, qu'il soit Chevalier sans reproche, pour estre mis en sa place; & y estant faire son serment, & y estre admis, par & au nom de son dit Seigneur, & Maistre: Sçavoir vous faisons, que nous desirans, pour le respect, que nous portons a la Royne, nostre dicte Soeur & Cousine, & l'estime que nous faisons du dict Ordre, satisfaire, qu'a nous est, au contenu des dits Statutes, en ce que touche la dite prise de possession, & prestation de serment & recognoissance, que pour cest effect nous ne pourrons faire melleur, ou plus convenable election, que de vostre personne pour les bonnes, & loüables qualitiés qui sont en vous, & les tesmoignages que vous avez rendus, en divers occasions, de vostre affection au bien, & avantage de nos affaires & service, vous avons Commis, & Deputé, Commettons, & Deputons par ces presentes signées de nostre main, pour vous transporter en* Angleterre, *& vous trouver a la prochain ceremonie, qui se fera du dict Ordre, pour prendre possession de nostre place en iceluy, selon la forme ordinaire, & si besoigne est, faire le serment en nostre Nom, ainsi que l'on à accoustumé de faire, gardant au surplus les solemnites en tel cas requises & generalment faire tout ce, que vous adviserés necessaire pour l'effect dessus, ores qu'il y eust chose qui requist mandement plus special qu'il n'est contenu en ces dits presents, par lesquelles de ce faire, vous avons donné, & donnons plain pouvoir, puissance, authorité, commission, & mandement special,* Car tel est nostre plaisir. *Donné a* Paris *le vingtiesme jour de* Avrill, *l'an de grace mil six cens, & de nostre Reigne, le onziesme.*

Duneuille. Henry.

NUM. CXXIV.

A Precedent of a *Commission* for Installation of an *Elect-Knight*.

Ex lib. Nig. p. 315.

HENRICUS *Dei gratiâ, invictissimus Rex* Angliæ *&* Franciæ *Fidei Defensor, Dominus* Hiberniæ, *& Ordinis Divi* Georgii *supremus, fidelibus ac prædilectis Cognatis nostris,* N. S. D. P.

Quoniam intelligimus, quod illustrissimus, ac potentissimus Princeps, N. *vel Dominus, aut vir*

vir inclytus N. *quem nuper in Socium nostri Ordinis elegimus, non possit ipse commodè advenire, ut in Collegio nostro, de more, in sedem suam introducatur, & alias ibi Ceremonias ritè perimpleat, juxta quod ex Statutis ipsis obligatur, & ob id virum bene nobilem ac honorandum* N. *misit, ut sedem nomine suo possideat, juramentum præstet, cæteraque perficiat, quæ Statuta requirunt. Nos ideò nobiscum ista reputantes, Volumus & virtute præsentium, eam vobis authoritatem addimus, ut hunc procuratorem ejus, ac deputatum non solùm admittere, sed & cætera quæque facere valeatis quæ ad Statuta, consuetudinesque laudabiles attinere videbuntur. Et hæ literæ nostræ vos tuebuntur. Sub Sigillo nostri Ordinis.* N. *die Mensis* N. *Anno regni nostri* N.

NUM. CXXV.

A *Commission* for the Installation of *Guido Ubaldus* Duke of *Urbin*.

Ex Collect. W. D. N.

HEnry, *by the grace of God, King of* England *and of* France, *and Lord of* Ireland, *Soveraign of the Noble Ordre of the* Garter. *To our right truly and right well-beloved Cousins, the Marquess of* Dorset, *The Earl of* Surrey *our Treasurer of* England, *and the Earl of* Shrewsbury, *Steward of our Houshold, Companions of the said Order, greeting. Forasmuch as we understand, that the right noble Prince* Gwe de Ubaldis *Duke of* Urbin, *who was heretofore elected to be one of the Companions of the said Noble Order, cannot conveniently repair into this our Realm, personally to be installed in the Collegial Church of that Order, and to perform other Ceremonies, whereunto by the Statutz of the said Order he is bound; But for that intent and purpose, hath sent a right honorable personage* Balthasar de Castilione, *Knight, sufficiently authorised as his Proctor, to be installed in his name, and to perform all other things for him, to the Statutes and Ordinances of the said Order requisite, and appertaining. We therefore in consideration of the premisses will, and by these presents give unto you license, full power and authority, not only to accept, and admit the said* Balthasar, *as Proctor for the same Duke, and to receive his Oath, and install him in the lieu and place, and for the said Duke, but also farther to do therein, as to the Statutes and laudable usages of the said Ordre it appertaineth, and this our writing shall be to you, and every of you sufficient discharge in that behalf. Given under the Seal of the said Noble Order of the* Garter, *at our Manor of* Grenewiche, *the vii. day of* Novembre, *the xxii year of our Reign.*

NUM. CXXVI.

Another for the Installation of *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*.

Ex Collect. A. V. W.

PHilip *and* Mary, *by the grace of God, King and Queen of* England, France, Naples, Hierusalem, *and* Ireland, *Defenders of the Faith, Princes of* Spain *and* Cicily; *Archdukes of* Austria; *Dukes of* Millayne, Burgundy, *and* Braband; *Counts of* Hafpurge, Flaunders, *and* Tyroll, *and Soveraigns of the Noble Order of the* Garter: *To our right truly and well-beloved, the Lord* Clynton, *and the Lord* Paget, *Knights and Companions of the said Noble Order, Greeting. Forasmuch as we understand, that the right high and mighty Prince, and our entirely beloved Cousin,* Emanuel Philibert, *Duke of* Savoy, *and Prince of* Piemont, *&c. and our right trusty and well-beloved Counsellor, the Lord* William Howard *of* Effingham, *high Admiral of* England, *were heretofore elected to be Knights and Companions of the said Noble Order of the* Garter, *which* Emanuel *Duke of* Savoy, *Prince of* Piemont, &c. *cannot conveniently repair unto our Castle of* Windesore, *personally to be installed in the Collegiate Chappel of that Order, and to perform other Ceremonies whereunto by the Statutes of the said Order he is bound; and for that cause hath sent a right honorable personage* Johan Thomas L'angusto des Contes de Sropiane *sufficiently authorised as his Deputy, and Proctor, to be installed in his name, and to receive his Oath, and to perform all other such things and Ceremonies for him, as to the Statutes and Ordinances of the said Order be requisite, and appertain. We therefore in consideration of the premises, will, and by these presents give unto you, full power, license, and authority, not only to accept and admit the said* Johan Thomas L'angusto des Contes de Sropiane, *to be Deputy and Proctor for our said entirely beloved Cousin, the said Duke of* Savoy, *Prince of* Piemont, &c. *and to install him in the lieu of the said Duke, but also further to do therein, as to the Statutes and laudable usages of the said Noble Order, as touching a Proctor it appertaineth. And in semblable wise we will, authorise, and license you to admit, accept, and install, our said right trusty and right well-beloved Counsellor, the Lord* William Howard *of* Effingham, *high Admiral of* England; *and further to do for his installing as to the Statutes of the said Noble Order it belongeth: And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under the Seal of our* Garter, *at our Palace of* Westminster *the 29. day of* January *in the first and second year of our Reign,* 1554.

NUM.

NUM. CXXVII.

Another for the Installation of the *French* King *Charles* the Ninth.

Ex eod. Collect.

ELizabeth, *by the grace of God, &c. To our right trusty, and right well-beloved Cousin the Earl of* Sussex, *our right trusty and right well beloved Cousin and Counsellor the Earl of* Leicester, *Master of our Horse; our right trusty and well-beloved the Viscount* Mountague; *with our right trusty and well-beloved the Lord* Clynton, *our high Admiral of* England, *Knights and Companions of our Noble Order of the* Garter, *Greeting. Forasmuch as We, with other the Companions of the said Noble Order assembled, did lately elect and chuse our dearest and most entirely beloved Brother, the* French *King, to be Knight and Companion of our said Noble Order; and forasmuch as our said dear Brother cannot, for divers causes, conveniently repair to our collegiate Chappel, within our Castle of* Windesore; *and for that cause hath sent a right noble personage, the Lord* Rambouilliet *one of his ordinary Chamberlains, Knight of the Order of* Saint Michaell, *and Captain of fifty ordinary men of Arms; sufficiently authorised as his Deputy and Procurer, to be installed in his name, and to receive his Oath, and to perform all other such things and Ceremonies for him, as to the Statutes and Ordinances of the said Order be requisite and appertains. We therefore, in consideration of the premisses, will, and by these presents give unto you full power and authority, not only to accept and admit the said Procurer; but also further to do therein as to the Statutes and laudable usages of the said Noble Order, as touching a Procurer it doth appertain, And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf. Given under the Seal of our Order, at our Palace of* Westminster, *the* 14. *day of* January *in the* 8. *year of our Reign.*

NUM. CXXVIII.

Letters of notice to the *Commissioners* appointed to Install the Duke of *Holstein* by his Proxie.

Collect. A. V. W.

By the Queen.

R*Ight trusty and well-beloved, We greet you well; and whereas we have appointed you, together with our right trusty, and well-beloved, the Lord* Hastings *of* Loughborow, *to be in Commission for the Installment, in our Castle of* Windesor, *of our dearest and most entirely beloved Cousin, the Duke of* Holstein *by his Procurer, the Viscount* Hereford, *being lately chosen to be one of the Fellowship and Companions of our Order of the* Garter; *We have thought it good, not only to give you knowledge hereof by these our Letters, but also to require you to make your repair to our said Castle of* Windesor, *so as you may be there on* Saturday, *the* 14. *day of this moneth, to the end that upon* Sunday *next the* 15. *day of this present Moneth of* December, *he may proceed to the Installation of him by his Procurer accordingly. Given under our Signet at our Palace of* Westminster *the* 12. *day of* December, *in the third Year of our Reign.*

To our right trusty and well-beloved the Lord *Pagit* of *Beaudesert*, one of the Companions of our Order.

The like Letter was directed to the Lord Loughborow, *the other Commissioner appointed for this Installation.*

NUM. CXXIX.

Letters of notice to the *Commissioners* for Installation of the *French* King *Charles* the Ninth.

Ex eod. Collect.

By the Queen.

R*Ight trusty and right well-beloved Cousin, we greet you well. And whereas, we have appointed you, with others the Companions of the most Noble Order of the* Garter, *to be in Commission for the Installation in our Castle of* Windesor, *of our dearest and most entirely beloved Brother the* French *King, by his Procurer the Lord* Rambouillet, *being lately chosen to be one of the Fellowship, and Companions of our Order of the* Garter; *We have thought it good, not only to give you knowledge hereof by these our Letters, but also to require you to make your repair to our said Castle of* Windesor, *so as you may be there on* Tuesday *next the* 15. *day of this present Moneth of* January, *to the end, that on* Wednesday *he may proceed to his Installation accordingly. Given under our Signet, at our Palace of* Westminster *the*----*day of* January *in the eight year of our Reign.*

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin the Earl of *Sussex*, one of the Companions of our Order.

The like Letter to the Earl of Leicester. *Viscount* Mountague. and *Lord* Clinton.

NUM. CXXX.

A *Warrant* for materials for the *Banner* of the *French* King *Henry* the Second.

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

By the King.

Edward.

WE *will and command you, that unto our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir* Gilbert Dethick *Knight, alias* Garter *King at Arms, ye deliver or cause to be delivered, upon sight hereof, without delay, three yards of Cloth of Gold, two yards of Cloth of Gold Tissue, and* 16 *yards of Blue Velvet, which shall be for the* Banner, *for the* Mantles *of the Helmet, and the lyning of the same, for the Installation of* Henry *the* French *King, and that you content and pay for the Stuff, workmanship, and the embroidering of the said Banner. And these our Letters,* &c. *Given under our Signet at our Manor of* Greenwich, *the* 10. *of* May *in the fifth year of our Reign.*

To our trusty and well-beloved Counsellor Sir *Ranf Sadleyere* Knight, Master of our Great Wardrobe, or to his Deputy there.

NUM. CXXXI.

A *Warrant* to deliver *Garter* money to provide the *Atchievements* of the said King.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

THE King's *Majesty's pleasure is, that of such his Treasure as remains in your custody, to his Majesty's use, ye deliver unto Sir* Gilbert Dethick *Knight, alias* Garter, *King at Arms, for the provision of an Helm, garnished with fine Gold, a Crown of Copper gilt, an arming Sword, and Girdle to the same, and a Plate of metal, with the Arms of the* French *King engraven; which are for the Installation of the King's Majesty's good Brother,* Henry *the* French *King, the sum of twenty pounds; and these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant in that behalf. From* Greenwiche *the* 11. *of* May 1551.

Your loving friends

E. Somerset.	J. Warwick.
J. Bedford.	W. Northt.
E. Clinton.	W. Paget.
W. Herbert.	J. Gate.
W. Cecil.	

NUM. CXXXII.

A *Warrant* for the delivery of the Duke of *Chevereux* his *Atchievements* to *Garter.*

Ex eod. Collect.

Charles R.

WE *will and command you, forthwith to deliver, or cause to be delivered, unto our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir* William Seagar *Knight,* Garter, *Principal King of Arms, for the installation of our well-beloved Cousin the Duke of* Chevereux, *these particulars hereafter mentioned; that is to say, one* Helmet *of Steel gilt with fine Gold, his Highness Crest carved, and gilt, a pair of* Mantles *of Cloth of Gold lined with White Satin, and spotted with Ermines, two Knobs and Tassels of Silk and Gold, a* Sword, *the Hilts, Pomell, and Chape gilt, the Scabbard and Girdle, Cloth of Gold, a great* Banner *of his Highness Arms, wrought in Metal and in Oyl, a* Cushen *of Crimson Velvet fringed, and Tassels of Silk, one Dozen of Scutcheons on Paper in Metal, of his Highness Arms, within a Garter, a Staff for the great Banner painted in Oyl, a* Plate *of Copper gilt, graven, and enamelled with his Highness Arms, to be set upon his Highness Stall at* Windesore; *and this our Letter shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf, Given under our Signet,* &c.

NUM. CXXXIII.

Another for the *Atchievements* of *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden.*

Ex eod. Collect.

Charles R.

THese *are to will and command you to provide and deliver, or cause to be provided and delivered, to the use of the high and mighty Prince,* Gustavus *King of* Sweden, *against his Installation, these parcels following;* viz. *A great embroidered* Banner *of his Arms, of coloured Velvet, enriched with Cloth of Gold, and Cloth of Silver, and Twist of Venice Gold, Plates, and Purle, two yards and half of rich Cloth of Tissue for* Mantles *for his Helm, Scabbard, and Girdle, two yards of Cloth of Silver to line those Mantles; two yards and half of Purple Velvet for a* Cushen *with Fringe, and Tassels of Purple Silk and Gold, to bear his Robes upon, two Tassels also, with Knobs gilt, to hang at the ends of the Mantles; an arming* Sword *gilt, an open* Helmet, *with a royal Crown, and an Orb, and Cross on the top thereof gilt, with his Crest; a* Book *of* Statutes *of the Order, and a* Plate *of his Arms, and Stile to be set up in his Stall at* Windesore: *And these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf.*

NUM.

NUM. CXXXIV.

A *Warrant* for delivery of materials for the *Atchievements* of the *French* King *Charles* the Ninth.

Ex lib. Warr. Dorm. in magno Gardrob. Regis, tempore Eliz. Reg. p. 364.

Elizabeth R.

WE *will and command you, to deliver to our well-beloved Servant* David Smith, *our Embroiderer, as much Blue Velvet, Cloth of Gold yellow with works, and Purple Cloth of Gold tissued with Silver, as shall suffice for the making and furnishing of one great double* Banner, *to be richly embroidered on both sides with the Arms of* France, *together with the* Mantle, Helmet, Creſt, Sword, *and* Scabbard, *ſuitable to the ſame Banner, for the inſtalling of our right well-beloved Brother,* Charles *the Ninth* French *King; and that ye pay unto the ſaid* David Smith, *as well for his workmanſhip, in the embroidering of the premiſſes, as alſo for all ſuch Fringe of Silk and Gold, with Buttons and Taſſels of like* Silk *and Gold, and for Venice Gold and* Silk *for the embroidering of the premiſſes. Given at* Weſtminſter *the laſt day of* November, *in the eighth year of our Reign.*

To our well-beloved *J. Forteſcue*, Eſq; Maſter of our Great Wardrobe.

NUM. CXXXV.

Another for the *Atchievements* of the *French* King *Henry* the Third.

Ex lib. Warr. particul. in præd. Gardrob. tempore Eliz. Reg. p. 179.

Elizabeth R.

DEliver *to our well-beloved Servant* Sir Gilbert Dethick, *alias* Garter, *King at Arms, as much Blue Velvet, Cloth of Gold yellow with works, and Purple Cloth of Gold, tiſſued with Silver, as ſhall ſerve to make one large* Banner, *richly embroidered on both ſides, with the Arms of* France, *to make* Mantlets, *and cover the Scabbard, alſo the* Helmet, Creſt, Sword, *and other Furniture of the ſame; and that ye pay for the embroidering of the ſame Banner, for Purls of Damask Gold, and for Venice Gold Fringe, and Paſſamain Lace of Gold with Silk and all other neceſſaries, for the inſtalling of the* French *King.* Item, *one* Standard *of Crimſon and Blue Taffaty painted and gilded, with our Arms, and Cogniſance, with Gold and Silver laid in Oyl, and for Silk Fringe for the ſame. Given at* Weſtminſter *the* 12. *of* June, *in the* 14. *year of our Reign.*

To our truſty *J. Forteſcue* Eſq; Maſter of our Great Wardrobe.

NUM. CXXXVI.

A *Warrant* for the delivery of the *Atchievements* for the Prince of *Denmark.*

Ex Collect. E. W. G.

Charles R.

OUR *will and pleaſure is, that you forthwith deliver, or cauſe to be delivered, unto our truſty and well-beloved ſervant* Sir Edward Walker *Knight,* Garter *Principal King of Arms, or by his order, the ſeveral particulars herewith ſent and ſigned by him, to be uſed and made up into Hatchments for the Inſtallation of the Prince of* Denmark, *lately elected a* Companion *of our moſt Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *and after that you cauſe payment to be made for the painting and making thereof, according to former precedents; and for your ſo doing, this ſhall be your ſufficient Warrant and diſcharge. Given, &c. the* 12. *of* February 1662.

To our right truſty and right well-beloved Couſin and Counſellor, *Edward* Earl of *Sandwich*, Maſter of our Great Wardrobe, or to his Deputy there.

NUM. CXXXVII.

A *Warrant* for delivery of Materials to *Garter*, for the *Atchievements* of *Charles* King of *Sweden*, and the Prince Elector of *Saxony.*

Book of Warrants in the Great Wardrobe, commencing at Michaelmas, 1667. fol. 95.

Charles R.

OUR *will and pleaſure is, and we do hereby require you, forthwith to cauſe to be provided and delivered unto our truſty and well-beloved ſervant* Sir Edward Walker *Knight,* Garter *Principal King of Arms, or to ſuch perſon as he ſhall appoint to receive the ſame, the ſeveral parcels of Cloth of Gold, Sattin, Damask and Taffaty, and other Neceſſaries mentioned in the Bills herewith ſent, and ſigned by the ſaid* Garter, *to be made up into Banners and Atchievements to be hung up in our Chappel at* Windeſor, *againſt our next Feaſt of the* Order, *which we intend to hold there in* April *next, over the Stalls of* Charles *King of* Sweden, *and the Prince Elector of* Saxony, *who are by their* Proxies *to be inſtalled there; and that you cauſe payment to be made for the ſame accordingly, and for your ſo doing, this ſhall be your ſufficient Warrant.*

Given

Given at our Court at Whitehall, *the* 28. *day of* February 1669.

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor, *Edward* Earl of *Sandwich* Master of our Great Wardrobe, or in his absence to his Deputy.

By the Soveraign's special command.

De Vic. Canc.

Ibid. fol. 95. b.

Necessaries to be provided and delivered out of his Majesty's Great Wardrobe, in pursuance of his Majesty's Warrant of the 28. *of* February *for the Installation of* Charles *King of* Sweden *by his* Proxie *at* Windsor, *in* April *next* 1670.

An embroidered Banner *upon Satten and Cloth of Gold according to his Colours.*

A Fringe of Blue Silk and Gold for the same.

Two yards of Fustian for the Socket of the Banner.

A Crest carved and gilt.

A Staff for the Banner.

Two yards and a half of Cloth of Gold for the Mantles.

Two yards of Cloth of Silver to line the Mantles.

Two large Taffels *of Blue Silk and Gold.*

Two Knobs *gilt with Gold.*

An Helmet *of Steel gilt.*

A Sword *with a Cross Hilt gilt.*

A Plate *of his Arms and Stile.*

Three Scutcheons *of his Arms, painted on Paper in Metal, and his Stile underneath.*

Ed. Walker, Garter.

1. Mar. 1669.

Necessaries to be provided and delivered out of his Majesty's Great Wardrobe, in pursuance of his Majesty's Warrant of the 28. *of* February, *for the Installation of the Prince Elector of* Saxony *by his* Proxie *at* Windsor *in* April *next* 1670.

Four Ells of rich Taffaty for the great Banner.

Eight yards of Silk Fringe, according to the Colours.

Three yards of Fustian for the Sockets for the Banner.

A Crest carved and gilt.

Two yards and a half of Cloth of Gold for the Mantles.

Two yards of White Satten to line the Mantles.

Two large Taffels *of Silk and Gold.*

Two Knobs *gilt with Gold.*

A Helmet *of Steel gilt.*

A Sword *with a cross Hilt gilt.*

A Plate *of his Arms and Stile.*

Three Scutcheons *of his Arms, painted on Paper in Metal, with his Stile underneath.*

1. Mar. 1669. Ed. Walker, Garter.

NUM. CXXXVIII.

A President of an *Emperor's* Oath.

Ex lib. Nig. p. 311.

NOS, N. *summâ Dei benignitate ac gratiâ* Cæsar *semper* Augustus, *aut* Rex N. *promittimus in verba Regio, & fidem damus, sub honore nostro, Sacrosanctis Evangeliis per nos impræsentiarum tactis: quod fidelitèr ac verè pro viribus observabimus Statuta Clarissimi Ordinis Militaris in Anglia* Divo Georgio *nuncupati, qui & de prænobili atq; insigni* Subligaculo *nomen accepit, idq; de Articulo in Articulum, prout seriatim in libello ad nos misso continentur, saltem quatenus observari possunt ac debent, & dummodo contrarii non fuerint aut derogantes his in quos jam ante nomen dedimus ac juravimus, & conditionibus aliis, de quibus præconventum est, semper salvis.*

NUM. CXXXIX.

A President of an *Emperor's* or *King's Proctor's* Oath.

Ex lib. Nig. pag. 311. & 312.

EGO, N. *Eques, & Procurator serenissimi atq; invictissimi Principis ac Domini mei, Domini* N. Cæsaris *semper* Augusti *vel* Regis N. *nominati atq; electi ad insignem atq; honoratam societatem Ordinis a prænobili* Subligaculo *nuncupati: vice ac nomine prædicti Domini mei, veraci animo ac fide, promitto ac juro eundem illustrissimum bene & fidèliter adimplenturum ac servaturum, omnia & singula Statuta, Ordinationes, & secreta Ordinis illius, juxta vim, formam, atq; effectum, ad ipsum quoquo modo pertinentia: Salvis conditionibus inter eum & Ordinis* Supremum *præceptis.*

NUM. CXL.

A President of an Oath of a *Proctor* for a *Prince, Duke, &c.*

Lib. N. p. 312.

EGO, N. *Eques ac Procurator Inclyti Principis, Archiducis, Ducis, Marchionis, Comitis, Vice-Comitis, Baronis, Domini, vel (ut minimum) Equites Aurati* N. *ad præclarissimam Ordinis* Divi Georgii *Societatem jam nuper nominati atq; electi, vice ac nomine ipsius Domini mei, veraci animo integrâq; fide promitto, & juro, præfatum Dominum meum Statuta hujus Ordinis, & singulos ipsorum Articulos benè & fidelitèr observaturum ac perimpleturum, juxta vim, formam, atq; effectum eorundem: Saltem, quatenus* Supremi *dispensatio moderabitur & declarabit.*

NUM.

NUM. CXLI.

The *Oath* of *Philip* King of *Castile*.

Ex Lib. N. p. 184.

NOs Philippus *Dei gratia Rex* Castiliæ, Legionum, & Granado, *Archidux* Austrichiæ, & *Dux* Burgundiæ, *promittimus, & sub fide nostrâ ac honore Regio, per hæc sancta Evangelia Dei, Canonem Missæ, & hanc veram Dominicæ Crucem portionem, quæ coràm hic statuuntur, & manibus hisce nostris modo tangimus, juramus: quòd omnia præsentis Ordinis Statuta, juxta quod continentur in libello super ad nos misso, atque à nobis accepto, perinde ac si quisque Articulorum hic nobis recitaretur observabimus, & de Articulo in Articulum adimplebimus, tàm fideliter ac promptè quàm nos Dei ipsius & Sanctorum ejus auxilium exoptamus.*

NUM. CXLII.

The *Oath* of *Ferdinand* Prince of *Spain*, &c.

MS. penes F. W. G. fol. 17. *b.*

NOus Ferdinando, *par la grace de Dieu, Prince & Infante d'*Espaigne, *Archeduc d'*Austriche, *Duc de* Bourgoingne, *de* Stier, *de* Carinthe, *de* Carniolle, *&c. Promettons & Jurons sur nostre foy, & honneur, & les Saintz Evangilles, par nous manuellement touchez, que nous accomplirons, & entretiendrons loyaulement, à nostre pouoyr, tous les Statutz, Pointz, & Ordonnances de le tres noble Ordre de* Saint George, *nommé la* Jarretiere, *de point en point, & de Article en Article, selon qu'il est contenu & declairé dedens le livre, qui nous a esté baillé, lequel avons accepté, & acceptons, aussi bien que si nous lisions tout au long à ceste heure presente chascun Article; Excepté de point porter les* Collier *&* Jarretier *sinon aulcunes foys l'an à nostre plaisir. Item, quant serons en quelque lieu ou place non convenable, ou que nous n'ayons loysir d'ouir Matines le jour Saint* George, *les pourrons par vng prestre faire dire en nostre presence. Et si pour aucun bien grant affaire ou empeschement qu'il nous pourroit survenir, estions occupé le dit jour* Saint George, *En ce cas ne serons tenu porter les dit* Collier, Jarretier, *& aultres habitz, y pertinans si non durant le divin service, lequel achevé, pourrons incontinent oster & devestir iceulx sans attendere jusques apres le disner & souper, toutesfoys si pour les causes dessusdictes ne pouyons porter le susdit habit le dit jour* Saint George *entier, lors voulons & promettons les porter en vng aultre jour solempnel dedens l'an; lesquelz Articles promettions derechef tenir & garder entierement sans enfrayndre; Ainsi nous ayde Dieu & tous les Saintz; Donné en la ville de* Neürenberghe, *soubz noz nom & seel le viii. jour de* Decembre, *l'an de grace Mille Cinque Cens Vingt & Troys.*

NUM. CXLIV.

The *Oath* of *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

NOus Emanuel Philibert, *par la grace de Dieu Duc de* Savoy, Chambloye, & August, *Prince & Vicaire perpetuel du saint Empire, Marquis en* Italie, *Prince de* Piedmont, *Conte de* Genevet, Genevoye, Bargias, Vaudemont, *&c. Lieutenant & Capitain general pour l'Empereur, promettons, & jurons par nostre foy & honneur, & les Saints Evangiles par nous manuellement touchez, que nous accomplirons, entretiendrons, & observerons loyaument tous les Estatuts, Points, & Ordonnances du tres noble Ordre de la* Jarretiere *en* Engleterre, *& ce de point en point, & d'article en article, selon ce qui est contenu au livre qui nous a esté envoyé, ou pour le moins si avant que les dits Estatuts puissent bonnement estre observés & gardés de nous, & qu'ils ne soyent contraires à ce en quoy auparavant nous nous avons obligé par nostre foy & serment, & pourveu aussi que ne soyons point tenus de partir la dite* Jartiere, *l'habit, & autres enseignes du dit Ordre, si non quand nous verrons & aurons la commodité de le faire, & non autrement, lesquels articles nous promettons derechef garder & tenir entierement comme avant est dict, ainsi que nous ayde Dieu, & tous les Saints. Donné au Camp de l'Empereur, & fait dans l'Eglise, dessus le sixieme jour de* Novembre, *l'an mil cinq cens cinquante & quatre.*

Emanuel.

Roffier.

NUM. CXLV.

The *Oath* taken by the *Proctor* to the *French* King *Francis* the First.

Ad Calcem Regist. Chartac.

JE Adrien Tercelin, *Chivalier, Seigneur de* Brosse, Posse, & Casserte, *Bailly Cappitaine de* Gisors, *l'un des Chamberlans de treshault & trespuissant Prince,* Francoys, *par la grace de Dieu, treschrestien Roy de* France, *premier de ce nom; comme Procureur, & ayant pouoir expres de la part de mon dit Seignieur, prometts, & jure sur sa parole, & sur son honneur, qu'il observera, gardera, & entretiendra les Statutz du tresnoble Ordre de mon Seignieur,* Saint George *en ce, qu'ilz ne sont contraires, ne derogans aux Statutz du tresnoble Ordre de Monseignieur* Saint Michel, *& autres Ordres, que mon dit Seignieur Roy aye cy-devant prins à d'autres Princes.*

A. Tercelin.

NUM. CXLVI.

The *Oath* of the *French* King *Charles* the Ninth.

MS. penes G. O. T. pag. 221.

NOus promettons & jurons en parole de Roy, que nous observerons, garderons, & maintiendrons les estatuts & ordonnances, de l'Ordre de la Jarretiere *en tout ce, & si avant qu'elles ne soyent contraires ne derogatoires à nostre grandeur Royale aux estatuts de nostre Ordre de Monsieur* Saint Michell, *ni aucun autre serment que nous avons faict auparavant.*

NUM. CXLVII.

The *Oath* of the Emperor *Maximilian.*

MS. quarto penes W. le N. Cl. f.99. b.

*NOus promettons & jurons en parole d'*Empereur, *que nous observerons, garderons, & maintiendrons les Statuts & Ordonnances de l'Ordre de la* Jarretiere *en tout ce, & si avant qu'ils ne sont contraires, ni derogatoires à nostre grandeur & Majesté Imperialle, ni aux Statuts d'aucun autre Ordre ou serment que nous avons prins auparavant.*

NUM. CXLVIII.

The *Oath* of his *Proctor.*

MS. fol. penes E. W. G.

EGo N. *Procurator Serenissimi & Invinctissimi Principis ac Domini mei* Maximiliani Cæsaris, *& semper Augusti, electii, & nominati ad honorabilem societatem Ordinis* Garterii, *vice, nomine, fide, & in animo prædicti Domini mei, promitto & juro, supra Sacrosancta Evangelia per me manualiter tacta, eundem illustrissimum Principem ac Dominum meum benè & fideliter adimpleturum & observaturum omnia & singula Statuta & Ordinationes prædicti Ordinis secundum vim, formam, & effectum, ipsum quovismodo concernentia & spectantia.*

NUM. CXLIX.

The *Oath* taken by the *French* King *Henry the* Third.

MS. quarto penes W. le N. Cl.

NOus Henry, *par la grace de Dieu Roy de* France *&* de Polongne, *Jurons, Vouons, & Promettons solennellement sur nostre honneur en parole de Roy, Que nous observerons, garderons, & maintiendrons les Statuts & Ordonnances du tresnoble Ordre Monsieur* Saint George, *nominé la* Jarretiere, *en ce qu'ils ne se trouveront contraires à nostre* Religion Catholique, *grandeur & Majesté royalle, ni aux Statuts & Ordonnances de nos deux Ordres, du Benoist* Saint Esprit, *& de Monsieur* Saint Michel, *En tesmoing de quoy avons signé la presente de nostre propre main, & icelle faict seeller de nostre Seel du Secret. A* Paris, *le dernier jour de* Fevrier, *l'an mil cinq cens quatre vingts cinq.*

Henry.

NUM. CL.

The *Oath* of the *French* King *Henry* the Fourth.

Collect. W. le N. Cl.

NOus Henry, *par la Grace de Dieu, Roy de* France *& de* Navarre, *Jurons, Vouons, & Promettons solennellement sur nostre honneur en parole de Roy, Que nous observerons, garderons, & maintiendrons les Statuts & Ordonnances du tresnoble Ordre Monsieur* Saint George, *nominé la* Jarretiere, *en ce qu'ils ne se trouveront contraires à nostre* Religion Catholique, *grandeur & Majesté royalle, ny aux Statuts & Ordonnances de nos deux Ordres, du Benoist* Saint Esprit, *& de Monsieur* Saint Michel, *En Tesmoing de quoy nous avons signé la presente de nostre propre main, & icelle faict seeler de nostre Seel du secret. A* Rouen *le------ jour d'*Octobre, *l'an mil cinq cens quatre vingts & seize.*

Henry.

NUM. CLI.

The *Oath* taken by the *Proctor* to the *French* King *Henry* the Fourth.

Ex eod. Collect.

JE le Sieur de Chastes, *Chevalier de l'Ordre de* Saint Jean de Jerusalem, *Conseilleur de Roy en son Conseil d'Estat, Capitaine de Cinquante hommes d'Armes de ses Ordonances, & l'un de ses Lieutenants generaux en* Normandie, *Vice-admiral de* France, *& Gouverneur de la Ville de* Dieppe, *Procureur pour le Roy treschrestien,* Henry *quatriesme Roy de* France *& de* Navarre, *Chevalier du tresnoble Ordre de la* Jarretiere, *promets au nom, & sur l'honneur de mon dit Roy & Seigneur qu'il observera, gardera, & maintiendra les Statuts & Ordonnances du dit Ordre, selon la forme cy devant jurée par sa Majesté, & sous les conditions acceptées entre sa dite Majesté, & la Royne* Souveraine *du dit Ordre.*

M. Chastes.

NUM.

NUM. CLII.

The *Oath* of *Frederick* the Second King of *Denmark*.

Ex lib. MS. in Bibl. Hatton.

NOs Fridericus *summâ Dei benignitate* Daniæ, *&c. Rex, promittimus verbo regio, & fidem damus, sub honore nostro, sacrosanctis Evangeliis per nos impræsentiarum tactis, quòd fideliter ac verè pro viribus observabimus statuta clarissimi Ordinis militaris in* Anglia, *qui de prænobili atque insigni* Subligaculo *nomen accepit, de Articulo in Articulum prout seriatim in libello Statutorum ejusdem prænobilissimi Ordinis continentur, saltem quatenus observari possunt ac debent, & dummodo contrarii non fuerint aut derogantes his in quos jam ante nomen dedimus ac juravimus, & conditionibus aliis, de quibus præconventum est, semper salvis.*

NUM. CLIII.

The *Oath* taken by his *Proctor*.

MS. penes W. le N. Cl. fol. 126. *b.*

I Sir Peregrine Bertie, *Knight, Lord* Willougby *of* Eresby, *Deputy, and Procurator for the right high, right Excellent, and mighty Prince,* Frederick *King of* Denmark, *named and chosen to be one of the Companions of the most honorable Order of the* Garter, *do, in the said high and mighty Princes name and stead, truly and faithfully promise and swear, that the said high and mighty Prince will well and faithfully fulfil and keep all and singular the Statutes, Ordinances, and Decrees of that honorable Order, according to their true force, effect, and meaning, so far forth as they concern him, and shall be agreeable with the Word of God.*

NUM. CLIV.

The *Oath* of the *Proctor* to *Christian* the Fourth King of *Denmark*.

Ex ipso Autogr.

EGo Henricus Ramelius, *Serenissimi ac Potentissimi Principis Domini* Christiani *Quarti,* Daniæ, Norvegiæ, Vandalorum, Gothorumq; *Regis, Ducis* Slesvici, Holsatiæ, Stormariæ, & Dithmarsiæ, *Comitis in* Oldenburg, & Delmenhurst, *nominati atq; electi ad insignem atq; honorandam societatem Ordinis à prænobili* Subligaculo *nuncupati Domini mei Clementissimi, Legatus, ejusdemq; Serenissimi Regis & inclyti Regni Senatorii Ordinis Consiliarius, in* Wusterwitz & Beckeskow *Dominus hæreditarius, jussu, vice, ac nomine prædicti Domini mei, veraci animo ac fide promitto, & in Majestatis ipsius animam juro, eundem Serenissimum Regem benè ac fideliter adimpleturum ac servaturum omnia & singula Statuta, Ordinationes, & Decreta Ordinis illius, juxta vim, formam, atque effectum, ad ipsum quoquo modo pertinentia: salvis pactis & fœderibus, quibus ante hoc tempus Majestas ipsius obstricta tenetur.*

NUM. CLV.

The *Oath* taken by *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg*.

Erhard. Cellius in Eq. Aur. Anglo. Wirtemb. pag. 153.

NOs Fredericus *Dei gratiâ Dux* Würtembergicus, & Teccius, *Comes* Montispelegardi, *Dn. in* Heidenheim, *&c. Sacri Romani Imperii Princeps, pollicemur sub fide nostrâ principali, Statuta & Ordinationes Nobilissimi Ordinis* Garterii, *nos sedulò observaturos, quatenus illa sacri* Romani Imperii *constitutionibus, & fidei nostræ, quam Imperatori Romano, eidemq; Imperio debemus: nec non promissionibus, aliis Ordinibus & amicis nostris antehac factis, non adversantur & repugnant: Et tali quidem modo, ut* Supremus, *si necesse fuerit, fidelitatem, socii verò candidum amicum ex nostrâ affectione & opera experiri queant. In cujus rei testimonium hasce literas propriâ manu subscripsimus, & Sigilli nostri majoris appensione munire curavimus. Datum in sede nostrâ Ducali* Studtgardiæ 8. *Iduum* Novembris, *Anno à partu Virgineo* 1603.

NUM. CLVI.

An *Attestation* granted by the *Soveraign*, of the *Installation* of the *French* King *Henry* the Fourth.

Ex Collect. W. le N. Cl.

ELizabeth *par la grace de Dieu, Roine d'*Angleterre, France, & Irelande, *Defenseur de la foy, &c.* Soveraine *du tresnoble* Ordre *de la* Jarretiere, *A tous presents & a venir salut. Scavoir faisons que ayant esté le Roy treschrestien* Henry *quatriesme Roy de* France *& de* Navarre, *nostre tresher & tresame bon Frere & Cousin esleu & associé en nostre dit* Ordre *des l'an mil cinq cens nonante six, & en consequence de la dite Election prins & receu la* Jarretiere, Collier, *& autres* Habits *d'iceluy, & fait le* Serment *accoustumé de faire par les Chevaliers & Compaignons du dit* Ordre *pour observation des Statuts & Ordonnances d'iceluy par les quelles sont tenus entre autres choses les Chevaliers* Estrangers *associés au dit* Ordre *d'envoyer apres la reception de la dite* Jarretiere, Collier, *&* Habit *un suffisant Deputé ou Procureur selon leur Estat ou Chasteau de* Windesor *pour y estre mis & receu en leur place en la* Chapell Collegial *de* Saint George *avec les Ceremonies & Solemnites y appertenants: Iceluy Roy treschrestien voulant satisfaire aux Statuts du dit Ordre, & nommement au sus mentionné, & monstrer par le respect qu'il nous porte, & l'estime que du dit* Ordre *il fait, averoit envoyé devers nous le* Seigneur *de* Chastes, *Chevalier de l'*Ordre *de* Saint Jean, *Comman-*

Commandeur de l'Ormetau, *Conseilleur en son Conseil d'*Estate, *Capitaine de* Cinquante hommes d'Armes *de ses* Ordonances, *Gouverneur de sa Ville de* Dieppe, *& l'un de ses Lieutenants generalls en son Gouvernement de* Normandie, *avec pouvoir & Lettres* Procuratoires *signées de sa main à l'effect que dessus en vertu duquel pouvoir à luy commis, le dit Seigneur de* Chastes *fust par nostre Commandement conduit au dit Chasteau de* Windsore, *le* 26. *jour du mois d'*Avril *dernier passé par nos treschers & feaulx Cousins* Charles *Conte de* Nottingham, *Baron de* Effinham *Conseilleur en nostre Conseil Privy, & Admiral d'*Angleterre, Gilbert *Conte de* Shrewsbury, *Baron* Talbot, *&c.* Henry *Conte de* Northumberland, *Baron* Percy, *&c.* Thomas Howard *Baron de* Walden, *Chevaliers & Compagnons du dit* Ordre, *à ce par nous commis, par pouvoir sous le Scel de nostre dit* Ordre, *& le jour ensuivant, asçavoir le* 27. *du dit mois, fust mené par les dits Chevaliers & Compagnons en la dite Chapel de* Sint George *au dit lieu de* Windsore, *& alloqué en siege competent, au reng & honneur de nostre dit Frere le Roy tres Chrestien mis en possession de place, vestu de* Manteau *de l'*Ordre, *& assis au nom du dit Roy au reng à luy appertenant. Toutes lesquelles Ceremonies & autres Solemnites requises le dit* Seigneur de Chastes *executa selon les* Statuts *de nostre dit* Ordre, *& mesmes fist au nom du Roy le* Serment *accoustumé de faire, & en bailla* Attestation *signé de sa main, le tout en due forme convenable, & en presence de Chevaliers & Compagnons d'iceluy* Ordre *dessus nommez, qui nous en ont faict report, dont à la Requisition du dit Seigneur de* Chastes, *Nous avons, voulons bailler la present* Attestation *signée de nostre main, & scellée du Scel de nostre dit* Ordre. *Donné à* Greenwich *le* 3. *jour de* May, 1600. *de nostre Reign l'an* 42.

NUM. CLVII.

A *Report* concerning *Installation-Fees.*

Lib. Carol. pag. 84.

Albæ-Basilicæ 5. *die Martii,* 1669.

QVoniam Supremæ vestræ Majestati Illustrissimi Ordinis Periscelidis Supremo *Capitulo* 4. Febr. *proximè elapsi* Albaulæ *celebrato, statum atq; perpetuum trium aut plurium Nobilissimorum* Commilitonum *conventum constituere visum fuerit; qui omnia Illustrissimi* Ordinis *negotia cognoscerent, & ad* Supremam *vestram Majestatem renuntiarent: Cumq; Decanus* Windesoriensis *Feodorum Schedulam à* Supremâ *vestrâ* Majestate *pro externis* Principibus, *nec non omnibus subditis* Commilitonibus *quàm primùm inaugurati fuerint: solvendorum tunc temporis exhibuerit, cujus quidem schedulæ æquitatem licet* Capitulum *approbasset, cùm tamen controversia aliqua orta fuisset de* Installationis *Feodis quæ* Canonicis, Pauperibus Militibus, *&* Ecclesiæ Windesoriensi *solvi debent, totius hujus causæ cognitio prædictis Deputato Commilitonum conventui demandata erat. Ideoq;* Henrico de Vic *Equite* Cancellario: *Doctore* Ryves Decano Windesoriensi Scribâ; *&* Edvardo Walker *Equite,* Gartero, *Conventui assistentibus,* Scriba Ordinis, *hujus totius causæ narrationem datam* 16. *die* Mai, 1663. *tunc temporis exhibuit, cui quatuor Commilitones Deputati nomina sua subscripserant, è quorum numero fuerunt duo nostrûm qui nomina nostra infrà apposuimus. Quâ narratione plenissimis* Decani *&* Garteri *rationibus atq; testimoniis privato* Sigillo *munitis comprobatum reperimus,* Feoda *illa pro Installatione* Principum *externorum quæ narratione ista exprimuntur. Illorum decessoribus ab omni memoria soluta fuisse; neq; feoda illa superare quæ subditi* Duces *aut Prioribus temporibus, aut nuperrimis solverunt. Quoniam verò* Schedula *superiori* Capitulo *exhibita à* Feodis *per* Supremum *solvendis initium sumat, nullo tamen modo probari possit ullum unquam Supremum* Feoda *pro* Installatione *sua solvisse & apertè constet paucissimos admodum fuisse Illustrissimi* Ordinis Supremos, *qui inaugurati Installationis* Feoda *antea non solverant, nos narratione nostrâ* Feodorum *istorum nullam mentionem fecimus. Quod ad* Feoda *illa attinet, quæ ab extero* Rege *solvenda sunt, illa* Feodis *istis quæ à* Supremâ *vestrâ* Majestate, *Anno* 1638. *tunc temporis* Walliæ *Principe soluta fuerunt, omninò respondere pro comperto habemus, Installationis quoq;* Feoda Canonicis, *&* Ecclesiæ Windesoriensi *solvenda, pro multis* externis *Regibus à* Supremo *soluta fuisse,* Garterus *pro certo affirmavit.* Canonicorum *etiam &* Ecclesiæ Windesoriensis *Feoda ab omnibus Illustrissimi Ordinis Commilitonibus cujuscunq; fuerint gradus, seu* Duces, Marchiones, Comites, Vicecomites, Barones, *seu* Milites, *solvi debere,* Scriba Ordinis *plenissimis testimoniis confirmavit.* Garterus *insuper affirmavit* Feoda *pro omnibus gradibus jam memoratis* Ecclesiæ Windesoriensi *solvenda illis etiam per omnia respondere, quæ* Elizabethæ *Reginæ,* Jacobi *Regis, &* Caroli *Primi Beatissimæ memoriæ temporibus, nec non jam à fœlicissimo Regiæ vestræ* Majestatis *reditu, à quam plurimis Honoratissimis Ordinis Commilitonibus soluta fuere. Hæc omnia unà cum* Schedulis *annexis ad Supremæ vestræ* Majestatis *arbitrium humillimè referimus, ita & omnia hæc vestræ* Majestatis *authoritate approbata Illustrissimi* Ordinis Registro *inseri possint. Quoniam verò* Garterus *eodem Capitulo* Schedulam Feodorum, *tam* Decano *& Ecclesiæ* Windesoriensi *quam sibi,* Nigrivirgifero, Officiariis Armorum, *& quam plurimis aliis Regiæ vestræ* Majestatis *Administris solvendorum exhibuerat. Quibus* Feodorum *nomine gratificari soleat, quæ habitâ ratione graduum atq; dignitatum quibus* Commilitones *insigniti sunt, ad normam illorum* Feodorum *exiguntur quæ Suprema vestra* Majestas *tunc* Walliæ *Princeps solvebat, nobis omninò consentaneum videtur, ut sola Feoda* Gartero, Nigrivirgifero, *&* Officiariis Armorum *solvenda approbentur, atq; Illustrissimi* Ordinis Registro *inserantur: Ut reliqua*

quæ verò Regiæ vestræ Majestatis *Administrorum* Feoda Garteri *billis inserta ipsius* Sigillo *muniantur, & à quolibet* Commilitone *quam primùm inauguratus fuerit, exigantur, atq; à* Gartero *cuilibet* Officiario *secundum gradum suum, prout antiquitus obtinuit solvantur. Humilimè insuper petimus ut (si supremæ vestræ* Majestati *ita videbitur)* Cancellarius *in mandatis habeat, ut* Literæ *Ordinis* mandatoriæ *scribantur, quibus Installationis* Feoda *à quam plurimis Commilitonibus debita exigantur, & defunctorum* Commilitonum *Heredes atq; Executores* Mantella *atq; Illustrissimi Ordinis* Statuta *Ecclesiæ* Windesoriensi *reddere moneantur, quoniam autem quamplurimi Pauperes* Milites *Absentiæ veniam per annos integros à Supremâ vestrâ* Majestate *impetraverunt, humilimè petimus ut Regia vestra* Majestas *nulli impostorum absentiam indulgeret, atq; omnes Pauperes* Milites *sub Statutorum Regimine hâc in re arctè teneantur.*

Ormondiensis.
Sandovicensis.
Mancestrensis.

NUM. CLVIII.

A Commission *for* Prorogation *of the* Grand Feast *of St.* George.

Sir Tho. Rowes Journal, pag. 4.

Charles R.

CHarles *by the grace of God*, *King of great* Britain, France, *and* Ireland, Defender *of the* Faith, *and* Soveraign *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *To all the* Knights *and* Companions *of Our said* Order *Greeting. Whereas upon some special reasons we were moved to* Prorogue *the Celebration of the* Feast *of St.* George, *from the* 22. 23. & 24. *days of* April *last (being the usual days of that Solemnity) to the* 8. 9. & 10. *days of* July *following. And again from thence to the* 26. 27. & 28. *of* September, *and from that time unto the* 13. 14. & 15. *of* December. *Now forasmuch as by reason of our other great and important Affairs, we cannot conveniently attend the Celebration of the said* Feast *at the said last appointed days. And considering also the* Contagion *and* Sickness, *dispersed into several places of this Our* Kingdom, *which by assembling of People, may be most dangerous, both to Our self, and Our loving Subjects.* We *do therefore by these presents prorogue the Prorogation, and keeping of the said* Feast, *from the said* 13. 14. & 15. *days of this present* December *aforesaid, until and unto the* 17. 18. & 19. *of* April *next: willing, and by the tenor hereof commanding all, and every the* Knights *and* Companions *of Our said* Order, *and* Officers *of the same, to attend Our Person upon the said days, to perform what to them, and every of them shall belong and appertain for the accustomed Celebration of the* Feast *of Our most Noble* Order. Given *under the Seal of the said* Order *at Our Honour of* Hampton-Court, *the* 11. *day of* December, *in the* 12. *year of Our Reign*, An. Salutis, 1636.

NUM. CLIX.

A Letter *of* Notice *to the* Soveraign's Lieutenant *to prepare to be at the* Grand Feast *held by Prorogation.*

Ex veteri Codice MS. penes W. le N. Cl. fol. 52.

Henry R.

RIght trusty and right welbeloved Cousin We grete you wele. And for asmuche as the Fest of the glorious Martyr Saint George falleth this yere within xb. days after Ester, by reason whereof We have according to the Statutes of the noble Order of the Garter differred the solemnisacion of the same unto the xviii. day of May next coming, on wyche day we have appointed the said Fest to be kept, and also deputed you to be our Lieutenant at the same. We therefore wull and desire you to prepare and dispose your self soo to be accordingly. Yeven under our Signet at our Universitie of Cambridge the xxb. day of April.

NUM. CLX.

A Letter *of Notice to a* Knight-Companion *to be present at the* Grand Feast *held by Prorogation.*

Ex Collect. præf. W. le N. Cl.

Mary R.

RIght trusty, &c. *And having deferred the keeping of the* Feast *of the Glorious Martyr St.* George, Patron *of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *until the coming of our most dear Cousin the* Prince *of* Spain, *To the intent the said* Feast *might be also honoured with the* Installation *of our said dearest Cousin; We let you wit, that we have now resolved to hold and celebrate the same* Feast *within our Castle of* Windsor *upon* Sunday, *the* 5. *of* August *next ensuing; Requiring you therefore to put your self in order to make your repair thither for that purpose before the same day, so as you may be present at the Celebration of that* Feast, *and all the accustomed Ceremonies thereof. Wherefore we pray you not to fail.* Yeven *under the Seal of our* Order, *&c.*

NUM. CLXI.

A Letter *from the* Chancellor *giving a* Knight-Companion *notice of the* Prorogation *of the* Grand Feast.

Ex Lib. Collect. W. le N. Cl. fol. 46.

Right Honorable,

WHereas *his Majesty*, Soveraign *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *for sundry causes, but especially for the late* Death *of the high and mighty* King, *his most dear and most entirely beloved* Father, *which bringeth unto him cause of grief infinitely more then of triumph, hath not thought meet to keep the* Feast *of St.* George *for this year on the days accustomed for the same, that is to say, on the* 22. 23. *&* 24. *days of this month of* April. *His Majesty therefore, under the Seal of the said Order, remaining in my Custody, hath prorogued the keeping of the said* Feast *for this year, unto the* 16. 17. *&* 18. *days of* August *next: Commanding all the* Knights *and* Companions *of the said Noble* Order *and* Officers *of the same, then to attend his person, wherein, his Majesties Pleasure, it is my due to make known to your Lordship, which being by these performed, I most humbly rest*

7. April 1625. — *Your Lordships most ready to do you service,*

George More.

To the right Honorable the Earl of *Arundel* and *Surry*, Earl Marshal of *England*, *Knight* of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*, and of his Majesties most Honorable Privy Council.

NUM. CLXII.

Another.

Rowes Journal, pag. 5.

May it please your Lordship,

THE *King's Majesty*, Soveraign *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *having formerly* prorogued *the Celebration of the Feast of Saint* George *for this year, from the usual days, upon which it should have been solemnized, unto the* 8. 9. *&* 10. *of* July *following; and by reason of the* Contagion *spread in many parts of his Kingdom, from those days, to the* 26. 27. *&* 28. *of* September, *and then also, upon special consideration unto the* 13. 14. *&* 15. *of* December, *by several Commissions under the Seal of his Order, now remaining in my Custody. His Majesty for divers and important Causes, and to avoid the danger of the concourse of much people, during the Infection, finding it not convenient, to celebrate the Feast at that designed time, hath adjourned the Prorogation thereof, by a new Commission, to me delivered; unto the* 17. 18. *&* 19. *days of* April *next. And thereby given Commandment, to all the* Knights *and* Companions, *and* Officers *of his Order, that they should attend his Royal person upon these last appointed days. Wherefore in discharge of my duty, I do signifie unto your Lordship his Majesties pleasure; praying your Lordship, that you will be pleased, to take knowledge herein of the Soveraign's Order, humbly resting,*

Your Lordships — *In all due Observance and Obedience,*

Cranford 12. Dec. 1636.

Tho. Rowe.

To the Right Honorable *James* Marquess *Hamilton, Knight* and *Companion of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, and my most Honored Lord.

NUM. CLXIII.

Another to the Register of the *Order*.

Ibidem, pag. 3.

Reverend Sir,

THE *King's Majesty*, Soveraign *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *having formerly prorogued the Celebration of the Feast of St.* George, *for this present Year, from the usual days upon which, it should have been solemnized, by several Commissions under the Seal of his Order, now remaining in my Custody: and finding it inconvenient for divers important causes, specially by reason of the* Contagion, *spread in divers places of his* Kingdom, *to hold the* Feast, *at any of those designed times. His Majesty hath pleased by a new* Commission, *to me delivered, to prorogue the last Prorogation, unto the* 17. 18. *&* 19. *of* April *next: And thereby given Commandment to all the* Knights *and* Companions, *and to the* Officers *of his Order, that they should attend his Royal person, upon those last appointed days. Wherefore in discharge of the duty of my place, I do signifie unto you his Majesties pleasure, desiring that you will take knowledge herein of his Royal Order.*

Cranford 12. *Dec.* 1636.

Your affectionate Friend to do you service,

Tho. Rowe.

To the Reverend and my Worthy Friend, Doctor *Wrenn, Dean* of *Windsor*, and *Register* of the most Honorable *Order* of the *Garter*.

One Duplicate of this was sent to Sir *John Boroughs* Knight *Garter*, another to *James Maxwell* Esq; *Black-Rod.*

NUM.

NUM. CLXIV.

Letters of *Dispensation* for attending at the *Grand Feast.*

Ex Collect. A. V. W.

By the Queen.

R*ight trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor, We greet you well: and forasmuch as you are as well* Governor *of our* Town *of* Barwick, *as also Warden of our* East Marshes, *for and anyenst* Scotland, *and may not conveniently be spared from thence, for certain Affairs there by you to be done, whereby you cannot make your repair hither, to celebrate with us the* Feast *of St.* George, *and have thought good upon that respect, to excuse your absence from the said* Feast, *and do by these presents dispence with you for the same. And therefore these our Letters shall be your sufficient discharge in that behalf. Yeven under the Signet of our said Order at our Palace of* Westminster *the----- day of* April, *in the seventh year of our Reign,* 1565.

NUM. CLXV.

Another.

Ex eod. Collect.

By the Queen.

R*ight trusty and right well-beloved Cousin, We greet you well, and forasmuch as you are* President *of our* Council *established in the City of* York, *and by reason of your charge and attendance there for our service, you cannot conveniently be present with us to solemnize the* Feast *of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter *the Even or Vigil of St.* George *next ensuing. We let you understand, that we are pleased and content to accept your reasonable excuse in this behalf: And by these presents do pardon you for your absence from the said* Feast *at this present, any* Statute *of our said* Order *to the contrary notwithstanding.* Yeoven *under our Signet of our Order, at our Palace of* Westminster *the ----- day of* April 1575. *in the* 17. *year of our Reign.*

To our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin *Henry* Earl of *Huntington*, President of our Council in the City of *York*, *Knight* and *Companion* of our most Noble *Order* of the *Garter.*

NUM. CLXVI.

Another.

Ex Lib. Collect. W. le N. Cl. f. 54.

Charles R.

R*ight trusty and right well-beloved Cousin We greet you well: Forasmuch as you by reason of your indisposition of health, cannot be present to attend our person on the days by prorogation for this year appointed for celebrating the* Feast *of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter *(that is to say the* 26. 27. *and* 28. *days of this moneth of* April) *We let you understand that We are pleased to excuse your absence, and by these presents do pardon, remit and dispence with any fault you may incur thereby. And do give you license to be absent at those days from the said* Feast *for this year, any* Article *or* Statute *of our said* Order *to the contrary notwithstanding.* Given *under the Seal of our said Order, at our Palace of* Westminster, *the* 23. *day of* April, *in the second year of the Reign of* Great Britain, *&c.*

To our right trusty and right well-beloued Cousin *Thomas* Earl of *Arundel* and *Surrey*, Earl Marshal of *England*, and *Knight* and *Companion* of our most Noble *Order* of the *Garter.*

NUM. CLXVII.

Another.

Inter Præsident. Tho. Rowe Eq. Aur. nuper hujus Ordinis Cancellar.

Charles R.

R*ight trusty and right well-beloved Cousin, We greet you well: Whereas we have for divers causes, prorogued the celebration of the* Feast *of St.* George *for this present year, to the* 17. 18. *and* 19. *days of* April *next following, whereof according to the Customs and Rules of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *you have had notice and summons, for your attendance upon those days from our* Chancellor; *notwithstanding we are pleased to excuse your absence, and by these presents do dispence therewith, and pardon and remit any default you may thereby incur, and do give you license to be absent at those days, from the said* Feast *for this present year (observing in your own House the Solemnities appointed by the Canons of the* Order) *any* Statute *or* Article *thereof to the contrary notwithstanding:* Given *under the Signet of our Order at our Palace of* Westminster, *the* 24. *day of* February *in the* 12. *year of our Reign.*

NUM.

NUM. CLXVIII.

A Warrant *for a* Privy Seal *to pay* Garter *for* Scutcheons *used on Saint* George's *day.*

Ex Autogr. pen. Johan. Vincent gen.

TRusty *and well-beloved, We greet you well, and will and command you, that under our Privy Seal being in your Custody, ye cause our* Letters *to be made forth unto the* Treasurer *and* Chamberlains *of our* Exchequer *in form following, We will and command you, that unto our trusty and well-beloved Servant* Garter *Principal King of Arms, ye pay or cause to be paid in ready money upon the sight hereof without delay, the sum of* 6 l. 1 s. 8 d. *for* 23 Scutcheons *by him provided for the* Knights *of our* Order, *on Saint* George's *day last, in the first and second years of our Reign, whereof* 4. *for Princes at* 6 s. 8 d. *the piece, and the rest at* 5 s. *the piece, and also that ye content and pay more unto the said* Garter *the sum of* 6 l. 11 s. 8 d. *for* 25. Scutcheons *by him provided, and set up at our Manor of St.* James *in the second and third years of our Reign for the furniture of the Stalls in our said* Chappel, *at the rate aforesaid: and these our Letters shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge.*

NUM. CLXIX.

A Privy Seal *to pay* Garter 7 *l. per annum for* Scutcheons *of Arms set up on St.* George's Eve.

Collect. W. le N. *Cl.*

ELizabeth *by the grace of God, Queen of* England, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith,* &c. *To the* Treasurer *and* Chamberlains *of our* Exchequer *greeting. We will and command you forthwith upon the sight hereof, of such our Treasure as remaineth in your Custody, you content and pay, or cause to be contented, and paid to our trusty and well-beloved Servant Sir* Gilbert Dethick *Knight, alias* Garter, *principal King of Arms, the sum of* 21 *l. for* Scutcheons *of* Arms *of the* Knights *of our* Order *set up in our* Chappel *within our Palace of* Westminster, *as wel on St.* George's *Even, in the year of our Lord God* 1579. *as on St.* George's *Even in the year of our Lord God* 1580. *and also on St.* George's *Even last past; and also henceforth during his life to allow him yearly* 7 *l. to be paid on St.* George's *day accordingly. And these our* Letters *shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in that behalf.* Given *under our Privy Seal at our Manor of* Greenwich, *the* 7. *day of* July, *in the* 23. *year of our Reign.*

NUM. CLXX.

Another.

Ex Autogr. penes Wil. Knight.

CHARLES *by the grace of God King of* England, Scotland, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith,* &c. *To the* Treasurer *and* Under-Treasurer *of our* Exchequer *for the time being, and that hereafter shall be, Greeting.* Whereas *our late dear Father King* James *of happy memory deceased, by* Warrant *under his* Privy Seal, *bearing date the second day of* July, *in the sixth year of his Reign of* England, &c. *did give order for the payment unto* William Seagar, *alias* Garter, *Knight, now principal King of Arms, and to any other principal King of Arms, for the time being, upon every Saint* George *Even, of the sum of seven pounds, for* Escotcheons *of* Arms *of the* Knights *of the* Order *of the* Garter, *to be set up in the* Chappel *at* Whitehall, *or any other place where the said* Feast *should happen to be solemnized on every St.* George's Even *and* Day, *as by the said* Warrant *more at large appeareth: We minding the continuance of the said yearly allowance, do hereby will and command you to cause payment to be made out of such our Treasure as now is, or hereafter shall be in the receipt of our said* Exchequer *of the said yearly allowance of seven pounds unto the said Sir* William Seager *alias* Garter, *Knight, now our principal King of Arms, and to any other our principal King of Arms for the time being upon every St.* George's *Even for the* Scutchions *of* Arms *of the* Knights *of our* Order *of the* Garter, *to be by him or them set up in our* Chappel *at* Whitehall, *or any other place where the said* Feast *shall happen to be solemnized every St.* George's *Even and day; And to continue the payment thereof yearly until you shall receive other directions from us to the contrary. The first payment thereof to begin and commence from the time of the last payment thereof unto the said Sir* William Seager *alias* Garter, *our principal King of Arms; And these our* Letters *shall be your sufficient Warrant and discharge in this behalf.* Given *under our Privy Seal at our Palace of* Westminster, *the seventh day of* February, *in the second year of our Reign.*

NUM. CLXXI.

Commissional Letters for collecting the *Contributions* towards furnishing the *Altar* in the Chappel at *Windesor.*

Ex lib. vocat. Frith's Regist. p. 139.

CHARLES *by the grace of God, King of* England, Scotland, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith, and Soveraign of the most Noble Order of the* Garter; *To all and singular, whom these may concern, greeting. Whereas,* We *with the* Knights *and* Companions

nions *of our said* Order, *in contemplation of the great want of such sacred Furniture*, *for our Royal Chappel of* St. George *within our Castle of* Windsor, *as may be suitable to the honour and devotion of the said* Order, *have at sundry* Chapters *there holden, advised and decreed, that a joynt contribution should be made*, *for provision of the same*; *And particularly*, *at a* Chapter (*together with the Solemnity of the* Feast *of* St. George) *holden upon the 6. of this present* October, *We did again declare and constitute, that* We *our selves would begin*, *and that every Lord, which is now of our* Realm, *a* Companion *of the said* Order, *or was at the making of our first Decree*, viz. Nov. 24. 1625. *should give and confer towards the same*, *as to him should be thought meet*; *Provided that it be not under xx l. Now know ye*, *that We have*, *and do by these presents*, *give Authority and Command*, *to our* Dean *and* Canons *of our said free* Chappel, *that they forthwith by any one of themselves, or by their lawful Deputy*, *under their Common Seal, do ask and receive, as well of our own Officers for our* Self, *as of every* Lord *and* Companions *of the* Order, *that now is*, *of our Realm, and of the Heirs*, Executors, *and* Administrator, *of any that are deceased, since the time last above mentioned, the said gift and contribution. And that thereof they be accountable unto Us, at our next* Chapter, *to be holden for the said* Order, *or at the next Session of the* Lords Commissioners *for the said* Order, *which of the two shall first happen. Given under the Seal of our said* Order, *the seventh day of* October, *in the sixth Year of our Reign of* England, Scotland, France, *and* Ireland, *&c.* 1630.

NUM. CLXXII.

The *Soveraign's Letter* to the *Dean* and *Canons* of *Windesor*, for making use of their *Lodgings* at Saint *George's Feast*, *an.* 7. *H.* 5.

Ex Lib. vocat. Denton. fol. 69.

TRescbers & bien aymés, *Nous vous solvons souuent, Et pour ce que grant multitude de gens tant estrongers, que aultres qui seront à nostre Chasteau de* Windesore, *à ceste prochaine solempnité, la feste de Sainct* George; *& à cause de la Venue de l'*Empereur, *& du Duc de* Holand. *Nous desirons, & voulons que leurs gens, & aultres estans de nostre Compengnie ayent la plus grand favour, & aise que faire se pourra en aucune maniere touchant leur Logemens dedens mesme nostre dit* Chasteau; *Pour laquelle cause vous envoyons presentement nostre bien aymé Escuier &* Huisser *de* Chambre *le porteur de cestes vers nostre dit* Chasteau, *pour yeuor donner contre nostre venue. Si vous prions*, *que vous veuilliès bonnement souffrir nostre dit* Huissier *survoyer lez Logemens de vous maisons dedens nostre* College, *& de y logier autant de personnes come faire se pourra honestement à ceste foys: tout seullement pour la cause dessus dit. Et ce faisons vous nous faites vng singulier plesir. Et n'est pas nostre intention ne vouloir que par coulour de ce. Vous en soyés ainsi chargiés plus avant. Et nostre Signeur soit garde de vous. Donné soubz nostre Signet à* Lambeth, *le* 18. *jour de* May, *l'an de nostre Reigne septieme.*

NUM. CLXXIII.

A *Letter* from the *Soveraign*, to excuse the absence of some of the *Knights-Companions* from the *Grand Feast.*

Lib. N. pag. 174.

SUpremus honorando ac perveneranda Patri suo Thomæ *Comiti* Derb. *salvere, ac benè valere. Quoniam ob multa variaq; negotia quæ nostri oneris sunt perdelectus Cognatus noster Comes* Salopiæ, *& fideles ac benè meriti nobis à Consiliis Dominus* Reginaldus Bray, *Dom.* Thô. Lovell, *Dom.* Carolus Somerset, *Dom.* Richardus Goulford, *& Dominus* Gilbertus Talbot *Socii clarissimi nostri* Ordinis *non possunt ipsi in Festo Divi* Georgii *septimo* Maii *celebrando interesse, sed venia nostra donandi sunt arduis illisce rebus impediti*; *Nos igitur his nostris scriptis certiorem tuam nobilitatem facimus*; *Ut has excusationes rationi consonas acceptes*, *de nulla Statutorum vi dubitatucus*, *& si contra denotare videatur, cum penes nos sit, ut ipsænet leges jure regantur* Richmondiæ 29. Aprilis.

NUM. CLXXIV.

Another.

Ex Collect. A. V. W.

Elizabeth.

RIght trusty and right entirely beloved Cousin and Counsellor, *We greet you well. Forasmuch as our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousins and Counsellors the Earls of* Arundel *and* Derby, *&c. Companions of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *cannot for certain employments*, *by our Commandment attend at the Feast of the glorious Martyr* St. George, *to be holden and kept within our Castle of* Windsor, *the* 22. *day of* May *next coming*, *and they being by Us dispensed with, and pardoned for their absence at that time*, *like as we have thought good to advertize you thereof*; *so We will you to accept their reasonable excuses in this behalf accordingly: any Statute of the said Order made to the contrary notwithstanding. Given under the Signet of our said Order*, *at our Palace at* Westminster *the* 20. *of* May, *in the fifth year of our Reign.*

NUM. CLXXV.

Another.

MS. penes Arthur. Com. Anglesey, fol. 122. *b.*

Elizabeth.

R*ight trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor, We greet you well. And forasmuch as our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor the Marquess of* Winchester, *and the Earl of* Derby, *and our right trusty and right entirely beloved Cousin and Counsellor the Duke of* Norfolk, *our right trusty and well-beloved Counsellor the Lord* Clynton *our high Admiral of* England, *our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor the Marquess of* Northampton, *our right trusty and well-beloved Counsellor the Lord* Howard *of* Effingham, *Lord Chamberlain of our Houshold, our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin the Earl of* Shrewsbury, *our right trusty and well-beloved the Lord* Hastinges *of* Loughborough, *our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor the Earl of* Leicester, *our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin the Earl of* Warwick, *our trusty and well-beloved the Lord* Hunsdone, *our trusty and well-beloved Sir* Henry Sidney, *Companions of our Noble* Order *of the* Garter, *cannot for certain causes to be executed and done by our Commandment, be at the Feast of the Glorious Martyr St.* George, *to be holden and kept within our Castle of* Windsore, *the xvii. day of* June *next coming, but be by Us pardoned of their absence from the said* Feast, *like as we have thought good to advertize you thereof; so We will you to accept their reasonable excuse in this behalf accordingly, any* Statutes *of the said* Order *made to the contrary notwithstanding. Given under our Seal of our said* Order *at our Honor at* Hampton-Court *the* .....*day of* June, *in the xii. Year of our Reign.*

NUM. CLXXVI.

A *Commission* for holding the *Grand Feast.*

Regist. Chartac. fol. 13. *b.*

H*enry par la grace de Dieu, Roy d'*Angleterre, *& de* France, Souvrain *de la Compagnie de l'*Ordre *du* Gartier, *A tous nos* Compagnons *du dit* Ordre, *Salut. Comme pour certeines causes que nous movent, ne pourrons estre personnelement à la* Feste *de Saint* George, *prouchein venant, à nostre Chastell de* Wyndesore, *& par les* Estatutz *du dit* Ordre, *nous est loisible pour commetter, & deputer autre personne pour nous, pour tenir lez* Chapitres, *corriger, & redresser faire les Eleccions, & de lez approuver, & de faire toutes autres choses, comme il appertendra, solonc la forme & teneure dez ditz Estatutz. Pour ce est il, que nous avons commis, & deputé, commettons, & deputons par cez presentes, nostre trescher, & tresame Oncle,* Jean *Regent nostre Royaume de* France, *Duc de* Bedford, *pour faire les ditz choses avec leures circumstances, & dependences quelconques. Mandons & commandons à nous dis Compaignons, que en ce faisant lui obeissent, & entendent diligentment comme à l'ordre appartent pour cest fois. Donné à* Leycestre *la premier jour d'*Avril, *l'an de nostre Regne quart.*

NUM. CLXXVII.

Another.

Ibid. fol. 62. *b.*

Henry R.

H*Enry the viii. by the grace of God, King of* England, *and of* France, *Defensour of the Faith, and Lord of* Irland. *To our right trusty and right entirely beloved Cousin, the Marquess* Dorcet, *Greeting. Forasmuch as we for divers gret and urgent causes, may not be present at the* Feast *of the glorious Martyr St.* George, *Patrone of our noble* Ordre *of the* Gartier, *to be holdyn, solempnised and kept in our Castell of* Windesore, *the viii. day of* May *next commyng. We therefore by these presents name, constitute, appoint, and ordayne you to be our* Lieutenant *at the said* Feast. *Giving unto you full power and auctorite to do and accomplische every thing at the same, which to our* Lieutenant *there in such case belongith, and hath been accustumed; Willing and Commanding by the tenour hereof all and every the* Companions *and* Officers *of our said* Ordre, *to be to you in the executing of this our auctorite obeying and attending as schall appertayne. Yeven under the Seal of our sayd Garter at our Manoir of* Beaulieu, *the xxv. day of* Aprill, *the xvi. yere of our Reigne.*

NUM. CLXXVIII.

Another.

Lib. N. pag. 249.

Henry R.

H*Enricus Dei gratiâ, Rex* Angliæ *&* Franciæ, *Princeps* Gualliæ, *& Dominus* Hiberniæ, *Fidei Defensor, atq; Illustrissimi hujus* Ordinis *ipse* Supremus, *unice nobis dilectio, fide probatissimo, & Officio erga nos suo jam undiq; notissimo Cognato nostro Duci* Norf. *salutem ac fœlicitatem. Nunc quoniam per multa charissime, nos istinc negotia detinent (ut quod optamus) gloriossimi Martyris Patroni nostri festivitatem præsentia nostra non possumus honorare, tuam propterea nobilitatem ad illud ipsum nomine nostro præstandum nominamus atq; instituimus eam tibi dantes authoritatem quæ supplenti vices nostras unquam alias assuevit, jubentes & itidem ut Sociorum quisquis atq; Officialium tibi, dum mandatum hoc nostrum facessis, obediant, & quantum res ipsa postulabit, ex nutu tuo jussuq; pendeat,* Windesori *sub Ordinis Sigillo, undecimo* Junii, *& nostri Regni decimo septimo.*

NUM.

NUM. CLXXIX.

A *Letter* of *Notice* to the *Assistants* of the *Soveraign's Lieutenant*, to be at the *Feast*.

Collect. A. V. W.

By the Queen.

RIght trusty and right well-beloved, We greet you well. Where we by our Commission under the Seal of our most Noble Order of the Garter, have assigned and appointed our right trusty and right well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor the Earl of Arundel, Lord Steward of our Houshold, and one of the Companions of the said Noble Order, to be our Lieutenant at the Feast of the glorious Martyr St. George, to be kept within our Castle of Windesor the 18. day of May next coming, for the doing of all things there, as to Our Lieutenant appertaineth. And have appointed you, with our right trusty & right well-beloved the Lord Paget of Beaudesert, to be Assistants at the said Feast. We have thought good, not only to give you knowledge thereof by these Our Letters, but also require you to make your repair to Our said Castle of Windesor; so as you may be there at the said Feast accordingly. Given under the Signet of Our said Order at Our Manor of Greenwich, the second day of May, in the third year of Our Reign.

To Our right trusty and right well-beloved, the Viscount *Mountague*, one of the *Companions* of Our *Order*.

The like *Letter*, and of the same Date was sent to the Lord *Paget*, the other *Assistant*.

NUM. CLXXX.

An *Order* for the fashion and materials of the *Soveraign* and *Knights-Companions Under Habit*.

Collect. E. W. G.

Charles R.

IT being most certain, that nothing can be more conducing to the keeping up of that Lustre and Dignity, of our most Noble Order of the Garter, wherein it is at this present, then those very means by which it hath attained unto it constancy and immtability. For these reasons, having at a Chapter held at our Castle of Windesor, the 16. of April last past, resolved upon a review and examination of its Statutes, to see if possibly length of time, and change of Customs, might have introduced any thing in them, which might make them swerve from the ancient Rules, so far as they were not unconsistent with the present Usance. We have thought it not unworthy our care, to descend unto the particulars of its Clothing: And thereupon having found, that in what concerns the Under-Habits, used by the Companions at the solemnizing of Instalments, or the Celebration of St. George's Feast, they followed too much the modern fashion, never constant and less comporting with the decency, gravity, and statelinesse of the upper Robes of the Order. It was resolved in that Chapter, and accordingly we ordain and enjoyn, That from this time forwards the Companions shall be obliged, to a certain and immutable form and fashion, as well for their Under-Habits as their Upper-Robes, to be used on those solemn Days and Occasions, that is to say, to the old Trunk-hose or Round-Breeches, whereof the Stuff or Material shall be some such Cloth of Silver, as we shall chuse and appoint, wherein as we shall be to them an example, so we do expect they will follow us in using the same, and no other. Given under the Signet of our said Order, this------ day of May, 1661.

NUM. CLXXXI.

A *Dispensation* for a *Knights* attendance at the *Grand Feast*, during life.

Ex ipso Autogr. in Bibl. Hatton.

Henry R.

HEnry the Eighth by the grace of God, King of England and of France, Defender of the Faith, and Lord of Ireland, and Soveraign of the Noble Order of the Garter, To the Lieutenant at the Feast of the glorious Martyr Saint George, Patron of the Noble Order of the Garter, and other Knights and Companions of the same Order, for the time being, to be assembled at any time hereafter at our Castle at Windesor, and to other our Officers, Ministers, and Subjects these our Letters hearing or seeing, Greeting. We let you weet, that We of our special grace, and for certain urgent and great causes, and special considerations concerning the old service done unto us, by our right trusty and well-beloved Counsellor the Lord Darcy, one of the Knights and Companions of the said Noble Order of the Garter, and of his great age and debility, have pardoned and licensed him by these presents at all time from henceforth, during his life, to be absent from the said Feast of St. George, and not to give attendance in any place, Chapter, or other Feast to be holden of the said Noble Order, and that he to sustain no damage by any mean for his said absence any Act, Decree, Ordinance, Oath, or Statute of the said Noble Order of the Garter, now being made, or hereafter to be made to the contrary notwithstanding. Given under the Seal of the Gartier of the said Noble Order, the eight and twentieth day of October, the six and twentieth year of our Reign.

NUM.

NUM. CLXXXII.

Another.

Inter Præsident. Tho. Rowe Eq. Aur. nuper Cancell.

Charles R.

CHarles *by the grace of God, King of Great* Britain, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the* Faith, *and* Soveraign *of the most Noble* Order *of the* Garter. *To our right truty and right well-beloved Cousin* Ferdinand, *Earl of* Derby, *Knight and Companion of our said most Noble* Order, *Greeting. Forasmuch as we are informed by our* Chancellor *of our* Order, *upon signification to him made under your Seal of Arms, of your indisposition of health, and of your petition to have licence to forbear your attendance upon our person on the* 22. 23. *&* 24. *of* May *next, being the days appointed by Prorogation for the Celebration of the* Feast, *of our most Noble* Order *of the* Garter. *We give you to understand, that we are pleased to excuse your absence, and by these presents, do pardon, remit, and dispense with any default you may thereby incur. And we do further, in respect of your age, and weakness unable to travel, signified unto us in your said Petition, by these presents, dispense with your attendance on our person upon the said* Feast *days, during your natural life, observing in your own house the Rites and Solemnities appointed by the Canons of the* Order *upon the usual days of Celebration, being the* 22. 23. *&* 24. *of* April, *or at such times as shall be hereafter appointed by Prorogation, any Statute, or Article of our said* Order *to the contrary notwithstanding. Given under the Seal of our said Order, at our Court at* Whitehall, *the* 9. *day of* April, *in the* 14. *year of our Reign.*

NUM. CLXXXIII.

A *Warrant* to *Garter* to take down the *Atchievements* of *John Dudley*, Duke of *Northumberland.*

Collect. W. le N. Cl.

By the Queen.

TRusty *and well-beloved, We greet you well, letting you witte, That where the* Hatchments *of the late Duke of* Northumberland *attainted of High Treason, and put to Execution for his offence, do remain yet within our Chappel of* Windesor, *untaken down. Our pleasure is, in respect of his said Offence, through the which his* Hatchments *deserve not to be in so honorable a place, among the rest of the* Knights *of our* Order; *you shall repair to* Windesor *immediately upon the Receipt of these Our Letters, and in your presence, cause the said* Hatchments *of the said late Duke to be taken down, in such sort as others in like cases have been, whereof fail you not. Given under our Signet of our Order,* &c.

NUM. CLXXXIV.

A *Publication* of the *Degrading* of *Edward*, Duke of *Buckingham.*

Ex Collect. A. V. W.

BE *it known unto all men, That whereas* Edward, *late Duke of* Buckingham, *Knight, and Companion of the Noble* Order *of Saint* George, *named the* Garter, *hath lately done and committed High Treason against the King,* Soveraign *of the said* Order *of the* Garter, *in compassing and imagining the destruction of the most Noble person of our said Soveraign Lord the King, contrary to his Oath, Duty, and Allegiance; for which High Treason, the said* Edward *hath been indicted, arraigned, convicted, and attainted, and for the which detestable Offence and High Treason, the said* Edward *hath deserved to be disgraded of the said Noble* Order, *and expelled out of the said Company, and not worthy that his Arms,* Ensigns, *and Atchievements should remain amongst other Noble Ensigns and Atchievements, of other noble, vertuous, and approved* Knights *of the said Noble* Order, *nor to have the benefits of the said Noble* Order. *Wherefore our Soveraign Lord the King,* Soveraign *of the said Noble* Order *of St.* George, *named the* Garter, *by the advice of other* Knights *of the said Noble* Order, *for his said Offences, and committing of the said High Treason, willeth and commandeth, that the said* Edward, *late Duke of* Buckingham, *be disgraded of the said Noble* Order, *and his Arms, and* Ensigns, *and Atchievements clearly* expelled, and put from amongst the Arms, Ensigns, and Atchievements *of the other Noble* Knights *of the said* Order; *to the intent that all other Noble men, thereby may take Example, hereafter, not to commit any such hainous and detestable Treason and Offence, as God forbid they should.*

God save the King.

NUM. CLXXXV.

The *Soveraign's Letters* for celebrating *Masses*, upon the Death of the Lord *Fitz-Hugh, an.* 3. *H.* 6.

Lib. N. pag. 81. *&* 82.

Exteris & aliis hujus Clarissimi Ordinis Sodalibus, extra Regnum *Commorantibus* & eorum cuilibet, *Supremus* Salutem.

QUoniam, *Charissime mi Cognate, N.* Henricus *Dominus* Fitzhugh, *nuper unus è Commilitonibus nostris excessit ex hâc vitâ, cujus animæ propitius esto Deus: Nos id propterea nunciamus, ut vestram commiserationem minimè lateat,* Missas *ex præcepto Statuti pro defunctio celebrandas, cæteraque complenda, quæ vestrâ in hâc parte solet interesse. Vestram verò nobilitatem*

tem beata Trinitas servet & augeat. Sub Sigillo nostri Ordinis Windesori, *&c.*

Manentibus, intra Regnum, sed absentibus ab hâc Festivitate *Georgianâ*, & eorum cuilibet *Rex* S. P. D.

RICHARDO N. *Cognato nostro perdilecto Salutem. Quoniam* Henricus Fitzhugh, *nuper unus è Sociis nostri Ordinis, sexto* Januarii *proximo defunctus est. (Cujus animæ misereatur Omnipotens.) Nos vestræ Nobilitati significamus, ut juxta tenorem Statutorum* Missas *defuncto curetis celebrandas. Sciitis autem hinc* Windesori *vacare sedem, quam oporteat intra sex hebdomadas ab altero possideri. Cæterùm quia nos aliis jam negotiis impediti, non possumus huic insistere, mandamus, ut proximâ Divi* Georgii *Vigiliâ, vos ipsi horâ tertiarum nobiscum* Windesori *sitis, ad perimplendum quod ista res expostulat, nisi justa forsan causa faciat, quò minùs fieri possit, quæ scriptis ad nos, eisdem die & horâ mitti debet, sub Sigillo vestro ab Armis.*

NUM. CLXXXVI.

Another *Letter* sent upon the Death of Sir *Robert Umfrevil, an.* 4. *H.* 6.

Registr. Chartac. fol. 12. *b.*

De par le Roy *Souverain* de l'Ordre du *Jarretier.*

T*Rescher & tresame Oncle, Pour ce, que apres le trespas d'aucun des* Compaignons *de l'*Ordre *du* Jarretier, *le* Souverain *par les Estatus du dit* Ordre, *le doit signifier & faire savoir à tous les Compaignons, ou qu'ilz soyent, Nous come premier; &* Souverain *d'icelui, vous signifions, que feu nostre trescher, & bien ame* Sir Robert Dumfreville, *que Dieu absoille en son vivant vn des* Compaignons *du dit* Ordre, *est allé de vie à trespas, si faites vostre devoir, & diligence des* Messes *&* Prieres, *que selonc les diz Estatus estes tenu faire dire & celebrer pour le repos & salut de son ame, & ny faites aucun faulte, trescher & tresame Oncle, nostre Seigneur. Dieu vous ait en sa seinte Garde.*

De par le Roy *Souverain* de l'Ordre du *Jarretiere.*

T*Rescher & bien ame; Pour ce, que* Sir Robert Dumfreville, *que Dieu absoille, en son vivant, vn de noz* Compaignons *de l'*Ordre *du* Jarretier, *est allé de vie à trespas le darrain jour de* Januer, *darrain passé, & que selon lez Estatuz du dit* Ordre, *sommes tenus en advertir vng chescun dez* Compaignons, *vous certifions son dit trespas, adfin que facies vostre devoir des* Messes *&* Prieres, *lesquelles estes tenuz faire dire & celebrer pour le salut de son ame, par le mort du quel est vn place vacant, & convient selon les ditz Estatuz, aultre Eslier en son lieu dedans sys sepmaines apres la certification du dit trespas, si bonnement faire se puet, que bonnement au present faire ne pourrons: si voulons, & vous mandons, sur lez peines contenues es ditz Estatutz que soies avec nous la vaigle Seint* George, *à l'heure de tierce prochein venant, pour faire & acomplir en ce que dit est, come per les ditz Estatutz appertiendra. Et se estre ny poves nous signifiés soubz vostre Seel la cause de vostre empechement, par quoy vostre Excusacion puissions cognoistre, & l'avoir agreables, si ainsi est quelle soit digne d'estre accepte, & ny faites feaulte, Trescher & bien ame, &c.*

NUM. CLXXXVII.

Another sent upon the Death of King *Henry* the Seventh, and *Philip* King of *Castile.*

MS. intitnled *Henry the Seventh's Proceedings, penes W. le N. Cl. p.* 49.

FOrasmuch as it hath pleased Almighty God, to call unto his infinite mercy the late King our Fader of most famous memory, whose soule God pardonne, late Soverain of the Noble Ordre of the Garter, and also the King of Castile, ech Companion of the same Noble Ordre. We therefore advise you thereof, to the intent, that you may cause such Dirions and Suffrages, to be said and doon for their souls health, as by the auncient Statutes and Ordinances of the said Noble Order, you be bound to do in that behalf. Given under the Seal of the same Noble Order, &c.

NUM. CLXXXVIII.

A *Certificate* that the *Masses* were accordingly Celebrated.

Lib. N. pag. 318.

N*Overint universi per præsentes Literas, Nos Priorem & Conventum Ordinis Fratrum* N. *Mandato, ac munere præclaro Illustrissimi Domini nostri Regis* HENRICI OCTAVI, *nostri, omniumque Christi Pauperum benefactoris præcipui, quadringentas* Missas, *quinque Ceriis in Exequiis, & Missa aliis solemniore honorificè accensis pro animâ piæ Memoriæ Magnifici Domini* N. *nuper defuncti celebrasse.*

NUM. CLXXXIX.

An *Order* for reviving the *Decree* for payment of *Obit* Monies.

Lib. R. pag. 86.

Carolus R.

I*N hoc Capitulo*, Supremus *per D. Comitem* Portlandiæ *monetur cujusdam Sanctionis, sub Rege* Henrico Octavo, *latè & in Statuta, (singulorum*

gulorum jure juramento firmata) relatæ, quâ decretum fuit, ut defuncto ex Commilitonibus ordinis aliquo, certam quandam pecuniarum summam tam Supremus *ipse, quam superstites* Commilitones *singuli solverent, per Decanum* Windesoriensem *colligendam, atq; in pios usus erogandam, prout visum erit* Supremo, *&* Commilitonibus *in* Capitulo. *Hanc verò sanctionem, quantumvis in se honorificam, usuq; confirmatam sub* Edvardo *Rege sexto, subq;* Mariâ, *&* Elizabethâ *Reginis nuper, tamen per aliquot retrò annos minùs observatam,* Supremus *jussit publicè recitari. Pellegente igitur* Scribâ *apparet, post obitum cujusque* Commilitonis *ipsi* Supremo *incumbere summam* 8 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.* Regi extero, 6 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* Principi, 5 *l.* 16 *s.* 8 *d.* Duci, 5 *l.* Marchioni, 3 *l.* 15 *s.* Comiti, 2 *l.* 10 *s.* Vice-Comiti, 2 *l.* 1 *s.* 8 *d.* Baroni, 1 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* Equiti, 16 *s.* 8 *d. additâ insuper pœna tertiæ quoque partis in annos singulos cumulandæ, quantisper sortem principalem non solverint.* Suprema *itaq; Majestas, cum assensu* Commilitonum *omnium præsentium, ordinavit atque decrevit sanctionem hanc honorificentiæ, pietatisq; refertissimam, & singulorum juramentis in introitu Ordinis firmatam, restitui oportere, & in perpetuum deinc usum, atq; observationem revocari, idq; sub pœnâ statutâ, non solùm* Commilitonibus *ni solvant, sed & Decano quoque* Windesoriensi *nisi Officium suum præstet. Ordiri autem jussit à 5.* Commilitonibus *defunctis, quorum Insignia heri obtulerant, cæterùm quod ad exteros* Principes *attinet,* Supremus *significavit, quod si summas istas ipsi (pro se quisque) non exolvant, eædem, & nunc, & in posterum, semper ab ipso* Supremo *solventur. Subscribitur porrò huic decreto in hæc verba.*

Ad Mandatum D. Supremi.

Decano *Windesoriensi* incumbit pecunias vi hujus Sanctionis solvendas postulare, & receptarum rationem reddere in proximo Capitulo.

Fr. Crane Cancell.

——Deus nobis hæc Otia fecit.

FINIS.

At a Chapter of the Moſt Noble Order of the GARTER held in the Chapter-Houſe at *Windeſor* the 29th of *May*, 1674. there being then preſent

The Soveraign,

Duke of *York*,	Prince *Rupert*,
Duke of *Ormond*,	Earl of *Oxford*,
Duke of *Monmouth*,	Duke of *Albemarle*,
Duke of *Lauderdale*,	Marqueſs of *Worceſter*,
Earl of S*t* *Albans*,	Earl of *Bedford*,
Earl of *Arlington*,	Earl of *Oſſory*,
Earl of *Southampton*,	Earl of *Mulgrave*.

HIS *Royal Highneſs the Duke of* York *was pleaſed to repreſent to the Soveraign, That* Elias Aſhmole *Eſq*; Windeſor *Herald, had lately, with great Induſtry and Expence, Compoſed and Publiſhed a large Book in Folio, Intituled,* The Inſtitution, Laws, and Ceremonies of the Moſt Noble Order of the Garter; *which Book as it gives Evidence of his great Learning, Induſtry, and Judgment, ſo alſo it tends very much to the advancement of the Honor and Splendor of the Order, and is of great Uſe to the Soveraign, Companions and others, who have relation thereunto. And his Royal Highneſs further repreſented, with what humble thankfulneſs the ſaid M*r Aſhmole *did acknowledge the gracious acceptance, which the ſaid Work had found from the Soveraign, and with what great Bounty it had been teſtified; and alſo how honorably divers Knights Companions had received the ſaid Work. The Chancellor of the Order repreſented alſo, how fair a Reception the ſaid Book had met with among the Kings and Princes Strangers, Companions of the Order; and in particular how bountiful the King of* Denmark *had been toward M*r Aſhmole. *Whereupon the Soveraign did recommend to the Companions the ſaid M*r Aſhmole, *and exhorted them to give ſome honorable Teſtimony by their Bounty, of the value of his Perſon and Work.*

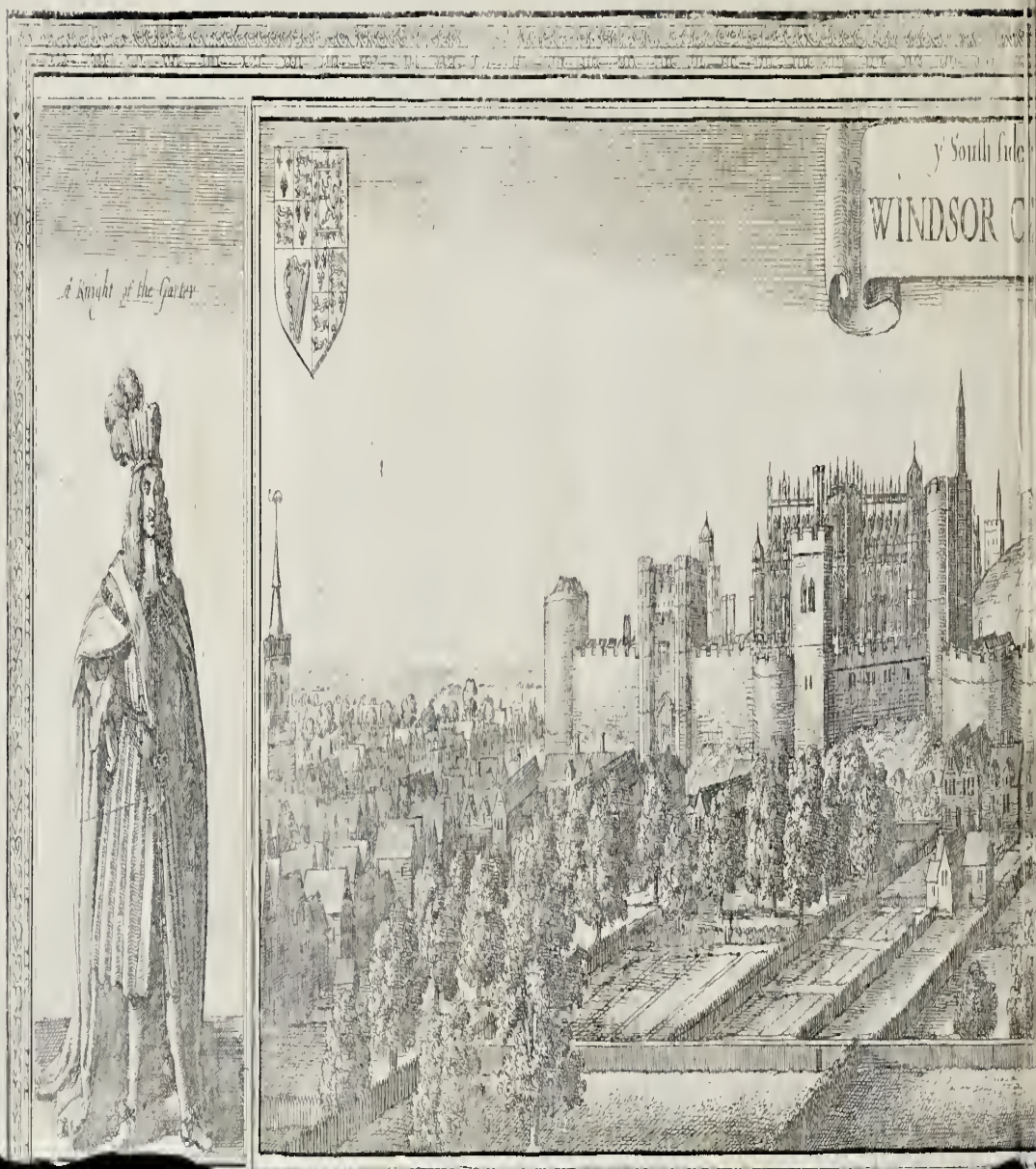
Seth Sarum prænob. Ord. Gart. Canc.

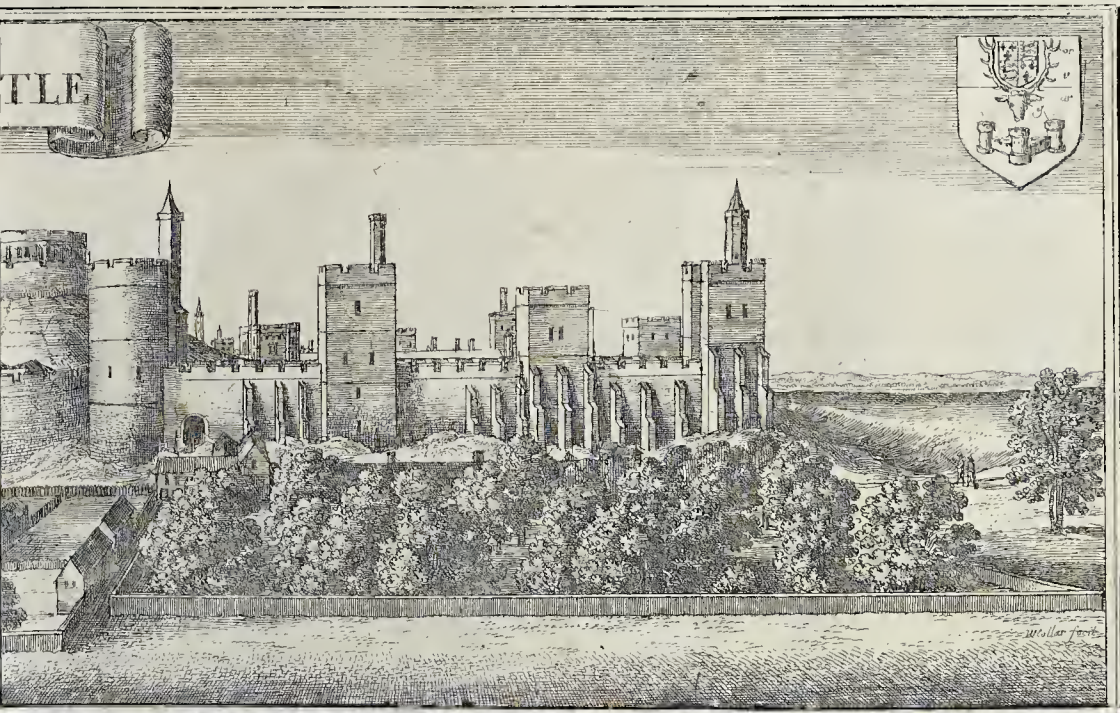
ERRATA.

Page 8.marg.(h) r.*G.Pancirol.Lib.*1.p.270. p.33.marg.(o)r.20.*libratas terræ.* p.35.l.32.r.*Hoges.*marg.(u) r.*Pat* 20 *E.*3. p.36.l.18.r.*Burgos.*p.44.marg.(a)r.*H.*2.p.53.l.31.r.*Regular.* p.54.l.14.r.*Goza.*&l.29.r.*foial & Iial* marg.(n) r.*Pantol.* l.4.p.97. p.55.marg. (g) r.*Andrada.* p.61.l.13.r. *Lusignan.* p.67.l.8.r.*Regular.* p.71.l.21.r. *Scapular.* so p.72. l.32. p.73.l.40. r. *for such.* p.84.l.47. dele [*the*] p.89. marg. (i) dele [*Ciacon.*] p.91.l.14.r.*Section.* p.96.l.31.r.*Justs.* p. 103.l.20.r.*Belly.* p.106.l.43.r. *in other Medals.* p.110.l.43.r.*Trucks.* p.136.l.56.r.*second Arch.* p.149.l.37.r.*H.*4. p.160. l.20.r.*King in* p.161.l.13.r. *Meaulis* p.170.l.29.r.*Goldclif.* p.175.l.57.r. *and Canons.* p.176.l.5.r.*appear.* marg. (q) r.27 *E.*3.p.188.l.48.dele [*Sanctir*] p.189.l.48.r.*nine.* p.191.l.28.r.*H.*6. p.192.marg.(f)r.*H.*5.*Stat.* p.193.marg.(y)r.*Art.*27. p.206.l.29.r.*Robessart.* p.212.marg.(x) r.*honoris.* p.218.l.9.r. *further mention is made of these Liveries an.*16 *E.*4. p.224. l.11.r. *draught of Prince* Rupert's *Seal.*& l.15.r. *d'Espernon.* p.238.l.58.r.*enjoyed.* p.239.marg.(k) r.*pars* 3. p.241.l.32.r. *yet.* p.253.l.45.r.*purple colour'd Ribband.* p.257.l.7.r.*Lanarick* p.268.l.10.r.*were not.* p.274.l.36.r.*Class.* so p.280.l.38. p.286.l.24.r.*Exemplars.* p.290.l.13.r.*Exeter.* p 302.l.26.r.*appertained.* p.308.l.39.r. *Church.* p.314.l.24.r.*case of.* p. 316.marg.(b)r. *Nam.* XXXIII. p.326.l.35 r.23 *Car.*2. p.353.l.7.r.*Bourchier.* p 367 l.17.r.*whereon.* l.42.r.*receive his.* p.379.l.18.r.*Deputation* p.401.marg.(p)r.*effigie* p.407 l.29.r.*Vesins.* p.412.l.56.r.*Not long* p.424.l 9.r *Ruckets.* p 429. l.41 r.*Horse.*l.ult r.*haut pas.* p.438.l.18.r *Steur.*l.29.r. *Gomyns.* p 444.l.27 r *Viscount Dorchester.* p.446 l 8 r. *Carteret. either solemn.* l.8 dele [*either*] p.505.l.17.r *futuræ.* p 512 marg (*) r.*Art.*11. p.513. marg.dele [*see Chap.*21.*Sect* 3. 521. l.17 dele [*an* 21.*Jac.R*] l. 18 dele [*before the Lieutenants proceeding to the Chappel*) *whereat Sir George Moor was sworn Chancellor of the Order in the same Chamber*] &l. 21. dele [*being the Eve of the grand Feast held by Prorogation*] ib.dele Note in marg. *sub.b.&c.* p.534.l.28.r *it occasioned* p 535.l 27.r.*Place.* p.541.l 5.r.*dispenced.* l.6.r.*penalty.* p.543 l.5.r.*come.* p 544.marg.(f) r *MS penes præf.* p.574.l.42.r.*Baudekin* p.575.l.9.r.*but without.*ib.dele [*but*] p 576. l.19.r *by.* p 577 l 13.dele [*about it*] p.585.l.5.r *the Law.* p.591.l 14 r.*Barners.* p.592.l.40 & 51.r. *Stile* p.595.l.12. (e)r *H.*5.*Stat.* p 636.marg (s) dele[*Hen.*]p 644.l penult.r.*Walter.* marg (i) r.*Chart.*8 *E.*2. p.645 l 45.r.19. p 648 l. 49.r.*King Edward.*p.651.l.56.r.*Ame* p.652. marg.(o)r.*part.*p.653.l.30.r.*Rennes.*p.654. marg.(e)r. *E.*3.p.656. l.37.r. *of his.* p 660.l 50.r.*Elect.* marg.(t) r.l.1. p.663 l.43 r. *Orlenois.* p.665.l 21.r. *Breteigny.* l.30.dele [*there*]marg. (x) r.*Armaignac.* p.666. l.16.r. *Duke of.* p.667.l.1.r.10000. l.22 & 33.r. *Bordeaux.* p.668.l. 19.r. *Dorman.* p.670.l.25.r. *to Matilda.* p 672.l.22.32.& ult.r.*Bordeaux.* p.678.l.4.r.*with the.* p.679.l.19.r.*Manny* l.41. dele [*former*] l.51.r.*Earls.* marg.(m) r.pag 364. p.680.l.52.r. *Angoulesme.* p.681.l.31.r.*Heirs.* l.55 r. *Marshes.* p.683.l.17 r. *E* 3. p.687.l.45.r. 5 *E.*3. p.691.marg.(m) r.*vocat.* p.693.l.12. & 21 r. *Neois.* & l.29.r. *third.* p.694. marg. (i) r. *E.*3. &(k) r. *Rows.* p.695 l 30.r. *therefore.* p. 696 l.20.r *Knocking.* l 37.r.48 *E* 3. & 50 r. *of the Priory.* p.697.l.19 r. *an.* l 33.r *had* p 698. marg.(k) l 4.r.*E.*3. p.699.l ult.r.r.*see of Pinkney.* p.700.l.25.r.*therefore.* p 701.l.44.r.*Pedagium.*p.702.l.38.r.*Sir.*l 39. r.*Marshals Battel.* p.704.l.12.r.*Glaive.* p.705.l.10.r.*in the.* p.707.l.16 r.*auffi.* l.47.dele [*the*]

To the end the faults escaped in any of the three pages next following each Letter of the Alphabet, carried on at the foot of the Appendix, may with more eafe be corrected, there are here added the Figures of 2. 3. and 4. to point out the page exactly.

[b] Col.1.l.8.r *annuum.*l.57.r.*quotiescunque.* [b] 3.col.1.l.28 r.*profundis;* col.2.l.9 r *noscantur.* [c] col.1.l.12.r.*legio.* [c] 2.col.1.l 25.r *sub.* col.2.l 13 r.*uniusquisque.* [c] 3 col.1.r.à *Supremo.* l 40 r. *Sacrificis.* [d] col.2.l.55.r.*commedes.* [d] 2.col 1.l.55 r *pour les.* [e] col.1.l.47.r.*legis.* col.2.l.6.r.*que.* [e] 4 col 1 l.1.r *unusquisque.* col 2.l.1.r.*curarii.* [f] 3. col. 1.l.13.r. *ut Regnum.* [h] 4 col.1.l.12.r. *Ordinis.* [k] 2.col.1.l.20.r. *Christum.* [p] 4.col.2.l.16.r. *Ou.* [q] 4.col.1.l. 44.r.*eum.* col,2.l.26.r.*virtutis.* [r] col.2.l.52.r.*peragenda.* [r] 2.col.1.l.33.r. *Omnibusque.* col.1.l.11 r. *Regis.* and [r] 4.col.2.l.41.r.*either.* [u] 3.col.1.l.54.r.*Carniole.* col.2.l.45.r.*scaccar.* [x] 2 col.2 l.ult.r.*quingentessimo.* [x] 4 col.1. l.13.r.*valeatis.* l.35.r. *Collegiat* [y] 4.col.2.l.6.r. *verbo.* l.43.r. *Equitis.* [z] col.1.l.52 & 53.r. *promettons.* col 2.l.5.r. *Chablaye.* [z] 2 col.1.l.ult.r.*nomme.* fic col 2.l.20. [aa] 3.col.2.l.21.r. *Our.* [bb] col.1.l.45.r.*estrangers.* [bb] 3.col.1. l.47.r.*immutability.*


A Knight of the Garter
y South side
WINDSOR C


TLE
Wollar fecit


A Knight of the Garter